yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Lucent's

# GENERAL ENGLISH

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Lucent's

# General English

Bank (P.O./Clerk), C.D.S., N.D.A., SCRA, CAT, MAT, MBA (XAT, FMS, JMET, SNAP, CET, ATMA, IIFT, NID) B.B.A., B.B.M., B.B.S., Hotel Management, B.M.S., CCEE, MCA, BCA, IGNOU, S.S.C. (M), UPSC, P.C.S., Tax Assistant, Income Tax & Excise Inspector, Stenographer, Translator, Railways, C.P.O., B.Ed. Entrance, Commercial Auditor, Section officer, IIIT, JNU Entrance, LIC (AAO), GIC, AFMC and other competitive examinations.

Download From: https://telegram.me/BrightFuturechannel

BY :
A. K. Thakur
Mob. : 09934289151

Every genuine copy of this book has a
3-D Hologram Sticker on the cover

Lucent Publication
D.N. Das Lane, Bengali Akhara,
Langertoli, Patna-4

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Download From: https://telegram.me/BrightFuturechannel

# CONTENTS


| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Syntax | ... | ... | 1–19 |
| 2. | Articles | ... | ... | 20–50 |
| 3. | Noun | ... | ... | 51–58 |
| 4. | Noun and the Number | ... | ... | 59–81 |
| 5. | Noun and the Gender | ... | ... | 82–88 |
| 6. | Noun and the Case | ... | ... | 89–98 |
| 7. | Pronoun | ... | ... | 99–133 |
| 8. | Adjective | ... | ... | 134–158 |
| 9. | Interchange of degrees of comparison | ... | ... | 159–166 |
| 10. | Time and Tense | ... | ... | 167–183 |
| 11. | Narration | ... | ... | 184–205 |
| 12. | Voice | ... | ... | 206–221 |
| 13. | Removal of Too | ... | ... | 222–226 |
| 14. | Verb | ... | ... | 227–231 |
| 15. | Verb Form | ... | ... | 232–242 |
| 16. | Auxiliary Verbs | ... | ... | 243–254 |
| 17. | Adverb | ... | ... | 255–283 |
| 18. | Preposition | ... | ... | 284–320 |
| 19. | Conjunction | ... | ... | 321–338 |
| 20. | Non-finites | ... | ... | 339–358 |
| 21. | Question Tags | ... | ... | 359–365 |
| 22. | Emphatic with Do/Does/Did | ... | ... | 366–367 |
| 23. | Common Error | ... | ... | 368–379 |
| 24. | Correction of the Sentences | ... | ... | 380–387 |
| 25. | Transformation of Sentences–I | ... | ... | 388–402 |
| 26. | Analysis of Sentences | ... | ... | 403–413 |
| 27. | Transformation of Sentences–II | ... | ... | 414–420 |
| 28. | Synthesis of Sentences | ... | ... | 421–429 |
| 29. | Synonyms | ... | ... | 430–437 |
| 30. | Antonyms | ... | ... | 438–452 |
| 31. | One Word Substitution | ... | ... | 453–468 |
| 32. | Phrasal Verbs | ... | ... | 469–477 |
| 33. | Words Often Confused | ... | ... | 478–504 |
| 34. | Idioms and Phrases | ... | ... | 505–520 |
| 35. | Proverbs | ... | ... | 521–523 |
| 36. | Foreign Words and Phrases | ... | ... | 524–530 |
| 37. | Spelling Test | ... | ... | 531–542 |
| 38. | Miscellaneous | ... | ... | 543–545 |
| 39. | The Same word used as Different Parts of Speech | ... | ... | 546–554 |


***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

No sooner did --- than
Hardly, Scarcely, Barely --- when
Although --- Yet

# Syntax 1

**Subject-Verb Agreement :** किसी भी Sentence में Subject के Number तथा Person के अनुसार Verb का प्रयोग Subject-Verb Agreement कहलाता है।

1. यदि Subject, Singular हो तो Verb, Singular प्रयुक्त होता है।

2. यदि Subject, Plural हो तो Verb, Plural प्रयुक्त होता है।

Verb का सही रूप में प्रयोग करने के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि आप Singular or Plural Subject तथा Singular or Plural Verb को पहचानें। न पहचान पाने के कारण ही आप Verb के प्रयोग करने में भूल कर बैठते हैं।

| Singular Subjects | Singular Verbs |
|---|---|
| I, You, He, She, It, Ram, Sita, The boy, The girl | Am, Is, Was, Has, Does, Writes, Drinks, Reads |

| Plural Subjects | Plural Verbs |
|---|---|
| We, You, They, Ram and Shyam, Gita and Rita, The boys, The girls | Are, Were, Have, Do, Write, Drink, Read |

वर्षों से आप Verbs का प्रयोग करते आ रहे हैं, इसके बावजूद इस chapter के अध्ययन की अनिवार्यता महसूस होती है। इसका कारण यह है कि आपको Sentence के Subject का पता नहीं चलता या चलता भी है, तो उसके Number और Person के बारे में कनफ्यूज करते हैं।

चलिये हमलोग Verbs के Confusion (कनफ्यूजन) को कैसे दूर कर सकते हैं इस पर विचार करें।

Noun + s/es/ies → Plural Noun

Verb + s/es/ies → Singular Verb

**Rule (1) :** यदि किसी Sentence का Subject एक Singular Noun हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Mohan was always late. (✓)
S.N. S.V.

Mohan were always late. (×)
S.N. P.V.

**Rule (2) :** 'I' (मैं) का प्रयोग Singular Subject के रूप में होता है, लेकिन इसके साथ Singular or Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I am a teacher. (✓)
S.S. S.V.

I was a student. (✓)
S.S. S.V.

I have a cycle. (✓)
S.S. P.V.

I write a letter. (✓)
S.S. P.V.

**Rule (3) :** 'You' का प्रयोग Singular or Plural Subject के रूप में होता है, तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

You are a student. (✓)
S.S. P.V.

You are engineers. (✓)
P.S. P.V.

You go there. (✓)
P.S. P.V.

You were playing. (✓)
P.S. P.V

**Rule (4) :** Needn't और daren't का प्रयोग Singular or Plural Subject के साथ Plural form में होता है। जैसे—

She needn't go there. (✓)
S.S. P.V.

She needsn't go there. (×)
S.S. S.V.

He daren't oppose his father. (✓)
S.S. P.V.

He dares n't oppose his father. (×)
S.S. S.V.

ऊपर दिये गए उदाहरणों में needn't, daren't का प्रयोग Marginal Auxiliary verb के रूप में हुआ है। अतः इसका प्रयोग Singular में नहीं किया जा सकता है।

**Note :** (i) लेकिन Dare/need का प्रयोग Main Verb के रूप में Singular or Plural दोनों ही रूपों में होता है। जैसे—

He dares to face the difficulties. (✓)
S.S. S.V.

He dare to face the difficulties. (×)
S.S. P.V.

She needs a book. (✓)
S.S. S.V.

She need a book. (×)
S.S. P.V.

They need books. (✓)
P.S. P.V.

They needs books. (×)
P.S. S.V.

**ध्यान दें :** इन negative sentences को देखें—

He does not dare to go out in the sun. (✓)
S.S. S.A.V. M.V.

She does not need a book. (✓)
S.S. S.A.V. M.V.

I do not need a pen. (✓)
S.S. P.A.V. M.V.

**Note :** यहाँ S.A.V. का अर्थ Singular Auxiliary Verb है।

(ii) daren't तथा needn't के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He daren't to come here. (×)
He daren't come here. (✓)
You needn't to go there. (×)
You needn't go there. (✓)

(iii) यदि Dare तथा need का प्रयोग क्रमशः 'हिम्मत होना/पड़ना तथा 'की आवश्यकता होना' के अर्थ में Main verb के रूप में हो, तो इसके बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

He dares to oppose his teacher. (✓)
He dares oppose his teacher. (×)
She needs to come here. (✓)
She needs come here. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (5)** : Suppositional Sentence प्रायः if, as if, as though, if only, suppose, I wish, We wish, He wishes, She wishes ... से स्टार्ट होते हैं, इससे कोरी कल्पना या असंभव शर्त का बोध होता है। इन शब्दों के बाद किसी भी Number तथा Person के Subject का प्रयोग क्यों नहीं हो, फिर भी Plural Verb 'were' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I wish Manisha were my wife. (✓)
I wish Manisha was my wife. (×)
If he were my boss, he would suspend me. (✓)
If he was my boss, he would suspend me. (×)
Raman talks to me as if he were the General Manager of NIPPO Company. (✓)
Raman talks to me as if he was the General Manager of Nippo Company. (×)

**Note** : जबकि Conditional Sentence प्रायः if, as if, as though से स्टार्ट होते हैं, इससे वास्तविक स्थिति का बोध होता है। इस case में if, as if, as though के बाद प्रयुक्त Subject के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

If you come here, I will teach you. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)
Sneha looks as though she has been working. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)

**Rule (6)** : Optative Sentence में Singular Subject के साथ भी Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Long live our friendship ! (✓)
(P.V. S.S.)
God save the king ! (✓)
(S.S. P.V.)

**Note** : Optative Sentence से इच्छा का बोध होता है, कभी-कभी May Optative Sentence में नहीं दिया रहता है, जिसे हमलोग को understood कर लेना चाहिए।

**Rule (7)** : यदि two Singular Nouns 'and' से जुड़कर Sentence के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों, तो इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Ravi and Kavi have done well in the examination. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)
Ravi and Kavi has done well in the examination. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)
A boy and a girl love each other. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)
A boy and a girl loves each other. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)

**Rule (8)** : Pair words (युग्म शब्दों) जैसे—bread and butter, rice and curry, hammer and sickle, slow and steady, truth and honesty, horse and carriage, crown and glory, rise and fall, coming and going, screaming and shouting, age and experience, eggs and bacon *(सुअर का मांस)*, ham *(बकरा का कुल्हा)* and eggs, long and short, sum and substance, bag and baggage, ..... etc का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर, इससे एक ही वस्तु या भाव का बोध होता है, अतः इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Bread and butter is my favourite breakfast. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)
Bread and butter are my favourite breakfast. (×)
(S.S. P.V.)
Rice and curry is a popular dish. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)
Rice and curry are a popular dish. (×)
(S.S. P.V.)

**Note** : (i) यदि दो singular uncountable nouns 'and' से जुड़कर sentence के subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तथा इससे class का बोध हो, इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. Time and tide wait for no man.
(S.U.N. S.U.N. P.V.)
2. Time and tide waits for no man.
(S.V.)
3. Fire and water do not agree.
(S.U.N. S.U.N. P.V.)
4. Fire and water does not agree.
(S.V.)
5. Gold and silver are precious metals.
(S.U.N. S.U.N. P.V.)
6. Gold and silver is precious metals.
(S.V.)

उपरोक्त example (2) प्रचलन के आधार पर गलत है लेकिन Old Eng... में इसे correct माना जाता है। हम पाठकों को अंग्रेजी भाषा में Time and ti... के साथ P.V. का प्रयोग करना चाहिए जो बेहतर है।

(ii) Pair words (युग्म शब्दों) के रूप में प्रयुक्त होने वाले Fam... relation expressing words 'and' से जुड़कर sentence के subje... के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तथा इसके पहले Possessive Adjectives का प्रयो... हो इसे plural माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता... जैसे—

1. My mother and father are proud of me.
(P.V.)
2. My mother and father is proud of me.
(S.V.)
3. Your uncle and aunt want to settle in Delhi.
(P.V.)
4. Your uncle and aunt wants to settle in Delhi.
(S.V.)

उपरोक्त example (1) में प्रयुक्त My mother and father का अ... My mother and my father है जो दो व्यक्तियों—माता पिता को सं... करता है। अतः plural verb का प्रयोग ही उपयुक्त है।

Example (3) में प्रयुक्त Your uncle and aunt का तात्पर्य you... uncle and your aunt है जो दो व्यक्तियों—चाचा-चाची को refer करता... अतः plural verb का प्रयोग ही उपयुक्त है।

**Rule (9)** : यदि दो Singular Nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा दो... Singular Noun के पहले Articles or Possessive Adjectives (जैसे—my, your, our, ..... etc.) का प्रयोग हो, तो इससे same person अर्थात् एक ही व्यक्ति का बोध होता है। अतः इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Principal and Secretary was there.
(S.S. S.V.)
*(एक ही व्यक्ति जो प्राचार्य और सचिव दोनों है।)*
The Principal and Secretary were there.
(S.S. P.V.)
My uncle and guardian has come to see me.
(S.S. S.V.)
*(एक ही व्यक्ति जो मेरे चाचा और गार्जियन दोनों है।)*
My uncle and guardian have come to see me.
(S.S. P.V.)
A poet and philosopher has come.
(S.S. S.V.)
*(एक ही व्यक्ति जो कवि और दार्शनिक दोनों है।)*
A poet and philosopher have come.
(S.S. P.V.)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (10) :** 'And' से जुड़े हुए दोनों Singular Nouns के पहले Articles or Possessive Adjectives का प्रयोग होने पर, इससे two different persons अर्थात् दो अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों का बोध होता है। इसे Plural माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Principal and the Secretary were there. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)

*(दो व्यक्ति जिनमें एक प्रधानाचार्य और दूसरा सचिव है।)*

The Principal and the Secretary was there. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)

My uncle and my guardian have come to see me. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)

*(दो व्यक्ति जिनमें एक मेरे चाचा और दूसरा गार्जियन है।)*

My uncle and my guardian has come to see me. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)

A poet and a philosopher have come. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)

*(दो व्यक्ति जिनमें एक कवि और दूसरा दार्शनिक है।)*

A poet and a philosopher has come. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)

**Rule (11) :** यदि दो Adjectives 'and' से जुड़कर किसी Singular Common Noun के पहले प्रयुक्त हो तथा इसके first adjective के पहले indefinite articles—a/an का प्रयोग हो, तो इससे एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु या भाव का बोध होता है। इसे Singular माना जाता है। अतः इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A black and white cat was mewing. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)

*(एक ही बिल्ली जो काली और सफेद है।)*

A black and white cat were mewing. (×)
(S.S. P.V.)

**Note :** लेकिन दो Adjectives 'and' से जुड़कर किसी Singular Common Noun के पहले प्रयुक्त हो तथा प्रत्येक Adjective के पहले Indefinite Articles—a/an का प्रयोग हो, तो इससे two different persons or things (दो अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं) का बोध होता है। इसे Plural माना जाता है। अतः इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A black and a white cat were mewing. (✓)
(P.S.S. P.V.)

*(दो बिल्लियाँ जिनमें एक काली और दूसरी सफेद है।)*

A black and a white cat was mewing. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)

**Rule (12) :** यदि दो Singular Nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा first Singular Noun के पहले each or every का प्रयोग हो या प्रत्येक Singular Noun के पहले each or every का प्रयोग हो, तो इसे Singular Subject के रूप में इस्तेमाल किया जाता है। अतः इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Each pen and pencil is red. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)

Each pen and each pencil is red. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)

Each pen and each pencil are red. (×)
(S.S. P.V.)

Every boy and girl is laborious. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)

Every boy and every girl is laborious. (✓)
(S.S. S.V.)

Every boy and every girl are laborious. (×)
(S.S. P.V.)

**Rule (13) :** Each का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Each has a pen. (✓)
Each have a pen. (×)

Plural Noun or Plural Pronoun के बाद each का प्रयोग हो, तो इसे Plural माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We each have a pen. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)

We each has a pen. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)

The boys each have a watch. (✓)
(P.S. P.V.)

The boys each has a watch. (×)
(P.S. S.V.)

**Rule (14) :** *Each of/Either of/Neither of + Plural Noun /Plural Pronoun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Each of these four pens is red. (✓)
(S.V.)

Each of these four pens are red. (×)
(P.V.)

Either of those two boys is gentle. (✓)
(S.V.)

Either of those two boys are gentle. (×)
(P.V.)

Neither of you knows English. (✓)
(S.V.)

Neither of you know English. (×)
(P.V.)

Neither of these two students is laborious. (✓)
(S.V.)

Neither of these two students are laborious. (×)
(P.V.)

Each of them was a robber. (✓)
(S.V.)

Each of them were a robber. (×)
(P.V.)

**Rule (15) :** *Each/Every/Either/Neither + Singular countable noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Each boy was handsome. (✓)
(S.V.)

Each boy were handsome. (×)
(P.V.)

Either pen writes well. (✓)
(S.V.)

Either pen write well. (×)
(P.V.)

**Note :** (i) Each, either तथा neither को Distributive pronouns कहा जाता है।

(ii) Each, every, either तथा neither का प्रयोग noun के पहले हो तो ये Distributive Adjectives कहलाते हैं।

(iii) Each का प्रयोग 'प्रत्येक' के अर्थ में दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

(iv) Either का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

(v) Neither का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(vi) Every का प्रयोग 'प्रत्येक' के अर्थ में दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

(vii) Each तथा every का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए बिना किसी अंतर का होता है।

**Rule (17)** : यदि तीनों persons के Pronouns 'and' से जुड़कर Sentence के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तो Good sense में Pronouns के 231 के sequence को follow किया जाता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

2 – Second Person – You
3 – Third Person – He
1 – First Person – I

जैसे— You, he and I are good friends. (✓)
(2, 3, 1 — P.V.)

You, he and I am good friends. (×)
(2, 3, 1 — S.V.)

**Rule (18)** : यदि दो Persons के Pronouns 'and' से जुड़कर Sentence के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तो Good sense में इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

ध्यान दें : दो Persons के Pronouns को (2, 3); (2, 1); (3, 1) के sequence को follow कर लिखा जाता है।

You and he are good friends. (✓)
(2, 3 — P.V.)

You and he is good friends. (×)
(2, 3 — S.V.)

You and I were playing cricket. (✓)
(2, 1 — P.V.)

You and I was playing cricket. (×)
(2, 1 — S.V.)

He and I were watching T.V. (✓)
(3, 1 — P.V.)

He and I was watching T.V. (×)
(3, 1 — S.V.)

Mohan and he were present there. (✓)
(3, 3 — P.V.)

Mohan and he was present there. (×)
(3, 3 — S.V.)

**Note** : (i) यदि तीनों persons के pronouns 'and' से जुड़कर bad sense में अर्थात् भूल, दोष, पाप, अपराध का बोध कराने के लिए sentence के subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तो Pronouns के 1 2 3 के sequence (क्रम) को follow किया जाता है तथा इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I, you and he are guilty. (✓)
(P.S. — P.V.)

I, you and he is guilty. (×)
(P.S. — S.V.)

I, you and he were robbers. (✓)
(P.S. — P.V.)

I, you and he was robbers. (×)
(P.S. — S.V.)

(ii) यदि दो persons के Pronouns 'and' से जुड़कर bad sense में अर्थात् भूल, दोष, पाप, अपराध का बोध कराने के लिए sentence के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तो pronouns के (1, 2) (2, 3) तथा (1, 3) के sequence (क्रम) को follow किया जाता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I and you have committed a crime. (✓)
(1, 2 — P.V.)

I and you has committed a crime. (×)
(S.V.)

You and he are sinners. (✓)
(2, 3 — P.V.)

You and he is sinners. (×)
(S.V.)

I and he were guilty. (✓)
(1, 3 — P.V.)

I and he was guilty. (×)
(S.V.)

**Rule (19)** : Either or Neither का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There are two rooms here, and either is vantilated. (✓)
(S.S. — S.V.)

There are two rooms here, and either are vantilated. (×)
(S.S. — P.V.)

There are two girls in the class, but neither is beautiful. (✓)
(S.S. — S.V.)

There are two girls in the class, but neither are beautiful. (×)
(S.S. — P.V.)

**Rule (20)** : Many, A good many, A great many का प्रयोग 'बहुत' के अर्थ में 'अनिश्चित संख्या' का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। इसका प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Many are absent from the class. (✓)
(P.V.)

Many is absent from the class. (×)
(S.V.)

There are two thousand boys in St. Xavier School and a good many are very laborious. (✓)
(P.S. — P.V.)

There are two thousand boys in St. Xavier School and a good many is very laborious. (×)
(P.S. — S.V.)

**Rule (21)** : *Many/A great many/A good many + Plural Noun* तथा *Many of/A great many of/A good many of + Plural Noun/Plural Pronoun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Many students have passed. (✓)
(P.N. — P.V.)

Many students has passed. (×)
(P.N. — S.V.)

A good many of us have gone to Shimla. (✓)
(P. Pron — P.V.)

A good many of us has gone to Shimla. (×)
(P. Pron — S.V.)

Many of the criminals were arrested. (✓)
(P.N. — P.V.)

Many of the criminals was arrested. (×)
(P.N. — S.V.)

**Rule (22)** : *Many a/Many an + Singular Countable Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Plural Verb का। जैसे—

Many a boy goes to college in time. (✓)
(S.C.N. — S.V.)

Many a boy go to college in time. (×)
(S.C.N. — P.V.)

Many an orange was rotten. (✓)
(S.C.N. — S.V.)

Many an orange were rotten. (×)
(S.C.N. — P.V.)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (23)** : Indefinite Pronouns जैसे—Everybody, some body, nobody, anybody, everyone, someone, no one, anyone का प्रयोग 'अनिश्चित व्यक्ति' के लिए होता है। इसे Singular माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए Singular Pronouns—he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग होता है, न कि they, them, their, themselves, one, one's, oneself का।

**Note** : (i) Everybody ..... anyone का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Everyone (S.S.) wants (S.V.) to qualify in the NDA examination. (✓)

Everyone want (P.V.) to qualify in the NDA examination. (×)

Everybody should protect *oneself/themselves* from loo. (×)

Everybody should protect *himself* from loo. (✓)

Everybody should love *one's/their* country. (×)

Everybody should love his country. (✓)

(ii) जबकि question tag के Sentences में everybody ..... anyone के लिए they का प्रयोग होता है न कि he का। जैसे—

Everyone cannot help you, can they ? (✓)
*question tag*

Everyone cannot help you, can he ? (×)
*question tag*

**Rule (24)** : Indefinite Pronouns जैसे—Everything, Something, Nothing, Anything का प्रयोग 'अनिश्चित वस्तु' के लिए होता है। इसे Singular माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए Singular Pronouns—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है न कि he, him, his, himself, they, them, their, themselves, one, one's, oneself का।

**Note** : (i) Everything .....anything का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Everything looks (S.V.) beautiful *itself*. (✓)

Everything looks beautiful *oneself/himself/themselves*. (×)

Everything has (S.V.) *its* own importance. (✓)

Everything has *his/their/one's* own importance. (×)

(ii) Question Tag में Everything ..... anything के लिए it का प्रयोग होता है, न कि they का। जैसे—

Everything looks beautiful, doesn't it ?
*question tag*

**Rule (25)** : Indefinite Pronoun—'One' का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसके लिए Singular Pronouns—one, one's, oneself का प्रयोग होता है न कि he, him, his, himself तथा they, them, their, themselves का। जैसे—

One was (S.V.) dishonest. (✓)

One should love *one's* country. (✓)

One should love *his/their/one/ones/once* country. (×)

**Rule (26)** : *A number of/A large number of/A great number of/Large numbers of* का प्रयोग 'बहुत' (अनिश्चित संख्या) के अर्थ में होता है। इसके बाद हमेशा Plural Noun का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसका प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A number of students (P.N.) was (S.V.) present. (×)

A number of students (P.N.) were (P.V.) present. (✓)

**Note** : लेकिन, The number of का प्रयोग 'एक निश्चित संख्या' के अर्थ में होता है। इसके बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसका प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The number of boys (P.N.) are (P.V.) forty. (×)

The number of boys (P.N.) is (S.V.) forty. (✓)

**Rule (27)** : *The amount of/A large amount of/A great deal of/A good deal of (बहुत—अनिश्चित मात्रा) + Singular Uncountable* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे— The amount of money (S.U.N.) is (S.V.) not sufficient. (✓)

The amount of money (S.U.N.) are (P.V.) not sufficient. (×)

**Rule (28)** : *Both, several, various* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There are two girls in my flat and both are (P.V.) extremely beautiful. (✓)

There are two girls in my flat and both is (S.V.) extremely beautiful. (×)

**Rule (29)** : *Both/several/various + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो, इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Both girls (P.N.) are (P.V.) beautiful. (✓)

Several students (P.N.) are (P.V.) absent. (✓)

Various boys (P.N.) are (P.V.) present. (✓)

**Rule (30)** : *Both of/several of/various of + Plural Noun/Plural Pronoun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो, इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Both of the students (P.N.) are (P.V.) intelligent. (✓)

Several of them (P.Pron.) were (P.V.) clever. (✓)

**Rule (31)** : *Few, A few, Very few; Few/A few/Very few + P.N.,* तथा *Few of/A few of/Very few of + P.N./P. Pron.* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो, इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Many were punished but a few were (P.V.) guilty. (✓)

Many were punished but a few was (S.V.) guilty. (×)

Very few girls (P.N.) are (P.V.) laborious. (✓)

Very few girls (P.N.) is (S.V.) laborious. (×)

Few of these pens (P.N.) are (P.V.) in order. (✓)

Few of these pens (P.N.) is (S.V.) in order. (×)

**Note** : (i) Few का प्रयोग 'नगण्य / अल्प / नहीं के बराबर' के अर्थ में number (संख्या) का बोध कराने के लिए plural countable noun के पहले

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



numeral Adjective के रूप में होता है। यह negative meaning रखता है। जैसे—

I have read few books. — *negative*
*(मैंने नहीं के बराबर पुस्तकें पढ़ी हैं।)*

(ii) A few का प्रयोग 'कुछ' के अर्थ में number (संख्या) का बोध कराने के लिए Plural Countable noun के पहले numeral Adjective के रूप में होता है। यह positive meaning रखता है। जैसे—

I have read a few books —*positive*
*(मैंने कुछ पुस्तकें पढ़ी हैं।)*

(iii) The few का प्रयोग 'जो कुछ संख्या में है का पूरा का पूरा (सब का सब) के अर्थ में number (संख्या) का बोध कराने के लिए plural countable noun के पहले numeral Adjective के रूप में होता है। यह positive or negative meaning रखता है। जैसे—

I have read the few books I had. —*positive/negative*
*(जो कुछ संख्या में पुस्तकें थीं को मैंने पूरा का पूरा पढ़ लिया है।)*

**Rule (32) :** *None, None of + S.U.N.* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

None has gone yet. (√)
(S.V.)

None of this money is yours. (√)
(S.U.N. S.V.)

**Note :** (i) जबकि *None of + Plural Noun/Plural Pronoun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो इसके साथ Singular or Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है, लेकिन Singular Verb का प्रयोग करें, तो बेहतर होगा। जैसे—

None of these girls are/is naughty. (√)
(P.N. P.V. S.V.)

None of us are/is honest. (√)
(P.Pron. P.V. S.V.)

(ii) None का प्रयोग 'दो से अधिक में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है। यह negative word है इसलिए इसके साथ negative word जैसे— no, not, never etc. का प्रयोग सामान्यतः नहीं होता है।

(iii) None के साथ negative word का प्रयोग होने पर, sentence का sense affirmative हो जाता है।

(iv) Any तथा Anyone का प्रयोग 'दो-से-अधिक में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

(v) Any के साथ singular or plural verb का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन singular verb के प्रयोग को बेहतर माना जाता है। जैसे—

Does any of them know ? *(प्रचलन में है)*
(S.V.)

Do any of them know ?
(P.V.)

**Rule (33) :** All का प्रयोग everything *(प्रत्येक चीज/सब कुछ)* के अर्थ में हो तो, इसे Singular माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

All is ready. *सब कुछ तैयार है।* (√)
(S.V.)

All are ready. (×)
(P.V.)

**Note :** (i) लेकिन All का प्रयोग 'व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की संख्या' का बोध कराने के लिए हो, तो इसे Plural माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

All *are* well. *सब लोग अच्छे हैं।* (√)
All *is* well. (×)

(ii) *All/All of/Not all of + Singular Uncountable Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

All the money has been spent. (√)
(S.U.N. S.V.)

All the money have been spent. (×)
(S.U.N. P.V.)

(iii) लेकिन *All/All of/Not all of + Plural Countable Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो, इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

All of the students were late. (√)
(P.N. P.V.)

All of the students was late. (×)
(P.N. S.V.)

**Rule (34) :** नीचे दिये गए Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें—

| Words | + Nouns / Pronouns | Verbs |
|---|---|---|
| 1. No | + S. U. N. | Singular Verb |
| 2. No | + S. C. N. | Singular Verb |
| 3. No | + P. C. N. | Plural Verb |
| 4. Little / A little / The little | + S. U. Noun | Singular Verb |
| 5. Little of / A little of / The little of | + S. U. N. | Singular Verb |
| 6. Little of / A little of / The little of | +It / this / that / everything | Singular Verb |
| 7. Much / Not much | + S. U. N. | Singular Verb |
| 8. Much of / Not Much of | + S. U. N. | Singular Verb |
| 9. One third of / Two thirds of / Three fourths of / The rest of / A quarter of / Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty percent of / Thirty Percent of | + S. U. N. | Singular Verb |
| 10. One third of / Two thirds of / Three fourths of / The rest of / A quarter of / Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty percent of / Thirty Percent of | + P. C. N. | Plural Verb |
| 11. Most / Most of / Some / Some of / Half / Half of / Enough / Enough of / Not Enough of / Plenty of / A lot of / Lots of | + S. U. N. | Singular Verb |
| 12. Most / Most of / Some / Some of / Half / Half of / Enough / Enough of / Not Enough of / Plenty of / A lot of / Lots of | + P. C. N. | Plural Verb |
| 13. The percentage of | +S.U.N. / P.C.N. | Singular Verb |
| 14. More than one | + S.C.N. | Singular Verb |
| 15. More than two / three ... etc | + P.C.N. | Plural Verb |
| 16. More | + P.C.N.+ than one | Plural Verb |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 17. The + Adjectives become | Plural Noun | Plural Verb |
| 18. One or two | + P. C. N. | Plural Verb |
| 19. The majority / A majority / A minority + of | + P. C. N. | Plural Verb |
| 20. Noun + preposition | + Same Noun | Singular Verb |
| 21. Nothing but/Everything but | + S.U.N./P.C.N. | Singular Verb |
| 22. One of + the | + Plural N./ P. Pron. | Singular Verb |

## Examples

1. No work has been done. (✓)
   S.U.N. S.V.
   No work have been done. (×)
   S.U.N. P.V.
2. No pen was available. (✓)
   S.C.N. S.V.
   No pen were available. (×)
   S.C.N. P.V.
3. No pens were available. (✓)
   P.C.N. P.V.
   No pens was available. (×)
   P.C.N. S.V.
4. A little work has been done. (✓)
   S.U.N. S.V.
   A little work have been done. (×)
   S.U.N. P.V.
5. A little of the ghee has been sold. (✓)
   S.U.N. S.V.
   A little of the ghee have been sold. (×)
   S.U.N. P.V.
6. A little of it was described. (✓)
   S.V.
   A little of it were described. (×)
   P.V.
7. Much milk has been sold. (✓)
   S.U.N. S.V.
   Much milk have been sold. (×)
   S.U.N. P.V.
8. Not much of the money has been spent. (✓)
   S.U.N. S.V.
   Not much of the money have been spent. (×)
   S.U.N. P.V.
9. One third of the milk is yet to be sold. (✓)
   S.U.N. S.V.
   One third of the milk are yet to be sold. (×)
   S.U.N. P.V.
   Ten percent of the tea is useless. (✓)
   S.U.N. S.V.
   Ten percent of the tea are useless. (×)
   S.U.N. P.V.
10. Three fourths of the books are ready. (✓)
    P.C.N. P.V.
    Three fourth of the books is ready. (×)
    P.C.N. S.V.
    Forty percent of the students have passed. (✓)
    P.C.N. P.V.
    Forty percent of the students has passed. (×)
    P.C.N. S.V.
11. Some coffee is available here. (✓)
    S.U.N. S.V.
    Some coffee are available here. (×)
    S.U.N. P.V.
    Half of the land is irrigated. (✓)
    S.U.N. S.V.
    Half of the land are irrigated. (×)
    S.U.N. P.V.
12. Half of the mangoes were rotten. (✓)
    P.C.N. P.V.
    Half of the mangoes was rotten. (×)
    P.C.N. S.V.
    लेकिन Half of the mango was rotten. (✓)

यहाँ Mango का प्रयोग Singular Uncountable Noun के रूप में हुआ है, अर्थात् Mango ऐसा Singular Countable Noun है, जिसका quantity संभव है। अतः इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होगा।

**Note :** One third of, Half of ..... के बाद Singular Countable Noun का प्रयोग हो, तथा इससे भाग का बोध हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

One third of the wall has been painted. (✓)
S.C.N. S.V.
One third of the wall have been painted. (×)
S.C.N. P.V.

13. The percentage of success was very low. (✓)
    S.U.N. S.V.
    The percentage of success were very low. (×)
    S.U.N. P.V.
    The percentage of expert teachers is very small. (✓)
    P.C.N. S.V.
    The percentage of expert teachers are very small. (×)
    P.C.N. P.V.
14. More than one girl was absent. (✓)
    S.C.N. S.V.
    More than one girl were absent. (×)
    S.C.N. P.V.
15. More than two boys were absent. (✓)
    P.C.N. P.V.
    More than two boys was present. (×)
    P.C.N. S.V.
16. More pens than one were bought. (✓)
    P.C.N. P.V.
    More pens than one was bought. (×)
    P.C.N. S.V.
17. The rich are lazy. (✓)
    P.N. P.V.
    The rich is lazy. (×)
    P.N. S.V.
    The poor are laborious. (✓)
    P.N. P.V.
    The poor is laborious. (×)
    P.N. S.V.

**Note :** The rich का अर्थ अमीर लोग तथा The poor का अर्थ गरीब लोग होता है।

18. One or two criminals were sent to jail. (✓)
    P.C.N. P.V.
    One or two criminals was sent to jail. (×)
    P.C.N. S.V.
19. The majority of people are traitors. (✓)
    P.C.N. P.V.
    The majority of people is traitors. (×)
    P.C.N. S.V.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



20. Woman after woman has come to see my wife. (✓)
S.N. S.N. S.V.

Woman after woman have come to see my wife. (×)
S.N. S.N. P.V.

21. Nothing but tree was there. (✓)
S.C.N. S.V.

Nothing but trees was there. (✓)
P.C.N. S.V.

Nothing but sand was there. (✓)
S.U.N. S.V.

Everything but pens was available there. (✓)
P.C.N. S.V.

22. One of the teachers was laborious. (✓)
P.C.N. S.V.

One of the teachers were laborious. (×)
P.C.N. P.V.

One of them was a famous singer. (✓)
P. pron. S.V.

One of them were a famous singer. (×)
P. Pron. P.V.

**Rule (35) :** Little, a little, the little, much का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Little is known about this man. (✓)
S.V.

Much has been done. (✓)
S.V.

**Note :** (i) Little का प्रयोग 'नगण्य / अल्प / नहीं के बराबर' के अर्थ में Quantity (मात्रा) का बोध कराने के लिए singular uncountable noun के पहले Quantitative Adjective के रूप में होता है। यह negative meaning रखता है। जैसे—

I have little money — *negative.*
*(मेरे पास नहीं के बराबर धन है।)*

(ii) a little का प्रयोग 'कुछ / थोड़ा' के अर्थ में Quantity (मात्रा) का बोध कराने के लिए singular uncountable noun के पहले Quantitative Adjective के रूप में होता है। यह positive meaning रखता है। जैसे—

I have a little money.
*(मेरे पास थोड़ा धन है।)*

(iii) The little का प्रयोग 'जो कुछ थोड़ा है का पूरा का पूरा (सबका सब) के अर्थ में Quantity (मात्रा) का बोध कराने के लिए singular uncountable noun के पहले Quantitative Adjective के रूप में होता है। यह positive or negative meaning रखता है। जैसे—

I have spent the little money I had.
*(मेरे पास जो कुछ थोड़ा धन था का पूरा का पूरा मैंने खर्च कर लिया है।)*

(iv) Much का प्रयोग 'बहुत' के अर्थ में Quantity (मात्रा) का बोध कराने के लिए singular uncountable noun के पहले Quantitative Adjective के रूप में होता है।

**Rule (36) :** There का प्रयोग Introductory Subject के रूप में होता है, इसके साथ Verb का प्रयोग इसके बाद प्रयुक्त Noun or Pronoun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

There is a pen on the table. (✓)
S.V. S.N.

There are five pens on the table. (✓)
P.V. P.N.

There is nothing for me. (✓)
S.V. S.Pron.

**Note :** (i) There के बाद प्रयुक्त Plural Noun से certain units (जैसे—certain amount, certain distance, certain weight, certain period, certain height) का बोध हो, तो there के साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is only another fifty kilometers to go. (✓)
S.V.

There are only another fifty kilometers to go. (×)
P.V.

There is ten rupees to pay. (✓)
S.V.

There are ten rupees to pay. (×)
P.V.

(ii) There के बाद pair words (युग्म शब्दों) का प्रयोग हो तथा इससे एक ही वस्तु या भाव का बोध हो, तो there के साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is rice and curry for dinner. (✓)
S.V.

There are rice and curry for dinner. (×)
P.V.

There is bread and butter for breakfast. (✓)
S.V.

There are bread and butter for breakfast. (×)
P.V.

**Rule (37) :** It का प्रयोग Introductory Subject के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ हमेशा Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है, न कि इसके बाद प्रयुक्त Noun or Pronoun के Number और Person के मुताबिक। जैसे—

It is I who am teaching you. (✓)
It am I who am teaching you. (×)
It is we who are helping you. (✓)
It are we who are helping you. (×)

**Note :** ऊपर दिये गए उदाहरण में who का प्रयोग Relative Pronoun के रूप में हुआ है। अतः who के बाद Verb का प्रयोग who के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun or Pronoun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक होता है।

**Rule (38) :** Noun in apposition के case में first Noun or Pronoun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

**Noun in apposition :** जब कोई Noun और Pronoun किसी Noun or Noun Phrase के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उस Noun or noun phrase के Position को explain करता है, तो वह Noun in apposition कहलाता है। जैसे—

Sudama, the friend of Krishna, was poor. (✓)
S.N. S.V.

You, my student, are intelligent. (✓)
First Pron. P.V.

You, my student is intelligent. (×)
S.V.

Usha, my younger sister, was very clever. (✓)
Noun S.V.

Usha, my younger sister, were very clever. (×)
P.V.

I, Mr. Thakur, am not dishonest. (✓)
S.V.

I, Mr. Thakur, is not dishonest. (×)
S.V.

**Rule (39) :** यदि Single Infinitive, Single Gerund तथा Single Clause का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। Single का अर्थ एक होता है।

याद रखें : Infinitive का अर्थ To + V¹
Gerund का अर्थ M.V¹ + ing
तथा clause का अर्थ S + V + O होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



जैसे— To swim (Inf.) is (S.V.) a good exercise. (✓)

Swimming (Gerund) is (S.V.) a good exercise. (✓)

Where she goes (Clause) is (S.V.) not known to me. (✓)

**Note :** लेकिन यदि double Infinitives, double Gerunds तथा Double clauses 'and' से जुड़कर Sentence के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों, तो इनके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

To run and to swim (double Inf.) are (P.V.) good exercises. (✓)

Running and swimming (double Gerunds) are (P.V.) good exercises. (✓)

What we say and what we do (double Clauses) are (P.V.) clear. (✓)

**Rule (40) :** यदि two Subjects 'as well as' से जुड़कर Sentence के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों, तो 'as well as' के पहले प्रयुक्त Subject के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The publisher (S.S.), as well as the writers, has (S.V.) come. (✓)

The publisher (S.S.), as well as the writers, have (P.V.) come. (×)

The writers (P.S.), as well as the publisher, are (P.V.) excited to publish this book. (✓)

The writers (P.S.), as well as the publisher, is (S.V.) excited to publish this book. (×)

**Rule (41) :** With, together with, along with, in addition to, and not, like, unlike, including, excluding, but, besides, except, rather than, accompained by, headed by, guided by, governed by, controlled by, led by, dominated by, run by के पहले प्रयुक्त Subject के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The criminal (S.S.), alongwith his followers, was (S.V.) arrested. (✓)

The criminal (S.S.), alongwith his followers, were (P.V.) arrested. (×)

He (S.S.), and not his brothers, is (S.V.) found guilty. (✓)

He (S.S.), and not his brothers, are (P.V.) found guilty. (×)

The principal (S.S.), with all his teachers, is (S.V.) coming here. (✓)

The principal (S.S.), with all his teachers, are (P.V.) coming here. (×)

**Rule (42) :** दो Subjects 'Neither ... nor', 'Either ... or', 'Not only ... but also, or से जुड़कर Sentence के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों, तो nor, or, but, but also के बाद प्रयुक्त Subject के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Neither he (S.S.) nor I (S.S.) was (S.V.) guilty. (✓)

Neither he nor I were (P.V.) guilty. (×)

Either the father or his sons (P.S.) were (P.V.) punished. (✓)

Either the father or his sons (P.S.) was (S.V.) punished. (×)

Not only Mohan but also his brothers (P.S.) were (P.V.) present there. (✓)

Not only Mohan but also his brothers (P.S.) was (S.V.) present there. (×)

Not only D. K. but Deepsuman (S.S.) is (S.V.) also honest. (✓)

Not only D. K. but Deepsuman (S.S.) are (P.V.) also honest. (×)

You or he (S.S.) was (S.V.) punctual. (✓)

You or he (S.S.) were (P.V.) punctual. (×)

**Rule (43) :** Relative Pronouns—who, which, that के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun or Pronoun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Relative Pronouns के बाद Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The girl (S.N.) who is (S.V.) playing is my daughter. (✓)

The girls (P.N.) who are (P.V.) playing are my daughters. (✓)

It is I (S.Pron) who have (P.V.) written this letter. (✓)

It is I (S.Pron) who has (S.V.) written this letter. (×)

**Note :** (i) Relative Pronouns के पहले Noun or Pronoun का प्रयोग हो तथा Noun or Pronoun के पहले also का प्रयोग हो, तो also के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun or Pronoun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Those students (P.N.) also serve the nation (S.N.) who work (P.V.) for the welfare of the poor. (✓)

Those students (P.N.) also serve the nation (S.N.) who works (S.V.) for the welfare of the poor. (×)

They (P. Pron) also need punishment (N) who are (R. Pron P.V.) responsible for the crime. (✓)

They (P. Pron.) also need punishment (N) who is (R. Pron S.V.) responsible for the crime. (×)

(ii) *One of the + Plural Noun/Plural Pronoun + Relative Pronoun (who, which, that)* के बाद Verb का प्रयोग Relative Pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त Plural Noun / Plural Pronoun के मुताबिक Plural होता है। न कि one के मुताबिक Singular होता है। जैसे—

Binay is one of my brothers (P.N.) who (R. Pron) is (S.V.) working in Tata Press. (×)

Binay is one of my brothers (P.N.) who (R.Pron) are (P.V.) working in Tata Press. (✓)

Ajit is one of those (P.Pron) who advises (R. Pron S.V.) me not to attend the class. (×)

Ajit is one of those (P.Pron) who advise (R.Pron P.V.) me not to attend the class. (✓)

**Rule (44) :** Cardinal Adjectives (one, two, three, four, ..... etc.) के बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग हो तथा Plural Noun से certain amount, *(निश्चित रकम)* certain weight *(निश्चित वजन)*, certain period *(निश्चित अवधि)*, certain distance *(निश्चित दूरी)*, certain height *(निश्चित ऊँचाई)* का बोध हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है न कि Plural Verb का। जैसे—

Five rupees is (S.V.) a very small amount. (✓)

Five rupees are (P.V.) a very small amount. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yousufmahboob.wordpress.com



Two tons of coal is not enough for him. (√)
S.V.

Two tons of coal are not enough for him. (×)
P.V.

Six years is a long period. (√)
S.V.

Six years are a long period. (×)
P.V.

Forty kilometres is a long distance. (√)
S.V.

Forty kilometres are a long distance. (×)
P.V.

Sixty metres is not a great height. (√)
S.V.

Sixty metres are not a great height. (×)
P.V.

**Note :** लेकिन Cardinal Adjectives के बाद प्रयुक्त Plural Noun से अलग-अलग units का बोध हो या कराना हो, तो इसे Plural माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. Fifty rupees *are* to be distributed among the students. (√)
   Fifty rupees *is* to be distributed among the students. (×)
2. Six months *have* passed since he came here. (√)
   Six months *has* passed since he came here. (×)

ऊपर दिये गए Example (1) का अर्थ 'पचास-पचास रुपये बच्चों के बीच बाँटे जाने को है या जाता है', होता है। यहाँ fifty rupees का प्रयोग पचास-पचास रुपये अर्थात् कई पचास रुपये के अर्थ में हुआ है। अतः fifty rupees Plural है, इसके साथ Plural Verb–are का प्रयोग सही है।

**Rule (45) :** Arithmetic के हिसाब (sums) में Singular or Plural दोनों Verbs का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है, लेकिन भाषा में Singular Verb का प्रयोग प्रचलन में है। अतः हम पाठकों (readers) को भी Singular Verb का प्रयोग करना चाहिए, जो ज्यादा बेहतर है। जैसे—

Two and two makes four. *(प्रचलित है।)* (√)
S.V.

Two and two make four. (√)
P.V.

Five plus five is ten. *(प्रचलित है।)* (√)

Five plus five are ten. (√)

**Rule (46) :** *A/An + Singular Collective Noun + of + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

| | |
|---|---|
| A bunch of keys/A flock of sheep/A set of combs/A crowd of people/A series of events/ An army of soldiers/A class of students/A team of players/A fleet of ships/A pair of shoes/A chain of mountains/A herd of cattle/A galaxy of stars/A band of musicians | Singular Verb |

जैसे— A herd of oxen is grazing in the field. (√)
S.C.N P.N. S.V.

A herd of oxen are grazing in the field. (×)
P.V.

A team of players has come here. (√)
S.C.N P.N. S.V.

A team of players have come here. (×)
P.V.

**Rule (47) :** Furniture, advice, news, information, luggage, baggage, percentage, poetry, knowledge, dirt, dust, traffic, electricity, music, breakage, stationery, scenery, confectionery, pottery, bakery, crockery, behaviour, armour etc का प्रयोग Singular Uncountable Nouns के रूप में होता है। इसलिए इनके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The news is true. (√)
S.U.N. S.V.

The news are true. (×)
S.U.N. P.V.

All his luggage has been stolen. (√)
S.U.N. S.V.

All his luggage have been stolen. (×)
P.V.

Her knowledge of physics is rich. (√)
S.V.

Her knowledge of physics are rich. (×)
P.V.

ध्यान दें—

| with A / An | | with s / es / les | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A furniture | (×) | furnitures | (×) |
| A news | (×) | newses | (×) |
| An advice | (×) | advices | (×) |
| A luggage | (×) | luggages | (×) |
| A baggage | (×) | baggages | (×) |
| A stationery | (×) | stationeries | (×) |
| A poetry | (×) | poetries | (×) |
| A scenery | (×) | sceneries | (×) |
| A music | (×) | musics | (×) |
| A bakery | (×) | bakeries | (×) |
| A pottery | (×) | potteries | (×) |

नीचे दिये गए Nouns का प्रयोग Singular or Plural sense में होता है।

| Singular sense में | | Plural sense में | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A piece of information | (√) | pieces of information | (√) |
| A piece of informations | (×) | pieces of informations | (×) |
| An item of news | (√) | items of news | (√) |
| An item of newses | (×) | items of newses | (×) |
| A piece of work | (√) | pieces of work | (√) |
| A piece of works | (×) | pieces of works | (×) |
| A heap of rubbish | (√) | heaps of rubbish | (√) |
| A heap of rubbishes | (×) | heaps of rubbishes | (×) |
| A spec of dust | (√) | specs of dust | (√) |
| A spec of dusts | (×) | specs of dusts | (×) |
| An item of furniture | (√) | items of furniture | (√) |
| An item of furnitures | (×) | items of furnitures | (×) |
| A bit of knowledge | (√) | bits of knowledge | (√) |
| A bits of knowledges | (×) | bits of knowledges | (×) |
| A piece of luggage | (√) | pieces of luggage | (√) |
| A piece of luggages | (×) | pieces of luggages | (×) |

**Rule (48) :** कुछ ऐसे 's' ending Nouns हैं, जो देखने में Plural लगते हैं, लेकिन Singular होते हैं। इनका प्रयोग जब Sentence के Subject के रूप में होता है, तो इनके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Plural Verb का।

**(a) बीमारियों का नाम :** Measles, Mumps, Shingles etc.

**(b) खेल के नाम :** Billiards, Bowls, Darts, Draughts, Dominoes etc.

yousufmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(c) देश के नाम : The United States, The United Nations, The Athens, The Phillipines, The East Indies, The West Indies, The Wales etc.

(d) पुस्तकों के नाम : The Arabian Nights, Arms and the Man, The Rivals, Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare, Soharab and Rustam, The Lions of The east etc.

(e) विषयों के नाम : Physics, Economics, Civics, Statistics, Mathematics, Ethics, Gymnastics, Athletics, Politics, Tactics, Phonetics, Linguistics etc. जैसे—

(a) Measles is a dangerous disease. (✓)
S.V.

Measles are a dangerous disease. (×)
P.V.

(b) Billiards is not a popular game. (✓)
S.V.

Billiards are not a popular game. (×)
P.V.

(c) The United States has a big army. (✓)
S.V.

The United States have a big army. (×)
P.V.

(d) The Lions of the East is a nice book. (✓)
S.V.

The Lions of the East are a nice book. (×)
P.V.

(e) Physics is not an easy subject. (✓)
S.V.

Physics are not an easy subject. (×)
P.V.

**Note :** (i) without 's' ending देश के नाम के साथ भी Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

India *is* a big country. (✓)
India *are* a big country. (×)

(ii) यदि किसी देश के नाम का प्रयोग उस देश के खेल के टीम का बोध कराने के लिए हो, तो Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Australia *have* defeated India in the world cup. (✓)
Australia *has* defeated India in the world cup. (×)

(iii) विषयों के नाम के पहले the or Possessive Adjectives का प्रयोग होने पर, इसे Plural माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन इसका अर्थ बदल जाता है। जैसे—

His Mathematics *are* poor. (✓)
His Mathematics is poor. (×)
The physics of Mohan *are* good. (✓)
The physics of Mohan *is* good. (×)

ध्यान दें :

| | |
|---|---|
| His/The + Mathematics | *गणितीय हिसाब* |
| His/The + Physics | *भौतिकी हिसाब* |
| His/The + Economics | *आर्थिक तथ्य* |
| His/The + Statistics | *सांख्यिकीय आँकड़ा* |

**Rule (49) :** Wages का प्रयोग Bible में punishment के अर्थ में किया गया है। इस अर्थ में इसे Singular माना गया है, तथा इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग हुआ है। जैसे—

The wages of sin is death.
*पाप का दंड मृत्यु होता है।*

लेकिन आजकल भाषा में wages का प्रयोग 'charges for the labour' (पारिश्रमिक) के अर्थ में होता है। इसे Plural माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

His wages *are* very low. (✓)
His wages *is* very low. (×)

**Rule (50) :** Jury, mob, council, committee, audience, crowd, family, assembly, army, team, class, government, herd, public, crew etc. से समूह का बोध हो, तो इसे Singular Collective Noun माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

इसके लिए Singular Pronoun—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Jury was unanimous in *its* decision. (✓)
S.C.N. S.V

The Jury were unanimous in *its* decision. (×)
S.C.N. P.V.

The army has decided to disobey *its* commander. (✓)
S.C.N. S.V.

The army have decided to disobey *its* commander. (×)
S.C.N. P.V.

**Note :** A body of persons who swear to give a true decision—*Jury (अभिनिर्णायक/जूरी)*

**Note :** लेकिन जब ऊपर दिये गए Nouns से अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों या सदस्यों का बोध हो, तो इसे Plural में इस्तेमाल किया जाता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। इसके लिए Plural Pronouns—they, them, their, themselves का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Jury were divided in *their* opinions. (✓)
'जूरी के प्रत्येक सदस्य' P.V.

The Jury was divided in *their* opinions. (×)
S.V.

The committee were divided in *their* opinions. (✓)
(समिति के प्रत्येक सदस्य) P.V.

The committee was divided in *their* opinions. (×)
S.V.

**Rule (51) :** Means का अर्थ method; process (तरीका, साधन, उपाय) होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Singular or Plural दोनों में होता है तथा इसके साथ क्रमशः Singular or Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

This means of travelling is not fit for me. (✓)
S.V.

These means of travelling are not fit for me. (✓)
P.V.

**Note :** लेकिन Means का अर्थ आय का साधन/स्रोत या धन, सम्पत्ति भी होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Plural में होता है तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है न कि Singular Verb का। जैसे—

His means are very small. (✓)
P.N. P.V.
*(उसकी आमदनी बहुत कम है।)*

His means is very small. (×)
P.N. S.V.

**Rule (52) :** नीचे दिये गए Table का अध्ययन सावधानी से करें—

| Nouns | साधारण अर्थ | Uncountable | Verb |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Hair | *बाल/केश* | Singular | Singular Verb |
| 2. Glass | *शीशा* | Singular | Singular Verb |
| 3. Beauty | *खूबसूरती/सुन्दरता* | Singular | Singular Verb |
| 4. Cloth | *कपड़ा* | Singular | Singular Verb |
| 5. Force | *शक्ति/ताकत* | Singular | Singular Verb |
| 6. Marriage | *शादी, विवाह* | Singular | Singular Verb |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



1. Her hair is black. (✓)
S.U.N. S.V.

Her hairs are black. (×)
S.U.N. P.V.

लेकिन Hair का प्रयोग विशेष अर्थ में Countable Noun के रूप में होता है। इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक a, one, two, three, ..... का प्रयोग होता है, Countable Noun के रूप में इसके साथ 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। अतः इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Four hairs on her head are grey. (✓)
P.C.N. P.V.

Four hairs on her head is grey. (×)
P.C.N. S.V.

2. Glass is uncountable. (✓)
S.U.N. S.V.

Glass are uncountable. (×)
S.U.N. P.V.

लेकिन Glass का प्रयोग 'ग्लास' के अर्थ में Countable Noun के रूप में होता है, इसके पहले A का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसमें 'es' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। अर्थानुसार Singular or Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A glass is on the table. (✓)
S.C.N. S.V.

Two glasses are on the table. (✓)
P.C.N. P.V.

Glasses का विशेष अर्थ 'चश्मा' होता है। इस अर्थ में इसे हमेशा Plural माना जाता है। क्योंकि इसका दो भाग होता है। अतः इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

His glasses are new. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

His glasses is new. (×)
P.N. P.V.

3. The beauty of Veena is incomparable. (✓)
S.U.N. S.V.

The beauty of Veena are incomparable. (×)
S.U.N. P.V.

लेकिन Beauty का विशेष अर्थ 'खूबसूरत/सुन्दर/अच्छा व्यक्ति, स्त्री, वस्तु, नमूना, गुण, लक्षण' होता है। इस अर्थ में इसे countable माना जाता है, तथा 'ies' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। इसके साथ अर्थानुसार Singular or Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A beauty was waiting for you. (✓)
(एक सुन्दर स्त्री) S.C.N. S.V.

Two beauties were waiting for you. (✓)
(दो सुन्दर स्त्री) P.C.N. P.V.

4. This cloth is very attractive. (✓)
(कपड़ा) S.U.N. S.V.

लेकिन clothes का प्रयोग 'वस्त्र' के अर्थ में Plural Noun के रूप में होता है। अतः इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

His clothes are old. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

His clothes is old. (×)
P.N. S.V.

5. The force of will is above all. (✓)
S.U.N. S.V.

लेकिन forces का प्रयोग तीनों सेनाओं (जल/थल/वायु) के लिए होता है। यह Plural Countable होता है। इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Two thousand forces have been sent to Kashmir. (✓)
P.C.N. P.V.

6. Marriage is a turning point of life. (✓)
S.U.N. S.V.

लेकिन Marriage का प्रयोग 'विवाहोत्सव' के अर्थ में Countable Noun के रूप में होता है। इसमें 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है, तथा इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A marriage was arranged between Ajit and Rekha. (✓)
S.C.N. S.V.

Two marriages were arranged in my village last year. (✓)
P.C.N. P.V.

**Rule (53) :** *As/so/neither/nor* के बाद Verb का प्रयोग इसके बाद प्रयुक्त Subject के number तथा Person के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

Sweta is a singer, as is her sister.
S.V. S.S.

He wants to help you; so do I
P.V. S.S.

I do not like her, neither does he
S.V. S.S.

My father does not help me, nor does my brother.
S.V. S.S.

**Rule (54) :** *Noun + of + Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो of के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The students of this class are hard working. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

The students of this class is hard working. (×)
P.N. S.V.

**Rule(55) :** *A/one/two/three/four...+dozen/hundred/thousand ... etc + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Two dozen pencils *are* here. (✓)
Two dozen pencils *is* here. (×)
Five hundred boys *study* in St. Xavier School. (✓)
Five hundred boys *studies* in St. Xavier School. (×)

**Note :** (i) Two dozens (×) A dozens (×)
Five hundreds (×) A hundreds (×)
Six thousands (×) A thousands (×)

ऊपर दिये गए expressions/phrases गलत हैं, क्योंकि dozen, hundred, thousand ... etc. का प्रयोग Singular form में होता है। इसमें 's' सामान्यतः जोड़कर Plural नहीं बनाया जाता है।

(ii) Dozen, hundred, thousand, ..... etc. units का प्रयोग Plural form में किया जाता है, लेकिन इसका अर्थ बदल जाता है। जैसे—

Thousands of students have passed.
P.V.

Thousands of students has passed.
S.V.

Dozens of bananas have been bought.
P.V.

Dozens of bananas has been bought.
S.V.

**Rule (56) :** People, police, cattle, sheep, deer, peasantry, gentry, poultry, cavalry का प्रयोग Plural Noun के रूप में होता है। इनका प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में होने पर, इनके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The police are chasing the thieves.
P.N. P.V.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


The police is chasing the thieves. (×)
P.N. S.V.

**Note** : (i) People का अर्थ जब 'लोग' होता है, तो इसे Plural माना जाता है। इस अर्थ में 's' जोड़कर Plural नहीं बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

The people of Bihar are laborious. (✓)
The *peoples* of Bihar are laborious. (×)
The people of Bihar *is* laborious. (×)

(ii) लेकिन people का प्रयोग जब राष्ट्र व जाति के अर्थ में होता है तो इसे Countable Noun माना जाता है तथा 's' जोड़कर Plural भी बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Many different *peoples* live in Bihar. (✓)
Many different *people* live in Bihar. (×)

(iii) Police का polices नहीं होता है। इसका Singular form—police man होता है।

(iv) Poultry का अर्थ जब पालतू मुर्गियाँ/वस्तुत्र होता है, तो इसे Plural माना जाता है। जैसे—

The poultry are sold here. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

The poultry is sold here. (×)
S.V.

लेकिन भाषा में poultry का प्रयोग विशेष रूप से 'भोजन' के अर्थ में होता है। इसे Singular Uncountable Noun माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Poultry *is* cheap in Patna. (✓)
Poultry *are* cheap in Patna. (×)

**Rule (57)** : Scissors, Trousers, Pyjamas, Tongs, Pants, Spectacles, Glasses ..... etc. का प्रयोग Plural Noun के रूप में होता है, क्योंकि इसके दो भाग होते हैं। अतः इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

His spectacles have been framed. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

His spectacles has been framed. (×)
P.N. S.V.

लेकिन A pair of का प्रयोग उपरोक्त P.N. के पहले हो तो इसे Singular माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A pair of trousers *are* new. (×)
A pair of trousers *is* new. (✓)

**Rule (58)** : The following, The undersigned,. The former, The latter का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके बाद या पहले (जिसके लिए इन शब्दों का प्रयोग हुआ है) प्रयुक्त Noun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. The following is the weather report. (✓)
S.V. S.N.

2. The following are the names of the students. (✓)
P.V. P.N.

3. Bhavna and Rima are beautiful girls, but the former is more beautiful than the latter. (✓)
S.S S.V.

ऊपर दिये गये Example (1) में the following का प्रयोग weather report के लिए हुआ है। Weather report Singular है, इसलिए the following के साथ Singular Verb— is का प्रयोग हुआ है।

Example (2) में The following का प्रयोग students के लिए हुआ है। Students Plural है, इसलिए The following के साथ Plural veb—'are' का प्रयोग हुआ है।

Example (3) The former का प्रयोग Bhavna के लिए हुआ है। Bhavna Singular है, इसलिए The former के साथ Singular Verb—is का प्रयोग हुआ है।

**Note** : Former, latter, following तथा undersigned में 's' जोड़कर plural नहीं बनाया जाता है।

**Rule (59)** : जिस Noun के लिए as follows, as regards, as concerns का प्रयोग होता है। उसी Noun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Her details are as follows. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

Her details *is* as follows. (×)
The old rates are as follows. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

The old rates *is* as follows. (×)

**ध्यान दें** : As follow, As regard or as concern गलत है।

**Rule (60)** : *Noun + apostrophe [ ' ]/apostrophe 's' [ 's ] + Noun or Noun + [ ' ]/[ 's ] + Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो प्रयुक्त last Noun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Ram's book is red. (✓)
S.N. S.V.

Ram's books are red. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

The boys' hostel is very attractive. (✓)
S.N. S.V.

The boys' hostel are very attractive. (×)
S.N. P.V.

Women's college is famous in Bihar. (✓)
S.N. S.V.

Women's college are famous in Bihar. (×)
S.N. P.V.

**Rule (61)** : *The/ A + Noun + of + Noun + Preposition + Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो of (first) के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The boys of all the colleges of Bihar are careless. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

The boys of all the colleges of Bihar is careless. (×)
P.N. S.V.

**Rule (62)** : *Adjective + and + Adjective + Singular Uncountable Noun* का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो, तो इससे two different things का बोध होता है तथा इसे Plural माना जाता है। इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Social and Political freedom are necessary. (✓)
S. N. P.V.

Social and Political freedom is necessary. (×)
S.V.

ऊपर दिये गए उदाहरण में 'सामाजिक' (social) और राजनीतिक (political) दो अलग-अलग स्वतंत्रता (freedom) का बोध होता है, इसलिए इसके साथ Plural Verb 'are' का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो सही है।

**Rule (63)** : 'Youth' का प्रयोग 'युवावस्था' के अर्थ में होने पर इसे Singular Uncountable Noun माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

His youth was full of pleasures. (✓)
S.U.N. S.V.

His youth were full of pleasures. (×)
S.U.N. P.V.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

लेकिन 'youth' का प्रयोग 'युवक' के अर्थ में होने पर, इसे Countable Noun माना जाता है तथा इसका प्रयोग Plural form (youths) में भी होता है। अर्थानुसार इसके साथ Singular or Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A youth (S.C.N.) was (S.V.) playing in the playground. (√)

Two youths (P.C.N.) were (P.V.) playing in the playground. (√)

**Rule (64) :** What से स्टार्ट (प्रारंभ) होने वाले Clause का प्रयोग Sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो इसके साथ Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

What I want to buy *is* a motor cycle. (√)
What I want to buy *are* a motor cycle. (×)
What he likes most *is* this book. (√)
What he likes most *are* this book. (×)

**Rule (65) :** What का प्रयोग that which or the thing which के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके साथ Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I shall not need any more bread, what I have is (S.V.) quite sufficient. (√)

I shall not need any more bread, what I have are (P.V.) quite sufficient. (×)

**Rule (66) :** What का प्रयोग those which or the things which के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He needn't get any more books, what he has are (P.V.) quite sufficient. (√)

He needn't get any more books, what he has is (S.V.) quite sufficient. (×)

**Rule (67) :** Hardly, scarcely, rarely, seldom, never से स्टार्ट होने वाले Sentences में Inversion का प्रयोग होता है, अर्थात Verb का प्रयोग Subject के पहले होता है। इन शब्दों के बाद Verb का प्रयोग इसके बाद प्रयुक्त Subject के Number तथा Person के अनुसार होता है। जैसे—

Hardly does (S.V.) he (S.S.) go to school. (√)

Hardly do (P.V.) he (S.S.) go to school. (×)

Never does (S.V.) he (S.S.) come here. (√)

Never do (P.V.) he (S.S.) come here. (×)

**Rule (68) :** यदि दो verbs not only...but also से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हो तथा not only से sentence स्टार्ट हो तो इसके साथ inversion का प्रयोग होता है अर्थात verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले होता है। Not only के बाद verb का प्रयोग इसके बाद प्रयुक्त subject के number तथा person के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

Not only does (S.V.) he (S.S.) read but he also writes. (√)

Not only do (P.V.) he (S.S.) read but he also writes. (×)

**Rule (69) :** No sooner से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में भी Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। No sooner के बाद verb का प्रयोग इसके बाद प्रयुक्त subject के number तथा person के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

No sooner does (S.V.) he (S.S.) go to the office than the telephone rings. (√)

No sooner do (P.V.) he (S.S.) go to the office than the telephone rings (×)

**Rule (70) :** Much, much more, little, less तथा much less का प्रयोग Quantity (मात्रा) को refer करने के लिए Adjective of Quantity के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तो इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Much more (S.S.) remains (S.V.) to be done. (√)

Much more (P.S.) remain (P.V.) to be done. (×)

Little (S.S.) has been (S.V.) said and much less (S.S.) has been (S.V.) done. (√)

Little (S.S.) have been (P.V.) said and much less (S.S.) have been (P.V.) done (×)

**Rule (71) :** As का प्रयोग 'जितने' के अर्थ में हो तो इसके बाद subject— 'they' छिपा हुआ रहता है अतः As के साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There were not so many books as were (P.V.) needed. (√)

There were not so many books as was (S.V.) needed. (×)

**Rule (72) :** As का प्रयोग 'जैसा कि' के अर्थ में हो तो इसके बाद subject— 'it' छिपा हुआ रहता है। अतः As के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There were not so many books as was (S.V.) expected. (√)

There were not so many books as were (P.V.) expected. (×)

**Note :** As का प्रयोग 'और यह' (and this) के अर्थ में हो और इसके पहले comma ( , ) का प्रयोग हो तथा इसका प्रयोग पूरे वाक्य के लिए हो तो As के बाद हमेशा singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Speeches were made by a number of leaders, as was (S.V.) expected. (√)

Speeches were made by a number of leaders, as were (P.V.) expected. (×)

**Rule (73) :** Than के बाद जब subject—they or those छिपा हुआ रहता है तो इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There were more pens than were (P.V.) needed. (√)

There were more pens than was (S.V.) needed. (×)

**Rule (74) :** Than के बाद जब subject—'it' छिपा हुआ रहता है तो इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There were more deaths than was (S.V.) reported. (√)

There were more deaths than were (P.V.) reported. (×)

**Rule (75) :** यदि दो या दो से अधिक singular nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा first singular noun या प्रत्येक singular noun के पहले 'No' का प्रयोग हो तो इसे singular माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

No boy and no girl was (S.V.) present there. (√)

No boy and no girl were (P.V.) present there. (×)

**Rule (76) :** Pain का प्रयोग singular uncountable noun के रूप में 'शारीरिक कष्ट; दर्द; क्लेश' (bodily suffering; ache; mental distress) के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Your pain (S.S.) is (S.V.) unbearable. (√)

Your pain (S.S.) are (P.V.) unbearable. (×)

जबकि pains (पेन्ज) का प्रयोग plural noun के रूप में तकलीफ; प्रयत्न, कोशिश (trouble; effort) के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसके साथ singular or plural दोनों verbs का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Great pains have been (P.V.) taken. (√)

Much pains has been (S.V.) taken. (√)

**Rule (77)** : *One of + Possessive Adjectives + Plural countable noun + Relative pronoun* 'that' के पहले The only का प्रयोग हो तो Relative pronoun— 'that' के Antecedent का कार्य — 'one' करता है, जो singular है। अतः Relative pronoun— 'that' के बाद verb का प्रयोग singular होता है। जैसे—

1. This is the only one of his novels that *is* worth reading. (√)
2. This is the only one of his novels that *are* worth reading. (×)
3. This is the only one of his paintings that *is* remarkable. (√)
4. This is the only one of his paintings that *are* remarkable. (×)

**Note** : (i) उपरोक्त examples (1) तथा (3) में Relative Pronoun that के Antecedent का कार्य—one कर रहा है। अतः singular verb–Is का प्रयोग उचित है।

(ii) उपरोक्त example (1) का अर्थ of his novels this is the only one that is worthreading होता है।

**Rule (78)** : A Variety of + plural countable noun का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तो इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A variety of pleasing objects (P.N.) charm (P.V.) the eyes. (√)

A variety of pleasing objects (P.N.) charms (S.V.) the eyes. (×)

**Rule (79)** : *The Variety of + plural countable noun* का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तो इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The variety of items at the dinner was (S.V.) relished by all. (√)

The variety of items at the dinner were (P.V.) relished by all. (×)

**Note** : relish (V) → to enjoy; to get pleasure out of, (स्वाद लेना; आनंद प्राप्त करना) जैसे—

I would relish a sweet-dish now.
I would relish a journey by train.

**Rule (80)** : कुछ ऐसे places *(स्थान)* के नाम हैं जो देखने में plural लगते हैं लेकिन singular होते हैं अतः इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Hebrides (S.N.) lies (S.V.) to the north-west of England. (√)

The Hebrides (S.N.) lie (P.V.) to the north-west of England. (×)

**Rule (81)** : politics का प्रयोग political activities taken as a whole के अर्थ में हो तो इसे singular माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The village politics these days has (S.V.) become very dirty. (√)

The village politics these days have (P.V.) become very dirty. (×)

लेकिन politics का प्रयोग political views, beliefs or activities के अर्थ में हो तथा इसके पहले the or possessive Adjectives का प्रयोग हो तो इसे plural माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. His politics (P.S.) are (P.V.) known to everybody. (√)
2. His politics (P.S.) is (S.V.) known to everybody. (×)
3. The politics (P.S.) of our country before Gandhi came were (P.V.) in a very low state. (√)
4. The politics (P.S.) of our country before Gandhi came was (S.V.) in a very low state. (×)

उपरोक्त Examples (1) तथा (3) में क्रमशः His politics, the politics का अर्थ क्रमशः His political views or activities; political activities है अतः इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

**Rule (82)** : यदि lots के बाद Infinitive (to + $V^1$) का प्रयोग हो तो lots को singular माना जाता है। क्योंकि एक Infinitive singular होता है। अतः इस case में singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is (S.V.) lots to say. (Inf.) (√)

There are (S.V.) lots to say. (Inf.) (×)

There is (S.V.) still lots to do. (Inf.) (√)

There are (P.V.) still lots to do. (Inf.) (×)

## Practice Set

**Q.1.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Verbs choosing from the brackets.*

1. One of the pupils in our class ..... a car. *(own/owns)*
2. The Lions of the East ..... an interesting book. *(is/are)*
3. Apple pie and custard ..... my favourite dish. *(is/are)*
4. Ten kilometres ..... a long way to walk. *(is/are)*
5. Mohan as well as Sohan ..... guilty. *(was/were)*
6. Neither John nor you ..... present. *(was/ were)*
7. Either Shobha or I ..... to blame. *(is/am)*
8. Neither of them ..... wrong. *(was/were)*
9. The council ..... chosen its president. *(has/have)*
10. Two and two ..... four. *(make/makes)*
11. The cost of all these articles ..... risen. *(has/have)*
12. All the students in our college ..... English. *(learn /learns)*
13. The quality of the mangoes ..... not good. *(was/ were)*
14. Each of these minerals ..... found in India. *(is/are)*
15. Iron as well as coal ..... found in India. *(is/are)*
16. No news ..... good news. *(is/are)*
17. The great poet and dramatist ..... dead. *(is/are)*
18. The orator and statesman ..... dead. *(is/ are)*
19. Neither of the films ..... good. *(was/ were)*
20. The king with all his ministers.....present there. *(was/were)*
21. Every man, woman and child in the village ..... wounded. *(was/ were)*
22. Curry and rice ..... his favourite food. *(is/are)*
23. He is one of the greatest leaders that ... ever lived. *(has/have)*
24. A number of students ..... caught copying. *(was/were)*
25. The boy and the girl ..... to the same college. *(go/goes)*
26. The orator and the statesman ..... arrived. *(has/have)*
27. Many of the students .... failed in the examination. *(has/have)*
28. Most of the students ..... their time. *(waste/wastes)*
29. A large number of workers ..... struck work. *(has/have)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



30. He and his friend ..... arrived. (has/have)
31. The Arabian Nights ..... still a great favourite. (is/are)
32. Mathematics ..... an important subject. (is/are)
33. Politics ..... his chief interest. (was/were)
34. The committee ..... chosen their chairman. (has/have)
35. A hundred kilometres ..... a good distance. (is/are)
36. Veena, and not you, ..... won the prize. (has/have)
37. Mr. Thakur as well as his wife and his brother-in-law, ..... hot curry. (like/ likes)
38. A thousand rupees ..... a big sum. (is/are)
39. Each of her rooms ..... to let. (is/are)
40. Each day and each hour ..... its duty. (bring/brings)
41. The horse and carriage ..... at the door. (is/are)
42. My friend and benefactor ..... come to see me. (has/have)
43. The house, with its contents, ..... insured against fire. (was/were)
44. Every body ..... happy at the picnic. (was/were)
45. ..... either of the twins present ? (is/are)
46. The Jury ..... divided in their opinions. (was/were)
47. This is the only one of his stories that ....worth reading. (is/are)
48. Two third of the town ..... in ruins. (is/are)
49. The long and the short of the matter ..... this. (is/are)
50. A list of weak boys in our class ..... been prepared. (has/have)
51. Three parts of the business ..... in my hands. (is/are)
52. Every inch of the field ..... searched. (was/were)
53. None of the thieves ..... been arrested. (has/have)
54. Anybody ..... welcomed. (is/are)
55. Rain ..... from the sky. (fall/falls)
56. The sun ..... in the west. (set/sets)
57. There ..... an egg on the plate. (is/are)
58. Binay and Mukesh ..... clever boys. (is/are)
59. Manoj, the tallest of all the students in our class, ..... clever. (is/are)
60. ..... these children's mother ill ? (is/are)
61. A year ..... twelve months. (has/have)
62. The little girl ..... walking down the street carrying her doll. (is/are)
63. You, he and I ..... friends. (am/are)
64. The wages of sin ..... death. (is/are)
65. The police ..... caught the robber. (has/have)
66. All the furniture ..... costly. (is/are)
67. A band of musicians ..... to arrive. (is/are)
68. A lot of money ..... been spent. (has/have)
69. Ship after ship ..... sailing by. (was/were)
70. The colour of these flowers ..... charming. (is/are)
71. The water of these rivers ..... not fresh. (is/are)
72. A team of players ..... arrived. (has/have)
73. Half of the mango ..... rotten. (was/were)
74. Half of the mangoes ..... rotten. (was/were)
75. Your trousers ..... new. (is/are)
76. A pair of trousers ..... been sewed. (has/have)
77. The people of my village ..... laborious. (is/are)
78. A number of students ..... come. (has/have)
79. The number of students ..... fifty. (is/are)
80. Forty miles ..... a long distance. (is/are)
81. The percentage of success ..... very high. (is/are)
82. Measles ..... a dangerous disease. (is/are)
83. The poor ..... laborious. (is/are)
84. Many a criminal ..... been arrested. (has/have)
85. None of the students ..... come. (has/have)
86. A few teachers ..... laborious. (is/are)
87. One of them ..... a robber. (was/were)
88. Each and every pen ..... red. (was/were)
89. Each girl ..... an instrument box. (has/have)
90. Everyone of us ..... a traitor. (is/are)
91. Nothing but trees ..... seen. (was/were)
92. Not only the principal but also the teachers ..... responsible. (is/are)
93. A criminal with all his followers ..... arrested. (was/were)
94. A herd of cows ..... grazing in the field. (is/are)
95. More than one pen ..... available there. (was/were)
96. More girls than one ..... present in the class. (has/have)
97. Every boy and every girl ..... a pen. (was/were)
98. The Jury ... divided in its opinion. (is/are)
99. Truth and honesty ..... the best policy. (is/are)
100. Six times two ..... twelve. (is/are)
101. Milk and honey ..... costly things. (has/have)
102. The poet and the philosopher ..... said so. (is/are)
103. Rice and curry ..... my favourite dish. (is/are)
104. Neither you nor he ..... honest. (am/is)
105. Either he or I ..... guilty. (is/are)
106. A black and red cow ..... grazing in the field. (is/are)
107. ..... he or they to blame ? (is/are)
108. There ..... a man and a woman there. (is/are)
109. The girl who is watching T.V. ..... my sister. (is/are)
110. It ..... we who are to blame. (was/were)
111. I wish I ..... a rich man. (need/needs)
112. He does not ..... to do it. (wait/waits)
113. Time and tide ..... for no man. (need/needs)
114. She ..... not do this. (is/are)
115. All that glitters ..... not gold. (has/have)
116. The Himalayas ..... many peaks. (was/were)
117. I wish he ..... the Chief Minister of Bihar. (has/have)
118. It is I who ..... done this. (do/does)
119. Ajay is one of those persons who ..... not accept bribes. (has/have)
120. We should not ..... beaten our brother. (win/wins)
121. Slow and steady ..... the race. (is/are)
122. The Ganges ..... a holy river. (is/are)
123. No boy and no girl ..... absent. (is/are)
124. The sheep ..... grazing in the field. (has/have)
125. He and not I, ..... done this. (dare/dares)
126. He ..... to go there. (need/needs)
127. He ..... to go there. (is/are)
128. The students who are playing there.....my disciples. (am/are)
129. You and I ..... neighbours. (is/are)
130. Economics ..... not an easy subject. (is/are)
131. The following ..... the list of the books. (has/have)
132. The wheels each ..... twelve spokes. (has/have)
133. The Daffodils ..... been written by William Words Worth. (has/have)
134. Ten kilogrammes of sugar ..... enough for me. (is/are)
135. Mukul, with his brother, ..... shot dead. (was/were)
136. Some people ..... travelling. (like/likes)
137. A parcel of books ..... been received. (has/have)
138. The rest of the book ..... not finished. (is/are)
139. The students of Bihar ..... laborious. (is/are)
140. The Magistrate and Collector ..... present in the meeting. (was/were)
141. Oil and water ..... not mix. (do/does)
142. Hammer and sickle ..... there. (was/were)
143. The United States ..... a big army. (has/have)
144. Gulliver's Travels ..... a famous satire. (is/are)
145. Both of them ..... good. (was/were)
146. All ..... mortal. (is/are)
147. Mr. and Mrs. Thakur ..... in the house. (is/are)
148. What ..... the latest news ? (is/are)
149. Half of the milk ..... been spoiled. (has/have)
150. Tendulkar is one of the players who ..... been selected for the test. (has/have)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



151. A bird ..... in the sky. *(fly/flies)*
152. His secretary and his typist.....on leave today. *(is/are)*
153. His father and mother ..... there. *(was/were)*
154. ..... Mr. Mishra or Mr. Pandey in the class ? *(is/are)*
155. Age and experience...wisdom to man. *(bring/brings)*
156. A large number of students ..... applied for the Job. *(has/have)*
157. Physics ..... his poorest subject. *(is/are)*
158. The majority of them ..... Sikhs. *(was/were)*
159. A great number of people ..... come here. *(has/have)*
160. Fifty kilos ..... too heavy for me to carry. *(is/are)*
161. Pankaj, like his father, ..... very tall. *(is/are)*
162. What I now need ..... mental peace. *(is/are)*
163. India ..... produced great cricketers. *(has/have)*
164. Two hundred rupees ..... distributed. *(was/were)*
165. A pair of shoes ..... in this room. *(is/are)*
166. Malaria ..... a tropical disease. *(is/are)*
167. The moon ..... a satellite of the earth. *(is/are)*
168. Some furniture ..... to be bought. *(is/are)*
169. Five from ten ..... five. *(is/are)*
170. A bunch of keys ..... lying on the table. *(is/are)*
171. Day after day ..... passed. *(has/have)*
172. Reading and writing ..... two different skills. *(is/are)*
173. The majority of tourists ..... tired. *(was/were)*
174. The chinese ..... industrious. *(is/are)*
175. One or two pens ..... old. *(is/are)*
176. Ten percent of the chalk ..... useful. *(was/were)*
177. None of those girls ..... attractive. *(was/were)*
178. Heaven ..... us !. *(help/helps)*
179. God ..... the king !. *(save/saves)*
180. The crown and glory of life ..... character. *(is/are)*
181. Riches ..... in hell. *(grow/grows)*
182. Arms and the Man ..... a nice book. *(is/are)*
183. The gentry ..... a luxurious life. *(lead/leads)*
184. What I need ..... a colour T.V. *(is/are)*
185. The greens ..... not fresh. *(is/are)*
186. Rekha wants to help you; so ..... Veena. *(do/does)*
187. Manisha does not like me, neither ..... you. *(do/does)*
188. My students were present there, so ..... I. *(was/were)*
189. Sushma is a singer, as ..... her sister. *(is/are)*
190. Rajani is intelligent, as ..... her brother. *(is/are)*
191. The teeth of the girl ..... white. *(is/are)*
192. He ordered as if he ..... my boss. *(was/were)*
193. The number of books ..... increasing. *(is/are)*
194. You and I ..... good friends. *(is/are)*
195. The blind ..... helpless. *(is/are)*
196. Her wages ..... Rs. 5000/- a month. *(is/are)*
197. Fifty percent of the amount..... been paid. *(has/have)*
198. A lot of pens ..... been purchased. *(has/have)*
199. Village after village ..... destroyed. *(was/were)*
200. WordsWorth's poetry ..... immortal. *(is/are)*
201. If I ..... rich, I would buy a car. *(was/were)*

Q.2. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Twenty miles (1)/ are (2)/ a long way (3)/ to walk (4)/ No error (5)
2. Neither my wife (1)/ nor my brother-in-law (2)/ were able to help me (3)/ in my work (4)/ No error (5)
3. If my father (1)/ approve (2)/ I will go (3)/ to Mumbai (4)/ No error (5)
4. Neither India nor Pakistan (1)/ have yet acquired (2)/ the capability to produce (3) nuclear weapons (4)/ No error (5)
5. You and I (1)/ has known (2)/ each other (3)/ for the last six years (4)/ No error (5)
6. My father has not heard (1)/ from my younger brother (2)/ who are abroad (3)/for over a month (4)/No error (5)
7. He have been working (1)/ in a bank (2)/ in New Delhi (3)/ for the past several months (4)/ No error (5)
8. The Arabian Nights (1)/ have (2)/ lots of interesting stories (3)/ for young readers (4)/ No error (5)
9. Every man, woman and child (1)/ are now aware of (2)/the terrible consequence (3)/ of the habit of smoking (4)/ No error (5)
10. 'Meatless Days' (1)/ have been (2)/ made (3)/ into a film (4)/ No error (5)
11. Swift's Gulliver's Travels (1)/ have been (2)/ read by me (3)/ several times (4)/ No error (5)
12. Neither he (1)/ nor his father (2)/ is interested (3)/ in joining the party (4)/ No error (5)
13. Children (1)/ likes to eat (2)/ chocolates (3)/ rather than sweets (4)/ No error (5)
14. Unless you (1)/ works hard, (2)/ you cannot (3)/ succeed (4)/ No error (5)
15. The climate (1)/ of this place (2)/ do not (3)/ suit me (4)/ No error (5)
16. The director, along with (1)/ the staff members (2)/ were present for (3)/ the annual day celebration (4)/ No error (5)
17. If you follows (1)/ my instructions (2)/ you will get (3)/ a suitable reward for that (4)/ No error (5)
18. Raman was (1)/ one of those great sons of India (2)/ who has earned everlasting fame (3)/ for scientific researches (4)/ No error (5)
19. If I was (1)/ in her shoes (2)/ I would have died (3)/ with shame (4)/ No error (5)
20. My father-in-law (1)/ who live in Mumbai (2)/ has come (3)/ to stay with us (4)/ No error (5)
21. Each girl (1)/ was given (2)/ a bunch of flowers (3)/ which pleased them very much (4)/ No error (5)
22. Binay was happy (1)/ that Mukesh and his sister was going (2)/ on the same train (3)/ next day (4)/ No error (5)
23. The disclosure of the synopsis of (1)/ the Thakkar Commission Report (2)/ on the assassination of Mrs. Gandhi (3)/ have raised several vital questions (4)/ No error (5)
24. My sister-in-law, (1)/ with her husband (2)/ now in Mumbai, (3)/ were present at the function (4)/ No error (5)
25. The number of people (1)/ applying were so large (2)/ that the college had to (3)/ stop issuing application forms (4)/ No error(5)

Q. 3. *Correct the following sentences :*

1. The poet and critic have been honoured.
2. Bread and butter are essential for one's life.
3. Either.Dilip or Sunil have the key to this sum.
4. The behaviour of the students were not proper.
5. The guru as well as his disciples are committed to celibacy.
6. Twenty four hours are not sufficient time to judge one's character.
7. Thirty kilometers are a big distance.
8. Three scores make sixty.
9. Either of the boys are eligible for selection.
10. The captain, with his team members, were given a warm welcome.
11. The Himalayas lies to the north of India.
12. Either she or I is to go.
13. The number of girls were eighty.
14. The rich is not honest.
15. We each has a problem.
16. The Jury was divided in their opinion.
17. Little have been said about the fact.
18. It is one of the best books that has been written.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


19. His deer is running on the road.
20. The police has been asked to help them.
21. He dares not face me.
22. The cattle is grazing in the field.
23. Our shoes is new.
24. One-fourth of the apple are rotten.
25. Neither reward nor punishment are to be expected.
26. Honour and glory are his reward.
27. The rise and fall of the tide are due to lunar influence.
28. The ship, with its crew, were lost.
29. The guidance, as well as the love of a mother, were wanting.
30. Our happiness or our sorrow are largely due to our own actions.
31. Neither praise nor blame seem to affect him.
32. He is not to blame, nor is you.
33. Much pains have been taken.
34. The committee is divided on one minor point.
35. Plutarch's Lives are an interesting book.
36. One hundred paise are equal to one rupee.
37. The means employed by you are sufficient.
38. The Three Musketeers were written by Alexander Dumas.
39. 'Early to bed and early to rise, make a man healthy, wealthy and wise.'
40. He is one of those men who knows everything.
41. Neither John nor James were present in the school.
42. It is one of the best pictures that has ever been painted.
43. Game after game were played.
44. None but the brave deserves the fair.
45. Lamb's Tales are an interesting book.
46. Patience as well as perseverance are necessary for success.
47. A number of prisoners has escaped from the jail.
48. A series of accidents have taken place.
49. The clergy was unanimous in their opinion.
50. Their informations are based on facts.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. owns | 2. is | 3. is | 4. is | 5. was |
| 6. were | 7. am | 8. was | 9. has | 10. makes |
| 11. has | 12. learn | 13. was | 14. is | 15. is |
| 16. is | 17. is | 18. is | 19. was | 20. was |
| 21. was | 22. is | 23. have | 24. were | 25. go |
| 26. have | 27. have | 28. waste | 29. have | 30. have |
| 31. is | 32. is | 33. was | 34. have | 35. is |
| 36. has | 37. likes | 38. is | 39. is | 40. brings |
| 41. is | 42. has | 43. was | 44. was | 45. is |
| 46. were | 47. is | 48. is | 49. is | 50. has |
| 51. is | 52. was | 53. has or have (कोई एक) | | 54. is |
| 55. falls | 56. sets | 57. is | 58. are | 59. is |
| 60. is | 61. has | 62. is | 63. are | 64. is |
| 65. have | 66. is | 67. is | 68. has | 69. was |
| 70. is | 71. is | 72. has | 73. was | 74. were |
| 75. are | 76. has | 77. are | 78. have | 79. is |
| 80. is | 81. is | 82. is | 83. are | 84. has |
| 85. has/have (कोई एक) | | 86. are | 87. was | 88. was |
| 89. has | 90. is | 91. was | 92. are | 93. was |
| 94. is | 95. was | 96. were | 97. has | 98. was |
| 99. is | 100. is | 101. are | 102. have | 103. is |
| 104. is | 105. am | 106. is | 107. are | 108. are |
| 109. is | 110. is | 111. were | 112. need | 113. wait |
| 114. need | 115. is | 116. have | 117. were | 118. have |
| 119. do | 120. have | 121. wins | 122. is | 123. is |
| 124. are | 125. has | 126. dares | 127. needs | 128. are |
| 129. are | 130. is | 131. is | 132. have | 133. has |
| 134. is | 135. was | 136. like | 137. has | 138. is |
| 139. are | 140. was | 141. do | 142. was | 143. has |
| 144. is | 145. were | 146. are | 147. are | 148. is |
| 149. has | 150. have | 151. flies | 152. are | 153. were |
| 154. is | 155. brings | 156. have | 157. is | 158. were |
| 159. have | 160. is | 161. is | 162. is | 163. have |
| 164. were | 165. is | 166. is | 167. is | 168. is |
| 169. is | 170. is | 171. has | 172. are | 173. were |
| 174. are | 175. are | 176. was | 177. was/were (कोई एक) | |
| 178. help | 179. save | 180. is | 181. grow | 182. is |
| 183. lead | 184. is | 185. are | 186. does | 187. do |
| 188. was | 189. is | 190. is | 191. are | 192. were |
| 193. is | 194. are | 195. are | 196. are | 197. has |
| 198. have | 199. was | 200. is | 201. were | |

**Q. 2.**

1. (2) are की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Cardinal Adjective + P.N. के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ twenty miles के साथ S.V.–is का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि nor के बाद S.N.–brother-in-law का प्रयोग हुआ है।
3. (2) approve की जगह approves का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि given conditional sentence में if के बाद Singular subject–My father का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः My father के मुताबिक S.V.– approves का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (2) have की जगह has का प्रयोग होगा। Given sentence में nor के बाद Singular subject–Pakistan का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः Pakistan के मुताबिक S.V.–has का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (2) has की जगह have का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में subject के रूप में you and I का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो Plural है। अतः P.V.–have का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (3) are की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। Relative Pronoun who के पहले S.N. के रूप में My younger brother का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः who के बाद S.N.–My younger brother के अनुसार S.V. is का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (1) have been की जगह has been का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence का subject–he है, जो third person–Singular Number का है। अतः S.S.–he की मुताबिक S.V.—has been का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (2) have की जगह has का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में subject के रूप में The Arabian Nights का प्रयोग हुआ है। जो 's' ending book का नाम है। 's' ending book–के नाम के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ The Arabian Nights के साथ S.V.–has का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (2) are की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Every + S.N. + and + S.N. के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ Every man, woman and child का प्रयोग Singular Subject के रूप में किया गया है। अतः S.V.–is का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (2) have been की जगह has been का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में 'Meatless Days' का प्रयोग Singular Subject के रूप में हुआ है। अतः S.V.–has been का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (2) have been की जगह has been का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में apostrophe 's' ['s] के बाद पुस्तक के नाम Gulliver's Travels का प्रयोग हुआ है। Gullivers' Travels पुस्तक का नाम है जो Singular है अतः S.V.–has been का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (5) Given sentence correct है। क्योंकि nor के बाद Singular subject his father का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः S.V.–is correct है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



13. (2) likes की जगह like का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि children-P.N. का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हुआ है। अतः P.V.-like का प्रयोग होगा।

14. (2) works की जगह work का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Given sentence का subject 'you' है। you के साथ P.V. का प्रयोग होता है। अतः P.V.-work का प्रयोग होगा।

15. (3) do not की जगह does not का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence का subject-The climate है। The climate-Singular है। अतः S.V.-does not का प्रयोग होगा।

16. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में along with the staff members के पहले S.S.-The director का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः S.V.-was का प्रयोग होगा।

17. (1) follows की जगह follow का प्रयोग होगा। दिया गया sentence, Conditional है। इस तरह के sentence में S.V. or P.V. दोनों का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ if के बाद you का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः you के मुताबिक P.V.-follow का प्रयोग होगा।

18. (3) has की जगह have का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि who के पहले one of those great sons of India. का प्रयोग हुआ है। जिसमें sons-P.N. है। sons के मुताबिक P.V.-have का प्रयोग होगा।

19. (1) was की जगह were का प्रयोग होगा। दिया गया sentence suppositional है। यह if से स्टार्ट हुआ है, इस तरह के sentence में किसी भी Number तथा Person के subject के साथ P.V.-were का प्रयोग होता है। अतः I के साथ P.V.-were का प्रयोग होगा।

20. (2) live की जगह lives का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में who के पहले S.N.-My father-in-law का प्रयोग हुआ है। यहाँ My father-in-law के मुताबिक S.V.-lives का प्रयोग होगा।

21. (5) Given sentence correct है। क्योंकि Each + S.N. के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ Each girl के साथ S.V.-was का प्रयोग correct है। अतः Given sentence का कोई part गलत नहीं है।

22. (2) was की जगह were का प्रयोग होगा। that से स्टार्ट Clause का Plural Subject-Mukesh and his sister है। अतः P.V.-were का प्रयोग होगा।

23. (4) have की जगह has का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में subject के रूप में several words का प्रयोग किया गया है। इस तरह के बनावट पर आधारित sentence में first 'of' के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ The disclosure-S.N. है। अतः S.V.-has का प्रयोग होगा।

24. (4) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ-with के पहले S.N.-My sister-in-law का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः S.V.-was का प्रयोग होगा।

25. (2) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। The Number of + P.N. के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है। अतः, S.V.-was का प्रयोग होगा।

Q. 3.

1. The poet and critic has been honoured.
2. Bread and butter is essential for one's life.
3. Either Dilip or Sunil has the key to this sum.
4. The behaviour of the students was not proper.
5. The Guru as well as his disciples is committed to celibacy.
6. Twenty four hours is not sufficient time to judge one's character.
7. Thirty kilometers is a big distance.
8. Three scores makes sixty.
9. Either of the boys is eligible for selection.
10. The captain, with his team members, was given a warm welcome.
11. The Himalayas lie to the north of India.
12. Either she or I am to go.
13. The number of girls was eighty.
14. The rich are not honest.
15. We each have a problem.
16. The Jury were divided in their opinions.
17. Little has been said about the fact.
18. It is one of the best books that have been written.
19. His deer are running on the road.
20. The police have been asked to help them.
21. He dare not face me.
22. The cattle are grazing in the field.
23. Our shoes are new.
24. One-fourth of the apple is rotten.
25. Neither reward nor punishment is to be expected.
26. Honour and glory is his reward.
27. The rise and fall of the tide is due to lunar influence.
28. The ship, with its crew, was lost.
29. The guidance, as well as the love of a mother, was wanting.
30. Our happiness or our sorrow is largely due to our own actions.
31. Neither praise nor blame seems to affect him.
32. He is not to blame, nor are you.
33. Much pains has been taken.
34. The committee are divided on one minor point.
35. Plutarch's Lives is an interesting book.
36. One hundred paise is equal to one rupee.
37. The means employed by you is sufficient.
38. The Three Musketeers was written by Alexander Dumas.
39. Early to bed and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.
40. He is one of those men who know every thing.
41. Neither John nor James was present in the school yesterday.
42. It is one of the best pictures that have even been painted.
43. Game after game was played.
44. None but the brave deserve the fair.
45. Lamb's Tales is an interesting book.
46. Patience as well as perserverance is necessary for success.
47. A number of prisoners have escaped from the jail.
48. A series of accidents has taken place.
49. The clergy were unanimous in their opinion.
50. Their information is based on facts.

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 2 Articles

**Articles :** *A, An* and *The* को Articles कहा जाता है। सामान्यतः इनका प्रयोग Noun के पहले होता है। ये Adjectives हैं। इन्हें Modern English Grammar में determiners भी कहा जाता है।

Articles
- Indefinite Article → A / An
- Definite Article → The

**1. Indefinite Articles :** A or An का प्रयोग किसी Noun के position को Indefinite or uncertain *(अनिश्चित)* बनाने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. He saw *an* old man. *उसने एक बूढ़ा व्यक्ति देखा।*
2. There was *a* king. *एक राजा था।*
3. *A* dog was barking at night. एक कुत्ता रात में भौंक रहा था।

उपरोक्त examples 1, 2, 3 में old man, king, dog के पहले क्रमशः *An, a, a* का प्रयोग इसके Position को uncertain *(अनिश्चित)* बनाने के लिए किया गया है।

**2. Definite Article :** *The* का प्रयोग किसी Noun के position को definite or certain (निश्चित) बनाने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. The house in which I live is new. *(घर जिसमें मैं रहता हूँ नया है।)*
2. This is the pen which I have bought. *(यह वही कलम है जो मैंने खरीदी है।)*
3. The gold of Nepal is cheap. *(नेपाल का सोना सस्ता है।)*

उपरोक्त examples 1, 2, 3 में house, pen, gold के पहले The का प्रयोग इसके position को certain (निश्चित) बनाने के लिए किया गया है।

**Note :** (i) *A / An* का शाब्दिक अर्थ एक, सब, प्रति, प्रत्येक, के हिसाब से, कोई, पर होता है। जबकि *The* का कोई शाब्दिक अर्थ नहीं होता है। इसका functional meaning (अर्थ) होता है।

(ii) *A* or *An* Adjective 'one' का कमजोर रूप (weak form) है, जबकि *The*, Adjective —This, that का कमजोर रूप (weak form) है।

(iii) Consonant Starting Nouns के पहले *The* का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे 'द' पढ़ा जाता है, जबकि Vowel Starting Nouns के पहले The का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे 'दी' पढ़ा जाता है।

लेकिन Nouns पर जोर डालने के लिए 'The' को 'दी' पढ़ा जाता है, चाहे Nouns Consonants or Vowels से स्टार्ट क्यों नहीं हो।

### Pronunciation of the Articles

| Articles | Weak forms | Strong forms |
|---|---|---|
| A | अ | ए |
| An | अन | एन |
| The | द, दि | दी |

(iv) जब हम अंग्रेजी में बात करते हैं या speech देते हैं तो सामान्यतः *A* का उच्चारण 'अ', *An* का उच्चारण 'अन', करते हैं।

लेकिन A तथा An का उच्चारण स्वतंत्र रूप से करना हो या speech या discourse में a/an के बाद आने वाले शब्द पर विशेष जोर देना हो तो A का 'ए' तथा An का 'ऐन' उच्चारण किया जाता है।

### Position of Articles

**Rule (1) :** *A / An / The + Noun* जैसे—

I have a book.
(Art. N.)

He has an umbrella.
(Art. N.)

The cow has a tail.
(Art. N. Art. N.)

**Rule (2) :** *A / An / The + Adjective + Noun* जैसे—

She is an intelligent girl.
(Art. Adj. N)

Monika has a long stick.
(Art. Adj. N.)

Tendulkar is the best player.
(Art. Adj. N.)

**Rule (3) :** *A / An / The + Adverb + Adjective + Noun* जैसे—

She is a very intelligent girl. (✓)
(Art. Adv. Adj. N.)

She is an very intelligent girl. (×)
(Art. Adv. Adj. N.)

She is very an intelligent girl. (×)
(Adv. Art. Adj. N.)

She is very intelligent girl. (×)
(Adv. Adj. N.)

She is very intelligent a girl. (×)
(Adv. Adj. Art. N.)

He is the very best player. (✓)
(Art. Adv. Adj. N.)

He is very the best player. (×)
(Adv. Art. Adj. N.)

**Note :** The very का अर्थ 'वही' होता है। इसका प्रयोग Noun पर जोर देने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

This is the very girl. *(यह वही लड़की है।)*

**Rule (4) :** *Such / What / Many / Rather / Half + A / An + Noun*. जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Such *a* girl. | (✓) | A such girl. | (×) |
| What *a* fool | (✓) | What fool | (×) |
| Many an inkpot. | (✓) | Many an inkpots. | (×) |
| Rather an idea. | (✓) | Rather a idea. | (×) |
| Half an hour. | (✓) | A half hour. | (×) |
| Half a kilo. | (✓) | A half kilo. | (×) |
| Many *a* book. | (✓) | Many *a* books. | (×) |
| Many books | (✓) | | |

**Note :** (i) Many के बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग होने पर, A, An का प्रयोग P. N. के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

(ii) Rather का प्रयोग 'काफ़ी' के अर्थ में होता है।

**Rule (5) :** *Such / what / many / quite / rather + A / An + Adjective + Noun*. जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Such a beautiful girl. | (✓) | Such beautiful a girl. | (×) |
| What a big fool ? | (✓) | What big a fool ? | (×) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


Many a good book. (√) Many good a book. (×)
Quite an unlucky man. (√) Quite unlucky a man. (×)
Rather an interesting book. (√) Rather interesting a book. (×)

लेकिन *A + Rather + Adjective + Noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
A rather interesting book. (√)

**Rule (6) :** *All / both / double / + The + Noun.* जैसे—
All the girls. (√)
Both the boys. (√)
Double the amount. (√)

**Note :** (i) All + the + P.N. से class का बोध नहीं होता है, इससे particular (निश्चित) व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं का बोध होता है। जैसे—
All the boys. (√)

(ii) लेकिन All + P.N. से class का बोध होता है। जैसे—
All boys. (√)

(iii) Both + P.N. के structure में The का प्रयोग नहीं भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे—
Both boys. (√)

**Rule (7) :** *All / Both / Double / Exactly / Just + The + Adjective + Noun.* जैसे—
All the famous singers. (√) All famous the singers. (×)
Both the intelligent boys. (√) Both intelligent the boys. (×)
Double the right amount. (√) Double right the amount. (×)
Exactly the wrong colour. (√) Exactly wrong the colour. (×)
Just the right amount. (√) Just right the amount. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन *Just + a / an + Adjective + Noun* का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—
Just an ordinary girl. (√) Just ordinary a girl. (×)
Just a beautiful woman. (√) Just beautiful a woman. (×)

**Rule (8) :** *How/So/Too/As + Adjective + A/An + Noun.* जैसे—

How beautiful a girl is she ? (प्रश्नबोधक वाक्य) (√)
Inter. Adv. Adj. Art. N.

How a beautiful girl is she ? (×)
Adv. Art. Adj. N.

How beautiful a girl she is ! (विस्मयादिबोधक वाक्य) (√)
Exclam. Adv. Adj. art N.

How a beautiful girl she is ! (×)
Adv. art. Adj. N.

Devan Babu is too weak a man. (√)
Adv. Adj. Art. N.

Devan Babu is too a weak man. (×)
Adv. Art. Adj. N.

It is so fine a day (√)
Adv. Adj. Art. N.

It is so a fine day (×)
Adv. Art. Adj. N.

Chandra Kishore Babu is as experienced an engineer.
Adv. Adj. Art. N (√)

Chandra Kishore Babu is as an experienced engineer.
Adv. Art. Adj. N. (×)

## Use of Articles

किसी भी word के पहले A/An का प्रयोग करने से पहले यह जानना आवश्यक है कि उस word का first letter कौन-सा है, तथा first letter का first sound क्या है ? First letter, first sound को जाने बिना A/An के प्रयोग करने में गलती होने की संभावना बढ़ जाती है। इस गलती से बचने के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि आप English letters और उसके sound को जानें।

**Vowels :**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. i : | (ई) | as in tree. | 2. I | (इ) | as in city |
| 3. e | (ए) | as in bed | 4. ae | (ऐ) | as in cat |
| 5. a : | (आ) | as in car | 6. α | (ऑ) | as in cot |
| 7. ɔ : | (ऑ) | as in law | 8. u : | (ऊ) | as in food |
| 9. u | (उ) | as in book | 10. 3 : | (अ:) | as in earth |
| 11. ʌ | (अ) | as in cup | 12. ə | (अ) | as in ago |
| 13. er | (ए) | as in day | 14. αr | (आइ) | as in time |
| 15. ɔr | (आई) | as in boy | 16. əu | (ओ) | as in old |
| 17. au | (आउ) | as in town | 18. Iə | (इअ) | as in deer |
| 19. eə | (एअ) | as in care | 20. Uə | (उअ) | as in poor |

**Note :** English में 20 Vowel Sounds हैं।

**Consonants :**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. p | (प) | as in pen | 2. b | (ब) | as in ball |
| 3. t | (ट) | as in ten | 4. d | (ड) | as in day |
| 5. k | (क) | as in cat | 6. g | (ग) | as in gun |
| 7. tf | (च) | as in child | 8. d 3 | (ज) | as in Judge |
| 9. f | (फ) | as in fan | 10. v | (व) | as in van |
| 11. θ | (थ) | as in thumb | 12. δ | (द) | as in they |
| 13. s | (स) | as in sun | 14. z | (ज) | as in zoo |
| 15. ʃ | (श) | as in shoe | 16. 3 | (ज) | as in pleasure |
| 17. h | (ह) | as in hen | 18. m | (म) | as in man |
| 19. n | (न) | as in not | 20. ŋ | (न्ग) | as in ring |
| 21. l | (ल) | as in leg | 22. r | (र) | as in room |
| 23. j | (य) | as in yes | 24. w | (व) | as in wife |

**Note :** अंग्रेजी में 24 Consonant sounds हैं। English में कुल 44 sounds हैं। लेकिन English में मात्र 26 Letters हैं।

अब आप English के sounds से अवगत हो गए। चलिए अब A/An के प्रयोग के सम्बंध में first letter first sound के कनसेप्ट को जानें।

## Use of A / AN

Word
- First letter
- First Sound

1. An (×) A (√) ← Consonant → Consonant Sound
2. A (×) An (√) ← Consonant → Vowel Sound
3. A (×) An (√) ← Vowel → Vowel Sound
4. An (×) A (√) ← Vowel → Consonant Sound

**Note :** (i) किसी भी word का first letter consonant हो तथा first sound हिन्दी के व्यंजन वर्ण, जैसे—क, ख, ग, .... ह आदि से मिलता-जुलता हो, अर्थात् Consonant हो, तो *A* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
a cat. (√) a bat(√) a bench (√) a fan (√)

(ii) किसी भी word का first letter consonant हो तथा first sound हिन्दी के स्वर वर्ण जैसे—अ, आ, इ, ई, उ, ऊ, ए, ऐ, ओ, औ आदि से मिलता-जुलता हो अर्थात् vowel हो, तो *An* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
An honest man. (√) An M.A. (√)
An heir (√) An M.L.A. (√)
An heirsess (√) An N.C.C. boy (√)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| An hour | (√) | An X– mas tree. | (√) |
| An honour | (√) | An L. P. School. | (√) |
| An H.M.T. watch. | (√) | | |

(iii) किसी भी word का first letter vowel हो तथा first sound हिन्दी स्वर वर्ण जैसे—अ, आ, इ, ई, उ, ऊ ---- आदि से मिलता-जुलता हो अर्थात् vowel हो, तो An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| An umbrella. | (√) | An exercise | (√) |
| An ugly woman | (√) | An ox | (√) |
| An Indian | (√) | An axe | (√) |

(iv) किसी भी word का first letter vowel हो तथा first sound हिन्दी के व्यंजन वर्ण जैसे—क, ख, ग, ..... ह आदि से मिलता जुलता हो, अर्थात् consonant हो, तो A का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A European | (√) | A union | (√) |
| A university | (√) | A unit | (√) |
| A uniform | (√) | A unique dress | (√) |
| A utensil | (√) | A useful cow | (√) |
| A unanimous decision | (√) | A one-rupee note | (√) |
| A one-eyed girl | (√) | A one-way ticket | (√) |

Sound पर विशेष रूप से ध्यान देंगे तो A / An के प्रयोग में गलती नहीं होगी, लेकिन sound में confusion (कनफ्यूजन) रहने पर A / An के प्रयोग में गलती होने की संभावना बढ़ जाती है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A wooden table. | (वुडेन टेबुल) | (√) |
| An wooden table. | (ऊडेन टेबुल) | (×) |
| A year | (विअर) | (√) |
| An year | (ईयर) | (×) |
| A yellow shirt. | (येलो शर्ट) | (√) |
| An yellow shirt | (एलो शर्ट) | (×) |

## Some More Uses of A / An

**Rule (1) :** A / An का प्रयोग कुछ खास phrases में होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A team of | A gang of | A group of |
| A crowd of | A band of | An army of |
| A pair of | A herd of | An assembly of |
| A flock of | A galaxy of | A fleet of |

**Rule (2) :** A का प्रयोग संख्या (number) और मात्रा (quantity) का बोध कराने वाले expressions में होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| A lot of | A number of |
| A great number of | A large number of |
| A great many of | A good many of |
| A great deal of | A good deal of |

**Rule (3) :** A / An का प्रयोग one (एक) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Mukesh has a dog. (a = एक)
Binay has an apple. (an = एक)
A farmer had three sons. (A = एक)

**Rule (4) :** A / An का प्रयोग Any (कोई) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There was a king of Magadh.
*(मगध का कोई राजा था।)*

Veena did not give her husband an apple.
*(वीणा ने अपने पति को कोई सेब नहीं दिया।)*

**Rule (5) :** A / An का प्रयोग Each / Every (प्रत्येक) or per (प्रति/की दर से) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Sudhir Babu comes to my house once a week.
*(सुधीर बाबू मेरे घर प्रत्येक सप्ताह में एकबार आते हैं।)*

Mr. Dhananjay earns Rs 10,000/- a month.
*(मि० धनन्जय प्रति माह दस हजार रुपये कमाते हैं।)*

Mr. Thakur walks five kilometres an hour.
*(मि० ठाकुर पाँच किलोमीटर प्रति घंटा की दर से चलते हैं।)*

Rice is sold at Rs. 15/- a kilo.
*(चावल पंद्रह रुपये प्रति किलो के हिसाब से बेचा जाता है।)*

The train runs eighty kilometers an hour.
*(ट्रेन 80 कि०मी० प्रतिघंटा की दर से चलती है।)*

**Rule (6) :** A का प्रयोग 'on' (पर) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He found her a bed. — *उसने उसे बिस्तर पर पाया।*
He went a hunting. — *वह शिकार पर गया।*

**Rule (7) :** A / An का प्रयोग all (सब) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

A dog has a short tail. (A dog = all dogs / any dog)
*(कुत्ता को एक छोटी पूँछ है।)*

A cow has a long tail. (A cow = all cows / any cow)
*(गाय को एक लंबी पूँछ है।)*

**Note :** (i) ऊपर दिये उदाहरणों में प्रयुक्त a dog तथा a cow से class का बोध होता है।

(ii) A का प्रयोग the same के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
Birds of a feather flock together.
(A feather = the same feather)

**Rule (8) :** किसी Proper Noun का प्रयोग Common Noun की तरह हो, तो Proper Noun के पहले A / An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is a Kalidas.
*वह कालिदास जैसा विद्वान है।*

You are a Tendulkar.
*तुम तेन्दुलकर जैसा क्रिकेटर हो।*

He is a Dinkar.
*वह दिनकर जैसा कवि/लेखक है।*

**Rule (9) :** Most का प्रयोग very (बहुत) के अर्थ में होने पर इसके पहले A का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is a most handsome boy.
*(वह बहुत सुन्दर लड़का है।)*

That was a most interesting novel.
*(वह बहुत रोचक उपन्यास था।)*

**Rule (10) :** यदि Two Adjectives 'and' से जुड़कर किसी Singular Countable Noun के पहले प्रयुक्त हों तथा इससे एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध हो, तो first Adjective के पहले A / An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A black and white cow.
*(एक ही गाय जो काली और सफेद है।)*

An honest and intelligent teacher.
*(एक ही शिक्षक जो ईमानदार और तेज है।)*

A red and black shirt.
*(एक ही कमीज जो लाल और काली है।)*

A tall and handsome boy.
*(एक ही लड़का जो लंबा और सुन्दर है।)*

**Rule (11) :** यदि two Adjectives 'and' से जुड़कर किसी Singular Countable Noun के पहले प्रयुक्त हों तथा इससे दो विभिन्न व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं (Two different persons / things) का बोध हो, तो प्रत्येक Adjective के पहले A / An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A black and a white cow.
*(दो गायें जिनमें एक काली और दूसरी सफेद है।)*

An honest and an intelligent teacher.
*(दो शिक्षक जिनमें एक ईमानदार और दूसरा तेज है।)*

A red and a black shirt.
*(दो कमीज जिनमें एक लाल और दूसरा काला है।)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

A tall and a handsome boy.
*(दो लड़के जिनमें एक लंबा और दूसरा सुन्दर है।)*

**Note :** (i) दो Adjectives 'and' से जुड़कर किसी Singular common noun के पहले प्रयुक्त हों तथा इससे एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु, जानवर या भाव का बोध हो तो First Adjective के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The red and white rose looks beautiful. (√)
The red and the white rose looks beautiful. (×)

(ii) दो Adjectives 'and' से जुड़कर किसी Singular common noun के पहले प्रयुक्त हों तथा इससे दो अलग अलग व्यक्ति, वस्तु, या भाव का बोध हो तो दोनों Adjectives के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

The red and the white rose look beautiful. (√)
The red and white rose look beautiful. (×)

**Rule (12) :** 'And' से जुड़े दो Singular Nouns से एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध कराना हो, तो first (पहले) Singular Noun के पहले Indefinite Article का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A clerk and cashier.
*(एक ही व्यक्ति जो क्लर्क और खजांची दोनों है।)*
An uncle and guardian.
*(एक ही व्यक्ति जो चाचा और अभिभावक दोनों है।)*

**Rule (13) :** 'And' से जुड़े दो Singular Nouns से दो विभिन्न व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं (two different persons or things) का बोध कराना हो, तो प्रत्येक Singular Noun के पहले Indefinite Articles का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A clerk and a cashier.
*(दो व्यक्ति जिनमें एक क्लर्क और दूसरा खजांची है।)*
An uncle and a guardian.
*(दो व्यक्ति जिनमें एक चाचा और दूसरा अभिभावक हैं।)*

**Rule (14) :** A का प्रयोग some/a certain (कोई/अज्ञात) के अर्थ में Proper Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

A Mr. Mohan wants to talk to you.
*(कोई मि० मोहन तुम से बात करना चाहता है।)*
A Mr. Thakur gave me this book for you.
*(कोई एक मिस्टर ठाकुर ने तुम्हारे लिए यह पुस्तक मुझे दिया।)*

**Note :** उपरोक्त वाक्यों से यह स्पष्ट है कि वक्ता (Speaker) को Mr. Mohan तथा Mr. Thakur के नाम के अलावे और कुछ पता नहीं है।

**Rule (15) :** A/An का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए phrases में होता है।

| | |
|---|---|
| In a temper | In a rage |
| In a mood | In a hurry |
| In a dilemma | As a rule |
| As a matter of fact | At a cost |
| At a loss | At a stone's throw |
| A short time ago | A short while ago |
| A love of | A horror of |
| After a delay of | Have a cold |
| Catch a cold | Catch cold |
| Have a headache | Get a headache |
| Have a fever | Have a pain |
| Have an opportunity | Have a chance |
| Have a pain | Have a cold |
| Have a cough. | In a nutshell |
| In a fix | Have a drink |
| Have a rest | Have a talk |
| Have a sleep | Have a bath |
| Have an interest in | Have a pride in |
| Keep a promise | Keep an appointment |
| Make a deal with | Make an excuse |
| Make a noise | Take a risk |
| At a discount | At a premium |
| Have a swim | Go for a swim |
| Have a meal | Take a meal |
| Take courage | Take a courage |
| Take a rest | Take a vacation |

It is a pity, It is a shame, It is a wonder, It is a surprise, Take a hint, Take the hint

**Rule (16) :** A/An का प्रयोग counting expressing words या units (गिनती सूचक शब्दों या इकाई) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

a dozen, a hundred, a thousand, a million, a score, a gross, a couple जैसे—

I have a dozen eggs. (√) I have dozen eggs. (×)
She has a thousand rupees. (√) She has thousand rupees. (×)

लेकिन, One and a half kilo $= 1\frac{1}{2}$ kilos (√)

A kilo and a half $= 1\frac{1}{2}$ kilos (√)

Half a kilo $= \frac{1}{2}$ kg (√)

A half kilo $= \frac{1}{2}$ kg (×)

A third/One third $= \frac{1}{3}$

A quarter/One quarter $= \frac{1}{4}$

Five and a quarter miles $= 5\frac{1}{4}$ miles

A fifth/One fifth $= \frac{1}{5}$

A tenth/One tenth $= \frac{1}{10}$

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. A couple of hours will be enough for the work. (√)
2. The couple of hours will be enough for the work. (×)
3. He has to go five and a quarter miles a day. (√)
4. He has to go five and quarter miles a day. (×)

**Rule (17) :** A/An का प्रयोग Singular Countable Noun के पहले class तथा जाति का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

1. A cow is a domestic animal.
   [A cow = all cows (सभी गायें)]
2. An ox is a very useful animal.
   [An ox = all oxen (सभी बैल)]

ठहरें, जरा सोचें और समझने की कोशिश करें।

पुनः 1. A cow is a domestic animal.
= cows are domestic animals.
= All cows are domestic animals.
= The cow is a domestic animal.

ऊपर दिये गए sentences का अर्थ एक जैसा/समान है।

**Rule (18) :** किसी भी Singular Countable Noun के पहले A/An का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे—I am a teacher. He is a publisher.
She is a doctor. You are a student.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (19) :** Uncountable Noun का प्रयोग Countable Noun की तरह हो, तो A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| (A) Uncountable Noun की तरह | (B) Countable Noun की तरह |
|---|---|
| 1. This wall is made of stone. (पत्थर) | 1. She threw a stone at me. (एक पत्थर) |
| 2. She has beauty. (सुन्दरता) | 2. She is a beauty. (सुन्दर औरत) |
| 3. Fish and rice is my favourite dish. (मछली और चावल) | 3. He caught a fish. (एक मछली) |
| 4. There is no life without fire. (आग) | 4. He made a fire to warm himself. (एक अंगीठी) |
| 5. This ball is made of rubber. (रैबड़) | 5. He has to buy a rubber. (एक रबड़) |
| 6. Marriage is the union of two souls. (विवाह) | 6. He is going to attend a marriage. (एक विवाहोत्सव) |
| 7. She has great love for me. (प्यार/प्रेम) | 7. She is an old love of mine. (प्रेमी/प्रेमिका) |
| 8. There is lamb in the menu. (भेड़ का मांस) | 8. That is a lamb. (भेड़) |
| 9. You came here on time. (समय) | 9. He had a bad time in Delhi. (परिस्थिति) |
| 10. This room is full of smoke. (धुंआ) | 10. Let's have a smoke now. (सिगरेट) |
| 11. He is fond of bread and chicken. (मुर्गा/मुर्गी का मांस) | 11. Aditi will buy a chicken tomorrow. (मुर्गी का बच्चा) |
| 12. The sun gives us heat. (गर्मी) | 12. He did fairly well in a trial heat. (प्रतियोगिता) |
| 13. He signed his name in pencil. (पेंसिल रंग से) | 13. I have to buy a pencil. (पेंसिल) |
| 14. Language is a gift of God. (भाषा) | 14. English is a rich language. (भाषा) |
| 15. History is an easy subject. (इतिहास) | 15. He has a very bad history. (इतिहास) |
| 16. He is suffering from headache. (सिरदर्द) | 16. She had a bad headache yesterday. (सिरदर्द) |

ऊपर दिये गए Table के columns (A) और (B) से आप समझ जायेंगे की किस प्रकार Uncountable Noun का प्रयोग Countable Noun की तरह हुआ है।

**Rule (20) :** Plural Noun को Singular बनाने के लिए भी A का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| Five days journey | Plural |
| A five-day journey | Singular |
| Six men committee | Plural |
| A six-man committee | Singular |
| Five years plan | Plural |
| A five-year plan | Singular |

**Rule (21) :** जब किसी Singular countable noun की चर्चा first time (प्रथम बार) किसी sentence में होता है तो उस noun के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A/An का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन दुबारा चर्चा होने पर 'The' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Yesterday a man came to me. The man was very hungry.
There was a king. The king was very wise.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में man तथा king की चर्चा प्रथम बार हुआ इसलिए दोनों noun के पहले a का प्रयोग किया गया। दुबारा चर्चा होने पर 'the' का प्रयोग किया गया है।

**Rule (22) :** यदि verb का प्रयोग noun के रूप में हो तो इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

His grandfather has gone for *a* walk. (✓)
His grandfather has gone for walk. (×)
He wants to have *a* rest/*a* bath/*a* drink now. (✓)
He wants to have rest/bath/drink now. (×)
My son has gone for *a* swim/*a* ride. (✓)
My son has gone for swim/ride. (×)
Yesterday I had *a* long talk with the publisher. (✓)
Yesterday I had long talk with the publisher. (×)
Nilu gave *a* talk on her visit to Mumbai. (✓)
Nilu gave talk on her visit to Mumbai. (×)

**Note :** कुछ ऐसे words हैं जिनका प्रयोग Verb तथा Noun के रूप में इस प्रकार किया जाता है—

1. Walk का प्रयोग Noun के रूप में पैदल यात्रा (journey on foot) तथा चाल (manner of walking) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He has gone for a morning walk.
*(वह मॉर्निंग वाक के लिए गया है।)*
I could recognize him by his walk.
*(मैं उसके चाल से उसे पहचान सका।)*

2. Walk का प्रयोग Verb के रूप में 'पैदल यात्रा करना' (travel on foot) तथा 'चलकर पार करना' (pass through by walking) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे— Walk slowly on a busy road.
*व्यस्त सड़क (बिजी रोड) पर धीरे-धीरे पैदल यात्रा करें।*
Walk across the street
*गली पैदल चलकर पार करें।*

ध्यान दें :

| Phrase | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Walk out (V) | Go on strike | हड़ताल करना |
| Walkover (N) | Any task easily done; easy victory | सुगम विजय |

जैसे—The workers of this factory walked out this morning.
Since the opposite team did not turn up, we got a walk over.

3. Rest का प्रयोग Noun के रूप में 'आराम' (repose) तथा अवशेष/बाकी (remainder) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Rest is necessary after work.
*(काम के बाद आराम आवश्यक होता है।)*
Eat what you wish and leave the rest.
*(जो तुम्हारी इच्छा है खाओ और बाकी छोड़ दो।)*

4. Rest का प्रयोग Verb के रूप में 'आराम करना' तथा 'आत्मा को शांति प्रदान करना' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

We are tired, we are resting now.
*(हमलोग थके हैं, अब हमलोग आराम कर रहे हैं।)*
May God rest his soul ?
*(ईश्वर उसकी आत्मा को शांति दे)*

ध्यान दें :

| Phrase | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| At rest | at ease | विश्राम की हालत में |
| for the rest | the remaining ones | बाकी बचे हुए को |
| Rest on | to place on support | टेक पर रखना या बैठाना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



5. Bath का प्रयोग Noun के रूप में 'स्नान, नहाने का काम (Washing of the body) तथा 'नहाने का पानी' (water for a bath) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे— He went for a bath.
*(वह स्नान करने के लिए गया।)*

6. Bathe का प्रयोग verb के रूप में 'स्नान करना या नहाना, स्नान कराना; जल में डुबाना तथा पानी से धोना या साफ करना (to moisten the body all over; to immerse in a liquid; apply water to) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे— He bathed in the river.
*(उसने नदी में स्नान किया।)*
The doctor bathed the wound.
*(डॉक्टर ने घाव पानी से धोया/साफ किया।)*

7. Drink का प्रयोग Noun के रूप में पेय, शराब, मदिरा (liquid for drinking, alcoholic liquor) के अर्थ मे होता है। जैसे—
We cannot live without food and drink.
*(हमलोग भोजन और पेय के बिना नहीं रह सकते हैं।)*
He is too fond of drink
*(वह शराब का अत्यधिक प्रेमी है)*

8. Drink का प्रयोग verb के रूप में 'पानी आदि पीना' तथा 'मदिरा का पान करना' (To take liquid into the mouth and swallow / to take alcoholic liquors) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
He drinks a glass of water before going to bed.
*(वह बिस्तर पर जाने से पहले एक गिलास पानी पीता है।)*
He drinks far too much.
*(वह आवश्यकता से अधिक मदिरा का पान करता है।)*

9. Swim का प्रयोग verb के रूप में तैरना, तैरकर पार करना तथा भरकर बहना (move the body through water, cross by swimming, over flowing) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
The girls are swimming in a tank.
*(लड़कियाँ तालाब में तैर रही हैं।)*
Your eyes are swimming with tears.
*(तुम्हारी आँखों में आँसू भरकर फैल रही है।)*

10. Swim का प्रयोग Noun के रूप में 'तैरना' (act of swimming) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
They have gone for a swim.
*(वे लोग तैरने के लिए गये हैं।)*

11. Ride का प्रयोग noun के रूप में सवारी, सफर (journey on a bicycle, horse back or in a public vehicle) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
We should go for a ride early in the morning.
*(हमलोगों को सुबह में सवेरे सवारी/सफर करना चाहिए।)*

12. Ride का प्रयोग verb के रूप में 'सवारी करना' (to sit on a horse or a bicycle and be carried along) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
Lochinvar jumped on his horse and rode off.

13. Talk का प्रयोग noun के रूप में वार्तालाप, वादविवाद, वार्ता, भाषण (conversation, mutual discussion, speech) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
They had a friendly talk.
How to root out terrorism was the main topic of their talk.
He gave an impressive talk on family planning.

14. Talk का प्रयोग verb के रूप में संभाषण करना, समाचार बतलाना तथा बातचीत करना (to express in words, to disclose information, to speak) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
He is talking about his school days.
What are you talking about ?
They have been talking for an hour.

ध्यान दें :

| Phrasal verbs | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Talk up | to speak boldly, to praise or discuss enthusiastically, to promote interest in | निर्भय बोलना, प्रशंसा करना या उकसाना, किसी चीज में रुचि को बढ़ावा देना |
| 2. Talk against time | Simply gossip | केवल समय बिताने के लिए बातें करना |
| 3. Talk big | to talk boastfully | शेखी मारना |
| 4. Talk down | to overwhelm by force of argument or by loud and persistent talking, to speak disparagingly of, to be little | विवाद में मुँह बंद कर देना, तुच्छ समझना, निन्दा करना, महत्व घटाना |
| 5. Talking of | about things of which mention has been made | ऐसे मामलों पर बात करना जिनका उल्लेख पहले किया जा चुका है। |
| 6. Talk over | to discuss, to convince by talking | सविस्तार वाद-विवाद करना, अपने विचारों का बना लेना |
| 7. Talk round | to talk on a subject without reaching a conclusion | बिना निर्णय पर पहुँचे वाद-विवाद करते जाना |
| 8. Talk to | to address | सम्बोधित करना |

**Rule (23) :** जब abstract noun का प्रयोग एक विशेष प्रकार के गुण (a kind of quality) के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके पहले A / An का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—
Manali has received a good *education*.
If the students want to have a good working *knowledge* of English, they should read this book.

**Note :** सामान्यतः Abstract noun के पहले A / An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—
He has a pride (×)
He has pride (✓)
A wisdom is the gift of heaven (×)
Wisdom is the gift of heaven (✓)

**Rule (24) :** Become का प्रयोग 'हो जाना/बनना' (begin to be, grow to be) के अर्थ में हो तथा इसके बाद noun का प्रयोग हो तो noun के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A / An का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे—He gave up worldly life and became a sanyasi.
My son wants to become an engineer.

**Rule (25) :** A / An का प्रयोग कुछ uncountable nouns के साथ भी होता है। इन्हें कंठाग्र कर लें। जैसे—

| Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| Have a beer | Have beer |
| Have a shower | Have shower |
| Have a shave | Have shave |
| Have a conversation | Have conversation |
| Have a dream | Have dream |
| Have a chat | Have chat |
| Have a quarrel | Have quarrel |
| Have a fight | Have fight |
| Have a good day | Have good day |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| Have a bad day | Have bad day |
| Have a disagreement | Have disagreement |
| Have a try | Have try |
| Have a good education | Have good education |
| Have a good knowledge | Have good knowledge |
| In a diagram | In diagram |

**Rule (26)** : यदि किसी व्यक्ति के नाम का प्रयोग उसके character के different aspects को refer (संकेत/इशारा करना) करने के लिए हो तो इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A तथा the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is a different Ravi from the one (Ravi) I met a few years ago.

## No Use of 'A' / 'An'

**Rule (1)** : A/An का प्रयोग Proper Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

We live in a Bihar. (×) We live in Bihar. (√)

A Nilu is a naughty girl. (×) Nilu is a naughty girl. (√)

**Rule (2)** : A/An का प्रयोग Uncountable Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A gold | (×) gold | (√) | A bread | (×) bread | (√) |
| A water | (×) water | (√) | A chalk | (×) chalk | (√) |
| A silver | (×) silver | (√) | A paper | (×) paper | (√) |
| A copper | (×) copper | (√) | A butter | (×) butter | (√) |
| An electric | (×) electric | (√) | A medicine | (×) medicine | (√) |
| An aluminium | (×) aluminium | (√) | An ice | (×) ice | (√) |
| A coal | (×) coal | (√) | A coffee | (×) coffee | (√) |
| A petrol | (×) petrol | (√) | A tea | (×) tea | (√) |
| An oil | (×) oil | (√) | A ghee | (×) ghee | (√) |
| A milk | (×) milk | (√) | A rice | (×) rice | (√) |
| A dust | (×) dust | (√) | A news | (×) news | (√) |
| A furniture | (×) furniture | (√) | A scenery | (×) scenery | (√) |
| A traffic | (×) traffic | (√) | An advice | (×) advice | (√) |
| A luggage | (×) luggage | (√) | A music | (×) music | (√) |
| An information | (×) information | (√) | A poetry | (×) poetry | (√) |

लेकिन—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A glass of water. | (√) | A piece of bread. | (√) |
| A piece of furniture. | (√) | A stick of chalk. | (√) |
| A piece of paper. | (√) | A pile of rubbish. | (√) |
| A bit of rice. | (√) | A kilo of rice. | (√) |
| A bag of rice. | (√) | A piece of advice. | (√) |
| A piece of chalk. | (√) | A pound of butter. | (√) |
| A spoonful of medicine. | (√) | A ton of coal. | (√) |
| A gallon of petrol | (√) | A bottle of whisky/beer/wine. | (√) |
| An acre of land. | (√) | A bowl of soup/juice | (√) |
| A pound of butter. | (√) | A yard of cloth | (√) |
| A piece of evidence | (√) | A piece of research | (√) |
| A block of ice. | (√) | A piece of ice | (√) |
| A piece of meat. | (√) | A roast of meat | (√) |
| A piece of work. | (√) | A bit of work | (√) |
| An attack of fever. | (√) | A bit of passion | (√) |
| A piece of writing. | (√) | A word of advice | (√) |
| A handful of rice. | (√) | A grain of rice | (√) |
| A heap of rubbish. | (√) | A sheet of paper | (√) |
| A piece of news. | (√) | An item of news | (√) |
| An article of furniture. | (√) | A litre of water | (√) |
| A loaf of bread. | (√) | | |

**Rule (3)** : A/An का प्रयोग Plural Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A children | (×) children | (√) | A boys | (×) boys | (√) |
| A oxen | (×) oxen | (√) | A foxes | (×) foxes | (√) |
| A sheep | (×) sheep | (√) | A people | (×) people | (√) |
| A deer | (×) deer | (√) | A brothers | (×) brothers | (√) |

**Rule (4)** : A/An का प्रयोग kind of, sort of, type of, variety of के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Kind of a dress. | (×) | Kind of dress. | (√) |
| Type of a book. | (×) | Type of book. | (√) |
| Sort of a radio. | (×) | Sort of radio. | (√) |
| Variety of a sheep. | (×) | Variety of sheep. | (√) |

**Note** : दक्षता/प्रवीणता (proficiency) और योग्यता/सामर्थ्य/शक्ति (capability) का पता लगाने के लिए Interrogative sentence में kind of, type of, sort of के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले A/An का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

What kind of a man is he ? (√)

लेकिन what kind of man is he का प्रयोग व्यापार या पेशा का पता लगाने के लिए होता है।

**Rule (5)** : Food items (names of meals) के पहले A/An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Give a breakfast | (×) | Give breakfast | (√) |
| Give a dinner | (×) | Give dinner | (√) |
| Give a lunch | (×) | Give lunch | (√) |
| Give a supper | (×) | Give supper | (√) |
| Give a tea | (×) | Give tea | (√) |
| Have a breakfast | (×) | Have breakfast | (√) |
| Have a lunch | (×) | Have lunch | (√) |
| Have a dinner | (×) | Have dinner | (√) |
| Have a supper | (×) | Have supper | (√) |
| Have a tea | (×) | Have tea | (√) |
| At a breakfast | (×) | At breakfast | (√) |
| At a lunch | (×) | At lunch | (√) |
| At a dinner | (×) | At dinner | (√) |
| At a supper | (×) | At supper | (√) |
| At a tea | (×) | At tea | (√) |
| Before a breakfast | (×) | Before breakfast. | (√) |
| Before a lunch | (×) | Before lunch | (√) |
| Before a dinner | (×) | Before dinner | (√) |
| Before a supper | (×) | Before supper | (√) |
| Before a tea | (×) | Before tea | (√) |
| After a breakfast | (×) | after breakfast | (√) |
| After a lunch | (×) | After lunch | (√) |
| After a dinner | (×) | After dinner | (√) |
| After a supper | (×) | After supper | (√) |
| After a tea | (×) | After tea | (√) |

लेकिन food items के पहले Adjective का प्रयोग होने पर, A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A good dinner | (√) | A delicious breakfast | (√) |
| A nice lunch | (√) | A great supper | (√) |

**Rule (6)** : A/An का प्रयोग post of, rank of, title of, position of, job of के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The post of a principal | (×) | The post of principal | (√) |
| The rank of a D.S.P | (×) | The rank of D.S.P | (√) |
| The title of a Netaji | (×) | The title of Netaji | (√) |
| The position of a peon | (×) | The position of peon | (√) |
| The job of a clerk | (×) | The job of clerk | (√) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (7) :** A / An का प्रयोग सिर्फ Adjective के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| He is an honest | (×) | (Noun-absent है।) | |
| He is honest | (√) | | |
| Maneshwar Babu is a popular in his village. | (×) | | |
| Maneshwar Babu is popular in his village. | (√) | | |

**Rule (8) :** A / An का प्रयोग Possessive Adjectives के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है।

**Note : Possessive Adjectives**—My, our, your, his, her, its, their. जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| My a shirt | (×) | My shirt | (√) |
| Our a country | (×) | Our country | (√) |
| Your a pen | (×) | Your pen | (√) |
| His a chair | (×) | His chair | (√) |
| Her a frock | (×) | Her frock | (√) |
| Its a leg | (×) | Its leg | (√) |
| Their a book | (×) | Their book | (√) |

**Rule (9) :** A / An का प्रयोग Demonstrative Adjectives के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है।

**Note : Demonstrative Adjectives**—This, That, These, Those, Such, The same, The other, another, a certain, any, no etc. जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| This a house. | (×) | This house | (√) |
| That a book | (×) | That book | (√) |
| Any a pen | (×) | Any pen | (√) |
| Another a teacher | (×) | Another teacher | (√) |

**Rule (10) :** A / An का प्रयोग Distributive Adjectives के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है।

**Note : Distributive Adjectives**—Each, Every, Either, Neither. जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Every a girl. | (×) | Every girl | (√) |
| Each a pen | (×) | Each pen | (√) |
| Either a room | (×) | Either room | (√) |
| Neither a boy | (×) | Neither boy | (√) |

**Rule (11) :** A / An का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गये phrases में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| all a winter | (×) | all winter | (√) |
| all a week. | (×) | all week | (√) |
| all a morning | (×) | all morning | (√) |
| all a day | (×) | all day | (√) |
| all a night | (×) | all night | (√) |
| all a afternoon | (√) | all afternoon | (×) |
| all a year | (×) | all year | (√) |
| all a summer | (×) | all summer | (√) |
| all an evening | (×) | all evening | (√) |
| go to a zoo | (×) | go to the zoo | (√) |
| go to a station | (×) | go to the station | (√) |
| go to an airport | (×) | go to the airport | (√) |
| at a dawn | (×) | at dawn | (√) |
| by a day and a night | (×) | by day and night | (√) |
| at a dusk | (×) | at dusk | (√) |
| at a daybreak | (×) | at daybreak | (√) |
| at a sunset | (×) | at sunset | (√) |
| at a sunrise | (×) | at sunrise | (√) |
| during a day | (×) | during the day | (√) |

याद करो :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Epoch | (ईपॉक) | युग |
| 2. | Eulogy | (यूलॉजी) | प्रशंसा/स्तुति |
| 3. | Ugly | (अगली) | कुरूप |
| 4. | Uniform | (यूनिफॉर्म) | पोशाक |
| 5. | Honour | (ऑनर) | नायिका |
| 6. | Utensil | (यूटेन्सिल) | बर्तन |
| 7. | Orator | (ऑरेटर) | व्याख्यानदाता |
| 8. | Heiress | (ऐरेस) | उत्तराधिकारिणी |
| 9. | Heir | (ऐर) | उत्तराधिकारी |
| 10. | Utopia | (यूटोपीअ) | सामाजिक पराकाष्ठा की स्थिति |
| 11. | Ewe | (यू) | मादा भेड़ |
| 12. | Excuse | (इक्सक्यूज) | क्षमा |
| 13. | Eulogist | (यूलॉजिस्ट) | स्तुतिपाठक |
| 14. | Eunuch | (यूनक) | हिजड़ा/नपुंसक |
| 15. | Expert | (एक्सपर्ट) | निपुण |
| 16. | Euphemism | (यूफेमिज्म) | मंगलभाषण |
| 17. | Utricle | (यूट्रिकल) | छोटी थैली |
| 18. | Usher | (अशर) | भेंट करनेवाला |
| 19. | Urn | (अर्न) | कलश |
| 20. | Urinator | (यूरिनेटर) | डुबकी लगानेवाला |
| 21. | Humorous | (ह्यूमरस) | विनोदी |
| 22. | Octogenarian | (ऑक्टोजिनरॅअर) | 80 वर्ष का व्यक्ति |
| 23. | Octagon | (ऑक्टअगॉन) | अष्टभुज |
| 24. | Occultist | (ऑकल्टीस्ट) | जादूगर |
| 25. | Huge | (ह्यूज) | विशाल |
| 26. | Inn | (इन) | सराय |
| 27. | Homage | (होमेज) | पूजा |
| 28. | Hunger | (हंगर) | भूख |
| 29. | Objector | (ऑब्जेक्टर) | विरोध/खंडन करने वाला |
| 30. | Oath | (ओथ) | शपथ/सौगन्ध |
| 31. | Expedition | (एक्सपिडिशन) | साहसिक यात्रा |
| 32. | Boot | (बूट) | जूता |
| 33. | Boor | (बूर) | गँवार |
| 34. | Biographer | (बायोग्राफर) | जीवनी लिखने वाला |
| 35. | Yard | (यार्ड) | आँगन |
| 36. | Word | (वर्ड) | प्रतिज्ञा के शब्द |
| 37. | outlaw | (आउटलॉ) | बागी/विद्रोही। |

## Practice Set

**Q.1.** *Fill in the blank with A / An where necessary (If there is no need a / an put a cross mark (×)] :*

1. ..... M.A.
2. ..... N.C.C. officer
3. ..... S.D.O.
4. ..... ox
5. ..... elephant
6. ..... owl
7. ..... egg
8. ..... inkpot
9. ..... orange
10. ..... coin
11. ..... art
12. ..... ants
13. ..... Indian
14. ..... eye
15. ..... effect
16. ..... epoch

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



17. ..... eggs
19. ..... M.P's.
21. ..... heroes
23. ..... engineer
25. ..... ewe
27. ..... F.O.
29. ..... eulogist
31. ..... units
33. ..... umpires
35. ..... useful
37. ..... beautiful
39. ..... ink
41. ..... Urdu poet
43. ..... employees
45. ..... wooden table
47. ..... high wall
49. ..... one-rupee note
51. ..... uniform
53. ..... honour
55. ..... outlaws
57. ..... forest officer
59. ..... utensil
61. ..... hill
63. ..... orators
65. ..... hour
67. ..... heirs
69. ..... honest
71. ..... very honest
73. ..... holidays
75. ..... young man
77. ..... usher
79. ..... oil
81. ..... ex-M.P.
83. ..... old
85. ..... urn
87. ..... valley
89. ..... yellow flower
91. ..... honourable
93. ..... information
95. ..... octogenarian
97. ..... occulist
99. ..... huge
101. ..... hotel
103. ..... honey
105. ..... hunger
107. ..... oath
109. ..... expedition
111. ..... heroic achievement
113. ..... intelligence
115. ..... importers
117. ..... foxes
119. ..... butter
121. ..... book-stall
123. ..... biographer
125. ..... ice-cream
127. ..... ostrich
129. ..... child
131. ..... holy man
133. ..... hills
135. ..... I.P.S.
18. ..... M.P.
20. ..... member
22. ..... era
24. ..... eulogy
26. ..... excuse
28. ..... Urdu poet
30. ..... University
32. ..... union
34. ..... umbrella
36. ..... useful book
38. ..... very beautiful
40. ..... Urdu
42. ..... exercise
44. ..... lunch
46. ..... expert
48. ..... euphemism
50. ..... ugly
52. ..... unique man
54. ..... Hindu
56. ..... one-eyed man
58. ..... hostel
60. ..... historic occasion
62. ..... humble occupation
64. ..... universal truth
66. ..... heiress
68. ..... heir
70. ..... honest man
72. ..... very honest man
74. ..... Utopia
76. ..... utricle
78. ..... innocent
80. ..... furniture
82. ..... B.A.
84. ..... unique sight
86. ..... urinator
88. ..... year
90. ..... humorous man
92. ..... honourable man
94. ..... officer
96. ..... octagon
98. ..... observers
100. ..... inn
102. ..... honesty
104. ..... homage
106. ..... objector
108. ..... experienced man
110. ..... voyage of enterprise
112. ..... feat
114. ..... exporter
116. ..... heroine
118. ..... mason
120. ..... boot
122. ..... boor
124. ..... ice
126. ..... aeroplanes
128. ..... water
130. ..... useless pen
132. ..... sacred river
134. ..... U.K. plane
136. ..... yard
137. ..... word
139. ..... M. Sc.
141. ..... S.P.
143. ..... T.T.E.
145. ..... B.D.O.
147. ..... I.A.S.
149. ..... D.M.
151. ..... one-way ticket
153. ..... outlaw
155. ..... unloaded gun
157. ..... rotten eggs
159. ..... Europeans
161. ..... boys
163. ..... Australia
165. ..... ideal boys
167. ..... music
169. ..... good editor
171. ..... editor
173. ..... watch
175. ..... L.P. School
177. ..... hour's rest
179. ..... R.S.S. worker
181. ..... H.E. School
183. ..... M.L.C.
185. ..... one-act play
187. ..... happy man
189. ..... urgent message
191. ... unanimous decision
193. ..... interesting story
195. ..... small eggs
197. Half ..... hour
199. ..... ugly woman
201. ..... tooth
203. ..... ears
205. ..... dead lion
207. ..... asses
209. ..... army of soldiers
211. ..... demon
213. ..... data
215. ..... louse
217. ..... Negro
219. ..... Eskimo
221. ..... days
223. ..... echoes
225. ..... leaf
227. ..... photos
229. ..... pendulum
231. ..... axis
233. ..... electron
235. ..... kilo and ..... half
237. ..... unit of length
239. ..... easy language
241. ..... king of beasts
243. ..... owl
245. ..... apples
247. ..... animal
249. ..... abbess
251. ..... giant
253. ..... host
255. ..... washerman
138. ..... C.A.
140. ..... M.L.A.
142. ..... probationary officer
144. ..... H.M.
146. ..... X-ray
148. ..... X-mas tree
150. ..... B.Sc.
152. ..... operator
154. ..... one-sided game
156. ..... Indian dress
158. ..... P.M.
160. ..... H.M.T. watch
162. ..... hour's delay
164. ..... India
166. ..... rice
168. ..... inkpots
170. ..... editors
172. ..... oranges
174. ..... milk
176. ..... heinous crime
178. ..... united team
180. ..... Sub-Divisional Officer
182. ..... R.T.C. bus
184. ..... F.I.R.
186. ..... one-legged beggar
188. ..... angry tiger
190. ..... Australian team
192. ..... unique opportunity
194. ..... young officer
196. ..... insect
198. ..... American
200. ..... feet
202. ..... Islands
204. ..... accident
206. ..... live ass
208. ..... group of islands
210. ..... piece of advice
212. ..... album
214. ..... mouse
216. ..... radio
218. ..... monkey
220. ..... igloo
222. ..... mango
224. ..... box
226. ..... kilo
228. ..... mosquito
230. ..... museum
232. ..... dozen
234. ... hour and ..... half
236. ..... embryo
238. ..... untidy boy
240. ..... briefcase
242. ..... useful metal
244. ..... wonderful man
246. ..... buffalo
248. ..... author
250. ..... emperor
252. ..... poets
254. ..... waitress
256. ..... Earl

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



257. ..... aunt
258. ..... priest
259. ..... executor
260. ..... fool
261. ..... foolish
262. ..... reindeer
263. ..... crocodiles
264. ..... very dear
265. ..... very dear place
266. ..... little boy
267. ..... luggage
268. ..... five-day journey
269. ..... one-man comittee
270. ..... dinner
271. ..... tea
272. ..... money
273. ..... glass of milk
274. ..... dangerous animals
275. ..... Italian
276. ..... N.C.C. boys
277. ..... typist
278. ..... English man
279. ..... shopkeepers
280. ..... exercise
281. ..... grass
282. ..... stone
283. ..... million
284. ..... Asia
285. ..... Asia
286. ..... bravery
287. ..... poor man
288. ..... fly
289. ..... librarian
290. ..... iron
291. ..... iron road
292. ..... french man
293. ..... experienced
294. ..... trains
295. ..... historical
296. ..... coffee
297. ..... important
298. ..... holy river
299. ..... P.A.
300. ..... universe.

Q. 2. *Fill in the blanks with 'A / An' where necessary :*

1. ..... apple fell from ..... tree.
2. ..... Italian came to see me ..... hour ago.
3. Copper is ..... useful metal.
4. He is ..... honest.
5. The children found ..... egg in the nest.
6. He bought ..... horse, ..... ox and ..... buffalo.
7. Mohan looks as stupid as ..... owl.
8. Have you ..... cigarette ?
9. There is ..... instrument box on the table.
10. She is ..... untidy girl.
11. The Ganges is ..... sacred river.
12. ..... aeroplane flies in the sky.
13. ..... ant is ..... insect.
14. He is ..... Indian but his wife is ..... European.
15. ..... elephant is ..... big animal.
16. Maneshwar Thakur is ..... honour to his profession.
17. ..... umbrella is ..... useful thing.
18. She saw ..... ugly boy riding on ..... ass.
19. ..... handkerchief is made of ..... piece of cloth.
20. ..... honest man is liked by all.
21. ..... apple is ..... fruit.
22. He has ..... pen and ..... inkpot.
23. Her father is ..... honorary magistrate.
24. Sri Lanka is ..... island.
25. His elder sister is ..... S.P.
26. He wrote ..... one-act play.
27. I go to Jajuar once ..... year.
28. Dr. M. M. Patnayak is ..... university professor.
29. Mr. U. Jha is ..... intelligent teacher.
30. My brother reads in ..... H.E. School.
31. Binay has bought ..... one-way ticket.
32. It is ..... hour's distance from here.
33. ..... empty vessel sounds much.
34. He is going to have ..... bath.
35. Mr. Mishra asked me to wait for ..... while.
36. I have bought ..... wooden chair.
37. Mukesh saw ..... wonderful dream last night.
38. ..... stitch in time saves nine.
39. Will you give me ..... bottle of whisky ?
40. I want to buy ..... x-ray plant.
41. He is ..... heir and she is ..... heiress.
42. You are ..... unlucky student.
43. It is ..... unit of measurement.
44. ..... M.L.A. represents ..... constituency.
45. Harmonium is ..... musical in strument.
46. Hindi is ..... difficult language.
47. Sudhir Jee was in ..... hurry when I saw him.
48. Eggs are sold by ..... dozen.
49. ..... Gold is ..... precious metal.
50. Mathematics is ..... easy subject.
51. My wife is ..... B.A. but I am ..... M.A.
52. Sweta is ..... humble girl.
53. ..... water is necessary for life.
54. The poor boy is ..... orphan.
55. She was in ..... temper.
56. She is ..... beauty.
57. Tigers are ..... dangerous animals.
58. There was ..... stone in his pocket.
59. My brother-in-law is ..... D.S.P.
60. Mr. Vishwa Mohan Jha is ..... S.P. in C.I.S.F.
61. ..... fire broke out in my village.
62. He has ... thousand rupees, so he can buy ... bicycle.
63. Mr. Pathak, Mr. Jha and Mr. Mishra are ..... hourable men.
64. He likes ..... poetry.
65. Half ..... kilo is enough for me.
66. Ramita Devi is suffering from ..... headache.
67. He is fond of ..... music.
68. ..... Iron is ..... hard metal.
69. Rice is sold at Rs. 10/- ..... kilo.
70. He has ..... oily tongue.
71. This is ..... important historical event.
72. Let us rest for ..... quarter of ..... hour.
73. What ..... beautiful scene this is !
74. She earns Rs. 2000/- ..... month.
75. ..... policeman wears ..... uniform given by the government.
76. He is ..... extravagant.
77. Mr. Sinha is ..... cheat.
78. ..... cafe, ..... restaurant, ..... hotel, ..... inn and ..... bud have almost the same meaning.
79. He is ..... christian.
80. Mr. Zakir is ..... Muslim but I am ..... Hindu.
81. You are ..... extravagant man.
82. ..... one-eyed man cannot see well.
83. ..... idle boy fails in the examination.
84. ..... year ago I saw ..... English man riding on ..... elephant.
85. ..... black and ..... white cow are grazing in in the field.
86. Cricket is ..... popular game.
87. ..... singer and ..... musician are coming here.
88. He gave us ..... good dinner.
89. He was invited to ..... lunch.
90. Mr. Rupkant Babu has bought ..... new variety of ..... sheep.
91. My uncle has given me the title of ..... Netaji.
92. I have not accepted the post of ..... Chairman.
93. Veena likes this kind of ..... dress.
94. He is ..... Newton.
95. How fine ..... day it is !
96. ..... Mr. Philip wants to speak to you.
97. Every country has ..... Parliament.
98. Every ..... man has ..... wonderful lamp.
99. ..... large amount of money is needed for this work.
100. ..... tall and ..... beautiful girl loves me.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



101. He has bought ..... one and ..... half kilo sugar.
102. I have bought ..... kilo and ..... half sugar.
103. I walk ..... five and ..... quarter miles every day.
104. ..... Five-Year Plan is launched by the government.
105. ..... petrol is sold by Rs. 30/- ..... litre.
106. He has sent ..... information for me.
107. You should give her ..... spoonful of medicine.
108. ..... oxen are ploughing the field.
109. Ramu has bought ..... bag of rice.
110. Our ..... country is great.
111. Rajiv is ..... honorary secretary.
112. Aladdin had ..... wonderful lamp.
113. He returned after ..... hour.
114. Today ..... European called at my office.
115. Is there ..... hospital in your town.
116. Sri Lanka is ..... island.
117. The lion is ..... unique wild animal.
118. The workers have formed ..... union.
119. Naresh Kumar is ..... L.I.C. agent.
120. There is ..... bridge over the Thames in London.
121. She is ..... university student.
122. How small ..... needle do you want ?
123. French is ..... easy language.
124. Man is ..... mortal.
125. ..... poverty is ..... curse.
126. He can write ..... letter in ..... ink or with ... pencil
127. ..... hour glass is ..... glass container for measuring time
128. ..... man is going with his parents on ..... trip around the world.
129. The farmer bought ..... ox, ..... cow and ..... pig.
130. ..... friend of yours called on you.
131. His salary has increased by Rs 500/..... year.
132. ..... cold drink on ..... hot day is always welcome.
133. What ..... lovely dress it is!
134. ..... Sand is used in making ..... glass.
135. ..... Mangoes cost Rs 30/ ..... kilo.
136. ..... Couple of goats was grazing in the field.
137. We had ..... breakfast at 8 O'clock.
138. ..... Snakes are often dangerous.
139. ..... black and white horse was running on the road.
140. One of the women was wearing ..... evening dress.
141. He wants to buy ..... X-mas tree.
142. Dr. C.K. Narayan was ..... M.B.B.S.
143. Birds of ..... feather flock together.
144. He has gone ..... hunting
145. ..... S.D.O is ..... officer of ..... very high rank.
146. Your teacher is also ..... N.C.C officer.
147. ..... thousand rupees is enough.
148. So great ..... man he is.
149. Such ..... great man he is.
150. The play came to ..... end.
151. He was in ..... rage.
152. Many ..... man comes here.
153. He made too great ..... effort.
154. He gave me rupees two and ..... half.
155. He is ..... extremely good boy.

## Answers

Q. 1.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. An | 2. An | 3. An | 4. An | 5. An |
| 6. An | 7. An | 8. An | 9. An | 10. × |
| 11. An | 12. × | 13. An | 14. An | 15. An |
| 16. An | 17. × | 18. An | 19. × | 20. A |
| 21. × | 22. An | 23. An | 24. A | 25. A |
| 26. An | 27. An | 28. An | 29. A | 30. A |
| 31. × | 32. A | 33. × | 34. An | 35. × |
| 36. A | 37. × | 38. × | 39. × | 40. × |
| 41. An | 42. An | 43. × | 44. × | 45. A |
| 46. An | 47. A | 48. A | 49. A | 50. × |
| 51. A | 52. A | 53. An | 54. A | 55. × |
| 56. A | 57. A | 58. A | 59. A | 60. A |
| 61. A | 62. An | 63. × | 64. A | 65. An |
| 66. An | 67. × | 68. An | 69. × | 70. An |
| 71. × | 72. A | 73. × | 74. A | 75. A |
| 76. A | 77. An | 78. × | 79. × | 80. × |
| 81. An | 82. A | 83. × | 84. A | 85. An |
| 86. A | 87. A | 88. A | 89. A | 90. A |
| 91. × | 92. An | 93. × | 94. An | 95. An |
| 96. An | 97. An | 98. × | 99. × | 100. An |
| 101. A | 102. × | 103. × | 104. × | 105. × |
| 106. An | 107. An | 108. An | 109. An | 110. A |
| 111. A | 112. × | 113. × | 114. An | 115. × |
| 116. A | 117. × | 118. A | 119. × | 120. A |
| 121. A | 122. A | 123. A | 124. × | 125. An |
| 126. × | 127. An | 128. × | 129. A | 130. A |
| 131. A | 132. A | 133. × | 134. A | 135. An |
| 136. A | 137. A | 138. A | 139. An | 140. An |
| 141. An | 142. A | 143. A | 144. An | 145. A |
| 146. An | 147. An | 148. An | 149. A | 150. A |
| 151. A | 152. An | 153. An | 154. A | 155. An |
| 156. An | 157. × | 158. A | 159. × | 160. An |
| 161. × | 162. An | 163. × | 164. × | 165. × |
| 166. × | 167. × | 168. × | 169. A | 170. × |
| 171. An | 172. × | 173. A | 174. × | 175. An |
| 176. A | 177. An | 178. A | 179. An | 180. A |
| 181. An | 182. An | 183. An | 184. An | 185. A |
| 186. A | 187. A | 188. An | 189. An | 190. An |
| 191. A | 192. A | 193. An | 194. A | 195. × |
| 196. An | 197. An | 198. An | 199. An | 200. × |
| 201. A | 202. × | 203. × | 204. An | 205. A |
| 206. A | 207. × | 208. A | 209. An | 210. A |
| 211. A | 212. An | 213. × | 214. A | 215. A |
| 216. A | 217. A | 218. A | 219. An | 220. An |
| 221. × | 222. A | 223. × | 224. A | 225. A |
| 226. A | 227. × | 228. A | 229. A | 230. A |
| 231. An | 232. A | 233. An | 234. An, A | 235. A, A |
| 236. An | 237. A | 238. An | 239. an | 240. A |
| 241. A | 242. A | 243. An | 244. A | 245. × |
| 246. A | 247. An | 248. An | 249. An | 250. An |
| 251. A | 252. × | 253. A | 254. A | 255. A |
| 256. An | 257. An | 258. A | 259. An | 260. A |
| 261. × | 262. A | 263. × | 264. × | 265. A |
| 266. A | 267. × | 268. A | 269. A | 270. × |
| 271. × | 272. × | 273. A | 274. × | 275. An |
| 276. × | 277. A | 278. An | 279. × | 280. An |
| 281. × | 282. × | 283. A | 284. × | 285. × |
| 286. × | 287. A | 288. A | 289. A | 290. × |
| 291. An | 292. A | 293. × | 294. × | 295. × |
| 296. × | 297. × | 298. A | 299. A | 300. A |

Q. 2.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. An, A | 2. An, An | 3. A | 4. × |
| 5. An | 6. A, An, a | 7. an | 8. a |
| 9. an | 10. an | 11. a | 12. An |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13. An, An | 14. An, A | 15. An, A | 16. An |
| 17. An, A | 18. An, An | 19. A, A | 20. An |
| 21. An, A | 22. A, An | 23. An | 24. An |
| 25. An | 26. A | 27. A | 28. A |
| 29. An | 30. An | 31. A | 32. An |
| 33. An | 34. A | 35. A | 36. A |
| 37. A | 38. A | 39. A | 40. An |
| 41. an, an | 42. An | 43. A | 44. An, A |
| 45. A | 46. A | 47. A | 48. the |
| 49. ×, A | 50. An | 51. A, An | 52. An |
| 53. × | 54. × | 55. A | 56. A |
| 57. × | 58. A | 59. A | 60. An |
| 61. A | 62. A, A | 63. × | 64. × |
| 65. A | 66. A | 67. × | 68. × A |
| 69. A | 70. An | 71. An | 72. A, An |
| 73. A | 74. A | 75. A, A | 76. × |
| 77. A | 78. A, A, A, An, A | 79. A | 80. A, A |
| 81. An | 82. A | 83. An | 84. A,An, An |
| 85. A, A | 86. A | 87. A, A | 88. A |
| 89. × | 90. A, × | 91. × | 92. × |
| 93. × | 94. A | 95. A | 96. A |
| 97. A | 98. ×, A | 99. A | 100. A, × |
| 101. ×, A | 102. A, A | 103. ×, A | 104. A |
| 105. ×, A | 106. × | 107. A | 108. × |
| 109. A | 110. × | 111. an | 112. a |
| 113. an | 114. a | 115. a | 116. an |
| 117. a | 118. a | 119. an | 120. a |
| 121. a | 122. a | 123. an | 124. × |
| 125. ×, a | 126. a, ×, a | 127. an, a | 128. a, a |
| 129. an, a, a | 130. a | 131. a | 132. A, a |
| 133. a | 134. ×, × | 135. ×, a | 136. A |
| 137. × | 138. × | 139. a | 140. an |
| 141. an | 142. an | 143. a | 144. a |
| 145. an, an, a | 146. an | 147. a | 148. a |
| 149. a | 150. an | 151. a | 152. a |
| 153. an | 154. a | 155. an | |

## Use of Definite Article (The)

**Rule (1) :** The का प्रयोग पर्वत श्रेणियों (series of mountains) के नाम के पहले होता है।

जैसे—The Himalayas, The Alps, The Vindhyas, The Eastern ghats.

लेकिन peaks of mountain (पर्वत के चोटियों) के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Mount Everest. | (×) | Mount Everest. | (√) |
| The Mount Abu. | (×) | Mount Abu. | (√) |
| The Nanda Devi | (×) | Nanda Devi | (√) |
| The Dhaulagiri | (×) | Dhaulagiri | (√) |
| The Annapurna | (×) | Annapurna | (√) |
| The Mount Fuji | (×) | Mount fuji | (√) |
| The Mount Olympus | (×) | Mount olympus | (√) |

**Rule (2) :** The का प्रयोग नदियों (rivers) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The Ganga (The Ganges) | The Kango |
| The Thames | The Amazon |
| The Nile | The Misisipi |
| The Brahamaputra | The Huang ho |
| The Yamuna | The Indus |
| The Krishna | The Dazala |
| The Kaveri | The Irabdi |
| The Koshi | |
| The Tapti | The Satluz |
| The Hoogali | The Denub |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

| | |
|---|---|
| West Bengal is on the Hoogali | (√) |
| London is on the Thames | (√) |
| The Ganges is a sacred river | (√) |
| West Bengal is on Hoogali | (×) |
| London is on Thames | (×) |
| Ganges is a sacred river | (×) |

**Note :** लेकिन जब किसी नदी के नाम के साथ उस शहर का नाम जुड़ा हो जो उस पर स्थित है तो उस नदी के नाम के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| Kingston-on-Thames | (√) |
| Kingston-on-the Thames | (×) |
| Newcastle-upon Tyne | (√) |
| Newcastle-upon the Tyne | (×) |
| Stratford on Avon | (√) |
| Stratford on the Avon | (×) |

**Rule (3) :** The का प्रयोग सागरों (sea), महासागरों (oceans), खाड़ी (bay/gulf) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

महासागरों के नाम

The Pacific ocean *(प्रशांत महासागर)*
The Indian ocean *(हिन्द महासागर)*
The Atlantic ocean *(अटलांटिक महासागर)*
The Arctic ocean *(आर्कटिक महासागर)*
The Antarctic ocean *(अंटार्कटिक महासागर)*

सागरों के नाम

| | |
|---|---|
| The Red sea | The Dead sea |
| The Arabian sea | The Mediterrarian sea |
| The Caspian sea | The Black sea |
| The Beaufort sea | The Azob sea |

खाड़ी के नाम

| | |
|---|---|
| The Bay of Bengal | The Bay of Biscay |
| The Gulf of Mexico | The Bay of China |
| The Gulf of Guyana | The Gulf of St. Lawrence |
| The Bay of Martavan | The Persian Gulf |

लेकिन Hudson Bay *(हडसन की खाड़ी)* के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (4) :** The का प्रयोग द्वीपों के समूह (group of islands) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The Andamans | The West Indies |
| The Nicobars | The East Indies |
| The Phillipines | The Laccadive islands |

नोट : लेकिन किसी खास द्वीप के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Java | (×) | Java | (√) |
| The Sumatra | (×) | Sumatra | (√) |
| The Ceylon | (×) | Ceylon | (√) |
| The Sicily | (×) | Sicily | (√) |

**Rule (5) :** The का प्रयोग नहरों (canals), हवाईजहाजों (aeroplanes), समुद्री जहाजों (ships) तथा रेलगाड़ियों (trains) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

नहरों के नाम

| | |
|---|---|
| The Suez canal | The Sharda canal |
| The Panama canal | The Albert canal |
| The Soo canal | The Iree canal |
| The K. P. canal | The Manchester canal |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



हवाई जहाजों के नाम

The Makalu
The Meghdoot
The Kashmir Princess

समुद्री जहाजों के नाम

The Victoria
The Queen Marry
The Vikrant
The Torry Canyon

रेलगाड़ियों के नाम

The Rajadhani Express
The Toofan Express
The Pawan Express
The Vikramshila Express
The Punjab Mail
The Shramjeevi Express
The Magadh Express

**Rule (6)** : The का प्रयोग Nationality Expressing Words (नागरिकता/राष्ट्रीयता सूचक शब्दों) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The Asians | The Italians | The Japanese |
| The Chinese | The Indians | The French |
| The Americans | The Russians | The Pakistanis |
| The English | The Nepalese | The Europeans |
| The Dutch | | |

**Note** : लेकिन नागरिकता सूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग Countable Noun के रूप में होने पर, जरूरत के मुताबिक A/An का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

| with 'A' | with 'An' |
|---|---|
| A Chinese, A Nepalese, A Swiss, A Pakistani, A Frenchman, A Scot, A Dutchman, A Greek, A German, A Canadian, A Portuguese, A Burmese, A Brazilian, A German, A Pole A Scotchman, A Kuwaiti, | An Iraqi, An Israeli An African, An American An Australian, An Italian An Asian, An Arab An English man, An Indian An Irishman, |

**Rule (7)** : The का प्रयोग धार्मिक ग्रंथों (religious books) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The Gita | The Ramayana |
| The Mahabharata | The Bible |
| The Koran | The Illiad |
| The Paradise Lost | The Upanishads |
| The Puranas | The Odyssey |

**Note** : लेकिन धार्मिक ग्रंथों के नाम के पहले लेखक (Author) के नाम का प्रयोग होने पर, धार्मिक ग्रंथों के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Homer's Illiad (√)
Homer's the Illiad (×)
Valmiki's Ramayana (√)
Valmiki's the Ramayana (×)
Tulsi's Ramayana (√)
Tulsi's the Ramayana (×)
लेकिन The Illiad of Homer (√)
The Ramayana of Valmiki (√)
The Ramayana of Tulsi (√)

**Rule (8)** : The का प्रयोग दिशाओं (directions) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The east | The west | The north |
| The south | The north-east | The south-west |
| The south-east | The north-west | The upward |
| The downward | | |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

जैसे—The sun rises in east. (×)
The sun rises in the east (√)

**Note** : (i) लेकिन दिशाओं के नाम से किसी स्थान विशेष का नाम स्टार्ट हो, तो स्थान विशेष के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| With the | | Without the | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The West Bengal | (×) | West Bengal | (√) |
| The North Korea | (×) | North Korea | (√) |
| The South Korea | (×) | South Korea | (√) |
| The South Africa | (×) | South Africa | (√) |
| The North Bihar | (×) | North Bihar | (√) |

(ii) विशेष अर्थ में The east, The west का प्रयोग क्रमशः पूर्वी देशों व पश्चिमी देशों के अर्थ में भी होता है।

(iii) किसी certain name में Adjectives east/west etc + noun का प्रयोग हो तो इसके पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The East/West end — The North/South pole
But—The north of Spain — The Middle East

(iv) दिशा के नाम का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में हो तो the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। लेकिन Area का बोध हो तो the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Go <u>north</u> with he lives in the <u>north</u>
Adv. Area

उपरोक्त वाक्य में First north का प्रयोग Adverb : in a northerly direction के अर्थ में हुआ है इसलिए 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है तथा Second north का प्रयोग noun : an area in the north के अर्थ में हुआ है इसलिए the का प्रयोग हुआ है।

**Rule (9)** : The का प्रयोग मरुभूमि/रेगिस्तान (desert) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The Sahara desert. | The Gobi desert. |
| The Thar desert. | The Arabian desert. |
| The Karakum desert. | The Kalahari desert. |
| The Somali desert. | The Kazilkum desert. |
| The Mozab desert. | |

लेकिन,

The desert of Sahara. (√)
The desert of Thar (√)
The desert of Kalahari (√)

**Rule (10)** : The का प्रयोग धार्मिक सम्प्रदाय (religious community) के नाम पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The Hindus | The Muslims | The Sikhs |
| The Christians | The Jews | The Persians |

**Rule (11)** : The का प्रयोग physical position expressing words (भौतिक स्थान सूचक शब्दों) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| at the top of | on the top of |
| at the bottom of | the front of |
| the back of | the centre of |
| the inside | the outside |

**Note** : लेकिन on top or on top of का प्रयोग भी होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (12) :** The का प्रयोग दुनिया की अनूठी वस्तुओं के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The sun | The moon | The earth |
| The stars | The sky | The Equator |
| The world | The universe | The Pole Star |
| The North Pole | The South Pole | The sea |
| The ocean | The air | The wind |
| The mountains | The weather | The smoke |
| The fog | The sun shine | The town |
| The country | The rain | |

**Rule (13) :** The का प्रयोग Government branches *(सरकार की शाखाओं)* or Armed forces *(सशस्त्र सैनिकों)* के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Judiciary | *(न्यायपालिका)* | The Legislature | *(विधायिका* |
| The Executive | *(कार्यपालिका)* | The Airforce | *(वायु सेना)* |
| The Navy | *(जल सेना)* | The Army | *(थल सेना)* |
| The Police | *(सिपाही)* | | |

**Rule (14) :** The का प्रयोग *ऐतिहासिक साम्राज्य/जाति/स्थान/वंश/इमारत/घटना/अवधि/काल* के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

(i) ऐतिहासिक साम्राज्य (Historical Empire)

| | |
|---|---|
| The Roman Empire | The Mughal Empire |
| The Gupta Empire | The Vijay Nagar Empire |
| The Kushan Empire | The Shake Empire |

(ii) ऐतिहासिक जाति (Historical caste)

| | |
|---|---|
| The Negroes | The Aryans |
| The Eskimoes | The Red Indian |
| The Pigmies | |

(iii) ऐतिहासिक स्थान (Historical Place)

| | |
|---|---|
| The Gandhi Maidan | The Panipat |
| The Kaba | The pyramid |
| The Pentagon | The White House |

(iv) ऐतिहासिक वंश (Historical dynasty)

| | |
|---|---|
| The Tudor dynasty | The Pal dynasty |
| The Slave dynasty | The Chandel dynasty |
| The Mauryan dynasty | The Solanki dynasty |
| The Chola dynasty | The Parmar dynasty |
| The Yadav dynasty | The Chalukya dynasty |

(v) ऐतिहासिक इमारत (Historical building)

| | |
|---|---|
| The Tajmahal | The Red Fort |
| The Qutub Minar | The Pyramids |
| The Golghar | The Jama Masjid |
| The Pancha Mahal | |

(vi) ऐतिहासिक घटना (Historical event)

| | |
|---|---|
| The Battle of Panipat | The Russian Revoluiton |
| The French Revolution | The Civil War |
| The English Revolution | The Industrial Revolution |
| The Chinese Revolution | |

(vii) ऐतिहासिक अवधि/काल (Historical period/age)

| | |
|---|---|
| The Restoration Period | The Victorian Age |
| The Middle Ages | The Renaissance |
| The Elizabethan Age. | The pre-historic age |
| The New Stone Age | The Old Stone Age |

**Rule (15) :** The का प्रयोग राजनीतिक दलों (political parties) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The Congress Party | The Communist Party |
| The Janta Dal | The Samata Party |
| The Bhartiya Janta Party | The Democratic Party |

**Rule (16) :** The का प्रयोग वाद्य यंत्रों (musical instruments) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| Right | | Wrong | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Tabla | (✓) | Tabla | (×) |
| The Harmonium | (✓) | Harmonium | (×) |
| The Guitar | (✓) | Guitar | (×) |
| The Piano | (✓) | Piano | (×) |
| The Dholak | (✓) | Dholak | (×) |
| The Violin | (✓) | Violin | (×) |
| The Trumpet | (✓) | Trumpet | (×) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

(i) Sudhir Babu cannot play the piano. (✓)
Sudhir Babu cannot play a piano. (×)
Sudhir Babu cannot play piano. (×)

(ii) My elder daughter wants to play the dholak. (✓)
My elder daughter wants to play a dholak. (×)
My elder daughter wants to play dholak. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन musical instruments का प्रयोग Countable Noun के रूप में होने पर, इसके पहले A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He has bought a piano. (✓)
He has bought the piano. (×)
He has bought piano. (×)
She gave me a harmonium. (✓)
She gave me the harmonium. (×)
She gave me harmonium. (×)

**Rule (17) :** *The + Some Adjectives* का प्रयोग Plural Noun के रूप में व्यक्तियों का वर्ग (class) बताने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

| The + Adjectives | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| The rich | rich people | *(अमीर लोग)* |
| The poor | poor people | *(गरीब लोग)* |
| The lame | lame people | *(लंगड़े लोग)* |
| The sick | sick people | *(बीमार लोग)* |
| The dumb | dumb people | *(गूँगे लोग)* |
| The deaf | deaf people | *(बहरे लोग)* |
| The young | young people | *(युवा लोग)* |
| The blind | blind people | *(अंधे लोग)* |
| The educated | educated people | *(शिक्षित लोग)* |
| The wicked | wicked people | *(दुष्ट लोग)* |
| The honest | honest people | *(ईमानदार लोग)* |
| The dishonest | dishonest people | *(बेईमान लोग)* |

ध्यान दें :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The riches | (×) | The poors | (×) |
| The lames | (×) | The sicks | (×) |
| The dumbs | (×) | The deafs | (×) |
| The youngs | (×) | The blinds | (×) |
| The educateds | (×) | The wickeds | (×) |
| The honests | (×) | The dishonests | (×) |

**Note :** लेकिन

A poor man = *एक गरीब आदमी*
A blind man = *एक अंधा आदमी*
A rich man = *एक अमीर आदमी*
An honest man = *एक ईमानदार आदमी*
A sick man = *एक बीमार आदमी का प्रयोग होता है*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (18) :** The का प्रयोग Superlative degree के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| Right | | Wrong | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The tallest man | (√) | A tallest man | (×) |
| The fastest train | (√) | A fastest train | (×) |
| The happiest man | (√) | A happiest man | (×) |
| The most handsome boy | (√) | A most handsome boy | (×) |

**Note :** (i) Most का प्रयोग very (बहुत) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसके पहले A का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

This is a most useful river. (most = बहुत)

(ii) लेकिन Most का प्रयोग 'अधिकांश' के अर्थ में होने पर, Articles (a/an/the) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Most girls are attractive.
*अधिकांश लड़कियाँ खूबसूरत होती हैं।*
Most of the students are laborious.
*अधिकांश छात्रगण परिश्रमी हैं।*

(iii) कभी-कभी पाठकगण most, best, nicest, hardest आदि को Adjective का Superlative form समझ लेते हैं। ऐसा सोचना ठीक होते हुए भी गलत हो जाता है, क्योंकि इनका प्रयोग Superlative Adverbs के रूप में भी होता है। इनका प्रयोग Superlative Adverbs के रूप में होने पर The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। लेकिन इनका प्रयोग Adjective के Superlative form के रूप में होने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

(1) What books do you like most ? (√)
What books do you like the most ? (×)

(2) Which persons do you like best ? (√)
Which persons do you like the best ? (×)

उपरोक्त Examples (1) और (2) में most or best का प्रयोग Superlative Adverb के रूप में हुआ है। अतः The का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. He is the best student in his class (√)
He is best student in his class (×)

2. She is the most beautiful girl in the village (√)
She is most beautiful girl in the village (×)

उपरोक्त Example : (1) और (2) में best or most का प्रयोग Adjective के Superlative form के रूप में हुआ है। अतः The का प्रयोग होगा।

**Rule (19) :** The का प्रयोग Ordinal Adjectives *(क्रमवाचक विशेषण)* के पहले होता है।

**Note :** (i) Ordinal Adjectives—first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, ... etc., next, last को Ordinal Adjectives कहा जाता है। जैसे—

The first Prime Minister of India. (√)
The last chapter of this book. (√)
The next bus. (√)
The second Chief Minister of Jharkhand. (√)

(ii) लेकिन Roman figures के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

(i) King George the V (×)
(ii) King George V *[Read as king George the fifth]* (√)
(i) Queen Elizabeth the II (×)
(ii) Queen Elizabeth II *[Read as Queen Elizabeth the second]* (√)

ध्यान दें :

1. Next/Last + time expressing words [समय सूचक शब्दों जैसे—week/month/year/day/night/morning/evening/noon/after noon/midnight/Monday, Tuesday, ..... etc./January, February ..... etc.] के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| Wrong | | Right | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The last week | (×) | Last week | (√) |
| The next month | (×) | Next month | (√) |
| The last March | (×) | Last March | (√) |
| The next morning | (×) | Next morning | (√) |
| The last night | (×) | Last night | (√) |
| The next Monday | (×) | Next Monday | (√) |
| The last year | (×) | Last year | (√) |
| The next day | (×) | Next day | (√) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

(i) The Director comes here next week. (√)
The Director comes here the next week (×)

(ii) He came here last night (√)
He came here the last night (×)

(iii) I saw a beggar last Monday (√)
I saw a beggar the last Monday (×)

2. At first, At last का प्रयोग The के बिना होता है, अर्थात् At the first, At the last का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

3. नीचे दिये गए Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें और समझें—

| With 'The' (period of time) | Without 'The' (point of time) |
|---|---|
| For the last week | Since last week |
| For the last month | Since last month |
| For the last year | Since last year |
| For the last century | Since last century |
| For the last Monday | Since last Monday or Since Monday last |
| For the last January | Since January last or since last January |
| For the last two days | Since last two days |
| For the last two weeks | Since last two weeks |
| For the last two years | Since last two years |
| For the last two months | Since last two months |

**Rule (20) :** The का प्रयोग आविष्कार (Invention) की गई वस्तुओं के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The television or The T.V. | (√) | The wireless. | (√) |
| The telephone | (√) | The telescope | (√) |
| The cinema | (√) | The microscope | (√) |
| The stethoscope | (√) | The electric bulb | (√) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Who invented the telescope ? (√)
Who invented telescope ? (×)
Who invented a telescope ? (×)

लेकिन आविष्कार की गई वस्तुओं का प्रयोग Countable Noun के रूप में हो तो, जरूरत के मुताबिक A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Binay has bought a televison set or a T.V. (√)
Mr. Thakur has not bought a telephone. (√)
Binay has bought the television. (√)
Mr. Thakur has not bought the telephone. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



जाने ?

| Right | | Wrong | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Listen to the radio | (√) | Listen to radio | (×) |
| On the radio | (√) | On radio | (×) |
| Watch television | (√) | Watch the televison | (×) |
| On television | (√) | On the television | (×) |
| On T.V. | (√) | On the T.V. | (×) |

**Rule (21) :** Comparative Degree + of the two + Plural Countable Noun के expression में Comparative Degree के पहले 'The' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Suman is the more handsome of the two boys (√)
Suman is more handsome of the two boys (×)
She is the better of the two girls (√)
She is better of the two girls (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. She is the best of the two girls. (×)
2. She is the better of two girls. (×)
3. She is the better of the two girl. (×)
4. She is the better than the two girls. (×)
5. She is the better of the girls. (×)

ऊपर के Example (1) में best की जगह better का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि of the two + P. C. N. के पहले Comparative Degree का प्रयोग होता है।

ऊपर के Example (2) में two girls के पहले The का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The + Comparative + of the two + P.C.N. का प्रयोग होता है।

ऊपर के Example (3) में girl की जगह girls का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि of the two के बाद हमेशा P.C.N. का प्रयोग होता है।

ऊपर के Example (4) में than की जगह of का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The + Comparative के बाद या the two + P.C.N. के पहले selection के भाव के लिए of का प्रयोग होता है, न कि than का।

ऊपर के Example (5) में of the के बाद two का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The + Comparative का प्रयोग दो में से किसी एक को select करने के लिए होता है।

**Note :** लेकिन सामान्यत: comparative degree के पहले 'Articles' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Nilu is more beautiful than Sweta. (√)
Nilu is the more beautiful than Sweta. (×)

**Rule (22) :** यदि दो Comparatives का प्रयोग Sentence में दो वस्तुओं में समानान्तर रूप से बढ़ोतरी या गिरावट का बोध कराने के लिए हो, तो प्रत्येक Comparative के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है।

**Structure :**

*The + Comparative + S + V + ( , ) + The + Comparative + S + V + (.)*

जैसे—

The more he gets, the more he wants. (√)
The more he gets, more he wants. (×)
More he gets, the more he wants. (×)
The higher we go, the cooler we feel. (√)
The deeper the well is, the cooler the weather is (√)

**Rule (23) :** Comparative Degree के बाद Singular Countable Noun का प्रयोग हो तो Comparative Degree के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Lata is a better singer than Asha. (√)
Lata is better singer than Asha. (×)
This is an older pen than that. (√)
This is older pen than that. (×)

**Rule (24) :** *Noun + of + Noun* के *structure* (बनावट) में first Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The water of this well. (√)
The girls of this school. (√)
The people of Jharkhand. (√)

**Rule (25) :** The का प्रयोग समाचारपत्रों या अखबारों के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The Times of India | The Indian Nation |
| The New York Times | The Observer |
| The Hindustan Times | The Star |
| The Times | The Independent |
| The Daily News | The Eastern sun |

**Note :** लेकिन Possessive के बाद समाचार पत्रों के नाम का प्रयोग होने पर समाचारपत्रों के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Today's the Hindustan Times (×)
Today's Hindustan Times (√)
Our The Times of India (×)
Our Times of India (√)

**Rule (26) :** The का प्रयोग संग्रहालयों (museums), पुस्तकालयों (libraries), होटलों (hotels), भोजनालयों (restaurants), नाटकगृहों (theatres), क्लबों (clubs), सिनेमाघरों (cinema halls) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

1. संग्रहालयों या अजायबघरों के नाम :
   The British Museum — The Patna Museum
2. पुस्तकालयों के नाम :
   The British Library — The Congress Library
3. होटलों के नाम :
   The Ashoka Hotel — The Samrat International
   The Tajmahal hotel
4. भोजनालयों के नाम :
   The Maurya — The Apasara
   The Hilton — The Mandarin,
   The Sheraton
5. नाटकगृहों के नाम :
   The Globe Theatre — The Apasara Theatre
6. क्लबों के नाम—
   The Lion's Club — The Rotary Club
7. सिनेमाघरों के नाम :
   The Uma Talkies — The Poonam Talkies
   The Light House — The Amar Talkies
   The Veena Talkies

**Note :** Hotels तथा Restaurants का प्रयोग possessive form में हो तो the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Claridge's | (√) | The Claridge's | (×) |
| Salvo's | (√) | The salvo's | (×) |
| Tiffany's | (√) | The Tiffany's | (×) |

**Rule (27) :** The का प्रयोग इन सार्वजनिक स्थानों के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The zoo | The State Bank |
| The Central Bank | The Tata Textiles |
| The Botanical garden | The National Highway |

**Note :** लेकिन किसी स्टेशन, पार्क, रोड के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| Wrong | | Right | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Patna Junction | (×) | Patna Junction | (√) |
| The Kamataul Station | (×) | Kamatnul Station | (√) |
| The Hazipur Station | (×) | Hazipur Station | (√) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Central Park | (×) | Central Park | (√) |
| The Club Road | (×) | Club Road | (√) |

**Rule (28)** : The का प्रयोग Parts of the body (शरीर के भागों) के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

I caught him by the arm. (√)
I caught him by an arm. (×)
I caught him by arm. (×)
She was wounded in the leg. (√)
She was wounded in leg. (×)
She was wounded in a leg. (×)

**Note** : (i) बीमारियों के नाम के बाद parts of the body का प्रयोग हो तो parts of the body के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Cancer of the lung (√)
Inflammation of the throat (√)

(ii) At hand, In hand, on foot का प्रयोग the के बिना होता है। जैसे—

At the hand (×) In the hand (×) On the foot (×)

(iii) Parts of the body का प्रयोग Countable Noun के रूप में हो तो, इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A / An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A cow has a mouth, a nose and a head.

**Rule (29)** : Clause or Phrase में प्रयुक्त Noun के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

*The girl in the corner* is my sister. (√)
*The girl with big blue eyes* is my beloved. (√)
*The house in which I live* is new. (√)

**Rule (30)** : Demonstrative Adjective (जैसे—this, that, these, those, such, the same, some, any, acertain, certain, other, another, any other ) के बाद Articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| This elephant | (√) | Such water | (√) |
| This an elephant | (×) | Such a water | (×) |
| This the elephant | (×) | Such the water | (×) |

**Note** : लेकिन Such + a/an + S.C.N का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Such a girl | (√) | Such an elephant | (√) |

**Rule (31)** : Possessive Adjectives (my, our, your, his, her, its, their) के बाद The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Our the best prime minister (×)
Our best prime minister (√)
Your the father (×)
Your father (√)

ध्यान दें : 's [apostrophe 's' ] के बाद भी The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ram's the father | (×) | Ram's father | (√) |
| Mohan's the pen | (×) | Mohan's pen | (√) |

**Rule (32)** : Common Noun का प्रयोग Abstract Noun के रूप में हो तो, Common Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है, लेकिन अर्थ बदल जाता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The father in him | *(उसके अंदर का पितृत्व का गुण)* |
| The mother in her | *(उसके अंदर का मातृभाव का गुण)* |
| The brother in him | *(उसके अंदर का भ्रातृत्व का गुण)* |
| The friend in him | *(उसके अंदर का मित्रता का गुण)* |
| The teacher in me | *(मेरे अन्दर का शिक्षक का गुण)* |

इन वाक्यों को देखें : जैसे—

When I found a baby, the father aroused in me. (√)
When I found a baby, father aroused in me. (×)
The mother in my wife cried out. (√)
Mother in my wife cried out. (×)

**Rule (33)** : किसी title / post से किसी व्यक्ति को denote (इंगित) करना हो, तो title or post के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The Prime Minister | The Education Minister |
| The Finance Minister | The Home Minister |
| The Suprintendent of Police | The District Magistrate |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

The Chief Minister comes here tomorrow. (√)
Chief Minister comes here tomorrow. (×)
The Prime Minister addresses the nation tomorrow. (√)
Prime Minister addresses the nation tomorrow. (×)

**Rule (34)** : Noun in apposition के case में प्रयुक्त Common Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Tagore, the poet, was famous. (√)
Tagore, poet, was famous. (×)
Zakir, the painter, is laborious. (√)
Zakir, painter, is laborious. (×)
Rupesh, the shopkeeper, is honest. (√)
Rupesh, shopkeeper, is honest. (×)

**Rule (35)** : The का प्रयोग some of, both of, all of, most of, many of, half of, A large number of, the majority of, either of, neither of, each of, none of, several of, various of, etc के बाद प्रयुक्त Plural Countable Noun और Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

All of the *girls* have gone there. (√)
All of girls have gone there. (×)
Half of the *milk* has been sold. (√)
Half of *milk* has been sold. (×)

**Rule (36)** : 'The' का प्रयोग 'के हिसाब से/की दर से' के अर्थ में Singular Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Diesel is sold by the litre. (√)
Diesel is sold by a litre. (×)
Diesel is sold by litre. (×)
Bananas are sold by the dozen. (√)
Bananas are sold by a dozen. (×)
Bananas are sold by dozen. (×)

लेकिन—Rice is sold Rs. 10/- a kilo. (√)
Rice is sold Rs. 10/- the kilo. (×)

**Rule (37)** : जब किसी Proper Noun की तुलना समान वर्ग के किसी दूसरे Proper Noun से गुणों के आधार पर हो, तो दूसरे Proper Noun के पहले 'The' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Mumbai is the London of India. (√)
Ahmedabad is the Manchester of India. (√)
Abdul Kalam is the Newton of India. (√)
He is the Dara Singh of Bihar (√)

**Rule (38)** : दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों का नाम एक ही जैसा हो और उनमें से किसी एक को different (भिन्न) दिखाना हो, तो भिन्न दिखाये जाने वाले व्यक्ति के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There are two Mohans in the class, but I like the Mohan who is absent. (√)
There are two Mohans in the class, but I like Mohan who is absent. (×)

**Rule (39)** : *The + Plural surname* का प्रयोग परिवार (family) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। लेकिन इसका प्रयोग सीमित है।

Surname—Thakur, Gupta, Jha, Mishra, Sinha, Singh, Pandey etc. जैसे—

The Thakurs (अर्थ—Mr. Thakur, Mrs Thakur and their children)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


The Guptas (अर्थ Mr. Gupta, Mrs Gupta and their children)

**Rule (40)** : The Misses + surname का प्रयोग 'दो या दो से अधिक कुंवारी बहनों का बोध कराने तथा एक साथ सम्बोधित करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The Misses Sinha अर्थ—The two or more than two unmarried sisters of Mr. Sinha

[Mr. Sinha की दो या दो से अधिक कुँवारी/अविवाहित बहनें]

**Rule (41)** : The का प्रयोग choirs (गायकों की मंडली), orchestra (ऑर्केस्ट्रा), pop. groups (पॉपग्रुप्स) के नाम से पहले होता है। जैसे—

The Bach Choir
The Philadelphia Orchestra
The Beatles

**Rule (42)** : The का प्रयोग कुछ देशों व राज्यों के नाम के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The United Kingdom | The U.K. |
| The Netherlands | The Yemen |
| The United States | The Hague |
| The Sudan | The Soviet Union |
| The U.S.S.R. | |

Note : (i) लेकिन देशों व राज्यों के नाम का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने पर भी The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The India of 1947 The Bihar of 1930

(ii) किसी देश के नाम के पहले kingdom, Republic, federation का प्रयोग रहने पर the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Kingdom of Macedon.
The Republic of South Africa.
World war I (√) World war the I (×)

**Rule (43)** : *Date + of + Month's name* के structrue में date के साथ The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The fourteenth of November
The fifth of September

Note : (i) लेकिन March 23rd (√) 15 August (√) का प्रयोग The के बिना होता है।

(ii) *On + the + date + month's name* का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

On the 2nd october.

**Rule (44)** : यदि किसी Proper Noun के पहले Adjective, Adjective Phrase or Adjective Clause का प्रयोग हो, तो Adjective, Adjective Phrase or Adjective Clause के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| The immortal Nehru | The wise Solomon |
| The famous Napoleon | The great Alexander |
| The great Akbar | |

Note : (i) लेकिन Alexander, the Great; Akbar, the Great का प्रयोग भी होता है।

**Rule (45)** : The का प्रयोग पत्रिका (Magazine), आयोग (commission), संस्था (Institution) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

The Modern Language Review.
The Illustrated Weekly.
The Mandal Commission.
The Thakkar Commission.
The High Court.
The Supreme Court.
The Ministry of Education.

Note : लेकिन Parliament के पहले The का प्रयोग सामान्यतः नहीं होता है।

**Rule (46)** : The का प्रयोग इस प्रकार भी होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| for the time being | The day before yesterday. |
| keep to the left | What is the trouble ? |
| keep to the right | What is the situation ? |
| in the right | What is the problem ? |
| in the wrong | What is the point ? |
| speak the truth | What is the matter? |
| by the way | What is the situation ? |
| all the way | during the day |
| at the moment | |
| in the afternoon | in the night |
| in the daytime | in the morning |
| in the evening | during the morning |

Note : नीचे दिये गए Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Go | to | the station, the bus stop, the airport, the zoo, the museum, the theatre, the cinema, the movies, the library, the pictures, the circus |

**Rule (47)** : Proper Noun के बाद प्रयुक्त होने वाले Countable noun से पेशा या व्यवसाय का बोध हो तो प्रयुक्त Countable noun के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Prakash, the typist
Sourabh, the accountant

**Rule (48)** : Adjective + Noun से बने हुए नाम के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

the Arabian gulf
the New forest
the High street

## No Use of Articles

**Rule (1)** : The का प्रयोग भाषाओं (languages) के नाम के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The English is spoken in England. (×)
English is spoken in England. (√)
The people of India speak the Hindi. (×)
The people of India speak Hindi. (√)
He knows the Hindi, the Urdu and the Marathi. (×)
He knows Hindi, Urdu and Marathi. (√)

**Note** : (i) *The + Name of language + language* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Do you speak the German language ? (√)

(ii) Translate word का प्रयोग भाषा के नाम के पहले होने पर, भाषा के नाम के पहले The का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Translate the Hindi into the English. (√)
Translated from the French. (√)

**Rule (2)** : The का प्रयोग Proper Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Patna is the capital of Bihar. (√)
The Patna is the capital of the Bihar. (×)
America is a rich country. (√)
The America is a rich country. (×)

लेकिन,

The Patna of Bihar is dangerous today. (√)
Patna of Bihar is dangerous today. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (3)** : The का प्रयोग विषयों के नाम के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Physics is a difficult subject. (√)
The physics is a difficult subject. (×)

**Note** : लेकिन विषयों के नाम का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने पर/करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The physics of Mohan are poor. (√)
Physics of Mohan are poor. (×)

ध्यान दें :

जब Mathematics, Economics, Statistics, Physics का प्रयोग क्रमशः Mathematical abilities. (गणितीय योग्यताओं), Economic facts (आर्थिक तथ्यों) Data (आँकड़ों), Sums (हिसाबों) के अर्थ में होता है, तो इसके पहले The का प्रयोग होता है, तथा इसे Plural माना जाता है। अतः इसके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (4)** : Each, Every, Either, Neither के बाद प्रयुक्त Singular Noun के पहले a/an/the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Each boy has a pen. (√)
Each a boy has a pen. (×)
Each the boy has a pen. (×)
Every room is not ventilated. (√)
Every a room is not ventilated. (×)
Every the room is not ventilated. (×)

**Note** : Each, Every, Either, Neither को Distributive Adjectives कहा जाता है।

**Rule (5)** : The का प्रयोग Uncountable Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| Wrong | | Right | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The gold | (×) | gold | (√) |
| The silver | (×) | silver | (√) |
| The copper | (×) | copper | (√) |
| The honesty | (×) | honesty | (√) |
| The happiness | (×) | happiness | (√) |
| The truth | (×) | truth. | (√) |
| The beauty | (×) | beauty | (√) |
| The water | (×) | water | (√) |
| The milk | (×) | milk | (√) |
| The rice | (×) | rice | (√) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Honesty is the best policy. (√)
The honesty is the best policy. (×)
Gold is a precious metal. (√)
The gold is a precious metal. (×)
I love truth and wisdom. (√)
He was a man of justice and mercy. (√)

लेकिन Uncountable Nouns (Material और Abstract Nouns) का प्रयोग Particularised sense में करने/होने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The gold of Nepal is cheap. (√)
The water of this well is fresh. (√)
The honesty of Mukesh is praiseworthy. (√)
The beauty of Rekha is legendary. (√)
The bravery of Ashoka is praiseworthy. (√)

**Rule (6)** : The का प्रयोग खेलों के नाम के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| Wrong | | Right | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The football | (×) | football | (√) |
| The cricket | (×) | cricket | (√) |
| The hockey | (×) | hockey | (√) |
| The polo | (×) | polo | (√) |
| The tennis | (×) | tennis | (√) |
| The baseball | (×) | baseball | (√) |
| The volleyball | (×) | volleyball | (√) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He plays cricket. (√)
He plays the cricket. (×)
Hockey is a popular game. (√)
The hockey is a popular game. (×)

लेकिन names of games (खेलों के नामों) का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने/करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The cricket of Bihar is not good. (√)
Cricket of Bihar is not good. (×)
The volleyball of India is not in good condition. (√)
Volleyball of India is not in good condition. (×)

**Rule (7)** : The का प्रयोग Plural Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The Books are made of paper. (×)
Books are made of paper. (√)
The mangoes are grown in Bihar. (×)
Mangoes are grown in Bihar. (√)

लेकिन Plural Nouns का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने/करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The mangoes of Bihar are better than those of Uttar Pradesh. (√)
Mangoes of Bihar are better than those of Uttar Pradesh. (×)
The girls of this batch are very intelligent. (√)
Girls of this batch are very intelligent. (×)

**Rule (8)** : जब man, woman, humanity, mankind का प्रयोग व्यापक अर्थ में होता है, तो The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Man is mortal. *(मनुष्य मरणशील होता है।)* (√)
Woman is the ornament of the home. (√)

लेकिन ऊपर दिये गये Nouns का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने/करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The woman who lives there is very active. (√)
He is the man who has stolen my watch. (√)

**Note** : जब Man, woman ..... etc. का प्रयोग नीचिस अर्थों में Countable Noun के रूप में होता है, तो A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He met a woman. (√)
He met woman. (×)

**Rule (9)** : Nature, Science, Death, life, Parliament, Freedom, Love, Society इत्यादि के पहले सामान्य अर्थों में The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Nature looks beautiful in the morning. (√)
The nature looks beautiful in the morning. (×)
Science has changed our life. (√)
The science has changed our life. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Life is full of pleasures and sorrows. (√)
The life is full of pleasures and sorrows. (×)
India got freedom in 1947. (√)
India got the freedom in 1947. (×)
Love is great. (√)
The love is great. (×)
Society does not allow us to do wrong. (√)
The society does not allow us to do wrong. (×)

लेकिन ऊपर दिये गये Nouns का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने या करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The nature of Gariya is not good. (√)
Nature of Gariya is not good. (×)
The society of our village is bad. (√)
Society of our village is bad. (×)
The love between Radha and Krishna is immortal. (√)
Love between Radha and Krishna is immortal. (×)

**Note** : ऊपर दिये गए Nouns के पहले Adjectives का प्रयोग होने पर अथवा Countable Nouns के रूप में प्रयुक्त होने पर इनके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A / An का प्रयोग होता है।

Why do we lead a *miserable* life ? (√)
Why do we lead miserable life ? (×)
Every country has a *parliament*. (√)
Every country has parliament. (×)

**Rule (10)** : The का प्रयोग kind of, sort of, type of, variety of के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

What sort of man is he ? (√)
What sort of a/the man is he ? (×)
What kind of flower is this ? (√)
What kind of a/the flower is this ? (×)
My wife does not like this type of pen. (√)
My wife does not like this type of a/the pen. (×)

**Rule (11)** : The का प्रयोग भोजन के नाम (name of meal) के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| Wrong | | Right | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The breakfast | (×) | breakfast | (√) |
| The lunch | (×) | lunch | (√) |
| The dinner | (×) | dinner | (√) |
| The supper | (×) | supper | (√) |
| The tea | (×) | tea | (√) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. We have dinner at night. (√)
2. Breakfast is ready. (√)
3. He was invited to lunch. (√)

Examples (1), (2) और (3) में dinner, breakfast, lunch का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में किया गया है। अतः Articles का प्रयोग नहीं किया गया है।

नोट : (i) Dinner, breakfast, lunch, supper, tea के पहले Adjectives का प्रयोग होने पर करने पर A / An का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे

My mother gave me a good breakfast. (√)
My mother gave me good breakfast. (×)

(ii) जब meal / dinner से विशेष प्रकार के भोजन का बोध होता है तो Articles का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Five guests were invited to a dinner given to welcome the new chairman.

(iii) लेकिन भोजन के नाम (breakfast, dinner ..... etc.) का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने या करने पर The प्रयोग होता है। या 'विशेष तरह के भोजन' के भाव को बताने के लिए भी the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We enjoyed the dinner he gave us. (√)
The breakfast was not properly served. (√)

**Rule (12)** : *By + Means of Transport* के expression में A / An / The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| Incorrect | | correct | |
|---|---|---|---|
| with a/an/the | | without 'the' | |
| by a land | (×) | by land | (√) |
| by the land | (×) | | |
| by a sea | (×) | by sea | (√) |
| by the sea | (×) | | |
| by an air | (×) | by air | (√) |
| by the air | (×) | | |
| by a train | (×) | by train | (√) |
| by the train | (×) | | |
| by a bus | (×) | by bus | (√) |
| by the bus | (×) | | |
| by a taxi | (×) | by taxi | (√) |
| by the taxi | (×) | | |
| by an aeroplane | (×) | by aeroplane | (√) |
| by the aeroplane | (×) | | |
| by a car | (×) | by car | (√) |
| by the car | (×) | | |
| by a jeep | (×) | by jeep | (√) |
| by the jeep | (×) | | |
| by a boat | (×) | by boat | (√) |
| by the boat | (×) | | |
| by a ship | (×) | by ship | (√) |
| by the ship | (×) | | |
| by a plane | (×) | by plane | (√) |
| by the plane | (×) | | |
| by a steamer | (×) | by steamer | (√) |
| by the steamer | (×) | | |
| by a cycle | (×) | by cycle | (√) |
| by the cycle | (×) | | |
| by a bicycle | (×) | by bicycle | (√) |
| by the bicycle | (×) | | |
| by a scooter | (×) | by scooter | (√) |
| by the scooter | (×) | | |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

We are going to Delhi by train. (√)
We are going to Delhi by a train. (×)
We are going to Delhi by the train. (×)
He goes to Mumbai by air / aeroplane. (√)
He goes to Mumbai by an air / aeroplane. (×)
He goes to Mumbai by the air / aeroplane. (×)

**Note** : लेकिन Means of transport (परिवहन के साधनों) का प्रयोग Countable Noun के रूप में होने या करने पर A / An / the का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

He has to buy a car. (√)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He has to buy car. (×)
A girl was run over by a jeep. (√)
A girl was run over by jeep. (×)
The car which I have bought is new. (√)
A car which I have bought is new. (×)
Car which I have bought is new. (×)

याद रखें : कुछ phrases ऐसे हैं, जिनमें Means of Transport के पहले 'The' का प्रयोग होता है।

| Correct (with 'the') | Incorrect (without 'the') |
|---|---|
| ride on the bicycle | ride on bicycle |
| sit on the bicycle | sit on bicycle |
| sit in the car | sit in car |
| sit in the taxi | sit in taxi |
| sit in the bus | sit in bus |
| be on the train | be on train |
| be on the bus | be on bus |
| be on the plane | be on plane |
| take the train | take train |
| catch the train | catch train |
| board the plane | board plane |
| ride on the scooter | ride on scooter |
| sit on the motorcycle | sit on motorcycle |

ध्यान दें :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ride on a bicycle | (×) | sit on a bicycle | (×) |
| sit in a car | (×) | sit in a taxi | (×) |
| sit in a jeep | (×) | be on a plane | (×) |
| sit on a bus | (×) | be on a train | (×) |
| catch a train | (×) | board a plane | (×) |

लेकिन—Take a train का प्रयोग भाषा में सामान्यतः होता है।

**Rule (13) :** The का प्रयोग post of / position of / rank of / title of / job of के बाद प्रयुक्त Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है। A/An का प्रयोग भी नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The post of principal. | (√) | The post of the principal. | (×) |
| The post of a principal. | (×) | The job of clerk. | (√) |
| The job of the clerk. | (×) | The job of a clerk. | (×) |
| The position of peon. | (√) | The position of the poen. | (×) |
| The position of a peon. | (×) | The rank of D.S.P. | (√) |
| The rank of the D.S.P. | (×) | The rank of a D.S.P. | (×) |
| The title of Netajee. | (√) | The title of the Netajee. | (×) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

His grandmother was given the title of Netajee. (√)
His grandmother was given the title of a / the Netajee. (×)
Mr. V.M. Jha has been promoted to the rank of S.P. (√)
Mr V.M. Jha has been promoted to the rank of an / the S.P. (×)

**Rule (14) :** The का प्रयोग name of seasons (ऋतुओं के नाम) के पहले नहीं होता है और होता भी है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| In spring | (√) | In winter | (√) |
| In summer | (√) | In autumn | (√) |

लेकिन,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| In the spring season | (√) | In the summer season | (√) |
| In the winter season | (√) | In the Autumn season | (√) |
| In the spring | (√) | In the summer | (√) |
| In the winter | (√) | In the autumn | (√) |

**Note :** (i) ऋतुओं के नाम का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने/करने पर भी the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Mr. V. Pathak went to Kashmir in the summer of 2009. (√)
Mr. V. Pathak went to Kashmir in summer of 2009. (×)

(ii) ऋतुओं के नाम का प्रयोग Countable Noun के रूप में होने/करने पर A/An का प्रयोग हो सकता है/किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

Nilu will come here in a winter. (a = any)

यहाँ a winter का अर्थ 'किसी जाड़े में' है।

**Rule (15) :** The का प्रयोग त्योहारों एवं छुट्टियों के नाम (name of festivals or holidays) के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Holi | (×) | Holi | (√) |
| The Deepawali | (×) | Deepawali | (√) |
| The Christmas | (×) | Christmas | (√) |
| The Easter | (×) | Easter | (√) |
| The New Year | (×) | New year | (√) |
| The Republic Day | (×) | Republic Day | (√) |
| The Good Friday | (×) | Good Friday | (√) |
| The Independence Day | (×) | Independence Day | (√) |

**Note :** लेकिन त्योहारों एवं छुट्टियों के नाम के साथ holiday or holidays शब्द का प्रयोग होने पर, The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The New Year holiday. (√) The Easter holidays. (√)
The Deepawali holidays. (√) The Christmas holidays. (√)

देखें—The holi of last year was pleasant for me. (√)

**Rule (16) :** जब कोई व्यक्ति family relations expressing words (पारिवारिक संबंधों को अभिव्यक्त करनेवाले शब्दों) जैसे—Mother, Father, Uncle, Aunt or Auntie, Brother, Sister, Dad, Mummy, Mum etc. का प्रयोग अपने माता, पिता, चाचा, चाची, भाई, बहन ..... etc. के लिए करता है, तो इनके पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The brother will come soon. (×)
Brother will come soon. (√)
The Mummy is here. (×)
Mummy is here. (√)

**Note :** (i) Father, mother, sister, brother का प्रयोग title के रूप में होने या करने पर The का प्रयोग हो सकता है। जैसे—

The father was absent from the school. (√)
[The father = स्कूल/संस्था के प्रधान (क्रिश्चन)]
The sister examined the copy. (×)
[The sister = स्कूल/संस्था की सहयोगी/शिक्षिका (क्रिश्चन)]

(ii) आजकल sister शब्द का प्रयोग 'नर्स' को सम्बोधित करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The sister serves the patient. (√)

(iii) Family relation expressing words का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने / करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The father of Chamcham is a teacher. (√)
Father of Chamcham is a teacher. (×)

**Rule (17) :** The का प्रयोग बीमारियों (diseases) के नाम के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The diabetes | (×) | diabetes |
| The typhoid | (×) | typhoid |
| The tuberculosis | (×) | tuberculosis |
| The malaria | (×) | malaria |
| The influenza | (×) | influenza |
| The fever | (×) | fever |
| The cancer | (×) | cancer |
| The anaemia | (×) | anaemia |

The mumps or mumps, The plague or plague, The measles or measles, The flue or flue का प्रयोग भाषा में प्रचलित है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

The cancer is a dangerous disease.
Cancer is a dangerous disease.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


The influenza is an infectious disease. (×)
Influenza is an infectious disease. (✓)

**Note :** बीमारियों के नाम का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने/करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The plague of last year was very dangerous. (✓)
Plague of last year was very dangerous. (×)

**Rule (18) :** The का प्रयोग दिनों व महीनों के नाम के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Monday | (×) | Monday | (✓) |
| The Tuesday | (×) | Tuesday | (✓) |
| The January | (×) | January | (✓) |
| The February | (×) | February | (✓) |

**Note :** (i) महीनों व दिनों के नाम का प्रयोग particularised sense में होने/करने पर The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Monday of last week was not pleasant. (✓)
The March of 1942 was a historical month. (✓)

(ii) महीनों व दिनों के नाम का प्रयोग Countable Noun के रूप में होने पर, इनके पहले a/an का प्रयोग हो सकता है या किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

My elder sister will come here on a Sunday.
*(मेरी बड़ी बहन किसी संडे (रविवार) को यहाँ आयेगी।)*
(A Sunday = Any Sunday.)
My younger brother will come here in an October.
*(मेरा छोटा भाई किसी अक्टूबर में यहाँ आयेगा।)*
(An October = any October)

(iii) लेकिन महीनों व दिनों के नाम का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में होने पर A/An का प्रयोग भी नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. She will come here on Tuesday.
*(वह आने वाले मंगलवार को यहाँ आयेगी।)*
On Tuesday = आने वाला मंगलवार
On Wednesday = आनेवाला बुधवार
On Sunday = आनेवाला रविवार
2. My beloved will come here in March.
(मेरी प्रेमिका आनेवाले मार्च में यहाँ आयेगी।)
In April = अप्रैल में (आनेवाला)
In May = मई में (आनेवाला)
In September = सितम्बर में (आनेवाला)

ध्यान दें : दिनों के नाम का प्रयोग Plural में किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

She hates Sundays. (वह रविवारों से घृणा करती है।)

**Rule (19) :** The का प्रयोग Universities (विश्वविद्यालयों) के नाम के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The L.N. Mithila University. (×)
L.N. Mithila University. (✓)
The Delhi University. (×)
Delhi University. (✓)
The Magadh University. (×)
Magadh University. (✓)
The J.N. University. (×)
J.N. University. (✓)
The Kolkata University. (×)
Kolkata University. (✓)
The B.N. Mandal University. (×)
B.N. Mandal University. (✓)

**Note :** (i) लेकिन *The + University + of + place name* के structure का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The University of Patna. (✓)
The University of Chennai. (✓)
The University of Delhi. (✓)
The University of Kolkata. (✓)

(ii) तथा *The + University + of + name of persons* के structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The University of Binoba Bhave. (×)
Binoba Bhave University. (✓)
The University of Jaiprakash Narayan. (×)
Jaiprakash Narayan University. (✓)

**Rule (20) :** Parts of day and night के पहले at, by, after, around, before का प्रयोग होने पर, The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| Wrong | | Right | |
|---|---|---|---|
| At the dawn | (×) | At dawn | (✓) |
| At the sunrise | (×) | At sunrise | (✓) |
| At the sunset | (×) | At sunset | (✓) |
| At the daybreak | (×) | At daybreak | (✓) |
| At the noon | (×) | At noon | (✓) |
| At the midnight | (×) | At midnight | (✓) |
| Around the midnight | (×) | Around midnight | (✓) |
| Around the noon | (×) | Around noon | (✓) |
| At the night | (×) | At night | (✓) |
| By the night | (×) | By night | (✓) |
| At the dusk | (×) | At dusk | (✓) |
| At the twilight | (×) | At twilight | (✓) |
| Before the morning | (×) | Before morning | (✓) |
| After the night | (×) | After night | (✓) |
| Before the evening | (×) | Before evening | (✓) |
| By the day and night | (×) | By day and night | (✓) |

**Note :** (i) लेकिन parts of day and night के पहले in, during, admire का प्रयोग होने पर, The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

in the morning (✓)
during the morning (✓)
in the afternoon (✓)
in the evening (✓)
in the night (खास रात के अर्थ में) (✓)
Admire the sunrise (✓)
Admire the sunset (✓)

(ii) The का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए phrases में भी होता है। जैसे—

in the day time — during the day
the day before yesterday — at the moment

**Rule (21) :** Make, become, crown, elect, select, appoint, declare के बाद object + Noun (complement) का प्रयोग हो, तो The का प्रयोग प्रयुक्त Noun जो complement का कार्य करता है के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

They made him captain. (✓)
(captain – *एक ही पद होता है।*)
They made him the captain. (×)
We elected him chairman. (✓)
(chairman = *एक ही पद होता है।*)
We elected him the chairman. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन Make, become ..... etc. के बाद object का प्रयोग हो तथा object के बाद ऐसे countable Noun का प्रयोग हो, जिसका several posts (एक से अधिक पद) possible हो, के पहले A/An का प्रयोग प्रसंग के मुताबिक किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

We have appointed him a clerk. (✓)
(clerk = *एक से अधिक पद होता है।*)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



They made him a king. (×)
(king = एक ही पद होता है।)
They made him king. (√)

**Rule (22) :** जब school, college, church, bed, table, hospital, market, prison, jail, court, temple, mosque, university का प्रयोग primary purpose (मूल उद्देश्य) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, तो इनके पहले A/An/The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

| Prepositions | Place expressing words (स्थान सूचक शब्दों) | Primary purpose (मूल उद्देश्य) |
|---|---|---|
| in/to/at/into/out of | bed | sleeping or resting (सोने व आराम के लिए) |
| to/at/in/into/from | church temple/mosque | for religious purpose/as worshippers/to pray पुजारी के रूप में/प्रार्थना के लिए |
| to/in/into/from/out of | court/prison/jail | as litigants/as accused as prisoners/as witnesses (मुकदमेबाजों/दोषी/कैदी/गवाहों के रूप में) |
| to/in/into/out of | hospital | for treatment/as patients (इलाज के लिए/रोगी के रूप में) |
| to/at/from leave/start/enter | school, college, university | to study/as students (अध्ययन के लिए/छात्र के रूप में) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

His brother is still in hospital. (√)
His brother is still in the hospital. (×)
She stays in bed till eight every morning. (√)
She stays in the bed till eight every morning. (×)
I learnt English at school.. (√)
I learnt English at the school. (×)
We go to church on Fridays. (√)
We go to the church on Fridays. (×)
The terrorist was sent to jail. (√)
The terrorist was sent to the jail. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन ऊपर दिये गए शब्दों का प्रयोग निश्चित स्थान, मकान व दूसरे उद्देश्यों के लिए हो, तो The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I went to the hospital to see my friend. (√)
I went to hospital to see my friend. (×)
The bed is broken. (√)
Bed is broken. (×)
She met me at the temple (√)
She met me at temple (×)
Mr. Verma goes to the prison sometimes to give lectures. (√)
Mr. Verma goes to prison sometimes to give lectures. (×)

इन वाक्यों पर विशेष ध्यान दें :

**(A) For Primary Purpose** (मूल उद्देश्य के लिए) :

He goes to school at 10 O'clock everyday. (√)
When we are seriously ill we go to hospital. (√)
He will soon be released from prison. (√)
She goes to church to worship there. (√)
We generally go to bed at 10 O'clock. (√)
The prisoner was brought to court for trial. (√)
He has to appear in court to give evidence. (√)

**(B) For other purpose** (अन्य उद्देश्य या प्रयोजन के लिए) :

He went to the school to complain about the behaviour of one of his friends. (√)
My beloved went to the college to witness a magic show. (√)
He is going to the hospital to give his friend money. (√)
You have to visit the hospital tomorrow. (√)
The college is just in front of the prison. (√)
Mrs. Thakur went to the church to see the dead boy. (√)
The children were fighting on the bed. (√)
Yesterday there was a great rush in the court. (√)

**(C) As countable noun :** School, College ...आदि का प्रयोग Countable noun के रूप में हो तो इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is a school/college in my village.
There is a big hospital there.

**Rule (23) :** The का प्रयोग parallel structures (समानान्तर बनावट) में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

village after village
from beginning to end
side by side
from door to door
face to face
man to man
inch by inch
arm in arm
from east to west
from village to village
from left to right
from top to bottom
hand in hand
day after day
from hand to mouth
from dawn to dusk
row upon row

**Rule (24) :** The का प्रयोग समाचारपत्रों के हेडलाइन्स (headlines) टेलीग्राम्स (telegrams), सूचनाओं (notices), lists तथा outlines में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Five men died in accident.
School reopens on 5th August.
Father serious (stop) come soon (stop)

**Rule (25) :** नीचे के Table में दिये गए *preposition + word/preposition + word + preposition (phrasal expressions)* का प्रयोग The के बिना होता है। The का प्रयोग होने या करने पर गलत हो जाता है।

**1. At + words :**

| Correct | | In correct (with the) | | In correct (with a / an) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| At war | (√) | At the war | (×) | At a war | (×) |
| At noon | (√) | At the noon | (×) | At a noon | (×) |
| At leisure | (√) | At the leisure | (×) | At a leisure | (×) |
| At interest | (√) | At the interest | (×) | At an interest | (×) |
| At first | (√) | At the first | (×) | At a first | (×) |
| At last | (√) | At the last | (×) | At a last | (×) |
| At sight | (√) | At the sight | (×) | At a sight | (×) |
| At least | (√) | At the least | (×) | At a least | (×) |
| At play | (√) | At the play | (×) | At a play | (×) |
| At work | (√) | At the work | (×) | At a work | (×) |
| At peace | (√) | At the peace | (×) | At a peace | (×) |
| At fault | (√) | At the fault | (×) | At a fault | (×) |
| At hand | (√) | At the hand | (×) | At a hand | (×) |
| At risk | (√) | At the risk | (×) | At a risk | (×) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


2. on + words :

| Correct | In correct (with the) | In correct (with a / an) |
|---|---|---|
| on duty | (√) on the duty | (×) on a duty (×) |
| on leave | (√) on the leave | (×) on a leave (×) |
| on fire | (√) on the fire | (×) on a fire (×) |
| on strike | (√) on the strike | (×) on a strike (×) |
| on demand | (√) on the demand | (×) on a demand (×) |
| on foot | (√) on the foot | (×) on a foot (×) |
| on sale | (√) on the sale | (×) on a sale (×) |
| on horseback | (√) on the horseback | (×) on a horseback (×) |
| on deck | (√) on the deck | (×) on a deck (×) |
| on watch | (√) on the watch | (×) on a watch (×) |
| on death | (√) on the death | (×) on a death (×) |
| on purpose | (√) on the purpose | (×) on a purpose (×) |

Note : on earth का प्रयोग भी होता है।

3. In + words :

| Correct | Incorrect (with 'the') | Incorrect (with a / an) |
|---|---|---|
| In heaven | (√) In the heaven | (×) In a heaven (×) |
| In jail | (√) In the jail | (×) In a jail (×) |
| In jest | (√) In the jest | (×) In a jest (×) |
| In love | (√) In the love | (×) In a love (×) |
| In motion | (√) In the motion | (×) In a motion (×) |
| In court | (√) In the court | (×) In a court (×) |
| In hand | (√) In the hand | (×) In a hand (×) |
| In debt | (√) In the debt | (×) In a debt (×) |
| In bed | (√) In the bed | (×) In a bed (×) |
| In time | (√) In the time | (×) In a time (×) |
| In town | (√) In the town | (×) In a town (×) |
| In fact | (√) In the fact | (×) In a fact (×) |
| In favour of | (√) In the favour of | (×) In a favour of (×) |
| In front of | (√) In the front of | (×) In a front of (×) |
| In silence | (√) In the silence | (×) In a silence (×) |
| In general | (√) In the general | (×) In a general (×) |
| In trouble | (√) In the trouble | (×) In a trouble (×) |
| In advance | (√) In the advance | (×) In an advance (×) |
| In doubt | (√) In the doubt | (×) In a doubt (×) |
| In detail | (√) In the detail | (×) In a detail (×) |
| In danger | (√) In the danger | (×) In a danger (×) |
| In pain | (√) In the pain | (×) In a pain (×) |
| In fear | (√) In the fear | (×) In a fear (×) |
| In life | (√) In the life | (×) In a life (×) |
| In haste | (√) In the haste | (×) In a haste (×) |
| In charge of | (√) In the charge of | (×) In a charge of (×) |
| In action | (√) In the action | (×) In an action (×) |
| In confusion | (√) In the confusion | (×) In a confusion (×) |

4. by + words—

| Correct | Incorrect (with 'the') | Incorrect (with a / an) |
|---|---|---|
| by day | (√) by the day | (×) by a day (×) |
| by name | (√) by the name | (×) by a name (×) |
| by night | (√) by the night | (×) by a night (×) |
| by road | (√) by the road | (×) by a road (×) |
| by hand | (√) by the hand | (×) by a hand (×) |
| by agreement | (√) by the agreement | (×) by an agreement (×) |
| by accident | (√) by the accident | (×) by an accident (×) |
| by heart | (√) by the heart | (×) by a heart (×) |
| by mistake | (√) by the mistake | (×) by a mistake (×) |
| by post | (√) by the post | (×) by a post (×) |
| by cheque | (√) by the cheque | (×) by a cheque (×) |
| by chance | (√) by the chance | (×) by a chance (×) |

**Rule (26) :** कुछ ऐसे phrases हैं, जिनमें The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, न ही a/an का प्रयोग होता है। नीचे दिये गए Table को पाठकगण ध्यान से मनन करें।

| Correct | Incorrect (with 'the') | Incorrect (with a/an) |
|---|---|---|
| to leave school | (√) to leave the school | (×) to leave a school (×) |
| to leave home | (√) to leave the home | (×) to leave a home (×) |
| to give ear | (√) to give the ear | (×) to give an ear (×) |
| to take breath | (√) to take the breath | (×) to take a breath (×) |
| for sale | (√) for the sale | (×) for a sale (×) |
| to lose heart | (√) to lose the heart | (×) to lose a heart (×) |
| to catch fire | (√) to catch the fire | (×) to catch a fire (×) |
| to set on fire | (√) to set on the fire | (×) to set on a fire (×) |
| for money | (√) for the money | (×) for a money (×) |
| for leave | (√) for the leave | (×) for a leave (×) |
| to send word | (√) to send the word | (×) to send a word (×) |
| to take offence | (√) to take the offence | (×) to take an offence (×) |
| to give battle | (√) to give the battle | (×) to give a battle (×) |
| to strike root | (√) to strike the root | (×) to strike a root (×) |
| under ground | (√) under the ground | (×) under a ground (×) |
| above ground | (√) above the ground | (×) above a ground (×) |
| to set sail | (√) to set the sail | (×) to set a sail (×) |
| to bring word | (√) to bring the word | (×) to bring a word (×) |

इन वाक्यों का देखें :

1. Her clothes caught the fire. (×)
   Her clothes caught fire. (√)
2. Give ear to what your writer says. (√)
   Give the ear to what your writer says. (×)
3. She lost heart very soon. (√)
   She lost the heart very soon. (×)
   She lost a heart very soon. (×)
4. They leave home at 6 a.m. (√)
   They leave the home at 6 a.m. (×)
   They leave a home at 6 a.m. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (27) :** The का प्रयोग home, work, sea, town, office के पहले सामान्यतः नहीं होता है। जैसे—

**1. Home :**

'Verb to be' at
Go
Arrive
Come
Return
| home

1. My father was at home when I arrived. (✓)
   My father was at the home when I arrived. (×)
2. She came home late. (✓)
   She came the home late. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन Home के पहले किसी descriptive word or phrase का प्रयोग होने पर, the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We arrived at the bride's home. (✓)
We arrived at bride's home. (×)
For some years this was the home of your brother. (✓)
For some years this was home of your brother. (×)

**2. Work :** Work का प्रयोग place of work के अर्थ में होने पर, इसके पहले A/the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. Mr. Pandey is at work. (✓)
   Mr. Pandey is at the work. (×)
   Mr. Pandey is at a work. (×)
2. Mr. Thakur is on his way to work. (✓)
   Mr. Thakur is on his way to the work. (×)
   Mr. Thakur is on his way to a work. (×)

ध्यान दें : At work का अर्थ working होता है। तथा hard at work का अर्थ working hard होता है।

**3. Sea :** Sea (समुद्र) जो वक्ता (speaker) नाविक (as sailor), समुद्री यात्री या नाविक दल (as passengers/or crew) के रूप में जाते हैं, तो इसके पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. We go to sea. (as sailors) (✓)
   We go to the sea. (×)
2. They are at sea. (as passengers/crew) (✓)
   They are at the sea. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन sea का प्रयोग समुद्र तट (sea side/shore) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसके पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. to go the sea = to go to the sea side
2. to be at the sea = to be at the sea side

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. The people of Mumbai live near the sea. (✓)
   The people of Mumbai live near sea. (×)
2. We can also live by the sea. (✓)
   We can also live by sea. (×)

**4. Town :** जब वक्ता (speaker) Town शब्द का प्रयोग अपने Town के लिए करते हैं, तो, इस case में Town शब्द के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. We go to town to buy vegetables. (✓)
   We go to the town to buy vegetables. (×)
2. I was in town last Sunday. (✓)
   I was in the town last Sunday. (×)

**5. Office :** Office का प्रयोग place of work के अर्थ में समान्यतः होता है। इस अर्थ के लिए इसके पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. Mr. Pathak is in the office. (✓)
   Mr. Pathak is in office. (×)
2. She was at the office.
   She was at office.

**Note :** लेकिन office शब्द का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित Phrases में विशेष में होता है, तथा The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

*To be in office* = to hold an official position
*To be out of office* = to be no longer in power

1. Mr. Chandra Shekhar was out of office.
   *(मिस्टर चन्द्रशेखर अधिक समय तक सत्ता/पावर में नहीं रहे थे।)*
2. Mr. Chandra Shekhar was out of the office.

**Rule (28) :** *The + ordinal + and + ordinal + Plural Noun* प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The first and second chapters.
The first and second chapter.
The fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.
The fourteenth and fifteenth century.

**Note :** *The + ordinal + and + the + ordinal + Singular N* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The first and the second chapter.
The first and the second chapters.
The fourteenth and the fifteenth century.
The fourteenth and the fifteenth centuries.

**Rule (29) :** Streets तथा Roads के नाम के पहले सामान्यतः 'the' प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Oxford Street | (✓) | The Oxford Street |
| Fifth Avenue | (✓) | The Fifth Avenue |
| Fir Tree Avenue | (✓) | The Fir Tree Avenue |
| Blue Pool Road | (✓) | The Blue Pool Road |

**Note :** लेकिन roads के नाम के प्रयोग the road that leads to pl (town/city) के अर्थ में हो तो इसके पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे-

The Oxford Road (✓) The London Road

**Rule (30) :** Airports तथा Railway stations के नाम के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

**1. Airports :**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Charles de Gaulle | (✓) | The Charles de Gaulle |
| Narita | (✓) | The Narita |

**2. Railway stations :**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Charing Cross | (✓) | The Charing Cross |

**Rule (31) :** यदि दो Singular nouns, 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु या जानवर का बोध हो तो first singular noun के the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The President and S.D.O is coming.
The President and the S.D.O is coming.

**Rule (32) :** यदि दो Singular Nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा इनसे different persons, things or animals का बोध हो तो दोनों singular nouns के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The President and the S.D.O are coming.
The President and S.D.O are coming.

**Rule (33) :** यदि किसी common noun का प्रयोग vocative में हो तो common noun के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे-

Come here, boy.
Come here, the boy.
Ladies and gentlemen, I have to say a lot to you.
The ladies and gentlemen, I have to say a lot to you.

**Rule (34) :** यदि Superlative degree + Noun का प्रयोग vocative case में हो तो superlative degree के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

O, dearest friend, when will you come again.
O, the dearest friend, when will you come again.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (36) :** Possessive case में प्रयुक्त Nouns में से first noun proper noun हो तो Articles (a/an/the) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

A/The Mohan's cow. (×)
Mohan's a/the cow. (×)
Mohan's cow. (√)

लेकिन the cow of Mohan का प्रयोग होता है।

**Note :** (i) Possessive case में प्रयुक्त Noun में से first noun countable noun हो तो first countable noun के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक Articles (a/an/the) का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The girl's notebook (√) girl's notebook (×)
girl's a notebook (×) A week's holiday (√)
week's holiday (×) week's a holiday (×)

(ii) दूसरे शब्दों में Apostrophe's' ['s] or Apostrophe [ ' ] के बाद प्रयुक्त Noun के पहले Articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Mohan's pen. (√)
Mohan's a pen. (×)
Mohan's the pen. (×)

**Rule (36) :** Turn का प्रयोग become के अर्थ में हो तो इसके बाद प्रयुक्त noun (word) के पहले Articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He turned politician. (√)
He turned a/the politician. (×)
A frustrated lover turns mad. (√)
A frustrated lover turns the mad. (×)

**Note :** Turn का प्रयोग become के अर्थ में नहीं होकर, अन्य अर्थ में हो तो इसके बाद प्रयुक्त noun के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Veena turned the key in the lock. (√)
Veena turned key in the lock. (×)
Anjani turned the handle but the door didn't open. (√)
Anjani turned handle but the door didn't open. (×)

**Rule (37) :** Articles of clothing के साथ Possessive [('s)/(')] एवं possessive adjective का प्रयोग हो तो इसके पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He took off his coat. (√)
She seized the child's collar. (√)

लेकिन Articles of clothing का प्रयोग particularised sense में हो तो इसके पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She seized the child by the collar. (√)
She seized the child by collar. (×)

**Rule (38) :** Parts of body के पहले Possessive [('s)/( ' )] or possessive adjective का प्रयोग हो तो इसके पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Raise your right hand. (√)
The brick hit John's face. (√)

लेकिन,

1. I patted him on the shoulder. (√)
2. The brick hit John in the face. (√)
3. He was hit on the head. (√)
4. He was hit in the hand. (√)

## Practice Set-2

Q.1. *Fill up the blanks in the following sentences with A, An or The where necessary :*

1. He has come without ..... umbrella.
2. ..... Ganga is ..... sacred river.
3. ..... French defeated ..... Germans.
4. Which is ..... longest river in India ?
5. Honest men always speak ..... truth.
6. Rustum was ..... young Parsee.
7. She returned after ..... hour.
8. ..... Sun shines brightly.
9. Allahabad is ..... holy city.
10. Sanskrit is ..... easy language.
11. But English is ..... difficult language.
12. If you see her, give her ..... message.
13. She looks as stupid as ..... owl.
14. ..... Sun rises in ..... east.
15. You are ..... fool to say that.
16. What ..... beautiful scene this is !
17. She was killed in ..... accident.
18. ..... pen is mightier than ..... sword.
19. Get me ..... kilo of rice from ..... nearest grocer.
20. They waited for her for ..... hour.
21. ..... moon is shining in ..... sky.
22. Kashmir is ..... switzerland of India.
23. ..... Himalayas lie to ..... north of India.
24. ..... Mahabharata is ..... holy book of ..... Hindus.
25. ..... Everest is ..... highest peak in ..... world.
26. ..... lion is ..... king of beasts.
27. ..... Honesty is ..... best policy.
28. He is ..... postman.
29. She told ..... lie.
30. ..... novel you gave me is out of ..... print.
31. America is ..... richest country in the world.
32. Iron is ..... useful metal.
33. He is ..... Indian but his wife is ..... European.
34. ..... Andmans are ..... group of Islands in ..... Bay of Bengal.
35. Sushama is ..... foolish girl.
36. But Rajani is ..... intelligent girl.
37. There is ..... great deal of water in ..... pond.
38. ..... word to ..... wise is sufficient.
39. ..... earth moves round ..... sun.
40. ..... Banyan is ..... kind of ..... fig tree.
41. She is ..... better singer than ..... dancer.
42. ..... secretary and ..... treasure was there.
43. ..... secretary and ..... treasure were there.
44. ..... black and ..... white horse is mine.
45. ..... black and ..... white horse are yours.
46. He is going to ..... hospital to visit ..... sick friend.
47. ..... fastest means of traveling is ..... aeroplane
48. ..... children go to ..... school to learn.
49. The patient has not slept all..... night.
50. ..... dinner was not properly served.
51. ..... Breakfast is ready for us.
52. Do you play ..... hockey ?
53. ..... cotton, ..... jute and ..... wheat are grown in our country.
54. ..... Aeroplanes can fly very fast.
55. ..... books you gave me are very interesting.
56. I love ..... truth and ..... wisdom.
57. Mumbai is ..... Manchester of India.
58. Russia is ..... great country.
59. ..... rich should help ..... helpless.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



60. This is ..... best book on English Grammar.
61. ..... world is ..... happy place.
62. ..... Russians sent up ..... first earth satellite.
63. ..... Queen Elizabeth is ..... famous British liner.
64. ..... Arabian Nights is ..... nice book.
65. ..... Times of India is ..... leading newspaper.
66. ..... more one has, ..... more one wants.
67. ..... tiger is ..... fierce animal.
68. Call ..... girl standing out side.
69. The people of Mithila speak ..... Maithili.
70. ..... Bible is ..... religious book.
71. Valmiki's ..... Ramayana is a sacred book.
72. ..... Pacific Ocean is ..... largest Ocean in the world.
73. I have ..... pen and ..... inkpot.
74. ..... horse is ..... useful animal.
75. ..... Daniel came to judgement.
76. ..... cat catches ..... mouse.
77. We drink ..... water.
78. I hope to be ..... engineer.
79. He behaves like ..... fool.
80. Don't trust that fellow, he is ..... liar.
81. His son is ..... genius.
82. ..... Gold is ..... precious metal.
83. ..... Falsehood is odious.
84. ..... wisdom is ..... gift of heaven.
85. ..... wisdom of solomon is famous.
86. He was elected ..... chairman of the Board.
87. ..... bird in ..... hand is worth two in ..... bush.
88. One evening ..... beggar came to my door.
89. Twelve inches make ..... foot.
90. ..... tenth chapter of the book is ..... very interesting.
91. ..... Mr. Pandey whom you met last night is my brother.
92. Draw ..... map of India.
93. How blue ..... sky looks !
94. It is .....proudest moment of my life.
95. Eskimoes make ..... houses of ..... snow and ..... ice.
96. Dr. Hira Kant Jha was ..... headmaster of Yajuar High School.
97. ..... Punjab is a small state.
98. ..... Gita is ..... holy book.
99. ..... Indian Ocean is ..... deepest Ocean.
100. ..... Taj is one of ..... best buildings in India.
101. ..... Hindus believe in ..... caste system.
102. ..... Delhi is ..... London of India.
103. ..... Persian Gulf is ..... narrow gulf.
104. ..... Industrial Revolution changed ..... face of England.
105. He struck me on ..... head
106. Akbar, ..... great was loved by his subjects.
107. Bhavna is ..... more beautiful of two sisters.
108. ..... English is ..... international language.
109. ..... Rice is ..... favourite food of ..... Biharis.
110. She enjoyed ..... lunch with her friends.
111. ..... Parliament has passed ..... bill.
112. Brutus was ..... honourable man.
113. He is ..... L.L.B. but she is ..... M.A.
114. Mahajan is ..... historian.
115. Dr. Hemant Jha is ..... M.B.B.S.
116. Please give me ..... one-rupee note.
117. ..... summer of last year was very hot.
118. ..... summer is ..... hot season.
119. ..... water is necessary for life.
120..... water of this river is dirty.
121. ..... wheat is ..... wholesome meal.
122. ..... wheat of ..... Punjab is liked by all.
123. ..... higher you go, ..... cooler it is.
124. ..... gold of South Africa is exported to many countries.
125. She is ..... lover of ..... Ramayana.
126. ..... cricket is .....popular game.
127. ..... cricket of India is popular in the world.
128. T.N. Sheshan is ..... honest man.
129. My sister is only ..... F.O.
130. ..... Yamuna is ..... sacred river.
131. I saw ..... ugly boy riding on ..... ass.
132. ..... Mahabharata is ..... holy book of ..... Hindus.
133. There is ..... union of domestic servants also.
134. .....Rajadhani Express is ..... fastest train in India.
135. ..... Titanic met with ..... accident in ..... Pacific Ocean.
136. ..... people of Japan are called ..... Japanese.
137. His son-in-law wants ..... glass of ..... milk.
138. ..... man is mortal.
139. Mr. Mishra is ..... senior teacher.
140. Do you play ..... football ?
141. Now you have ..... interesting book.
142. Is he going to England by ..... air ?
143. It is pleasant to read ..... novel in ..... evening.
144. There are ..... beautiful roses in ..... park.
145. ..... birds can fly very high in ..... sky.
146. Will you give me ..... piece of bread ?
147. She was ..... Italian singer.
148. I want to appoint ..... assistant.
149. ..... Piano is ..... musical instrument.
150. My wife wants to go to ..... cinema every Sunday.
151. Don't open ..... door.
152. ..... friend in need is ..... friend indeed.
153. Switch off ..... light.
154. ..... patriot in him forced him to join ..... army.
155. ..... accident took place here yesterday.
156. Eggs are sold by ..... dozen.
157. ..... Quran is ..... holy book.
158. What is ..... language of ..... people of Russia ?
159. India defeated ..... Pakistan in ..... last hockey match.
160. We have adopted ..... Christianity.
161.We were invited to ..... dinner ... day before yesterday.
162. He is in need of ..... money.
163. There is ..... Kalidas in my class.
164. We live on ..... earth.
165. ..... Nature looks beautiful in ..... spring.
166. She first met me ..... year ago.
167. We should not make ..... noise in the class.
168. When do you go to ..... office ?
169. Each of ..... girls has a book.
170. ..... Bhartiya Janata Party is ..... ruling party.
171. There is ..... fish in ..... bottle.
172. He goes there on ..... horseback.
173. She is on ..... television.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



174. ..... guide knows ..... way.
175. One of my friends lives in ..... U.S.A.
176. ..... Lok Sabha passed ..... bill yesterday.
177. Many of ..... problems are linked to ..... poverty.
178. You are ..... good publisher; I have ..... little doubt regarding your success.
179. ..... Prince of Wales found himself in ..... dilemma.
180. What ..... innings it has been ?
181. January is ..... first month of ..... year.
182. ..... action will be taken against him.
183. ..... industrious are rewarded.
184. Of Delhi and Mumbai, which city is ... hotter ?
185. They have joined ..... three-year course.
186. It was ..... coldest and ..... driest day
187. ..... thing of beauty is ..... joy for ever.
188. Nirala is considered to be ..... ideal student.
189. ..... poetry is ..... essence of humanity.
190. Kumble is ..... best bowler in ..... country.
191. I drive ..... motor car at. ..... uniform speed.
192. ..... nature of Sohan is bad.
193. I have read ..... first and ..... second chapter of this book.
194. But my brother has read ..... tenth and ..... eleventh chapters of this book.
195. ..... Tribune is published from Chandigarh.
196. She is ..... more beautiful of ..... two sisters.
197. ..... honesty shown by him was highly praised.
198. ..... dinner will be held at ..... Ashoka Hotel.
199. He is ..... heir to ..... vast property.
200. My father is ..... lover of ..... Ramayana.
201. ..... Vedas are revealed books.
202. ..... statesman and ..... scholar is dead.
203. In India ..... parliament is supreme.
204. ..... wisdom is ..... great virtue.
205. ..... Hindustan Times gives ..... latest news.
206. ..... Burmese are ..... buddhists.
207. I have lost ..... watch that my brother gave me.
208. ..... man you saw here yesterday is ..... uncle of mine.
209. ..... almighty will help us in our work.
210. ..... summer is ..... hot season but ..... summer of last year was ..... very hot.
211. He was ..... greater statesman than administrator.
212. ..... Punjab is ..... land of ..... brave.
213. Delhi is ..... paris of India.
214. Dickens is famous as ..... novelist and .....essayist.
215. ..... USA is ..... richest country of .... world.
216. ..... children recited ..... poem in ..... honour of ..... Prime Minister.
217. ..... S.D.O is ..... officer of ..... very high rank.
218. ..... weak and ..... strong, ..... noble and ..... wicked all will meet the same fate.
219. This is ..... most fragrant flower in my garden.
220. He felt ..... patriot rise within his heart.
221. ..... more you labour, the more you earn.
222. ..... red and .... white rose looks beautiful.
223. ..... red and ..... white rose look beautiful.
224. ..... President and ..... S. D. O are coming.
225. ..... President and ..... S. D. O. is coming.
226. ..... death of ..... great scientist causes..... great loss to ..... country.
227. He moved from ..... place to ..... place.
228. Both ..... husband and ..... wife were in the room.
229. ..... beggar moves from ..... door to ..... door.
230. What kind of ..... woman is she ?
231. ..... Ladies and ..... gentlemen, I have to say much to you.
232. O ..... dearest friend, when will you come again.
233. Cloth was sold by ..... yard.
234. He was not in ..... mood to think.
235. It is too difficult ..... problem to be solved.
236. Let us go out for ..... walk.
237. On such ..... cold morning I do not go out.
238. ..... ewe was tied to ..... tree with ..... rope.
239. Kalidas was ..... poet and ..... dramatist.
240. What kind of ..... book do you want ?
241. If you interfere with ..... nature, you will suffer for it.
242. He arrived ..... home after dark.
243. ..... mud hut was ..... only home he had ever known.
244. I patted him on ..... shoulder.
245. His car struck ..... tree, you can still see ..... mark on ..... tree.

**Q. 2.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Mr. Thakur lived (1)/ in the three-hundred year (2)/ old house (3)/ in Patna. (4)/ No error (5)
2. The English (1)/ defeated (2)/ french (3)/ in the battle of Waterloo. (4)/ No error (5)
3. An old man in the crowd (1)/ warned Julius Caesar (2)/ from the danger of death (3)/ on certain day. (4)/ No error (5)
4. Never have I listened (1)/ to such a beautiful music (2)/ as the piece we heard on radio (3)/ last night. (4)/ No error (5)
5. The uncle of mine (1)/ who is a farmer (2)/ gave me a piece of useful advice (3)/ when I went to see him three weeks ago. (4)/ No error (5)
6. My neighbour along with his children (1)/ is going tonight (2)/ to see a Taj Mahal (3)/ at Agra. (4)/ No error (5)
7. Don't talk to (1)/ her, she always (2)/ remains in temper (3)/ these days. (4)/ No error (5)
8. He does not like (1)/ this type of a man (2)/ who does nothing but (3)/ find out fault in others. (4)/ No error (5)
9. A first European (1)/ sailor came to India (2)/ in modern times (3)/ was Vasco-da-Gama. (4)/ No error (5)
10. Mr. Pathak leads (1)/ a very busy life (2)/ so he goes every where (3)/ by a scooter. (4)/ No error (5)
11. Her mother (1)/ forbade her (2)/ to go to circus (3)/ late at night. (4)/ No error (5)
12. Mr. U. Jha has a white (1)/ and a black dog (2)/ which guard (3)/ his house from robbers. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Only a few girls (1)/ were above ground (2)/ the rest were (3)/ under the ground. (4)/ No error (5).
14. Forty five students went (1)/ to the Church (2)/ yesterday to see (3)/ the stained glass there. (4)/ No error (5)
15. My elder sister came home (1)/ after the sunset (2)/ and had gone (3)/ before sunrise. (4)/ No error (5)
16. In the meeting (1)/ Mr. Yadav was (2)/ selected the chairman (3)/ yesterday. (4)/ No error (5)
17. Raza talked to Madhu (1)/ by a telephone (2)/ yesterday, but (3)/ she was not in her house. (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



8

8. Kabir and Rahim (1)/ are great poets (2)/ but the former is (3)/ greater than latter. (4)/ No error (5)
9. The sun shines (1)/ by a day always and (2)/ not by night, because (3)/ it is the law of nature. (4)/ No error (5)
20. He (1)/ has abandoned (2)/ the criminal activities (3)/ after returning from Jail. (4)/ No error (5)
21. Mahatma Gandhi did not solve (1)/ all the problems of the future (2)/ but he did solve (3)/ problems of his own age (4)/ No error (5)
22. A first step (1)/ in a rational solution to any problem (2)/ is the recognition (3)/ that a problem exists (4)/ No error (5)
23. Knowledge of regional language is (1)/ necessary for bank officers because (2)/ they are to understand (3)/ what their customers say (4)/ No error (5)
24. We should drink (1)/ several glasses of the water (2)/ daily (3)/ if we want to remain healthy (4)/ No error (5)
25. You have been learning Tamil (1)/ for last one year (2)/ but you show (3)/ no improvement whatsoever (4)/ No error (5)
26. It is a fact (1)/ that most of people (2)/ desire to work less (3)/ but earn more (4)/ No error (5)
27. Child was looking out (1)/ through the open window (2)/ with fear (3)/ in its eyes (4)/ No error (5)
28. Every one knows (1)/ that leopard is (2)/ faster than (3)/ all other animals (4)/ No error (5)
29. Now days workers are less interested (1)/ in money as such (2)/ and appear to be more concerned (3)/about opportunities for autonomy and freedom (4)/ No error (5)
30. The palmist friend of Rajni Mohan (1)/ had predicted that his son Raman would become an artist (2)/ and (3)/ the prediction proved true (4)/ No error (5)
31. Have the trip to Kashmir (1)/ this autumn (2)/ and weave (3)/ romance in your life. (4)/ No error (5)
32. He had already sent (1)/ me word (2)/ that his arrival (3)/ was scheduled for thursday (4)/ No error (5)
33. I (1)/ went to a theatre (2)/ yesterday (3)/ with some people (4)/ No error (5)
34. Having finished his breakfast (1)/ he started working (2)/ on the problem (3)/ that had been awaiting disposal for the long time (4)/ No error (5)
35. The new railway line (1)/ will greatly improve (2)/ transport and communication (3)/ in eastern part of the country (4)/ No error (5)
36. Every man, woman and child (1)/ is now aware of (2)/ the terrible consequences of (3)/ habit of smoking (4)/ No error (5)
37. The rich cannot accumulate (1)/ the wealth without (2)/ the co-operation (3)/ of poor in the society (4)/ No error (5)
38. Money (1)/ which is a source of (2)/ the happiness in life (3)/ becomes a source of peril and confusion unless we control it (4)/ No error (5)
39. Climbing the Mount Fuji (1)/ in winter (2)/ can be (3)/ very dangerous (4)/ No error (5)
40. The language (1)/ school (2)/ is in (3)/ the Malibu Street (4)/ No error (5)
41. Our plane (1)/ arrived (2)/ at (3)/ the Gatwick Airport (4)/ No error. (5)
42. Only very wealthy tourists (1)/ can afford (2)/ to stay (3)/ at Imperial Hotel (4)/ No error (5)
43. She (1)/ is (2)/ arriving (3)/ on March the 25th. (4)/ No error (5)
44. It is not my business (1)/ to give an advice to those (2)/ who are not sensible enough (3)/ to deal with their own problems. (4)/ No error (5)
45. My friend insisted (1)/ that I should (2)/ see the movie (3)/ from beginning to end (4)/ No error (5)
46. Prince Charles (1)/ is a heir (2)/ to the throne (3)/ of the Great Britain (4)/ No error (5)
47. He has been sent to the prison (1)/several times but (2)/ he has not shown any sign (3)/ of improvement in his conduct (4)/ No error (5)
48. It being rainy day (1)/ most of the people (2)/ out on the street were (3)/ carrying umbrellas (4)/ No error (5)
49. The need to set up (1)/ a good library in the locality (2)/ has been in the minds of people (3)/ for some time (4)/ No error (5)
50. On my request (1)/ Jatin introduced me (2)/ to his friend (3)/ who is singer and scientist. (4)/ No error (5)

**Q.3.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. He has joined a six months course.
2. Of Gaya and Patna which town is hotter ?
3. The craftiness is essential for a politician.
4. Pt. Nehru made famous speech on historic occasion of Independence.
5. A Lok Sabha passed a bill today.
6. The tourist city has many places worth seeing
7. He can speak the German better than he can speak the French.
8. Gandhijee was greatly influenced by Bhagwat Gita.
9. Beauty of Brindavan Garden at the night is worth seeing.
10. Father in Dhritrashtra was too great extent responsible for Mahabharat war.
11. He is one of the my best friends.
12. He could not go to the school on the account of illness.
13. Mississippi is longest river in world.
14. The wages of the sin is death.
15. Jay Prakash Narayan was one of founders of Socialist party of India.
16. Mr. Thakur went to market by the auto rickshaw to buy a book and returned by the rickshaw.
17. Aditya Raj prefers glass of milk to piece of bread with butter on it.
18. He likes to read a poetry in the evening and smoke the cigarette with the cup of coffee.
19. White House is the official residence of the president of United States of America.
20. Sitting under the shade of tree for while made us fresh.
21. Sahara, the biggest desert in the world is in Africa.
22. He likes to have a walk in evening, as it keeps him fit.
23. We believe in the proverb that birds of feather flock together.
24. He was a Napoleon of his age.
25. The patient has not slept all the night.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.** 1. an 2. the, a 3. the, the
4. the 5. the 6. a
7. an 8. the 9. a
10. an 11. a 12. the

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13. an | 14. The, The | 15. a | |
| 16. a | 17. the | 18. The, the | |
| 19. a, the | 20. an | 21. The, The | |
| 22. the | 23. The, the | 24. The, a, the | |
| 25. ×, the, the | 26. The, the | 27. ×, the | |
| 28. a | 29. a | 30. the, × | |
| 31. the | 32. a | 33. an, a | |
| 34. The, a, the | 35. a | 36. an | |
| 37. a, the | 38. A, the | 39. The, the | |
| 40. The, a, × | 41. a, × | 42. The, × | |
| 43. the, the | 44. A, × | 45. A, a | |
| 46. the, a | 47. the, an | 48. ×, × | |
| 49. × | 50. The | 51. × | |
| 52. × | 53. ×, ×, × | 54. × | |
| 55. The | 56. ×, × | 57. the | |
| 58. a | 59. The, the | 60. the | |
| 61. the, a | 62. The, the | 63. the, a | |
| 64. the, a | 65. The, a | 66. The, the | |
| 67. The, a | 68. the | 69. × | |
| 70. the, a | 71. × | 72. The, the | |
| 73. a, an | 74. The, a | 75. A | |
| 76. The, a | 77. × | 78. an | |
| 79. a | 80. a | 81. a | |
| 82. ×, a | 83. × | 84. ×, the | |
| 85. The | 86. the | 87. A, the, the | |
| 88. a | 89. a | 90. the, × | |
| 91. The | 92. the | 93. the | |
| 94. the | 95. the, ×, × | 96. the | |
| 97. The, हाँ/था | 98. The, a | 99. The, the | |
| 100. The, the | 101. The, the | 102. ×, the | |
| 103. The, a | 104. The, the | 105. the | |
| 106. the | 107. the | 108. ×, an | |
| 109. ×, the, the | 110. × | 111. ×, the | |
| 112. an | 113. an, an | | |
| 114. a (common)/an | 115. an | 116. a | |
| 117. The | 118. × a | 119. × | |
| 120. the | 121. ×, a | 122. the, × | |
| 123. The, the | 124. the | 125. a, the | |
| 126. ×, a | 127. the | 128. an | |
| 129. an | 130. the, a | 131. an, the | |
| 132. The, a, the | 133. a | 134. The, the | |
| 135. The, the, the | 136. The, the | 137. a, × | |
| 138. × | 139. a | 140. × | |
| 141. an | 142. an air (हवाई जहाज) | | |
| 143. a, the | 144. ×, the | 145. ×, the | |
| 146. a | 147. an | 148. an | |
| 149. The, a | 150. the | 151. the | |
| 152. A, a | 153. the | 154. the, the | |
| 155. The | 156. the | 157. The, a | |
| 158. the, the | 159. ×, the | 160. × | |
| 161. ×, the | 162. × | 163. a | |
| 164. × | 165. ×, the | 166. a | |
| 167. a | 168. the | 169. the | |
| 170. The, a | 171. a, the | 172. × | |
| 173. × | 174. The, the | 175. the | |
| 176. the, the | 177. the, × | 178. a, a | |
| 179. The, a | 180. an | 181. the, the/a | |
| 182. An | 183. The | 184. the | |
| 185. a | 186. the, × | 187. A, × | |
| 188. an | 189. ×, the | 190. the, the | |
| 191. a, a | 192. The | 193. the, the | |
| 194. the, × | 195. the | 196. The, the | |
| 197. the | 198. the, the | 199. an, a | |
| 200. a, the | 201. the | 202. the, × | |
| 203. × | 204. ×, a | 205. the, the | |
| 206. the, the | 207. the | 208. the, an | |
| 209. the | 210. ×, a, the, × | 211. a | |
| 212. the, a, the | 213. the | 214. a, × | |
| 215. the, the, the | 216. the, a, the, the | | |
| 217. An, an, a | 218. the, the, the, the | | |
| 219. the | 220. the | 221. the | |
| 222. the, × | 223. the, the | 224. the, the | |
| 225. the, × | 226. the, a, a, the | 227. ×, × | |
| 228. ×, × | 229. A, ×, × | 230. a | |
| 231. ×, × | 232. × | 233. the | |
| 234. a | 235. a | 236. a | |
| 237. a | 238. A, a, a | 239. a, × | |
| 240. × | 241. × | 242. × | |
| 243. A, the | 244. the | 245. a, the, the | |

Q. 2.

1. (2) The की जगह a का प्रयोग होगा। A three hundred year old house—एक तीन सौ वर्ष का पुराना घर।
2. (3) French के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The French का अर्थ the people of France होता है। यहाँ French का तात्पर्य फ्रेंच भाषा से नहीं है।
3. (4) Certain day के पहले a का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) On radio की जगह on the radio का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (1) Uncle के पहले The की जगह An का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि यहाँ An का तात्पर्य Any (कोई से है) है।
6. (3) Taj Mahal के पहले A की जगह The का प्रयोग, क्योंकि Taj Mahal एक historical building है।
7. (3) In temper की जगह In a temper का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (2) Type of के बाद A का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि type of/kind of के बाद Articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
9. (1) First ordinal है, इसलिए A की जगह The का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (4) By a scooter की जगह by scooter का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (3) Go to circus की जगह Go to the circus का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (5) Given sentence is correct
13. (4) Under the ground की जगह under ground का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (5) Given sentence is correct.
15. (2) Sunset के पहले after का प्रयोग हुआ है, अतः the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
16. (3) Chairman के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि selected के बाद complement के रूप में प्रयुक्त Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
17. (2) Telephone का प्रयोग आविष्कार की गई वस्तु के रूप में हुआ है, अतः A का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
18. (4) Latter के पहले The का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (2) By a day की जगह by day का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (5) Given sentence is correct.
21. (4) Problems के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Noun + of + Noun के Structure में first noun के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
22. (1) A first step की जगह the first step का प्रयोग होगा। ordinal Adjective + noun के structure में ordinal Adjective के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
23. (1) Knowledge के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा। सामान्यतः knowledge को singular uncountable माना जाता है इसलिए इसके पहले Articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है लेकिन यहाँ knowledge का प्रयोग particularised sense में हुआ है अतः the का प्रयोग उचित है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



50

24. (2) Water के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि water uncountable noun है। uncountable noun के पहले सामान्यतः Articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

25. (2) last के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा। for + the + ordinal Adjective + Time expressing words का प्रयोग होता है।

26. (2) Most of people की जगह Most of the people का प्रयोग होगा। Most of के बाद प्रयुक्त Plural noun के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है। अतः यहाँ people के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग उचित है।

27. (1) Child के पहले The / A का प्रयोग होगा The / A का प्रयोग Class को denote करने के लिए किया जाता है।

28. (2) leopard के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।

29. (1) Now days की जगह Now a days का प्रयोग होगा।

30. (1) The palmist friend of Rajni Mohan की जगह A palmist friend of Rajni Mohan का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ रजनी मोहन के एक पामिस्ट फ्रेण्ड की चर्चा है इसलिए palmist friend के पहले 'A' का प्रयोग होगा।

31. (1) Have the trip to Kashmir की जगह Have a trip to Kashmir का प्रयोग होगा। Have a trip का प्रयोग होता है न कि Have the trip का।

32. (2) Word के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग होगा जो sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।

33. (2) Went to a theatre की जगह went to the theatre का प्रयोग होगा।

34. (4) long time के पहले the की जगह 'a' का प्रयोग होगा।

35. (4) eastern के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा।

36. (4) habit of smoking की जगह the habit of smoking का प्रयोग होगा।

37. (4) Poor के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा। poor का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Adjective के रूप में होता है लेकिन the poor का प्रयोग गरीब लोगों के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। यहाँ sentence के अर्थ के लिए the poor ही उपयुक्त है।

38. (3) Happiness के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि happiness singular uncountable noun है।

39. (1) Mount Fuji के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Mount Fuji पर्वत के चोटी का नाम है। सामान्यतः पर्वतों के चोटी के नाम के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

40. (4) Malibu Street के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। streets तथा roads के पहले the का प्रयोग सामान्यतः नहीं होता है।

41. (4) Gat wick Airport के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। Airports तथा Railway stations के नाम के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

42. (4) Imperial Hotel के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा। सामान्यतः Hotels तथा Restaurants के नाम के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।

43. (4) 25th के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

44. (2) Advice के पहले an का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। Advice singular uncountable noun है इसलिए इसके पहले An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

45. (5) Given sentence is correct.

46. (2) Heir के पहले a के बदले an का प्रयोग होगा।

47. (1) Prison के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। Prison (कारागार/जेल) का प्रयोग Primary purpose के लिए हो तो इसके पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

48. (1) Rain day के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि यहाँ day का प्रयोग countable noun के रूप में हुआ है अतः a का प्रयोग उचित है।

49. (3) People के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ people का प्रयोग particularised sense में हुआ है अतः the का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

50. (4) Singer के पहले 'A' का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ एक ही व्यक्ति singer और scientist दोनों है इसलिए singer के पहले A का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

Q. 3.

1. He has joined a six-month course.
2. Of Gaya and Patna, which town is the hotter ?
3. Craftiness is essential for a politician.
4. Pt. Nehru made a famous speech on the historic occasion of Independence.
5. The Lok Sabha passed the bill today.
6. A tourist city has many places worth seeing.
7. He can speak German better than he can speak French.
8. Gandhijee was greatly influenced by the Bhagwat Gita.
9. The beauty of Brindavan Garden at night is worth seeing.
10. The father in Dhritrashtra was to a great extent responsible for the Mahabharat war.
11. He is one of my best friends.
12. He could not go to school on account of illness.
13. Mississippi is the longest river in the world.
14. The wages of sin is death.
15. Jay Prakash Narayan was one of the founders of the Socialist Party of India.
16. Mr. Thakur went to market by auto rickshaw to buy a book and returned by rickshaw.
17. Aditya Raj prefers a glass of milk to a piece of bread with butter on it.
18. He likes to read poetry in the evening and smoke a cigarette with a cup of coffee.
19. The White House is the official residence of the President of the United States of America.
20. Sitting under the shade of a tree for a while made us fresh.
21. The Sahara, the biggest desert in the world is in Africa.
22. He likes to have a walk in the evening, as it keeps him fit.
23. We believe in the proverb that birds of a feather flock together.
24. He was the Napoleon of his age.
25. The patient has not slept all night.

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 3

# Noun

**Noun** : *A Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, quality, condition and action.*

*किसी व्यक्ति, स्थान, वस्तु, गुण, दशा और कार्यकलाप के नाम को Noun कहते हैं।* जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Person** | Mukesh | *(मुकेश)* |
| **Place** | Patna | *(पटना)* |
| **Thing** | Pen | *(कलम)* |
| **Quality** | Honesty | *(ईमानदारी)* |
| **Condition** | Illness | *(बीमारी)* |
| **Action** | Movement | *(गति/चाल)* |

**Noun**
- **Countable Noun** (गणनीय संज्ञा)
  - **Proper Noun** (व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा)
  - **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक संज्ञा)
  - **Collective Noun** (समूहवाचक संज्ञा)
- **Uncountable Noun** (अगणनीय संज्ञा)
  - **Material Noun** (द्रव्यवाचक संज्ञा)
  - **Abstract Noun** (भाववाचक संज्ञा)

1. **Countable Noun** : *The Nouns which can be counted.* जैसे— Veena, girl, class etc.

(a) **Proper Noun** : *The Noun which denotes a proper person, place or thing.* जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| Proper person | Binay, Ajit, Nilu |
| Proper place | Mumbai, Kolkata, Delhi |
| Proper thing | Ramayana, Gita, Bible |

(b) **Common Noun** : *The Noun which denotes common persons, places or things.* जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| Common person | Man, Woman |
| Common place | Town, School |
| Common things | Book, Table |

(c) **Collective Noun** : *The Noun which denotes a group of persons or other creatures and collection of things.* जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| **Group of Persons** | A crew of sailors<br>A team of players<br>A class of students<br>An army of soldiers |
| **Collection of things** | A fleet of ships<br>A bunch of flowers<br>A library of books |

2. **Uncountable Noun** : *The Nouns which cannot be counted.* जैसे—gold, water, oil, coffee, honesty etc.

(a) **Material Noun** : *The Noun which denotes materials.* जैसे—copper, silver, tea, coffee, ghee etc.

(b) **Abstract Noun** : *The Noun which denotes quality, condition or action.* जैसे—wisdom, humanity, pride, bravery, childhood etc.

## 1. Some Important Collective Nouns

| Collective Noun | Collective Noun |
|---|---|
| A crowd of people<br>*लोगों की भीड़* | A sheaf of grains<br>*अनाज का गट्ठर* |
| A herd of cattle<br>*पशुओं का झुंड* | A heap of sand<br>*बालू का ढेर* |
| A group of students<br>*छात्रों का समूह* | A bunch of keys<br>*चाबियों का गुच्छा* |
| A cluster of stars<br>*तारों का झुंड* | A galaxy of stars<br>*तारों का झुंड* |
| A gang of robbers<br>*डाकुओं का समूह* | A fleet of ships<br>*जहाजों का बेड़ा* |
| A nest of ants<br>*चींटियों का झुंड* | An army of ants<br>*चींटियों का झुंड* |
| A swarm of ants<br>*चींटियों का झुंड* | A covery of partridges<br>*तीतरों का झुंड* |
| A drove of cattle<br>*पशुओं का समुदाय* | A shoal of fish<br>*मछलियों का समूह* |
| A series of events<br>*घटनाओं का क्रम* | A choir of singers<br>*गायकों की मंडली* |
| A bundle of clothes<br>*कपड़ों का गाँठ* | A herd of swine<br>*सुअरों का झुंड* |
| A flock of birds<br>*चिड़ियों का झुंड* | A stock of clothes<br>*वस्त्रों का संग्रह* |
| A troupe of dancers<br>*नृतकों की मंडली* | A tuft of grass<br>*घास का गुच्छा* |
| A jury of judges<br>*न्यायाधीशों का समूह* | A band of nomads<br>*घुमक्कड़ों का जत्था* |
| A troop of children<br>*बच्चों का समूह* | A lock of hair<br>*बालों की लट* |
| A quiver of arrows<br>*तीरों का समूह* | A suit of armour<br>*लौहकवचों का सेट* |
| A suit of rooms<br>*कमरों का सेट* | A suit of furniture<br>*फर्नीचर का सेट* |
| A pile of books<br>*पुस्तकों का गट्ठर* | A stock of coal<br>*कोयला का संग्रह* |
| A peal of laughters<br>*ठहाकों का समूह* | A string of onions<br>*प्याज की पंक्तियाँ* |
| A chain of mountains<br>*पर्वतों की श्रेणी* | A bevy of ladies<br>*भद्र नारियों का समूह* |
| A band of musicians<br>*संगीतज्ञों की मंडली* | A flight of stairs<br>*सीढ़ियों का क्रम* |
| A course of study<br>*अध्ययन का क्रम* | A heap of rubbish<br>*कूड़ा-कचड़ा का ढेर* |
| A volley of shots<br>*गोलियों की वर्षा* | A heap of dust<br>*धूलकण का ढेर* |
| A volley of arrows<br>*बाणों की वर्षा* | A heap of stones<br>*पत्थरों का ढेर* |
| A volley of stones<br>*पत्थरों की वर्षा* | A ray of light<br>*प्रकाश-किरणों का पुंज* |
| A volley of missiles<br>*शस्त्रों की वर्षा* | A pair of socks<br>*एक जोड़ा मोजा* |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



A brace of pigeons
कबूतरों का झुंड
A slice of bread
रोटी का टुकड़ा
A grain of rice
चावल का एक दाना
A blade of grass
घास का एक तीनका
An army of soldiers
सैनिकों का जत्था
A board of directors
निदेशकों की मंडली
A gust of wind
हवा का एक तेज झोंका
A pinch of salt
एक चुटकी नमक
A pinch of snuff
एक चुटकी सुँघनी
A band of travellers
यात्रियों का झुंड
A wardrobe of clothes
वस्त्रों का संग्रह
A flight of birds
उड़ते हुए पक्षियों का झुंड
An assembly of listeners श्रोताओं की मंडली
An assembly of worshippers श्रद्धालुओं की मंडली
A flight of locusts उड़ते हुए टिड्डियों का झुंड
A course of lectures व्याख्यान/भाषण का क्रम
A peal of bells घंटों की जोरदार आवाज का समूह
A flock of sheep/goats भेड़ों या बकरों का झुंड
A delegation of students छात्रों का शिष्टमंडल
An association of labourers मजदूरों का संघ
A litter of puppies कुत्ते के बच्चों का झुंड
A packet of cigarette सिगरेट का डिब्बा
A squadron of planes हवाई जहाजों का बेड़ा
A crew of sailors/boatmen नाविकों का समूह
A regiment of soldiers सैनिकों का समूह
A tribe of natives स्वदेशियों का वर्ग/जाति
A pack of wolves/hounds भेड़ियों या शिकारी कुत्तों का झुंड

## A. Collection of people

A board of trustees विश्वासपात्रों की मंडली
A board of examiners परीक्षकों की मंडली
A brigade of cavalry घुड़सवार सैनिकों का दल
A brigade of infantry पैदल सैनिकों का दल
A brigade of artillery आग्नेयास्त्र चलाने वाले सैनिकों का दल
A batch of pupils शिष्यों का समूह
An assembly of representatives प्रतिनिधियों की मंडली
A caravan of pilgrims तीर्थयात्रियों का काफिला
A caravan of merchants व्यापारियों का कारवाँ
A bench of judges न्यायाधीशों की मंडली
A circle of friends मित्रों की मंडली
A circle of acquaintances परिचितों की मंडली
A clique of schemers उपाय रचने वालों की मंडली
A colony of people लोगों की नई बस्ती
A company of actors अभिनेताओं की मंडली
A company of merchants व्यापारियों की मंडली
A concourse of people लोगों का समूह
A conference of preachers उपदेशकों का सम्मेलन
A conference of delegates प्रतिनिधियों का सम्मेलन
A congregation of pilgrims तीर्थयात्रियों का समुदाय
A congregation of worshippers उपासकों का समुदाय
A congress of representatives प्रतिनिधियों की सभा
A congress of delegates प्रतिनिधियों की सभा
A contingent of army personnels थल सैनिकों का दल
A contingent of boy scouts स्काउट के लड़कों का दल
A corporation of people लोगों की मंडली
A corps of volunteers स्वयंसेवकों का समूह
A corps of soldiers सैनिकों का दल/पलटन
A council of ministers मंत्रियों का परिषद्
A council of advisers सलाहकारों का परिषद्
A flurry of attentive callers.
ध्यान मग्न भेंट करने वाले मनुष्यों का समूह
A gang of thieves चोरों का गिरोह
A gang of convicts अपराधियों/दोषियों/मुजरिमों का दल
A gang of prisoners कैदियों का दल
A gathering of people लोगों की भीड़/समूह
A guild of tradesmen व्यापारियों की समिति
A guild of artisans दस्तकारों/शिल्पियों/मिस्त्रियों का समिति
A horde of barbarians असभ्य व्यक्तियों का झुंड
A horde of savages जंगली व्यक्तियों का झुंड
A host of people लोगों की अधिक संख्या/भीड़
A mob of rioters दंगाइओं की उत्तेजित भीड़
A multitude of people लोगों की भीड़
A muster of troops सैनिकों का दल
A panel of judges न्यायाधीशों का समुदाय
A panel of jurymen अभिनिर्णायकों का समुदाय
A pack of fools मूर्खों का झुंड
A pack of knaves धूर्तों/पाजियों/दुष्टों का झुंड
A platoon of musketeers बंदूक लिये हुए फौजियों का दल
A posse of policemen सिपाहियों का सशक्त दल
A procession of people लोगों का जुलूस
A queue of people लोगों की कतार/पंक्ति
A senate of councillors सभासदों की समिति
A senate of university members
विश्वविद्यालय के सदस्यों की समिति
A squad of soldiers drilling ड्रील करनेवाले सैनिकों का झुंड
A staff of officials अधिकारियों का समूह
A staff of servants नौकरों का समूह
A stream of visitors अभ्यागतों/भेंट करने वालों का समूह
A string of coolies कुलियों की पंक्ति
A school of thinkers विचारकों का झुंड
A school of learned men विद्वानों का समूह
A syndicate of merchants व्यापारियों की मंडली
A syndicate of businessmen व्यापारियों की मंडली
A team of players खिलाड़ियों का समूह
A throng of people लोगों की भीड़
A train of followers अनुयायियों का ताँता
A tribe of aborigines देश के मूल निवासियों का वर्ग
A troupe of dancers नृत्यकों की टोली
A troupe of artisans दस्तकारों की मंडली
A union of workers मजदूरों का संघ
A union of tradesmen व्यापारियों का संघ

## B. Collections of animals, birds and insects

A troop of lions शेरों का दल/झुंड
A troop of monkeys बंदरों का झुंड
A train of donkeys गदहों का ताँता/समूह
A team of horses घोड़ों का समूह
A team of oxen बैलों का झुंड
A swarm of flies मक्खियों का झुंड
A swarm of bees मधुमक्खियों का झुंड
A swarm of locusts टिड्डों का झुंड
A stud of ponies छोटे घोड़ों का झुंड
A stud of horses घोड़ों का झुंड
A string of camels [illegible]

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



A shoal of herrings समुद्री मछलियों का झुंड
A shoal of fishes मछलियों का झुंड
A school of whales श्वेत मछलियों का झुंड
A school of porpoises शिशुमारों/सुईसों का झुंड
A pack of asses गधों का झुंड
A muster of peacocks मोरों का झुंड/संग्रह/संगम
A litter of puppies कुत्ता के बच्चों का समूह
A litter of kittens बिल्ली के बच्चों का समूह
A litter of piglings सुअर के बच्चों का समूह
A leash of hares चमड़े के पट्टे में बाँधे हुए खरहे का समूह
A leash of hounds चमड़े के पट्टे में बाँधे हुए शिकारी कुत्तों का समूह
A hive of bees मधुमक्खियों का छत्ता
A herd of deer हिरणों का झुंड/समूह
A herd of swine सुअरों का झुंड
A herd of cattle पशुओं का झुंड
A haul of fishes हवा के रुख में चलने वाले मछलियों का समूह
A gaggle of geese बत्तख की तरह शब्द करने वाले कलहंस का झुंड
A flock of sheep भेड़ों का झुंड
A flock of geese कलहंसों का झुंड
A flock of chickens मुर्गी के बच्चों का झुंड
A flight of locusts उड़ते हुए टिड्डियों का झुंड
A flight of insects उड़ते हुए कीड़ों का झुंड
A drove of cattle पशुओं का झुंड
A column of ants चींटियों की टुकड़ी (सेना जैसा)
A colony of termites दीमकों का झुंड
A brood of chickens अंडा सेनेवाली मुर्गी के बच्चों का समूह
A bevy of swans राजहंसों का झुंड
An army of ants चींटियों का झुंड

## C. Collection of things

An album of photos फोटो का एलबम
An album of stamps डाकटिकटों का एलबम
An album of snap-shots शीघ्रता से खींचे हुए फोटो का एलबम
An alliance of states राज्यों का संगठन
An alliance of powers शासकों या सेनाओं का संगठन
An anthology of poems कविताओं का संग्रह
An archive of public records सार्वजनिक रेकॉर्ड का ग्रन्थ रक्षागृह
An assortment of jobs कार्यों का क्रम
A bale of cottons सूती कपड़ों की गठरी
A bale of wood लकड़ी का गट्ठर
A barrage of questions प्रश्नों की बौछार
A basket of fruits फलों की टोकरी
A batch of loaves पावरोटियों का थानी/समुदाय
A battery of guns बंदूकों की कतार
A battery of lights टीपकों की पंक्ति
A battery of cameras कैमरों की पंक्ति
A beam of rays प्रकाश के किरणों की कड़ी
A block of flats फ्लैटों की पंक्ति
A block of houses घरों की पंक्ति
A bouquet of flowers फूलों का गुच्छा/गुलदस्ता
A bowl of illness बीमारियों का दौरा
A budget of letters पत्रों/चिट्ठियों का संग्रह
A budget of news समाचारों का संग्रह
A bunch of flowers फूलों का गुच्छा
A bunch of grapes अंगूरों का गुच्छा
A bunch of keys चाबियों का गुच्छा
A bunch of plantains केला का गुच्छा (घौंद)
A cache of arms हथियारों के छिपाने का स्थान
A catalogue of books पुस्तकों की सूची
A cargo of wheat जहाज या वाहन पर लदा गेहूँ
A carillon of bells घंटियों का समूह
A catch of fishes पकड़े/फँसाये हुए मछलियों का समूह
A cavalcade of memories यादगारों की बारात
A cellar of wine शराब रखने का तहखाना/कोठरी
A chain of mountains पर्वतों की शृंखला
A chain of events घटनाओं की शृंखला
A chest of drawers जाँघियों/कपड़ों का सन्दूक/पिटारा
A cloud of dust धूलकण का समूह
A cluster of islands द्वीपों का समूह
A cluster of nuts सुपारियों का गुच्छा
A clutch of eggs अंडों का कैरेट
A code of laws कानूनों की संहिता
A column of smoke धुँआ की लड़ी का समूह
A commission of enquiry पूछ ताछ के अधिकार का समूह
A commonwealth of nation राष्ट्रों का सार्वजनिक कल्याण संघ
A confideration of states राज्यों की संधि
A confideration of powers शासकों की संधि
A consignment of goods भेजे हुए मालों की सूची
A constellation of stars तारों का समूह
A convoy of helicopters हेलीकॉप्टरों का बेड़ा
A convoy of lorries चार पहिया गाड़ियों का बेड़ा
A course of lectures व्याख्यानों का क्रम
A course of events घटनाओं का क्रम
A crop of weeds घास/मोथा का उपज
A crop of hair सलीन छँटे हुए बाल का समूह
A curriculum of studies अध्ययन संबंधित पाठ्यक्रम की सूची
A faggot of twigs टहनियों का गट्ठर
A faggot of sticks छड़ियों का गट्ठर
A fall of leaves गिरे हुए पत्तियों का समूह
A fall of snow गिरे हुए बर्फ का समूह
A fall of rain गिरे हुए वर्षा बूँदों का समूह
A family of plants पौधों का समूह/परिवार
A family of languages भाषाओं का परिवार
A fleet of cars कारों का बेड़ा
A flight of steps उठाते हुए कदमों का क्रम
A flight of stairs सीढ़ियों का क्रम
A flotilla of boats नावों का बेड़ा
A flotilla of ships समुद्री जहाजों का बेड़ा
A forest of trees पेड़ों का समूह अर्थात्–जंगल
A gallery of pictures चित्रशाला में रखे हुए तस्वीरों का समूह
A garland of flowers फूलों की माला
A glut of injuries अपकारों की बहुलता
A group of islands द्वीपों का समूह
A grove of trees छोटे छायादार पेड़ों की वाटिका
A heap of ruins घर आदि के टूटे फूटे अंशों का ढेर
A heap of sand बालू का ढेर
A hoard of jewels रत्नों का संग्रह/खजाना
A hoard of gold सोना का ढेर
A host of subjects विषयों का समूह
A jumble of things चीजों का मिश्रण
A league of powers शासकों की संधि
A league of states राज्यों का संगठन

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



A league of nations राष्ट्रों की संधि
A library of books पुस्तकों का संग्रह
A lump of mud कीचड़ का ढेर
A lump of coal कोयला का ढेर
A lump of lead सीसा का ढेर
A mass of cloud बादल का पुंज
A mass of ruins विनष्ट चीजों का ढेर
A maze of tangle wood फँसे हुए लकड़ी का ढेर
A maze of worldly affairs सांसारिक घटनाओं का समूह
A miscellany of compositions रचनाओं का संग्रह
A mop of grey hair भूरे बालों का समूह जैसी कूची/झाड़ू
A mine of information सूचनाओं की खान
A museum of art कला का भंडार
A nosegay of flowers सुगंधित फूलों का गुच्छा
An out-fit of clothes चतुराई से संग्रह किये हुए वस्त्रों का ढेर
A pack of playing cards ताश की गड्डी
A packet of cigarettes सिगरेट का पैकेट
A peal of thunder मेघों की गड़गड़ाहट
A peal of bells घंटियों की पंक्ति
A pencil of rays किरणों का समूह
A pile of arms हथियारों का ढेर
A pile of wood लकड़ी का गट्ठर
A pool of blood खून का तालाब/कुण्ड
A range of mountains पर्वतों की श्रेणी
A range of hills पहाड़ियों की श्रेणी
A riot of colours रंगों का उत्सव
A roll of names नामों की सूची/नामावली
A rosary of beads जप करने वाला मालों का समूह
A round of shots बन्दूक या तोप की गोली की वर्षा
A round of duties कर्तव्यों का समूह
A round of applause प्रशंसा की वर्षा
A row of chairs कुर्सियों की पंक्ति
A row of trees पेड़ों की पंक्ति
A sea of troubles कष्टों की बहुलता/सागर
A series of events घटनाओं की श्रेणी
A series of lectures व्याख्यानों का क्रम
A set of rules नियमों का सेट
A set of tools औजारों का सेट
A sheaf of arrows तीरों का पुलिन्दा
A sheaf of cornstalks अनाज का गट्ठर
A shock of hair घुँघे बालों का समूह
A shower of arrows तीरों की बौछार
A shower of abuses गालियों की झड़ी/बौछार
A shower of rains वर्षा की बौछार
A shower of bullets गोलियों की वर्षा
A species of animals जानवरों की जाति/प्राणी विशेष
A species of plants पौधों का प्रकार
A stack of arms हथियारों का ढेर
A stack of hay भूसे का ढेर
A stack of wood लकड़ी का ढेर
A stock of goods सामानों का संचय
A stockpile of nuclear arms आणविक हथियारों का ढेर
A stockpile of gun powder बारूद का ढेर
A storm of protests विरुद्ध वाक्यों की बौछार
A stretch of wheat field गेहूँ के खेत का विस्तार
A string of pearls मोतियों की पंक्ति/माला
A string of beads प्रकाश के किरणों की पंक्ति
A suit of rooms एक ही प्रकार के कमरों का समूह
A suit of apartments एक प्रकार के एपार्टमेन्ट का समूह
A suit of furniture एक ही प्रकार के फर्निचर का समूह
A syllabus of studies अध्ययन का पाठ्यक्रम
A train of waggons चार पहिये के छकड़े का ताँता
A treasure trove of sunken ships
पृथ्वी में गड़े हुए समुद्री जहाजों का खजाना
A tuft of hair बाल का जूड़ा/समूह
A tuft of feathers पंखों का गुच्छा
A volley of questions प्रश्नों की बौछार
A volley of abuses गालियों की बौछार
A whorl pool of misery कष्टों का चक्रवात
A chest of drawers. जाँघिया का पिटारा/संदुक

## 2. Some Important Abstract Nouns

| Com. Noun | Abst. Noun |
|---|---|
| Act | Action |
| Baby | Babyhood |
| Bond | Bondage |
| Child | Childhood |
| Friend | Friendship |
| King | Kingship |
| Man | Manhood |
| Robber | Robbery |
| Patriot | Patriotism |
| Woman | Womanhood |
| Priest | Priesthood |
| Infant | Infancy |
| Scarce | Scarcity |
| Rigid | Rigidity |
| Agent | Agency |
| Beggar | Beggary |
| Boy | Boyhood |
| Dictator | Dictatorship |
| Hero | Heroism |
| Mother | Motherhood |
| Owner | Ownership |
| Thief | Theft |
| Widow | Widowhood |

| Adjective | Abst. Noun |
|---|---|
| Slave | Slavery |
| Young | Youth |
| Secret | Secrecy |
| Royal | Royalty |
| Regular | Regularity |
| Rich | Richness |
| Prudent | Prudence |
| Private | Privacy |
| Polite | Politeness |
| Kind | Kindness |
| Selfish | Selfishness |
| Patient | Patience |
| Honest | Honesty |
| Strong | Strength |
| Brave | Bravery |
| True | Truth |
| Foolish | Foolishness |
| Vain | Vanity |

| Adjective | Abst. Noun |
|---|---|
| False | Falsehood |
| Ignorant | Ignorance |
| Intelligent | Intelligence |
| High | Height |
| Wide | Width |
| Coward | Cowardice |
| Rude | Rudeness |
| Courageous | Courage |
| Dangerous | Danger |
| Dirty | Dirt |
| Dutiful | Duty |
| Confident | Confidence |
| Characteristic | Characte |
| Absent | Absence |
| Abundant | Abundance |
| Accurate | Accuracy |
| Brutal | Brutality |
| Dead | Death |
| Different | Difference |
| Fertile | Fertility |
| Good | Goodness |
| Hot | Heat |
| Healthy | Health |
| Important | Importance |
| Just | Justice |
| Long | Length |
| Necessary | Necessity |
| National | Nationality |
| Beautiful | Beauty |
| Proficient | Proficiency |
| Proud | Pride |
| Poor | Poverty |
| Obedient | Obedience |
| Modest | Modesty |
| Anxious | Anxiety |
| Deep | Depth |
| Wise | Wisdom |
| Weak | Weakness |
| Cruel | Cruelty |
| Lazy | Laziness |
| Humble | Humility |
| Innocent | Innocence |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Adjective | Abst. Noun | Verb | Abst. Noun |
|---|---|---|---|
| Able | Ability | Belong | Belongings |
| Brief | Brevity | Allow | Allowance |
| Careful | Carefulness | Accede | Access |
| Capable | Capability | Admit | Admission |
| Efficient | Efficiency | Attend | Attendance |
| Faithful | Faithfulness | Choose | Choice |
| Hard | Hardship | Carry | Carriage |
| Excellent | Excellence | Consume | Consumption |
| Curious | Curiosity | Deceive | Deceit |
| Careless | Carelessness | Practise | Practice |
| Busy | Business | Behave | Behaviour |
| Active | Activity | Arrive | Arrival |
| **Verb** | **Abst. Noun** | Speak | Speech |
| Please | Pleasure | Perform | Performance |
| Pay | Payment | Oblige | Obligation |
| Offend | Offence | Object | Objection |
| Obey | Obedience | Narrate | Narration |
| Mix | Mixture | Marry | Marriage |
| Maintain | Maintenance | Lose | Loss |
| Laugh | Laughter | Know | Knowledge |
| Insure | Insurance | Imagine | Imagination |
| Grow | Growth | Exist | Existence |
| Excel | Excellence | Enter | Entrance |
| Discover | Discovery | Disturb | Disturbance |
| Destroy | Destruction | Depart | Departure |
| Deliver | Delivery | Defend | Defence |
| Decide | Decision | Create | Creation |

## Practice Set

Q.1. *Pick out the Nouns and state their kinds in the following sentences :*

**Example :** Q. Veena is a laborious woman.
Ans. Veena—*Proper Noun.*
Woman—*Common Noun.*

1. Anshu picked up the ball and threw it to Sweta.
2. Akbar was a wise king.
3. The Vikrant is a big ship.
4. Tommy is a good dog.
5. The Tajmahal is a beautiful building.
6. October is the tenth month of the year.
7. The Qutub Minar is in Delhi.
8. Ranchi is the capital of Jharkhand.
9. Benares is situated on the bank of the river Ganga.
10. The piper was a colourful suit.
11. Switch on the fan and close the door.
12. The pen on the table belongs to Ravi.
13. The lady had a bunch of keys at her waist.
14. The team of players got down from the bus and entered the stadium.
15. London is the capital of England.
16. Health is wealth.
17. The crew was a fine one.
18. Cleanliness is next to godliness.
19. Solomon was famous for his wisdom.
20. Always speak the truth.
21. The jury were divided in their opinions.
22. Poverty is a curse.
23. I have gold and silver.
24. The ink is in the inkpot.
25. The soldiers were rewarded for their bravery.

Q. 2. *Fill in the blanks with suitable collective Nouns :*

**Example :** Q. A ..... of bees flew out of the hive.
Ans. *(Swarm)*

1. The ..... of kittens slept snugly in the basket.
2. The ..... of soldiers had marched all day.
3. The ..... of birds flew over the trees.
4. The ..... gathered near the hall to look at the film stars.
5. Our favourite ..... won the match.
6. Sunil took his ..... of cattle to the field to graze.
7. A ..... of five was appointed.
8. The ..... is studying Grammar.
9. He gave me a ..... of grapes.
10. A ..... of robbers entered the city at night.
11. Binay saw a ..... of ships in the harbour.
12. The ..... was a fine one.
13. The ..... was defeated.
14. The ..... has approved of his appointment
15. Veena saw a ..... of fish in the clear blue water of the lake.
16. A ..... of wolves attacked the travellers.
17. He had a whole ..... of clothes.
18. The police were trying to control the .....
19. Our teacher has a whole ..... of books.
20. What is your verdict, gentlemen of the ..... ?
21. The ..... listened in breathless silence to the play back singer.
22. A ..... of policemen guarded the mosque.
23. A ..... of savages attacked the explorers at night.
24. Have you seen Rahul's stamp ..... ?
25. Our ..... made 260 runs in its first innings.

Q. 3. *Fill in the blanks with the Abstract Nouns formed from the words given in the brackets :*

**Example :** Q. His ..... makes everybody dislike him. *(coward)*
Ans. cowardice

1. My ..... in her ..... is based on facts. *(believe/innocent)*
2. ..... is next to ..... *(clean/godly)*
3. ..... is better than ..... *(wise/strong)*
4. His ..... is admired by all. *(Intelligent)*
5. What is the ..... of this tree ? *(high)*
6. There is ..... in the old man's ..... *(wise/advise)*
7. ..... is better than cure. *(prevent)*
8. ..... and ..... can overcome. *(patient/persevere)*
9. ..... is a curse. *(poor)*
10. Without health there is no ..... *(happy)*
11. Guriya, my beloved, got her mother's ..... to go to the cinema. *(permit)*
12. ..... to one's country is the duty of a citizen. *(loyal)*
13. He shows the quality of ..... *(patriot)*
14. Mr. Thakur won many medals for his ..... in the war. *(brave)*
15. The ..... of the purse was reported to the teacher. *(lose)*

Q. 4. *Fill in the blanks with suitable Collective Nouns*

1. A ..... of wolves.
2. A ..... of bees
3. A ..... of fish
4. A ..... of thieves
5. A ..... of sailors
6. A ..... of ships
7. A ..... of trees
8. A ..... of books
9. A ..... of players
10. A ..... of puppies
11. A ..... of cattle
12. A ..... of workmen.
13. A ..... of stones
14. A ..... of sticks
15. A ..... of soldiers
16. A ..... of musicians
17. A ..... of flowers
18. A ..... of sheep
19. A ..... of elephants
20. A ..... of cigarettes
21. A ..... of grapes
22. A ..... of grass
23. A ..... of directors
24. A ..... of natives
25. A ..... of tools

Q. 5. *Fill in the blanks with suitable words*

1. A herd of .....
2. A litter of .....
3. A host of .....
4. A team of .....
5. A sheaf of .....
6. A troop of .....
7. A suite of .....
8. A flock of .....
9. A pair of .....
10. A chest of .....

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



11. A library of .....
12. A gaggle of .....
13. A set of .....
14. A parcel of .....
15. A fleet of .....
16. A bunch of .....
17. A group of .....
18. A crowd of .....
19. A chain of .....
20. A collection of .....
21. A cloud of .....
22. A flight of .....
23. A galaxy of .....
24. An assembly of .....
25. A course of .....

**Q. 6.** *Give the Abstract Nouns of the following words :*

1. Proud .....
2. Just .....
3. Cowardly ...
4. Modest .....
5. Humble .....
6. Present .....
7. Poor .....
8. Wide .....
9. Sweet .....
10. young .....
11. Laugh .....
12. Obey .....
13. Depart .....
14. Arrive .....
15. Believe .....
16. Choose .....
17. Please .....
18. Appear .....
19. Defend .....
20. move .....
21. appoint .....
22. protect .....
23. know .....
24. practise .....
25. deliver .....

**Q. 7.** *Give the opposites of Abstract Nouns :*

1. Courtesy .....
2. Beauty .....
3. Strength .....
4. Truth .....
5. Patience .....
6. Bravery .....
7. Kindness .....
8. Generosity .....
9. Honesty .....
10. Innocence .....
11. Love .....
12. Politeness .....

**Q. 8.** *Complete the following :*

1. Succeed is to success as advise is to .....
2. Act : action : : arrive : .....
3. Honesty : dishonesty : : patience : .....
4. Brave : bravery : : Innocent : .....
5. Kindness : kind : : beauty : .....
6. Godly : godliness : : clean : .....
7. Strong : strength : : Innocent : .....
8. Ignorant is to Ignorance as anxious is to : .....
9. False is to falsehood as child is to : .....
10. Proud is to ..... as vain is to vanity.

**Q. 9.** *Give the Adjective form of the following verbs :*

1. Lengthen ...
2. Bury .....
3. Succeed .....
4. Falsify .....
5. Fertilize .....
6. Widen .....
7. Darken .....
8. Thicken .....
9. Abundance .....
10. Realize .....

**Q. 10.** *Give the Adjective forms of the following Nouns :*

1. Necessity .....
2. Moisture .....
3. Length .....
4. Justice .....
5. Impatience .....
6. Idleness .....
7. Importance .....
8. Inferiority .....
9. Health .....
10. Height .....
11. Gravity .....
12. Foolishness .....
13. Excellence .....
14. Depth .....
15. Death .....
16. Affection .....
17. Accident .....
18. Ancestor .....
19. Autumn .....
20. Blood .....
21. Book .....
22. Centre .....
23. Charity .....
24. Courage .....
25. Discipline .....
26. Duty .....
27. Emperor .....
28. Dirt .....
29. Cloud .....
30. Confidence .....
31. Cheer .....
32. Class .....
33. Earth .....
34. Capacity .....
35. Friend .....
36. Hero .....
37. Horror .....
38. Humour .....
39. Industry .....
40. Judge .....
41. Injury .....
42. Labour .....
43. Love .....
44. Luxury .....
45. Miracle .....
46. Muscle .....
47. Navy .....
48. Quarrel .....
49. Sympathy .....
50. Storm .....
51. Sun .....
52. Tragedy .....
53. Tutor .....
54. Vigour .....
55. Voice .....
56. Wood .....
57. World .....
58. Space .....
59. Solitude .....
60. Society .....
61. Silk .....
62. Science .....
63. Right .....
64. Romance .....
65. Medicine .....
66. Hill .....
67. Heart .....
68. Harm .....
69. History .....
70. Honour .....

**Q. 11.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. She is carrying on her head a bunch of sticks.
2. A herd of sheep was grazing in the field.
3. A team of sailors rushed to save the passengers of the sinking boat.
4. An assembly of musicians came to entertain us.
5. He saw a litre of puppies in my house.
6. A crowd of worshippers is always seen in Hanuman Mandir.
7. A flock of boats was sailing across the Ganga river.
8. A troop of dacoits entered the village late at night and robbed no fewer than ten rich families.
9. My beloved, Guriya, is proud of having a series of old paintings.
10. A bevy of volunteers was present to serve the helpless.

**Q. 12.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. We should not (1)/ try to develop (2)/ any intimacy with (3)/ a group of liars. (4)/ No error (5)
2. A stock of lectures (1)/ on this topic (3)/ will be fruitful (3)/ to the students. (4)/ No error (5)
3. The robbers (1)/ received (2)/ a volley of stones (3)/ from the public. (4)/No error (5)
4. To give any programme (1)/ before (2)/ such a throng of sincere listeners (3)/ is important. (4)/ No error (5)
5. It is difficult (1)/ for me (2)/ to carry such a heavy pile of grass (3)/ on the head. (4)/No error (5)
6. A herd of horses (1)/ has arrived (2)/ to join (3)/ the race (4)/ No error (5)
7. A regiment of officials (1)/ has been (2)/ invited (3)/ to lunch (4)/ No error (5)
8. A shoal (1)/ of wolves (2)/ attacked (3)/the travellers (4)/ No error (5)
9. The police (1)/ were trying (2)/ to control (3)/ the crowd. (4)/ No error (5)
10. He (1)/ saw (2)/ a crew of ships (3)/in the harbour (4)/ No error (5)
11. Wise (1)/ is (2)/ better than (3)/ strength (4)/ No error (5)
12. He (1)/treats (2)/his servants (3)/with great kind (4)/ No error (5)
13. He (1)/ was hated (2)/ by all (3)/ for his selfish (4)/No error (5)
14. The principal (1)/ gave him (2)/ punishness (3) for telling a lie (4)/ No error (5)
15. He (1)/ wants (2)/ to improve (3)/ his reading ableness (4)/ No error (5)
16. Loyal (1)/ to one's country (2)/ is the duty (3)/ of a citizen (4)/ No error (5)
17. The lose (1)/ of the purse (2)/ was reported (3)/ to the teacher (4)/ No error (5)
18. The writer (1)/ got his wife's permittance (2)/ to go (3)/ to the cinema (4)/ No error (5)
19. Without healthiness (1)/ there (2)/ is (3)/ no happiness (4)/ No error (5)
20. Mr. Thakur (1)/ often thinks (2)/ of the happy days (3)/ of childish (4)/ No error (5)
21. The amount (1)/ of accidents (2)/ is (3)/ steadily increasing (4)/ No error (5)
22. On almost (1)/ every page (2)/ there were announcements (3)/ for cigarettes and tobbacco (4)/ No error (5)
23. I was very nervous (1)/ during the appointment (2)/ and I'm sure (3)/ they'll give the job to someone else.(4)/ No error (5)
24. All (1)/the passengers (2)/ carried (3)/their own baggages (4)/ No error (5)
25. We (1)/ were surprised (2)/ by their (3)/ peculiar behaviour (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Anshu | P. Noun | 2. Akbar | P. Noun |
| Ball | Com. Noun | King | Com. Noun |
| Sweta | P. Noun | | |
| 3. Vikrant | P. Noun | 4. Tommy | P. Noun |
| Ship | Com. Noun | Dog | Com. Noun |
| 5. Tajmahal | P. Noun | 6. October | P. Noun |
| Building | Com. Noun | Month | Com. Noun |
| | | Year | Com. Noun |
| 7. Qutub Minar | P. Noun | 8. Ranchi | P. Noun |
| Delhi | P. Noun | Capital | Com. Noun |
| | | Jharkhand | P. Noun |
| 9. Benares | P. Noun | 10. Piper | Com. Noun |
| Bank | Com. Noun | Suit | Com. Noun |
| River | Com. Noun | | |
| Ganga | P. Noun | | |
| 11. Fan | Com. Noun | 12. Pen | Com. Noun |
| Door | Com. Noun | Table | Com. Noun |
| | | Ravi | P. Noun |
| 13. Lady | Com. Noun | 14. Team | Coll. Noun |
| Bunch | Coll. Noun | Players | Com. Noun |
| Keys | Com. Noun | bus | Com. Noun |
| Waist | Com. Noun | stadium | Com. Noun |
| 15. London | P. Noun | 16. Health | A. Noun |
| Capital | Com. Noun | Wealth | A. Noun |
| England | P. Noun | | |
| 17. Crew | Coll. Noun | 18. Cleanliness | A. Noun |
| | | Godliness | A. Noun |
| 19. Solomon | Com. Noun | 20. Truth | A. Noun |
| Wisdom | A. Noun | | |
| 21. Jury | Coll. Noun | 22. Poverty | A. Noun |
| Opinions | Com. Noun | Curse | Com. Noun |
| 23. Gold | M. Noun | 24. Ink | M. Noun |
| Silver | M. Noun | Inkpot | Com. Noun |
| 25. Soldiers | Com. Noun | | |
| Bravery | A. Noun | | |

**Note :** P. Noun – Proper noun, Com. Noun – Common noun
Coll. noun – Collective noun, M. noun – Material noun
A. noun – Abstract noun

**Q.2.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Litter | 2. Army | 3. Flock |
| 4. Crowd | 5. Team | 6. Herd |
| 7. Committee | 8. Class | 9. Bunch |
| 10. Gang | 11. Fleet | 12. Crew |
| 13. Army | 14. Committee | 15. Shoal |
| 16. Pack | 17. Wardrobe | 18. Mob |
| 19. Library | 20. Jury | 21. Audience |

22. Posse (पौनी—सशस्त्रदल)
23. Horde (होर्ड—असभ्य व्यक्तियों का झुंड)
24. Collection 25. Team

**Q.3.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Belief | Innocence | 2. Cleanliness | Godliness |
| 3. Wisdom | Strength | 4. Intelligence | |
| 5. Height | | 6. Wisdom | Advice |
| 7. Prevention | | 8. Patience | Perseverance |
| 9. Poverty | | 10. Happiness | |
| 11. Permission | | 12. Loyalty | |
| 13. Patriotism | | 14. Bravery | |
| 15. Loss | | | |

**Q.4.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Pack | 2. Swarm | 3. Shoal | 4. Gang |
| 5. Crew | 6. Fleet | 7. Clump | 8. Library |
| 9. Team | 10. Litter | 11. Herd | 12. Gang |
| 13. Heap | 14. Bundle | 15. Regiment | 16. Band |
| 17. Bouquet | 18. Flock | 19. Herd | 20. Packet |
| 21. Bunch | 22. Tuft | 23. Board | 24. Tribe |
| 25. Set | | | |

**Q.5.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Cattle | 2. Kittens | 3. Angels | 4. Players |
| 5. Corn | 6. Children | 7. Clothes | 8. Birds |
| 9. Shoes | 10. Drawers | 11. Books | 12. Geese |
| 13. Tools | 14. Cards | 15. Ships | 16. Keys |
| 17. Islands | 18. People | 19. Mountains | 20. Stamps |
| 21. Locusts | 22. Birds | 23. Stars | 24. Listeners |
| 25. Lectures | | | |

**Q.6.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Pride | 2. Justice | 3. Cowardice | 4. Modesty |
| 5. Humility | 6. Presence | 7. Poverty | 8. Width |
| 9. Sweetness | 10. Youth | 11. Laughter | 12. Obedience |
| 13. Departure | 14. Arrival | 15. Belief | 16. Choice |
| 17. Pleasure | 18. Appearance | 19. Defence | 20. Movement |
| 21. Appointment | 22. Protection | 23. Knowledge | 24. Practice |
| 25. Delivery | | | |

**Q.7.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Discourtesy | 2. Ugliness | 3. Weakness | 4. Falsehood |
| 5. Impatience | 6. Cowardice | 7. Cruelty | 8. Meanness |
| 9. Dishonesty | 10. Guilt | 11. Hatred | 12. Rudeness |

**Q.8.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Advice | 2. Arrival | 3. Impatience | 4. Innocence |
| 5. Beautiful | 6. Cleanliness | 7. Innocence | 8. Anxiety |
| 9. Childhood | 10. Pride | | |

**Q.9.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Long | 2. Burial | 3. Successful | 4. False |
| 5. Fertile | 6. Wide | 7. Dark | 8. Thick |
| 9. Abundant | 10. Realizable | | |

**Q.10.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Necessary | 2. Moist | 3. Long | 4. Just |
| 5. Impatient | 6. Idle | 7. Important | 8. Inferior |
| 9. Healthy | 10. High | 11. Grave | 12. Foolish |
| 13. Excellent | 14. Deep | 15. Dead | 16. Affectionate |
| 17. Accidental | 18. Ancestral | 19. Autumnal | 20. Bloody |
| 21. Bookish | 22. Central | 23. Charitable | 24. Courageous |
| 25. Disciplinary | 26. Dutiful | 27. Imperial | 28. Dirty |
| 29. Cloudy | 30. Confident | 31. Cheerful | 32. Classic |
| 33. Earthly | 34. Capacious | 35. Friendly | 36. Heroic |
| 37. Horrible | 38. Humorous | 39. Industrious | 40. Judicial / Judicious |
| 41. Injurious | 42. Laborious | 43. Lovely | |
| 44. Luxurious | 45. Miraculous | 46. Muscular | 47. Naval |
| 48. Quarrelsome | 49. Syphathetic | 50. Stormy | 51. Sunny |
| 52. Tragic | 53. Tutorial | 54. Vigorous | 55. Vocal |
| 56. Woody | 57. Worldly | 58. Spacious | 59. Solitary |
| 60. Social | 61. Silken | 62. Scientific | 63. Righteous |
| 64. Romantic | 65. Medicinal | 66. Hilly | 67. Hearty |
| 68. Harmful | 69. Historic | 70. Honourable | |

**Q.11.**

1. She is carrying on her head a bundle of sticks.
2. A flock of sheep was grazing in the field.
3. A crew of sailors rushed to save the passengers of the sinking boat.
4. A band of musicians came to entertain us.
5. He saw a litter of puppies in my house.
6. An assembly of worshippers is always seen in Hanuman Mandir.
7. A flotilla of boats was sailing across the Ganga river.
8. A gang of dacoits entered the village late at night and robbed no fewer than ten families.
9. My beloved, Guriya, is proud of having a collection of old paintings.
10. A body of volunteers was present to serve the helpless.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Q.12.

1. (4) a group of liars की जगह a pack of liars का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (1) a stock of lectures की जगह A course of lectures का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (5) the given sentence is correct.
4. (3) a throng of sincere listeners की जगह An assembly of sincere listeners का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) a heavy pile of grain की जगह A heavy sheaf of grain का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (1) a herd of horses की जगह A flight of horses का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (1) a regiment of officials की जगह An army of officials का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (1) a shoal की जगह A pack का प्रयोग होगा। A pack of wolves का प्रयोग होता है।
9. (4) the crowd की जगह the mob का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (3) a crew of ships की जगह A fleet of ships का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (1) wise Adjective है जो sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त नहीं है अतः wise का abstract noun wisdom का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (4) great kind की जगह Great kindness का प्रयोग होगा। Great Adjective है और kind भी Adjective है। Adjective, Adjective की विशेषता नहीं बताता है बल्कि Noun की विशेषता बताता है। अतः kind की जगह kindness का प्रयोग ही उपयुक्त है।
13. (4) his selfish की जगह his selfishness का प्रयोग होगा। his possessive Adjective है अतः इसका प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है लेकिन selfish Adjective है।
14. (3) punishness की जगह punishment का प्रयोग होगा। punish का noun form punishment होता है न कि punishness.
15. (4) ableness की जगह ability का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (1) loyal की जगह loyalty का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (1) lose की जगह loss का प्रयोग होगा। lose-verb है जबकि loss abstract noun है।
18. (2) permittance की जगह permission का प्रयोग होगा permit का abstract noun permission होता है।
19. (1) healthiness की जगह health का प्रयोग sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
20. (4) childish की जगह childhood का प्रयोग sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
21. (1) the amount का प्रयोग मात्रा बोध कराने के लिए होता है जबकि the number का प्रयोग संख्या का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। अतः the amount की जगह the number का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (3) announcements का प्रयोग घोषणा या लोगों को कुछ 'महत्वपूर्ण सूचना' देने के अर्थ में होता है जबकि advertisements का प्रयोग 'विज्ञापन' के अर्थ में होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के लिए advertisements उपयुक्त है।
23. (2) appointment (नियुक्ति) की जगह interview का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (4) baggages की जगह baggage का प्रयोग होगा। baggage uncountable noun है इसका plural नहीं होता है।
25. (4) behaviours की जगह behaviour का प्रयोग होगा। behaviour uncountable noun है इसका plural नहीं होता है।

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Noun and the Number

4

**Number** (वचन) : *If a Noun tells about one or more than one is called Number.* जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. A boy<br>A girl<br>A pen<br>A table | → only one | 2. Boys<br>Girls<br>Pens<br>Tables | → more than one |

**Kinds of Number :**

1. Singular Number *(एकवचन)* 2. Plural Number *(बहुवचन)*

1. **Singular Number :** *If a Noun tells about only one, it is called Singular Number.* जैसे—
   A student *(एक छात्र)* A woman *(एक औरत)*
2. **Plural Number :** *If a Noun tells about more than one it is called Plural Number.* जैसे—
   students *(एक से अधिक छात्र)* women *(एक से अधिक औरत)*

**Rules for changing a Singular into Plural Number :**

**Rule (1) :** Generally किसी भी Noun के last में 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Fan | Fans | Pen | Pens |
| Flat | Flats | Chair | Chairs |
| Shirt | Shirts | Friend | Friends |
| Horse | Horses | Dog | Dogs |

**Rule (2) :** यदि किसी Singular Common Noun का last letter 's', 'ss', sh, ch (च) x, or z हो, तो 'es' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Bus | Buses | Class | Classes |
| Kiss | Kisses | Gas | Gases |
| Glass | Glasses | Dish | Dishes |
| Bush | Bushes | Brush | Brushes |
| Match | Matches | Bench | Benches |
| Batch | Batches | Branch | Branches |
| Watch | Watches | Box | Boxes |
| Tax | Taxes | Quiz | Quizes |
| Topaz | Topazes | | |

**Rule (3) :** यदि किसी Singular Common Noun का last letter 'y' हो और y के पहले consonant हो, तो y को हटाकर 'ies' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Lady | Ladies | Baby | Babies |
| City | Cities | Story | Stories |
| Army | Armies | Fly | Flies |
| Pony | Ponies | Duty | Duties |
| Secretary | Secretaries | Security | Securities |
| Lily | Lilies | Salary | Salaries |
| Nursery | Nurseries | Obituary | Obituaries |

**Rule (4) :** लेकिन यदि किसी Singular Common Noun का last letter 'y' हो और 'y' के पहले Vowel हो, तो सिर्फ 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Play | Plays | Ray | Rays |
| Toy | Toys | Storey *(मंजिल)* | Storeys |
| Valley | Valleys | Day | Days |
| Pay | Pays | Donkey | Donkeys |
| Monkey | Monkeys | Key | Keys |
| Journey | Journeys | Chimney | Chimneys |
| Bay | Bays | | |

**Rule (5) :** यदि किसी Singular Common Noun का last letter 'ch' हो, तथा 'ch' का उच्चारण 'क' हो, तो सिर्फ 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Monarch *(सम्राट)* | Monarchs | Stomach *(पेट)* | Stomachs |

**Rule (6) :** यदि किसी Singular Common Noun का last letter 'o' हो और 'o' के पहले Consonant हो, तो 'es' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Potato | Potatoes | Tomato | Tomatoes |
| Buffalo | Buffaloes | Mango | Mangoes |
| Negro | Negroes | Hero | Heroes |
| Mosquito | Mosquitoes | Motto *(कहावत)* | Mottoes |
| Torpedo *(ध्वंसक पोत)* | Torpedoes | Volcano *(ज्वालामुखी)* | Volcanoes |
| Calico *(परेल)* | Calicoes | Echo *(गूँज)* | Echoes |
| Manifesto *(घोषणा पत्र)* | Manifestoes | Momento *(यादगार)* | Momentoes |
| Eskimo *(एस्किमो)* | Eskimoes | Veto *(वीटो)* | Vetoes |
| Grotto *(गुफा)* | Grottoes | Halo *(परिवेश, आदर्श)* | Haloes |
| Desperado *(निराश व्यक्ति)* | Desperadoes | Flamingo *(एक पक्षी का नाम)* | Flamingoes |
| Innuendo *(परोक्ष संकेत, व्यंग्य कथन)* | Innuendoes | Tornado *(बवंडर, पूर्णवायु)* | Tornadoes |

**Note :** Calico—white unprinted cloth

**Rule (7) :** कुछ ऐसे Singular Common Nouns हैं जिनके last में 'o' रहता है और 'o' के पहले Consonant भी रहता है, लेकिन सिर्फ 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Photo | Photos | Dynamo | Dynamos | Piano | Pianos |
| Kilo | Kilos | Embryo | Embryos | Proviso | Provisos |
| Canto | Cantos | Concerto | Concertos | Maestro | Maestros |
| Solo | Solos | Commando | Commandos | Quarto | Quartos |

**Note :** कुछ ऐसे singular common nouns हैं जिनके last में 'o' रहता है और 'o' के पहले consonant भी रहता है लेकिन इनका plural s/es जोड़कर बनाया जाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Cargo (जहाज पर लदा माल) | cargos/cargoes |
| Lasso (फंदा डालकर पकड़ने का रस्सा) | lassos/lassoes |
| Portico (द्वार मंडप) | porticos/porticoes |

**Rule (8)** : यदि किसी Singular Common Noun का last letter 'o' हो और 'o' के पहले Vowel हो, तो सिर्फ 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Bamboo (बाँस) | Bamboos |
| Cameo (नक्काशीदार रत्न) | Cameos |
| Cuckoo (कोयल) | Cuckoos |
| Curio (कलाकृति) | Curios |
| Portfolio (निवेशसूची, मंत्री पद) | Portfolios |
| Ratio (अनुपात) | Ratios |
| Stereo (डबे हुए टाइप की तख्ती) | Stereos |
| Studio (स्टुडियो) | Studios |
| Folio (पन्ना) | Folios |
| Video (विडियो) | Videos |
| Radio (रेडियो) | Radios |
| Scenario (दृश्यलेख) | Scenarios |

**Rule (9)** : यदि किसी Singular Common Noun का last letter 'f' or 'fe' हो, तो 'f' or 'fe' को हटाकर 'ves' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Calf | Calves | Life | Lives |
| Elf (यक्ष, पिशाच, परी) | Elves | Knife | Knives |
| Wife | Wives | Leaf | Leaves |
| Thief | Thieves | Sheaf (पुट्ठा/पुलिंदा) | Sheaves |
| Half | Halves | Self | Selves |
| Loaf (पावरोटी) | Loaves | Wolf | Wolves |
| Shelf (आलमारी) | Shelves | | |

**Rule (10)** : कुछ ऐसे Singular Nouns हैं, जिनके last में 'f', 'ff' or 'fe' रहते हैं, लेकिन सिर्फ 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Chief (प्रधान) | Chiefs |
| Belief (विश्वास) | Beliefs |
| Cliff (चट्टान) | Cliffs |
| Dwarf (वामन/बौना) | Dwarfs |
| Grief (शोक, दुःख) | Griefs |
| Scarf (गुलबंद) | Scarfs |
| Gulf (खाड़ी) | Gulfs |
| Handkerchief (रूमाल) | Handkerchiefs |
| Hoof (खुर) | Hoofs |
| Roof (छत) | Roofs |
| Proof (प्रमाण) | Proofs |
| Mischief (क्षति/संकट) | Mischiefs |
| Puff (हवा का झोंका/धुएँ का भाग का फूँक) | Puffs |
| Reef (चट्टान का वह भाग—जो समुद्र में पानी के समीप हो) | Reefs |
| Staff (स्टाफ) | Staffs |
| Stuff (सामग्री/पदार्थ) | Stuffs |
| Turf (घास का मैदान/घुड़दौड़ का मैदान) | Turfs |
| Wharf (घाट) | Wharfs |

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Strife (कलह, विवाह, विरोध) | Strifes |
| Cafe (शराब या कॉफी क्रय स्थल) | Cafes |
| Safe (तिजूरी) | Safes |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Note : 1. Hoof | Hoofs | (√) | प्रचलित है। |
| | Hooves | (√) | |
| 2. Scarf | Scarfs | (√) | प्रचलित है। |
| | Scarves | (√) | |
| 3. Wharf | Wharfs | (√) | प्रचलित है। |
| | Wharves | (√) | |
| 4. Staff | Staffs | (√) | प्रचलित है। |
| | Staves | (√) | |

**Rule (11)** : कुछ ऐसे Singular Nouns हैं जिनके बीच के Vowel बदलकर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Dormouse (गिलहरी की तरह कुतरने वाला छोटा जानवर) | Dormice |
| Foot (पैर) | Feet |
| Goose (कलहंस) | Geese |
| Louse (जूँ/घृणित व्यक्ति) | Lice |
| Man (आदमी) | Men |
| Mouse (चूहा) | Mice |
| Tooth (दाँत) | Teeth |
| Woman (औरत) | Women |

**Rule (12)** : कुछ ऐसे Nouns हैं, जिनके अंत में 'en' or 'ren' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Child | Children |
| Ox | Oxen |
| Brother | Brethren (एक ही धार्मिक संस्था का सदस्य) or, Brothers (सहोदर भाई) |

**Rule (13)** : Generally (सामान्यतः) Singular Compound Nouns के main word में 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Commander-in-chief (प्रधान सेनापति) | Commanders-in-chief |
| Passer-by (पथिक) | Passers-by |
| Son-in-law (दामाद) | Sons-in-law |
| Daughter-in-law (पुत्र वधू) | Daughters-in-law |
| Brother-in-law (बहनोई) | Brothers-in-law |
| Father-in-law (ससुर) | Fathers-in-law |
| Mother-in-law (सास) | Mothers-in-law |
| Sister-in-law (साली, ननद, देवरानी) | Sisters-in-law |
| Step-mother (सौतेली माँ) | Step-mothers |
| Step-father (सौतेला पिता) | Step-fathers |
| Step-brother (सौतेला भाई) | Step-brothers |
| Step-sister (सौतेली बहन) | Step-sisters |
| Step-son (सौतेला बेटा) | Step-sons |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Step-daughter (सौतेली बेटी) | Step-daughters |
| Looker-on (दर्शक) | lookers-on |
| Hanger-on (पिछलग्गू, अनुचर, दास) | Hangers-on |
| Maid-servant (नौकरानी) | Maid-servants |
| Coat-of-Mail (कवच) | Coats-of-Mail |
| Court-martial (सैनिक न्यायालय, फौजी अदालत) | Courts-martial |
| Knight-errant (शूरवीर) | Knights-errant |
| Major-general (सैन्यदल का अध्यक्ष) | Major-generals |
| Spend-thrift (अतिव्ययी, मुफ्तमें धन उड़ानेवाला) | Spend-thrifts |
| Pick-pocket (पॉकेटमार, ठग) | Pick-pockets |
| Pick-purse (दूसरे के रुपये पैसे की थैली चुराने वाला) | Pick-purses |

**Note :** कुछ ऐसे compound nouns हैं जिनके last में man रहता है। Man के vowel को बदलकर plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Kins man | Kins men | French man | French men |
| Noble man | Noble men | English man | English men |
| Dutch man | Dutch men | Statesman | Statesmen |

**ध्यान दें :** लेकिन कुछ ऐसे compound nouns हैं जिनके last में man रहता है, लेकिन सिर्फ 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| North man | North mans | Musalman | Musalmans |
| Brahman | Brahmans | Turcoman | Turcomans |

**Rule (14) :** कुछ ऐसे Nouns हैं, जिनके main word के Middle Vowel को बदलकर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Foot-man (पर्दा पहने नौकर) | Foot-men |
| Man-of-war (समुद्री सेना का जहाज) | Men-of-war |
| Washer-man (धोबी) | Washer-men |
| Postman (डाकिया) | Postmen |
| Washer-woman (धोबिन) | Washer-women |
| Beggar-man (भिखारी) | Beggar-men |
| Beggar-woman (भिखारिन) | Beggar-women |

**Rule (15) :** कुछ ऐसे Compound Nouns हैं, जिनके दोनों पदों को बदलकर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Man-servant (नौकर) | Men-servants |
| Woman-servant (नौकरानी) | Women-servants |
| Lord-Justice (न्यायाधीश, न्यायकर्ता) | Lords-Justices |
| Knight-Templar (कानून पढ़ने वाला विद्यार्थी) | Knights-Templars |
| Lord-Lieutenant (मुख्य सेनेना अधिकारी) | Lords-Lieutenants |

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Man doctor | Men doctors |
| Woman doctor | Women doctors |
| Man teacher | Men teachers |
| Woman teacher | Women teachers |

**Note :** कुछ ऐसे compound nouns हैं जो man तथा woman से बने होते हैं लेकिन last word (अंतिम शब्द) में 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Man eater | Man eaters | Woman lover | Woman lovers |
| Man lover | Man lovers | Woman hater | Woman haters |
| Man hater | Man haters | | |

**Rule (16) :** कुछ ऐसे Compound words हैं, जिनके last word के साथ 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Forget-me-not (प्रसिद्ध नीले रंग का फूल) | Forget-me-nots |
| Go-between (मध्यस्थ) | Go-betweens |
| Pick-me-up (उत्तेजक शर्बत / मदिरा) | Pick-me-ups |
| Touch-me-not plant (छुईमुई का पौधा) | Touch-me-not plants |
| Drawback (दोष) | Drawbacks |
| Look-out (चौकसी/कर्त्तव्य) | Look-outs |
| Good-for-nothing (निकम्मी चीज) | Good-for-nothings |

**Rule (17) :** कुछ ऐसे Nouns हैं, जिनके Tail term में 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Spoonful (चम्मचभर) | Spoonfuls | Handful (अँजुरीभर) | Handfuls |
| Mouthful (मुँहभर) | Mouthfuls | Cupful (कपभर) | Cupfuls |
| Glassful (ग्लासभर) | Glassfuls | | |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. He could drink only two spoonfuls of tea. (✓)
   उसने केवल दो चम्मच चाय पी।
   He could drink only two spoonsful of tea. (×)
2. There are three handfuls of rice in the pot. (✓)
   बरतन में केवल तीन मुट्ठी चावल है।
   There are three handsful of rice in the pot. (×)

**Rule (18) :** कुछ विदेशी भाषा के Nouns के Plural forms नीचे दिये गए हैं।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Agendum (कार्यक्रम) | Agenda |
| Erratum (छापेखाने की भूल) | Errata |
| Alumnus (विद्यार्थी) | Alumni |
| Axis (धुरी) | Axes |
| Analysis (विश्लेषण) | Analyses |
| Bacillus (हानिकारक कीटाणु) | Bacilli |
| Bandit (लुटेरा) | Banditti (bandits) |
| Bacterium (कीटाणु) | Bacteria |
| Basis (आधार) | Bases |
| Criterion (कसौटी) | Criteria |
| Crisis (संकट) | Crises |
| Datum (जानी हुई बात) | Data |
| Dictum (सिद्धांत) | Dicta |
| Formula (सूत्र) | Formulae / formulas |
| Memorandum (स्मृतिपत्र) | Memoranda |
| Sanatorium (स्वास्थ्यवर्द्धक स्थान) | Sanatoria |
| Phenomenon (घटना) | Phenomena |
| Thesis (अनुसंधानपूर्ण लेख) | Theses |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Medium (माध्यम) | Media |
| Radius (त्रिज्या) | Radii |
| Oasis (रेगिस्तान की हरी-भरी भूमि) | Oases |
| Series (क्रम) | Series |
| Species (जाति) | Species |
| Apparatus (यंत्र) | Apparatus |
| Terminus (अंत) | Termini |
| Index (सूची) | Indices |
| Hypothesis (मान्यता/उपकल्पना) | Hypotheses |
| Parenthesis (निक्षिप्त वाक्य) | Parentheses |
| Genius (विद्वान, प्रतिभाशाली व्यक्ति) | Genii/Geniuses |
| Metamorphosis (कायांतरण) | Metamorphoses |
| Narcosis (बेहोशी) | Narcoses |
| Diagnosis (रोग का निर्णय) | Diagnoses |
| Synopsis (रूपरेखा, संक्षिप्त वर्णन) | Synopses |
| Ellipsis (लोप) | Ellipses |
| Synthesis (संकलन, संश्लेषण) | Syntheses |
| Hyponosis (कृत्रिम निद्रा, मोहनिद्रा) | Hyponoses |
| Appendix (परिशिष्ट) | Appendices |
| Madam (महोदया, श्रीमती) | Mesdames |
| Bureau (दराजवाली मेज, कार्यालय) | Bureaux, Bureaus |
| Cherub (देवदूत, सुन्दर बालक) | Cherubim/Cherubs |
| Seraph (देवपुरुष/उच्चकोटि का देवदूत) | Seraphim /Seraphs |
| Corrigendum (संशोधन) | Corrigenda |
| Crematorium (दाहसंस्कार स्थल) | Crematoria |
| Maximum (अधिकतम) | Maxima |
| Minimum (न्यूनतम) | Minima |
| Momentum (संवेग/गति) | Momenta |
| Album (संग्रह पुस्तक) | Albums |
| Mausoleum (मकबरा/समाधि) | Mausoleums |
| Forum (मंच/न्यायालय) | Forums |
| Premium (फिरौती) | Premiums |
| Museum (संग्रहालय) | Museums |
| Auditorium (श्रोता कक्ष) | Auditoriums |
| Aquarium (जल-जीवशाला) | Aquariums/Aquaria |
| Curriculum (पाठ्यक्रम) | Curriculums/Curricula |
| Stadium (स्टेडियम) | Stadiums |
| Harmonium (हारमोनियम) | Harmoniums |
| Gymnasium (व्यायामशाला) | Gymnasiums |
| Asylum (आश्रय) | Asylums |
| Decorum (उचित व्यवहार) | Decorums |
| Petroleum (पेट्रोलियम) | Petroleums |
| Pendulum (लोलक) | Pendulums |
| Euphonium (मधुर ध्वनि वाली तार) | Euphoniums |
| Stratum (सामाजिक स्तर) | Stratums/Strata |
| Rostrum (भाषण मंच) | Rostrums/Rostra |
| Podium (इमारत के चारों ओर का जगतार चबूतरा) | Podiums/Podia |
| Millennium (एक हजार वर्ष की अवधि) | Millenniums/Millennia |
| Demon (दानव, शैतान, पिशाच) | Demons |

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Neutron (न्यूट्रोन) | Neutrons |
| Electron (इलेक्ट्रॉन) | Electrons |
| Proton (प्रोटॉन) | Protons |
| Plateau (पठार) | Plateaux |
| Monsieur (महाशय, फ्रांसीसी) | Messieurs |
| Focus (किरणों का केन्द्र/संगम) | Foci/Focuses |
| Syllabus (व्याख्यान/पाठ्य पुस्तक को निर्धारित करने की पुस्तक) | Syllabi/Syllabuses |

**Note :** (i) Agenda का प्रयोग आजकल singular or plural दोनों sense में होता है। जरूरत के मुताबिक इसके साथ singular or plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The agenda of the meeting was placed before the chairman (✓)
S.N. S.V.
*सभापति के सामने सभा का कार्यक्रम रखा गया।*

The agenda were drawn up. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

(ii) Data का प्रयोग आजकल singular or plural दोनों sense में होता है। जरूरत के मुताबिक singular or plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

If our data are wrong, the conclusion we draw from them must be wrong. (✓)
P.N. P.V.
*यदि जानी हुई बात गलत है तो उनसे निकला हुआ निष्कर्ष भी गलत होगा।*

The data is sufficient (✓)
S.N. S.V.

(iii) Medium का plural Mediums or Media दोनों होता है। जैसे—

Now, Hindi is the *Medium* of instruction of Bihar. (✓)
*बिहार के स्कूलों में शिक्षा का माध्यम हिन्दी है।*

The press and the platform are two mass *media* by which we can propagate our views. (✓)
*हम अपने विचारों का प्रचार अखबार और सभा—दो यंत्रों के द्वारा कर सकते हैं।*

**ध्यान दें :** जब Medium का प्रयोग means या agency के अर्थ में होता है तो इसका plural-media होता है, लेकिन जब Medium का प्रयोग आध्यात्मिक अर्थ (spiritualistic sense) में हो तो इसका plural—mediums होता है।

**कुछ महत्वपूर्ण विदेशी शब्दों का प्रयोग देखें :**

1. **Use of Errata :**
All the errata have been corrected.
P.N. P.V.
All the erratum have been corrected
*छपने या लिखने की भूल शुद्ध कर दिया गया है।*

2. **Use of Alumni :**
जैसे— The old alumni of the college meet every year. (✓)
P.N. P.V.
The old alumnus of the college meet every year. (×)
*कॉलेज के पुराने छात्र प्रतिवर्ष एक स्थान पर मिलते हैं।*

3. **Use of Axes :**
जैसे— Planets move on their axes. (✓)
Planets move on their axis. (×)
*नक्षत्र/ग्रह अपनी धुरियों पर घूमते हैं।*

4. **Use of Analysis :**
जैसे— The analysis of a simple sentence is easy but the analyses of complex and compound sentences are difficult. (✓)
S.N. P.N.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The analyses of a simple sentence is easy but the analysis of complex and compound sentences are difficult (×)
(P.N. S.N.)
सरल वाक्य का विश्लेषण आसान होता है। लेकिन मिश्रित और यौगिक वाक्यों का विश्लेषण कठिन होता है।

**Use of Bacilli :**

जैसे— Cholera is caused by bacilli. (√) (P.N.)
Cholera is caused by bacillus. (×) (S.N.)
कीटाणुओं के द्वारा हैजा उत्पन्न होता है।

**Use of Bandits :**

जैसे— All the bandits were caught and hanged. (√) (P.N. P.V.)
All the bandit were caught and hanged. (×)
सभी लुटेरे पकड़े गये और उन्हें फाँसी पर लटकाया गया।

**Use of Bacteria :**

जैसे— There are many useful bacteria in water. (√) (P.N.)
There are many useful bacteriums in water. (×)
पानी में बहुत से लाभदायक कीटाणु होते हैं।

**Use of criteria :**

जैसे— There are many criteria to judge pure water. (√) (P.N.)
There are many criterions to judge pure water. (×)
शुद्ध जल को जाँचने की अनेक कसौटियाँ हैं।

**Use of crises :**

जैसे— There are crises in every man's life. (√) (P.N.)
There are crisises in every man's life. (×)
प्रत्येक मनुष्य के जीवन में संकट उत्पन्न होते हैं।

**Use of dicta :**

जैसे— The old dicta of conduct have changed. (√) (P.N.)
The old dictums of conduct have changed. (×)
आचरण के पुराने नियम बदल गये हैं।

**Use of Formulas :**

जैसे— There are many formulas in Algebra. (√) (P.N.)
There are many formula in Algebra. (×)
बीजगणित में बहुत से सूत्र हैं।

**Use of Memoranda :**

जैसे— The teachers of Bihar submitted several memoranda to the government but to no purpose. (√) (P.N.)
The teachers of Bihar submitted several memorandums to the government but to no purpose. (×)
बिहार के शिक्षकों ने सरकार के पास कई स्मृति पत्र दिए, पर कोई लाभ नहीं हुआ।

**Use of Sanatoria :**

जैसे— There are many sanatoria in India where sick people go for treatment. (√) (P.N. P.V.)
There are many sanatoriums in India where sick people go for treatment. (×)
भारतवर्ष में अनेक स्वास्थ्यवर्द्धक स्थान हैं जहाँ बीमार लोग इलाज के लिए जाते हैं।

**14. Use of Phenomena :**

जैसे— There are many beautiful phenomena of nature which charm us. (√) (P.V.)
There are many beautiful phenomenons of nature which charm us (×)
बहुत सी सुन्दर प्राकृतिक घटनाएँ हैं जो हम लोगों को मुग्ध कर देती हैं।

**15. Use of Thesis :**

जैसे— Several theses were presented but none were good. (√) (P.N. P.V.)
Several thesises were presented but none were good. (×)
कई अनुसंधानपूर्ण लेख प्रस्तुत किये गये, लेकिन कोई भी अच्छा नहीं था।

**16. Use of Radius :**

जैसे— All the radii of a circle are equal. (√) (P.N. P.V.)
All the radius of a circle are equal. (×)
वृत्त की सभी त्रिज्याएँ बराबर होती हैं।

**17. Use of Oasis :**

जैसे— There are oases in a desert where travellers can take shelter. (√) (P.N.)
There are oasises in a desert where travellers can take shelter. (×)
मरुभूमि में अनेक हरे भरे भूमिखंड हैं जहाँ पथिक विश्राम कर सकते हैं।

**18. Use of Series :**

जैसे— Mr. Thakur is going to publish a series of English books. (√)
Mr. Thakur is going to publish a serieses of English books. (×)
मि० ठाकुर अंग्रेजी में एक ग्रंथमाला प्रकाशित करने जा रहे हैं।

**19. Use of species :**

जैसे— There are many species of grass in the field. (√) (P.N.)
There are many specieses of grass in the field. (×)
अनेक जातियों की घासें इस मैदान में हैं।

**20. Use of apparatus :**

जैसे— There are enough apparatus in the laboratory. (√)
There are enough apparatuses in the laboratory. (×)
प्रयोगशाला में काफी यंत्र हैं।

**Note :** series, species, apparatus, innings का प्रयोग singular और plural form में एक समान होता है।

**21. Use of terminus :**

जैसे— We got down at the terminus and took a bus. (√) (S.N.)
We got down at the termini and took a bus. (×) (P.N.)
जहाँ रेलवे लाइन समाप्त हो गयी वहाँ हम उतर गये और बस पर सवार हो गये।

**22. Use of Hypothesis :**

जैसे— Scientists made many hypotheses about the earth but later they discarded them. (√) (P.N.)
Scientists made many hypothesises about the earth but later they discarded them. (×)
वैज्ञानिकों ने पृथ्वी के बारे में अनेक उपकल्पनाएँ की, लेकिन पीछे उन लोगों ने उन्हें छोड़ दिया।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Rule (19) : कुछ अन्य शब्दों के Plural forms इस प्रकार हैं—

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Mr. (श्रीमान्) | Messrs |
| Mrs. (श्रीमती) | Mesdames |
| Mr. White (मिस्टर व्हाइट) | Messrs White/The Mr. Whites |
| Miss Brown (मिस ब्राउन) | Misses Brown /The Miss Browns |

Rule (20) : Letters, Verbs, Digits (figures) का Plural form apostrophe 's' ['s] जोड़कर बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| s | s's | m | m's | 6 | 6's |
| b | b's | shall | shall's | M.A. | M.A.'s |
| will | will's | 5 | 5's | B.A. | B.A.'s |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Four B.A.'s and three M.A.'s applied for the post. (√)
Four B.A.s and three M.A.s applied for the post. (×)
There are two P's in the word 'apple'. (√)
There are two Ps in the word 'apple'. (×)
Your 5's and 3's look alike. (√)
Your 5s and 3s look alike. (×)

Note : लेकिन (i) आजकल भाषा में Abbreviations के बाद full stop का प्रयोग नहीं होता है तथा इनके अंत में 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Full form |
|---|---|---|
| MP | MPs | Members of Parliament |
| VIP | VIPs | Very Important Persons |
| MLA | MLAs | Members of Legislative Assembly |
| OAP | OAPs | Old age pensioners |
| UFO | UFOs | Unidentified Flying Objects |

(ii) कुछ ऐसे Abbreviations हैं, जिनका Plural form letter को रिपीट कर बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| C (Century) | CC (Centuries) | P (Page) | PP (Pages) | l (Line) | ll (Lines) |

(iii) जब abbreviations (संक्षिप्त शब्द) से व्यक्ति का बोध कराना हो या हो तो इसके साथ 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Most of our MPs are not honest. (√)
Most of our M.P.'s are not honest. (×)
Most of the MAs. are unemployed. (√)
Most of the M.A.'s. are unemployed. (×)

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में M.P. तथा M.A. का अर्थ क्रमशः Member of Parliament तथा Master of Arts है अतः इनसे व्यक्ति का बोध हो रहा है इसलिए इनके साथ 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया गया है जो बिल्कुल सही है।

(iv) जब abbreviations में degree (उपाधि) का बोध हो तो इसके साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर plural बनाना चाहिए।

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| B.A. | B.A.'s (degree) | M.A | M.A.'s (degree) |

Rule (21) : कुछ ऐसे Singular Nouns हैं, जिनके last में 's' or 'es' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है, लेकिन उनके अर्थ बदल जाते हैं।

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Advice – राय | Advices– सूचनाएँ |
| Good – भलाई | Goods– सामान |
| Force – बल | Forces– सैनिक |
| Copper – ताँबा | Coppers– ताँबे के सिक्के |
| Iron – लोहा | Irons– हथकड़ी |
| Sand – बालू | Sands– रेगिस्तान |
| Word – प्रतिज्ञा का शब्द | Words– (i) अनेक शब्द (ii) भाषाएँ |
| Abuse – (i) दुरुपयोग (ii) गाली | Abuses– (i) कुरीतियाँ (ii) बुराइयाँ |
| Foot– (i) पैर (ii) पैदल सेना (iii) मापने का यूनिट | Feet– (i) एक से अधिक पैर (ii) एक से अधिक 'फुट' |
| Horse– (i) घोड़ा (ii) घुड़सवार सैनिक | Horses– घोड़े |
| Wood– लकड़ी | Woods– जंगल |
| Arm– बाँह | Arms– हथियार |
| Colour– रंग | Colours– (i) रंग (अनेक) (ii) झंडा |
| Quarter– चौथाई भाग | Quarters– ईंटा |
| Cricket– (i) क्रिकेट (ii) झींगुर | Crickets– झींगुर |
| Work– कार्य | Works– रचनाएँ |
| Manner–तरीका | Manners– आचरण |
| Alphabet– वर्णमाला | Alphabets – भाषाएँ |
| Custom–रीति | Customs– (i) रीतियाँ (ii) राजकर |
| Effect–परिणाम | Effects–(i) परिणाम (ii) सम्पत्ति |
| Moral– (i) नैतिक शिक्षा (ii) सदाचार/सदोपदेश | Morals–नैतिकताएँ |
| Pain–शारीरिक दर्द, कष्ट | Pains–तकलीफ, प्रयत्न, कोशिश |
| Premise–सिद्धांत | Premises (i) सिद्धांत (ii) भवन तथा उसका आस पड़ोस |
| Spectacle– दृश्य | Spectacles–(i) दृश्य (ii) चश्मा |
| Air–वायु | Airs–(i) हाव भाव (ii) दिखावटी आचरण |
| Compass–(i) सीमा, परिधि (ii) विस्तार क्षेत्र | Compasses–(i) परकार (ii) दिक्सूचक यंत्र या वृत्त खींचने वाला यंत्र |
| Physic–औषधि/दवा | Physics–भौतिक शास्त्र |
| Return–(i) वापस (ii) वापसी | Returns– (i) लाभ (ii) आय का विवरण (iii) लेखा जोखा |
| Letter–(i) अक्षर (ii) पत्र | Letters–(i) अक्षर (ii) पत्र (iii) विद्या |
| Minute–(i) मिनट | Minutes–(i) कई मिनट (ii) समिति की कार्यवाही |
| Part–(i) हिस्सा | Parts–(i) हिस्सा (ii) योग्यता |
| Light–(i) प्रकाश (ii) प्रकाशित करने वाली वस्तु | Lights–प्रकाशित करने वाली वस्तुएँ |
| Practice–(i) अभ्यास (ii) आदत (iii) वकालत या डॉक्टरी पेशा | Practices– आदतें / प्रथाएँ |
| Respect– आदर | Respects–सम्मान |
| People–लोग / जाति | Peoples–राष्ट्र |
| Amend–सुधार | Amends– क्षतिपूर्ति |
| Appearance (i) आकृति (ii) उपस्थिति (iii) रूप (iv) शक्ल | Appearances– बाहरी दिखावा |
| Beef–गाय का मांस | Beeves–चरंगी, गाय और साँड |
| Chain–चेन, जंजीर | Chains–बेड़ी, हथकड़ी |
| Damage–हानि, क्षति | Damages– क्षतिपूर्ति |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| Greeting–अभिवादन | Greetings–शुभकामनाएँ |
| Humanity–(i) मानवजाति (ii) दया (iii) मानवता | Humanities– मानविकी, मानविकी एवं शास्त्रीय भाषा का अध्ययन |
| Order–(i) स्थानों का क्रमबद्ध (ii) दास रखने का आदेश | Orders–आधिकारिक आदेश |
| Particular–(i) विशेषता (ii) दास का (iii) विशेषित उल्लेख | Particulars–ब्यौरा, विवरण |
| Proceeding–कार्यवाही | Proceedings–बैठक आदि की कार्यवाही का आलेख |
| Regard–(i) आदर (ii) सम्बन्ध | regards– शुभकामनाएँ |
| Vespers–(i) शाम (ii) गिरजाघर | Vespers–शाम की प्रार्थना |
| Water–पानी | Waters–समुद्र, सागर |
| Way–रास्ता, मार्ग | Ways–विशेष आचरण, शैली, तरीका |
| Number–संख्या | Numbers–(i) संख्याएँ (ii) कविताएँ |
| Powder–धूल | Powders–दवा की धुलाई |
| Ground (i) भूमि (ii) कारण | Grounds–(i) तलछट (ii) दवा के तुरंत पूर्व पीसकर धूमिल |

कुछ शब्दों की रोचक के साथ और अन्य

### 1. Use of 'Abuse'

1. My brother-in-law showered abuse on me.
मेरे साले ने मेरे ऊपर गालियों की बौछार की।
2. My brother-in-law showered abuses on me.
मेरे साले ने मेरे ऊपर कुरीतियों की बौछार की।
3. Swami Vivekanand tried to do away many abuses of the Hindu society.
स्वामी विवेकानन्द ने हिन्दू समाज की अनेक कुरीतियों को दूर करने की चेष्टा की।

### 2. Use of 'Horse'

1. The horse was lame in the right foot.
घोड़ा दायें पैर से लंगड़ा था।
2. The whole army, foot and horse were defeated.
सारी सेना, पैदल सैनिक और घुड़सवार सैनिक के साथ हार हो गयी।

### 3. Use of 'Light'

1. The Sun gives light. सूरज रोशनी देता है।
2. Please bring me a light. कृपया एक दीप लाइये।
3. All the lights were off. सभी बत्तियाँ बुझी हुई थीं।

### 4. Use of 'People'

1. People are selfish.
लोग स्वार्थी होते हैं।
2. The Chinese are an old people.
चीन के लोग पुरानी जाति के हैं।
3. All the peoples of Asia are now up against the western powers.
एशिया के सभी राष्ट्र अब पश्चिमी देशों के विरुद्ध खड़े हो गये हैं।

### 5. Use of 'Wood'

1. This chair is made of wood.
यह कुर्सी लकड़ी की बनी है।
2. There is a woods near my village.
मेरे गाँव के समीप जंगल है।

### 6. Use of 'Powder'

1. Now old men also use powder to beautify their faces.
अब बूढ़े लोग भी अपने चेहरों को सुन्दर बनाने के लिए पाउडर का प्रयोग करते हैं।
2. The doctor gave some powder to the patient.
डॉक्टर ने रोगी को खाने के लिए दवा की कुछ पुड़िया दी।

### 7. Use of 'Practice'

1. It has become a common practice with the students travel without tickets.
छात्रों में यह आम की बात बनी है कि वे बिना टिकट यात्रा करते हैं।
2. Dr. Sinha Prasad has a large practice.
डॉक्टर सिन्हा प्रसाद के पास बहुत से रोगी हैं।
3. We should avoid the old practices.
हमलोगों को पुराने तौर-तरीकों के पुनः पालन चाहिए।

### 8. Use of 'Colour'

1. There are seven colours in a rainbow.
इन्द्रधनुष के सात रंग होते हैं।
2. All the soldiers saluted the colours.
सभी सिपाहियों ने झंडे का अभिवादन किया।

### 9. Use of 'Custom'

1. A Hindu wife was burnt with the dead body of her husband. Now this custom is not in vogue. (कस्टम=रीवाज)
हिन्दू पत्नी अपने पति के शव के साथ जल जाती थी। अब यह प्रथा प्रचलित नहीं है।
2. We should avoid our old customs.
हमलोगों को अपनी पुरानी रवायतों के पुनः पालन चाहिए।
3. I have to pay customs when I import a thing.
जब मैं बाहर से कोई चीज मँगाता हूँ तो मुझे आयात कर देना पड़ता है।

### 10. Use of 'Effect'

1. Good advice has no effect on rash youths.
अच्छा परामर्श उग्र युवकों पर कोई प्रभाव नहीं डालता।
2. The medicine had good effect.
दवा के परिणाम अच्छे निकले।
3. Mahant Babu sold all his effects to pay the debt.
महन्त बाबू अपनी सभी सम्पत्ति ऋण अदा करने के लिए बेच दी।

### 11. Use of 'Manner'

1. Shyama, my beloved, speaks in funny manner.
श्यामा, मेरी प्रेमिका, अजब ढंग से बोलती है।
2. My younger brother has no manners.
मेरे छोटे भाई के पास शिष्टाचार नहीं है।

### 12. Use of 'Number'

1. There are a real number of books in the library.
पुस्तकालय में बहुत सी पुस्तकें हैं।
2. Great numbers of people go half-fed in India.
भारत में बहुत लोग आधा पेट खाकर रहते हैं।
3. "Tell me not in mournful numbers
"Life is but an empty dream."—Longfellow.
करुण स्वरों में मुझे यह न कहो कि जीवन स्वप्न है।

**Note :** (i) Numbers का प्रयोग आजकल कविता के अर्थ में नहीं होता है। Old English में Numbers का प्रयोग कविता के अर्थ में किया जाता था।

(ii) Advices का प्रयोग उपदेश के अर्थ में नहीं होता है, लेकिन Advice का प्रयोग उपदेश के अर्थ में होता है।

### 13. Use of 'Pain'

1. There is pain in his head.
उसके सिर में दर्द है।
2. He took pains to earn a lot of money.
उसने बड़े श्रम के साथ ढेर धन इकट्ठा कमाया।

### 14. Use of 'Quarter'

1. Mr. Thakur stayed for a quarter of an hour.
मि० ठाकुर एक घंटे की चौथाई अर्थात 15 मिनट तक रहे।
2. Two quarters of an hour is thirty minutes.
आधा घंटे की दो चौथाई 30 मिनट होते हैं।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. The Principal has his quarters in the college campus.
*कॉलेज कैम्पस में प्राचार्य महोदय का अपना डेरा या निवास स्थान है।*

### 15. Use of 'Spectacle'

1. The battlefield presented a horrible spectacle.
*युद्ध भूमि भयंकर दृश्य उपस्थित कर रही थी।*
2. Nowadays many young students cannot read without spectacles.
*आजकल बहुत से छात्रगण चश्मा के बिना नहीं पढ़ सकते हैं।*

### 16. Use of 'Letter'

1. Veena got a letter from her father yesterday.
*कल वीणा को अपने पिता के पास से पत्र मिला।*
2. A proper noun begins with a capital letter.
*प्रत्येक व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा बड़े अक्षर से आरंभ होता है।*
3. Dr. S.S. Prasad is a man of letters.
*डॉ० एस०-एस० प्रसाद एक विद्वान व्यक्ति हैं।*

### 17. Use of 'Ground'

1. He has no ground to complain. —*Singular*
*उसे शिकायत करने का कोई कारण नहीं है।*
2. He has no grounds for complaint. —*Plural*
*उसे शिकायत करने का कोई कारण नहीं है।*
3. Your house has large and pleasant grounds.
*तुम्हारे घर के आस-पास काफी जमीन है।*
4. We should not drink the tea-grounds
*हमलोगों को चाय का तलछट नहीं पीना चाहिए।*

### 18. Use of 'Advice'

1. The publisher gave me good advice.
*प्रकाशक ने मुझे नेक सलाह दी।*
2. The advices received from Supaul are not good.
P.V.
*सुपौल से प्राप्त समाचार अच्छे नहीं हैं।*
3. He gave me a lot of advice. (√)
*उसने मुझे बहुत सलाह दी।*
He gave me many advices. (×)

Note :(i) Advices का प्रयोग सूचनाएँ / समाचार के अर्थ में होता है।

(ii) Advice का प्रयोग सलाह / राय के अर्थ में plural form (advices) में नहीं होता है। इस अर्थ में plural sense को denote (इंगित) करने के लिए इसके पहले a lot of का प्रयोग होता है न कि many का।

### 19. Use of 'Air'

1. We breathe in air.
*हमलोग हवा में साँस लेते हैं।*
2. Meena always puts on airs.
*मीना हमेशा दंभपूर्ण व्यवहार करती है। अर्थात वह जितना है उससे ज्यादा अपने को दिखाती है।*

### 20. Use of 'Good'

1. Tea does more good than harm.
*चाय हानि की अपेक्षा लाभ अधिक पहुँचाती है।*
2. Rakesh sent his goods by train.
*राकेश ने रेलगाड़ी से अपना सामान भेजा।*

### 21. Use of 'Compass'

1. An ant hill is a city in a short compass.
*चींटियों की बाँबी छोटे पैमाने पर एक शहर है।*
2. Compasses are used in measuring lengths.
*वृत्त खींचने के यंत्र का उपयोग लंबाई मापने में किया जाता है।*

### 22. Use of 'Respect'

1. We should have respect for elders.
*हमलोगों को बड़ों के लिए आदर रखना चाहिए।*
2. Please tell my respects to your father.
*कृपया अपने पिता से मेरा अभिवादन कह दें।*

### 23. Use of 'Physic'

1. The doctor gave me a dose of physic.
*डॉक्टर ने मुझे एक खुराक दवा दी।*
2. It is a good book on physics.
*भौतिकी पर यह एक अच्छी पुस्तक है।*

### 24. Use of 'Iron'

1. Iron is a metal.
*लोहा एक धातु है।*
2. The prisoner was put in irons.
*कैदी को हथकड़ी/बेड़ी दी गई।*

### 25. Use of 'force'

1. Vikas took money by force.
*विकास ने बलपूर्वक रुपया लिया।*
2. Two thousand forces sent to Kashmir.
*दो हजार सैनिक कश्मीर भेजे गये।*

ध्यान दें : (i) जब foot का प्रयोग 'पैदल सेना या सिपाही' के अर्थ में होता है तो इसे plural माना जाता है तथा इसका plural 'feet' नहीं होता है। इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Three thousand foot have been sent to Kashmir. (√)
P.N. P.V.

Three thousand feet have been sent to Kashmir. (×)

(ii) जब horse का प्रयोग 'घुड़सवार सैनिक' के अर्थ में होता है तो इसे plural माना जाता है तथा इसका plural-horses नहीं होता है। इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Five thousand horse were sent to Punjab. (√)
Five thousand horses were sent to Punjab. (×)

**Rule (22) :** *The + Adjectives* का प्रयोग Plural Nouns के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The poor = Poor people *(गरीब लोग)*
The rich = Rich people *(अमीर लोग)*
The sick = Sick people *(बीमार लोग)*
The blind = Blind people *(अंधे लोग)*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. The poor and the sick were helped. (√)
The poors and the sicks were helped. (×)
2. The honest and the laborious go ahead in their lives. (√)
The honests and the laboriouses go ahead in their lives. (×)

**Note :** चूँकि The + Adjective का प्रयोग plural noun के रूप में होता है, इसलिए इसमें s/es जोड़कर plural नहीं बनाया जाता है।

**Rule (23) :** *Noun + Preposition + Same Noun* का प्रयोग Singular में होता है। जैसे—

Village after village
City after city
Row upon row

**Rule (24) :** Dozen, gross, score, hundred, thousand, million, billion, hundred weight, stone, pair, units का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Singular or Plural दोनों form में एक जैसा / समान होता है। जैसे—

I have bought two dozen pencils. (√)
I have bought two dozens pencils. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Five hundred rupees have been spent. (✓)
Five hundreds rupees have been spent. (×)

**Note :** (i) Dozen, gross ..... units के पहले a, one, two, three ... etc. का प्रयोग हो तथा units के बाद प्रयुक्त Plural Noun के पहले the, these, those, my, our, his ..... etc. का प्रयोग हो, तो units के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Two dozens of the pens are broken. (×)
Two dozen of the pens are broken. (✓)

(ii) dozen, gross ..... units के पहले a, one, two, three, four, five ... का प्रयोग नहीं होने पर units का प्रयोग Plural में होता है तथा इसके बाद 'of' का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

Thousands of rupees. – *(हजारों हजार रुपये)* (✓)
Dozens of pencils.– *(दर्जनों दर्जन पेंसिल)* (✓)

(iii) यदि pair, dozen, score, gross (= 144), hundred-weight, stone, hundred, thousand, million, billion...etc. के पहले Numeral Adjectives का प्रयोग हो तो इसका प्रयोग singular में होता है। जैसे—

He has two pair of shoes. (✓)
He has two pairs of shoes. (×)
I have got two dozen of eggs. (✓)
I have got two dozens of eggs. (×)

(iv) यदि dozen or score के पहले indefinite numeral Adjectives–several, many some, a few or any other का प्रयोग हो तो इसका प्रयोग plural में होता है। जैसे—

He has got a few dozens of pencils and scores of eggs. (✓)
He has got a few dozen of pencils and score of eggs. (×)

**Rule (25) :** कुछ ऐसे Nouns हैं, जिनका प्रयोग हमेशा Singular Nouns के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Advice, bread, butter, chalk, dirt, dust, electricity, food, equipment, furniture, health, traffic, baggage, breakage, drainage, garbage, haemorrhage, heritage, homage, luggage, postage, percentage, confectionery, crockery, jewellery, machinery, poetry, scenery, stationery, pottery, music, liberty, drapery, technology, greenery, gratitude, maintenance, safety, rubbish, espionage, wastage, wreckage, cultery, foolery, parking, smoking, status etc.

**Note :** (i) ऊपर दिये गए Nouns का Plural formation possible नहीं है, क्योंकि इन्हें Singular Uncountable Nouns माना जाता है, न ही इनके पहले A/An का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Furniture | (✓) | Furnitures | (×) | A Furniture | (×) |
| Poverty | (✓) | Poverties | (×) | A Poverty | (×) |
| Jewellery | (✓) | Jewelleries | (×) | A Jewellery | (×) |
| Luggage | (✓) | Luggages | (×) | A Luggage | (×) |
| Scenery | (✓) | Sceneries | (×) | A Scenery | (×) |
| Poetry | (✓) | Poetries | (×) | A Poetry | (×) |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. He saw beautiful sceneries in Rajgira. (×)
   He saw beautiful scenery in Rajgira. (✓)
2. The robbers looted her jewelleries. (×)
   The robbers looted her jewellery. (✓)
3. He prefers a bread to rice. (×)
   He prefers bread to rice. (✓)
4. He gave me an advice. (×)
   He gave me a piece of advice. (✓)
5. Mr. Thakur likes the poetries of Keats. (×)
   Mr. Thakur likes the poetry of Keats. (✓)
6. Jewelleries are not the craze of the modern women. (×)
   Jewellery is not the craze of the modern women. (✓)

   अर्थ—*वर्तमान काल की स्त्रियाँ गहनों के पीछे पागल नहीं रहती हैं।*
7. His luggages were booked. (×)
   His luggage was booked. (✓)
8. Furnitures set off the beauty of a house. (×)
   Furniture sets off the beauty of a house. (✓)
9. The crockeries sold at this shop is cheap. (×)
   The crockery sold at this shop is cheap. (✓)
10. The cutleries are bug-bear to a rustic like me. (×)
    The cultery is bug-bear to a rustic like me. (✓)

    अर्थ—*मेरे जैसा देहाती छुरी-काँटा देखकर ही भड़कता है।*
11. The machineries are in perfect order. (×)
    The machinery is in perfect order. (✓)
12. Poverties must be eradicated. (×)
    Poverty must be eradicated. (✓)
13. These four sons are my offsprings. (×)
    These four sons are my offspring. (✓)
14. Here is the list of stationeries. (×)
    Here is the list of stationery. (✓)
15. He has given me a good information. (×)
    He has given me good information. (✓)

(ii) ऊपर दिये गए Nouns का प्रयोग Singular sense में जरूरत के मुताबिक a bit of, an item of, a piece of, a kind of, a pile of, a type of, a sheet of, etc. का प्रयोग कर किया जाता है। जैसे—

A piece of information. (✓)
A piece of informations. (×)
A piece of luggage. (✓)
A piece of luggages. (×)

(iii) ऊपर दिये गए Nouns का प्रयोग Plural sense में जरूरत के मुताबिक bits of, items of, pieces of, kinds of, piles of, types of, sheets of etc का प्रयोग कर किया जाता है। जैसे—

Pieces of information. (✓)
Pieces of informations. (×)
Pieces of furniture. (✓)
Pieces of furnitures. (×)

**Rule (26) :** नीचे दिये गए Nouns देखने में Plural लगते हैं, लेकिन Singular होते हैं। जैसे—

News, summons, economics, politics, statistics, ethics, mathematics, physics, civics, genetics, athletics, etc.

**Note :** (i) News के पहले A/An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, क्योंकि यह Singular Uncountable Noun है, इसका Plural 's' जोड़कर नहीं बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

The news is not false. (✓)
A news is not false. (×)
The newses are not false. (×)

लेकिन summons (न्यायालय में उपस्थित होने वाला बुलावा पत्र) के पहले A का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसके अंत में 'es' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

A *summons* was issued. (✓)
Four *summonses* were issued. (✓)

(ii) 'ics' ending Nouns के पहले the or Possessive Adjectives— my, your, our ..... etc. का प्रयोग होने पर, इनका अर्थ बदल जाता है तथा ये Plural Nouns के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। अतः इनके साथ Plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

My mathematics are not very good. (✓)
P.S. P.V.

The physics of Mohan are poor. (✓)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(iii) जब politics, mathematics, physics, statistics, economics का प्रयोग क्रमशः political qualities, mathematical abilities, sums of physics, data, economic facts के अर्थ में होता है तो इन्हें plural माना जाता है तथा इनके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Your physics are poor. (√)
Your physics is poor. (×)
His politics are dirty. (√)
His politics is dirty. (×)

(iv) जब 'ics' ending nouns का प्रयोग विषय (subject) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है तो इन्हें singular माना जाता है तथा इनके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। इस अर्थ में इनके पहले 'The' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Politics is an interesting subject. (√)
Politics are an interesting subject. (×)
Mathematics is his favourite subject. (√)
Mathematics are his favourite subject. (×)

(v) बीमारी के नाम जैसे—Measles, Rabies, German Measles, Rickets, Mumps, Diabetes का प्रयोग Singular Uncountable Nouns के रूप में होता है। अतः इनके पहले A / An / the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है न ही 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। अतः इनके साथ Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Measles (S.N.) is (S.V.) a dangerous disease. (√)

(vi) खेलों के नाम जैसे—bowls, draughts, billiards, darts, dominoes का प्रयोग Singular Uncountable Nouns के रूप में होता है। इसके पहले A / An / The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। न 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। अतः इनके साथ Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Billiards (S.N.) is (S.N.) played by women. (√)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

जैसे— Mathematics is (S.V.) difficult but politics is (S.V.) easy. (√)
Mathematics are (P.V.) difficult but politics are (P.V.) easy. (×)
Your Mathematics are (P.V.) weak. (√)
Your Mathematics is weak. (×)
The politics of Bihar are (P.V.) dirty. (√)
The politics of Bihar is dirty. (×)
He got a summons to be present before the court. (√)
He got summons to be present before the court. (×)
Diabetes is (S.V.) an infectious disease. (√)
Diabetes are an infectious disease. (×)

(vii) Innings तथा Gallows का प्रयोग भी singular nouns के रूप में होता है। इनके साथ Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The first innings is not yet over. (√)
A gallows has been erected. (√)
फाँसी पर चढ़ाए जाने वाला व्यक्ति को उपस्थित खड़ा किया गया है।

**Rule (27) :** नीचे दिये गए Nouns का प्रयोग हमेशा Plural Nouns के रूप में होता है तथा इनके साथ हमेशा Plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Alms | भीख | ★Briefs | जाँघिया |
| Clothes | पोशाक | Annals | इतिहास |
| Arrears | बकाया धनराशि | ★Pants | पैन्टस |
| ★Pyjamas | पायजामा | ★Trousers | पायजामा |
| ★Shorts | जाँघिया | ★Underpants | जाँघिया |
| Tools | औजार | ★Bellows | धौंकनी |
| ★Binoculars | दूरबीन | ★Dividers | परकार |
| ★Pincers | संडसी | ★Scissors | कैंची |
| ★Shears | कैंची | ★Tongs | चिमटा |
| ★Glasses | चश्मा | ★Goggles | धूप का रंगीन चश्मा |
| ★Spectacles | चश्मा | Auspices | संरक्षण/तत्वावधान |
| Belongings | चल सम्पत्ति | Bowels | आंतड़ियाँ |
| Breakables | भंगुर चीजें | Dues | शुल्क |
| Doings | कर्म | Earnings | कमाई |
| Greens | साग-सब्जी | Intestines | आँतें |
| Nuptials | शादी/विवाह संस्कार | Outskirts | सीमा |
| The pictures | सिनेमा | The movies | सिनेमा |
| Proceeds | लाभ/आमदनी | Riches | वैभव |
| Remains | अवशेष | Ruins | अवशेष |
| Surroundings | वातावरण | Tidings | खबरें/समाचार |
| Vegetables | सब्जी | Valuables | मूल्यवान वस्तुएँ |
| The Himalayas | हिमालय पर्वत शृंखला | The Alps | आल्पस पर्वत शृंखला |
| Thanks | धन्यवाद | Environs | इर्द-गिर्द |
| Assets | पूँजी | Chattels | सामान |
| Leavings | जूठन | ★Tights | तंग कपड़े |
| ★Panties | पेन्टीज | Sweepings | झाड़न |
| Dregs | तलछट | Handcuffs | हथकड़ी |
| Contents | वस्तुएँ | Obsequies | अंतिम संस्कार |
| Cards | ताश | Scales | तराजू |
| Breaches | पैर में बाँधने की रस्सी | Eaves | ओरी |
| Entrails | आँत/अँतड़ियाँ | Victuals | खाद्य सामग्री |
| Vitals | मर्म स्थान | Eatables | भोजन योग्य पदार्थ |
| Moveables | चल सम्पत्ति | Aborigines | देश के मूल निवासी |
| Ashes | भस्म | ★Braces | पतलून लटकाने का पट्टा |
| Brains | परामर्शदाताओं का समूह | Drawers | जाँघिया/कछ |
| Fetters | बेड़ी/बंधन | Fireworks | आतिशबाजी |
| Funds | मूलधन/माल | Guts | अँतड़ी/आँत |
| Knickers | घुटने तक का ढीला पायजामा | Lodgings | अस्थायी निवास स्थान |
| Lees | तेल | Pantaloons | पतलून |
| Pioneers | अग्रेषकों, आगे आगे पैदल चलने वाला सैनिक | Proceedings | मीटिंग आदि की कार्यवाही |
| Seals | मुहर | Savings | संचय/संचित धन/बचत |
| Shambles | कसाईखाना, वध स्थान | ★Forceps | डॉक्टरी चिमटा |
| Stairs | सीढ़ियाँ | ★Clippers | बाल काटने की कैंची |
| Troops | सैनिक | ★Sun glasses | धूप चश्मा |
| Amends | क्षतिपूर्ति | Shoes | जूते |
| Archives | अभिलेख | Socks | मोजे |
| Confines | सीमा/हद | Congratulations | बधाइयाँ |
| Upstairs | ऊपरी की मंजिल | Curds | फाड़/छेना |
| Downstairs | नीचे की मंजिल | Eatables | खाने की चीजें |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ables | खाने योग्य वस्तुएँ | Embers | अंगारे |
| moveables | अचल सम्पत्ति | Manes | प्रेतात्माएँ |
| uniments | अधिकार पत्र | Odds | अनुकूल/प्रतिकूल स्थितियाँ |
| ndries | विविध प्रकार की वस्तुएँ एक साथ | Thews | मांसपेशियाँ |
| ils | जाल/शिकंजा | Winnings | जुए की जीत |

Note : (i) तारांकित (★) nouns के दो भाग होते हैं, इसलिए ये Plural nouns के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इनका Singular—A pair of तथा Plural—Pairs of का प्रयोग कर बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

A pair of trousers — Singular
Pairs of trousers — Plural

Trousers are new
P.N. P.V.

A pair of spectacles has been framed. (✓)
Pairs of spectacles have been framed. (✓)

(ii) उपरोक्त nouns के पहले A / An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He has bought a pyjamas. (×)
He has bought pyjamas. (✓)
One should use a goggles in the sun. (×)
One should use goggles in the sun. (✓)

(iii) उपरोक्त nouns में s/es/ies हटाकर Singular नहीं बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Your pyjama is torn. (×)
Your pyjamas are torn. (✓)
His goggle is not good. (×)
His goggles are not good. (✓)

वाक्यों को देखें :

She gave alms to the blind beggar, and for these he thanked her. (✓)
P.N.

She gave alm to the blind beggar, and for these he thanked her. (×)

The caves are not yet-finished. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

The cave is not yet-finished. (×)

Riches have wings. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

Rich has wings. (×)

Someone has stolen my belongings. (✓)
P.N.

Someone has stolen my belonging. (×)

Everyone can see the ruins of the fort. (✓)
P.N.

Everyone can see the ruin of the fort. (×)

The publisher prefers vegetables to meat. (✓)
P.N.

The publisher prefers vegetable to meat. (×)

The Hindus believe in manes. (✓)
The Hindus believe in mane. (×)

My grandmother's obsequies cannot be performed until I arrive. (✓)
P.N.

My grandmother's obsequy cannot be performed until I arrive. (×)

Veena wants to misuse my earnings. (✓)
P.N.

Veena wants to misuse my earning. (×)

10. They were going to the pictures. (✓)
P.N.

They were going to the picture. (×)

11. The Himalayas lie to the north of India. (✓)
P.N. P.V.

The Himalaya lies to the north of India. (×)
S.V.

12. The view of the Alps gives us spiritual sense. (✓)
The view of the Alp give us spiritual sense. (×)

**Rule (28)** : Cattle, sheep, deer, gentry, poultry, folk, people, police, cavalry, infantry, peasantry, clergy, excreta, insignia, tenantry, admiralty, nobility, yeomanry etc. का प्रयोग Plural Nouns के रूप में होता है। इसके पहले A / An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, न ही s, es or ies जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

A cattle (×) cattles (×)
A sheep (×) sheeps (×)
A poultry (×) poultries (×)

He has seen a deer in this forest. (✓)
There are ten deers in this zoo. (×)
There are ten deer in this zoo. (✓)

**Note : (i) use of cattle** *(पशुगण)* जैसे—

The cattle were grazing in the field. (✓)
The cattle was grazing in the field. (×)
*पशुगण मैदान में चर रहे थे।*

**(ii) Use of vermin** *(हानिकारक कीड़े या छोटा जानवर)* जैसे—

The vermin have destroyed all the crops. (✓)
The vermin has destroyed all the crops. (×)
*हानिकारक कीड़े या छोटे जानवर चूहे आदि जन्तुओं ने सभी फसल बरबाद कर दी है।*

**(iii) Use of people** *(लोग)* जैसे—

These days people are mad after riches. (✓)
These days peoples are mad after riches. (×)
*आजकल लोग दौलत के पीछे पागल हो गये हैं।*

ध्यान दें : जब people का प्रयोग राष्ट्र/जाति के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके पहले singular sense में a का प्रयोग होता है तथा plural—peoples भी होता है। जैसे—

The French are a brave people. (✓)
The Fench are brave people. (×)
*फ्रांसीसी एक बहादुर जाति हैं।*

There is a mad race for power among the peoples of Europe. (✓)
There is a mad race for power among the people of Europe. (×)
*यूरोप के राष्ट्रों में शक्ति के लिए होड़ लगी है।*

**(iv) Use of Gentry** *(सज्जनगण/भले लोग)* जैसे—

The gentry of this place are now poor. (✓)
The gentries of this place are now poor. (×)
*इस स्थान/यहाँ के सज्जनगण अब गरीब हो गये हैं।*

**(v) Use of cannon** *(तोपें)* जैसे—

The cannon were booming. (✓)
The cannons were booming. (×)
*तोपें छूट रही थीं।*

**(vi) Use of folk** *(लोग)* जैसे—

Some folk are never satisfied. (✓)
Some folks are never satisfied. (×)
*कुछ लोग कभी सन्तुष्ट नहीं होते हैं।*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**(vii) Use of clergy** *(पादरी लोग)* जैसे—
The clergy are laborious and honest. (√)
The clergies are laborious and honest. (×)
*पादरी लोग परिश्रमी और ईमानदार होते हैं।*

**(viii) Use of excreta** *(मल-मूत्र आदि पदार्थ)* जैसे—
The excreta of animals are very useful. (√)
The excretas of animals are very useful. (×)
*जानवरों के मल मूत्र बहुत उपयोगी होते हैं।*

**(ix) Use of Insignia** *(अधिकार चिह्न)* जैसे—
We should protect our insignia. (√)
We should protect our insignias. (×)
*हम लोगों को अधिकार चिह्न की रक्षा करनी चाहिए।*

**(x) Use of tenantry** *(किरायेदारों का समुदाय)* जैसे—
The tenantry of Bihar are poor. (√)
The tenantry of Bihar is poor. (×)
*बिहार के किरायेदारों/असामियों का समुदाय गरीब है।*

**(xi) Use of nobility** *(सामन्त वर्ग)* जैसे—
The nobility have oppressed the peasantry in several ways. (√)
*सामन्तवर्ग के लोगों ने विभिन्न तरीकों से कृषकों को सताया है।*

**Note :** उपरोक्त nouns में से कुछ महत्वपूर्ण nouns का प्रयोग देखें और विचार करें।

1. **Use of Annals** जैसे—
Most of the annals (P.N.) of India have been (P.V.) destroyed. (√)
Most of the annal of India have been destroyed (×)
*भारत का अधिकांश प्राचीन इतिहास नष्ट हो गया है।*

2. **Use of thanks** जैसे—
Thanks (P.N.) are (P.V.) due to him. (√)
Thank are due to him. (×)
*वे धन्यवाद के पात्र हैं।*

3. **Use of proceeds** जैसे—
The daily proceeds (P.N.) of the sale are (P.V.) deposited in the bank. (√)
The daily proceed of the sale are deposited in the bank. (×)
*प्रतिदिन बिक्री की आमदनी बैंक में जमा की जाती है।*

4. **Use of environs** जैसे—
The environs (P.N.) of the house are (P.V.) dirty. (√)
The environ of the house are dirty. (×)
*मकान के इर्द-गिर्द गंदा है।*

5. **Use of nuptials** जैसे—
Veena garlanded Ajay but the nuptials (P.N.) were (P.V.) performed later. (√)
Veena garlanded Ajay but the nuptial were performed later. (×)
*वीणा ने अजय को जयमाला पहनायी, लेकिन विवाह संस्कार/शादी पीछे सम्पन्न हुआ।*

6. **Use of Assets** जैसे—
All the assets (P.N.) of the richman were (P.V.) sold to pay off the debt. (√)
All the asset of the richman were sold to pay off the debt. (×)
*अमीर आदमी की सभी सम्पत्ति कर्ज अदा करने के लिए बेच दी गयी।*

7. **Use of goods and chattels** जैसे—
All the goods (P.N.) and chattels (P.N.) were (P.V.) sold. (√)
All the good and chattel were sold. (×)
*घर के सभी माल-असबाब या सामान बेच दिये गए।*

8. **Use of Trousers** जैसे—
Now the Hindus also wear *trousers* as the Muslims do. (√)
Now the Hindus also wear trouser as the Muslims do. (×)
*अब मुसलमानों की तरह हिन्दू भी पायजामा पहनते हैं।*

9. **Use of Scissors** जैसे—
Barbers cut hair with *scissors*. (√)
Barbers cut hair with scissor. (×)
*नाई/हजाम कैंची से बाल काटते हैं।*

10. **Use of leavings** जैसे—
We should give the *leavings* to the dog. (√)
We should give the leaving to the dog. (×)
*हमलोगों को कुत्ते को जूठन देना चाहिए।*

11. **Use of sweepings** जैसे—
The sweepings (P.N.) of the house are (P.V.) collected in a pit. (√)
The sweeping of the house are collected in a pit. (×)
*घर का बुहारन एक गड्ढे में जमा किया जाता है।*

12. **Use of dregs** जैसे—
We should not drink the cup of life to its *dregs*. (√)
We should not drink the cup of life to its dreg. (×)
*जीवनरूपी प्याले को तलछट तक नहीं पीना चाहिए।*

13. **Use of contents** जैसे—
I poured all the contents of the cup on the ground. (√)
I poured all the content of the cup on the ground. (×)
*प्याले में जो कुछ था उसे मैंने जमीन पर उड़ेल दिया।*

14. **Use of alms** जैसे—
*Alms* given to the beggars are sometimes misused. (√)
Alm given to the beggars are sometimes misused. (×)
*भिखमंगों को दी हुई भीख का कभी-कभी दुरुपयोग होता है।*

**Note :** कभी-कभी Alms का प्रयोग 'भीख' के अर्थ में singular sense में भी होता है। जैसे : He begged an alms.

15. **Use of Riches** जैसे—
Riches are a punishment.
Rich are a punishment. (×)
*सम्पत्ति दुःख देने वाली होती है।*

16. **Use of Eaves** जैसे—
The eaves of the house are mended. (√)
The eave of the house are mended. (×)
*मकान की ओरी मरम्मत की गयी।*

**Note :** Curds (दही/छेना), Molasses (गुड़) का प्रयोग singular uncountable noun के रूप में होता है। अतः इनके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
Many people prefer curds to milk. (√)
Many people prefer curd to milk. (×)
*बहुत से लोग दूध की अपेक्षा दही को ज्यादा पसंद करते हैं।*
Molasses is not so sweet as sugar. (√)
Molass is not so sweet as sugar. (×)
*गुड़ चीनी की तरह मीठा नहीं होता।*

**Rule (29) :** Jury, choir, committee, council, crowd, herd, orchestra, team, government, mob, community, intelligentsia, union, club, opposition, firm, flock, etc. का प्रयोग Collective Noun के रूप में होने पर, इन्हें Singular माना जाता है तथा इनके साथ Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
The jury was divided in its opinion. (√)
लेकिन उपरोक्त Nouns का प्रयोग Nouns of multitude के रूप में होने पर, इससे प्रत्येक सदस्य का बोध होता है तथा इसके साथ Plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। Nouns of multitude का अर्थ members of a crowd/large gathering होता है। जैसे—The jury were divided in their opinions. (√)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



दिये गए उदाहरण में jury का प्रयोग Noun of multitude के रूप में हुआ है, अर्थात् यहाँ jury से प्रत्येक सदस्य का बोध होता है, अतः P.V. have का प्रयोग correct है।

| Used as Collective Noun | Used as Nouns of Multitude |
|---|---|
| 1. The committee has (S.V.) submitted its report. (√) | 1. The committee have (P.V.) submitted their reports. (√) |
| The committee have (P.V.) submitted its report. (×) | The committee has (S.V.) submitted their reports. (×) |
| 2. The government is (S.V.) wedded to its policy of secularism. (√) | 2. The government are (P.V.) thinking to revise their plan. (√) |
| The government are (P.V.) wedded to its policy of secularism. (×) | The government is (S.V.) thinking to revise their plan. (×) |
| 3. Public loses (S.V.) its faith in a defector. (√) | 3. The Public are (P.V.) often duped by their leaders. (√) |
| Public lose (P.V.) its faith in a defector. (×) | The public is (S.V.) often duped by their leaders. (×) |
| 4. The team is (S.V.) very strong. (√) | 4. The team are (P.V.) quarrelling like children. (√) |
| The team are (P.V.) very strong. (×) | The team is (S.V.) quarrelling like children. (×) |
| 5. The opposition has (S.V.) opposed the new bill. (√) | 5. The opposition are (P.V.) in disagreement over the new bill. (√) |
| The opposition have (P.V.) opposed the new bill. (×) | The opposition is (S.V.) in disagreement over the new bill. (×) |

Note : (i) उपरोक्त Collective nouns में से कुछ का plural–s/es/ies जोड़कर बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Army—Armies  Choir—Choirs  Class—Classes etc.

(ii) उपरोक्त collective nouns में से कुछ का प्रयोग singular countable noun के रूप में होता है, तो इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक a/an का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

An army  A team  A herd etc.

(iii) Intelligentsia, nobility, opposition, public के साथ s/es जोड़कर plural नहीं बनाया जाता है।

Rule (30) : *Half + a/an + unit of measurement (hour, pound, kilo, mile ..... etc.)* का प्रयोग होता है तथा unit of measurement Singular form में प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

Half a kilo (S.N.) (√)  Half a kilos (P.N.) (×)

Half an hour (S.N.) (√)  Half an hours (P.N.) (×)

Note : *A + half + unit of measurement* का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

A half kilo (√)  A half kilos (×)

A half hour (√)  A half hours (×)

Rule (31) : *One and a half + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे— One and a half kilos (P.N.) (√)  One and a half kilo (S.N.) (×)

क्योंकि *A/an + Singular Noun + and + a half* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A kilo (S.N.) and a half (√)  A kilos (P.N.) and a half (×)

An hour (S.N.) and a half (√)  An hours (P.N.) and a half (×)

**Rule (32)** : *Numeral Adjectives + Plural Noun + and + a half* या *Numeral Adjectives + and + a half + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

**Numeral Adjectives** *(संख्यावाचक विशेषण)* : One, two, three, four ..... etc. Some all, many few ..... etc. को Numeral Adjectives कहते हैं। जैसे—

Two kilos (P.N.) and a half. (√)

Two kilo (S.N.) and a half. (×)

Five hours (P.N.) and a half. (√)

Five hour (S.N.) and a half. (×)

Two and a half kilos. (P.N.) (√)

Two and a half kilo. (S.N.) (×)

**Note** : (i) *one + singular noun + and + a half/ a quarter* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He has one rupee (S.N.) and a half. (√)

He has one rupees (P.N.) and a half. (×)

I have one hour (S.N.) and a quarter. (√)

I have one hours (P.N.) and a quarter. (×)

(ii) *One and a quarter + plural noun* का प्रयोग भी होता है।

One and a quarter miles. (√)

One and a quarter mile. (×)

(iii) *A/An + singular noun + and + a quarter* का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

A pound and a quarter (√)

A pounds and a quarter (×)

**Rule (33)** : *Cardinal Adjectives + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग होता है।

**Cardinal Adjectives** : One, two, three, four, five, six, ..... etc. को Cardinal Adjectives कहते हैं। जैसे—

Five kilometres. (P.N.) (√)

Five kilometre. (S.N.) (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. I have fifty rupees. (√)
   I have fifty rupee. (×)
2. It is three feet in length. (√)
   It is three foot in legnth. (×)

**Note** : (i) *A + Cardinal Adjective + Hyphen ( - ) + S.N.* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A five-man (S.N.) committee. (√)

A five-men (P.N.) committee. (×)

दिये गए उदाहरण में five-man का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में हुआ जो committee की विशेषता बताता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. I have a ten-rupee note. (√)
   I have a ten-rupees note. (×)
2. This is a five-year plan. (√)
   This is a five-years plan. (×)
3. It is a fifty-foot tape. (√)
   It is a fifty-feet tape. (×)
4. He is a fifty-year old man. (√)
   He is a fifty-years old man. (×)
5. The five-man sub committee had a two-hour conference this morning. (√)
   The five-men sub committee had a two-hours conference this morning. (×)

(ii) *Cardinal Adjective + [Cardinal Adjective + hyphen (-) + S.N.] + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Five two-room flats (√)
S.N. P.N.

Five two-rooms flats (×)
P.N. P.N.

Ten Five-rupee notes. (√)
S.N.

Ten Five-rupees notes. (×)
P.N.

लेकिन Five men committee (√)
Seven days journey का प्रयोग होता है। (√)
Five man committee. (×)
Seven day journey. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. I have five twenty-rupee notes. (√)
   I have five twenty-rupees notes. (×)
   I have five twenty-rupees note. (×)
2. He has ten five hundred-rupee notes. (√)
   He has ten five hundred-rupees notes. (×)
   He has ten five hundred-rupee note. (×)

ध्यान दें : note / notes के पहले singular noun-rupee का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I have a one hundred-rupee note. (√)
I have a one hundred-rupee notes. (×)

लेकिन I have five hundred rupees. (√)
I have five hundred rupee. (×)

Rule (34) : सामान्यतः Proper noun का plural नहीं होता है लेकिन जरूरत पड़ने पर 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जा सकता है। जैसे—

1. There are two Mohans in my class. (√)
   There are two Mohan in my class. (×)
   *मेरे वर्ग में मोहन नाम के दो लड़के हैं।*
2. There were five Dollys in your class. (√)
   There were five Dollies in your class. (×)
   *तुम्हारे वर्ग में डॉली नाम की पाँच लड़कियाँ थीं।*

Note : यदि किसी Porper noun के last में 'y' हो और 'y' के पहले consonant हो फिर भी 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जाता है।

| Singular | Plural | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Mary | Marys | (√) |
| | Maries. | (×) |
| 2. Dolly | Dollys | (√) |
| | Dollies. | (×) |

Rule (35) : कुछ ऐसे nouns हैं जो singular और plural form में एक समान प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे— barracks, corps, crossroads, innings, headquarters, precis, series, species, issue, offspring, aircraft, craft, swine (सूअर)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. All the police barracks of Gorakhpur are old. (√)
   All the police barrack of Gorakhpur is old. (×)
2. I have two issue. (√)
   I have two issues. (×)

Note : (i) At issue का प्रयोग In debate—शास्त्रार्थ का विषय के अर्थ में होता है।

(ii) Issue of fact का प्रयोग Subject under discussion—विवाद का विषय के अर्थ में होता है।

(iii) Issue of law का प्रयोग a legal discussion—कानूनी बहस के अर्थ में होता है।

(iv) जब Issue का प्रयोग 'मुद्दा' तथा 'वाद-विवाद का विषय' के अर्थ में होता है तो इसका Plural—Issues होता है। जैसे—

1. The opposition have two issues—flood and education in Bihar.
   *बिहार में विपक्ष के पास दो मुद्दे हैं बाढ़ और शिक्षा।*

Rule (36) : कुछ ऐसी समुद्री मछलियों के नाम हैं जो Singular और plural दोनों form (रूप) में एक समान प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे—

| Types of Fish | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. Carp *(n)* | *मीठे पानी की एक मछली* |
| Carp *(v)* | *छिद्र खोजना/दोष निकालना* |
| 2. Pike *(n)* | *एक प्रकार की मछली* |
| Pike *(v)* | *घुसाना/भोंकना* |
| 3. Salmon *(n)* | *चाँदी के समान छाल और नारंगी रंग की मछली* |
| 4. Trout *(n)* | *नदी में की एक प्रकार की मछली* |
| Trout *(v)* | *मछली फँसाना* |
| 5. Cod *(n)* | *समुद्री मछली* |
| 6. Plaice *(n)* | *एक प्रकार की समुद्री मछली* |
| 7. Squid *(n)* | *एक प्रकार की मछली/ मछली फँसाने का चारा* |
| 8. Turbot *(n)* | *एक प्रकार की चिपटी मछली* |
| 9. Mackerel *(n)* | *एक प्रकार की समुद्री मछली* |

Rule (37) : यदि किसी noun के बाद preposition का प्रयोग हो तथा preposition के बाद same noun (उसी noun) का प्रयोग हो तो preposition के पहले तथा बाद में हमेशा singular noun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Man after man. (√)
Men after men. (×)
Row upon row. (√)
Rows upon rows. (×)
Day after day. (√)
Days after days. (×)
From door to door. (√)
From doors to doors. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Village after village has been swept away. (√)
Villages after villages has been swept away. (×)
City after city has been destroyed. (√)
Cities after cities have been destroyed. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Ship after ship is sailing by. (✓)
Ship after ship are sailing by. (×)
One hour after another (hour) is passing away. (✓)
One hours after another (hours) are passing away. (×)
Row upon row of delicate green is soothing to the eyes. (✓)
Rows upon rows of delicate green are soothing to the eyes. (×)

**Rule (38)** : one of, each of, either of, neither of, Any one of, everyone of, Both of, several of, various of, many of, few of, a few of, very few of, half of, a lot of, a large number of, A number of, the number of etc. के बाद जरूरत के मुताबिक plural number के noun या pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

One of the boys was innocent. (✓)
One of the boy was innocent. (×)
Either of the girls is shy. (✓)
Either of the girl is shy. (×)

**Rule (39)** : कुछ ऐसे Adjectives हैं जिनमें s या es जोड़ने पर plural noun बन जाता है। जैसे—

*Adjective + s/es = plural noun*

| Adjectives | Hindi meaning | Plural noun | Hindi meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Bitter | तीखा/तीक्ष्ण/कठोर | Bitters | तीखी वस्तुएँ |
| 2. Sweet | मीठा | Sweets | मिठाइयाँ |
| 3. Essential | आवश्यक/सारभूत | Essentials | आवश्यक वस्तुएँ |
| 4. Particular | विशिष्ट/अपूर्व | Particulars | विस्तृत विवरण |
| 5. Valuable | मूल्यवान | Valuables | मूल्यवान वस्तुएँ |
| 6. Moveable | चलायमान/चलाने-फिराने योग्य | Moveables | चल सम्पत्ति |
| 7. Necessary | आवश्यक | Necessaries | आवश्यक वस्तुएँ |
| 8. Breakable | भंगुर | Breakables | भंगुर वस्तुएँ |
| 9. Disagreeable | अरुचिकर/अप्रिय | Disagreeables | अरुचिकर/अप्रिय वस्तुएँ |
| 10. Explosive | विस्फोटक/शीघ्रवाही | Explosives | विस्फोटक वस्तुएँ |
| 11. Good | अच्छा/उत्तम | Goods | सामान/वस्तुएँ |
| 12. Due | देय/उचित/बकाया | Dues | बकाया राशि |
| 13. Odd | अद्भुत/असंगत | Odds | विषमता/कलह/संभावना |
| 14. Bygone | व्यतीत/बीता हुआ | Bygones | बीता हुआ वाक |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

We have to taste the sweets and bitters of our lives. (✓)
We have to taste the sweet and bitter of our lives. (×)
All his valuables were sold away. (✓)
All his valuable was sold away. (×)
All the dues have been paid. (✓)
All the due has been paid. (×)
The essentials of life must be available to all. (✓)
The essential of life must be available to all. (×)

**Rule (40)** : यदि दो Adjectives and से जुड़े हों तथा First Adjective के पहले 'The' का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद plural noun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Dr. S.S. Prasad was an examiner of the Patna and Bihar universities. (✓)
P.N.

Dr. S.S. Prasad was an examiner of the Patna and Bihar University. (×)
S.N.

Mr. Thakur very much likes the literature of the 16th and 17th centuries. (✓)
P.N.

Mr. Thakur very much likes the literature of the 16th and 17th century. (×)
S.N.

**Note** : उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Patna, Bihar, 16th तथा 17th का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में हुआ है।

**Rule (41)** : यदि दो Adjectives 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा दोनों Adjectives के पहले 'The' का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Singular noun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The vice-chancellor of the Patna and the Magadh University came to our college. (✓)
S.N.

The vice-chancellor of the Patna and the Magadh Universities came to our college. (×)
P.N.

The first and the second chapter of this book are interesting. (✓)
S.N.

The first and the second chapters of this book are interesting. (×)
P.N.

**Note** : उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Patna, Magadh, first तथा second का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में हुआ है। कनफ्यूज न हों।

**Rule (42)** : सामान्यतः Brick, stone, wood, glass का प्रयोग uncountable noun के रूप में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका plural नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The house is made of brick/wood. (✓)
The house is made of bricks/woods. (×)
Your house is made of stone/glass. (✓)
Your house is made of stones/glasses. (×)

**Note** : उपरोक्त nouns के पहले सामान्यतः a/an/the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (43)** : जब किसी पशु-पक्षी के नाम का प्रयोग Hunting (शिकार) के लिए हो तो इसका प्रयोग singular में होता है तथा इस अर्थ में इसके पहले a/an/the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He went to hunt elephant. (✓)
He went to hunt elephants. (×)
He went to hunt an elephant. (×)
Your elder brother wanted to shoot wild duck. (✓)
Your elder brother wanted to shoot wild ducks. (×)
Your elder brother wanted to shoot a wild duck. (×)

**Rule (44)** : Nouns और Pronouns के अतिरिक्त अन्य शब्दों का plural नहीं बनता है फिर भी विशेष अर्थ में हम उनका plural Apostrophe 's' ['s] लगाकर बना सकते हैं। जैसे—

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|
| If | If's | But | But's |
| Shall | Shall's | Will | Will's |

इन वाक्यों को देखें—

I don't like your if's and but's. (✓)
I don't like your ifs and buts. (×)
He does not like my shall's and will's (✓)
He does not like my shalls and wills (×)

**Rule (45)** : कुछ ऐसे compound nouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग हमेशा plural में होता है। जैसे—

Human rights, current affairs, current events, inverted commas, Armed forces, grass roots, natural resources, social studies, industrial relations, high heels, etc.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (46) :** कुछ ऐसे nouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग countable or uncountable noun के रूप में होता है। Countable noun के रूप में होने पर, इनके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक a/an/ a few/many का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन uncountable noun के रूप में होने पर, इनके पहले a/an का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। बल्कि जरूरत के मुताबिक a little या much का प्रयोग होता है।

| As countable noun | As uncountable noun |
|---|---|
| 1. He had a talk with Raju. | 1. He had much talk with Raju. |
| 2. I ate a cake. | 2. He did not eat much cake. |
| 3. Anmol has an ice-cream. | 3. There is much ice in the pot. |
| 4. Many feelings arise in man's heart. *मानव हृदय में अनेक भाव उठते हैं।* | 4. He did not show much feeling for me. *उसने मेरे प्रति अधिक दया नहीं दिखलायी।* |
| 5. The old man has gained many experiences of life. *बूढ़े मनुष्य ने जीवन के अनेक अनुभव प्राप्त किये हैं।* | 5. She has not much experience of life. *उसके पास जीवन का अधिक अनुभव नहीं है।* |
| 6. Man has to face many difficulties in life. *मनुष्य को जीवन में अनेक कठिनाइयों का सामना करना पड़ता है।* | 6. I got off with much difficulty. *बड़ी कठिनाई के साथ मैं भाग निकला।* |
| 7. He reads a paper every day. | 7. He has wasted much paper. |

**Rule (47) :** कुछ महत्वपूर्ण शब्दों के प्रयोग को देखें :

### 1. Use of 'Brother'

Brother का plural— Brothers तथा Brethren होता है। Brothers का प्रयोग सहोदर भाई अर्थात् एक ही माता-पिता के पुत्र के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि Brethren का प्रयोग 'धार्मिक संस्था का सदस्य भाई/बन्धु' या एक समाज का सदस्य के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Now all the brothers live in peace. (✓)
Now all the brethren live in peace. (×)
*अब सभी सहोदर भाई शांति से रहते हैं।*

Brethren, let us now be up and doing. (✓)
Brothers, let us now be up and doing. (×)
*भाइयों, अब हमलोगों को उठ खड़ा होना चाहिए।*

### 2. Use of 'cloth'

Cloth का plural-cloths तथा clothes दोनों होता है।

Cloths का प्रयोग 'भिन्न भिन्न प्रकार के कपड़े' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि clothes का प्रयोग 'पोशाक' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There are various cloths in the shop. (✓)
There are various clothes in the shop. (×)
*दुकान में भिन्न भिन्न रंग के कपड़े हैं।*

We wear warm clothes in winter. (✓)
We wear warm cloths in winter. (×)
*हमलोग जाड़ा में गर्म पोशाक पहनते हैं।*

### 3. Use of 'Genius'

Genius का plural— Geniuses तथा Genii होता है। Geniuses का प्रयोग प्रतिभाशाली मनुष्य या व्यक्ति' के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि Genii का प्रयोग/भूत/प्रेत/जिन्न' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Geniuses do not often make great men. (✓)
Genii do not often make great men. (×)
*प्रतिभाशाली व्यक्ति प्रायः जीवन में महान नहीं बनते।*

Two genii appeared before Aladdin. (✓)
Two geniuses appeared before Aladdin. (×)
*अलादीन के सामने दो प्रेत प्रकट हुए।*

### 4. Use of 'die'

Die का plural–dies तथा 'dice' होता है। dies का प्रयोग 'सिक्कों के लिए मुहर के अर्थ में होता है जबकि 'dice' का प्रयोग 'खेलने के पासे' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He has many dies. (✓)
He has many dice. (×)
Dice are used in Ludo (✓)
Dies are used in Ludo (×)

### 5. Use of 'fish'

Fish का plural–fishes तथा fish होता है। Fishes का प्रयोग 'भिन्न-भिन्न किस्म / जाति के मछलियों' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि fish का प्रयोग 'मछलियों के समूह' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There are many fishes in the pond. (✓)
There are many fish in the pond. (×)
Fish cannot live without water. (✓)
Fishes cannot live without water. (×)

### 6. Use of 'penny'

Penny का plural–pennies तथा pence होता है। Pennies का प्रयोग 'सिक्कों की संख्या' के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि pence का प्रयोग 'सिक्कों के मूल्य की रकम' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Please give me six pennies for a six pence. (✓)
Please give me six pence for a six pennies. (×)
*6 पैसे मूल्य वाले एक सिक्के के बदले में मुझे पेनी वाले छः सिक्के दीजिए।*

The book cost me six pence. (✓)
The book cost me six pennies. (×)
*इस किताब में मेरे 6 पैसे लगे।*

### 7. Use of 'Shot'

Shot का plural–shot तथा shots होता है। shot का प्रयोग 'The small balls fired from a gun' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि shots का प्रयोग 'the separate acts of shooting' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Have you any shot left ? (✓)
Have you any shots left ? (×)
He had five shots. (✓)
He had five shot. (×)

**Rule : 48** कुछ ऐसे nouns हैं, जिनके प्रयोग करने में हमलोग कन्फ्यूज कर जाते हैं।

| Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 1. Lectureship | 1. Lecturership |
| 2. Free studentship | 2. Freeship |
| 3. Boarding house | 3. Boarding |
| 4. Members of the family | 4. Family members |
| 5. The teacher of English | 5. English teacher |
| 6. Cousin | 6. Cousin–brother / sister |

**ध्यान दें :** (i) Lectureship का प्रयोग होता है न कि lecturership का। जैसे—

There are twenty candidates for lectureship. (×)
There are twenty candidates for lectureship. (✓)

(ii) Free studentship का प्रयोग होता है न कि Freeship का जैसे—

Vikas has applied for freeship. (×)
Vikas has applied for free studentship. (✓)

(iii) Boarding house का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Boarding का। जैसे—

Aditya lives in a boarding. (×)
Aditya lives in a boarding house. (✓)

(iv) Members of the Family का प्रयोग होता है न कि family members का जैसे—

Aditi and Aditya are my family members. (×)
Aditi and Aditya are the members of my family. (✓)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(v) The teacher of English का प्रयोग होता है न कि English teacher का। जैसे—

Mr. Thakur is my English teacher. (×)
Mr. Thakur is my teacher of English. (√)

(vi) Cousin का प्रयोग होता है न कि cousin-brother/sister का। जैसे—

Binod is my cousin-brother. (×)
Binod is my cousin. (√)
Usha is my cousin-sister. (×)
Usha is my cousin. (√)

Rule (49) : नीचे दिये गए nouns के प्रयोग को ध्यान से पढ़ें और समझने की कोशिश करें—

1. Use of 'habit and 'custom'

Habit का प्रयोग 'आदत' के अर्थ में व्यक्ति के लिए होता है जबकि custom का प्रयोग 'रीति' के अर्थ में समाज या देश के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Poor children often become a victim of bad habits. (√)
Poor children often become a victim of bad customs. (×)
Tribals in India have many interesting customs. (√)
Tribals in India have many interesting habits. (×)

2. Use of 'cause and reason'

Cause का प्रयोग 'कारण' के अर्थ में to produce a result को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है जबकि Reason का प्रयोग कारण के अर्थ में to explain or justify a cause को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Scientists try to find out the cause of a phenomenon. (√)
Scientists try to find out the reason of a phenomenon. (×)
Mr. Thakur has a good reason to be pleased with his students. (√)
Mr. Thakur has a good cause to be pleased with his students. (×)

3. Use of 'man and gentleman'

Man का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में होता है जबकि gentleman का प्रयोग a man of character के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Man is mortal. (√)
He is a gentleman at large. (√)

4. Use of 'shade and shadow'

Shade (छाया) का प्रयोग 'a place sheltered from the sun' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि shadow (परछाई) का प्रयोग 'the shade of a distinct form or object के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The villagers sat under the shade of trees. (√)
The villagers sat under the shadow of trees. (×)
He is even afraid of his own shadow. (√)
He is even afraid of his own shade. (×)

5. Use of 'cost and price'

Cost का प्रयोग 'amount paid by the shopkeeper' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि price का प्रयोग 'amount paid by the customer' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The cost of production of automobile items has gone up. (√)
The price of production of automobile items has gone up. (×)
Sometimes the buyers have to pay higher price for necessary items. (√)
Sometimes the buyers have to pay higher cost for necessary items. (×)

6. Use of 'house and home'

House का प्रयोग 'a building to live in' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि Home का प्रयोग 'one's native place' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Quarters are houses allotted to us for a definite period. (√)
Quarters are homes allotted to us for a definite period. (×)
My home town is Muzaffarpur. (√)
My house town is Muzaffarpur. (×)

7. Use of 'customer and client'

Customer का प्रयोग 'a buyer of goods' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि client का प्रयोग 'one who avails oneself of a service' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The shopkeepers welcome customers with smiles. (√)
The shopkeepers welcome clients with smiles. (×)
The lawyer discusses the cases of his clients. (√)
The lawyer discusses the cases of his customers. (×)

8. Use of 'fruit'

Fruit का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'फल' (आम, अमरूद आदि) के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसे singular uncountable noun माना जाता है। तथा इसका plural fruits नहीं होता है। इसके पहले 'a' का प्रयोग भी नहीं होता है। जैसे—

My wife does not take fruit. (√)
My wife does not take a fruit. (×)
My wife does not take fruits. (×)

लेकिन जब fruit का प्रयोग 'फल के प्रकार' (kind of fruit) के अर्थ होता है, तो इसे countable noun माना जाता है इस अर्थ में इसके पहले 'a' का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसका plural fruits होता है। जैसे—

An apple is a fruit. (√)
S.C.N.

There are two fruits in the basket. (√)
P.C.N.

Note : Fruits का प्रयोग 'लाभ, परिणाम, पारितोषिक' (मिहनत/अध्ययन का) के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में अंग्रेजी भाषा में होता है। जैसे—

The fruits of labour are always sweet. (√)
The fruit of labour is always sweet. (×)

9. Use of 'Look'

Look का प्रयोग सामान्यतः verb के रूप में 'देखना/निगाह डालना' के अर्थ में होता है, जबकि Look का प्रयोग noun के रूप में 'देखने का कार्य / अवलोकन' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसे countable noun माना जाता है। इसके पहले 'a' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Let me have a *look* at her costly necklace. (√)

लेकिन look का प्रयोग चेहरे का भाव, रूप, शक्ल (facial expression / appearance) के अर्थ में countable noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

A look of pleasure never comes to her face. (√)

Note : Looks का प्रयोग व्यक्ति का रूप, शक्ल, सुन्दरता व सौन्दर्य (person's appearance) के अर्थ में होता है। इसे plural माना जाता है। इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Your looks are very attractive.
P.N. P.V.

She has lost her looks.
P.N.

यहाँ your looks का अर्थ your appearance तथा her looks का अर्थ her beauty है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 10. Use of 'Time'

Time का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'समय' के अर्थ में singular uncountable noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

One should not waste one's time.

Time and tide wait for none.

लेकिन Time का प्रयोग 'अवसर' (occasion) के अर्थ में frequency (बारंबारता) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए होता है। इस अर्थ में इसे countable noun माना जाता है। जैसे—

I went to see her several times last week. (√)
P.C.N.

I went to see her several time last week. (×)

**Note :** At times का प्रयोग यदा-कदा / कभी-कभी (occassionally) तथा at all times का प्रयोग सदैव / हमेशा (always) के अर्थ में होता है।

### 11. Use of 'work'

Work का प्रयोग सामान्यतः कार्य, परिश्रम, धंधा, नौकरी के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसे uncountable noun माना जाता है। इसके पहले A / An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है न ही इसमें 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

He is fond of hard work. (√)
S.U.N.

He is fond of hard works. (×)

**Note :** (i) Homework, social work, house work, house hold work आदि का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We should do our homework. (√)

We should do our home works. (×)

(ii) Iron works, steel works, gas works, brick works, का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक singular or plural sense में होता है। इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A / An का प्रयोग होता है। इसके साथ singular or plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The steel works was / were closed for the Christmas holidays. (√)

### 12. Use of 'Troop'

Troop का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'व्यक्तियों या पशुओं के झुण्ड' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसे countable noun माना जाता है। इसके पहले 'A' का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसमें 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जाता है। जरूरत के मुताबिक singular or plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A troop of horses was there. (√)
S.C.N. S.V.

Four troops of horses were there. (√)
P.C.N. P.V.

**Note :** Troops का प्रयोग soldiers (सैनिक) के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Our troops have fought bravely. (√)
P.N. P.V.

Our troop has fought bravely. (×)

### 13. Use of 'Yoke'

Yoke का प्रयोग सामान्यतः A piece of wood placed on the necks of oxen (जुआ) के अर्थ में होता है। इसका प्रयोग singular or plural में dozen, score आदि की तरह/समान होता है। इसके पहले A, one, two, three, four...etc. का प्रयोग होता है। जरूरत के मुताबिक singular or plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A yoke of oxen was ploughing the field. (√)

Five yoke of oxen were ploughing the field. (√)

Five yokes of oxen were ploughing the field. (×)

### 14. Use of 'brace'

Brace का प्रयोग सामान्यतः a couple / a thing that tightens (युगल/जोड़ा) के अर्थ में होता है। इसका प्रयोग singular or plural में dozen, score आदि की तरह/समान होता है। इसके पहले A, one, two, three...etc. का प्रयोग होता है। जरूरत के मुताबिक singular or plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A brace of patridges has been sold. (√)
S.V.

Five brace of patridges have been bought. (√)
P.V.

Five braces of patridges have been bought. (×)

**Note :** Braces का प्रयोग 'पतलून लटकाने का पट्टा' या 'चढ़ाई का बाना' के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Your braces are new. (√)
P.V.

Your braces is new. (×)
S.V.

### 15. Use of 'stone'

Stone का प्रयोग सात सेर की तौल / 14 पौंड भार / 6.35 किग्रा के अर्थ में unit of weight को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए singular form में होता है। इसके पहले a, one, two, three... etc. का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे— 'भार' का बोध होता है। इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The baby weighs only two stone. (√)

The baby weighs only two stones. (×)

A stone of flour has been sold. (√)

**Note :** (i) stone का प्रयोग पत्थर, पथरी, रत्न, मणि, ढेला, फलों की गुठली के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है। जरूरत के मुताबिक uncountable or countable noun के रूप में प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) नीचे दिये गए Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें और कंठाग्र करें :

| Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. A heart of stone | Extremely cruel | कठोर हृदय/वज्र हृदय |
| 2. Stones will cry out | A wrong so great as to move even inanimate objects | ऐसी निर्दयता जो प्राण हीन को हिला देती है। |
| 3. To free from stones | To remove stones from fruits | फलों में से गुठली अलगाना |
| 4. To give a stone for bread | To offer mocking help | दिखावटी सहायता करना |
| 5. To kill two birds with one stone | To try every possible means | एक पंथ दो काज |
| 6. To leave no stone unturned | To spare no pains | सब प्रकार के उपाय करना |
| 7. To stone to death | To pelt by stone to death | ढेलों से मार डालना |
| 8. Stone hearted (adj) | Cruel | निर्दयी |
| 9. To mark with a white stone | Make fortunate | भाग्यवान बनाना |
| 10. Stony (adj) | (i) Resembling stone<br>(ii) Full of stones | पाषाणवत्<br>पत्थरों से भरा-पड़ा |

### 16. Use of 'hundred weight'

Hundred weight का प्रयोग 'एक सौ बारह पौंड', 56 सेर (112 pounds) या 50.8 किग्रा के अर्थ में unit of weight को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए singular form में होता है। इसके पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक A, one, two, three...etc. का प्रयोग होता है। इससे 'भार' का बोध होता है। इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A hundred weight of coal was bought.

Five hundred weight of coal was bought.

**Note :** नीचे दिये गए Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें और कंठाग्र करें :

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Words | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Long hundred | one hundred and twenty | एक सौ बीस |
| 2. Hundred fold (adj) | A hundred times | सौगुना |
| 3. By hundreds (n) | Hundred by hundred | सौ-सौ करके |
| 4. Hundred$^{th}$ (adj) | One of a hundred equal parts | सौवाँ |

ध्यान से पढ़ें :

1. Plural forms of pronouns

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | We | Its | Their | You | You |
| He | They | Me | Us | She | They |
| This | These | Her | Them | That | Those |
| His | Their/theirs | Yourself | Yourselves | Her | Their |
| Hers | Theirs | Either | Both | Each | Both |
| Him | Them | Myself | Ourselves | My | Our |
| Mine | Ours | Itself | Themselves | Your | Your |
| Herself | Themselves | Himself | Themselves | Yours | Yours |

2. Plural forms of Auxiliary verbs & Mains verbs

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Am | Are | Is | Are | Reads | Read |
| Was | Were | Has | Have | Cooks | Cook |
| Does | Do | Writes | Write | | |

Note : Nouns में s/es/ies जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है, लेकिन verbs में s/es/ies जोड़कर Singular बनाया जाता है।

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Give the Plurals of the following :*

1. Cherry ..... 2. Storey .....
3. Negro ..... 4. Studio .....
5. Quiz ..... 6. Map .....
7. Valley ..... 8. Puppy .....
9. Thief ..... 10. Hoof .....
11. Echo ..... 12. Mosquito .....
13. Piano ..... 14. Elf .....
15. Handkerchief ..... 16. Mouse .....
17. Washerman ..... 18. Maid-servant .....
19. Step-daughter ..... 20. Man-servant .....
21. Curriculum ..... 22. Datum .....
23. Dictum ..... 24. Oasis .....
25. Criterion ..... 26. Madam .....
27. Photosynthesis ..... 28. Coat-of-mail .....
29. Sheep ..... 30. Foot .....
31. Ox ..... 32. Gentleman .....
33. Fox ..... 34. Child .....
35. Series ..... 36. Roof .....
37. Spoonful ..... 38. Millennium .....
39. Museum ..... 40. Harmonium .....
41. Momentum ..... 42. Crematorium .....
43. Pendulum ..... 44. Monarch .....
45. Goose ..... 46. Scarf .....
47. Eskimo ..... 48. Igloo .....
49. Match ..... 50. Jewellery .....

Q. 2. *Give the Singular of the following :*

1. Calves ..... 2. Toys .....
3. Geese ..... 4. Teeth .....
5. Potatoes ..... 6. Physics .....
7. Scissors ..... 8. Serfs .....
9. Data ..... 10. Dicta .....
11. Dormice ..... 12. Foxes .....
13. Albums ..... 14. Videos .....
15. Vetoes ..... 16. Embryos .....
17. Batches ..... 18. Gases .....
19. Taxes ..... 20. Petroleums .....
21. Valleys ..... 22. Flies .....
23. Gentlemen ..... 24. Loaves .....
25. Volcanoes ..... 26. Mice .....
27. Stories ..... 28. Dishes .....
29. Watches ..... 30. Oxen .....
31. Statesmen ..... 32. Bamboos .....
33. Foot-men ..... 34. Mosquitoes .....
35. Head Masters ..... 36. Men doctors .....
37. Maid-servants ..... 38. Passers-by .....
39. Diagnoses ..... 40. Axes .....
41. Quorums ..... 42. Asylums .....
43. Lice ..... 44. Strifes .....
45. Elves ..... 46. Studios .....
47. Dynamos ..... 48. Negroes .....
49. Storeys ..... 50. Pastries .....
51. Varieties ..... 52. Lilies .....
53. Eskimoes ..... 54. Echoes .....

Q. 3. *Change the following sentences from the singular into the plural :*

1. The child saw a sheep in the field.
2. This ox is mine.
3. This house was made of brick and stone.
4. A deer was caught by a hunter.
5. A wolf is a wild animal.
6. The farmer is ploughing his field.
7. The goose is swimming in the pond.
8. A potato is a vegetable.
9. The leaf falls from the tree.
10. Has the baby any sister ?
11. An apple grows on a tree.
12. A bad boy hides his fault.
13. The nurse carries the baby.
14. A woman loves her husband.
15. A mother is kind to a little child.

Q. 4. *Change the following sentences from the plural into the singular:*

1. The flowers are beautiful things.
2. These books are very interesting.
3. Birds build their nests in trees.
4. These children have bad teeth.
5. The women with their daughters were present.
6. Lives of great men teach us how to live nobly.
7. These sheep have no wool on them.
8. Monkeys have long tails.
9. Honest servants are liked by their masters.
10. Dogs are good friends to men.
11. Thieves are afraid of police men.
12. Good children never tell lies.
13. The women were carrying their babies.
14. Those boys are reading their books.
15. These workmen have no enemies.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Q. 5.** *Rewrite the sentences changing the Number :*

1. The actress played the piano.
2. These boxes are full of watches.
3. The lady was stung by mosquito.
4. The heroes rode on their ponies.
5. The baby slept through the show.
6. The boys chased the bullies away.
7. Cut the tomato for the salad.
8. The men stood at the gate and watched the children play.
9. This old man is fond of cattle.
10. The thief hid himself in the street.

**Q. 6.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. He does not like the poetries of Keats.
2. The sceneries of the Himalayas are very charming.
3. Politics are an interesting subject.
4. Her cattles were grazing in the field.
5. It is a five-months project.
6. Father-in-laws love their son-in-law.
7. Please cut it with a scissor.
8. My spectacle is missing.
9. Five dozens eggs are to be bought.
10. I sold all my deers and left this village for ever.
11. He is a fifty-years old man.
12. India cannot accept the two-nations theory.
13. An all-parties conference was held to consider the food problem.
14. There is two-ways traffic here.
15. Our peasantry is very poor.
16. The peoples of India are marching ahead.
17. The Infantries were ordered to march on.
18. The gentry of the town has assembled here.
19. The house was reduced to an ashes.
20. Everyone likes vegetable.
21. Shear has been purchased for my garden.
22. He is suffering from measle.
23. His bowel is loose today.
24. Thankes is due to him.
25. The thief is in fetter.
26. He bought new machineries.
27. There were heavy traffics on the road.
28. He gave me several informations.
29. He has five sheeps and seven deers.
30. How many pair of shoes do you require ?
31. There are two thousands boys in Patna College.
32. Man can't live without waters.
33. We cannot live without airs.
34. My son is learning alphabets.
35. There are only two grey hair on his head now.
36. Physics are taught even in schools today.
37. His Mathematics is weak.
38. Mathematics require practice.
39. Politics is the outcome rather than the cause of social change.
40. Most men's politics sits much too loosely about them.
41. There are several Maries and Henries in this state.
42. Collect all the datas carefully in support of your dictas.
43. The pendula of these clocks are not in order.
44. Do you know the agendums of the meeting ?
45. Our country is proud of great genii like Gandhi and Nehru.
46. The lames and the blinds deserve our sympathy.
47. Wonderful phenomenons have suddenly appeared.
48. The Britisher ruled India for two century and a half.
49. This pen costs seven rupee and a quarter.
50. The sicks are not properly looked after in hospitals.

**Q. 7.** *Fill in the blanks with the suitable forms of the Nouns given in brackets:*

1. He knows five ..... (alphabet/alphabets)
2. Her ..... needs cutting. (hair/hairs)
3. All the ... was wrong. (information/informations)
4. The ..... cannot live without water. (fish/fishes)
5. Five ..... kilometers is a long distance. (hundreds/hundreds)
6. Veena likes the ..... of Mother India. (music/music)
7. His ..... has been stolen. (baggage/luggage)
8. The ..... lie to the north of India. (Himalaya / Himalayas)
9. The Indian ..... are known for their bravery and loyalty. (Force/forces)
10. The earthquake is a natural ..... (phenomenon/phenomena)
11. The hunter shot three..... . (deer/deers)
12. The .....of the Himalayas is very fine. (sceneries/scenery)
13. The room is full of ..... (furniture/furnitures)
14. The .....are grazing in the field. (cattle/cattles)
15. ..... were given to the poor. (Alms/Alms)
16. Forty ..... are grazing in the field. (sheep/sheep)
17. He gave here five.....rupees. (hundred/hundreds)
18. We enjoy the .....of Keats. (poetry/poetries)
19. Our publisher is a man of ... . (courage/courages)
20. One should use..... to protect one's eyes from the sun. (goggle/goggles)
21. His .....have been stolen from the waiting room. (belonging/belongings)
22. You must keep your .....in the locker. (valuable/valuables)
23. Convey my .....to your parents. (regard/regards)
24. Everyone gets the fruits of his ... . (doing/doings)
25. His ..... are to be performed next week. (nuptial / nuptials)
26. Mr. Prasad is not satisfied with his present..... . (earning/earnings)
27. I have sent her ... (congratulation/congratulations)
28. Pandijee has sold his.....to educate his children. (land/lands)
29. Your ... are not functioning properly. (bowel/bowels)
30. Four and a half ..... have passed since I came here. (hour/hours)
31. Five ..... eggs are to be bought. (dozen/dozens)
32. We should work for the ..... of the state. (good/goods)
33. A .....of events has taken place in this town. (series/series)
34. .....grow in hell. (rich/riches)
35. He failed five .....in B.A. (time/times)
36. His beloved is a real ..... . (beauty/beauties)
37. .....of people are unemployed in our country. (Million/Millions)
38. Bhavna wears high .....to make herself look tall. (heel/heels)
39. Binay cannot walk even one and a half ..... . (kilometer/kilometers)
40. All my .....are laborious and intelligent. (offspring/offsprings)
41. This chair is made of ..... (wood/woods)
42. Every employee is expected to carry out the .....of his boss. (order/orders)
43. The .....tell us the glorious existence of the fort. (ruin/ruins)
44. Many students have joined the Indian Air ..... . (force/forces)
45. Our state is very rich in natural ..... (resource/resources)
46. One should file one's .....in time. (return/returns)
47. Mahant Babu has to sell his .....to pay off his debts. (immovable/immovables)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



48. Aditi has lost her ..... (binocular/binoculars)
49. I did all this in a simple. ..... (manner/manners)
50. We should try to eradicate ... (poverty/poverties)

Q. 8. *Fill in the blanks with one of the two words given in the brackets:*

1. The crowd ..... waiting for the Chief-Minister. (was/were)
2. There ..... few gentry in this town. (is/are)
3. The flock of birds..... always seen in the morning. (is/are)
4. The family ..... left the house. (has/have)
5. All the members of the family .....left. (has/have)
6. There.....a class of students here. (is/are)
7. The people in the crowd.....pushing one another. (was/were)
8. The committee.....divided in its opinion. (is/are)
9. The tidings.....false. (is/are)
10. The odds.....against us. (is/are)
11. The gallows.....just been erected. (has/have)
12. Mankind.....not know this. (do/does)
13. My spectacles.....missing. (is/are)
14. Measles.....an infectious disease. (is/are)
15. The second innings.....not yet over. (is/are)
16. The members of the committee.....quarrelling among themselves. (is/are)
17. A large number of people.....waiting for the Prime Minister. (was/were)
18. Your scissors.....not very sharp. (is/are)
19. The children's feet..... injured. (was/were)
20. The women.....to do their work. (go/goes)
21. Foxes.....tails. (has/have)
22. Fifty sheep.....grazing in the field. (was/were)
23. This deer.....beautiful horns. (has/have)
24. Fish.....in water. (swim/swims)
25. The first innings..... just over. (is/are)
26. Riches.....men proud. (make/makes)
27. These poultry.....mine. (is/are)
28. These virmin.....disease. (spread/spreads)
29. The gentry.....people of good social position. (is/are)
30. The negroes.....grizzly hair. (has/have)
31. Physics.....my favourite subject. (is/are)
32. Where.....my spectacles ? (is/are)
33. Five hundred rupees.....been spent. (has/have)
34. Hard work.....fruits. (bear/bears)
35. Her looks.....very attractive. (is/are)
36. The view of the Alps.....us spiritual pleasure. (give/gives)
37. Diabetes.....not as serious as cancer. (is/are)
38. Politics.....a vital role in village life. (play/plays)
39. Your 5's and 6's.....alike. (look/looks)
40. My own criterion of success.....the ability to work hard. (is/are)
41. What.....the criteria for selection. ? (is/are)
42. His furniture.....repairing. (need/needs)
43. Your hair .....black. (is/are)
44. There.....two n's in the word noun. (is/are)
45. The Canterbury Tales.....a book. (is/are)
46. His means.....small. (is/are)
47. A pair of birds.....flying. (was/were)
48. Hundreds of townsmen and thousands of villagers ..... assembled in the field. (was/were)
49. Good news.....received by him. (was/were)
50. Such phenomena.....seen on the Red Sea. (is/are)

Q. 9. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. The Indian team (1)/defeated (2)/ the Australian (3)/by an inning (4)/ No error (5)
2. They left (1)/ their luggages (2)/ at the railway(3)/ station (4)/ No error (5)
3. The customer (1)/ handed over (2)/ a hundred rupees note (3)/ to the shopkeeper (4)/ No error (5)
4. Recently I (1)/ visited Jamashedpur (2)/ and found the sceneries (3)/ to be marvellous (4)/ No error (5)
5. A trained (1)/ gang of sailors (2)/ was employed (3)/ on the ship (4)/ No error (5)
6. These kind (1)/ of shirts (2)/ are rather expensive (3)/ for him to buy (4)/ No error (5)
7. Her mouth (1)/ watered (2)/ when she saw(3)/ a bouquet of grapes (4)/ No error (5)
8. My brother-in-laws (1)/ who live in Mumbai (2)/ have come (3)/ to stay with us (4)/ No error (5)
9. All the furnitures have been (1)/ sent to the new house (2)/ located (3)/ in a village (4)/ No error (5)
10. The sound of (1)/ a gun shot (2)/ scattered (3)/ the flock of birds (4)/ No error (5)
11. The team members (1)/should listen (2)/to the advices (3)/ given by the captain and the manager (4)/No error (5)
12. The Hindus, the Muslims, the Sikhs and the Christians (1)/are brothers (2)/so they love (3)/one another (4)/No error (5)
13. Shakuni, (1)/the maternal uncle of Kauravas, (2)/was an expert (3)/in the game of dies (4)/No error (5)
14. Sachin Tendulkar (1)/scored (2)/more than (3)/ten thousands runs (4)/No error (5)
15. The law of indexes (1)/proves (2)/very helpful (3)/in algebraic calculations (4)/No error (5)
16. The practices (1)/of the lawyers (2)/varies (3)/from that of the doctors (4)/No error (5)
17. The idea that shook (1)/the whole world was (2)/published in one (3)/of the unknown journal (4)/No error (5)
18. Aditi Priya was unable (1)/to support her parent (2)/even though both of them (3)/had no income of their own (4)/No error (5)
19. The disclosure of the synopsis of (1)/the Thakkar Commission Report (2)/on the assassination of Mrs. Gandhi (3)/has raised several vital question (4)/No error (5)
20. I lived (1) in a three-hundred-years (2) old house (3)/ in Mumbai (4)/No error (5)
21. He knows many languages (1)/but the German and (2) the Chinese alphabet (3)/will be a problem for him (4)/No error (5)
22. Mr. Khanna gave me (1)/two important informations (2)/I had been waiting for (3)/the previous six months (4)/No error (5)
23. The Cotton Textile Company (1)/cannot work properly (2)/ unless it employs (3)/a talented sale-representative (4)/No error (5)
24. Mr. Narendra Thakur had been (1)/suffering from (2)/ diabeteses For (3)/the last ten years (4)/No error (5)
25. It is harmful (1)/to take cupaful (2)/of coffee (3)/eight times a day (4)/No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Answers With Explanation

Q.No (1) Q.No (2) का Answer छात्रगण स्वयं ढूँढें।

**Q.3.**

1. The children saw sheep in the field.
2. These oxen are ours.
3. These houses were made of brick and stone.
4. Deer were caught by hunters.
5. Wolves are wild animals.
6. The farmers are ploughing their field.
7. The geese are swimming in the pond.
8. Potatoes are vegetables.
9. The leaves fall from the trees.
10. Have the babies any sisters ?
11. Apples grow on trees.
12. Bad boys hide their fault.
13. The nurses carry the babies.
14. Women love their husbands.
15. Mothers are kind to little children.

**Q.4.**

1. The Flower is a beautiful thing.
2. This book is very interesting.
3. A bird builds its nest in a tree.
4. This child has a bad tooth.
5. The woman with her daughter was present.
6. The life of a great man teaches me how to live nobly.
7. This sheep has no wool on it.
8. A monkey has a long tail.
9. An honest servant is liked by his master.
10. A dog is a good friend to a man.
11. A thief is afraid of a policeman.
12. A good child never tells a lie.
13. The woman was carrying her baby.
14. That boy is reading his book.
15. This work man has no enemy.

**Q.5.**

1. The actresses played the pianos.
2. This box is full of watches.
3. The ladies were stung by mosquitoes.
4. The hero rode on his pony.
5. The babies slept through the show.
6. The boy chased the bully away.
7. Cut the tomatoes for the salad.
8. The man stood at the gate and watched the child play.
9. The old men are fond of cattle.
10. The thieves hid themselves in the streets.

**Q.6.**

1. He does not like the poetry of Keats.
2. The scenery of the Himalays is very charming.
3. Politics is an interesting subject.
4. Her cattle were grazing in the field.
5. It is a five-month project.
6. Fathers-in-law love their sons-in-law.
7. Please cut it with scissors.
8. My spectacles are missing.
9. Five dozen eggs are to be bought.
10. I sold all my deer and left this village for ever.
11. He is a fifty-year old man.
12. India cannot accept the Two-nation theory.
13. An all-party conference was held to consider the food problem.
14. There is two-way traffic here.
15. Our peasantry are very poor.
16. The people of India are marching ahead.
17. The infantry were ordered to march on.
18. The gentry of the town have assembled here.
19. The house was reduced to ashes.
20. Everyone likes vegetables.
21. Shears have been purchased for my garden.
22. He is suffering from measles.
23. His bowels are loose today.
24. Thanks are due to him.
25. The thief is in fetters.
26. He bought new machinery.
27. There were heavy traffic on the road.
28. He gave me several information.
29. He has five sheep and seven deer.
30. How many pairs of shoes do you require ?
31. There are two thousand boys in Patna College.
32. Man cannot live without water.
33. We cannot live without air.
34. My son is learning alphabet.
35. There are only two grey hairs on his head now.
36. Physics is taught even in schools today.
37. His Mathematics are weak.
38. Mathematics requires practice.
39. Politics are the outcome rather than the cause of social change.

**Note :** उपरोक्त वाक्य में politics शब्द का प्रयोग political qualities के अर्थ में हुआ है इस अर्थ में इसे plural माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

40. Most men's politics sit much too loosely about them.
41. There are several Marys and Henrys in this state.
42. Collect all the data carefully in support of your dicta.
43. The pendulums of these clocks are not in order.
44. Do you know the agenda of the meeting ?
45. Our country is proud of great geniuses like Gandhi and Nehru.
46. The lame and the blind deserve our sympathy.
47. Wonderful phenomena have suddenly appeared.
48. The Britisher ruled India for two centuries and a half.
49. This pen costs seven rupees and a quarter.
50. The sick are not properly looked after in hospitals.

**Q.7.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Alphabets | 2. hair | 3. information |
| 4. fish | 5. hundred | 6. music |
| 7. baggage | 8. Himalayas | 9. forces |
| 10. phenomenon | 11. deer | 12. scenery |
| 13. furniture | 14. cattle | 15. alms |
| 16. sheep | 17. hundred | 18. poetry |
| 19. courage | 20. goggles | 21. belongings |
| 22. valuables | 23. regards | 24. doings |
| 25. nuptials | 26. earnings | 27. congratulations |
| 28. land | 29. bowels | 30. hours |
| 31. dozen | 32. good | 33. series |
| 34. riches | 35. times | 36. beauty |
| 37. millions | 38. heels | 39. kilometers |
| 40. offspring | 41. wood | 42. orders |
| 43. ruins | 44. force | 45. resources |
| 46. returns | 47. immovables | 48. binoculars |
| 49. manner | 50. poverty | |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


Q.5.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. was | 2. are | 3. is |
| 4. has | 5. have | 6. is |
| 7. were | 8. is | 9. are |
| 10. are | 11. has | 12. does |
| 13. are | 14. is | 15. is |
| 16. are | 17. were | 18. are |
| 19. were | 20. go | 21. have |
| 22. were | 23. has | 24. swim |
| 25. is | 26. make | 27. are |
| 28. spread | 29. are | 30. have |
| 31. is | 32. are | 33. have |
| 34. bears | 35. are | 36. gives |
| 37. is | 38. plays | 39. look |
| 40. is | 41. are | 42. needs |
| 43. is | 44. are | 45. is |
| 46. are | 47. was | 48. were |
| 49. was | 50. are | |

Q.9.

1. (4) Inning की जगह Innings का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Innings का प्रयोग Singular or Plural दोनों sense में होता है।
2. (2) Luggages की जगह luggage का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि luggage एक Singular Uncountable Noun है तथा इसमें 's' जोड़कर Plural नहीं बनाया जा सकता।
3. (3) A hundred-rupees note की जगह a hundred-rupee note का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि a + cardinal adjective + hypen ( – ) + S. N. का प्रयोग होता है।
4. (3) Sceneries की जगह scenery का प्रयोग होगा। sceneries गलत word है।
5. (2) Gang की जगह crew का प्रयोग होगा। Gang का प्रयोग thieves, robbers, dacoits के लिए होता है, जबकि crew का प्रयोग sailors or boatmen के लिए होता है।
6. (1) Kind की जगह kinds का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि these kinds of, those kinds of का प्रयोग होता है और this kind of, that kind of का प्रयोग होता है।
7. (4) Bouquet की जगह bunch का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि A bouquet of flowers तथा A bunch of grapes का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (1) Brother-in-laws की जगह brothers-in-law का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (1) Furnitures की जगह furniture का प्रयोग होगा। furnitures का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
10. (4) Flock की जगह flight का प्रयोग होगा। Flock का प्रयोग 'चिड़ियों के झुंड' के अर्थ में तथा flight का प्रयोग 'उड़ते हुए चिड़िया के झुंड' के अर्थ में होता है। अतः flight का प्रयोग अर्थयुक्त है।
11. (3) Advices की जगह pieces of advice का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि advice का प्रयोग राय/सलाह के अर्थ में सामान्यतः singular form में होता है, लेकिन singular or plural sense में क्रमशः A piece of advice or pieces of advice के रूप में होता है।
12. (2) Brothers की जगह brethren का प्रयोग होगा। brothers का प्रयोग sons of the same parents के अर्थ में होता है जबकि brethren का प्रयोग members of a society or a community के अर्थ में होता है।
13. (4) Dies की जगह dice का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि dies का प्रयोग stamps for coining के अर्थ में तथा dice का प्रयोग small cubes used in games के अर्थ में होता है dice-sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
14. (4) Thousands की जगह thousand का प्रयोग होगा। units—dozen, hundred, thousand...etc. के पहले numeral Adjectives (one, two, three...etc.) का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन units का प्रयोग singular form में ही होता है।
15. (1) Indexes की जगह Indices का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि index का plural-indices होता है न कि indexes।
16. (1) Practices की जगह practice का प्रयोग होगा। Practice का प्रयोग exercise of a profession (अभ्यास) के अर्थ में singular uncountable noun के रूप में होता है अतः इसका plural-practices नहीं होता है।
17. (4) Journal की जगह journals का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि one of के बाद plural noun का प्रयोग होता है, तथा plural noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। अतः दिये गए sentence में one of के बाद plural noun-journals का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।
18. (2) Parent की जगह parents का प्रयोग होगा। parents का प्रयोग 'माता-पिता' के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। parent का प्रयोग parents के अर्थ में नहीं होता है।
19. (4) Vital question की जगह vital questions का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि several के बाद हमेशा plural noun का प्रयोग होता है।
20. (2) A three-hundred-years की जगह A three hundred-year का प्रयोग होगा। A + cardinal Adjective + hyphen (–) + S.N का प्रयोग होता है। न कि A + cardinal Adjective + hyphen (–) + plural noun का।
21. (3) Alphabet की जगह alphabets का प्रयोग होगा। alphabet का अर्थ 'वर्णमाला' तथा alphabets का अर्थ 'भाषा' होता है। यहाँ दिये गए sentence के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए alphabets का प्रयोग ही उपयुक्त है।
22. (2) Two important informations की जगह two important pieces of information का प्रयोग होगा। सामान्यतः Information singular uncountable noun के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है, अतः इसका plural Informations नहीं होता है।
23. (4) Sale-representative की जगह sales-representative का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (3) Diabeteses की जगह Diabetes का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।
25. (2) Cupsful की जगह cupfuls का प्रयोग होगा। जिस compound noun का tail term-ful होता है उसके साथ 'ful' में 's' जोड़कर plural बनाया जाता है।

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 5 Noun and the Gender

**Gender (लिंग)** : *The Noun which denotes male or female sex is called Gender.*

Such as : Horse, Dog, Ox, Father — to denote male sex.

Mare, Bitch, Cow, Mother — to denote female sex

Gender
- Masculine Gender (पुलिंग)
- Feminine Gender (स्त्रीलिंग)
- Common Gender (उभयलिंग)
- Neuter Gender (नपुंसकलिंग)

1. **Masculine Gender**—*The Noun which denotes male sex is called Masculine Gender.*
   Such as—Boy, father, brother, etc.
2. **Feminine Gender**—*The Noun which denotes female sex is called Feminine Gender.*
   Such as—Girl, mother, sister etc.
3. **Common Gender**—*The Noun which does not specify the sex but only indicates a living thing is called Common Gender.*
   Such as—Baby, student, professor, etc.
4. **Neuter Gender**—*The Noun which denotes a nonliving object or thing with life is called Neuter Gender.*
   Such as—Tree, inkpot, pen, table etc.

| Masculine words | Feminine words |
|---|---|
| Nephew (भतीजा) | Niece (भतीजी) |
| Husband (पति) | Wife (पत्नी) |
| Man (पुरुष) | Woman (स्त्री) |
| Uncle (चाचा) | Aunt (चाची) |
| Brother (भाई) | Sister (बहन) |
| Son (पुत्र) | Daughter (पुत्री) |
| Sir (महाशय) | Madam (महाशया) |
| Bachelor (कुँआरा लड़का) | Maid / spinster (कुँआरी लड़की) |
| Bull (बैल) | Cow (गाय) |
| Cock (मुर्गा) | Hen (मुर्गी) |
| Boar (सूअर) | Sow (सूअरी) |
| Dog (कुत्ता) | Bitch (कुत्ती) |
| Monk (भिक्षु) | Nun (भिक्षुणी) |
| King (राजा) | Queen (रानी) |
| Widower (विधुर) | Widow (विधवा) |
| Bridegroom (दूल्हा) | Bride (दुल्हन) |
| Gentleman (सज्जनपुरुष) | Lady (महिला) |
| Lad (लड़का) | Lass (लड़की) |

| Masculine words | Feminine words |
|---|---|
| Lover (प्रेमी) | Beloved (प्रेमिका) |
| Wizard (जादूगर) | Witch (जादूगरनी) |
| Stag (हिरन) | Hind (हिरनी) |
| Papa (पिता) | Mamma (माता) |
| Lord (स्वामी) | Lady (स्वामिनी) |
| Gander (नर हंस) | Goose (मादा हंस) |
| Earl (सामंत) | Countess (सामन्त की पत्नी) |
| Drake (नर बत्तख) | Duck (मादा बत्तख) |
| Colt (घोड़े का बछड़ा) | Filly (घोड़े की बाछी) |
| Buck (नर खरगोश) | Doe (मादा खरगोश) |
| Fox (लोमड़ी) | Vixen (मादा लोमड़ी) |
| Ram (भेड़ा) | Ewe (भेड़ी) |
| Horse (घोड़ा) | Mare (घोड़ी) |
| Prince (राजकुमार) | Princess (राजकुमारी) |
| Lion (शेर) | Lioness (शेरनी) |
| Poet (कवि) | Poetess (कवयित्री) |
| Heir (उत्तराधिकारी) | Heiress (उत्तराधिकारिणी) |
| Author (लेखक) | Authoress (लेखिका) |
| Baron (सामंत) | Baroness (सामंत की पत्नी) |
| Count (सामंत) | Countess (सामंत की पत्नी) |
| Giant (राक्षस) | Giantess (राक्षसनी) |
| Host (मेजबान) | Hostess (महिला मेजबान) |
| Jew (यहूदी) | Jewess (यहूदिन) |
| Manager (प्रबंधक) | Manageress (प्रबंधिका) |
| Mayor (महापौर) | Mayoress (महिला महापौर) |
| Patron (संरक्षक) | Patroness (संरक्षिका) |
| Peer (सामंत) | Peeress (सामंत की पत्नी) |
| Priest (पुजारी) | Priestess (पुजारिन) |
| Prophet (पैगम्बर) | Prophetess (पैगम्बरी) |
| Shepherd (गड़ेरिया) | Shepherdess (गड़ेरिन) |
| Steward (भण्डारी) | Stewardess (भण्डारिन) |
| Viscount (अंग्रेजी उपसामंत) | Viscountess (अंग्रेजी उपसामंतनी) |
| Actor (अभिनेता) | Actress (अभिनेत्री) |
| Master (स्वामी) | Mistress (स्वामिनी) |
| Master (शिक्षक) | Mistress (शिक्षिका) |
| Master (लड़का) | Miss (लड़की) [विशेष प्रयोग में] |
| Tiger (बाघ) | Tigress (बाघिन) |
| Emperor (सम्राट्) | Empress (सम्राज्ञी) |
| Benefactor (पुरुष दान दाता) | Benefactress (महिला दान दाता) |
| Conductor (पथ प्रदर्शक, बस या ट्राम का परिचालक) | Conductress (परिचालिका, संचालिका) |
| Enchanter (जादूगर) | Enchantress (जादूगरनी) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Masculine words | Feminine words |
|---|---|
| Founder (संस्थापक) | Foundress (संस्थापिका) |
| Hunter (शिकारी) | Huntress (शिकारी की पत्नी) |
| Instructor (प्रशिक्षक) | Instructress (प्रशिक्षिका) |
| Negro (हब्शी) | Negress (हब्शिन) |
| Preceptor (उपदेशक) | Preceptress (उपदेशिका) |
| Songster (गायक) | Songstress (गायिका) |
| Tempter (प्रलोभन देनेवाला) | Temptress (प्रलोभन देनेवाली) |
| Seamster (दरजी) | Seamstress (दरजिन) |
| Traitor (देशद्रोही, धोखेबाज) | Traitress (धोखेबाज औरत) |
| Waiter (होटल का सेवक) | Waitress (सेविका) |
| Duke (सामंत) | Duchess (सामंतनी) |
| Marquis (सामंत) | Marchioness (सामंतनी) |
| Murderer (हत्यारा) | Murdereress (हत्यारिन) |
| Sorcerer (जादूगर) | Sorceress (जादूगरनी) |
| Hero (अभिनेता) | Heroine (अभिनेत्री) |
| Sultan (सुल्तान) | Sultana (सुल्ताना) |
| Administrator (प्रशासक) | Administratrix (प्रशासिका) |
| Executor (सम्पादनकर्ता) | Executrix (सम्पादन करनेवाली) |
| Testator (वसीयत करनेवाला) | Testatrix (वसीयत करनेवाली) |
| Czar (रूस का सम्राट) | Czarina (रूस की साम्राज्ञी) |
| Signor (महाशय-इटालियन भाषा में) | Signora (महाशया) |
| Milkman (ग्वाला) | Milk-maid (ग्वालिन) |
| Grand-father (दादा) | Grand-mother (दादी) |
| Land-lord (जमींदार) | Land-lady (जमींदारिन) |
| Pea-cock (मोर) | Pea-hen (मोरनी) |
| He-goat (बकरा) | She-goat (बकरी) |
| He-cat (बिलाव) | She-cat (बिल्ली) |
| He-bear (रीछ) | She-bear (रीछनी) |
| Man-servant (नौकर) | Maid-servant (नौकरानी/दाई) |
| Washer-man (धोबी) | Washer-woman (धोबिन) |
| Bull-calf (बछड़ा) | Cow-calf (बछड़ी) |
| Cock-sparrow (नर गौरैया चिड़िया) | Hen-sparrow (मादा गौरैया चिड़िया) |
| Jack-ass (गदहा) | Jenny-ass (गदही) |
| Abbot (मठाधिकारी/गुरुद्वारा का महन्त) | Abbess (मठाधिकारिणी) |
| Drone (नर मधुमक्खी) | Bee (मादा मधुमक्खी) |
| Ox (बैल) | Cow (गाय) |
| Brother-in-law (साला/बहनोई) | Sister-in-law (साली/जेठानी) |
| Son-in-law (दमाद) | Daughter-in-law (पुत्र वधु) |
| Step-son (सौतेला बेटा) | Step-daughter (सौतेली बेटी) |
| Step-father (सौतेला पिता) | Step-mother (सौतेली माँ) |
| Step-brother (सौतेला भाई) | Step-sister (सौतेली बहन) |
| Maternal-uncle (मामा) | Maternal-aunt (मामी) |
| Maternal-grand father (नाना) | Maternal-Grand mother (नानी) |
| Adopted-son (दत्तक पुत्र) | Adopted-daughter (दत्तक पुत्री) |
| Bullock (बछड़ा) | Heifer (बछड़ी) |
| Buck (नरहिरन/सांभर/खरगोश) | Doe (मादा हिरन/सांभर/खरगोश) |

| Masculine words | Feminine words |
|---|---|
| Hart (हिरन) | Roe (हिरनी) |
| Friar (महंथ, संन्यासी) | Nun (महंथनी, संन्यासिन) |
| Swain (युवा पुरुष, गड़ेरिया, देहाती) | Nymph (युवती, गड़ेरिन, देहातिन) |
| Ambassador (राजदूत) | Ambassadress (राजदूतिन, राजदूत की स्त्री) |
| Governor (राज्यपाल) | Governess (राज्यपाल की पत्नी/महिला राज्यपाल) |
| Inspector (निरीक्षक, पर्यवेक्षक) | Inspectress (निरीक्षिका, पर्यवेक्षिका) |
| God (देवता) | Goddess (देवी) |
| Mr (श्रीमान / महाशय) | Mrs (श्रीमती / महाशया) |
| Schoolmaster (पाठशाला का अध्यापक) | Schoolmistress (पाठशाला का अध्यापिका) |
| Beggar-man (भिखारी) | Beggar-woman (भिखारिन) |
| Great uncle (असामान्य चाचा) | Great-aunt (असामान्य चाची) |
| Merman (दरियाई मर्द) | Mermaid (दरियाई औरत) |
| Prosecutor (मुद्दई/अभियोक्ता) | Prosecutrix (अभियोग चलानेवाली) |
| Viceroy [राज्यप्रतिनिधि (पुरुष)] | Vicereine (महिला राज्यप्रतिनिधि) |
| He-buffalo (भैंसा) | She-buffalo (भैंस) |
| Dairy-man (दूध बेचनेवाला) | Dairy-maid (दूध बेचनेवाली) |
| Director (संचालक / निर्देशक) | Directress (संचालिका/निर्देशिका) |
| Votary (भक्त / उपासक) | Votaress (भक्तिन / उपासिका) |
| Boy friend (लड़का दोस्त) | Girl friend (लड़की दोस्त) |
| Chairman (सभापति) | Chair person (महिला सभापति) |
| Spokesman (दूसरे के लिये बोलने वाला) | Spokes person (दूसरे के लिए बोलने वाली) |
| Father-in-law (ससुर) | Mother-in-law (सास) |
| Bull-calf (बछड़ा) | Cow-calf (बछड़ी) |
| Bull-elephant (हाथी) | Cow-elephant (हथनी) |
| States man (पुरुष-राजनीतिज्ञ) | States woman (महिला राजनीतिज्ञ) |
| English man (पुरुष अंग्रेज) | English woman (स्त्री-अंग्रेज) |
| He-rabbit (नर खरगोश) | She-rabbit (मादा खरगोश) |
| Billy-goat (बकरा) | Nanny-goat (बकरी) |
| Tom-cat (बिलाव) | Tabby-cat (बिल्ली) |
| He-ape (नर लंगूर) | She-ape (मादा लंगूर) |
| Fisher-man (पुरुष-मछुआरा) | Fisher-woman, Fish-wife (मछुआरा की पत्नी) |
| He-camel (ऊँट) | She-camel (ऊँटनी) |
| He-kangaroo (नर कंगारू) | She-kangaroo (मादा कंगारू) |
| He-mule (नर खच्चर) | She-mule (मादा खच्चर) |
| He-hare (नर खरगोश) | She-hare (मादा खरगोश) |
| He-squirrel (नर गिलहरी) | She-squirrel (मादा गिलहरी) |
| He-rhinoceros (नर गैंडा) | She-rhinoceros (मादा गैंडा) |
| He-panther (नर चीता) | She-panther (मादा चीता) |
| He-mouse (नर चूहा) | She-mouse (मादा चूहा) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Masculine words | Feminine words |
|---|---|
| He-mole (नर छछूंदर) | She-mole (मादा छछूंदर) |
| Proprietor (स्वामी/मालिक) | Proprietress (स्वामिनी/मालकिन) |
| Male (पुरुष) | Female (स्त्री) |
| Steer (युवा बैल) | Steeress (युवा गाय) |
| Stallion (बधिया न किया हुआ घोड़ा) | Mare (घोड़ी) |
| He-zebra (नर जेब्रा) | She-zebra (मादा जेब्रा) |
| He-pony (नर टट्टू) | She-pony (मादा टट्टू) |
| Leopard (नर तेंदुआ) | Leopardess (मादा तेंदुआ) |
| He-mongoose (नर नेवला) | She-mongoose (मादा-नेवला) |
| He-monkey (नर बंदर) | She-monkey (मादा बंदर) |
| He-chimpanzee (नर वनमानुष) | She-chimpanzee (मादा वनमानुष) |
| He-sheep (भेड़) | She-sheep/Ewe (भेड़ी) |
| He-rat (मूस) | She-rat (मूसिया) |
| He-hyena (नर लकड़बग्घा) | She-hyena (मादा लकड़बग्घा) |
| He-hound (नर शिकारी कुत्ता) | She-hound (मादा शिकारी कुत्ता) |
| He-jackal (नर सियार) | She-jackal (मादा सियार) |
| He-porcupine (नर साही) | She-porcupine (मादा साही) |
| He-owl (नर उल्लू) | She-owl (मादा उल्लू) |
| Oil man (तेली) | Oil woman (तेलिन) |
| Machine man (मशीन चलाने वाला) | Machine woman (मशीन चलाने वाली) |
| Boat man (मल्लाह) | Boat woman (मल्लाहिन) |
| Sales man (सेल्समैन) | Sales girl (सेल्स गर्ल) |
| God father (धर्म पिता) | God mother (धर्म माता) |
| Tutor (निजी शिक्षक) | Governess (निजी शिक्षिका) |

**Some Important Rules of Gender :**

**Rule (1) :** कुछ ऐसे nouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग सुन्दरता (beauty), कमनीयता (gracefulness), मृदुलता (gentleness), कोमलता, नीचता, लघुता आदि का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। इस स्थिति में इन्हें Feminine Gender (स्त्रीलिंग) माना जाता है तथा इनके लिए singular pronoun—she, her, hers, herself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

The Moon, The Earth, Nature, flattery, spring, hope, virtue, charity, humility, mercy, faith, peace, ship, river, nation, jealousy, liberty, fame, city, country, car, modesty, train, pride, truth, justice etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. The moon shed her light on the bank. (√)
   The moon shed its light on the bank. (×)
2. Spring has her own charms and delights. (√)
   Spring has its own charms and delights. (×)
3. Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war. (√)
   Peace hath its victories no less renowned than war. (×)
4. The ship fought her way through the stormy waves. (√)
   The ship fought its way through the stormy waves. (×)
5. Love virtue, she is alone free. (√)
   Love virtue, it is alone free. (×)

**Rule (2) :** यदि Exclusive Gender के nouns के साथ woman/lady/female का प्रयोग हो तो इनके लिए Feminine Gender के singular pronoun—she, her (adj), hers, herself का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Girl-friend, Girl-student, Female-child, woman-teacher, woman-doctor, woman-conductor etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. A girl student should not neglect her home. (√)
   A girl student should not neglect his/its home. (×)
2. A woman-doctor examines the patient herself. (√)
   A woman-doctor examines the patient himself/itself. (×)

**Note :** (i) Woman का प्रयोग sex को denote (इंगित करना) करने के लिए किया जाता है।

(ii) Lady का प्रयोग sex को denote करने के लिए नहीं किया जाता है।

| Right | | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Woman-doctor | — | Lady-doctor. |
| 2. Woman-servant | — | Lady-servant. |
| 3. Woman-teacher | — | Lady-teacher. |
| 4. Woman-driver | — | Lady-driver |

A lady doctor has been sent for. (×)
A woman-doctor has been sent for. (√)
A lady teacher teaches me English. (×)
A woman teacher teaches me English. (√)
Is it a lady's college ? (×)
Is it a women's college ? (√)

ध्यान दें : उपरोक्त nouns के लिए 'she' का प्रयोग हो तो woman का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She is a doctor. (√)
She is a woman doctor. (×)
She is a teacher. (√)
She is a woman teacher. (×)

(iii) Lady शब्द का प्रयोग 'सामाजिक पद/पदवी' (character/social rank) को denote (इंगित) करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Lady Diana, Lady Macbeth.

(iv) Lady शब्द का प्रयोग 'औपचारिक शैली' में courtesy term के रूप में direct address (सीधा सम्बोधन) करने के लिए होता है। ऐसा हमारे विद्वानों का मत है। इस अर्थ में Lady के plural Ladies शब्द का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Prime Minister said to the people, "Ladies and Gentlemen, beware of terrorists". (√)
The Prime Minister said to the people, "Mesdames and gentle men, beware of terrorists. (×)

(v) लेकिन lady शब्द का प्रयोग singular form में Direct address (सीधा सम्बोधन) करने के लिए नहीं होता है। चूंकि Madam शब्द का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

May I come in, Madam ? (√)
May I come in, Lady ? (×)

(vi) Lady शब्द का प्रयोग किसी महिला की उपस्थिति हेतु किया जाता है न कि Madam का। जैसे—

Who has stolen this lady's bag ? (√)
Who has stolen this madam's bag ? (×)

(vii) Sales woman, cleaning woman, tea woman, girl-friend का प्रयोग प्रचलन में है। अतः पाठकों को भी ऐसा ही प्रयोग करना चाहिए।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (3) :** सामान्यतः Bachelor तथा virgin का प्रयोग क्रमशः Masculine तथा Feminine Gender के रूप में होता है। लेकिन आजकल कुछ भाषा में Bachelor और virgin का प्रयोग Masculine और Feminine दोनों Gender में हो रहा है। जैसे—

1. He is a bachelor.
2. She is a bachelor girl.
3. He is a virgin.
4. She is a virgin.

**Note :** (i) Bachelor का प्रयोग 'कुँवारा आदमी' (unmarried man) तथा 'man or woman who has taken the first university degree' अर्थ में होता है।

(ii) Virgin का प्रयोग man or woman has never had sexual intercourse (कुमार/कुमारी जिसने सम्भोग न किया हो) के अर्थ में होता है।

**Rule (4) :** कुछ ऐसे nouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग शक्ति (strength), दृढ़ता (firmness) या ऊर्जा (energy) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। इस स्थिति में ये Masculine Gender (पुल्लिंग) माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए singular pronouns—he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

The sun, time, death, winter, wind, summer, thunder, Ocean, love, war, wine etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. The sun shot his bright rays. (✓)
   The sun shot her bright rays. (×)
2. Death always knows his victim. (✓)
   Death always knows her victim. (×)
3. Death lays his icy hand on kings. (✓)
   Death lays her icy hand on kings. (×)

**Rule (5) :** नीचे दिये गए nouns का प्रयोग सामाजिक कारणों से Masculine Gender में होता है। जैसे—

| Masculine words | — | Hindi meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Shoe-maker | — | मोची |
| 2. Baker | — | रोटी-पकाने वाला |
| 3. Merchant | — | व्यापारी |
| 4. Soldier | — | सिपाही |
| 5. Lawyer | — | वकील |

**Note :** लेकिन अर्थ प्रधान समाज में आवश्यकता की पूर्ति के लिए स्त्रियाँ भी उपरोक्त पेशा को अपना रही हैं।

**Rule (6) :** कुछ ऐसे Masculine Gender के nouns हैं जो विशेषण (Adjective) के रूप में 'स्त्री' के लिए भी प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे—

1. Veena is a lover of fine arts.
   वीणा सुन्दर कलाओं का प्रेमी है।
2. She is a master of English.
   उस स्त्री को अंग्रेजी पर अधिकार है।

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में lover तथा master का प्रयोग Adjective की तरह हुआ है। लेकिन ये सामान्यतः nouns होते हैं।

**Rule (7) :** नीचे दिये गए nouns के प्रयोग को सावधानी से समझने की कोशिश करें :

**1. Use of queen :** (i) Queen का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'राजा की धर्म पत्नी' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

She is a queen.

(ii) Queen का प्रयोग 'देश का शासन चलाने वाली स्त्री' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Queen Elizabeth was not beautiful.

**2. Use of fisher-woman and fish-wife :** (i) Fisher-woman का प्रयोग 'मछली बेचने वाली स्त्री या मछुआरे की धर्म पत्नी' के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि fish-wife का प्रयोग 'सिर पर मछली की टोकरी रखकर घर-घर मछली बेचने वाली स्त्री' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

1. She is a fisher-woman.
   *वह मछुआरे की धर्म पत्नी है।*
2. She is a fish-wife.
   *वह सिर पर मछली की टोकरी रखकर घर-घर मछली बेचने वाली स्त्री है।*

**3. Use of fellow :** Fellow का प्रयोग 'मित्र/सहचर, तुल्य पुरुष, विश्वविद्यालय का सभासद' के अर्थ में Common Gender के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. Binay is an idle fellow.
2. Seema is my class fellow.

**Note :** कवि तथा व्याख्याकार कल्पनाशील व्यक्ति होते हैं अतः ये non living things को Masculine or Feminine Gender के रूप में प्रयोग करते हैं।

**Rule (8) :** Each, every, either, neither का प्रयोग distributive Pronouns or Adjectives के रूप में होता है। ये Common Gender के Pronouns हैं। इनके लिए सामान्यतः Masculine Gender के Singular Pronouns—he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन female sex का पता चलने पर Feminine Gender के Singular Pronouns— she, her, hers, herself का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

Every student should do his duty. (✓)
Every student should do its duty. (×)

Each of us has finished his work. (✓)
Each of us has finished its work. (×)

Neither of them has done his duty. (✓)
Neither of them has done its duty. (×)

**Rule (9) :** Everyone, someone, anyone, no one, everybody, somebody, anybody, nobody का प्रयोग Indefinite pronouns के रूप में होता है। ये Common Gender के Pronouns हैं। इनके लिए सामान्यतः Masculine Gender के Singular Pronouns—he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन female sex का पता चलने पर Feminine Gender के Pronouns—She, her, hers, herself का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

Every one should mind his business. (✓)
Every one should mind its business. (×)

No one should trouble his neighbour. (✓)
No one should trouble its neighbour. (×)

**Rule (10) :** Every thing, some thing, any thing, nothing का प्रयोग Indefinite pronouns के रूप में होते हैं। ये Neuter Gender के Pronouns हैं। इनके लिए Neuter Gender के Singular pronouns—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Everything should be kept in its order. (✓)
Everything should be kept in his order. (×)

**Rule (11) :** Lower animals (छोटे प्राणियों) तथा non living things (निर्जीव वस्तुओं) के लिए Neuter Gender के pronouns—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He has killed a snake, it is still lying on the road. (✓)
He has killed a snake, he is still lying on the road. (×)

We cannot write with this pen because its nib is broken. (✓)
We cannot write with this pen because his nib is broken. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (12) :** Collective nouns जैसे, jury, committee, class, team, government, family, mob, council, army, crowd, crew, etc. से समूह का बोध होता है। इसे Neuter Gender माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए Neuter Gender के pronouns—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The committee will submit its report within six months. (✓)
The committee will submit their report within six months. (×)
The team has declared that it will win the match. (✓)
The team has declared that they will win the match. (×)

लेकिन उपरोक्त collective nouns से 'प्रत्येक सदस्य' का बोध हो तो इसके लिए plural pronouns—they, them, their (Poss Adj), theirs, themselves का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The committee have met and they have rejected the proposal. (✓)
The committee have met and it has rejected the proposal. (×)

**Rule (13) :** यदि किसी country (देश) के नाम का प्रयोग Geographical unit (भौगोलिक इकाई) के रूप में हो तो इसे Neuter Gender माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए Neuter Gender के singular pronoun—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Looking at the globe we see China here.
It is one of the greatest countries in Asia.

लेकिन देशों के नाम का प्रयोग personified objects (मानवीकृत वस्तुओं) तथा political (राजनैतिक) or economic (आर्थिक) इकाइयों के रूप में हो तो इसे Feminine Gender माना जाता है और इसके लिए pronouns—she, her, hers, herself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

America is proud of her scientists. (✓)
America is proud of its scientists. (×)
India is a vast country. Her social and political condition is different from others. (✓)

**Rule (14) :** कुछ ऐसे nouns हैं जिसके last में man लगा रहता है man को हटाकर person का प्रयोग कर feminine Gender बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Masculine | — | Feminine |
|---|---|---|
| Chairman | — | Chairperson |
| Spokesman | — | Spokes person |

**Rule (15) :** Child, Infant, baby का प्रयोग Common Gender के nouns के रूप में होता है, इससे सामान्यतः sex का पता नहीं चलता है। ऐसी स्थिति में इसके लिए Neuter Gender के pronouns— it, its, itself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

The child has broken its left leg. (✓)
The child has broken his/her left leg. (×)

लेकिन उपरोक्त nouns से male or female sex का पता चले तो इसके लिए Masculine Gender तथा Feminine Gender के pronouns क्रमशः he, him, his, himself तथा she, her (Poss. Adj.), hers, herself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

The child was a girl. She was very beautiful.
The baby was a boy. He was active.

**Rule (16) :** यदि Common Gender के nouns का प्रयोग male sex को denote (इंगित) करने के लिए होता है तो इसके लिए Masculine Gender के pronouns—he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

A student reads in my class.
He is laborious and honest.

**Rule (17) :** यदि Common Gender के nouns का प्रयोग Female sex को denote (इंगित) करने के लिए होता है तो इसके लिए Feminine Gender के pronouns—she, her (Poss Adj.) hers, herself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

A clerk works in my office.
She helps me very much.

**Rule (18) :** यदि Common Gender के nouns का प्रयोग dual (वर्ग) को denote करने के लिए हो तो इसके लिए Masculine Gender के Pronouns—he, him, his, himself तथा Possessive Adjective—his का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

If any student comes here, ask him to wait for me. (✓)
If any student comes here, ask her to wait for me. (×)

**Rule (19) :** कुछ ऐसे Common Gender के nouns हैं जिनके आगे—boy, man, male तथा पीछे— girl, woman, female जोड़कर अर्थात लगाकर क्रमशः masculine तथा Feminine gender बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Masculine | Feminine | Masculine | Feminine |
|---|---|---|---|
| Man teacher | Woman teacher | Male child | Female child |
| Boy friend | Girl friend | | |

**Rule (20) :** कुछ ऐसे nouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग Common Gender के nouns के रूप में किया जाता है। जैसे—

Advocate, assistant, cousin, clerk, client, criminal, cyclist, dancer, dealer, doctor, novelist professor, pupil, secretary, singer, worker, writer, teacher, politician, servant, typist, musician, mechanic, lecturer, leader, lawyer, guest, friend, fool, engineer, helper...etc.

इनका प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक Masculine तथा Feminine Gender के nouns के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

| Masculine Gender | Feminine Gender |
|---|---|
| 1. He is my doctor. | 1. She is my doctor. |
| 2. He is a teacher | 2. She is a teacher. |

ध्यान दें : (i) जब पालतू जानवरों जैसे; cats, dogs, horses...etc. का प्रयोग Masculine Gender के nouns के रूप में होता है तो इनके लिए pronouns—he, him, his, himself तथा Possessive Adjective—his का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

Your dog has lost his eyes.

(ii) जब पालतू जानवरों जैसे;— cats, dogs, horses...etc का प्रयोग Feminine Gender के nouns के रूप में होता है तो इनके लिए pronouns—she, her, hers, herself तथा Possessive Adjective—her का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

Our horse has lost her sense.

(iii) सामान्यतः boat / ship के लिए Neuter Gender के pronouns—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है।

(iv) Boats (नावों) तथा ships (जहाजों) का प्रयोग जब नाविक अपने नावों तथा जहाजों के लिए करता है तो वे इसे जरूरत के मुताबिक masculine or feminine gender के nouns के रूप में प्रयोग करते हैं अतः इसके लिए pronouns क्रमशः he, him, his, himself तथा she, her, hers, herself का प्रयोग होता है।

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Give the feminine words of the following :*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Shepherd | ..... | 2. Drone | ..... |
| 3. Buck | ..... | 4. Lord | ..... |
| 5. Nephew | ..... | 6. Duke | ..... |
| 7. Host | ..... | 8. Emperor | ..... |
| 9. Headmaster | ..... | 10. Gander | ..... |
| 11. Bridegroom | ..... | 12. Fox | ..... |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13. Actor | ..... | 14. Ram | ..... |
| 15. Drake | ..... | 16. Lion | ..... |
| 17. Chairman | ..... | 18. Colt | ..... |
| 19. Wizard | ..... | 20. Horse | ..... |
| 21. Tiger | ..... | 22. Dog | ..... |
| 23. Prince | ..... | 24. Monk | ..... |
| 25. Peacock | ..... | 26. Hero | ..... |
| 27. Bull | ..... | 28. Lad | ..... |
| 29. Friar | ..... | 30. Great uncle | ..... |
| 31. Mr | ..... | 32. Jew | ..... |
| 33. Bullock | ..... | 34. Traitor | ..... |
| 35. Cow | ..... | 36. Hart | ..... |
| 37. Priest | ..... | 38. Swain | ..... |
| 39. Merman | ..... | 40. Man Servant | ..... |
| 41. School Master | ..... | 42. God | ..... |
| 43. Executor | ..... | 44. Governor | ..... |
| 45. Negro | ..... | 46. Hunter | ..... |
| 47. Spokesman | ..... | 48. Lord | ..... |
| 49. Milkman | ..... | 50. Inspector | ..... |

*Q. 2. Give the masculine words of the following :*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Duchess | ..... | 2. Murdereress | ..... |
| 3. Negress | ..... | 4. Tigress | ..... |
| 5. Miss | ..... | 6. Mistress | ..... |
| 7. Actress | ..... | 8. Ewe | ..... |
| 9. Vixen | ..... | 10. Doe | ..... |
| 11. Filly | ..... | 12. Duck | ..... |
| 13. Countess | ..... | 14. Goose | ..... |
| 15. Hind | ..... | 16. Widow | ..... |
| 17. Lady | ..... | 18. Spinster | ..... |
| 19. Niece | ..... | 20. Lass | ..... |
| 21. Mayoress | ..... | 22. Priestess | ..... |
| 23. Mare | ..... | 24. Poetess | ..... |
| 25. Heiress | ..... | 26. Giantess | ..... |
| 27. Jewess | ..... | 28. Waitress | ..... |
| 29. Traitress | ..... | 30. Roe | ..... |
| 31. Widow | ..... | 32. She-goat | ..... |
| 33. Pea-hen | ..... | 34. Sultana | ..... |
| 35. Czarina | ..... | 36. Land Lady | ..... |
| 37. Administratrix..... | | 38. Beggar-woman | ..... |
| 39. Empress | ..... | 40. Princess | ..... |
| 41. Madam | ..... | 42. She-cat | ..... |
| 43. Bitch | ..... | 44. Lioness | ..... |
| 45. She-camel | ..... | 46. Great-aunt | ..... |
| 47. Heifer | ..... | 48. Sow | ..... |
| 49. Mamma | ..... | 50. Cow-calf | ..... |

*Q. 3. Rewrite the sentences changing the gender :*

1. The prince mounted the horse and galloped away.
2. Your elder brother is hero and your younger sister is spinster.
3. The abbot said that the waiter was a traitor and murderer.
4. His uncle is a widower and his brother is a bachelor.
5. The peahen shook its feathers.
6. The bull gazed at the little boy.
7. The conductor led the king and his wife to the emperor.
8. The monk played the role of the hero.
9. Our hostess was a kind and cheerful woman.
10. The prince declared that author had been his sole benefactor.
11. The poet, the priest and the prophet are coming to visit the Gandhi Maidan.
12. The tempter, the enchanter, the wizard and the sorcerer are the same.
13. His father took her to the museum where she had a look at the lions, tigers, stags, rams and peacocks.
14. The duck waddled to the pond.
15. The fox chased the buck in the forest.

*Q. 4. State the genders of the following words :*

Example—Buck—Masculine Gender.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Shoe | ..... | 2. Uncle | ..... |
| 3. Artist | ..... | 4. Cousin | ..... |
| 5. Vixen | ..... | 6. Duchess | ..... |
| 7. Lady | ..... | 8. Player | ..... |
| 9. Emperor | ..... | 10. Doe | ..... |
| 11. Landlord | ..... | 12. Heiress | ..... |
| 13. Jew | ..... | 14. Votary | ..... |
| 15. Bee | ..... | 16. Duck | ..... |
| 17. Witch | ..... | 18. Wizard | ..... |
| 19. Nun | ..... | 20. Table | ..... |

*Q. 5. Pick out the Nouns from the following sentences and state their Genders :*

1. My neighbour has a new car.
2. The queen was very angry.
3. The doctor examined the patient.
4. The peacock spread its feathers and danced in the rain.
5. The horse trotted into the stable.
6. The princess climbed up the tower.
7. The lawyer won the case.
8. His father-in-law told him a story.
9. His sister-in-law was very happy.
10. My grand mother died in 1986.

*Q. 6. Correct the following sentences :*

1. The man-servant brought her dinner.
2. The mother and its daughter were talking to them.
3. She met a widow and helped him.
4. She is a hero.
5. He is your wife.
6. He is a bride.
7. No one should neglect her duty
8. Lady writers have been invited.
9. She is a lady doctor.
10. He does not care for her daughter.
11. My brother loves her children very much.
12. The shephered takes care for her sheep.
13. She is a lazy boy.
14. My sister paid all his debts.
15. His husband obeys him.
16. A king was coming with her secretary.
17. Her daughter is a prince.
18. This girl is an actor.
19. The woman has gone to his village.
20. His uncle is a widow and his brother is a maid.

*Q. 7. Fill in the blanks with the right word given in the brackets :*

1. Her.....treated her kindly *(husband/wife)*
2. The ..... lost her bag of gold. *(king/queen)*
3. .....wife served him like a nurse. *(His/Her)*
4. The.....saved her husband from death. *(bride/bridegroom)*
5. The...felt the loss of his dear wife. *(man/woman)*
6. That...is the father of six sons. *(widower/widow)*
7. The...is a poet, prophet and priest. *(hero/heroine)*
8. The prince punished the actor who was a ..... . *(traitor/traitress)*
9. The bridegroom was an old.....riding a white horse. *(man/woman)*
10. The king gave the shephered a prize because he had saved the life of .....son. *(his/her)*

*Q. 8. Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. A girl must (1)/love his lover (2)/and a boy must (3)/love his beloved. (4)/No error (5)
2. A student should not (1)/blindly accept (2)/every thing (3)/it finds in a book. (4)/No error (5)



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. He (1)/always plays (2)/the part of a heroine (3)/in a film. (4)/ No error (5)
4. When the queen (1)/saw her father (2)/she alighted from his horse (3)/and knelt before him. (4)/No error (5)
5. The conductor (1)/led the king (2)/and his husband (3)/to the emperor. (4)/No error (5)
6. The prince (1)/declared that (2)/the author had been (3)/his sole benefactress. (4)/No error (5)
7. The land lady accompanied by her maid servants (1)/went to the temple (2)/to pray to the Goddess (3)/for his wife's speedy return. (4)/No error (5)
8. His mother took him (1)/to the zoo where she had a look (2)/at the lions, tigers, stags (3)/rams and peacocks. (4)/No error (5)
9. The count married a rich heir (1)/a lass of fifteen (2)/who was a jewess (3)/by birth. (4)/No error (5)
10. The negro accompanied (1)/by his husband and daughters (2)/came (3)/to the king's palace. (4)/No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

Q.N. (1) से Q.N. (5) का हल छात्रगण स्वयं करें।

Q.6. 1. The man-servant brought his dinner.
2. The mother and her daughter were talking to them.
3. She met a widow and helped her.
4. She is a heroine.
5. She is your wife.
6. He is a bridegroom.
7. No one should neglect his duty.
8. Women writers have been invited.
9. She is a woman doctor.
10. He does not care for his daughter.
11. My brother loves his children very much.
12. The shepherd takes care for his sheep.
13. She is a lazy girl.
14. My brother paid all his debts.
15. His wife obeys him.
16. A king was coming with his secretary.
17. Her daughter is a princess.
18. This girl is an actress.
19. The woman has gone to her village.
20. His uncle is a widower and his brother is a bachelor.

Q.7. 1. husband 2. queen 3. his 4. bride 5. man 6. widower 7. hero 8. traitor 9. man 10. his.

Q.8.
1. (2) his lover की जगह her lover का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (4) it finds in a book की जगह he finds in a book का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (3) a heroine की जगह a hero का प्रयोग होगा।

   Note : he की जगह she का प्रयोग कर भी sentence को correct किया जा सकता है।
4. (3) his horse की जगह her horse का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) husband की जगह wife का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (4) benefactress की जगह benefactor का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (4) his wife's speedy return की जगह her husband's speedy return का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (2) She की जगह he का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (1) a rich heir की जगह a rich heiress का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (2) his husband की जगह his wife का प्रयोग होगा।

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 6

# Noun and the Case

*Case (कारक) : The relation in which a Noun stands to some other words, or the change of the form by which this relation is effected, is called the Case.* —Nesfield

## Kinds of Case

1. **Nominative Case** *(कर्ता कारक) : A Noun or Pronoun that functions as subject of a verb is placed in Nominative Case.* जैसे—

   Dinkar wrote many poems in Hindi.
   (S) (V)

   The Red Fort is a famous building.
   (S) (V)

   He has gone to Mumbai.
   (S) (V)

   Dinkar, The Red Fort, He वाक्य में wrote, is, has gone के subject का काम करते हैं, अतः ये Nominative Case में हैं, क्योंकि 'subject', Nominative Case में रहता है।

2. **Objective Case** : *A Noun or Pronoun that functions as object of a verb is placed in Objective Case.* जैसे—

   He helped Priyanka.
   (V) (O)

   You teach her.
   (V) (O)

   Priyanka, her का प्रयोग helped, teach के object के रूप में हुआ है, अतः ये Objective Case में हैं, क्योंकि 'object' Objective Case में रहता है।

3. **Possessive Case** *(संबंध कारक) : When a Noun shows its relation with or possession on another Noun is in Possessive Case.* जैसे—

   This is Mohan's book.
   These are the legs of the table.
   She is his wife.

   ऊपर दिये गए sentences में Mohan's, the legs of, his से संबंध या अधिकार के भाव का बोध होता है, अतः ये सभी Possessive Case में हैं।

4. **Vocative Case** *(सम्बोधन कारक) : If a Noun is called.* जैसे—

   Come here, Mukesh.
   Are you going, brother ?

   ऊपर दिये गए sentence में Mukesh तथा brother का प्रयोग सम्बोधन के रूप में हुआ है, अतः ये Vocative Case में हैं।

Examination pattern के आधार पर ऐसा पाया गया है, कि Possessive Case से संबंधित प्रश्न पूछे जाते हैं।

अतः हमलोग अब खास रूप से Possessive Case का अध्ययन करेंगे।

Possessive Case को जानने से पहले हमलोग Case Table के बारे में जानें तो ज्यादा बेहतर होगा।

## Case Table

| Nominative case | Objective Case | Possessive Case Poss. Adj. | Poss. Pro | Reflexive Pronouns |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | me | my | mine | myself |
| We | us | our | ours | ourselves |
| you | you | your | yours | yourself (s) yourselves(p) |
| He | him | his | his | himself |
| She | her | her | hers | herself |
| It | it | its | × | itself |
| They | them | their | theirs | themselves |

ध्यान दें :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mineself | (×) | Ourself | (×) |
| Oursselves | (×) | Himselves | (×) |
| Hisself | (×) | Hersself | (×) |
| Herselves | (×) | Itselves | (×) |
| Themself | (×) | Theirself | (×) |
| Theirselves | (×) | | |

ऊपर दिये गए words गलत हैं, इनका प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

**Note : (i) Possessive Adjectives** : My, our, your, his, her its, their का प्रयोग Noun के पहले होता है। इनका प्रयोग Noun के बिना नहीं किया जा सकता।

**(ii) Possessive Pronouns** : Mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs का प्रयोग Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। अर्थात् इनका प्रयोग Noun के बिना होता है। जैसे—

Your brother is rich but mine is poor. (✓)
(Poss. Adj.) (N.) (Poss. pron.)

Yours brother is rich but mine is poor. (×)
(Poss. pron) (N) (Poss. Pron.)

Your brother is rich but my is poor. (×)
(Poss. Adj.)

He enjoyed himselves in the party. (×)
He enjoyed himself in the party. (✓)
I enjoyed mineself. (×)
I enjoyed myself. (✓)

## Possessive Case

Possessive का तात्पर्य apostrophe 's' ['s], apostrophe [ ' ], of से होता है, क्योंकि इनका प्रयोग Relation or Possession का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। इनका अर्थ 'का, के, की' होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| Ram's book | राम की पुस्तक |
| The book of Ram | राम की पुस्तक |
| Boys' hostel | लड़कों का होस्टल |

### Use of Possessive or No use of Possessive

**Rule (1)** : Non living things (निर्जीव पदार्थों) के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, बल्कि 'of' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Spring's flowers (×)
The flowers of spring. (✓)
Spring flowers. (✓)
The house's roof. (×)
The roof of the house. (✓)
The house roof. (✓)
The wall's painting. (×)
The painting of the wall. (✓)
The wall painting. (✓)
The building's decoration. (×)
The decoration of the building. (✓)
The building decoration. (✓)



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



A table's leg. (×)
The leg of a table. (√)
A table leg. (√)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. This tree's leaves are green. (×)
   The leaves of this tree are green. (√)
2. Summer's flowers are very beautiful. (×)
   The flowers of summer are very beautiful. (√)
3. The glass's bottom is dirty. (×)
   The bottom of the glass is dirty. (√)
4. That well's water was pure. (×)
   The water of that well was pure. (√)
5. This book's rules are easy. (×)
   The rules of this book are easy. (√)

**Rule (2) :** 's [apostrophe 's'] का प्रयोग Singular Nouns के साथ होता है। जैसे—

Ram's brother. (√)
Mohan's father. (√)

लेकिन The brother of Ram, The father of Mohan का प्रयोग भी होता है।

इन्हें गौर से पढ़ें :

| With 's (Right) | With of (Right) |
|---|---|
| 1. Mr. Thakur's son | 1. The son of Mr. Thakur |
| 2. A Musician's wife | 2. The wife of a Musician |
| 3. Her husband's health | 3. The health of her husband |
| 4. A hermit's life | 4. The life of a hermit |
| 5. Wordsworth's poems | 5. The poems of Wordsworth |

**Rule (3) :** 's' ending Plural Nouns के साथ apostrophe [ ' ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Girls' college. (√)
Girl's college. (×)
Girls's college. (×)
Boys' hostel. (√)
Boy's hostel. (×)
Boys's hostel. (×)

इन्हें गौर से पढ़ें :

| With Apostrophe (') | | With apostrophe 's' | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Right | | Wrong | |
| 1. Poor Boys' Fund | (√) | (i) Poor Boys's Fund | (×) |
| | | (ii) Poor Boy's Fund | (×) |
| 2. Doctors' strike | (√) | (i) Doctors's strike | (×) |
| | | (ii) Doctor's strike | (×) |
| 3. Teachers' day | (√) | (i) Teachers's day | (×) |
| | | (ii) Teacher's day | (×) |
| 4. Workers' demands | (√) | (i) Workers's demands | (×) |
| | | (ii) Worker's demands | (×) |
| 5. Boys' school | (√) | (i) Boys's school | (×) |
| | | (ii) Boy's school | (×) |
| 6. Girls' common room | (√) | (i) Girls's common room | (×) |
| | | (ii) Girl's common room | (×) |

**Rule (4) :** Without 's' ending Plural Nouns के साथ apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Women's college. (√) Men's work. (√)
Woman's college. (×) Man's work. (×)
Womens's college. (×) Mens's work (×)

इन्हें गौर से पढ़ें :

| Right | | Wrong | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Men's faces | (√) | (i) Mens' faces | (×) |
| | | (ii) Mens's faces | (×) |
| 2. Mice's tails | (√) | (i) Mices' tails | (×) |
| | | (ii) Mices's tails | (×) |
| 3. Women's dresses | (√) | (i) Womens' dresses | (×) |
| | | (ii) Womens's dresses | (×) |
| 4. Children's toys | (√) | (i) Childrens' toys | (×) |
| 5. Geese's feathers | (√) | (i) Geeses' feathers | (×) |
| | | (ii) Geeses's feathers | (×) |

**Rule (5) :** Hissing sound वाले Nouns के साथ apostrophe [ ' ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Jesus' life. (√) Jesus's life. (×)
Moses' laws. (√) Moses's laws. (×)
Pythagoras' theorem. (√) Pythagoras's theorem. (×)
Archimedes' law. (√) Archimedes's law (×)
Socrates' idealism. (√) Socrates's idealism. (×)
For Justice' sake. (√) For Justice's sake. (×)
For goodness' sake. (√) For goodness's sake. (×)
For conscience' sake. (√) For conscience's sake. (×)

इन्हें गौर से पढ़ें :

| Right | | Wrong | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. For righteousness' sake | (√) | (i) For righteousness's sake | (×) |
| | | (ii) For righteousness sake | (×) |
| 2. Euripides' plays | (√) | (i) Euripides's plays | (×) |
| | | (ii) Euripide's plays | (×) |
| 3. Oedipus' little problem | (√) | (i) Oedipus's little problem | (×) |
| | | (ii) Oedipus little problem | (×) |
| 4. Sophocles' plays | (√) | (i) Sophocles's plays | (×) |
| | | (ii) Sophocle's plays | (×) |
| 5. Guy Fawkes' night | (√) | (i) Guy fawkes's night | (×) |
| | | (ii) Guy fawke's night | (×) |
| 6. Cervantes' Don Quixote | (√) | (i) Cervantes's Don Quixote | (×) |
| | | (ii) Cervante's Don Quixote | (×) |
| 7. Hercules' deeds | (√) | (i) Hercules's deeds | (×) |
| | | (ii) Hercule's deeds | (×) |

**Note :** (i) कुछ ऐसे hissing sound वाले Nouns हैं, जिनके साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Venus's beauty. (√) Venus' beauty. (×)
James's hat. (√) James' hat. (×)
Mr. Jones's house. (√) Yeats's poems. (√)

लेकिन Mr. Jones' house और Yeats' poems का Possessive apostrophe [ ' ] का प्रयोग कर भी बनाया जा सकता है।

(ii) For God's sake, for heaven's sake for mercy's sake में Possessive apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर बनाया जाता है।

(iii) For brevity sake तथा for fashion sake के साथ Apostrophe 's' or Apostrophe [ ' ] का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(iv) 's' ending proper noun जो singular name को denote (व्यक्त) करता है, के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Denis's new job (√) Denis' new job (×)
Charles's wife (√) Charles' wife (×)

ऐसा प्रयोग आधुनिक अंग्रेजी भाषा में बेहतर माना जाता है।

**Rule (6)** : Personified things (मानवीयकृत वस्तुएँ) के साथ 's [apostrophe 's'] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Fortune's favour.
Death's icy hand.

इन्हें याद रखें :

| Right | | Wrong | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Nature's laws | (√) | (i) Natures' laws | (×) |
| | | (ii) Natures's laws | (×) |
| 2. Duty's call | (√) | (i) Dutys' call | (×) |
| | | (ii) Dutys's call | (×) |
| 3. Sorrow's tears | (√) | (i) Sorrows' tears | (×) |
| | | (ii) Sorrows's tears | (×) |
| 4. Nature's beauty | (√) | (i) Natures' beauty | (×) |
| | | (ii) Natures's beauty | (×) |
| 5. Soul's prayer | (√) | (i) Souls' prayer | (×) |
| | | (ii) Souls's prayer | (×) |
| 6. At death's door | (√) | (i) At deaths' door | (×) |
| | | (ii) At deaths's door | (×) |

**Rule (7)** : किसी country or place के नाम के साथ apostrophe 's [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

England's history. (√)
India's future. (√)
Patna's water supply. (√)

लेकिन The history of England. (√)
The future of India. (√)
The water supply of Patna. (√)

**Note** : (i) किसी place के नाम के बाद superlative degree का प्रयोग हो तो place के नाम के साथ Apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

The town's best publication.
The world's largest river.
The village's oldest man.

लेकिन The best publication of the town.
The largest river of the world.
The oldest man of the village का प्रयोग भी होता है।

(ii) यदि किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु के पहले possessive (Apostrophe 's', Apostrophe ( ' ) or Possessive Adjectives) का प्रयोग हो तो व्यक्ति या वस्तु के पहले Articles (a/an/the) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The politician's daughter. (√)
The politician's the daughter. (×)
But The daughter of the politician. (√)
America's intervention (हस्तक्षेप) (√)
America's the intervention. (×)
But The intervention of America. (√)

(iii) किसी देश के नाम के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग possessive बनाने के लिए इस प्रकार नहीं होता है। जैसे—

India's players. (×) The Indian players. (√)
England's team. (×) The English team. (√)

**Rule (8)** : Singular Time expressing words के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

A week's holiday. (√) A year's absence. (√)
A day's journey. (√) A month's holiday. (√)
Tomorrow's programme. (√)

लेकिन plural Time expressing words के साथ Apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Five days' leave. (√) Two hours' delay. (√)
Ten minutes' break. (√) In two years' time. (√)
At six months' sight (√)

**Note** : A ten-minute break, A two-hour delay, A five-day leave का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

**(i) Singular** : We have a ten-minute break. (√)
**(ii) Plural** : We have ten minutes' break. (√)

**Rule (9)** : Space expressing words जैसे— Length, point, edge, width, breadth etc. के पहले प्रयुक्त Nouns के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

A boat's length. (√) A needle's point. (√)
A razor's edge. (√) A stone's edge. (√)
A stone's throw. (√)

लेकिन, The length of a boat. (√)
The point of a needle. (√)
The edge of a razor. (√)
The edge of a stone का प्रयोग होता है। (√)

**Note** : नीचे दिये गए के शब्द समूहों को ध्यानपूर्वक पढ़ें और समझें :

| Right | | Wrong | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. A hand's breadth | (√) | 1. A hands' breadth | (×) |
| 2. A hair's breadth | (√) | 2. A hairs' breadth | (×) |
| 3. A metre's length | (√) | 3. A metres' length | (×) |
| 4. The Journey's end | (√) | 4. The journeys' end | (×) |
| 5. The water's edge | (√) | 5. The waters' edge | (×) |

लेकिन The breadth of a hand. (√)
The breadth of a hair. (√)

**Rule (10)** : Singular unit of weight or money के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

A ton's weight. (√) A pound's weight. (√)
A rupee's worth. (√) A kilogram's weight. (√)
A quintal's weight. (√) A dollar's worth. (√)
A yen's worth. (√)

लेकिन plural units of weight or money के साथ Apostrophe (') का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Five tons' weight. (√) Six pounds' weight. (√)
Ten dollars' worth. (√) Two yens' worth. (√)

**Rule (11)** : Compound Nouns के last term के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Father-in-law's health. (√)
Brother-in-law's job. (√)
Father's-in-law health. (×)
Fathers'-in-law's health. (×)
Brother's-in-law job. (×)
Brother's-in-law's job. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. His mother-in-law's behaviour is rough. (√)
   His mother's-in-law behaviour is rough. (×)
2. Your step-father's house was not grand. (√)
   Your step's-father house was not grand. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (12) :** Phrase or Noun equivalent words जो एक से अधिक शब्दों से मिलकर बने होते हैं, के last Noun के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

The King of Magadh's palace. *(मगध के राजा का राजमहल)* (✓)
The king's Magadh's palace. (×)
The king's of Magadh palace. (×)
The king of Magadh of palace. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. The chairman of the committee's report was not clear. (✓)
   The chairman of the committee report was not clear. (×)
2. The Government of India's declaration was not obvious. (✓)
   The Government of India declaration was not obvious. (×)
3. Henry the Eighth's wives. (✓)
   Henry's the Eighths's wives. (×)
4. The Prince of Wales's helicopter. (✓)
   The Prince of Wales' helicopter. (×)

**Rule (13) :** Noun in apposition के Case में प्रयुक्त Noun के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Tagore, the poet's house, was decorated. (✓)
I married my friend, Santosh's sister. (✓)
I married my friend's Santosh's sister. (×)

**Rule (14) :** यदि दो Nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों और उनके बीच close relation हो, तो last Noun के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Mr. Lal & Brother's Jewellery. (✓)
Mr. Sinha & Son's shop. (✓)
Mr. Lal's & Brother's Jewellery. (×)
Mr. Sinha's & Son's shop. (×)

लेकिन दो Nouns के बीच close relation नहीं हो, तो दोनों Nouns के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Shakespeare's and Wordsworth's poems. (✓)
Shakespeare's and Wordsworth poems. (×)
Shakespeare's and Wordsworth's poems. (×)

**Note :** (i) यदि दो nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा उनके बीच close relation नहीं हो फिर भी joint possession (सम्मिलित अधिकार) को express करना हो तो last noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

1. Mohan and Sohan's house —*Joint possession.*
   *मोहन और सोहन (दोनों) का घर* —*(सम्मिलित अधिकार)*
2. Aditi and Aditya's school —*Joint possession*
   *अदिति और आदित्य (दोनों) का स्कूल* —*(सम्मिलित अधिकार)*

(ii) यदि दो nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों और उनके बीच close relation नहीं हो फिर भी separate possession (अलग-अलग अधिकार) को express करना हो तो दोनों nouns के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

1. Mohan's and Sohan's house —*Separate possession*
   *मोहन का घर और सोहन का घर* —*(अलग-अलग अधिकार)*
2. Aditi's and Aditya's school —*Separate possession*
   *अदिति का स्कूल और आदित्य का स्कूल* —*(अलग-अलग अधिकार)*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. Ram and Shyam's wife. (×)
2. Arjun and Bhima's wife. (✓)

उपरोक्त Example (1) का अर्थ— 'राम और श्याम की एक ही पत्नी' होती है जो सामान्यतः संभव नहीं है। इसलिए Example (1) अर्थपूर्ण नहीं होने के कारण गलत है।

जबकि Example (2) का अर्थ 'अर्जुन और भीम की एक ही पत्नी' होता है जो संभव हो चुका है अर्थात अर्जुन और भीम की एक ही पत्नी 'द्रौपदी' थी अतः Example (2) सही है।

3. Ram's and Shyam's wife. (×)
4. Arjun's and Bhima's wife. (✓)

उपरोक्त Example (3) का अर्थ— 'राम की पत्नी और श्याम की पत्नी' होता है जो separate possession (अलग अलग अधिकार) को express करता है। यह अर्थपूर्ण है इसलिए Example (3) सही है। जबकि Example (4) का अर्थ 'अर्जुन की पत्नी और भीम की पत्नी' होता है। जो संभव नहीं है। अर्जुन और भीम की अलग-अलग पत्नी नहीं थी अर्थात् दोनों की एक पत्नी द्रौपदी थी।

**Rule (15) :** कभी-कभी school, shop, clinic, church (cathedral), house, hospital, ..... आदि का बोध कराने के लिए apostrophe 's' ['s ] का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Aman reads in St. Xavier's (school). (✓)
My wife was sitting in a doctor's (clinic). (✓)
Mr. Thakur saw Mr Pandey at a barber's (shop). (✓)
The prayer for the queen's life was held at St. Paul's (cathedral/church). (✓)
You can buy it at the chemist's (shop). (✓)
He is going to the dentist's (hospital). (✓)
I think there is a baker's (shop) next to butcher's (shop). (✓)
We found him studying hard at his tutor's (house). (✓)

**Note :** (i) *A/the+baker's/butcher's/chemist's/florist's/house agent's/travel agent's/dentist's/doctor's/vet's/St. Xavier's/tutor's/St. Paul's* का प्रयोग निश्चित स्थान व घर जैसे— shop, office, clinic/hospital, school, house, church/cathedral का बोध कराने के लिए sentence के object के रूप में हो तो इसके बाद shop, office, surgery/clinic/hospital, school, house, church/cathedral (अंचल का मुख्य गिरजाघर) शब्दों का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

(ii) लेकिन उपरोक्त शब्दों का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तो इसके बाद shop, office, surgery, clinic/hospital, school, house, church/cathedral शब्दों का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The barber's shop is full of customers. (✓)
The travel agent's office is prompt in service. (✓)

**Rule (16) :** Possessive का प्रयोग than के पहले हो, तो than के बाद भी Possessive का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

His (Poss.) car is faster than Mr Pathak's (Poss.). (✓)
His car is faster than Mr. Pathak. (✓)
Varsha's lover is more handsome than Prabha's. (✓)
Varsha's lover is more handsome than Prabha. (✗)
The climate of Patna is better than Gaya. (✗)
The climate of Patna is better than that of Gaya. (✓)

**Note :** Possessive का प्रयोग 'As' के पहले हो तो As के बाद भी possessive का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Mohan's sister is not so beautiful as Sohan's. (✓)
Mohan's sister is not so beautiful as Sohan (✗)
Your flat is not so expensive as mine. (✓)
Your flat is not so expensive as my. (✗)
The students of this class are not so laborious as those that. (✗)
The students of this class are not so laborious as that. (✓)

ध्यान दें :

(i) Singular noun के लिए As/than के बाद that of का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The board of this class is better than that of that. (✗)
The climate of Gaya is not so good as that of Patna. (✓)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


(ii) Plural noun के लिए As/than के बाद those of का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The boys of this class are more laborious than those of that. (√)
The girls of Mumbai are so good as those of Delhi. (√)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

(1) Mohan's brother is taller than Sohan. (√)
(2) Mohan's brother is taller than Sohan's. (√)

उपरोक्त Example (1) का अर्थ 'मोहन का भाई सोहन से अधिक लंबा है' होता है। जबकि Example (2) का अर्थ 'मोहन का भाई, सोहन के भाई से अधिक लंबा है' होता है। दोनों Examples का अर्थ भिन्न है। यहाँ दोनों Examples के वाक्य अर्थपूर्ण हैं। अतः ये सही हैं अर्थ पूर्ण न होने पर गलत हो जाता है। असमान वस्तुओं के बीच तुलना नहीं होती है। जैसे—

Mohan's car is better than Sohan. (×)
Mohan's car is better than Sohan's. (√)
Rohan's pen does not write so well as Suman. (×)
Rohan's pen does not write so well as Suman's. (√)

**Rule (17)** : Indefinite Pronouns जैसे—everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody, everyone, someone, no one के साथ apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Someone's pen. (√) Everybody's problem. (√)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. He has stolen someone's watch. (√)
   He has stolen someones' watch. (×)
2. Everybody's duty is to help the poor. (√)
   Everbody duty is to help the poor. (×)

लेकिन Everybody, somebody. ..... No one के बाद else का प्रयोग होने पर else के साथ apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Nobody else's advice. (√)
Nobody's else advice. (×)
Nobody's else's advice. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He likes nobody else's advice but mine. (√)
He likes nobody elses' advice but mine. (×)
His performance is better than anybody else's. (√)
His performance is better than anybody else. (×)

**Rule (18)** : Indefinite Pronouns जैसे—Everything, something, anything, nothing के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive नहीं बनाया जाता है, बल्कि 'of' का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Everything's beauty. (×)
The beauty of everything. (√)
Nothing's existence. (×)
The existence of nothing. (√)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. The beauty of everything is transitory (क्षणिक) (√)
   Everything's beauty is transitory. (×)
2. The existence of nothing is not temporary. (√)
   Nothing's existence is not temporary. (×)
3. The life of everything is short. (√)
   Everything's life is short. (×)
4. The colour of nothing is fast. (√)
   Nothing's colour is fast. (×)

**Note** : (i) All, both, many, each, either, neither के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive नहीं बनाया जाता है बल्कि 'of' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

The price of each is high. (√)
Each's price is high. (×)
The names of both are not known. (√)
Both's names are not known. (×)

(ii) कभी-कभी (sometimes) दो non-living things के बीच 'of' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Birthday party, gold ring, winter nights, ghost stories, street lamp, kitchen garden.

(iii) नीचे दिये गए nouns का प्रयोग compound nouns के रूप में होता है। इसके साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] तथा of का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

weight-lifting, coal-mining, winter clothes, waiting list, dinning room, swimming pool, driving licence, landing card, picture frame, college library, garden gate, city street, street market, summer holiday, Sunday paper, dawn chorus, gold medal, silk shirt, steel door, rope ladder, gasfire, petrol engine, oil stove, chess board, tin opener, reading lamp, skating rink, notice board, football ground, fish-farm, gold-mine, oil-rig, pop singer, sheep farming, football match, tennis tournament, car rally, housing committee, education department, peace talks, bus/train/plane tickets, fuel/laundary/milk/telephone bills, entry fees, income tax, car insurance, parking fines, water rates, detective/murder/mystery/ghost/herror/spy story. etc.

**Rule (19)** : Reciprocal Pronouns जैसे—each other, one another के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Each other's hands. (√)
Each's other hands. (×)
Each's other's hands. (×)
One another's behaviour. (√)
One's another's behaviour. (×)
One's another behaviour. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. Ajay and Veena were catching each other's hands. (√)
   Ajay and Veena were catching each other' hands. (×)
2. They were touching one another's bodies. (√)
   They were touching one another bodies. (×)

**Rule (20)** : *A/An + Singular Noun + of + Noun* के structure (बनावट) में last Noun के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

1. A sister of Mohan's book. (√)
2. A friend of my wife's house. (√)
3. Mr. Mishra is a friend of Mr. Thakur's. (√)

अर्थ : Mr. Thakur के बहुत से दोस्तों में से Mr. Mishra एक है।

Mr. Mishra is a friend of Mr. Thakur. (×)

4. D. S. Khanna is a father of Bhavana's. (×)

Bhavana के एक से अधिक father नहीं हो सकते हैं। ऊपर दिये Example (4) अर्थ पूर्ण नहीं है, अतः यह गलत है।

D. S. Khanna is Bhavana's Father. (√)

**Note**: (i) *A/An + Singular noun + of + Noun + Apostrophe 's' [ s ]* के structure में of के पहले प्रयुक्त noun से 'बहुतों में से एक' (one of the many) का बोध होता है। जैसे—

Sohan is a friend of Mohan's.
सोहन, मोहन के बहुत से मित्रों में से एक है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(ii) *A/An + singular noun + of + possessive pronoun* के structure में भी 'of' के पहले प्रयुक्त noun से 'बहुतों में से एक' (one of the many) का बोध होता है। जैसे—

Guriya is a classmate of hers.
गुड़िया, उसके (स्त्री) बहुत से सहपाठियों में से एक है।

(iii) *Apostrophe 's' ['s] + noun* से एक certain noun (निश्चित संज्ञा) का भाव प्रकट होता है। जैसे—

Manisha is Manish's beloved.
मनीषा मनीष की प्रेमिका है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. She is a wife of mine. (×) *(संभव नहीं है)*
   *वह मेरे बहुत से पत्नियों में से एक है।*
   She is my wife. (✓) *(निश्चित पत्नी)*
   *वह मेरी पत्नी है।*
2. Mrs. Thakur is a mother of Aditya. (×) *(संभव नहीं है)*
   *मिसेज ठाकुर आदित्य के बहुत से माताओं में से एक है।*
   Mrs. Thakur is Aditya's mother. *(निश्चित माता)*
   *मिसेज ठाकुर आदित्य की माता है।*

उपरोक्त Example (1) और (2) के अर्थ से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि सामान्यतः एक व्यक्ति की एक से अधिक पत्नी तथा माता नहीं हो सकती है। इसलिए Example (1) और (2) गलत है तथा इसके नीचे वाक्य का सही रूप दिया गया है।

**Rule (21)** : Gerund *(M. V$^{1}$. + ing)* के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Mr. Thakur postponed his wife's going to Mumbai. (✓)
*(मिस्टर ठाकुर ने अपने पत्नी का मुम्बई जाना स्थगित कर दिया।)*
He appreciates Lata's singing. (✓)
*(वह लता के गाने की गुणगान करता है।)*

**Note** : (i) Gerund के पहले Possessive Adjectives का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

We should not mind her coming late. (✓)
I do not approve of my brother's working as a peon.
*मैं अपने भाई का एक चपरासी के रूप में काम करने का अनुमोदन नहीं करता हूँ।*

(ii) जब Gerund का प्रयोग passive style के sentence में होता है तो Gerund के पहले प्रयुक्त noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग possessive बनाने के लिए नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The Indians were shocked at Prime Minister Smt. Gandhi being assassinated. (✓)
The Indians were shocked at Prime Minister Smt. Gandhi's being assassinated. (×)
They all were very happy at Mr. Tagore being awarded by the nobel prize. (✓)
They all were very happy at Mr. Tagore's being awarded by the nobel prize. (×)

(iii) यदि Gerund के पहले किसी lifeless thing का प्रयोग हो तो Gerund के पहले प्रयुक्त lifeless thing के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive नहीं बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

There is no danger of the roof crashing. (✓)
There is no danger of the roof's crashing. (×)

**Rule (22)** : Possessive Pronouns or Possessive Adjectives के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] or apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, क्योंकि ये खुद Possessive हैं। जैसे—

Your's daughter. (×)
Your daughter. (✓)
Her 's lover. (×)
Her lover. (✓)
Your's faithfully. (×)
Your faithfully. (×)
Yours faithfully. (✓)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. His wife is more beautiful than yours'. (×)
   His wife is more beautiful than yours. (✓)
2. My father is more honest than hers'. (×)
   My father is more honest than hers. (✓)

उपरोक्त Examples (1) और (2) में क्रमशः yours' तथा hers' का प्रयोग गलत है yours तथा hers के साथ Apostrophe 's' or Apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। क्योंकि ये खुद possessive हैं।

**Rule (23)** : *The/this/that/these/those + Noun + of + Noun* के structure में last Noun के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

This advice of Mr. Pandey's is important. (×)
This advice of Mr. Pandey is important. (✓)
The brothers of Mr. Thakur's have come from Mumbai. (×)
The brothers of Mr. Thakur have come from Mumbai. (✓)

**Rule (24)** : *The + Adjectives* के साथ apostrophe 's' [ 's ] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, बल्कि 'of' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The blind's honesty. (×)
The honesty of the blind. (✓)
The sick's patience. (×)
The patience of the sick. (✓)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. The deaf's voice is bold. (×)
   The voice of the deaf is bold. (✓)
2. The rich's health is weak. (×)
   The health of the rich is weak. (✓)

**Rule (25)** : यदि किसी noun का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तो इसके साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग सामान्यतः नहीं होता है, अर्थात noun, nominative case में प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

Keats's is a romantic poet.
Keats' is a romantic poet.
Keats is a romantic poet. (✓)
Arbind's is my best friend.
Arbind is my best friend. (✓)

**Note** : जब noun's का अर्थ noun's + noun से होता है तो noun's का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. Sudhir's is a new car. (✓)
   *सुधीर का कार नया (कार) है।*
2. Sudhir is a new car. (×)
   *सुधीर नया (कार) है।*
3. Mohan's is a beautiful house. (✓)
   *मोहन का घर सुन्दर (घर) है।*
4. Mohan is a beautiful house. (×)
   *मोहन एक सुन्दर घर है।*

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Sudhir's तथा Mohan's का अर्थ क्रमशः Sudhir's car तथा Mohan's house है। अतः ये वाक्य सही हैं। लेकिन वाक्य (2) और (4) complete meaningful नहीं है। सुधीर तथा मोहन व्यक्ति है वे अपने एक नया कार तथा एक सुन्दर घर नहीं हो सकते है। अतः ये गलत है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



होता है।

Noun's का प्रयोग names of the owners of some businesses तथा some well known shops को denote (इंगित) करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Anil Ambani's is gradually increasing. (✓)
*अनिल अम्बानी का व्यापार धीरे-धीरे बढ़ रहा है।*

Anil Ambani is gradually increasing. (×)
*अनिल अम्बानी धीरे-धीरे बढ़ रहा है।*

**Rule (26) :** दो continued (लगातार) nouns के साथ Apostrophe (') or Apostrophe 's' ('s) का प्रयोग कर possessive नहीं बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

Binod's wife's parents. (×)
The parents of Binod's wife. (✓)
*विनोद की पत्नी के माता पिता।*

Meena's husband's life. (×)
The life of Meena's husband. (✓)
*मीना के पति का जीवन।*

**Rule (27) :** कुछ ऐसे शब्द समूह (phrases) हैं जो compound noun की तरह कार्य करते हैं उनमें Apostrophe 's' ['s] or Apostrophe (') का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The Prime's Minister is going to address the people of India. (×)
The Prime Minister is going to address the people of India. (✓)
The Gandhi Maidan is a public's place. (×)
The Gandhi Maidan is a public place. (✓)
The Government's of Bihar has tried to improve the education system. (×)
The Government of Bihar has tried to improve the education system. (✓)

**Rule (28) :** यदि किसी noun के साथ prepositional phrase का प्रयोग हो तो उस noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। बल्कि of का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I have seen the man's car with a gun. (×)
I have seen the car of the man with a gun. (✓)
He understands the meaning of the woman's smile with a black jeans. (×)
He understands the meaning of the smile of the woman with a black jeans. (✓)
The boys ran about, a man's directions with a whistle. (×)
The boys ran about, the directions of a man with a whistle. (✓)

**Rule (29) :** यदि किसी noun के बाद Relative pronoun or adverb का प्रयोग हो तो Relative pronoun or Adverb के पहले प्रयुक्त noun के साथ of का प्रयोग होता है न कि Apostrophe 's' ['s] का। जैसे—

I took the advice of a couple (whom) I met on the train and hired a car. (✓)
I took a couple's advice (whom) I met on the train and hired a car. (×)
He has read the plays of Shakespeare who is the greatest dramatist of English. (✓)
He has read Shakespeare's plays who is the greatest dramatist of English. (×)

**Rule (30) :** यदि किसी noun के बाद noun-in-apposition का प्रयोग हो तो noun-in apposition में प्रयुक्त noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Tripurari married his friend, Murari's sister. (✓)
Tripurari married his friend's Murari's sister. (×)
Veena loves Ajay, her brother's friend. (✓)
Veena loves Ajay's her brother's friend. (×)

**Rule (31) :** कभी-कभी किसी व्यक्ति के नाम के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग करने से उस व्यक्ति के घर (house) का बोध होता है। House के प्रयोग के बिना ही घर का अर्थ स्पष्ट हो जाता है। जैसे—

1. We had lunch at Raman's. (✓)
   We had lunch at Raman. (×)
2. He met me at Shubham's. (✓)
   He met me at Shubham. (×)

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Raman's तथा Shubham's का तात्पर्य Raman's house तथा Shubham's house अर्थात रमण तथा शुभम् के घर से है।

**Rule (32) :** Collective noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] or of दोनों का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

1. The crowd's reaction. (✓)
   or, The reaction of the crowd. (✓)
2. The government's decision. (✓)
   or, The decision of the government. (✓)

**Rule (33) :** Inanimate objects or non living things (निर्जीव पदार्थों) जैसे— plan, report, university book...etc. का संबंध human activity (मानवीय क्रियाकलाप) से हो तो इसके साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] or of दोनों का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

1. The plan's success. (✓)
   or, The success of the plan. (✓)
2. The report's conclusion. (✓)
   or, The conclusion of the report. (✓)
3. The university's Vice-chancellor. (✓)
   or, The Vice-chancellor of the university. (✓)
4. The book's publisher. (✓)
   or, The publisher of the book. (✓)

**Rule (34) :** Winter तथा summer के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है, जैसे—

A winter's day. (✓)
A summer's day. (✓)

**Note :** (i) A winter day तथा A summer day का प्रयोग without apostrophe 's' ['s] भी होता है।

(ii) Spring तथा Autumn के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive नहीं बनाया जाता है। लेकिन जब spring or Autumn का प्रयोग personified objects (मानवीकृत वस्तुओं) के रूप में होता है तो इसके साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Autumn's return.

**Rule (35) :** Animals तथा birds के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

A cat's tail (✓)
A horse's head (✓)
A bird's feathers (✓)
] in singular

But Dogs' Kennels (✓)
Birds' nest (✓)
] in plural

**Rule (36) :** Dignified objects (उत्कृष्ट वस्तुओं) के नाम के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

The court's decree.
The moon's crescent.
The earth's creatures.
The sun's rays.
Nature's works.
The soul's delight.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Heaven's will.
Truth's triumph.
The ocean's roar.
The river's bank.
Nature's beauty.
The law's delays.
The mind's eye.
Duty's call.
The country's good.

**Rule (37) :** कुछ ऐसे Familiar idioms and phrases हैं जिसमें Apostrophe 's' ['s] or apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| with 's or ( ' ) Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 1. At one's wit's end | (i) At one's wits end<br>(ii) At ones wit's end |
| 2. Out of harm's way | (i) Out of harms' way<br>(ii) Out of harms's way |
| 3. At one's fingers' ends | (i) At one's fingers end<br>(ii) At ones finger's end |
| 4. To one's heart's content | (i) To one's hearts content<br>(ii) To ones heart's content |
| 5. A stone's throw | (i) A stones throw<br>(ii) A stones' throw |
| 6. The train's arrival | (i) The trains' arrival<br>(ii) The trains arrival |
| 7. The train's departure | (i) The trains' departure<br>(ii) The trains departure |
| 8. The boat's crew | (i) The boats' crew<br>(ii) The boats crew |
| 9. The ship's passengers | (i) The ships' passengers<br>(ii) The ships passengers |
| 10. At arm's length | (i) At arms' length<br>(ii) At arms length |
| 11. To one's journey's end | (i) To one's journeys end<br>(ii) To ones journey's end |
| 12. The car's design | (i) The cars' design<br>(ii) The cars design |
| 13. The computer's behaviour | (i) The computers' behaviour<br>(ii) The computers behaviour |
| 14. The ship's bell | (i) The ships' bell.<br>(ii) The ships bell. |

**Note :** (i) Planes, trains, cars तथा अन्य vehicles के साथ Apostrophe 's' or of दोनों का प्रयोग possessive बनाने के लिए होता है। लेकिन Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाने का प्रचलन है। इसे बेहतर माना जाता है। जैसे—

A glider's wings. (✓)
or, the wings of a glider. (✓)
The train's heating system. (✓)
or, the heating system of the train. (✓)

(ii) Ships तथा boats के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। यह Style प्रचलन में है। जैसे—

The ship's bell. (✓)
The yacht's mast. (✓)

## Practice Set

**Q.1.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. We should not avoid natures' laws.
2. Hemant Babu is at deaths's door.
3. India's players were determined to win the world cup.
4. They have to finish this work in seven week's time.
5. Mr. Pathak has applied for ten days's leave.
6. The Nawab of Rampur library was splendid.
7. The memorial service for Lord Kitchener was held at St. Paul.
8. He goes to St. Joseph.
9. A friend of Rohan was on the train.
10. She has seen Tagore's, the poet's paintings.
11. These are the children's clothes who are bathing.
12. The table's height is three feet.
13. The firm you so much admire is Mohan's, Sohan's and Rohan's.
14. The house's roof fell down.
15. Yeats' works are famous in English literature.
16. Now a days, girls go to the beauty parlour for Fashion's sake.
17. A week holiday is not sufficient for the children.
18. Jesus's life was painful.
19. This is Mr. Nitish Kumar, the Chief Ministers' house.
20. These are not someone elses' books.
21. This is a picture of the king.
22. He bought some cakes at the bakers'.
23. Ajay and Binay's fathers are farmers.
24. Ram's and Laxman's father was Dasharatha jee.
25. He attends St. Michael High School but my cousin attends St. Karen.

**Q.2.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. There (1)/ was (2)/ a boy's college (3)/ in my village. (4)/No error (5)
2. Who (1)/ has (2)/ broken (3)/ the house's door. (4)/ No error (5)
3. They (1)/ were (2)/ waiting for (3)/ the train arrival. (4)/No error (5)
4. What (1)/ is (2)/ her (3)/ today programme. (4)/ No error (5)
5. Seven days' (1)/ journey (2)/ is (3)/ a week journey. (4)/ No error (5)
6. Every teacher (1)/ is expected (2)/ to carry out (3)/ his principal orders. (4)/ No error (5)
7. Mohan (1)/ did (2)/ all this (3)/ for Justice's sake. (4)/ No error (5)
8. Your state (1)/ is rich (2)/ but my (3)/ is poor. (4)/ No error (5)
9. The climate (1)/ of Ranchi (2)/ is better (3)/ than Patna. (4)/ No error (5)
10. You and (1)/ she (2)/ caught (3)/ each other hands. (4)/ No error (5)
11. He (1)/ is (2)/ a student of (3)/ three year's degree course. (4)/ No error (5)
12. She informed me (1)/ that she had gone to (2)/ one of the person's houses (3)/ and stayed there all night. (4)/ No error (5)
13. I stopped (1)/ my brother-in-law going out late at night (2)/ because the situation in the village (3)/ was very tense. (4)/ No error (5)
14. Vikas does not know even (1)/ the name of the scientist (2)/ who discovered (3)/ the laws of the earth gravitational force (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



15. The life of the rich (1)/is (2)/more luxurious than (3)/that of the poor's (4)/ No error (5)
16. A friend of my (1)/brother came to me (2)/yesterday and asked me for (3)/some books. (4)/ No error (5)
17. She told me (1)/ that she had ever seen (2)/me with her (3)/ mind's eyes. (4)/ No error (5)
18. When Veena and Meena (1)/came across Teena, they (2)/ caught one another hands (3)/ and talked for an hour. (4)/ No error(5)
19. The two friends (1)/pointed out (2)/each other merits and demerits (3)/before the teacher. (4)/ No error (5)
20. One (1)/should be (2)/true to (3)/one word. (4)/ No error (5)
21. The eldest son of Mr. Thakur (1)/honours (2)/ his (3)/senior's desires. (4)/ No error (5)
22. I don't think (1)/it is your house (2)/it is somebody's else. (3)/ No error (4)
23. The table's wood (1)/is infested with termites (2)/and I am likely (3)/dispose it off. (4)/ No error (5)
24. Gulliver's Travel's (1)/is (2)/an interesting book (3)/written by Jonathan Swift. (4)/ No error (5)
25. There was (1)/a lot of money (2)/in the bank (3)/ in Sudhir's and Rajeev's joint account. (4)/ No error (5)

Q.3. *Pick out the Nouns in the Possessive Case in the following sentences :*

1. The girl's lover is here.
2. The baby's toy is lost.
3. The student's work is done.
4. The boy's voice is not sweet.
5. The women's clothes are old.
6. Sweta attends a girls' school.
7. These oxen's humps are large.
8. The bee's sting is painful.
9. My brother-in-law's house is far from Patna.
10. Veena's grandfather is ill.

Q.4. *Fill in the blank with suitable words given in the brackets :*

1. His ..... behaviour was not good. *(step-son's, step's-son)*
2. Mukesh's performance in the examination is better than ..... *(Santosh, Santosh's)*
3. His brother is as handsome as ..... *(your, your's, yours)*
4. The king of ... palace is decorated. *(Nepal, Nepal's)*
5. Shyam married his friend ..... sister. *(Aman, Aman's)*
6. He does not know the ..... weight. *(earth, earth's)*
7. Mr. Prasad saw me at a ..... *(braber's, barber)*
8. They broke the ..... *(house's windows, the windows of the house)*
9. The ... is not peaceful. *(poor's life, life of the poor)*
10. A ..... weight is too heavy for me to lift. *(ton's, ton)*
11. He follows my advice and ..... *(nobody's else, nobodyelse's)*
12. We like ..... ideas. *(each other's, each's other)*
13. Shakespeare wrote many dramas but ..... was one of them. *(love's labour's lost, love's labour lost)*
14. ..... were broken by my angry daughters. *(A table's legs, The legs of a table)*
15. ..... needs repairing. *(The building's roof, the roof of the building)*
16. Now I have come to my ..... end. *(wit, wit's)*
17. ..... preachings are of great importance. *(Jesus', Jesus's)*
18. There is a ..... college in my village. *(boy's, boys', boys's)*
19. Who has broken ..... ? *(the house's window, the window of the house)*
20. Raman is a friend of..... *(my/mine)*
21. She studies in..... *(St. Joseph, St Joseph's)*
22. Your..... job is not good. *(Step-brother, step-brother's)*
23. The ..... was the Titanic. *(ship name, ship's name)*
24. .....newspaper gives us a lot of information. *(Today, Today's)*
25. .....is dirty. *(the bottom of the glass, the glass's bottom)*
26. A .....is spacious. *(girl's common room, girls' common room)*
27. The proprieter accepted the ..... *(worker's demands, workers' demands)*
28. .....is prompt in service. *(Black well's shop, Black well's)*
29. .....was a great-lover of nature. *(Keats, Keats's, Keat's)*
30. ...is dirty. *(This well's water, the water of this well)*
31. They are touching ..... fingers. *(one another, one another's)*
32. .....is short. *(The life of everything, everything's life)*
33. He likes .....poetry. *(Kabir's and Mira's, Kabir and Mira's)*
34. I saw her at ..... *(E. plomer's, E. plomers shop)*
35. Five.....weight is not a big weight. *(kilogram's, kilograms')*
36. A friend of .....was on the bus. *(Raman, Raman's)*
37. He will be promoted in a..... *(year's time, years' time)*
38. Children should not seek admission to the..... *(elders' society, elder's society)*
39. After a hard ....., I like to be quiet. *(day's work, days' work)*
40. There are hundreds of .....in space. *(millions of stars, million's stars)*
41. ..... speaks English. *(Neither of my parents, Neither's my parents)*
42. I need some new ..... *(sports shoes, sport's shoes)*
43. I am a student at .....college. *(GoldSmiths', Gold Smith's)*
44. I buy all my ..... because my husband has such poor taste. *(family's clothes, the clothes of the family)*
45. One of the ..... greatest problems is terrorism. *(world, world's)*
46. .....people are afraid of death. *(A lot's, A lot of)*
47. .....attitudes and opinions don't change overnight. *(peoples, people's)*
48. The .... schedule next week is very busy. *(managers', manager's)*
49. .....women like to keep up with the latest fashions. *(Italian, Italian's)*
50. The .... directors receive very high salaries. *(company, company's)*

## Answers With Explanation

Q.1.

1. We should not avoid nature's laws.
2. Hemant Babu is at death's door.
3. The Indian players were determined to win the World cup.
4. They have to finish this work in seven weeks' time.
5. Mr. Pathak has applied for ten days' leave.
6. The Nawab of Rampur's library was splendid.
7. The memorial service for Lord Kitchener was held at St . Paul's.
8. He goes to St. Joseph's.
9. A friend of Rohan's was on the train.
10. She has seen Tagore, the poet's paintings.
11. These are the clothes of the children who are bathing.
12. The height of the table is three feet.
13. The firm you so much admire is Mohan, Sohan and Rohan's.
14. The roof of the house fell down.
15. Yeats's works are famous in English literature.
16. Nowadays, girls go to the beauty parlour for fashion sake.
17. A week's holiday is not sufficient for the children.
18. Jesus' life was painful.
19. This is Mr. Nitish Kumar, the Chief Minister's house.
20. These are not someone else's books.
21. This is a picture of the king's.
22. He bought some cakes at the baker's.
23. Ajay's and Binay's fathers are farmers.
24. Ram and Laxman's father was Dasharathajee.
25. He attends St. Michael High School but my cousin attends St. Karen's.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Q.2.** 1. (3) A boy's college की जगह a boys' college का प्रयोग होगा।

2. (4) The house's door की जगह the door of the house का प्रयोग होगा।

3. (4) The train arrival की जगह The train's arrival का प्रयोग होगा।

4. (4) today programme की जगह today's programme का प्रयोग होगा।

5. (4) A week journey की जगह A week's journey का प्रयोग होगा।

6. (4) his principal orders की जगह his principal's orders का प्रयोग होगा।

7. (4) for Justice's sake की जगह for Justice' sake का प्रयोग होगा।

8. (3) My की जगह Mine का प्रयोग होगा।

9. (4) Patna की जगह that of Patna का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि राँची के जलवायु की तुलना पटना के जलवायु से की गई है।

10. (4) each other hands की जगह each other's hands का प्रयोग होगा।

11. (4) Three year's degree course की जगह Three Years' degree course का प्रयोग होगा।

12. (3) One of the person's houses की जगह The house of one of the persons का प्रयोग होगा।

**Note :** (i) One of the persons' house.
व्यक्तियों में से एक का घर।
(ii) One of the person's houses.
*व्यक्ति के घरों में से एक।*

One of के बाद दो nouns का प्रयोग किया गया है अतः दो nouns के बीच possession को express करने के लिए of का प्रयोग होगा न कि Apostrophe 's' का।

13. (2) My brother-in-law going out की जगह My brother-in-law's going out का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Gerund के पहले प्रयुक्त noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—
Mr. Thakur does not like his younger brother's sleeping most of the time. (✓)
Mr. Thakur does not like his younger brother sleeping most of the time. (×)

14. (4) The earth gravitational force की जगह the earth's gravitational force का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि dignified natural object (उत्कृष्ट प्राकृतिक वस्तुएँ) के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। The earth, dignified natural object है इसलिए इसके साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग होगा।

15. (4) The poor's की जगह the poor का प्रयोग होगा। The + Adjective का प्रयोग plural noun के रूप में होता है। इसके साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। बल्कि जरूरत के मुताबिक 'of' का प्रयोग होता है।

16. (2) Brother की जगह brother's का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि A + noun + of + noun के structure को of के बाद वाले noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
A friend of my brother.
*मेरे भाई का दोस्त*
A Friend of my brother's.
*मेरे भाई के दोस्तों में से एक।*

17. (5) Given Sentence is correct.

ध्यान दें : The mind's eyes, the heart's content, the soul's delight...etc. का प्रयोग होता है।

18. (3) One another hands की जगह one another's hands का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि each other तथा one another के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है।

19. (3) Each other merits and demerits की जगह each other's merits and demerits का प्रयोग होगा।

20. (4) One word की जगह one's word का प्रयोग होगा। one का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में होने पर, one के possessive के रूप में one's का प्रयोग होता है न कि one का।

21. (4) Senior's desires की जगह seniors' desires का प्रयोग होगा। 's' ending plural noun के साथ apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—
boys' hostel — Girls' school
*लड़कों का छात्रावास* — *लड़कियों का विद्यालय*

22. (3) Somebody's else की जगह somebody else's का प्रयोग होगा। somebody, everybody, anybody, no body...etc. के बाद else का प्रयोग हो तो else के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग होता है।

23. (1) The table's wood की जगह the wood of the table का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि non living things के साथ of का प्रयोग होता है न कि Apostrophe 's' का।

24. (1) Gullivers Travel's की जगह Gulliver's Travels का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे—
Gulliver's Travels. (✓) Gullivers Travel's. (×)

25. (4) Sudhir's and Rajeev's joint account की जगह Sudhir and Rajeev's joint account का प्रयोग होगा। दो nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा इसमें Joint Possession (सम्मिलित अधिकार) का बोध हो तो अंतिम noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—
Keats and Yeats's poems. —Joint possession
*किटस और यीटस (दोनों) की कविताएँ (सम्मिलित अधिकार)*
Keats's and Yeats's poems. —Separate possession.
*किटस की कविता और यीटस की कविता (अलग-अलग अधिकार)*

**Q.3.**

1. The girl's lover
2. The baby's toy
3. The student's work
4. The boy's voice
5. The women's clothes
6. a girls' school.
7. These oxen's humps
8. The bee's sting
9. My brother-in-law's house
10. Veena's grandfather.

**Q.4.**

1. Step-son's
2. Santosh's
3. Yours
4. Nepal's
5. Aman's
6. earth's
7. barber's
8. The windows of the house
9. life of the poor
10. ten's
11. nobody else's
12. Each other's
13. Love's Labour's Lost
14. The legs of a table
15. The roof of the building
16. wit's
17. Jesus'
18. boys'
19. The window of the house
20. mine
21. St. Joseph's
22. Step-brother's
23. Ship's name
24. Today's
25. The bottom of the glass
26. girls' common room
27. workers' demands
28. Blackwell's shop
29. Keats
30. The water of this well
31. one another's
32. The life of everything
33. Kabir's and Mira's
34. E.Plomer's
35. kilograms'
36. Raman's
37. year's time
38. elders' society
39. day's work
40. millions of stars
41. Neither of my parents
42. sports shoes
43. Goldsmith's
44. Family's clothes
45. world's
46. A lot of
47. people's
48. manager's
49. Italian
50. company.

* * *

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 7

# Pronoun

**Pronoun** *(सर्वनाम)* : *Pronoun means for-a-noun.*
*A Pronoun is a word used instead of a Noun.*

[Noun के बदले प्रयुक्त होने वाले शब्द को Pronoun कहते हैं।] जैसे—
Ram is a handsome boy. He is my student. Sita is a beautiful girl. She lives with her husband. A dog is a pet animal. It barks at night.

आम तौर पर आप जानते हैं कि Noun के repetition को रोकने के लिए ही Pronoun का प्रयोग किया जाता है। किसी भी वाक्य में एक ही Noun को बार बार प्रयोग करने से वाक्य की सुन्दरता खत्म हो जाती है, अर्थात् वाक्य भद्दा लगता है। यही मुख्य कारण है, कि Noun के बदले Pronoun का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

ऊपर दिये examples में Noun के रूप में Ram, Sita, A dog का प्रयोग किया गया है। बाद के वाक्यों में आप देखते हैं कि—

Ram, Sita, A dog के बदले Pronoun के रूप में he, she, it का प्रयोग किया गया है।

ध्यान दें : Example no. (1) में Ram : third person, singular number, masculine gender तथा nominative case का Noun है।

Ram के Person, Number, Gender तथा Case के मुताबिक बाद के वाक्य में Pronoun–he का प्रयोग किया गया है।

Example no. (2) में Sita : third person, singular number, feminine gender तथा nominative case का Noun है। Sita के person, number, gender तथा case के मुताबिक बाद के वाक्य में Pronoun—'she' का प्रयोग किया गया है।

Example (3) में A dog : third person singular number, masculine gender तथा nominative case का Noun है। A dog के person, number, gender तथा case के मुताबिक बाद के वाक्य में Pronoun—it का प्रयोग किया गया है।

अर्थात् Noun के person, number, gender तथा case के मुताबिक ही Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

## Kinds of Pronouns

1. **Personal Pronouns** *(पुरुषवाचक सर्वनाम)* : I, me, we, us, you, he, him, she, her, it, they, them.
2. **Possessive Pronouns** *(अधिकार वाचक सर्वनाम)* : Mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs.
3. **Demonstrative Pronouns** *(संकेत वाचक सर्वनाम)* : This, That, These, Those, Such, The same.
4. **Distributive Pronouns** *(व्यष्टि वाचक सर्वनाम)* : Each, Either, Neither.
5. **Reciprocal Pronouns** *(पारस्परिक सम्बन्ध वाचक सर्वनाम)* : Each other, one another.
6. **Reflexive Pronouns** *(निजवाचक सर्वनाम)* : Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself.
7. **Emphatic or Emphasizing Pronouns** *(दबावसूचक सर्वनाम)* : Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself का प्रयोग जब subject (कर्ता) को emphasis (दबाव/जोर) करने के लिए किया जाता है, तब ये Emphatic or Emphasizing Pronouns कहलाते हैं। अर्थात् Emphatic Pronouns का प्रयोग सामान्यतः subject (कर्ता) के तुरंत बाद होता है। जैसे—
   He himself comes here.
8. **Indefinite Pronouns** *(अनिश्चयवाचक सर्वनाम)* : Everybody, Somebody, Nobody, Anybody, Everyone, Someone, Noone, Anyone, Everything, Something, Nothing, Anything, all, some, any, both, another, much, few, little.
9. **Relative pronouns** *(सम्बंधवाचक सर्वनाम)* : Who, whom, whose, which, that.
10. **Interrogative Pronouns** *(प्रश्नवाचक सर्वनाम)* : Who, whom, whose, which, what ये प्रश्न पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं।
11. **Exclamatory Pronouns** *(विस्मयादिबोधक सर्वनाम)* : What—
    [What का प्रयोग जब sense of surprise *(आश्चर्य के भाव)* को express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करने के लिए किया जाता है, तब वह Exclamatory Pronoun कहलाता है।]

### 1. Personal Pronouns

ये Pronouns जो तीनों persons जैसे First person, Second person तथा Third persons में प्रयुक्त होते हैं Personal pronouns कहलाते हैं।

| Persons (पुरुष) | Singular number (एकवचन) | Plural number (बहुवचन) |
|---|---|---|
| 1. First person (उत्तम पुरुष) | I | We |
| 2. Second person (मध्यम पुरुष) | You | You |
| 3. Third person (अन्य पुरुष) | He, She, It | They |

**1. First Person** : वे pronouns जिससे बोलने वाले (speaker) का बोध होता है उसे First person का Pronouns कहा जाता है।

**1. Table of First person :**

| Number | Nominative case | Objective case | Possessive case | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Poss.Adj. | Pos. Pron. |
| Singular | I | me | my | mine |
| Plural | we | us | our | ours |

जैसे— I am a teacher. / This is my book. / We are active. / Our country is great. / You love me. / That book is mine. / They help us. / These pens are ours.

ऊपर में दिए गए sentences में जो underlined किए गए शब्द हैं वे first person के Pronouns or Adjective हैं।

**2. Second Person** : वे Pronouns जिससे सुनने वाले (audience) व्यक्ति का बोध होता है उसे Second person का Pronouns कहा जाता है।

**2. Table of Second person :**

| Number | Nominative case | Objective case | Possessive case | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Poss.Adj. | Poss. Pron. |
| Singular | You | You | Your | Yours |
| Plural | You | You | Your | Yours |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



जैसे— You are laborious.
I love you.
This book is yours.
This is your book.

ऊपर में दिये गए sentences में जो underlined किए गए शब्द हैं वे Second person के Pronouns or Adjectives हैं।

**3. Third Person :** वे Pronouns जिससे वैसे व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं का बोध होता है जिसके बारे में कुछ कहा जा रहा है उसे Third person का pronouns कहा जाता है।

**3. Table of Third person :**

| Number | Nominative case | Objective case | Possessive case | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Poss.Adj. | Poss. Pron. |
| Singular | He (masculine) | him | his | his |
| | She (feminine) | her | her | hers |
| | It (Neuter) | it | its | × |
| Plural | they | them | their | theirs |

जैसे— He loves you.
She hates me.
You admire him.
Do you like it.
These frocks are hers.
Do you know them ?
They read in this school.
Those bells are theirs.
These are their notebooks.
This building is his.

ऊपर दिये गए sentences में जो underlined किए गए शब्द हैं वे third person के Pronouns or Adjectives हैं।

### Use of the Pronouns of Nominative Case

**Rule (1) :** किसी sentence के verb के subject के रूप में nominative case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He (N.C.) went to Jajuar last month. (√)
Him (O.C.)/His (P.C.) went to Jajuar last month. (×)
They come here by train. (√)
Them (O.C.)/Their (P.C.)/Theirs come here by train. (×)

**Rule (2) :** किसी sentence के subject के रूप में दो या दो से अधिक pronouns किसी conjunction (and, or ..... etc.) से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हों तो वे Nominative case में होते हैं। जैसे—

You (N.C.) and he (N.C.) were good friends. (√)
You (O.C.) and him (O.C.) were good friends. (×)
You (N.C.), he (N.C.) and I (N.C.) are clever. (√)
You (O.C.), him (O.C.) and me (O.C.) are clever. (×)

**Rule (3) :** यदि किसी sentence के verb के subject के रूप में एक noun तथा एक pronoun conjunction (and, or.....etc.) से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हुए हों तो वह Pronoun nominative case में होता है। जैसे—

Karishma and I go to college everyday. (√)
Karishma and me go to college everyday. (×)

**Rule (4) :** 'To be' का प्रयोग Infinitive के रूप में हो तथा इसका स्पष्ट subject नहीं हो तो इसके बाद nominative case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I would not want to be he. (N.C.)
I would not want to be him. (O.C.)

**Rule (5) :** Be जैसे—is, are, am, was, were, has been, have been etc. के पहले प्रयुक्त noun or pronoun nominative case में हो तो इसके बाद प्रयुक्त होने वाला pronoun nominative case में होता है। जैसे—

It is I. (√) It is me.
It is he. (√) It is him.

**Note :** (i) Be जैसे—is, are, am, was, were, ..... etc. के बाद who/which/that + clause का प्रयोग हो तो who, which, that ..... Relative pronouns के पहले nominative case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

It is I (N.C.) who have helped you.
It is me (O.C.) who have helped you.
It is he (N.C.) who has stolen my pen.
It is him (O.C.) who has stolen my pen.

(ii) 'To be' का प्रयोग Infinitive के रूप में हो तथा इसके पहले प्रयुक्त noun और pronoun objective case में हो तो इसके बाद प्रयुक्त होने वाला noun or pronoun भी objective case में होगा। जैसे—

I know (V) the man (O.C.) to be him (O.C.).
I know (V) the man (O.C.) to be he (N.C.).

**Rule (6) :** किसी word (शब्द) के Apposition के रूप में एक से एक से अधिक pronoun का प्रयोग हो तथा वह word (शब्द) sentence का subject हो तो pronoun nominative case में होता है। जैसे—

The two of us –he and I did not agree to her proposal. (√)
The two of us –him and me did not agree to her proposal. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

It is me who am guilty.
It is I who am guilty.
It was them who were to blame.
It was they who were to blame.
I found it to be he.
I found it to be him.
I guessed the woman to be she.
I guessed the woman to be her.
It is us who have helped you.
It is we who have helped you.

### Use of the Pronouns of objective case

**Rule (1) :** किसी sentence के verb के object के रूप में objective case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

My grandfather told me (O.C.) a story.
My grand father told I (N.C.)/my (P.C.)/a story.
I teach them (O.C.).
I teach their (P.C.)/they (N.C.)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (2) :** यदि किसी sentence के verb के object के रूप में दो pronouns किसी conjunction (and, or, ..... etc.) से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हों तो वे objective case में होते हैं। जैसे—

My father forbade you and me to play in the sun. (√)
O.C. O.C.

My father forbade you and I to play in the sun. (×)
N.C. N.C.

The principal allowed her and me to take rest in the common room. (√)
O.C. O.C.

The principal allowed she and I to take rest in the common room. (×)
N.C. N.C.

**Rule (3) :** यदि किसी sentence के verb के object के रूप में एक noun तथा एक pronoun किसी conjunction (and, or, nor ..... etc.) से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हुए हों तो वह noun or pronoun objective case में होता है। जैसे—

Her mother invited Raman and me to lunch. (√)
O.C. O.C.

Her mother invited Raman and I to lunch (×)
N.C. N.C.

He saved Veena and me. (√)
O.C. O.C.

He saved Veena and I. (×)
N.C. N.C.

**Use of the Pronouns of possessive case**
**(Use of Possessive pronouns)**

| Nom. case | Poss. Adjective | Poss. Pronoun | Nom. case | Poss. Adjective | Poss. Pronoun |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | my | mine | He | his | his |
| We | our | ours | She | her | hers |
| You | your | yours | It | its | × |

**Rule (1) :** Possessive pronouns का प्रयोग noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Ours college was closed yesterday. (×)
Our college was closed yesterday. (√)
Yours motorcycle is new. (×)
Your motorcycle is new. (√)

**Note :** (i) Possessive Adjectives का प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है। उपरोक्त वाक्यों में nouns—college तथा motorcycle के पहले possessive pronouns—ours तथा yours का प्रयोग हुआ है जो गलत है।

(ii) Possessive pronouns का प्रयोग noun के बिना होता है। जैसे—

Ours is a great country. (√) Our is a great country. (×)
Hers is a good house. (√) Her is a good house. (×)

ऊपर दिये गए वाक्यों में possessive pronouns–ours तथा hers का प्रयोग noun के बिना हुआ है, जो correct है।

यहाँ ours का अर्थ our country तथा Hers का अर्थ Her house है।

| Possessive pronouns | Meaning (Possessive Adjective + Noun) |
|---|---|
| Mine | My + noun |
| Ours | Our + noun |
| Yours | Your + noun |
| His | His + noun |
| Hers | Her + noun |
| Theirs | Their + noun |

(iv) Possessive pronouns का प्रयोग तब होता है जब पहले से किसी noun की चर्चा हो, अन्यथा नहीं होता है।

(v) His का प्रयोग Possessive Adjective or Possessive Pronoun के रूप में होता है।

(vi) Its का प्रयोग Possessive Adjective के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग Possessive Pronoun के रूप में नहीं होता है।

**Rule (2) :** Possessive Pronouns का प्रयोग किसी sentence के verb के subject के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Yours is a new car.
S. V.

अर्थ—Your car is a new car.

Hers is a beautiful saree.
S. V.

अर्थ—Her saree is a beautiful saree.

**Rule (3) :** Possessive pronouns का प्रयोग किसी sentence के verb के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He has lost my notebooks as well as yours. (√)
V. O.

He has lost my notebooks as well as your. (×)
O.

Please save his life and hers. (√)
V. O.

Please save his life and her. (×)
V. O.

**Rule (4) :** Possessive pronouns का प्रयोग किसी sentence में preposition के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I prefer your company to hers. (√)
Prep. → O.

I prefer your company to her. (×)
Prep. → O.

Your problem is different from mine. (√)
Prep. → O.

Your problem is different from my. (×)
Prep. → O.

**Rule (5) :** Possessive pronouns का प्रयोग Infinitive (to + $V^1$) के subject के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Thakur allowed his children to go to the Museum but Mrs. Jha did not allow hers to go. (√)
S. → Inf.

Mr. Thakur allowed his children to go to the Museum but Mrs. Jha did not allow her to go. (×)
S. ← Inf.

**A. Use of 'It'**

**Rule (1) :** It का प्रयोग time, weather (मौसम), temperature (तापक्रम) तथा distance (दूरी) or अन्य प्राकृतिक घटना को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए Introductory subject के रूप में होता है। इस case में it को Empty it कहा जाता है क्योंकि इसका कोई अर्थ नहीं होता है। जैसे—

It is raining. It is morning.
It is winter. It is 6 o'clock.
It is March. It is Monday.

**Rule (2) :** It का प्रयोग Infinitive, Gerund तथा clause के बदले में भी होता है। जैसे—

It is easy to solve.
Inf.

It is no use of crying.
Gerund

It is said that she is ill.
Clause

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (3)** : It का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में noun or pronoun को emphasis (जोर डालना) करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

It was he who helped you yesterday.
Pron.

It was Guriya whom I loved very much.
N

**Rule (4)** : It का प्रयोग Phrase or clause को introduce करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

To live with an honest man is admirable.
Phrase
= It is admirable to live with an honest man.

That it will rain today is probable.
Clause
= It is probable that it will rain today.

**Rule (5)** : It का प्रयोग किसी दिये गए statement or clause के लिए भी होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Singh has made a mistake, and he realises it.
statement or clause

I was cheated by many persons, and I know it.
statement or clause

**Rule (6)** : कुछ sentences में principal clause के बाद *It + noun/adjective* का प्रयोग होता है। क्योंकि It के बाद Is छिपा रहता है। ऐसे sentences में It को preparatory it कहा जाता है।

इस प्रकार के sentences का structure (बनावट)—

*Principal clause [subject + verb] + It + Noun/Adjective + Infinitive/clause.* जैसे—

We think that it is wrong to travel without ticket.

Type I—We think it is wrong to travel without ticket. (✓)

Type II—We think it wrong to travel without ticket. (✓)

Type III—We think wrong to travel without ticket. (✗)

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में से Type I में that का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ फिर sentence correct है। क्योंकि think के बाद that का प्रयोग होना भी है और नहीं भी होना है। Type II में 'is' का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है फिर भी sentence correct है। Type III में It तथा Is दोनों का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है। अतः यह sentence गलत है।

Note : (i) ऐसे वाक्य Is के बिना लिखे जा सकते हैं। लेकिन it के बिना नहीं लिखे जा सकते हैं। जैसे—

He considers an honour to work here. (✗)
He considers that it is an honour to work here. (✓)
He considers it is an honour to work here. (✓)

### II. Differences Between This and It

| Use of This | Use of It |
|---|---|
| 1. This का प्रयोग किसी व्यक्ति/वस्तु के नाम/पहचान/परिचय/समीपता आदि का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, न कि it का। जैसे— This is a book. This is 9934289151. This is All India Radio. | 1. It का प्रयोग समय, दूरी, मौसम आदि का बोध कराने के लिए होता है न कि This का। जैसे— It is 9 a.m. It is summer. It is night. |
| 2. This का प्रयोग नाम/परिचय जानने के लिए Interrogative sentence में होता है। जैसे— What is this. (✓) | 2. It का प्रयोग नाम/परिचय जानने के लिए Interrogative sentence में नहीं होता है। जैसे— What is it ? (✗) |

## Correct Use of Pronouns

### 1. Personal Pronouns

**Rule (1)** : 'Let' के बाद Objective Case के Pronoun का प्र होता है। चूँकि Let Transitive Verb है। जैसे—

Let him go.
Let he go.
Let you and me go.
Let you and I go.

**Rule (2)** : Preposition के बाद Objective Case के Pronoun प्रयोग होता है, न कि Nominative Case के Pronoun का। जैसे—

Mohan laughed at you and me.
Mohan laughed at you and I.
Divide these mangoes between her and me.
Divide these mangoes between she and I.

**Rule (3)** : सामान्यतः like तथा unlike का प्रयोग Verb के रूप में है। like तथा unlike का प्रयोग Preposition के रूप में भी होता है। इसका प्रयोग Preposition के रूप में होता है तब इसके बाद objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Nominative case के Pronoun का। जैसे—

You are like her.
You are like she.
My daughter looks like me.
My daughter looks like I.

**Rule (4)** : But का प्रयोग Preposition के रूप में होने पर इसका except (के सिवा/अलावे) होता है तथा इसके पहले all, none, every, any, no, everything, everybody, nothing, nobody, no where का प्रयोग रहता है। अतः इस case में Verb के पहले But + Nominative Objective Case का प्रयोग होता है। But + Nominative Case का प्रयोग बेकार होता है।

लेकिन Verb के बाद But + Objective Case का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Everyone but she knew the answer.
Prep. N.C. Verb

Everyone but her knew the answer.
Prep O.C. Verb

Everyone was there but me.
Verb Prep Objective Case

Everyone was there but I.
Verb Prep Nominative Case

**Rule (5)** : Gerund (M.V + ing) के बाद Objective Case Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Talking him was not pleasant.
Gerund O.C.

Talking he was not pleasant.
Gerund N.C.

Visiting us is delightful.
Gerund O.C.

Visiting we is delightful.
Gerund N.C.

Note : N.C. — Nominative Case; O.C —Objective Case

**Rule (6)** : Infinitve (To + V¹) के पहले और बाद Objective Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I requested her to come here.
O.C. Infinitive

I requested she to come here.

Mohan hopes to meet me soon.
Infinitive O.C.

Mohan hopes to meet I soon.
Infinitive

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


Rule (7) : 'To be' (to + be = to + M.V¹) infinitive होता है। इसके पहले और बाद objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

You guessed him to be me. (√)
O.C. Inf. Objective Case

You guessed he to be I. (×)
N.C. Inf. Nominative Case

Rule (8) : यदि दो nominatives के बीच तुलना हो तो As/than के बाद Nominative Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. Mukesh is as fast as I. (√)
Nominative Case

2. Mukesh is as fat as me. (×)
Objective Case

3. I run faster than he. (√)
Nominative Case

4. I run faster than him. (×)
Objective Case

ऊपर दिये गए examples (1) और (3) में दो subject के बीच तुलना किया गया है।

Note : लेकिन दो objects के बीच तुलना होने पर, As/than के बाद Objective Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. I love you as much as him. (√)

अर्थ— I love you as much as I love him.

[*मैं तुमसे उतना प्यार करता हूँ जितना मैं उससे (पुरुष) प्यार करता हूँ।*]

इसे उल्टा सोच कर देखें :

2. I love you as much as he. (√)

अर्थ— I love you as much as he loves you.

[*मैं तुमसे उतना प्यार करता हूँ जितना वह तुमसे प्यार करता है।*]

Example (1) में आप देखते हैं कि दो Object—you और him के बीच तुलना हुआ है। जबकि Example (2) में दो subject—I और he के बीच तुलना हुआ है। दोनों examples का अर्थ भिन्न है। अर्थ समझकर ही As/than के बाद nominative or objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग करें, अन्यथा भूल हो सकती है।

Rule (9) : It का प्रयोग जानवर, निर्जीव पदार्थ, देश, बच्चा [child/baby जिसका sex पता नहीं] के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Where is your cat ? It has drunk my milk. (cat—*जानवर*)
I have a chair. It is broken. (chair—*निर्जीव पदार्थ*)
India is a country. It is very big. (India—*देश*)

Rule (10) : तीनों Persons के Pronouns का प्रयोग एक साथ करना हो तो 231 के Pronouns के sequence (क्रम) को follow (अनुकरण) किया जाता है।

ध्यान दें : 2 का अर्थ second person—[You]
3 का अर्थ third person—[he, she, Mohan (Noun)]
1 का अर्थ first person—[I]

जैसे— You, he and I go there. (√)
2 3 1

You, I and he go there. (×)
2 1 3

He, you and I go there. (×)
3 2 1

I, you and he go there. (×)
1 2 3

Note : (i) लेकिन दो persons के Pronouns का प्रयोग एक साथ करना हो तो (2, 3), (2, 1) और (3, 1) के Pronouns के sequence (क्रम) को follow (अनुकरण) किया जाता है। जैसे—

You and he went to school. (√)
2 3

He and you went to school. (×)
3 2

You and I study here. (√)
2 1

I and you study here. (×)
1 2

He and I read the Ramayana. (√)
3 1

I and he read the Ramayana. (×)
1 3

(ii) तीनों Persons के Pronouns का प्रयोग एक साथ भूल, दोष, पाप, अपराध (bad sense में) का बोध कराने के लिए हो, तो 123 के Pronouns के sequence (क्रम) को follow (अनुकरण) किया जाता है। जैसे—

I, you and he are criminals. (√)
1 2 3

I, he and you are criminals. (×)
1 3 2

You, I and he are criminals. (×)
2 1 3

He, you and I are criminals. (×)
3 2 1

He, I and you are criminals. (×)
3 1 2

(iii) दो persons के Pronouns का प्रयोग एक साथ भूल, दोष, पाप अपराध (bad sense में) का बोध कराने के लिए हो, तो—(1, 2), (1, 3) और (2, 3) के Pronouns के sequence (क्रम) को follow (अनुकरण) किया जाता है। जैसे—

I and you are guilty. (√)
1 2

You and I are guilty. (×)
2 1

I and he are guilty. (√)
1 3

He and I are guilty. (×)
3 1

You and he are guilty. (√)
2 3

He and you are guilty. (×)
3 2

(iv) यदि किसी sentence/clause में एक subject हो तो इसके साथ दूसरे Subject के रूप में Personal pronouns He, she, it ..... etc. का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

My book it has been stolen. (×)
My book has been stolen. (√)
The woman she is tired needs rest. (√)
The woman is tired needs rest. (×)

(v) यदि किसी sentence/clause में एक object हो तो इसके साथ दूसरे object के रूप में personal pronouns him, her, it ..... etc. का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He has to give Binay him some money. (×)
He has to give Binay some money. (√)
She will not lend the book it to me. (×)
She will not lend the book to me. (√)

Rule (11) : यदि किसी noun का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तो noun के number, gender, person तथा case के मुताबिक pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Aditya is an intelligent boy.
N

He gets the first prize.
Pron.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Aditi is a good girl.
N

She is loved by her parents.
Pron.

These boys are idle.
N

They will fail in the examination.
Pron.

The knife is blunt.
N

It is of no use.
Pron.

These mangoes are sour.
N

They are not good to eat.
Pron.

**Rule (12) :** यदि collective noun का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तथा इससे 'समूह' का बोध हो तो इसके लिए singular pronouns & adjective—it, its, itself का प्रयोग जरुरत के मुताबिक होता है न कि they, them, their, themselves, he, him, his, himself तथा one, one's oneself का।

**Collective nouns :** जैसे— Jury, army, fleet, crew, committee ..... etc. जैसे—

The army had to suffer terrible privations in its march. (√)
The army had to suffer terrible privations in their march. (×)
The fleet will reach its destination in a week. (√)
The fleet will reach their destination in a week. (×)
The jury has given its verdict. (√)
The jury has given their verdict. (×)

**Rule (13) :** यदि collective noun का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तथा इससे separate individuals (अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों या सदस्यों) का बोध हो तो इसे plural माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए plural pronouns & adjective—they, them, their, theirs, themselves का प्रयोग होता है न कि he, him, his, himself, it, its, itself तथा one, one's, oneself का। जैसे—

The committee decided the matter without leaving their seats. (√)
The committee decided the matter without leaving its seats. (×)
The team are divided in their opinions about playing on Sunday. (√)
The team are divided in its opinions about playing on Sunday. (×)
The jury were divided in their opinions. (√)
The jury were divided in its opinions. (×)

**Rule (14) :** यदि दो या दो से अधिक singular nouns 'and' से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हों तो इसके लिए plural pronoun & Adjective—They, them, their, theirs, themselves का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Aditya and Aman work hard.
They are praised by their teacher.
Both Adit Priya and Nitika are tired.
They have gone home.

**Rule (15) :** यदि दो singular nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा first singular noun के पहले Articles or Possessive Adjectives का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो इससे एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए singular pronoun & adjective— he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग व्यक्ति के लिए तथा it, its, itself का प्रयोग वस्तु के लिए होता है, न कि they, them, their, theirs, themselves का। जैसे—

The secretary and treasurer is negligent of his duty. (√)
The secretary and treasurer is negligent of their/its duty. (×)
The Magistrate and collector has prepared his statement. (√)
The Magistrate and collector has prepared their/its statement. (×)
The poet and thinker has expressed his view clearly. (√)
The poet and thinker has expressed their/its view clearly. (×)

**Rule (16) :** यदि दो singular nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा प्रत्येक singular noun के पहले Articles or possessive adjectives का प्रयोग हो तो इससे two different persons or things (दो विभिन्न व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं) का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए Plural pronouns & Adjective—They, them, their, theirs, themselves का प्रयोग जरुरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

The Secretary and the treasurer did not do their duties. (√)
The Secretary and the treasurer did not do his duty. (×)
The Principal and the Secretary have tendered their resignation. (√)
The Principal and the Secretary had tendered his resignation. (×)
The scientist and the thinker have expressed themselves against the use of atom bombs. (√)
The scientist and the thinker have expressed himself against the use of atom bombs. (×)

**Rule (17) :** यदि दो या दो से अधिक singular nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा first singular noun के पहले each or every का प्रयोग हुआ हो या प्रत्येक singular noun के पहले each or every का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो इसे singular माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए singular pronoun & ajective का प्रयोग होता है न कि plural pronouns का। जैसे—

**Singular Pronouns**

1. For persons.
   (a) Masculine — he, him, his, himself
   (b) Feminine — she, her, hers, herself
2. For things — it, its, itself

Every soldier and every sailor was in his place. (√)
Every soldier and every sailor was in its/their place. (×)
Every policeman and every homeguard did his duty. (√)
Every policeman and every homeguard did its/their duty. (×)

Each man and woman should try to help his or her fellow beings. (√)
Each man and woman should try to help their fellow beings. (×)

**Rule (18) :** यदि दो या दो से अधिक singular nouns or, either ... or तथा neither ..... nor से जुड़े हों तो इसके लिए singular pronoun & adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि plural pronouns का। जैसे—

Rudransh or Aditya has lost his book. (√)
Rudransh or Aditya has lost their book. (×)
Either Aditi or Kavita forgot to take her pen. (√)
Either Aditi or Kavita forgot to take their pen. (×)
Neither Ramanand nor Sujeet has done his work. (√)
Neither Ramanand nor Sujeet has done their work. (×)

**Rule (19) :** यदि एक singular तथा एक plural noun or तथा nor से जुड़े हों तथा or/nor के बाद plural noun का प्रयोग हो तो इसके लिए plural pronouns & adjective का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Either the manager or his assistants failed in their duty. (√)
Either the manager or his assistants failed in his duty. (×)
Neither Dhiraj nor his friends admitted their fault. (√)
Neither Dhiraj nor his friends admitted his fault. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (20) :** यदि दो nouns 'as well as' से जुड़े हो तो first noun के number, gender, person तथा case के मुताबिक Pronoun & adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि second noun के मुताबिक। जैसे—

Binay as well as his friends is doing his work. (✓)
Binay as well as his friends is doing their work. (×)
The students as well as their teachers are doing their work. (✓)
The students as well as their teachers are doing his work. (×)

**Rule (21) :** यदि दो nouns 'with' से जुड़े हो तो with के पहले प्रयुक्त noun के number, gender, person तथा case के मुताबिक Pronoun & adjective का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The girl with her parents has gone to see a movie. (✓)
The girl with their/his parents has gone to see a movie. (×)
The children with their parents have gone to picnic. (✓)
The children with his/her/its parents have gone to picnic. (×)

**Rule (22) :** यदि दो या दो से अधिक singular nouns 'and' से जुड़े हो तथा इसमें एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध हो तो इसके लिए singular pronoun & adjective का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Sudhir Kumar, my senior and proprietor of Lucent Publication, is known for his honesty and good behaviour. (✓)
Mr. Sudhir Kumar, my senior and proprietor of Lucent Publication, is known for their honesty and good behaviour. (×)
Delhi, the beautiful city and the capital of India, is famous for its historical monuments. (✓)
Delhi, the beautiful city and the capital of India, is famous for their historical monuments. (×)

**Rule (23) :** Many a/an + Singular noun का प्रयोग sentence के subject के बाद में हो तो इसके लिए singular pronoun & adjective का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Many a soldier has met his death in the battle field. (✓)
Many a soldier has met their death in the battle field. (×)

**Rule (24) :** You and I का प्रयोग sentence के subject के बाद में हो तो इसके लिए plural pronouns & adjective—we, us, our, ours, ourselves का प्रयोग वचन के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

You and I must obey our parents. (✓)
You and I must obey your/his/their parents. (×)

**Rule (25) :** You and he का प्रयोग sentence के subject के बाद में हो तो इसके लिए plural pronouns & adjective—you, your, yours, yourselves/ourselves का प्रयोग वचन के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

You and he have done your home work. (✓)
You and he have done their/our homework. (×)

**Rule (26) :** He and I का प्रयोग sentence के subject के बाद में हो तो इसके लिए plural pronouns & adjective—we, us, our, ours, ourselves का प्रयोग वचन के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

He and I do our lessons ourselves. (✓)
He and I do their lessons themselves. (×)

**Rule (27) :** You, he and she का प्रयोग sentence के subject के बाद में हो तो इसके लिए plural pronouns & adjective—you, your, yours, yourselves का प्रयोग वचन के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

You, he and she go to your school on time. (✓)
You, he and she go to her/his school on time. (×)

**Rule (28) :** You, he and I का प्रयोग sentence के subject के बाद में हो तो इसके लिए plural pronouns & adjective—we, us, our, ours, ourselves का प्रयोग वचन के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

You, he and I have finished our work. (✓)
You, he and I have finished their work. (×)

**Rule (29) :** Except के बाद objective case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है न कि nominative case के pronoun का। जैसे—

Everyone attended the party except him. (✓)
Everyone attended the party except he. (×)

**Rule (30) :** Such as के बाद Nominative case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है न कि objective case के pronoun का। जैसे—

I have no liking for such a man as he. (✓)
I have no liking for such a man as him. (×)

**Rule (31) :** We, you तथा they plural pronouns का एक साथ प्रयोग करना हो तो पहले we, इसके बाद you तथा अंत में they का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

We, you and they must work together. (✓)

## Practice Set-1

**Based on Personal Pronouns**

**Q. 1.** Change some of the nouns into pronouns in the following:

1. The thief ran away, but the police caught the thief.
2. When the lion saw the man, the lion sprang upon the man.
3. The woman sang sweetly. The people listened to the woman, the people liked the woman's song. The people gave the woman money.
4. She met a beggar yesterday. The beggar had a wooden leg. The beggar was asking for alms. When she gave the beggar a rupee, the beggar thanked her for the rupee.
5. Vikas and Rajesh always go together. Vikas and Rajesh are great friends. All the teachers like Vikas and Rajesh very much for their. Vikas and Rajesh are very obedient.
6. The girls went into the garden, where the girls saw a snake.
7. Ramu had taken his watch out of his pocket, and was looking at the watch uneasily, shaking the watch every now and then, and holding the watch to his ear.

**Q. 2.** Fill in the blanks with suitable personal pronouns.

1. Where are _____ going, Monika?
2. Manali is a good girl. _____ is Vikas.
3. Some boys are not taking _____ studies.
4. He has other and better _____ to see _____ that he did not see.
5. These men are idle _____ refused to work. I don't like _____.
6. This pen is broken _____ is not mine.
7. The boy had a pencil box _____ bought _____ mean.
8. But _____ are the best spinners in the village.
9. As soon as Ashok opened the _____ found that _____ was a hall. There were chairs all around the hall, but _____ were all broken.
10. He gave _____ a rupee and returned _____ the.
11. When the girls went into the garden, _____ saw a snake creeping towards _____. _____ ran away as fast as _____.
12. You are as good a footballer as _____.
13. Has brother and _____ went to the market.
14. She herself and brother and _____ to the party.
15. Where are _____ now.
16. He is one of _____ friends.
17. It is _____ who are responsible.
18. He and _____ are also without friends.
19. It is _____ a wonderful bird, bird, bird.
20. They are not having phones _____.
21. We to take _____.
22. There is not much difference between _____ and _____.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



23. Let you and ..... try to solve this problem.
24. I know it was ..... .
25. Who broke the window ? It wasn't ..... .
26. You and ..... must mend your ways.
27. It was ..... who first protested.
28. ..... is certain that you are wrong.
29. He deserved his punishment; and he knew ..... .
30. Here is your book; take ..... away.
31. The horse fell and broke ..... leg.
32. That baby has torn ..... clothes.
33. When I saw the child, ..... was crying.
34. Aditi helps her mother in household work. .....also does ..... lesson.
35. Both Veena and Nilu are tired; ..... have gone home.
36. Every teacher and every student was in ..... place.
37. Neither Rahul nor Vicky has done ..... .
38. My uncle asked my brother and ..... to dinner.
39. He loves you more than ..... .
40. No body but ..... was present.

Q. 3. *Correct the sentences :*

1. Shanker and Shambhu are very irregular in his habits.
2. My friend is as old as me.
3. It was him who began the quarrel.
4. The crew mutinied and murdered his officers.
5. The poet and critic has a soft corner in their heart for Shakespeare.
6. Every man and every woman has their own tastes.
7. You and I have done your duty.
8. I and you must work together.
9. The presents are for you and I.
10. Nobody will help you but I.
11. Birds build its nests in trees.
12. Manoj brought his book and laid them on the table.
13. If the thief is caught. They will be punished.
14. I love you as much as she.
15. It was me who did it.
16. Between you and I, he is a thief.
17. He told Vikas and I to go there.
18. I, you and he must help that poor man.
19. You, he and I are to blame.
20. His elder brother is more intelligent than him.
21. The boys with his parents have gone to the museum.
22. Each boy and each girl went to their house.
23. The woman with their husband has gone to visit the Tajmahal.
24. Mr. Thakur as well as his brothers has done their work.
25. The party chief and the Prime Minister expressed his views on the topic.
26. Many a girl has met their lover in the park.
27. I would not do that if I were him.
28. Let it be distributed between you and I.
29. The dog has it's bone.
30. Its a long way home.
31. Either Anjani or Bantee has left behind their cap.
32. The people demanded his right to live.
33. Either the principal or the students should be responsible for the management of his school.
34. She wouldn't marry a man such as him.
35. Go with Chintoo and she to visit they.
36. What is the name of he who won the first prize ?
37. Let we all go for a walk except she, since she is so tired.
38. There is an agreement between Mr. Thakur and I.
39. Father took my sister and I to the pictures.
40. Give it to they who understand such things.
41. We scored as many goals as them.
42. Rajeev gave Sanjay and I an ice-cream, and we went to s pictures with he and his sister.
43. If he hits she, he will have to hit I.
44. Her and me gained equal marks.
45. You know that as well as me.
46. It is him that does not like sugar in his tea, not me.
47. Binod and him took part in the school concert.
48. Let you and I work together, we can do better than them.
49. I, you and she can never be friends.
50. Do you think they are stronger than us.

## Answers With Explanation

Q. 1. 1. The thief ran away, but the police caught him.
2. When the lion saw the man, it sprang upon him.
3. The woman sang sweetly. The people listened to her. They liked her song. They gave her money.
4. She met a beggar yesterday he had a wooden leg. He was asking for alms. When she gave him a rupee, he thanked her for the rupee.
5. Vikas and Rajesh always go together. They are great friends. All the teachers like them very much because they are very obedient.
6. The girls went into the garden, where they saw a snake.
7. Ramu had taken his watch out of his pocket, and was looking at it uneasily, shaking it every now and then, and holding it to his ear.

Q. 2.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. You | 2. her | 3. they | 4. me, me | |
| 5. they, them | 6. it | 7. he, it, him | | |
| 8. them, they | 9. he, he, they | 10. me, him, it | | |
| 11. they, them, they, they | | 12. he or I | 13. I | |
| 14. me | 15. me | 16. they | 17. he | |
| 18. I | 19. he | 20. we | 21. I | |
| 22. me | 23. me | 24. she or he | 25. I | |
| 26. he | 27. I | 28. It | 29. it | |
| 30. it | 31. its | 32. its | 33. it | |
| 34. she, her | 35. they | 36. his | 37. it | |
| 38. me | 39. I | 40. he | | |

Q. 3. 1. Shanker and Shambhu are very irregular in their habits.
2. My friend is as old as I.
3. It was he who began the quarrel.
4. The crew mutinied and murdered its officers.
5. The poet and critic has a soft corner in his heart for Shakespeare.
6. Every man and every woman has his or her own tastes.
7. You and I have done our duty.
8. You and I must work together.
9. The presents are for you and me.
10. Nobody will help you but me.
11. Birds build their nests in trees.
12. Manoj brought his book and laid it on the table.
13. If the thief is caught, he will be punished.
14. I love you as much as her.
15. It was I who did it.
16. Between you and me, he is a thief.
17. He told Vikas and me to go there.
18. You, he and I must help that poor man.
19. I, you and he are to blame.
20. His elder brother is more intelligent than he.
21. The boys with their parents have gone to the museum.
22. Each boy and each girl went to his/her house.
23. The woman with her husband has gone to visit the Tajmahal.
24. Mr. Thakur as well as his brothers has done his work.
25. The party chief and the Prime Minister expressed their views on the topic.
26. Many a girl has met her lover in the park.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


27. I would not do that if I were he.
28. Let it be distributed between you and me.
29. The dog has its bone.
30. It's a long way home.
31. Either Anjani or Bantee has left behind his cap.
32. The people demanded their right to live.
33. Either the principal or the students should be responsible for the management of their school.
34. She wouldn't marry a man such as he.
35. Go with Chintoo and her to visit them.
36. What is the name of him who won the first prize ?
37. Let we all go for a walk except her, since she is so tired.
38. There is an agreement between Mr. Thakur and me.
39. Father took my sister and me to the pictures.
40. Give it to them who understand such things.
41. We scored as many goals as they.
42. Rajeev gave Sanjay and me an ice-cream, and we went to the pictures with him and his sister.
43. If he hits her, he will have to hit me.
44. She and I gained equal marks.
45. You know that as well as I.
46. It is he that does not like sugar in his tea, not I.
47. Binod and he took part in the school concert.
48. Let you and me work together, we can do better than they.
49. You, she and I can never be friends.
50. Do you think they are stronger than we ?

## 2. Distributive Pronouns

वे Pronouns जो दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से एक को अलग सूचित करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं Distributive pronouns कहलाते हैं। जैसे— Each, Either, Neither. इन्हें हमेशा singular माना जाता है तथा इनके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है।

**Note** : (i) जब Each, Either तथा neither का प्रयोग singular noun के पहले होता है तो इसे Distributive Adjectives कहा जाता है।

Distributive pronouns और Distributive Adjectives में फर्क :

| Distributive Pronouns | Distributive Adjectives |
|---|---|
| Each of the boys won a prize. | Each boy won a prize. |
| Neither of the charges is just. | Neither statement is true. |
| Either of you can stay. | Either road leads to the station. |

(ii) Each of / either of / neither of के बाद प्रयुक्त plural noun से पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

(iii) Each, either, neither, any, anyone, none के लिए singular pronoun (क) पुरुष के लिए—he, him, his, himself, (ख) स्त्री के लिए—she, her, hers, herself तथा (ग) वस्तु के लिए—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है न कि plural pronouns they, them, their, theirs, themselves का। जैसे—

Each of the boys has his own book. (√)
Each of the boys has their own book. (×)
None should hate his neighbour. (√)
None should hate their neighbour. (×)

**Rule (1)** : Each (प्रत्येक) का प्रयोग दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Each of the two students was honest. (√)
*(दो छात्रों में से प्रत्येक ईमानदार था।)*
Each of the three students was honest. (√)
*(तीनों छात्रों में से प्रत्येक ईमानदार था)*

**Rule (2)** : Either का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में होता है, न कि दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए। जैसे—

Either of these two pens is red. (√)
*(इन दो कलमों में से कोई एक लाल है।)*
Either of these three pens is red. (×)

**Note** : लेकिन 'दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में Any or anyone का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Either का। जैसे—

He has bought any / anyone of the four books. (√)
He has bought either of the four books. (×)
Any / anyone of these three girls can do this sum. (√)
Either of these three girls can do this sum. (×)

**Rule (3)** : Neither का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है, न कि दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए। जैसे—

Neither of these two girls is active. (√)
None of these two girls is active: (×)

**Note** : (i) लेकिन 'दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में None का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) Either और None का प्रयोग एक दूसरे के बदले नहीं होता है।

जैसे— None of the five students is laborious. (√)
Neither of the five students is laborious. (×)

**Rule (4)** : Each of / Either of / Neither of के बाद plural noun or plural pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Each of the boys has a note book. (√)
Each of the boy has a note book. (×)
Either of us can do it. (√)
Either of me can do it. (×)
Neither of the girls is guilty. (√)
Neither of the girl is guilty. (×)

**Rule (5)** : यदि each का प्रयोग subject के लिए हो तो each का प्रयोग subject के बाद अर्थात् Auxiliary verbs के पहले होता है। जैसे—

We each have advised him to give up smoking. (√)
We have each advised him to give up smoking. (×)

**Rule (6)** : यदि Main verb का प्रयोग sentence में हो तो each का प्रयोग Main verb के पहले होता है। जैसे—

We each tried our best to win the match. (√)
We tried each our best to win the match. (×)

**Rule (7)** : यदि किसी sentence में object के बाद phrase का प्रयोग हो तो each का प्रयोग object के बाद होता है। जैसे—

I gave them each some money. (√)
I gave each them some money. (×)
She sent us each a gift. (√)
She sent each us a gift. (×)

**Rule (8)** : यदि किसी sentence में object के बाद phrase का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो each का प्रयोग object के बाद नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He likes them each. (×)
He likes each of them. (√)
The publisher always encourages us each. (×)
The publisher always encourages each of us. (√)

**Rule (9)** : Both का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Both of the two students are careless. (√)
All of the two students are careless. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (10) :** All का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है। जैसे—

All the five girls are laborious. (✓)
Both of the five girls are laborious. (×)

**Rule (11) :** Everyone का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है न कि दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए। जैसे—

Everyone of the five students came to attend the class. (✓)
Everyone of the two students came to attend the class. (×)
Each of the two students came to attend the class. (✓)

**Note :** दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए each का प्रयोग होता है न कि everyone का।

**Rule (12) :** Neither तथा None के बाद 'of' preposition का प्रयोग हो तथा इसके बाद plural noun का प्रयोग हो तथा plural noun के पहले numeral Adjective का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो neither or none के प्रयोग से ही व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की संख्या का पता चल जाता है। जैसे—

Neither of the pens writes well.
*दो कलमों में से कोई भी अच्छा से नहीं चलता है।*

None of the pens writes well.
*दो से अधिक कलमों में से कोई भी अच्छा से नहीं चलता है।*

**Rule (13) :** यदि neither तथा none के बाद plural noun का प्रयोग हो तथा plural noun के पहले numeral adjective का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो हमलोगों को स्वयं निर्णय करना चाहिए कि Given sentence में neither का प्रयोग होगा या none का। जैसे—

1. Neither of our hands is damaged. (✓)
2. None of our hands is damaged. (×)
3. None of the girls of this school is guilty. (✓)
4. Neither of the girls of this school is guilty. (×)

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में से वाक्य—(1) में Neither का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि हमलोगों के पास दो हाथ होते हैं। वाक्य—(3) में none का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि किसी भी school में दो से अधिक लड़कियों के होने की संभावना रहती है।

## Practice Set–2

**Based on Distributive Pronouns :**

**Q.1.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable distributive pronouns :*

1. .....of the two cows gives ten litres of milk. *(each, everyone)*
2. ..... of these two boys may stand first. *(either, anyone)*
3. ..... of the two servants told the truth. *(neither, none)*
4. ..... of the three pictures was good. *(none, neither)*
5. I did not buy ..... of the three pens. *(anyone, either)*
6. He was healthier than ..... of his two brothers. *(either, anyone)*
7. ..... of the two pencils will do. *(any, either)*
8. ..... of the two boys was present. *(neither, none)*
9. ..... of the three sisters married. *(neither, none)*
10. ..... of the five teams may win. *(any, either)*

**Q. 2.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. Everyone of the two boys gets a prize.
2. Each of the five men received a reward.
3. Any of the two roads leads to the railway station.
4. None of the two guests turned up.
5. Answer anyone of the two questions.
6. Neither of the four books will do.
7. None of my two pens writes well.
8. Anyone of the two men would be able to do this work.
9. The boys narrated stories each.
10. The students contributed fifty rupees each.

**Q. 3.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. None of (1)/the two sisters (2)/has paid (3)/her tuition fees (4)/No error (5)
2. Neither of (1)/the five women (2)/has a choice (3)/of her own. (4)/No error (5)
3. Anyone of (1)/the two wives (2)/is dominated (3)/by her husband. (4)/No error (5)
4. He (1)/could not meet (2)/either of his three brothers (3)/at home. (4)/No error (5)
5. None of (1)/the two ministers (2)/was available (3)/for comments. (4)/No error (5)
6. Each of (1)/the members had (2)/their own opinion (3)/about it. (4)/No error (5)
7. She was (1)/more beautiful (2)/than (3)/either of her three sisters. (4)/No error (5)
8. Each of (1)/the six boys in the class (2)/has finished (3)/their task. (4)/No error (5)
9. Neither Aditya (1)/nor Rudransh (2)/has done (3)/their work. (4)/No error (5)
10. Either the engineer (1)/or his mechanics (2)/failed (3)/in his duty. (4) No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.** 1. each 2. either 3. neither 4. none 5. anyone 6. either 7. either 8. neither 9. none 10. any

**Q. 2.**

1. Each of the two boys gets a prize.
2. Everyone of the five men received a reward.
3. Either of the two roads leads to the railway station.
4. Neither of the two guests turned up.
5. Answer either of the two questions.
6. None of the four books will do.
7. Neither of my two pens writes will.
8. Either of the two men would be able to do this work.
9. Each of the boys narrated stories.
10. Each of the students contributed fifty rupees.
    or, The students each contributed fifty rupees.

**Q. 3.**

1. (1) None की जगह neither का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (1) Neither की जगह none का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (1) Anyone की जगह either का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) Either की जगह anyone का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (1) None की जगह neither का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (3) Their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (4) Either की जगह anyone का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (4) Their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (4) their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (4) his की जगह their का प्रयोग होगा।

## 3. Reciprocal Pronoun

Each other तथा one another को Reciprocal pronouns कहा जाता है। क्योंकि ये Reciprocal relationship (पारस्परिक संबंध) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करते हैं।

**Rule (1) :** Each other का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है, जबकि one another का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है। ये पारस्परिक संबंध बताने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे—

The two girls love each other.
We all love one another.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



ध्यान दें : Modern English में each other तथा one another के प्रयोग में कोई अंतर नहीं रह गया है। मेरी समझ से आप each other तथा one another का प्रयोग क्रमशः दो या दो से अधिक के लिए ही करें तो ज्यादा बेहतर है।

**Note :** (i) Each other तथा one another का प्रयोग subject के रूप में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. Each other are ready to go there. (×)
   subject
2. They are ready to go there. (√)
3. One another were ready to come here. (×)
   subject
4. They were ready to come here. (√)

आपने देखा कि Example no. (1) और (3) में each other तथा one another का प्रयोग subject के रूप में किया गया है, जो गलत है। Each other तथा one other के बदले ऐसे Pronouns का प्रयोग करना चाहिए जो sentence के अर्थ को सुस्पष्ट कर सके। इसलिए They का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

(ii) Each other तथा one another का प्रयोग verb या preposition के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. You and he help each other.
   V → O
2. All the members of the family quarrelled with one another.
   Prep. → O

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में से वाक्य संख्या—(1) में help–verb के object के रूप में each other का प्रयोग हुआ है तथा वाक्य संख्या—(2) में with–preposition के object के रूप में one another का प्रयोग हुआ है।

## Practice Set–3

**Based on Reciprocal Pronouns :**

Q. 1. *Fill in the blanks with suitable Reciprocal Pronouns :*

1. The two sisters loved ..... very dearly.
2. Little children love ..... .
3. The two brothers quarrelled with ..... .
4. They all gave evidence against ..... .
5. They cheated ..... .
6. The two men hate ..... .
7. Brijmohan and Suryamohan love ..... .
8. Renu, Bibha, Punam and Priti help ..... .
9. We should all love ..... .
10. The couple spoke to ..... earnestly.

Q. 2. *Correct the following sentences :*

1. The two men struck one another.
2. They all loved each other.
3. Raman and Meena like one another.
4. The six men shouted at each other.
5. He and I looked at one another.
6. The six students were conversing excitedly by with each other.
7. All of them hate each other.
8. Both of us mocked at one another.
9. They all agreed with each other.
10. Each other were ready to go to school.
11. One other have decided to finish this work.

## Answers With Explanation

Q. 1. 1. each other 2. one another
3. each other 4. one another
5. one another 6. each other
7. each other 8. one another
9. one another 10. each other

Q. 2.

1. The two men struck each other.
2. They all loved one another.
3. Raman and Meena like each other.
4. The six men shouted at one another.
5. He and I looked at each other.
6. The six students were conversing excitedly with one another.
7. All of them hate one another.
8. Both of us mocked at each other.
9. They all agreed with one another.
10. They were ready to go to school.
11. They have decided to finish this work.

## 4. Reflexive Pronouns

वे pronouns जिनके last (अंत) में self or selves जुड़े रहते हैं Reflexive pronouns कहलाते हैं। इसका प्रयोग 'अपने आपको' के अर्थ में होता है। इसे self pronouns भी कहा जाता है। जैसे—Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, itself, themselves, इसे Emphasizing pronouns भी कहा जाता है।

**Reflexive तथा Emphasizing Pronouns में अंतर :**

| Reflexive Pronouns | Emphasizing Pronouns |
|---|---|
| 1. Reflexive Pronouns 'अपने आपको' के अर्थ में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। | 1. जबकि Emphasizing Pronouns 'स्वयं, खुद, आप ही' के अर्थ में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। |
| 2. यदि किसी sentence में verb का subject तथा object एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु हो तो verb के object के रूप में Reflexive pronouns का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—<br>Ram ruined himself. (√)<br>Ram ruined Ram. (×) | 2. Emphasizing pronouns का प्रयोग verb के object के रूप में नहीं होता है। बल्कि preposition के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—<br>He lives in this house by himself. |
| 3. Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग subject के रूप में नहीं होता है। जैसे—<br>Myself saw it. (×)<br>I saw it. (√) | 3. Emphasizing pronouns का प्रयोग भी subject के रूप में नहीं होता है। जैसे—<br>Myself saw it. (×)<br>I myself saw it. (√) |
| इन वाक्यों को देखें—<br>She wasted herself.<br>They quarrelled among themselves.<br>You burnt yourself. | इन वाक्यों को देखें—<br>She herself wasted her property.<br>They themselves asked me to do it.<br>I myself saw her singing at her work. |

**Note :** (i) Possessive Adjective + own का प्रयोग भी subject को emphasis करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I live on my own income.
Virtue has its own reward.
She lifted her own box.
They love their own work.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (1) : Table of Reflexive Pronouns**

| Nominatives | Correct Reflexives (√) खुद/अपने आप/स्वयं | | Incorrect Reflexives (×) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | Myself | (√) | Mineself | (×) |
| We | Ourselves | (√) | Ourselfes | (×) |
| | | | Ourself | (×) |
| | | | Oursself | (×) |
| You | Yourself (Singular) | (√) | Yoursself | (×) |
| | Yourselves (Plural) | (√) | Yoursselves | (×) |
| He | Himself | (√) | Himsself | (×) |
| | | | Himselves | (×) |
| | | | Hisself | (×) |
| | | | Hisselves | (×) |
| She | Herself | (√) | Hersself | (×) |
| | | | Herselves | (×) |
| | | | Hersselves | (×) |
| It | Itself | (√) | Itsself | (×) |
| | | | Itselves | (×) |
| | | | Its selves | (×) |
| They | Themselves | (√) | Themself | (×) |
| | | | Theirself | (×) |
| | | | Theirselves | (×) |
| | | | Theirsself | (×) |
| | | | Theirsselves | (×) |

ऊपर दिये गए Table में crossed (×) Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए। ये crossed (×) Reflexives गलत words हैं।

याद रखें : (1) Masculine words—Ram, Krishna Mukesh, Sudhir, The boy, father, brother, ...etc. के लिए himself का प्रयोग होता है।

(2) Feminine words—Sita, Radha, Nilu, Alka, The girl, mother, sister, ... etc. के लिए herself का प्रयोग होता है।

(3) Common Gender के Nouns—The doctor, The teacher, The engineer, ... etc के लिए Singular sense में himself तथा Plural sense में themselves का प्रयोग किया जाता है, लेकिन female को इंगित (denote) करने के लिए herself का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(4) One के लिए Reflexive Pronoun—oneself का प्रयोग होता है।

(5) Everyone, Someone, Anyone, No one, Everybody, Somebody, Anybody, Nobody Common Gender के Pronouns (Indefinite) हैं। इसके लिए Reflexive Pronoun—himself का प्रयोग किया जाता है। लेकिन female को इंगित करने के लिए herself का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

**Note :** Child, Infant, baby के male or female sex का पता नहीं हो, तो इसके लिए Reflexive Pronoun—itself, neuter pronoun—it तथा Possessive Adjective—its का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The baby cried itself. (√)
It was beautiful. (√)
The baby has broken its leg. (√)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. I hurt myself. (√)
2. I hurt mineself. (×)
3. We hurt ourselves. (√)
4. We hurt ourself. (×)
5. You hurt yourself. (Singular) (√)
6. You hurt yoursself. (×)
7. You hurt yourselves (Plural) (√)
8. You hurt yoursselves. (×)
9. He hurts himself. (√)
10. He hurts himselves. (×)
11. She hurts herself. (√)
12. She hurts herselves. (×)
13. The dog hurts itself. (√)
14. The dog hurts itselves. (×)
15. The dog hurts himself. (×)
16. They hurt themselves. (√)
17. They hurt themself. (×)
18. They hurt theirself. (×)
19. They hurt theirselves. (×)
20. One hurts oneself. (√)
21. One hurts oneselves. (×)
22. Everyone hurts himself. (√)
23. Everyone hurts hisself. (×)

ऊपर दिये examples में Verb के Object के रूप में Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग हुआ है। Verb के Object के रूप में Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग तब होता है, जब Verb का subject और object एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु हो।

**Rule (2) :** यदि किसी sentence के Verb का subject तथा object भिन्न (two different) व्यक्ति हो, तो Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, बल्कि Objective Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He knows me (√)
Two different persons
He knows myself. (×)
I love you (√)
Two different persons
I love yourself. (×)

**Rule (3) :** Enjoy, pride, absent, present, introduce, busy, avail, address, plume, hurt, cheat, prostrate, resign, apply, acquit, assert-Verbs के बाद Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। जैसे—

He enjoyed himself in the party. (√)
He enjoyed in the party. (×)
Mr. Pathak prides himself on the result of his son. (√)
Mr. Pathak prides on the result of his son. (×)

ध्यान दें :

The students must avail themselves of their opportunity. (√)
The students must avail of their opportunity. (×)

**Note :** (i) लेकिन open, sell, wash, dress, undress, shave, concentrate, feel, hurry—Verbs के बाद Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The door opened itself. (×)
The door opened. (√)
He shaves himself on Sunday. (×)
He shaves on Sunday. (√)

(ii) कभी-कभी subject को emphasis करने के लिए dress, shave ....., etc. के बाद Reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Aditi is old enough to dress herself now.
The barber shaves all the people in the town who do not shave themselves.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (4) :** Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Myself is Mr. A. K. Thakur.
I am Mr. A. K. Thakur. (×)
Binay and yourself are friends. (✓)
Binay and you are friends. (×)
(✓)

**Rule (5) :** Reflexive Pronouns के साथ Apostrophe 's' [ 's] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, लेकिन Possessive Adjective + own का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He sold himself's car.
He sold his own car. (×)
I have painted myself's room. (✓)
I have painted my own room. (×)
(✓)

**Rule (6) :** यदि किसी sentence में Verb + Preposition का प्रयोग हो, तथा Verb का subject और preposition का object same person / thing (एक ही व्यक्ति/वस्तु) हो, तो preposition के बाद Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है, न कि objective case के Pronoun का। जैसे—

My mother must look after herself. (✓)
Verb Prep. Ref. Pron.
My mother must look after her. (×)
Verb Prep Objective case
The saint often talks to himself. (✓)
The saint often talks to him. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन Verb का subject तथा preposition का object two different persons / things (दो विभिन्न व्यक्ति/वस्तु) हो, तो preposition के बाद objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Reflexive Pronoun का। जैसे—

The principal distributed the books among themselves. (×)
The principal distributed the books among them. (✓)
Guriya depends on yourself and myself. (×)
Guriya depends on you and me. (✓)

**ध्यान दें :** Verb का subject तथा preposition का object same person/thing *(एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु)* हो तथा preposition से स्थान (place) का बोध हो, तो Preposition के बाद Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, बल्कि Objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We put the baby between ourselves. (×)
Prep. Ref. Pron.
We put the baby between us. (✓)
Prep. Objective case

**Rule (7) :** *By + Reflexive Pronoun* का प्रयोग alone, without help or without company के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He likes to spend time by himself. (= alone)
She can do all the work by herself. (= without help)

**Note :** (i) Avail of का प्रयोग passive voice में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

**Active :** I availed myself of an offer. (✓)
**Passive :** An offer was availed of by me. (×)

(ii) Enjoy के बाद सामान्यतः object का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन object का प्रयोग होने पर, Reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। जैसे—

We enjoyed the picnic last week. (×)
V O
We enjoyed the picnic ourselves last week. (✓)
V O Ref.pron

(iii) कभी-कभी self का प्रयोग noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He cares for nothing but self. (self–noun)
He thinks much of self.

(iv) कभी-कभी object को emphatic बनाने के लिए emphasizing pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I saw the Chief Minister himself.
O Emphasizing Pron.
I spoke to the princess herself.
O Emphasizing Pron.

**Rule (8) :** Reflexive Pronouns का प्रयोग keep, conceal, qualify, spread, rest, stay– Verbs के बाद नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I stayed myself away from my class. (×)
I stayed away from my class. (✓)
He qualified himself in the test. (×)
He qualified in the test. (✓)
She kept herself away from the show. (×)
She kept away from the show. (✓)

## Practice Set–4

**Based on Reflexive Pronouns :**

**Q. 1.** *Pick out the pronouns in the following sentences and say which are Emphasizing and which are Reflexive :*

1. He posted the letter himself.
2. I love only myself.
3. The town itself is not very large.
4. We blame ourselves.
5. You should control yourselves.
6. She herself was present there.
7. They themselves knew it all the time.
8. The poor widower poisoned himself.
9. The women have hurt themselves.
10. The author himself was puzzled.
11. You express yourself very imperfectly.
12. I myself will speak to him.
13. We often deceive ourselves.
14. He was sitting by himself.
15. And sometimes I hate myself.
16. You have landed yourself in difficulties.
17. They themselves admitted their guilt.
18. We seldom see ourselves as others see us.
19. The prisoner hanged himself.
20. You are starving yourself.

**Q. 2.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Reflexive or Emphasizing Pronouns:*

1. He will go ..... .
2. She washes ..... when she gets up.
3. The girls hid ..... .
4. They have got ..... into a mess.
5. I set ..... a hard task.
6. The cat cleans ..... .
7. We blame ..... .
8. You ..... can best explain.
9. Some people think only of ..... .
10. The king ..... gave the prize.
11. She ..... has done this.
12. I hurt ..... falling from the tree.
13. The teacher ..... gave me the book.
14. My mother opened the door ..... .
15. They ..... did this work.
16. Ajit and Bijay blamed ..... for the accident.
17. I hurt ..... .
18. She taught ..... .
19. The horse fell and hurt ..... .
20. The man killed ..... .

**Q. 3.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. I will do it me.
2. The boy self has spoiled his life.
3. We ourself saw it.
4. The walls itself fell.
5. We congratulated themselves on our escape.
6. They quarrelled among ourselves.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



7. He satisfied myself that he had posted the letter.
8. I was told so by the teacher myself.
9. We will see it ourselves.
10. They theirself admitted their guilt.
11. He absents from the school everyday.
12. I availed of casual leave.
13. He prides on his style.
14. Mr. Thakur addressed to the chairperson.
15. He often speaks to him.
16. He depends on yourself and myself.
17. Himself will help you.
18. He gave me himself's watch.
19. Your books are selling themselves well.
20. He introduced to the Chief Minister.
21. He presented in the meeting.
22. I enjoyed in the party.
23. The window opened itself.
24. He distributed the bananas between ourselves.
25. He never tries to concentrate himself.

**Q. 4.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. They loved (1)/theirself so much (2)/that they thought (3)/of no one else. (4)/No error (5)
2. She (1)/liked the diamond (2)/herselves but (3)/not the setting. (4)/No error (5)
3. A house (1)/divided against (2)/itselves (3)/cannot stand. (4)/No error (5)
4. Some people (1)/are always (2)/talking about (3)/themself. (4)/No error (5)
5. He (1)/that wrongs (2)/his friend wrongs (3)/hisself more. (4)/No error (5)
6. Who so ever (1)/shall exalt (2)/himselves (3)/shall be abased. (4)/No error (5)
7. I hope (1)/ that (2)/ you are both (3)/ looking after myself. (4) /No error (5)
8. We (1)/went to Mumbai (2)/and (3)/enjoyed ourself. (4)/No error (5)
9. You (1)/should (2)/avail of (3)/the opportunity. (4)/No error (5)
10. He has (1)/raised hisself (2)/in the eyes of (3)/his teachers. (4) No error (5)
11. Mr. Jha (1)/and myself (2)/were (3)/present there (4)./No error (5)
12. She (1)/bought apples (2)/for Aditi (3)/and myself. (4)/No error (5)
13. No one (1)/can be (2)/more honest (3)/than himself. (4)/No error (5)
14. The barber shaves (1)/all the people in the town (2)/who don't (3)/shave theirself. (4)/No error (5)
15. The author himselves (1)/is good (2)/but not (3)/his friends. (4)/No error. (5)

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.**

1. himself : Reflexive pronoun
2. myself : Reflexive pronoun
3. itself : Emphasizing pronoun.
4. ourselves : Reflexive pronoun
5. yourselves : Reflexive pronoun
6. herself : Emphasizing pronoun
7. themselves : Emphasizing pronoun
8. himself : Reflexive pronoun
9. themselves : Reflexive pronoun
10. himself : Emphasizing pronoun
11. yourself : Reflexive pronoun
12. myself : Emphasizing pronoun
13. ourselves : Reflexive pronoun
14. himself : Emphasizing pronoun
15. myself : Reflexive pronoun
16. yourself : Reflexive pronoun
17. themselves : Emphasizing pronoun
18. ourselves : Reflexive pronoun
19. himself : Reflexive pronoun
20. yourself : Reflexive pronoun

**Q. 2.**

1. himself
2. herself
3. themselves
4. themselves
5. myself
6. itself
7. ourselves
8. yourself
9. themselves
10. himself
11. herself
12. myself
13. himself
14. herself
15. themselves
16. themselves
17. myself
18. herself
19. itself
20. himself

**Q. 3.**

1. I will do it myself.
2. The boy himself has spoiled his life.
3. We ourselves saw it.
4. The walls themselves fell.
5. We congratulated ourselves on our escape.
6. They quarrelled among themselves.
7. He satisfied himself that he had posted the letter.
8. I was told so by the teacher himself.
9. We will see it ourselves.
10. They themselves admitted their guilt.
11. He absents himself from the school everyday.
12. I availed myself of casual leave.
13. He prides himself on his style.
14. Mr. Thakur addressed himself to the chairperson.
15. He often speaks to himself.
16. He depends on you and me.
17. He will help you.
18. He gave me his own watch.
19. Your books are selling well.
20. He introduced himself to the Chief Minister.
21. He presented himself in the meeting.
22. I enjoyed myself in the party.
23. The window opened.
24. He distributed the bananas between us.
25. He never tries to concentrate.

**Q. 4.**

1. (2) theirself की जगह themselves का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (3) herselves की जगह herself का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (3) itselves की जगह itself का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (4) themself की जगह themselves का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (4) hisself की जगह himself का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (3) himselves की जगह himself का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (4) myself की जगह yourselves का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (4) ourself की जगह ourselves का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (3) avail के बाद Reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग होता है अतः Given sentence के part (3) में avail के बाद yourself का प्रयोग होगा
10. (2) hisself की जगह himself का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (2) myself की जगह 'I' का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Subject के बाद Nominative case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Reflexive pronoun का।
12. (4) myself की जगह me का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि preposition के बाद सामान्यतः objective case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
13. (4) himself की जगह 'he' का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि than के बाद nominative case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
14. (4) theirself की जगह themselves का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (1) himselves की जगह himself का प्रयोग होगा।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## 5. Demonstrative Pronouns

वे pronouns जो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं को point out or demonstrate (संकेत/प्रदर्शित) करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं Demonstrative Pronouns कहलाते हैं। जैसे—This, that, these, those, such, the same.

इनका प्रयोग जब nouns के पहले होता है तो ये Demonstrative Adjectives कहलाते हैं।

**Demonstrative pronouns तथा Demonstrative Adjectives में अंतर :**

| Demonstrative Pronouns | Demonstrative Adjectives |
|---|---|
| 1. Demonstrative Pronouns का प्रयोग noun के लिए होता है अर्थात इनका प्रयोग noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे— | 1. Demonstrative Adjectives का प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है। जैसे— |
| This is a gift from her. | Give this gift to that fellow. |
| That is just what he wants. | Those men were not present in that place. |
| These are merely excuses. | These flowers are mine; Those flowers are yours. |
| Those are the very words. | This cycle is better than that (cycle). |
| He is the same as he ever was. | He is the same man that I saw an hour ago. |
| Such were his very words. | Such men are dangerous. |

**Rule (1) :** This का प्रयोग समीप की एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है, जबकि These का प्रयोग समीप की एक से अधिक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है। जैसे—

This is a cat. (singular) These are cats. (plural)

**Rule (2) :** That का प्रयोग दूर की एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है, जबकि those का प्रयोग दूर की एक से अधिक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है। जैसे—

That is a book. (singular) Those are books. (plural)

**Rule (3) :** यदि दो singular nouns 'and' से जुड़कर किसी sentence or clause में प्रयुक्त हों तो last singular noun के लिए this तथा first singular noun के लिए that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Work and play are both necessary to health; This (= play) exercises the body, and that (= work) exercises the brain.

Virtue and vice offer themselves for your choice; this (= vice) leads to misery, that (= virtue) leads to happiness.

**Rule (4) :** यदि दो plural nouns 'and' से जुड़कर किसी sentence or clause में प्रयुक्त हों तो last plural noun के लिए these तथा first plural noun के लिए those का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Cows and horses are both useful animals; these (= horses) carry us from one place to another, and those (= cows) give us milk.

**Rule (5) :** यदि एक समान वर्ग (same class) के दो nouns की तुलना हो तो singular noun के लिए that of तथा plural noun के लिए those of का प्रयोग होता है।

दूसरे शब्दों में—Singular noun के repetition को रोकने के लिए that of तथा plural noun के repetition को रोकने के लिए those of का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The climate of Pune is better than that (= climate) of Mumbai.

The streets of Delhi are wider than those (= streets) of Mumbai.

Our soldiers were better drilled than those of enemies.

The rivers of America are larger than those of Europe.

**Rule (6) :** Such का प्रयोग demonstrative pronoun के रूप में singular और plural दोनों ही sense (अर्थ) में होता है। जैसे—

He is the house owner and as such he has the right to maintain the house. (Such = the house owner)

Criminals are restricted such by law. (such = criminals)

Such is your mistake that nobody can forgive you.

**Note :** Such का प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है तो वह demonstrative Adjective कहलाता है। जैसे—

Nobody can forgive you for such a mistake.

**Rule (7) :** The same का प्रयोग सामान्यतः demonstrative Adjective के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग demonstrative pronoun के रूप में सामान्यतः नहीं होता है। जैसे—

This is the same book that I bought yesterday.
Dem. Adj N

**Note :** (i) The same के बदले जरूरत के मुताबिक pronouns—This, it, they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I gave him a pen and the same was returned to me. (×)
Pron.

I gave him a pen and it was returned to me. (✓)

(ii) The same का प्रयोग pronoun के रूप में law and business के क्षेत्र में हो रहा है। लेकिन अन्य क्षेत्रों में ऐसा प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

We thank you for your letter and in reply to the same .....

ध्यान दें : the same का अर्थ letter से है।

(iii) sort of/kind of के पहले this/that तथा sorts of /kinds of के पहले these/those का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| This kind of pen is costly. | (✓) |
| These kind of pen is costly. | (×) |
| That sort of man is hateful. | (✓) |
| Those sort of man is hateful. | (×) |
| These kinds of books are authentic. | (✓) |
| This kinds of books are authentic. | (×) |
| Those sorts of people are laborious. | (✓) |
| That sorts of people are laborious. | (×) |

### Practice Set-5

**Based on Demonstrative Pronouns :**

Q. 1. *Fill in the blanks with suitable demonstrative pronouns. (this, that, these, those, such, the same) :*

1. ..... is a gift from my uncle.
2. Both books are good, but ..... is better than .....
3. The windows of this room are larger than ..... of the office.
4. He is a fool, and as ..... must be pitied.
5. Give ..... book to ..... classmate.
6. There is no period in ancient Indian history so glorious as ..... of the Guptas.
7. ..... kind of pen is not costly.
8. This scooter is better than .....
9. ..... books are mine. ..... books are yours.
10. He is ..... boy that I saw two hours ago.
11. The climate of Puri is better than ..... of Patna.
12. The people of Bihar are more laborious than ..... of Mumbai.
13. The price of this book is as much as ..... of that book.
14. This is not ..... a treatment as I expected.
15. The more you read ..... book, the more you will like it.

Q. 2. *Correct the following sentences.*

1. He plans to complete these work hurriedly.
2. He is working hard with a view to winning the same match.
3. The roads of Delhi are wider than Allahabad.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



4. The climate of Ranchi is better than Gaya.
5. Will you be at home these Sunday afternoon ?
6. Your exams are these month.
7. These is my second visit to the U.K.
8. These is not such a good book as I expected.
9. How will this children be healthy ?
10. What are this ?

**Q. 3.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Both girls (1)/are bold, (2)/but this is (3)/bolder than those. (4)/No error (5)
2. The doors (1)/of this classroom (2)/are larger than (3)/that of that. (4)/No error (5)
3. These (1)/kind of (2)/books are (3)/authentic. (4)/No error(5)
4. These frocks (1)/are hers, (2)/but that shirts (3)/are his. (4)/No error (5)
5. The students (1)/of this class (2)/are more intelligent than (3)/that of that class. (4)/No error (5)
6. The roads (1)/of Kankarbagh (2)/are wider than (3)/Rajendra Nagar. (4)/No error (5)
7. Alcohol and tobacco (1)/are both injurious; (2)/this perhaps, (3)/less than those. (4)/No error (5)
8. Our soldiers (1)/were better (2)/drilled than (3)/that of enemies. (4)/No error (5)
9. The climate of (1)/Belgium (2)/is like (3)/that of Pune. (4)/No error (5)
10. Cows and horses (1)/are both useful animals; (2)/these carry us from one place to another, (3)/and that give us milk. (4) No error (5)

**Q. 4.** *Fill in the blanks with that or those :*

1. The climate of India is hotter than ..... of England.
2. The mangoes of Darbhanga are sweeter than ..... of Patna.
3. The civilization of India is older than ..... of China.
4. The people of Pakistan are poorer than ..... of India.
5. The tea of India is better than ..... of Ceylon.
6. The soil of my field is more fertile than .....of your field.
7. The iron bars of this window are thicker than ..... of that window.
8. The boys of a school are more disciplined than ..... of a college.
9. The tail of a dog is shorter than ..... of a horse.
10. The teeth of a cat are sharper than ..... of a dog.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. this | 2. this, that | 3. those |
| 4. such | 5. this, that | 6. that |
| 7. this | 8. that | 9. these, those |
| 10. the same | 11. that | 12. those |
| 13. that | 14. such | 15. this |

**Q. 2.**

1. He plans to complete this work hurriedly.
2. He is working hard with a view to winning this match.
3. The roads of Delhi are wider than those of Allahabad.
4. The climate of Ranchi is better than that of Gaya.
5. Will you be at home this Sunday afternoon ?
6. Your exams are this month.
7. This is my second visit to the U.K.
8. This is not such a good book as I expected.
9. How will these children be healthy ?
10. What are these ? or what is this ?

**Q. 3.**

1. (4) those की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (4) that of की जगह those of का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (2) kind of की जगह kinds of का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) that shirts की जगह those shirts का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (4) that of की जगह those of का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (4) Rajendra Nagar के पहले those of का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (4) those की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (4) that of की जगह those of का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (5) Given sentence is correct.
10. (4) that की जगह those का प्रयोग होगा।

**Note :** विशेष जानकारी के लिए, Rules (3), (4), (5), (6) तथा (7) देखें।

**Q. 4.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. that | 2. those | 3. that | 4. those |
| 5. that | 6. that | 7. those | 8. those |
| 9. that | 10. those | | |

## 6. Indefinite Pronouns

वे Pronouns जो किसी अनिश्चित व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध कराते हैं, Indefinite pronouns कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody, everyone, someone, no one, anyone, everything, something, nothing, anything, all, some, both, any, most, enough, few, many, none, little, one, other, others, इन्हें Indefinite demonstrative pronouns भी कहा जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

<u>One</u> must be attentive to one's studies.
<u>Everyone</u> believed him.
<u>Somebody</u> has stolen my watch.
<u>Nobody</u> was there to save the drowning child.
<u>None</u> but the brave deserve the fair.
<u>Some</u> are born great. All are not born rich.
<u>Few</u> were hurt, Many escaped.
<u>All</u> that glitters is not gold.
Only Rakesh can remain here, <u>others</u> may go home.
<u>One</u> or <u>other</u> of us will be there.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में underlined pronouns का प्रयोग अनिश्चित व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध कराने के लिए किया गया है अतः ये Indefinite pronouns हैं। इनका प्रयोग निश्चित व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध कराने के लिए नहीं किया जाता।

**Note :** All, some, both, any, most, enough, few, many, little, one, other, another, का प्रयोग Adjectives के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

I will take you there <u>one</u> day.
<u>Any</u> fool can do that.
He is a man of <u>few</u> words.
<u>Some</u> milk was spilt.
<u>Many</u> criminals were arrested.

| Indefinite Pronouns | | Correct (√) | | Incorrect (×) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Everybody | Person (व्यक्ति) | he | (√) | They | (×) |
| Somebody | | him | (√) | Them | (×) |
| Anybody | | his | (√) | their | (×) |
| Nobody | | himself | (√) | themselves | (×) |
| Everyone | | | | it | (×) |
| Someone | | | | its | (×) |
| Anyone | | | | itself | (×) |
| No one | | | | one's | (×) |
| | | | | oneself | (×) |
| Everything | Object (वस्तु) | it | (√) | he | (×) |
| Something | | Its | (√) | him | (×) |
| Anything | | Itself | (√) | his | (×) |
| Nothing | | | | himself | (×) |
| | | | | they | (×) |
| | | | | them | (×) |
| | | | | theirselves | (×) |
| | | | | one's | (×) |
| | | | | oneself | (×) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (1)** : Everybody, somebody, anybody, nobody, every one, someone, anyone, no one के लिए singular pronouns– he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग होता है, न कि plural pronouns– they, them, their, theirs, themselves का। sex का पता न होने पर ऐसा प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Everyone has his own ideas on the subject. (√)
He helped everyone of his class fellows in his studies. (√)
If any body helps me, I shall be thankful to him. (√)
Any one can win the prize if he tries for it. (√)
Everybody must have his way. (√)

लेकिन उपरोक्त indefinite pronouns का प्रयोग female sex को denote करने के लिए हो तो singular pronouns & adjective–she, her, hers, herself का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I helped everyone of the girls in her studies. (√)
I helped everyone of the girls in his studies. (×)

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Everybody should love his country. (√)
Everybody should love their country. (×)
Everybody should love one's country. (×)
Everybody should love its country. (×)
Everything has its own limitation. (√)
Everything has his own limitation. (×)
Everything has their own limitation. (×)
Everything has one's own limitation. (×)

ऊपर दिये गए examples से यह स्पष्ट होता है, कि Everybody, ..... No one के लिए Singlar Pronouns—he, him, his, himself का प्रयोग होता है, तथा Everything, ..... Nothing के लिए Singular Pronouns—it, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है।

**Note** : Everybody, somebody, anybody, nobody, everyone, someone, anyone, no one, everything, something, anything, nothing के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है, न कि plural verb का। जैसे—

Everyone <u>likes</u> to have his way. (√)
S.V.
Everyone <u>like</u> to have his way. (×)
P.V.
Everybody <u>has</u> his own ideas which he hates to change. (√)
S.V.
Everybody <u>have</u> his own ideas which he hates to change. (×)
P.V.
Nothing <u>has been</u> done. (√)
S.V.
Nothing <u>have been</u> done. (×)
P.V.

**Rule (2)** : यदि किसी sentence में question tag का प्रयोग हो, तथा sentence का Subject—Everybody, Somebody, Anybody, Nobody, Everyone, Someone, Anyone, No one हो, तो इसके लिए Plural Pronoun—they का प्रयोग question tag के subject के रूप में होता है, न कि Singular Pronoun—he का। जैसे—

Everybody can not be intelligent, <u>can they</u> ? (√)
question tag
Everybody can not be intelligent, <u>can he</u> ? (×)
Everyone does his work, <u>don't they</u> ? (√)
question tag
Everyone does his work, <u>doesn't he</u> ? (×)

**Rule (3)** : Everything, something, nothing, anything का प्रयोग अनिश्चित वस्तु का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। इसके लिए हमेशा singular pronouns—It, its, itself का प्रयोग होता है न कि plural pronouns—they, them, their, themselves, he, him, his, himself तथा one, one's, oneself, का। जैसे—

Everything has its own limitation. (√)
Everything has <u>their</u> own limitation. (×)
his/one's

**Rule (4)** : यदि किसी sentence में question tag का प्रयोग हो, तथा sentence का subject—everything, something, anything, nothing हो, तो इसके लिए Singular Pronoun—it का प्रयोग question tag के subject के रूप में होता है, न कि Singular Pronoun—he तथा Plural Pronoun—they का। जैसे—

Everything is bright and beautiful, isn't it ? (√)
Everything is bright and beautiful, isn't he ? (×)
Everything is bright and beautiful, aren't they ? (×)

**Rule (5)** : यदि 'one' का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए Nominative case—one, Objective case—one, Possessive adjective—one's तथा Reflexive pronoun—oneself का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Nominative case—he, Objective case—him, Possessive pronoun & adjective—his तथा Reflexive pronoun—himself तथा ones, once, they, them, their, themselves का। जैसे—

One should love one's country. (√)
One should love his country. (×)
One should love ones country. (×)
One should love their country. (×)
One should love once country. (×)
One should help oneself. (√)
One should help himself. (×)
One should help theirself. (×)
One should help themselves. (×)
One should help oneselves. (×)

**Rule (6)** : किसी sentence में Singular Countable Noun को दुहरा कर लिखने से बचने के लिए one का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि Plural Countable Noun को दुहराकर लिखने से बचने के लिए ones का प्रयोग होता है, न कि one's का। जैसे—

This is a new table, but that is an old one. (√)
This is a new table, but that is an old ones. (×)
These are new tables, but those are old ones. (√)
These are new tables, but those are old one. (×)
These are new tables, but those are old one's. (×)

**Note** : लेकिन some, any, both, Possessive Adjectives—my, our, your, his, her, its, their के बाद one or ones का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Are there any bananas ? (√)
Yes, I have got some today. (√)
Yes, I have got some ones today. (×)
Your pen is new, but my one is old. (×)
Your pen is new, but mine is old. (√)
Your pens are new, but my ones are old. (×)
Your pens are new, but mine are old. (√)

ऊपर दिये गए examples से स्पष्ट है कि Possessive Adjective + one / ones के बदले Possessive Pronouns—mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (7)** : Some तथा इससे बने Pronouns—someone, somebody, something का प्रयोग Affirmative sentence में होता है, जबकि Any तथा इससे बने Pronouns—anyone, anybody, anything का प्रयोग negative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He has bought some mangoes. —*affirmative* (√)
P.C.N.

He has bought any mangoes. (×)

I have not any pen. —*negative* (√)

I have not some pens. (×)

**Rule (8) :** Some/Any तथा इनसे बने Pronouns का प्रयोग Affirmative Interrogative Sentence में होता है। जैसे—

Have you bought some pens ? (√)
P.C.N.

Have you bought any pens ? (√)
P.C.N.

**Rule (9) :** All का प्रयोग 'सबकुछ', सभी तथा प्रत्येक के अर्थ में Indefinite Pronoun के रूप में क्रमशः व्यक्ति तथा वस्तु के लिए होता है। जैसे—

| Person (व्यक्ति) | Thing (वस्तु) |
|---|---|
| 1. All of us love peace. | 1. All of these pens are costly. |
| 2. We all want to come in. | 2. He gave his all to the party. |

**Note :** (i) All का प्रयोग 'सम्पूर्ण' तथा 'समस्त' के अर्थ में indefinite numeral adjective or quantitative adjective के रूप में क्रमशः number (संख्या) तथा quantity (मात्रा) को express करने के लिए होता है। इसका प्रयोग क्रमशः plural countable noun तथा singular uncountable noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

All the boys were present. —*Number*
P.C.N. P.V.

All the milk was sold. —*Quantity*
S.U.N. S.V.

(ii) All + P.C.N. or All + the + P.C.N. से संख्या का बोध होता है तथा इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

(iii) All + S.U.N. or All + the + S.U.N से मात्रा का बोध होता है तथा इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है।

(iv) All का प्रयोग 'पूर्णरूप से' (quite/entirely/totally) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

They were dressed all in white.
V adv.

(v) All से बने phrases को नीचे दिये गए Table में देखें :

| Phrases | Hindi Meanings |
|---|---|
| After all | आखिरकार |
| Not at all | बिल्कुल भी नहीं |
| For all | सभी के वास्ते |
| Once for all | हमेशा के लिए |
| For ever | हमेशा के लिए |
| All in all | सब कुछ |
| All over | सब जगह |
| All along | पूरे समय |
| All alone | बिल्कुल अकेला |
| All the same | समान, एक सा |
| All right/alright | बिल्कुल ठीक |

**Rule (10) :** Some का प्रयोग 'कुछ', 'कोई तथा 'थोड़ा' के अर्थ में Indefinite pronoun के रूप में number (संख्या) तथा quantity (मात्रा) को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Some of the boys are good players. —*Number*
P.C.N. P.V.

Some of the sugar has been consumed. —*Quantity*
S.U.N. S.V.

**Note :** (i) *Some of + the + P.C.N.* से संख्या का बोध होता है तथा इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) *Some of + the + S.U.N.* से मात्रा का बोध होता है तथा इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है।

(iii) Some का प्रयोग 'कुछ', 'अनिश्चित', अमुक, कोई, अल्प के अर्थ में Indefinite numeral Adjective or quantitative Adjective के रूप में क्रमशः संख्या तथा मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Some boys are reading (Some = कुछ)
P.C.N. P.V.

Some man at the door is waiting. (Some = अनिश्चित/कोई)
S.N. S.V.

I shall be back after some days. (some = कुछ)
P.C.N.

**Note :** Some के बाद plural countable or Singular uncountable noun का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन 'कोई'/'अज्ञात'/अनिश्चित के अर्थ में इसके बाद singular noun का प्रयोग भी होता है।

(iv) Some से बनने वाले कुछ शब्दों को नीचे दिये गए table में देखें :

**Table : 1**

| Words | | Hindi Meanings |
|---|---|---|
| Somebody | Pronouns | कोई व्यक्ति |
| Someone | | कोई न कोई |
| Something | | कोई वस्तु |

**Table : 2**

| Words | | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Somehow | Adverbs | किसी न किसी प्रकार से |
| Someplace | | कहीं न कहीं |
| Sometime | | किसी समय |
| Sometimes | | कभी-कभी |
| Somewhat | | कुछ-कुछ |
| Somewhere | | किसी जगह |

**Rule (11) :** Any का प्रयोग कोई/कुछ के अर्थ में indefinite pronoun के रूप में संख्या को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You can meet any of these heroes.
You can buy any of these pens.

**Note :** (i) Any का प्रयोग 'कोई भी', 'कुछ', 'किसे भी' तथा 'किसी से प्रकार' के अर्थ में Indefinite numeral Adjective के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग Negative or Affirmative Interrogative sentence में singular or, plural noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Can you give me any book ? (√)
S.N.

Can you give me any books ? (√)
P.N.

(ii) Any का प्रयोग 'और अधिक' तथा 'कुछ और' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में negative, interrogative तथा conditional sentence में होता है। जैसे—

We are too tired to go any further.
Is your mother any better ?

(iii) Any से बनने वाले कुछ शब्दों को नीचे दिये गये table में देखें :

| Words | | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Anybody | Pronouns | कोई भी |
| Anyone | | कोई भी |
| Anything | | कोई चीज/बात |
| Anyhow | Adverbs | किसी भी तरह, जैसे भी हो सके, लापरवाही से |
| Anyway | | किसी न किसी प्रकार से |
| Anywhere | | किसी भी जगह |
| At any rate / in any case | | हर हालत में, प्रत्येक दशा में |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (12) :** Most का प्रयोग 'अधिकांश' के अर्थ में Indefinite pronoun के रूप में संख्या या मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Most of the boys are absent in the class. —*Number*
P.N. P.V

Most of the money has been spent. —*Quantity*
S.U.N. S.V.

**Note :** (i) *Most of + the + P.C.N.* के साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) *Most of + the + S.U.N.* के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है।

(iii) Most का प्रयोग Much के Superlative degree के रूप में अर्थात् Adjective के रूप में 'सर्वाधिक' तथा अधिकतम के अर्थ में संख्या या मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Who has done the most work ?
S.U.N.

(iv) Most का प्रयोग 'बहुत अधिक' (very much) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

What is worrying you most ?
Adv.

(v) Mostly का प्रयोग 'अधिकतर, बहुधा, मुख्यतः के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is mostly absent.
Adv.

(vi) Most से बनने वाले कुछ phrases को नीचे दिये गए Table में देखें :

| Phrases | Hindi Meanings |
|---|---|
| 1. At the most | *अधिकतम* |
| 2. Almost / for the most part | *अधिकतर, प्रायः* |
| 3. To make the most of | *सबसे अधिक सुविधा का प्रयोग करना* |

**Rule (13) :** Enough का प्रयोग 'काफी या पर्याप्त' के अर्थ में Indefinite pronoun के रूप में भी होता है। लेकिन इसका प्रयोग Adjective or Adverb के रूप में सामान्यतः होता है। इससे संख्या /मात्रा का बोध होता है। जैसे—

He has sent me enough of the milk. —*Quantity*
S.U.N.

She has seen enough of the actors. —*Number*
P.C.N.

**Note :** (i) Enough का प्रयोग 'काफी/पर्याप्त' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में संख्या या मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

I have enough milk to drink. —*Quantity*
Adj. S.U.N.

There are enough boys in my class. —*Number*
Adj. P.C.N.

(ii) Enough का प्रयोग 'बहुत काफी' तथा 'जितना चाहिए उतना' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The rice is not boiled enough.
Adv.

You know well enough what I mean.

(iii) कभी कभी Enough का प्रयोग 'प्रचुरता' (sufficiency) के अर्थ में noun के रूप में होता है। इसके संबंध में हमलोगों को कनफ्यूजन नहीं होना चाहिए। जैसे—

I have done more than enough.
Noun

(iv) Sure enough : phrase का अर्थ निसंदेह/निश्चितरूप से (certainly / decidedly) होता है। जैसे—

He is sure enough to get through the examination.
वह परीक्षा में पास करने के लिए निसंदेह है।

**Rule (14) :** A few का प्रयोग 'कुछ' के अर्थ में Indefinite pronoun के रूप में भी होता है। इससे संख्या का बोध होता है। इसका प्रयोग सामान्यतः Adjective के रूप में होता है। कन्फ्यूज न हों। जैसे—

A few of these pens are old.
Indef. Pron.

A few of us have seen the Red Fort.

But He is a man of few words.
Adj.

**Rule (15) :** Much का प्रयोग 'बहुत कुछ' तथा 'बहुत' के अर्थ में क्रमशः noun or pronoun के रूप में होता है। लेकिन इसका प्रयोग सामान्यतः Adjective के रूप में प्रचुर मात्रा में के अर्थ में Singular uncountable noun के पहले होता है। कन्फ्यूज न हों। जैसे—

Much depends on what he says.
Noun

Much of what he says is true.
Pron.

He does not know much about me.
Verb Adv.

Much food has been consumed.
Adj. S.U.N.

**Note :** (i) Much का प्रयोग 'बहुत' तथा 'अधिक' के अर्थ में adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

She is much better today.
Adv. Adv.

(ii) Much से बनने वाले कुछ phrases को नीचे दिये गए table में देखें :

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| This or that much | *इतना या उतना सारा* |
| Make much of | *को बहुत महत्व देना* |
| As much as | *उतना ही/समान मात्रा में* |
| How much ! | *कितना (मात्रा में)* |
| Much of a size | *प्रायः एक ही परिमाण का* |
| Talking Much | *बकवादी* |
| Too much | *अत्यधिक, बहुत ज्यादा* |

**Rule (16) :** Little का प्रयोग सामान्यतः adjective के रूप में छोटी, थोड़ा, छोटा, बहुत थोड़ा, न्यून, अल्प मात्रा के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Please stay a little time here.
I saw a little boy.
You have done very little for me.
He knows a little of everything.

**Note :** Little से बनने वाले कुछ phrases को नीचे दिये गए table में देखें।

| Phrases | English & Hindi meaning |
|---|---|
| A little rather | Somewhat—*थोड़ा बहुत* |
| A little while | For a short time—*थोड़ी देर* |
| Little known | not famed—*अप्रसिद्ध* |

**Rule (17) :** One का प्रयोग 'one in number' (संख्या में एक) के अर्थ में हो तो इसके लिए third person singular pronoun

(i) Masculine Gender के लिए—he, him, his, himself;

(ii) Feminine Gender के लिए—she, her, hers, herself तथा

(iii) Neuter Gender के लिए—It, its, itself का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

I. For masculine gender—

One of us has given up one's honesty. (×)

One of us has given up his honesty. (✓)

II. For feminine gender—

One of the girls has gotten 80% marks in his examination. (×)

One of the girls has gotten 80% marks in her examination. (✓)

III. For neuter gender—

This is one of the books which have their own recognization. (×)

This is one of the books which have its own recognization. (✓)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Practice Set–6

**Based on Indefinite Pronouns :**

**Q. 1.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable indefinite pronouns given in the brackets :*

1. ..... should take care of one's house. *(Everyone, one)*
2. ..... says that truth has power. *(Everyone, All)*
3. ..... are born poets. *(Some, all)*
4. ..... is better than nothing. *(Something/somebody)*
5. Did ..... help you ? *(Somebody, anybody)*
6. ..... were rewarded. *(Many, Much)*
7. One must be attentive to ..... studies. *(One's, his)*
8. ..... was allowed to go out. *(None, anyone)*
9. Only Vikas can remain here, ..... may go home. *(others/any)*
10. ..... was well arranged. *(everything, everyone)*

**Q. 2.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. Has everyone left his luggage on the train ?
2. No one saw Binay go out, did he ?
3. Something went wrong, didn't they ?
4. One must do his duty.
5. One must be careful about what he says.
6. Everyone has their own ideas on the subject.
7. One must take care of his health.
8. Everyone of the boys has paid their tuition fees.
9. Everybody should mind their own business.
10. It is an old car but I want a new ones.

**Q. 3.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. No one (1)/should (2)/oppress (3)/their neighbours. (4)/No error (5)
2. Everyone (1)/should (2)/help (3)/one's friend (4)/No error. (5)
3. One can rise in life (1)/only when one puts forth one's best (2)/not only for himself and (3)/one's family but also for others. (4)/No error (5)
4. One (1)/must (2)/not be blind (3)/to his own defects. (4)/No error (5)
5. Anybody (1)/can get (2)/their health (3)/checked up in a hospital. (4)/No error (5)
6. He gained (1)/a prize last year (2)/but he did not gain (3)/ones this term. (4)/No error (5)
7. There were (1)/six lazy boys (2)/and four industrious one (3)/in our class. (4)/No error (5)
8. Anyone (1)/can (2)/do this (3)/if he tries. (4)/No error (5)
9. One of them (1)/has (2)/given up (3)/one's studies. (4)/No error(5)
10. One (1)/must do (2)/one's duty (3)/to his country. (4) No error(5)

**Q. 4.** *Fill in the blanks with one or ones :*

1. I have a black horse and you have a white ..... .
2. He likes ripe mangoes more than the green ..... .
3. All cows are useful but the black ..... are more useful.
4. There are old and new books in the library. Which do you like ? I like the old ..... .
5. There were many horses in the field. The black ..... looked more handsome.
6. There are good and bad men in society. Which do you honour ? I honour the good ..... .
7. She prefers a red pencil to a blue ..... .
8. He likes the red colour better than the white ..... .
9. There are big and small boys in my class. I like the small ..... .
10. There are hard cakes and soft ..... .

### Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.** 1. one 2. everyone 3. some 4. something 5. anybody 6. Many 7. one's 8. None 9. others 10. everything

**Q. 2.**

1. Has anyone left his luggage on the train ?
2. No one saw Binay go out, did they ?
3. Something went wrong, didn't it ?
4. One must do one's duty.
5. One must be careful about what one says.
6. Everyone has his own ideas on the subject.
7. One must take care of one's health.
8. Every one of the boys has paid his tuition fees.
9. Everybody should mind his own business.
10. It is an old car but I want a new one.

**Q. 3.**

1. (4) their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (4) one's की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (3) himself की जगह oneself का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (4) his की जगह one's का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (4) ones की जगह one का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (3) one की जगह ones का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (5) Given sentence is correct.
9. (4) One's की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।

**Note :** one का प्रयोग 'one in number' के अर्थ में हो तो इसके लिए third person singular pronoun—him, his, himself, (for male sex) she, her, hers, herself (for female sex) तथा it, its itself (for non living things/animals) का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है।

10. (4) his की जगह one's का प्रयोग होगा।

**Q. 4.** 1. one 2. ones 3. ones 4. ones 5. ones 6. ones 7. one 8. one 9. ones 10. ones

## 7. Relative Pronouns

वे pronouns जो अपने पहले प्रयुक्त Nouns या Noun equivalent words से संबंध बताते हैं तथा दो sentences को जोड़ने का कार्य करते हैं Relative pronouns कहलाते हैं। ये conjunctions की तरह कार्य करते हैं अतः इन्हें connective pronouns or conjunctions भी कहा जाता है जैसे—who, which, that, as, but, what.

इन वाक्यों को देखें—

I met Veena, <u>who</u> was returning from school.
Nilu had a book, <u>which</u> she bought at a shop.
The pen <u>that</u> my father gave writes well.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में क्रमशः who, which तथा that अपने पहले प्रयुक्त nouns क्रमशः Veena, a book तथा the pen से संबंध बताते हैं साथ ही दो वाक्यों को जोड़ने का कार्य करते हैं अतः ये Relative pronouns हैं।

**Antecedent**—Relative pronouns के पहले प्रयुक्त noun or noun equivalent word (pronoun) को Antecedent कहा जाता है।

***Function of Relative pronouns in subordinate clause.***

**Rule (1) :** Relative pronouns (who/which/that) का प्रयोग subordinate clause के subject के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The boy <u>who</u> (Subject) came here is a player.
This is the house <u>which</u> (Subject) is made of marbles.
The road <u>that</u> (Subject) leads to Patna market is being repaired.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में क्रमशः Relative pronouns— who, which तथा that का प्रयोग subordinate clauses के subject के रूप में हुआ है।

**Rule (2) :** Relative pronouns का प्रयोग subordinate clause में verb के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I have a son <u>whom</u> (Object) I <u>love</u> (Verb) very much.
This is the house <u>which</u> (Object) my father <u>built</u> (Verb).

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The sewing machine that I borrowed broke down yesterday.
Object Verb

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में क्रमशः Relative pronouns—whom, which तथा that का प्रयोग subordinate clauses के verb के object के रूप में हुआ है।

**Rule (3)** : Relative pronouns का प्रयोग subordinate clause में preposition के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The cot on which I was sitting began to creak.
Prep. Object

This is the pen with which we usually write.
Prep. Object

She is the girl with whom I lived.
Prep. Object

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में क्रमशः Relative pronouns—which, who तथा whom का प्रयोग subordinate clause में preposition के object के रूप में हुआ है।

**अंग्रेजी भाषा में Relative pronouns (who/which) का प्रयोग दो प्रकार से होता है।**

1. Restrictive use
2. Continuative use

1. **Restrictive use** : Relative pronoun से बना clause अपने पहले प्रयुक्त Antecedent को restrict (सीमित) or define (परिभाषित) करे अर्थात् विशेषता बताये या Adjective clause का काम करे तो Relative pronoun का ऐसा प्रयोग restrictive use कहलाता है। इसे Defining use भी कहा जाता है। जैसे—

1. The man who lived there died yesterday.
2. This is the man who has stolen my watch.

ऊपर दिये गए example (1) में Relative clause—'Who lived there, 'noun'—man के लिए Adjective का काम करता है और उसकी विशेषता बताता है अर्थात् noun—man को restrict or define भी करता है। अतः Example (1) में who का प्रयोग Restrictive use हुआ है। इसी प्रकार Example (2) में Relative clause—'who has stolen my watch' का प्रयोग हुआ है।

2. **Continuative use** : Relative pronoun से बने clause अपने पहले प्रयुक्त Antecedent को restrict (सीमित) or Define (परिभाषित) न करे बल्कि Antecedent के बारे में additional information (अतिरिक्त जानकारी) दे तो Relative pronoun का ऐसा प्रयोग continuative use कहलाता है। इसे non-defining use भी कहा जाता है। जैसे—

1. I have seen my friend, who recognised me at once.
2. He has bought a car, which is white.

ऊपर दिये गए example (1) में Relative clause—"who recognised me at once", noun—friend को restrict or define नहीं करता है बल्कि उसके बारे में Additional information (अतिरिक्त जानकारी) देता है अर्थात् Antecedent—friend के बारे में जानकारी को आगे बढ़ाता है या continue करता है—

'I have seen my friend, and he (who) recognised me at once."

अतः Example (1) में who का प्रयोग continuative use हुआ है। इस प्रकार example (2) में Relative clause 'which is white' का प्रयोग हुआ है।

Note : Restrictive use और Continuative use में फर्क :

| Restrictive use | Continuative use |
|---|---|
| 1. Restrictive use में Antecedent तथा Relative pronoun के बीच में comma (,) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। | 1. Continuative use में Antecedent तथा Relative pronoun के बीच comma (,) का प्रयोग होता है। |
| 2. इस use में Relative clause एक Adjective clause का कार्य करता है। | 2. इस use में Relative clause एक Principal clause होता है। |
| 3. इस use में Noun तथा Relative clause का structure : *Noun + No Comma + Relative clause* होता है। | 3. इस use में noun तथा Relative clause का structure : *Noun + Comma + Relative clause* होता है। |
| 4. इस use में sentence complex sentence कहलाता है। जैसे— The travellers who knew about the floods took another road. जो 'Travellers' बाढ़ के बारे में जानते थे वे दूसरी सड़क पकड़ लिए, किन्तु जो Travellers बाढ़ के बारे में नहीं जानते थे वे बाढ़वाली सड़क पकड़ लिये। | 4. इस use में sentence compound sentence कहलाता है। जैसे— The travellers, who knew about the floods, took another road. सभी/सब 'Travellers' बाढ़ के बारे में जानते थे और वे दूसरी सड़क पकड़ लिये। |

**Forms of The Relative Pronouns**

| Case | Singular and Plural Masculine and Feminine | Singular and Plural Neuter |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Nominative | who | which |
| 2. Objective/ Accusative | whom | which |
| 3. Possessive/ Genitive | whose | whose or of which |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

This is the boy who works hard.
This is the girl whom all praise.
This is the boy whose exercise is done well.
This is the house which belongs to my uncle.
The house which my father built was grand.
A triangle of which/whose three sides are equal is called an equilateral triangle.

Note : (i) Relative pronoun 'that' का प्रयोग nominative, objective case में singular तथा plural form में एक ही रूप (the same form) में होता है। इसका possessive form नहीं होता है। that के possessive form के रूप में of which or whose का प्रयोग होता है।

| Case | Singular and Plural Persons/things |
|---|---|
| Nominative | That |
| Objective | That |
| Possessive/Genitive | of which or whose |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He that is content is rich. –(content–adjective)
Take anything that you like.
The girl of which/whose brother studies in my class is my classmate.

दूसरे शब्दों में : Relative pronoun—'that' का प्रयोग who, whom or which के लिए होता है। लेकिन whose के लिए नहीं होता है।

**Rule (1) : Use of Relative Pronouns**

| Nominative case | Objective case | Possessive case |
|---|---|---|
| who *(कौन)* का प्रयोग | whom *(किसको)* का प्रयोग | whose *(किसका)* का प्रयोग |
| 1. मानव के लिए होता है। | 1. मानव के लिए होता है। | 1. मानव के लिए होता है। |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nominative case | Objective case | Possessive case |
|---|---|---|
| 2. God, gods, fairies (अप्सरा), angels (देवदूत) के लिए होता है। | 2. God, gods, fairies (अप्सरा), angels (देवदूत) के लिए होता है। | 2. जानवरों और निर्जीव पदार्थ के लिए होता है। |
| 3. पालतू जानवर के लिए होता है। (व्यक्ति के रूप में देखने पर) | 3. पालतू जानवर के लिए होता है। (व्यक्ति के रूप में देखने पर) | 3. (×) |

**Examples for 'who' :**

The man who is standing here is my uncle. (√)
The man whom is standing here is my uncle. (×)
The man which is standing here is my uncle. (×)
We worship God, who is the creator of the world. (√)
We worship God, whom is the creator of the world. (×)
We worship God, which is the creator of the world. (×)

**Note** : (i) who के बदले whom का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

(ii) Who का प्रयोग Nominative Case के Pronouns—I, we, you, he, they के समान होता है। इसके बाद Verb का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है।

(iii) who के बदले which का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Examples for 'whom' :**

This is the girl whom I love. (√)
This is the girl which I love. (×)
This is the Lord Krishna whom I worship. (√)
This is the Lord Krishna which I worship. (×)
This is the dog whom I love very much. (√)
This is the dog that I love very much. (×)

**Note** : (i) Whom के बदले who का प्रयोग ही ज्यादा प्रचलित है।

(ii) Whom का प्रयोग objective case के Pronouns—me, us, you, him, her, them के समान होता है। Whom के ठीक बाद Verb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। इसके बाद subject का प्रयोग होता है, तथा यह verb के object का काम करता है।

(iii) Preposition के बाद whom का प्रयोग होता है, न कि who का। जैसे—

He is the man with whom Deepak Babu lives. (√)
He is the man with who Deepak Babu lives. (×)

(iv) whom के बदले which का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Examples for 'whose' :**

This is the boy whose brother lives in Patna. (√)
This is the boy whom / which / who brother lives in Patna. (×)
This is the dog whose name is Tommy. (√)
This is the dog whom / which / who name is Tommy. (×)

**Note** : whose के बदले whom / which / who का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (2)** : Which का प्रयोग जानवरों तथा निर्जीव पदार्थों के लिए Nominative or Objective Case के Pronoun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The dog which is black is mine. (√)
The dog who / whom is black is mine. (×)
This is the car which I have bought is red. (√)
This is the car who / whom I have bought is red. (×)

**Note** : Which के बदले who / whom का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (3)** : किसी clause के लिए Relative Pronoun—which का प्रयोग होता है, न कि who, whom, that का। जैसे—

1. She has obtained eighty percent of marks, which proves that she is intelligent. (√)
2. She has obtained eighty percent of marks, who / whom / that proves that she is intelligent. (×)

ऊपर दिये गए example (1) में clause—she has obtained eighty percent of marks का प्रयोग किया गया है, जो Antecedent का काम करता है, के लिए which का प्रयोग किया गया है, जो correct है।

**Rule (4)** : Which का Possessive form—of which or whose होता है।

(A) *whose / of which + clause :*
A room whose doors are painted looks attractive. (√)
A room of which doors are painted looks attractive. (√)

(B) *With + a phrase :* जैसे—
A room with painted doors looks attractive.

**Note** : *Whose / of which + clause* के बदले with + a phrase का प्रयोग भी सामान्यतः होता है।

**Rule (5) :**

| Preposition + which | (Used of .....) | Relative Adverbs |
|---|---|---|
| (i) In which<br>On which<br>During which | Time | When |
| (ii) In which<br>At which | Place | Where |
| (iii) For which | Reason | Why |

जैसे—Monika forgot the year in which she was born. (√)
Monika forgot the year when she was born. (√)
This is the hotel at which / in which my father was staying. (√)
This is the hotel where my father was staying. (√)
He does not know the reason for which my friend was arrested. (√)
He does not know the reason why my friend was arrested. (√)

उपरोक्त examples से स्पष्ट होता है, कि—(i) In which / on which / during which जब Time (समय) को इंगित करता है, तो इसके बदले Relative Adverb—when का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(ii) In which / at which—जब place (स्थान) को denote (इंगित) करता है, तो इसके बदले Relative Adverb—where का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(iii) For which जब Reason (कारण) को denote (इंगित) करता है, तो इसके बदले Relative Adverb—why का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**Rule (6)** : That का प्रयोग Relative Pronoun के रूप में प्रायः सजीव वस्तु के लिए nominative or objective case के Pronoun के रूप में होता है। That का प्रयोग who, whom, which के बदले होता है। जैसे—

This is the teacher that taught my children. (√)
This is the teacher who taught my children. (√)
The chair that is red is mine. (√)
The chair which is red is mine. (√)
The person that I like most is my father. (√)
The person whom I like most is my father. (√)

**Rule (7)** : Comma ( , ) से separate (अलग) किये गए Relative Clause में that का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। that के बदले जरूरत के मुताबिक who, whom, which का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Mr. Prasad is a popular leader, that lives in Patna. (×)
Mr. Prasad is a popular leader, who lives in Patna. (√)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He has bought a pen, that is black. (×)
He has bought a pen, which is black. (√)

**Rule (8)** : That के Possessive के रूप में of that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, बल्कि जरूरत के मुताबिक of which or whose का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The girl of that father teaches in my school is laborious. (×)
The girl whose father teaches in my school is laborious. (√)
The pencil of that colour is black is hers. (×)
The pencil of which colour is black is hers. (√)

**Rule (9)** : 'And' से जुड़कर दो Antecedents का प्रयोग हो, जिनमें एक मनुष्य तथा दूसरा जानवर या वस्तु के लिए हो, तो इसके बाद Relative Pronoun—that का प्रयोग होता है। who, whom, which का नहीं। जैसे—

The man and his dog that I saw yesterday have been kidnapped. (√)
The man and his dog who/whom/which I saw yesterday have been kidnapped. (×)

**Rule (10)** : Everyone, Everybody, No one, No body, those के बाद सामान्यतः who का प्रयोग होता है। who के बदले that का प्रयोग भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

Everyone who/that has visited the Taj Mahal likes it. (√)
Nobody who/that watched the match will ever forget it. (√)
Everyone who/that knew him liked him. (√)

**Rule (11)** : Superlative degree के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है—who, whom, which का नहीं। जैसे—

Mr. Mishra is the most laborious man that I know. (√)
Mr. Mishra is the most laborious man whom I know. (×)

**Rule (12)** : All का प्रयोग व्यक्ति के लिए हो, तो इसके बाद who/that का प्रयोग होता है, न कि whom/which का। जैसे—

All who/that are interested to do this work can do it. (√)
All whom/which are interested to do this work can do it. (×)

**Rule (13)** : All का प्रयोग वस्तु के लिए हो, तो इसके बाद that का प्रयोग होता है—who, whom, which का नहीं। जैसे—

All that glitters is not gold. (√)
All which glitters is not gold. (×)

**Note** : (i) *All + Singular Uncountable Noun* के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

All the money that I gave her has spent. (√)
All the money which I gave her has spent. (×)

(ii) *All + Plural Countable Noun* के बाद भी that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

All the pens that I gave him are new. (√)
All the pens which I gave him are new. (×)

**Rule (14)** : Everything, nothing, the only, any, all, everyone, not, none, no, nobody, much, little, the same, the few, the little के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है—who, which, whom का नहीं। जैसे—

My father has given me everything that he had. (√)
My father has given me everything which he had. (×)
This is the only pen that I bought yesterday. (√)
This is the only pen which I bought yesterday. (×)
My wife has spent the little money that I gave her. (√)
My wife has spent the little money which I gave her. (×)
He has read the few books that I gave him. (√)
He has read the few books which I gave him. (×)

**Rule (15)** : Verb के स्पष्ट रहने पर, the same + Noun के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि Verb के अस्पष्ट (स्पष्ट नहीं) रहने पर The same + Noun के बाद As का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

This is the same man that deceived me. (√)
Verb (स्पष्ट)
This is the same man as deceived me. (×)
This is the same pen as mine (is). (√)
Verb (अस्पष्ट)
This is the same pen that mine. (×)

**Note** : (i) 'The same as' का प्रयोग 'of the same kind' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि 'the same..... that' का प्रयोग 'one and the same' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

This is not the same as that.
I played with the same bat that you did.

(ii) Such के बाद Relative pronoun—'As' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is such a man as I honour.
These mangoes are not such as I bought yesterday.

(iii) यदि 'As' के बाद Adjective का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Relative pronoun के रूप में 'As' का प्रयोग होता है। इस case में first 'As' Adverb का कार्य करता है। जैसे—

I collected as many specimens as I could find. (√)
Adv Adj R.Pron.
I collected as many specimens that I could find. (×)

**Rule (16)** : *It + Verb to be + Proper Noun* के बाद Relative Pronoun—who/whom का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है, लेकिन that के प्रयोग को better (बेहतर) माना जाता है। जैसे—

It is Mukesh who teaches my children. (√)
It is Mukesh that teaches my children. (√)

**Rule (17)** : *It + verb to be + other Nouns* के बाद Relative Pronoun—that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

It is milk that I have ordered. (√)
It is milk who/whom/which I have ordered. (×)

**Rule (18)** : *It + Verb to be + Pronoun* के बाद Relative Pronoun—that का प्रयोग होता है, तथा who का प्रयोग भी गलत नहीं होता है। जैसे—

It is he that has said so. (बेहतर होता है) (√)
It is he who has said so. (√)

**Rule (19)** : *Preposition + which/whom* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

This is the student to whom I have taught English. (√)
This is the hotel in which I stayed. (√)

**Note** : (i) लेकिन Preposition + that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

This is the student to that I have taught English. (×)
This is the hotel in that I stayed. (×)

(ii) उपरोक्त sentences का इस प्रकार भी प्रयोग किया जाता है—

This is the student to whom I have taught English. (√)
(to + whom)
This is the student whom I have taught English to. (√)
(to को अंत में रखकर)
This is the student that I have taught English to. (√)
(to को अंत में रखकर)
This is the student I have taught English to. (√)
(that के बिना)
This is the hotel in which I stayed. (In + which) (√)
This is the hotel which I stayed in. (In को अंत में रखकर) (√)
This is the hotel that I stayed in (In को अंत में रखकर) (√)
This is the hotel I stayed in. (that के बिना) (√)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


(iii) उपरोक्त sentences से यह स्पष्ट होता है, कि preposition को Verb के बाद रखने पर, Relative Pronoun—whom, which, that का प्रयोग नहीं भी किया जा सकता है।

(iv) that का possessive नहीं होता है न ही इसके पहले preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (20) :** *The + Comparative + S + Verb + ( , ) + the + Comparative + S + Verb + ( . )* की बनावट (structure) में Relative Pronoun—that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The more that we get, the more we want. (×)
The more we get, the more that we want. (×)
The more that we get, the more that we want. (×)
The more we get, the more we want. (√)

**Note :** दूसरे शब्दों में—Relative pronoun 'that' जब किसी Antecedent को refer नहीं करता है, तो इसका प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The sooner that we start, the sooner we shall arrive. (×)
The sooner we start, the sooner we shall arrive. (√)
The older that we get, the wiser we become. (×)
The older we get, the wiser we become. (√)

**Rule (21) :** *Such + a/an + Noun* या *such + a/an + Adjective + Noun* के बाद As का प्रयोग होता है—that, which, who तथा whom का नहीं। जैसे—

She is not such a beautiful girl as he expected. (√)
She is not such a beautiful girl that/which/whom/who he expected. (×)
He asked as many questions as he could. (√)
He asked as many questions which/that/who/whom he could. (×)

**Rule (22) :** Personal Pronouns—I, me it, him, her, them, ..... etc. के बदले the same का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I gave her a pen, and she gave it to Veena. (√)
I gave her a pen, and she gave the same to Veena. (×)

**Rule (23) :** Relative Pronoun के रूप में 'But' का प्रयोग होने पर, इसका अर्थ 'जो ..... नहीं' (who ..... not), 'जिसने .... नहीं, (which ..... not) होता है। इस case में 'but'–negative word के बाद प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

There was nothing but was breakable.
*अर्थ—कुछ नहीं था जो भंगुर न था*

ध्यान दें : but was breakable का अर्थ which was not breakable होता है।

There was no one but saw me.
*अर्थ—कोई नहीं था जिसने मुझे नहीं देखा*

ध्यान दें : But saw me का अर्थ who did not see होता है।

There is no Hindu but knows the story of the Ramayana.
*अर्थ—कोई हिन्दू नहीं है जो रामायण की कहानी नहीं जानता है*

ध्यान दें : But knows the story of the Ramayana का अर्थ Who does not know the story of the Ramayana होता है।

**Rule (24) :** Relative Pronoun के रूप में what का प्रयोग भी होता है। इस रूप में इसका अर्थ The thing which or that which (Singular में) तथा The things which or those which (Plural में) होता है। इसका प्रयोग वस्तु के लिए होता है। जैसे—

1. What you say is false.
(What का अर्थ = The thing which/that which)
*अर्थ— जो तुम कहते हो, झूठा/असत्य है।*

2. You can eat what you like.
(What का अर्थ = The things which/those which)
*अर्थ— तुम खा सकते हो, जो तुम पसंद करते हो।*

Example (1) में what का प्रयोग Singular sense में हुआ है तथा example (2) में what का प्रयोग Plural sense में हुआ है।

**Rule (25) :** What का प्रयोग Antecedent के लिए नहीं होता है, क्योंकि what में the thing which, the things which का अर्थ प्रजेन्ट (present) रहता है। जैसे—

He has given me the pen what I needed. (×)
He has given me the pen which/that I needed. (√)
She can take any book what she likes (×)
She can take any book that she likes. (√)

उपरोक्त sentences में The pen, any book का प्रयोग Antecedents के रूप में हुआ है, तथा इनके लिए Relative Pronoun—What का प्रयोग किया गया है, जो गलत है। जरूरत के मुताबिक which or that का प्रयोग what के बदले करना चाहिए।

**Rule (26) :** Relative Pronouns—(who, which, whom, whose, that) के पहले प्रयुक्त Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Possessive Adjectives जैसे—my, our, your, his, her, its, their का। जैसे—

Yours table that you bought yesterday is black. (×)
Poss. Adj.
The table that you bought yesterday is black. (√)

**Rule (27) :** Including, notably, mainly, especially, chiefly, namely, particularly के बाद Relative Pronouns के पहले those का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Most of the people, especially those who have committed a crime, are absent today. (with those) (√)
Most of the people, especially who have committed a crime, are absent today. (without those) (×)
All the employees, including those whom I have appointed, have gone against me. (with those) (√)
All the employees, including whom I have appointed have gone against me. (without those) (×)

**Rule (28) :** Preposition के बाद whom /which का प्रयोग हो, तो whom/which के बाद Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

This is the house in which she lives in. (×)
This is the house in which she lives. (√)
The man to whom I spoke to. (×)
The man to whom I spoke. (√)
The girls with whom I work with. (×)
The girls with whom I work. (√)

**Rule (29) :** Relative Pronoun के बाद प्रयुक्त clause में—I, we, you, he, she, it, they का प्रयोग subject के रूप में नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे—

The student who has come late he is intelligent. (×)
The student who has come late is intelligent. (√)
The book which costs Rs. 50 it is selling well. (×)
The book which costs Rs. 50 is selling well. (√)

**Rule (30) :** Antecedent तथा Relative Pronoun के बीच And का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

**Note :** Antecedent = वह Noun or Noun equivalent जो जो Relative Pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त होता है, Antecedent कहलाता है। जैसे—

He is Binay, and who is my brother. (×)
Antecedent Relative pronoun
He is Binay, who is my brother. (√)
I have a plan, and which will change your life. (×)
I have a plan, which will change your life. (√)

**Note :** लेकिन दो Relative Pronouns का प्रयोग किसी Antecedent

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



के लिए हो, तो दूसरे Relative Pronoun के पहले 'And' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Amitabh is a popular actor, who lives in Mumbai, and who wants to help the helpless. (✓)
Amitabh is a popular actor, who lives in Mumbai, who wants to help the helpless. (×)
Amitabh is a popular actor, and who lives in Mumbai, who wants to help the helpless. (×)
He is a famous teacher, who lives in Patna, and who wants to open a school for the poor. (✓)
He is a famous teacher, who lives in Patna, who wants to open a school for the poor. (×)
He is a famous teacher, and who lives in Patna, who wants to open a school for the poor. (×)

**Rule (31)** : Interrogative Pronouns जैसे— who, whom, whose, which, what के बाद Relative pronoun—'that' का प्रयोग होता है, न कि who तथा which का। जैसे—

Who is here that does not love his country ? (✓)
Who is here who does not love his country ? (×)
What is it that will last for ever ? (✓)
What is it which will last for ever ? (×)
Whose is this house that looks exceptionally beautiful ? (✓)
Whose is this house which looks exceptionally beautiful ? (×)

**Rule (32)** : यदि दो Pronoun Antecedents का प्रयोग हो तो दूसरे pronoun Antecedent के मुताबिक Relative pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I hold in high esteem everything and everybody who reminds me of my attainments. (✓)
I hold in high esteem everything and everybody which reminds me of my attainments. (×)
I hold in high esteem anybody and anything which reminds me of my attainments. (✓)
I hold in high esteem anybody and anything who reminds me of my attainments. (×)

**Rule (33)** : यदि किसी clause का प्रयोग Antecedent के रूप में हो तो Relative pronoun–which का प्रयोग होता है न कि who, whom तथा that का। जैसे—

He passed the +2 examination in 2006 with 94% marks, which proved that he was an intelligent student. (✓)
He passed the +2 examination in 2006 with 94% marks, that/who/whom proved that he was an intelligent student. (×)

## Omission of Relative Pronouns/No use of Relative Pronouns

**Rule (1)** : Relative pronoun का प्रयोग objective case में हो तथा Restrictive हो तो Relative pronoun को Sentence से हटा कर लिखा जा सकता है। जैसे—

He is the teacher that you like most.
= He is the teacher you like most.
The boy whom he struck was hurt.
= The boy he struck was hurt.

**Note** : (i) Objective case में प्रयुक्त Relative pronoun को हटाने के बाद personal pronouns (जैसे—me, us, you, him, her, them, it) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He is the teacher you like him most. (×)
He is the teacher you like most. (✓)
She is the girl I love her. (×)
She is the girl I love. (✓)

(ii) Relative Pronoun का प्रयोग objective case में हो तथा Relative pronoun के पहले preposition का प्रयोग हो तो Relative pronoun को sentence से नहीं हटाना चाहिए। जैसे—

He is the publisher about whom I was talking. (✓)
He is the publisher about I was talking. (×)
The day on which he came here was Sunday. (✓)
The day on he came here was Sunday. (×)

(iii) Verb के बाद preposition का प्रयोग कर Relative pronoun को हटा दिया जा सकता है। जैसे—

He is the publisher I was talking about.
This is the chair I sit on.

(iv) Relative pronoun का प्रयोग objective case में हो तथा continuative हो तो Relative pronoun को sentence से नहीं हटाना चाहिए। जैसे—

She is a beautiful girl, whom I love.
I have a bicycle, which is old.

(v) Which का प्रयोग objective case में हो तथा continuative हो लेकिन इसका Antecedent एक clause हो तो which को sentence से नहीं हटाया जा सकता है। जैसे—

1. He is honest, which I know.
2. She is very talented, which we know.

उपरोक्त Example (1) में clause—He is honest तथा example (2) में clause—She is very talented के लिए which का प्रयोग हुआ है जिसे नहीं हटाया जा सकता है।

**Rule (2)** : Relative pronoun का प्रयोग nominative case में हो, तो उसे sentence से नहीं हटाना चाहिए। जैसे—

He is the man who helps me. (✓)
He is the man helps me. (×)
I know the student that has abused her. (✓)
I know the student has abused her. (×)

**Rule (3)** : Relative pronoun के बाद verb 'be' का प्रयोग हो तथा verb 'be' के complement के रूप में किसी noun का प्रयोग हो तो Relative pronoun + verb 'be' को हटाया जा सकता है। इस case में verb 'be' के बाद प्रयुक्त noun— Noun in apposition के form में प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

He is Dr. D.N. Jha, who is our principal.
= He is Dr. D.N. Jha, our principal.
Mr. S. K. Jha, who is my friend, who is a good chemist.
= Mr. S. K. Jha, my friend, is a good chemist.

**Rule (4)** : Relative pronoun का प्रयोग nominative case में हो तथा इसके बाद full verb का प्रयोग हो तो Relative pronoun + full verb के बदले participle का प्रयोग होता है। ऐसा प्रयोग तब होता है जब Relative pronoun का प्रयोग Restrictive or Defining होता है। जैसे—

He knows the boy who is playing with my son.
= He knows the boy playing with my son.
Anyone who comes late will be fined.
= Anyone coming late will be fined.
All the persons who were injured in the accident were sent to hospital.
= All the persons injured in the accident were sent to hospital.

**Rule (5)** : Relative pronoun का प्रयोग nominative case में Restrictive or defining हो तथा इसके बाद verb 'be' का प्रयोग हो

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

तथा verb 'be' के बाद adjectives—available or possible का प्रयोग हो तो Relative pronoun + verb 'be' को हटाकर sentence को लिखा जा सकता है। जैसे—

He will send me all the books that are available there.
= He will send me all the books available there.

March is the only month that is possible.
= March is the only month possible.

**Rule (6) :** यदि एक Antecedent के लिए nominative case के दो Relative pronouns का प्रयोग हो, तो दूसरे Relative pronoun को हटा कर sentence को लिखा जा सकता है। जैसे—

He has invited Dr. Yamuna, who lives in Delhi and who comes here once a year.
= He has invited Dr. Yamuna, who lives in Delhi and comes here once a year.

I live in a house, which belongs to a naughty woman and which does not look very beautiful.
= I live in a house, which belongs to a naughty woman and does not look very beautiful.

**Rule (7) :** Relative pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त Antecedent के साथ Apostrophe 's' ['s] or Apostrophe [']' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। बल्कि of का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

These are the principal's orders which must be obeyed. (×)
These are the orders of the principal which must be obeyed. (√)
He went to Mohan's house who is my friend. (×)
He went to the house of Mohan who is my friend. (√)

## Omission of the Antecedent

**Rule (1) :** कभी-कभी (sometimes) Relative pronoun के पहले Antecedent को नहीं लिखा जा सकता है अर्थात छोड़ दिया जाता है। जैसे—

Who works not shall not eat.
= (He who) who works not shall not eat.

Whom the gods love, die young.
= (Those persons whom) whom the gods love, die young.

This is what he wanted.
= This is (the thing that) what he wanted.

Who laughs last laughs best.
= (He who) who laughs last laughs best.

## Agreement of the Relative pronoun and its Antecedent

**Rule (1) :** Relative pronoun अपने Antecedent के number, person तथा gender के मुताबिक Agree (सहमत) होता है।

अर्थात Relative pronoun के बाद verb का प्रयोग, Relative pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त Antecedent के number, person तथा gender के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

I, who am your leader, will lead you.
Ante. R. Pron. S.V.

The boy who was lazy was punished.
A R.Pron. S.V.

The boys who were lazy were punished.
A R.Pron P.V.

He, that is down, needs fear no fall.
A R.Pron. S.V.

They, who live in glass houses, should not throw stones.

You, who are rich, should help the poor.
A R.Pron. P.V.

The flowers, which grow in our gardens, are not for sale.
A R.Pron. P.V.

They, who are honest, are trusted.
A R.Pron. P.V.

**Rule (2) :** किसी clause में Relative pronoun का case verb के साथ Relative pronoun का कैसा relation है, पर निर्भर करता है। जैसे—

Shyam is the boy who did it.
Shyam is the boy whom I want.
Shyam is the boy whose pen I have.
Shyam is the boy to whom I spoke.
He whom we worship, by whose gift we live, is the Lord.

**Note :** (i) यदि Relative pronoun के पहले one of the + plural noun or plural pronoun का प्रयोग हो तो plural noun or plural pronoun के मुताबिक Relative pronoun के बाद Verb, Pronoun, Adjective तथा अन्य का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात plural Verb, plural Pronoun तथा plural Adjective का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Ashoka is one of the noblest kings that have ever lived. (√)
P.N. P.V.

Ashoka is one of the noblest kings that has ever lived. (×)
P.N. S.V.

This is one of the best novels that have been published this year. (√)
P.N. P.V.

This is one of the best novels that has been published this year. (×)
P.N. S.V.

I am one of those that love their fellow men. (√)
P.Pron. P.V.

I am one of those that loves their fellow men. (×)
P.Pron S.V.

This is one of the most useful proposals that have ever been made. (√)
P.N. P.V.

This is one of the most useful proposals that has ever been made. (×)
P.N. S.V.

He is one of the greatest leaders that have ever lived. (√)
P.N. P.V.

He is one of the greatest leaders that has ever lived. (×)
P.N. S.V.

(ii) यदि Relative pronoun के पहले the only one of + plural noun/plural pronoun का प्रयोग हो तो one के मुताबिक Relative pronoun के बाद singular verb, singular pronoun तथा singular adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि plural verb, plural pronoun तथा plural adjective का। जैसे—

This is the only one of his novels that is worth reading. (√)
S.V.

अर्थ—Of his novels this is the only one that is worth reading.

This is the only one of his novels that are worth reading. (×)
P.V.

This is the only one of his paintings that is remarkable. (√)

अर्थ—Of his paintings this is the only one that is remarkable.

This is the only one of his paintings that are remarkable. (×)
P.V.

## Position of the Relative Pronoun

**Rule (1) :** Relative pronoun का position Antecedent के समीप/नजदीक होता है। जैसे—

The girl who comes first in English is the daughter of my neighbour, Mrs. Jha.

The boy who did this is the brother of my friend Mr. Prasad.

**Note :** Relative pronoun को अपने Antecedent से separate कर इस प्रकार लिखा जाता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The girl is the daughter of my neighbour, Mrs.Jha, who comes first in English.
The boy is the brother of my friend, Mr. Prasad, who did this.

इन वाक्यों को देखें : जैसे—
The girl who died here was the daughter of Mr. Gupta.
अर्थ—लड़की जो यहाँ मर गई मि. गुप्ता की बेटी थी।

The girl was the daughter of Mr. Gupta who died here.
अर्थ—लड़की मि. गुप्ता की बेटी थी जो यहाँ मर गई।

उपरोक्त Examples में Relative pronoun who को उसके Antecedent-the girl के बिल्कुल करीब रखने से उसका क्या अर्थ निकला तथा Relative pronoun का स्थान बदलने पर उसका क्या अर्थ निकला ध्यान देकर समझने की कोशिश करें।

## Compound Relative Pronouns

वे Pronouns (जैसे—who, which, what) जिसके last (अंत) में ever, so, so ever लगा रहता है Compound Relative pronouns कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Whoever, who so, whosoever; whichever, whichsoever; whatever, whatsoever

**Rule (1) :** Compound Relative Pronouns जैसे—whoever, whosoever; whichever, whichsoever; whatever, whatsoever ..... etc. के पहले Antecedent का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Whoever comes late will be punished. (✓)
[whoever का अर्थ 'any and every person who' होता है।]
The person whoever comes late will be punished. (×)
You can do whatever you like. (✓)
[whatever का अर्थ any or every person that / any or every thing that होता है।]
You can do the thing whatever you like. (×)
I have asked him to take whichever he likes. (✓)
[whichever का अर्थ any which or any that होता है]
I have asked him to take the thing whichever he likes. (×)

**Note :** whomsoever का प्रयोग भी compound relative pronoun के रूप में होता है। इसके पहले भी Antecedent का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I will take with me whomsoever you choose. (✓)
I will take with me the person whomsoever you choose. (×)

## Relative pronouns are used to join together two separate sentences :

| Separate Sentences | Combined Sentences |
|---|---|
| 1. Suman stood first in the C.B.S.E. He is my son. | 1. Suman, who stood first in the C.B.S.E., is my son. |
| 2. Mr. Thakur will never trust you. You have cheated him. | 2. Mr. Thakur, whom you have cheated, will never trust you. |
| 3. He is Mr. Pathak. His son won the first prize in English. | 3. He is Mr. Pathak whose son won the first prize in English. |
| 4. This is the house. Vijay built it. | 4. This is the house that Vijay built. |
| 5. An old farmer had a goose. The goose laid a golden egg everyday. | 5. An old farmer had a goose which laid a golden egg everyday. |
| 6. Here is the book. You lost the book yesterday. | 6. Here is the book that you lost yesterday. |
| 7. This is the horse. It won the race. | 7. This is the horse which won the race. |
| 8. The picture was painted by my sister. It is on the wall. | 8. The picture, which is on the wall, was painted by my sister. |
| 9. This is the man. His leg was broken in an accident. | 9. This is the man whose leg was broken in an accident. |
| 10. This is the boy. The head master gave him a prize. | 10. This is the boy whom the headmaster gave a prize. |

## Combination of the two sentences using with Relative pronouns

**Rule (1) :** Relative Pronoun 'who' का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार join or combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है। जैसे—

**Type I :** There is the man. He repaired our T.V. set.
There is the man who repaired our T.V. set.
These are the soldiers. They won the Paramvir Chakra.
These are the soldiers who won the Paramvir Chakra.

**Type II :** The boy fell off his bicycle. He has hurt his leg.
The boy who fell off his bicycle has hurt his leg.
The boys clapped heartily. They were watching the game.
The boys, who were watching the game, clapped heartily.

**Rule (2) :** Relative pronoun—'whom' का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार join or combine किया जाता है। जैसे—

**Type I :** Our new neighbours invited us to tea. We like them very much.
Our new neighbours, whom we like very much, invited us to tea.

**Rule (3) :** Relative Pronoun 'which' का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार join or combine किया जाता है। जैसे—

**Type I :** This is the picture. It was painted by my sister.
This is the picture which was painted by my sister.
This is the building. It was built in a single month.
This is the building which was built in a single month.

**Type II :** The watch has been found. It was stolen yesterday.
The watch, which was stolen yesterday, has been found.

**Rule (4) :** Relative pronoun 'whose' का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार join or combine किया जाता है। जैसे—

The girls are staying with us. Their parents are abroad.
The girls, whose parents are abroad, are staying with us.
This is the woman. Her child was hurt.
This is the woman whose child was hurt.

**Rule (5) :** Relative pronoun 'that' का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार join or combine किया जाता है। जैसे—

**Type I :** This is the building. Mr. Thakur built it.
This is the building that Mr. Thakur built.
Here is the notebook. You lost the notebook yesterday.
Here is the notebook that you lost yesterday.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Practice Set–7

**Based on Relative Pronouns :**

Q. 1. *Pick out the relative pronouns in the following sentences, tell the case of each and mention its antecedent :*

1. We met the girls who were rewarded.
2. Bring me the letters which the postman left.
3. The students who were lazy were punished.
4. The pen that you gave me is a very good one.
5. The answer which you gave is not right.
6. They also serve who only stand and wait.
7. He knows the woman whose child was hurt.
8. Here is the book that you lent me.
9. This is the house that Jack built.
10. Mr. Thakur hates the children who throw stones at birds.
11. He has not brought the book that I asked for.
12. Vikas saw the man who had been hurt.
13. This is the beggar whom we saw yesterday.
14. The cat killed the rat that ate the corn.
15. Show me the mobile set that you have bought.
16. We met the sailors whose ship was wrecked.
17. The flowers which grow in our garden are not for sale.
18. He that is contented is happy.
19. They that seek wisdom will be wise.
20. The moment which is lost is lost for ever.
21. It was not for nothing that he helped her.
22. The news which I received upset me.
23. These are the boys whom the headmaster praised.
24. I mean what I say.
25. These are the girls whose exercises are done badly.
26. The wisest man that ever lived made mistakes.
27. He who hesitates is lost.
28. The man who is honest is trusted.
29. Dogs soon know the persons by whom they are kindly treated.
30. You, who are mighty, should be merciful.

Q. 2. *Fill in the blanks with suitable relative pronouns :*

1. This is the beggar ..... stole my suitcase.
2. I, ..... am your teacher, will teach you.
3. This is the horse ..... won the race.
4. I don't believe ..... you say.
5. He plays the game ..... he likes best.
6. My uncle, ..... I loved, is dead.
7. They always talk ..... never think.
8. They ..... touch pitch will be defiled.
9. I gave it to the man ..... I saw there.
10. He is a man ..... you can trust.
11. The answer ..... she gave is wrong.
12. They never fail ..... die in a great cause.
13. The children ..... were there were frightened.
14. It is only donkeys ..... bray.
15. Man is the only animal ..... can talk.
16. Such a man ..... he should be honoured.
17. God helps those ..... help themselves.
18. Do the same ..... I do.
19. Take anything ..... you like.
20. My answer is the same ..... yours is.
21. Truth provokes those ..... it does not convert.
22. Only he ..... bears the burden knows its weight.
23. When you speak to him remember to ..... you are speaking.
24. He is not such a clever boy ..... you are.
25. He is one of the greatest leaders ..... have ever lived.
26. I know the woman ..... child was hurt.
27. Much ..... she has read is of no use in the examination.
28. There is nothing ..... would interest you.
29. This is the bicycle ..... I bought last year.
30. I have lost the watch ..... you gave me.
31. We always like men ..... speak the truth.
32. They saw the dog ..... worried the cat.
33. He has gone to Muzaffarpur ..... is his birth place.
34. He has seen the bird ..... you describe.
35. He does not know the man ..... hit the boy.
36. There is no one ..... has not lost a friend.
37. Most people get ..... they deserve.
38. Is this the road ..... leads to the station ?
39. I shall do the same ..... he did.
40. Where is the notebook ..... I gave you.
41. Here is the book ..... you lent me yesterday.
42. He has a daughter ..... he loves very much.
43. A man ..... eyesight is poor can not play badminton well.
44. A man ..... has poor eyesight can not play badminton well.
45. The snake ..... bit you has been killed.
46. These are the knives ..... are made of steel.
47. The boy .....you met is my brother.
48. The house in ..... I live is a good one.
49. These are the books ..... I have read.
50. This is the box ..... I bought yesterday.

Q. 3. *Correct the following sentences :*

1. I met a man which was riding on an ass.
2. The girl whom is carrying the basket is my classmate.
3. This is the man that son stood first.
4. He prayeth best whom loveth best.
5. I know cats which intelligence is almost equal to men's.
6. My old horse, which is faithful to me, has more sense than m men.
7. The time who is once lost is lost for ever.
8. The dog who bit him has been shot.
9. He is the best speaker whom I ever heard.
10. Who is here who does not love his country.
11. Who am I whom I should object.
12. Man is the only animal who laughs.
13. You may take any pen which you like.
14. He is the same man who came here yesterday.
15. All which glitters is not gold.
16. It was not for nothing which he spent five years studyi medicine.
17. He gave me just that I deserved.
18. Listen carefully to whom I say.
19. She found which she was looking for.
20. He is not such a clever student that you are.
21. Tears such that angels weep flowed.
22. These mangoes are not such that I bought yesterday.
23. This is not the same book that mine.
24. He which is the youngest comes last.
25. He which is down, needs fear no fall.
26. This is one of the best books who have been published t year.
27. This is one of the most useful proposals that has ever be made.
28. This is the only one of his paintings which is remarkable.
29. This is the only one of his books that are worth reading.
30. The girl is my neighbour's daughter, Manali, who comes fro English.
31. He is the man with whom I can live with safely.
32. His shirt which he bought yesterday is beautiful.
33. She is Veena, and who is my wife.
34. The student who has come late he is laborious.
35. Most of the students, especially who have not paid their fe are absent today.
36. The boy of that father works in my office is mad.
37. He likes everybody and everything which is simple.
38. It is reckless driving which causes accidents.
39. Veena has spent the little money which she borrowed fr him.
40. The man and his dog which passed through this road w killed.
41. There is no man who wishes to live.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


42. I have never had such a time that the present.
43. He found which he was looking for.
44. What is it which troubles you so much ?
45. All is not gold which glitters.
46. He was the most eloquent speaker which I ever heard.
47. The books which help you most are those who make you think most.
48. This is the man whom son is an IITian.
49. He failed in which he attempted.
50. The man whom had cheated me was yesterday arrested by the police.

Q. 4. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. The man (1)/who they thought (2)/to be a gentleman (3)/is a rogue. (4)/No error (5)
2. This is (1)/one of the best suggestions (2)/which have ever been (3)/made by you. (4)/No error (5)
3. This is (1)/the only one of his comments (2)/that (3)/deserve our attention. (4)/No error (5)
4. This is (1)/not such treatment (2)/that (3)/I expected. (4)/No error (5)
5. May I (1)/know (2)/who you want (3)/to see please. (4)/No error (5)
6. A woman can do (1)/everything (2)/what a man (3)/can do. (4)/No error (5)
7. She told him that (1)/she didn't want to marry him, (2)/what in my opinion (3)/was very silly of her. (4)/No error (5)
8. Those applicants (1)/which the selection committee recommends (2)/for interview (3)/should be contacted without delay. (4)/No error (5)
9. She is (1)/one of the few people (2)/whom I think (3)/might be good at the job. (4)/No error (5)
10. Students (1)/which fail the exam (2)/have to take (3)/the course again. (4) No error (5)
11. Mr. Thakur (1)/likes music (2)/who helps me (3)/to relax. (4)/No error. (5)
12. Whomever (1)/will violate (2)/these rules of law (3)/shall be punished. (4)/No error (5)
13. I will (1)/take with me (2)/whosoever (3)/you choose. (4)/No error (5)
14. There is (1)/no man (2)/who knows (3)/these things. (4)/No error (5)
15. What (1)/is there (2)/that (3)/I do not know ? (4)/No error (5)
16. I hate (1)/everybody and everything who (2)/reminds me (3)/of my mistakes. (4)/No error (5)
17. The terrorist (1)/which was chained (2)/grumble at the D.S.P. (3)/who was taking him to prison. (4)/No error (5)
18. This is the same (1)/dog which barked (2)/at my son but fortunately did not (3)/bite him. (4)/No error (5)
19. I (1)/don't like (2)/that you told (3) my mother last night. (4)/No error (5)
20. Don't respect (1)/such persons (2)/who have no respect (3)/ for elders. (4)/No error (5)
21. The only person (1)/who can read and write (2)/English well (3)/is my friend. (4)/No error (5)
22. It is (1)/difficult to say (2)/who is the better (3)/of the two brothers. (4)/No error (5)
23. It (1)/is the best (2)/which we can do (3)/in the present circumstances. (4)/No error (5)
24. An old man (1)/had four sons (2)/whom he loved (3)/very much. (4)/No error (5)
25. He (1)/bought a house (2)/the price of which (3)/was five lakh rupees. (4)/No error (5)

Q. 5. *Join or combine each pair of sentences using who or which :*

1. These are the books. I bought them yesterday.
2. Here are the pens. I found them yesterday.
3. We all liked the song. Lata sang it.
4. Show her the road. It leads to the station.
5. She met a man. He was very cruel.
6. The spectators cheered the player. He scored the goal.
7. Here is the doctor. He cured me of malaria.
8. These are the persons. They fought for their country's freedom.
9. We met a stranger. He had a pistol.
10. The girl was lazy. The teacher punished the girl.
11. The infant was ill. The infant is better now.
12. The man has been arrested. He broke into our house last week.
13. He said something. I did not hear it.
14. The story was written by Mr. Gupta. It won the first prize.
15. My grandmother is dead. I loved my grandmother.

Q. 6. *Join or combine each pair of sentences into one sentence, using who, whose, whom, which or that :*

1. Aditya is an intelligent boy. He is my son.
2. The students were punished. They were lazy.
3. The man has been killed in an accident. He came here yesterday.
4. This is the man. His courage saved us.
5. He does his best. He should be praised.
6. The publisher is honest. The publisher is trusted.
7. The principal sent for the peon. The peon came at once.
8. The Japaneses are brave people. They were defeated by the Americans.
9. Napoleon died at St. Helena. The French honoured him.
10. Wellington was a great general. He defeated Napoleon at the Battle of Waterloo.
11. We met a woman. The woman had lost her way.
12. Shakespeare is famous. He wrote some fine dramas.
13. He is a rogue. No one trusts him.
14. The Author was born in this village. His works are widely known.
15. A new girl joined our class today. Her father is a doctor.
16. The leader of the gang was caught. We had recognised him.
17. Patna is the capital of Bihar. It stands on the Ganga.
18. The witness was praised by the judge. His evidence was given very clearly.
19. Those apples were very sweet. You bought them.
20. The sailors thanked us. We rescued them.
21. The elephant was blind. We saw the elephant.
22. Coal is found in Bengal. It is a very useful mineral.
23. The man is a cheat. He is standing at the gate.
24. I saw a soldier. He had lost an arm.
25. Once upon a time there lived a king. The king was very powerful and cruel.
26. Here is the pen. You lost it yesterday.
27. Unfortunately he took the road. It led in the wrong direction.
28. They heard some news. The news astonished them.
29. The Taj Mahal was built by Shahjahan. It is the finest tomb in the world.
30. Dadabhai Naoroji was the first Indian to enter the British Parliament. He was a Parsee.

Q. 7. *Join together each of the following pairs of sentences by means of a connective or relative pronoun. :*

1. This is the house. It was built in a single year.
2. The letter reached me this afternoon. You sent the letter.
3. Binay is always idle. He was punished.
4. I met my friend. He had just arrived.
5. The girl is my girl friend. You see her there.
6. He heard a song. The song pleased him.
7. Here is a book. The book contains pictures.
8. I got into a bus. It was full of passengers.
9. The student was very proud. He had won the first prize.
10. The captain praised Tendulkar. Tendulkar's bowling was very good.
11. He has a classmate. He is a clever artist.
12. Delhi is the capital of India. It stands on the Yamuna.
13. Our friends have not failed us. We trusted them completely.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

14. This is the cat. It killed the rat.
15. Those oranges were very sweet. You bought them.
16. He is a well-known publisher. His generosity is the talk of the town.
17. Give me the duster. The duster is on the table.
18. The students tell lies. He deserves to be punished.
19. The meeting was a great successful. It was held in the Town Hall.
20. Last year we visited the Moti Maszid. It is a mosque of great architectural beauty.

## Answers With Explanation

Q.1.

1. Who—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – girls है।
2. Which—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – letters है।
3. Who—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – Students है।
4. That—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent–Pen है।
5. Which—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – Answer है।
6. Who—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसके Antecedent का कार्य – they करता है।
7. Whose—Possessive Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent–woman है।
8. That—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent–book है।
9. That—Objective case का Relative pronoun है इसका Antecedent–house है।
10. Who—Nominative Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent–children है।
11. That—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent–book है।
12. Who—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – man है।
13. Whom—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – beggar है।
14. That—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – rat है।
15. That—Objective case का Relative pronoun और इसका Antecedent–mobile set है।
16. Whose—Possessive case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – sailors है।
17. Which—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – flowers है।
18. That—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – he है। contented–adjective है।
19. That—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – they है।
20. Which—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – moment है।
21. That—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent–nothing है।
22. Which—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – news है।
23. Whom—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – boys है।
24. What—Objective case का Relative pronoun है इसका कोई Antecedent नहीं होता है। what – that which/the thing which के अर्थ में सिर्फ एक के लिए Relative pronoun के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है।
25. Whose—Possessive case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – girls है।
26. That—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – man है।
27. Who—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – he है।
28. Who—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – man है।
29. Whom—Objective case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – persons है।
30. Who—Nominative case का Relative pronoun है और इसका Antecedent – you है।

Q. 2.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. who/that | 2. who | 3. which | 4. what |
| 5. which | 6. whom | 7. who | 8. that |
| 9. whom | 10. that/whom | 11. which/that | 12. who |
| 13. who | 14. that | 15. that | 16. as |
| 17. who | 18. as | 19. that | 20. as |
| 21. whom | 22. that | 23. whom | 24. as |
| 25. that | 26. whose | 27. that | 28. that |
| 29. which/that | 30. which/that | 31. who | 32. which |
| 33. which | 34. which | 35. who | 36. that |
| 37. what | 38. which | 39. as | |
| 40. which/that | 41. which/that | 42. whom | 43. whose |
| 44. who | 45. which | 46. which/that | 47. whom |
| 48. which | 49. which/that | 50. which/that. | |

**Note** : (i) Defile (vi)—पंक्ति में चलना; (vt) —to make dirty, to pollute–(दूषित/अपवित्र/गंदा करना)

(ii) Pitch (n)—ऊँचाई, हदद, चढ़ाव

(iii) Provoke (v)—to excite/irritate/instigate/allure—उत्तेजित करना, क्रोध दिलाना, उसकाना, चिढ़ाना, ललचाना

Q. 3.

1. I met a man who was riding on an ass.
2. The girl who is carrying the basket is my classmate.
3. This is the man whose son stood first.
4. He prayeth best who loveth best.
5. I know cats whose intelligence is almost equal to men's.
6. My old horse, who is faithful to me, has more sense than many men.
7. The time which is once lost is lost for ever.
8. The dog which bit him has been shot.
9. He is the best speaker that I ever heard.
10. Who is here that does not love his country.
11. Who am I that I should object.
12. Man is the only animal that laughs.
13. You may take any pen that you like.
14. He is the same man that came here yesterday.
15. All that glitters is not gold.
16. It was not for nothing that he spent five years studying medicine.
17. He gave me just what I deserved.
18. Listen carefully to what I say.
19. She found what she was looking for.
20. He is not such a clever student as you are.
21. Tears such as angels weep flowed.
22. These mangoes are not such as I bought yesterday.
23. This is not the same book as mine.
24. He who is the youngest comes last.
25. He that is down, needs fear no fall.
26. This is one of the best books that have been published this year.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



27. This is one of the most useful proposals that have ever been made.
28. This is the only one of his paintings that is remarkable.
29. This is the only one of his books that is worth reading.
30. The girl is the daughter of my neighbour, Manali, who comes first in English.
31. He is the man with whom I can live safely.
32. The shirt which he bought yesterday is beautiful.
33. She is Veena, who is my wife.
34. The student who has come late is laborious.
35. Most of the students, especially those who have not paid their fees, are absent today.
36. The boy whose father works in my office is mad.
37. He likes everybody and everything that is simple.
38. It is reckless driving that causes accidents.
39. Veena has spent the little money that she borrowed from him.
40. The man and his dog that passed through this road were killed.
41. There is no man but wishes to live.
42. I have never had such a time as the present.
43. He found what he was looking for.
44. What is it that troubles you so much ?
45. All is not gold that glitters.
46. He was the most eloquent speaker that I ever heard.
47. The books which help you most are those which make you think most.
48. This is the man whose son is an IITian.
49. He failed in what he attempted.
50. The man who had cheated me was yesterday arrested by the police.

Q. 4.

1. (2) who की जगह whom का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (3) which की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (4) deserve की जगह deserves का प्रयोग होगा। the only one of + Poss. Adj + P.N. के बाद Relative pronoun that का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है।
4. (3) that की जगह as का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि such के बाद Relative pronoun के रूप as का प्रयोग होता है।
5. (3) who की जगह whom का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (3) what की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (3) what की जगह which का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (2) which की जगह whom का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (3) whom की जगह who/that का प्रयोग होगा। nominative relative pronoun के रूप में व्यक्ति के लिए who/that का प्रयोग होता है।
10. (2) which की जगह who/that का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (3) who की जगह which/that का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (1) whomever की जगह whomsoever का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (3) whosoever की जगह whomsoever का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (3) who की जगह but का प्रयोग होगा। But का प्रयोग Relative pronoun के रूप में negative word के बाद who ..... not or which ..... not के अर्थ में होता है। यहाँ But का अर्थ who does not है जो वाक्य के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करता है।
15. (5) Given sentence correct है।
Interrogative word 'what' के बाद Relative pronoun that का प्रयोग होता है।
16. (2) who की जगह which का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (2) which की जगह who का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (2) which की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा। verb के स्पष्ट रहने पर, the same के बाद Relative pronoun that का प्रयोग होता है।
19. (3) that की जगह what का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (3) who की जगह as का प्रयोग होगा। such के बाद Relative pronoun as का प्रयोग होता है।
21. (2) who की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा। the only के बाद Relative pronoun 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।
22. (3) who की जगह which का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (3) which की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (5) Given sentence correct है।
25. (5) Given sentence correct है।

**Note :** Q 5, 6, 7 को Relative Pronouns का प्रयोग कर छात्रगण स्वतः स्वविवेकानुसार combine करें।

## 8. Interrogative Pronouns

वे Pronouns जो प्रश्न पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं, Interrogative pronouns कहलाते हैं। जैसे—Who, whom, whose, which, what

**Rule (1) :**

| Subject *(कर्ता)* | Object *(कर्म)* | Possessive *(सम्बन्ध)* |
|---|---|---|
| who | whom | whose |
| *कौन* | *किसे* | *किसका* |

जैसे—(A) Who का प्रयोग subject का पता करने के लिए होता है।

The children are playing cricket.
Who are playing cricket. ? (✓)
Whom are playing cricket ? (×)
Whose are playing cricket ? (×)

(B) Whom का प्रयोग object का पता करने के लिए होता है।

He has invited his friends.
Whom has he invited ? (✓)
Who has he invited ? (×)
Whose has he invited ? (×)

(C) Whose का प्रयोग मालिक का पता करने के लिए होता है।

That car is mine.
Whose is that car ? (✓)
Who is that car ? (×)
Whom is that car ? (×)

**Rule (2) :** *Preposition + whom* का प्रयोग होता है, लेकिन Preposition + who का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

By whom was the Ramayana written ? (✓)
By who was the Ramayana written ? (×)
To whom are you talking ? (✓)
To who are you talking ? (×)

**Note :** लेकिन Preposition का प्रयोग sentence के अंत (last) में करने/होने पर who का प्रयोग sentence के starting (स्टार्टिंग—प्रारंभ) में होता है—यह प्रचलित है। जैसे—

Who was the Ramayana written by ? (✓)
Who are you talking to ? (✓)

**Rule (3) :** Which का प्रयोग subject (कर्ता) तथा object का पता करने के लिए होता है। इसका प्रयोग चुनाव (selection), विकल्प (choice) के लिए भी होता है। जैसे—

Which is your book ?
Subject

Which of these pens do you like most ?
Object ← Verb

**Rule (4) :** What (क्या) का प्रयोग subject तथा object का पता करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

What have you bought today ?
Object Verb

What is your father ?
Subject Verb

**Note :** (i) What का प्रयोग निर्जीव संज्ञा (वस्तुओं या कार्यों) के लिए होता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



What is there ?
What has happened ?

(ii) What का प्रयोग व्यक्ति के पेशे या पद का पता लगाने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

What is he ?
What are you ?

(iii) Which तथा what के साथ preposition का प्रयोग sentence के last में होता है। जैसे—

Which house do you live in ?
Which book are you looking for ?
What train will you go by ?
What year was he born in ?
What is he laughing at ?

लेकिन आजकल preposition + which का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

In which house do you live ?
In which school do you read ?

(iv) Interrogative pronouns का प्रयोग indirect questions के लिए भी होता है। जैसे—

I asked who she was.
Tell me what you have written.

(v) Which, what or whose का प्रयोग Interrogative Adjectives के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Which book are you reading ?
What books have you read ?
Whose pen is this ?

(vi) Who ever, which ever तथा whatever का प्रयोग compound interrogative pronouns के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Whoever told you so ?
Whatever are you doing ?

**Note :** (i) whoever (pron.)—जो कोई भी, जो भी

(ii) whichever (pron. / adj.)—कोई भी, दो में से कोई, कोई परवाह नहीं, चाहे कोई सी भी, अनेकों में से कोई सा एक

(iii) whichsoever (pron. / adj.)—जो कोई

(iv) whatever (pron.)—कुछ परवाह नहीं की, सारा, तमाम, जो चाहे, सब कुछ जो

(v) whatever (adj.)—जो कुछ भी; किसी भी प्रकार का, सब का सब, सारा; चाहे किसी भी प्रकार का

(vi) whatsoever (adj.)—जैसा भी, जो कुछ भी, किसी तरह का से

(vii) whatsoever (pron.)—जो कुछ

(viii) whatsoever (adv.)—किसी भी तरह का कुछ नहीं

(ix) whomever (Pron.)—जो कोई, जो भी

(x) whomsoever (Pron.)—जिस किसी को भी

## Practice Set–8

**Based on Interrogative Pronouns :**

Q. 1. *Fill in the blanks with correct form of the interrogative pronouns:*

1. ..... do you want ?
2. ..... are you ?
3. Of ..... do you speak ?
4. ..... shall we eat ?
5. ..... did she say ?
6. To ..... did you give the key ?
7. By ..... was the book written ?
8. ..... of the women can sew the best ?
9. ..... have you seen ?
10. ..... came here yesterday ?
11. ..... did this ?
12. ..... of you did this ?
13. ..... books have you read this year ?
14. ..... is this book.
15. I don't know ..... is there.
16. Ask ..... he wants.
17. Say ..... you would like best.
18. ..... is the matter ?
19. Of ..... do you speak ?
20. To ..... were you speaking ?
21. ..... did you see ?
22. ..... is knocking at the door ?
23. ..... is this umbrella ?
24. ..... do you see ?
25. ..... goes there ?
26. ..... do you prefer ?
27. ..... gave you that book ?
28. ..... do you prefer tea or coffee ?
29. ..... of these books is yours ?
30. ..... is sweeter than honey ?

### Answers

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Q. 1. | 1. what | 2. who | 3. whom | 4. what |
| | 5. what | 6. whom | 7. whom | 8. which |
| | 9. what | 10. who | 11. who | 12. which |
| | 13. what | 14. whose | 15. who | 16. what |
| | 17. which | 18. what | 19. whom | 20. whom |
| | 21. whom | 22. who | 23. whose | 24. whom |
| | 25. who | 26. which | 27. who | 28. which |
| | 29. which | 30. what | | |

## 9. Exclamatory Pronoun

What का प्रयोग sense of surprise को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

What ! you don't know Krishna.

## Practice Set–9

Q. 1. *Pick out the Pronouns and state their kinds :*

1. This is my pen and that is yours.
2. Let us dance together.
3. You yourself go there.
4. Someone has stolen my pen.
5. One should keep one's promises.
6. One of them was ready to sacrifice his life.
7. He introduced himself to the S.P.
8. Everyone of them was laborious.
9. You and he have done this work.
10. I believe that it was he.
11. Your cat is black and mine is white.
12. These are his pens.
13. Where are you going, Mukesh ?
14. The town itself is not very large.
15. The elephant hurt herself.
16. One must not praise oneself.
17. If anybody knows the truth, let him tell it.
18. Either of you can go.
19. Each of the girls gets a prize.
20. I have found the pen which I had lost.
21. The man who is honest is trusted.
22. He is such a man as I honour.
23. There is no man but wishes to live.
24. My problem is the same as yours.
25. Suresh is the boy whose pencil I have.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


Q. 2. *Fill in the blanks with suitable Pronouns given in the brackets.*

1. He is as good as ..... *(I, me)*
2. Beween you and ..... I do not believe him. *(I, me)*
3. Neha and ..... were present in the class. *(I, me)*
4. I know it was ..... *(she, hers)*
5. These mangoes are rotten, throw ..... away. *(they, them)*
6. I gave ..... a rupee and she thanked ..... for ..... *(her/hers, me/her, it/them)*
7. Nobody but ..... deserved the prize. *(she/her)*
8. He is taller than ..... *(I, me)*
9. Let ..... who can save him from drowning. *(he, him)*
10. They are not so rich as ..... *(we, us)*
11. It was ..... who saved us. *(he, his)*
12. We enjoyed ..... on the river. *(ourself, ourselves)*
13. The queen ..... gave the prize. *(herself, itself)*
14. You are starving ..... *(yourself, myself)*
15. I posted the letter ..... *(myself, itself)*
16. By ..... was this novel written ? *(who, whom)*
17. ..... of these pens will you take ? *(which, whose)*
18. ..... do you want ? *(who, what)*
19. The climate of Patna is better than ..... of Gaya. *(that, those)*
20. One must not praise ..... achievements. *(his, one's)*
21. The two brothers quarrelled with ..... *(each other, one another)*
22. He did not buy ..... of the three pens. *(either, any)*
23. This is the beggar ..... stole my bag. *(who, whom)*
24. Man is the only animal ..... can talk. *(that, which)*
25. ..... is a developing country. *(our, ours)*

Q. 3. *Fill in the blanks with suitable Pronouns :*

1. Wait for Binay and ..... .
2. Ganga is as old as ..... .
3. Veena and ..... went to the cinema together.
4. This box belongs to me, it is ..... .
5. That house belongs to you, it is ..... .
6. These tables belong to Mukesh; they are ..... .
7. These frocks belong to Bhavna; they are ..... .
8. This school belongs to us; it is ..... .
9. ..... and ..... got equal marks.
10. Sweta gave ..... an ice cream and I gave her some toffees.
11. He came here with Rekha and ..... .
12. He told Mohan and ..... to go with ..... .
13. The king ..... was present.
14. We often talk to ..... .
15. Boys, you will hurt ..... .
16. She ..... says so.
17. She laughed at ..... .
18. They ..... are to blame.
19. Do the same ..... I do.
20. I know the man ..... child was hurt.
21. This is the horse ... won the race.
22. Here is the book ..... you lost yesterday.
23. The teacher told ..... to open their books.
24. Give ..... the book from the library.
25. My wife cannot go out because ..... is ill.

Q. 4. *Correct the sentences :*

1. This is a new book, but that is old ones.
2. These are new books, but those are old one.
3. Your shirt is white, but my one is black.
4. His coats are new, but your ones are old.
5. He has seen any of you there.
6. Mr. Thakur did not see some of them there.
7. We must do anything for the country.
8. He must not do something for us.
9. The man which lives here is my friend.
10. She has bought a car, who is black.
11. He is the dancer who we admire.
12. A figure which four sides are equal is called a square.
13. Amar is my friend, who I have seen today.
14. The dog who barked at him did not bite him.
15. She is the girl about who I was talking.
16. We want to leave the house whom we rented last month.
17. He forgot the year in whose he was born.
18. All which glitters is not gold.
19. He is the most inteiligent teacher whom I know.
20. This is the same student who cheated me.
21. My father -in-law has given me everything which he had.
22. He likes everybody and everything which is simple.
23. The boy of that father teaches in my institution is honest.
24. The shirt of that colour is black is yours.
25. This is the house in that they live.
26. The older that we get, the wiser we become.
27. The sooner he starts, the sooner that he will arrive.
28. His is not such a complicated problem which yours.
29. Sweta asked as many questions which she could.
30. This is the same car that mine.
31. He gave me a ball, and I gave the same to Rakesh.
32. You have told me whom you know.
33. She can take the pen what she likes.
34. This is the man with whom they live with.
35. Most of the renters, especially who have not given their rent, are not here.
36. All the friends, including whom I have helped, have gone against me.
37. The book which costs Rs. 70 it is selling well.
38. Mr. Prasad has a project, and which will change your luck.
39. Mr. U. Jha is a famous teacher, who teaches the students in his institution, who wants to improve the calculation of the students.
40. Who was that motorcycle ?
41. To who was he talking ?
42. Whom was English spoken by ?
43. Whose laughs here in a day ?
44. Whom are these girls ?
45. Whose is your house ?
46. Who of these teachers is Mr. Mishra ?
47. Neither of the five books is new.
48. He presented him before the Judge.
49. God helps those who help themself.
50. Their achievement is greater than our.
51. Someone has left their car here.

Q. 5. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Your state (1)/is rich (2)/but mine (3)/is poor. (4)/No error (5)
2. The Director of (1)/Directorate of Distance Education (2)/has given its consent (3)/to join the meeting. (4)/No error (5)
3. Mr. Shukla introduced (1)/to the principal (2)/as the monitor (3)/of the class. (4)/No error (5)
4. This is the same (1)/dog which barked (2)/at her but fortunately didnot (3)/bite her. (4)/No error (5)
5. The principal (1)/as well as the teachers (2)/absented themselves (3)/from the office. (4)/No error (5)
6. As a teacher of (1)/Mathematics (2)/you are far better (3)/than him. (4)/No error (5)
7. Ours are (1)/the same problems (2)/that (3)/yours. (4)/No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


8. The educational institutions (1)/ of Patna are more (2)/ expensive than (3)/ that of Darbhanga. (4)/ No error (5)
9. Zakir lent me some (1)/ rupees on the condition (2) that I should return the same (3)/ before September. (4)/ No error (5)
10. You and I (1)/ have done (2)/ my best in (3)/ the examination. (4)/ No error (5)
11. He says (1)/ it is his problems (2)/ but you say it is (3)/ your also. (4)/ No error (5)
12. The hotels of (1)/ Kolkata are (2)/ cheaper than (3)/ Patna. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Each member (1)/ and each worker (2)/ has given (3)/ their consent. (4)/ No error (5)
14. Veena is (1)/ thinner than (2)/ either of her (3)/ four sisters. (4)/ No error (5)
15. The candidates (1)/ who we have (2)/ selected are (3)/ smart young and ambitious. (4)/ No error (5)
16. This is (1)/ one of the best (2)/ suggestions that (3)/ have ever been made by you. (4)/ No error (5)
17. Sweta bought (1)/ a beautiful pen (2)/ and gave the same (3)/ to her sister. (4)/ No error (5)
18. The more you (1)/ read this book (2)/ the more you (3)/ will like this. (4)/ No error (5)
19. Your father (1)/ does not like (2)/ you going (3)/ to the pictures every day. (4)/ No error (5)
20. Whom did (1)/ you say (2)/ was knocking at (3)/ the door. (4)/ No error (5)
21. The director ordered (1)/ the teacher to (2)/ let the students (3)/ and I go in. (4)/ No error (5)
22. Rahul was (1)/ present (2)/ in the class (3)/ except Raman and I. (4)/ No error (5)
23. Either of (1)/ these two roads (2)/ leads to (3)/ Patna market. (4)/ No error (5)
24. The five sisters (1)/ lived in Patna (2)/ and they (3)/ loved each other. (4)/ No error (5)
25. The only book (1)/ which you have purchased (2)/ today is in (3)/ demand now-a-days. (4)/ No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

Q. 1.
1. This = Demonstrative Pronoun
   That = Demonstrative Pronoun
2. Us = Personal Pronoun
3. You = Personal Pronoun
   Yourself = Emphatic Pronoun
4. Some one = Indefinite Pronoun
5. One = Indefinite Pronoun
6. One = Indefinite Pronoun.
   Them = Personal Pronoun
7. He = Personal Pronoun
   Himself = Reflexive Pronoun
8. Everyone = Indefinite Pronoun
   Them = Personal Pronoun
9. You = Personal Pronoun
   He = Personal Pronoun
10. I = Personal Pronoun
    It = Personal Pronoun
    He = Personal Pronoun
    That = Relative Pronoun
11. Mine = Possessive Pronoun
12. These = Demonstrative Pronoun
13. Where = Interrogative Adverb
    You = Personal Pronoun
14. Itself = Emphatic Pronoun
15. Herself = Reflexive Pronoun
16. One = Indefinite Pronoun
    Oneself = Reflexive Pronoun
17. Anybody = Indefinite Pronoun
    Him = Personal Pronoun
    It = Personal Pronoun
18. Either = Distributive Pronoun
    You = Personal Pronoun
19. Each = Distributive Pronoun
20. Which = Relative Pronoun
    I = Personal Pronoun
21. Who = Relative Pronoun
22. As = Relative Pronoun
    He = Personal Pronoun
    I = Personal Pronoun
23. But = Relative Pronoun
    (But is also a conjunction)
24. The same = Demonstrative Pronoun
    As = Relative Pronoun
    Yours = Possessive Pronoun
25. Whose = Relative Pronoun
    I = Personal Pronoun

Q. 2.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. I | 2. me | 3. I | 4. hers |
| 5. them | 6. her, me, it | 7. she | 8. I |
| 9. him | 10. we | 11. he | 12. ourselves |
| 13. herself | 14. yourself | 15. myself | 16. whom |
| 17. which | 18. what | 19. that | 20. one's |
| 21. each other | 22. any | 23. who | 24. that |
| 25. ours | | | |

Q. 3.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. me | 2. I | 3. I | 4. mine |
| 5. yours | 6. his | 7. hers | 8. ours |
| 9. you, I | 10. me | 11. her | 12. me, him |
| 13. himself | 14. ourselves | 15. yourselves | 16. herself |
| 17. herself | 18. themselves | 19. that | 20. whose |
| 21. which | 22. that | 23. them | 24. me |
| 25. she | | | |

Q. 4.
1. This is a new book, but that is old one.
2. These are new books, but those are old ones.
3. Your shirt is white, but mine is black.
4. His coats are new, but yours are old.
5. He has seen some of you there.
6. Mr. Thakur did not see anyone of them there.
7. We must do something for the country.
8. He must not do anything for us.
9. The man who lives here is my friend.
10. She has bought a car, which is black.
11. He is the dancer whom we admire.
12. A figure whose four sides are equal is called a square.
13. Amar is my friend, whom I have seen today.
14. The dog which barked at him did not bite him.
15. She is the girl about whom I was talking.
16. We want to leave the house which we rented last month.
17. He forgot the year in which he was born.
18. All that glitters is not gold.
19. He is the most intelligent teacher that I know.
20. This is the same student that cheated me.
21. My father-in-law has given me everything that he had.
22. He likes everybody and everything that is simple.
23. The boy whose father teaches in my institution is honest.
24. The shirt of which / whose colour is black is yours.
25. This is the house in which they live.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



26. The older we get, the wiser we become.
27. The sooner he starts, the sooner he will arrive.
28. His is not such a complicated problem as yours.
29. Sweta asked as many questions as she could.
30. This is the same car as mine.
31. He gave me a ball, and I gave it to Rakesh.
32. You have told me what you know.
33. She can take the pen which / that she likes.
34. This is the man with whom they live.
35. Most of the renters, especially those who have not given their rent, are not here.
36. All the friends, including those whom I have helped, have gone against me.
37. The book which costs Rs. 70 is selling well.
38. Mr. Prasad has a project, which will change your luck.
39. Mr. U. Jha is a famous teacher, who teaches the students in his institution, and who wants to improve the calculation of the students.
40. Whose was that motor cycle ?
41. To whom was he talking ?
42. Who was English spoken by ?
43. Who laughs here in a day ?
44. Who are these girls ?
45. Which is your house ?
46. Which of these teachers is Mr. Mishra ?
47. None of the five books is new.
48. He presented himself before the Judge.
49. God helps those who help themselves.
50. Their achievement is greater than ours.
51. Someone has left his car here.

Q. 5.

1. (5) Given sentence correct है।
2. (3) Its की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि sentence का subject—The director है, जो मानव है अतः इसके लिए possessive—his का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (1) Introduced के ठीक बाद himself का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Introduce, present, absent ..... etc. के बाद Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
4. (2) Which की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The same के बाद Verb के स्पष्ट होने पर that का प्रयोग होता है।
   Given sentence में verb barked का प्रयोग हुआ है, अतः that का प्रयोग correct है।
5. (3) Themselves की जगह himself का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि जब दो subjects 'as well as' से जुड़े हो, तो as well as के पहले प्रयुक्त subject के number तथा person के मुताबिक Verb तथा Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है, दिये गए sentence में The principal—singular subject है, अतः singular Reflexive Pronoun—himself का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (4) him की जगह he का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि than के बाद Nominative case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
7. (3) That की जगह as का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The same के बाद Verb के स्पष्ट न होने पर as का प्रयोग होता है, न कि that का।
8. (4) That of की जगह those of का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Patna के educational institutions की तुलना Darbhanga के educational institutions से हुआ है, जो Plural Noun है। अतः, Darbhanga के पहले those of का प्रयोग होगा।

   Note : लेकिन The scenery of Kashmir is better than that of Shimla.
   S.U. N — Singular (✓)
   The scenery of Kashmir is better than those of Shimla. (×)
   Singular Noun → that of
   Plural Noun → those of
9. (3) The same की जगह it का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि the same का प्रयोग Personal Pronouns जैसे—him, her, it, them, they आदि के लिए नहीं होता है।
10. (3) My की जगह our का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि you and I का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में होने पर, इसके लिए Pronouns—we, us, our, ourselves का प्रयोग होता है। अतः Given sentence में you and I के लिए Possessive—our का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (4) Your की जगह yours का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि 'your' Possessive Adjective है। Possessive Adjective का प्रयोग Noun के बिना नहीं होता है, अर्थात् Possessive Pronouns—yours का प्रयोग Noun के बिना होता है।
12. (4) Given Sentence के part (4) में than के बाद those of का प्रयोग होगा। see the answer of Q.No.–8.
13. (4) Their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि दो singular Nouns 'and' से जुड़े हों तथा प्रत्येक के पहले each or every का प्रयोग हो, तो इसे Singular माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ Singular Verb और Singular Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
14. (3) Either की जगह any का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि 'दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से कोई एक के अर्थ में any or any one का प्रयोग होता है।
15. (2) Who की जगह whom का प्रयोग होगा।
    ध्यान दें : Who + Verb,—Whom + Nominative + Verb
    तथा Whose + Noun + Verb का प्रयोग होता है।
16. (5) Given Sentence correct है।
17. (3) The same की जगह it का प्रयोग होगा। see the answer of Q.No.–9.
18. (4) This की जगह it का प्रयोग होगा। This book के लिए Pronoun—it उपयुक्त है।
19. (3) You going की जगह your going का प्रयोग होगा।
    possessive adjective + Gerund (M.V.I + ing) का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् Gerund के पहले possessive adjective का प्रयोग होता है। अतः going के पहले your का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (1) Whom की जगह who का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (4) I की जगह me का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि let के बाद Objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
22. (4) Raman and I की जगह Raman and me का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (5) Given sentence correct है।
24. (4) Each other की जगह one another का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (2) Which की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि the only के बाद that का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है।

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 8 Adjective

**Adjective** (विशेषण) : *An adjective is a word used to qualify a Noun or Pronoun. Or, Qualifying words are known as Adjectives.*

Adjective एक ऐसा word है, जो किसी Noun or Pronoun को qualify (विशेषता) करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है। दूसरे शब्दों में, विशेषता बताने वाले शब्दों को Adjectives कहा जाता है। जैसे—

She is a beautiful woman.
Ajit is handsome and intelligent.
He has a big house.
It is a charming scenery.
He is rich.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में beautiful, handsome and intelligent, big, charming, rich का प्रयोग woman, Ajit, house, scenery, he की विशेषता बताने के लिए किया गया है। अतः, ये Adjectives हैं।

## Use of Adjectives

There are two uses of Adjectives.

**1. Attributive use :** जब किसी Adjective का प्रयोग Noun के पहले होता है, तो Adjective के ऐसे प्रयोग को Attributive use कहते हैं। जैसे—

1. He has a <u>red</u> (Adj.) <u>pen</u> (N)
2. He was an <u>intelligent</u> (Adj.) <u>man</u> (N)

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में pen और man के पहले क्रमशः red, intelligent–Adjectives का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो Attributive use कहलाता है।

**2. Predicative use :** जब किसी Adjective का प्रयोग Noun के पहले नहीं होता है, अर्थात् sentence के Predicative part में subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त Noun or Pronoun की विशेषता बताने के लिए होता है, तो Adjective के ऐसे प्रयोग को Predicative use कहते हैं। जैसे—

1. She was industrious.
2. Maneshwar Babu is intelligent.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में industrious, intelligent का प्रयोग Predicative part में हुआ है, जो subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त Pronoun—she तथा Noun—Maneshwar Babu की विशेषता बताता है, जो Predicative use कहलाता है।

ध्यान दें :

| Attributive use (Adj. + N) | Predicative use |
|---|---|
| 1. Raju is an honest boy. | 1. Raju is honest. |
| 2. He was a laborious man. | 2. He was laborious. |
| 3. America has a big army. | 3. America is big. |
| 4. This is a red book. | 4. This book is red. |

## Kinds of Adjectives

1. Adjective of quality or qualitative Adjective *(गुणवाचक विशेषण)*, जैसे—good, bad, red, black, tall, short, beautiful, ugly, long ..... etc.
2. Adjective of quantity or quantitative Adjective *(परिमाण वाचक विशेषण)*, जैसे—some, any, no, little, much, all, whole, enough, sufficient, none, most ..... etc.
3. Adjective of number or Numeral Adjectives *(संख्यावाचक विशेषण)*, जैसे—one, two, three, ..... etc.
   Next, last, first, second, third, ..... etc, Many, few, various, some, all, sufficient, no, none, most, whole, enough, several, ..... etc.
4. Proper Adjective *(व्यक्तिवाचक विशेषण)*, जैसे—Indian, American, Chinese, Japanese, Nepalese, Russian ..... etc.
5. Possessive Adjective *(संबंध या अधिकार बोधक विशेषण)*, जैसे—My, our, your, his, her, its, their.
6. Distributive Adjective *(व्यष्टिवाचक विशेषण)*, जैसे—each, every, either, neither.
7. Demonstrative Adjective *(संकेत वाचक विशेषण)*, जैसे,—This, that, these, those, such, the same, some, any, a certain, certain, any other, other, another.
8. Interrogative Adjective *(प्रश्नवाचक विशेषण)*, जैसे—what, which, whose.
9. Emphasizing Adjective or Emphatic Adjective *(दर्शाव बोध विशेषण)*, जैसे—own, very.
10. Exclamatory Adjective *(विस्मयादिबोधक विशेषण)*, जैसे—what.

**1. Adjectives of quality :** ऐसे Adjectives जिनसे रंग रूप, आकार, प्रकार, गुण-दोष, स्थिति आदि का बोध होता है, Adjectives of quality कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Raman is a tall man. — He is a foolish student.
She is a beautiful girl. — I write with an old pen.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में tall, foolish, beautiful, old का प्रयोग क्रमशः man, student, girl, pen के पहले हुआ है, जो इनकी विशेषता बताते हैं। अर्थात् आदमी की लम्बा, छात्र के मूर्ख, लड़की के सुन्दर, कलम के पुराना होने का गुण बताते हैं।

**2. Adjectives of quantity :** ऐसे Adjectives जिनसे मात्रा या परिमाण (quantity) का बोध होता है, Adjectives of quantity कहलाते हैं।

A good deal of, A great deal of, A large amount of, A large quantity of, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a part of, half of ..... etc., जैसे—

Mukesh has much money. — He has lost all his wealth.
She has a lot of coffee. — There is a little water in the glass.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में much, all, a lot of, a little का प्रयोग क्रमशः money, wealth, coffee, water के पहले हुआ है, जो इनकी मात्रा या परिमाण बताते हैं।

**3. Adjectives of Number :** ऐसे Adjectives जिनसे व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की संख्या का बोध होता है, Adjectives of number कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

I have three rooms.
The two sisters have left for London.
There are forty students in the class.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Binay is the second son of Mr. Maneshwar Thakur.
Many criminals were killed.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में three, two, forty, second, many का प्रयोग nouns, sisters, students, son, criminals के पहले हुआ है, जो इनकी संख्या (निश्चित या अनिश्चित), क्रम का बोध कराते हैं।

Adjectives of Number
- Definite Adjectives of Number
  - Cardinal Adjectives
  - Ordinal Adjectives
- Indefinite Adjectives of Number

**I. Definite Adjectives of Number or Definite Numeral Adjectives** *(निश्चित संख्या या क्रम वाचक विशेषण)* : वे Adjectives जो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की निश्चित संख्या, क्रम (order) का बोध कराते हैं, Definite Adjectives of Number कहलाते हैं, जैसे—

I have two brothers.
Pt. Nehru was the first Prime Minister of India.

ऊपर दिये गए sentences में two, first का प्रयोग क्रमशः brothers, Prime Minister के पहले हुआ है, जो इनकी निश्चित संख्या तथा क्रम का बोध कराते हैं।

**(a) Cardinal Adjectives** *(निश्चित संख्या वाचक विशेषण)* : निश्चित संख्या का बोध कराने वाले Adjectives को Cardinal Adjectives कहते हैं। जैसे—one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, ..... etc. जैसे—

He has four pens.
She has two toys.
Have you two sisters ?
Sudhir Babu has only one daughter.

**(b) Ordinal Adjectives** (निश्चित क्रमवाचक विशेषण) : निश्चित क्रम (order) का बोध कराने वाले Adjectives को Ordinal Adjectives कहते हैं। जैसे—

Next, last, first, second, third, fourth fifth, sixth ..... etc.
The first chapter of this book is Syntax.
Who will be the next Chief Minister of Bihar ?

**II. Indefinite Number of Adjectives or Indefinite Numeral Adjectives** *(अनिश्चित संख्या वाचक विशेषण)* : अनिश्चित संख्या का बोध कराने वाले Adjectives को Indefinite Number of Adjectives कहते हैं। जैसे—

Some books are torn.
Many students are laborious.
I have few pens.
Most boys are gentle.

**4. Proper Adjectives** : ऐसे Adjectives, जो Proper Nouns से बनते हैं Proper Adjectives कहलाते हैं।

याद रहे :

| Proper Nouns | Proper Adjectives | Proper Nouns | Proper Adjectives |
|---|---|---|---|
| China | Chinese | Nepal | Nepalese |
| Switzerland | Swiss | Portugal | Portuguese |
| Israel | Israeli | Pakistan | Pakistani |
| Africa | African | Australia | Australian |
| Canada | Canadian | Germany | German |
| Greece | Greek | India | Indian |
| Italy | Italian | Russia | Russian |
| Asia | Asian | England | English |
| France | French | Holland | Dutch |
| Brazil | Brazilian | Britain | British, etc. |

**Note** : Proper Nouns or Proper Adjectives दोनों का first letter capital होता है।

**5. Possessive Adjectives** : स्वामी या मालिक का बोध कराने वाले Adjectives को Possessive Adjectives कहते हैं। ये हमेशा Noun के पहले प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे—

This is your pen. That is my car.
These are our chairs. These are his books.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में your, my, our, his का प्रयोग क्रमशः pen, car, chairs, books के पहले हुआ है, जो इनके साथ संबंध या अधिकार (स्वामी / मालिक) का बोध कराते हैं।

**6. Distributive Adjectives** : दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से प्रत्येक या एक का बोध कराने वाले Adjectives को Distributive Adjectives कहते हैं। दूसरे शब्दों में—

Each, every, either, neither का प्रयोग जब Nouns के पहले होता है, तो ये Distributive Adjectives कहलाते हैं। Each, either, neither का प्रयोग Nouns के पहले नहीं होता है, तो ये—Distributive Pronoun कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Each girl has a book. Every man is emotional.
Either book is yours. Neither boy is handsome.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में each, every, either, neither का प्रयोग क्रमशः girl, man, book, boy—Nouns के पहले हुआ है, जो प्रत्येक या एक का बोध कराते हैं।

**7. Demonstrative Adjectives** : व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं को इंगित (point out) या संकेतित करने वाले Adjectives को Demonstrative Adjectives कहते हैं।

Demonstrative Adjective
- Definite Demonstrative Adjective — जैसे—This, that, these, those, such, the same
- Indefinite Demonstrative Adjective — जैसे— Some, any, a certain, certain, other, another, any other

**(i) Definite Demonstrative Adjectives** *(निश्चित संकेत वाचक विशेषण)* : निश्चित व्यक्ति या वस्तु को इंगित (point out) या संकेतित करने वाले Adjectives को Definite Demonstrative Adjectives कहते हैं। जैसे—

This book is red. This boy is honest.
That pen is black. That girl is ugly.
These books are red. These boys are honest.
Those pens are black. Those girls are ugly.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में this, that, these, those का प्रयोग क्रमशः book, pen, books, pens, boy, girl, boys, girls—Nouns के पहले हुआ है, जो निश्चित वस्तुओं या व्यक्तियों को इंगित या संकेतित करते हैं।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**(ii) Indefinite Demonstrative Adjectives** *(अनिश्चित संकेतवाचक विशेषण)* : अनिश्चित व्यक्ति या वस्तु को इंगित या संकेतिक करने वाले Adjectives को Indefinite demonstrative Adjectives कहते हैं। इनका प्रयोग खास अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Some Mr. Jha is looking for you.
*[यहाँ some का खास अर्थ—अज्ञात है।]*
*= कोई या अज्ञात मिस्टर झा तुम्हें खोज रहे हैं।*

You met a certain woman yesterday evening.
*[यहाँ a certain का अर्थ—अज्ञात है।]*
*= आप कल शाम एक अज्ञात औरत से मिले।*

**8. Interrogative Adjectives** : प्रश्न पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त किए जाने वाले Adjectives को Interrogative Adjectives कहते हैं। जैसे—

Which pen is yours ?
Whose note book is this ?
What book do you want to read ?

ऊपर दिये गए sentences में which, whose, what का प्रयोग क्रमशः pen, note book, book—Nouns के पहले प्रश्न पूछने के लिए हुआ है। अतः ये Interrogative Adjectives हैं। Nouns के पहले प्रयुक्त न हों, तो ये Interrogative Pronouns कहलाते हैं।

**9. Emphasizing Adjectives** : own तथा very का प्रयोग जब Nouns के पहले Nouns पर जोर डालने या emphasis करने के लिए होता है, तो ये Emphasizing Adjectives कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

He saw his beloved on the road with his own eyes.
She killed her husband before his very eyes.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में own, very का प्रयोग क्रमशः eyes, eyes—Nouns के पहले Nouns पर जोर डालने के लिए हुआ है। अतः ये Emphasizing Adjectives हैं।

**10. Exclamatory Adjectives** : 'what' का प्रयोग जब आश्चर्य के भाव का बोध कराने के लिए होता है तो वह Exclamatory Adjectives कहलाता है। जैसे—

What an ugly woman !
What a big building it is !
What a big fool !

ऊपर दिए गए sentences में what का प्रयोग क्रमशः an ugly woman, a big building, a big fool के पहले आश्चर्य के भाव का बोध कराने के लिए हुआ है। अतः, वह Exclamatory Adjective है।

## Correct use of some adjectives

### 1. Use of 'some and 'any'

Some का अर्थ कोई, कुछ और थोड़ा होता है, जबकि any का अर्थ भी कोई, कुछ और थोड़ा होता है। पर दोनों के प्रयोग में फर्क है।

(a) Some का प्रयोग Affirmative Sentence में Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले मात्रा (quantity) का बोध कराने के लिए 'कुछ और थोड़ा' के अर्थ में होता है, तथा Plural Countable Noun के पहले संख्या (number) का बोध कराने के लिए 'कोई, कुछ और थोड़ा' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

I have some milk. (✓)
S.U.N.

I have any milk. (×)
*= मेरे पास (मुझे) थोड़ा (मात्रा में) दूध है।*

You have some money. (✓)
S.U.N.

You have any money. (×)
*= तुम्हारे पास (तुम्हें) थोड़ा (मात्रा में) धन है।*

I have some books. (✓)
P.C.N.

I have any books. (×)
*= मेरे पास (मुझे) कुछ (संख्या में) पुस्तकें हैं।*

You have some pens. (✓)
P.C.N.

You have any pens. (×)
*= तुम्हारे पास (तुम्हें) कुछ (संख्या में) कलमें हैं।*

Some Mr. Jha is waiting for you. (✓)

Any Mr. Jha is waiting for you. (×)
*= कोई मि० झा तुम्हारा इंतजार कर रहे हैं।*

जबकि any का प्रयोग negative sentence में Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले मात्रा (quantity) का बोध कराने के लिए 'कुछ और थोड़ा' के अर्थ में होता है, तथा Singular or Plural Countable Noun के पहले संख्या (number) का बोध कराने के लिए 'कोई, कुछ और थोड़ा' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He did not give me any milk. (✓)
S.U.N.
*= उसने थोड़ा (मात्रा में) दूध मुझे नहीं दिया।*

He did not give me some milk. (×)
S.U.N.

There is not any ink in the bottle. (✓)
S.U.N.
*= बोतल में थोड़ी (मात्रा में) स्याही नहीं है।*

There is not some ink in the bottle. (×)
S.U.N.

He did not take any book from the box. (✓)
S.C.N.
*= उसने कोई (संख्या में) पुस्तक बक्सा से नहीं लिया।*

He did not take some books from the box. (×)
P.C.N.

She is not putting any pens in the box. (✓)
P.C.N.
*= वह कुछ (संख्या में) कलमें बक्सा में नहीं रख रही है।*

She is not putting some pens in the box. (×)
P.C.N.

(b) Some और any दोनों का प्रयोग Interrogative sentence में किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

Will you give me some sugar ? (✓)
S.U.N.

Will you give me some coffee ? (✓)
S.U.N.

Have you any money ? (✓)
S.U.N.

Did you give her any apples ? (✓)
P.C.N

(c) Some और any का प्रयोग Pronouns के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

Sweta has not any milk but Nilu has some.
Adj. Pron.

Nilu has some milk but Sweta hasn't any.
Adj. Pron.

**Note** : (i) Some का प्रयोग 'लगभग' (about) के अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

Mukesh gave me some fifty rupees.
*= मुकेश ने मुझे लगभग पचास रुपये दिए।*

(ii) Any का प्रयोग No के बाद नहीं होता है, क्योंकि No और any दोनों Adjectives हैं। Adjective, Adjective को qualify नहीं करता है।

No = Not + Any
Adjective Adverb Adjective

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



ध्यान दें :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Not + any | (√) | Not + a | (√) |
| No a | (×) | No any | (×) |

Adverb, Adjective को modify करता है, इसलिए Not any का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I have not any money. (√)
I have no any money. (×)
I have no money. (√)
I have not a book. (√)
I have no a book. (×)
I have no books. (√)

### 2. Use of 'Much' and 'Many'

(a) Much का प्रयोग मात्रा (quantity) का बोध कराने के लिए 'बहुत' के अर्थ में Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है।

I don't know how much money he spent on his marriage. —*Negative* (√)

I don't know how many money he spent on his marriage. —*Negative* (×)

Have you much money ? (√)
Have you many money ? (×) —*Interrogative*

(b) Many का प्रयोग संख्या (number) का बोध कराने के लिए 'बहुत' के अर्थ में Plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

I have not many friends in the town. —*Negative*
Have you many problems ? —*Interrogative*

**Note** : (i) Affirmative sentence में Much तथा Many का प्रयोग Object के पहले नहीं होता है।

★ Many के स्थान पर A great many of, a good many of, a great number of, great numbers of, plenty of, a lot of, lots of, numerous, a large number of, large numbers of तथा enough of का प्रयोग होता है।

★ Much के स्थान पर a great deal of, a good deal of, a large quantity of, plenty of, enough of तथा a lot of का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I know many men. (×)
I know a lot of/a large number of men. (√)
He has much money. (×)
He has a lot of/plenty of money. (√)

ध्यान दें : पाठकगण धड़ल्ले से object के पहले much, many का प्रयोग करते हैं, जो गलत है।

(ii) यदि किसी sentence का स्टार्टिंग *subject + wonder/doubt* से हो तथा इसके बाद if or whether का प्रयोग हो, तो much, many का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

I wonder whether you have many friends. (√)
I doubt if she has much beauty. (√)

(iii) So, as, too और how के बाद much, many का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

Ask so many questions as you want to know.
Eat as much cake as you like.
Don't take too much salt.
How many pens do you want ?

(iv) *Much + Singular Uncountable Noun or many + Plural Countable Noun* का प्रयोग subject के रूप में होता है। इस तरह के phrases में much, many का प्रयोग Noun को qualify करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Many students are laborious. (√)
Much Money is needed for this work. (√)

ध्यान दें :

A good many (of)
A great many (of)
A great number (of)
great numbers (of)
A large number (of)
Plenty (of)
A lot (of)
Lots (of)
Numerous
Enough (of)
Large numbers (of)

का प्रयोग 'अनेक' / 'बहुत' के अर्थ में संख्या का बोध कराने के लिए Plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है।

A great deal (of)
A good deal (of)
A large quantity (of)
Plent (of)
A lot (of)
Enough (of)

का प्रयोग 'बहुत' के अर्थ में मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए Singural Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है।

जैसे—A large number of students were present in the class.
P.C.N.
*'अनेक'/'बहुत' (संख्या में) छात्रगण वर्ग में उपस्थित थे।*

A good deal of money is needed for this work.
S.U.N.
*बहुत (मात्रा में) धन का इस कार्य के लिए आवश्यकता (जरूरत) है।*

★ लेकिन Many a तथा Many an का प्रयोग 'अनेक' के अर्थ में Singular Countable Noun के पहले प्रायः भावावेश में या आलंकारिक में होता है। इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है। यह Plural meaning रखता है। जैसे—

Many a man was killed in the Gulf war.
Many men were killed in the Gulf war.

ऊपर दिए गए दोनों sentences का अर्थ एक जैसा, अर्थात् समान (equal) है। इस प्रकार का प्रयोग होता है।

Many an inkpot has been sold.
Many inkpots have been sold.

### 3. Use of 'Little', 'A little' and 'The little'

**(a)** Little का प्रयोग 'नहीं के बराबर', 'अल्प' या 'नगण्य' के अर्थ में मात्रा (quantity) का बोध कराने के लिए Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है। यह negative meaning (नकारात्मक अर्थ) रखता है। जैसे—

He has little money.
*उसके पास नहीं के बराबर धन है।*

Positive idea, (सकारात्मक विचार) को अभिव्यक्त (express) करने के लिए little का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**(b)** A little का प्रयोग 'थोड़ा' या 'कुछ' के अर्थ में मात्रा (quantity) का बोध कराने के लिए Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है। यह positive meaning (सकारात्मक अर्थ) रखता है। जैसे—

He has a little money.
*उसके पास कुछ धन है।*

Negative idea (नकारात्मक विचार) को अभिव्यक्त (express) करने के लिए A little का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**(c)** The little का प्रयोग 'जो कुछ है थोड़ा मात्रा में' या 'मात्रा तो कम है पर पूरा का पूरा' या 'मात्रा तो कम है, पर सब का सब' के अर्थ में Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है। यह positive और negative दोनों meaning (अर्थ) रखता है। जैसे—

I spent the little money I had.
(i) I spent all the money I had. —*Positive*
(ii) The money I had was not much —*Negative*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 4. Use of 'few', 'A few' and 'The few'

(a) Few का प्रयोग 'नहीं के बराबर', 'अल्प' या 'नगण्य' के अर्थ में संख्या (number) का बोध कराने के लिए Plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है। यह negative meaning (नकारात्मक अर्थ) रखता है। जैसे—

I read (रेड) few books.

अर्थ = I did not read (रीड) many books.

*मैंने नहीं के बराबर (संख्या में) पुस्तकें पढ़ीं।*

Positive idea (सकारात्मक विचार) को अभिव्यक्त (express) करने के लिए few का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

(b) A few का प्रयोग 'कुछ या थोड़ा' (कम से कम) के अर्थ में संख्या (number) का बोध कराने के लिए Plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है। यह positive meaning (सकारात्मक अर्थ) रखता है। जैसे—

I read (रेड) a few books.

अर्थ = I read at least some books.

*मैंने कुछ (संख्या में) पुस्तकें पढ़ीं।*

Negative idea (नकारात्मक विचार) को अभिव्यक्त (express) करने के लिए A few का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

(c) The few का प्रयोग 'जो कुछ है थोड़ी संख्या में' या 'संख्या तो कम है पर पूरा का पूरा' या 'संख्या तो कम है, पर सब का सब' के अर्थ में Plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है। यह positive और negative दोनों meaning (अर्थ) रखता है। जैसे—

I read (रेड) the few books I had.

अर्थ—(i) I read all the books I had. —*Positive*

(ii) The books I had were not many. —*Negative*

**Note** : Very few or very little का प्रयोग Affirmative sense (अर्थ) में होता है। जैसे—

He has very little time.

Very few students know about this.

### 5. Use of 'all' and 'whole'

★ All का प्रयोग 'सब' या 'सबके सब' के अर्थ में Plural Countable Noun तथा Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

All the books were old.

*सभी पुस्तकें पुरानी थीं।*

All the money has been spent.

*सब धन खर्च किए जा चुके हैं।*

★ जबकि whole का प्रयोग 'समूचा' या 'सम्पूर्ण' के अर्थ में Singular Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Her whole body was covered.

*उसका (स्त्री) सम्पूर्ण शरीर ढँका था।*

**Note** : (i) All का प्रयोग व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की संख्या बतलाने के लिए किया जाता है, जबकि whole का प्रयोग व्यक्ति या वस्तु के सम्पूर्ण अंगों का बोध कराने के लिए किया जाता है। यही all और whole के प्रयोग में अंतर है।

(ii) Whole का प्रयोग Singular Common Noun के पहले होता है, तथा whole of का प्रयोग Proper Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

The whole town. (√)
S.C.N.

The whole of Patna. (√)
Proper Noun.

The whole country. (√)
S.C.N.

The whole of India. (√)
Proper Noun.

### 6. Use of 'A certain' and 'Certain'

★ A certain का प्रयोग 'अज्ञात' या 'अवर्णित' के अर्थ में Singu Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

She met a certain boy yesterday.

*वह एक अज्ञात लड़का से कल मिली।*

★ जबकि certain का प्रयोग अज्ञात या अवर्णित के अर्थ में Plural Counta Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Certain boys were playing in the playground.

*अज्ञात लड़के खेल के मैदान में खेल रहे थे।*

### 7. Use of 'other', 'another', 'any other' and 'no other'

(a) Other का प्रयोग 'दूसरा या अन्य' के अर्थ में Singular तथा Plu Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

The other hand.
S.C.N.

The other boys.
P.C.N.

The other books.
P.C.N.

The other students.
P.C.N.

(b) जबकि Another का प्रयोग एक दूसरा, एक और या एक अतिरिक्त अर्थ में Singular Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Another book.
S.C.N.

Another books.
P.C.N.

Another pen.
S.C.N.

Another pens.
P.C.N.

**Note** : (i) *An + other = Another* होता है, इसलिए Another पहले An का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

An another pen. (×) An another book.

Another pen. (√) Another book.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He wants an another chair.

He wants another chair.

I want to buy an another pen.

I want to buy another pen.

(ii) Another के बाद Numeral Adjectives जैसे—two, three four .....etc. का प्रयोग हो, तो इसके बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Another five hours. (√) Another ten years.

Another five hour. (×) Another ten year.

(iii) Anyother का प्रयोग negative sentence में होता है, न another का।

She does not want any other pen.

She does not want another pen.

I did not give her any other book.

I did not give her another book.

★ Another का प्रयोग Affirmative sentence में होता है।

Your brother wants to buy another table.

You brother wants to buy any other table.

(iv) Any other का प्रयोग 'कोई अन्य' के अर्थ में तथा no other प्रयोग 'कोई अन्य नहीं' के अर्थ में होता है। Any other का प्रयोग भी Singu Noun के पहले तथा no other का प्रयोग Singular Noun के पहले

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Usha is better than any other girl in the class. (√)
S.N.

Usha is better than no other girl in the class. (×)

No other girl in that family is as good as Anupam. (√)
S.N.

Anyother girl in that family is as good as Anupam. (×)

★ No other—negative meaning रखता है, इसलिए no other के साथ अन्य negative word का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए।

★ Anyother की जगह no other तथा no other की जगह any other का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

★ Anyother तथा no other की जगह another का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

### 8. Use of 'Each' and 'Every'

(a) Each का प्रयोग 'प्रत्येक' के अर्थ में दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए Singular Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Each student has a pen.
S.C.N.

★ लेकिन each of के बाद Plural Countable Noun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Each of the students has a book.
P.C.N.

(b) Every का प्रयोग 'प्रत्येक' के अर्थ में दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए Singular Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Every boy of this class is handsome.

★ लेकिन दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए Every का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Every of the two girls is beautiful. (×)
P.C.N.

Each of the two girls is beautiful. (√)

Note : (i) Every का प्रयोग nearly, almost, practically, without exception के बाद होता है, न कि each का। जैसे—

Manisha has read almost every book she had. (√)

Manisha has read almost each book she had. (×)

(ii) Every के बाद Numeral Adjective का प्रयोग हो, तो इसके बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग होता है न कि Singular Noun का।

Every ten girls. (√)
P.N.

Every ten girl. (×)
S.N.

Every three boys. (√)
P.N.

Every three boy. (×)
S.N.

(c) Every तथा Each का प्रयोग Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Each rice. (×) Each milk. (×)

Every gold. (×) Every coffee. (×)

(d) Every / Each का प्रयोग Plural Countable Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Every pens. (×) Each books. (×)

### 9. Use of 'Either' and 'Neither'

(a) Either का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में Singular Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Either book is red.
दो में से कोई एक [illegible]

★ लेकिन Either of के बाद Plural Countable Noun का प्रयोग होता है।

Either of the pens is black. (√)
P.C.N.

Either of the pen is black. (×)

★ Either का प्रयोग Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Either silver. (×)
S.U.N.

Either coffee. (×)
S.U.N.

★ Either का प्रयोग Plural Countable Noun के पहले नहीं होता है।

Either pens. (×)
P.C.N.

Either chairs. (×)
P.C.N.

(b) Neither का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई नहीं' के अर्थ में Singular Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Neither boy is intelligent.

★ लेकिन Neither of के बाद Plural Countable Noun का प्रयोग होता है।

Neither of the students is laborious.
P.C.N.

★ Neither का प्रयोग Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Neither tea. (×) Neither ghee. (×)

★ Neither का प्रयोग Plural Countable Noun के पहले नहीं होता है।

Neither desks. (×) Neither books. (×)

### 10. Use of 'this' and 'that'

★ This तथा that का प्रयोग Demonstrative Adjectives के रूप में Singular Countable Noun or Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

This book is very useful. (√)
S.C.N.

That cow was black. (√)
S.C.N.

This water is fit for drinking. (√)
S.U.N.

That tea was very tasteful. (√)
S.U.N.

### 11. Use of 'these' and 'those'

★ These तथा those का प्रयोग Demonstrative Adjectives के रूप में Plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

These oxen are white. (√)
P.C.N.

Those horses were intelligent. (√)
P.C.N.

### 12. Use of 'such' and 'same'

★ Such तथा same का प्रयोग Demonstrative Adjectives के रूप में Singular Countable Noun, Plural Countable Noun तथा Singular Unountable Noun के पहले होता है।

अर्थात् *such + a/an + Singular Countable Noun, Such + P.C.N./ S.U.N.* तथा *The + same + S.C.N./P.C.N./S.U.N.* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Such a boy. (√) The same student (√)

Such boys. (√) The same students (×)

Such coffee. (√) The same coffee (√)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 13. Order of Numeral Adjectives

(a) यदि किसी sentence में Ordinal तथा Cardinal Adjective का प्रयोग एक साथ करना हो तो 'OC' के sequence (क्रम) को follow किया जाता है।

'O' stands for Ordinal Adjective
'C' stands for Cardinal Adjective

अर्थात् पहले Ordinal Adjective का प्रयोग होता है, तथा बाद में Cardinal Adjective का। जैसे—

The first (Ordinal Adjective) four (Cardinal Adjective) chapters of this book. (√)

The four (Cardinal Adjective) first (Ordinal Adjective) chapters of this book. (×)

(b) All, some, enough, sufficient, no, none, most का प्रयोग मात्रा (quantity) का बोध करने के लिए Adjective of quantity या, Quantitative Adjective के रूप में Singular Uncontable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| some milk. | (√) | some milks. | (×) |
| no money. | (√) | no moneys. | (×) |
| all the milk. | (√) | all the milks. | (×) |

(c) Many, few, all, some, enough, sufficient, no, none, most, various, several, various का प्रयोग संख्या का बोध कराने के लिए NumeralAdjectives (Adjectives of Number) के रूप में Plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Several students (P.C.N.) are present in the class. (√)

Enough boys (P.C.N.) have come. (√)

Many people (P.C.N.) were invited to dinner. (√)

Some pens (P.C.N.) have been lost. (√)

### 14. Use of 'very' and 'own' as Emphatic Adjective.

★ सामान्यतः very का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में होता है।

Very का प्रयोग Emphatic Adjective के रूप में Noun के पहले, Noun को Emphasis (पर जोर डालने के लिए) करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Rupa killed her husband before my very (Emphatic adj.) eyes (N).

She goes there this very day.

★ जबकि own का प्रयोग *Possessive Adjective + own + Noun* के बनावट में Possessive Adjective को Emphasis (पर जोर डालने के लिए) करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I gave him my own book. (√)
His own brother was an idiot. (√)

### Degrees of Comparison

अंग्रेजी (English) में degrees of comparison तीन होते हैं।

**1. Positive degree :** जब किसी Adjective का प्रयोग किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु या पदार्थ के सामान्य गुण, अवस्था आदि का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, तो वह Adjective Positive degree में होता है। Positive degree के Adjective को as ..... as or so ..... as के बीच में रखा जाता है। As के बाद nominative case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

This table is heavy.
You are a good student.
Ramesh is as handsome as Suresh.
She is as beautiful as Veena.
He is not so good as I.

**Note :** Affirmative तथा negative sentence में as ..... as or so ..... as का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन so ..... as का प्रयोग negative sentence में करना चाहिए, क्योंकि so ..... as के प्रयोग को negative sentence में ज्यादा बेहतर माना जाता है।

**2. Comparative degree :** जब किसी Adjective का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों, वस्तुओं या पदार्थों के बीच तुलना (compare) करने के लिए किया जाता है, तो वह Adjective comparative degree में होता है। Comparative degree के Adjective के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है। 'Than' के बाद Nominative case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है, यदि subject के बाद Intransitive Verb का प्रयोग हो। जैसे—

Mukesh is better than Pinku.
She is more beautiful than Shobhana.
He is taller than I.
America is richer than India.

★ *The + comparative + of the two + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग selection (चुनाव) के भाव को express करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

She is the better of the two girls.
He was the more intelligent of the two boys.

**Note :** Subject के बाद Transitive Verb का प्रयोग हो, तो than के बाद Objective Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग हो सकता है। जैसे—

You love him more than me.

**3. Superlative degree :** जब किसी Adjective का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों, वस्तुओं या पदार्थों में तुलना (compare) करने के लिए तथा highest degree of quality को अभिव्यक्त (express) करने के लिए किया जाता है, तो वह Adjective, superlative degree में होता है। जैसे—

Rani is the most beautiful girl in the class.
Pulli babu is the oldest man in the village.
He is the cleverest of all the three brothers.
Binay is the most intelligent student in the college.

Positive degree से Comparative तथा Superlative degree बनाने का नियम :

**Rule (I) :** सामान्यतः Positive degree के Adjective के अंत (last) में 'er' तथा 'est' जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative degree बनाया जाता है।

| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| tall | taller | tallest |
| high | higher | highest |
| poor | poorer | poorest |
| slow | slower | slowest |
| bright | brighter | brightest |
| great | greater | greatest |
| dear | dearer | dearest |
| clear | clearer | clearest |
| cheap | cheaper | cheapest |
| small | smaller | smallest |
| long | longer | longest |
| deep | deeper | deepest |
| clever | cleverer | cleverest |
| thick | thicker | thickest |
| shallow | shallower | shallowest |
| | more shallow | most shallow |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (2)** : यदि किसी Positive degree के Adjective के अंत में 'e' हो, तो सिर्फ 'r' तथा 'st' जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative degree बनाया जाता है।

| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| white | whiter | whitest |
| brave | braver | bravest |
| wise | wiser | wisest |
| wide | wider | widest |
| fine | finer | finest |
| able | abler | ablest |
| rich | richer | richest |
| large | larger | largest |
| noble | nobler | noblest |
| true | truer | truest |

**Rule (3)** : यदि किसी Positive degree के Adjective के अंत में Consonant हो तथा Consonant के पहले Vowel हो, तो 'er' तथा 'est' जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative degree बनाते समय अंतिम Consonant का double (दोहरा) हो जाता है।

| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| sad | sadder | saddest |
| red | redder | reddest |
| thin | thinner | thinnest |
| wet | wetter | wettest |
| hot | hotter | hottest |
| fit | fitter | fittest |
| fat | fatter | fattest |
| big | bigger | biggest |
| dim | dimmer | dimmest |
| slim | slimmer | slimmest |

**Rule (4)** : यदि किसी Positive degree के Adjective के अंत में 'y' हो तथा 'y' के पहले Consonant हो, तो 'y' को 'i' में बदलकर 'er' तथा 'est' जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative degree बनाया जाता है।

| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| easy | easier | easiest |
| lazy | lazier | laziest |
| heavy | heavier | heaviest |
| happy | happier | happiest |
| wealthy | wealthier | wealthiest |
| healthy | healthier | healthiest |
| dry | drier | driest |
| merry | merrier | merriest |
| pretty | prettier | prettiest |
| busy | busier | busiest |
| holy | holier | holiest |

**Rule (5)** : यदि किसी Positive degree के Adjective के अंत में 'y' हो तथा 'y' के पहले vowel हो, तो सिर्फ 'er' तथा 'est' जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative degree बनाया जाता है। 'y' को 'i' में नहीं बदला जाता है।

| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| Gay (प्रसन्नचित) | Gayer | Gayest |
| Grey (भूरा) | Greyer | Greyest |
| Gray (भूरा) | Grayer | Grayest |

**Rule (6)** : कुछ ऐसे Positive degree के Adjective हैं, जिनका Comparative तथा Superlative form भिन्न (different) होता है।

| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| good | better | best |
| well | better | best |
| bad | worse | worst |
| ill | worse | worst |
| evil | worse | worst |
| fore | former | formost, first |
| far *(distance)* | farther | farthest |
| late | later / latter | latest / last |
| little | less / lesser | least |
| much *(quantity)* | more | most |
| many *(number)* | more | most |
| nigh | nigher | nighest, next |
| old | older / elder | oldest / eldest |
| near | nearer | nearest |
| fore—*Adverbs (movement)* | further | furthest |
| in | inner | innermost |
| up | upper | uppermost |
| out | outer / utter | utmost, uttermost |

**Note** : Fore, in, out, up : Adverbs हैं, जो Positive degree में हैं। इसके Comparative—further, inner, outer / utter, upper का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में तथा इसके Superlative—furthest, inner most / inmost, outer most / utmost, upper most का प्रयोग भी Adjectives के रूप में होता है।

**Rule (7)** : दो या दो से अधिक syllables के Positive degree के Adjectives के आगे more तथा most जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative बनाया जाता है।

| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| difficult | more difficult | most difficult |
| laborious | more laborious | most laborious |
| intelligent | more intelligent | most intelligent |
| handsome | more handsome | most handsome (प्रचलित है) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Positive degree | Comparative degree | Superlative degree |
|---|---|---|
| beautiful | more beautiful | most beautiful |
| interesting | more interesting | most interesting |
| expensive | more expensive | most expensive |
| courageous | more courageous | most courageous |
| magnificent | more magnificent | most magnificent |
| splendid | more splendid | most splendid |
| useful | more useful | most useful |
| famous | more famous | most famous |
| honest | more honest | most honest |

**Note** : Handsome का Comparative तथा Superlative क्रमशः handsomer—handsomest होता है। लेकिन इसका प्रयोग आधुनिक भाषा में नहीं होता है।

**Rule (8) : Latin Adjectives** : Junior, Senior, Inferior, Superior, Posterior, Prior, Anterior का प्रयोग Comparative degree के Adjective के रूप में होता है, अतः इसके पहले more, less तथा most, least जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative degree नहीं बनाया जाता है। इसके बाद हमेशा Preposition 'to' का प्रयोग होता है न कि Conjunction 'than' का। जैसे—

1. **Junior** : Mukesh is junior to all his brothers. (√)
   Mukesh is more junior to all his brothers. (×)
   Mukesh is junior than all his brothers. (×)
   Mukesh is less junior to all his brothers. (×)
   Mukesh is most junior to all his brothers. (×)

2. **Superior** : Japanese goods are superior to Nepalese goods. (√)
   Japanese goods are more superior to Nepalese goods. (×)
   Japanese goods are superior than Nepalese goods. (×)
   Japanese goods are less superior to Nepalese goods. (×)
   Japanese goods are most superior to Nepalese goods. (×)

3. **Inferior** : She is inferior to Neha in beauty. (√)
   She is more inferior to Neha in beauty. (×)
   She is inferior than Neha in beauty. (×)
   She is less inferior to Neha in beauty. (×)

4. **Senior** : Mohan is senior to Vijay. (√)
   Mohan is more senior to Vijay. (×)
   Mohan is senior than Vijay. (×)
   Mohan is less senior to Vijay. (×)
   Mohan is most senior to Vijay. (×)

5. **Prior** (पहले) : This event took place prior to the second world war. (√)
   This event took place more prior to the second world war. (×)
   This event took place prior than the second world war. (×)
   This event took place less prior to the second world war. (×)
   This event took place most prior to the second world war. (×)

6. **Anterior** (earlier than–पूर्वकाल का/पहले का) :
   This event took place anterior to that. (√)
   This event took place more anterior to that. (×)
   This event took place anterior than that. (×)
   This event took place less anterior to that. (×)
   This event took place most anterior to that. (×)

7. **Posterior** (later than–समय या क्रम के पश्चात्) :
   This event is posterior to that. (√)
   This event is more posterior to that. (×)
   This event is posterior than that. (×)
   This event is less posterior to that. (×)
   This event is most posterior to that. (×)

**Note** : (i) Junior, Senior, Inferior, Superior, Anterior, Posterior, Prior का प्रयोग Positive degree के Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Mr. D. S. Khanna is a <u>senior</u> advocate.
P.d.

Gauri babu is a <u>junior</u> engineer.
P.d.

★ Junior, Inferior, Anterior का opposite words क्रमशः Senior, Superior, Posterior होता है।

(ii) Junior, Senior, Inferior, Superior का प्रयोग Countable Noun की तरह होता है। अतः, इसका प्रयोग Plural form में भी होता है। जैसे—

Anil was my <u>senior</u>.
S.C.N.

He is my <u>junior</u>.
S.C.N.

We must obey our <u>seniors</u>.
P.C.N.

**Rule (9)** : Minor, Major, Interior, Exterior, Ulterior—Latin Adjectives हैं, इनका प्रयोग Positive degree के Adjectives के रूप में होता है न कि Comparative degree के Adjectives के रूप में। जैसे—

The interior wall of this building is not strong.
The exterior wall of this building is strong.
This is a major operation.
This is a minor operation.
He had an ulterior motive in offering me to teach the students.

★ Minor, Interior का opposite words क्रमशः major, exterior है। इसके पहले more, most जोड़कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative degree नहीं बनाया जाता है।

The most major portion.
The major portion.
The most minor mistake.
The minor mistake.

ध्यान दें : Minor का प्रयोग Noun के रूप में अल्पवयस्क या नाबालिग के अर्थ में होता है, जबकि major का प्रयोग सैन्यदल का अध्यक्ष, वयस्क या बालिग के अर्थ में होता है।

याद रखें :

An officer in rank above a captain—Major
A person under age—Minor
A person of full age—Major.

जैसे—This boy is a minor. That man was a major.
यह लड़का नाबालिग है। वह आदमी सैन्यदल का अध्यक्ष था।

★ Interior का प्रयोग भी Noun के रूप में 'मध्य भाग' (the inner part) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The interior of the dining hall was painted.

**Rule (10)** : 'Highest degree of quality' को अभिव्यक्त (express) करने वाले Adjectives के पहले more, most का प्रयोग कर Comparative, Superlative degree नहीं बनाया जाता है न कि 'er' तथा 'est' जोड़कर। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Correct | | Incorrect | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| chief | (√) | more chief | (×) | chiefer | (×) |
| | | most chief | (×) | chiefest | (×) |
| round | (√) | more round | (×) | rounder | (×) |
| | | most round | (×) | roundest | (×) |
| unique | (√) | more unique | (×) | uniquer | (×) |
| | | most unique | (×) | uniquest | (×) |
| total | (√) | more total | (×) | totaler | (×) |
| | | most total | (×) | totalest | (×) |
| whole | (√) | more whole | (×) | wholer | (×) |
| | | most whole | (×) | wholest | (×) |
| singular | (√) | more singular | (×) | singularer | (×) |
| | | most singular | (×) | singularest | (×) |
| Rectangular | (√) | more rectangular | (×) | rectangularer | (×) |
| | | most rectangular | (×) | rectangularest | (×) |
| square | (√) | more square | (×) | squarer | (×) |
| | | most square | (×) | squarest | (×) |
| excellent | (√) | more excellent | (×) | excellenter | (×) |
| | | most excellent | (×) | excellentest | (×) |
| Spherical | (√) | more spherical | (×) | sphericaler | (×) |
| | | most spherical | (×) | sphericalest | (×) |
| extreme | (√) | more extreme | (×) | extremer | (×) |
| | | most extreme | (×) | extremest | (×) |
| annual | (√) | more annual | (×) | annualer | (×) |
| | | most annual | (×) | annualest | (×) |
| golden | (√) | more golden | (×) | goldener | (×) |
| | | most golden | (×) | goldenest | (×) |
| deaf | (√) | more deaf | (×) | deafer | (×) |
| | | most deaf | (×) | deafest | (×) |
| blind | (√) | more blind | (×) | blinder | (×) |
| | | most blind | (×) | blindest | (×) |
| right | (√) | more right | (×) | righter | (×) |
| | | most right | (×) | rightest | (×) |
| empty | (√) | more empty | (×) | emptier | (×) |
| | | most empty | (×) | emptiest | (×) |
| circular | (√) | more circular | (×) | circularer | (×) |
| | | most circular | (×) | circularest | (×) |
| wrong | (√) | more wrong | (×) | wronger | (×) |
| | | most wrong | (×) | wrongest | (×) |
| impossible | (√) | more impossible | (×) | impossibler | (×) |
| | | most impossible | (×) | impossiblest | (×) |
| perfect | (√) | more perfect | (×) | perfecter | (×) |
| | | most perfect | (×) | perfectest | (×) |
| entire | (√) | more entire | (×) | entirer | (×) |
| | | most entire | (×) | entirest | (×) |
| external | (√) | more external | (×) | externaler | (×) |
| | | most external | (×) | externalest | (×) |
| ideal | (√) | more ideal | (×) | idealer | (×) |
| | | most ideal | (×) | idealest | (×) |
| solar | (√) | more solar | (×) | solarer | (×) |
| | | most solar | (×) | solarest | (×) |
| But— | | most perfect | (√) | more perfect | (√) |
| | | most complete | (√) | more complete | (√) |
| | | completest | (√) | completer | (√) |
| | | fullest | (√) | fuller | (√) |

का प्रयोग होता है।

## Some Confusing Comparative and Superlatives

कुछ ऐसे Comparatives तथा Superlatives हैं, जिनका प्रयोग करने में हमलोग गलतियाँ कर बैठते हैं, इन्हीं गलतियों अर्थात् कन्फ्यूजन्स से बचने के लिए हमलोग इनके प्रयोग पर विचार करेंगे।

### A. Use of 'Elder / Eldest' and 'Older / Oldest'

Old का Comparative तथा Superlative क्रमशः elder, older तथा eldest, oldest होता है। Elder का प्रयोग Comparative तथा eldest का प्रयोग Superlative degree के Adjective के रूप में एक ही परिवार के सदस्यों (अर्थात् अधिक उम्र वाले लोगों) के लिए होता है।

जबकि older तथा oldest का प्रयोग क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superalative degree के Adjective के रूप में अन्य व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है। जैसे—

His elder brother died last year. (√)
His older brother died last year. (×)

Her eldest son is Suman. (√)
Her oldest son is Suman. (×)

Ajay is Binay's eldest brother. (√)
Ajay is Binay's oldest brother. (×)

Rakesh is older than Pinku. (√)
Rakesh is elder than Pinku. (×)

Hem Chandra Babu is the oldest man in the village (√)
Hem Chandra Babu is the eldest man in the village (×)

This is the oldest tree in the forest. (√)
This is the eldest tree in the forest (×)

This is the oldest temple in the village. (√)
This is the eldest temple in the village. (×)

**Note :** (i) Older के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन elder के बाद नहीं।

Bhavna is older than Rima. (√)
Bhavna is elder than Rima. (×)

(ii) Elders का प्रयोग 'वृद्ध लोगों या व्यक्तियों' के अर्थ में Plural Noun की तरह होता है। जैसे—

The children must obey their elders. (√)
The children must obey their olders. (×)

### B. Use of 'farther' and 'further'

Far के Comparative के रूप में farther तथा fore के Comparative के रूप में further का प्रयोग होता है।

Farther का प्रयोग 'अधिक' (more distant) के अर्थ में तथा further का प्रयोग अधिक दूर, अतिरिक्त (extra / additional) या 'और कुछ' दोनों अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

1. Gaya is farther from Hazipur than Patna.
2. They saw a temple on the further side of the river.
3. Dara Singh has appealed in the Supreme Court for the further judgement.
4. Don't make further delay.

Example No. (1) और (2) में farther, further का प्रयोग 'अधिक दूर' के अर्थ में हुआ है।

Example No. (3) और (4) में further का प्रयोग 'अतिरिक्त' के अर्थ में हुआ है।

### C. Use of 'Nearest' and 'Next'

Near के superlative के रूप में Nearest तथा Nigh के Superlative के रूप में Next का प्रयोग होता है।

Nearest का प्रयोग 'समीपस्थ' के अर्थ में space or distance के लिए होता है। जबकि Next का प्रयोग 'आगामी' के अर्थ में order (क्रम) or position के लिए होता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Sudhir took the robber to the nearest police station.
Patna Junction is the nearest to my house.
Mr. Prasad lives in the next house.
He was sitting next to me.

### D. Use of 'Later' and 'Latter'

Late का प्रयोग early के opposite word के रूप में होता है। Late का Comparative Later और Latter होता है। Later का प्रयोग Earlier के opposite word (विलोम शब्द) के रूप में 'समय' का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जबकि Latter का प्रयोग former के opposite word (विलोम शब्द) के रूप में order (क्रम) or position का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

You came later than he. (time) (√)
You came latter than he. (×)
Mr. Mishra and Mr. Pandey are good teachers but I prefer the former to the latter. (√)
Mr. Mishra and Mr. Pandey are good teachers but I prefer the former to the later. (×)

### E. Use of 'Latest' and 'Last'

Late का Superlative Latest और Last होता है। Latest का प्रयोग earliest के opposite word (विलोम शब्द) के रूप में 'समय' का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जबकि Last का प्रयोग first के opposite word (विलोम शब्द) के रूप में order (क्रम) or position (स्थान) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है।

This is the latest news.
What is the latest score ?
This is the latest book.
This is the last girl in the class.
This is his last chance to appear in the BPSC examination.

### F. Use of 'First' and 'Last'

यदि किसी sentence में दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की चर्चा हो, तो पहले व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए first का प्रयोग होता है, तथा तीसरे या अंतिम व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए last का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The first chapter of this book is very interesting. (√)
Amar, Ajit and Ajay are good friends but the first is better than the last. (√)
Amar, Ajit and Ajay are good friends but the former is better than the last. (×)
Amar, Ajit and Ajay are good friends but the first is better than the latter. (×)

### G. Use of 'Former' and 'Latter'

यदि किसी sentence में मात्र (केवल) दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की चर्चा हो, तो पहले व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए former का प्रयोग होता है, तथा दूसरे अंतिम व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए Latter का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Veena and Anupam are good friends. but the former is better the latter. (√)
Veena and Anupam are good friends but the former is better than the last. (×)
Veena and Anupam are good friends but the first is better than the latter. (×)

### H. Use of 'Less' and 'Fewer'

Less का प्रयोग मात्रा (quantity) का बोध कराने के लिए Singular Uncountable Noun के पहले होता है, जबकि fewer का प्रयोग संख्या (number) का बोध कराने के लिए plural Countable Noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

There is less sugar in your tea than in mine. (√)
There is fewer sugar in your tea than in mine. (×)
He has less money than I.
He has fewer money than I.
There are fewer boys in this class than in that one.
There are less boys in this class than in that one.

### I. Use of 'Less' and 'Lesser'

Less का प्रयोग smaller in size (आकृति), measurement (मा duration (अवधि), number (संख्या), etc का बोध कराने के लिए होता Less के बाद 'than' का प्रयोग होता है। इसका प्रयोग Noun, Adjective Adverb के रूप में होता है। जबकि Lesser का प्रयोग not so great as t other one का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। Lesser के बाद 'than' का प्र नहीं होता है। इसका प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में होता है।

His income is less than mine. *(less as Adjecti*
The Mason said that he would not charge less than eigh rupees for his services. *(less as Nou*
English is less difficult than Hindi. *(less as Adver*
Choose the lesser laborious of the two.

### Some important rules of adjectives

**Rule (1) :** As तथा so के बाद Positive degree के Adjective प्रयोग होता है। Comparative or Superlative degree का नहीं। जैसे—

Sunil is as intelligent as Binit.
P.d.
Sunil is as more intelligent as Binit.
C.d.
Sunil is as most intelligent as Binit.
She is not as tall as Gita.
She is not as taller as Gita.
She is not as tallest as Gita.
He is not so fat as Pawan.
He is not so fatter as Pawan.
He is not so fattest as Pawan.

**Rule (2) :** *Adjective + ly* का प्रयोग Adverb की तरह होता है, जबकि Noun + ly का प्रयोग Adjective की तरह होता है।

नीचे दिए गए सारिणी को ध्यान से पढ़ें :

| Adjective + ly = Adverb | Noun + ly = Adjective |
|---|---|
| 1. wise + ly = wisely | 1. father + ly = fatherly |
| 2. careful + ly = carefully | 2. mother + ly = motherly |
| 3. beautiful + ly = beautifully | 3. brother + ly = brotherly |
| 4. faithful + ly =faithfully | 4. sister + ly = sisterly |
| 5. fortunate + ly = fortunately | 5. love + ly = lovely |
| 6. sincere + ly = sincerely | 6. friend + ly = friendly |
| 7. loving + ly = lovingly | 7. man + ly = manly |
| 8. careless + ly = carelessly | 8. woman + ly = womanly |
| 9. slow + ly = slowly | 9. home + ly = homely |
| 10. loud + ly = loudly | 10. God + ly = Godly |

जैसे—He saw a lovingly sight in Darjeeling.
Adv. N
He saw a lovely sight in Darjeeling.
Adj. N
Your answer was obvious wrong.
Adj. Adj.
Your answer was obviously wrong.
Adv. Adj.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

**Rule (3) :** 'Too' का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में होता है। इसके बाद सदा Positive degree के Adjective या Adverb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He was too weak to walk. (✓)
(too: Adv., weak: P.d.)

He was too weaker to walk. (×)
(too: Adv., weaker: C.d.)

He was too weakest to walk. (×)
(too: Adv., weakest: S.d.)

★ अर्थात् too के बाद Comparative or Superlative degree के Adjective or Adverb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Purnendu runs too fast to win the race. (✓)
(too: Adv., fast: (Adv.) P.d.)

Purnendu runs too faster to win the race. (×)
(too: Adv., faster: C.d.)

Purnendu runs too fastest to win the race. (×)
(too: Adv., fastest: S.d.)

**Rule (4) :** Enough का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में sufficient, as much as is needed; as many as are required (काफी, पर्याप्त) के अर्थ के होता है, जबकि Adverb के रूप में sufficiently, quite well (बहुत काफी, जितना चाहिए उतना) के अर्थ में होता है। इसका प्रयोग सदा Positive degree के Adjective के बाद होता है। जैसे—

The policeman was brave enough to catch the thief. (✓)
The policeman was enough brave to catch the thief. (×)
You are tall enough to touch the ceiling fan. (✓)
You are enough tall to touch the ceiling fan. (×)

★ अर्थात् Positive degree के Adjective के पहले enough का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

ध्यान दें : *Comparative/Superlative + Enough* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

The boy is stronger enough to lift the box. (×)
(stronger: C.d.)

The boy is strongest enough to lift the box. (×)
(strongest: S.d.)

The boy is strong enough to lift the box. (✓)
(strong: P.d.)

**Rule (5) :** कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनके बाद Adjective का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Adverbs का, जैसे—

| Verbs (Link / copular) | + | Adjectives |
|---|---|---|
| appear, make, become, smell, sound, taste, turn, keep, grow, get, look remain, be | + | Adjectives |

★ नीचे दिए गए sentences को ध्यान से देखें :

Bhavna looks beautiful. (✓)
(beautiful: Adj.)

Bhavna looks beautifully. (×)
(beautifully: Adv.)

He made me laughable. (✓)
(laughable: Adj.)

He made me laughably. (×)
(laughably: Adv.)

Mr. Prasad became rich. (✓)
(rich: Adj.)

Mr. Prasad became richly. (×)
(richly: Adv.)

Dara Singh got impatient. (✓)
(impatient: Adj.)

Dara Singh got impatiently. (×)
(impatiently: Adv.)

**Rule (6) :** जानबूझ कर किए गए कार्य का बोध कराने के लिए Verbs—look, taste, smell, turn का प्रयोग हो, तो इसके बाद Adverbs का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Adjectives का। जैसे—

Your teacher looked angrily at you. (✓)
(angrily: Adv.)

Your teacher looked angry at you. (×)
(angry: Adj.)

Mukesh tasted the coffee doubtfully. (✓)
(doubtfully: Adv.)

Mukesh tasted the coffee doubtful. (×)
(doubtful: Adj.)

**Rule (7) :** Prefer का प्रयोग Verb के रूप में like better (अधिक पसन्द करना) के अर्थ में होता है, इसके बाद Preposition—'to' का प्रयोग होता है, न कि than का। जैसे—

He prefers coffee to tea. (✓)
He prefers coffee than tea. (×)

★ Preferable का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में to be liked more (अधिमान्य) के अर्थ में होता है। इसका प्रयोग Comparative degree के Adjective के रूप में होता है, अतः इसके बाद Preposition 'to' का प्रयोग होता है न कि than का। जैसे—

Coffee is preferable to tea. (✓)
Coffee is preferable than tea. (×)
Drinking is preferable to smoking. (✓)
Drinking is preferable than smoking. (×)

★ Preferable के पहले more तथा most का प्रयोग कर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative नहीं बनाया जाता है।

Coffee is more preferable to tea. (×)
Coffee is the most preferable to tea. (×)
Coffee is preferable to tea. (✓)

**Rule (8) :** Same degree का Case—

(a) *Positive degree + Conjunction + Positive degree* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Rupkant Babu is good and wise. (✓)
(good: P.d., wise: P.d.)

Rajani is tall and beautiful. (✓)
(tall: P.d., beautiful: P.d.)

Rajani is tall and more beautiful. (×)

(b) *Comparative degree + Conjunction + Comparative degree* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Binay is better and wiser than Rakesh. (✓)
Binay is better and wise than Rakesh. (×)

(c) *Superlative degree + Conjunction + Superlative degree* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Abhinash is the tallest and most handsome student in the school. (✓)
Abhinash is the tallest and handsome student in the school. (×)

**Note :** दो Superlative degree के Adjective का प्रयोग किसी Conjunction से जोड़कर हो, तो पहले Superlative degree के Adjective के पहले 'The' का प्रयोग होता है, न कि दूसरे के पहले। जैसे—

She is the best and wisest girl in the class. (✓)
She is the best and the wisest girl in the class. (×)

**Rule (9) :** Relatively का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'तुलनात्मक' (in a relative manner) के अर्थ में होता है। इसके बाद Positive degree के Adjective का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Sweta is relatively healthy today. (✓)
(relatively: Adv., healthy: (Adj.) P.d.)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



★ अर्थात् Relatively के बाद Comparative or Superlative degree के Adjective का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Sweta is relatively healthier today. (×)
Adv. C.d.

Sweta is relatively healthiest today. (×)
Adv. S.d.

★ Adverb—relatively के प्रयोग किए बिना भी sentence correct होता है। इस case में Comparative का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Sweta is healthier today. (√)
C.d.

Sweta is healthy today. (×)
P.d.

**Rule (10)** : More + Comparative degree अर्थात् double Comparatives का प्रयोग sentence में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

This ball is more bigger than that. (×)
C.d. C.d.

The ball is bigger than that (√)

He is more taller than I. (×)
C.d. C.d.

He is taller than I. (√)

**Rule (11)** : Most + Superlative degree अर्थात् double Superlatives का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She is the most wisest girl in my village. (×)

She is the wisest girl in my village. (√)
S.d

**Rule (12)** : Comparatively का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'तुलनात्मक रूप से' के अर्थ में होता है। इसके बाद Positive degree के Adjective/Adverb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Your grandmother was comparatively well yesterday. (√)
Adv. Adv.

★ अर्थात् comparatively के बाद Comparative or Superlative degree के Adjective/Adverb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Your grandmother was comparatively better yesterday. (×)
Your grandmother was comparatively best yesterday. (×)

★ Adverb-Comparatively के प्रयोग किए बिना भी sentence correct होता है। इस case में comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He was better yesterday. (√)
He was good yesterday. (×)

**Rule (13)** : *More + Positive degree + than + Positive degree* का प्रयोग एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु, जानवर के दो गुणों की तुलना Comparative degree में करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He was more tall than handsome. (√)
P.d. P.d.

He was taller than handsome. (×)
C.d. P.d.

Priyanka is more fat than beautiful. (√)
P.d. P.d.

Priyanka is fatter than beautiful. (×)

This pen is more red than white. (√)
P.d. P.d.

This pen is redder than white. (×)

Your cow is more humble than wild. (√)

Your cow is humbler than wild. (×)

**Rule (14)** : *As + Positive degree + as + Conjunction + Comparative degree + than* के structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग तब होता है, जब एक positive तथा एक Comparative degree के Adjective का प्रयोग sentence में करना होता है। जैसे—

He is as intelligent as and more laborious than I. (√)
He is as more intelligent as and more laborious than I. (×)
He is as intelligent as and laborious than I. (×)

तथा *Comparative degree + than + Conjunction + as + Positive degree + as* के structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग भी sentence में एक Positive तथा एक Comparative degree के Adjective का प्रयोग होने पर होता है। जैसे—

Manisha is thinner than and as tall as Bhavna. (√)
Manisha is thinner than and as taller as Bhavna. (×)

**Rule (15)** : *The + Comparative + Subject + Verb + (, ) + the + Comparative + Subject + Verb + (, )* के structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग दो वस्तुओं में (के बीच) parallel increase (समांतर बढ़ोतरी) या parallel decrease (समांतर गिरावट / ह्रास) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The higher we go, the cooler we feel.
The more you labour, the more you gain.

**Rule (16)** : More and more + Positive degree तथा ..... er and ..... er का प्रयोग किसी वस्तु में धीरे-धीरे वृद्धि या ह्रास (उन्नति या अवनति) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Jha is becoming poorer and poorer. (√)
He is getting thinner and thinner. (√)
Rahul is becoming more and more intelligent. (√)
His elder daughter is becoming more and more beautiful. (√)
Mr. Jha is becoming poor and poorer. (×)
He is getting thin and thinner. (×)
Rahul is becoming more intelligent and more intelligent. (×)
His elder daughter is becoming more beautiful and more beautiful. (×)

**Rule (17)** : *As + Positive degree + as* के पहले equally का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Suman is equally as intelligent as Amit. (×)
Suman is as intelligent as Amit. (√)
Suman and Amit are equally intelligent. (√)

**Rule (18)** : Positive तथा Comparative degree के sentence में other का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

No other college in Patna is as good as Science college. (√)
Science college is better than any other college in Patna. (√)
Science college is better than all other colleges in Patna. (√)

★ लेकिन Superlative degree के sentence में Superlative degree के Adjective के बाद other का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He was the most laborious of all other students. (×)
He was the most laborious of all students. (√)
Shobhana is the fattest of all her other sisters. (×)
Shobhana is the fattest of all her sisters. (√)

**Rule (19)** : Of/In का प्रयोग Superlative degree के बाद होता है। In का प्रयोग ऐसे Singular word के पहले होता है, जो place (स्थान) या group (समूह) को निर्दिष्ट करते हैं। जबकि of का प्रयोग ऐसे Plural words—lot तथा bunch के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Who is the happiest man in the world ? (√)
S.N

Who is the happiest man of the world ? (×)
S.N

Nehra is the fastest bowler in the team. (√)
S.N

Nehra is the fastest bowler of the team. (×)

Pawan was the most intelligent of the lot. (×)

Pawan was the most intelligent in the lot. (√)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (20) :** *Subject + Verb + The + Comparative degree + of + the two + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग होता है। इस structure में of के बदले than का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She is the more careful of the two girls. (√)
She is the more careful than the two girls. (×)
He is the better of the two players. (√)
He is the better than the two players. (×)

**Rule (21) :** Superlative degree के बाद Plural Noun तथा Singular Noun का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गए structure में होता है।

*Subject + Auxiliary + one of + the + Superlative + Plural Noun + (,) + if not + the + Superlative + Singular Noun (often S.N. is hidden)*

जैसे—He was one of the happiest men, if not the happiest (man).

Nawab was one of the most notorious criminals, if not the most notorious (criminal).

ध्यान दें : *If not + the + Superlative* के बाद Singular Noun को प्रायः नहीं लिखा जाता है, अर्थात् छिपा दिया जाता है।

**Rule (22) :** दो समान वस्तुओं के बीच तुलना होती है, लेकिन दो असमान वस्तुओं के बीच तुलना नहीं होती है। Singular के लिए that of तथा Plural के लिए those of का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. The climate of Patna is better than that of Gaya. (√)
2. The climate of Patna is better than Gaya. (×)
3. The people of Jajuar are wiser than those of Bishnupur (√)
4. The people of Jajuar are wiser than Bishnupur. (×)
5. The people of Jajuar are wiser than that of Bishnupur. (×)

Example (2) तथा (4) से यह स्पष्ट है कि दो असमान वस्तुओं के बीच तुलना नहीं होती है।

Example (2) में The climate of Patna की तुलना Gaya शहर से की गई है, जो गलत है। The climate of Patna की तुलना the climate of Gaya से होना चाहिए था। The climate—Singular Noun का प्रयोग of Patna के पहले हुआ है। अतः than के बाद that of का प्रयोग होना चाहिए था।

Example (4) में The people of Jajuar की तुलना Bishnupur गाँव से की गई है, जो गलत है। The people of Jajuar की तुलना The people of Bishnupur से होना चाहिए था। The people–Plural Noun का प्रयोग of Jajuar के पहले हुआ है, अतः than के बाद those of का प्रयोग होना चाहिए था।

**Rule (23) :** *Very + Comparative degree* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She is very younger than her husband. (×)
Hindi is very more difficult than English. (×)

★ लेकिन comparative degree को emphasis (दबाव डालना) करने के लिए very के अलावे much, far, very much, any, no, rather, a little, even का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She is much younger than her husband. (√)
She is far younger than her husband. (√)
Hindi is much more difficult than English. (√)
Hindi is far more difficult than English. (√)

**Rule (24) :** much, by far, quite, almost, easily, nearly, practically का प्रयोग Superlative degree के पहले Superlative degree को Emphasis (दबाव डालना) करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

1. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was by far the simplest man of our country. (√)
2. Devan Babu is nearly the wisest man in my village. (√)

ऊपर दिए गए examples में आपने देखा कि Superlative—The simplest, the wisest के पहले क्रमशः by far, nearly का प्रयोग the simplest. The wisest को emphasis करने के लिए किया गया है। अतः आप पाठकगण भी जरूरत के मुताबिक इन शब्दों का प्रयोग कर Superlative को emphasis कर सकते हैं।

**Rule (25) :** Half *(आधा)*, twice *(दुगुना)*, thrice *(तिगुना)*, two times *(दो बार)*, three times *(तीन बार)*, four times *(चार बार)*, five times *(पाँच बार)* ..... etc. के बाद As + Positive degree + as का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Mrs. Thakur is four times as wise as her mother-in-law. (√)
This tree is three times as big as that. (√)
He is twice as old as his brother. (√)
His bag is half as big as your bag. (√)

**Note :** Three times *(तीन बार)*, four times *(चार बार)*, five times *(पाँच बार)*, six times *(छ बार)*, seven times *(सात बार)*, eight times *(आठ बार)*, nine times *(नौ बार)*, ten times *(दस बार)* ..... etc. के बाद Comparative degree का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। लेकिन twice तथा half के बाद Comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He can run four times farther than I. (√)
He was five times richer than Rahul. (√)
You are half more intelligent than your brother. (×)
You are half as intelligent as your brother. (√)
She was twice older than her sister. (×)
She was twice as old as her sister. (√)

### Formation Of Adjectives From Nouns

प्रायः हम लोग जानते हैं कि हिन्दी में संज्ञा के अंत में इक, ईय आदि जोड़कर विशेषण बनाते हैं, जैसे—इतिहास—ऐतिहासिक, जल—जलीय।

ठीक इसी प्रकार अंग्रेजी में Nouns के अंत में Suffixes (प्रत्यय) जैसे—al, ar, able, ate, ible, ic, ical, ish, ous, ious, ive, ful, en, ly, some, y आदि जोड़कर Adjectives बनाये जाते हैं।

| Nouns | Meaning | Adjectives | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| crime | अपराध | criminal | अपराधी |
| critic | समालोचक | critical | संकटकालीन |
| series | शृंखला | serial | शृंखलाबद्ध |
| voice | आवाज, कंठस्वर | vocal | कंठ-स्वरीय |
| senses | समझ | sensible, sensitive | समझदार, भावुक |
| ancestor | पूर्वज | ancestral | पैतृक, पुश्तैनी |
| anxiety | चिन्ता, व्यग्रता | anxious | उत्सुक, बेचैन |
| accident | दुर्घटना | accidental | आकस्मिक |
| economy | अर्थव्यवस्था | economic | आर्थिक |
| | | economical | मितव्ययी |
| benefit | लाभ | beneficial | लाभदायक |
| bother | चिन्ता, परेशानी | bothersome | दुःखदायी |
| boy | लड़का | boyish | लड़के जैसी |
| bribe (c.n.) | रिश्वत | bribable | रिश्वत देने योग्य |
| bribery (u.n) | घूस, घूसखोरी | bribable | रिश्वत देने योग्य |
| centre | केन्द्र | central | केन्द्रीय, बीच में |
| cheer | प्रसन्नता, ढाढ़स | cheerful | प्रसन्नतादायक |
| chronicle | घटनाओं का क्रमबद्ध लेखा | chronological | काल क्रम के अनुसार |
| corruption | भ्रष्टाचार | corruptible | भ्रष्ट करने योग्य |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Meaning | Adjectives | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| correction | शोध, सुधार | correct | सत्य, सही |
| decoration | सजावट | decorative | सजावटी |
| decision | फैसला, निर्णय | decisive | निर्णायक |
| defendant | मुद्दालेह, प्रतिवादी | defensible | बचाव करने योग्य |
| | | defensive | प्रतिरक्षात्मक |
| deficiency | अभाव | deficient | अभाव, न्यूनता |
| deliberation | सोच विचार | deliberate | इरादे से किया गया |
| dexterity | निपुणता, चतुराई | dexterous | चतुर, निपुण |
| dogma | मत, उपदेश | dogmatic | पक्के धार्मिक सिद्धांत |
| doctrine | सिद्धांत | doctrinal | सिद्धांत संबंधी |
| environment | वातावरण | environmental | परिस्थिति के अनुसार |
| essence | तत्व, सार | essential | आवश्यक, सारभूत |
| evidence | प्रमाण, साक्ष्य | evident | स्पष्ट, जाहिर |
| excess | अधिकता | excessive | जरूरत से ज्यादा |
| excellence | श्रेष्ठता, महानता | excellent | अतिउत्तम |
| excuse | बहाना, क्षमा | excusable | जो क्षमा किये जाने लायक हो |
| existence | अस्तित्व | existent | वर्तमान, अस्तित्वात्मक |
| explosion | विस्फोट | explosive | विस्फोटक |
| expense | खर्च | expensive | खर्चीला, कीमती |
| experience | अनुभव | experienced | अनुभवी |
| fragrance | सुगन्ध, खुशबू | fragrant | सुगन्धित |
| fright | भय, डर | frightful | भयंकर, डरावना |
| fool | मूर्ख | foolish | मूर्खतापूर्ण |
| fiction | उपन्यास, काल्पनिक कथा | fictitious | मनगढ़न्त, काल्पनिक |
| festival | उत्सव, त्योहार | festive | आनन्दमय, उत्सव संबंधी |
| favourite | बहुतप्रिय | favourable | सहायक |
| fashion | वेशभूषा की शैली, चलन | fashionable | चलन के अनुसार |
| fate | किस्मत, तकदीर | fateful | महत्वपूर्ण व निर्णायक |
| fat | वसा | fatal | घातक |
| fame | कीर्ति, शोहरत | famous | प्रसिद्ध, मशहूर |
| faith | भरोसा | faithful | वफादार |
| famine | अकाल, दुर्भिक्ष | familiar | परिचित, जानकार |
| fact | वास्तविकता | factual | वास्तविक |
| gain | लाभ | gainful | लाभदायक |
| gas | गैस | gaseous | गैसीय |
| glamour | आकर्षण, सुन्दरता | glamorous | आकर्षक |
| gloom | धुँधलापन | gloomy | मलिन, अंधकारमय |
| glory | ख्याति, नेकनामी गौरव | glorious | विख्यात, सम्मानपूर्ण |
| God | ईश्वर | godlike | देवतुल्य |
| | | godly | धर्मपरायण, शुद्ध |
| gold | सोना | golden | सुनहरी, उत्तम |
| grammar | व्याकरण | grammatical | व्याकरण के नियमों के अनुसार |
| guarantee | जमानत | guaranteed | जिम्मा लिया हुआ |
| guess | अनुमान | guessable | अनुमान के योग्य |
| gymnast | पहलवान, कसरती | gymnastic | व्यायाम संबंधी |

| Nouns | Meaning | Adjectives | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| grass | घास | grassy | हरा |
| goat | बकरा | goatish | लम्पट |
| honour | सम्मान, आदर | honourable | आदरणीय |
| hope | आशा | hopeful | आशायुक्त |
| | | hopeless | आशाहीन |
| horn | सींग | horny | सींग की तरह कड़ा |
| | | hornless | बिना सिंग का |
| horoscope | जन्मपत्रिका | horoscopical | जन्मपत्री संबंधी |
| hospital | अस्पताल | hospitable | आतिथ्यकारी |
| hurt | चोट, क्षति | hurtful | घातक, दुष्ट |
| hunger | क्षुधा, भूख | hungry | क्षुधापीड़ित, भूखा |
| humour | चित्त तरंग, प्रकृति | humorous | विनोदी, रसिक |
| honesty | ईमानदारी | honest | ईमानदार |
| homicide | मनुष्यघातक | homicidal | मनुष्य वध संबंधी |
| history | इतिहास | historic | इतिहास प्रसिद्ध |
| hero | पराक्रमी पुरुष, नायक | heroic | पराक्रम युक्त |
| | | hereditary | पैतृक |
| heredity | पुश्तैनीगुण | hereditable | वंश परम्परा से प्राप्त होने योग्य |
| heaven | स्वर्ग, परमेश्वर | heavenly | स्वर्गीय, दिव्य |
| health | स्वास्थ्य | healthy | स्वास्थ्य, तन्दुरुस्त |
| | | healthful | स्वस्थ, तन्दुरुस्त |
| hazard | संकट | hazardous | संकटमय |
| hate | घृणा | hateable | घृणा के योग्य |
| | | hateful | घृणा उत्पन्न करने वाला |
| harm | हानि | harmful | हानिकारक, अपकारी |
| | | harmless | निर्दोष, निरपराध |
| habit | अभ्यास, स्वभाव | habitual | स्वाभाविक |
| ice | बर्फ | icy | बहुत ठंडा |
| idiot | पूर्णमूर्ख व्यक्ति | idiotic | मूर्ख |
| ignorance | अज्ञानता | ignorant | अज्ञानी |
| illegitimacy | दोगलापन | illegitimate | दोगला, अवैध |
| image | प्रतिभा, कल्पना | imageable | चिन्ता धारण करने योग्य |
| | | imaginable | चिन्तनीय |
| imagine (v) | कल्पना करना | imaginary | काल्पनिक |
| | | imaginative | कल्पनाशील |
| imitation | अनुकरण | imitative | अनुकरणशील |
| impatience | अधीरता, व्यग्रता | impatient | अधीर, व्यग्र |
| invention | आविष्कार | inventive | आविष्कार करने योग्य |
| jealousy | ईर्ष्या | jealous | ईर्ष्यालु |
| judge | न्यायाधीश | judicial | न्यायाधीश या न्यायालय संबंधी |
| | | judicious | न्याययुक्त, उचित |
| jurisdiction | वैध अधिकार | jurisdictional jurisdictive | अधिकार संबंधी |
| justice | न्याय | just, justiciable | न्याय योग्य |
| knight | योद्धा, शूरवीर | knightly, knight like | शूरवीर की तरह |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Meaning | Adjectives | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| king | राजा | kinglike | राजकीय |
| labour | परिश्रम | laborious | परिश्रमी |
| leather | चमड़ा | leathery | चमड़े के समान |
| legend | पौराणिक कथा | legendary | पौराणिक |
| single | एक | singular | अकेला |
| angle | कोण | angular | कोणीय |
| advice | परामर्श | advisable | उचित |
| charity | दान | charitable | दान देने योग्य |
| value | मूल्य | valuable | मूल्यवान |
| passion | प्रबल मनोवेग | passionate | प्रबल मनोवेग युक्त |
| hell | नरक यमलोक | hellish | नारकीय |
| book | पुस्तक | bookish | पुस्तकीय |
| child | बच्चा | childish | बचपन जैसा |
| slave | गुलाम | slavish | गुलाम जैसा |
| sympathy | सहानुभूति | sympathetic | सहानुभूतिपूर्ण |
| class | वर्ग | classical | प्राचीन |
| fever | ज्वर, बुखार | feverish | ज्वर या बुखार जैसा |
| contempt | घृणा | contemptible | घृणित |
| merit | गुण, योग्यता | meritorious | योग्य, गुणी |
| wish | इच्छा | wishful | इच्छापूर्ण |
| peace | शांति | peaceful | शांत |
| will | इच्छा | wilful | हठी |
| taste | स्वाद | tasteful | स्वादिष्ट |
| risk | संकट, शंका | risky | संकटमय |
| riot | उपद्रव, दंगा | riotous | दंगाई, उपद्रवी |
| right | न्याय, धर्म, अधिकार | righteous | न्यायपरायण, धार्मिक, सत्यनिष्ठ |
| fortune | भाग्य | fortunate | भाग्यवान |
| neighbour | पड़ोसी | neighbourly | मिलनसार |
| nutrition | पोषण विज्ञान | nutrient | पुष्टिकारक/बलवर्द्धक |
| | | nutritious | पुष्टकारक/पौष्टिक |
| objection | विरोध, एतराज | objectionable | अनुचित, विरोध करने योग्य |
| obligation | दायित्व, अनुग्रहता | obligatory | अनिवार्य |
| oblivion | भुलाने की स्थिति | oblivious | भुलक्कड़ |
| occasion | अवसर | occasional | कभी-कभी होने वाला |
| ocean | महासागर | oceanic | महासागरीय |
| origin | स्रोत, उद्गम | original | मौलिक, असली |
| ornament | आभूषण | ornamental | सुशोभित करने वाला |
| paralysis | लकवा | paralytic | लकवा मारा हुआ |
| paternity | पितृत्व | paternal | पैतृक |
| path | मार्ग | pathless | मार्ग रहित |
| patriot | देशभक्त | patriotic | स्वदेशाभिमानी |
| person | व्यक्ति | personable | सुन्दर |
| | | personal | व्यक्तिगत |
| physiology | शरीर विज्ञान | physiological | शारीरिक |
| probability | संभावना | probable | सम्भाव्य |

| Nouns | Meaning | Adjectives | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| question | प्रश्न | questionable | संदेहयुक्त |
| quarrel | झगड़ा | quarrelsome | झगड़ालू |
| quality | गुण | qualitative | गुणात्मक |
| rebellion | राजद्रोह | rebellious | राजद्रोह के रूप में |
| reliance | विश्वास | reliant | विश्वासी |
| repulsion | प्रतिकर्षण | repulsive | घृणित, वीभत्स |
| resident | निवासी | residential | निवास से संबंधित |
| result | परिणाम | resultant | सम्मिलित चीजों का नतीजा/फल |
| revolution | क्रांति, परिभ्रमण | revolutionary | क्रान्तिकारी |
| root | जड़ | rooty | जड़दार |
| rose | गुलाब का फूल | rosy / roseate | गुलाबी रंग का |
| satire | व्यंग | satirical | व्यंग्यपूर्ण |
| satisfaction | संतोष | satisfactory | संतोषजनक |
| science | विज्ञान | scientific | विज्ञान से संबंधी |
| season | ऋतु | seasonable | सामयिक |
| | | seasonal | मौसमी |
| sentiment | भावना | sentimental | भावुक |
| silence | शांति | silent | शांत |
| temperament | स्वभाव | temperamental | स्वभाव संबंधी |
| affection | स्नेह | affectionate | स्नेहशील |
| adventure | साहस का कार्य | adventurous | साहसिक |
| courage | साहस | courageous | साहसपूर्ण |
| moment | क्षण | momentous | क्षणिक |
| | | momentary | क्षणिक |
| danger | खतरा | dangerous | खतरनाक |
| mercy | दया | merciful | दयालु |
| youth | युवक | youthful | युवा संबंधी |
| caution | सावधानी | cautious | सावधान |
| wool | ऊन | woolly | ऊन की तरह मुलायम |
| silk | रेशम | silken | रेशमी |
| wind | हवा | windy | वायु |
| leaf | पत्ती | leafy | पत्तीदार |
| blood | रक्त | bloody | रक्तरंजित |
| loath | घृणा | loathsome | घृणास्पद/घृणित |
| bush | झाड़ी | bushy | झाड़ीदार |
| trouble | कष्ट | troublesome | कष्टदायक |
| cloud | बादल | cloudy | बादलों से ढका हुआ |
| ease | आराम, सुख, विश्राम | easy / easeful | आरामदेह/शान्त/स्वस्थ |
| fire | अग्नि | fiery | जोशीला, आग्नेय |
| hill | पहाड़ | hilly | पहाड़ी |
| thirst | प्यास | thirsty | प्यासा |
| coward | कायरपुरुष | cowardly | कायर |
| terror | डर | terrible | भयानक |
| distance | दूरी | distant | दूरस्थ |
| college | महाविद्यालय | collegiate | महाविद्यालय से संबंधी |
| tragedy | शोकपूर्ण घटना | tragic | दुःखपूर्ण |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Meaning | Adjectives | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| study | अध्ययन | studious | अध्ययनशील |
| circle | वृत्त | circular | वृत्ताकार |
| education | शिक्षा | educational | शैक्षणिक |
| mind | मस्तिष्क | mental | मानसिक |
| confidence | गोपनीयता | confidential | गोपनीय |
| thought | विचार | thoughtful | विचारशील |

अग्रलिखित Adjectives में से कुछ Adjectives का प्रयोग नीचे दिए जा रहे हैं, इन्हें गौर से देखें—

1. **Criminal** : Nawab was criminal.
   *नवाब अपराधी था।*
2. **Critical** : Iraq is suffering from critical condition.
   *इराक संकटकालीन स्थिति से गुजर रहा है।*
3. **Serial** : Put the books in serial order.
   *पुस्तकों को शृंखलाबद्ध क्रम में रखें।*
4. **Vocal** : My mother prefers vocal music to instrumental music.
   *मेरी माँ कंठ-स्वरीय संगीत को वाद्ययंत्रीय संगीत से ज्यादा पसंद करती है।*
5. **Sensible** : Sweta is a sensible girl.
   *स्वेता एक समझदार लड़की है।*
6. **Sensitive** : Mother is very sensitive.
   *माँ बहुत भावुक होती है।*
7. **Ancestral** : He got ancestral property.
   *उसे पूर्वजों की सम्पत्ति मिली।*
8. **Anxious** : I am anxious to do my work.
   *मैं अपने कार्य करने के लिए बेचैन हूँ।*
9. **Economic** : The economic condition of India is not good.
   *भारत की आर्थिक स्थिति अच्छी नहीं है।*
10. **Economical** : His father was an economical man.
    *उसके पिता एक मितव्ययी व्यक्ति हैं।*

**Note** : पाठकगण दिए गए Adjectives से वाक्य बनायें और स्वतः इनके प्रयोग को समझने की कोशिश करें।

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Pick out the adjectives and state their kinds :*

1. The coffee is not good.
2. The black cat caught a small bird.
3. The cow has a long tail.
4. Everyone makes several mistakes in his life.
5. He likes this pen.
6. How do you do this sum ?
7. I like such a book.
8. Which is your pen ?
9. A little boy was playing with his friends.
10. Which student broke this chair ?
11. The spider has eight legs.
12. He wants some money.
13. All men are mortal.
14. A few students are present in the class.
15. Neither boy has come.
16. He likes the Nepalese tobacco.
17. He ate little bread.
18. A month has thirty days.
19. March is the third month of the year.
20. Each student has two pens.
21. Whose pen is this ?
22. These apples are sweet.
23. The rose is a beautiful flower.
24. Man is a wonderful animal.
25. It was a glorious victory.

**Q. 2.** *Fill in the blank with suitable adjectives :*

1. Lata is a ..... singer.
2. Which is the ..... day of the week ?
3. We should always drink ..... water.
4. Shakespeare wrote ..... plays.
5. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was a ..... leader.
6. Patna is a ..... town.
7. That is a ..... house.
8. Owls eat rats and ..... birds.
9. Who made ..... shirt ?
10. What is ..... name ?
11. There is ..... water in the glass.
12. A ..... and ..... road runs to the station.
13. The hand has ..... fingers.
14. Quinine is bitter, but honey is ..... .
15. The days are hot, but the nights are ..... .
16. His ..... son is in the army.
17. Rahul was the ..... of the two brothers.
18. Mahatma Gandhi Setu is the ..... bridge in Asia.
19. The Tajmahal is ..... monument.
20. His ..... manners pleased us.
21. There are trees on ..... side of the road.
22. The Ramayana is a ..... book.
23. The ..... soldier fought bravely.
24. A ..... knowledge is a dangerous thing.
25. He is ..... to see her.

**Q. 3.** *Fill in the blanks with 'some' or 'any' :*

1. He does not want ..... coffee.
2. Did you see ..... girl there ?
3. He saw ..... girls dancing on the stage.
4. Will you give me ..... sugar.
5. There is ... coffee in the kitchen, but there isn't ... milk.
6. Ashok has ..... books but Rohan hasn't ..... .
7. Please give me ... more rice. I am sorry there isn't ... .
8. You have ..... more books to read.
9. Put ..... sugar in my tea.
10. Have you got ..... trouble ?

**Q. 4.** *Fill in the blanks with 'much' or 'many' :*

1. Mr. Prasad has got ..... experience.
2. How ..... time will he take to do this sum ?
3. How ..... days will she take to complete this work ?
4. How ..... times have you gone to the zoo ?
5. How ..... water is there in this bucket ?
6. The boys did not make ..... noise.
7. I don't know how ..... men he has cheated.
8. How ..... students are there in the class ?
9. There is not ..... milk in the bucket.
10. There are not ..... people present in the meeting.

**Q. 5.** *Fill in the blanks with 'no/ not any/ not'*

1. I have ..... book.
2. He has ..... money.
3. There ae ..... apples in the basket.
4. There is ..... pride in a poor man.
5. Ramesh has ..... a pen.
6. You can ..... do it.
7. She asked me ..... to go there.
8. There is ..... information about Manisha.
9. I have ..... pen to lend you at present.
10. ..... other boy will be allowed to go in.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


Q. 6. *Fill in the blanks with 'little', 'a little' or 'the little' :*

1. There is ..... coffee in this cup.
2. ..... money is needed to save his life.
3. ..... money she had was all stolen.
4. You have ..... money.
5. A foolish student has ..... care for his life.
6. ..... money he had spent over his brother's education.
7. If you save ..... money everyday, you can get a good sum in a year.
8. There is ..... hope of his recovery.
9. ..... knowledge is a dangerous thing.
10. You have ..... appreciation of good poetry.

Q. 7. *Fill in the blanks with 'few', 'a few', 'the few' :*

1. ..... men are free from faults.
2. ..... books are as popular as the Gita.
3. Mukesh is with me for ..... days.
4. Just ..... good books can make a man wise.
5. Mr. Thakur spoke ..... words and sat down.
6. ..... words he spoke were full of wisdom.
7. ..... students I have are wise and disciplined.
8. ..... years I spent in Darbhanga were not happy.
9. If you spend ..... rupees, you can get good pens.
10. I have read ..... books.

Q. 8. *Fill in the blanks with 'very few' or 'very little' :*

1. I have ..... time to arrange the party.
2. ..... students came to attend the class.
3. ..... money is needed for this project.
4. There were ..... students in the class.
5. There was ..... milk in the pot.
6. ..... of them were anxious to solve that sum.
7. ..... of those students were intelligent.
8. Your father has ..... money to give you.
9. ..... girls were present in the show.
10. There is ..... milk to prepare tea.

Q. 9. *Fill in the blanks with 'all' or 'whole' :*

1. The ..... world knows the fact of terrorism.
2. ..... the students were absent.
3. ..... men are mortal.
4. The ..... field rang with the shouts of joy.
5. The ..... country is burning in the fire of terror.
6. His ..... body was covered.
7. ..... the money has been stolen.
8. The ..... of Bihar is suffering from floods.
9. The ..... village was determined to dismiss the headman.
10. ..... girls are brave.

Q. 10. *Fill in the blanks with 'a certain' or 'certain' :*

1. I know ..... boy who is wicked.
2. ..... drugs are a cure for snake bite.
3. He met ..... girl yesterday.
4. ..... people were standing at the gate.
5. ..... man was looking for you.
6. He know ..... young woman who was beautiful and proud.
7. One day I was teaching ..... girls who was industrious.
8. He was playing with ..... boys.
9. Rupa was dancing with ..... old man.
10. ..... actors came on the stage and started to sing.

Q. 11. *Fill in the blanks with 'other', 'another', 'any other' :*

1. He was writing a letter with one hand and smoking a cigarette with the ..... .
2. Some boys were playing cricket and the ..... were playing hockey.
3. The principal did not give him ..... chance to appear at the examination.
4. I don't want to buy ..... book.
5. Your sister wants to buy ..... frock.
6. Anupam is better than ..... girl in the school.
7. No ..... girl in this family is as beautiful as Guriya.
8. He will take ..... five hours to do this work.
9. She wanted to buy ... camera.
10. Mount Everest is higher than ..... peak in the Himalayas.

Q. 12. *Fill in the blanks with 'each' or 'every' :*

1. ..... member has to sign this agreement.
2. ..... institution has its own banner.
3. ..... student has a pen and a book.
4. ..... seat was vacant.
5. ..... country has its own flag.
6. Ten boys were standing in ..... row.
7. ..... student was sitting on his seat.
8. ..... of the two boys was honest.
9. I have read almost ..... book I had.
10. ..... five men was queuing up.

Q. 13. *Fill in the blanks with 'either' or 'neither' :*

1. ..... cow was black.
2. ..... of the two books is useful.
3. He would take ..... side.
4. ..... side has won.
5. ..... charge has been proved.
6. ..... of the students was honest.
7. ..... of the girls was ugly.
8. ..... robber was saved.
9. ..... of the hands is called right hand.
10. ..... leader is honest and faithful to his country.

Q. 14. *Fill in the blanks with suitable Adjectives given in the brackets :*

1. There is not ..... sugar in this pot now but there was ..... sugar in it yesterday. *(some, any)*
2. There is not ..... water in the well. *(much, many)*
3. ..... people think that there will be a war soon. *(much, many)*
4. I have ..... friends in Patna. *(a few, a little)*
5. I know ..... Bengali and less Hindi. *(little, a little)*
6. Mr. Yadav has ..... chance of being elected. *(little, a little)*
7. ..... villages in Bihar have dispensaries. *(few, a few)*
8. There are ..... milk in the glass. *(some, any)*
9. There are ..... pens on the table. *(some, any)*
10. ..... guests came to see him this evering but he saw only ..... *(a lot of, a few)*
11. Sometimes she put ..... salt in my vegetables. *(a few, a little)*
12. I had ..... work to do this morning but I could do only ..... *(alot of, alittle)*
13. Binay has bought two pens, and .....pen is black. *(each, every)*
14. A dog is a ..... animal. *(faithful, faithfully)*
15. There were trees on ..... side of the road. *(either, every)*

Q. 15. *Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of Adjectives :*

| | Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | much | ..... | ..... |
| 2. | ..... | farther | ..... |
| 3. | hot | ..... | ..... |
| 4. | ..... | ..... | least |
| 5. | ..... | worse | ..... |
| 6. | ..... | prettier | ..... |
| 7. | lucky | ..... | ..... |
| 8. | dirty | ..... | ..... |
| 9. | lovely | ..... | ..... |
| 10. | ..... | drier | ..... |
| 11. | ..... | ..... | shallowest |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12. | ..... | deverer | ..... |
| 13. | Noble | ..... | ..... |
| 14. | wide | ..... | ..... |
| 15. | fit | ..... | ..... |
| 16. | slim | ..... | ..... |
| 17. | merry | ..... | ..... |
| 18. | ..... | busier | ..... |
| 19. | ill | ..... | ..... |
| 20. | ..... | more | ..... |
| 21. | ..... | inner | ..... |
| 22. | ..... | upper | ..... |
| 23. | ..... | ..... | utmost |
| 24. | late | ..... | ..... |
| 25. | Grey | ..... | ..... |
| 26. | famous | ..... | ..... |
| 27. | ..... | morehonest | ..... |
| 28. | expensive | ..... | ..... |
| 29. | ..... | ..... | most courageous |
| 30. | handsome | ..... | ..... |
| 31. | fast | ..... | ..... |
| 32. | badly | ..... | ..... |
| 33. | well | ..... | ..... |
| 34. | careful | ..... | ..... |
| 35. | ..... | ..... | broadest |
| 36. | sad | ..... | ..... |
| 37. | ..... | younger | ..... |
| 38. | ..... | older | ..... |
| 39. | kind | ..... | ..... |
| 40. | great | ..... | ..... |
| 41. | close | ..... | ..... |
| 42. | fond | ..... | ..... |
| 43. | lazy | ..... | ..... |
| 44. | fine | ..... | ..... |
| 45. | ..... | bigger | ..... |
| 46. | ..... | colder | ..... |
| 47. | ..... | ..... | thickest |
| 48. | ..... | ..... | widest |
| 49. | ..... | thinner | ..... |
| 50. | Tiny | ..... | ..... |

**Q. 16.** *Pick out the Adjectives and name the degree of comparison*

1. Prabha is the most honest girl in the class.
2. No news is good news.
3. He congratulated me on my grand success.
4. This is the elder of the two sisters.
5. It was the happiest time of my life.
6. Lead is heavier than any other metal.
7. Love is greater than any other thing in the world.
8. A dead lion is not so good as a live ass.
9. She is not as beautiful as Gita.
10. Very few buildings in the world are so beautiful as the Tajmahal.

**Q. 17.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable words in the following sentences :*

1. This pen is superior ..... that.
2. He is the elder ..... the two brothers.
3. Mr. Gupta is junior ..... me in teaching.
4. She was the most courageous ..... all women in the village.
5. A wise enemy is better ..... a foolish friend.
6. Gayajee is inferior ..... Gangadhar in intelligence.
7. He was senior..... me by five years.
8. This event took place prior ..... the second world war.
9. He was the ..... honest of the two boys.
10. Shobhana is taller ..... Bhavna.

**Q. 18.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. Nepalese goods are more superior to Indian goods.
2. He is junior than all his brothers.
3. She is most senior to Neha.
4. He is the better than the two players.
5. She is the most laborious of the two girls.
6. There were much clothes in the trunk.
7. Gold is more precious than any metal.
8. This book is the best of the two.
9. My brother is elder than yours.
10. His intelligence is superior than yours.
11. The earth is most round.
12. He was the most unique man in the town.
13. Mr. Azad was the chiefest guest in the party.
14. This room is more rectangular.
15. Satish was the most excellent man in his village.

**Q. 19.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of Adjectives given in the brackets :*

1. Her pen is ..... than yours. *(costly)*
2. June is the ..... month of the year. *(hot)*
3. Varsha is the ..... of the two girls. *(tall)*
4. The public is the ..... judge. *(good)*
5. Some people have ..... money than brains. *(much)*
6. Of the two evils choose the ..... *(little)*
7. Patna is the ..... town in Bihar. *(large)*
8. Jhingur Babu was the ..... man in my village. *(rich)*
9. Shankuntala is ..... than any other drama in sanskrit. *(good)*
10. Iron is ..... than copper. *(useful)*
11. Ajay is the ..... boy in the class. *(clever)*
12. Kolkata is ..... from Delhi than Patna is. *(far)*
13. Who was the ..... man in the village ? *(intelligent)*
14. Today is the ..... night of the week. *(cold)*
15. The rose is the ..... of all flowers. *(lovely)*
16. Tamasa is ..... than Ahinsa. *(far)*
17. He is too ..... to do this type of work. *(lazy)*
18. He is ..... to his brother. *(senior)*
19. The older I get, the ..... I am. *(happy)*
20. She is becoming ..... and more beautiful. *(much)*

**Q. 20.** *Fill in the blanks with elder, older, eldest, oldest, elders :*

1. Binod is ..... than his brother.
2. Ramita Devi is the ..... woman in our village.
3. She is my ..... sister.
4. She is the ..... of the two sisters.
5. Arun is his ..... son.
6. Of the two teachers Mr. Singh is the ..... .
7. Her ..... daughter lives in New York.
8. This is the ..... mosque in the town.
9. Amar is ..... than Lalan.
10. My ..... brother lives in Patna.
11. We must respect our ..... .
12. This is the ..... pen in the shop.
13. Who is the ..... man in the village ?
14. Who is the ..... son of Maneshwar Thakur.
15. His ..... sister gives me a pen to give him.

**Q. 21.** *Fill in the blanks with 'farther' or 'further' :*

1. He has nothing ..... to say.
2. Muzaffarpur is ..... from Patna than Hazipur.
3. Until ..... orders, you act as principal of the college.
4. ..... argument is required in this case.
5. Don't make .....delay.

**Q. 22.** *Fill in the blanks with 'nearest' or 'next' :*

1. The patient was taken to the ..... hospital.
2. Ajit's house is ..... to mine.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


3. His residence is ..... to the river.
4. She was sitting ..... to him.
5. The ..... Railway station is ten miles from here.
6. My beloved lived in the ..... house.
7. This lane is the ..... to my office.
8. Who will be the ..... Governor of Bihar ?
9. Send your son to the ..... school.
10. The ..... town from my village is Darbhanga.

Q. 23. *Fill in the blanks with 'Later', 'Latter' Latest or Last :*

1. She came ..... than I expected.
2. The ..... chapter of this book is very interesting.
3. Shakespeare and Milton were great poets but I prefer the former to the ..... .
4. What is the ..... news ?
5. The ..... house in the row is mine.
6. What is the ..... score ?
7. The principal has given him .....chance to appear at the examination.
8. Priyanka did not come ..... than Madhu.
9. The ..... emperor of the Mughal empire was Bahadur Sah Zafar.
10. Ashok and Raman are good friends, but the former is better than the ..... .

Q. 24. *Fill in the blanks with 'first', 'last', 'former', or 'latter' :*

1. The ..... lesson of that book was very fictitious.
2. The ..... chance was given to her by the board.
3. Shobhana, Bhavna and Rima are good sisters but the ..... is better than the ..... .
4. Binay and Mukesh are intelligent students but the ..... is more intelligent than the ..... .
5. Mr. Nitish Kumar was the ..... Railway minister of India.
6. The ..... director of DDE was a Mr. Sahay.
7. Nilu, Rani and Nitu are beautiful girls but the ..... is more beautiful than the ..... .
8. Raman and Ashok are busy persons but the ..... is busier than the ..... .
9. Who is the ..... student in the class ?
10. $B_{12}$ was the ..... batch in 2002.

Q. 25. *Fill in the blanks with 'less', 'fewer', 'lesser' :*

1. There are ..... girls in this class than in that one.
2. I have ..... money than you.
3. No ..... than twenty terrorists were killed in the explosion.
4. Two is ..... than five.
5. Pinku won no ..... than Rs. 5000 in the lottery.
6. This tree has ..... mangoes than that one.
7. There is ..... coffee in his cup than in mine.
8. I don't sell ..... than five litres of oil.
9. There are no ..... than fifty students present.
10. This girl weighs no ..... than fifty kilograms.
11. Sanskrit is ..... difficut than Hindi.
12. Choose the ..... intelligent of the two girls.
13. Your income is ..... than his.
14. This box weighs no ..... than ten kilos.
15. No ..... than five soldiers are wounded.

Q. 26. *Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of Adjectives given in the brackets :*

1. He was not so ..... as Prem. *(intelligent)*
2. Binay is as ..... as Ajit. *(tall)*
3. There was a ..... night in Jamshedpur. *(lovely)*
4. She is too ..... to understand the notes. *(dull)*
5. This box is too ..... to lift. *(heavy)*
6. They were so..... that they could not catch the train. *(late)*
7. This suitcase is ... enough for her to carry. *(heavy)*
8. She was ...enough to win a beauty contest. *(pretty)*
9. This problem is ... enough for me to solve. *(difficult)*
10. She became ..... . *(rich)*
11. Sugar tastes ..... . *(sweet)*
12. Milk is ..... to tea. *(preferable)*

Q. 27. *Correct the following sentences :*

1. He saw two men, the one was lame and another was blind.
2. Shyama is more beautiful than any girl in the class.
3. My younger brother is six feet high.
4. Dukhharan Pahalwan was stronger than tall.
5. The population of China is greater than India.
6. The students of Bihar are more laborious than Jharkhand.
7. Mr. Nitish kumar is one of the wisest and honest leaders of Bihar.
8. Mr. Laloo Prasad Yadav is the most unique leader of India.
9. I have finished reading a few books that I had.
10. This course of action is more preferable to the other.
11. The girls were introduced to each other by a mutual friend.
12. Bring her any water to drink.
13. The most best Chief Minister of Bihar is Mr. Nitish Kumar.
14. This girl is intilligent than beautiful.
15. Your written statement differs in several important respects from my verbal statement.
16. As a dress designer, I am very interested in the last fashions.
17. In the latest decades of the twentieth century, the world has seen many changes.
18. If there were less cars on the roads, there would be less accidents.
19. The police asked for a little description of the car.
20. They still think that women are inferior than men.
21. At first, I would like to introduce myself.
22. There are four points that I would like to make about the college. At first there are not enough club activities.
23. Firstly, I could not understand the local people at all.
24. I'm looking forward to seeing you nearest Sunday.
25. It's an interesting magazine with too many good ideas.
26. I noticed that he had a couple of drinks too much.
27. He likes these kinds of books.
28. Of the two girls, she was certainly the most beautiful.
29. Your essay is worst than mine.
30. The Hindustan has the largest circulation of anyother daily paper.
31. He has still few rupees with him.
32. Anjani is the most industrious and noblest employee of the Lucent Publication.
33. The whole India mourned at the death of Rajeev Gandhi.
34. The climate of Rajgir is as good as Simla.
35. Nikhil got centpercent marks in English.
36. I gave a few coins I had in my pocket to the beggar.
37. Of Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Patna, the latest has the largest number of cars.
38. Lalan has been sick for a very long time.
39. This article was published in the last issue of the Times of India.
40. Dr. S. S Prasad's command over English is the most excellent.
41. Some students are very coward.
42. Both the sister's have not passed.
43. She got only passing marks in English.
44. In summer, days are warm than nights.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



45. He is the strongest and very tall boy in the whole college.
46. The car flew off the road and fell into the valley because Amit was driving faster.
47. The driver tried his best to avert the accident by bringing the car to a suddenly stop.
48. There are so many filths all around the place.
49. The man appears to have seen more happier days.
50. Have you read this book farther than I ?

Q. 28. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. As soonner as (1)/ you reach the port (2)/ report to (3)/ the desk officer. (4)/ No error (5)
2. Even on the eve of an inevitable fall (1)/ to everyone's dismay (2)/ their leader seems to be in their elements. (3)/ No error(4)
3. Originally they had planned to buy an air conditioner (1)/ but finally settled for an air cooler (2)/ as the cost of the latter was very less. (3)/ No error (4)
4. It was difficult to get out (1)/ because the street was full of people (2)/ from one end to another.(3)/ No error (4)
5. In my opinion (1)/ a pencil is always (2)/ more preferable to a pen. (3) No error (4)
6. I an going to bed (1) /and you would be well (2)/ advised to do likely. (3). No error (4)
7. I could not (1)/ remember story to tell the children (2)/ so I made one up as I went along. (3) No error (4)
8. No king in that period (1)/ was so intensely involved (2)/ in the welfare of his people (3)/ as king Ashoka. (4) No error. (5)
9. I asked two persons (1)/ the way to the station (2)/ but none of them knew it. (3)/ No error (4)
10. When it comes to comparison (1)/ between the two (2)/ quality is most (3)/ important than quantity. (4)/ No error (4)
11. Enough is enough. (1)/ I cannot now (2)/ tolerate this mischief (3)/ any much. (4)/ No error (5)
12. One of them (1)/ forgot to take (2)/ their bag (3)/ from the school. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Our new playground (1)/ is big (2)/ and cleaner (3)/ than theirs. (4)/ No error (5)
14. After he had read the two first chapters (1)/ of the novel (2)/ he felt like reading (3)/ the book at one sitting. (4)/ No error (5)
15. Although he is my bossom friend (1)/ I can not ask him for (2)/ money without any (3)/ vividly reason. (4)/ No error (5)
16. He reached home (1)/ leaving aside all other work (2)/ but his father had (3)/ left the home few minutes earlier. (4)/ No error (5)
17. If you inform me (1)/ of your's arrival time (2)/ I shall come to (3)/ meet you at the airport. (4)/ No error (5)
18. All said and done (1)/ It is the basic values that (2)/ are most importance and (3)/ help you in the long run. (4)/ No error (5)
19. We were very much (1)/ carefully in our approach (2)/ and hence we would (3)/ complete the complicated task. (4)/ No error (5)
20. In our area (1)/ the journey by bus (2)/ is quick and safe (3)/ than by train. (4)/ No error (5)
21. Anjali's performance in the (1)/ drama was best than (2)/ Deepali's but not (3)/ as good as Vaishali's. (4)/ No error (5)
22. He ran so fastly (1)/ that he reached (2)/ the destination in (3)/ just two minutes. (4)/No error (5)
23. I am sure that (1)/ all my monthly expenses (2)/ would exceed the income (3)/ if I do not economise. (4)/ No error (5)
24. Simplest solution (1)/ than this expensive (2)/method which you are suggesting (3)/ should be found out (4)/ No error. (5)
25. In spite of the rumours (1)/ of an impending take over (2)/ by the government (3)/ Ramlal bought more shares of that company (4)/ No error (5)
26. The world (1)/ comprises (2)/ good and bad people (3)/ No error (4)
27. Dilip's performance in the (1)/ film was worst than (2)/ Amit's but was not (3)/ as bad as Vinod's. (4)/ No error (5)
28. When Charles was (1)/ in the hospital (2)/ his sister sent him much fruit than his uncle. (4)/ No error (5)
29. The faster he completes (1)/ the work given to (2)/ him, the largest (3)/ will be his profit. (4)/ No error (5)
30. The captain declared that his ship had carried (1)/ no less than three hundred passengers (2)/ on the last voyage. (3)/ No error. (4)
31. Some people get (1)/ used to changes (2)/ very easily than (3)/ others do (4)/ No error. (5)
32. The link road has (1)/ now become (2)/ the roughest road than (3)/ any other road in the city. (4)/ No error (5)
33. She asked him (1)/ what it was that made him (2)/ so much stronger and braver (3)/ than any man. (4)/ No error. (5)
34. Everyone agrees that (1)/ the Ganga is the holiest (2)/ of all other rivers (3)/ of India. (4)/ No error (5)
35. His car is (1)/ more bigger than (2)/ that of any of us. (3)/ No error. (4)
36. If you look up tea in a cookery book (1)/ you may find a few instructions (2)/ that give you no help (3)/ on several important points. (3)/ No error (4)
37. Which (1)/ do you prefer (2)/ more meat (3)/ or fish ? (4)/No error (5)
38. The new assignment is (1)/ more challenging than (2)/ most of the (3)/ earlier assignment. (4)/ No error (5)
39. A few word of (1)/ gratitude are enough (2)/ to express your (3)/ feeling sincerely. (4)/ No error (5)
40. For millions of people (1)/ his retirement from (2)/ cricket has been (3)/ a greatest shock. (4)/ No error (5)
41. Whenever man attains fame (1)/ his person qualities are (2)/ imitated by others who (3)/ are close to him. (4)/ No error (5)
42. His obviously reluctance (1)/ was viewed seriously by (2)/ his superiors and (3)/ he was suspended. (4)/ No error (5)
43. You must realize (1)/ how importance it is (2)/ to give away to the needy (3)/ whatever you possess in excess. (4)/ No error(5)
44. Some people have (1)/ generously contributed to the welfare fund (2)/ but they wanted that there names (3)/ should not be published. (4)/ No error (5)
45. His good qualities include (1)/ his ability to take (2)/ quick and (3)/ appropriate decisions. (4)/ No error (5)
46. It goes to his credit (1)/ that he was a clean man (2)/ in public as well as (3)/ his person dealings. (4)/ No error (5)
47. His strictly discipline (1)/ had made him (2)/ very unpopular among (3)/ all the employees. (4)/ No error (5)
48. Ramesh has been both (1)/ a dishonestly person (2)/ and a gambler (3)/ since his childhood. (4)/ No error (5)
49. He was delighted (1)/ by the intelligent and brightness (2)/ of the scholars (3)/ who used to visit him. (4)/ No error (5)
50. We were happy that (1)/ the audience responded well (2)/ and gave all the speakers (3)/ a patiently listening. (4)/ No error(5)
51. Your over dependent on (1)/ others even for (2)/ trivial matter may (3)/ prove disadvantageous. (4)/ No error (5)
52. The economical condition (1)/ of our country is bad (2)/ and unlikely to improve (3)/ in the near future. (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Answers With Explanation

Q. 1.
1. good—Adjective of quality
2. black—Adjective of quality
3. small—Adjective of quality
4. long—Adjective of quality
5. several—Adjective of number
6. his—Possessive Adjective
7. this—Demonstrative Adjective
8. this—Demonstrative Adjective
9. such—Demonstrative Adjective
10. your—Possessive Adjective
11. Little—Adjective of quantity होता है, यहाँ little का प्रयोग छोटा के अर्थ में हुआ है, अतः यह Adjective of quality है।
his—possessive adjective
12. which—Interrogative Adjective
this—demonstrative Adjective
13. eight—Adjective of number
14. some—Adjective of quantity
15. all—Adjective of number
16. A few—Adjective of number
17. Neither—Distributive Adjective
18. Nepalese—Proper Adjective
19. little—Adjective of quantity
20. thirty—Adjective of number (cardinal)
21. third—Adjective of number (ordinal)
22. Each—Distributive Adjective.
23. whose—Interrogative Adjective.
24. These—Demonstrative Adjective.
25. beautiful—Adjective of quality.
26. wonderful—Adjective of quality.
27. glorious—Adjective of quality.

Q. 2.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. famous | 2. first / last | 3. fresh | 4. many |
| 5. great | 6. big | 7. big | 8. small |
| 9. that | 10. your / his / her | 11. little | |
| 12. straight, wide | 13. ten | 14. sweet | 15. cold |
| 16. eldest | 17. elder | 18. longest | |
| 19. beautiful | 20. good | 21. either | |
| 22. holy / sacred | 23. brave | 24. little | 25. happy |

Q. 3.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. any | 2. any | 3. some | 4. some/any |
| 5. some, any | 6. some, any | 7. some, any | 8. some |
| 9. some | 10. any / some | | |

Q. 4.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. much | 2. much | 3. many | 4. many |
| 5. much | 6. much | 7. many | 8. many |
| 9. much | 10. many | | |

Q. 5.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. not any | 2. no | 3. no | 4. no |
| 5. not | 6. not | 7. not | 8. not |
| 9. not any | 10. no | | |

Q. 6.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. a little / little | 2. a little | 3. the little | 4. a little / little |
| 5. little | 6. the little | 7. a little | 8. a little |
| 9. a little | 10. little / a little | | |

Q. 7.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. A few | 2. few | 3. a few | 4. a few |
| 5. a few | 6. The few | 7. The few | 8. The few |
| 9. a few | 10. a few / few | | |

Q. 8.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. very little | 2. very few | 3. very little | 4. very few |
| 5. very little | 6. very few | 7. very few | 8. very little |
| 9. very few | 10. very little | | |

Q. 9.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. whole | 2. all | 3. all | 4. whole |
| 5. whole | 6. whole | 7. all | 8. whole |
| 9. whole | 10. all | | |

Q. 10.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. a certain | 2. certain | 3. a certain | 4. certain |
| 5. a certain | 6. a certain | 7. a certain | 8. certain |
| 9. a certain | 10. certain | | |

Q. 11.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. other | 2. other | 3. another | 4. anyother |
| 5. another | 6. anyother | 7. other | 8. another |
| 9. another | 10. anyother | | |

Q. 12.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. every | 2. each | 3. each | 4. each |
| 5. every | 6. each | 7. every | 8. each |
| 9. every | 10. every | | |

Q. 13.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. either | 2. neither / either | 3. neither | 4. either |
| 5. neither | 6. either / neither | 7. either | 8. neither |
| 9. either | 10. neither | | |

Q. 14.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. any, some | 2. much | 3. many | 4. a few |
| 5. a little | 6. a little | 7. a few | 8. some |
| 9. some | 10. a lot of, a few | 11. a little | 12. a lot of, a little |
| 13. each | 14. faithful | 15. either | |

Q. 15.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. more, most | 2. far, farthest |
| 3. hotter, hottest | 4. little, less |
| 5. bad, worst | 6. pretty, prettiest |
| 7. luckier, luckiest | 8. dirtier, dirtiest |
| 9. lovelier, loveliest | 10. dry, driest |
| 11. shallow, shallower | 12. clever, cleverest |
| 13. Nobler, Noblest | 14. wider, widest |
| 15. fitter, fittest | 16. slimmer, slimmest |
| 17. merrier, merriest | 18. Busy, busiest |
| 19. worse, worst | 20. much, most |
| 21. In, innermost | 22. up, upermost |
| 23. out, outer | 24. later, latter, latest, last |
| 25. greyer, greyest | 26. more famous, most famous |
| 27. honest, most honest | 28. more expensive, most expensive |
| 29. courageous, more courageous | |
| 30. more handsome, most handsome | |
| 31. faster, fastest | 32. worse, worst |
| 33. better, best | 34. more careful, most careful |
| 35. broad, broader | 36. sadder, saddest |
| 37. young, youngest | 38. old, oldest |
| 39. kinder, kindest | 40. greater, greatest |
| 41. closer, closest | 42. fonder, fondest |
| 43. lazier, laziest | 44. finer, finest |
| 45. big, biggest | 46. cold, coldest |
| 47. thick, thicker | 48. wide, wider |
| 49. thin, thinnest | 50. Tinier, Tiniest |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Q. 16.**
1. most honest—Superlative degree
2. good—Positive degree
3. grand—Positive degree
4. elder—Comparative degree
5. happiest—Superlative degree
6. heavier—Comparative degree
7. greater—Comparative degree
8. good—Positive degree
9. beautiful—Positive degree
10. beautiful—Positive degree

**Q. 17.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. to | 2. of | 3. to | 4. of |
| 5. than | 6. to | 7. to | 8. to |
| 9. more | 10. than | | |

**Q. 18.**
1. Nepalese goods are superior to Indian goods.
2. He is junior to all his brothers.
3. She is senior to Neha.
4. He is the better of the two players.
5. She is the more laborious of the two girls.
6. There were many clothes in the trunk.
7. Gold is more precious than any other metal.
8. This book is the better of the two.
9. My brother is older than yours.
10. His intelligence is superior to yours.
11. The earth is round.
12. He was the unique man in the town.
13. Mr. Azad was the chief guest in the party.
14. This room is rectangular.
15. Satish was the excellent man in his village.

**Q. 19.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. costlier | 2. hottest | 3. taller | 4. best |
| 5. more | 6. lesser | 7. largest | 8. richest |
| 9. better | 10. more useful | 11. cleverest | 12. farther |
| 13. most intelligent | | 14. coldest | 15. loveliest |
| 16. fatter | 17. lazy | 18. senior | 19. happier |
| 20. more | | | |

**Q. 20.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. older | 2. oldest | 3. elder | 4. elder |
| 5. eldest | 6. older | 7. elder | 8. oldest |
| 9. older | 10. eldest | 11. elders | 12. oldest |
| 13. oldest | 14. eldest | 15. eldest | |

**Q. 21.Ans.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. further | 2. farther | 3. further | 4. further |
| 5. further | | | |

**Q. 22.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. nearest | 2. next | 3. next | 4. next |
| 5. nearest | 6. next | 7. nearest | 8. next |
| 9. nearest | 10. nearest | | |

**Q. 23.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. later | 2. latter | 3. latter | 4. latest |
| 5. last | 6. latest | 7. last | 8. later |
| 9. last | 10. latter | | |

**Q. 24.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. first | 2. last | 3. first, last | 4. former, latter |
| 5. former | 6. former | 7. first / last | |
| 8. former, latter | 9. first | 10. last | |

**Q. 25.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. fewer | 2. less | 3. fewer | 4. less |
| 5. less | 6. fewer | 7. less | 8. less |
| 9. fewer | 10. less | 11. less | 12. lesser |
| 13. less | 14. less | 15. fewer | |

**Q. 26.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. intelligent | 2. tall | 3. lovely | 4. dull |
| 5. heavy | 6. late | 7. heavy | 8. pretty |
| 9. difficult | 10. rich | 11. sweet | 12. preferable |

**Q. 27.**
1. He saw two men, the one was lame and the other was blind.
2. Shyam is more beautiful than any other girl in the class.
3. My younger brother is six feet tall.
4. Dukhharan Pahalwan was more strong than tall.
5. The population of China is greater than that of India.
6. The students of Bihar are more laborious than those of Jharkhand.
7. Mr. Nitish kumar is one of the wisest and most honest leaders of Bihar.
8. Mr. Laloo Prasad Yadav is a unique leader of India.
9. I have finished reading the few books that I had.
10. This course of action is preferable to the other.
11. The girls were introduced to each other by a common friend.
12. Bring her some water to drink.
13. The best Chief Minister of Bihar is Mr. Nitish Kumar.
14. This girl is more intelligent than beautiful.
15. Your written statement differs in several important respects from my oral statement.

**Note :** Verbal—का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में of words, or pertaining to words के अर्थ में होता है जबकि oral का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में delivered by word of mouth not written के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Verbal agreement. (√) Verbal warning. (√) Oral history. (√)

16. As a dress designer, I am very interested in the latest fashion.
17. In the last decades of the twentieth century, the world has seen many changes.
18. If there were fewer cars on the roads, there would be fewer accidents.
19. The police asked for a brief description of the car.
20. They still think that women are inferior to men.
21. First of all, I would like to introduce myself.
22. There are four points that I would like to make about the college. Firstly, there are not enough club activities.
23. At first, I couldn't understand the local people at all.
24. I'm looking forward to seeing you next Sunday.
25. It's an interesting magazine with a lot of good ideas.
26. I noticed that he had a couple of drinks too many.

**Note :** Too much का प्रयोग quantity को express करने के लिए S.U.N के पहले होता है जबकि Too many का प्रयोग Number को express करने के लिए P.C.N के पहले होता है।

27. He likes this kind of books. or He likes books of this kind.
28. Of the two girls, she was certainly the more beautiful.
29. Your essay is worse than mine.
30. The Hindustan has the largest circulation of all daily papers or The Hindustan has a larger circulation than all other daily papers.
31. He has a few rupees with him.
32. Anjani is the noblest and most industrious employee of the Lucent Publication.

**Note :** यदि दो Comparative or superlative degree का प्रयोग एक साथ हो तो more तथा most से बनने वाले क्रमशः comparative तथा superlative degree को sentence में second position अर्थात् दूसरे स्थान पर रखा जाना चाहिए।

33. The whole of India mourned at the death of Rajeev Gandhi.
34. The climate of Rajgir is as good as that of Shimla.
35. Nikhil got hundred percent marks in English.

**Note :** Cent percent का प्रयोग नहीं होता है इसके बदले hundred percent का प्रयोग होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


I gave the few coins I had in my pocket to the beggar.
In Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur and Patna, the last has the largest number of cars.
Lalan has been ill for a very long time.
This article was published in the latest issue of the Times of India.
Dr. S. S. Prasad's command over English is excellent.
Some students are very cowardly
Neither sister has passed.

**Note :** Both का प्रयोग Negative sense में नहीं होता है।

She got only pass mark in English.

**Note :** Passing marks का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। यह slang word है।

In summer, days are warmer than nights.
He is the strongest and tallest boy in the whole college.
The car flew off the road and fell into the valley because Amit was driving fast.

**Note :** Fast का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में 'अचल या तेज चलने वाली/ तेज' के अर्थ के होता है जबकि fast का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'तेजी से या जल्दी' के अर्थ में होता है।

The driver tried his best to avert the accident by bringing the car to a sudden stop.
There is so much filth all around the place.
The man appears to have seen happier days.
Have you read this book further than I ?

Q.28.

(1) Sooner की जगह soon का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि as के बाद positive degree का प्रयोग होता है।

(3) their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि everyone के लिए possessive Adjective his का प्रयोग होता है न कि their का।

(3) Very की जगह much का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि much का प्रयोग comparative degree को emphasis करने के लिए किया जाता है न कि very का। यहाँ less, little का comparative degree है।

(3) another की जगह other का प्रयोग होगा।

(3) more का प्रयोग preferable के पहले नहीं होगा क्योंकि preferable का प्रयोग Latin comparatives senior, junior, superior, inferior... etc की तरह होता है यह स्वयं comparative है इसलिए इसके पहले more का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

(3) likely की जगह the same का प्रयोग होगा।

(2) Any का प्रयोग story के पहले होगा क्योंकि any का प्रयोग negative sentence में होता है।

(1) No king की जगह No other king का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि No other का प्रयोग positive degree के sentence में होता है।

(3) None की जगह neither का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि दो में से कोई भी नहीं के अर्थ में neither का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है जबकि 'दो से अधिक में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में none का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

(3) Most की जगह more का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के बीच तुलना बताने के लिए comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है न कि superlative degree का। अतः more का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

(4) much की जगह more का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि any का प्रयोग comparative degree के पहले होता है न कि positive degree के।

(3) Their की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि one of them के लिए Possessive Adjective his का प्रयोग होता है न कि their का। one of them का प्रयोग 'उनमें से एक' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

One of them has done his work. (✓)
One of them has done their / One's work. (✗)

13. (2) big की जगह as big as or bigger का प्रयोग होगा।

14. (1) The two first chapters की जगह the first two chapters का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Ordinal तथा Cardinal Adjective का प्रयोग एक साथ हो तो 'OC' के sequence को follow किया जाता है। अर्थात् पहले Ordinal Adjective का तथा बाद में Cardinal Adjective का प्रयोग होता है।

15. (4) Vividly की जगह vivid का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि vividly Adverb है, adverb का प्रयोग Verb, Adjective तथा Adverb को qualify करने के लिए किया जाता है जबकि vivid Adjective है, Adjective का प्रयोग noun or pronoun को qualify करने के किया जाता है। Given sentence में Reason – noun का प्रयोग हुआ है अतः vivid Reason का प्रयोग होगा।

16. (4) Few की जगह a few का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि few का प्रयोग 'नहीं के बराबर' के अर्थ में तथा a few का प्रयोग 'कुछ' के अर्थ में होता है। given sentence के अर्थ के लिए a few का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

17. (2) Your's की जगह Your का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि your-possessive Adjective है अतः इसके साथ Apostrophe's ['s] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

18. (3) Importance की जगह Important का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि most का प्रयोग very (बहुत) के अर्थ में Adjective या Adverb के पहले होता है न कि noun के पहले। Given sentence में importance का प्रयोग है जो noun है।

19. (2) Carefully की जगह careful का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Auxiliary Verbs is, are, am, was, were के बाद Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि Adverb का।

20. (3) quick and safe than की जगह quicker and safer than that का प्रयोग होगा। समान वर्ग के व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के बीच तुलना हो तो comparative + than के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ—the journey by bus की तुलना the journey by train से है इसलिए than के बाद the journey को denote करने के लिए that का प्रयोग होगा।

21. (2) best की जगह better का प्रयोग होगा। दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के बीच तुलना के लिए comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है न कि superlative degree का। Given sentence में Anjali के performance की तुलना Deepali के performance से की गई है अतः better उपयुक्त है।

22. (1) fastly की जगह fast का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि अंग्रेजी भाषा में fastly का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। fast का प्रयोग Adjective or Adverb के रूप में होता है।

23. (2) all का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Monthly expenses में सभी प्रकार के खर्च शामिल हैं।

24. (1) Simplest की जगह A simpler का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि A + Comparative degree + S. N + than का प्रयोग होता है।

25. (4) More की जगह Many का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Positive degree के Sentence में Many का प्रयोग होता है जबकि more का प्रयोग comparative degree के sentence में होता है। Given sentence positive degree में है अतः many का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

26. (3) good and bad people की जगह good people and bad people का प्रयोग होगा। good and bad people का प्रयोग 'अच्छे और बुरे लोग' अर्थात् लोग जो अच्छे भी हैं और बुरे भी के अर्थ में होता है जबकि good people and bad people का प्रयोग 'अच्छे लोग और बुरे लोग' के अर्थ में होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के लिए Good people and bad people ही उपयुक्त है।

27. (2) Worst की जगह worse का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि than के पहले comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है। bad का comparative तथा superlative degree क्रमशः worse तथा worst होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



28. (4) Much की जगह More का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि than के पहले comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है। Much तथा Many का comparative degree/More होता है।

29. (3) largest की जगह larger का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि the + C.d + S + V + (,) + S + V + the + C.d + S + V + (.) की बनावट में समानान्तर वृद्धि या ह्रास को express करने के लिए double comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।

30. (2) No less की जगह no fewer का प्रयोग होगा। No less का प्रयोग Adjective of quantity के रूप में S.U.N के पहले होता है जबकि No fewer का प्रयोग Adjective of number के रूप में P.C.N के पहले होता है।

31. (3) Very की जगह more का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि than के पहले compmarative degree का प्रयोग होता है। अतः more का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

32. (3) The roughest road की जगह rougher का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि than के पहले comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।

33. (4) any के बाद other का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि comparative degree के Sentence में than के बाद any other + S.N या all other + P.N का प्रयोग होता है।

34. (3) all other rivers की जगह all the rivers का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि superlative degree के sentence में other का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

35. (2) More का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि More + comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

36. (2) a little की जगह a few का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि a few का प्रयोग कुछ के अर्थ में plural countable noun के पहले होता है जबकि a little का प्रयोग 'कुछ के अर्थ में singular uncountable noun के पहले होता है।

37. (3) More का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। Given sentence में prefer का प्रयोग है जो स्वयं comparative degree के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है। अतः more का प्रयोग उपयुक्त नहीं है।

38. (3) Much of the की जगह many other या most other या some other का प्रयोग होगा।

39. (1) Word की जगह words का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि a few + P.C.N का प्रयोग होता है न कि a few + S.C.N का।

40. (4) greatest की जगह great का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि A/An + positive degree + S.N का प्रयोग होता है।

41. (2) His person qualities की जगह his personal qualities का प्रयोग होगा। qualities noun है noun की विशेषता Adjective बताता है। अतः person के Adjective form personal का प्रयोग होगा।

42. (1) His obviously reluctance की जगह his obvious reluctance का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि reluctance noun है, Noun की विशेषता Adjective बताता है न कि Adverb। obviously–Adverb है जबकि obvious–Adjective है। obvious का प्रयोग reluctance से पहले होगा।

43. (2) Importance की जगह Important का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि how + Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि How + noun का। Importance – noun है जबकि Important–Adjective है। अतः Important उपयुक्त है।

44. (3) There की जगह their का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि they का possessive Adjective – their होता है न कि there।

45. (3) Quickly की जगह Quick का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि quick – Adjective जो decision noun की विशेषता बता रहा है। quickly – Adverb जो Verb, Adjective तथा Adverb की विशेषता बताता है अतः quickly का प्रयोग noun के पहले नहीं होता है।

46. (4) His person dealings की जगह his personal dealings का प्रयोग होगा। person का adjective form personal होता है।

47. (1) His strictly discipline की जगह his strict discipline का प्रयोग होगा। discipline – noun है इसलिए इसके पहले Adjective strict का प्रयोग होगा। strictly – Adverb है इसका प्रयोग noun के पहले नहीं होता है।

48. (2) A dishonestly person की जगह A dishonest person का प्रयोग होगा।

49. (2) Intelligent की जगह Intelligence का प्रयोग होगा। Intelligent Adjective होता है जबकि Intelligence noun होता है। given sentence में intelligence and brightness का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

50. (4) A patiently listening की जगह A patient listening का प्रयोग होगा। listening – noun है इसलिए noun के पहले Adjective patient का प्रयोग होगा न कि patiently का। patiently – adverb का प्रयोग noun के पहले नहीं होता है।

51. (1) Dependent की जगह dependence का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Possessive Adjective के बाद noun का प्रयोग होता है न कि Adjective का। dependent – adjective है जबकि dependence noun है।

52. (1) Economical की जगह economic का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि economical का प्रयोग adjective के रूप में careful spending of money, time, resources etc. के अर्थ में होता है जबकि economic का प्रयोग भी Adjective के रूप में economics or economy connected with trade and industry के अर्थ में होता है। given sentence में economic का प्रयोग sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।

**For questions no. 2**

**Note** : (i) Inevitable (adj.)—a sure to happen, unavoidable (अनिवार्य, आवश्यक, अवश्यम्भावी)

(ii) Dismay (n)—loss of strength and courage (हताश, निराश, भय)

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Interchange of degrees of Comparison 9

Sentence के अर्थ में परिवर्तन किये बिना Adjectives or Adverb के degree को बदला जा सकता है, जो इस प्रकार है—

**Rule (1)** : साधारणतः Positive degree से Comparative degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

1. He is as good as Mukesh. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
   Mukesh is not better than he. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
2. She is not so beautiful as Nilu. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
   Nilu is more beautiful than she. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
3. A cat runs as fast as a dog. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
   A dog does not run faster than a cat. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
4. Birds do not fly so fast as the aeroplane. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
   The aeroplane flies faster than birds. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
5. He reads as carefully as I do. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
   I do not read more carefully than he does. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
6. You know her as well as I do. —P.d.
   S V O P.d. O
   I do not know her better than you do. —C.d.
   S V O C.d. O

Step (1) : Positive degree के Object को Comparative में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Positive degree में not का प्रयोग नहीं होने पर, Comparative में not का प्रयोग करें। Positive degree में not का प्रयोग होने पर, Comparative में not का प्रयोग नहीं करें। अर्थात् Affirmative को Negative तथा Negative को Affirmative में बदलकर लिखें।

Step (4) : so ..... as or as ..... as को हटा दें।

Step (5) : Positive degree के Adjective को Comparative degree में बदलकर लिखें।

Step (6) : इसके बाद 'than' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (7) : Positive degree के Subject को Comparative degree में Object की जगह ज्यों का त्यों लिखें।

**Note** : यदि Positive degree के Subject के रूप में किसी Pronoun का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Comparative degree में Object की जगह Nominative case (form) में ही लिखें।

| Positive | Comparative |
|---|---|
| 1. Bhavna is as dull as Rita. | Rita is not duller than Bhavna. |
| 2. Binay is not as tall as I. | I am taller than Binay. |
| 3. They work as much as I do. | I do not work more than they. |
| 4. This book is as useful as that. | That book is not more useful than this. |
| 5. The sword is not as mighty as the pen. | The pen is mightier than the sword. |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. I would as soon die as tell a lie. —*Positive*
   I would sooner die than tell a lie. —*Comparative*
   or, I would rather die than tell a lie. —*Comparative*
2. He has not as much honesty as money. —*Positive*
   He has more money than honesty. —*Comparative*
3. I know these wicked boys as well as you do. —*Positive*
   You do not know these wicked boys better than I do. —*Comparative*
4. A woman so noble as Mother Teressa was never born. —*Positive*
   A nobler woman than Mother Teressa was never born. —*Comparative*
5. I treat the poor with the same respect as I do the rich. —*Positive*
   I treat the poor with no less respect than the rich. —*Comparative*
   or, I do not treat the rich with more respect than the poor. —*Comparative*
   or, I do not treat the rich with more respect than I do the poor. —*Comparative*

**Rule (2)** : Comparative degree को Positive degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

1. Varsha is more beautiful than Sweta. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
   Sweta is not so beautiful as Varsha. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
2. He is not taller than you. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
   You are as tall as he. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
3. Bread is more useful than gold. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
   Gold is not so useful as bread. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
4. My horse runs faster than your dog. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
   Your dog does not run so fast as my horse. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O
5. This man has more oxen than cows. —C.d.
   S V C.d. O
   This man has not as many cows as oxen. —P.d.
   S V P.d. O

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(b) Superlative से Positive degree में बदलने का तरीका :

जैसे—*Superlative* : Mumbai is the best city in India.

*Positive* : No other city in India is so good as Mumbai.

Step (1) : Positive degree के sentence को No other + Singular Noun + of/in + other words से स्टार्ट करें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb (Singular) का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : the को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Superlative degree के Adjective को Positive degree के Adjective में बदल कर, so ..... as तथा as ..... as के बीच में रखें।

Step (5) : इसके बाद Superlative degree के Subject को Positive degree में Object की जगह लिखें।

इन्हीं Steps के मुताबिक आप Superlative degree से Positive degree आसानी से बना सकते हैं।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. *Superlative* : Nilu is the most beautiful girl in the class.
   *Positive* : No other girl in the class is so beautiful as Nilu.
   *Positive* : No other girl in the class is as beautiful as Nilu.
2. *Superlative* : Ashoka was the greatest king of India.
   *Positive* : No other king of India was so great as Ashoka.
   *Positive* : No other king of India was as great as Ashoka.
3. *Superlative* : Ajit is the tallest man in my village.
   *Positive* : No other man in my village is so tall as Ajit.
   *Positive* : No other man in my village is as tall as Ajit.
4. *Superlative* : America is the richest country in the world.
   *Positive* : No other country in the world is so rich as America.
   *Positive* : No other country in the world is as rich as America.
5. *Superlative* : Mahatma Gandhi was the greatest leader in India.
   *Positive* : No other leader in India was so great as Mahatma Gandhi.
   *Positive* : No other leader in India was as great as Mahatma Gandhi.

Note : (i) यदि Superlative degree का sentence negative हो तो Comparative तथा Positive degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है :

1. *Superlative* : The rat is not the biggest of all animals.
   *Comparative* : The rat is not bigger than some other animals.
   *Comparative* : Some animals are not less big than the rat.
   *Positive* : Some animals are at least as big as the rat.
2. *Superlative* : Tennyson is not the greatest of all poets.
   *Comparative* : Tennyson is not greater than some other poets.
   *Comparative* : Some poets are not less great than Tennyson.
   *Positive* : Some poets are at least as great as Tennyson.

(ii) कुछ ऐसे Superlative degree के sentences हैं जिन्हें comparative तथा positive degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है :

1. *Superlative* : This is the most beautiful diamond that I have ever seen.
   Comparative : This is more beautiful than any other diamond that I have ever seen.
   *Positive* : I have never seen so beautiful a diamond as this.
2. *Superlative* : Lagaan is the best film that I have ever seen.
   *Comparative* : Lagaan is better than any other film that I have ever seen.
   *Positive* : I have never seen so good a film as Lagaan.

**Rule (4)** : यदि Comparative degree का *sentence – Subject + Verb + Comparative + than + anyother + Singular Noun + of/in + other words* या *Subject + Verb + Comparative + than + all other + Plural noun + of/in + other words* के structure (बनावट) पर आधारित हो, तो उसे (a) Superlative तथा (b) Positive degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

*Comparative* : Jamshedpur is better than any other town in Jharkhand.

or, Jamshedpur is better than all other towns in Jharkhand.

*Superlative* : Jamshedpur is the best town in Jharkhand.

*Positive* : No other town in Jharkhand is so good as Jamshedpur.

or, No other town in Jharkhand is as good as Jamshedpur.

**(a) Comparative से Superlative degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Comparative degree के Subject को Superlative degree में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Comparative degree के Adjective को Superlative degree के Adjective में बदल कर लिखें तथा इसके पहले the का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : 'than' तथा any other/all other को हटा दें।

Step (5) : The + Superlative degree के बाद Singular Noun का प्रयोग करें। कभी-कभी of all + P.N. का प्रयोग भी होता है।

Step (6) : अंत में of/in + other words का प्रयोग करें।

**(b) Comparative से Positive degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : No other + Singular Noun + of/in + other words से Positive degree के sentence को स्टार्ट करें। of/in + other words का प्रयोग नहीं रहने पर सिर्फ No other + S.N. का प्रयोग करें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb (Singular) का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Comparative degree के Adjective को Positive degree के Adjective में बदलकर, so ..... as तथा as ..... as के बीच में रखें।

Step (4) : than तथा any other/all other को हटा दें।

Step (5) : Comparative degree के Subject को Positive degree में Object की जगह लिखें।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Comparative* : Lead is heavier than any other metal.
*Superlative* : Lead is the heaviest of all metals.
*Positive* : No other metal is so heavy as lead.
or, No other metal is as heavy as lead.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (5)** : यदि Positive degree का sentence– *No other + Singular Noun + S.V. + so + P.d. + as + Noun/Pronoun (nominative)* या *No other + Singular Noun + of/in + other words + S.V. + as + P.d. + as + Noun/pronoun (Nominative)* के structure (बनावट) पर आधारित हो, तो उसे (a) Superlative तथा (b) Comparative में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

*Positive* : No other town in Bihar is so large as Patna.

or, No other town in Bihar is as large as Patna.

*Superlative* : Patna is the largest town in Bihar.

*Comparative* : Patna is larger than any other town in Bihar.

*Comparative* : Patna is larger than all other towns in Bihar.

**(a) Positive से Superlative degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Positive degree के Object को Superlative degree में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : No other तथा so ..... as or as ..... as को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Positive degree के Adjective को Superlative degree के Adjective में बदल कर लिखें तथा इसके पहले The का प्रयोग करें।

Step (5) : Superlative degree के बाद Singular Noun का प्रयोग करें।

Step (6) : अंत में of/in + other words का प्रयोग रहने पर, करें, नहीं रहने पर, नहीं करें।

**(b) Positive से Comparative degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Positive degree के Object को Comparative degree में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : No other तथा so ..... as or as ..... as को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Positive degree के Adjective को Comparative degree के Adjective में बदलकर लिखें।

Step (5) : इसके बाद 'than' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (6) : than के बाद any other + Singular Noun या all other + Plural Noun का प्रयोग करें।

Step (7) : अंत में of/in + other words का प्रयोग रहने पर, करें। नहीं रहने पर, नहीं करें।

**Rule (6)** : यदि Superlative degree का sentence– *Subject + Verb + one of the + Superlative + Plural Noun + of/in + other words* के structure पर आधारित हो, तो उसे (a) Comparative तथा (b) Positive degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

1. *Superlative* : Milton was one of the greatest poets of England.

   *Comparative* : Milton was greater than most other poets of England.

   *Positive* : Very few poets of England were so great as Milton.

   or, Very few poets of England were as great as Milton.

2. *Superlative* : Japan is one of the richest countries.

   *Comparative* : Japan is richer than most other countries.

   *Positive* : Very few countries are so rich as Japan.

   or, Very few countries are as rich as Japan.

3. *Superlative* : Chennai is one of the biggest of Indian towns.

   *Comparative* : Chennai is bigger than most other Indian towns.

   *Positive* : Very few Indian towns are so big as Chennai.

   or, Very few Indian towns are as big as Chennai.

**(a) Superlative से Comparative degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Superlative degree के Subject को Comparative degree में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : one of the को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Superlative degree के Adjective को Comparative degree के Adjective में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (5) : इसके बाद 'than' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (6) : than के बाद most other + Plural Noun का प्रयोग करें।

Step (7) : अंत में of/in + other words का प्रयोग रहने पर, करें। नहीं रहने पर, नहीं करें।

**(b) Superlative से Positive degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Positive degree के sentence को *Very few + Plural Noun or Very few + Plural Noun + of/in + other words* में बदल करें।

Step (2) : Plural Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : one of the को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Superlative degree के Adjective को Positive degree के Adjetive में बदलकर, so ..... as तथा as ..... as के बीच में रखें।

Step (5) : Superlative degree के Subject को Positive degree में Object की जगह लिखें।

**Note** : Adverb का भी Positive, Comparative, Superlative form होता है। उपरोक्त Steps में Adjective की चर्चा की गई है। Adverb का प्रयोग रहने पर उसे Positive, Comparative, Superlative degree में से जिस degree में बदलना हो उस form (रूप) में बदला जा सकता है।

**Rule (7)** : यदि Comparative degree का sentence– *Subject + Verb + Comparative + than + most other + Plural Noun* या *Subject + Verb + Comparative + than + most other + Plural Noun + of/in + other words* के *structure* पर आधारित हो, तो उसे (a) Superlative तथा (b) Positive degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

1. *Comparative* : Ashok is better than most other students of my college.

   *Superlative* : Ashok is one of the best students of my college.

   *Positive* : Very few students of my college are so good as Ashok.

   or, Very few students of my college are as good as Ashok.

2. *Comparative* : Ranchi is bigger than most other (तथा other) towns.

   *Superlative* : Ranchi is one of the biggest towns.

   *Positive* : Very few towns are as big as Ranchi

   or, Very few towns are so big as Ranchi

**Note** : Comparative degree में most other के अलावा any other, some other का प्रयोग भी तथ्यों के अनुसार किया जा सकता है या किया जा सकता है।

**(a) Comparative से Superlative degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Comparative degree के Subject को Superlative degree में Subject की जगह लिखें।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : one of the + Superlative degree का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : इसके बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग करें।

Step (5) : अंत में of/in + other words का प्रयोग होने पर, करें। नहीं होने पर, नहीं करें।

**(b) Comparative से Positive degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Very few + Plural Noun or Very few + Plural Noun + of/in + other words से Positive degree को स्टार्ट करें।

Step (2) : Plural Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Comparative degree के Adjective को Positive degree के Adjective में बदल कर, so ..... as तथा as ..... as के बीच में लें।

Step (4) : 'than' तथा most other (many other/some other) को हटा दें।

Step (5) : Comparative degree के Subject को Positive degree के Object की जगह लिखें।

**Rule (8) :** यदि Positive degree का *sentence—very few + Plural Noun + Plural Verb + as/so + Positive degree + as + Object* or *Very few + Plural Noun + of/in + other words + Plural Verb + as/so + Positive degree + as + Object* के *structure* (बनावट) पर आधारित हो, तो उसे (a) Superlative तथा (b) Comparative degree में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

1. *Positive* : Very few boys are so intelligent as Pawan.
   *Superlative* : Pawan is one of the most intelligent boys.
   *Comparative* : Pawan is more intelligent than most other (many other) boys.
2. *Positive* : Very few kings were so great as Akbar.
   *Superlative* : Akbar was one of the greatest kings.
   *Comparative* : Akbar was greater than most other (many other) kings.

**(a) Positive से Superlative degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Positive degree के Object को superlative में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Very few तथा so ..... as or as ..... as को हटा दें।

Step (4) : one of the + superlative degree का प्रयोग करें।

Step (5) : इसके बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग करें।

Step (6) : अंत में of/in + other words का प्रयोग रहने पर, करें। नहीं रहने पर, नहीं करें।

**(b) Positive से Comparative degree में बदलने का तरीका :**

Step (1) : Positive degree के Object को Comparative में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Very few तथा so ..... as or as ..... as को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Positive degree के Adjective को Comparative degree के Adjective में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (5) : इसके बाद than का प्रयोग करें।

Step (6) : *most other (many other/some other) + Plural Noun* का प्रयोग करें।

Step (7) : अंत में of/in + other words का प्रयोग रहने पर, करें। नहीं रहने पर, नहीं करें।

**ध्यान दें :** (i) पवन सबसे तेज लड़कों में से एक है। इसे हम दूसरे शब्दों में इस प्रकार कह सकते हैं, कि—(ii) पवन अधिकांश अन्य लड़कों से तेज है, या फिर कह सकते हैं कि (iii) बहुत कम ही लड़के उतने तेज हैं, जितना कि पवन। इसी अर्थ के आधार पर degree में परिवर्तन किए जाते हैं।

(i) *Superlative* : Pawan is one of the most intelligent boys.

(ii) *Comparative* : Pawan is more intelligent than most other boys.

(iii) *Positive* : Very few boys are so intelligent as Pawan.

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

1. *Positive* : Some beans are at least as nutritious as meat.
   *Comparative* : Meat is not more nutritious than some kinds of beans.
   or, Some beans are not less nutritious than meat.
2. *Positive* : He is as truthful as Harish Chandra.
   *Comparative* : Harish Chandra was not more truthful than he is.
3. *Comparative* : It is easier to imagine this scene than to describe it.
   *Positive* : It is not so easy to describe this scene as to imagine it.
4. *Comparative* : To preach virtue is easier than to practise it.
   *Positive* : To practise virtue is not so easy as to preach it.

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Change the degree of Comparison, without changing the meaning :*

1. Sohan is as good as Rohan.
2. She is not as beautiful as Monika.
3. I am as tall as my brother.
4. Binay is not as handsome as his brother.
5. They are as powerful as an emperor.
6. You are not as dull as he.
7. His brother is as strong as a tiger.
8. This novel is not so interesting as that.
9. Tea is not more tasteful than coffee.
10. Sanskrit is not as easy as Hindi.
11. That student was not more honest than Rahul.
12. Animals are as useful as birds.
13. The mango is sweeter than the apple.
14. Iron is more useful than copper.
15. He is as wise as Solomon.
16. The pen is mightier than the sword.
17. It is easier to preach than to practise it.
18. You are not taller than I.
19. Kalidas was as great as Shakespeare.
20. Gold is not heavier than platinum.
21. A wise enemy is better than a foolish friend.
22. I am not so great as he.
23. Games are more interesting than class work.
24. You do not know her better than I.
25. My daughter is as healthy as your daughter.
26. Anand is fatter than Pankaj.
27. Aditya and Aditi are as naughty as Rudransh and Khushi.
28. Silver is as precious as gold.
29. A live ass is stronger than a dead lion.
30. Good health is more important than riches.
31. Prabha is as slim as Abha.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

32. Gold is not more precious than diamond.
33. The prince is as tall as the princess.
34. He was not so poor as the beggar.
35. Kabir is as great as Rahim.
36. The fox is not so clever as the jackal.
37. She is not so beautiful as the moon.
38. This person has more money than brain.
39. She has more friends than enemies.
40. It is easier to say than to do it.
41. Your brother has more money than wisdom.
42. He knows me as well as you do.
43. I treat the orphan with the same respect as I do the helpless.
44. The landlady knows this criminal as well as he does.
45. Raman has more milk than Vijay.
46. She is not as kind as her mother.
47. I don't have as much honesty as money.
48. Open rebuke is better than secret love.
49. His house is not bigger than mine.
50. She is less charming than her sister.
51. Tortoises live longer than elephants.
52. I can play chess better than you.
53. It is more honourable to starve than to beg.
54. Something is better than nothing.
55. They work as much as I do.
56. I would as soon die as kill an infant.
57. He can solve the problem more wisely than I can.
58. She does not like you as much as I do.
59. Bread is more useful than gold.
60. She is not more active than you.
61. Poverty is not as terrible an enemy as bad health.
62. You are not as tall as your elder brother.
63. He is not so cunning as Ramu.
64. Kapil Dev is a better all-rounder than Imran Khan.
65. I would rather die than surrender.
66. This T.V. is not so good as that.
67. Sunil is as dull as Shiv Shanker.
68. Hercules was not stronger than he is .
69. He is happier than you.
70. The young girl is taller than her sister.
71. My eldest son is wiser than the youngest.
72. The poor farmer was more honest than the rich miser.
73. I am not so great as he.
74. These pens are as cheap as those.
75. Ruby and Nilu are as noble as Priti and Pinki.

Note : *rebuke (v)* : to reprove, to censure, to reprimand (निन्दा करना, झिड़कना, डपटना)

*rebuke (n)* : chiding, reprimand, reprobation (निन्दा, झिड़की, डाँटडपट)

Q. 2. *Change the degree of comparison, without changing the meaning—(as many ways as possible)*

1. She is not the cleverest of all girls.
2. Very few Indian kings were so great as Ashoka.
3. No other metal is so useful as Iron.
4. Australia is the largest island in the world.
5. Samudra Gupta was one of the greatest of Indian kings.
6. Shakespeare is greater than any other English poet.
7. He would sooner die than tell a lie.
8. Very few boys are so handsome as Ajit.
9. No other exercise in India is so healthy as running.
10. The Times of India is the most powerful newspaper in India.
11. The U.S.A. is the richest country in the world.
12. Raman is the wisest of all boys.
13. The tiger is the most ferocious of all animals.
14. Pakistan is one of the strongest enemies of India.
15. Tagore was one of the greatest poets of England.
16. Amitabh is one of the best actors of the film industry.
17. She is one of the most beautiful girls.
18. Mumbai is the best city in India.
19. The Ramayan is the most religious epic.
20. Padmini was more beautiful than any other woman in India.
21. I am not so great as he.
22. No other city in India is as big as Kolkata.
23. Akbar was one of the greatest kings.
24. This director is one of the noblest men of the town.
25. This is one of the worst schools in the market.
26. Milton was greater than most other poets of England.
27. Solomon was the wisest of kings.
28. No other man is so mean as a miser.
29. Very few countries are as hot as India.
30. Some teachers are at least as laborious as the headmaster.
31. No other student in the college is so good as Navin.
32. The climate of Patna is as good as that of Rajagir.
33. Wheat is not the most nutritious of all grains.
34. No other peak of the Himalayas is so high as Mount Everest.
35. Mount Everest is higher than Mount Abu.
36. A dog is the most faithful animal.
37. Indian culture is one of the oldest cultures in the world.
38. Honesty is the best policy.
39. The Tajmahal is one of the most wonderful buildings.
40. Rose is one of the most beautiful flowers.
41. Walking is easier than running.
42. A cat's fur is as soft as valvet.
43. No other invention is as wonderful as the mobile.
44. Very few towns are as dirty as Patna.
45. No other book is as holy as the Gita.
46. The Bible is more religious than most other epics.
47. The sun is the hottest star in the solar system.
48. Silver is whiter than any other metal.
49. No other fruit is so sweet as the mango.
50. Darasingh is braver than any other man.
51. Blood is thicker than water.
52. The Rajadhani Express is one of the fastest trains.
53. The Pacific Ocean is the deepest ocean in the world.
54. Diamond is one of the most precious gems of the world.
55. Story telling is one of the best methods of giving advice to man.
56. Very few metals are as costly as gold.
57. The aeroplane flies faster than helicopters.
58. No other Indian poet is as good as Haribansh Rai Bacchan.
59. Very few batsmen are as great as Gavaskar.
60. The Qutubminar is one of the tallest historical monuments.
61. The Ganges is holier than any other Indian river.
62. The lion is stronger than any other animal.
63. He is more laborious than most other boys.
64. Binay is better than any other student in the school.
65. The lion is more ferocious than most other animals.
66. Newton was greater than most other scientists of the world.
67. Asia is one of the largest continents in the world.
68. Bhavna is more beautiful than any other girl in her family.
69. No other man is as laborious as Naval.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


70. No other stadium in Bihar is as famous as Moinul Haq Stadium.
71. Very few students are as intelligent as Kavindra.
72. Some towns in India are at least as busy as Delhi.
73. Manoj is not so able as Dilip.
74. I have more brain than money.
75. He is not so learned as his grandfather.
76. Kalidas was as great as Shakespeare.
77. The elder brother is not so clever as the younger brother.
78. Some beans are at least as nutritious as meat.
79. AIDS is more dangerous than most other diseases.
80. Patna is one of the biggest towns of Bihar.
81. The Jubili Park is one of the cleanest parks of Jharkhand.
82. Very few girls are as talkative as Neha.
83. You are more laborious than your brother.
84. He speaks English as fast as his brother.
85. Bhim was the strongest man.
86. Karan was one of the bravest men.
87. The Gandhi Maidan is the largest maidan in Bihar.
88. No other hotel in Patna is as good as the Hotel Maurya.
89. Muzaffarpur is the largest producer of lichies.
90. No other town of Bihar is as hot as Gaya.
91. Kashmir is one of the most famous tourist places in India.
92. Shimla is one of the best hill stations in India.
93. Assam is the largest producer of tea.
94. The Gulf of Mexico is the largest gulf in the world.
95. Greenland is larger than all other islands in the world.
96. No other country is so populated as China in the world.
97. Very few deserts in the world are as large as the Sahara.
98. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
99. Australia is the smallest continent in the world.
100. Very few sea ports are so big as Newyork.
101. The British Museum is the longest museum in the world.
102. I have not seen such a beautiful city as Paris.
103. He has not seen such a beautiful building as the Tajmahal.
104. This is the strongest man that I have ever seen.
105. Mount Everest is higher than any other peak than I have ever seen.

Q. 3. *Correct the following sentences :*

1. Delhi is better than any town in India.
2. No man in India was so great as Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru.
3. Ayodhya is the most ancient cities of India.
4. This is the worse book in the library.
5. Shakespeare is greater dramatist than Shaw.
6. Very few country in the world are as rich as America.
7. Pakistan is not as more powerful as India.
8. He is one of the wisest man.
9. Aditya is not the most intelligent of all other students in the class.
10. Some European country are as rich as England.
11. Jay Prakash Narayan was one of greatest Indian leaders.
12. Cobra is the more poisonous of all snakes.
13. Indian cricket team is more better than most other cricket teams in the world.
14. Russia is more powerful than all European countries.
15. He is the most intelligent than any other student in the class.
16. The rose is sweeter of most other flowers.
17. My village is the richer in the area.
18. The Taj Mahal is more grand than any other mausoleum in the world.
19. Australia is the biggest of all Island.
20. The climate of Patna is as good as Varanasi.
21. Very few men has been as wise as Solomon.
22. Iron is one of the most useful metal.
23. My watch is better of your watch.
24. The Pacific is deeper than any ocean.
25. Mahatma Gandhi is not more truthful than he was.

Q. 4. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Meat is (1)/ not more nutritious (2)/ than (3)/ some kind of beans. (4)/ No error (5)
2. Hitler was (1)/ one of (2)/ the sterner dictators (3)/ of the world. (4)/ No error (5)
3. The Judge was (1)/ more shrewd (2)/ than (3)/ the old miser. (4)/ No error (5)
4. Patna is (1)/ the dirtiest of (2)/ all other state capitals (3)/ in India. (4)/ No error (5)
5. Very few things (1)/ in the world (2)/ is as valuable as (3)/ friendship. (4)/ No error (5)
6. Some men (1)/ are (2)/ not fortunater (3)/ than he. (4)/ No error (5)
7. Her sisters (1)/ are not (2)/ less more beautiful (3)/ than she. (4)/ No error (5)
8. Lenin was (1)/ greater than (2)/ most other revolutionary (3)/ in the world. (4)/ No error (5)
9. Cricket is (1)/ more popular than (2)/ any game (3)/ today. (4)/ No error (5)
10. Not any other fruit (1)/ is (2)/ as delicious as (3)/ the mango. (4)/ No error (5)

Q. 5. *Do as directed :*

1. Japan is the most prosperous country in Asia. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'more prosperous')*
2. Bhavna's handwriting is not so beautiful as Shobhana's *(Begins–Shobhana's hand writing ...)*
3. Aditya is more laborious than Aditi *(Begin Aditi is not .....)*
4. I have never seen so big an elephant as this *(Begin-This is bigger .....)*
5. Veena is not the most industrious of all women. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'less industrious')*
6. Ashoka was one of the greatest of all kings. *(Begin—Very few kings .....)*
7. Very few countries are as hot as India. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'hottest')*
8. The lion is the strongest animal. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'than')*
9. Kolkata is the most populous city in the world. *(Begin—No other city ...)*
10. Rahul is more intelligent than Vicky. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'not')*
11. He can run as fast as I. *(Begin—I cannot .....)*
12. Gold is not heavier than Platinum. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'as ... as')*
13. He knows me as well as you do. *(Begin—you do not ...)*
14. Very few Indian towns are so big as Chennai. *(Begin—Chennai is .....)*
15. Some flowers are at least as fragrant as the rose. *(Begin—The rose .....)*
16. You do not know him better than I *(Begin—I know .....)*
17. No other exercise is so healthy as riding. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'healthier')*
18. Milton was greater than most other poets of England. *(Rewrite the sentence using the superlative degree of 'great')*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



19. To preach virtue is easier than to practise it.
*(Begin—To practise virtue is .....)*

20. Some teachers are not less laborious than the headmaster.
*(Begin—the headmaster is not .....)*

## Answers With Explanation

Q. 3.

1. Delhi is better than any other town in India.
2. No other man in India was so great as Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru.
3. Ayodhya is the most ancient city of India.
4. This is the worst book in the library.
5. Shakespeare is a greater dramatist than Shaw.
6. Very few countries in the world are as rich as America.
7. Pakistan is not as powerful as India.
8. He is one of the wisest men.
9. Aditya is not the most intelligent of all students in the class.
10. Some European countries are as rich as England.
11. Jay Prakash Narayan was one of the greatest Indian leaders.
12. Cobra is the most poisonous of all snakes.
13. Indian cricket team is better than most other cricket teams in the world.
14. Russia is more powerful than all other European countries.
15. He is more intelligent than any other student in the class.
16. The rose is sweeter than most other flowers.
17. My village is the richest in the area.
18. The Taj Mahal is grander than any other mausoleum in the world.
19. Australia is the biggest of all islands.
20. The climate of Patna is as good as that of Varanasi.
21. Very few men have been as wise as Solomon.
22. Iron is one of the most useful metals.
23. My watch is better than your watch.
24. The Pacific is deeper than any other ocean.
25. Mahatma Gandhi was not more truthful than he is.

Q. 4.

1. (4) Some kind of beans की जगह some kinds of beans का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (3) Sterner की जगह sternest का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (2) More shrewd की जगह shrewder का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) Other का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। Superlative degree के Sentence में Other का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
5. (3) is की जगह are का प्रयोग होगा। very few + P. N के साथ Plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।
6. (3) Fortunater की जगह more fortunate का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (3) less more beautiful की जगह less beautiful का प्रयोग होगा। double comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। comparative degree negative sentence में less + P.d का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
not less beautiful (ii)
not less more beautiful (iii)
8. (3) revolutionary की जगह revolutionaries का प्रयोग होगा। most other/some other/many other के बाद plural noun का प्रयोग होता है।
9. (3) any game की जगह any other game का प्रयोग होगा।
any other + S. N का प्रयोग comparative degree में होता है।
10. (1) Not any other की जगह no other का प्रयोग होगा।

Q. 5.

1. Japan is more prosperous than any other country in Asia.
2. Shobhana's handwriting is more beautiful than Bhavna's
3. Aditi is not so laborious as Aditya.
4. This is bigger than any other elephant that I have ever seen.
5. Some women are not less industrious than Veena.
6. Very few kings were so great as Ashoka.
7. India is one of the hottest countries.
8. The lion is stronger than all other animals.
9. No other city in the world is so populous as Kolkata.
10. Vicky is not so intelligent as Rahul.
11. I can not run faster than he.
12. Platinum is as heavy as gold.
13. You do not know me better than he does.
14. Chennai is one of the biggest Indian towns.
15. The rose is not the most fragrant of all flowers.
16. I know him as well as you do.
17. Riding is healthier than any other exercise.
18. Milton was one of the greatest poets of England.
19. To practise virtue is not so easy as to preach it.
20. The headmaster is not more laborious than some other teachers.
or The headmaster is not the most laborious of all teachers.

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Time And Tense 10

**Time** *(समय)* और **Tense** *(काल)* दोनों ऐसे शब्द हैं, जिनमें सम्बन्ध होते हुए भी अंतर है।

| Time | Tense |
|---|---|
| Time एक Grammatical term नहीं है। | Tense एक Grammatical term है। |
| यह एक universal concept है। | यह universal concept नहीं है। |
| यह भाषा से स्वतंत्र या मुक्त है। | यह भाषा से स्वतंत्र या मुक्त नहीं है। |
| Time से दिनों, महीनों, वर्षों आदि का बोध होता है। | जबकि Tense से दिनों, महीनों, वर्षों आदि का बोध नहीं होता है। |

**Universal concept का अर्थ विश्वव्यापी धारणा होता है।**

Time का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में होता है, जबकि Tense का प्रयोग विशेष अर्थ में Verb के form का निरूपण करने के लिए किया जाता है। चलिए, नीचे दिए गए उदाहरणों पर हमलोग विचार करते हैं—

1. Veena goes to the pictures every Sunday.
2. The plane takes off at 5 P.M. tomorrow.
3. He had no money yesterday.

उदाहरण (1) में Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग किया गया है। लेकिन इससे Past, Present और Future तीनों का बोध होता है, यानी Past time में प्रत्येक रविवार को पिक्चर जाती थी, Present time में प्रत्येक रविवार को जाती है और आशा है कि Future time में भी प्रत्येक रविवार को जायेगी।

उदाहरण (2) से स्पष्ट होता है कि प्लेन (plane) कल 5 बजे शाम में प्रस्थान करेगा। इस वाक्य में भी Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग किया गया है, लेकिन इससे future time का बोध होता है।

उदाहरण (3) में Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग किया गया है, तथा इससे past time का बोध होता है।

ऊपर दिए गए उदाहरणों से यह स्पष्ट होता है, कि Verb के Present Tense में रहने पर भी इससे Present, Past और Future Time का बोध होता है।

अतः, Verb के Tense तथा इसके प्रयोग को सावधानी से समझने की जरूरत है। सर्वप्रथम एक प्रश्न उठता है कि Tense क्या है ? इस प्रश्न का उत्तर इस प्रकार है :

**Tense :** कार्य के समय के मुताबिक Verb के रूप में जो परिवर्तन होता है, उसे Tense कहते हैं।

*(Tense changes the form of the Verb to express the time of an action.)*

## Kinds of Tense

1. Present Tense *(वर्तमान काल)*
2. Past Tense *(भूतकाल)*
3. Future Tense *(भविष्यत् काल)*

**1. Present Tense :** किसी कार्य के वर्तमान समय में होने या करने, हो रहा है, हो चुका है या हो गया है तथा एक लंबे समय से होता रहा है, का बोध हो तो उसे Present Tense कहते हैं।

दूसरे शब्दों में—*An action which is done at the present time.* जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. I read a book. | *मैं पुस्तक पढ़ता हूँ।* |
| 2. I am reading a book. | *मैं पुस्तक पढ़ रहा हूँ।* |
| 3. I have read a book. | *मैं पुस्तक पढ़ चुका हूँ।* |
| 4. I have been reading a book for an hour. | *मैं एक घंटा से पुस्तक पढ़ता रहा हूँ।* |

**2. Past Tense :** किसी कार्य के बीते हुए समय में होने या करने, हो रहा था, हो चुका था या हो गया था तथा एक लंबे समय से होता रहा था का बोध हो, तो उसे Past Tense कहते हैं।

दूसरे शब्दों में—*An action which is done at the past time.* जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. I wrote a letter. | *मैं पत्र लिखता था या मैंने पत्र लिखा।* |
| 2. I was writing a letter. | *मैं पत्र लिख रहा था।* |
| 3. I had written a letter. | *मैं पत्र लिख चुका था या मैंने पत्र लिखा था।* |
| 4. I had been writing a letter for two days. | *मैं दो दिनों से पत्र लिखता रहा था।* |

**3. Future Tense :** किसी कार्य के आने वाले समय में होने या करने, हो रहा होगा या होता रहेगा, हो चुका होगा या हो गया होगा तथा एक निश्चित समय से होता आ रहा होगा का बोध हो, तो उसे Future Tense कहते हैं। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. I shall write a letter. | *मैं पत्र लिखूँगा।* |
| 2. I shall be writing a letter. | *मैं पत्र लिखता रहूँगा।* |
| 3. I shall have written a letter. | *मैं पत्र लिख चुकूँगा।* |
| 4. I shall have been writing a letter. | *मैं पत्र लिखता आ रहा होऊँगा।* |

उपर्युक्त उदाहरणों से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि Present, Past तथा Future Tense के भी चार-चार उपभेद होते हैं।

### 1. Present Tense

Present Tense के चार उपभेद होते हैं।

1. Present Indefinite Tense / Simple Present Tense *(सामान्य वर्तमान काल)*
2. Present Imperfect / Continuous / Progressive Tense *(अपूर्ण वर्तमान काल / तात्कालिक वर्तमान काल)*
3. Present Perfect Tense *(पूर्ण वर्तमान काल)*
4. Present Perfect Continuous Tense *(पूर्णापूर्ण वर्तमान काल / पूर्ण तात्कालिक वर्तमान काल)*

### 1. Simple Present Tense

**Structure :** $S + M.V^1 / M.V^s + O$

**Use of Simple Present Tense**

**Rule (1) :** Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग habitual, or regular or repeated action (नियमित या स्वाभाविक कार्य) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Mukesh goes to bed at 10 P.M.
He always comes here on Sunday.
She reads a newspaper every morning.
He takes tea without sugar.
We work eight hours a day.
I live at Mahendru.
Sweta and Anshu are girls.
I get up at 6 a.m. every morning.

**Note :** सामान्यतः Time expressing Adverbs (समयसूचक क्रिया विशेषण) जैसे—always, often, sometimes, generally, usually, occassionally, rarely, seldom, never, hardly, scarcely, habitually, daily, every day, everynight, every morning, every evening, every week, every month, every year, once a week, once a day, once a month, twice a day, twice a week, twice a month

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



आदि का प्रयोग habitual or regular or repeated action को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। दूसरे शब्दों में कह सकते हैं कि उपरोक्त Adverbs का प्रयोग होने पर, Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He always comes here at night.
He generally comes here at night.
He usually comes here at night.
He sometimes comes here at night.
He often comes here at night.
He rarely comes here at night.
He seldom comes here at night.
He never comes here at night.

**Rule (2) :** इस Tense का प्रयोग universal truth (नैसर्गिक सत्य) principle (सिद्धांत) तथा permanent activities (स्थायी कार्य व्यापार) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

The sun rises in the east.
Two and two makes four.
Man is mortal.
Water boils at 100°C
The Ganges springs from the Himalayas.

**Rule (3) :** इस Tense का प्रयोग possession (अधिकार) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

This pen belongs to me.
I have a car.
He owns a big building.

**Rule (4) :** इस Tense का प्रयोग mental activity (मानसिक क्रिया-कलाप), emotions तथा feelings को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

We believe in God.
He understands my problem.
I think she is always wrong.
I know that you cannot do this.
She trusts in him.
I consider that he is a good singer.

**Note :** notice, recognize, see, hear, smell, appear, look, seem, want, wish, desire, feel, like, love, hate, hope, refuse, prefer, think, suppose, believe, agree, consider, trust, remember, forget, know, understand, imagine, mean, mind etc. का प्रयोग mental activity को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है। अतः इन सारे Verbs का प्रयोग Simple Present Tense में होता है न कि Present Continuous Tense में। यदि इनमें से कुछ Verbs का प्रयोग Present Continuous Tense में होता है, तो उनका विशेष अर्थ होता है।

**Rule (5) :** Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग आने वाले समय में होने वाले सुनियोजित कार्यक्रम (fixed programme) तथा सुनियोजित योजना (fixed plan) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए किया जाता है। इससे future time का बोध होता है। जैसे—

The college reopens in October.
*कॉलेज पुनः अक्टूबर में खुलेगा।*
He goes to Chennai next month.
*वह अगले महीना चेन्नई जायेगा।*
She leaves for New York next Monday.
*वह अगले सोमवार को न्यूयार्क के लिए प्रस्थान करेगी।*
The Prime Minister comes here tomorrow.
*प्रधानमंत्री कल यहाँ आयेंगे।*
My brother returns tomorrow.
*मेरा भाई कल लौटेगा।*

**Note :** इस तरह के वाक्यों में future time expressing Adverbs जैसे—Tomorrow, next day, next night, next month, next year, next week. In January, in February, in March ....., on Monday, on Tuesday ..... etc. का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से रहता है।

**Rule (6) :** Conditional sentence (शर्तसूचक वाक्य) में सामान्यतः 2 Clauses का प्रयोग होता है। इनमें एक Principal Clause तथा दूसरा Sub-ordinate Clause होता है।

Subordinate Clause—if, when, before, after, till, until, unless, as soon as, as long as, in case से स्टार्ट होते हैं, के साथ Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है, तथा Principal Clause के साथ Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

If you run fast, ↓ Sub-ordinate Clause ↓ Simple Present Tense ↓ $S + V^1/V^s + O$

you will win the race. ↓ Principal Clause ↓ Simple Future Tense ↓ $S + shall/will + V^1 + O$

[= *यदि तुम तेज दौड़ोगे, तुम रेस में जीत जाओगे।*]

When he comes here, he will help me.
[= *जब वह यहाँ आयेगा, वह मेरी मदद करेगा।*]

Unless she works hard, she will not succeed.
[= *यदि वह कठिन परिश्रम नहीं करेगी, वह सफल नहीं हो पायेगी।*]

I shall teach her if she comes.
↓ Principal Clause ↓ Simple Future Tense
↓ Subordinate Clause ↓ Simple Present Tense
[= *मैं उसे (स्त्री) पढ़ाऊँगा यदि वह आयेगी।*]

**Rule (7) :** Here or There से स्टार्ट होने वाले exclamatory sentence में Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Here comes the bus !
There goes the bus !

**Rule (8) :** आँखों देखा हाल का प्रसारण (मैच, आयोजन, कार्यक्रम, बाल फिल्म, सिरियल आदि) रेडियो या टेलीविजन के द्वारा करने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Ganguli runs after the ball, catches it and throws it on the stumps.
In this film, my elder brother plays the role of Dasharath.

**Rule (9) :** Author (लेखक) के statement (कथन) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Shakespeare says, "The course of true love never runs smooth".
Keats says, "A thing of beauty is a joy for ever".

**Rule (10) :** History (इतिहास) के past events (बीते हुए घटनाओं) को जीवंत या ताजा बनाकर दिखाने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Babar crosses the plains, Ibrahim opposes him with a large army.
At last, Ram kills Ravan.

### 2. Present Continuous Tense

**Structure :** $S + is/are/am + M.V^4 + O$

**Use of Present Continuous Tense**

**Rule (1) :** Present Continuous Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे Actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है, जो बोलने के वक्त जारी (continued) हो।

*An action going on at the time of speaking.* जैसे—
Mukesh is coming now.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


They are playing.
The girls are playing kho-kho.
Binay is playing cricket.
She is writing her name on the black board.
Your teacher is teaching chapter '5'.

**Note** : now, at present, at the moment, this morning, currently, this evening, आदि समयसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग Present Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Jha is teaching mathematics at present.
He is reading a novel now.
She is knitting a sweater at the moment.
They are washing the plates this morning.

**Rule (2)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग वैसे अस्थायी कार्य (Temporary action) के लिए होता है, जो बोलने के वक्त नहीं हो रहा है। लेकिन उपयुक्त समय के आस-पास या इन दिनों यह कार्य जारी है। जैसे—

I am living in a rented house.
He is reading the Mahabharata.
She is studying physics these days.

ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में क्रिया का सम्पादन बोलने के वक्त नहीं हो रहा है, बल्कि उपयुक्त समय के आस-पास या आजकल हो रहा है।

**Rule (3)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग nearest future *(निकट भविष्य)* के fixed programme or plan *(निश्चित कार्यक्रम या योजना)* के लिए होता है। जैसे—

He is going to Chennai tonight.
She is going home tomorrow.
I am leaving for Patna next month.
My brother-in-law is coming tomorrow.
She is singing this evening.

**Note** : इस तरह के वाक्यों से future time का बोध होता है, तथा adverb of time—tonight, tomorrow, next day, next night, next moment, next week, next month, next year, this morning, this evening, 5 O' clock, 5 a.m., 6 p.m. etc. का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है।

**Rule (4)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग intention *(इरादा)* or likelihood *(संभावना)* का बोध कराने के लिए होता है तथा इससे future time के भाव का बोध होता है। जैसे—

I am going to see my father-in-law. —*Intention*
He is going to die. —*Likelihood*

**Rule (5)** : कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनका प्रयोग Present Continuous Tense में नहीं होता है। जैसे—see, hear, smell, notice, recognize, taste, appear, seem, look, love, hate, abhor, despise, detest, like, dislike, hope, doubt, admit, accept, refuse, deny, prefer, regard, satisfy, want, wish, desire, intend, please, displease, mean, suppose, think, imagine, presuppose, recall, recollect, remember, forget, believe, know, trust, own, possess, have, belong to, keep, consist of, contain, comprise, include, involve, equal, cost, deserve, depend, fit, owe, lack, require, resemble, need, dare, sound ..... etc. जैसे—

She is knowing him very well. (×)
She knows him very well. (√)
He is understanding it (×)
He understands it. (√)
I am feeling that you are right. (×)
I feel that you are right. (√)
She is owning a scooter. (×)
She owns a scooter. (√)
She is having a handsome husband. (×)
She has a handsome husband. (√)
The pot is containing water. (×)
The pot contains water. (√)

उपरोक्त Verbs का प्रयोग Simple Present Tense में होता है। विशेष अर्थ में इनमें से कुछ Verbs का प्रयोग Present Continuous Tense में होता है।

**इन प्रयोगों का सावधानी से अध्ययन करें :**

1. (a) Feel का प्रयोग 'महसूस करना' के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है। जैसे—

Now he feels that why he did not get 80% marks.
*(= अब वह महसूस करता है कि वह क्यों नहीं 80% अंक प्राप्त किया)*

I feel that he will be a great man.
*(= मैं महसूस करता हूँ कि वह एक महान व्यक्ति बनेगा।)*

(b) Feel का प्रयोग think *(सोचना / विचार करना)* के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Simple Present Tense में होता है। जैसे—

I feel you are right.

(c) Feel के बाद Adjectives—angry, pleased, happy, sad, hot, cold, tense, relaxed, nervous, confident etc. का प्रयोग Subject के emotions, physical or mental condition को indicate *(इंगित/संकेतित/निर्दिष्ट)* करने के लिए हो, तो इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है, लेकिन Continuous Tense में भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

Q. How do you feel ?
A. I feel better.
Q. How are you feeling ?
A. I am feeling better.

(d) Feel का प्रयोग touch *(स्पर्श)* or examine *(जाँच करना)* के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

The doctor was feeling his pulse.

(e) Feel for का प्रयोग 'try to find something by touching' (स्पर्श करते हुए किसी चीज का पता लगाने की कोशिश करना) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

She was feeling for the electric switch in the dark.

2. See का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'देखना' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है न कि Continuous Tense में। जैसे—

We see with our eyes. (√)
I see her singing in the bedroom. (√)
We are seeing with our eyes. (×)
I am seeing her singing in the bedroom. (×)

किन्तु see का प्रयोग 'meet by appointment' (मिलना) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

He is seeing me today.
*वह मुझसे आज मिल रहा है।*

His elder brother is seeing the Governor tomorrow.
*उसका बड़ा भाई कल राज्यपाल से मिल रहा है।*

3. Hear का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'सुनना' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है। जैसे—

I hear she is leaving for Patna. (√)
I am hearing she is leaving for Patna. (×)
I hear music. (√)
I am hearing music. (×)

लेकिन Hear का प्रयोग 'सुनवाई करना' के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

The judge is hearing the case.
*न्यायाधीश मुकदमे की सुनवाई कर रहे हैं।*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



4. Think का प्रयोग 'विचार रखना' के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है। जैसे—

I think he is right.

He thinks he has done well in the examination.

लेकिन, 'think' का प्रयोग 'संभावित चीज पर विचार करना' के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

She is thinking to go to her village.

*वह अपने गाँव जाने की संभावनाओं पर विचार कर रही है।*

5. Appear का प्रयोग 'प्रतीत होना' या मालूम पड़ना (seem) के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है। जैसे—

The sum appears to be easy. (√)

*हिसाब आसान प्रतीत / मालूम होता है।*

It appears to him that I shall do this. (√)

*उसे ऐसा प्रतीत होता है कि मैं इसे कर लूँगा।*

The sum is appearing to be easy. (×)

It is appearing to him that I shall do this. (×)

किन्तु appear का प्रयोग 'प्रकट होना / उपस्थित होना' (to come before the public) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

The moon is appearing in the sky.

*चाँद आकाश में प्रकट हो रहा है।*

The main actor is appearing before the spectators.

*प्रधान अभिनेता दर्शकों के सामने प्रकट / उपस्थित हो रहे हैं।*

**ध्यान दें** : Appear का प्रयोग 'प्रकाशित होना' के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में भी होता है। जैसे—

He is appearing his new book.

*वे अपनी नई पुस्तक प्रकाशित कर रहे हैं।*

When is his new book appearing ?

*उनकी नई पुस्तक कब प्रकाशित हो रही है ?*

6. Smell का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'महकना' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है, न कि Continuous Tense में। जैसे—

The flower smells sweet. (√)

The flower is smelling sweet. (×)

लेकिन smell का प्रयोग sniff at (नाक से सशब्द हवा खींचना या नाक पर सटाकर सूँघना) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

He is smelling the flower.

*वह नाक पर सटाकर फूल सूँघ रहा है।*

*वह नाक से सशब्द हवा से खींचकर फूल सूँघ रहा है।*

7. Taste का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'स्वाद देना' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Simple Tense में होता है न कि Continuous Tense में। जैसे—

This tea tastes sweet. (√)

This tea is tasting sweet. (×)

This coffee tastes bitter. (√)

This coffee is tasting bitter. (×)

लेकिन taste का प्रयोग 'to test the flavour of' (स्वाद की जाँच करना) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

He is tasting the milk pudding.

वह दूध की खीर के स्वाद की जाँच कर रहा है।

8. Expect का प्रयोग 'प्रतीक्षा करना' (await/wait for) के अर्थ में होने पर, इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

She is expecting a baby in September.

He is expecting his love letter.

9. Look का प्रयोग 'देखना, निगाह डालना' के अर्थ में सामान्यतः Simple Tense में होता है। जैसे—

That girl looks beautiful.

लेकिन look for (तलाश करना), look into (ध्यान से समझना), look on (क्षण भर के लिए देखना) आदि का प्रयोग Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

He is looking for his handkerchief.

**Rule (6)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग continued increase or decrease (लगातार वृद्धि या ह्रास) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Her health is gradually improving.

The number of audience is increasing.

## 3. Present Perfect Tense

**Structure** : $S + has/have + M.V^3 + O$

**Use of Present Perfect Tense :**

**Rule (1)** : Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे actions (कार्य) के लिए होता है, जो तुरन्त समाप्त हुआ है। जैसे—

She has written a letter.

I have just bought a pen.

He has gone to Patna market.

**Rule (2)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे past actions के लिए होता है, जो Present Time में जारी है। (अर्थात् जिसका प्रभाव Present time में है)। जैसे—

He has cut his finger.

*उसने अपनी उँगली काट ली है, अर्थात् खून बह रहा है।*

She has finished her work.

*वह अपने कार्य समाप्त कर ली है, अर्थात् अब वह कार्य से मुक्त है।*

My daughter has eaten all the apples.

मेरी पुत्री सब सेब खा गई है, अर्थात् वह, एक भी दूसरे की लिए नहीं छोड़ी। उपरोक्त वाक्यों से स्पष्ट है कि कार्य—past में हुए हैं, लेकिन उसका प्रभाव वर्तमान में जारी है।

**Rule (3)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे past actions के लिए होता है, जो past में स्टार्ट में हुए और अब भी जारी हैं। ऐसे actions के साथ for/since का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

I have lived in this house since 1999.

*मैं 1999 ई० से इस घर में रह रहा हूँ अर्थात् मैं अभी भी इस घर में रह रहा हूँ।*

He has taught in this school for five years.

*वह पाँच वर्षों से इस स्कूल में पढ़ा रहा है, अर्थात् वह अभी भी इस स्कूल में पढ़ा रहा है।*

She has been ill since Friday.

*वह शुक्रवार से बीमार है, अर्थात् वह अभी भी बीमार है।*

**Rule (4)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे past actions के लिए होता है, जो past में समाप्त हुआ है, लेकिन उसका समय निश्चित रूप से अज्ञात है। जैसे—

She has gone to America.

Have you read 'The Arabian Night' ?

**Rule (5)** : Present Perfect Tense के साथ past time expressing words—last year, last week, last month, yesterday, the other day, ago etc. का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I have seen him last year.

I saw him last year.

He has arrived last week.

He arrived last week.

She has come the other day.

She came the other day.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (6) :** Present Perfect Tense के साथ नीचे दिए गए Adverbs or Adverbial phrases का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| Adverbs | Meanings |
|---|---|
| 1. ever | कभी / अब तक किसी समय। |
| 2. never | कभी नहीं / अब तक किसी समय नहीं। |
| 3. always | हमेशा / सदा |
| 4. occasionally | कभी-कभी |
| 5. often | प्रायः / अक्सर |
| 6. several times | अनेक बार |
| 7. already | पहले से ही / पहले ही |
| 8. yet | अबतक / अभी तक (बोलने के समय तक) |
| 9. just | तुरन्त |
| 10. lately | हाल में |
| 11. recently | हाल में |
| 12. so far | अब तक / जहाँ तक |
| 13. up to now | अभी तक |
| 14. up to the present | वर्तमान समय तक |
| 15. since | से |
| 16. for | से |
| 17. during the last few weeks | अंतिम कुछ सप्ताहों के दौरान |
| 18. during the last few years | अंतिम कुछ वर्षों / सालों के दरम्यान |

He has come recently. (√)
She has not gone yet. (√)
He has worked here for five hours. (√)
The train has already left. (√)
Mukesh has not completed his work up to now. (√)
He came recently. (×)
She did not go yet. (×)
He worked here for five hours. (×)
The train already left. (×)
Mukesh completed his work up to now. (×)

★ उपर्युक्त Adverbs में से कुछ का प्रयोग Simple Past Tense में भी होता है।

**Note :** Since/for का प्रयोग Present Perfect Tense, Present Perfect Continuous Tense, Past Perfect Tense तथा Past Pefect Continuous Tense में होता है।

अतः हमलोग since/for के प्रयोग पर विचार करते हैं।

सभी परीक्षाओं के लिए for/since महत्वपूर्ण है, क्योंकि इससे सम्बंधित प्रश्न पूछे जाते हैं।

**Use of 'for' and 'since'**

**(A) Uses of 'for' :** for is used before indefinite/uncertain period of time (अनिश्चित अवधि)

**'for' is used before—**

**Rule (1) :** *Numeral Adjectives + minutes*

जैसे—for thirty minutes | for many minutes
for twenty minutes | for several minutes

**Rule (2) :** *Numeral Adjectives + hours*

जैसे—for two hours | for many hours
for three hours | for several hours

**Rule (3) :** *Numeral Adjectives + days*

जैसे—for five days | for many days
for two days | for several days

**Rule (4) :** *Numeral Adjective + weeks*

जैसे—for two weeks | for many weeks
for three weeks | for several weeks

**Rule (5) :** *Numeral Adjectives + months*

जैसे—for two months | for many months
for six months | for several months

**Rule (6) :** *Numeral Adjectives + years*

जैसे—for three years | for many years
for five years | for several years

**Rule (7) :** *Numeral Adjectives + decades*

जैसे—for three decades | for many decades
for four decades | for several decades

**Rule (8) :** *Numeral Adjectives + Centuries*

जैसे—for two centuries | for many centuries
for five centuries | for several centuries

**Rule (9) :** *A + minute* जैसे—for a minute

**Rule (10) :** *An + hour* जैसे—for an hour

**Rule (11) :** *A + day* जैसे—for a day

**Rule (12) :** *A + week* जैसे—for a week

**Rule (13) :** *A + month* जैसे—for a month

**Rule (14) :** *A + year* जैसे—for a year

**Rule (15) :** *A + decade* जैसे—for a decade

**Rule (16) :** *A + century* जैसे—for a century

**Rule (17) :** *a long period/a long time/ever/a while/a moment.*

जैसे—for a long period | for a while
for a long time | for a moment
for ever

**Rule (18) :** *The last/Past + Numeral Adjective + minute (s)/hour (s)/day (s)/week (s)/ month (s)/year (s)/decade (s)/century/centuries.*

जैसे—for the last five hours | for the past four days
for the last six years | for the past six years

**Rule (19) :** seasons

जैसे—for two seasons

**Rule (20) :** minutes/hours/days/weeks/months/years/decades/centuries.

जैसे— for hours | for years
for months | for weeks

**Note :** (i) *Period of time + ago* का प्रयोग होने पर, period of time के पहले since का प्रयोग होता है, for का नहीं। जैसे—

His brother has been ill for five days. (√)
His brother has been ill since five days. (×)
His brother has been ill for five days ago. (×)
His brother has been ill since five days ago. (√)

Five days ago, period of time नहीं है। बल्कि यह a moment of time है। इसलिए इसके पहले since का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) For का प्रयोग *all + period of time* के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

for all day (×)
for all months (×)
it has been raining all day. (√)
it has been raining for all day. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(iii) For का सामान्य अर्थ 'तक/के लिए' होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Simple Present/Past/Future Tense में होता है जैसे—

Binay waited for me for three hours. —*Simple Past Tense*

She goes there for two hours every day. —*Simple Present Tense*

My younger brother will be in Mumbai for the next five days. —*Simple Future Tense*

**(B) Uses of 'Since'** : Since is used before definite period of time/point of time *(निश्चित समय बिन्दु)*

**'Since' is used before :**

**Rule (1)** : name of the days जैसे—

since Monday — since Tuesday

**Rule (2)** : name of the months. जैसे—

since January — since February

**Rule (3)** : name of the years. जैसे—

since 1980 — since 1990

**Rule (4)** : name of the parts of the day. जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| since morning | since dawn |
| since noon | since daybreak |
| since afternoon | since sunrise |
| since evening | since sunset |
| since night | since dusk |
| since midnight | since twilight |

**Rule (5)** : O'clock/a.m./p.m. जैसे—

since 5 O'clock — since 6 a. m.

since 7 p. m. — since 6 : 30 a. m.

**Rule (6)** : yesterday/last night/last week/last month/last year जैसे—

since yesterday — since last night

since last month — since last year

**Rule (7)** : name of the seaons (ऋतुओं) जैसे—

since Spring — since winter

since Autumn — since Summer

**Rule (8)** : name of the festivals (पर्वों) जैसे—

since Dipawali — since Christmas

since Idd — since Easter

**Rule (9)** : name of events (घटनाओं) जैसे—

since his arrival — since his departure

since his birth — since his marriage

since his death — since their quarrel

**Rule (10)** : stage of one's life जैसे—

since his childhood — since your youth

**Rule (11)** : *last + Monday/Tuesday ..... etc, January/February ..... etc. Spring/winter ..... etc. or other time expressing words.* जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| since last Monday | (√) | since Monday last | (√) |
| since last March | (√) | since March last | (√) |
| since last Spring | (√) | since Spring last | (√) |
| since last midnight | (√) | since midnight last | (√) |

**Note** : (1) *The last + Time expressing words* के पहले for का प्रयोग होता है, क्योंकि इससे period of time का बोध होता है, न कि point of time का।

(a) since last week का अर्थ A point of time about seven days ago होता है,

(b) जबकि for the last week का अर्थ the period of seven days just completed होता है।

### 4. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

**Structure** : *S + has been/have been + M.V^4 + Object + for/since + time*

**Use of Present Perfect Continuous Tense**

**Rule (1)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग वैसे actions *(कार्यों)* के लिए होता है जो past time में प्रारंभ हुआ और Present time *(वर्तमान समय)* में जारी। जैसे—

She has been reading a novel since morning.

It has not been raining since last Monday.

Guriya has been singing a song for an hour.

I have been teaching in the school for five years.

**Rule (2)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग वैसे actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है जो past time में प्रारंभ हुआ, कुछ समय तक continued *(जारी)* रहा और उस समय तत्काल बंद है या समाप्त हो गया है। लेकिन उनका प्रभाव अभी भी काल है। जैसे—

She has been crying.

Why have your clothes been so wet ?

I have been watering the gardens.

## 2. Past Tense

**Past Tense** के चार उपभेद हैं—

1. Past Indefinite Tense/Simple Past Tense *(सामान्य भूतकाल)*
2. Past Imperfect/Continuous/Progressive Tense *(अपूर्ण भूतकाल/तात्कालिक भूतकाल)*
3. Past Perfect Tense *(पूर्ण भूतकाल)*
4. Past Perfect Continuous Tense *(पूर्ण-अपूर्ण भूतकाल/पूर्ण तात्कालिक भूतकाल)*

### 1. Simple Past Tense

**Structure** : $S + M.V^2 + O$

**Use of Simple Past Tense**

**Rule (1)** : Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग वैसे actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है, जो past (भूत काल में) में किसी निश्चित समय में घटित हुए व समाप्त हुए। जैसे—

He went to Mumbai yesterday.

She came to see me last night.

The building was built in 1999.

I bought some chocolates on Sunday last.

**Note** : ऐसे वाक्यों में सामान्यतः Time expressing words (Adverb of time) जैसे—yesterday, yesterday morning, yesterday noon, yesterday evening, yesterday afternoon, the day before yesterday, the other day, ago, last morning, last evening, last night, last day, last week, last month, last year, last moment, in March 1942, in May 1998 .....etc का प्रयोग रहता है। अर्थात्—इन्हीं समयसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग होने पर Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (2)** : इस Tense का प्रयोग वैसे Actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है जो past में घटित हुए। जैसे—

The peon bought a cup of coffee.

His father came back.

I bought this pen in New York.

**Rule (3)** : Past habitual actions (भूतकाल के आदत से संबंधित कार्यों) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He went on Sundays.

In my childhood, I played cricket.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



She always invited me to dinner.
Mohan always carried a bag.

**Note :**(i) Past habitual actions को अभिव्यक्त करने वाले वाक्यों में सामान्यतः always, never, seldom, often, scarcely, rarely, once a day, once a week, once a month, daily, everyday, every week, every month, every year etc. का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) 'Used to', past habitual action को अभिव्यक्त करता है। जैसे—

Gandhiji used to spin in the afternoon.
*गाँधीजी दोपहर के बाद के समय में सूत काता करते थे।*

(iii) 'Would' भी past habitual action को अभिव्यक्त करता है। जैसे—

She would wait for her lover in the park.
*वह अपने प्रेमी का इंतजार पार्क में किया करती थी।*

**Rule (4) :**It is time, it is high time, it is about time, etc. के बाद Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

It is time he started playing cricket.
It is high time she left for the bus stop.

**Rule (5) :**इस Tense का प्रयोग past time से related situation का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

It was night. She was very ill.
I was helpless. He was very poor.

**Rule (6) :**Adverbs of time जैसे—today, this morning, this evening, this week, this month, this year, recently का प्रयोग किसी sentence में होने पर, Simple Past or Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग हो सकता है। जैसे—

He saw me today. He has seen me today.
He saw me this week. He has seen me this week.

**Rule (7) :**Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग past में किसी action (कार्य) के होते रहने का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

While she cooked, I wrote a book.
While they played, we studied.
When my daughter played, I worked.

**Rule (8) :**Suppositional sentence प्रायः if, as if, as though, if only, I wish, we wish, he wishes, she wishes, they wish आदि से स्टार्ट होते हैं। इनके साथ Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I wish I were the Chief Minister of Bihar. (जो संभव नहीं है।)
If I became the Prime Minister of India, I would solve the problem of Kashmir.
He talks as if he were my master.

**Rule (9) :**शर्त सूचक वाक्यों में if clause का प्रयोग हो, तो इससे present or future time का बोध होता है, लेकिन Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

If you reached in time, you might catch the train.
If my servant came on time, I would pay him his wages.

**Rule (10) :**Direct speech में Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा reported speech Simple Present Tense में हो, तो Indirect Speech में Reported speech का Simple Present Tense, Simple Past Tense में बदल जाता है। जैसे—

He said, "I want to read a novel." Direct
He said that he wanted to read a novel. Indirect

लेकिन universal truth, Principle तथा Proverb का प्रयोग Reported speech में हो, तो इसके Tense में Indirect speech में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He said, "Two and two makes four". Direct
He said that two and two makes four. Indirect (√)
He said that two and two makes four. (√)

**Rule (11) :**Past में कोई कार्य हो रहा हो और उसी के दरम्यान / दौरान कोई दूसरा कार्य हो, तो हो रहे कार्य या जारी कार्य के लिए Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग होता है, तथा उसी के दरम्यान / दौरान होने वाले कार्य के लिए Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

When I was writing a book, Sudhirji arrived.
She was cooking food when her husband came.
While he was watering the plants, an insect bit him.
While the girls were dancing, their father came to see them.

**Rule (12) :**Past में दो कार्य हुए हों, जिनमें प्रथम कार्य पहले तथा दूसरा कार्य बाद में, तो प्रथम कार्य को previous action कहा जाता है तथा इसके साथ Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन दूसरे कार्य (जो बाद में हुआ) को subsequent action कहा जाता है, तथा इसके साथ Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. The patient had died before the doctor came.
*डॉक्टर के आने के पहले रोगी मर चुका था।*
Previous action → Past Perfect Tense
Subsequent action → Simple Past Tense

2. The doctor came after the patient had died.
*रोगी के मरने के बाद डॉक्टर आया था।*
Subsequent action → Simple Past Tense
Previous action → Past Perfect Tense

3. The train had departed when he reached the station.
*जब वह स्टेशन पहुँचा, गाड़ी प्रस्थान कर चुकी थी।*
Previous action → Past Perfect Tense
Subsequent action → Simple Past Tense

## 2. Past Continuous Tense

**Structure :** $S + was/were + M.V^{4} + O$

### Use of Past Continuous Tense

**Rule (1) :**Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग वैसे actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है, जो past में जारी थे या हो रहे थे। जैसे—

I was writing this book yesterday morning.
She saw me as she was passing by yesterday.
They were reading a notice.
When she came to me I was talking to my brother.

**Rule (2) :**Direct speech में Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported Speech Present Continuous Tense में हो, तो Indirect Speech में Reported Speech का Present Continuous Tense, Past Continuous Tense में बदल जाता है। जैसे—

Veena said, "I am going to Bishnupur." *Direct*
Veena said that she was going to Bishnupur. *Indirect*
Binay said, "I am coming from my village, Jajuar." *Direct*
Binay said that he was coming from his village, Jajuar. *Indirect*

**Rule (3) :**जब दो actions (कार्य) past में एक ही समय में हो रहे हों, या जारी हों तो दोनों कार्यों के लिए Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

While my mother was singing, I was sleeping.
While I was writing this chapter, my wife was watching T.V.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (4)** : जब get, become, grow—Verb *(क्रियाओं)* का प्रयोग past में किसी कार्य में दिनानुदिन *(उत्तरोत्तर)* वृद्धि (increase) या ह्रास (decrease) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, तो इसके साथ Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He was becoming poorer and poorer.
She was becoming more and more beautiful.
It was getting darker and darker.

### 3. Past Perfect Tense

**Structure** : $S + had + M.V^3 + O$

**Use of Past Perfect Tense**

**Rule (1)** : यदि past (भूतकाल) में दो कार्य हुए हों जिनमें प्रथम कार्य पहले समाप्त हो गया हो तथा दूसरा कार्य बाद में समाप्त हुआ हो तो प्रथम समाप्त हुए कार्य को previous action कहते हैं तथा इसके साथ Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है और दूसरे बाद में समाप्त होने वाले कार्य को subsequent action कहते हैं, तथा इसके साथ Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The crops had destroyed before it rained.
*वर्षा होने से पहले फसल विनष्ट हो चुके थे।*
The bell had rung before I reached the school.
*मेरे विद्यालय पहुँचने से पहले घंटी बज चुकी थी।*
As soon as she had finished her home work, she ran out to play cricket.
*ज्योंही वह अपना गृह कार्य समाप्त की थी, वह क्रिकेट खेलने बाहर चली गई।*
When she reached there, the dinner had started.
*जब वह वहाँ पहुँचा, दावत प्रारंभ हो चुकी थी।*
She had left her office when he came.
*वह अपना कार्यालय छोड़ चुकी थी, जब वह (पु०) आया।*
I came after he had gone.
*उसके जाने के बाद मैं आया।*

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में before, as soon as, when, after का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो Conjunction का काम करता है।

अतः, इस प्रकार के वाक्यों में when, after, before, untill, as soon as, का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (2)** : Driect speech में Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reproted Speech Present Perfect Tense में हो, तो Indirect Speech में Prsent Perfect Tense को Past Perfect Tense में बदला जाता है। जैसे—

*Direct* : He said, "I have finished my work."
*Indirect*: He said that he had finished his work.
*Direct* : The criminal said, "I have looted the bank."
*Indirect*: The criminal said that he had looted the bank.

**Rule (3)** : Direct speech में Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported Speech Simple Past Tense में हो, तो Indirect Speech में Simple Past Tense को Past Perfect Tense में बदला जाता है। जैसे—

*Direct* : Mukesh said, "I bought a pen yesterday.
*Indirect*: Mukesh said that he had bought a pen the previous day.
*Direct* : She said to me, "Binay came late."
*Indirect*: She told me that Binay had come late.

**Rule (4)** : Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग I wish, we wish, he wishes, she wishes, they wish, as if, as though ..... etc. के बाद काल्पनिक तथ्यों का वर्णन करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

She wishes she had been born in 1948.
She talks to me as if she had come from the film industry.

**Rule (5)** : Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग past के काल्पनिक तथ्य का वर्णन करने के लिए नीचे दिए गए Structure (बनावट) में होता है।

**Structure** :

(i) If + S + had + $M.V^3$ + ( , ) + S + would / could / might + have + $M.V^3$ + O

(ii) Had + S + $M.V^3$ + ( , ) + S + would / could / might + have + $M.V^3$ + O जैसे—

If the police had come a little before, the criminal would not have gone away.
Had the student studied honestly, he would have succeeded.

**Rule (6)** : ऐसे वाक्य जिनके दो भाग स्पष्टतः नहीं दिखते। दूसरा भाग understood रहता है। ऐसा प्रतीत होता है, कि अभीष्ट कार्य दूसरे कार्य के कुछ पहले finished (समाप्त) हो चुका था। अभीष्ट कार्य को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Binay had never gone to Delhi before.
*विनय इससे पहले दिल्ली नहीं गया था।*
Mukesh had reached his house much earlier.
*मुकेश बहुत पहले अपने घर पहुँच चुका था।*
She had already cooked food.
*वह पहले ही खाना बना चुकी थी।*
He had already finished his work.
*वह पहले ही अपना कार्य समाप्त कर चुका था।*

लेकिन दो कार्य past में हुए हों, एक कार्य के तुरन्त बाद दूसरा, दोनों कार्यों के बीच इतना कम समयान्तराल हो कि यह पता न चले कि एक कार्य के सम्पन्न होने के बाद ही दूसरा कार्य हुआ। ऐसी स्थिति में दोनों कार्यों को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Past Perfect Tense का। जैसे—

When I began to teach him, he began to listen carefully.
*जब मैं उसे पढ़ाने लगा तब वह सावधानीपूर्वक सुनने लगा।*
When she beat him, he began to abuse her.
*जब वह (स्त्री०) उसे (पु०) पिटने लगी तब वह (पु०) उसे (स्त्री) गाली देने लगा।*

**Rule (7)** : यदि Past में किसी कार्य के होने की उम्मीद की गई, पर कुछ हुआ को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए सामान्यतः Verbs—hope, expect, think, mean, intend, suppose, want का प्रयोग होता है, तथा इस स्थिति में इन सारे Verbs का प्रयोग Past Perfect Tense में होता है। जैसे—

I had hoped that he would come to see my daughter.
He had wanted to see me but unfortunately he fell ill.

### 4. Past Perfect Continuous Tense

**Structure** : $S + had\ been + V^4 + O + for / since + time$

**Use of Past Perfect Continuous Tense**

**Rule (1)** : Past Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है, जो किसी निर्दिष्ट समय से past में जारी अर्थात् चल रहे थे। (समय नहीं भी दिया रहता है।) जैसे—

His elder sister had been dancing for two hours.
I had been reading a novel since 2008.
She had been singing a song.
My younger brother had been quarrelling.

**Rule (2)** : Direct Speech में Reporting Verb Past Tense में तथा Reported Speech Present Perfect Continuous Tense में हो तो Indirect Speech में Present Perfect Continuous Tense को Past Perfect Continuous Tense में बदला जाता है। जैसे—

Veena said, "I have been watching T.V. for two hours."

Veena said that she had been watching T.V. for two hours.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (3) :** Direct Speech में Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported Speech Past Continuous Tense में हो, तो Indirect Speech में Past Continuous Tense को Past Perfect continuous Tense में बदला जाता है। जैसे—

Binay said, "I was working in the office." *Direct*
Binay said that he had been working in the office. *Indirect*
Mr. Thakur said to me "You were trying to disturb me." *Direct*
Mr. Thakur told me that I had been trying to disturb him. *Indirect*

### 3. Future Tense

Future Tense के चार उपभेद हैं—

1. Future Indefinite Tense / Simple Future Tense
   *(सामान्य भविष्यत् काल)*
2. Future Imperfect / Continuous / Progressive Tense
   *(अपूर्ण भविष्यत् काल / तात्कालिक भविष्यत् काल)*
3. Future Perfect Tense
   *(पूर्ण भविष्यत् काल)*
4. Future Perfect Continuous Tense
   *(पूर्णापूर्ण भविष्यत् काल/पूर्ण तात्कालिक भविष्यत् काल)*

#### 1. Simple Future Tense

**Structure :** $S + shall/will + M.V^1 + O$

**Use of Simple Future Tense**

**Rule (1) :** Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग वैसे actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है, जो सामान्य रूप से भविष्य में (आने वाले समय में) होगा। जैसे—

He will help you.
You will go to college tomorrow.
My brother will be twentyfive next year.
She will arrive at 6 O'clock.

**Rule (2) :** Conditional sentence के Principal Clause में Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

| | |
|---|---|
| I shall buy a motorcycle | when the prices comes down. |
| Principal Clause<br>Simple Future Tense | Subordinate Clause<br>Simple Present Tense |

*मैं मोटर साइकिल खरीदूँगा जब मूल्य घटेगा।*

| | |
|---|---|
| If you come here, | I shall help you. |
| Subordinate Clause<br>Simple Present Tense | Principal Clause<br>Simple Future Tense |

*यदि तुम यहाँ आओगे, मैं तुम्हारी मदद करूँगा।*

| | |
|---|---|
| She will come | if you write to her. |
| Principal Clause<br>Simple Future Tense | Subordinate Clause<br>Simple Present Tense |

*वह आयेगी यदि तुम उसे लिखोगे।*

| | |
|---|---|
| When it rains, | the plants will grow. |
| Subordinate Clause<br>Simple Present Tense | Principal Clause<br>Simple Future Tense |

*जब वर्षा होगी तो पौधे उगेंगे/बढ़ेंगे।*

**Rule (3) :** Future में होने वाले actions (कार्यों) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए निम्नलिखित Structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(a) *Subject + has/have + Infinitive (to + $V^1$)* जैसे—
I have to pay the fees.—(future time)
*मुझे फीस जमा / अदा करना है।*
He has to come in time.
*उसे समय पर आना है।*
She has to do this work at any cost.
*उसे हर कीमत पर इस कार्य को करना है।*

(b) *Subject + is/are/am + Infinitive (to + $V^1$)* जैसे—
He is to come to Patna.
*वह पटना आने वाला है।*
You are to appear at the examination.
*तुम परीक्षा में सम्मिलित होने वाले हो।*

(c) *Subject + is/are/am + about + infinitive (to + $V^1$)* जैसे—
The patient is about to die.
*रोगी मरने-मरने को है / ही वाला है।*
She is about to sing a song.
*वह गीत गाने-गाने को है / ही वाली है।*

(d) *Subject + is/are/am + going + Infinitive (to + $V^1$)* जैसे—
I am going to write several books.
*मैं कई पुस्तकें लिखने जा रहा हूँ।*
He is going to buy a motorcycle tomorrow.
*वह कल मोटर साइकिल खरीदने जा रहा है।*

#### 2. Future Continuous Tense

**Structure :** $S + shall/will + be + M.V^4 + O$

**Use of Future Continuous Tense**

**Rule (1) :** Future Continuous Tense का प्रयोग Future में कुछ समय तक जारी रहने वाले actions (कार्यों) के लिए होता है। जैसे—

He will be playing cricket tomorrow morning.
*कल सुबह वह क्रिकेट खेलता रहेगा।*
She will be staying there.
*वह वहाँ रुकी रहेगी।*
At this time tomorrow I shall be watching the film.
*कल इस समय मैं फिल्म देखता रहूँगा।*
When he gets home, his daughters will be reading.
*जब वह घर पहुँचेगा तो उसकी पुत्रियाँ पढ़ती रहेंगी।*

**Rule (2) :** Future Continuous Tense का प्रयोग Future के सुनिश्चित कार्यक्रम (certain programme) या योजना (plan) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Manisha will be meeting me tomorrow.
Binay will be staying there till Friday.
I shall be doing this work till the end of this month.
Neeraj will be preparing for the examination next month.

#### 3. Future Perfect Tense

**Structure :** $S + shall/will + have + M.V^3 + O$

**Use of Future Perfect Tense**

**Rule (1) :** Future Perfect Tense का प्रयोग वैसे actions (कार्यों) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए होता है जिससे यह बोध होता है कि action (कार्य) future में किसी निर्धारित समय तक समाप्त हो चुकेगा। जैसे—

His brother will have finished the work by next month.
*उसका भाई अगले महीने तक कार्य समाप्त कर चुकेगा।*
She will have come back home by evening.
*वह शाम तक घर वापस आ चुकी होगी।*
He will have finished his work before Monday.
*वह सोमवार से पहले तक अपना कार्य समाप्त कर चुका होगा।*
By this time next year I shall have watched the film.
*अगले साल इस समय तक मैं फिल्म देख चुका रहूँगा।*

**Note :** इस प्रकार के वाक्यों में समयसूचक शब्दों के रूप में मात्रान्वयः By Monday, By Tuesday ... etc; By January, By February, ... etc., before Monday, before Tuesday ... etc; before January, February ... etc; का प्रयोग होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (2) :** Future Perfect Tense का प्रयोग likelihood *(संभावना)* or Inference *(अनुमान)* को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए होता है। इस प्रकार की संभावना/अनुमान का relation *(संबंध)* past से होता है। जैसे—

You will have heard the name of Mother Teresa.
*(शायद), तुमने मदर टेरेसा का नाम सुना होगा।*
You will have read the Gita.
*(शायद), तुम गीता पढ़े होगे।*
He will have watched the film, Mother India.
*(शायद), वह 'मदर इंडिया' फिल्म देखा होगा।*

**Note :** उपरोक्त वाक्यों को Emphasis (जोर डालने) करने के लिए will की जगह must का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

You must have heard the name of Mother Teresa.

**Rule (3) :** दो कार्य future में हों जिनमें एक कार्य पहले समाप्त हो चुका हो तथा दूसरा कार्य बाद में हो, तो पहले कार्य के लिए Future Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है तथा दूसरे कार्य के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I shall have finished my work before you come.
तुम्हारे आने से पहले मैं अपना कार्य समाप्त कर चुकूँगा।
The plants will have dried before it rains.
वर्षा होने से पहले पौधे मर/सूख चुके होंगे।

### 4. Future Perfect Continuous Tense

**Structure :** *S + shall/will + have been + M.V^d + O*

**Use of Future Perfect Continuous Tense**

**Rule (1) :** Future Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग वैसे actions (कार्यों) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए होता है, जो future (भविष्य) में किसी निश्चित समय तक जारी रहेंगे। जैसे—

Lata will have been singing from morning.
The farmers will have been working in the field.
He will have been playing cricket for two days.
By the end of this month I shall have been teaching here for five years.

**Note :** (i) By + time expressing word का प्रयोग Future Perfect Continuous Tense में होता है।

(ii) Future Tense में point of time को अभिव्यक्त (express) करने के लिए since की जगह from का प्रयोग होता है।

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Pick out the verbs and state their tense :*

1. Her mother died when she was quite young.
2. He slept well last night.
3. She will learn to write English in a year.
4. The cat lay on the floor.
5. We go to school at 10 O'clock.
6. I met her last Friday.
7. I spend the afternoon at the tuition centre.
8. A mad elephant killed the baby.
9. An aeroplane flies in the air.
10. I have lost my pen.
11. The light has gone out.
12. I know his father and mother.
13. He never tells a lie.
14. The peon rings the bell.
15. He wore black shirt.
16. The dog barked at night.
17. She went to Mumbai yesterday.
18. Mohan failed in class X last year.
19. I shall go to Jamshedpur tomorrow.
20. I forget his name.

**Q. 2.** *Change the verbs into past tense in the following sentences.*

1. I never tell a lie.
2. Ramita Devi spins daily.
3. He takes coffee after meals.
4. He knows my father and mother.
5. Veena sweeps her room every day.
6. Lata sings sweetly.
7. Mr. Thakur speaks the truth.
8. He leaves school at 4 'o clock.
9. The hunter shoots a wild animal.
10. The hen lays five eggs.
11. He hits me.
12. The Indian team wins almost every match.
13. She lies down and sleeps.
14. He drinks tea every morning.
15. The crow crows.
16. He writes a letter.
17. She gets up early in the morning.
18. A cold wind blows.
19. The leaves fall to the ground.
20. She works hard for the examination.

**Q. 3.** *Change the verbs into past continuous tense in the following sentences:*

1. The boys sing songs.
2. He wrote a novel.
3. Birds build nests in trees.
4. He did his work.
5. He swims very well
6. The old man sits in the sun.
7. He wears a red cap.
8. The naughty student teases his teacher.
9. He read (रेड) the Ramayana.
10. She knits a sweater.

**Q. 4.** *Rewrite the following sentences changing the verbs into present or past perfect tense :*

1. The parrot flies out of the cage.
2. She solved the sum correctly.
3. I try hard and succeed.
4. They heard a fictitious story.
5. The girls are playing hockey.
6. The crows fly over the house.
7. He writes a letter.
8. You eat an apple.
9. They do their work.
10. Rahim works hard.

**(Based on Simple Present Tense)**

**Q. 5.** *Supply the correct form of the given verbs :—*

1. Good students always ..... hard.
2. He usually ..... Bhojpuri.
3. Mother always ..... food in the kitchen.
4. A vegetarian is a person who never ..... meat.
5. They ..... to the hill station for a month every summer.
6. An honest man always ..... the truth.
7. My beloved often ..... me in the evening.
8. She rarely ..... out for a walk on Sundays.
9. You sometimes ..... late to the office.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


10. There are some birds that ..... every year. *(migrate)*
11. Your elder brother never ..... coffee. *(drink)*
12. Mr. Thakur usually ..... up at four o' clock every morning. *(get)*
13. Death ..... to everyone sooner or later. *(come)*
14. Aditya ..... his hands before every meal. *(wash)*
15. My father ..... tea, but my mother ..... coffee. *(take, prefer)*
16. The soul ..... immortal. *(be)*
17. This road ..... from Vikas colony to Kumharar Gumati. *(run)*
18. We ..... by the 6.00 a.m. train. *(leave)*
19. The Chief Minister ..... tomorrow morning and ..... the exhibition in the evening. *(arrive, open)*
20. Balbir ..... for Sri Lanka next Monday. *(leave)*
21. The sun ..... in the east and ..... in the west. *(rise, set)*
22. School ..... again on January 5th. *(start)*
23. Aditi priya ..... her teeth every morning. *(brush)*
24. The earth ..... round the sun. *(move)*
25. We ..... with our eyes, ..... with our ears and ..... with our noses. *(see, hear, smell)*

**Q. 6** *Fill in the blanks with the Simple or the Continuous form of the present tense of the verb given in brackets :*

1. Don't make a noise; the child ..... now . *(sleep)*
2. It ..... in July. It ..... now. *(rain)*
3. Our publisher generally ..... Hindi but today he ..... English. *(speak)*
4. My wife and I ..... to the cinema every Saturday. *(go)*
5. His mother ..... some food in the kitchen at present. *(cook)*
6. He ..... because he is hungry now. *(cry)*
7. She ..... at this moment. *(read)*
8. The work men ..... the road near our house. *(repair)*
9. The boys ..... in the river. *(swim)*
10. The clouds ..... across the sky. *(move)*
11. He ..... a newspaper now. *(read)*
12. My watch ..... good time. *(keep)*
13. Fortune ..... the brave. *(favour)*
14. When does the college ..... ? *(reopen)*
15. He ..... 'David Copperfield'. *(read)*
16. My brother ..... tomorrow. *(arrive)*
17. We ..... to the cinema tonight. *(go)*
18. Don't disturb me. I ..... my home work. *(do)*
19. What is the matter with Veena ? She ..... in the chair and ..... *(sit, cry)*
20. My dog ..... a lot, but he isn't ..... at the moment. *(bark)*
21. She ..... to Patna next week. *(come)*
22. A notice at the end of the road ..... people not to go any further. *(warn)*
23. When the curtain ....., Juliet ..... at her desk. suddenly the window ..... and a masked man ..... *(rise, write, open, enter)*
24. Are you ..... anything tomorrow afternoon ? *(do)*
25. The director ..... the applicants this morning. *(see)*

**Q. 7.** *Supply the correct form of the Past Tense of the verbs given in the brackets :*

1. It ..... when we ..... the station. *(rain, reach)*
2. My wife ..... tea while I ..... a book. *(prepare, write)*
3. When we ..... they ..... dinner. *(arrive, have)*
4. Large crowds ..... at the station when the Railway Minister ..... . *(wait, arrive)*
5. I ..... his letter a week ago. *(receive)*
6. He ..... school last year. *(leave)*
7. He ..... English in Patna. *(learn)*
8. We ..... to the radio all evening. *(listen)*
9. The light ..... out while I ..... . *(go, read)*
10. When I ..... her, She ..... hockey. *(see, play)*
11. He was always ..... . *(grumble)*
12. Babar ..... Rana Sanga at Kanwaha. *(defeat)*
13. When I ..... out early this morning, the sun ..... *(set, shine)*
14. His wife ..... her finger while she ..... the bread. *(cut, butter)*
15. Don't talk while you ..... your food. *(eat)*
16. Naresh, his wife and children ..... to see us only ten minutes ago. *(come)*
17. Alexander ..... India two thousand years ago. *(invade)*
18. When I ..... him, he ..... and ..... a cigarette at the same time. *(see, sing, smoke)*
19. When she ..... to the radio last night, she ..... a loud sound. *(listen, hear)*
20. A young beautiful girl ..... off the train while it ..... . *(jump, run)*
21. Whenever she ..... Mumbai, she ..... to see the Gateway of India. *(visit, go)*
22. It ..... half an hour ago. *(rain)*
23. My son ..... his homework while his mother ..... the lunch. *(finish, cook)*
24. From morning till late at night yesterday, he ..... the Mahabharata. *(read)*
25. She ..... her fees yesterday. *(pay)*

**Q. 8.** *Insert in the blank spaces in the sentences below the Past or the Present Perfect Tense of the verb given in the brackets :*

1. We ..... each other for the past five years. *(know)*
2. He ..... never ..... alcoholic liquor. *(drink)*
3. Our publisher ..... a new car. *(purchase)*
4. I ..... the Golghar. *(see)*
5. I ..... my dinner. *(have)*
6. He ..... for eight hours. *(sleep)*
7. He ..... his dinner an hour ago. *(have)*
8. He ..... for six hours last night. *(sleep)*
9. My grandmother ..... eight years ago. *(die)*
10. The train ..... just now. *(arrive)*
11. Someone ..... the chair. *(break)*
12. He ..... that film last week. *(see)*
13. I suppose you ..... the latest news. Pintoo ..... Kavita, yesterday. *(hear, marry)*
14. When he ..... here, she ..... asleep in her chair. *(see, sit)*
15. He ..... her letter a few days ago but he ..... not ..... to it as yet. *(receive, reply)*

**Q. 9.** *Supply the correct Past Tense of the verbs in brackets :*

1. The rain ..... when she ..... to see me. *(stop, come)*
2. I ..... my work when Raman ..... to see her. *(finish, come)*
3. The patient ..... before the doctor ..... *(die, arrive)*
4. The train ..... before we ..... the station. *(leave, reach)*
5. He ..... for a walk after he ..... his dinner. *(go, eat)*
6. The sun ..... before we set out. *(rise)*
7. He died after he ..... ill for a long time. *(be)*
8. My daughter ..... all the fruit before I ..... back. *(eat, get)*
9. My father ..... to see me only a month ago. *(come)*
10. They ..... home after they ..... their work. *(go, finish)*

**Q. 10.** *Insert the correct form of the Present Perfect Continuous Tense (form) of the verb given in brackets :*

1. It ..... since ten O'clock. *(rain)*
2. He ..... here for almost half an hour. *(wait)*
3. The door bell ..... for the past five minutes. *(ring)*
4. They ..... here since seven O'clock this morning. *(play)*
5. Mr. Thakur ..... in Patna since August, 1989. *(live)*
6. I ..... in the post office for five years. *(work)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



7. He is tired because he ..... in the garden since eight O'clock. *(dig)*
8. How long ..... you ..... for her ? *(wait)*
9. Since when ..... the students ..... the match ? *(play)*
10. We ..... our lessons for two hours. *(learn)*

**Q. 11.** *Fill in the blanks with for or since :*

1. He has been reading this book ..... the last three years.
2. My younger brother has been sleeping ..... eight hours.
3. My wife has been working ..... five O'clock this morning.
4. They have not been here ..... two weeks.
5. Your classmate has been ill ..... a long time.
6. It has been raining ..... yesterday morning.
7. I have been writing this book ..... last November.
8. We have been waiting here ..... an hour and a half.
9. Mr. Thakur has been living in this town ..... August, 1989.
10. I have not seen her ..... the past six months.
11. The publisher has not seen me..... Sunday.
12. At that time he had been writing a book ..... four months.
13. When Mr. Tondon came to the school in 2000, Mr. Jha had already been teaching there ..... five years.
14. By next October they will have been living here ..... the last two years.
15. You have been here ..... Monday.
16. I left college in 1993. He hasn't seen me .....
17. He has worked for us ever ..... he left school.
18. He travelled in the desert ..... a long period.
19. She has been learning music ..... two months.
20. Sweta has been studying in Patna Women's College ..... last year.
21. You have been learning English Grammar ..... many days.
22. She has been playing carrom ..... morning.
23. The parcel has been lying here ..... several days.
24. My mother had been fasting ..... four weeks when the doctor came.
25. They have lived in Mumbai ..... 1990.

**Q. 12.** *Use the correct form of the Future Tense of the verb given in the brackets :*

1. He ..... to the cinema tomorrow. *(go)*
2. My son ..... five next june. *(be)*
3. I ..... for her when she returns home. *(wait)*
4. He ..... this exercise by 8 O'clock. *(finish)*
5. You ..... your father before I see you again. *(meet)*
6. Nobody ..... anything from you when you go home this after noon. *(take)*
7. He ..... the station before the train starts. *(reach)*
8. They ..... preparations for the marriage for three months. *(make)*
9. You ..... English for three years by the end of this year. *(learn)*
10. I ..... in Kolkata for six years by the end of this month. *(live)*

**Q. 13.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of the verbs given in the brackets:*

1. He ..... to college every day. *(goes/going)*
2. My young brother ... to Mumbai last month. *(go/went)*
3. He ..... from fever since last night. *(has suffered/has been suffering)*
4. He ..... just now. *(has arrived/arrived)*
5. I ..... working for two hours. *(have been/am)*
6. I ..... in Patna since 1993. *(have lived/lived)*
7. The Mughals ..... the battle of Panipat. *(have won/won)*
8. Stephenson ..... the steam engine. *(has invented/invented)*
9. Mahatma Gandhi ..... in 1948. *(has died/died)*
10. She ..... before her husband came. *(had died/died)*
11. The train had left before they ..... the station. *(reached/will reach)*
12. They will play cricket if the principal ..... them. *(allows/allowed)*
13. He ..... a letter yet. *(has not written/did not write)*
14. When I ..... my work, I shall take rest. *(finished/finish)*
15. He told me that she ..... for seven days. *(had been ill/was ill)*
16. Bhavana will have reached home before the sun ..... *(will set/set)*
17. Ajit and Rekha ... to the cinema last night. *(have gone/went)*
18. It ..... for five hours. *(has been raining/is raining)*
19. Five plus five ..... ten. *(make/makes)*
20. My elder daughter ..... born in 2002. *(was/is)*
21. I ..... the Redfort. *(have never seen/never saw)*
22. Does he ..... fast ? *(run/runs)*
23. The Earth ..... round the Sun. *(moved/moves)*
24. Who ..... the Taj Mahal ? *(builds/built)*
25. She ..... that film already. *(has seen/saw)*
26. How did they ..... to Yajuar ? *(come/came)*
27. Tendulkar generally ..... very well. *(plays/played)*
28. But today he ..... very badly. *(is playing/plays)*
29. The Sun ..... in the east. *(rises/rose)*
30. I was born in 1972. I first ..... to college in 1986. *(had gone/went)*
31. Ice ..... at 0° C. *(melts/is melting)*
32. By this time tomorrow I ..... home. *(shall reach/shall have reached)*
33. All that ..... is not gold. *(glitters/is glittering)*
34. Columbus ..... America. *(had discovered/discovered)*
35. He ..... absent for a long time. *(is/has been)*
36. I saw her when she ..... for the bus. *(waited/was waiting)*
37. The lion ..... by Anup. *(was killed/killed)*
38. Did you ..... her ? *(see/saw)*
39. I ..... college before the bell rang. *(reached/had reached)*
40. My father-in-law ..... for Patna next week. *(leaves/left)*
41. The Prime Minister ..... here tomorrow. *(comes/came)*
42. While I was reading, My daughter ..... *(was crying/cried)*
43. My father ..... up at 4 'o clock everyday. *(gets/is getting)*
44. I wish I ..... the Chief minister of Bihar. *(was/were)*
45. When I reached the station, the train ..... left. *(has/had)*
46. If you ..... here, I shall teach you. *(come/will come)*
47. Binay ..... a prose now. *(reads/is reading)*
48. He ..... just ..... out. *(has gone/goes)*
49. Hard work ..... success. *(brings/brought)*
50. If I ..... a king, I would be happy. *(was/were)*
51. My brother ..... twenty five next year. *(will be/is)*
52. His daughter ..... to the zoo every Sunday. *(goes/went)*
53. Oil ..... on water. *(floats/floated)*
54. The school ..... in July everyyear. *(will reopen/reopen)*
55. It is time we ..... playing cricket. *(started/were starting)*
56. I don't know who ..... her up. *(bring/brought)*
57. If you ..... hard, you will succeed. *(work/will work)*
58. At present he ..... to his teacher. *(talks/is talking)*
59. Newton ..... the laws of gravitation. *(discovered/had discovered)*
60. She ..... for a walk everymorning. *(goes/went)*
61. Mr. U. Jha ..... a newspaper daily. *(is reading/reads)*
62. By the end of this year she ..... in the office for fourteen years. *(will have been working/will be working)*
63. You ..... heard about the assassination of Mrs. Gandhi. *(will have/...)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



64. The Police ..... the robbers by next year. *(will have caught/will catch)*
65. He ..... doing this work till the end of this month. *(will be/is)*
66. When he gets home, his children ..... . *(will be sleeping/will sleep)*
67. At this time tomorrow, he ..... a news paper. *(will be reading/will read)*
68. It ..... to rain. *(is going/goes)*
69. He ..... to die. *(is/will)*
70. You ..... to accept the challenge of time. *(have/had)*
71. He ..... to his brother's house this afternoon. *(is going/goes)*
72. Our examination ..... in March. *(is commencing/commences)*
73. Veena ..... to Mumbai next year. *(goes/went)*
74. I ..... a motorcycle when the price comes down. *(shall buy/buy)*
75. She said that she ..... walking for two hours. *(has been had been)*
76. He said that he ..... writing a novel. *(had been/has been)*
77. Had the teacher not come, the students ..... . *(would have studied/studied)*
78. Mukesh said that he ..... to bring the textbook. *(had forgotten/forgot)*
79. Sweta said that she ..... her book in the school. *(had lost/lost)*
80. The director had come out of the office before I ..... *(arrived/arrive)*
81. The students ..... before the teacher came. *(had stood up/stood up)*
82. My father said that he ..... to Darbhanga. *(is going/wasgoing)*
83. My beloved said that she ..... for the U.P.S.C. examination. *(was preparing/had been preparing)*
84. While I was writing this book, my daughter ..... . *(was weeping/wept)*
85. While she was cooking, I ..... listening to the radio. *(was/had been)*
86. I ..... to my friends yesterday evening. *(was talking/talked)*
87. The teacher said that labour never ..... invain. *(goes/went)*
88. He said that the Sun ..... in the west. *(sets/set)*
89. Mr. Pandey said that he ..... to establish an institution. *(wanted/wants)*
90. While Abhay ..... on the bed, a snake bit him. *(was sleeping/slept)*
91. While my wife was listening to the radio, I ..... . *(arrived/was arriving)*
92. It is time he ..... to see the theatre. *(goes/went)*
93. He behaves as if he ..... my boss. *(was/were)*
94. Mother Teresa ..... to help the helpless. *(used /had used)*
95. He often ..... me to dinner. *(invites/ invited)*
96. I ..... some books on Tuesday last. *(bought/buy)*
97. My uncle ..... a year ago. *(died/dies)*
98. Mr. Advani ..... to America last month. *(goes/went)*
99. She ..... yet. *(has not come/did not come)*
100. The train ..... already ..... . *(has left/left)*
101. Monika and Sonika ..... together for a long time. *(have been living/have lived)*
102. He .... the intermediate examination. *(has passed/passed)*

Q. 14. *Rewrite the following sentences after correcting errors :*

1. She does not write to me for two weeks.
2. Vikas has been eating apples since he is a child.
3. You did't yet see the Governor.
4. He is away from school since August last.
5. He said that the college was closed since last Friday.
6. Five hours have passed since he had fallen asleep.
7. Eight years passed since his grandfather died.
8. Two months have passed since I have come here.
9. She is long known to me.
10. My father will reach there by this time tomorrow.
11. I am sorry for the students who failed in the examination.
12. He will come when he will be ready.
13. She will write as soon as she will arrive soon.
14. It's high time (that) you go home.
15. It's time (that) we play cricket.
16. He is often asking himself questions.
17. He is born in India.
18. She has been born in a town.
19. If I was a king, I would be happy.
20. I finished my work just now.
21. He was ill for two days when the doctor was sent for.
22. They come here a month ago.
23. She watches television now.
24. The great reformer had died in 1948.
25. We shall serve you if you will come.

Q. 15. *Select the correct form of the verb shown in brackets in each sentence and write it in the the brackets opposite :*

1. He (a) went / (b) has gone to Muzaffarpur yesterday. ( )
2. She (a) is / (b) has been doing her home work for an hour. ( )
3. I shall teach you if you (a) come / (b) will come ( )
4. She (a) goes / (b) is going to the cinema everysunday. ( )
5. My grandmother (a) told / (b) Has told me a story just now ( )
6. The Rajadhani Express (a) has left / (b) left an hour ago. ( )
7. He felt that he (a) will / (b) would resign his post. ( )
8. She had gone to college when I (a) had come / (b) came to see her. ( )
9. The boys will play if the headmaster (a) allows / (b) allowed them. ( )
10. It (a) is raining / (b) has been raining all day. ( )
11. He (a) had visited / (b) visited us last week. ( )
12. They (a) failed / (b) have failed last year. ( )
13. I (a) am living / (b) have been living here for a week. ( )
14. The train had left before they (a) reached / (b) had reached the station ( )
15. He will have finished his work before I (a) come / (b) shall come ( )
16. We (a) did not write / (b) have not written the letter yet. ( )

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



17. I (a) didn't see / (b) haven't seen him since we met a year ago. ( )

18. When we went to the cinema, the film (a) already started / (b) had already started. ( )

19. Columbus (a) had discovered / (b) discovered America. ( )

20. We (a) have finished / (b) finished our breakfast half an hour ago. ( )

21. He jumped off the bus while it (a) moved / (b) was moving. ( )

22. By this time tomorrow he (a) will reach / (b) will have reached home. ( )

23. Here are your shoes; I (a) just cleaned / (b) have just cleaned them. ( )

24. The servant had finished his work when I (a) called / (b) had called him. ( )

25. Five years have passed since his mother (a) had died / (b) died ( )

**Q. 16.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. If Manali had (1)/ worked hard (2)/she will have got the job (3)/ she desired. (4)/No error (5)
2. He told me (1)/that he wrote a letter (2)/ to his superior for a certain reason. (4)/ No error (5)
3. I am working (1)/ at my present job (2)/ since the day (3)/ a son was born to my brother. (4)/ No error (5)
4. After Ravi (1)/ read the magazines and news papers, (2)/ and watched T. V. Programme, (3)/ he decided to go out and meet some old friends. (4)/ No error (5)
5. His father would have been pleased (1)/ to get him a wrist watch (2)/ if he would have worked (3)/ harder and secured higher marks in the university examination. (4)/ No error (5)
6. When the doctors found (1)/ that the player has taken (2)/ prohibited medicines, he reported (3)/ the matter to the team manager. (4)/ No error (5)
7. As soon as (1)/ the clock strike five (2)/ they down tools (3)/ and off they go. (4)/ No error (5)
8. It had been our custom (1)/ from immemorial time to be (2)/ hospitable to those who come to our doors. (3)/ No error (4)
9. I asked (1)/ if she has looked everywhere (2)/ and she said, 'yes'. (3)/ No error (4)
10. Had I realised (1)/ that it was such a long way (2)/ I would take a taxi. (3)/ No error (4)
11. As he dived from the spring board (1)/ he was terrified to see (2)/ that the water was drained from the pool the previous night. (3)/ No error (4)
12. As I am suffering from fever since morning (1)/ I shall not be able to attend the function (2)/ You are going to organise this evening. (3)/ No error (4)
13. She wishes (1)/ that she has studied literature instead of history (2)/ when she was in college. (3)/ No error (4)
14. Much water (1)/ has flown (2)/ under the bridge since then . (3)/ No error (4)
15. I do not wish (1)/ to rise (2)/ false hopes. (3)/ No error (5)
16. The stranger (1)/ asked the little girl (2)/ what is her name. (3)/ No error (4)
17. Apollo was worshipped (1)/ as long as (2)/ the Roman empire had lasted. (3)/ No error (4)
18. I pretended as if (1)/ I interested in the conversation (2)/ but really it was very boring. (3)/ No error (4)
19. The teacher remarked that (1)/ they all had (2)/ done it very badly. (3)/ No error (4)
20. The train is supposed (1)/ to arrive at 10. a.m yesterday (2)/ but it was an hour late. (3)/ No error (4)
21. Rajan told me that you had left (1)/ the college a year before (2)/ and looking for a job. (3)/ No error (4)
22. He asked me (1)/ if I am ill and (2)/ I answered that I was not (3)/ No error (4)
23. India's Independence (1)/ had been the result (2)/ of sacrifice of (3)/ many patriots. (4)/ No error (5)
24. Yesterday Ramesh got (1)/ the information that his father (2)/ died in an accident (3)/ while travelling in a car. (4)/ No error (5)
25. He will certainly help you (1)/ if you will ask him (2)/ in a pleasant manner. (3)/ No error (4)

**Q. 17.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. I found this ring as I dig in the garden, (1)/ it looks very old, (2)/ I wonder whom it belongs to. (3)/ No error (4)
2. The girls were playing (1)/ outside the house whereas (2)/ the boys were sitting (3)/ inside and played cards. (4)/ No error (5)
3. Mohini washes all her (1)/ clothes and cooks food (2)/ for the family before (3)/ she is going to the office. (4)/ No error (5)
4. I know nothing (1)/ about chess because (2)/ my game's teacher also (3)/ was not knowing nothing about it. (4)/ No error (5)
5. The discreet enquiry revealed (1)/ that his involvement in (2)/ the fraud cases have been more than (3)/ what was first guessed. (4)/ No error (5)
6. If you had read (1)/ the relevant literature carefully, (2)/ you would have answered (3)/ most of the questions correctly. (4)/ No error (5)
7. Suresh Babu, who is living (1)/ in this town since 1956, (2)/ is a well known scholar of history (3)/ and a distinguished musician. (4)/ No error (5)
8. He hoped to finish (1)/ the work in the last week (2)/ but in fact (3)/ he could not. (4)/ No error (5)
9. He could not cut (1)/ the grass today because (2)/ the handle of the machine (3)/ has broken a few days ago. (4)/ No error (5)
10. I have pleasure (1)/ to certify (2)/ that Shamim worked meritoriously (3)/ for the last three years in our organization. (4)/ No error (5)
11. The Department of Modern Indian languages (1)/ is running a course in comparative literature (2)/ for the last fifteen years (3)/ No error (4)
12. Had he follow (1)/ the directions carefully (2)/ he would have felt (3)/ better much quicker. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Once he realised (1)/ that he had committed a mistake (2)/ he admits it (3)/ corrected it without delay. (4)/ No error (5)
14. He would not have (1)/ written this letter (2)/ if he would not have (3)/ heard the news. (4)/ No error (5)
15. Sumitra appealed (1)/ to the managing committee (2)/ that she may be (3)/ allowed to join the volunteer force. (4)/ No error (5)
16. If John had told me (1)/ last Thursday (2)/ I will have given him the money (3)/ but now it is too late. (4)/ No error (5)
17. No sooner did (1)/ the train arrived at the station (2)/ that the passengers (3)/ rushed towards it. (4)/ No error (5)
18. On entering the room (1)/ she was found hanging (2)/ from the ceiling. (3)/ No error (4)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


19. If I were (1)/ in his shoes, (2)/ I would die with shame. (3)/ No error (4)
20. My friend did not see me (1)/ for many years (2)/ when I met him last week. (3)/ No error (4)
21. Why you don't told him (1)/ and (2)/ clarify all (3)/ pending matters. (4)/ No error (5)
22. He was extremely annoyed (1)/ when I reported (2)/ the matter to him (3)/ and has fired me. (4)/ No error (5)
23. He obtained good marks (1)/ not only in English essay (2)/ but also in Arithmetic which was (3)/ full of complicated calculations. (4)/ No error (5)
24. As soon as the principal (1)/ entered the school (2)/ all the students approached him (3)/ and report the matter. (4)/ No error (5)
25. The programme which (1)/ came on television (2)/ these days in the evenings (3)/ is very interesting. (4)/ No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

Q. 1.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. died, was → | Past tense | (simple) |
| 2. slept | Past tense | (simple) |
| 3. will learn | Future tense | (simple) |
| 4. lay | Past tense | (simple) |
| 5. go | Present tense | (simple) |
| 6. met | Past tense | (simple) |
| 7. spend | Present tense | (simple) |
| 8. killed | Past tense | (simple) |
| 9. flies | Present tense | (simple) |
| 10. have lost | Present tense | (perfect) |
| 11. has gone out | Present tense | (perfect) |
| 12. know | Present tense | (simple) |
| 13. tells | Present tense | (simple) |
| 14. rings | Present tense | (simple) |
| 15. wore | Past tense | (simple) |
| 16. barked | Past tense | (simple) |
| 17. went | Past tense | (simple) |
| 18. failed | Past tense | (simple) |
| 19. shall go | Future tense | (simple) |
| 20. forget | Present tense | (simple) |

Q. 2.

1. I never told a lie.
2. Ramita Devi span daily.
3. He took coffee after meals.
4. He knew my father and mother.
5. Veena swept her room everyday.
6. Lata sang sweetly.
7. Mr. Thakur spoke the truth.
8. He left school at 4 'o clock.
9. The hunter shot a wild animal.
10. The hen laid five eggs.
11. He hit me.
12. The Indian team won almost every match.
13. She lay down and slept.
14. He drank tea every morning.
15. The crow crowed.
16. He wrote a letter.
17. She got up early in the morning.
18. A cold wind blew.
19. The leaves fell to the ground.
20. She worked hard for the examination.

Q. 3.

1. The boys were singing songs.
2. He was writing a novel.
3. Birds were building nests in trees.
4. He was doing his work.
5. He was swimming very well.
6. The old man was sitting in the sun.
7. He was wearing a red cap.
8. The naughty student was teasing his teacher.
9. He was reading the Ramayana.
10. She was knitting a sweater.

Q.4.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. The parrot has flown out of the cage. | *Present perfect tense* |
| The parrot had flown out of the cage. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 2. She has solved the sum correctly. | *Present perfect tense* |
| She had solved the sum correctly. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 3. I have tried hard and succeeded. | *Present perfect tense* |
| I had tried hard and succeeded. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 4. They have heard a ficititious story. | *Present perfect tense* |
| They had heard a ficititious story. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 5. The girls have played hockey. | *Present perfect tense* |
| The girls had played hockey. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 6. The crows have flown over the house. | *Present perfect tense* |
| 7. The crows had flown over the house. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 8. He has written a letter. | *Present perfect tense* |
| He had written a letter. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 9. You have eaten an apple. | *Present perfect tense* |
| You had eaten an apple. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 10. They have done their work. | *Present perfect tense* |
| They had done their work. | *Past perfect tense* |
| 11. Rahim has worked hard. | *Present perfect tense* |
| Rahim had worked hard. | *Past perfect tense* |

Q. 5.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. work | 2. speaks | 3. cooks | 4. eats |
| 5. go | 6. speaks | 7. visits | 8. goes |
| 9. come | 10. migrate | 11. drinks | 12. gets |
| 13. comes | 14. washes | 15. takes, prefers | 16. is |
| 17. runs | 18. leave | 19. arrives, opens | 20. leaves |
| 21. rises, sets | 22. starts | 23. brushes | 24. moves |
| 25. see, hear, smell | | | |

Q. 6.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. is sleeping | 2. rains, is raining |
| 3. speaks, is speaking | 4. go |
| 5. is cooking | 6. is crying |
| 7. is reading | 8. are repairing |
| 9. are swimming | 10. are moving |
| 11. is reading | 12. keeps |
| 13. favours | 14. reopen |
| 15. is reading | 16. is arriving |
| 17. are going | 18. am doing |
| 19. is sitting, crying | 20. barks, barking |
| 21. is coming | 22. warns |
| 23. rises, is writing, opens, enters | |
| 24. doing | 25. is seeing |

Q. 7.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. was raining, reached | |
| 2. was preparing, was writing | |
| 3. arrived, were having | 4. were waiting, arrived |
| 5. received | 6. left |
| 7. learnt | 8. were listening |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



9. went, was reading
10. saw, was playing
11. grumbling
12. defeated
13. set, was shining
14. cut, was buttering
15. were eating
16. came
17. invaded
18. saw, was singing, smoking
19. was listening, heard
20. Jumped, was running
21. visited, went
22. rained
23. finished, was cooking
24. was reading
25. paid

**Q. 8.**

1. have known
2. has drunk
3. has purchased
4. have seen
5. have had
6. has slept
7. had
8. slept
9. died
10. has arrived
11. has broken
12. saw
13. have heard, married
14. saw, was sitting
15. received, has, replied

**Q. 9.**

1. had stopped, came
2. had finished, came
3. had died, arrived
4. had left, reached
5. went, had eaten
6. had risen
7. had been
8. had eaten, got
9. came
10. went, had finished

**Q. 10.**

1. has been raining
2. has been waiting
3. has been ringing
4. have been playing
5. has been living
6. have been working
7. has been digging
8. have, been waiting
9. have, been playing
10. have been learning

**Q. 11.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. for | 2. for | 3. since | 4. for |
| 5. for | 6. since | 7. since | 8. for |
| 9. since | 10. for | 11. since | 12. for |
| 13. for | 14. for | 15. since | 16. since |
| 17. since | 18. for | 19. for | 20. since |
| 21. for | 22. since | 23. for | 24. for |
| 25. since | | | |

**Q. 12.**

1. will go
2. will be
3. shall be waiting
4. will have finished
5. will have met
6. will have taken
7. will have reached
8. will have been making
9. will have been learning
10. shall have been living

**Q. 13.**

1. goes
2. went
3. has been suffering
4. has arrived
5. have been
6. have lived
7. won
8. invented
9. died
10. had died
11. reached
12. allows
13. has not written
14. finish
15. had been ill
16. sets
17. went
18. has been raining
19. makes
20. was
21. have never seen
22. run
23. moves
24. built
25. has seen
26. come
27. plays
28. is playing
29. rises
30. went
31. melts
32. shall have reached
33. glitters
34. discovered
35. has been
36. was waiting
37. was killed
38. see
39. had reached
40. leaves
41. comes
42. was crying
43. gets
44. were
45. had
46. come
47. is reading
48. has, gone
49. brings
50. were
51. will be
52. goes
53. floats
54. reopens
55. started
56. brought
57. work
58. is talking
59. discovered
60. goes
61. reads
62. will have been working
63. will have
64. will have caught
65. will be
66. will be sleeping
67. will be reading
68. is going
69. is
70. have
71. is going
72. commences
73. goes
74. shall buy
75. had been
76. had been
77. would have studied
78. had forgotten
79. had lost
80. arrived
81. had stood up
82. was going
83. was preparing
84. was weeping
85. was
86. was talking
87. goes
88. sets
89. wanted
90. was sleeping
91. arrived
92. went
93. were
94. used
95. invited
96. bought
97. died
98. went
99. has not come
100. has, left
101. have been living
102. has passed

**Q. 14.**

1. She has not written to me for two weeks.
2. Vikas has been eating apples since he was a child.
3. You haven't yet seen the Governor.
4. He has been away from school since August last.
5. He said that the college had been closed since last Friday.
6. Five hours have passed since he fell asleep.
7. Eight years have passed since his grandfather died.
8. Two months have passed since I came here.
9. She has been long known to me.
10. My father will have reached there by this time tomorrow.
11. I am sorry for the students who have failed in the examination.
12. He will come when he is ready.
13. She will write as soon as she arrives soon.
14. It's high time (that) you went home.
15. It's time (that) we played cricket.
16. He often asks himself questions.
17. He was born in India.
18. She was born in a town.
19. If I were a king, I would be happy.
20. I have finished my work just now.
21. He had been ill for two days when the doctor was sent for.
22. They came here a month ago.
23. She is watching television now.
24. The great reformer died in 1948.
25. We shall serve you if you come.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Q. 15.

1. (a) went
2. (b) has been
3. (a) come
4. (a) goes
5. (b) has told
6. (b) left
7. (b) would
8. (b) came
9. (a) allows
10. (b) has been raining
11. (b) visited
12. (a) failed
13. (b) have been living
14. (a) reached
15. (a) come
16. (b) have not written
17. (b) haven't seen
18. (b) had already started.
19. (b) discovered.
20. (b) finished
21. (b) was moving
22. (b) will have reached
23. (b) have just cleaned
24. (a) called
25. (b) died.

Q. 16.

1. (3) will have की जगह would have का प्रयोग होगा। if + Subject + had + $M.V^3$ + (,) + subject + would have + $M.V^3$ + object का प्रयोग होता है।
2. (2) he wrote a letter की जगह he had written a letter का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (1) I am working की जगह I have been working का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (2) read की जगह had read का प्रयोग होगा। subject + $M.V^2$ + object + after + subject + had + $M.V^3$ + object का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
   The doctor came after the patient had died. (✓)
   After the patient had died, the doctor came.
   The doctor came after the patient died. (×)
5. (3) would have की जगह had का प्रयोग होगा। Read expalanation no.1.
6. (2) has taken की जगह had taken का प्रयोग होगा। चूँकि Principal clause past tense में है इसलिए subordinate clause भी Past Tense में होगा। यहाँ Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।
7. (2) strike की जगह strikes का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (1) had been की जगह has been का प्रयोग होगा। immemorial (adj.) का अर्थ 'स्मरण से बाहर', अतिप्राचीन (beyond memory, very old) होता है।
9. (2) has की जगह had का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (3) would take की जगह would have taken का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (3) was की जगह had been का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (1) I am suffering की जगह I have been suffering का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (2) has की जगह had का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (2) has flown की जगह has flowed का प्रयोग होगा। fly का अर्थ उड़ना होता है तथा इसका past participle form – flown होता है। जबकि flow का अर्थ 'बहना' होता है तथा इसका past participle form—flowed होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के लिए has flowed उपयुक्त है।
15. (2) rise की जगह raise का प्रयोग होगा। rise का अर्थ 'क्षितिज से ऊपर आ जाना', उठ बैठना, खड़ा हो जाना, पुनः जीवित होना, उन्नति करना, ऊपर की ओर जाना, सतह तक आना होता है जबकि raise का अर्थ खड़ा करना, बढ़ाना, निर्माण करना, सीधा खड़ा करना, उठाना, दिखलाई देना, उत्पन्न करना, उगाना, एकत्र करना, संचय करना होता है।
16. (3) what is her name की जगह what her name was का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (3) had lasted की जगह lasted का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (2) I interested की जगह I had been interested का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (4) given sentence correct है।
20. (1) the train is supposed की जगह the train was supposed का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (3) and looking for a job की जगह and had been looking for a job का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (2) If I am ill की जगह If I was ill का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (2) had been की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (3) died की जगह had died का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (2) will ask की जगह ask का प्रयोग होगा। conditional sentence में if clause के साथ simple present tense का प्रयोग होता है।

Q. 17.

1. (1) I dig in the garden की जगह I was digging in the garden का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (4) and played cards की जगह and were playing cards का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (4) She is going to the office की जगह She goes to the office का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (4) was not knowing की जगह knew का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) have been की जगह had been का प्रयोग होगा। principal clause Past Tense में है इसलिए subordinate clause भी Past Tense में होगा।
6. (5) given sentence correct है।
7. (1) Who is living की जगह who has been living का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (1) He hoped की जगह he had hoped का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (4) has broken की जगह had broken का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (3) worked की जगह has been working का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (2) Is running की जगह has been running का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (1) Had he follow की जगह had he Followed का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (3) he admits it की जगह he admitted it का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (3) if he would not have की जगह if he had not का प्रयोग होगा। एक ही sentence में wouldn't have दो बार प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता है। यदि sentence के एक part में would का प्रयोग हो तो दूसरे part में had का प्रयोग होता है।
15. (3) May की जगह might का प्रयोग होगा। Principal clause का verb– appealed Past Tense में है इसलिए Subordinate clause का verb– may भी Past Tense में होगा।
16. (3) I will have की जगह I would have का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (2) arrived की जगह arrive का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि did के बाद हमेशा $M.V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है।
18. (2) She was found hanging की जगह She was found hanged का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
19. (3) I would die की जगह I would have died का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (1) My friend did not see me की जगह My friend had not seen me का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (1) Why you don't told him की जगह why don't tell him का प्रयोग होगा। don't के बाद $M.V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है। इसलिए यहाँ tell का प्रयोग होगा न कि told का।
22. (4) and has fired me की जगह and fired me का प्रयोग होगा। Given sentence के Principal clause में प्रयुक्त verb– was extremely annoyed– Past Tense में है इसलिए subordinate clause के भाग (4) में Past Tense का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (1) He obtained good marks की जगह He had obtained good marks का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (4) and report the matter की जगह and had reported the matter का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (2) came on television की जगह comes on television का प्रयोग होगा।

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 11 Narration

Narration शब्द का शाब्दिक अर्थ 'कथन' होता है। इस शब्द का निर्माण Narrate शब्द से हुआ है। Narrate शब्द का शाब्दिक अर्थ to say / to state (कहना) होता है। Narration का समानार्थक शब्द—assertion / statement / declaration etc. होता है।

Narration
- Direct Speech
- Indirect Speech

**1. Direct Speech :** जब कोई Audience *(ऑडियंस—श्रोता)* किसी speaker *(स्पीकर–वक्ता)* के statement *(कथन)* को speaker *(स्पीकर–वक्ता)* के शब्दों या भाषा में express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करता है, तो वह Direct Speech कहलाता है। इस speech में speaker *(स्पीकर–वक्ता)* के statement *(स्टेटमेंट–कथन)* को Inverted commas (" ") के भीतर रखा जाता है। जैसे—

1. Sweta said, "I am busy".
2. Veena said to me, "I love you very much."

दिये गए उदाहरण में Sweta और Veena का statement क्रमशः "I am busy", "I love you very much" है, जो Inverted commas (" ") से घिरे हुए हैं। अतः दिये गए वाक्य Direct speech में हैं।

**2. Indirect speech :** जब कोई Audience *(ऑडियंस–श्रोता)* किसी speaker *(स्पीकर–वक्ता)* के statement *(स्टेटमेंट–कथन)* को अपने शब्दों या भाषा में express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करता है, तो वह Indirect speech कहलाता है। इस speech में inverted commas (" ") को हटा दिया जाता है। जैसे—

1. Sweta said that she was busy.
2. Veena told me that she loved me very much.

दिये गए उदाहरण में Sweta और Veena के statement को Inverted commas (" ") के भीतर में नहीं रखा गया है, श्रोता के नाते हमने Sweta और Veena के statement को अपने शब्दों या भाषा में अभिव्यक्त किया है, जो Indirect speech में हैं।

Direct speech के दो भाग होते हैं। जैसे—

| He said, | "I am hungry." |
|---|---|
| Reporting speech or, Introducing speech. | Reported speech |

**1. Reporting speech :** Direct speech का वह भाग जो Inverted commas (" ... ") के बाहर रहता है, Reporting speech कहलाता है। Reporting speech में प्रयुक्त verb को Reporting verb कहते हैं तथा प्रयुक्त subject और object को क्रमशः Reporter, the object of Reporting verb कहा जाता है। जैसे—

| Mohan | said to | Sohan, | "I help you." |
|---|---|---|---|
| Reporter | Reporting verb | The object of Reporting verb | Reported speech |

Reporter को दूसरे शब्दों में The subject of Reporting verb कहा जाता है।

**2. Reported speech :** Direct speech का वह भाग जो Inverted commas (" ") के भीतर रहता है, Reported speech कहलाता है। Reported speech के verb को Verb of the Reported speech कहते हैं।

**विशेष बातें :** Reporting verb का प्रयोग sentence के प्रारंभ में, बीच में या अंत में हो सकता है। जैसे—

He said, "I write a letter". (R.V. sentence के प्रारंभ में)
"Let us go for a walk, "He said. (R.V. sentence के अंत में)
"Mohan is always ready to help you", she said to me, "Because you are my neighbour". (R.V. sentence के बीच में)

Direct speech से Indirect speech में बदलने के लिए यह जानना आवश्यक है कि Inverted commas के भीतर किस प्रकार के sentence का प्रयोग किया गया है। Inverted commas के भीतर के sentence को पहचाने बिना Indirect speech में बदलना असंभव है। अतः sentence के प्रकार को जानना आवश्यक है।

*अर्थ के दृष्टिकोण से sentence के पाँच भेद होते हैं।*

1. Assertive sentence (Declarative / statement)—*(कथनात्मक वाक्य/स्वीकारात्मक या अस्वीकारात्मक वाक्य)*
2. Interrogative sentence (question)—*(प्रश्नबोधक वाक्य)*
3. Imperative sentence (command)—*(आज्ञासूचक वाक्य)*
4. Optative sentence—*(इच्छाबोधक वाक्य)*
5. Exclamatory sentence—*(विस्मयादिबोधक वाक्य)*

## 1. Assertive Sentence

*The sentence which expresses yes or no sense.*

वह sentence जिससे हाँ या नहीं का बोध होता हो Assertive sentence कहलाता है। जैसे—

He is a student.
He writes a letter } yes–sense

She was not a nurse.
I did not go there. } no–sense

**(a) Affirmative sentence :** *The sentence which expresses yes sense.*

वह sentence जिससे हाँ या स्वीकृति का बोध होता है, Affirmative sentence कहलाता है। जैसे—

You are a good student.
She loves you.

**(b) Negative sentence :** *The sentence which expresses no sense.*

वह sentence जिससे नहीं या अस्वीकृति का बोध होता है negative sentence कहलाता है। जैसे—

She is not a good girl.
You do not go there.

**Note :** Assertive sentence के अंत में full stop (.) का प्रयोग होता है।

## 2. Interrogative Sentence

*The sentence which is used to ask a question.*

वह sentence जिससे प्रश्न पूछा जाता है Interrogative sentence कहलाता है। जैसे—

Are you naughty ?
Do you read a novel ? } yes-no question

How are you ?
What is your father's name ? } wh-question

**(a) Yes–no question :** Auxiliary verbs जैसे—is, are, am, was, were, has, have, had, do, does, did, shall, will, can, could, may, might, should, would ... etc. से स्टार्ट होने वाले question को yes–no question कहते हैं। ऐसे प्रश्नों का जवाब हाँ या ना में मिलता है। शब्दों या भाषा में नहीं। जैसे—

Q. Are you tall ?
A. Yes, I am tall.
A. No, I am not tall.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**(b) Wh-question :** Wh-words or Interrogative words से—what, when, where, how, why, who – etc. से स्टार्ट होने वाले questions को wh-questions कहते हैं। ऐसे प्रश्नों का जवाब शब्दों या भाषा में निकला है, हाँ या ना में नहीं। जैसे—

Q. What is your name ?
A. My name is Mr. A. K. Thakur.
Q. How many days are there in a week ?
A. There are seven days in a week.

**Note :** Interrogative sentence के अंत में question mark (?) लगा रहता है।

## 3. Imperative Sentence

*The sentence which expresses order, advice, request, command etc.*

वह sentence जिससे आज्ञा, सलाह, प्रार्थना, आदि का बोध होता है, Imperative sentence कहलाता है। इस वाक्य में subject 'you' हमेशा छिपा रहता है। जैसे—

Bring a glass of water.
Stand up.
Sit down.
Help the poor.
} Affirmative imperative sentence

Don't bring a glass of water.
Don't stand up.
Don't sit down.
Don't help the poor.
} Negative imperative sentence

## 4. Optative Sentence

*The sentence which expresses wish or desire.*

वह sentence जिससे इच्छा का बोध होता है, optative sentence कहलाता है। जैसे—

May you live long !
May God bless you !
May God save the king !

**Note :** (i) सामान्यतः optative sentence 'May' से स्टार्ट होते हैं। इनके अंत में exclamation marks (!) लगा रहता है।

(ii) कभी-कभी May का प्रयोग नहीं रहता है। अर्थात् 'May' understood रहता है।

## 5. Exclamatory Sentence

*The Sentence which expresses some sudden feelings of mind as*—Joy, sorrow, surprise, suspicion, hate, applause, wonder ..... etc.

वह sentence जिससे मानसिक भावनाओं जैसे—सुख, दुःख, आश्चर्य, संदेह, घृणा, प्रशंसा, आशा आदि का बोध होता है, exclamatory sentence कहलाता है। इसके अंत में exclamation marks (!) लगा रहता है। जैसे—

He said, "Alas ! I am ruined."
The players said, "Hurrah ! the cup is ours."
He said, "What a nice film it is !"
He said, "What a horrible song !"

उपरोक्त sentence के भेदों को अब आप पहचान गए होंगे यह मुझे पूर्ण विश्वास है।

अंग्रेजी में *Direct speech से Indirect speech में बदलने के मुख्यतः* ये नियम हैं।

**1. General rules** *(साधारण नियम)* : ऐसे rules (नियम) जो सभी तरह के वाक्यों में लागू होते हैं general rules कहलाते हैं।

General rules को तीन भागों में बाँटा जा सकता है—
1. Change of persons
2. Change of tenses
3. Change of other parts of speech

### 1. Change of Persons

Direct speech से Indirect speech में बदलते समय Inverted commas (" ") के भीतर जितने भी Persons (first, second and third person) रहते हैं, ये SON के क्रमानुसार बदल जाते हैं।

S O N = REPORTING VERB
1 2 3 = REPORTED SPEECH

उपरोक्त सूत्र को SON-formula भी कहा जाता है।

**ध्यान दें :** अर्थ—

| SON | Persons |
|---|---|
| S = Reporting verb का subject | 1 = first person |
| O = Reporting verb का object | 2 = second person |
| N = No change | 3 = third person |

**Rule (1) :** यदि Reported speech का subject first person (I/we) का हो, तो वह Reporting verb के subject के number, person तथा case के मुताबिक बदल जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "I am ready." *Direct*
He told me that he was ready. *Indirect*

**Rule (2) :** यदि Reported speech का subject second person (you) का हो, तो वह Reporting verb के object के Number person तथा case के मुताबिक बदल जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "You are late." *Direct*
O ← 2
He told me that I was late. *Indirect*

**Note :** (i) यदि Reported speech का subject second person का हो तथा Reporting verb का object नहीं दिया हुआ हो, तो Reported speech केsecond person के subject को Indirect speech में first or third person के subject में अर्थानुसार बदल दिया जाता है, ताकि *Direct* speech का अर्थ Indirect speech में सुस्पष्ट हो जाय। जैसे—

Sweta said, "you teach my sister." *Direct*
Sweta said that I/he taught her sister. *Indirect*

इस case में Indirect speech में Reporting verb के बाद first or third person में से किसी object का प्रयोग स्वेच्छानुसार कर सकते हैं, जिस person में आप second person के subject को बदलना चाहते हैं।

ध्यान रखने की बात यह है *Direct* speech का अर्थ Indirect speech में सरलता से स्पष्ट हो जाय। जैसे—

Sweta told him that he taught her sister. *Indirect*
Sweta told me that I taught her sister. *Indirect*

(ii) यदि Reported speech का subject second person का हो, Reporting verb का object नहीं दिया हुआ हो, तथा Reporting verb का subject first person का हो तो Reported speech के second person के subject को Indirect speech में Third person के Subject में बदलना चाहिए।

अन्य forms (objective or possessive) में भी इसी प्रकार परिवर्तन होता है। जैसे—

I said, "You are laborious". *Direct*
I told him that he was laborious. *Indirect*
I told her that she was laborious. *Indirect*

**Rule (3) :** यदि Reported speech का subject third person का हो, तो Indirect speech में इसमें कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे—

You said, "She wrote a letter.". *Direct*
You said that she had written a letter. *Indirect*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



You said to me, "She is a beautiful girl. *Direct*
You told me that she was a beautiful girl. *Indirect*

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Reported speech के subject के रूप में third person, subject—she का प्रयोग किया गया है, जो Indirect speech में नहीं बदला है, अर्थात् ज्यों का त्यों है।

ध्यान दें : यदि Reported speech में subject के रूप में we का प्रयोग मानव-जाति के लिए हो, तो इस we को Indirect speech में नहीं बदला जाता है। दूसरे शब्दों में यों समझें कि universal truth में we का प्रयोग हो, तो इस we को Indirect speech में नहीं बदला जाता है। जैसे—

They said, "We can not live without water." *Direct*
They said that we can not live without water. *Indirect*
He said to me. "We are mortal". *Direct*
He told me that we are mortal. *Indirect*
They said, "We are social animals." *Direct*
They said that we are social animals. *Indirect*

Rule (4) : यदि कोई मैगज़ीन (magazine), समाचार पत्र (newspaper) आदि के सम्पादक (editor) अपने लिए we, us or our का प्रयोग करें तो इसे Indirect speech में it, it or its में case के मुताबिक बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

The Times of India says, "Our office will remain closed on Monday next. *Direct*
The Times of India says that its office will remain closed on Monday next. *Indirect*
The Hindustan says, "We shall issue a cartoon section in our saturday's paper." *Direct*
The Hindustan says that it will issue a cartoon section in its saturday's paper. *Indirect*
The Newyork Times says, "We are trying our best to keep you well informed." *Direct*
The Newyork Times says that it is trying its best to keep us well informed. *Indirect*

Rule (5) : Persons में परिवर्तन करते वक्त Number तथा case में परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। इस उलझन में फँसने से ज्यादा बेहतर है कि आप अग्रलिखित Table को स्मरण में रखें।

| Persons | Nom. case | Obj. case | Possessive case | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Possessive Adjective | Possessive Pronouns |
| First person | I | me | my | mine |
| | we | us | our | ours |
| Second person | you | you | your | yours |
| Third person | He | him | his | his |
| | She | her | her | hers |
| | it | it | its | x |
| | they | them | their | theirs |

जैसे—

Binay says to me, "I am your friend." *Direct*
Binay tells me that he is my friend. *Indirect*
My brother says to me, "I love you." *Direct*
My brother tells me that he loves me. *Indirect*
He said to me, "I help you." *Direct*
He told me that he helped me. *Indirect*

## 2. Change of Tenses

Rule (1) : यदि Reporting Verb Present या Future Tense में हो, तो Indirect speech में Reported speech के Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है, अर्थात् जिस Tense में Reported speech रहता है, उसी Tense का प्रयोग ज्यों का त्यों Indirect speech में होता है। जैसे—

Mohan says, "I shall go there." *Direct*
Present Tense Future Tense
Mohan says that he will go there. *Indirect*
Present Tense Future Tense
Rekha says, "I went". *Direct*
Present Tense Past Tense
Rekha says that she went. *Indirect*
Present Tense Past Tense
He will say to me, "I am your neighbour". *Direct*
Future Tense Present Tense
He will tell me that he is my neighbour. *Indirect*
Future Tense Present Tense
She will say to me. "I am ready to help you". *Direct*
Future Tense Present Tense
She will tell me that she is ready to help me. *Indirect*
Future Tense Present Tense
Mukesh says to Binay, "I shall help you if you help me. *Direct*
Present Tense Future Tense
Mukesh tells Binay that he will help him if he helps him *Indirect*
Present Tense Future Tense

Rule (2) : यदि Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported speech Present Tense में हो, तो Indirect speech में Reported speech का Tense इस प्रकार बदल दिया जाता है।

(a) Reported speech, Simple Present Tense में हो, तो इसे Indirect speech में Simple Past Tense में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "I write a letter." *Direct*
He told me that he wrote a letter. *Indirect*

(b) Reported speech Present Continuous Tense में हो तो वह Indirect speech में Past Continuous Tense में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

He said to Sneha, "I am doing my work." *Direct*
He told Sneha that he was doing his work. *Indirect*

(c) Reported speech Present Perfect Tense में हो, तो वह Indirect speech में Past Perfect Tense में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "They have never helped me." *Direct*
He told me that they had never helped him. *Indirect*

(d) Reported speech Present Perfect Continuous Tense में हो, तो वह Indirect speech में Past Perfect Continuous Tense में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

Ajit said to her, "I have been teaching your lover for years *Direct*

Ajit told her that he had been teaching her lover for years *Indirect*

Rule (3) : यदि Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported speech Future Tense में हो, तो वह Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदल दिया जाता है।

| Direct speech | Indirect speech | Direct speech | Indirect speech |
|---|---|---|---|
| shall | should | shall have | should have |
| will | would | will have | would have |
| shall be | should be | shall have been | should have been |
| will be | would be | will have been | would have been |

जैसे—

He said to me, "I shall write a letter." *Direct*
He told me that he would write a letter. *Indirect*
He said to me, "I shall be writing a letter" *Direct*
He told me that he would be writing a letter. *Indirect*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He said to me, "I shall have written a letter." *Direct*
He told me that he would have written a letter. *Indirect*

He said to me, "I shall have been writing a letter. *Direct*
He told me that he would have been writing a letter. *Indirect*

**Rule (4)** : यदि Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported speech में subject के बाद can, may, is, are, am, has, have, was, were, Has/Have to + $V^1$, Had to + $V^1$ का प्रयोग हो, तो Indirect speech में ये past form में क्रमशः could, might, was, were, was, had, had, had been, had been, Had to + $V^1$, Had had to + $V^1$ में बदल दिये जाते हैं। जैसे—

Ashok said to Raman, "You can speak English." *Direct*
Ashok told Raman that he could speak English. *Indirect*

He said to you, "You may go out." *Direct*
He told you that you might go out. *Indirect*

Sweta said to Anshu, "I am a good girl." *Direct*
Sweta told Anshu that she was a good girl. *Indirect*

Meena said to Sulekha, "You are my best classmate." *Direct*
Meena told Sulekha that she was her best classmate. *Indirect*

I said to her, "He is a good player." *Direct*
I told her that he was a good player. *Indirect*

She said to me, "I have no time for you." *Direct*
She told me that she had no time for me. *Indirect*

I said to Mohan. "He has a pen." *Direct*
I told Mohan that he had a pen. *Indirect*

Rekha said to Madan. "I was going to you." *Direct*
Rekha told Madan that she had been going to him. *Indirect*

He said, "You were absent in the class." *Direct*
He told me that I had been absent in the class. *Indirect*

She said to me, "You have to do this work." *Direct*
She told me that I had to do that work. *Indirect*

You said to him, "She has to write a letter to her husband." *Direct*
You told him that she had to write a letter to her husband. *Indirect*

He said, "I had to do the work." *Direct*
He said that he had had to do the work. *Indirect*

**Rule (5)** : यदि Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported speech में subject के बाद could, should, would, might का प्रयोग हो तो Indirect speech में could, should, would, might को ज्यों का त्यों लिखा जाता है। जैसे—

She said to me, "I could solve the problem." *Direct*
She told me that she could solve the problem. *Indirect*

Sulekha said to Binod, "You would help me." *Direct*
Sulekha told Binod that he would help her. *Indirect*

The teacher said to the students, "You should help the poor. *Direct*
The teacher told the students that they should help the poor. *Indirect*

They said, "it might rain yesterday." *Direct*
They said that it might rain the previous day. *Indirect*

**Rule (6)** : यदि Reporting Verb तथा Reported speech दोनों में Past Tense में हो तो (a) Indirect speech में Reported speech में Simple Past Tense, Past Perfect Tense में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

He said, "I went to Patna yesterday." *Direct*
He said that he had gone to Patna the day before. *Indirect*

The teacher said, "He came late". *Direct*
The teacher said that he had come late. *Indirect*

(b) Indirect speech में Reported speech का Past Continuous Tense, Past Perfect Continuous Tense में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

Dilip said, "The girl was dancing". *Direct*
Dilip said that the girl had been dancing. *Indirect*

Tiwari said, "Mr. Mishra was teaching the boys." *Direct*
Tiwari said that Mr. Mishra had been teaching the boys. *Indirect*

He said to me, "You were reading the Ramayana." *Direct*
He told me that I had been reading the Ramayana. *Indirect*

She said, "My lover was helping the poor. *Direct*
She said that her lover had been helping the poor. *Indirect*

(c) Indirect speech में Reported speech के Past Perfect Tense तथा Past Perfect Continuous Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। अर्थात् ज्यों का त्यों रह जाता है। जैसे—

Mr. Pandey said to me, "I had finished the work." *Direct*
Mr. Pandey told me that he had finished the work. *Indirect*

Mr. Prasad said to Mr. Thakur, "You had taught the students." *Direct*
Mr. Prasad told Mr. Thakur that he had taught the students. *Indirect*

He said, " I had been waiting for you for two days." *Direct*
He told me that he had been waiting for me for two days. *Indirect*

Sudhir said to me, "You had been writing a letter for two hours." *Direct*
Sudhir told me that I had been writing a letter for two hours. *Indirect*

### 3. Change of Other Parts of Speech

यदि Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो, तो Reported speech में प्रयुक्त nearest meaning expressing words (निकटता के अर्थ सूचक शब्दों) को distant meaning expressing words (दूरी के अर्थ सूचक शब्दों) में Indirect speech में बदल दिया जाता है।

| Direct speech | Indirect speech |
|---|---|
| This → | That |
| These → | Those |
| Here → | There |
| Now → | Then |
| Thus → | So |
| Hence → | Thence |
| To-day → | That day |
| To-night → | That night |
| This day → | That day |
| This night → | That night |
| Tomorrow → | The next day / The following day / On the morrow |
| Yesterday → | The previous day / The day before |
| The day before yesterday → | Two days before |
| The day after tomorrow → | In two days' time |
| Last week → | The previous week / The week before |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | |
|---|---|
| Last month → | The previous month / The month before |
| Last year → | The previous year / The year before |
| Last night → | The previous night / The night before |
| Last day → | The previous day / The day before |
| Next week → | The following week |
| Next month → | The following month |
| Next year → | The following year |
| Next night → | The following night |
| Next day → | The following day |
| Come → | Go |
| A year ago → | A year before |

**Note :** Reported speech में प्रयुक्त निकटता सूचक शब्दों से यह पता चले कि प्रयुक्त वस्तु/जगह/समय/परिस्थिति speaker (वक्ता) के साथ present में मौजूद है। ऐसी स्थिति में निकटता सूचक शब्दों को दूरी-सूचक शब्दों में नहीं बदला जाता है। जैसे—

Mohan said, "This is my book." *Direct*
Mohan said that this was his book. *Indirect*

This morning she said, "I will go out today." *Direct*
This morning she said that she would go out today. *Indirect*

## 2. Special Rules

वे rules (नियम) जो भिन्न-भिन्न प्रकार के sentences (वाक्यों) के लिए भिन्न-भिन्न होते हैं, special rules कहलाते हैं।

Reported speech में अर्थात् Inverted commas के भीतर Assertive, Interrogative, Imperative, Optative, Exclamatory sentences का प्रयोग होने पर, क्रमशः कुछ खास-खास प्रकार के rules को follow किया जाता है। एक ही प्रकार के नियमों का पालन करने से Direct speech से Indirect speech में बदलने में गलती हो सकती है। इन्हीं भूल से बचने के लिए special rules का अध्ययन करना आवश्यक है।

### 1. Assertive Sentence

यदि Reported speech में अर्थात् Inverted commas के भीतर Assertive sentence का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में नीचे दिए गए नियम के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Rule (1) :** Reporting Verbs – say to, says to, said to को क्रमशः tell, tells, told में बदल दिया जाता है। सिर्फ say, says, said को tell, tells, told में नहीं बदला जाता है।

**Note :** (i) tell, tells, told, Transitive Verbs हैं, इसलिए इनके बाद Object का प्रयोग अवश्य करना चाहिए। To का प्रयोग इसके बाद नहीं होता है।

(ii) say, says, said के बाद Object के पहले to का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। जैसे—

He told that he was right. (×)
He said that he was right. (✓)
Abha said me that she liked that man. (×)
Abha said to me that she liked that man. (✓)
Abha told me that she liked that man. (✓)

**Rule (2) :** Inverted commas (" ") को हटाकर that का प्रयोग करते हैं।

**Rule (3) :** General rules को follow (पालन) करते हैं।

कुछ वाक्यों को देखें :

My friend says to him, "You are not a wise man." *Direct*
My friend tells him that he is not a wise man. *Indirect*
She says, "I shall write a letter." *Direct*
She says that she will write a letter. *Indirect*
Meena says to me, "Your brother is not present. *Direct*
Meena tells me that my brother is not present. *Indirect*
They say, "We are reading novels." *Direct*
They say that they are reading novels. *Indirect*
Veena will say to me, "I want to buy an item of gold." *Direct*
Veena will tell me that she wants to buy an item of gold. *Indirect*

Mr. Pandey said, "I can buy a car." *Direct*
Mr. Pandey said that he could buy a car. *Indirect*
Sudhir said to Kapil, "You went to the market yesterday." *Direct*
Sudhir told Kapil that he had gone to the market the day before. *Indirect*

Mohan said, "I have a headache." *Direct*
Mohan said that he had a headache. *Indirect*
He said, "I am playing cricket." *Direct*
He said that he was playing cricket. *Indirect*

**Exception :** यदि Reporting Verb Past Tense में हो तथा Reported speech में अर्थात् Inverted commas के भीतर habitual or universal truth *(चिरंतन सत्य)*, principle *(सिद्धांत)* तथा proverb *(लोकोक्ति)* का प्रयोग हो, तो इसके Tense में Indirect speech में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Mother said, "Honesty is the best policy." *Direct*
Mother said that honesty is the best policy. *Indirect*
Mother said that honesty was the best policy.

The Guru said, "Work is worship." *Direct*
The Guru said that work is worship. *Indirect*
The Guru said that work was worship.

He said, "The sun rises in the east." *Direct*
He said that the sun rises in the east. *Indirect*
He said that the sun rose in the east.

The teacher said, "Two and two makes four." *Direct*
The teacher said that two and two makes four. *Indirect*
The teacher said that two and two made four.

He remarked "A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools." *Direct*

He remarked that a bad carpenter quarrels with his tools. *Indirect*

He remarked that a bad carpenter quarrelled with his tools.

The teacher said to the students, "A little knowledge is a dangerous thing." *Direct*
The teacher told the students that a little knowledge is a dangerous thing. *Indirect*
The teacher told the students that a little knowledge was a dangerous thing.

My father said, "Labour never goes in vain." *Direct*
My father said that labour never goes in vain. *Indirect*
My father said that labour never went in vain.

He said, "Time and tide wait for no man." *Direct*
He said that time and tide wait for no man. *Indirect*
He said that time and tide waited for no man.

He said, "We are mortal." *Direct*
He said that we are mortal. *Indirect*
He said that we were mortal.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The teacher said, "All that glitters is not gold." *Direct*
The teacher said that all that glitters is not gold. *Indirect*
The teacher said that all that glitters was not gold. (×)

### Some Important facts of Assertive sentence

**Rule (1)** : Reported speech में must का प्रयोग हो तथा must से एक कर्तव्य निर्देशनी नियम सिद्धांत आदि का बोध हो, तो Indirect speech में must का प्रयोग ज्यों का त्यों होता है, अर्थात् इसमें कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।—

He said, "One must do one's duty." *Direct*
He said that one must do one's duty. *Indirect*
He said, "We must love our country." *Direct*
He said that we must love our country. *Indirect*
She said, "We must respect our elders." *Direct*
She said that we must respect our elders. *Indirect*
They said, "Students must respect their teachers." *Direct*
They said that students must respect their teachers. *Indirect*
He said, "We must obey our parents." *Direct*
He said that we must obey our parents. *Indirect*

**Rule (2)** : Reported speech में must का प्रयोग हो तथा must का समय present or future में हो, तो Indirect speech में इसको अर्थानुसार has to, have to, had to, will have to, would have to में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

She said, "I must go." *Direct*
She said that she had to go. *Indirect*
Priya said, "I must do this work." *Direct*
Priya said that she had to do that work. *Indirect.*
Varsha said, "I must go to Malasia next year." *Direct*
Varsha said that she would have to go to Malasia the following year. *Indirect*
My beloved says to me, "I must buy a car." *Direct*
My beloved tells me that she has to buy a car. *Indirect*
She says to her husband, "You must come back home in time." *Direct*
She tells her husband that he has to come back home in time. *Indirect*

**Rule (3)** : Reported speech में सम्बोधन के रूप में किसी Noun का प्रयोग हो, तो Indirect speech में उस Noun को Reporting Verb का Object बनाकर लिखना चाहिए। जैसे—

1. She said, "You are foolish, Mukesh." *Direct*
Step (1) : She said to Mukesh, "You are foolish." *Direct*
Step (2) : She told Mukesh that he was foolish. *Indirect*

2. Prabha said, "Munna, I want to help you." *Direct*
Step (1) : Prabha said to Munna, "I want to help you." *Direct*
Step (2) : Prabha told Munna that she wanted to help him. *Indirect*

3. Guriya said, "I love you very much, Nitesh." *Direct*
Step (1) : Guriya said to Nitesh, "I love you very much." *Direct*
Step (2) : Guriya told Nitesh that she loved him very much. *Indirect*

4. Anupam said, "Mr. Thakur, you are speaking the truth." *Direct*
Step (1) : Anupam said to Mr. Thakur, "You are speaking the truth." *Direct*
Step (2) : Anupam told Mr. Thakur that he was speaking the truth. *Indirect*

5. Samir said, "You are an idiot girl, Monika." *Direct*
Step (1) : Samir said to Monika, "You are an idiot girl." *Direct*
Step (2) : Samir told Monika that she was an idiot girl. *Indirect*

**Rule (4)** : यदि Reported speech में Terms of address (सम्बोधन के शब्दों/पदों) के रूप में ladies and gentlemen, Brave sons of motherland, My dear friends, future of the country, little sisters, idiots, hope of the future, आदि का प्रयोग हो, तो इसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

Pt. Nehru said to the people, "Friends, here I thank you all." *Direct*
Pt. Nehru addressed the people as friends and said that there he thanked them all. *Indirect*
Addressing the people as friends, Pt. Nehru said that there he thanked them all. *Indirect*
The leader, "Ladies and gentlemen, you are my hope." *Direct*
The leader addressed the people as ladies and gentlemen and said that they were his hope. *Indirect*
Addressing the people as ladies and gentlemen, the leader said that they were his hope. *Indirect*

**Note** : Indirect speech को *Addressing + Object + as + terms of address* से स्टार्ट करें। यह Indirect speech में बदलने का सबसे आसान तरीका है।

**Rule (5)** : यदि Reported speech में O, well, you see, okay आदि का प्रयोग हो, तो इसे Indirect speech में हटा देते हैं, क्योंकि इसे हटाने से वाक्य के अर्थ में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She said, "Well, Pankaj, you have done this work." *Direct*
She told Pankaj that he had done that work. *Indirect*

**Rule (6)** : यदि Reported speech में स्वागत (welcome) या विदाई (farewell) सूचक शब्दों, जैसे, Good morning, Good evening, Good night आदि का प्रयोग हो, तो Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Subject of Reporting Verb के बाद अर्थ के मुताबिक bid / bids / bade, wish / wishes / wished का प्रयोग करें।
Step (2) : इसके बाद Object of Reporting Verb का प्रयोग करें।
Step (3) : Object of Reporting Verb के बाद Good morning, Good night आदि शब्दों का प्रयोग करें।
Step (4) : इसके बाद and said that का प्रयोग करें।
Step (5) : General rules को follow करें। जैसे—

My classmate said to me, "Good morning, You have finished your home work. *Direct*
My classmate wished me good morning and said that I had finished my home work. *Indirect.*

**Rule (7)** : यदि Reported speech में एक से अधिक Assertive sentence का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में and or further added से जोड़ कर लिखना चाहिए। जैसे—

The emperor said, "My wife is beautiful and laborious, I will visit the Tajmahal." *Direct*
The emperor said that his wife was beautiful and laborious and he would visit the Tajmahal. *Indirect*

**Rule (8)** : Reporting Verb का प्रयोग sentence के last (अंत) में और बीच में हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में sentence के स्टार्टिंग (starting) या प्रारंभ में ही लिखा जाता है। जैसे—

"He has gone to the office," he said. *Direct*
(R.S. / R.V.)
He said that he had gone to the office. *Indirect*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



"You are a good student," the teacher said to me, "because you have won the first prize." *Direct*
The teacher told me that I was a good student because I had won the first prize. *Indirect*

"I shall write a letter tomorrow." said Vivek. *Direct*
Vivek said that he would write a letter the next day. *Indirect*

### 2. Interrogative Sentences or Questions

**1.** यदि Reported speech में अर्थात् Inverted commas के भीतर Yes-No questions का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है—

**Rule (1)** : Reporting Verbs—say/say to, says/says to, said/said to को sentence के अर्थ के अनुसार ask/demand/enquire, asks/demands/enquires, asked/demanded/enquired, want to know/wants to know/wanted to know में बदल दें।

**Rule (2)** : Inverted commas को हटाकर if or whether का प्रयोग करें। that, to, interrogative word का नहीं।

**Rule (3)** : Interrogative sentence अर्थात् *Auxiliary Verb + S + M.V + O + ?* को Assertive sentence अर्थात् *S + Auxiliary Verb + M.V + O + (.)* या *S + V + O + (.)* में बदल कर लिखें।

**Rule (4)** : General rules को follow करें।

**Note** : (i) demand/want to know के बाद Object के पहले of Preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) Reporting Verbs के बाद Object का प्रयोग होने पर Reporting Verbs को enquire/enquires/enquired में Tense के मुताबिक बदल कर of Preposition का प्रयोग किया जाता है। Object का प्रयोग नहीं होने पर, Reporting Verbs को Tense के मुताबिक enquire/enquires/enquired में बदल दिया जाता है।

(iii) Whether का प्रयोग कर प्रतियोगिता परीक्षा में प्रश्न दिए जाते हैं अतः whether का प्रयोग ही करें। जैसे—

He said to me, "Are you a student ? *Direct*
He asked me if/whether I was a student. *Indirect*
He enquired of me if/whether I was a student. *Indirect*

She said to Raman, "Have you a mobile set ?" *Direct*
She asked Raman if/whether he had a mobile set. *Indirect*
She enquired of Raman if/whether he had a mobile set. *Indirect*

He said, "Were you absent there ?" *Direct*
He asked if/whether he had been absent there. *Indirect*
He enquired if/whether he had been absent there. *Indirect*

Meena said to Raman, "Do you love me ?" *Direct*
Meena asked Raman if/whether he loved her. *Indirect*
Meena enquired of Raman if/whether he loved her. *Indirect*

Shobhana said to me, "Did you teach my sister ?" *Direct*
Shobhana asked me if/whether I had taught her sister.
Shobhana enquired of me if/whether I had taught her sister. *Indirect*

He said to us, "Are you going away today ?" *Direct*
He asked us if/whether we were going away that day. *Indirect*
He enquired of us if/whether we were going away that day. *Indirect*

Sneha said to me, "Do you play cricket ?" *Direct*
Sneha asked me if/whether I played cricket. *Indirect*
Sneha enquired of me if/whether I played cricket. *Indirect*

Ajit said to Rekha, "Do you know the way ?" *Direct*
Ajit asked Rekha if/whether she knew the way. *Indirect*
Ajit enquired of Rekha if/whether she knew the way. *Indirect*

Mr. Thakur said to Mr. Pandey, " Did you write to him such an insulting letter ?" *Direct*
Mr. Thakur asked Mr. Pandey if/whether he had written to him such an insulting letter. *Indirect*
Mr. Thakur enquired of Mr. Pandey if/whether he had written to him such an insulting letter. *Indirect*

Rajani said to me, "Can you meet me tomorrow at Patna Junction ?" *Direct*
Rajani asked me if/whether I could meet her the next day at Patna Junction. *Indirect*
Rajani enquired of me if/whether I could meet her the next day at Patna Junction. *Indirect*

**2.** यदि Reported speech में अर्थात् Inverted commas के बीच wh-questions का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

**Rule (1)** : Reporting Verbs को sentence के अर्थ तथा Tense के मुताबिक ask/asks/asked, enquire/enquires/enquired, demand/demands/demanded, want to know/wants to know/wanted to know में बदल दें।

**Rule (2)** : Inverted commas को हटा कर if/whether/that/to का प्रयोग नहीं करें। जिस Interrogative word का प्रयोग हो उसे ज्यों का त्यों प्रयोग करें।

**Rule (3)** : Interrogative sentence अर्थात *Interrogative word + Auxiliary Verb + S + M.V. + O + (?)* या *I.W + A.V. + S + Adj. + (?)* को Assertive sentence अर्थात् *Interrogative word + S + A.V. + M.V + O + ? (.)* या *I.W. + S + A.V. + Adj. + (.)* में बदल कर लिखें।

**Rule (4)** : General rules को follow करें।

**Note** : (i) enquired/demanded/wanted to know के बाद Preposition का प्रयोग Object के मौजूद रहने पर होता है।

(ii) Asked के बाद प्रयुक्त Object के पहले सामान्यतः of का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I said to my wife, "What are you doing today ?" *Direct*
I asked my wife what she was doing that day. *Indirect*
I enquired of my wife what she was doing that day. *Indirect*

★ I enquired of my wife if/whether/that what she was doing that day.
★ I asked of my wife what she was doing that day.

उपरोक्त तारांकित (★) sentences गलत हैं, क्योंकि इन वाक्यों में if/whether/that, of का प्रयोग किया गया है। Interrogative words के पहले if/whether/that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। साथ ही asked के बाद प्रयुक्त Object के पहले of का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। कभी-कभी as to का भी Interrogative words के पहले करके प्रश्न दिए जाते हैं, जो गलत होते हैं।

**ध्यान दें :**

He said to me, "When will you return ?" *Direct*
He asked me as to when I would return. (×) *Indirect*
He asked me that when I would return. (×) *Indirect*
He asked me when I would return. (✓) *Indirect*

The counsellor said to me, "Whom do you want to meet in the office ?" *Direct*
The counsellor asked me whom I wanted to meet in the office. *Indirect*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The counsellor asked me whom did I want to meet in the office. (×)

The counsellor asked me whom do I want to meet in the office. (×)

उपरोक्त तारांकित (★) वाक्यों में whom did I want तथा whom do I want का प्रयोग किया गया है, जो बताए गए नियम को follow नहीं करते हैं। whom did I want की जगह whom I wanted तथा whom do I want की जगह whom I want का प्रयोग होगा।

The teacher said to me, "How old are you ?" *Direct*
The teacher asked me how old I was. *Indirect*
The teacher asked me that how old I was. (×)
The teacher asked me how old I am. (×)

He said to Binay, "Why were you absent yesterday ?" *Direct*
He asked Binay why he had been absent the previous day. *Indirect*
He asked Binay why he was absent the previous day. (×)

He said to me, "What is your name ?" *Direct*
He asked me what my name was. *Indirect*
He asked me what your name was. (×)
He asked me what my name is. (×)

Vijay said to me, "What do you want ?" *Direct*
Vijay asked me what I wanted. *Indirect*
Vijay asked me what did I wanted. (×)
Vijay asked me what I want. (×)

Sushama said to me, "Who are you ?" *Direct*
Sushama asked me who I was. *Indirect*
Sushama asked me that who I was. (×)

She said, "Who went there ?" *Direct*
She asked who had gone there. *Indirect*

I asked, "What happened ?" *Direct*
I asked what had happened. *Indirect*

I said to her, "Which class do you read in ?" *Direct*
I asked her which class she read (रेड) in. *Indirect*

I said to him, "Why did you insult my brother ?" *Direct*
I demanded of him why he had insulted my brother. *Indirect*

Bhavna said to me, "why did you give up your study ?" *Direct*
Bhavna asked me why I had given up my study. *Indirect*

Sulekha said to Binod, "How many pens have you ?" *Direct*
Sulekha asked Binod how many pens he had. *Indirect*

The inspector said to the headmaster, "How many teachers are there in your school ?" *Direct*
The inspector asked the headmaster how many teachers there were in his school. *Indirect*

Anshu said to her mother, "How are you ?" *Direct*
Anshu asked her mother how she was. *Indirect*

**Negative Interrogative Sentence**

She said to me, "Did you not write me a letter ?" *Direct*
She asked me if / whether I had not written her a letter. *Indirect*

He said to me, "How do you not know me ?" *Direct*
He asked me how I did not know him. *Indirect*

The prince said to the princess, "Why did you not come at home ?" *Direct*
The prince asked the princess why she had not come at home. *Indirect*

Anupam said to her husband, "Why do you not bring a watch for me ?" *Direct*
Anupam asked her husband why he did not bring a watch for her. *Indirect*

She said to her classmate, "Didn't you go to college yesterday ?" *Direct*
She asked her classmate if / whether he / she had not gone to college the day before. *Indirect*

3. यदि Reported speech में *Assertive sentence + ( , ) + question tag* का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में बदलते समय question tag को छोड़ देना चाहिए तथा Inverted commas को हटा कर if / whether का प्रयोग करना चाहिए तथा general rules को follow करना चाहिए। जैसे—

She said to me, "You know me, don't you ?" *Direct*
She asked me if I knew her. *Indirect*

Prabha said to me, "You will help me, won't you" ? *Direct*
Prabha asked me if I would help her. *Indirect*

Mukesh said to me, "You like sweets, don't you ?" *Direct*
Mukesh asked me if I liked sweets. *Indirect*

Ashok said to Sanjay, "You didn't see her last night, did you ?" *Direct*
Ashok asked Sanjay if he had not seen her the previous night. *Indirect*

He said to me, "You are poor, aren't you ?" *Direct*
He asked me if I was poor. *Indirect*

ऐसे sentences को Interrogative समझा जाता है, इसलिए Inverted commas को हटा कर if / whether का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

4. यदि किसी question *(प्रश्न)* का Answer *(उत्तर)* Yes / No में दिया गया हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "Did you write a letter ?" I said, "Yes". *Direct*
He asked me if I had written a letter. I replied in the affirmative / I said that I had. *Indirect*

She said to me, "Can you do this work ?" I said, "No". *Direct*
She asked me if I could do that work. I replied in the negative / I said that I couldn't. *Indirect*

Mohan asked, "Do you feel thirsty ?" I said, "Yes, I do." *Direct*
Mohan asked if I felt thirsty. I replied in the affirmative / I said that I felt. or, I replied that I felt thirsty. *Indirect*

5. सामान्यतः Reporting Verb के Past Tense में तथा Reported speech में shall / will का प्रयोग होने पर shall / will को क्रमशः should / would में बदल दिया जाता है। लेकिन I should / we should के बदले I would / we would के प्रयोग को बेहतर माना जाता है। जैसे—

Monika said to me, "Will you love me ?"
Monika asked me if I would love her.

He said to me, "shall I pass the examination ?"
He asked me if he would pass the examination.

6. सामान्यतः Reporting Verb Past Tense में तथा Reported speech में shall I ? तथा shall we ? का प्रयोग हो तथा इससे request *(प्रार्थना)* के भाव का बोध हो, तो shall को should में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

My younger brother said to me, "Shall I go to the cinema?" (Request). *Direct*
My younger brother asked me if he should go to the cinema. *Indirect*

She told me, "Shall I switch on T.V. ? (Request) *Direct*
She asked me if she should switch on T.V. *Indirect*

**Note** : Reported speech में प्रयुक्त Interrogative sentence को Indirect speech में Assertive sentence में इस प्रकार बदल दिया जाता है :

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Interrogative | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. Do you go ? | You go. |
| 2. Does he read ? | He reads. |
| 3. Did she go ? | She went. |
| 4. Can he not speak ? | He cannot speak. |
| 5. Have you a book ? | You have a book. |
| 6. Where do you live ? | Where you live. |
| 7. How shall we go ? | How we shall go. |
| 8. When did he come ? | When he came. |
| 9. Who are you ? | Who you are. |
| 10. Who wrote the Ramayan ? | Who the Ramayan wrote. |

### 3. Imperative Sentences

(Command—order / advise / request)

सामान्यतः Imperative sentence में order, command, request, pray, suggest / advise आदि का बोध होता है। जैसे—Bring a glass of water.

**1.** यदि Reported speech में अर्थात् Inverted commas के भीतर Imperative sentence का प्रयोग हो तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

**Rule (1)** : Reporting Verbs—say, says, said को अर्थ के अनुसार क्रमशः order / orders / ordered; request / requests / requested; ask / asks / asked; beg / begs / begged; tell / tells / told; command / commands / commanded; warn / warns / warned; advise / advises / advised; suggest / suggests / suggested; implore / implores / implored; entreat / entreats / entreated; threaten / threatens / threatened; urge / urges / urged; persuade / persuades / persuaded आदि में बदल दें।

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. beg | भीख माँगना |
| 2. order | आज्ञा देना |
| 3. request | प्रार्थना करना/विनती करना |
| 4. warn | चेतावनी देना |
| 5. implore | विनती/प्रार्थना करना |
| 6. entreat | प्रार्थना करना/किसी वस्तु की माँग करना |
| 7. threaten | धमकी देना/भय दिखाना |
| 8. urge | विनती करना |
| 9. persuade | विश्वास दिलाना/फुसलाना |
| 10. command | आदेश देना/काबू रखना/अधिकार रखना |

**Rule (2)** : Inverted commas को हटाकर 'to' का प्रयोग करें। that / if / whether का नहीं।

**Rule (3)** : Inverted commas के भीतर सम्बोधन के रूप में किसी Noun का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Reporting Verb का Object बना दें।

**ध्यान दें** : Reporting Verb के बाद Object का प्रयोग रहे या नहीं रहे Indirect speech में Reporting Verb के बाद Object का प्रयोग अवश्य करें।

**Rule (4)** : Please, kindly, sir, madam को हटा दें।

**ध्यान दें** : (i) sir, madam के स्थान पर respectfully का प्रयोग Reporting Verb के बाद करें तथा sir, madam के बाद प्रयुक्त sentence के अर्थानुसार Reporting Verb को बदलें। sir / madam का प्रयोग Reported speech के last (अंत) में भी रह सकता है।

(ii) Reporting verb के बाद object का प्रयोग हो तो Sir, Madam के स्थान पर respectfully का प्रयोग object के बाद किया जाता है।

**Rule (5)** : जरूरत के मुताबिक general rules को follow करें। जैसे—

He said to Pankaj, "Sit down." Dir
He told Pankaj to sit down. Indir
The teacher said to the students, "Keep quiet." Dir
The teacher asked the students to keep quiet. Indir
The inspector said to him, "Call the witness." Dir
The inspector ordered him to call the witness. Indir
He said to me, "Please help me." Dir
He requested me to help him. Indir
The doctor said, "Walk in the morning." Dir
The doctor advised me to walk in the morning. Indir
My father said, "Binay, do as I say." Dir
My father asked Binay to do as he said. Indir
The teacher said to them, "Read at least eight hours a day." Dir
The teacher advised them to read at least eight hours a day. Indir
Dr. Tiwary said to my wife, "Take medicine in time." Dir
Dr. Tiwary advised my wife to take medicine in time. Indir
He said to me, "Have a cup of coffee." Dir
He told me to have a cup of coffee. Indir
The principal said to the peon, "Go away at once." Dir
The principal ordered the peon to go away at once. Indir
The student said to the director, "Sir, please grant me leave for five days." Dir
The student requested the director respectfully to grant him leave for five days. Indir
The captain said to the soldiers, "Lay down the gun." Dir
The captain commanded the soldiers to lay down the gun. Indir
★ She said, "Madam, I have a T.V. set." Dir
She said respectfully that she had a T.V. set. Indir
He said to the teacher, "Sir, kindly help me." Dir
He requested the teacher respectfully to help him. Indir
★ The third student said, "Is it the Tajmahal, Sir ?" Dir
The third student asked respectfully if it was the Tajmahal. Indir

### Negative Imperative Sentence

सामान्यतः Negative Imperative Sentence 'Don't' से शुरू होते हैं।

**2.** यदि Reported speech में Negative Imperative sentence का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

**Rule (1)** : Reporting Verbs—say, says, said को अर्थ के अनुसार ask / asks / asked, tell / tells / told आदि में बदल दें।

**Rule (2)** : Inverted commas को हटा कर not to का प्रयोग करें कि to not का। not to के बाद V¹ का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| Direct Speech | Indirect Speech |
|---|---|
| Do not make a noise. | Not to make a noise. |
| Don't go out. | Not to go out. |

**Rule (3)** : जरूरत के मुताबिक general rules को follow करें। जैसे—

He said to me, "Don't open the door." Dir
He asked me not to open the door. Indir
He asked me to not open the door.
He asked me to do not open the door.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He said to me, "Don't disturb me." *Direct*
He asked me not to disturb him. *Indirect*
He asked me to not disturb him. (×)
He asked me to do not disturb him. (×)

ध्यान दें : (1) Reporting Verb को forbid/forbids/forbade में आवश्यकतानुसार बदल कर और Inverted commas के बदले to का प्रयोग कर भी Indirect speech में बदला जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "Don't go out." *Direct*
He forbade me to go out. *Indirect*
He forbade me not to go out. (×)
He asked me not to go out. (✓)

The teacher said to the children, "Don't make a noise in the class." *Direct*
The teacher forbade the children to make a noise in the class. *Indirect*
The teacher forbade the children not to make a noise in the class. (×)
The teacher asked the children not to make a noise in the class. (✓)

"Don't spit in the classroom," he said to the children. *Direct*
He forbade the children to spit in the class room. *Indirect*
He forbade the children not to spit in the class room. (×)
He asked the children not to spit in the class room. (✓)

forbade के बाद not to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, क्योंकि forbade स्वतः negative meaning रखता है। इस प्रकार के sentences में asked/told के बाद Inverted commas के बदले not to का प्रयोग होता है।

3. यदि Reported speech में प्रयुक्त Imperative sentence निषेध सूचक हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

He said to his servant, "Stop working." *Direct*
He prohibited/prevented his servant from working. *Indirect*

The preacher said to the people, "Never tell a lie." *Direct*
The preacher prevented/prohibited the people from telling a lie. *Indirect*

**Note :** *Prohibit/prohibited, prevent/prevented + Object from + M.V[4] (V + ing)* का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

He said to him, "Do not sit idle". *Direct*
He prevented/prohibited him from sitting idle. *Indirect*
He forbade him to sit idle. (✓)
He asked him not to sit idle. (✓)

My father said to the children, "Don't go near the dog." *Direct*
My father prevented/prohibited the children from going near the dog. *Indirect*
My father forbade the children to go near the dog. (✓)
My father asked the children not to go near the dog. (✓)

उपर्युक्त examples (3) और (4) के सभी वाक्यों के अर्थ समान हैं। इस तरह भी Indirect speech में बदला जा सकता है।

4. यदि Imperative sentence 'Do' से स्टार्ट हो, तथा 'Do' का प्रयोग main Verb के पहले हो अर्थात् main Verb को emphasis (दबाव/जोर डालने) करने के लिए हो, तो Indirect speech में 'Do' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। Imperative sentence के सामान्य नियम का पालन (follow) कर Indirect speech में बदला जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "Do read the Gita." *Direct*
He asked me to read the Gita. *Indirect*

The S.P. said to the inspector, "Do watch the situation." *Direct*
The S.P. ordered the inspector to watch the situation. *Indirect*

She said to me, "Do have a cup of coffee." *Direct*
She requested me to have a cup of coffee. *Indirect*

**Note :** 'Do' का प्रयोग main Verb के रूप में हो, तो 'Do' को नहीं हटाया जाता है। जैसे—

She said to me, "Do this work at once". *Direct*
She asked me to do that work at once. *Indirect*

The teacher said to the boys." Do whatever you like." *Direct*
The teacher advised the boys to do whatever they liked. *Indirect*

Your father said to you, "Do your work in time." *Direct*
Your father asked you to do your work in time. *Indirect*

5. यदि 'Let' से स्टार्ट होने वाले Imperative sentence से प्रस्ताव (proposal) या सुझाव (suggestion) का बोध हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Reporting Verbs : say, says, said को क्रमशः propose/proposes/proposed; suggest/suggests/suggested में बदल कर लिखें।

**Note :** (i) Propose/suggest के बाद Object का प्रयोग करना हो, तो propose/suggest के बाद तथा object के पहले 'to' Preposition का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। अर्थात् *Propose + to + Object or suggest + to + Object* का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Suggested to me. (✓)
Proposed to them. (✓)

(ii) Propose/suggest के बाद Object का प्रयोग नहीं हो, तो इसके बाद M.V[4] (V + ing) का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Suggested going for a walk. (✓)
Proposed going for a walk. (✓)

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर that का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Let को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Objective Case के Pronouns 'us' को sentence के अर्थ/भाव के मुताबिक Nominative Case के Pronouns—we/they में बदल दें।

Step (5) : we/they के बाद should + V[1] का प्रयोग करें।

**Note :** we और they में फर्क—

(i) we का प्रयोग तब करना चाहिए जब Reporter स्वयं प्रस्तावित कार्य में सम्मिलित हो रहा हो।

(ii) they का प्रयोग तब करना चाहिए जब Reporter स्वयं प्रस्तावित कार्य में सम्मिलित नहीं हो रहा हो। we और they में यही फर्क है, लेकिन इसका प्रयोग बिना किसी अंतर का होता है।

(iii) सभी Objective Case के Pronouns को Nominative Case के Pronouns में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

Mohan said to his friends, "Let us go to the cinema." *Direct*
Mohan proposed/suggested to his friends that we/they should go to the cinema. *Indirect*

I said to the villagers, "Let us help the poor." *Direct*
I proposed/suggested to the villagers that we/they should help the poor. *Indirect*

The children said, "Let us play together." *Direct*
The children proposed/suggested that we/they should play together. *Indirect*

He said, "Let us work for the Nation." *Direct*
He proposed/suggested that we/they should work for the Nation. *Indirect*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He said, "Let's go for a walk." *Direct*
He suggested/proposed going for a walk. *Indirect*
or, He suggested/proposed that we/they should go for a walk. *Indirect*

ध्यान दें : (i) *Subject + propose/suggest + to + Object + that + Subject + should + $V^1$ + ...* का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) *Subject + propose/suggest + $M.V^4$ (V + ing) + other words* का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन *propose/suggest + to + $V^1$* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He proposed to me to go to school. (×)
He proposed to me that we should go to school. (✓)

6. यदि Let से स्टार्ट होने वाले imperative sentence से wish/desire *(इच्छा)* का बोध हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है—

Step (1) : Reporting Verbs को wish/wishes/wished में बदल दें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर 'that' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Let को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Let के बाद प्रयुक्त Objective Case के Pronouns को Nominative Case के Pronouns में change of persons के rules के मुताबिक बदल कर लिखें।

**Step (5)** : Nominative Case के Pronouns—I, she, he, it ... etc. के बाद should + $V^1$ का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

Vivek said, "Let me go out." *Direct*
Vivek wished that he should go out. *Indirect*
Veena said, "Let him be my husband. *Direct*
Veena wished that he should be her husband. *Indirect*
She said, "Let me live with him." *Direct*
She wished that she should live with him. *Indirect*
You said, "Let me do what I like." *Direct*
You wished that you should do what you liked. *Indirect*
The teacher said, "Let me help the students." *Direct*
The teacher wished that he should help the students. *Indirect*

7. यदि 'Let' से स्टार्ट *(प्रारंभ)* होने वाले Imperative sentence से allow/permit *(अनुमति)* का बोध हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है—

Step (1) : Reporting Verbs—say/says/said को sentence के अर्थ/भाव के मुताबिक order/orders/ordered; request/requests/requested; ask/asks/asked आदि में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas तथा let को हटा दें।

Step (3) : इसके बाद to allow का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : objective case के pronouns को nominative case के pronouns में change of persons के rules के मुताबिक बदल कर लिखें।

Step (5) : प्रयुक्त verb को Infinitive form अर्थात to + $V^1$ के रूप में लिखें। जैसे—

Binay said to his master, "Let me go home." *Direct*
Binay requested his master to allow him to go home. *Indirect*

The principal said to the peon, "Let the man come in." *Direct*
The principal ordered the peon to allow the man to come in. *Indirect*

ध्यान दें : Binay requested his master to let him to go home. *Indirect*
Binay requested his master that he should go home.
or, Binay requested his master that he might be allowed to go home. *Indirect*

**Note** : To allow की जगह to let का प्रयोग भी किया जा सकता है।

8. यदि Imperative sentence—*Let + there be/it be* से स्टार्ट हो तो इससे supposition *(कल्पना)* का बोध होता है। इसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Reporting Verb को suppose में बदल दें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर that का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Let को हटा दें।

Step (4) : It be की जगह to be का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

He said, "Let it be a square." *Direct*
He supposed that to be a square. *Indirect*
He said, "Let it be a rectangle." *Direct*
He supposed that to be a rectangle. *Indirect*

**Note** : Let के बाद it का प्रयोग हो तथा इससे joy *(हर्ष)* sorrow *(शोक)* approval *(अनुमति)* या indifference *(उदासीनता)* के भाव का बोध हो, तो इसे Indirect speech में अर्थ के मुताबिक इस प्रकार बदलना चाहिए। जैसे—

He said, "Let it rain, I must go." *Direct*
Let it rain का अर्थ- *"मुझे वर्षा की परवाह नहीं है।"* (दुःख की स्थिति में)
He said that he did not care for rain. *Indirect*

He said, "Let it rain." *Direct*
Let it rain का अर्थ- *"मुझे वर्षा के लिए खुशी है।"* (खुशी की स्थिति में)
He wished that it should rain. *Indirect*

9. यदि Let से स्टार्ट *(प्रारंभ)* होने वाले Imperative sentence में even = यद्यपि का बोध हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Reporting Verb को ज्यों का त्यों लिखें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर 'that' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Let की जगह even if का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : ever so को हटा दें। जैसे—

Mr. Pandey said, "Let it rain ever so hard, I will go to college today." *Direct*
Mr. Pandey said that even if it rained hard he would go to college that day. *Indirect*

**Note** : Let it के बाद ever so का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। उपरोक्त वाक्य में Let it के बाद ever so का प्रयोग किया गया है।

10. यदि Reported speech में Imperative sentence + question tag + ? का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

Step (1) : Reporting Verb को अर्थ के मुताबिक tell/tells/told; ask/asks/asked; request/requests/requested आदि में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर 'to' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : General rules को follow करें।

Step (4) : question tag को हटा दें। दूसरे शब्दों में आप ऐसे समझ लें कि ऐसे sentences को Indirect speech में Imperative sentences के सामान्य नियम को follow कर बदला जाता है। Question tag को हटा दिया जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "Give me some rupees, will you ?" *Direct*
He requested me to give him some rupees. *Indirect*
Arun said to her, "Switch off the light, will you ?" *Direct*
Arun asked/requested her to switch off the light. *Indirect*

11. Imperative meaning expressing sentences को Interrogative बनाता है, को Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Reporting Verb को अर्थ के मुताबिक ask/asks/asked; request/requests/requested; order/orders/ordered; invites/invited आदि में बदलकर लिखें।

Step (2) : जरूरत के मुताबिक कुछ शब्दों को हटा दिया जाता है, कुछ हटाया जा सकता है। अर्थ के अनुसार Inverted commas को हटाकर if का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


इन वाक्यों को गौर से देखें, सोचें और समझें—

She said, "Will you open the gate ?" Polite order. *Direct*
She asked / requested me to open the gate. *Indirect*
Mohan said to me, "Will you lend me a pen please ?" (Request) *Direct*
Mohan requested me to lend him a pen. *Indirect*
Bhavna said, "Will you have dinner with me tomorrow ? (Invitation) *Direct*
Bhavna invited / asked me to have dinner with her the next day. *Indirect*
Nirala said, "May (could) I use your cycle ?" (Permission) *Direct*
Nirala asked if he might / could use my cycle. *Indirect*

12. 'Shall I ?' से स्टार्ट होने वाले Interrogative sentence से कभी-कभी request (प्रार्थना) के भाव का बोध होता है। Future time का नहीं। इस case में shall को should में बदल दिया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को गौर से देखें, सोचें और समझें। जैसे—

She said, "Shall I shut the window ?" *Direct*
She asked / requested if she should shut the window. *Indirect*
She said, "Shall I wash your clothes ?" *Direct*
She asked / requested if she should wash my clothes. *Indirect*

### 4. Opative Sentence

(Pray = *प्रार्थना*, wish = *इच्छा*, curse = *अभिशाप*, bless = *आशीर्वाद*)

1. यदि Reported speech में *Optative sentence (may + Subject + M.V$^1$ + O + !)* का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Reporting Verb—say / said को sentence के अर्थ के मुताबिक wish / wished; pray / prayed; curse / cursed; bless / blessed में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर that का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Optative sentence *[may + S + M.V$^1$ + O + (!)]* को Assertive sentence *[S + might + M.V$^1$ + O + (.)]* में बदल कर लिखें।

**Note** : (i) सामान्यतः Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है, इसलिए Indirect speech में *[S + might + M.V$^1$ + O + ( . )]* का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Step (4) : General rules को follow करें। जैसे—

He said, "May God bless you !" *Direct*
He prayed that God might bless him. *Indirect*
Mother said to me, "May you live long !" *Direct*
Mother blessed me that I might live long. *Indirect*
They said to him, "May you die !". *Direct*
They cursed him that he might die. *Indirect*
Manisha said to me, "May you get success !" *Direct*
Manisha wished me that I might get success. *Indirect*
The saint said, "May God help you ?" *Direct*
The saint prayed that God might help me. *Indirect*

ध्यान दें : (i) यदि Optative sentence May से स्टार्ट नहीं हो, तो May को understood करके Indirect speech में बदलना चाहिए। जैसे—

The audience said, "Long live the Prime Minister !" *Direct*
The audience prayed that the Prime Minister might live long. *Indirect*
We said, "God save the President !" *Direct*
We prayed that God might save the President. *Indirect*
He said to me, "You be happy !" *Direct*
He wished me that I might be happy. *Indirect*
They said, "Long live our democracy !" *Direct*
They wished that their democracy might live long ! *Indirect*
My grandfather said to me, "You live in peace !" *Direct*
My grandfather wished me that I might live in peace. *Indirect*

### 5. Exclamatory Sentence

(Joy = *हर्ष/खुशी*, sorrow = *दुःख*, surprise = *आश्चर्य*, Anger = *क्रोध*, contempt = *तिरस्कार/घृणा*, applause = *प्रशंसा*, regret = *पश्चाताप/अफसोस*)

Exclamatory sentence से हर्ष, विषाद, घृणा, आश्चर्य, प्रशंसा, संदेह आदि मानसिक भावनाओं का बोध होता है। इस तरह के वाक्य में Interjections—Oh !, Ah !, Alas ! Hurrah !, Bravo !, well done ! आदि का प्रयोग सामान्यतः रहता है।

**Note**: What (Exclamatory Adjective) तथा how (Exclamatory Adverb) का प्रयोग भी Exclamatory sentence में रहता है।

1. यदि Reported speech में Exclamatory sentence का प्रयोग हो, तो उसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Reporting Verbs—say / says / said को sentence के अर्थ के मुताबिक Exclaimed with joy—*(हर्ष/खुशी/उल्लास)*, exclaimed with sorrow *(दुःख/शोक)*, exclaimed with surprise *(आश्चर्य/विस्मय)*, exclaimed with anger *(क्रोध)*; exclaimed with contempt *(तिरस्कार/घृणा)* exclaimed with applause *(प्रशंसा)*, exclaimed with regret *(पश्चाताप/अफसोस)* आदि में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर that का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Interjections—Oh ! Ah ! Alas ! Hurrah ! Bravo! आदि को हटा दें।

Step (4) : Exclamatory sentence को Assertive sentence में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (5) : Exclamation marks (!) को हटा कर full stop (.) का प्रयोग करें।

**Note** : यदि Reported speech में प्रयुक्त Exclamatory sentence में what तथा how का प्रयोग हो तो उसे Indirect speech में हटा दें। जरूरत के मुताबिक उपयुक्त Verb, Adjective, Adverb का प्रयोग करें ताकि Reported speech में निहित भाव Indirect speech में सरलता से स्पष्ट हो जाय।

2. Exclamatory sentence को Assertive sentence में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

(a) What + Noun = Adjective + Noun
What a fool ! = A big / great fool.
What a news ! = A strange news.
What a place ! = A lovely / strange place.

(b) What + Adj. + Noun = Very + Adjective + Noun.
What a fine place ! = A very fine place.
What a beautiful sight ! = A very beautiful sight.
What a good student ! = A very good student.

(c) How + Adjective / Adverb = very + Adj. / Adv.
How sweet he sings ! = He sings very sweet.
How beautiful she is ! = she is very beautiful.

(a) What तथा How से स्टार्ट *(प्रारंभ)* होने वाले Exclamatory sentence को Assertive sentence में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है—

Step (1) : *Subject + Verb* से *Assertive sentence* को स्टार्ट (प्रारंभ) करें।

Step (2) : What तथा How के बाद Adjective or Adverb का प्रयोग हो तो what तथा how के बदले very का प्रयोग करें।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



or, यदि what के बाद noun का प्रयोग हो तो what के बदले great, fine, lovely, wonderful, strange, peculiar, terrible etc. में से किसी एक उपयुक्त Adjective का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

How fast he runs ! — *Exclamatory*
He runs very fast. — *Assertive*

What a beautiful scene this is ! — *Exclamatory*
This is a very beautiful scene. — *Assertive*

What a fall it is ! — *Exclamatory*
It is a terrible / great / big fall. — *Assertive*

What a sight it is ! — *Exclamatory*
It is a lovely sight. — *Assertive*

How cold it is ! — *Exclamatory*
It is very cold. — *Assertive*

**Note** : यदि exclamatory sentence में subject तथा verb का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Assertive sentence में बदलते समय स्वविवेक से sentence के अर्थ के मुताबिक उपयुक्त subject तथा verb का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

What a place ! — *Exclamatory*
It is a lovely / beautiful / strange / place. — *Assertive*

How funny ! — *Exclamatory*
It is very funny. — *Assertive*

What a fun ! — *Exclamatory*
It is a great fun. — *Assertive*

How wonderful ! — *Exclamatory*
It is very wonderful. — *Assertive*

What a fool ! — *Exclamatory*
He is a great fool. — *Assertive*

**(b)** यदि Exclamatory sentence 'would that, O that, Oh that, O for, Oh for, If I could only, Oh if I could only' etc. से स्टार्ट (प्रारंभ) हो तो Assertive sentence में बदलते समय sentence को I wish or I earnestly desire से स्टार्ट किया जाता है। जैसे—

Would that he were alive ! — *Exclamatory*
I wish he were alive. — *Assertive*

O that I had the wings of a dove ! — *Exclamatory*
I wish I had the wings of a dove. — *Assertive*

Oh for a grand place to live in ! — *Exclamatory*
I wish I had a grand place to live in. — *Assertive*

O for a cup of milk ! — *Exclamatory*
I wish I had a cup of milk. — *Assertive.*

If I could only get the first prize ! — *Exclamatory*
I wish I could get the first prize. — *Assertive*
or, I earnestly desire to get the first prize. — *Assertive*

**(c)** यदि exclamatory sentence– Infinitive (to + $V^1$) से स्टार्ट (प्रारंभ) हो तो Assertive sentence में it is strange + that clause के structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग कर बदला जाता है। जैसे—

To think of her living here ! — *Exclamatory*
It is strange that she should live here. — *Assertive*

To think of their quarrelling here ! — *Exclamatory*
It is strange that they should quarrel here. — *Assertive*

**(d)** यदि Exclamatory sentence– *How + adjective + of* से स्टार्ट हो तो Assertive sentence में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

How kind of you to help me ! — *Exclamatory*
You were kind enough to help me. — *Assertive*

How clever of him to cheat her ! — *Exclamatory*
He was clever enough to cheat her. — *Assertive*

**(e)** यदि Exclamatory sentence– Alas ! से स्टार्ट (प्रारंभ) हो तो *Assertive* sentence में it is extremely sad or it is sad to think से स्टार्ट कर इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

Alas ! that she should die so young. — *Exclamatory*
It is extremely sad that she should die so young. — *Assertive*

Alas ! that I would suffer for nothing. — *Exclamatory*
It is sad to think that I should suffer for nothing. — *Assertive*

**(f)** यदि Exclamatory sentence– Bravo ! / Hurrah ! fie ! fie ! से स्टार्ट हो तो *Assertive* sentence में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है। जैसे—

*Bravo ! + sentence = It is a matter of praise + that clause*

*Hurrah ! + sentence = it is a matter of joy + that clause*

*Fie! Fie! + sentence = it is a matter of contempt + that clause*

Bravo ! you have done well. — *Exclamatory*
It is a matter of praise that you have done well. — *Assertive*

Hurrah ! we have won the match. — *Exclamatory*
It is a matter of joy that we have won the match. — *Assertive*

Fie! Fie! you are a thief — *Exclamatory*
It is a matter of contempt that you are a thief. — *Assertive*

**(g)** यदि Exclamatory sentence का दो भाग हो तथा वे 'and' से जुड़े हों तो Assertive sentence में *It is + adjective (strange / astonishing, shocking / mean) + that clause containing should* का प्रयोग कर बदला जाता है। जैसे—

A saint and afraid of ghosts ! — *Exclamatory*
It is strange that a saint should be afraid of ghosts. — *Assertive*

A child and so brave ! — *Exclamatory*
It is astonishing / strange that a child should be so brave. — *Assertive*

**Note** : Reported speech में प्रयुक्त Exclamatory sentence को Indirect speech में बदलते समय जरूरत के मुताबिक उपरोक्त Rules को follow करें तथा जो अनावश्यक हो उसका प्रयोग न करें।

3. Exclamatory sentence में प्रयुक्त Exclamatory words से strong emotions का बोध होता है तथा इसका अर्थ इस प्रकार निकलता है—

| Exclamatory words | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Hurrah ! | Joy | हर्ष/खुशी |
| 2. Oh ! Alas ! Ah ! Oh dear ! | Sorrow | दुःख/विषाद |
| 3. Ha! ha! | Amusement | मनोरंजन |
| 4. Fie ! Fie ! | Reproof | निन्दा/भर्त्सना/अप्रसन्नता |
| 5. My goodness ! Good gracious ! | Surprise | आश्चर्य |
| 6. Bother ! Bother it ! | Annoyance | तंग/खिन्न |
| 7. Bravo ! | Approval | स्वीकृति/अनुमोदन |
| 8. Stuff ! bosh ! Tut ! tut ! tush ! | Contempt or ridicule | घृणा या उपहास |
| 9. Hi ! Holloa ! | To call someone | हँसी-उड़ा |
| | | किसी को बुलाने |
| 10. Hum ! hem! humph ! | Doubt | पुकारना |
| 11. Oh dear ! | Sorrow | संदेह |
| 12. Confound you | Anger | दुःख/विषाद |
| 13. ugh ! | Disgust | क्रोध/रोष |
| 14. For goodness sake! | Anger | अरुचि/घृणा/तिरस्कार |
| | | क्रोध/रोष |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 15. Good heavens ! | Horror | आतंक/भय |
| 16. Well done ! | Praise or Applause | प्रशंसा/गुणगान |
| 17. My God ! | Surprise | आश्चर्य |
| 18. You mischief monger ! | contempt | तिरस्कार/घृणा |
| 19. Hello ! | Greet | स्वागत/अभिवादन/अभिनन्दन |
| 20. Good morning ! Good night ! | bid | आमंत्रण |
| 21. Ahorse ! ahorse! | exclaim | आश्चर्य |
| 22. Help ! help | shout for help | मदद के लिए चिल्ला कर बुलाना |

4. Reported speech में प्रयुक्त Exclamatory sentence को इस प्रकार की Indirect speech में बदला जाता है। जैसे—

He said, "What a big house it is !" *Direct*
He exclaimed what a big house it was. *Indirect*
or He remarked what a big house it was. *Indirect*
She said, "What an idiot you are !" *Direct*
She exclaimed what an idiot he was. *Indirect*
or, She remarked what an idiot he was. *Indirect.*

5. यदि Exclamatory sentence would that, O that, oh that, से start हो तो इससे wish का बोध होता है। इसे Indirect speech में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है—

Step (1) : Reporting verb को Tense के मुताबिक wish, wishes तथा wished में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (2) : Inverted commas को हटाकर 'that' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Would that, O that ..... etc. को हटा दें।

Step (4) : General rules को follow करें।

Step (5) : Exclamation marks (!) को हटाकर full stop (.) का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

He said, "O that I were a king !" *Direct*
He wished that he were a king. *Indirect*
He said, "Would that he were not so cruel!" *Direct*
He wished that he were not so cruel. *Indirect*

**Note :** इस प्रकार के sentences में प्रयुक्त were को had been में नहीं बदला जाता है।

**इन वाक्यों को गौर से देखें, सोचें और समझें :**

Priyanka said, "Alas ! I am ruined," *Direct*
Priyanka exclaimed with sorrow that she was ruined. *Indirect*

Binay said, "What a beautiful girl she is !" *Direct*
Binay exclaimed with joy that she was a very beautiful girl. *Indirect*

He said, "Ah ! My dog is dead." *Direct*
He exclaimed with sorrow that his dog was dead. *Indirect*
Ajit said, "What a beautiful sight !" *Direct*
Ajit exclaimed with joy/surprise that it was a very beautiful sight. *Indirect*
The player said, "Ah ! I have lost the game." *Direct*
The player exclaimed with sorrow that he had lost the game. *Indirect*

He said, "Nonsense !" *Direct*
He exclaimed that it was nonsense. *Indirect*
He said, "What a place !" *Direct*
He exclaimed with joy that it was very fine place. *Indirect*
or, He exclaimed with surprise that it was a very strange place. *Indirect*

They said, "Bravo ! we have won the match" *Direct*
They exclaimed with joy that they had won the match. *Indirect*

He said, "Oh ! Enough !" *Direct*
He exclaimed with disgust that it was enough. *Indirect*
She said, "How happy I am !" *Direct*
She exclaimed with joy that she was very happy. *Indirect*
He said, "Oh, what an opportunity !" *Direct*
He exclaimed that it was a fine opportunity. *Indirect*
He said to me, "Good morning !" *Direct*
He wished me good morning. *Indirect*
She said, "Good bye !" *Direct*
She bade me good bye. *Indirect*
He said, "Hello ! where are you going ?" *Direct*
He greeted me and asked where I was going. *Indirect*
She said, "Thank you !" *Direct*
She thanked me. *Indirect*
He said to us, "Welcome !" *Direct*
He welcomed us. *Indirect*
Guriya said to me, "Fool !" *Direct*
Guriya called me a fool. *Indirect*
She said, "Happy holi !" *Direct*
She wished me a happy holi. *Indirect*
Mr. Mishra said, "How happy I am !" *Direct*
Mr. Mishra exclaimed with joy that he was very happy. *Indirect*

She said, "Congratulations !" *Direct*
She congratulated me. *Indirect*
He said, "Well done ! you have stood first". *Direct*
He exclaimed with applause/praise that I had stood first. *Indirect.*

He said, "My God ! you have cut your finger." *Direct.*
He exclaimed with surprise that I had cut my finger. *Indirect*

He said, "You mischief monger ! you deserve to be punished." *Direct*
He exclaimed with contempt that that mischief monger deserved to be punished. *Indirect*
He said, " Hello ! where are you going ?" *Direct*
He greeted me and asked where I was going. *Indirect*
I said to him, "Good night !" *Direct*
I bade him good night. *Indirect*
He said, "Well done !" *Direct*
He said/remarked that it was well done. *Indirect*
He said, "Help! help!" *Direct*
He shouted for help. *Indirect*
He said, "To think that you will come in this dress !" *Direct*
He remarked that it was surprising/strange that I should come in that dress. *Indirect*
They said, "The house is on fire !" *Direct*
They shouted that the house was on fire. *Indirect*
He said, "Oh dear ! I have spilt tea on the table cloth." *Direct*
He exclaimed with sorrow that he had spilt tea on the table cloth. *Indirect*
She said, "Ugh ! I have hated him like any thing." *Direct*
She exclaimed with disgust that she had hated him like any thing. *Indirect*
He said, "Confound you ! You have spoiled every thing." *Direct*
He exclaimed in anger that I had spoiled every thing. *Indirect*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He said, "For goodness sake ! stop that horrible noise." *Direct.*

He exclaimed in anger and asked him to stop that horrible noise. *Indirect*

He said, "Look out ! There is a snake near your feet". *Direct*

He warned me that there was a snake near my feet. *Indirect*

I said, "Tut ! tut ! You are a mischievous boy." *Direct*

I reproached him that he was a mischievous boy. *Indirect*

## Practice Set

**Based on Assertive Sentence :**

Q. 1. *Change into Indirect speech.*

1. Arun says, "There is no ink in the inkpot."
2. The teacher says, "The girl was lazy."
3. The principal says, "Sneha will fail."
4. Mukesh will say, "Dinner is ready."
5. Binay will say, "No body was in the room."
6. Mr. Pandey will say, "Suresh will not pass."
7. Veena said, "Anupam works very hard."
8. Ajit said, "Rekha swims daily."
9. She said, "Aman is working hard."
10. They said, "The girls are playing cricket."
11. Ram said, "Sita has done her work."
12. He said, "Binod has written the letter."
13. She said, "The boy may pass."
14. I said, "I can do the sum."
15. Ajay said, "Raman returned at night."
16. Meena said, "Mr. Thakur came at night."
17. Nilu said, "All were laughing at the beggar."
18. Vijay said, "All the girls are singing."
19. The teacher said, "Manish will not pass."
20. I said, "I shall try to help her."
21. The teacher said, "Honesty is the best policy."
22. Father said, "The earth moves round the sun."
23. He said, "God loves all things below."
24. Mohan said, "I am busy."
25. He said, "I have done my work."
26. He said, "I shall do my best."
27. I said, "I will not go there."
28. I said, "The publisher likes me."
29. Mr. Prasad said, "You are wrong."
30. Butan said to Mukesh, "You are a good boy."
31. Meera said to Munni, "You are a good girl."
32. Manoj said to Udan, "You have not done your work."
33. Mr. Pandey said to her, "You have done your duty."
34. He said to me, "He is ill."
35. He said to me, "She is not to blame."
36. Prabha said to you, "You are right."
37. He said, "I am busy now."
38. She said, "I have seen this boy before."
39. I said, "These mangoes are sweet."
40. Mr. Thakur said to Sudhir jee, "I finished the work long before."
41. Sunil said, "The girl is here."
42. She said, "Binit will come tomorrow."
43. Bhavna said, "Today is a fine day."
44. Ramita said, "I will go to Mumbai tomorrow."
45. Mukesh said, "I went to the cinema last night."
46. Abha said, "This happended yesterday."
47. He said, "You play football very well."
48. I said to her, "You are an idiot girl"
49. He said to me, "You have helped my mother."
50. They said, "Yesterday we went to the cinema."
51. The boys said, "It will be stormy tonight."
52. Mr. Thakur said to the students, "I shall not teach your class tomorrow".
53. The director said to the students, "Tomorrow will be a holiday."
54. The old man said to the beggar, "I will not give you a single penny."
55. The teacher said to me, "You have done well in the examination."
56. She said, "I am unwell."
57. He said, "My brother is writing letters."
58. Ravi said, "I have passed the examination."
59. Ankit said, "The cow died in the night."
60. Rup Babu said to me, "I don't believe you."
61. He said, "I am glad to be here this evening."
62. He says, "I am glad to be here this evening."
63. The teacher remarked, "You have all done very badly."
64. He says, "I am going to Patna."
65. He will say, "I did not go there."
66. She said, "It was snowing yesterday."
67. I said, "I did not go to the station."
68. He said, "My brother is coming."
69. He said, "Union is strength."
70. Mother said, "The sun rises in the east."
71. She says, "I read a book."
72. You will say, "I saw a picture."
73. They said, "We went to college."
74. He said to me, "You sing well."
75. I said to Veena, "You should see me."
76. I said to you, "He gave me a pen."
77. He said, "Here is a pen."
78. You said, "Tomorrow is a holiday."
79. He said, "Two and four is six."
80. The teacher said to us, "When the cat is away, the mice will play."
81. He said, "The brave alone deserve the fair."
82. Gandhiji said, "Non violence is the best means of achieving success."
83. The teacher said, "The sum of three angles of a triangle is two right angles."
84. He said, "A little knowledge is a dangerous thing."
85. They said, "Time and tide wait for no man."
86. My father said, "Labour never goes in vain."
87. She said, "We are mortal."
88. She said, "I had won the prize."
89. They said to the boys, "You sang well."
90. Mohan said to me, "I wanted to help you."
91. She said, "I was absent in the class."
92. Ram said, "I had to do the work."
93. She said to me, "I had no time for you."
94. She said, "I had been waiting for you for two hours."
95. He said to me, "I can defeat you."
96. They said to us, "We are giving a nice present."
97. She says to me, "Yours is black and mine is white."
98. I said to him "I love you and your cat."
99. He says, "I could pass the examination."
100. He will say to me, "I need your co-operation."

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

101. The preacher said, "Work is worship".
102. The teacher remarked," A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools."
103. They said, "We cannot escape death."
104. The saint said, "Diamond cuts diamond."
105. He said, "Every potter praises his pot."
106. They said, "Contentment is happiness."
107. She said, "A bad man is better than a bad name."
108. He said, "A burnt child dreads the fire."
109. The businessman said, "A bird in hand is worth two in the bush."
110. They said, " The innocent have nothing to fear."
111. He said, "Something is better than nothing."
112. Mukesh said to the children, "Riches have wings."
113. The minister said, "Poverty breeds strife."
114. He said, "Rome was not built in a day."
115. She said, "Pure gold does not fear the flame"
116. Mr. Thakur said to the students, "Respect yourself and you will be respected."
117. Grandfather said, "The sun is a big ball of fire."
118. He said, "Example is better than precept."
119. The teacher said, "Five plus five is ten."
120. The Home Minister said to the people, "Fortune favours the brave."
121. Mr. Mishra said, "Money begets money."
122. Father said, "Man proposes, God disposes."
123. "I saw a goat in the garden yesterday," He said.
124. He said to me, "I have been reading since morning."
125. I said to my friend, "I shall return on Sunday."
126. She said to the queen, "My lord, I am a very poor woman and need your mercy."
127. The officer said, "Brother and sisters, I know very well that you did everything for me that you could."
128. She said, "Ajay, you are my life."
129. "Okay, I will come again tomorrow," he said.
130. She said, "Well, I shall punish you today."
131. The leader said, "Dear friends, I can't do without your help."
132. "Usha is my sister," He said.
133. She said, "You cannot be my lover."
134. Hanuman said, "You are a great cheat, Surya."
135. I said to him, "I don't know what Shobhana is doing."
136. She said, "He always ignored me."
137. My mother said, "You should take care of your health."
138. He said, "I did it yesterday."
139. He said, "My father died a year ago."
140. He said, "I wrote to her the day before yesterday."
141. She said, "I am going away tomorrow."
142. He said, "I shall join the office next week."
143. I said to the students, "I have sympathy for you."
144. The girl said to her mother, "I shall obey you."
145. He said, "I was present."
146. He said to her, "I was busy, so I didn't help you."
147. You said to her, "I have not beaten your dog."
148. Ajay said to Ajit, "You are my best friend."
149. She says to them, "This is mine and that is yours."
150. She says to Mohan, "If you give me a pen, I shall give you a book."

**Based on Interrogative Sentence :**

Q. 2. *Change into Indirect speech.*

**(A) Yes-No Questions :**

1. Mohan said to me, " Are you ill ?"
2. He said to Binay, "Have you a black pen ?"
3. Veena said to me, "Can you kill a lion ?"
4. She said to him, "Will you help me ?"
5. She said to Mr. Thakur, "Are you joining tomorrow ?"
6. Meena said to me, "Should you beat him ?"
7. Vijay said to his brother, "Did you buy a watch ?"
8. I said to you, "Did you teach my brother ?"
9. He said to her, "Do you know the way ?"
10. He said to Nilu, "Were you living in Mumbai ?"
11. They said to me, "Do we not help you ?"
12. Anju said to me, "Are you rich ?"
13. He said to me, "Were you busy ?"
14. Murari said to me, "Are you going today ?"
15. He said to me, "Was I not teasing you ?"
16. "Have you read the Gita ?" he asked me.
17. She said to him "Can you do this work ?"
18. "Do you believe in ghosts ?" she said to the wizard.
19. "Do you really know magic ?" said the king.
20. The boy said, "Do you know the way to the station ?"
21. He said to me, "Do I play cricket ?"
22. The people said, "Will India win the match ?"
23. Dilip said to him, "Are you going to the movie tonight?"
24. Binit asked, "Are the boys here ?"
25. He said, "Is Binay your brother ?"
26. I said to her, "Did you go away last year ?"
27. Hema said, "Is the principal in the office ?"
28. She said, "Has Mukesh many friends ?"
29. She said to me, "Can you speak English ?"
30. Mr. Thakur said to me, "Will you help me ?"
31. My wife said, "Have you done your work ?"
32. "Shall we meet at the platform ?" they said.
33. The teacher shouted angrily, "Have you no manners ?"
34. He said to me, "Is this seat reserved for you ?"
35. The leader said, "Would you help me in election, Anand ?"
36. I said to the station master, "Has the train left for Delhi ?"
37. She said, "Are you going to Delhi ?"
38. Binod said, "Will you come and play football with me ?"
39. She said, "Will you post this letter for me ?"
40. He said to her, "Do you want to be a writer ?"
41. "Do you go there everyday ?" he asked. " Yes, I do," I replied.
42. He said, "Did he come ?"
43. He said to me, "Do you feel sorry for what you did ?"
44. I said to her, "Are you flying a kite ?"
45. The teacher said to me, "Are you feeling well today ?"
46. I said to my father, "May I go to the pictures tonight ?"
47. She said to me, "Did you attend the class yesterday ?"
48. I said to the old man, "Do you like this book ?"
49. You said to me, "Are you coming to the meeting today ?"
50. She said to her friend, "Have you enough money to buy books ?"

**(B) Wh-Questions :**

1. He said to me, "What is your name ?"
2. She said to me, "How are you ?"
3. The teacher said to me, "What is your father ?"
4. My friend said to her, "How old are you ?"
5. I said to you, "What do you do ?"
6. You said to her, "Who are you ?"
7. She said, "What are you ?"
8. He said, "Who did this ?"
9. She said to her, "What is your mother's name ?"
10. I asked her, "Which class do you read in ?"
11. Mamta said to him, "Who is your father ?"
12. The teacher said to you, "What have you done for the coming examination ?"

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



13. She said to her, "Where do you live ?"
14. He said to me, "Where is the station ?"
15. She said to me, "Where are you going ?"
16. His father said to her, "Why have you failed in the examination ?"
17. "Why are you telling a lie ?" said the teacher to Arbind.
18. "What are you doing here ?" said the policeman to me.
19. I said to him, "Why are you crying ?"
20. He said to me, "What did you eat ?"
21. She said, "When will you return ?"
22. She said to me, "Why did you insult my sister ?"
23. The teacher said to the student, " Why were you absent yesterday ?"
24. He said to me, "What do you want ?"
25. Manisha said to me, "Why do you look so sad and gloomy today ?"
26. He said to you, "What can I do for you ?"
27. He said to the station master, "When does the next train come in ?"
28. She said to him "Why did you write to me such an insulting letter ?"
29. He said to her, "What is the matter ?"
30. He said to me, "What were you doing ?"
31. She said to Bhavna, "When will you give me your book ?"
32. She said, "Who went there ?"
33. He said, "What happened ?"
34. He said to you, "How many books have you ?"
35. She asked him, "How many students are there in your school ?"
36. The landlord said to me, "Who disturbs you ?"
37. Shanti said to me, "What is happening ?"
38. I said to her, "Who is helping you ?"
39. "Whose book did you borrow last night ?" she said to me.
40. I said to Manish, "Why are you happy ?"
41. I said to Monika, "When is your partner coming ?"
42. You said to your brother, "Who wrote this letter yesterday ?"
43. The teacher said to the student, "Why have you come late today ?"
44. The old man said, "Where do you come from ?"
45. The clerk said to the officer, "Why do you not accept a bribe ?"
46. I said to Mr. Pathak, "When will you come to my house again ?"
47. He said to me, "What is the necessity of the examination ?"
48. The police said to the young men, "Which of you were found guilty ?"
49. My mother said to me, "What will you do with the money ?"
50. The people said, "Which team will win the match ?"

**Based On Imperative Sentence :**

Q. 3. *Change into Indirect speech.*

1. The teacher said to the students, "Read at least eight hours daily."
2. The principal said to the boys, "Be quiet and listen to my words patiently."
3. She said to me, "Lend me your pen."
4. I said to Binay, "Go out of the room at once."
5. My wife said to me, "Do as I say."
6. He said, "Go away from here."
7. She said, "Pawan, switch on the Radio."
8. The doctor suggested to me, "Take medicine three times in a day."
9. He said to his servant, "Shut the door."
10. Mukesh said to Binay, "Please go to Patna Market with me."
11. The saint said to him "Trust in God and do the right."
12. The girl said, "Mamma, forgive me this time."
13. I said to my teacher, "Pardon me, Sir."
14. The elders said to the children, "Do not waste your time."
15. He said to me, "Let me study."
16. He said to me, "Wait here until I return."
17. The master said to his servant, "Go and post this letter at once."
18. I said to her, "Show me your identity card."
19. He said to me, "Don't go there."
20. He said to his son, "Don't smoke."
21. She said to him, " Don't sit here."
22. The mother said to her daughter, "Be attentive in the class."
23. He said, "Let me play in the garden."
24. The beggar said to the old woman, "Please give me a piece of bread."
25. The teacher said to the boys, "Work hard regularly."
26. He said to me, "Please give me a cup of coffee at once."
27. The teacher said to the girls, "Open your books at page twenty."
28. I said to my wife, "Let us go to the picture tonight."
29. She said to me, "Do come tomorrow."
30. He said to you, "Do have a cup of coffee."
31. She said to me, "Never tell a lie."
32. Shobhana said to the teacher, "Please explain this question to me."
33. Veena said to the renter, "Leave my house at once."
34. The teacher said to the boys, "Work hard and be regular in your studies."
35. The tyrant said, "Shoot the prisoner."
36. She said to us, "Let us have some music."
37. He said, "Let me have some coffee."
38. Prabhaker said to his friends, "Let me do my work, please."
39. Sweta said to us, "Let us return home."
40. I said to him, "Please wait here until I return."
41. The captain said to the soldiers, "Do not fire until I give you the signal."
42. He said to his disciples, "Honour your father and mother."
43. I said to her, "Don't walk so fast."
44. The jailer said to him, "Bring the prisoner before me."
45. He said to them, "Listen to my words and act upon them."
46. The policeman said to the young man, "Open the bag which you are carrying."
47. The master said to his servant, "Close the door."
48. I said to Rahul, "Do this work."
49. The doctor said, "Open your eyes."
50. "Call the second witness," said the judge.
51. He said to me, "Keep your dresses in your bag."
52. I said to my mother, "Take care of your health."
53. He said, "Stand up on the desk."
54. "Shoot" said the officer to his men.
55. The teacher said to Vivek, "Show me your note book."
56. She said, "Don't write on the wall, Gita."
57. I said to my brother, "Don't disturb me."
58. He said to her, "Do read this book."
59. I said to her, "Do this work at once."
60. The students said, "Let us play together."
61. Mohan said to her, "Let us sing together."
62. She said, "Let me stay here."
63. He said to me, "Let us discuss the matter."
64. Maneshwer babu said, "Let him catch the train."
65. He said, "Let me go out."
66. She said to me, "Let us work for the sake."
67. She said, "Lend me your book, will you ?"
68. Renu said to her husband, "Let me watch T.V."
69. The boy said to his teacher, "Let me play here."
70. The director said, "Begin your enquiry."

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


He said to Anshu, "Please don't interfere in my work."
I said to Sudhir, "Let me do the work, please."
The teacher said to him, "Work steadily."
He said to his classmate, "Please tell me what time it is."
The magistrate said to the accused, "Do tell me the truth or I will send you to jail."

**based on Optative Sentence :**

Q. 4. *Change into Indirect speech*

1. He said to me, "May God bless you !"
2. He said, "May God forgive her !"
3. I said to my brother-in-law, "May our friendship live long !"
4. The people said, "Long live the prime minister !"
5. She said to me, "May you live long !"
6. They said, "May God make us happy !"
7. I said to her, "May you succeed !"
8. He said, "May God reward your labour !"
9. We said, "May our democracy live long !"
10. The witch said, "May you die !"
11. My mother said to me, "May God help you !"
12. He said, "May heaven have pity on me !"
13. She said, "God save the Chief Minister !"
14. The workmen said, "May our unity live long !"
15. The saint said to me, "May you lead a happy married life !"
16. "May God bless the laborious student !" said the old woman.
17. The colleagues said to Bhavna on her birthday, "Long live my friend !"
18. He said to me, "May you get the first prize !"
19. The hermit said, "God save the helpless !"
20. "May God pardon this young man !" said the old man.
21. My grandmother said, "May you live long with my age also !"
22. She said, "Long live my lover !"
23. I said to Shanker, "May you prosper !"
24. They said, "May God bless all !"
25. I said to her, "May you be blessed with a daughter !"

**based on Exclamatory Sentence :**

Q. 5. *Change into Indirect speech.*

1. Prabhaker said, "Alas ! I am ruined."
2. The cricketers said, "Hurrah ! The TVS cup is ours."
3. The teacher said to the students, "Well done !"
4. She said, "What a fine place it is !"
5. My wife said, "How dark the night is !"
6. I said to her, "Good night !"
7. He said to Binod, "Sorry ! I cannot help you."
8. She said, "What a nice film it is !"
9. Divakar said, "What a terrible song !"
10. Pinku said, "What a beautiful scene it is !"
11. He said, "Ah ! He is dead."
12. He said, "What a fall !"
13. Priyanka said, "What an idea !"
14. Dhoni said, "Hurrah ! we have won the match."
15. She said, "Ha ! Ha ! I am happy."
16. Anshu said, "How industrious you are !"
17. He said, "How sweet you sing !"
18. Bholu said, "What type of woman she is !"
19. Pankaj said, "Alas ! I am undone."
20. They said to Bhavna, "Happy Birthday !"
21. Manoj said, "How foolish I am !"
22. He said, "What a beautiful garden !"
23. She said, "Happy Christmas !"
24. They said, "What a fierce animal it is !"
25. She said, "How terrible the storm is !"
26. Binay said, "What a great mistake I have made !"
27. She said, "Congratulations !"
28. My father said, "How naughty these girls are !"
29. He said, "What a fool I am !"
30. The teacher said, "Alas ! Gandhijee is no more."
31. He said, "Good bye !"
32. She said, "Welcome !"
33. He said to her, "Fie ! Fie ! you mean girl, you have betrayed me."
34. Mr. Mishra said, "Curse this thing !"
35. He said to me, "Fool ! Liar !"
36. He said, "Oh ! My dog is dead."
37. The people said, "Bravo ! you have done well."
38. I said, "O, that I had never wasted my time !"
39. He said, "What a lovely flower !"
40. "What a clever fellow you are !" he said.
41. She said, "Alas ! the child is dead."
42. The teacher said, "What a foolish student you are !"
43. She said, "How sad it is !"
44. Mr. Thakur said, "Alas ! I have lost everything."
45. She said, "Hurrah ! My lover has won the first prize."
46. I said to Mr. Prasad, "What a powerful shot it is !"
47. Veena said, "How foolishly you have acted !"
48. The students said, "How stiff the paper is !"
49. He said, "How beautiful the picture is !"
50. He said, "What a great misery !"

**Miscellaneous**

Q. 6. *Change into Indirect speech*

1. Krishna said, "I am very busy now."
2. He said to me, "I am going home."
3. My teacher said, "It is time to work hard."
4. She said, "I am unwell."
5. Murari said, "I have passed the intermediate examination."
6. He said, "My brother is writing letters."
7. She said, "The man shall come."
8. Devan Babu said, "The buffalo died in the night."
9. He said, "God rules and governs all things."
10. The gentleman said to the stranger, "I know you."
11. I said to my beloved, "I am glad to be here this evening."
12. Her angry father jeered, "Do you suppose you know better than your own mother ?"
13. Raman said to Mantu, "Go away."
14. Anupam said, "How clever I am !"
15. He says, "She lives in Muzaffarpur."
16. My brother will say, "I have seen the Tajmahal at Agra."
17. I said, "I have been ill since morning."
18. She said to him, "You will miss the train."
19. Renu says, "Do you know my residence ?"
20. He said, "Love is great."
21. The teacher said, "The first battle was fought in Panipat !"
22. The young man said, "I take exercise daily."
23. The teacher said, "Mahatma Gandhi believed in non-violence."
24. He said to me, "Might is right."
25. Father said to us, "Slow and steady wins the race."
26. The teacher said, "Truth wins in the long run."
27. He said, "We cannot be quite happy in this life."
28. I said to her, "What will you do ? if you fail."
29. Dhrub said to his driver, "Is the car ready ?"
30. I said to you, "Which is your best book ?"
31. He said, "I might go abroad in 1998."

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

32. My father said to me, "You ought to respect your teachers."
33. He said, "I am an early riser."
34. He said, "My elder daughter wants to be an I.A.S. officer."
35. The director said, "You must finish this assignment by the end of March."
36. He said to her, "You ought to respect your teachers."
37. The principal said, "You may go now."
38. The teacher said, "I shall finish the courses by the end of this month."
39. Binay said, "I was attending computer classes."
40. Bhavana said, "Rima sang beautifully at my birthday party."
41. The boy said to me, "We have been waiting for you for three hours."
42. Chandramukhi said to her, "I would help you in difficulty."
43. She said, "Alas ! I have lost everything."
44. He said, "May his son scale heights of glory !"
45. The judge said, "Bring the culprit on the scene."
46. He said, "Let us go out for a picnic in this lovely weather."
47. She said to Ajit, "What was she reading last night ?"
48. The Principal said to the naughty girl, "Get out of my office."
49. The headmaster said, "He is doing well enough."
50. The teacher said to his students, "Gandhijee was assassinated on January 30, 1948."
51. Mr. Thakur said, "If you were present at the site of accident, you would cry."
52. He said to the students, "Have you brought, 'Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare' today ?"
53. The police said, "Why did you steal the silver candle sticks?"
54. He said, "Let us keep quiet about the controversial matter."
55. Mr. Mishra said, "I want to participate in the Annual function."
56. He said to me, "The gardener was watering the plants."
57. Father said, "Anshu is very obedient."
58. Raman said, "I have an urgent message for you."
59. Mr. Thakur said to the students, "Don't waste your time, work hard to get success at the examination."
60. Raja said to me, "Please ask Bijay to take a seat, I shall be coming in a moment."
61. Antonio said to Bassanio, "My dear friend, I can spare your wife, my life and everything for you. Be bold and face life."
62. Dasharath said to Vishwamitra, "Please do not insist on taking Ram and Lakshman with you, I am prepared to send my whole army with you."
63. The director said to the teacher, "Why did you come late ?"
64. The mother said, "Anshu, what were you doing ?"
65. "Don't be afraid, my children" said the monkey chief."
66. Socrates said, "Virtue is its own reward."
67. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question ?"
68. He said, "it used to be a lovely, quiet street."
69. The spectators said, "Bravo ! well done, players."
70. I said to my friend, "Good morning, let us go for a picnic today."
71. The new student asked the old one, "Do you know my name ?"
72. I said to my mother, "I will certainly take you to Bangalore this week."
73. "How long does the journey take ?" my co-passenger asked me.
74. He said, "I go for a walk everymorning."
75. I reiterated, "I don't care about the job."
76. I said to my brother, "Let us go to some hillstation for a change."
77. I said, "How many discoveries go unheeded ?"
78. Gopan said to me, "Can you do these sums for me ?"
79. The boss said, "It's time we began planning our work."
80. He said to the Judge, "I did not commit this crime."
81. Rahul said, "I will do it now or never."
82. My father once said to me, "If I can't trust my people, I don't to be doing this."
83. Doshi said to his wife, "Please select one of these necklaces."
84. He wrote in his report, "The rainfall has been scanty till now."
85. She said to Rita, "Please help me with my homework."
86. I said to him, "Where have you lost the pen I brought for you yesterday."
87. "Govind," said the manager sternly, "I command you to tell me what the old man said."
88. "How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly!" said the mother.
89. The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow anyone to disturb the peace."
90. I said to her, "I can no longer tolerate your coming late."

Q. 7. *Change into Direct speech.*

1. He requested him to lend him his pen.
2. I say that I will work hard now.
3. They exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
4. He admitted that he had not worked hard.
5. You say that the governor came at ten.
6. Anshu will tell you that she is not feeling well.
7. The parrot says that a hunter had caught it.
8. He inquired of her where she lived.
9. Aman said that the birthday had happened the day before.
10. Veena told Anupam that she was a good girl.
11. I said that I had been ill since Monday.
12. She told me that I would miss the train.
13. I told them that he was speaking the truth.
14. He promised that he would finish the work as soon as he could.
15. The teacher told us that slow and steady wins the race.
16. Usha asked me if I had attended the office the previous day.
17. The teacher asked Gopal why he had not done his home work.
18. She inquired of me why I had called her.
19. He prayed that God might pardon that sinner.
20. The tourist exclaimed that the Tajmahal was a splendid building.
21. He forbade me to go there.
22. The teacher advised me to work regularly.
23. He requested his father to let him continue his studies.
24. He said that I might go then.
25. He said that he had gone to Mumbai the previous day.

Q. 8. *Find out the error part of the following sentences.*

1. The Times of India says (1)/ that our office (2)/ will remain closed (3)/ on Sunday next. (4)/ No error. (5)
2. He told to me (1)/ that the man (2)/ would come (3)/ the nextday. (4)/ No error. (5)
3. My father told me (1)/ that honesty (2)/ was (3)/ the best policy. (4)/ No error (5)
4. The teacher enquired the students (1)/ whether (2)/ they remembered (3)/ the lesson well. (4)/ No error (5)
5. The inspector of police (1)/ asked the thief (2)/ if he thought (3)/ a man had found guilty was set free. (4)/ No error. (5)
6. The Magistrate asked the culprit (1)/ that it was true that (2)/ he had been (3)/ caught red handed. (4)/ No error (5)
7. Rahul asked (1)/ his servant at what time (2)/ he went to the station the previous day. (4)/ No error (5)
8. The General (1)/ commanded the soldiers (2)/ that march (3)/ quickly (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



1. He asked me (1)/ whether I knew (2)/ who had stolen (3)/ my book. (4)/ No error. (5)
2. The stranger asked (1)/ the policeman (2)/ that which road (3)/ would lead to the station. (4)/ No error. (5)
3. I asked him how far had he come (1)/ in his research but (2)/ he just refused (3)/ to give me a straight answer. (4) No error (5)
4. They (1)/ informed him that (2)/ they will have to pay the bill (3)/ when the goods arrived. (4)/ No error (5)
5. She said (1)/ that (2)/ she will help me (3)/ whenever I was in difficulty. (4)/ No error (5)
6. She cursed (1)/ him that God (2)/ might grant (3)/ him a long life. (4)/ No error (5)
7. The secretary of the workers' union (1)/ remarked that the present government is so selfish (2)/ that it cared very little (3)/ about solving anyone else's problem. (4) No error (5)
8. He asked me (1)/ that how I got (2)/ time to write (3)/ all these poems. (4)/ No error (5)
9. When the mother saw (1)/ an elephant coming towards the children (2)/ she cried out and ask them to run away. (4)/ No error (5)
10. They wished (1)/ the bride and the bridegroom (2)/ that their married life (3)/ might be successful. (4)/ No error (5)
11. My elder brother (1)/ asked me (2)/ not to go out in the rain (3)/ or I will catch a cold (4)/ No error (5)
12. When Gayatri said that (1)/ she is coming to see me the next day (2)/ I wondered (3)/ what problems she would bring. (4)/ No error (5)
13. The lawyer asked me (1)/ where had I left my clothes (2)/ before taking a dip (3)/ in the river. (4)/ No error (5)
14. The Guide told us (1)/ that where the Island was (2)/ and went on (3)/ narrating its history. (4)/ No error (5)
15. I asked (1)/ if she has looked (2)/ everywhere (3)/ and she said, 'yes'. (4)/ No error (5)
16. Vikas said that he was going to (1)/ the library and wanted to (2)/ know that I could (3)/ accompany him. (4)/ No error (5)
17. He requested (1)/ his master (2)/ to forgive him (3)/ for my negligence. (4)/ No error (5)
18. The lady said that (1)/ she should be away (2)/ from home tomorrow as Malti's (3)/ friend had come to visit Mumbai. (4)/ No error (5)
19. The driver said that hundred kilometers is, (1)/ after all, a short distance (2)/ which he could cover in half an hour (3)/ or at most, in forty five minutes. (4) No error (5)
20. He reminded (1)/ me that he has often (2)/ told me not to play (3)/ with fire. (4)/ No error
21. The principal asked (1)/ the student (2)/ where he was (3)/ yesterday. (4) No error (5)
22. Ramu told me (1)/ that I am (2)/ ready to do (3)/ any work. (4)/ No error (5)
23. The student (1)/ asked to the teacher (2)/ what he had done (3)/ to deserve such punishment. (4)/ No error (5)
24. The Headmaster advised the student (1)/ who had failed in the examination twice (2)/ that not to attempt it again (3)/ until he had time to prepare for it properly. (4)/ No error (5)
25. He told me that (1)/ he couldn't buy the paintings (2)/ which he wanted very much, (3)/ because he hadn't enough money. (4)/ No error (5)
26. Veena appealed (1)/ to the managing committee (2)/ that she may be (3)/ allowed to join the volunteer force. (4)/ No error (5)
27. His mother told him (1)/ that he had committed (2)/ a blunder (3)/ by not appearing at the examination. (4)/ No error (5)
28. They asked her (1)/ who she was (2)/ and what was the purpose (3)/ of her coming. (4)/ No error (5)
37. He asked me (1)/ if I am ill and (2)/ I answered that I was not. (3)/ No error (4)
38. He said that he was an employee (1)/ of the gas company (2)/ and had come to inspect the gas connection. (3)/ No error (4)
39. He suggested us (1)/ that we should try to improve our condition (2)/ by beginning to work hard (3)/ No error (4)
40. We asked them (1)/ that if there was (2)/ any difficulty (3)/ that they were facing. (4)/ No error (5)
41. The doctor (1)/ advised the patient (2)/ that walk for at least one hour (3)/ everyday in the morning. (4)/ No error (5)
42. The tutor cautioned (1)/ the girl's guardian (2)/ that she would not (3)/ be able to get through the examination until she works hard. (4)/ No error (5)
43. Her teacher told (1)/ the class that the human heart was (2)/ about (3)/ as big as a clenched fist. (4) No error (5)
44. I asked him (1)/ if the number of casualities (2)/of this year were more than (3)/ that of the last year. (4)/ No error (5)
45. He told me that (1)/ he has completed the task (2)/ I had given him (3)/ the previous day. (4)/ No error (5)
46. The author said to that (1)/ there were many people (2)/ who were deprived of (3)/ the minimum basic facilities. (4)/ No error (5)
47. He told us (1)/ to not spend (2)/ all we earned (3)/ on living lavishly. (4)/ No error (5)
48. The receptionist asked me (1)/ who do I want (2)/ to meet (3)/ in the office. (4)/ No error (5)
49. He told me (1)/ that his favourite food (2)/ was chicken and curry (3)/ and asked what was mine. (4)/ No error (5)
50. Pressed by his students (1)/ the principal suddenly said (2)/ that I am in no way responsible for the quarrel. (4)/ No error (5)

Q. 9. *Correct the following sentences :*

1. He said that the sun gives us light and kept us warm.
2. He told to me that he had written a letter to his friend the previous day.
3. I told him that these problems should be solved.
4. He said he was senior to me in age.
5. She asked me that when the train left.
6. I ordered my servant to polish his shoes.
7. I advised him to work sincerely if you wanted to succeed.
8. I requested him that help me.
9. He wished that you might win a prize.
10. He exclaimed with applause that I have stood first.
11. He greeted me and asked where was I going.
12. They said that he used to help us in need.
13. He told me that he had never seen such a lazy boy as I am.
14. He enquired us whether we were going away that day.
15. He said that God was everywhere.
16. The teacher warned us to not sleep late and miss the train.
17. The teacher warned me that he would turn me out if I come late again.
18. I asked him why was he working so hard.
19. You said that tomorrow was a holiday.
20. The captain applauded him and said that he has done well.
21. Addressing the audience, the chairman told him that they had to think over the problem seriously.
22. The master ordered the servant to leave the room and forbade him not to show him his face again.
23. Binay proposed Vikas that they should go out for a walk.
24. He exclaimed with joy that she sings very sweetly.
25. He demanded me why I had insulted his brother.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Q. 10. *Do as directed*

1. He said, "Hurrah ! my friend has passed." *(Change into Indirect speech)*
2. The teacher asked me very angrily why I had come. *(Change into Direct speech)*
3. She said to me, "Mind your own business." *(Change into Reported speech)*
4. I said to him, "Do you take exercise daily ?" *(Begin–I asked him .....)*
5. She asked me if I was feeling better. *(Begin–She said to me "..... ?")*
6. "What a clever fellow you are !" he said. *(Begin–He said .....)*
7. He said, "May God bless her with a long life and prosperity !" *(Change into Reported speech)*
8. He said that one must not cross the road against red light. *(Begin He said "..... ")*
9. The Mahatma said to his devotees, " Do good to others if you want that others should do good to you." *(Change into Indirect speech)*
10. He said, "Oh dear ! I have spilt tea on the table cloth." *(Begin–He exclaimed with sorrow .....)*
11. He said, "May God grant peace to the departed soul !" *(Begin–He prayed that .....)*
12. I suggested to my brother that we should go to some hill station for a change. *(Change into Direct speech)*
13. The traveller said to the farmer, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn ?" *(Turn into Reported speech)*
14. The employer said to the workman, "I cannot pay you higher wages." *(Begin–The employer told .....)*
15. He said to me, "Are you going to cinema ?" "Yes." *(Begin–He asked me .....)*
16. The monitor said to the headmaster, "Sir, may I come in ?" *(Rewrite the sentence using 'respectfully' without changing its meaning.)*
17. He said to me, "Fie ! Fie ! you mean fellow, you have cheated me." *(Turn into Indirect speech)*
18. He urged the students to be quiet and listen to his words patiently. *(Begin–He said to the students, "..... ")*
19. The editor of the Indian Nation said, "On every Sunday we shall bring out a special magazine section." *(Transform into Reported speech)*
20. The magistrate said to the criminal, "Can you tell me the name of the man who instigated you to do so ?" *(Change into Indirect speech)*
21. "Have you anything to say in favour of the prisoner ?" said the judge. *(Begin–The judge asked .....)*
22. The captain said to the soldiers, "Brave sons of the mother land, fight bravely." *(Change into Indirect speech)*
23. He said, "Yes, I can do it." *(Begin–He replied in the affirmative and said that .....)*
24. Aditya said to Rudransh, "Good morning, how do you do ?" *(Begin–Aditya wished Rudransh .....)*
25. He said to his friend, "Please wait here until I return from the office." *(Change into Reported speech)*

## Answers With Explanation

Q. 8.

1. (2) our की जगह its का प्रयोग होगा। (विशेष जानकारी के लिए Rule पढ़ें )
2. (1) told के बाद to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
3. (3) was की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। (विशेष जानकारी के लिए Rule पढ़ें )
4. (1) enjured के बाद Object के पहले of का प्रयोग होता है।
5. (5) Sentence correct है।
6. (2) first (पहला) that की जगह if का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (3) went की जगह had gone का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (3) that march की जगह to march का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (4) my book की जगह his book का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (3) Interrogative word– which के पहले that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
11. (1) How far had he come की जगह How far he had come का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (3) They will have to pay the bill की जगह He would have to pay the bill का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (3) will की जगह would का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb Past Tense में है।
14. (1) cursed की जगह blessed का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Given sentence से आशीर्वाद का बोध हो रहा है।
15. (2) Is की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb–remarked Past Tense में है।
16. (2) that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Interrogative word 'how' के बाद conjunction that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
17. (4) Ask की जगह asked का प्रयोग होगा चूँकि She cried out Past Tense में है अत: She cried out and asked them का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (5) Given sentence correct है।
19. (4) will की जगह would का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb–said Past Tense में है।
20. (2) is की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb 'said' Past Tense में है।
21. (2) Where had I की जगह where I had का प्रयोग होगा। Indirect speech में Interrogative word + Subject + Verb का प्रयोग होता है। अत: where + I + had का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (2) that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। Interrogative words—when, where, what, how ..... etc. के पहले Indirect speech में that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
23. (2) has की जगह had का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb–asked Past Tense में है।
24. (3) that की जगह if or whether का प्रयोग होगा। जब Given sentence को Direct speech के form में लिखें तो आपको खुद पता चल जाएगा कि if/whether का प्रयोग क्यों हुआ।

Direct speech : He said to me, "I am going to the library, can you accompany me ?"

इससे स्पष्ट है कि "can you accompany me ?" Yes–No question है जिसके पहले Indirect speech में if या whether का प्रयोग होगा।

25. (4) my की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा।
26. (3) Tomorrow की जगह The next day का प्रयोग होगा।
27. (1) is की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb–said Past Tense में है।
28. (2) Has की जगह had का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb reminded Past Tense में है।
29. (4) Yesterday की जगह the previous day का प्रयोग होगा।
30. (2) I am की जगह he was का प्रयोग होगा।
31. (2) Asked के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। Asked के बाद [illegible] के पहले to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
32. (3) That का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। यह अनावश्यक है।
33. (3) which he wanted की जगह which he had wanted का प्रयोग होगा।
34. (3) may की जगह might का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb appealed Past Tense में है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


(3) what was the purpose की जगह what the purpose was का प्रयोग होगा। Indirect speech में I.W + Subject + A.V. का प्रयोग होता है।

(2) if I am ill की जगह if I was ill का प्रयोग होगा।

(4) Given sentence correct है।

(1) suggested के बाद प्रयुक्त object-us के पहले 'to' preposition का प्रयोग होगा।

(2) that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। if स्वतः conjunction है इसलिए इसके पहले that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

(3) that walk की जगह to walk का प्रयोग होगा।

ध्यान दें :

Direct : The doctor said to the patient, "take medicine in time."

Indirect : The doctor advised the patient to take medicine in time. (√)

or, The doctor advised the patient that take medicine in time. (×)

42. (4) until she works hard की जगह until she worked का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb–cautioned Past Tense में है।

43. (2) was की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reported speech में universal truth का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः universal truth के साथ Past Tense का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Universal truth के साथ हमेशा Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

ध्यान दें :

Direct : Her teacher said to the class, "The human heart is about as big as a clenched fist."

Indirect : Her teacher told the class that the human heart is about as big as a clenched fist.

44. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा।

45. (2) has की जगह had का प्रयोग होगा।

46. (1) said के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि said के साथ object का प्रयोग नहीं है।

47. (2) to not की जगह not to का प्रयोग होगा। not to + $V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है न कि to not + $V^1$ का।

48. (2) Who do I want की जगह whom I wanted का प्रयोग होगा।

49. (4) What was mine की जगह what mine was का प्रयोग होगा।

50. (3) I am की जगह I was का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Reporting verb said—Past Tense में है।

Q. 9.

1. He said that the sun gives us light and keeps us warm.
2. He told me that he had written a letter to his friend the previous day.
3. I told him that those problems should be solved.
4. He said that he was senior to me in age.
5. She asked me when the train left.
6. I ordered my servant to polish my shoes.
7. I advised him to work sincerely if he wanted to succeed.
8. I requested him to help me.
9. He wished that I might win a prize.
10. He exclaimed with applause that I had stood first.
11. He greeted me and asked where I was going.
12. They said that he used to help them in need.
13. He told me that he had never seen such a lazy boy as I was.
14. He enquired of us whether we were going away that day.
15. He said that God is everywhere.
16. The teacher warned us not to sleep late and miss the train.
17. The teacher warned me that he would turn me out if I came late again.
18. I asked him why he was working so hard.
19. You said that the next day was a holiday.
20. The captain applauded him and said that he had done well.
21. Addressing the audience, the chairman told them that they had to think over the problem seriously.
22. The master ordered the servant to leave the room and forbade him to show him his face again.
23. Binay proposed to Vikas that they should go out for a walk.
24. He exclaimed with joy that she sang very sweetly.
25. He demanded of me why I had insulted his brother.

Q. 10.

1. He exclaimed with delight that his friend had passed.
2. The teacher said to me very angrily, "Why have you come ?"
3. She asked me to mind my own business.
4. I asked him if / whether he took exercise daily.
5. She said to me, "Are you feeling better ?"
6. He said that I was a very clever fellow.
7. He prayed that God might bless her with a long life and prosperity.
8. He said, "One must not cross the road against red light."
9. The Mahatma asked his devotees to do good to others if they wanted that others should do good to them.
10. He exclaimed with sorrow that he had spilt tea on the table cloth.
11. He prayed that God might grant peace to the departed soul.
12. I said to my brother, "Let us go to some hillstation for a change."
13. The traveller enquired of the farmer if he could tell him the way to the nearest inn.
14. The employer told the workman that he could not pay him higher wages.
15. He asked me if I was going to cinema and I replied in the affirmative.
16. The monitor asked the headmaster respectfully if he might go in.
17. He called me a mean fellow and exclaimed with contempt that I had cheated him.
18. He said to the students, "Be quiet and listen to my words patiently."
19. The editor of the Indian Nation said that on every Sunday it would bring out a special magazine section.
20. The magistrate asked the criminal if he could tell him the name of the man who instigated him to do so.
21. The judge asked if I/he had anything to say in favour of the prisoner.
22. The captain called / addressed the soldiers as brave sons of the mother land and inspired them to fight bravely.
23. He replied in the affirmative and said that he could do it.
24. Aditya wished Rudransh good morning and asked him how he was.
25. He requested his friend to wait there until he returned from the office.

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 12 Voice

**Voice :** Verb का वह form *(रूप)* जो यह अभिव्यक्त करता है कि Subject *(कर्ता)* स्वयं कुछ करता है, अथवा Subject *(कर्ता)* किसी के द्वारा किये गए कार्य का परिणाम भोगता है, Voice कहलाता है। अर्थात् Subject सामान्यतः किसी कार्य के लिए Directly responsible होता है या Indirectly responsible होता है।

Transitive Verb के दो Voices होते हैं।

1. Active Voice *(कर्तृवाच्य)*
2. Passive Voice *(कर्म वाच्य)*

**1. Active Voice :** *A Verb is said to be in the Active Voice when the person or thing denoted by the Subject acts.*

किसी Verb को Active Voice में कहा जाता है, जब कोई व्यक्ति या वस्तु Subject के रूप में कुछ करता है। जैसे—

I write a letter. *मैं पत्र लिखता हूँ।*
He writes a letter. *वह पत्र लिखता है।*

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में I और he Verbs—write/writes का सम्पादन कर रहे हैं। अर्थात् I और he पत्र लिखने में सक्रिय हैं। अतः write/writes Active Voice में है।

**2. Passive Voice :** *A Verb is said to be in the Passive Voice when the person or thing denoted by the Subject does not act, but suffers the action done by something/someone.*

किसी Verb को Passive Voice में कहा जाता है, जब कोई व्यक्ति या वस्तु Subject के रूप में कार्य नहीं करता है बल्कि किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु के द्वारा किये गये कार्य का परिणाम भोगता है। जैसे—

A letter is written by me. *पत्र मेरे द्वारा लिखा जाता है।*
A letter is written by him. *पत्र उसके द्वारा लिखा जाता है।*

Verb का Voice होता है, इसलिए sentence में प्रयुक्त Verb यदि Active Voice में होता है, तो sentence भी Active Voice में होगा। sentence में प्रयुक्त Verb Passive Voice में होता है, तो sentence भी Passive Voice में होगा। Active Voice से Passive Voice में परिवर्तित करने के लिए वाक्य की बनावट तथा अर्थ का ध्यान रखना चाहिए। Transitive Verb का Passive Voice होता है, Intansitive Verb का नहीं। Active तथा Passive sentences के अर्थ में अन्तर नहीं होता है।

| | Subject | Verb | Object |
|---|---|---|---|
| Active | Ajay<br>Active Subject | writes<br>Active Verb | a letter<br>Active Object |
| Passive | Passive Subject<br>A letter | Passive Verb<br>is written | Optional Agent<br>by Ajay |

उपरोक्त diagram की सहायता से आप सामान्यतः Active से Passive में change (परिवर्तित) कर सकते हैं। इसके बावजूद भी आपको Active से Passive बनाने में कठिनाइयाँ हों, तो आप नीचे दिए गए steps का सहारा लेकर Active से Passive में बदल सकते हैं।

**Active voice से Passive voice में बदलने का नियम :**

Step (1) : Active Voice के sentence के Object या Active Object को Passive Voice में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : Tense तथा Passive Subject के Number तथा person के मुताबिक Auxiliary Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : Main Verb का Past participle form लिखें। अर्थात् $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : by Preposition का प्रयोग करें।

**Note :** जरूरत के मुताबिक by Preposition का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है, नहीं भी किया जा सकता है। by के अलावे दूसरे Preposition at, to, आदि का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक किया जा सकता है।

Step (5) : Active के sentence के Subject अर्थात् Active Subject को Passive Voice में Object की जगह लिखें।

**Note :** Passive Objects के रूप में one, someone, nobody, people, somebody, no one, police, public, us, them आदि का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। लेकिन sentence का अर्थ स्पष्ट न हो, तो उपरोक्त Passive Objects का प्रयोग किया भी जा सकता है। उपरोक्त Nouns/Pronouns का प्रयोग किये बगैर sentence का अर्थ स्पष्ट हो जाता है इसलिए इनका प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**संक्षेप में :**

Active : *Subject + Verb + Object*
Passive : *Subject + Auxiliary Verb + $M.V^3$ + by + Object*

## From Active Voice To Passive Voice

### A. Simple Present Tense

**Rule (1) :** यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + $M.V^1$/$M.V^1$ + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो उसे Passive Voice में नीचे दिए गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** *Passive Subject + is/are/am + $M.V^3$ + by + Passive Object.*

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

*Active* : Ashish Anurag makes a noise.
*Passive* : A noise is made by Ashish Anurag.

*Active* : Children like sweets.
*Passive* : Sweets are liked by children.

*Active* : Boys love animals.
*Passive* : Animals are loved by boys.

*Active* : Rekha takes coffee every morning.
*Passive* : Coffee is taken by Rekha every morning.

*Active* : We respect him.
*Passive* : He is respected.

*Active* : Ajit does not help me.
*Passive* : I am not helped by Ajit.

### B. Present Continuous Tense

**Rule (2) :** यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + is/are/am + $M.V^1$ ($M.V._1$ + ing) + O'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो उसे Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** *Passive Subject + is/are/am + being + $M.V^3$ + by + Passive Object.*

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

*Active* : He is writing a letter.
*Passive* : A letter is being written by him.

*Active* : Bhavna is singing a song.
*Passive* : A song is being sung by Bhavna.

*Active* : The students are watching the match.
*Passive* : The match is being watched by the students.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



*Active* : Sweta is answering the question.
*Passive* : The question is being answered by Sweta.
*Active* : I am drawing the picture.
*Passive* : The picture is being drawn by me.
*Active* : They are not picking the flowers.
*Passive* : The flowers are not being picked by them.

D. Present Perfect Tense

Rule (3) : यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + has/have + M.V^3 + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो उसे Passive Voice में नीचे दिए गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Structure : *Passive Subject + has/have + been + M.V^3 + by + Passive object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Nutan has written this letter.
*Passive* : This letter has been written by Nutan.
*Active* : He has washed the plates.
*Passive* : The plates have been washed by him.
*Active* : Tendulkar has thrown the balls.
*Passive* : The balls have been thrown by Tendulkar.
*Active* : They have cut all telephone wires.
*Passive* : All telephone wires have been cut.
*Active* : Someone has stolen my watch.
*Passive* : My watch has been stolen.
*Active* : I have told a lie.
*Passive* : A lie has been told by me.

**Note** : Present Perfect Continuous Tense का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता है।

E. Simple Past Tense

**Rule (4)** : यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + M.V^2 + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो उसे Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Structure : *Passive Subject + was/were + M.V^3 + by + Passive Object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : He stole my book.
*Passive* : My book was stolen by him.
*Active* : Ajay spoke the truth.
*Passive* : The truth was spoken by Ajay.
*Active* : The mad dog bit the beggar.
*Passive* : The beggar was bitten by the mad dog.
*Active* : Dinkar wrote this poem.
*Passive* : This poem was written by Dinkar.
*Active* : Binay killed the snake.
*Passive* : The snake was killed by Binay.
*Active* : The police did not catch the thief.
*Passive* : The thief was not caught by the police.

F. Past Continuous Tense.

Rule (5) : यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + was/were + M.V^4 + (M.V + ing) + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *Passive Subject + was/were + being + M.V^3 + by + Passive Object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : He was writing a letter.
*Passive* : A letter was being written by him.
*Active* : The farmers were sowing the seeds.
*Passive* : The seeds were being sown by the farmers.
*Active* : The gardener was watering the plants.
*Passive* : The plants were being watered by the gardener.
*Active* : She was not writing a letter to her husband.
*Passive* : A letter was not being written by her to her husband.
*Active* : The children were making a noise.
*Passive* : A noise was being made by the children.
*Active* : Someone was reading the Ramayana.
*Passive* : The Ramayana was being read. (रेड)

F. Past Perfect Tense

**Rule (6)** : यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + had + M.V^3 + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो *Passive Voice* में नीचे दिये गए structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *Passive Subject + had been + M.V^3 + by + Passive Object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : He had written a letter.
*Passive* : A letter had been written by him.
*Active* : They had not done their homework.
*Passive* : Their homework had not been done.
*Active* : The players had won the match.
*Passive* : The match had been won by the players.
*Active* : The children had eaten all the cakes before the party began.
*Passive* : All the cakes had been eaten by the children before the party began.
*Active* : The farmers had reaped the crops before the rains fell.
*Passive* : The crops had been reaped by the farmers before the rains fell.
*Active* : Somebody had already warned him.
*Passive* : He had already been warned.

**Note** : Past Perfect Continuous Tense का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता।

G. Simple Future Tense

**Rule (7)** : यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + shall/will + MV^3 + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *Passive Subject + shall be/will be + M.V^3 + by + Passive Object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : The postman will deliver the letters.
*Passive* : The letters will be delivered by the postman.
*Active* : People will remember Mother Teresa.
*Passive* : Mother Teresa will be remembered.
*Active* : He will teach me.
*Passive* : I shall be taught by him.
*Active* : No one will answer your question.
*Passive* : Your question will not be answered.
*Active* : Nobody will catch you.
*Passive* : You will not be caught.
*Active* : Someone will read the Gita.
*Passive* : The Gita will be read. (रेड)

**Note** : Future Continuous Tense का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

**II. Future Perfect Tense**

**Rule (8) :** यदि Active sentence– '*Subject + shall have/will have + M.V³ + object*' के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** *Passive Subject + shall/will + have been + M.V³ + by + Passive Object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : The police will have caught the terrorist.
*Passive* : The terrorist will have been caught by the police.

*Active* : The chemist will have closed the shop by ten O'clock.
*Passive* : The shop will have been closed by the chemist by ten O'clock.

*Active* : They will have painted the whole house by two O'clock.
*Passive* : The whole house will have been painted by them by two O'clock.

*Active* : The students will have remembered the teaching of Mr. Thakur.
*Passive* : The teaching of Mr. Thakur will have been remembered.

*Active* : The central government will have electrified five thousand villages by the end of next year.
*Passive* : Five thousand villages will have been electrified by the central government by the end of next year.

*Active* : They will have built the house.
*Passive* : The house will have been built.

**Note :** Future Perfect Continuous Tense का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता।

**विशेष जानकारी योग्य तथ्य :**

सामान्यतः Present Perfect Continuous Tense, Past Perfect Continuous Tense, Future Continuous Tense तथा Future Perfect Continuous Tense के Passive form का प्रयोग आधुनिक English में नहीं होता है।

लेकिन Michael Swan जैसे लोकप्रिय Grammarian के मतानुसार यदि उपरोक्त Tenses के sentences को Passive form में बदलने की आवश्यकता पड़े तो being जोड़कर बनाया जा सकता है। चूँकि इसका प्रयोग आधुनिक English में नहीं के बराबर होता है। इसलिए ऐसा कहा जाता है कि उपरोक्त Tenses का Passive नहीं होता है। पाठकगण यदि उपरोक्त मत की प्रामाणिकता के विषय में जानना चाहते हैं, तो वे Michael Swan द्वारा लिखित पुस्तक Practical English Usage का Page No. 458 देखें जो Oxford University Press से प्रकाशित है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

**1. Present Perfect Continuous Tense**

*Active* : He has been writing a letter for an hour.
*Passive* : A letter has been being written by him for an hour.

*Active* : The girls have been learning music for several months.
*Passive* : Music has been being learnt by the girls for several months.

**2. Past Perfect Continuous Tense**

*Active* : Mr. Thakur had been writing this book for six months.
*Passive* : This book had been being written by Mr. Thakur for six month.

*Active* : Guriya had been waiting for her lover since 1990.
*Passive* : Her lover had been being waited for by Guriya since 1990.

**3. Future Continuous Tense**

*Active* : The boys will be playing hockey.
*Passive* : Hockey will be being played by the boys.

*Active* : All next year the tailor will be sewing the dresses.
*Passive* : All next year the dresses will be being sewed by the tailor.

**4. Future Perfect Continuous Tense**

*Active* : They will have been making the toys for two years.
*Passive* : The toys will have been being made for two years.

*Active* : The students will have been preparing for the NDA examination from 2015.
*Passive* : The NDA examination will have been being prepared by the students from 2015.

**Note :** By + optional agent (Object) should be mentioned only when it is necessary.

## Special Rules for Passive Voice

**Rule (9) :** यदि Active sentence– 'Subject + Modal Auxiliary verbs + M.V¹ + Object' के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** *Passive Subject + Modal Auxiliary verbs + be + M. V³ + by + Passive Object.*

**Modal Auxiliary Verbs :** shall, will, can, could, may, might, should, would, must, ought to etc. को Modal Auxiliary Verbs कहा जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Active : I must help the poor.
*Passive* : The poor must be helped by me.

*Active* : He can speak English.
*Passive* : English can be spoken by him.

*Active* : We should love our country.
*Passive* : Our country should be loved.

*Active* : They may win the match.
*Passive* : The match may be won.

*Active* : One should keep one's promises.
*Passive* : Promises should be kept.

*Active* : They must do it at once.
*Passive* : It must be done at once.

*Active* : Anybody can easily do this work.
*Passive* : This work can be easily done.

*Active* : Nobody could kill the criminal
*Passive* : The criminal could not be killed.

*Active* : Everyone will do his homework.
*Passive* : His homework will be done by everyone.

**Rule (10) :** यदि Active sentence– '*Subject + modal Auxiliary Verbs + have + M.V³ + Object*' के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** *Passive Subject + Modal Auxiliary Verbs + have been + M.V³ + by + Passive Object.*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : We must have respected our elders.
*Passive* : Our elders must have been respected.

*Active* : You could have written the letter.
*Passive* : The letter could have been written by you.

*Active* : He will have solved the sums.
*Passive* : The sums will have been solved by him.

*Active* : He must have done that work.
*Passive* : That work must have been done by him.

*Active* : We ought to have loved our neighbours.
*Passive* : Our neighbours ought to have been loved.

**Rule (11)** : यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + Am/is/are/was/were/has/have/had + Infinitive Verb (to + $V^1$) + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए strucuture के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *Passive Subject + am/is/are/was/were/has/have/had + to be + M.$V^3$ + by + Passive Object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : I am to write a book.
*Passive* : A book is to be written by me.

*Active* : He is to read the Upanishad.
*Passive* : The Upanishad is to be read (रेड) by him.

*Active* : My wife was to buy a necklace.
*Passive* : A necklace was to be bought by my wife.

*Active* : He has to purchase a radio set.
*Passive* : A radio set has to be purchased by him.

*Active* : I have to do it.
*Passive* : It has to be done by me.

*Active* : They had to play badminton.
*Passive* : Badminton had to be played.

**Rule (12)** : यदि Active sentence– *'There + Verb + Noun (Subject) + Infinitive (to + $V^1$)'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *There + Verb + Noun (Subject) + to be + M.$V^3$*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : There is no money to buy.
*Passive* : There is no money to be bought.

*Active* : There is nothing to gain.
*Passive* : There is nothing to be gained.

*Active* : There is time to study.
*Passive* : There is time to be studied.

*Active* : There is nothing to say.
*Passive* : There is nothing to be said.

*Active* : There was time to labour.
*Passive* : There was time to be laboured.

**Rule (13)** : यदि Active sentence– *'It + Verb + Noun + Infinitive (to + $V^1$) + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *It + Verb + Noun + for + Object + to be + M.$V^3$*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : It is time to prepare for the examination.
*Passive* : It is time for the examination to be prepared.

*Active* : It is time to learn computer.
*Passive* : It is time for computer to be learnt.

*Active* : It is time to do our homework.
*Passive* : It is time for our homework to be done.

*Active* : It is now time to play cricket.
*Passive* : It is now time for cricket to be played.

**Rule (14)** : यदि Active sentence– *'Subject + Verb + Noun/Pronoun + Infinitive (to + $V^1$) + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : I like audience to respect me.
*Passive* : I like to be respected.

*Active* : He wants someone to tell a story.
*Passive* : He wants a story to be told.

*Active* : The teacher likes Mohan to read the Ramayana.
*Passive* : The teacher likes the Ramayana to be read (रेड) by Mohan.

*Active* : He wants people to like him.
*Passive* : He wants to be liked (by people).

*Active* : She has to see it or to believe it.
*Passive* : It has to be seen or to be believed by her.

**Rule (15)** : यदि Active sentence– से order / command (आदेश/आज्ञा) के भाव का बोध हो, तो इसे Imperative sentence या Command कहा जाता है।

ऐसे Imperative sentences को Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Switch on the light.
*Passive* : Let the light be switched on.

*Active* : Open the window.
*Passive* : Let the window be opened.

*Active* : Bring a bottle of whisky.
*Passive* : Let a bottle of whisky be brought.

*Active* : Inform the police of the crime.
*Passive* : Let the police be informed of the crime.

*Active* : Shut the door.
*Passive* : Let the door be shut.

*Active* : Post this letter.
*Passive* : Let this letter be posted

*Active* : Don't insult the poor.
*Passive* : Let the poor not be insulted.

*Active* : Don't touch the naked wire.
*Passive* : Let the naked wire not be touched.

*Active* : Don't pluck the mangoes.
*Passive* : Let the mangoes not be plucked.

ध्यान दें :

*Active* : Turn her out.
*Passive* : Let her be turned out.

*Active* : Tell her to read the Gita.
*Passive* : Let her be told to read the Gita.

**Note** : (i) Imperative sentence के Passive में by you का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

(ii) Let के बाद Objective Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है न कि Nominative Case के Pronoun का।

(iii) Imperative sentence में Subject– you छिपा रहता है।

**Rule (16)** : यदि Imperative sentence (in Active Voice) से advice (सलाह) का बोध हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Structure :** *Main word (Passive Subject) + should be + $M.V^3$*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Help the helpless.
*Passive* : The helpless should be helped.

*Active* : Love your country.
*Passive* : Your country should be loved.

*Active* : Don't insult the poor.
*Passive* : The poor should not be insulted.

*Active* : Respect your elders.
*Passive* : Your elders should be respected.

*Active* : Love your neighbours.
*Passive* : Your neighbours should be loved.

**Note :** जब आप वाटकों को Imperative sentence से आदेश/सलाह के भाव का पता न चले तो आप उपरोक्त Rules No. (15) और (16) में से किसी Rule को follow कर Passive में बदल सकते हैं। ध्यान रखें कि भाव अर्थात अर्थ में परिवर्तन न हो।

**Rule (17) :** यदि Imperative sentences– please तथा kindly से स्टार्ट (start– प्रारंभ) हो या लास्ट (last– अंत) हो, तो इससे request के भाव का बोध होता है तथा Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** *You are requested to + $M.V^1$ + Object (Given)*
*or You are requested to + Rest words except please or kindly.*

ध्यान दें : (i) Please तथा kindly का प्रयोग *Passive* Voice में नहीं करें।

(ii) Please तथा kindly के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए Passive Voice में you are requested to का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Please give me a book.
*Passive* : You are requested to give me a book.

*Active* : Take your seat please.
*Passive* : You are requested to take your seat.

*Active* : Kindly post this letter.
*Passive* : You are requested to post this letter.

*Active* : Please give me five hundred rupees.
*Passive* : You are requested to give me five hundred rupees.

*Active* : Please sit down.
*Passive* : You are requested to sit down.

**Rule (18) :** यदि Imperative sentence 'Let' से स्टार्ट हो, अर्थात् *'Let + Indirect Object + $M.V^1$ + Direct Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** *Let + Direct Object + be + $M.V^3$ + by + Indirect Object.*

**Direct Object :** Verb के बाद प्रयुक्त होने वाले वस्तु सूचक शब्द को Direct Object कहते हैं। जैसे— letter, book, pen, matter, work ..... etc.

**Indirect Object :** Verb के बाद प्रयुक्त होने वाले व्यक्ति सूचक शब्द को Indirect Object कहते हैं। जैसे—me, us, you, him, her, it, them.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Let me do this work.
*Passive* : Let this work be done by me.

*Active* : Let her sing a song.
*Passive* : Let a song be sung by her.

*Active* : Let us discuss the matter.
*Passive* : Let the matter be discussed.

**Note :** कुछ ऐसे भी sentences होते हैं जो 'Let' से स्टार्ट हो तथा Let के बाद us का प्रयोग होता है। इससे suggestion (सलाह) का होता है। ऐसे sentences को Passive में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Let us sing
*Passive* : It is suggested that we should sing.

*Active* : Let us play together.
*Passive* : It is suggested that we should play together.

*Active* : Let us work.
*Passive* : It is suggested that we should work.

ध्यान दें :

**Active form :** *Let + us + $M.V^1$ /let + us + $M.V^1$ together*

**Passive form :** *It is suggested that + we + should*

**Rule (19) :** सामान्यतः Intransitive Verb का Passive Voice नहीं होता है। लेकिन यदि Imperative sentence, Intransitive Verb से हो तथा इससे order/advice (आदेश/सलाह) के भाव का बोध हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure :** (i) *You are ordered to + Intransitive Verb— (for order)*
(ii) *You are advised to + Intransitive Verb—(for advice)*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Sit down— *(order)*
*Passive* : You are ordered to sit down.

*Active* : Come here— *(order)*
*Passive* : You are ordered to come here.

*Active* : Work hard— *(advice)*
*Passive* : You are advised to work hard.

## Interrogative Sentences (or, Questions)

- Yes-No questions
- Wh-questions

Interrogative sentences/questions— ऐसे sentences जिनका प्रयोग प्रश्न पूछने के लिए किये जाते हैं। Interrogative sentences/questions कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Are you writing a letter ?
Can you speak Bengali ?
Does he read the Bible ?
Do they fly the kites ?
} Yes–no questions

Who wrote the Mahabharata?
Who did this ?
Why has he told a lie ?
How did you solve the sums ?
} Wh-questions

**(i) Yes-No. questions :** ऐसे questions जो Auxiliary Verb से स्टार्ट होते हैं, Yes– No questions कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Can he lift this box ? Were you doing the work?

**Auxiliary Verbs :** do, does, did, am, is, are, was, were, has, have, had, shall, will, can, could, may, might, should, would, must, ought to ..... को Auxiliary Verbs कहते हैं।

**(ii) Wh-questions :** ऐसे questions जो Wh-words Interrogative words से स्टार्ट होते हैं, Wh-questions कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Who has broken my chair ?
Why have you defeated him ?
What has he done ?

Wh- words/**Interrogative words** : what, when, why, who, how, where, which ..... को wh– words/Interrogative words कहते हैं।

Rule (20) : Auxiliary Verbs से स्टार्ट होनेवाले Interrogative sentences या Yes-No questions को Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए steps को follow कर बदलें।

Step (1) : Yes–No question form को Assertive form में बदलें।

Step (2) : इसके बाद General rules के मुताबिक Passive form में बदलें।

Step (3): Passive form में प्रयुक्त Auxiliary Verb को Subject के पहले रखें।

अंत में questions marks (?) लगा दें। यहाँ देखें कि किस प्रकार उपरोक्त steps को follow कर Passive में बदला जा रहा है। जैसे—

1. *Active* : Does he write a letter ?
Step (1) : He writes a letter.
Step (2) : A letter is written by him.
Step (3) : Is a letter written by him ? *(Passive)*

2. *Active* : Was the doctor examining the patients ?
Step (1) : The doctor was examining the patients.
Step (2) : The patients were being examined by the doctor.
Step (3) : Were the patients being examined by the doctor ? *(Passive)*

3. *Active* : Did he buy a book ?
Step (1) : He bought a book.
Step (2) : A book was bought by him.
Step (3) : Was a book bought by him ? *(Passive)*

4. *Active* : Have you cheated me ?
Step (1) : You have cheated me.
Step (2) : I have been cheated by you.
Step (3) : Have I been cheated by you ? *(Passive)*

5. *Active* : Should the doctor examine her ?
Step (1) : The doctor should examine her.
Step (2) : She should be examined by the doctor.
Step (3) : Should she be examined by the doctor ? *(passive)*

6. *Active* : Will nobody help the poor ?
Step (1) : Nobody will help the poor.
Step (2) : The poor will not be helped.
Step (3) : Will the poor not be helped ? *(Passive)*

7. *Active* : Do machines make these utensils ?
Step (1) : Machines make these utensils.
Step (2) : These utensils are made by machines.
Step (3) : Are these utensils made by machines ? *(Passive)*

8. *Active* : Have you to paint the box ?
Step (1) : You have to paint the box.
Step (2) : The box has to be painted by you.
Step (3) : Has the box to be painted by you ? *(Passive)*

9. *Active* : Is she to write a book ?
Step (1) : She is to write a book.
Step (2) : A book is to be written by her.
Step (3) : Is a book to be written by her ? *(Passive)*

10. *Active* : Are the children eating sweets now ?
Step (1) : The children are eating sweets now.
Step (2) : Sweets are being eaten by the children now.
Step (3) : Are sweets being eaten by the children now ? *(Passive)*

**Rule (21)** : Wh-words or Interrogative words से स्टार्ट होने वाले Interrogative sentences को Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए steps के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Wh-words or Interrogative words को Passive बनाते समय छिपा दें।

Step (2) : परिणामस्वरूप प्राप्त Yes-No question को Assertive form में लिखें।

Step (3) : इसके बाद General rules को follow कर Passive form में बदलें।

Step (4) : Passive form में प्रयुक्त Auxiliary Verbs को Subject के पहले रखें। अंत में question marks (?) लगा दें।

Step (5): Wh-words/Interrogative words को Passive form के प्रारंभ में जोड़ दें। यहाँ देखें कि किस प्रकार Wh-questions को उपरोक्त steps के आधार पर Passive में बदला जा रहा है। जैसे—

1. *Active* : Why does she teach the children ? *(Wh-question)*
Step (1) : Does she teach the children ? *(Why is hidden)*
Step (2) : She teaches the children. *(Assertive form)*
Step (3) : The children are taught by her ? *(Passive form)*
Step (4) : Are the children taught by her ? *(Yes-No question form)*
Step (5) : Why are the children taught by her ? *(Passive of Wh-question—why को जोड़ने पर)*

2. *Active* : How did he solve the sum ? *(Wh-question)*
Step (1) : Did he solve the sum ? *(How is hidden)*
Step (2) : He solved the sum. *(Assertive form)*
Step (3) : The sum was solved by him. *(Passive form)*
Step (4) : Was the sum solved by him ? *(Yes-No question form)*
Step (5) : How was the sum solved by him ? *(Passive of Wh-question—how को जोड़ने पर)*

3. *Active* : Where do they buy the books ? *(Wh-question)*
Step (1) : Do they buy the books ? *(Where is hidden)*
Step (2) : They buy the books. *(Assertive form)*
Step (3) : The books are bought (by them). *(Passive form)*
Step (4) : Are the books bought (by them). *(Yes-No question*
Step (5) : Where are the books bought (by them) *(Passive of Wh-question—where को जोड़ने पर)*

4. *Active* : When were you playing football ? *(Wh-question)*
Step (1) : Were you playing football ? *(When is hidden)*
Step (2) : You were playing football. *(Assertive form)*
Step (3) : Football was being played by you. *(Passive form)*
Step (4) : Was football being played by you ? *(Yes-No question)*
Step (5) : When was football being played by you ? *(Passive of Wh-question—when को जोड़ने पर)*

5. *Active* : Where was he making a noise ? *(Wh-question)*
Step (1) : Was he making a noise ? *(Where is hidden)*
Step (2) : He was making a noise. *(Assertive form)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Step (3) : A noise was being made by him. *(Passive form)*
Step (4) : Was a noise being made by him ? *(Yes-No question)*
Step (5) : Where was a noise being made by him ?
(Passive of Wh-question—where को जोड़ने पर)

**Note** : (i) Objects के absent रहने पर, *what, how many + P.C.N., how much + S.U.N.* से स्टार्ट होने वाले Active sentences का Passive Voice नीचे दिये गए examples के आधार पर बनावें—

**Examples** :

*Active* : What does she eat ?
*Passive* : What is eaten by her ?

*Active* : What has he done ?
*Passive* : What has been done by him ?

*Active* : What were you doing ?
*Passive* : What was being done by you ?

*Active* : How many books do you read ?
*Passive* : How many books are read (रेड) by you ?

*Active* : How much milk have you drunk ?
*Passive* : How much milk has been drunk by you ?

(ii) Interrogative sentence या Wh-question जिसमें 'who' का प्रयोग रहता है, का Passive Voice नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *(i) By whom + Auxiliary Verb + subject + M.V$^3$ + ?*
*(ii) Who + Auxiliary Verb + Subject + M. V$^3$ + by + ?*

ध्यान दें : By whom और who ..... by दोनों का प्रयोग अंग्रेजी भाषा में होता है, लेकिन Modern English में who—by का प्रयोग प्रचलन में है। इसलिए आप पाठकगण को भी who—by का प्रयोग करना चाहिए।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : Who taught you English ?
*Passive* : (i) By whom were you taught English ?
(ii) Who were you taught English by ?

*Active* : Who wrote the Mahabharata ?
*Passive* : (i) By whom was the Mahabharata written ?
(ii) Who was the Mahabharata written by ?

*Active* : Who wrote this book ?
*Passive* : (i) By whom was this book written ?
(ii) Who was this book written by ?

*Active* : Who has stolen her pen ?
*Passive* : (i) By whom has her pen been stolen ?
(ii) Who has her pen been stolen by ?

*Active* : Who taught her Russian ?
*Passive* : (i) By whom was she taught Russian ?
(ii) Who was she taught Russian by ?

*Active* : Who was teaching him English ?
*Passive* : (i) By whom was he being taught English ?
(ii) Who was he being taught English by ?

(iii) Interrogative sentence or Wh-question जिसमें which/whom का प्रयोग रहता है, को *Passive Voice* में नीचे दिये गए examples की तरह बदला जाता है।

**Examples** :

*Active* : Which teacher taught you ?
*Passive* : (i) By which teacher were you taught ?
(ii) Which teacher were you taught by ?

*Active* : Whom did you laugh at ?
*Passive* : Who was laughed at by you ?

*Active* : Whom will you murder ?
*Passive* : Who will be murdered by you ?

*Active* : Whom have you helped ?
*Passive* : Who has been helped by you ?

*Active* : Whom do you like most ?
*Passive* : Who is liked most by you ?

*Active* : Which man abused her ?
*Passive* : (i) By which man was she abused ?
(ii) Which man was she abused by ?

*Active* : Which girl loves Mukesh ?
*Passive* : (i) By which girl is Mukesh loved ?
(ii) Which girl is Mukesh loved by ?

**Rule (22)** : यदि *Active sentence– 'Subject + Verb + Preposition + Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए Structure के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

**Structure** : *Passive Subject + Auxiliary Verbs + M.V$^3$ + Preposition +by + Passive Object.*

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : The judge enquired into the case.
*Passive* : The case was enquired into by the judge.

*Active* : The girls laughed at him.
*Passive* : He was laughed at by the girls.

*Active* : Her father is looking after her.
*Passive* : She is being looked after by her father.

*Active* : She was searching for her lover.
*Passive* : Her lover was being searched for. (by her)

*Active* : He arrived at the conclusion.
*Passive* : The conclusion was arrived at by him.

**Note** : (i) enquired into, laughed at, looking after, searching for, arrived at etc के साथ प्रयुक्त Prepositions को Passive में नहीं हटाया जाता है, प्रयुक्त Preposition के बाद by का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे कि उपरोक्त उदाहरण में दिखाया गया है।

(ii) कुछ महत्त्वपूर्ण Phrasal Verbs दिए जा रहे हैं, इन्हें कंठाग्र करें। इससे आप पाठकों को Passive में बदलने में सहूलियत होगी।

| Phrasal Verb | अर्थ | Phrasal Verb | अर्थ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Ask for | = माँग करना | 2. break down | = खराब होना |
| 3. break out | = फैलना | 4. break up | = समाप्त होना |
| 5. bring up | = पालन पोषण करना | 6. come across | = संयोग से मिलना |
| 7. eat into | = नष्ट करना | 8. give up | = परित्याग करना |
| 9. look after | = देखभाल करना | 10. look into | = जाँच करना |
| 11. make out | = समझना | 12. run away | = भाग जाना |
| 13. see off | = विदा करना | 14. take over | = पदभार ग्रहण करना |
| 15. send for | = बुलावा भेजना | | |

(iii)

| Words | Prepositions | Words | Prepositions |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. supply | with | 2. surprised | at |
| 3. sympathise | with | 4. reply | to |
| 5. provide | with | 6. pleased | with |
| 7. prefer | to | 8. interest | in |
| 9. Insist | on | 10. fire | at |
| 11. congratulate | on | 12. arrived | at/in |
| 13. compare | with/to | 14. aim | at |
| 15. acquaint | with | | |

उपरोक्त words के साथ प्रयुक्त Prepositions का कंठाग्र करने के साथ और भी कंठाग्र करें।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(iv) Adverbs of manner जैसे—badly, well, fast, hard, ...ately beautifully ..... etc का प्रयोग भी Verb + Preposition के ...ा Active sentence में रह सकता है। ऐसे sentences का Passive इस ...कार बनाया जाता है।

...ान दें
Active : My mother looks after me well.
Passive : I am well looked after (by my mother).

Note : Adverbs of manner का प्रयोग Passive Voice में Verb के ...ाथ किया जाता है।

Rule (23) : Passive में 'by' के अलावे दूसरे उपयुक्त Preposition ...का प्रयोग होता है।

...ान लें :

| Words | Prepositions | Words | Prepositions |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. pleased | with | 2. know | to |
| 3. interested | in | 4. satisfied | with |
| 5. astonished | at | 6. displeased | with |
| 7. disinterested | in | 8. dissatisfied | with |
| 9. disgusted | with | 10. dependent | on |
| 11. amazed | at | 12. annoyed | at |
| 13. prepared | for | 14. addicted | to |
| 15. compared | to | 16. knocked | at |
| 17. invited | to | 18. listen | to |
| 19. quarrelled | with | 20. preferred | to |

...ब इन वाक्यों को देखें :
Active : Mr. Mishra knows me.
Passive : (i) I am known to Mr. Mishra. (√)
(ii) I am known by Mr. Mishra. (×)

Active : Sudhir Babu satisfied me.
Passive : (i) I was satisfied with Sudhir Babu. (√)
(ii) I was satisfied by Sudhir Babu. (×)

Active : His behaviour shocked me.
Passive : (i) I was shocked at his behaviour. (√)
(ii) I was shocked by his behaviour. (×)

Active : Someone displeased her.
Passive : (i) She was displeased with. (√)
(ii) She was displeased by. (×)

Active : Her result surprised the teacher.
Passive : (i) The teacher was surprised at her result. (√)
(ii) The teacher was surprised by her result. (×)

Rule (24) : यदि Active sentence —*'Subject + Verb + Object + complement'* के *Structure* पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए examples (उदाहरणों) के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Examples :
Active : They elected him secretary.
Passive : He was elected secretary.
Active : They made him general.
Passive : He was made general.
Active : We crowned him king.
Passive : He was crowned king.
Active : We made him captain.
Passive : He was made captain.
Active : We appointed him cashier.
Passive : He was appointed cashier.
Active : They selected him manager.
Passive : He was selected manager.

अग्रलिखित वाक्यों में आप देख रहे हैं कि Verb के बाद प्रयुक्त Object को Passive का Subject बनाकर सामान्य नियम के मुताबिक Passive में बदला गया है। ध्यान रखें कि Complement को Passive में Verb के बाद रखा जाता है।

Rule (25) : यदि Active sentence—*'Subject + Verb + Indirect Object + Direct Object'* के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

Indirect Object—me, him, her ..... etc, Direct Object—book, pen, letter, novel, ..... etc.

Step (1) : Indirect Object को Passive का Subject बना दें।
Step (2) : Passive में बदलने के सामान्य नियम को follow करें।
*or,* Step (1) : Direct object को passive का subject बना दें।
Step (2) : Passive में बदलने के समान्य नियम को follow करें।

ध्यान रखें : Passive में Passive Indirect Object के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक Preposition—to/for का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है, ताकि अर्थ स्पष्ट हो जाय। Preposition to/for silent भी रहता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :
Active : The teacher taught her English.
Passive : (i) She was taught English by the teacher.
(ii) English was taught her by the teacher.

Active : The director offers him a job.
Passive : (i) He is offered a job by the director.
(ii) A job is offered to him by the director.

Active : The children told me the truth.
Passive : (i) I was told the truth by the children.
(ii) The truth was told to me by the children.

Active : Her husband bought her an earring.
Passive : (i) She was bought an earring by her husband.
(ii) An earring was bought for her by her husband.

Active : My grandmother told me stories.
Passive : (i) I was told stories by my grandmother.
(ii) Stories were told me by my grandmother.

Rule (26) : यदि *Active* sentence—*'Subject + Verb + Object + infinitive without'to'/or $V^1$'* के *Structure* पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए steps के आधार पर बदला जाता है। उपरोक्त Structure में Object का प्रयोग last में रह सकता है और नहीं भी रह सकता है।

Step (1) : Active Verb के बाद प्रयुक्त Object को Passive का Subject बना दें।
Step (2) : उपयुक्त Auxiliary Verb का प्रयोग करें।
Step (3) : $M.V^3$ (Past Participle) का प्रयोग करें।
Step (4) : Object के बाद प्रयुक्त Verb का Infinitive form लिखें, अर्थात् Verb के आगे to जोड़ दें।
Step (5) : Active sentence के last में प्रयुक्त Object का प्रयोग ज्यों-का-त्यों करें। Object के नहीं रहने पर नहीं करें।
Step (6) : जरूरत के मुताबिक by + Passive Object का प्रयोग करें।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :
Active : They made me laugh.
Passive : I was made to laugh.
Active : He saw me sing a song.
Passive : I was seen to sing a song by him.
Active : We saw him run away.
Passive : He was seen to run away by us.
Active : Binay made her weep.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

*Passive* : She was made to weep by him.
*Active* : He found the student guilty.
*Passive* : The student was found to be guilty by him.
*Active* : I saw Gurya watch T.V.
*Passive* : Gurya was seen to watch T.V. by me.

**Rule (27)** : यदि Active sentence—'*Subject + ask + Object + if/whether + Clause* or *Subject + ask + Object + Wh-word/Interrogative word + Clause*' के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए steps के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Ask/Asks/Asked के बाद प्रयुक्त Object को Passive का Subject बना दें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Auxiliary Verb + M.V$^3$ (Past Participle) का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : by + Passive Object का प्रयोग नहीं करें।

Step (4) : If/whether + Clause or Wh-word/Interrogative word + Clause का प्रयोग ज्यों का त्यों करें।

**Note** : (i) Ask, Asks, Asked, enquire, enquires, enquired ..... etc. को Reporting Verb कहा जाता है।

(ii) Clause—S + V + O को कहा जाता है।

(iii) by + Passive Object के बिना भी अर्थ स्पष्ट हो जाता है, इसलिए इसका प्रयोग नहीं करें।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : She asked me if I could kill a lion.
*Passive* : I was asked if I could kill a lion.

*Active* : He asked me who had beaten me.
*Passive* : I was asked who had beaten me.

*Active* : Ajay asked Veena whether she had taught his brother.
*Passive* : Veena was asked whether she had taught his brother.

*Active* : He asked me what my name was.
*Passive* : I was asked what my name was.

*Active* : I asked the little girl why she was sad.
*Passive* : The little girl was asked why she was sad.

**Rule (28)** : यदि Active sentence—'*Subject + ask/tell/order/command/request/advise/warn + Object + Infinitive (to + V$^1$) + other words*' के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice नीचे दिये गए steps के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : Ask, tell, order, command, request, advise, warn आदि के बाद प्रयुक्त Object को *Passive* का Subject बना दें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Auxiliary Verb + M.V$^3$ (Past Participle) का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : by + Passive Object का प्रयोग नहीं करें। क्योंकि इसके बिना भी sentence का अर्थ स्पष्ट हो जाता है।

Step (4) : Infinitive (to + V$^1$) + Other words का प्रयोग ज्यों का त्यों करें।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : He asked Binay to switch off the T.V.
*Passive* : Binay was asked to switch off the T.V.

*Active* : The doctor advised me to take medicine in time.
*Passive* : I was advised to take medicine in time.

*Active* : He requested me to come next day.
*Passive* : I was requested to come next day.

*Active* : He ordered me to bring a bottle of whisky.
*Passive* : I was ordered to bring a bottle of whisky.

*Active* : He forbade me to make a noise in the class.
*Passive* : I was forbidden to make a noise in the class.

**Rule (29)** : 'Let' का प्रयोग Main Verb के रूप में होता है। Main Verb के रूप में इसका अर्थ allow (अनुमति देना) होता है। Let के बाद Passive to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

ध्यान दें

*Active* : She let me go.
*Passive* : I was let go.
I was let to go.

**Rule (30)** : यदि Active sentence—'*Subject + believe/find/claim/consider/know/report/say/think + that + clause*' के Structure पर आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए steps के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : that के बाद प्रयुक्त Clause के Subject को Passive Subject बना कर लिखें।

Step (2) : उपयुक्त Auxiliary Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : believe, find, claim, consider, know, report, say, think आदि के Past Participle (M.V$^3$) form का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : Infinitive (with 'to') तथा to be + Noun/Adjective का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक करें।

Step (5) : by + Passive Object का प्रयोग न करें।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : We believe that the Bihar government is honest.
*Passive* : The Bihar government is believed to be honest.

*Active* : They felt that the teachers were laborious.
*Passive* : The teachers were felt to be laborious.

*Active* : People know that some girls grow wise early.
*Passive* : Some girls are known to grow wise early.

*Active* : Everyone thinks that the educational system is bad.
*Passive* : The educational system is thinked to be bad.

*Active* : The students consider that the teachers are wise.
*Passive* : The teachers are considered to be wise.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों का Passive इस प्रकार भी बनाया जाता है।

**Structure** : *it + Auxiliary Verb + M.V$^3$ + that + clause*

1. It is believed that the Bihar government is honest.
2. It was felt that the teachers were laborious.
3. It is known that some girls grow wise early.
4. It is thought that the educational system is bad.
5. It is considered that the teachers are wise.

**Rule (31)** : यदि Active sentence—'*Subject + Verb + that Clause*' के Structure पर आधारित हो तथा that के बाद प्रयुक्त clause का Verb Passive Voice में हो, तो Passive Voice में नीचे दिये गए steps के आधार पर बदला जाता है।

Step (1) : प्रयुक्त Subject + Verb का प्रयोग करें।
Step (2) : that + Subject + Verb को हटा दें।
Step (3) : to be + Past Participle (M.V$^3$) का प्रयोग करें।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : She wants that she should be respected.
*Passive* : She wants to be respected.

*Active* : Veena likes that she should not be insulted.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



*Passive* : Veena likes not to be insulted.
*Active* : The headman wants that he should be regarded in the village.
*Passive* : The headman wants to be regarded in the village.

**Rule (32)** : यदि Active sentence—'*Subject + Verb + Object + Conjunction (and) + Verb + Object + other words*' के Structure का आधारित हो, तो Passive Voice में इस प्रकार बदला जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

*Active* : The police arrested the terrorist and sent him to jail.
*Passive* : The terrorist was arrested and (he was) sent to jail.
*Active* : The robbers looted the bank and took away five lakh rupees.
*Passive* : The bank was looted and five lakh rupees were taken away.
*Active* : Mr. Thakur wrote the book and published it.
*Passive* : The book was written and (it was) published by Mr. Thakur.

## Use of Passive Voice

**Rule (1)** : Subject का पता नहीं होने पर Passive Voice का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The girl was failed in the examination.
The chair was sent there.

**Rule (2)** : Object को emphasis (जोर डालना) करने के लिए Passive Voice का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The dog was killed by him.
This book is written by Mr. A. K. Thakur.

**Rule (3)** : Sentence को polite बनाने के लिए भी Passive Voice का प्रयोग होता है। इस Case में by + Passive Object का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे—

Many students have been passed.
It is said that the court will punish the criminal.

**Rule (4)** : जब Subject सबको पता होता है, तो Passive Voice का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. Hindi is spoken all over the country.
2. Telephone was invented in 1876.
   *ग्राहम बेल के बारे में लगभग सबको पता है।*

**Rule (5)** : विज्ञान और तकनीकि विषयों में भी Passive Voice का प्रयोग होता है। सामान्यतः by + Passive Object का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, क्योंकि Object का कोई महत्व नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Wheat is grown in Punjab.
Methane gas is produced when sodium acetate and soda lime are combined.

## From Passive Voice to Active Voice

**Passive Voice से Active Voice में बदलने का नियम—**

Step (1) : Passive Voice के Object को Active Voice में Subject की जगह लिखें।

Step (2) : Passive Subject के Number, Person तथा Active sentence के Tense के मुताबिक Verb का प्रयोग करें।

[जरूरत के मुताबिक Auxiliary Verb तथा Main Verb के उपयुक्त form का प्रयोग करें]

Step (3) : Passive Voice के Subject को Active Voice में Object की जगह लिखें।

Step (4) : by Preposition को हटा दें। Active sentence में by के अलावे दूसरे Prepositions—with, to at आदि का प्रयोग रह सकता है। इन्हें Passive में हटा दें।

**Note** : कभी-कभी Passive Voice के sentence में by + Object (optional agent) का प्रयोग नहीं रहता है। इस स्थिति में इन शब्दों को Passive sentence के भाव/अर्थ को understood कर लेना चाहिए और Active Voice के sentence का Subject बनाना चाहिए। ऐसा नहीं करने पर Passive Voice का अर्थ Active Voice में स्पष्ट नहीं हो पायेगा।

**अब इन वाक्यों को गौर से पढ़ें, सोचें और समझें :**

1. *Passive* : Nests are built by birds.
   *Active* : Birds build nests.
2. *Passive* : A song is being sung by Lata.
   *Active* : Lata is singing a song.
3. *Passive* : The crops have been ruined by the rain.
   *Active* : The rain has ruined the crops.
4. *Passive* : My book was stolen by these girls.
   *Active* : These girls stole my book.
5. *Passive* : A letter was being written by Sweta to her mother.
   *Active* : Sweta was writing a letter to her mother.
6. *Passive* : The match had been won by them.
   *Active* : They had won the match.
7. *Passive* : My work will be done by me.
   *Active* : I shall do my work.
8. *Passive* : The name of Subhash Chandra Bose will have been heard by you.
   *Active* : You will have heard the name of Subhash Chandra Bose.
9. *Passive* : A tree has been cut by me.
   *Active* : I have cut a tree.
10. *Passive* : Five rupees were lent me by Binay.
    *Active* : Binay lent me five rupees.
11. *Passive* : He was laughed at by the girls.
    *Active* : The girls laughed at him.
12. *Passive* : My pens have been stolen.
    *Active* : Someone has stolen my pens.
13. *Passive* : An honest man is trusted by all.
    *Active* : All trust an honest man.
14. *Passive* : By whom was he taught Hindi ?
    *Active* : Who taught him Hindi ?
15. *Passive* : Were you being taught by her ?
    *Active* : Was she teaching you ?
16. *Passive* : Let this letter be posted.
    *Active* : Post this letter.
17. *Passive* : He was elected chairman.
    *Active* : They elected him chairman.
18. *Passive* : It is suggested that we should play.
    *Active* : Let us play.
19. *Passive* : I was told to wait outside.
    *Active* : Someone told me to wait outside.
20. *Passive* : Anshu was made to weep by Binay.
    *Active* : Binay made Anshu weep.
21. *Passive* : I was displeased with her.
    *Active* : She displeased me.
22. *Passive* : Mr. Pandey is expected to buy a car next year.
    *Active* : We expect that Mr. Pandey will buy a car next year.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

23. *Passive* : The answer must be written in blue ink.
*Active* : You must write the answer in blue ink.
24. *Passive* : The bridge had to be built.
*Active* : They had to build the bridge.
25. *Passive* : You are requested to keep quiet.
*Active* : Please keep quiet.

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Change the following sentences into Passive Voice :*

A. Simple Present Tense

1. He helps the poor.
2. I know her.
3. Veena does not sing a song.
4. Who teaches you physics ?
5. We expect good news.
6. Everyone does his work.
7. What do you want ?
8. My father sends him five hundred rupees every month.
9. Your shopkeeper sells a special kind of coffee.
10. The rich hate the poor.
11. I don't know the reason of his admission.
12. Does he help his wife ?
13. The teacher teaches you English.
14. This pot contains ink.
15. My elder brother manages the house.
16. The farmer grows wheat in his field.
17. Do all the students bring their books ?
18. The police looks into the case.
19. What does she do ?
20. Why do you not finish your homework ?
21. The postman delivers the letters.
22. The boys play cricket.
23. He does not make a noise.
24. Why do you not help me ?
25. Does the gardener water the plants ?

B. Present Continuous Tense

26. Veena is cooking the dinner.
27. The girls are learning their lessons.
28. The students are writing letters to their parents.
29. She is telling a lie.
30. The gardener is plucking flowers.
31. Mukesh is driving a motorcar.
32. The children are flying kites.
33. Is Mr. Prasad reading the Ramayana ?
34. Why are you wasting your time ?
35. That mechanic is repairing the car.
36. The workers are cutting down the trees.
37. Are these people beating the ball ?
38. The tailor is sewing the clothes.
39. Who is sending you these things ?
40. Is the mason building the apartment ?
41. This man is speaking the truth.
42. Who is laughing at the beggar ?
43. The milkman is milking the buffalo.
44. The farmer is not ploughing the field.
45. What is Veena doing ?
46. The peon is ringing the bell.
47. Why is she cooking the food ?
48. How is he solving the sums ?
49. They are picking some flowers.
50. We are solving the problems.
51. He has read the Upanishad.
52. The servant has done his duty.
53. Someone has stolen her goat.
54. Bhavna has broken this glass.
55. Have you ever seen a tiger ?
56. Why has Binay not completed his work ?
57. Who has stolen her purse ?
58. These boys have eaten all the mangoes.
59. Has he written this book ?
60. She has lent me twenty rupees.
61. They have spent all the money.
62. Have you taken your meal ?
63. He has not informed his parents yet.
64. How has he done it ?
65. Why has the man sent for the doctor ?
66. I have invited him to the party.
67. You have not read the Gita.
68. The mad dog has bitten this man.
69. Have you not answered all the questions ?
70. Mr. Jha has sold the house.
71. Australia has won the T.V.S. cup.
72. The maidservant has already washed the plates.
73. The terrorists have exploded the bomb.
74. The magistrate has sent him to jail.
75. They have invited me to the party.

D. Simple Past Tense

76. He stole her purse.
77. Sudhir Jee employed ten men.
78. He did not aim at the hare.
79. Did she tell a lie ?
80. Did he not make a noise ?
81. He replied to all the questions.
82. We refused them admission.
83. The judge forgave the criminal for his fault.
84. She watched T.V.
85. Rahul painted this picture.
86. Nilu knitted the sweater.
87. Who taught you Mathematics ?
88. Where did he buy this chair ?
89. Why did the court punish him ?
90. The dentist pulled out the two teeth of my mother.
91. The shopkeeper gave me two kilos of sugar.
92. My uncle taught English in High school, Jajpur.
93. I refused his admission.
94. Did he sweep the rooms ?
95. The fisherman caught the fishes.
96. I gave him a book.
97. My grandmother told me a story.
98. His father paid the school fees.
99. Radha loved Krishna.
100. The servant watered the flowering plants.

E. Past Continuous Tense

101. The children were flying the kites.
102. The hunter was shooting the tiger.
103. The milkman was milking the cow.
104. The boys were learning their lessons.
105. The peon was ringing the bell.
106. Were they doing their homework ?
107. Why were they writing the letters ?
108. He was knocking at the door.
109. What was he doing ?

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The children were making a noise.
The mechanics were repairing the car.
The principal was giving away the prizes.
She was drawing a beautiful picture.
Who was beating my daughter ?
Were they throwing stones at the beggar ?
Why was the teacher not teaching the students ?
She was writing a letter to her lover.
The girls were playing a football match.
He was answering the question.
She was teaching him.
The doctor was examining the patients.
The spectators were watching the match.
Was she writing a story ?
We were expecting good news.
His servant was sweeping the house.

**Past Perfect Tense**
The postman had delivered the letters.
They had made him chairman.
The bankers had already opened the gate.
He had never visited Agra before.
I had finished my work by 4 P.M.
He had already missed the train.
The cricketers had played two matches by 4 P.M.
Who had invited you to the party ?
Why had you not prepared your lessons ?
Nobody had done anything.
I had taught the students.
The boys had eaten the cakes.
He had informed me of the accident.
They had sold their oxen.
Mukesh had broken the glass.
Somebody had stolen my handkerchief.
The director had warned the students to pay the fees.
Nobody had answered the questions.
The children had not done their work.
We had disturbed him.
How had you solved the problem ?
The S.P. had arrested the robbers.
The father had punished his son.
The painter had painted the window.
He had made several mistakes.

**G. Simple Future Tense**
Mr Thakur will teach the students.
He will help me.
People will remember Gandhijee.
The students will welcome the principal.
My younger brother will blame me.
No one will do anything against me.
The little girls will read the newspaper.
Somebody will tease the dog.
Everyone will remember him.
I shall do this work tomorrow.
I shall discuss the matter next day.
The doctor will not admit the serious patients.
Will you give me some money ?
Why will you write a letter ?
Which book will you read tomorrow ?
Who will do this work ?
She will do her duty.
The little boys will catch the birds.
Will you look after her ?
Veena will meet me at Bishnupur.
The police will look into the matter.
The principal will not punish him.
She will give me a mobile.
My father will visit us tomorrow.
The farmer will sow the seeds.

**H. Future Perfect Tense**
He will have planted a tree.
He will have read the Mahabharata.
She will have sold her necklace.
Will you have written a letter ?
The people will have bought some fruits.
The police will have caught the terrorists.
You will have cleared your account.
Mr. Pathak will have met his son.
The inspector will have inspected the spot.
The terrorists will have destroyed the city.
The girls will have plucked the flowers.
Why will he have cheated me ?
How shall I have finished this work ?
I shall have taught the students by tomorrow morning.
The judge will have forgiven the innocent.
One will have done one's duty.
Shall I have cast my vote in favour of BJP ?

**Miscellaneous**

Q. 2. *Change the following sentences into Passive Voice—*

1. The boy cannot lift this box.
2. We must help the poor.
3. India may win the match.
4. We should love our country.
5. One must do one's duty.
6. The people may have known the truth.
7. You should help your neighbour.
8. I shall have bought a car.
9. One should love one's country.
10. My wife is to buy a scooter.
11. Someone is to help the helpless.
12. He has to do this work.
13. The teacher has to distribute prizes among the students.
14. The postman had to deliver the letters.
15. The doctor was to examine the patients.
16. I was to buy some books.
17. They switched off the light.
18. The criminals cut down the telephone wires.
19. A car ran over a child.
20. I have to do this work.
21. The rich often laugh at the poor.
22. The police charged him with murder.
23. We must take care of my health.
24. Someone has stolen my handkerchief.
25. The editor has to check the manuscript.
26. Her behaviour disgusts me.
27. The glass contains milk.
28. The news surprised me.
29. Gardening interests my mother.
30. I cannot please her.
31. I know her.
32. His behaviour amused us.
33. His conduct amazed them.
34. Shut the gate.
35. Obey your parents.
36. Never tell a lie.
37. Please bring me a glass of water.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



38. Let him play the match.
39. Don't starve the ox.
40. Don't hate the poor.
41. Don't laugh at others.
42. Carry out my orders.
43. Please, help her in her hour of need.
44. The robbers cut down the telephone wires.
45. The council will discuss the matter.
46. People elected him an MLA.
47. The children recite a poem.
48. Subhash plays the piano.
49. She sings a song.
50. The principal delivered a lecture.
51. Somebody has stolen my note book.
52. People all over the world know Bapu.
53. Someone has given her a gift.
54. Nilu is flying a kite.
55. The principal refused the students' admittance.
56. Mr. Thakur teaches them English.
57. His mother gave me a birthday present.
58. Your parents gave you a good education.
59. Mr. Khanna presented his daughter a new doll.
60. The gardener has watered the plants.
61. Do it.
62. Let us go for a picnic.
63. Please, help me in this bad condition.
64. Is she reading a novel ?
65. Where did you find this pen ?
66. Binay objected to his proposal.
67. People called Pandit Nehru, Chacha.
68. It is time to take breakfast.
69. Mr. Choudhary has submitted his thesis.
70. We believe that smoking is injurious to health.
71. A bus knocked the boy down.
72. The teacher noticed the students to complete their assignments.
73. The management has closed the classes.
74. The education minister opened the book fair.
75. The mason is building the boundary wall.
76. Who taught you grammar ?
77. Your habits make you slave.
78. Don't insult the helpless.
79. The jury found the prisoner guilty.
80. They have sent the telegram.
81. Who broke this chair ?
82. They appointed him governor.
83. Somebody stole my book yesterday.
84. Your friends drank a whole barrel of whisky at the party.
85. Someone has broken one of my cups.
86. People speak English all over the world.
87. We have warned them.
88. We switched off the light.
89. Advertise these posts.
90. The facts justified our actions.
91. The flood has swept away many villages.
92. Kalidas wrote Shakuntala.
93. Valmiki wrote the Ramayana.
94. All laughed at her.
95. Cats catch mice.
96. A stone struck me on the road.
97. Mr. Thakur gave him a lift.
98. Who did this ?
99. We painted the window red.
100. Never deceive a friend.

Q. 3. *Change the following sentences into Active Voice.*

1. My brother is helped by me.
2. Let it be done.
3. This book was brought here by Mukesh.
4. A letter will be written by him.
5. My book has been stolen.
6. A song is sung by Sweta.
7. The harmonium is played by Azadcha.
8. The terrorists have been caught by the police.
9. By whom were you taught Russian ?
10. All my instructions have been carried out by you.
11. You are wanted outside.
12. The electric wires have been cut by the dacoits.
13. You are known to all.
14. A letter has to be written by him.
15. The files were thrown away.
16. Who was this book written by ?
17. Let this letter be read.
18. Everyone was satisfied with him.
19. Will this work be done by him ?
20. By whom will you be helped ?
21. How was this journey liked by you ?
22. This building was built last year.
23. Mangoes are being sold by him.
24. By whom was this poem composed ?
25. The enemy has been defeated by our army.
26. I was seen by his sister.
27. She was chosen leader.
28. The steam-engine was invented by James Watt.
29. The cat was killed by the dog.
30. Honey is made by bees.
31. The weak should not be insulted.
32. The light has been put out.
33. A reward was given to me by the headmaster.
34. Promises should be kept.
35. The speaker's speech is loudly cheered.
36. Let the order be given.
37. The door is opened by me.
38. Good news is expected.
39. Why should I be suspected by you ?
40. He was appointed governor.
41. By whom was this done ?
42. What has been done by him ?
43. How much wheat is exported every year ?
44. Were they abused by her ?
45. The poor should be helped.
46. She is known to work hard.
47. A week is made of seven days.
48. Something should be done by the government for us.
49. It is time for the electric bill to be paid.
50. The answer must be written in ink by you.
51. I was recommended another lawyer.
52. Many a person has been saved from the man-eaters by the hunters.
53. Will these happy days be ever forgotten by me ?
54. You are requested to persist here.

Q. 4. *Change the following sentences into Passive Voice.*

1. The criminal kicked the lady.
2. Somebody invited me to dinner.
3. People speak Maithili all over Mithila.
4. Mr. Mishra is sketching the figure.
5. Mr. Prasad is putting the files in his shelf.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



6. The cobbler has repaired our shoes.
7. The carpenter had bought an axe.
8. The driver may drive the car.
9. He asked me a question.
10. Close the door at once.
11. Love the children.
12. Take your chair, please.
13. Kindly, read the Gita.
14. Does computer store the data ?
15. Have these students asked these questions ?
16. Must you send the cheque by post ?
17. What does he do in the office ?
18. Which girl abused him ?
19. How do you solve this sum ?
20. They have nothing to gain.
21. There is no time to lose.
22. Respect your teacher.
23. Do this work.
24. Please enter by this gate.
25. Pay the room rent.
26. Don't cheat the honest.
27. Honour the patriot.
28. It is time to accept the challenge.
29. He likes people to call him'Netaji'.
30. There is nothing to do.
31. I ordered the servant to go out from the office.
32. Let us work together.
33. The teacher asked the students to come in time.
34. Let him inform the police station.
35. The director offered me a chair.
36. They did not elect him captain.
37. I objected to her proposal.
38. Mothers bring up children.
39. He allowed me to come in.
40. The police have locked the robber up.
41. The news pleased him.
42. The people claim that the poor are exploited.
43. We know that he has done this work.
44. We feel that he does nothing.
45. Have they to buy a car ?
46. Who will not do this ?
47. The class teacher appointed him monitor.
48. The boys caught the bird and killed it.
49. I wrote the letter and posted it.
50. Some children did not attend the class.
51. I did not trust anybody.
52. Did he remember the date and time ?
53. The boys were digging a hole in the ground.
54. We must now deal with these problems.
55. The audience loudly cheered the leader's speech.
56. Someone is following us.
57. He hasn't slept in his bed.
58. Must we cut this tree ?
59. Didn't they tell you to be here by six O'clock ?
60. Don't touch this switch.
61. One can not gather grapes from thistles.
62. They will have completed the work by the time we get there.
63. You will have to pull down this sky-scraper as you have not complied with the town planning regulations.
64. He has written a poem which fascinates everyone.
65. Open the door.

**Q. 5.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. The inspector (1)/arrested the robber (2)/and send (3)/him to prison. (4)/No error (5)
2. It believed (1)/that Jhingur babu (2)/was very rich (3)/in the village. (4)/No error (5)
3. We were pleased (1)/by the news (2)/which we had received (3)/a day before. (4)/No error (5)
4. My mother suggested me (1)/that I should (2)/write to her at least (3)/two letters every month. (4)/No error (5)
5. Whom was (1)/Jai Prakash Narayan (2)/called (3)/Loka Nayak. (4)/No error (5)
6. He was extremely (1)/annoyed by (2)/his wife's unreasonable (3)/activity. (4)/No error (5)
7. Binay said that (1)/the famous professor (2)/had been run over (3)/by a truck. (4)/No error (5)
8. By whom (1)/was the teacher helped (2)/when he seriously wounded (3)/by a criminal. (4)/No error (5)
9. The robbers were broken (1)/into the house (2)/and took away (3)/many precious things. (4)/No error (5)
10. The benches have been arranged (1)/for the newly registered ((2))/students but they (3)/have not been sat. (4)/No error (5)
11. Whom was (1)/the interesting (2)/novel Godan (3)/written ? (4)/No error (5)
12. My new book (1)/will be (2)/published (3)/next month. (4)/No error (5)
13. He is (1)/very much (2)/interested by (3)/the plays of Shakespeare. (4)/No error (5)
14. The work on the project (1)/could not take up, (2)/as the government (3)/did not provide fund. (4)/No error (5)
15. Gandhijee (1)/will always remember (2)/for what he did (3)/for the country. (4)/No error (5)
16. The storm was so furious (1)/that the roofs of (2)/many houses (3)/were blew off. (4)/No error (5)
17. Phulo refused (1)/to admit that he (2)/had chargesheeted (3)/by the police. (4)/No error (5)
18. Your behaviour (1)/is so rude (2)/that everybody disgusted (3)/with you. (4)/No error (5)
19. He (1)/will have arrested (2)/before he commits (3)/another murder. (4)/No error (5)
20. Unless the syllabus (1)/has completed (2)/No examination (3)/should be taken. (4)/No error (5)
21. The demands of the employees (1)/are being examine (2)/before a final decision (3)/is taken by the proprietor. (4)/No error (5)
22. The burgalars broke (1)/into the house and (2)/took away some cash (3)/and many precious things. (4)/No error (5)
23. Twenty persons killed (1)/and a child was badly injured (2)/ in the bus accident (3)/which took place last night. (4)/No error (5)
24. Looking into the situation (1)/that prevailed a few years ago (2)/he was taken (3)/that decision. (4)/No error (5)
25. Had the police not (1)/reached here on time, (2)/he would have killed (3)/by the criminals. (4)/No error (5)
26. You have lent (1)/this book (2)/by a friend (3)/of yours. (4)/No error (5)
27. Mr. Mohan Mishra had (1)/to be operate on (2)/to cure him (3)/of his disease. (4)/No error (5)
28. Everyone's aged parents (1)/will be (2)/properly (3)/ looking after. (4)/No error (5)
29. As she had (1)/put on strange clothes, (2)/she was (3)/ stared by. (4)/No error (5)
30. The accused (1)/were tried (2)/and sentence to (3)/a rigorous punishment. (4)/No error (5)
31. The university is going (1)/to be hold (2)/our examination (3)/in the first week of June. (4)/No error (5)
32. The police (1)/have been arrested (2)/all the criminals (3)/in this murder case. (4)/No error (5)
33. The improvement (1)/of the economic condition (2)/of the poor (3)/must worked for. (4)/No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

34. They were (1)/illegaly invaded (2)/by Iraq in order to the (3)/ for oil. (4)/No error (5)
35. He (1)/had been warned (2)/by the danger (3)/much earlier. (4)/No error (5)
36. When I reminded of the mistake (1)/I had made, (2)/I was struck with (3)/a deep sense of remorse. (4)/No error (5)
37. The teacher was punished (1)/the boys who (2)/had not done (3)/their home work. (4)/No error (5)
38. I was to be told (1)/by somebody that (2)/there had been an explosion (3)/in the Town Hall. (4)/No error (5)
39. A house (1)/is being build (2)/by them next door (3)/to our school. (4)/No error (5)
40. He overcame (1)/with sorrow when (2)/he heard the sad news (3)/of his failure. (4)/No error (5)
41. If you had not (1)/come in time, (2)/the child would have taken away (3)/by the dacoits. (4)/No error (5)
42. The unreasonable behaviour (1)/of his daughter was thoroughly upset (3)/Mr. Gupta. (4)/No error (5)
43. Due to (1)/unfavourable condition (2)/I was failed (3)/to pay my examination fee. (4)/No error (5)
44. We (1)/have to be paid (2)/the taxes (3)/by the end of March. (4)/No error (5)
45. All of us (1)/will be laughed (2)/at them if (3)/we go there in this dress. (4)/No error (5)
46. They were arrested him (1)/in a case of fraud, (2)/but released him later, (3)/thanks to some political manipulations. (4)/No error (5)
47. It hoped (1)/by the daughters of Prime ministers (2)/that they would (3)/succeed their fathers. (4)/No error (5)
48. One night some thieves (1)/came into my house, (2)/A lot of gold and clothes (3)/took away. (4)/No error (5)
49. Naturally they are expected you (1)/to interest yourself (2)/in the job (3)/they have offered you. (4)/No error (5)
50. Unless they have cleared (1)/all the dues, (2)/we are not going to be given (3)/them any further concessions. (4)/No error (5)

**Q. 6.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. They were being repairing the road.
2. Somebody was built the bridge last year.
3. The Taj Mahal was built hundreds of years ago.
4. The old building has pulled down by them.
5. The work will be being completed by him in a fortnight.
6. A very remarkable discovery was made of him.
7. Were you appealed by him ?
8. It is time for the shop to close.
9. You are requested to be closed the door.
10. Let the doctor be send for.
11. Why is he being beating by you ?
12. The beggar was laughed by the boys.
13. Drinking has been ruined many.
14. People are believed that he is an honest man.
15. This work must finished by Mr. Thakur.
16. Where was this bag being bought by you ?
17. This medicine should taken in time.
18. Did he helped by Rajeev ?
19. Water produces when oxygen and hydrogen are combined.
20. Pension will increase for the retiring people.
21. He should examine by a doctor.
22. He will have been done this work before you leave.
23. What should we do in case they are refused our legitimate demands ?
24. What questions set by the examiner ?
25. He was ordered by the judge to hang.

1. Who taught you grammar ? *(Change into passive)*
2. The audience loudly cheered the Mayor's Speech. *(Change the voice)*
3. My pocket has been picked. *(Change into active voice)*
4. The enemy has defeated our army. *(Begin– our army ...)*
5. Shakuntala was written by Kalidas. *(Begin– Kalidas ...)*
6. Give the order. *(Rewrite the sentence begins with 'Let')*
7. The Chief Minister reviewed the soldiers in the Gandhi Maidan. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'were reviewed')*
8. I offered him a chair. *(Begin– A chair ...)*
9. The telegraph wires have been cut. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'they')*
10. Somebody has put out the light. *(Change the voice)*
11. The Exhibition was opened by the chairman. *(Rewrite the sentence using the Chairman)*
12. We admire the brave. *(Begin– the brave ...)*
13. Who called your names ? *(Begin– by whom ...)*
14. One must do one's duty. *(Begin– Duty ...)*
15. He was killed by one of his faithful followers. *(Begin– the sentence with 'One')*
16. Her charming appearance fascinated me. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'I')*
17. Honour the brave. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'should be')*
18. Please walk to the left. *(Begin– you are requested to ...)*
19. Has somebody shut the windows ? *(Rewrite the sentence using 'have the windows')*
20. They did it well. *(Begin– it was ...)*
21. He asked me if I had gone through the book. *(Begin– I was asked ...)*
22. Never trust that man. *(Begin– that man ...)*
23. Let the window be closed at once. *(Begin– close ...)*
24. Others should not be laughed at. *(Begin– Don't ...)*
25. Empty bottles must not be thrown away. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'we' without changing its meaning)*

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 5.**

1. (3) send की जगह sent का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (1) it believed की जगह it was believed का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (2) by की जगह with का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि pleased के साथ with का प्रयोग होता है।
4. (1) suggested के बाद to का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (1) whom के पहले by का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि sentences Passive Voice में है।
6. (2) annoyed के बाद at का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि annoyed with some person तथा annoyed at something का प्रयोग होता है।
7. (5) Given sentence correct है।
8. (3) He के बाद was का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि sentence Passive Voice में है।
9. (1) were broken की जगह सिर्फ broke का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि sentence Active Voice में है।
10. (4) sat के बाद on का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (1) Whom के पहले By का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (5) Given sentence correct है।
13. (3) interested by की जगह interested in का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (2) could not take up की जगह could not be taken up का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (2) will always remember की जगह will always be remembered का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (4) were blew off की जगह were blown off का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (3) had chargesheeted की जगह had been chargesheeted का प्रयोग होगा।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



18. (3) everybody disgusted की जगह everybody is disgusted का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (2) will have arrested की जगह will have been arrested का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (2) has completed की जगह has been completed का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (2) Are being examine की जगह are being examined का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (5) Given sentence correct है।
23. (1) Twenty persons killed की जगह Twenty persons were killed का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (3) he was taken की जगह he took का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Given sentence Active voice में है।
25. (3) he would have killed की जगह he would have been killed का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
26. (1) You have lent की जगह you have been lent का प्रयोग होगा।
27. (2) to be operate की जगह to be operated का प्रयोग होगा।
28. (4) looking after की जगह looked after का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
29. (4) stared by की जगह stared at का प्रयोग होगा। stared के बाद at preposition का प्रयोग passive sentence में होता है। न कि by का।
30. (3) Sentence की जगह sentenced का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
31. (2) to be hold की जगह to hold का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence Active voice में है।
32. (2) have been arrested की जगह have arrested का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence Active voice में है।
33. (4) must worked की जगह must be worked का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
34. (5) given sentence correct है।
35. (3) by की जगह against का प्रयोग होगा। warned के साथ against preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
36. (1) when I reminded of the mistake की जगह when I was reminded of the mistake का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
37. (1) the teacher was punished की जगह the teacher punished का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence Active voice में है।
38. (1) I was to be told की जगह I was told का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
39. (2) is being build की जगह is being built का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
40. (1) He overcame की जगह he was overcome का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है। Overcome (v) का प्रयोग 'काबूपाना', 'पार करना', 'जीतना', 'विजय प्राप्त करना', (win over, conquer, to be victorious) के अर्थ में होता है।
41. (3) the child would have taken away की जगह the child would have been taken away का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
42. (3) was thoroughly upset की जगह thoroughly upset का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence Active voice में है।
43. (3) I was failed की जगह I failed का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Given sentence Active voice में है।
44. (2) have to be paid की जगह have to pay का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Given sentence Active voice में है।
45. (5) Given sentence correct है।
46. (1) They were arrested him की जगह they arrested him का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence Active voice में है।
47. (1) it hoped की जगह it is hoped का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
48. (4) took away की जगह were taken away का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence passive voice में है।
49. (1) are expected की जगह expect का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence active voice में है।
50. (3) to be given की जगह to give का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence active voice में है।

**Q. 6.**

1. They were repairing the road.
2. Somebody built the bridge last year.
3. The Taj Mahal built hundreds of years ago.
4. The old building has been pulled down by them.
5. The work will be completed by him in a fortnight.
6. A very remarkable discovery was made by him.
7. Were you appealed to by him ?
8. It is time for the shop to be closed.
9. You are requested to close the door.
10. Let the doctor be sent for.
11. Why is he being beaten by the boys ?
12. The beggar was laughed at by the boys.
13. Drinking has ruined many.
14. People believe that he is an honest man.
15. This work must be finished by Mr. Thakur.
16. Where was this bag bought by you ?
17. This medicine should be taken in time.
18. Was he helped by Rajeev ?
19. Water is produced when oxygen and hydrogen are combined.
20. Pension will be increased for the retiring people.
21. He should be examined by a doctor.
22. He will have done this work before you leave.
23. What should we do in case they refuse our legitimate demands ?
24. What questions were set by the examiner ?
25. He was ordered by the judge to be hanged.

**Q. 7.**

1. By whom were you taught Grammar ? or By whom was grammar taught (to) you ?
2. The Mayor's speech was loudly cheered.
3. Someone has picked my pocket.
4. Our army has been defeated by the enemy.
5. Kalidas wrote Shakuntala.
6. Let the order be given.
7. The soldiers were reviewed by the Chief Minister in the Gandhi Maidan.
8. A chair was offered to him by me.
9. They have cut the telegraph wires.
10. The light has been put out.
11. The Chairman opened the exhibition.
12. The brave are admired.
13. By whom were your names called ?
14. Duty must be done.
15. One of his faithful followers killed him.
16. I was fascinated by her charming appearance.
17. The brave should be honoured.
18. You are requested to walk to the left.
19. Have the windows been shut ?
20. It was well done (by them).
21. I was asked (by him) if I had gone through the book.
22. That man should never be trusted.
23. Close the window at once.
24. Don't laugh at others.
25. We must not throw empty bottles away.

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 13 Removal of Too

'Too' का शाब्दिक अर्थ 'भी' होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Noun/Pronoun के बाद होता है। जैसे—

Cotton is grown in India too. *कपास भारत में भी उपजाया जाता है।*

He, too, had been to Delhi. *वह भी दिल्ली में रह रहा था।*

उपरोक्त sentences में प्रयुक्त 'too' 'also' का प्रयोग कर हटाया जाता है। यहाँ देखें कि 'too' को किस प्रकार हटाया जा रहा है।

Cotton is grown in India also.

He also had been to Delhi.

Too के हटाने के बाद भी लिए गए वाक्य के अर्थ में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं हुआ है। ऐसा आपको भी करना है।

'Too' को **Adverb of degree** कहा जाता है।

Transformation – *To change the structure of the sentence without altering the sense.*

**How to remove 'Too'**

**Rule (1)** : यदि Sentences–'*Subject + Verb + too + Adjective/Adverb + Infinitive (to + $V^1$)*' के structure पर आधारित हो, तो 'Too' को इस प्रकार हटाया जाता है। जैसे—

He is too weak to walk.

*वह इतना कमजोर है कि चल नहीं सकता।*

It is too hot to go out.

*गर्मी इतनी अधिक है कि कोई बाहर नहीं जा सकता या जा पायेगा।*

Step (1) : प्रयुक्त Subject + Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (2) : too को हटाकर so का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : प्रयुक्त Adjective/Adverb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : इसके बाद 'that' का प्रयोग करें।

Step (5) : That के बाद Subject के उपयुक्त Pronoun का प्रयोग करें।

**Note** : (i) अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए जरूरत के मुताबिक अन्य Pronouns—one, we I, he, she, ..... etc. का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

Step (6) : Tense के मुताबिक cannot or can't, could not or couldn't का प्रयोग करें।

Present Tense—can't

Past Tense—couldn't

(ii) can't तथा couldn't के अलावे अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए will not, don't, doesn't (Present Tense में) तथा would not, did not, (Past Tense में) का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक किया जा सकता है।

Step (7) : 'to' को हटा कर प्रयुक्त Verb का प्रयोग करें। Infinitive with to को Infinitive without 'to' में बदल कर लिखें।

(iii) जरूरत के मुताबिक अर्थ स्पष्ट करने के लिए अन्य शब्दों, जैसे—it, oneself आदि का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

उपरोक्त steps का प्रयोग कर उपरोक्त वाक्यों से 'too' को कैसे हटाया जा रहा है, ध्यान दें।

He is so weak that he can't walk.

It is so hot that we can't go out.

इन वाक्यों को गौर से देखें, सोचें और विचार करें :

1. The news is too good to be true.
   The news is so good that it cannot be true.
2. Amar is too selfish to be a friend.
   Amar is so selfish that he cannot be a friend.
3. Mount Everest is too high to climb.
   Mount Everest is so high that one cannot climb it.
   Mount Everest is so high that we cannot climb it.
4. The sun is too hot to go out.
   The sun is so hot that one cannot go out.
   The sun is so hot that we cannot go out.
5. He is too fat to stand.
   He is so fat that he cannot stand.
6. I am too busy to meet you.
   I am so busy that I cannot meet you.
7. He is too tired to work
   He is so tired that he cannot work.
8. It is never too late to mend
   It is never so late that one cannot mend oneself.
   It is never so late that it cannot be mended.
9. He is too honest to accept a bribe.
   He is so honest that he cannot accept a bribe.
10. She is too proud to learn.
    She is so proud that she cannot learn.
11. Sohan was too weak to play.
    Sohan was so weak that he could not play.
12. She is too busy to look after her children.
    She is so busy that she cannot look after her children.
13. He is too good to kill anybody.
    He is so good that he cannot kill anybody.
14. We are too poor to keep a servant.
    We are so poor that we cannot keep a servant.
15. The fact is too evident to require proof.
    The fact is so evident that it does not require proof.
16. You are too lazy to walk.
    You are so lazy that you cannot walk.
17. The tree is too high for me to climb.
    The tree is so high that I cannot climb it.
18. She is too young to understand.
    She is so young that she cannot understand.
19. It is too cold to go out.
    It is so cold that one cannot go out.
    It is so cold that we cannot go out.
20. He was too late to catch the train.
    He was so late that he could not catch the train.
    He was so late that he did not catch the train.

**Rule (2)** : यदि sentences–'*Subject + Verb + too + Adjective + for + Noun*' के structure पर आधारित हो, तो 'too' को इस प्रकार हटाया जाता है। जैसे—

He is too dull for a sportsman.

*वह इतना सुस्त है कि वह खिलाड़ी नहीं बन सकता।*

I am too slow for a runner.

*मैं इतना धीमा हूँ कि मैं रनर नहीं बन सकता।*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Step (1) : प्रयुक्त Subject + Verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (2) : too को हटाकर so का प्रयोग करें।

Step (3) : प्रयुक्त Adjective का प्रयोग करें।

Step (4) : that का प्रयोग करें।

Step (5) : इसके बाद Subject के उपयुक्त Pronoun का प्रयोग करें।

**Note** : (i) इसके अलावे अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए जरूरत के मुताबिक one, we, I, he, she etc. का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

Step (6) : Tense के मुताबिक cannot / couldn't का प्रयोग करें—

Present Tense—cannot

Past Tense—couldn't

(ii) cannot तथा could not के अलावे अर्थ स्पष्ट करने के लिए Present Tense में do not, does not, will not तथा Past Tense में did not, would not का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

Step (7) : be का प्रयोग करें (जरूरत के मुताबिक)।

Step (8) : for को हटा दें।

Step (9) : प्रयुक्त a/an + Noun का प्रयोग करें।

(iii) जरूरत के मुताबिक अर्थ स्पष्ट करने के लिए bear, express, catch तथा other Verbs का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

उपरोक्त steps का प्रयोग कर उपरोक्त वाक्यों से 'too' को कैसे हटाया जा सकता है, ध्यान दें—

He is so dull that he cannot be a sportsman.
I am so slow that I cannot be a runner.

इन वाक्यों को गौर से देखें, सोचें और विचार करें :

He is too slow to win the race.
He is so slow that he cannot win the race.
He is so slow that he will not win the race.
He is too innocent for a leader.
He is so innocent that he cannot be a leader.
He is too dull for a worker.
He is so dull that he cannot be a worker.
She is too proud for an ideal citizen.
She is so proud that she cannot be an ideal citizen.
His sorrow is too deep for tears.
His sorrow is so deep that he cannot express it in tears.
She is too old for the government service.
She is so old that she is not fit for the government service.

**Rule (3)** : यदि sentence– *'Subject + Verb + too + Adjective + for + Pronoun (Objective Case)'* के structure पर आधारित हो, तो 'too' को इस प्रकार हटाया जाता है।

उपरोक्त steps को follow करते हुए नीचे दिये गए वाक्यों से 'too' को किस प्रकार हटाया गया है। इसे गौर से देखें।

ध्यान दें :

It is too hot for me.
It is so hot that I cannot bear it.
The night is too cold for me.
The night is so cold that I cannot bear it.
He is too strong for me.
He is so strong that I am not match for him.
He is so strong that I cannot face him.
The coffee is too hot for me.
The coffee is so hot that I cannot take it.
The water is too cold for us.
The water is so cold that we cannot bear it.

अधोलिखित वाक्यों में से too को हटाते समय for के बाद प्रयुक्त Objective Case के Pronoun को Subject बनाया गया है। ऐसा ही आप पाठकों को करना है।

**Rule (4)** : यदि sentence– *'subject + Verb + too + Adjective + not + Infinitive (to + $V^1$) + other words'* के structure पर आधारित हो, तो 'too' को इस प्रकार हटाया जाता है।

ध्यान दें :

The landlord is too kind-hearted not to forgive her.
The landlord is so kind-hearted that he will forgive her.
My younger brother is too intelligent not to understand the matter.
My younger brother is so intelligent that he will understand the matter.
Mohan is too active not to work.
Mohan is so active that he works.
Mohan is so active that he will work.
The room is too large not to accommodate all of the students.
The room is so large that it will/can accommodate all of the students.
My younger daughter is too intelligent not to understand it.
My younger daughter is so intelligent that she will understand it.

**Rule (5)** : यदि sentence– *'Subject + Verb + too + Adjective/Adverb'* के structure पर आधारित हो, तो 'too' को इस प्रकार हटाया जाता है।

Step (1) : प्रयुक्त subject + verb का प्रयोग करें।

Step (2) : too को हटा दें।

Step (3) : प्रयुक्त Adjective/Adverb को Comparative form में बदल कर लिखें।

Step (4) : इसके बाद than का प्रयोग करें, न कि that का।

Step (5) : than के बाद अर्थानुसार should + infinitive without 'to' / should be + Adjective, it is proper (Present Tense के साथ) तथा it was proper (Past Tense के साथ) का प्रयोग करें।

**Note** : (i) जरूरत के मुताबिक should have, should have been का प्रयोग भी किया जा सकता है।

(ii) उपरोक्त structure पर आधारित sentence से 'too' को हटाते समय आपको थोड़ा भी confusion (कन्फ्यूजन) हो, तो Tense के मुताबिक ऑप्शन बंद करके अर्थात् बिना सोचे विचारे it is proper or it was proper का प्रयोग करें। ऐसा करने से गलती (mistake) नहीं होगी।

इन वाक्यों को देखें, सोचें और समझें, जैसे—

Mukesh runs too slowly.
Mukesh runs more slowly than it is proper.
Mukesh runs more slowly than he should.
Veena is too weak.
Veena is weaker than it is proper.
Veea is weaker than she should be.
It is too hot.
It is hotter than it is proper.
It is hotter than it should be.
Mr. Thakur talks too much.
Mr. Thakur talks more than it is proper.
Mr. Thakur talks more than he should be.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The weather is too cold.
The weather is colder than it is proper.
The weather is colder than it should be.

He is too ignorant.
He is more ignorant than it is proper.
He is more ignorant than he should be.

**Rule (6)** : यदि sentence–'*Subject + Verb + too + much + for + Noun/Pronoun*' के structure पर आधारित हो तथा too much का अर्थ अत्यंत/दुखदायी/बुरा हो, तो too much को so bad or so shocking में बदल देना चाहिए। जैसे—

It is too much for us.
It is so bad/shocking that we cannot bear it.

It is too much for her.
It is so bad/shocking that she cannot bear it.

लेकिन,

I was too much distressed to be able to speak.
I was so much distressed that I was not able to speak.

**Rule (7)** : नीचे दिये गए वाक्यों को ध्यान से अध्ययन करें और देखें कि 'too' को किस प्रकार हटाया गया है।

'Too' को हटाने के लिए कभी-कभी extremely, excess, beyond a certain extent, excessively, beyond limit, enough, over, more than enough/more than proper, beyond the proper limit, to a fault, आदि का प्रयोग भी किया जाता है। जैसे—

She is too eager for praise.
She is over eager for praise.

This student is too attentive.
This student is over attentive.

He ate too much.
He ate more than enough.

She is being too kind.
She is being extremely kind.

Too many cooks spoil the broth *(बहुत से जोगी मठ उजाड़)*
An unnecessary large number of cooks spoil the broth.

She is too gentle.
She is over gentle.

Too much of everything is bad.
The excess of everything is bad.

It is too dangerous to be good.
It is dangerous to be good beyond limit.

Drinking water cannot be made too pure.
Drinking water cannot be made pure beyond a certain limit.

You are too gentle.
You are gentle to a fault.
or, You are over gentle.

**Note** : (i) Adverb 'too' के बाद Infinitive (to + $V^1$) का प्रयोग हो, तो 'too' का नकारात्मक अर्थ (negative sense) होता है।

(ii) Adverb 'too' के बाद Infinitive (to + $V^1$) का प्रयोग न हो तो 'too' का अर्थ excess (अतिशय) होता है।

**Rule (8)** : यदि sentence– '*subject + Verb + Very + Adv./Adjective + and + other words*' के structure पर आधारित हो, तो very को enough का प्रयोग कर हटाया जाता है। सामान्यतः very का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में Adjective के पहले होता है, जबकि enough का प्रयोग Adjective/Adverb के बाद होता है।

छात्रगण (पाठकगण) ध्यान दें कि very को हटाकर enough का प्रयोग किस प्रकार किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He is very tall and can touch the ceiling fan.
He is tall enough to touch the ceiling fan.

The girl was very strong and could lift the box.
The girl was strong enough to lift the box.

The policeman was very brave and could catch the thief.
The policeman was brave enough to catch the thief.

**Rule (9)** : यदि sentence–'*Subject + Verb + so + Adjective/Adverb + that + clause*' के structure पर आधारित हो, तो so ..... that को 'too' ..... to', enough का प्रयोग कर इस प्रकार हटाया जाता है। ध्यान रहे कि अर्थ में परिवर्तन न हो।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He was so hungry that he could eat anything.
He was too hungry not to eat anything.
He was hungry enough not to eat anything.

This purse is so large that it cannot go in my pocket.
This purse is too large to go in my pocket.
This purse is large enough to go in my pocket.

**Rule (10)** : 'Too – to' का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस तरह combine (जोड़ा जाता है।) किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

The old man is tired; he cannot walk to the station.
The old man is too tired to walk to the station.

The news is very good; it cannot be true.
The news is too good to be true.

He is very ill; he cannot go to college today.
He is too ill to go to college today.

**Rule (11)** : Infinitive (to + $V^1$) का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार combine (जोड़ा जाता है) किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Binay went to the shop. He wanted to buy a pair of shoes.
Binay went to the shop to buy a pair of shoes.

I switched on the radio. I wanted to hear the news.
I switched on the radio to hear the news.

The girls went to the zoo. They wanted to see the lions.
The girls went to the zoo to see the lions.

He went to the park. He wanted to pluck the flowers.
He went to the park to pluck the flowers.

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Remove 'too' from the following sentences.*
or, *Rewrite the following sentences using so ..... that instead of Adverb 'too'*

1. You are too poor to help me.
2. Mukesh is too late to catch the train.
3. It is never too late to mend.
4. He will be too late to reach the school in time.
5. He is too intelligent to need a tutor.
6. This tree is too high for me to climb.
7. The load is too heavy for her to lift.
8. He is too weak to run fast.
9. It was too hot for us to go out.
10. This tea is too hot for me to drink.
11. These apples are too cheap to be good.
12. The box is too heavy for me to lift.
13. This coffee is too hot for me to drink.
14. He is too honest to accept a bribe.
15. He speaks too fast to be understood.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


16. The weather is too cold to go out.
17. The room is too dark to see anything.
18. Hindi is too difficult for me to learn.
19. Ragini is too selfish to be a friend.
20. The fruit is too sour to eat.
21. He is too lazy.
22. You are too dull to qualify the written examination.
23. She is too dull for a nurse.
24. She is too ugly.
25. The night is too cold.
26. It is too much.
27. Ajit is too slow to win the race.
28. The storm was too much for us.
29. Mr. Prasad is too weak to address the people.
30. She is too proud to learn.
31. Mr. Chandra Kishore Thakur arrived at the station too late to catch the train.
32. He is too dull to succeed.
33. She was too late.
34. She is too young to do this work.
35. Mount Everest is too high for us to climb.
36. The sight was too dreadful to be seen.
37. He is too ignorant for a clerk.
38. This fact is too evident to require proof.
39. He is too proud to beg.
40. He is too clever not to see through your tricks.
41. These oranges are too cheap to be good.
42. He is too shy to ask for help.
43. Monika is too late to hear the first speech.
44. She is too weak to play hockey.
45. My elder daughter is too weak to stand up.
46. She is too old for me.
47. The result was too bad to be published.
48. This pencil is too small to write with.
49. She is too late for the train.
50. I was too fat to stand up.
51. She is too late to hear the lectures.
52. Gandhi's words were too true to be disbelieved.
53. He is too kind-hearted not to love his enemies.
54. She is too fat.
55. He is too dull.
56. Anshu ran too slowly.
57. She is being too kind.
58. Mukesh runs too fast.
59. The coffee was too hot.
60. The milk was too hot.
61. She is too attentive.
62. Too many cooks spoil the broth.
63. My brother is too kind not to forgive her.
64. The bridegroom is too young for the bride.
65. Sudhir is too honest to be a successful businessman.
66. It is too much for me.
67. The wall is too high for her to jump it.
68. He was too gentle.
69. It is too much for us.
70. She ate too much.

Q. 2. *Rewrite the following sentences using 'too' instead of so ..... that and comparative + than it is proper/it was proper.*

**Example :** She is so tall that she cannot go in the room.
She is too tall to go in the room.

1. It is so hot that one cannot go out.
2. He was so tired that he did not do that work.
3. He is so proud that he cannot beg.
4. The coffee is hotter than it is proper.
5. He was so poor that he could not buy the book he needed.
6. He is weaker than he should be.
7. Her conduct is so bad that it cannot be mended.
8. She is so selfish that she cannot be an ideal woman.
9. Human life is so short that it cannot be properly enjoyed.
10. She is so clever that she cannot be cheated.
11. She spoke so slowly that we could not hear her.
12. Milton was so great a writer that he couldn't be over praised.
13. The room is so dark that I cannot see anything.
14. The problem is so difficult that I cannot explain it.
15. This box is so heavy that I cannot lift it.
16. It is never so late that it cannot be mended.
17. You are so lazy that you cannot walk.
18. He is so proud that he cannot beg.
19. You are so young that you cannot understand.
20. The hat is so large that he cannot wear it.

Q. 3. *Rewrite the following sentences, using 'too'.*

**Example :** The milk is very hot; I cannot drink it.
The milk is too hot to drink.
The milk is too hot for me to drink.
*दूध इतना गर्म है कि मैं पी नहीं सकता।*

1. Binay is very lazy; he cannot get up early.
2. The mountain is very high; one cannot climb it.
3. English is very difficult; I cannot read it.
4. Veena is very stupid; she cannot understand.
5. The news is very good; it cannot be true.
6. It is very hot; we cannot go out.
7. The sum is very difficult; I cannot solve it.
8. She was very clever; she could not be cheated.
9. The shirt is very old; I cannot wear it.
10. The curry is very hot; I cannot eat it.

Q. 4. *Rewrite the sentences, using enough or too ..... to instead of so ..... that and very.*

**Example :** He was so busy that he could not attend the meeting.
He was busy enough to attend the meeting.
He was too busy to attend the meeting.

1. He was very strong and could not lift the cot.
2. He was very foolish and he believed everything I told him.
3. The hall is so large that it can accommodate a hundred guests.
4. He was very rich and could afford to keep five servants.
5. The dictionary is so big that it cannot be read in few hours.
6. You are very clever and could answer any difficult question.
7. He is so intelligent that he can solve any mathematical problem.
8. He is so weak that he cannot walk.
9. The book was so difficult that I could not understand it.
10. He is so young that he cannot go to school yet.

Q. 5. *Join the following pairs of sentences by using Infinitive (to + $V^1$)*

**Example :** He went to the library. He wanted to borrow a book.
He went to the library to borrow a book.

1. Nilu works very hard. She wants to win a scholarship.
2. Sweta went to the market. She wanted to buy some fruits.
3. Bhavana and Rima went to the station. They wanted to receive their uncle.
4. She went to the post office. She wanted to buy some stamps.
5. She went to the botanical garden. She wanted to see the monkeys.
6. His mother went to Delhi yesterday. Her object was to visit the Red Fort.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



7. The girls went to the beach. They wanted to have a picnic.
8. I went to the hospital. I wanted to see my uncle.
9. I switched on T.V. I wanted to listen to the news.
10. He switched on the bulb. He wanted to write something.

Q. 6. *Transform the following sentences, without changing the meaning by removing 'too.'*

1. The questions are too easy.
2. The wall is too high for me to climb.
3. Your teacher is too honest.
4. She is too selfish.
5. They are too dishonest to be trusted.
6. This flower is too beautiful not to attract the attention of all.
7. He lives too far away to meet regularly.
8. He is too honest to cheat others.
9. You are too slow to catch him.
10. He is too selfish not to let you down.
11. She is too wicked not to harm others.
12. Our politicians are too dishonest to do any good to the nation.
13. He is too slow to complete the project in time.
14. He is too meek to harm anybody.
15. He is too worried about his falling health.
16. He speaks too loud not to be heard miles away.
17. He is too good to kill anybody.
18. Our publisher trusts his manager too much.
19. He is too weak to carry this load.
20. Her voice was too feeble to be heard.

Q. 7. *Transform the following sentences without changing the meaning, by using 'too.'*

1. She is so simple that she will be easily cheated.
2. The two girl friends are so close that they cannot be separated.
3. The task was so difficult that they could not finish it.
4. The natural scenery of Rajgir is so beautiful that it attracts all.
5. The sun is so hot that we cannot go out.
6. My father is so good hearted that he cannot harm others.
7. The central government is so unstable that it cannot do any work.
8. My younger brother is so slow that he does not do any thing in time.
9. The burden is so heavy that I cannot carry it.
10. You are so nice that every body likes you.
11. He is so proud that he will not beg for mercy.

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Verb 14

Verb : *A Verb is a word used for saying something about some person or thing or A Verb is a word that states something about a person or a thing.*

➤ वह शब्द जो किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु के बारे में कुछ कहता है Verb कहलाता है।

दूसरे शब्दों में वह शब्द जिससे किसी कार्य के करने या होने का बोध हो Verb कहलाता है।

इन शब्दों को देखें :

1. Aditi laughs.
2. The dog is dead.
3. The boys are eating food.
4. Aditya goes to school.
5. The policeman arrested the thief.

उपरोक्त Sentences में laughs, is, are, goes तथा arrested शब्दों का प्रयोग हुआ है जो क्रमशः Aditi, the dog, the boys, Aditya तथा the police man के बारे में कुछ कह रहा है। अतः ये शब्द verbs हैं।

A verb may tell us :

(i) What a person or thing does : जैसे—
1. Ramita sings.
2. Boys run quickly.

(ii) What is done to a person or thing : जैसे—
1. The chair is broken.
2. Binay is punished.

(iii) What a person or thing is : जैसे—
1. The dog is dead.
2. Glass is brittle.

Kinds of verb

Verb

- Transitive verb (सकर्मक क्रिया)
- Intransitive verb (अकर्मक क्रिया)

## 1. Transitive and Intransitive verb

1. Transitive verb : *A verb which requires an object after it to complete its sense is called a Transitive verb.*

➤ वह verb जो अपना अर्थ स्पष्ट करने के लिए object लेता है Transitive verb कहलाता है। अर्थात वह verb जो object के बिना अपना अर्थ स्पष्ट नहीं कर पाता है Transitive verb कहलाता है। जैसे—

1. The man killed a snake.
2. The boy opened the window.
3. Aditi made a doll.

उपरोक्त Sentences में verbs– killed, opened, made के बाद objects क्रमशः a snake, the window तथा a doll का प्रयोग हुआ है जो मूल verbs killed, opened, made का अर्थ स्पष्ट कर रहा है। अतः ये Transitive verbs हैं।

2. Intransitive verb : *A verb which does not require an object to complete its sense, but makes good sense by itself, is called an intransitive verb.*

➤ वह verb जो अपना अर्थ स्पष्ट करने के लिए object नहीं लेता है Intransitive verb कहलाता है।

अर्थात वह verb जो object के बिना अपना अर्थ स्पष्ट करता है। Intransitive verb कहलाता है। जैसे—

1. The man died.
2. The girl smiled
3. The sun shines.

उपरोक्त sentences में verbs– died, smiled, shines का प्रयोग हुआ है जो object बिना ही अपना अर्थ स्पष्ट कर रहे हैं। अतः ये Intransitive verbs हैं।

Note : (i) What ? or whom ? लगा कर प्रश्न करने पर जो उत्तर प्राप्त होता है वह Object होता है तथा verb, Transitive होता है।

### Some Important facts of verb

Rule (1) : कुछ Transitive verbs जैसे give, ask, offer, promise, tell etc दो object लेते हैं जिनमें एक Indirect object और दूसरा direct object होता है। व्यक्ति सूचक शब्द को Indirect object कहा जाता है तथा वस्तुसूचक शब्द को direct object कहा जाता है। Indirect object का प्रयोग direct object के पहले होता है। अर्थात् Direct object का प्रयोग Indirect object के बाद होता है। जैसे—

| Subject | Verb | Indirect object | Direct object |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. She | gave | me | an apple |
| 2. The teacher | told | us | a story |
| 3. I | offered | him | some money |
| 4. He | promised | us | a holiday |
| 5. She | asked | me | its price |
| 6. Will you | make | me | a cup of tea? |
| 7. Can you | get | me | a dozen eggs ? |

Note : Preposition *to* or *for* का प्रयोग कर Direct object को पहले तथा Indirect object को बाद में लिखा जा सकता है।

| Subject | Verb | Direct object | Preposition | Indirect object |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. She | gave | an apple | to | me |
| 2. The teacher | told | a story | to | us |
| 3. I | offered | some money | to | him |
| 4. He | promised | a holiday | to | us |
| 5. She | asked | its price | to | me |
| 6. Will you | make | a cup of tea | for | me ? |
| 7. Can you | get | a dozen eggs | for | me ? |

Rule (2) : कुछ ऐसे verbs हैं जिनका प्रयोग Transitive or Intransitive दोनों ही verb के form (रूप) में बिना किसी रूपान्तरण (without any change of form) का होता है। जैसे—

| Transitive | Intransitive |
|---|---|
| 1. I walk my horse every day | 1. The horse walks. |
| 2. The horse drew the cart | 2. She drew near me. |
| 3. The driver stopped the train. | 3. The train stopped suddenly. |
| 4. The peon rang the bell. | 4. The bell rang. |
| 5. He moves the table | 5. The earth moves |

Note : Verbs—come, go, fall, die, sleep, lie... etc. का प्रयोग Intransitive verbs के रूप में होता है।

Rule (3) : जब कोई Intransitive verb, preposition के साथ मुहावरा प्रयुक्त होता है वह Transitive बन जाता है। जैसे—

He laughed at me. She looked into the matter.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

No one relies on my word.
I carried out his orders.
We take about the affair.

Note : कभी कभी Preposition verb के पहले प्रयुक्त रहता है। जैसे—

The Ganga river overflows its bank.
Akbar overcame the enemy.
He bravely withstood the attack.

Rule (4) : कभी कभी Intransitive verbs के बाद ऐसे object का प्रयोग होता है जो अर्थ में verb के समान होता है। ऐसे object को cognate object or cognate Accusative कहा जाता है।

Cognate object : *An object similar in meaning to the verb is called a cognate object.* जैसे—

He died a glorious death.
He has fought a good fight.
She dreamt a strange dream.
She sang a sweet song.
He lived a virtuous life.

Rule (5) : कुछ ऐसे Transitive verbs है जो कभी कभी Intransitive verbs की तरह प्रयुक्त होते है। जैसे—

| Transitive | Intransitive |
|---|---|
| 1. She eats bread. | 1. We eat to live. |
| 2. The boy broke the glass. | 2. The glass broke. |
| 3. He opened the door. | 3. The door soon opened. |
| 4. He burnt his fingers. | 4. He burnt with rage. |
| 5. The wind shook the house. | 5. The earth shook. |

Rule (6) : जब कोई Noun किसी Verb, Adjective तथा Adverb को modify करता है तथा time, place, distance, weight, value etc को denote करता है तो यह Adverbial object or Adverbial Accusative कहलाता है। यह Accusative or objective case में होता है। जैसे—

He went home.
The mobile set costs two thousand rupees.
He held the post for five years.
He can't wait a moment longer.
She swam a mile.

### II. Verbs of Incomplete Predication

Rule (1) : जब कोई Intransitive verb complete sense (पूर्ण अर्थ) देता है तो वह verb of complete predication कहलाता है। जैसे—

1. The girl laughs. 2. The baby weeps.
3. Birds fly. 4. Boys sleep.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त Intransitive verbs– laughs, weeps, fly, sleep पूर्ण अर्थ देता है अतः ये verbs of complete predication हैं।

Rule (2) : वे Intransitive verbs जो किसी Noun, Adjective or some part of another verb के बिना complete sense नहीं देते हैं तो वे verbs, verbs of Incomplete predication कहलाते हैं। Verbs of incomplete predication के रूप में सामान्यतः verb to be, seem, become, appear etc का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. The boy seems. 2. He became.
3. He appears. 4. The earth is.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त Intransitive verbs– seems, became, appears, is से पूर्ण अर्थ स्पष्ट नहीं हो रहा है। इसका तात्पर्य यह है कि प्रयुक्त verbs के बाद ऐसे word का प्रयोग करना होगा अर्थात् उपयुक्त noun, Adjective, some part of another verb का प्रयोग करना होगा जिससे पूर्ण अर्थ निकल सके।

ध्यान दें :

1. The boy seems tired. (Adj)
2. He became a doctor. (N)
3. He appears pleased. (Past participle (part of another verb))
4. The earth is round. (Adj.)

Complement : The word or phrase used to complete the sense is called the complement.

Rule (3) : Intransitive verbs के complement के रूप में Noun, Adjective, Participle, Preposition with object, Infinitive या Adverb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A cow is a domestic animal. (N)
His elephant has gone mad. (Adj.)
The child went on weeping. (Participle)
That pen is of no use. (prep. with obj.)
You have to come. (Infinitive)
She has fallen asleep. (Adv.)

Rule (4) : यदि Transitive verb का अर्थ object के प्रयोग के बिना से स्पष्ट न हो तो object के बाद complement का प्रयोग होता है और इस complement को factitive कहा जाता है। जैसे—

1. The loss filled us with grief.
2. He set the criminals free.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त word– filled with grief तथा set free में verbal idea present है।

उपरोक्त वाक्यों को इस प्रकार भी लिखा जा सकता है। जैसे—

1. The loss grieved us.
2. He freed the criminals.

Rule (5) : Factitive verb के complement के रूप में Noun, Adjective, participle, preposition with object, Infinitive या Adverb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We made him captain. (N)
The judge set the robber free. (Adj.)
I found her still sleeping. (Participle)
Your story filled with me with horror. (prep. with obj.)
I liked my enemy to be punished. (Infinitive)
They found her asleep. (O Adv.)

Note : (i) जब Intransitive Verb के बाद complement का प्रयोग Subject को Refer करने के लिए होता है तो यह Subjective complement कहलाता है।

(ii) जब Transitive verb के बाद complement का प्रयोग object को Refer करने के लिए होता है तो वह objective complement कहलाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### Some Important facts of verb

**Rule (1)** : To be के बाद $M.V^4$ का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is trying to solve this problem.
(is = to be, trying = $M.V^4$)

**Rule (2)** : Passive voice में To be के बाद $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

A letter was written by him.
(was = to be, written = $M.V^3$)

**Rule (3)** : Has/have/had के साथ $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I have done my work. ($M.V^3$)

He has written a letter. ($M.V^3$)

She had finished her home work. ($M.V^3$)

**Rule (4)** : Do/Does/did के बाद $M.V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He does not write to her. ($M.V^1$)

I do not go there. ($M.V^1$)

He did not come here. ($M.V^1$)

**Rule (5)** : Modal Auxiliary verbs के बाद $M.V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He can do this work.
(can = M.A.V, do = $M.V^1$)

You can and will help me.
(can = M.A.V., will = M.A.V., help = $M.V^1$)

**Rule (6)** : किसी Particular (खास) verb के बदले किसी other (अन्य) verb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. She raised a problem. (✓)
2. She rose a problem. (×)
3. Who invented the telescope ? (✓)
4. Who discovered the telescope ? (×)

उपरोक्त Example (1) में raised का प्रयोग हुआ है जो सही है क्योंकि raised का अर्थ 'खड़ा करना', 'उठाना', किसी मुद्दे को उठाना होता है।

जबकि Example (2) में rose का प्रयोग हुआ है जो गलत है क्योंकि rise का अर्थ 'जगना', 'उठाना' होता है।

Example (3) में invented का प्रयोग हुआ है जो सही है क्योंकि Invent का अर्थ 'आविष्कार करना' होता है जबकि

Example (4) में discovered का प्रयोग हुआ है जो गलत है क्योंकि discover का अर्थ 'खोज करना' होता है।

उपरोक्त Examples से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि किसी खास verb के लिए किसी अन्य verb का प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता है। Main verb तथा इसके विभिन्न रूपों से संबंधित प्रश्न सभी परीक्षाओं में पूछे जाते हैं। अतः पाठकों को Main verb के विभिन्न रूपों को कंठाग्र कर लेना चाहिए।

यथा है:

| | $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Bear *(जन्म देना, ढोना, सहना)* | bore | borne/born |
| 2. | Find *(पाना)* | found | found |
| 3. | found *(नींव डालना, बुनियाद डालना)* | founded | founded |
| 4. | Hang *(लटकाना)* | hung | hung |
| 5. | Hang *(फाँसी देना)* | hanged | hanged |
| 6. | lie *(लेटना / पड़े रहना/विश्राम करना)* | lay | lain |
| 7. | lay *(क्रम में रखना, अंडा देना)* | laid | lain |
| 8. | lie *(झूठ बोलना/धोखा देना)* | lied | lied |
| 9. | rise *(जगना, उठना)* | rose | risen |
| 10. | raise *(खड़ा करना, उठाना, किसी मुद्दे को उठाना)* | raised | raised |

**Rule (7)** : कुछ ऐसे Main verbs हैं जिनके दो past participle forms होते हैं और दोनों के प्रयोग में अंतर होता है। इससे संबंधित प्रश्न भी विभिन्न परीक्षाओं में पूछे जाते हैं। जैसे—

1. A ship has sunk. ($V^3$) (✓)
2. A ship has sunken. (×)
3. He has drunk much. ($V^3$) (✓)
4. He has drunken much. (×)
5. It was a sunken ship. (Adj.) (✓)
6. It was a sunk ship. (×)
7. He was a much drunken man. (Adj.) (✓)
8. He was a much drunk man. (×)

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ (Past participle) (A) | (B) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Plural form of M.V | Past form | used as 3rd form of M.V | Used as Adjectives |
| 1. Bind *बाँधना* | bound | bound | bounden |
| 2. Drink *पीना* | drank | drunk | drunken |
| 3. Get *पाना* | got | got | gotten |
| 4. Shrink *सिकुड़ना* | shrank | shrunk | shrunken |
| 5. Sink *डूबना* | sank | sunk | sunken |
| 6. Strike *मारना* | struck | struck | striken |
| 7. Cleave *फाड़ना, तोड़ना, चीरना, चिपकना* | cleft / clove | cleft | cloven |
| 8. Engrave *खोदना, नक्काशी करना* | engraved | engraved | engraven |
| 9. Melt *पिघलना* | melted | melted | molten |
| 10. Seethe *उबालना, उत्तेजित होना* | seethed | seethed | sodden |
| 11. Shear *तलवार/कैंची से काटना, कतरना* | sheared | sheared | shorn |

**Note** : (i) उपरोक्त Table के $V^3$ के section 'A' में दिये गए past participle form का प्रयोग $M.V^3$ या third form of main verb के रूप में होता है।

(ii) लेकिन उपरोक्त Table के $V^3$ के section 'B' में दिये गए Past participle form का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Pick out the verbs in the following sentences and say whether they are transitive or intransitive verbs :*

1. Aditya broke the slate.
2. He flies his kite.
3. Aditi received a prize.
4. He met a little cottage girl.
5. His wife spoke loudly.
6. The boy killed a snake.
7. He ran away quickly.
8. The policeman arrested the robber.
9. The children were playing.
10. I drink tea three times in a day.
11. Cocks crow in the morning.
12. It is very hot today.
13. She lives on fruit.
14. The Congress made Lal Bahadur Shastri Prime Minister.
15. His servant fells the tree with an axe.
16. He saw her yesterday.
17. It has been raining all day.
18. The sun shines brightly.
19. The girl cut her finger with a knife.
20. The san rises in the east.
21. He wrote a letter to his father.
22. The dog ran after an old beggar.
23. Your old watch does not keep good time.
24. That old woman took shelter under a tree.
25. They could not spare time.
26. Call in a doctor.
27. Make a noise.
28. She laughed loudly.
29. Time changes all things.
30. She looked down from her window.

**Q. 2.** *Pick out the objects in the following sentences and say whether they are Direct or Indirect objects.*

1. The principal forgave him his faults.
2. He gave me an orange.
3. You gave her a twenty rupee note.
4. My grandmother told me a story.
5. Mr. Thakur taught them English.
6. He lent me five hundred rupees.
7. We gave him a prize.
8. The teacher asked him a question.
9. She told her husband a secret.
10. I promised to give him a T.V. set.
11. The guide shows us the way.
12. Pt. Teja Babu taught me Sanskrit.
13. Will you make a cup of coffee ?
14. I taught the students a new lesson.
15. Kindly give me a pen.
16. Show me your fingers.
17. He brought me a glass of water.
18. He brought me some books.
19. I gave her a necklace.
20. Will you buy me some apples ?

**Q. 3.** *Pick out the subjective and objective complements each of the following sentences :*

1. Honey tastes sweet.
2. He became rich.
3. He will be an accountant.
4. She appears cheerful.
5. The sky grew dark.
6. The sarpanch found him guilty.
7. We elected him our leader.
8. Your grandfather has fallen ill.
9. They made him monitor.
10. I found my son asleep.
11. Do you consider the book useful ?
12. I called him a liar.
13. I like a dishonest man to be punished.
14. A thorn ran into his finger.
15. Babar overcame his enemy.
16. She wrote a letter to her father.
17. Mr. Thakur enjoy himself when he is sitting alone.
18. This gold appears to be genuine.
19. You must bring your book.
20. He enjoys good health.

**Q. 4.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. The cricketers did not came out victorious, (1)/ yet they were disappointed (2)/ rather satisfied because (3)/ they had played well. (4)/No error (5)
2. He complained to the police (1)/that his briefcase had been stolen (2)/and that was lifted (3)/without any money. (4)/No error (5)
3. Can I (1)/lend your book (2)/for an hour, please ? (3)/No error (4)
4. The manager called the clerk and said whether (1)/he was in the habit of (2)/sleeping at home as well (3)./No error (4)
5. The telescope (1)/was discovered (2)/by Galileo. (3)/No error (4)
6. The book on Political Science (1)/brought in the market recently (2)/is really an asset (3)/for all college students.(4)/No error (5)
7. While going (1)/through the report (2)/yesterday I found (3)/several factual mistakes. (4)/No error (5)
8. The eminent speaker's speech (1)/ was broadcasted over (2)/ the major radio stations. (3)/No error (4)
9. The terrorist (1)/ will certainly be hung( 2)/ because the charge brought upon (3)/him are very serious. (4)/ No error (5)
10. Hardly had he went (1)/ out of the class (2)/ when a mob of angry students (3)/attacked him. (4)/No error (5)
11. The Chief Minister said that his party would not repeat the mistakes (2)/ done by the (3)/ previous government. (4)/No error (5)
12. Mr. Mehta is very (1)/ drunk so (2)/ he cannot tell (3)/ me even his father's name. (4)/No error
13. If I knew (1)/ that my friend had to visit the town today (2)/ I would have make his stay comfortable. (3)/ No error (4)
14. He laid unconscious for half an hour (1)/ until he was seen (2)/ by a passing motorist. (3)/No error (5)
15. You must (1)/ not held in high esteem (2)/ those who are (3)/ dangers to our society. (4)/No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.**

1. broke—*T. verb*
2. flies—*T. verb*
3. received—*T. verb*
4. met—*Int. verb*
5. spoke—*Int. verb*
6. killed—*T. verb*
7. ran away—*Int. verb*
8. arrested—*T. verb*
9. were playing—*Int. verb*
10. drink—*T. verb*
11. crow—*Int. verb*
12. is—*Int. verb*
13. lives—*Int. verb*
14. made—*T. verb*
15. fells—*T. verb*
16. saw—*T. verb*
17. has been raining—*Int. verb*
18. shines—*Int. verb*
19. cut—*T. verb*
20. rises—*Int. verb*
21. wrote—*T. verb*
22. ran after—*Int. verb*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



[illegible] keep—T. verb
[illegible]—T. verb
[illegible]—T. verb
[illegible]—T. verb
[illegible] T. verb Transitive verb (ii) Int. verb Intransitive verb

24. took—T. verb
26. call in—T. verb
28. laughed—Int. verb
30. looked down—Int. verb

[illegible] his faults—D. object
[illegible] an orange—D. object
[illegible] a twenty rupee note—D. object
[illegible] a story—D. object
[illegible] English—D. object
[illegible] five hundred rupees—D. object
[illegible] a prize—D. object
[illegible] a question—D. object
[illegible] D. object
[illegible] a T.V. set—D. object
[illegible] the way—D. object
[illegible] Sanskrit—D. object
[illegible] a cup of coffee—D. object
[illegible] a new lesson—D. object
[illegible] a pen—D. object
[illegible] your fingers—D. object
[illegible] a glass of water—D. object
[illegible] some books—D. object
[illegible] a necklace—D. object
[illegible] some apples—D. object

Note : (i) D. object Direct object
(ii) Ind. object Indirect object

Q. 3.
[illegible] —sub. complement.
[illegible]—sub. complement.
[illegible] accountant—sub. complement.
[illegible]— sub. complement.
[illegible]—sub. complement.
[illegible] ob. complement.
[illegible] ob. complement.
[illegible]—sub. complement.
[illegible] ob. complement.
[illegible] ob. complement.
[illegible] ob. complement.
[illegible] ob. complement.
[illegible]—ob. complement.
[illegible]—sub. complement.
[illegible]—ob. complement.
[illegible] ob. complement.
[illegible] sub. complement.
[illegible]—sub. complement.
[illegible]—ob. complement.
[illegible]—ob. complement.
Note : (i) sub. complement Subjective complement
(ii) ob. complement Objective complement

Q. 4.

1. (1) Came की जगह come का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि do/does/did के बाद $V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है। न कि $V^2$ का।
2. (3) lifted की जगह left का प्रयोग होगा; lift का अर्थ 'उठाना' तथा इसका past participle or $V^3$—lifted होता है। जबकि leave का अर्थ 'छोड़ना' तथा इसका past participle or $V^3$—left होता है। given sentence के अर्थ के लिए left उपयुक्त है।
3. (2) lend की जगह borrow का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि borrow का प्रयोग taking something from someone के अर्थ में होता है जबकि lend का प्रयोग giving something to someone के अर्थ में होता है।
4. (1) said की जगह asked का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि whether के पहले asked का प्रयोग होता है।
5. (2) discovered की जगह invented का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Invent का अर्थ खोजना होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के अनुसार Invented उपयुक्त है।

**Note** : (i) Discover means tracing out something pre-existing but unknown
(ii) Invent means finding out something new.

6. (2) brought की जगह Introduced का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि bring का अर्थ लाना तथा इसका Past form–brought होता जबकि Introduce का अर्थ परिचय देना या कराना, प्रचार करना तथा इसका past form –Introduced होता है। Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए Introduced ही उपयुक्त है।
7. (3) founded की जगह found का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि find का अर्थ 'पाना' तथा इसका past form found होता है जबकि found का अर्थ नींव डालना, बुनियाद डालना। इसका past form– founded होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के लिए found ही उपयुक्त है।
8. (2) broadcasted की जगह broadcast का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि broad cast का present, past तथा past participle form एक ही होता है। अर्थात् broadcasted का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। See oxford Advance Learner's Dictionary.
9. (2) hung की जगह hanged का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि hang का अर्थ 'लटकाना' तथा इसका Past participle form–hung होता है। hang का अर्थ फाँसी देना तथा इसका past participle form– hanged होता है। given sentence के अर्थ के लिए hanged ही उपयुक्त है।
10. (1) went की जगह gone का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि had के बाद $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (3) done की जगह made का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि make a mistake का प्रयोग phrase के रूप में होता है तथा इसका passive form–A mistake made होता है।

ध्यान दें :

| | Active | Passive |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Make a mistake | A mistake made |
| 2. | Make a noise | A noise made |
| 3. | Score a goal | A goal scored |
| 4. | Commit a sin/crime | A sin/crime committed |

12. (2) drunk की जगह drunken का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि drink का दो past participle form क्रमशः drunk तथा drunken होता है। drunk का प्रयोग $V^3$ form के रूप में होता है तथा drunken का प्रयोग past participle form में Adjective के रूप में होता है।
13. (3) Make की जगह made का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि कि would have के बाद $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग होता है।
14. (1) laid की जगह lay का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि lie का अर्थ 'लेटना' तथा इसका past form–lay होता है। जबकि lay का अर्थ 'जम में रखना', 'अंडा देना' तथा इसका past form–laid होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के लिए lay उपयुक्त है।
15. (2) held की जगह hold का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि modal auxiliary verbs (must) के बाद $V^1$ form का प्रयोग होता है न कि $V^2/V^3$ form का।

* * *

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 15 Verb Form

Verb के मुख्यतः पाँच रूप (five forms) होते हैं :

$V^1$ : First form of Verb (Present form of Verb in Plural Number)

जैसे—go, eat, write, work, laugh etc.

$V^2$ : Second form of Verb (Past form of Verb)

जैसे—went, ate, wrote, worked, laughed etc.

$V^3$ : Third form of Verb (past participle form of Verb)

जैसे—gone, eaten, written, worked, laughed etc.

$V^4$ : Fourth form of Verb (ing form of Verb/Present Participle form of Verb)

जैसे—going, eating, writing, working, laughing etc.

$V^5$ : Fifth form of Verb (s/es form of Verb/Singular form of Verb)

जैसे—goes, eats, writes, works, laughs etc.

A. Verb के Present Form अर्थात् $V^1$ से Past Form ($V^2$) तथा Past Participle Form ($V^3$) में बदलने का नियम—

**Rule (1)** : सामान्यतः —d/ed जोड़कर बनाया जाता है।

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| enjoy | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| arrive | arrived | arrived |
| laugh | laughed | laughed |
| work | worked | worked |
| deny | denied | denied |
| answer | answered | answered |

ध्यान दें : Verb के Present form ($V^1$) में *d/ ed* जोड़ने समय सावधानी रखने की जरूरत है।

**Rule (2)** : यदि $V^1$ के last (अंत) में '*e*' हो, तो सिर्फ '*d*' जोड़कर $V^2$ तथा $V^3$ बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| advise | advised | advised |
| die | died | died |
| use | used | used |
| abuse | abused | abused |

**Rule (3)** : यदि $V^1$ के last (अंत) में '*y*' हो, तथा *y* के पहले consonant हो, तो '*y*' को '*I*' में बदल कर '*ed*' जोड़कर $V^2$ तथा $V^3$ बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| try | tried | tried |
| deny | denied | denied |
| carry | carried | carried |
| cry | cried | cried |
| fry | fried | fried |
| marry | married | married |
| dry | dried | dried |

अपवाद : fly – flew – flown

**Rule (4)** : यदि $V^1$ के last में '*y*' हो तथा '*y*' के पहले Vowel हो, तो सिर्फ '*ed*' जोड़कर $V^2$ तथा $V^3$ बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| enjoy | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| play | played | played |

**Note** : कुछ Verbs के साथ उपरोक्त नियम लागू नहीं होता है।

**Rule (5)** : यदि $V^1$ के last में Consonant हो, तथा Consonant के पहले Single Vowel हो, तो '*ed*' जोड़कर $V^2$ तथा $V^3$ बनाते समय Consonant का double (दुगना) हो जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| pat | patted | patted |
| drop | dropped | dropped |
| stop | stopped | stopped |

**Note** : कुछ Verbs के साथ उपरोक्त नियम लागू नहीं होता है।

**Rule (6)** : कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनके अंत में '*d*' रहता है, तथा '*d*' में बदलकर $V^2$ तथा $V^3$ बनाया जाता है।

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| bend | bent | bent |
| spend | spent | spent |
| build | built | built |
| send | sent | sent |

**Rule (7)** : कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनके last में *d* or *t* रहता है, तथा पहले double same Vowel का प्रयोग होता है, तो ऐसी स्थिति में एक Vowel को हटा कर $V^2$ और $V^3$ बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| bleed | bled | bled |
| feed | fed | fed |
| shoot | shot | shot |
| breed | bred | bred |
| meet | met | met |
| **Note :** lead | led | led |

**Rule (8)** : कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनके last में *d/ t* रहता है तथा $V^2$ और $V^3$ form $V^1$ के समान होता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^2$ | $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| hit | hit | hit |
| put | put | put |
| cut | cut | cut |
| cost | cost | cost |
| shut | shut | shut |
| hurt | hurt | hurt |
| wet | wet | wet |

B. Verb के Present Form ($V^1$) से Present Participle Form ($V^4$) में बदलने का नियम अर्थात् ING जोड़ने का नियम।

**Rule (1)** : कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनके last में '*e*' रहता है, तथा *e* के पहले Consonant, तो '*e*' को हटाकर 'ing' जोड़कर Present Participle में बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^4$ | $V^1$ | $V^4$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| arise | arising | awake | awaking |
| abide | abiding | take | taking |
| charge | charging | choose | choosing |
| drive | driving | forsake | forsaking |
| give | giving | ride | riding |
| save | saving | shine | shining |

**Rule (2)** : सामान्यतः Verb के Present form अर्थात् $V^1$ के ing जोड़कर Present Participle ($V^4$) बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^4$ | $V^1$ | $V^4$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| ask | asking | bear | bearing |
| bind | binding | break | breaking |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Rule (3) : कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनके last में Consonant रहता है, तथा Consonant के पहले Vowel रहता है, तो 'ing' जोड़ते समय अंतिम Consonant का double हो जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^4$ | $V^1$ | $V^4$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| bet | betting | beget | begetting |
| begin | beginning | bid | bidding |
| drop | dropping | run | running |
| swim | swimming | dig | digging |
| dim | dimming | get | getting |
| hit | hitting | knit | knitting |
| put | putting | stop | stopping |
| shut | shutting | | |

Rule (4) : कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं, जिनके last में 'ie' रहता है तथा उनमें 'ing' जोड़ते समय 'ie' की जगह 'y' लिखा जाता है। जैसे—

| $V^1$ | $V^4$ |
|---|---|
| lie | lying |
| tie | tying |
| die | dying |

उपरोक्त तथ्यों को कंठाग्र करें तदुपरांत दिये गए कुछ महत्त्वपूर्ण Verb forms याद में रखें—

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| (A) abide *(दृढ़ता से पालन करना)* | abode | abode / abided |
| abduct *(अपहरण करना)* | abducted | abducted |
| abandon *(त्याग देना)* | abandoned | abandoned |
| abate *(कम करना/घटाना)* | abated | abated |
| abort *(गर्भपात कराना)* | aborted | aborted |
| accelerate *(चाल बढ़ना, तेजी से चलना)* | accelerated | accelerated |
| accept *(स्वीकार करना)* | accepted | accepted |
| accommodate *(अनुकूल बनाना)* | accommodated | accommodated |
| accompany *(साथ देना)* | accompanied | accompanied |
| accuse *(अभियोग लगाना/दोषी ठहराना)* | accused | accused |
| acquit *(अभियोग से मुक्त करना)* | acquitted | acquitted |
| adapt *(अनुकूल बनाना)* | adapted | adapted |
| addict *(व्यसन में लिप्त हो जाना)* | addicted | addicted |
| adhere *(जुड़ना/चिपकना)* | adhered | adhered |
| adjourn *(स्थगित कर देना)* | adjourned | adjourned |
| adjust *(ठीक करना/अनुकूल बनाना)* | adjusted | adjusted |
| admire *(प्रशंसा करना)* | admired | admired |
| admit *(प्रवेश करने देना/भर्ती करना)* | admitted | admitted |
| admix *(मिलावट करना/मिश्रण बनाना)* | admixed | admixed |
| advertise *(प्रचार करना/विज्ञापन करना)* | advertised | advertised |
| advise *(सलाह/परामर्श देना)* | advised | advised |
| affect *(प्रभाव डालना/असर करना)* | affected | affected |
| affirm *(दृढ़तापूर्वक कहना/स्वीकार करना)* | affirmed | affirmed |
| afford *(खर्च कर सकना)* | afforded | afforded |
| agree *(सहमत होना)* | agreed | agreed |
| aim *(निशाना लगाना)* | aimed | aimed |
| air *(हवा में सुखाना)* | aired | aired |
| allow *(अनुमति देना, मंजूर करना)* | allowed | allowed |
| amaze *(अचम्भे में डालना)* | amazed | amazed |
| amuse *(मन बहलाना)* | amused | amused |
| analyse *(विश्लेषण करना)* | analysed | analysed |
| answer *(उत्तर देना)* | answered | answered |
| apologize *(माफी माँगना/क्षमा याचना करना)* | apologized | apologized |
| appeal *(प्रार्थना करना)* | appealed | appealed |
| appoint *(नियुक्त करना)* | appointed | appointed |
| appreciate *(अधिक महत्त्व देना)* | appreciated | appreciated |
| apprehend *(समझना)* | apprehended | apprehended |
| approach *(निकट आना, प्रस्ताव/प्रार्थना लेकर जाना)* | approached | approached |
| approve *(स्वीकृति प्रदान करना/मंजूरी देना)* | approved | approved |
| argue *(तर्क करना/प्रमाणित करना)* | argued | argued |
| arise *(उठना/दृष्टिगोचर होना)* | arose | arisen |
| arouse *(जागृत/उत्तेजित करना)* | aroused | aroused |
| arrest *(कैदी करना/बंदी करना)* | arrested | arrested |
| arrive *(पहुँचना)* | arrived | arrived |
| arrange *(क्रम में रखना/प्रबंध करना)* | arranged | arranged |
| ascend *(चढ़ना)* | ascended | ascended |
| ask *(पूछना)* | asked | asked |
| aspire *(आकांक्षा करना)* | aspired | aspired |
| assemble *(एकत्र करना)* | assembled | assembled |
| assess *(सम्पत्ति का मूल्यांकन करना)* | assessed | assessed |
| assist *(सहायता करना)* | assisted | assisted |
| associate *(मिलना/शामिल हो जाना)* | associated | associated |
| astonish *(चकित करना)* | astonished | astonished |
| attach *(बाँधना/जोड़ना)* | attached | attached |
| attack *(आक्रमण/हमला करना)* | attacked | attacked |
| attempt *(प्रयास करना)* | attempted | attempted |
| attend *(ध्यान देना)* | attended | attended |
| attest *(प्रमाणित करना)* | attested | attested |
| attract *(आकर्षित करना)* | attracted | attracted |
| audit *(हिसाब-किताब की जाँच करना)* | auditted | auditted |
| authorize *(प्राधिकृत करना)* | authorized | authorized |
| avail *(उपयोग करना/फायदा उठाना)* | availed | availed |
| avert *(हटाना/टालना)* | averted | averted |
| await *(प्रतीक्षा करना)* | awaited | awaited |
| avoid *(दूर रहना/बचना)* | avoided | avoided |
| awake *(जगाना/सक्रिय होना)* | awoke | awoke / awaked |
| award *(इनाम देना)* | awarded | awarded |
| (B) bake *(पकाना/पकवाना)* | baked | baked |
| balance *(तौलना/संतुलित करना)* | balanced | balanced |
| ban *(प्रतिबंध लगाना)* | banned | banned |
| banish *(देश निकाला देना)* | banished | banished |
| baptize *(ईसाई बनाना)* | baptized | baptized |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| bare (प्रकट कर देना) | bared | bared |
| base (आधार बनाना) | based | based |
| bathe (स्नान करना/पानी से धोना या साफ करना) | bathed | bathed |
| bear (बर्दाश्त करना/ढोना) | bore | borne |
| bear (जन्म देना) | bore | born/borne |
| be (होना) | was | been |
| beat (पीटना) | beat | beaten |
| become (होना) | became | become |
| begin (शुरू करना) | began | begun |
| bend (मोड़ना/झुकना) | bent | bent |
| bind (बाँधना) | bound | bound |
| bite (दाँत से काटना) | bit | bitten |
| bleed (खून बहना) | bled | bled |
| blow (बहना) | blew | blown |
| break (तोड़ना) | broke | broken |
| bring (लाना) | brought | brought |
| build (बनाना) | built | built |
| burn (जलना/जलाना) | burnt | burnt |
| buy (खरीदना) | bought | bought |
| beg (भीख माँगना) | begged | begged |
| bless (आशीर्वाद देना) | blessed | blessed |
| beget (जन्म देना/पैदा करना) | begot | begot/begotten |
| behave (व्यवहार करना) | behaved | behaved |
| behold (देखना/निहारना) | beheld | beheld/beholden |
| bet (बाजी लगाना) | bet | bet |
| beseach (प्रार्थना करना) | besought | besought |
| befit (शोभा देना/अच्छा लगना) | befitted | befitted |
| befriend (मित्र बनाना/दोस्ती करना) | befriended | befriended |
| butter (रोटी पर मक्खन लगाना) | buttered | buttered |
| behead (सिर काट देना) | beheaded | beheaded |
| believe (विश्वास करना) | believed | believed |
| bellow (डकारना/गरजना) | bellowed | bellowed |
| butcher (हत्या करना) | butchered | butchered |
| bestow (अर्पण करना) | bestowed | bestowed |
| bethink (विचारना/सोचना) | bethought | bethought |
| betray (धोखा देना) | betrayed | betrayed |
| betroth (सगाई करना) | betrothed | betrothed |
| better (सुधारना) | bettered | bettered |
| beware (सावधान रहना/ध्यान रखना) | bewared | bewared |
| bid (नीलाम में बोली बोलना) | bid | bid |
| bid (आमंत्रित करना) | bade | bidden |
| blacken (काला बना देना) | blackened | blackened |
| bob (औरतों या लड़कियों के बाल काटना) | bobbed | bobbed |
| boil (उबालना) | boiled | boiled |
| borrow (उधार लेना) | borrowed | borrowed |
| bother (परेशान होना/चिन्ता करना) | bothered | bothered |
| bow (सलाम करना/सिर झुकाना) | bowed | bowed |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| boycott (बहिष्कार करना) | boycotted | boycotted |
| broadcast (प्रसारित करना) | broadcast | broadcast |
| brush (सफाई करना) | brushed | brushed |
| burst (फटना/विस्फोट करना) | burst | burst |
| bury (जमीन में गाड़ देना) | buried | buried |
| butt (सिर या सींग से धक्के मारना) | butted | butted |
| breed (पैदा करना/पालना) | bred | bred |
| (C) calculate (हिसाब लगाना) | calculated | calculated |
| call (पुकारना) | called | called |
| calve (बछड़ा देना/ब्याना) | calved | calved |
| canvass (मतयाचन करना/पक्ष प्रचार करना) | canvassed | canvassed |
| capitulate (आत्म समर्पण करना) | capitulated | capitulated |
| capture (बंदी बनाना) | captured | captured |
| care (परवाह या चिंता करना) | cared | cared |
| carry (ढोना) | carried | carried |
| carve (पत्थर आदि पर नक्काशी करना) | carved | carved |
| cast (फेंकना/गिराना/त्यागना) | cast | cast |
| catch (पकड़ना/लपकना) | caught | caught |
| celebrate (उत्सव मनाना) | celebrated | celebrated |
| centralize (केन्द्रीयकरण करना) | centralized | centralized |
| certify (प्रमाणित करना) | certified | certified |
| change (बदलना) | changed | changed |
| charge (दोषारोपण करना) | charged | charged |
| chase (पीछा करना/बाधा करना) | chased | chased |
| chatter (व्यर्थ की बात करना) | chattered | chattered |
| cheat (ठगना) | cheated | cheated |
| cheer (प्रसन्न करना) | cheered | cheered |
| chew (दाँतों से चबाना) | chewed | chewed |
| chirp (चहचहाना/चूँ-चूँ करना) | chirped | chirped |
| choose (चुनना/पसंद करना) | chose | chosen |
| circulate (भ्रमण करना/संचार होना) | circulated | circulated |
| civilize (सभ्य बनाना) | civilized | civilized |
| claim (अपना अधिकार जताना/दावा करना) | claimed | claimed |
| clap (ताली बजाकर प्रसन्नता प्रकट करना) | clapped | clapped |
| clarify (स्पष्ट करना/हो जाना) | clarified | clarified |
| classify (वर्गीकृत करना) | classified | classified |
| cleanse (अच्छी तरह साफ करना) | cleansed | cleansed |
| cleave (द्विखंडित करना/फाड़ना) | clove | cloven |
| | cleft | cleft |
| | cleaved | cleaved |
| climb (चढ़ना) | climbed | climbed |
| clinch (कील गाड़ना) | clinched | clinched |
| clink (टन-टन की आवाज करना) | clinked | clinked |
| close (बंद करना/होना) | closed | closed |
| cling (कसकर चिपट जाना) | clung | clung |
| clutch (पकड़ना) | clutched | clutched |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| clutter (अव्यवस्थित कर देना) | cluttered | cluttered |
| coax (फुसलाना/बहलाना) | coaxed | coaxed |
| coerce (जबरदस्ती करना/धमकाना) | coerced | coerced |
| coil (लपेट कर गोलाकार बनाना) | coiled | coiled |
| coincide (आकार/विचार में समानता होना) | coincided | coincided |
| collapse (अचानक एकाएक नष्ट हो जाना) | collapsed | collapsed |
| collect (संग्रह करना) | collected | collected |
| collide (टकराना/टक्कर हो जाना) | collided | collided |
| colonize (उपनिवेश करना/बस्ती बनाना) | colonized | colonized |
| colour (रँगना) | coloured | coloured |
| come (आना) | came | come |
| command (आदेश देना) | commanded | commanded |
| commence (प्रारंभ करना) | commenced | commenced |
| commend (प्रशंसा करना) | commended | commended |
| commit (अपराध करना) | committed | committed |
| communicate (पहुँचना/खबर देना) | communicated | communicated |
| compare (तुलना करना) | compared | compared |
| compel (विवश करना) | compelled | compelled |
| compensate (क्षतिपूर्ति करना) | compensated | compensated |
| compete (स्पर्धा करना) | competed | competed |
| compile (संकलित करना) | compiled | compiled |
| complain (शिकायत करना) | complained | complained |
| complete (पूरा करना) | completed | completed |
| complicate (जटिल बनाना) | complicated | complicated |
| comply (किसी प्रार्थना/आज्ञा/इच्छा के अनुसार काम करना) | complied | complied |
| comprehend (पूरी तरह समझ लेना) | comprehended | comprehended |
| compose (बनाना/निर्माण करना) | composed | composed |
| comprise (शामिल करना) | comprised | comprised |
| compute (हिसाब लगाना) | computed | computed |
| conceal (छिपाना/गुप्त रखना) | concealed | concealed |
| conceive (गर्भवती होना) | conceived | conceived |
| concentrate (ध्यान केन्द्रित करना) | concentrated | concentrated |
| concern (सम्बंध रखना/व्यस्त रहना) | concerned | concerned |
| conclude (अंत होना/निष्कर्ष निकालना) | concluded | concluded |
| concrete (ठोस बनाना) | concreted | concreted |
| concur (एकमत होना) | concurred | concurred |
| condemn (बुरा बताना/अपराधी ठहराना/मार्ग बंद करना) | condemned | condemned |
| condense (संक्षिप्त करना/संक्षिप्त रूप से कहना) | condensed | condensed |
| condole (खेद प्रकट करना/ सहानुभूति दिखलाना) | condoled | condoled |
| conduct (संचालन करना/बिजली प्रवाहित करना) | conducted | conducted |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| confess (अपराध/दोष स्वीकार करना) | confessed | confessed |
| confine (कैदकर रखना) | confined | confined |
| confirm (सुदृढ़ करना) | confirmed | confirmed |
| conflict (तालमेल न रखना) | conflicted | conflicted |
| confuse (घबरा देना) | confused | confused |
| congratulate (बधाई देना) | congratulated | congratulated |
| consider (विचार करना/सोचना) | considered | considered |
| console (सांत्वना प्रदान करना) | consoled | consoled |
| conspire (षड्यंत्र रचना) | conspired | conspired |
| construct (निर्माण करना) | constructed | constructed |
| consume (भरपूर इस्तेमाल करना) | consumed | consumed |
| continue (जारी रखना) | continued | continued |
| contribute (चंदा देना) | contributed | contributed |
| convert (रूपान्तरण करना) | converted | converted |
| convict (अपराधी ठहरना) | convicted | convicted |
| copulate (मैथुन करना, सम्भोग करना) | copulated | copulated |
| copy (नकल करना) | copied | copied |
| correspond (अनुरूप/समतुल्य होना) | corresponded | corresponded |
| counsel (सलाह देना) | counselled | counselled |
| create (उत्पन्न करना) | created | created |
| cut (काटना) | cut | cut |
| commence (प्रारंभ करना) | commenced | commenced |
| cost (खर्च होना/लागत होना) | cost | cost |
| creep (रेंगना) | crept | crept |
| cry (चिल्लाना) | cried | cried |
| (D) deal (बर्ताव करना/व्यापार करना) | dealt | dealt |
| dig (खोदना) | dug | dug |
| do (करना) | did | done |
| draw (खींचना) | drew | drawn |
| dream (स्वप्न देखना) | dreamt | dreamt |
| drink (पीना) | drank | drunk |
| drive (हाँकना) | drove | driven |
| dwell (रहना) | dwelt | dwelt |
| die (मरना) | died | died |
| dry (सुखाना) | dried | dried |
| drop (गिराना) | dropped | dropped |
| dance (नाचना) | danced | danced |
| dare (हिम्मत करना) | dared | dared |
| darken (अँधेरा करना) | darkened | darkened |
| debate (बहस करना) | debated | debated |
| deceive (धोखा देना) | deceived | deceived |
| decide (निर्णय करना) | decided | decided |
| declare (घोषणा करना) | declared | declared |
| decline (मना करना/गिरावट आना) | declined | declined |
| decorate (सजाना) | decorated | decorated |
| decrease (कम करना/होना) | decreased | decreased |
| decry (निन्दा करना) | decried | decried |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| dedicate (अच्छे कार्य में जी जान से लग जाना) | dedicated | dedicated |
| defeat (हराना/पराजित करना) | defeated | defeated |
| defend (बचाव करना) | defended | defended |
| defer (स्थगित करना, मान लेना, झुकना) | deferred | deferred |
| defy (खुला विरोध करना) | defied | defied |
| demote (पद घटाना) | demoted | demoted |
| deny (अस्वीकार करना) | denied | denied |
| depart (प्रस्थान करना) | departed | departed |
| derive (प्राप्त करना/पाना) | derived | derived |
| descend (उतारना) | descended | descended |
| describe (वर्णन करना) | described | described |
| despair (निराश होना) | despaired | despaired |
| destroy (नष्ट करना/बर्बाद करना) | destroyed | destroyed |
| detect (पता लगा पाना) | detected | detected |
| devastate (उजाड़ना/नष्ट करना) | devastated | devastated |
| develop (विकसित होना) | developed | developed |
| deviate (विचलित होना) | deviated | deviated |
| diagnose (रोग का निदान करना) | diagnosed | diagnosed |
| dictate (बोलकर लिखाना/आज्ञा देना) | dictated | dictated |
| dip (डूबना/डुबाना) | dipped | dipped |
| disappear (अदृश्य हो जाना/समाप्त हो जाना) | disappeared | disappeared |
| disappoint (निराश करना) | disappointed | disappointed |
| disclose (प्रकट करना) | disclosed | disclosed |
| discourage (हतोत्साहित करना) | discouraged | discouraged |
| discuss (विवाद करना) | discussed | discussed |
| disguise (भेष बदलना) | disguised | disguised |
| dismiss (सेवा समाप्त करना) | dismissed | dismissed |
| disperse (तितर-बितर करना) | dispersed | dispersed |
| displace (सही जगह से हटा देना) | displaced | displaced |
| display (प्रदर्शित करना) | displayed | displayed |
| dispute (बहस करना) | disputed | disputed |
| distinguish (भिन्नता प्रकट करना) | distinguished | distinguished |
| divorce (तलाक देना) | divorced | divorced |
| donate (दान करना) | donated | donated |
| dye (रँगना) | dyed | dyed |
| (E)eat (खाना) | ate | eaten |
| enter (प्रवेश करना) | entered | entered |
| elect (चुनना) | elected | elected |
| earn (कमाना) | earned | earned |
| edit (सम्पादन करना) | editted | editted |
| educate (शिक्षा प्रदान करना) | educated | educated |
| eject (बेदखल करना) | ejected | ejected |
| elapse (समय गुजरना) | elapsed | elapsed |
| elaborate (विस्तार करना) | elaborated | elaborated |
| electrify (बिजली लगाना) | electrified | electrified |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| emancipate (मुक्त करना) | emancipated | emancipated |
| embrace (आलिंगन करना) | embraced | embraced |
| embroider (कसीदा करना) | embroidered | embroidered |
| emit (उत्सर्जन करना/बाहर निकालना) | emitted | emitted |
| emphasize (जोर देकर कोई बात कहना) | emphasized | emphasized |
| employ (नियुक्त करना/काम में लगाना) | employed | employed |
| encroach (अतिक्रमण करना) | encroached | encroached |
| end (अंत होना/करना) | ended | ended |
| enforce (बाध्य/लागू करना) | enforced | enforced |
| enhance (वृद्धि करना/बढ़ाना) | enhanced | enhanced |
| enjoy (खुशी मनाना) | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| enlarge (आकार बढ़ाना/वर्णन करना) | enlarged | enlarged |
| entangle (जाल में फँसना) | entangled | entangled |
| entertain (मनोरंजन प्रदान करना) | entertained | entertained |
| eradicate (नष्ट करना/जड़ सहित उखाड़ना) | eradicated | eradicated |
| escape (भाग जाना) | escaped | escaped |
| establish (स्थापित करना) | established | established |
| estimate (आकलन करना) | estimated | estimated |
| evaluate (मूल्यांकन करना) | evaluated | evaluated |
| exaggerate (बढ़ा-चढ़ा कर कहना) | exaggerated | exaggerated |
| excel (उत्तम होना) | excelled | excelled |
| exceed (से श्रेष्ठ होना) | exceeded | exceeded |
| excite (उत्तेजित करना) | excited | excited |
| exclude (वर्जित करना) | excluded | excluded |
| excuse (क्षमा करना) | excused | excused |
| exercise (व्यायाम करना) | exercised | exercised |
| exhaust (थकान होना) | exhausted | exhausted |
| exhibit (प्रदर्शित करना) | exhibitted | exhibitted |
| expire (अंत होना) | expired | expired |
| explode (विस्फोट होना) | exploded | exploded |
| exploit (शोषण करना) | exploited | exploited |
| eye (सावधानी से देखना) | eyed | eyed |
| (F)fall (गिरना) | fell | fallen |
| feed (खिलाना) | fed | fed |
| feel (महसूस करना) | felt | felt |
| fight (लड़ना) | fought | fought |
| find (पाना) | found | found |
| flee (भागना) | fled | fled |
| fly (उड़ना) | flew | flown |
| forbid (मना करना) | forbade | forbidden |
| forget (भूलना) | forgot | forgotten |
| forgive (माफ करना) | forgave | forgiven |
| fry (तलना) | fried | fried |
| fell (गिराना/पेड़ काटना) | felled | felled |
| flow (बहना) | flowed | flowed |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| fold (मोड़ना) | folded | folded |
| forsake (साथ छोड़ देना) | forsook | forsaken |
| freeze (जमना) | froze | frozen |
| forbear (सहन करना) | forbore | forborne |
| fail (असफल होना) | failed | failed |
| face (सामने देखना) | faced | faced |
| falsify (झूठा बनाना) | falsified | falsified |
| farm (खेती करना/पशु पालना) | farmed | farmed |
| fascinate (आकर्षित करना) | fascinated | fascinated |
| favour (समर्थन करना) | favoured | favoured |
| fear (डरना/डराना) | feared | feared |
| fertilize (उर्वर बनाना) | fertilized | fertilized |
| filtrate (छानना) | filtrated | filtrated |
| finish (समाप्त होना) | finished | finished |
| fire (आग लगाना/जलाना) | fired | fired |
| fish (मछली पकड़ना) | fished | fished |
| flatten (समतल करना) | flattened | flattened |
| flourish (उन्नति करना/फलना-फूलना) | flourished | flourished |
| follow (अनुकरण करना) | followed | followed |
| force (विवश करना) | forced | forced |
| forecast (पूर्वानुमान करना) | forecasted | forecasted |
| foretell (भविष्यवाणी करना) | foretold | foretold |
| form (बनाना/निकालना) | formed | formed |
| found (स्थापित करना) | founded | founded |
| (G) get (पाना) | got | got / gotten |
| give (देना) | gave | given |
| go (जाना) | went | gone |
| grind (पीसना) | ground | ground |
| grow (उगना/उगाना) | grew | grown |
| gain (अर्जित करना) | gained | gained |
| gamble (जुआ खेलना) | gambled | gambled |
| gargle (गरारा/कुल्ला करना) | gargled | gargled |
| gasp (मुश्किल से बोल पाना) | gasped | gasped |
| gather (संग्रह करना) | gathered | gathered |
| germinate (अंकुरना, अंकुराना, पैदा करना) | germinated | germinated |
| glance (निगाह डालना, चमकना) | glanced | glanced |
| glitter (जगमगाना) | glittered | glittered |
| gnaw (कुतरना, दाँत से काटना) | gnawed | gnawed |
| gobble (निगलना) | gobbled | gobbled |
| goggle (आँख फाड़कर देखना) | goggled | goggled |
| govern (शासन करना/अधीन होना) | governed | governed |
| grant (स्वीकार करना) | granted | granted |
| grasp (पकड़ना/थामना) | grasped | grasped |
| gratify (संतुष्ट करना) | gratified | gratified |
| grave (नक्काशी करना/तराशना) | grove | graven |
| graze (घास चरना) | grazed | grazed |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| greet (स्वागत करना) | greeted | greeted |
| grieve (दुःख देना/दुःखी होना/शोक मनाना) | grieved | grieved |
| groan (कराहना/दर्द के कारण चिल्लाना) | groaned | groaned |
| growl (गुर्राना) | growled | growled |
| guarantee (गारण्टी देना) | guaranteed | guaranteed |
| guard (रक्षा करना) | guarded | guarded |
| guess (कल्पना करना/अन्दाज लगाना) | guessed | guessed |
| gyp (धोखा देना) | gyped | gyped |
| (H) hang (फाँसी चढ़ना, टँग जाना) | hanged | hanged |
| hang (लटकाना, टाँगना, लटकना) | hung | hung |
| have (रखना) | had | had |
| hear (सुनना) | heard | heard |
| hide (छिपना/छिपाना) | hid | hidden |
| hit (मारना) | hit | hit |
| hold (पकड़ना) | held | held |
| hurt (चोट पहुँचाना) | hurt | hurt |
| hope (आशा करना) | hoped | hoped |
| hand (सुपुर्द करना) | handed | handed |
| harden (मजबूत करना) | hardened | hardened |
| harvest (फसल काटना) | harvested | harvested |
| hasten (जल्दी करना) | hastened | hastened |
| hatch (अंडा सेकना/षड्यंत्र रचना) | hatched | hatched |
| hate (घृणा करना) | hated | hated |
| heat (गरम करना) | heated | heated |
| help (मदद करना) | helped | helped |
| hesitate (हिचकिचाना) | hesitated | hesitated |
| hinder (बाधा डालना) | hindered | hindered |
| hire (किराये पर लेना, मजदूरी पर रखना) | hired | hired |
| hoist (ऊपर उठाना/ऊँचा करना) | hoisted | hoisted |
| honour (सम्मान करना) | honoured | honoured |
| horrify (आतंकित करना/डराना) | horrified | horrified |
| hospitalize (अस्पताल में भर्ती कराना) | hospitalized | hospitalized |
| house (घर पर ठहराना/संरक्षण प्रदान करना) | housed | housed |
| hover (मँडराना) | hovered | hovered |
| humanize (दयालु होना/बनाना) | humanized | humanized |
| humiliate (अपमानित करना/नीच दिखाना) | humiliated | humiliated |
| hunt (शिकार करना) | hunted | hunted |
| hush (खामोश करना/होना) | hushed | hushed |
| hurl (जोर से फेंककर मारना) | hurled | hurled |
| (I) identify (पहिचानना) | identified | identified |
| ignore (उपेक्षा करना) | ignored | ignored |
| illuminate (प्रदीप्त करना/स्पष्ट करना) | illuminated | illuminated |
| imagine (कल्पना करना/अनुमान लगाना) | imagined | imagined |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| imitate (अनुकरण करना/नकल करना) | imitated | imitated |
| immerse (डुबाना) | immersed | immersed |
| immigrate (दूसरे देश में जाकर बसना) | immigrated | immigrated |
| impel (विवश/मजबूर करना) | impelled | impelled |
| import (आयात करना) | imported | imported |
| impose (जुर्माना करना) | imposed | imposed |
| impress (मन पर गहरा प्रभाव डालना) | impressed | impressed |
| improve (सुधारना) | improved | improved |
| increase (बढ़ना/बढ़ाना) | increased | increased |
| induce (प्रेरित करना/प्रभाव डालना/मनाना) | induced | induced |
| infect (संक्रमित करना) | infected | infected |
| inflict (चोट पहुँचाना) | inflicted | inflicted |
| inform (जानकारी/सूचना देना) | informed | informed |
| inherit (उत्तराधिकार में पैतृक सम्पत्ति पाना/पूर्वजों के गुण प्राप्त करना) | inheritted | inheritted |
| initiate (आरंभ करना) | initiated | initiated |
| inject (इंजेक्शन देना) | injected | injected |
| injure (चोट/हानि पहुँचाना) | injured | injured |
| inquire (पूछना) | inquired | inquired |
| insert (प्रवेश करना/फँसना) | inserted | inserted |
| insist (आग्रह करना) | insisted | insisted |
| inspect (मुआयना करना) | inspected | inspected |
| inspire (प्रेरणा देना/रचनात्मक शक्ति प्रदान करना) | inspired | inspired |
| instruct (निर्देशित करना) | instructed | instructed |
| insult (अपमान करना) | insulted | insulted |
| interchange (विनिमय करना/लेन-देन करना) | interchanged | interchanged |
| interest (रुचि पैदा करना) | interested | interested |
| interfere (हस्तक्षेप करना) | interfered | interfered |
| interrupt (रोकना/विघ्न डालना) | interrupted | interrupted |
| introduce (परिचय कराना) | introduced | introduced |
| invade (आक्रमण करना/भीड़ लगाना) | invaded | invaded |
| invent (आविष्कार करना) | invented | Invented |
| investigate (छानबीन करना) | investigated | investigated |
| invite (निमंत्रण देना) | invited | invited |
| iron (कपड़े पर इस्तरी करना) | ironed | ironed |
| irrigate (सींचना, पानी देना) | irrigated | irrigated |
| irritate (नाराज करना/कष्टदायक होना) | irritated | irritated |
| (J) jeer (हँसी/खिल्ली उड़ाना) | jeered | jeered |
| job (छोटा-मोटा काम करना) | jobbed | jobbed |
| join (मिलाना/जोड़ना) | joined | joined |
| joint (जोड़ लगाना/देना) | jointed | jointed |
| jolt (झटका देना) | jolted | jolted |
| judge (निर्णय देना) | judged | judged |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| jump (कूदना/लाँघना) | jumped | jumped |
| justify (न्याय से प्रमाणित करना/न्याय संगत ठहराना) | justified | justified |
| (K) keep (रखना) | kept | kept |
| kick (लात/ठोकर मारना) | kicked | kicked |
| kidnap (अपहरण करना) | kidnapped | kidnapped |
| kill (जान से मारना) | killed | killed |
| kiss (चूमना) | kissed | kissed |
| kneel (घुटने के बल झुकना) | knelt | knelt |
| knit (एक साथ बाँधना/गाँठ लगाना) | knitted | knitted |
| knock (खटखटाना) | knocked | knocked |
| know (जानना) | knew | known |
| (L) labour (परिश्रम करना) | laboured | laboured |
| lay (अंडा देना/बैठाना) | laid | lain |
| lie (झूठ बोलना/धोखा देना) | lied | lied |
| lie (लेटना/विश्राम करना) | lay | lain |
| land (उतरना) | landed | landed |
| languish (निरुत्साहित हो जाना) | languished | languished |
| lash (चाबुक मारना) | lashed | lashed |
| laugh (हँसना) | laughed | laughed |
| launch (आरंभ करना) | launched | launched |
| lead (नेतृत्व करना) | led | led |
| lean (झुकना, टेढ़ा होना) | leaned / leant | leaned / lean |
| leap (कूदना/उछलना) | leaped / leapt | leaped / leap |
| learn (सीखना) | learnt | learnt |
| leave (छोड़ना) | left | left |
| lecture (भाषण देना) | lectured | lectured |
| lend (उधार देना) | lent | lent |
| let (आज्ञा देना) | let | let |
| level (समतल करना) | levelled | levelled |
| liberate (दासता से मुक्त करना) | liberated | liberated |
| lift (ऊँचा उठाना/उन्नत करना) | lifted | lifted |
| like (पसंद करना) | liked | liked |
| limit (सीमित करना) | limited | limited |
| listen (ध्यान से सुनना) | listened | listened |
| live (रहना) | lived | lived |
| load (बोझा लादना) | loaded | loaded |
| lock (ताला लगाना) | locked | locked |
| lodge (बसाना) | lodged | lodged |
| look (देखना) | looked | looked |
| lose (खो देना) | lost | lost |
| love (प्रेम करना) | loved | loved |
| lower (नीचे करना/गिरना) | lowered | lowered |
| luxuriate (विलासी जीवन बिताना) | luxuriated | luxuriated |
| (M) magnify (आवर्धन करना) | magnified | magnified |
| maintain (बाधू रखना, पालन-पोषण करना, बचाव करना) | maintained | maintained |
| make (बनाना) | made | made |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| maltreat (बुरा व्यवहार करना) | maltreated | maltreated |
| man (आदमी जुटाना) | manned | manned |
| manage (व्यवस्था करना) | managed | managed |
| march (कूच करना/चलना) | marched | marched |
| mark (निशान लगाना) | marked | marked |
| market (क्रय विक्रय करना) | marketed | marketed |
| marry (शादी करना) | married | married |
| master (दक्ष होना/जिसे प्राप्त करना) | mastered | mastered |
| match (समान होना/सामना करना) | matched | matched |
| mean (अर्थ बताना) | meant | meant |
| mediate (मध्यस्थता करना) | mediated | mediated |
| meditate (चिन्तन करना) | meditated | meditated |
| meet (मिलना) | met | met |
| melt (पिघलाना) | melted | melted |
| memorize (कण्ठस्थ कर लेना) | memorized | memorized |
| mend (मरम्मत करना) | mended | mended |
| mention (उल्लेख/जिक्र करना) | mentioned | mentioned |
| merge (एक में मिलना/लीन होना) | merged | merged |
| migrate (प्रवास करना) | migrated | migrated |
| milk (दूध दुहना) | milked | milked |
| mind (ध्यान रखना) | minded | minded |
| mine (खान खोदना) | mined | mined |
| mingle (मिश्रण करना/मिलाना) | mingled | mingled |
| minimize (न्यूनतम करना) | minimized | minimized |
| misapprehend (गलत समझना) | misapprehended | misapprehended |
| misbehave (दुराचरण करना) | misbehaved | misbehaved |
| mistake (भूल करना) | mistook | mistaken |
| mock (चिढ़ाना/तिरस्कार करना) | mocked | mocked |
| modify (परिवर्तन करना/विशेषता देना) | modified | modified |
| mount (चढ़ना) | mounted | mounted |
| mourn (शोक करना) | mourned | mourned |
| move (घूमना/हटना/हटाना) | moved | moved |
| multiply (गुणा करना) | multiplied | multiplied |
| murder (हत्या करना) | murdered | murdered |
| mystify (विस्मित कर देना/रहस्यमय बनाना) | mystified | mystified |
| (N) name (नाम रखना) | named | named |
| narrate (वर्णन करना/कहना) | narrated | narrated |
| nationalize (राष्ट्रीयकरण करना) | nationalized | nationalized |
| need (आवश्यक होना) | needed | needed |
| neglect (उपेक्षा करना) | neglected | neglected |
| negotiate (तय करना/सौदा करना) | negotiated | negotiated |
| neigh (हिनहिनाना) | neighed | neighed |
| nod (अभिवादन या स्वीकृति के लिए सिर झुकाना) | nodded | nodded |
| nominate (नामांकित/नियुक्ति करना) | nominated | nominated |
| note (ध्यान देना/ख्याल करना) | noted | noted |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| notice (सूचना देना) | noticed | noticed |
| notify (सूचना देना) | notified | notified |
| nourish (पालन करना) | nourished | norished |
| nurse (परिचर्या करना) | nursed | nursed |
| nuzzle (नाक रगड़ना) | nuzzled | nuzzled |
| (O) obey (आज्ञापालन करना) | obeyed | obeyed |
| object (विरोध करना) | objected | objected |
| obligate (विवश करना) | obligated | obligated |
| oblige (कृपा/एहसान करना) | obliged | obliged |
| observe (ध्यान देना, अनुसरण करना) | observed | observed |
| obstruct (रुकावट करना) | obstructed | obstructed |
| obtain (प्राप्त करना) | obtained | obtained |
| occupy (कब्जा कर लेना/ध्यान/समय या स्थान लेना) | occupied | occupied |
| occur (घटित होना/ध्यान में आना) | occurred | occurred |
| offer (प्रदान करना) | offered | offered |
| omit (भूल जाना/छोड़ देना) | omitted | omitted |
| open (खोलना) | opened | opened |
| operate (शल्य क्रिया करना) | operated | operated |
| oppress (दबाना) | oppressed | oppressed |
| order (आदेश देना) | ordered | ordered |
| organize (सुव्यवस्थित रूप देना) | organized | organized |
| outdo (अधिक अच्छा काम करना) | outdid | outdone |
| outwit (अधिक चातुर्य प्रदर्शित करना) | outwitted | outwitted |
| overflow (उमड़ना/लबालब भर जाना) | overflowed | overflowed |
| own (अधिकार में होना) | owned | owned |
| (P) pacify (शांत/संतुष्ट करना) | pacified | pacified |
| pack (गट्ठर बनाना) | packed | packed |
| pardon (क्षमा/माफ करना) | pardoned | pardoned |
| participate (सम्मिलित होना) | participated | participated |
| pass (उत्तीर्ण होना) | passed | passed |
| part (अलग/विभाजित करना) | parted | parted |
| patrol (रक्षार्थ गश्त लगाना) | patrolled | patrolled |
| pay (चुकाना, भुगतान करना) | paid | paid |
| peak (चोटी पर पहुँचना) | peaked | peaked |
| pee (पेशाब करना) | peed | peed |
| pencil (पेन्सिल से लिखना) | pencilled | pencilled |
| penetrate (घुसना/आरपार हो जाना) | penetrated | penetrated |
| perceive (अनुभव/ज्ञान करना) | perceived | perceived |
| perish (नाश होना) | perished | perished |
| permit (अनुमति देना) | permitted | permitted |
| perplex (घबड़ा देना) | perplexed | perplexed |
| persist (आग्रह करना) | persisted | persisted |
| personify (मानवीकृत करना) | personified | personified |
| persuade (विश्वास दिलाना) | persuaded | persuaded |
| phone (फोन करना) | phoned | phoned |
| pick (चुनना) | picked | picked |
| pierce (भेदना/चुभना) | pierced | pierced |
| pig (गंदी जगह में रहना) | pigged | pigged |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| pin (आपसीन से नत्थी करना) | pinned | pinned |
| place (रखना, नियत करना) | placed | placed |
| plant (पेड़ पौधे लगाना/स्थापित करना) | planted | planted |
| play (खेलना) | played | played |
| plead (तर्क या बहस करना) | pleaded | pleaded |
| please (संतोष प्रदान करना/प्रसन्न करना) | pleased | pleased |
| plough (हल चलाना/जोतना) | ploughed | ploughed |
| point (संकेत करना) | pointed | pointed |
| poll (मतदान करना) | polled | polled |
| possess (अधिकार में होना) | possessed | possessed |
| pounce (झपटना) | pounced | pounced |
| pour (उड़ेलना) | poured | poured |
| practise (अभ्यास करना) | practised | practised |
| praise (प्रशंसा करना) | praised | praised |
| pray (प्रार्थना करना) | prayed | prayed |
| preach (उपदेश देना) | preached | preached |
| predict (भविष्यवाणी करना) | predicted | predicted |
| prefer (अधिक पसंद करना) | preferred | preferred |
| prescribe (औषध निर्देश करना) | prescribed | prescribed |
| preserve (संरक्षित करना) | preserved | preserved |
| presume (सत्य मान लेना) | presumed | presumed |
| pretend (बहाना बनाना) | pretended | pretended |
| prevail (विजय पाना/मना लेना) | prevailed | prevailed |
| prevent (बचाना/रोकना) | prevented | prevented |
| print (छापना) | printed | printed |
| produce (उत्पादन करना) | produced | produced |
| profit (लाभान्वित होना) | profitted | profitted |
| prohibit (मना करना) | prohibitted | prohibitted |
| project (योजना बनाना) | projected | projected |
| pronounce (घोषित / शब्द का उच्चारण करना) | pronounced | pronounced |
| propel (आगे बढ़ाना) | propelled | propelled |
| propose (प्रस्ताव रखना) | proposed | proposed |
| prosecute (जारी रखना/अभियोग लगाना) | prosecuted | prosecuted |
| protect (रक्षा करना) | protected | protected |
| protest (विरोध करना) | protested | protested |
| prove (साबित करना) | proved | proved |
| provide (प्रदान करना) | provided | provided |
| publish (प्रकाशित करना) | published | published |
| punctuate (विराम चिह्न लगाना) | punctuated | punctuated |
| punish (दंड देना) | punished | punished |
| purchase (खरीदना) | purchased | purchased |
| purify (साफ/शुद्ध करना) | purified | purified |
| push (धक्का देना) | pushed | pushed |
| put (रखना) | put | put |
| puzzle (चकरा देना) | puzzled | puzzled |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| (Q) qualify (योग्य बनाना/विशेषता बताना) | qualified | qualified |
| quarrel (झगड़ा करना) | quarelled | quarelled |
| question (प्रश्न) | questioned | questioned |
| quiz (जाँच करने हेतु प्रश्न पूछना) | quizzed | quizzed |
| quit (छोड़ना/आजाद करना) | quit / quitted | quit / quitted |
| quicten (शांत करना) | quietened | quietened |
| (R) radiate (विकिरण करना) | radiated | radiated |
| rain (वर्षा होना) | rained | rained |
| raise (उठाना/संचय करना) | raised | raised |
| range (कतार में लगाना) | ranged | ranged |
| rationalize (तर्क सहित समझाना) | rationalized | rationalized |
| reach (पहुँचना) | reached | reached |
| read (पढ़ना) | read (रेड) | read (रेड) |
| realize (अनुभव करना) | realized | realized |
| reap (फसल काटना) | reaped | reaped |
| rear (उगना, उगाना, लालन-पालन करना) | reared | reared |
| rebel (विद्रोह करना) | rebelled | rebelled |
| rebuke (सख्ती से बर्ताव करना) | rebuked | rebuked |
| recall (वापस बुलाना) | recalled | recalled |
| receive (पाना, स्वागत करना) | received | received |
| recite (पाठ करना, सुनाना) | recited | recited |
| recognize (पहिचानना) | recognized | recognized |
| recommend (अनुमोदन करना) | recommended | recommended |
| record (लिपिबद्ध करना/अंकित करना) | recorded | recorded |
| recover (खोयी हुई चीज फिर से पाना) | recovered | recovered |
| rectify (सही करना) | rectified | rectified |
| redden (लाल करना) | reddened | reddened |
| redo (दोबारा करना) | redid | redone |
| reduce (कम करना/घटाना) | reduced | reduced |
| refine (दोष दूर करना/शुद्ध करना) | refined | refined |
| reform (सुधार करना) | reformed | reformed |
| refrain (दूर रहना/बचते रहना) | refrained | refrained |
| refuse (अस्वीकार करना) | refused | refused |
| regard (अभिवादन करना) | regarded | regarded |
| regret (पश्चाताप करना) | regretted | regretted |
| regulate (नियमित करना) | regulated | regulated |
| reject (अस्वीकार करना) | rejected | rejected |
| relax (आराम करना) | relaxed | relaxed |
| release (मुक्त करना/छोड़ना) | released | released |
| relieve (पीड़ा दूर करना) | relieved | relieved |
| rely (भरोसा रखना) | relied | relied |
| remand (हिरासत में भेजना) | remanded | remanded |
| remember (याद करना) | remembered | remembered |
| remind (याद कराना) | reminded | reminded |
| remove (हटाना) | removed | removed |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| repair (मरम्मत करना) | repaired | repaired |
| repay (रकम वापस/क्षतिपूर्ति करना | repaid | repaid |
| repel (लेने से मना करना, दूर करना) | repelled | repelled |
| repent (पछताना) | repented | repented |
| reply (जवाब देना) | replied | replied |
| report (सूचना देना) | reported | reported |
| resist (आगे बढ़ने से रोकना) | resisted | resisted |
| ride (सवारी करना) | rode | ridden |
| rise (उठना/उठाना) | rose | risen |
| ring (बजाना) | rang | rung |
| run (दौड़ना) | ran | run |
| (S) see (देखना) | saw | seen |
| seek (खोजना) | sought | sought |
| sell (बेचना) | sold | sold |
| send (भेजना) | sent | sent |
| set (ठीक करना) | set | set |
| shake (हिलाना) | shook | shaken |
| shine (चमकना) | shone | shone |
| shoot (गोली मारना) | shot | shot |
| show (दिखाना) | showed | showed |
| shut (बंद करना) | shut | shut |
| sing (गाना) | sang | sung |
| sink (डूबना) | sank | sunk |
| sleep (सोना) | slept | slept |
| slide (फिसलना) | slid | slid |
| smell (सूँघना) | smelt | smelt |
| sow (बोना) | sowed | sowed |
| speak (बोलना) | spoke | spoken |
| spend (बिताना/खर्च करना) | spent | spent |
| spoil (बर्बाद करना) | spoilt/spoiled | spoilt/spoiled |
| spit (थूकना) | spat | spat |
| spread (फैलना) | spread | spread |
| spring (उछलना) | sprang | sprung |
| stand (खड़ा होना) | stood | stood |
| steal (चोरी करना) | stole | stolen |
| sting (डंक मारना) | stang | stung |
| study (अध्ययन करना) | studied | studied |
| strike (हड़ताल करना) | struck | struck |
| swear (कसम खाना) | swore | sworn |
| sweep (बुहारना) | swept | swept |
| swim (तैरना) | swam | swum |
| sail (नाव/जहाज खेना) | sailed | sailed |
| satisfy (तृप्त करना) | satisfied | satisfied |
| say (कहना) | said | said |
| scatter (तितर-बितर करना) | scattered | scattered |
| school (शिक्षा देना, नियंत्रण में रखना, अनुशासन प्रदान करना) | schooled | schooled |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| scold (डाँटना) | scolded | scolded |
| scratch (लकीर खींचना) | scratched | scratched |
| scream (चीखना) | screamed | screamed |
| search (तलाशी लेना, खोजना) | searched | searched |
| secured (सुनिश्चित करना) | secured | secured |
| select (चुनना) | selected | selected |
| sentence (निर्णय देना/दंड देना) | sentenced | sentenced |
| serve (सेवा करना) | served | served |
| sew (सिलाई करना) | sewed | sewed |
| shave (दाढ़ी बनाना) | shaved | shaved |
| shiver (डर/सर्दी से काँपना) | shivered | shivered |
| shorten (छोटा करना) | shortened | shortened |
| shout (जोर से चिल्लाना) | shouted | shouted |
| shrink (सिकुड़ना) | shrank | shrank |
| sign (हस्ताक्षर करना) | signed | signed |
| signify (सूचित करना) | signified | signified |
| simplify (सरल करना) | simplified | simplified |
| shriek (चीखना, ठहाका लगाना) | shrieked | shrieked |
| sit (बैठना) | sat | sat |
| skip (उछलना/छलाँग मारना) | skipped | skipped |
| slay (कत्ल करना, वध करना) | slew | slain |
| slip (संतुलन खोना/फिसलना) | slipped | slipped |
| smile (मुस्कराना) | smiled | smiled |
| snatch (छिनना) | snatched | snatched |
| sob (सिसकना) | sobbed | sobbed |
| soften (मुलायम करना) | softened | softened |
| solicit (प्रार्थना करना) | solicited | solicited |
| soothe (शांत करना) | soothed | soothed |
| spin (सूत कातना) | span | spun |
| spray (फुहारा देना) | sprayed | sprayed |
| stare (टक-टकी लगा कर देखना) | stared | stared |
| start (प्रारंभ करना) | started | started |
| starve (भूख से मरना) | starved | starved |
| stay (ठहरना) | stayed | stayed |
| step (कदम रखना) | stepped | stepped |
| stick (चिपके रहना) | stuck | stuck |
| stock (संचय करना) | stocked | stocked |
| stop (रोकना, बंद कर देना) | stopped | stopped |
| string (माला पिरोना, रस्सी से बाँधना, लटकाना) | strung | strung |
| submit (समर्पित करना) | submitted | submitted |
| succeed (सफल होना) | succeeded | succeeded |
| suffer (तकलीफ सहना) | suffered | suffered |
| suffocate (दम घुटना) | suffocated | suffocated |
| suggest (प्रस्ताव करना) | suggested | suggested |
| summon (बुलाना) | summoned | summoned |
| supervise (देखभाल करना) | supervised | supervised |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| supply (उपलब्ध कराना) | supplied | supplied |
| suppress (दबा देना) | suppressed | suppressed |
| surrender (समर्पण करना) | surrendered | surrendered |
| survive (जीवित रहना) | survived | survived |
| swallow (निगलना) | swallowed | swallowed |
| sweep (झाड़ू लगाना) | swept | swept |
| swing (झूलना) | swung | swung |
| sympathize (सहानुभूति दिखाना) | sympathized | sympathized |
| (T) talk (बात करना) | talked | talked |
| thank (धन्यवाद देना) | thanked | thanked |
| take (लेना) | took | taken |
| teach (पढ़ाना) | taught | taught |
| tear (फाड़ना) | tore | torn |
| tell (कहना) | told | told |
| think (सोचना) | thinked | thinked |
| think (विचार करना) | thought | thought |
| throw (फेंकना) | threw | thrown |
| thrust (दबाना) | thrust | thrust |
| tame (पालतू बनाना) | tamed | tamed |
| tease (तंग करना) | teased | teased |
| telecast (टी० वी० पर प्रसारित करना) | telecasted | telecasted |
| terrify (भयभीत करना) | terrified | terrified |
| threaten (धमकी देना) | threatened | threatened |
| thresh (भूसे से अनाज निकालना) | threshed | threshed |
| tie (बाँधना) | tied | tied |
| toil (परिश्रम करना) | toiled | toiled |
| torture (कष्ट पहुँचाना) | tortured | tortured |
| trade (व्यापार करना) | traded | traded |
| train (प्रशिक्षण प्रदान करना) | trained | trained |
| trample (पैरों से कुचलना) | trampled | trampled |
| transfer (स्थानान्तरण करना) | transfered | transfered |
| transport (एक स्थान से दूसरे स्थान पर ले जाना) | transported | transported |
| travel (यात्रा करना) | travelled | travelled |
| treat (बर्ताव करना) | treated | treated |
| tremble (काँपना/थरथराना) | trembled | trembled |
| trespass (अतिक्रमण करना) | trespassed | trespassed |
| trouble (कष्ट सहना) | troubled | troubled |
| try (प्रयास करना) | tried | tried |
| twitter (चहचहाना) | twittered | twittered |
| (U) understand (समझना) | understood | understood |
| upset (उलट देना, गड़बड़ा देना) | upset | upset |

| Present Tense $V^1$ | Past Tense $V^2$ | Past Participle $V^3$ |
|---|---|---|
| use (व्यवहार करना) | used | used |
| undergo (अनुभव करना, सहन करना) | underwent | undergone |
| undertake (कोई काम करने के लिए राजी होना) | undertook | undertaken |
| (W) wake (जगना/जगाना) | woke / waked | woken / woke |
| wear (पहनना) | wore | worn |
| weave (बुनना) | wove | woven |
| weep (रोना) | wept | wept |
| win (जीतना) | won | won |
| withdraw (निकालना/वापस लेना) | withdrew | withdrawn |
| withhold (रोक रखना) | withheld | withheld |
| wash (धोना) | washed | washed |
| walk (टहलना) | walked | walked |
| want (चाहना) | wanted | wanted |
| write (लिखना) | wrote | written |
| work (काम करना) | worked | worked |
| wet (भिगोना) | wet | wet |
| wed (शादी करना) | wed / wedded | wed / wedded |
| ware (सावधान रहना) | wared | wared |
| warm (गरम करना/उत्तेजित करना) | warmed | warmed |
| warn (चेतावनी देना) | warned | warned |
| watch (रखवाली करना) | watched | watched |
| water (पानी डालना) | watered | watered |
| whip (चाबुक मारना) | whipped | whipped |
| whistle (सीटी बजाना) | whistled | whistled |
| wipe (पोंछना) | wiped | wiped |
| worship (पूजा करना) | worshipped | worshipped |
| wrap (लपेटना) | wrapped | wrapped |
| wrestle (कुश्ती लड़ना) | wrestled | wrestled |
| wring (मरोड़ना) | wrung | wrung |
| (Y) yap (कुत्ते का जोर से भौंकना) | yapped | yapped |
| yell (चीखना/चिल्लाना) | yelled | yelled |
| yield (उत्पन्न करना) | yielded | yielded |

**Note :** (i) Broadcast का Past tense तथा Past participle form– Broadcasted भी होता है।

(ii) Forecast का Past tense तथा Past participle form– Forecast भी होता है।

(iii) Telecast का Past tense तथा Past participle form–Telecast भी होता है।

(iv) प्रमाणिकता के लिए Collins concise Dictionary Page No. 186,559,1550 देखें।

(v) उपरोक्त Verbs का Past Tense तथा Past participle form बिना 'ed' का प्रचलन में है।

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Auxiliary Verbs 16

अंग्रेजी भाषा में Verbs को दो वर्गों (Classes) में बाँटा गया है।

Verbs
- Lexical Verbs
- Auxiliary Verbs
  - Primary Auxiliary Verbs
  - Modal Auxiliary Verbs
  - Marginal Auxiliary Verbs

**1. Lexical verbs :** वे Verbs जो Sentence में Main verbs के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं जिसका $V^1$, $V^2$, $V^3$, $V^4$ (ing-form) तथा $V^5$ (s/es-form) के form में प्रयोग होता है तथा जिसका अर्थ स्वतंत्र होता है, Lexical verbs कहलाते हैं। इसे ordinary verbs भी कहा जाता है। जैसे—to go, to drink, to laugh, to run, to walk, to eat... etc. इन वाक्यों में Lexical verbs के प्रयोग को देखें और समझने की कोशिश करें—

| | |
|---|---|
| I write a letter. | ($V^1$–write) |
| He wrote a letter. | ($V^2$–wrote) |
| He has not written a letter. | ($V^3$–written) |
| He is writing a letter. | ($V^4$–writing) |
| He writes a letter. | ($V^5$–writes) |

**2. Auxiliary verbs :** वे verbs जो अन्य verbs के साथ प्रयुक्त होकर Question, Negative तथा Tense बनाने के साथ-साथ possibility (संभावना) तथा willingness (इच्छा) को express करने का कार्य करते हैं, Auxiliary verbs कहलाते हैं। इन्हें helping verbs भी कहा जाता है। जैसे—

1. **Primary Auxiliary Verbs** : to do, to have, to be.
2. **Modal Auxiliary Verbs** : can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must, ought to.
3. **Marginal Auxiliary Verbs** : used to, need, dare.

इन वाक्यों में Auxiliary Verbs के प्रयोग को देखें और समझने की कोशिश करें। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| He is writing a letter. | I am reading a book. |
| You don't like her. | Do you speak English ? |
| Her father may come today. | It might rain today. |
| He can lift this box. | |

उपरोक्त Sentences में is, Main verb—writing के साथ Present Continuous Tense बनाता है, 'Am' main verb—reading के साथ Present Continuous Tense बनाता है, 'do', main verb—like के साथ negative बनाता है, 'do', main verb—speak के साथ Question बनाता है, 'may', main verb—come के साथ possibility (संभावना) बताता है। 'might', main verb—rain के साथ possibility बताता है, 'can', main verb— lift के साथ capacity/power/ability बताता है। अतः Is, am, do, may, might, can Auxiliary verbs हैं।

**Note :** (i) Auxiliary verbs—जैसे—am, is, are, has, have etc. का प्रयोग sentence में स्वतंत्र रूप से Main verb के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| I am an advocate. | (*am* used as main verb) |
| She is a good girl. | (*is* used as main verb) |
| You have a watch. | (*have* used as main verb) |
| He was an honest man. | (*was* used as main verb) |
| They are industrious. | (*are* used as main verb) |

(ii) Auxiliary Verbs—Be, do, have, need तथा dare का प्रयोग Lexical Verbs के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| He was doing his work. | (*doing* used as Lexical Verbs) |
| I have written a book. | (*have* used as Lexical Verbs) |
| She needs your help. | (*needs* used as Lexical Verbs) |
| He dares to go there. | (*dares* used as Lexical Verbs) |

प्रयोग तथा बनावट के दृष्टिकोण से Auxiliary Verbs को तीन भागों में बाँटा जा सकता है।

1. Primary Auxiliary Verbs
2. Modal Auxiliary Verbs
3. Marginal Auxiliary Verbs

**1. Primary Auxiliary Verbs :** Verb to be जैसे—be, am, is, are, was, were, been, being; Verb to have जैसे—have, has, had, having तथा verb to do जैसे—do, does, did को Primary Auxiliary Verbs कहा जाता है।

**2. Modal Auxiliary Verbs :** can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must, ought to को Modal Auxiliary Verbs कहा जाता है।

**3. Marginal Auxiliary Verbs :** used to, dare तथा need को marginal Auxiliary Verbs कहा जाता है।

## Some Important Facts of Auxiliary Verbs

**Rule (1) :** Modal Auxiliary verbs का प्रयोग Main Verbs के रूप में नहीं होता है। इसका प्रयोग Helping Verbs के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

You can help me.
He will go there tomorrow.
It may rain today.
She could pass the examination.
We must respect our elders.

**Rule (2) :** Modal Auxiliary Verbs का $V^1$, $V^2$, $V^3$, $V^4$ (ing form), $V^5$ (s/es-form) forms नहीं होते हैं। इसका प्रयोग सभी numbers तथा persons के Subjects के साथ हमेशा एक ही रूप में होता है। अर्थात् इसके रूप (form) में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I can speak English.
We can speak English.
You can speak English.
He can speak English.
They can speak English.

**Rule (3) :** सामान्यतः Modal Auxiliary Verbs के बाद M. $V^1$ (first form of Main Verb) का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I can go | (√) | (go–$V^1$) |
| I can to go | (×) | (to go—Infinitive with to) |
| He will come here | (√) | (come–$V^1$) |
| He will to come here | (×) | (to come–Infinitive with to) |
| It might be true | (√) | (be–$V^1$) |
| It might to be true | (×) | (to be–Infinitive with to) |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (4) :** Ought तथा Used के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We ought to help the poor. (✓)
We ought help the poor. (×)
He used to walk in the morning. (✓)
He used walk in the morning. (×)

**Rule (5) :** Dare तथा Need का प्रयोग Main Verb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He needs my help. *(need used as Main verb)*
She does not dare to go there. *(dare used as Main verb)*

**Rule (6) :** Verb to be का प्रयोग Continuous Tense में $M.V^4$ (Present participle) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is taking coffee. I was playing cricket.
She will be dancing.

**Rule (7) :** Verb to be का प्रयोग Passive voice में $M.V^3$ (Past participle) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

A letter was written by me.
My watch has been stolen.
A book had been written by him.

**Rule (8) :** Verb to be का प्रयोग Passive voice में Intransitive verbs के $V^3$ (Past participle) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

The sun has come out. Summer is gone.
*सूरज निकल गया है।* *ग्रीष्म चला गया है।*

**Rule (9) :** Do/does/did का प्रयोग Simple Present तथा Simple Past Tense में Negative sentence बनाने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

He does not want to tell a lie.
You don't tell me a story.
She did not give me a note book.

**Rule (10) :** Do/does/did का प्रयोग Question या Interrogative sentence बनाने के लिए किया जाता है। Do/does तथा did के बाद हमेशा $M.V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Does he write a letter ?
Did he come yesterday ?
Do you love me?

**Rule (11) :** Do/does/did का प्रयोग Simple Present तथा Simple Past Tense के Sentences को Emphatic बनाने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He does sing a song.
You do write a letter.
He did drink a glass of milk.

**Rule (12) :** Do का प्रयोग Imperative sentence का Negative तथा Emphatic बनाने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Don't go there. *—Negative*
Do sing it again. *—Emphatic*

**Rule (13) :** Has/have/had का प्रयोग Present, Past तथा future Tense के sentences में $M.V^3$ (Past participle) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

I have made a mistake.
You have spoken the truth.
He has written a letter.
I had heard of her before.
She will have arrived there.

**Note :** (i) Is, are, am, was, were, been do, does, did, has, have तथा had का प्रयोग Main Verb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

We are happy.
She is naughty.
He was a popular leader.
They were sailors.
He does nothing but play.

(ii) is, are, am, was, were, has, have, had etc के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I am to see her tomorrow.
We are to be married next month.
I have to move the furniture myself.

## Use of Modal Auxiliary Verbs

### A. Use of Can

**Rule (1) :** Can का प्रयोग power *(शक्ति)*, ability *(योग्यता)* तथा capacity *(सामर्थ्य/क्षमता)* को express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He can lift the box.
I can swim across the river.
You can speak English.
She can solve the problem.
I can defeat my opponent.
We can climb Mount Abu.

**Note :** इस प्रकार के sentences में can का अर्थ be able to/be capable of/know how to होता है। जैसे—

You can speak English.
अर्थ—(i) You are able to speak English.
(ii) You are capable of speaking English.
(iii) You know how to speak English.

**Ruel (2) :** Can का प्रयोग permission *(अनुमति)* देने के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You can go now.
You can buy pens from the shop.
Can I go to the cinema tonight ?
Can I see your diary ?
Stop ! you can't do that.

**Note :** (i) इस प्रकार के Sentences में can का अर्थ—be allowed to/be permitted to होता है। जैसे—

You can go now.
अर्थ—(i) You are allowed to go now.
(ii) You are permitted to go now.

(ii) Permission देने के भाव को express करने के लिए can के बदले may के प्रयोग को ज्यादा बेहतर और उपयुक्त माना जाता है।

(iii) Permission लेने के भाव को express करने के लिए May के प्रयोग को ज्यादा बेहतर और उपयुक्त माना जाता है अतः हम लोगों को permission लेने के लिए may का प्रयोग ही करना चाहिए, न कि can का।

**Rule (3) :** Can का प्रयोग theoretical possibility *(सैद्धांतिक सम्भावना)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Everyone can make a mistake.
It can't be true.
Electricity can be dangerous.

**Rule (4) :** Can का प्रयोग habit *(आदत)* or nature *(स्वभाव)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

A deceitful person can deceive us.
An honest man cannot harm anyone.

### B. Use of Could

**Rule (1) :** Could का प्रयोग can के Past Tense form के रूप में Indirect speech में होता है। जैसे—

He said, "I can beat you in the race." *Direct*
He said that he could beat me in the race. *Indirect*
I said, "I can solve this sum." *Direct*
I said that I could solve that sum. *Indirect*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


**Rule (2)** : could का प्रयोग Past ability/power/capacity (भूतकाल में निहित योग्यता/शक्ति/सामर्थ्य) को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

My brother could drive a car at the age of sixteen.
He could pass the Board examination.
When I was young, I could outrun him .

[**Outrun (v)**—*से अधिक तेज दौड़ना/दौड़ में आगे निकल जाना।*]

**Note** : उपरोक्त Sentences में Could के प्रयोग से क्षमता का बोध हो रहा है, कार्य के पूरा होने का नहीं। कोई कार्य/व्यापार समाप्त हुआ का बोध कराने के लिए was/were able to, managed to, succeeded in etc का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. He could pass the Board examination
*उसे बोर्ड परीक्षा पास करने की क्षमता थी, परन्तु पास किया या नहीं, यह मालूम नहीं।*

अर्थ– = He was able to pass the Board Examination
= He passed the Board Examination.
*वह शक्ति और सामर्थ्य के कारण बोर्ड परीक्षा पास कर सका।*

**Rule (3)** : Could का प्रयोग Polite request/permission के भाव को express करने के लिए Interrogative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

Could you help her, please ?
Could I smoke here ?
Could I borrow your notebook for two days ?
Could you, please, post this letter ?

**Note** : Polite Request/Permission *(विनम्र निवेदन/अनुमति)* के भाव को express करने के लिए can तथा may की अपेक्षा could के प्रयोग को ज्यादा बेहतर और उपयुक्त माना जाता है।

**Rule (4)** : Could का प्रयोग Possibility *(संभावना)* को express करने के लिए Present के unreal situation *(अवास्तविक परिस्थिति)* को express करने वाले sentences में होता है। जैसे—

If I had more money, I could buy a motor cycle.– *Possibility*
If you worked hard, you could succeed. –*Possibility*

## C. Use of May

**Rule (1)** : May का प्रयोग to take or give permission *(अनुमति देने/लेने)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Q. May I use your mobile ?
A. Yes, you may.
Q. May I come in, sir ?
A. No, you may not.
Q. May I go out, madam ?
A. Yes, you may.
Q. May she live with you ?
A. Yes, she may live with me.

**Note** : (i) इस प्रकार के Sentences में may का प्रयोग be allowed to के अर्थ में हुआ है। जैसे—

You may go now
अर्थ—You are allowed to go now.

(ii) Formal style में To give permission *(अनुमति देने)* के भाव को express करने के लिए can से ज्यादा may का प्रयोग प्रचलन में है।

**Rule (2)** : May का प्रयोग Possibility/uncertainty *(संभावना/अनिश्चितता)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

It may rain today.
Your uncle may come today.
She may come late today.
I may buy a colour T.V. this year.
It may be true.

**Rule (3)** : May का प्रयोग wish/pray/bless/curse (इच्छा/अभिलाषा, प्रार्थना, आशीर्वाद, अभिशाप) को express करने के लिए optative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

May you live long !
May God bless you !
May you have a happy and long life !
May you succeed in life !
May our publisher live long !

**Rule (4)** : यदि Principal clause Present Tense में हो तथा subordinate clause that/so that/in order that से स्टार्ट (प्रारंभ) हो तथा इससे purpose (उद्देश्य) का बोध हो तो subordinate clause में may का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I work hard that/so that/in order that/I may succeed.
*(मैं कठिन परिश्रम करता हूँ ताकि मैं सफल हो सकूँ।)*
We eat that/so that/in order that we may live.
*(हमलोग खाते हैं ताकि हमलोग जिन्दा रह सकें।)*
We obey our elders that/so that/in order that we may prosper in our life.
*(हमलोग अपने से बड़ों की आज्ञा का पालन करते हैं ताकि हमलोग अपने जीवन में उन्नति कर सकें।)*

**Rule (5)** : May का प्रयोग uncertainty/surprise *(अनिश्चितता/आश्चर्य)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

How old she may be !
Who may be there !

## D. Use of 'Might'

**Rule (1)** : Might का प्रयोग may के Past Tense form के रूप में Indirect speech में होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| He said, "You may go now". | *Direct* |
| He said that I might go then. | *Indirect* |
| He said, "May you live long ! | *Direct* |
| He said that I might live long. | *Indirect* |

**Rule (2)** : Might का प्रयोग less possibility *(कम संभावना)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जबकि may का प्रयोग more possibility के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Less possibility *(कम संभावना)* | More possibility *(अधिक संभावना)* |
|---|---|
| 1. It might rain today. | 1. It may rain today. |
| 2. Her husband might come anytime. | 2. Her husband may come anytime. |
| 3. You might love me. | 3. You may love me. |
| 4. She might come late. | 4. She may come late. |

**Note** : (i) जब किसी कार्य या व्यापार के होने की बहुत अधिक संभावना हो तो can का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) Can से कम संभावना के भाव को express करने के लिए may का प्रयोग होता है।

(iii) May से कम संभावना के भाव को express करने के लिए might का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (3)** : Might का प्रयोग polite request/permission *(विनम्र निवेदन/अनुमति)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Might I ask a question ?
You might make a little less noise.

**Note** : (i) अब तक हमलोगों ने देखा कि polite request/permission के भाव को express करने के लिए can, could, may तथा might का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(ii) लेकिन can/may की अपेक्षा अधिक विनम्रता तथा शिष्टता के भाव को express करने के लिए could/might का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(iii) Can से ज्यादा politeness *(विनम्रता)* के भाव को express करने के लिए may का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**Rule (4) :** Suppositional sentence— I wish, we wish, he wishes, she wishes, asif, as though, if only, suppose से स्टार्ट होते हैं। इससे कोरी कल्पना का बोध होता है। कोरी कल्पना को express करने वाले clause में might का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

If you worked hard, you might succeed.
I wish he might have seen 'Mother India'.
If you had left your note book there, somebody might have stolen it.

**E. Use of 'Shall'**

**Rule (1) :** Shall का प्रयोग first person के Subjects I/we के साथ future के किसी कार्य-व्यापार, घटना को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I shall go to Muzaffarpur tomorrow.
We shall go there tonight.

**Note :** Shall का प्रयोग second person के Subject— you तथा third person के Subject—He, she, it, they, S. N. or P. N. के साथ command *(आदेश)*, promise *(प्रतिज्ञा/वादा)* threatened *(धमकी)*, determination *(दृढ़संकल्प)*, compulsion *(अनिवार्यता)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

**(a) Command** *(आदेश)*

You shall sit outside the office.
He shall go there at once.

**(b) Promise** *(प्रतिज्ञा/वादा)*

You shall have a holiday tomorrow.
He shall be awarded.

**(c) Threatened** *(धमकी)*

If you do this, you shall be dismissed.
He shall be punished if he does that again.

**(d) Determination** *(दृढ़संकल्प)*

You shall go there.
He shall obey me.

**(E) Compulsion** *(अनिवार्यता)*

You shall come to school at ten.
Students shall pay their fees by the 8th of every month.

**Rule (2) :** Let us/let's से स्टार्ट होने वाले Imperative sentences के question tags में shall का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Let us dance together, shall we ?
Let's play, shall we ?
Let us work together, shall we ?

**Rule (3) :** Shall का प्रयोग suggestions *(सुझावों)* को express करने वाले Interrogative sentence में first person के subjects के साथ होता है। जैसे—

Shall we talk to the headman ?
Shall I open the gate ?

**Rule (4) :** Shall का प्रयोग simple futurity *(सामान्य भविष्य में होने वाली घटना)*, permission *(अनुमति)* or desire *(इच्छा)* को express करने वाले Interrogative sentence में first person के subject के साथ होता है। जैसे—

**(a) Simple futurity**

Shall I be wasting in despair ?

**(b) Permission**

Shall we go out ?

**(c) Desire**

Shall I thread the needle for you ?

**Rule (5) :** Shall का प्रयोग Orders *(आदेशों)*, Instructions *(निर्देश)* तथा Speculations *(अनुमानों)* को express करने वाले Interrogative sentence में first person के subjects के साथ होता है। जैसे—

**(a) Orders or Instructions**

What shall I do for your children, sir ?

**(b) Speculations**

What shall I do in a month ?
Where shall we live this time next week ?

**F. Use of 'Will'**

**Rule (1) :** Will का प्रयोग Second तथा Third Person के subjects (you/he, she, it, S. N, they, P. N) के साथ future के किसी कार्य, व्यापार, घटना को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You will go to Jamshedpur tomorrow.
He will help her.
They will come back soon.
She will marry Rakesh next month.
The Super Fast Express will leave at 10 : 30 a. m.

**Note :** Will का प्रयोग First Person के Subjects I/we के साथ determination *(दृढ़संकल्प/पक्का इरादा)*, promise *(प्रतिज्ञा/वादा)*, threatening *(धमकी)*, willingness *(इच्छा)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

**(a) Determination**

I will not surrender before the judge.
We will not allow her to come in.

**(b) Promise**

I will do everything for my son.
We will try to help you in this examination.

**(c) Threatening.**

I will kill him.
We will spoil you.

**(d) Willingness**

I will go to Rajgir with my wife.
We will request him to help you.

**Rule (2) :** Will का प्रयोग second तथा Third person के subjects (you/he, she, it, S. N., They or P. N.) के साथ Interrogative sentences में Information (सूचना) प्राप्त करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Will you buy a radio set today ?
Will he go to Rajgir tomorrow ?

**Rule 3 :** Will का प्रयोग invitation *(निमंत्रण)*, request *(आग्रह)*, instructions *(निर्देशों)*, orders *(आदेशों)* तथा inevitability *(अवश्यसम्भाविता)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

**(a) Invitation**

Will you come to dinner ?

**(b) Request**

Will you help me ?

**(c) Instructions/orders**

Bring a glass of water, will you ?
You will do it anyway.

**(d) Inevitability**

Accidents will happen.
The poor will be poor.

**Note :** (i) be obliged, be grateful, be forced, be compelled, be at a loss, be able, be unable का प्रयोग किसी sentence में हो तो

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



first person के subjects— I/we के साथ हमेशा shall का प्रयोग होता है न कि will का। जैसे—

I shall be obliged to you. (✓)
I will be obliged to you. (×)
I shall be able to do it. (✓)
I will be able to do it. (×)

(ii) Will not/won't का प्रयोग refusal *(इनकार)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I will not do it anycost.
I won't do it anycost.
The car will not start.
The car won't start.

## G. Use of 'Would'

**Rule (1)** : Would का प्रयोग will के Past Tense form के रूप में Indirect speech में होता है। जैसे—

He said, "He will go there." *Direct*
He said that he would go there. *Indirect*
She said, "You will love me." *Direct*
She said that he would love her. *Indirect*

**Rule (2)** : Would का प्रयोग Past habit को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He would talk upon the subject for hours together.
She would sit for hours in her garden and knit.
Gandhijee would spin every morning.
He would go for a walk every morning.
After lunch he would have a shortnap.

**Rule (3)** : Would का प्रयोग Polite request को express करने के लिए Interrogative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

Would you please lend me your book ?
Would you like to have a cup of coffee ?
Would you please listen to me ?

**Rule (4)** : Would का प्रयोग Probability *(संभावना)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He would be her husband.
He would be a farmer.

**Rule (5)** : Would का प्रयोग wish *(इच्छा)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Would that he were here.
अर्थ– = I wish that he were here.
Would that I were a bird.
I wish I would see her again.

**Note** : Would like to का प्रयोग भी wish *(इच्छा)* को express करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

He would like to know what his future is.

**Rule (6)** : Would का प्रयोग determination *(दृढ़ता/निश्चय)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He would have his own way.
अर्थ– = He was determined to have his own way.
The criminal would never surrender before the judge.
He would not lie.

**Rule (7)** : Would का प्रयोग Past willingness *(तत्परता)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

She said that she would help me.
I would do as you bid.
He would like to see her.

**Rule (8)** : Would का प्रयोग Preference (पसंद/प्राथमिकता) or choice (पसंद/चुनाव) को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He would rather die than tell a lie.
She would rather go than stay.
He would as soon die as beg.

**Note** : जब comparative degree के sentence में would का प्रयोग preference or choice को express करने के लिए होता है तो would के बाद rather or sooner का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (9)** : Would का प्रयोग Present or Past के unreal conditions या कोरी कल्पना को express करने वाले sentences के principal clause में होता है। जैसे—

If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.
If I were the P. M. of India, I would solve the problem of Kashmir.
I would go there, if I were allowed.
If you were to start early tomorrow morning, you would reach there before sunrise.
If you had worked hard, you would have been successful.
If he had visited Agra, he would have seen the Taj Mahal.

**Note** : इस प्रकार के sentences के principal clause में possibility (संभावना) को express करने के लिए would के बदले could or might का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

If I had money, I could buy a motor cycle.
If you had come here, you might have done well.

**Rule (10)** : Would का प्रयोग refusal (इंकार) के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He wouldn't answer any questions.
He refused to answer any questions.
The machine wouldn't start.

## H. Use of 'Should'

**Rule (1)** : Should का प्रयोग shall के Past Tense form के रूप में Indirect speech में होता है। जैसे—

I said, "I shall not do this work." *Direct*
I said that I should not do that work. *Indirect*
He said to me, "Will you help me ?" *Direct*
He asked me if I should help him. *Indirect*

**Rule (2)** : Should का प्रयोग moral obligation *(नैतिक दायित्व)* or duty *(कर्तव्य)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

One should love one's country.
We should not tell a lie.
You should not quarrel with your friend.
Children should obey their parents.
We should keep our promises.
People should obey the laws of the country.
He should control his temper.
We should speak the truth.
One should love one's neighbours.
You should come to school in time.

**Note** : Should have का प्रयोग Past duty को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I should have attended the meeting yesterday but I forgot all about it.
He should have paid the money long ago.

**Rule (3)** : Should का प्रयोग advice देने के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You should not laugh at his mistakes.



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



We should not give the child a knife to play with.
He should consult a doctor at once.
You should abstain from wine.

**Rule (4) :** Should का प्रयोग supposition *(कल्पना)* को express करने के लिए conditional clause में होता है। जैसे—

If it should rain, they will not come.
If she should see me here, she will be annoyed.

**Rule (5) :** Should का प्रयोग possibility *(संभावना)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I think he should come tomorrow.
They should win the match.

**Note :** Should का प्रयोग less possibility *(कम संभावना)* को express करने के लिए conditional clause में होता है। इससे 'संदेह' के भाव का बोध होता है। जैसे—

If he should come, ask him to wait for me.

ऊपर दिये गए example में if he should come का अर्थ "उसके आने की कम संभावना है फिर भी यदि वह आता है तो ...." होता है।

**Rule (6) :** So that/in order that से स्टार्ट होने वाले clause में purpose and result को express करने के लिए should का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We did it carefully so that one should see it.
He did it in order that all should be satisfied.

**Rule (7) :** Should का प्रयोग lest के बाद negative purpose *(नकारात्मक उद्देश्य)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He ran fast lest he should miss the train.
Work hard lest you should fail.
Take heed lest you should fall.

**Rule (8) :** Should का प्रयोग subordinate clause में verbs or phrases के बाद determination, willingness, threats, orders or promises को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I promised my son that he should have a new book.
I have ordered that he should play today.
The officer gave orders that we should be well looked after.
Is your elder brother willing that you should go abroad ?

**Rule (9) :** Should का प्रयोग formal notices or instructions *(औपचारिक सूचनाएँ/निर्देशों)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Candidates should answer all the questions.
Your applications should reach here before 26th January, 2015.

**Rule 10 :** Should का प्रयोग condition (शर्त) को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Should he not come, what shall we do ?
अर्थ— = If he should not come, what shall we do.
Should anybody object, do not come ?

**Rule (11) :** Should का प्रयोग unreal situation *(अवास्तविक स्थिति)* को express करने वाले sentences के principal clause में polite advice *(विनम्र सलाह)* or Improvement *(सुधार)* के लिए दिये गए डाँट फटकार के लिए होता है। जैसे—

If he were you, he should not do it.
If I were you, I should not cheat him.

## I. Use of 'Ought To'

**Rule (1) :** Ought to का प्रयोग moral obligation *(नैतिक कर्त्तव्य)* desirability or duty को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

We ought to love our country.
We ought to help those who are in need.
You ought to help your poor friends.
One ought not to make a noise in the class.
He ought to be ashamed of his rude behaviour.
You ought to get better marks.
One ought not to abuse a beggar.
Students ought to work hard.

**Rule (2) :** Ought to का प्रयोग strong probability *(प्रबल संभावना)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He ought to win the race.
She ought to pass in the first division.
The film ought to be a great success.

**Rule (3) :** Ought to का प्रयोग Advice *(सलाह)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You ought to read the Gita.
Students ought to get up early in the morning.

**Rule (4) :** Ought to का प्रयोग logical necessity *(तार्किक आवश्यकता)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Aditi ought not to be late.
Aditya ought to start at once.

**Note :** उपरोक्त सभी परिस्थितियों में Ought to के बदले should का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

**Rule (5) :** *Ought to + have + M.V*$^3$ का प्रयोग Past obligation को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He ought to have worked hard.
I ought to have visited my brother yesterday.
You ought to have seen the film.
She ought to have obeyed her husband.
You ought to have helped her.

**Note :** (i) Ought to का Past Tense form नहीं होता है। लेकिन इसका *Past Tense form ought to + have + M. V*$^3$ के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है।

(ii) Ought to तथा should का प्रयोग एक दूसरे के बदले होता है। अर्थात् इसके प्रयोग में कोई अंतर नहीं होता है।

**Rule (6) :** *Ought not to + have + M.V*$^3$ का प्रयोग Past के disapproval *(नामंजूरी/अस्वीकृति)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You ought not to have laughed at her mistakes.
Veena ought not to have treated her husband like that.

## J. Use of 'Must'

**Rule (1) :** Must का प्रयोग compulsion *(बाध्यता)* or strong moral obligation *(प्रबल नैतिक कर्त्तव्य)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Candidates must answer at least five out of the ten questions.
Cars must not be parked in front of the gate.
One must keep one's promises.
You must do as you are told.
Soldiers must obey orders without questions.
The patient must take medicine in time.

**Rule (2) :** Must का प्रयोग fixed determination *(पक्का इरादा/दृढ़संकल्प)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

We must go.
I must have my money back.
You must surrender yourself to her father.
We must firmly deal with the anti social elements.
You must lend him Rs 1000.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule 3 :** Must का प्रयोग duty *(कर्तव्य)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

A soldier must fight for his country.
A judge must be upright.
Every one must do his duty.

**Rule (4) :** Must का प्रयोग certainty *(निश्चितता)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You must finish the work by tomorrow.
We must win this match.
Your father must be nearly seventy now.

**Rule (5) :** Must का प्रयोग strong likelihood *(प्रबल संभावना)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

You must have heard about Smt. Gandhi.
He must be hungry after his long walk.
He must be a robber.

**Rule (6) :** Must का प्रयोग inevitable *(अनिवार्य/अवश्यसम्भावी)* के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

We must all die.
If we want to keep ourselves fit, we must get up early.
Students must work hard to get 80% marks.

**Note :** (i) written orders or instructions *(लिखित आदेशों या निर्देशों)* को express करने के लिए भी must का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Employees must be at their desks by 10. a.m.
Workers must be at their duty on Sunday next.

(ii) अधिक तीव्रता के भाव को express करने के लिए should के बदले must का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

## K. Use of 'Used To'

**Rule (1) :** Used to का प्रयोग Past habit/situation *(भूतकाल की आदत/अवस्था)* को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He used to walk in the morning.
Gandhijee used to spin in the afternoon.
My grandmother used to go to temple every morning.
She used to play ludo before her marriage.
People used to think that the sun travelled round the earth.

**Note :** (i) Used to तथा would दोनों का प्रयोग Past habit को express करने के लिए एक दूसरे के बदले किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

He would walk in the morning.
Gandhijee would spin in the afternoon.

(ii) Use to or uses to का प्रयोग Present habit को express करने के लिए नहीं होता है। बल्कि Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| He uses to smoke | (×) | He smokes. | (√) |
| We use to eat | (×) | We eat. | (√) |

**Rule (2) :** Used to का प्रयोग discontinued habit को express करने के लिए किया जाता है न कि would का। जैसे—

I used to smoke cigarettes; now I smoke a pipe.
He used to drink beer; now he drinks wine.

**Note :** (i) Used to का प्रयोग affirmative, negative तथा Interrogative sentence में इस प्रकार होता है। जैसे—

**(a) Affirmative**

He used to walk.

**(b) Negative**

He used not to walk.
He did not use to walk.

**(c) Interrogative**

Used he to walk ?
Did he use to walk ?

(ii) Used to का प्रयोग be accustomed to (अभ्यस्त होना) के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में used का प्रयोग adjective के रूप में होता है तथा इसके पहले be, become, get का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है जो किसी भी Tense में प्रयुक्त हो सकता है। इस अर्थ में used to के बाद noun/pronoun/gerund का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। जैसे—

He is not used to drinking tea without any sugar in it.
She is used to working in a noisy room
I am not used to walking long distances.
They soon got used to living in the country.
I am not used to a hot climate.

## L. Use of 'Need'

**Rule (1) :** Need का प्रयोग 'की आवश्यकता होना या चाहना' (require/to have to be necessary) के अर्थ में main verb के रूप में singular तथा plural दोनों form में होता है। जैसे—

He needs my help.
S.V.
He needs to go there.
S.V.
They need to do their homework.
P.V.
I need a book.
P.V.
You need some money.
P.V

**Note :** (i) Need का प्रयोग main verb के रूप में Past Tense तथा Past Participle के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I needed his permission to write this book.
He needed to talk to her.

(ii) Need का प्रयोग continuous Tense में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He is needing some books. (×)
He needs some books. (√)

(iii) जब Need का प्रयोग main verb के रूप में होता है तो इसका negative तथा Interrogative sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

**(a) Negative sentences**

He does not need my help.
They do not need to do their homework.
I did not need his permission to write this book.

**(b) Interrogative sentences.**

Do you need my help ?
Does he need a book ?
Did he need to come here ?

(iv) Need का प्रयोग main verb के रूप में होता है तो इसके बाद जरूरत के मुताबिक infinitive with 'to' (to + v) का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I need to go there. (√)
I need go there (×)
He needs to attend the class (√)
He needs attend the class. (×)
They needed to come here. (√)
They needed come here. (×)

**Rule (2) :** Need not/needn't का प्रयोग marginal Auxiliary verb के रूप में negative idea को express करने के लिए हमेशा plural form में होता है। जैसे—

I need not go there. (√)
P.F
He need not come here. (√)
P.F



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He needs not come here. (×)
S.F
You needn't do this work. (√)

**Note :** (i) S.F. का अर्थ Singular Form तथा P. F का अर्थ Plural Form होता है।

(ii) Need not / needn't के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He need not to go there. (×)
He need not go there. (√)
I needn't to help you. (×)
I needn't help you. (√)

**Rule (3) :** Need का प्रयोग Marginal Auxiliary Verb के रूप में या Modal Auxiliary verbs की तरह Interrogative sentence में plural form में इस प्रकार होता है। जैसे—

Need she go there ?
Need he meet his boss ?

**Note :** Need का प्रयोग hardly / only के साथ Marginal Auxiliary Verb के रूप में या Modal Auxiliary Verbs की तरह plural form में होता है। ऐसा प्रयोग भी अंग्रेजी भाषा में होता है। जैसे—

We need hardly remind you of your promise to visit us.
She need only sign this form and I shall do the rest.

**M. Use of 'Dare'**

**Rule (1) :** Dare का प्रयोग 'साहस करना या हिम्मत करना' (to be courageous enough to do something or to have the impudence) के अर्थ में main verb के रूप में singular तथा plural दोनों form में होता है। जैसे—

He dares to go there.
S.V.
I dare to oppose my father.
P.V.
They dare to come here.
P.V.

**Note :** (i) Dare का प्रयोग main verb के रूप में Past Tense तथा Past participle के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He dared to call me a fool.
She dared to oppose her husband.

(ii) जब Dare का प्रयोग 'चुनौती देना या ललकारना' (challenge) के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके ठीक बाद object का प्रयोग होता है तथा object के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He dared me to get success.
I dared him to win the match.

(iii) जब Dare का प्रयोग main verb के रूप में होता है तो इसका Negative तथा Interrogative Sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

**(a) Negative Sentences**

He does not dare to go there.
I don't dare to oppose my father.
They did not dare to talk to me.

**(b) Interrogative Sentences**

Does she dare to come here ?
Do I dare to oppose my teacher ?
Did they dare to talk to me ?

(iv) Dare का प्रयोग Main verb के रूप में होता है तो इसके बाद जरूरत के मुताबिक Infinitive With 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He does not dare to oppose his boss. (√)
He does not dare oppose his boss. (×)
They do not dare to speak against you. (√)
They do not dare speak against you. (×)

**Rule (2) :** Dare not / Daren't का प्रयोग Marginal Auxiliary verb के रूप में negative idea को express करने के लिए हमेशा Plural form में होता है। जैसे—

I dare not go there. (√)
P.F.
He dare not oppose his father. (√)
P.F.
He dares not to oppose his father. (×)
S.F.

**Note :** Dare not / Daren't के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He dare not to go there. (×)
He dare not go there. (√)
I daren't to call you a fool. (×)
I daren't call you a fool. (√)

**Rule (3) :** Dare का प्रयोग Marginal Auxiliary verb के रूप में या Modal Auxiliary verb की तरह Interrogative Sentence में Plural Form में Infinitive With 'to' के बिना होता है। जैसे—

Dare she oppose her father ?
How dare you touch her ?

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में dare का प्रयोग Marginal या Modal Auxiliary verb के रूप में हुआ है। लेकिन How do you dare to touch her ? में dare का प्रयोग Main verb के रूप में हुआ है।

ध्यान देने योग्य बातें :

**Rule (1) :** Double modal Auxiliary verbs का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He should must go there. (×)
He should go there. (√)
He must go there. (√)
You can must solve this sum. (×)
You can solve this sum. (√)
You must solve this sum. (√)

**Rule (2) :** Double Modal Auxiliary verbs का प्रयोग किसी Conjunction (and) से जोड़कर किया जाता है। जैसे—

He should and must go there.
You can and must solve this sum.

**Rule (3) :** यदि double Auxiliary verbs का प्रयोग किसी Conjunction (and) से जोड़कर एक Main Verb के लिए हो तो दोनों Auxiliary Verbs के साथ Main verb के suitable form का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

You have won and will win a lot of prizes.
$V^3$ $V^1$
He has not worked hard and will not work hard.
$V^3$ $V^1$

**Rule (4) :** यदि दो Subjects किसी Sentence के Subject हों तथा उनमें एक Singular तथा दूसरा Plural हो और दोनों Subjects Conjunction (and) से जुड़े हों तो दोनों Subjects के Number तथा Person के मुताबिक Auxiliary Verbs का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

One was honest and five were dishonest. (√)
S.V P.V
One was honest and five dishonest. (×)
One has failed and six have passed. (√)
One has failed and six passed. (×)

उपरोक्त वाक्यों से यह स्पष्ट है कि दूसरे Subject के साथ Auxiliary Verb का प्रयोग नहीं करने या होने पर sentence गलत हो जाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



One was honest and five was dis honest. (×)
S.V. S.V.

One has failed and six has passed. (×)
S.V. S.V.

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Modal Auxiliary verbs given in the brackets :*

1. ..... I go out, Sir ? *(may/can)*
2. You ..... speak Hindi. *(can/may)*
3. It ..... rain tonight. *(may/can)*
4. The patient ..... take medicine in time. *(should/might)*
5. Work hard lest you ..... fail. *(should/would)*
6. ..... God help you! *(may/might)*
7. He ..... not help me. *(need/needs)*
8. She said that she ..... do. *(can/could)*
9. He ..... be rewarded if he stands first in his class. *(shall/will)*
10. I ..... punish you if you don't behave yourself. *(shall/will)*
11. You ..... do your duty cheerfully. *(should/must)*
12. I ..... like to see that pen. *(would/might)*
13. We ..... not to walk on the grass. *(ought/should)*
14. The work ..... time and patience. *(need/needs)*
15. He ..... come here tomorrow. *(need not/needs not)*
16. He ..... punish the child. *(dare not/dares not)*
17. He ..... to ring her up again. *(doesnot dare/daren't)*
18. They ..... to go swimming every morning. *(used/did used)*
19. I ..... know what my duty is. *(would/should)*
20. The box was so heavy that I ..... lift it. *(cannot/could not)*
21. Make haste lest you ..... miss the train. *(should/may)*
22. Gandhijee ..... to walk in the morning. *(used/ought)*
23. He prayed that God ..... give me prosperity. *(might/could)*
24. ..... I do it for you ? *(may/can)*
25. You ..... keep your promise. *(should/ought)*

**Q. 2.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Modal Auxiliary Verbs or Auxiliary verbs :*

1. Children ..... obey their parents.
2. We ..... to be married next month.
3. He ..... to be there by 5 O' clock.
4. I ..... swim across the river.
5. He ..... write what he can.
6. I ..... buy the book on English poetry.
7. We ..... not go tomorrow.
8. ..... you lift this book ?
9. I ..... swim across the river when I was young.
10. You ..... have a holiday tomorrow.
11. I ..... go to see the match.
12. It ..... rain in another hour or two.
13. ..... we go there tomorrow?
14. The letter ..... leave by today's mail.
15. Once every week he ..... go for a swim in the sea.
16. She ..... sing a song.
17. You ..... take regular exercise.
18. ..... you live long !
19. I worked hard lest I ..... fail.
20. He ..... be given a reward for his ability.
21. ..... I carry your bag?
22. I ..... go there in spite of all difficulties.
23. He ..... speak French.
24. Students ..... pay respect to their teachers.
25. We read so that we ..... get knowledge.

**Q. 3.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Modal Auxiliary verbs or Auxiliary Verbs :*

1. I ..... concentrate for longer hours when I was younger.
2. We ..... obey the rules of the school.
3. We ..... to respect our teachers.
4. I ..... to live there when I was a boy.
5. He said that he ..... be twenty five next birthday.
6. The letter ..... arrive tomorrow.
7. They ..... built more hospitals.
8. Anyone ..... join the club.
9. My grandfather ..... walk on his legs.
10. ..... You help me ?
11. We ..... not to make a noise in the class.
12. ..... you lend me your book ?
13. You ..... control your temper.
14. We ..... obey our elders.
15. I ..... swim across the river when I was young.
16. We ..... to respect our elders.
17. You ..... obey your principal.
18. He ..... reach here by evening.
19. ..... our country prosper !
20. ..... you tell me the time ?
21. Anuj ..... appear in the I. A. S Examination next year.
22. You ..... go now.
23. He said that I ..... go.
24. He told me that I ..... pass.
25. ..... I have your pen ?

**Q. 4.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Modal Auxiliary Verbs or Auxiliary verbs :*

1. There ..... to be some more buses.
2. He ..... buy a coat.
3. He ..... pass if he worked hard.
4. We ..... not withdraw from the contest.
5. You ..... go home now.
6. He ..... solve this sum.
7. When he was young he ..... swim for hours.
8. It ..... be true.
9. ..... I ask a question ?
10. We ..... love our country.
11. Candidates ..... answer all the questions.
12. The teacher ..... be honest in his dealing.
13. We ..... to help the helpless.
14. He said that he ..... do the work.
15. Boys ..... be boys.
16. He wish he ..... see her again.
17. Gandhijee ..... to spin everyday.
18. He ..... oppose his father.
19. I ..... like to see him.
20. ..... you help me ?
21. We ..... go there tonight.
22. You ..... do as you are told.
23. We ..... not tell a lie.
24. It ..... rain today.
25. Who ..... be your enemy here ?

**Q. 5.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Modal Auxiliary verbs or Auxiliary verbs :*

1. ..... I borrow your pen for a week ?
2. This ..... not be true.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. The workers ..... start the work.
4. The patients ..... consult a doctor.
5. You ..... not to be late.
6. He ..... to walk in the morning.
7. ..... God help him !
8. The patients ..... take medicine in time.
9. The deaf ..... not hear.
10. No one ..... challenge him.
11. She ..... come today.
12. She works hard so that she ..... pass the examination.
13. We ..... see Anshu tomorrow.
14. Let us walk, ..... we ?
15. I ..... do it again and again in my life.
16. He prayed that God ..... bless me.
17. The servant ..... serve his master honestly.
18. If I were a bird, I ..... fly.
19. Soldiers ..... obey their commander.
20. She ..... play chess.
21. One ..... keep one's promise.
22. He ..... to read this book.
23. ..... I do it for her ?
24. He ..... just asked a question.
25. Work hard lest you ..... fail.

**Q. 6.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Modal Auxiliary verbs or Auxiliary verbs :*

1. You must ..... left the flat by now.
2. I wish I ..... the C. M. of Bihar.
3. We ..... not live without water.
4. He ..... not like the dishonest.
5. ..... you ever been gone to Agra ?
6. One ..... to protect one's friends.
7. Teachers ..... be at their tables by 10 a.m.
8. Applications ..... reach here before 31st June.
9. You ..... try to pass the B.S.E.B examination.
10. ..... we talk to Mr. Nitish Kumar.
11. ..... I use your towel, please ?
12. Obey your teachers that you ..... prosper in life.
13. ..... you do it ?
14. One ..... to look after one's old parents.
15. He ..... not do it at any cost.
16. The Rajdhani Express ..... reach here tomorrow morning.
17. Nilu ..... marry Rakesh next Month.
18. We ..... help the needy.
19. ..... you like to have a cup of coffee ?
20. Make haste, lest you ..... miss the bus.
21. If I were a king, I ..... make her my queen.
22. He ..... rather die than beg.
23. I ..... to drink fresh water, now I drink polluted water.
24. ..... you lead a happy life !
25. He ..... be twenty five next year.

**Q. 7.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Modal Auxiliary verbs or Auxiliary verbs :*

1. We ..... not laugh at the helpless.
2. Five years ..... passed since you came here.
3. I ..... unable to support you.
4. Why ..... you not attend the class regularly ?
5. Nobody ..... seen in the school office yesterday.
6. You ..... do your duty.
7. He ..... lift this load.
8. ..... you be here next Monday ?
9. The doctor knew that the patient ..... die.
10. ..... you tell me the time ?
11. We ..... donate blood in this camp.
12. ..... you live long !
13. He ..... pass if he worked hard.
14. You ..... clear your accounts before leaving.
15. He ..... defeat his opponent.
16. He said that he ..... beat him at chess.
17. ..... his efforts be crowned with success !
18. He worked hard that he ..... get good marks.
19. We ..... follow the traffic rules.
20. We ..... not cross the road against red light.
21. She says that she ..... marry him.
22. He ..... not oppose me.
23. You ..... not to drink so much.
24. He ..... not do it.
25. He ..... come tomorrow.

**Q. 8.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. We may climb Mount Everest.
2. He is working hard so that he could stand first in the class.
3. You should leave for home immediately.
4. If you do it, you will be fined.
5. You could use this plot of land for business purposes.
6. We laugh so that we cannot weep.
7. You might write an application to the principal to condone (क्षमा करना) the fine.
8. We may not enter this prohibitted area.
9. Might you live happily and long !
10. She wondered whether it might be true.
11. You could pay a little more attention to your appearance.
12. She could sit for hours listening to the wireless.
13. Should you lend me your scooter, please ?
14. I use to live there when I was a boy.
15. Students cannot borrow from the library more than two books at a time.
16. If he had wished, he could have gone yesterday.
17. She can pass if she works hard.
18. Might you have a good time!
19. He cannot write English before he came to school.
20. Cars should not be parked in front of the gate.
21. He will be punished if he does that again.
22. He ought not be allowed to neglect his studies.
23. They shot the tiger lest he would escape.
24. Should you like to come to the library with me ?
25. He needs not copy out the whole page.

**Q. 9.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. If you were to start (1)/ early tomorrow morning, (2)/ you should reach there (3)/ before sunrise. (4)/ No error (5)
2. If your parents (1)/ disapprove of the plan, (2)/ you should (3)/ give it up. (4)/ No error (5)
3. They (1)/ ought have been (2)/ enjoying (3)/ themselves. (4)/ No error (5)
4. He can write (1)/ the letter (2)/ in English (3)/ if he wanted to. (4)/ No error (5)
5. We put up a fence (1)/ so that (2)/ the neighbours could not (3)/ overlook us. (4)/ No error (5)
6. I was afraid (1)/ that (2)/ if I asked her again, (3)/ she may refuse. (4)/ No error (5)
7. He (1)/ dare (2)/ me to fight (3)/ with him. (4)/ No error (5)
8. He (1)/ read the message (2)/ but he cannot (3)/ understand it. (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



9. A driver (1)/who has knocked (2)/someone down (3)/must stop. (4)/No error (5)
10. You needn't read (1)/the whole book (2)/but you should read (3)/the first four chapters. (4)/No error (5)
11. He has a house (1)/in London (2)/and another in Paris, (3)/so he should be rich. (4)/No error (5)
12. Every morning (1)/he might kiss (2)/his beloved (3)/and set off for work. (4)/No error (5)
13. Every evening his wife (1)/used to welcome him home (2)/and asked him to tell her (3)/about his day. (4)/No error (5)
14. If I hadn't seen (1)/the car coming, (2)/I may have (3)/been killed. (4)/No error (5)
15. People are not (1)/as careful as (2)/they must be and drop (3)/their litter in the streets. (4)/No error (5)
16. At the end of (1)/the examination, (2)/you must check (3)/your answers. (4)/No error (5)
17. The pupils (1)/ mustn't go (2)/to the meeting (3)/if they don't want to. (4)/No error (5)
18. You must be pleased (1)/to hear that (2)/I've already (3)/got the tickets. (4)/No error (5)
19. I have friends (1)/who should love (2)/to stay at home, (3)/but they have to go to work. (4)/No error (5)
20. His mother thinks (1)/that somebody (2)/must have dared (3)/him steal the bicycle. (4)/No error (5)
21. I daren't (1)/to ask her (2)/for (3)/any more money. (4)/No error (5)
22. Veena (1)/told her husband (2)/he needn't (3)/to worry. (4)/No error (5)
23. If I lived (1)/in the country side, (2)/I could be (3)/much healthier. (4)/No error (5)
24. If you had caught (1)/the earlier train, (2)/we could have (3)/travelled together. (4)/No error (5)
25. If a developing country (1)/will become (2)/a developed country, (3)/it has to attract foreign investors. (4)/No error (5)
26. When capital punishment (1)/was abolished, (2)/people thought that (3)/murders will become more numerous. (4)/No error (5)
27. When the publisher (1)/is not busy, (2)/he uses to talk (3)/the writers. (4)/No error (5)
28. By reading quickly, (1)/I could finish (2)/the book before (3)/the library closed. (4)/No error (5)
29. As I've already mentioned, (1)/I could learn (2)/a great deal during the two years (3)/I spent in England. (4)/No error (5)
30. The next generation (1)/can fly (2)/to the moon (3)/for their holidays. (4)/No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. may | 2. can | 3. may |
| 4. should | 5. should | 6. may |
| 7. need | 8. could | 9. shall |
| 10. will | 11. should | 12. would |
| 13. ought | 14. needs | 15. need not |
| 16. dare not | 17. does not dare | 18. used |
| 19. would | 20. could not | 21. should |
| 22. used | 23. might | 24. may |
| 25. should | | |

**Q.2.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. should | 2. are | 3. has |
| 4. can | 5. can | 6. could |
| 7. need | 8. can | 9. could |
| 10. may | 11. will | 12. may |
| 13. must | 14. must | 15. should |
| 16. can | 17. should | 18. may |
| 19. should | 20. will | 21. may |
| 22. will | 23. can | 24. must |
| 25. may | | |

**Q.3.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. could | 2. should | 3. ought |
| 4. had | 5. would | 6. may |
| 7. have | 8. can | 9. can |
| 10. can | 11. ought | 12. would |
| 13. should | 14. must | 15. could |
| 16. ought | 17. must | 18. might |
| 19. may | 20. would | 21. shall |
| 22. may | 23. could | 24. would |
| 25. might | | |

**Q.4.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. ought | 2. could | 3. would |
| 4. will | 5. can | 6. can |
| 7. could | 8. may | 9. might |
| 10. should | 11. must | 12. should |
| 13. ought | 14. would | 15. will |
| 16. would | 17. used | 18. dare not |
| 19. would | 20. will | 21. shall |
| 22. must | 23. should | 24. may |
| 25. may | | |

**Q.5.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. could | 2. can | 3. may |
| 4. should | 5. ought | 6. used |
| 7. may | 8. should | 9. can |
| 10. can | 11. may | 12. may |
| 13. shall | 14. shall | 15. will |
| 16. might | 17. should | 18. would |
| 19. must | 20. would | 21. should |
| 22. ought | 23. may | 24. has |
| 25. should | | |

**Q.6.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. have | 2. were | 3. can |
| 4. does | 5. have | 6. ought |
| 7. must | 8. should | 9. will |
| 10. shall | 11. may | 12. may |
| 13. can | 14. ought | 15. will |
| 16. will | 17. will | 18. must |
| 19. would | 20. should | 21. would |
| 22. would | 23. used | 24. may |
| 25. will | | |

**Q.7.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. must | 2. have | 3. am |
| 4. do | 5. was | 6. should |
| 7. could | 8. will | 9. would |
| 10. would | 11. will | 12. may |
| 13. would | 14. must | 15. can |
| 16. could | 17. may | 18. might |
| 19. must | 20. must | 21. shall |
| 22. dare | 23. ought | 24. need |
| 25. should | | |

**Q. 8.**

1. We can climb Mount Everest.
2. He is working hard so that he may stand first in the class.
3. You must leave for home immediately.
4. If you do it, you shall be fined.
5. You might use this plot of land for business proposes.
6. We laugh so that we may not weep.
7. You could write an application to the principal to condone *(क्षमा करना)* the fine.
8. We cannot enter this prohibited area.
9. May you live happily and long !

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



10. She wondered whether it could be true.
11. You might pay a little more attention to your appearance.
12. She would sit for hours listening to the wireless.
13. Would you lend me your scooter, please ?
14. I used to live there when I was a boy.
15. Students may not borrow from the library more than two books at a time.
16. If he had wished, he might have gone yesterday.
17. She may pass if she works hard.
18. May you have a good time !
19. He could not write English before he came to school.
20. Cars must not be parked in front of the gate.
21. He shall be punished if he does that again.
22. He should not be allowed to neglect his studies.
23. They shot the tiger lest he should escape.
24. Would you like to come to the library with me ?
25. He need not copy out the whole page.

**Q. 9.**

1. (3) Should की जगह would का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि conditional sentence का Subordinate clause simple Past Tense में होता है तो Principal clause में would का प्रयोग होता है।
2. (5) Given sentence correct है।
3. (2) Ought की जगह must का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (1) Can की जगह could का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) Could की जगह might का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (4) May की जगह might का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Past Tense की चर्चा है।
7. (2) Dare की जगह dares का प्रयोग होगा यहाँ dare का प्रयोग to challenge के अर्थ में main verb के रूप में हुआ है।
8. (3) Cannot की जगह could not का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Past Tense की चर्चा है।
9. (5) Given Sentence correct है।
10. (3) Should की जगह must का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (4) Should की जगह Must का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (2) Might की जगह would का प्रयोग होगा। would का प्रयोग Past habit को express करने के लिए किया जाता है।
13. (5) Given Sentence correct है।
14. (3) May have की जगह might have का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (3) Must be की जगह should be का प्रयोग होगा। litter का प्रयोग यहाँ 'कुड़ा-कचड़ा' के अर्थ में हुआ है।
16. (3) must की जगह should का प्रयोग होगा। should का प्रयोग Advice का बोध कराने के लिए होता है।
17. (2) Mustn't की जगह needn't का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (1) Must be की जगह will be का प्रयोग होगा किसी व्यक्ति को किसी चीज/वस्तु के बारे में सूचित करने के लिए will be का प्रयोग होता है न कि must be का।

    **Note** : *Subject + will be + pleased/interested + to hear/know/learn + that + clause* के structure का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—You will be pleased to know that your old friend Prakash has been promoted to the post of Associate professor.
19. (2) Should की जगह would का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (4) Steal की जगह to steal का प्रयोग होगा। जब dare का प्रयोग main verb के रूप में होता है तो इसके बाद infinitive with 'to' (to +$V^1$) का प्रयोग होता है।
21. (2) To ask की जगह ask का प्रयोग होगा। daren't का प्रयोग marginal Auxiliary verb के रूप होता है। इसके बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
22. (4) To worry की जगह worry का प्रयोग होगा। needn't का प्रयोग Marginal Auxiliary verb के रूप में होता है। इसके बाद infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
23. (3) Could की जगह would का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (5) Given sentence correct है।
25. (2) Will become की जगह is to become का प्रयोग होगा। Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
26. (4) Will become की जगह would become का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Past Tense की चर्चा है।
27. (3) He uses to talk की जगह he talks का प्रयोग होगा। Present habit को express करने के लिए simple present tense (S +$V^1$/$V^5$ + O) का प्रयोग होता है। न कि s + use/uses + to + $V^1$ का।
28. (2) Could finish की जगह managed to finish का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Past event की चर्चा है।
29. (2) I could learn की जगह I was able to learn का प्रयोग होगा।
30. (2) Can fly की जगह will be able to fly का प्रयोग होगा। Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Adverb 17

**Adverb :** *An adverb qualifies a verb, an adjective or another adverb.*

Adverb, Verb, Adjective तथा Adverb के अलावे Preposition, Conjunction, Noun, Pronoun तथा Sentence की भी विशेषता (qualify) बताने का कार्य करता है।

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

जैसे—

He walks (V) slowly (Adv.).

You run (V) fast (Adv.).

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में verbs– walks तथा runs की विशेषता क्रमशः slowly तथा fast बता रहा है अतः slowly तथा fast– Adverbs हैं।

He is very good.
She is extremely beautiful.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Adjectives– good तथा beautiful की विशेषता क्रमशः very तथा extremely बता रहा है, अतः very तथा extremely– Adverbs हैं।

I write very carefully.
The horse runs very fast.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Adverbs– carefully तथा fast की विशेषता very बता रहा है, अतः very– Adverb है।

The kite flew exactly over my head.
She parked her car just at the gate.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Prepositions– over तथा at की विशेषता क्रमशः exactly तथा just बता रहा है अतः exactly तथा just– Adverbs हैं।

He hates her simply because she drinks whisky.
Mr. Karna reached the station a little before the train left for.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Conjunctions– because तथा before की विशेषता क्रमशः simply तथा a little बता रहा है अतः Simply तथा a little– Adverbs हैं।

Fortunately, the terrorist was caught.
Naturally, Tendulkar played well.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में The terrorist was caught तथा Tendulkar played well की विशेषता क्रमशः forturately तथा naturally बता रहा है अतः fortunately तथा naturally– Adverbs हैं।

Only Veena can do this work.
Even she comes late.
At least you should come here.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में noun– Veena, pronoun– she तथा you की विशेषता क्रमशः only, even तथा at least बता रहा है। अतः only, even तथा at least– Adverbs हैं।

**Note :** only, even तथा at least ऐसे Adverbs हैं जो Noun तथा Pronoun की विशेषता बताते हैं। लेकिन सामान्यतः Noun तथा Pronoun की विशेषता Adjective बताता है।

## Kinds of Adverb

1. Adverbs of Time *(समयवाचक क्रियाविशेषण)*
2. Adverbs of Place *(स्थानवाचक क्रियाविशेषण)*
3. Adverbs of Number / Frequency *(संख्यावाचक क्रिया विशेषण)*
4. Adverbs of Quantity / rang / extent / degree *(परिमाण वाचक क्रियाविशेषण)*
5. Adverbs of Manner *(विधिवाचक क्रियाविशेषण)*
6. Adverbs of Reason *(कारणवाचक क्रियाविशेषण)*
7. Adverbs of Affirmation or Negation *(सकारात्मक या नकारात्मक क्रियाविशेषण)*
8. Interrogative Adverbs *(प्रश्नवाचक क्रियाविशेषण)*
9. Relative Adverbs *(संबंधवाचक क्रियाविशेषण)*

**1. Adverbs of time :** वे Adverbs जो Time *(समय)* को express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करते हैं Adverbs of time कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Today, tomorrow, yesterday, last night, , last day, last week, last month, last year, next day, next week, next month, next year, late, lately, now, just now, just, ago, daily, already, early, soon, the day after tomorrow, the day before yesterday, at present, presently, shortly, recently, immediately, instantly, before, since .... etc.

**इन वाक्यों के देखें :**

He saw me yesterday.
I have seen her before.
She comes here daily.
Vikas will soon return.
Binay arrived late.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में yesterday, before, daily, soon तथा late का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में क्रमशः verbs—saw, seen, comes, return arrived की विशेषता बताने के लिए हुआ है जो time को denote करते हैं। अतः ये Adverbs of time हैं।

**2. Adverbs of Place :** वे Adverbs जो Place (स्थान) को express (अभिव्यक्त) करते हैं Adverbs of place कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

here, there, hither, thither, up, within, in, out, away, down, everywhere, somewhere, nowhere, anywhere, without, above, below, far, near, backward, inside, outside, outdoors, indoors, ... etc.

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

He was sitting here.
Mr. Thakur lived there.
My brother-in-law is out.
There is air everywhere.
Hope looks above, doubt looks below.
She looked up.
The horses galloped away.
Walk backward.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में here, there, out, everywhere, above, below, up, away तथा backward का प्रयोग Adverbs के रूप में क्रमशः verbs—sitting, lived, is, is, looks, looked, galloped तथा walk की विशेषता बताने के लिए हुआ है जो place को denote करते हैं। अतः ये Adverbs of place हैं।

**Note :** Above, below, up, down, within, without, in का प्रयोग सामान्यतः prepositions के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. Come in (Adv)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



2. He lives in this apartment.
Prep

Example (1) में in का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप हुआ है तथा Example (2) में in का प्रयोग Preposition के रूप में हुआ है।

**3. Adverbs of Number :** वे Adverbs जो किसी action (कार्य) के होने की संख्या या बारंबारता को express (अभिव्यक्त) करते हैं Adverbs of number कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

once, twice, thrice, again, seldom, always, never, often, scarcely, hardly, rarely, frequently, firstly, secondly, thirdly ... etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He has not seen her *once*.
The postman called *again*.
She *seldom* dances.
We *always* try to do our best.
Every person *often* makes mistakes.
He *frequently* comes unprepared.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में once, again, seldom, always, often तथा frequently का प्रयोग Adverbs के रूप में क्रमशः verbs– seen, called, dances, try, makes तथा comes की विशेषता बताने के लिए हुआ है जो number or frequency (संख्या या बारंबारता) को denote करते हैं। अतः ये Adverbs of number / frequency हैं।

**4. Adverbs of Quantity :** वे Adverbs जो किसी Adjective या Adverb की quantity (मात्रा), क्षेत्र या विस्तार को express करते हैं Adverbs of quantity कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Too, very, quite, enough, rather, fairly, entirely, altogether, almost, partly, nearly, fully, so, well, wholly, partially, far. ... etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He was *too* careless.
She was *very* tired.
His grandfather is *entirely* deaf.
He is *rather* busy.
She is *fully* prepared.
You are *altogether* mistaken.
You are *partly* right.
I am *nearly* exhausted.
The mango is *almost* ripe.
He is *quite* wrong.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में too, very, entirely, rather, fully, altogether, partly, nearly, almost तथा quite का प्रयोग Adverbs के रूप में क्रमशः Adjectives—careless, tired, deaf, busy, prepared, mistaken, right, exhausted, ripe, wrong की विशेषता बताने के लिए हुआ है जो quantity को denote करते हैं। अतः ये Adverbs of quantity हैं।

**5. Adverbs of Manner :** वे Adverbs जो किसी action *(कार्य)* के होने के method *(तरीका/विधि)* को express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करते हैं।

Adverbs of Manner कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Fast, hard, slowly, bravely, foolishly, wisely, loudly, soundly, badly, carefully, fluently, beautifully, clearly, lovingly, faithfully, seriously, so, agreeably, certainly, well, doubtfully, firm, conveniently, ... etc.

**Note :** सामान्यतः Adverbs of Manner के last में 'ly' लगा रहता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

The horse ran *fast*.
He works *hard*.
Mr. Thakur walks *slowly*.
They fought *bravely*.
My sister-in-law behaved *foolishly*.
Aditi acted *wisely*.
Aditya laughs *loudly*.
The child sleeps *soundly*.
This book is *well* written.
He should not do *so*.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में fast, hard, slowly, bravely, foolishly, wisely, loudly, soundly, well तथा so का प्रयोग Adverbs के रूप में क्रमशः verbs– ran, works, walks, fought, behaved, acted, laughs, sleeps, written, तथा do की विशेषता बताने के लिए हुआ है जो किसी Action के होने के method को denote करते हैं। अतः ये Adverbs of Manner हैं।

**6. Adverbs of Reason :** वे Adverbs जो Reason (कारण) के भाव को express (अभिव्यक्त) करते हैं Adverbs of Reason कहलाते हैं। जैसे– Hence, therefore, consequently.

Rambabu Thakur was *hence* unable to refute the charge.

She was *therefore* fined.
I *therefore* left school.
*Consequently* she was sent to New York.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में hence, therefore तथा consequently का प्रयोग Adverbs के रूप में क्रमशः unable, fined, left, तथा she की विशेषता बताने के लिए हुआ है जो Reason *(कारण)* के भाव को denote करते हैं अतः ये Adverbs of Reason हैं।

**7. Adverbs of Affirmation or Negation :** वे Adverbs जो Affirmation or Negation *(सकारात्मक या नकारात्मक)* के भाव को express करते हैं Adverbs of Affirmation or Negation कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

Not, surely, certainly, indeed, by no means, not at all, yes, no, probably etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

She did *not* come after all.
*Surely* he is right.
She is *certainly* alive.
I do *not* know her.
*Probably* he will go.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में not, surely, certainly, not तथा probably का प्रयोग Adverbs के रूप में क्रमशः come, he, alive, know तथा he की विशेषता बताने के लिए हुआ है जो Affirmation or negation के भाव को denote करते हैं अतः ये Adverbs of Affirmation or Negation हैं।

**Note :** (i) *Yes* तथा *No* का प्रयोग सामान्यतः affirmative तथा negative sentence के substitute के रूप में होता है। अतः इसे Substitute Adverbs भी कहा जाता है। जैसे—

**Q.** Have you learnt the lesson "
**Ans.** Yes, (यहाँ *yes* का अर्थ I have learnt है।)
**Q.** Have you learnt the lesson ?
**Ans.** No. (यहाँ *No* का अर्थ I haven't learnt है।)

(ii) No का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Adjective के रूप में होता है।

**8. Interrogative Adverbs :** वे Adverbs जो प्रश्न (question) पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं Interrogative Adverbs कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

When, how long, where, whence, whither, howoften, howmany times, howmuch, howfar, in whatdegree, how, in what way, why, wherefore ... etc.

### Kinds of Interrogative Adverbs

**I. Interrogative Adverbs of Time :** When तथा how long को Interrogative Adverbs of Time कहा जाता है। जैसे—

*When* will you return ?
*How long* will she stay there ?

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**II. Interrogative Adverbs of Place** : where, whence तथा whither को Interrogative Adverbs of Place कहा जाता है। जैसे—

*Where* do you live ?
*Whence* has he come ?
*Whither* are you going ?

**III. Interrogative Adverbs of Number** : Howmany, howoften तथा howmany times को Interrogative Adverbs of number कहा जाता है। जैसे—

*How many* girls were present there ?
*How often* did you visit her ?
*How many* times does he sing ?

**IV. Interrogative Adverbs of manner**: How, in what way तथा In what state of को Interrogative Adverbs of manner कहा जाता है। जैसे—

1. *How* did you manage this ?
2. *How* are you today ?

उपरोक्त example (1) में How का प्रयोग In what way/manner के अर्थ में तथा example (2) में how का प्रयोग In what state of health के अर्थ में हुआ है।

**V. Interrogative Adverbs of quantity** : How much, how far तथा In what degree को Interrogative Adverbs of quantity कहा जाता है। जैसे—

*How far* is the report true ?
*How much* did he pay for this computer ?

**VI. Interrogative Adverbs of Reason** : Why तथा Where fore को Interrogative Adverbs of Reason कहा जाता है। जैसे—

*Why* are you late ?
*Wherefore* did the child weep ?

**9. Relative Adverbs** : जब Interrogative Adverbs का प्रयोग दो sentences को जोड़ने के लिए होता है, तो वे Relative Adverbs कहलाते हैं।

Relative Adverb Explicit *(स्पष्ट)* or Implicit *(अस्पष्ट)* Antecedent *(पूर्ववर्ती)* का Relation *(संबंध)* बताने का कार्य करता है।

***A. The Antecedent Explicit or expressed*** : जैसे—

This is the place *where* the king lived.
Do you know the time *when* he will come ?

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में where तथा when– Relative Adverbs हैं जो क्रमशः the place और the time (जो Antecedents हैं) को Relate करते हैं। अतः the place तथा the time Antecedents हैं जो स्पष्ट है।

***B. The Antecedent Implicit/omitted/understood*** : जैसे—

This is *where* the king lived.
Do you know *when* he will come ?

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में where तथा when– Relative Adverbs हैं। इनके Antecedents अस्पष्ट है।

where का अर्थ the place in which तथा When का अर्थ the time by which है।

**Note** : (i) कुछ शब्दों (words) का प्रयोग Adjectives तथा Adverbs दोनों ही रूपों में इस प्रकार होता है—

| Used as Adjectives | Used as Adverbs |
|---|---|
| **Enough** : I have *enough* milk. | **Enough** : I have slept *enough*. |
| **Much** : There is *much* water in the bucket. | **Much** : She is *much* better today. |
| **Long** : It is a *long* story. | **Long** : Anshu waited *long*. |
| **Loud** : My daughter speaks in a *loud* voice. | **Loud** : My daughter speaks *loud*. |
| **Hard** : Iron is a *hard* metal. | **Hard** : I work *hard*. |
| **Only** : She is my *only* daughter. | **Only** : He can *only* speak. |
| **Quick** : My son gives a *quick* reply. | **Quick** : My daughter came *quick*. |
| **Early** : I am an *early* riser. | **Early** : He gets up *early*. |
| **Fast** : Srinath is a *fast* bowler | **Fast** : P.T. Usha ran very *fast*. |
| **Little**: We should face every *little* difficulty with patience. | **Little** : I liked her *little*. |

(ii) कुछ शब्दों (words) के two different Adverb forms होते हैं तथा इनके meaning (अर्थ) भी different होते हैं। जैसे—

1. Hard (= diligently—*उत्साह के साथ)*
   He works *hard*.
2. Hardly (= scarcely—*मुश्किल से)*
   My wife *hardly* works.
3. Late (= not in time —*देर से)*
   He comes *late*.
4. Lately (= recently—*हाल ही में)*
   He came *lately*.
5. Near (= not far away—*समीप)*
   Patna junction is quite *near*.
6. Nearly (= closely—*घनिष्ठ)*
   Aman and Suman are *nearly* related.
7. Easy (= not difficult to walk on—*आसान)*
   Mr. Jha found the road *easy*.
8. Easily (=found it without difficulty)
   Mr. Jha found the road *easily*.

## Position of Adverbs

**Rule (1)** : Adverb का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Adjectives तथा अन्य Adverbs के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Lata sings very (Adv) sweetly (Adv).
It is very (adv) hot (Adj) today.

**Rule (2)** : Adverb का प्रयोग Intransitive verbs के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He spoke (Int. verb) loudly (Adv).
You came (Int. verb) late (Adv).
She died (Int. verb) soundly (Adv).
I slept (Int. verb) soundly (Adv).

**Rule (3)** : Adverb का प्रयोग Transitive verb + object के बाद होता है। जैसे—

She attacked (Tran. verb) her enemy (object) boldly (Adv).
I do (Tran. verb) my duty (object) carefully (Adv.).

**Rule (4)** : Adverb का प्रयोग Auxiliary verb तथा main verb के बीच में होता है। जैसे—

Our Publisher is (A.V.) highly (Adv.) honoured (M.V.).
He will (A.V.) certainly (Adv.) miss (M.V.) her.
She has (A.V.) often (Adv.) told (M.V) you this.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (5) :** Adverb का प्रयोग दो Auxiliary verbs के बीच होता है। जैसे—

He will always be happy.
A.V. Adv A.V

I shall ever be obliged to you.
A.V Adv A.V.

**Rule (6) :** Adverbs only, merely, solely, तथा chiefly का प्रयोग उस word के पहले होता है जिसको यह modify करता है। इस case में 'only' के position के मुताबिक Sentence का अर्थ बदल जाता है। जैसे—

1. *Only* he gave me five rupees.

अर्थ— He and nobody else gave me.

2. He *only* gave me five rupees.

अर्थ— He merely gave five rupees and did nothing else for me.

3. He gave *only* me five rupees.

अर्थ— He gave five rupees to me and to nobody else.

4. He gave me *only* five rupees.

अर्थ— He gave five rupees to me, and nothing more.

**Rule (7) :** Adverbs of frequency जैसे—always, never, often, ever, generally, rarely, frequently, seldom, sometimes, occasionally, usually, etc. का प्रयोग उस Verb के पहले होता है जिसको यह modify करता है। जैसे—

| Subject | Adverb of frequency | Verb + other words |
|---|---|---|
| The sun | always | rises in the east. |
| He | sometimes | goes to bed very late. |
| She | seldom | comes late. |
| She | rarely | writes to you. |
| You | occasionally | go to the cinema. |
| I | frequently | visited her. |

**Rule (8) :** Adverbs of frequency जैसे—always, never, hardly ever, often, usually, occasionally, generally, ever, rarely, seldom... etc. का प्रयोग Auxiliary verbs के बाद अर्थात् Anomalous finites के बाद होता है। जैसे—

| Subject | Auxiliary verbs or Anomalous finites + not | Adverb of Frequency | Other words or, Verb + other words |
|---|---|---|---|
| He | is | always | at home on sundays. |
| Do | you | often | go to the cinema ? |
| He | can | hardly ever | understand her ways. |
| You | should | always | try to be punctual. |
| You | must | never | tell a lie again. |
| He | will | occasionally | visit his beloved. |

**Rule (9) :** Adverbs of frequency जैसे—almost, already, even, hardly, just, nearly, quite, rather, soon, still, only, merely... etc. का प्रयोग finite verbs के पहले अर्थात् main verb के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| Subject | Adverb of Frequency | Finite verbs or, main verbs + other words |
|---|---|---|
| He | almost | reached the station in time. |
| She | just | caught the train. |
| My brother | nearly | missed the bus. |
| You | quite | understand. |
| He | hardly | knows what to do. |
| I | rather | like it. |

**Rule (10) :** Adverbs of frequency जैसे—almost, already, also, even, hardly, just, quite, soon, still, rather का प्रयोग Auxiliary verbs तथा main verbs के बीच में होता है। जैसे—

| Subject | Auxiliary verbs (+ not) | Adverbs of frequency | main verbs + other words |
|---|---|---|---|
| He | has | already | left. |
| She | has | also | visited Mumbai. |
| I | am | still | writing. |
| He | would | rather | stay at home. |
| They | didn't | even | try to help. |
| He | had | just | finished breakfast. |

**Rule (11) :** Adverbs of quantity जैसे—too, very, quite, completely, greatly ... etc. का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Adjective or Adverb के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is too weak.
Adv. Adj.

You run very fast.
Adv. Adv.

My wife is completely upset.
Adv. Adj.

She is very intelligent.
Adv. Adj.

**Note : Adverb of quantity :** Enough का प्रयोग Adjective or Adverb के बाद होता है जिसको यह modify (विशेषता बताता है) करता है। जैसे—

He was foolish enough to offend you. (✓)
Adj. Adv

He was enough foolish to offend you. (✗)

He was rash (उतावला/अधीर) enough to interrupt. (✓)

He was enough rash to interrupt (रोकना/बाधा डालना). (✗)

**Rule (12) :** Adverbs of place—जैसे—here, there, everywhere, ... etc का प्रयोग verb के बाद या Sentence के Last में होता है। जैसे—

He comes here.
V Adv. of place

She lives there.
V Adv. of place

**Rule (13) :** Adverbs of time जैसे—Yesterday, today, tomorrow... etc का प्रयोग verb के बाद या sentence के Last में होता है। जैसे—

He will come tomorrow.
V Adv. of time

His grandfather died yesterday.
V Adv. of time

**Rule (14) :** Adverbs of manner जैसे—hard, fast, carefully, beautifully... etc का प्रयोग verb के बाद होता है जैसे—

He runs fast.
V Adv. of manner

He worked hard.
V Adv. of manner

**Note :** (i) Adverb of place, Adverb of time तथा Adverb of manner का प्रयोग verb + object के बाद होता है। जैसे—

I invited him here.
V O Adv. of Place

He wrote a book last year.
V O Adv. of time

She treated me lovingly.
V O Adv. of manner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(ii) Adverbs of manner का प्रयोग verb तथा object के बीच नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I admitted frankly my mistakes. (×)
I admitted my mistakes frankly. (✓)
I frankly admitted my mistakes (✓)

(iii) जब object को कोई clause or A good many words (अनेक शब्द) qualify करे तो Adverbs of manner का प्रयोग कभी-कभी verb तथा object के बीच में होता है। जैसे—

He rewarded liberally *(उदारता से)* all those who had served him well.

**Rule (15)** : Somehow का प्रयोग 'किसी-न-किसी प्रकार से, 'किसी-न-किसी वजह से', तथा 'पता नहीं क्यों' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Sentence के प्रारंभ में, Intransitive verb के बाद तथा Transitive verb + object के बाद होता है। जैसे—

Somehow I don't like his company.
He passed somehow.
He passed the examination somehow.

**Rule (16)** : Adverb of manner का प्रयोग passive style के Sentence में M.V³ (past participle) के पहले या बाद में होता है। जैसे—

The building has been carefully constructed. (✓)
(carefully = Adv, constructed = P.P (M.V³))

The building has been constructed carefully. (✓)
(constructed = P.P (M.V³), carefully = Adv)

**Rule (17)** : यदि किसी Sentence में *verb + preposition + object* का प्रयोग हो तो Adverbs of manner का प्रयोग preposition के पहले या object के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He laughed lovingly at her.
He laughed at her lovingly.

लेकिन *verb + preposition + object* के बाद who/which/that clause या other words का प्रयोग हो तो adverbs of manner का प्रयोग preposition के just (ठीक) पहले होता है। जैसे—

He looked suspiciously at everyone who got off the plane.

**Rule (18)** : यदि किसी sentence में Adverb of manner, Adverb of place तथा Adverb of time का प्रयोग एक साथ करना हो या हो तो MPT (एम.पी.टी) के sequence (क्रम) को follow किया जाता है। न कि PMT, PTM तथा TMP के sequence (क्रम) का।

MPT का अर्थ—
M = Adverb of Manner
P = Adverb of Place
T = Adverb of Time

जैसे— He wrote the letter swiftly (M) at home (P) yesterday (T). (✓)
He wrote the letter at home (P) swiftly (M) yesterday (T). (×)
He wrote the letter at home (P) yesterday (T) swiftly (M). (×)
He wrote the letter yesterday (T) swiftly (M) at home (P). (×)

**Note** : (i) यदि verbs—come, go, arrive तथा enter के बाद adverb of place तथा Adverb of manner का प्रयोग एक साथ करना हो या हो तो PM के sequence (क्रम) को follow किया जाता है न कि M P के sequence (क्रम) का।

PM का अर्थ—
P = Adverb of Place
M = Adverb of Manner

जैसे— Mr. Pathak went there (P) secretly (M). (✓)
Mr Pathak went secretly (M) there (P). (×)
The boys entered the classroom (P) silently (M). (✓)
The boys entered silently (M) the classroom (P). (×)

(ii) Adverb of manner का प्रयोग away, back, forward, home, in, off, on, out, round के बाद होता है न कि पहले। जैसे—

My friend walked away sadly. (✓)
My friend walked sadly away. (×)
His classmate went out silently. (✓)
His classmate went silently out. (×)

**Rule (19)** : यदि किसी Sentence में Adverb of place, Adverb of frequency तथा Adverb of Time का प्रयोग एक साथ करना हो या हो तो PFT (पी. एफ. टी) के Sequence (क्रम) को follow किया जाता है न कि PTF, FPT, FTP, TPF तथा TFP के sequence (क्रम) का। जैसे—

He comes here (P) two times (F) in a week (T). (✓)
He comes two times (F) here (P) in a week (T). (×)
He comes here (P) in week (T) two times (F). (×)
He comes in a week (T) here (P) two times (F). (×)
He comes in a week (T) two times (F) here (P). (×)

**Rule (20)** : Adverb का प्रयोग Auxiliary verbs—is, are, am, was, were etc के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He is never late for college.
I am always at home on Sundays.

**Note** : Have to तथा used to के पहले Adverb का प्रयोग होता है, न कि बाद में। जैसे—

I often have to go to school on foot.
She always used to agree with me.

## Comparison of Adverbs

Adjectives की तरह ही Adverbs के three degrees of comparison होते हैं।

1. Positive degree.
2. Comparative degree.
3. Superlative degree.

Positive degree के Adverb से comparative तथा superlative degree के Adverb में बदलने का नियम—

**Rule (1)** : सामान्यतः Positive degree के Adverb के last में er तथा est जोड़कर comparative तथा Superlative degree के Adverb में बदला जाता है।

| P. D | C. D | S. D | P. D | C. D | S. D |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| fast | faster | fastest | long | longer | longest |
| hard | harder | hardest | soon | sooner | soonest |

**Rule (2)** : यदि Positive degree के adverb के last में 'ly' हो तो more तथा most आगे में जोड़कर क्रमशः comparative तथा superlative degree के Adverb में बदला जाता है।

| P. D | C. D | S. D |
|---|---|---|
| swiftly | more swiftly | most swiftly |
| skilfully | more skilfully | most skilfully |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



लेकिन कुछ ऐसे 'ly' ending Adverbs हैं जिसके 'y' को i में बदलकर er तथा est जोड़कर क्रमशः comparative तथा superlative degree में बदला जाता है।

| P. D | C. D | S. D |
|---|---|---|
| early | earlier | earliest |

**Rule (3) :** कुछ ऐसे Positive degree के Adverbs हैं जिनका comparative तथा superlative form different (डिफरेन्ट-भिन्न) होते हैं।

| P. D | C. D | S. D | P. D | C. D | S. D |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| badly | worse | worst | much | more | most |
| well | better | best | little | less | least |
| ill | worse | worst | near | nearer | nearest |
| far | farther / further | farthest / furthest | late | later | last |
| fore | | | | | |

**Note :** उपरोक्त शब्दों का प्रयोग Adjective तथा Adverb दोनों ही रूप में अंग्रेजी भाषा में होता है। कन्फ्यूजन को दूर करने के लिए Adverb chapter में भी इसकी चर्चा की गयी है।

## Formation of Adverbs

**Rule (1) :** सामान्यतः Adjectives के last (अंत) में 'ly' जोड़कर Adverbs of manner बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Adjectives +ly | Adverbs of manner | Adjectives +ly | Adverbs of manner |
|---|---|---|---|
| Clever + ly | cleverly | beautiful + ly | beautifully |
| wise + ly | wisely | careful + ly | carefully |
| kind + ly | kindly | careless + ly | carelessly |
| foolish + ly | foolishly | sad + ly | sadly |
| quick + ly | quickly | honest + ly | honestly |

**Rule (2) :** यदि किसी Adjective का last letter 'y' हो तथा y के पहले consonant हो तो 'y' को 'i' में बदलकर, 'ly' जोड़कर Adverb of manner बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Adjectives | Adverbs of manner | Adjectives | Adverbs of manner |
|---|---|---|---|
| happy | happily | heavy | heavily |
| ready | readily | unhappy | unhappily |

**Rule (3) :** यदि किसी Adjective का last letter 'le' हो तो 'e' को हटाकर, 'y' जोड़कर Adverb बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Adjectives | Adverbs of manner | Adjectives | Adverbs of manner |
|---|---|---|---|
| single | singly | double | doubly |

**Rule (4) :** एक noun तथा एक Adjective के संयोग (combination) से भी Adverb बनाया जाता है।

जैसे—Sometimes, meantime, meanwhile, yesterday, midway, otherwise.

**Rule (5) :** कुछ nouns के आगे A जोड़कर Adverbs बनाया जाता है। यहाँ A का अर्थ on होता है।

| A + noun = adverb | Meaning | A + noun = adverb | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| A foot | on foot | A sleep | on sleep |
| A bed | on bed | A board | on board |
| A head | on head | A way | on way |

**Rule (6) :** कुछ nouns के आगे preposition जोड़कर भी Adverbs बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Preposition + noun | Adverbs | Preposition + noun | Adverbs |
|---|---|---|---|
| Be + times | Betimes | To + morrow | Tomorrow |
| Be + sides | Besides | Over + board | Overboard |
| To + day | Today | | |

**Note :** 'be' शब्द preposition—'by' का old form है।

**Rule (7) :** कुछ Adjectives के आगे 'A' जोड़कर Adverbs बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| A + Adjectives | Adverbs | A + Adjectives | Adverbs |
|---|---|---|---|
| A + broad | Abroad | A + loud | Aloud |
| A + long | Along | A + new | Anew |

**Rule (8) :** कुछ Adverbs के आगे preposition जोड़कर Adverbs बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Preposition + Adverbs | Adverbs | Preposition + Adverbs | Adverbs |
|---|---|---|---|
| with + in | within | be + fore | before |
| with + out | without | be + neath | beneath |

**Rule (9) :** कभी-कभी दो Adverbs– conjunction 'and' से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

| Adverb + and + Adverb | English Meanings |
|---|---|
| Again and again | more than once, repeatedly |
| By and by | before long, presently, after a time |
| Far and near | in all directions |
| Far and wide | comprehensively |
| Far and away | by a great deal, decidedly, beyond all comparison |
| First and foremost | first of all |
| Now and then | from time to time, occasionally |
| Now and again | at intervals, sometimes, occasionally |
| Off and on | not regularly, intermittently |
| Once and again | on more than one occasion, repeatedly |
| Out and away | beyond comparison, by far |
| Out and out | decidedly, beyond all comparison |
| Over and above | in addition to, besides, as well as |
| Over and over | many times, frequently, repeatedly |
| Through and through | thoroughly, completely |
| Thus and thus | in such and such away |
| To and fro | up and down, backwards and forwards |

**Rule (10) :** The, he तथा who pronouns से भी Adverbs बनाया जाता है। यहाँ the का अर्थ that होता है।

| Pronouns | Adverbs | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Place | Motion to | Motion from | Time | Manner |
| The | there | thither | thence | then | thus |
| He | here | hither | hence | — | — |
| Who | where | whither | whence | when | how |

**Rule (11) :** Here, there, where, hither, thence, hence Adverbs के साथ preposition तथा अन्य Adverbs को जोड़कर भी Adverb बनाया जाता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Adverbs + Preposition or Adverbs | Adverbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **1. Here** | | |
| Here + after | hereafter | अब से |
| Here + in | herein | इसमें |
| here + to | hereto | यहाँ तक |
| Here + fore | herefore | यहाँ से आगे |
| Here + of | Hereof | इसका |
| Here + about | Hereabout | यहाँ पास में |
| Here + with | Herewith | इसके साथ |
| Here + on/upon | Hereon/upon | इस पर |
| Here + by | Hereby | इसके द्वारा |
| Here + at | Hereat | यहाँ पर |
| **2. There** | | |
| There + in | therein | उसमें |
| There + to | thereto | वहाँ तक |
| There + at | there at | वहाँ पर/उसी कारण से |
| There + after | Thereafter | तब से /उसके बाद |
| There + fore | therefore | इसलिए |
| There + from | therefrom | वहाँ पास में |
| There + about | thereabout | वहीं पर |
| There + with | therewith | उसके साथ |
| There + on | thereon | उसपर |
| There + upon | thereupon | उसपर/तुरत |
| There + of | thereof | उसका/उसपर |
| There + by | thereby | उसके द्वारा |
| **3. Where** | | |
| Where + about | whereabout | जिस स्थान के पास |
| Where + in | wherein | जिस स्थान में |
| Where + to | whereto | जहाँ तक |
| Where + fore | wherefore | इस कारण से |
| Where + at | whereat | जिस स्थान पर |
| Where + on | whereon | जिस पर |
| **4. Hither** | | |
| Hither + to | hitherto | अब तक |
| **5. Thence** | | |
| Thence + forth | thence forth | उस समय से आगे |
| Thence + forward | thence forward | उस समय से आगे |
| **6. Hence** | | |
| Hence + forth | hence forth | इस समय से आगे |
| Hence + forward | hence forward | इस समय से आगे |

## Correct Use of Adverbs

### A. Use of 'Too'

**Rule (1)** : Too का प्रयोग 'आवश्यकता से अधिक' (more than required) के अर्थ में bad qualities (बुरे गुणों) को express करने वाले Adjectives के पहले होता है। जैसे—

She was too ugly.
That film was too horrible.
He is too dull.

**Note** : Too का प्रयोग good qualities (अच्छे गुणों) को express करने वाले Adjectives के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He was too healthy. (×)
He was very healthy. (✓)
She is too happy. (×)
She is very happy. (✓)

**Rule (2)** : Subject + verb + too + Adjective + to + $V^1$ के Structure (बनावट) में too के बाद good or bad qualities को express करने वाले Adjectives का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The news was too good to be true.
He was too weak to walk.

### B. Use of 'Very'

**Rule (1)** : very का प्रयोग अत्यंत/बहुत के अर्थ में good or bad qualities को express करने वाले positive degree के Adjective के पहले होता है। जैसे—

She is very beautiful.
He was very dull.
This sum is very difficult.
That sum was very easy.
Suman is very intelligent.

**Rule (2)** : *The + very + superlative degree* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He was the very best player. (✓)
He was very the best player. (×)

**Note** : लेकिन *very + the + supernative degree* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (3)** : very का प्रयोग present participle के पहले होता है। जैसे—

It is a very interesting story. (✓)
(interesting = P.P.)
It is a much interesting story. (×)

**Note** : (i) Present participle के पहले much का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
(ii) Present participle का अर्थ $M.V^1$ + ing होता है

**Rule (4)** : very का प्रयोग passive voice के sentence में past participle ($M.V^3$) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was very pleased to see his beloved. (✓)
He was much pleased to see his beloved (×)

**Note** : Passive voice के Sentence में past participle के पहले much का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (5)** : जब Pleased का प्रयोग glad/happy के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके पहले very का प्रयोग होता है न कि much का। जैसे—

He was very pleased to see her.
अर्थ—He was very happy/glad to see her.

**Rule (6)** : जब past participle का प्रयोग gradable Adjective के रूप में होता है तो इसके पहले very का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

It was a very shocked expression.
She looked very surprised.
It was a very frightened animal.

**Note** : कुछ Adjectives के पहले Too or very दोनों का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन दोनों के अर्थ में फर्क होता है। Too, undesirable (अवांछित/अइच्छित) का अर्थ रखता है। जबकि very, desirable (वांछित/इच्छित) का अर्थ रखता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Too + Adjective | Very + Adjective |
|---|---|
| 1. He is too tall. *वह इतना ज्यादा लंबा है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए।* | 1. He is very tall. *वह बहुत लंबा है।* |
| 2. She is too slim. *वह इतना ज्यादा दुबली-पतली है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए।* | 2. She is very slim. *वह बहुत दुबली-पतली है।* |
| 3. It is too cold. *इतना ज्यादा ठंडा है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए।* | 3. It is very cold. *बहुत ठंडा है।* |

**C. Use of 'Much'**

**Rule (1) :** Much का प्रयोग 'बहुत' के अर्थ में comparative degree के Adjective के पहले होता है। जैसे—

She is much more beautiful than her sister. (✓)
She is very more beautiful than her sister. (×)
The air is much hotter today than yesterday. (✓)
The air is very hotter today than yesterday. (×)

**Note :** (i) very का प्रयोग comparative degree के पहले नहीं होता है।

(ii) very much का प्रयोग comparative degree के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is very much better than you.
Gangadhar is very much wiser than Gajadhar.

**Rule (2) :** *Much + the + superlative degree* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is much the tallest boy. (✓)
He is the much tallest boy. (×)
She was much the wisest woman. (✓)
She was the much wisest woman. (×)

**Note :** *The + Much + superlative degree* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (3) :** Much का प्रयोग Past participle के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was much annoyed at your behaviour. (✓)
He was very annoyed at your behaviour. (×)

**Note :** (i) very का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Past participle के पहले नहीं होता है।

(ii) very much का प्रयोग past participle के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was very much admired.

**Rule (4) :** Much का प्रयोग verb को modify करने के लिए होता है, न कि very का। जैसे—

He likes it much. (✓)
He likes it very. (×)

**Note :** Very much का प्रयोग verb की विशेषता (modify) बताने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

I love you very much.
I thank you very much.

**D. Use of 'Too much'**

**Rule (1) :** Too much में 'Too'– Adverb है तथा 'much'– Adjective है। इसका प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He has too much difficulty. (✓)
He has much too difficulty. (×)

**Note :** Much too का प्रयोग noun के पहले नहीं होता है।

**E. Use of 'Much Too'**

**Rule (1) :** Much Too में 'Much'– Adverb है तथा Too भी Adverb है। इसका प्रयोग Adjective के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is much too jealous. (✓)
He is too much jelalous. (×)
It is much too painful. (✓)
It is too much painful. (×)

**Note :** Too much का प्रयोग Adjective के पहले नहीं होता है।

**F. Use of 'Only Too'**

**Rule (1) :** Only too का प्रयोग 'बहुत (very) के अर्थ में good or bad qualities (अच्छे या बुरे गुणों) को express करने वाले Adjectives के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Rima is only too beautiful. (✓)
अर्थ—Rima is very beautiful.
Rima is too only beautiful. (×)
My father-in-law is only too unhappy. (✓)
अर्थ—My father-in-law is very unhappy.
My father-in-law is too only unhappy. (×)

**G. Use of 'None Too'**

**Rule (1) :** None too का प्रयोग 'बहुत नहीं' (not very) के अर्थ में good or bad qualities (अच्छे या बुरे गुणों) को express करने वाले Adjective के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is none too good. (✓)
अर्थ—He is not very good.
He is too none good. (×)
You are none too bad. (✓)
अर्थ—You are not very bad.
You are too none bad. (×)

**H. Use of 'Enough'**

**Rule (1) :** Enough का प्रयोग 'बहुत काफी' के अर्थ में Positive degree के Adjective या Adverb के बाद होता है जिसको यह modify (विशेषता) करता है। जैसे—

Archana is beautiful (Adj.) enough (Adv) to attract the young. (✓)
Archana is enough beautiful to attract the young. (×)
He runs fast (Adv) enough (Adv) to win the race. (✓)
He runs enough fast to win the race. (×)

**Rule (2) :** Enough का प्रयोग 'पर्याप्त' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Have you got enough bread ?
There is enough salt in the dish.

**Rule (3) :** यदि noun के बाद Infinitive (to + $V^1$) या for + noun/pronoun का प्रयोग हो तो noun के बाद enough का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I have time enough to take rest.
We have got food enough for five persons.

**Rule (4) :** Enough of का प्रयोग Noun के पहले होता है तथा noun के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक determiners जैसे—the, this, that, my, your, such ... etc का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She could not answer enough of the questions.
Have you got enough of such mangoes ?

**I. Use of 'Quite'**

**Rule (1) :** Quite का प्रयोग पूर्णतः, सर्वथा, कुछ हद तक तथा 'पूरी तरह से' (completely, altogether, to a certain extent, wholly and entirely) के अर्थ में पूर्णता के भाव देने वाले Adjective के पहले होता है। जैसे—

I quite agree with you on this point.
It is quite warm today.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



I hope you are quite happy here.
Oh! that's quite all right.
*कोई बात नहीं, सब ठीक है।*
He was quite ready.

**Rule (2) :** Quite का प्रयोग 'बहुत' (very) के अर्थ में past participle के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was quite tired.
She is quite delighted.

**Note :** Strong Adjectives or other Adjectives के पहले भी Quite का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

Suman is quite extraordinary.
It is quite cool today.

**J. Use of 'Still'**

**Rule (1) :** Still का प्रयोग गतिरहित, मौन, चुपचाप तथा शांत (motionless, calm and quiet) के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He lay still on the carpet.
Adj.

**Rule (2) :** Still का प्रयोग 'शांत करना', समझा-बुझाकर रोकना' (quieten/restrain) के अर्थ में verb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

She stilled the weeping child.

**Rule (3) :** Still का प्रयोग 'सन्नाटा' (deep silence) के अर्थ में noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The thief entered the house in the still of the night.

**Rule (4) :** Still का प्रयोग 'अबतक' तथा 'अब भी' (even now) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Affirmative तथा Interrogative sentence में Auxiliary verbs के बाद तथा Main verb के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is still unwell.
She still lives in Delhi. } Affirmative sentence

Is he still weeping ?
Are you still waiting for me ? } Interrogative Sentence

**Rule (5) :** Still का प्रयोग 'फिर भी' (nevertheless) के अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

It was futile (व्यर्थ/बेकार), still they fought.

**Rule (6) :** Still का प्रयोग negative action (नकारात्मक कार्य) को Emphatic (जोरदार) बनाने के लिए Negative Sentence में होता है। जैसे—

Avinash still does not like her.

**K. Use of 'Yet'**

**Rule (1) :** Yet का प्रयोग 'अबतक' अर्थात् 'बोलने के समय तक' (up to the moment/time of speaking) के अर्थ में Interrogative तथा Negative Sentence में verb के बाद या verb + object के बाद होता है।

**(A) Interrogative sentence :**

Do you feel any better yet ?
Has the taxi arrived yet ?
Is the taxi here yet ?

**(B) Negative Sentence :**

I haven't finished my thesis yet.
He has not come yet.
You have not returned my notebook yet.

**Note :** Yet का प्रयोग present or present perfect tense में होता है न कि Past Tense में। जैसे—

The postman did not come yet. (×)
The postman has not come yet. (√)
Did the postman come yet ? (×)
Has the postman come yet ? (√)

**L. Use of 'Always'**

**Rule (1) :** Always का प्रयोग all the time, everytime, at all times *(हमेशा, सदा, सदैव)* के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Main verb के पहले तथा Auxiliary verbs के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He always goes to work by train.
The sun always sets in the west.
He is always ready.

**Note :** Auxiliary verb तथा Main verb दोनों का प्रयोग होने पर, Always का प्रयोग Auxiliary verb तथा Main verb के बीच में होता है। जैसे—

I have always helped you.
He has always told me a story.

**Rule (2) :** Always का प्रयोग 'बार-बार', बारंबार (again and again/repeatedly) के अर्थ में झल्लाहट तथा नापसंदगी को express करने के लिए Continuous Tense में होता है। जैसे—

Are you always quarrelling with your brother ?
My servant was always demanding money.

**Note :** Almost, nearly, not, Adverbs का प्रयोग Always के पहले किया जा सकता है या हो सकता है। जैसे—

He is not always at home on Sundays.
I am nearly always at my residence in the morning.

**M. Use of 'Ever'**

**Rule (1) :** Ever का प्रयोग 'कभी भी', 'किसी भी समय' (at any time) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Negative तथा Interrogative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

Nothing ever happens in this village. *–Negative*
Have you ever been to Nepal ? *–Interrogative*

**Rule (2) :** Ever का प्रयोग comparative or superlative degree के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He is crying louder than ever. *C.d*
This is the best picture that I have ever seen. *S.d.*

**Rule (3) :** Ever का प्रयोग at anytime before now/then के अर्थ में verb के साथ Present Perfect or Past Perfect Tense में होता है। जैसे—

It's one of the nicest houses that I've ever seen.

**Rule (4) :** Interrogative words (I.W.) के बाद ever का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| I. W + Ever | Hindi meaning |
|---|---|
| Whatever *(adj)* | *जो कुछ भी; किसी भी प्रकार का, सबका सब; सारा; चाहे किसी भी प्रकार का* |
| Whatever *(pron)* | *कुछ परवाह नहीं कि, सारा, तमाम जो चाहे, सब कुछ जो* |
| Whatsoever *(adj)* | *जैसा भी, जो कुछ भी, किसी तरह का हो,* |
| Whatsoever *(pron)* | *जो कुछ* |
| Whatsoever *(adv)* | *किसी भी तरह का कुछ नहीं* |
| Wherever *(pron)* | *जहाँ कहीं* |
| Wherever *(conj)* | *चाहे जहाँ* |
| Wherever *(adv)* | *कहाँ से* |
| Wheresoever *(conj)* | *जहाँ कहीं* |
| Whenever *(conj)* | *चाहे कभी; जब चाहे; किसी भी अवसर पर* |
| Whenever *(adv)* | *कब* |
| Whensoever *(conj/adv)* | *जब भी, जिस समय भी,* |
| Whencesoever *(conj)* | *जहाँ कहीं से, जिस किसी जगह से, जहाँ से भी* |
| Whichever *(adj/pron)* | *कोई भी, चाहे कोई सी भी* |
| Whichsoever *(pron/adj)* | *जो कोई* |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | |
|---|---|
| Whoever *(pron)* | *जो कोई भी, जो भी, कोई भी व्यक्ति* |
| Whomever *(pron)* | *जो कोई, जो भी* |
| Whomsoever *(pron)* | *जिस किसी को भी* |
| However *(adv)* | *कुछ भी हो; यद्यपि; कितना भी* |
| Howsoever *(adv)* | *कुछ भी; यद्यपि; कितना भी* |
| However *(conj)* | *तथापि; बहरहाल* |

**Rule (5) :** Ever का प्रयोग सदा/सदैव/हमेशा के अर्थ में phrases में भी होता है। जैसे—

forever — Ever since
ever after — yours ever

**Note :** उपरोक्त phrases का प्रयोग सामान्यतः letter के last में होता है।

**Rule (6) :** कभी-कभी ever का प्रयोग सदा/सदैव/हमेशा के अर्थ में Adjective तथा participle के साथ होता है। जैसे—

Evergreen trees — His ever-loving wife
His ever-open mouth — An ever-increasing debt

## N. Use of 'Ago'

**Rule (1) :** Ago का प्रयोग अतीत काल में, पहले, पूर्व (past, gone by) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Past Tense में होता है। न कि Present Perfect Tense में जैसे—

I came to Patna exactly eighteen years ago. (✓)
I have come to Patna exactly eighteen years ago. (×)
The train left a few minutes ago. (✓)
The train has left a few minutes ago. (×)

**Note :** दूसरे शब्दों में Time expressing words + ago का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He went to Mumbai before five years ago. (×)
He went to Mumbai five years ago. (✓)
The accident happened at ten years ago. (×)
The accident happened ten years ago. (✓)
I came to Delhi in two years ago. (×)
I came to Delhi two years ago. (✓)
I started learning English since two years ago. (×)
I started learning English two years ago. (✓)

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Time expressing words + ago के पहले before, at, in, तथा since का प्रयोग हुआ है जो गलत है। अर्थात् Time expressing words + ago के पहले prepositions जैसे— before, at, in, since etc. का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (2) :** Ago के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है न कि since का जैसे—

It was five years ago that my grandfather died. (✓)
It was five years ago since my grandfather died. (×)

**Note :** (i) लेकिन Ago का प्रयोग नहीं होने पर since का प्रयोग होता है न कि that का। जैसे—

It is five years since my grandfather died. (✓)
It is five years that my grandfather died. (×)

अर्थात् *It + is + Time expressing words + Since + clause* का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) Back का प्रयोग ago के अर्थ में या ago की जगह किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

I met him some years back.
*कुछ वर्ष पूर्व उनसे मेरी मुलाकात हुई।*

## O. Use of 'Before'

**Rule (1) :** Before का प्रयोग पहले, अतीत काल में तथा पहले से ही (at an earlier time, in the past, already or at any time before now) के अर्थ में Adverb of time के रूप में सामान्यतः Present Perfect Tense में होता है। जैसे—

I have done this work before.
I have seen this film before.
Have you ever been here before ?

**Rule (2) :** Before का प्रयोग before then or a time in the past के अर्थ में Simple Past Tense में होता है। जैसे—

I went to the airport last Monday to meet my friend before.
I saw him last Friday in Mumbai and two days before in Patna.
I never before saw such a dreadful sight.

**Rule (3) :** Before का प्रयोग past में किसी समय से पहले के अर्थ में Past Perfect Tense में भी होता है। जैसे—

He said that he had come back from his village two days before. (✓)
He said that he had come back from his village two days ago. (×)

**Note :** उपरोक्त वाक्य में before की जगह ago का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता है।

**Rule (4) :** Before का प्रयोग 'उस समय से पूर्व' (previous to the time when) के अर्थ में conjunction of time के रूप में दो sentences को जोड़ने के लिए Simple Present तथा Simple Past Tense में होता है जैसे—

The crops will have dried before the rain falls.
The patient had died before the doctor came.
You must learn your lesson before you leave the class.

**Rule (5) :** Before का प्रयोग आगे/पहले (earlier than) के अर्थ में preposition के रूप में point of time के पहले होता है। जैसे—

I reached home before 7 o'clock.
You must go there before Monday.

**Rule (6) :** Before का प्रयोग 'सामने' (in front of) के अर्थ में Preposition के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The accused stood before the judge.
He stood before me.

**Rule (7) :** Before का प्रयोग 'उपस्थिति में' (in the presence of) के अर्थ में preposition के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He was brought before the teacher.

**Rule (8) :** Before का प्रयोग 'विचाराधीन' (under the consideration) के अर्थ में prepositon के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The case is before the court.

**Rule (9) :** Before का प्रयोग 'पहले' (ahead of) के अर्थ में preposition के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

C comes before D in the alphabet.

**Note : Ago और Before में फर्क :** Present time में किसी बीत की गिनती करके past time की ओर जाते हैं तो ago का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन past time के ही किसी बिन्दु से past time के ही दूसरे बिन्दु तक गिनती करके जाते हैं तो Before का प्रयोग होता है।

## P. Use of 'Since'

**Rule (1) :** Since का प्रयोग 'तब से अबतक', 'तब और अब के बीच' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Present Perfect Tense में Sentence के last में होता है। जैसे—

He left school in 1986, I have not seen him since.
She went to Mumbai last year and has written to her sister several times since.

## Q. Use of 'Ever Since'

**Rule (1) :** Ever since का प्रयोग 'तब से अबतक सदा' या तभी से (from then / from sometime in the past up to now) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में present perfect Tense में sentence के last में होता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



I first read it five years ago and have remembered it ever since.

My brother-in-law went to Mumbai in 2005 and has lived there ever since.

**R. Use of 'Sometimes'**

**Rule (1) :** Sometimes का प्रयोग 'कभी-कभी' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Sometimes my father gets angry. (✓)
Sometime my father gets angry. (×)

**Note :** Sometime का प्रयोग 'कुछ समय/काल' के अर्थ में noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I stayed at Darbhanga for sometime. (✓)
I stayed at Darbhanga for sometimes. (×)

**S. Use of 'Of Course'**

**Rule (1) :** Of course का प्रयोग सचमुच, निः सन्देह, वस्तुतः, अवश्यमेव के अर्थ में तब होता है जब एक Action के फलस्वरूप कोई दूसरा Action हो। जैसे—

His father died; of course he is sorry.
Prolonged (दीर्घकालीन/लम्बी) illness has made my mother-in-law very weak of course.

**T. Use of 'Hard'**

**Rule (1) :** Hard का प्रयोग, 'सम्पूर्ण ताकत के साथ', पूरी शक्ति से, उत्साह के साथ (with all one's force, energy or vigour) के अर्थ में Adverb of manner के रूप में Main Verb के बाद होता है। जैसे—

Our team played hard in Pakistan.
I tried hard to succeed.

**Note :** Hard का प्रयोग सख्त, ठोस, कठोर, कठिन (firm, solid, difficult) के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

These are hard words for beginners.
Hard work brings success.

**U. Use of 'Hardly'**

**Rule (1) :** Hardly का प्रयोग मुश्किल से, कदाचित, शायद ही कभी, असंभाव्य, क्रूरता से (scarcely, almost not, unlikely, severely) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Main verb के पहले होता है। जैसे—

My mother is hardly fifty.
*मेरी माँ मुश्किल से पचास वर्ष की है।*
She hardly gets up before sunrise.
*वह शायद ही कभी सूर्योदय से पहले उठती है।*
You can hardly expect me to lend you money again.
He has been hardly treated.

**Note :** (i) Hardy का प्रयोग साहसी, वीर, निर्भीक के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

A few hardy men reached the top of the mountain.

(ii) He works hard का अर्थ 'वह उत्साह के साथ काम / परिश्रम करता है' होता है जबकि He hardly works का अर्थ 'वह मुश्किल से परिश्रम/काम करता है' होता है। Hardly–negative meaning (नकारात्मक अर्थ) रखता है। अतः hard तथा hardly का प्रयोग एक दूसरे के बदले नहीं किया जा सकता है।

**V. Use of 'Fairly'**

**Rule (1) :** Fairly का प्रयोग सामान्यतः सामान्य मात्रा में, न ज्यादा न कम (at a moderate degree / moderately) के अर्थ में good qualities को express करने वाले Adjectives के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is fairly hopeful.
The man is fairly well.

**W. Use of 'Rather'**

**Rule (1) :** Rather का प्रयोग 'सामान्य मात्रा में', 'न ज्यादा न कम' के अर्थ में bad qualities को express करने वाले Adjectives के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was rather hopeless.
She is rather ill.

**Note :** Fairly तथा Rather में फर्क :

| Fairly | Rather |
|---|---|
| 1. Fairly pleasant (वांछनीय) meaning रखता है। | 1. Rather unpleasant (अवांछनीय) meaning रखता है। |
| 2. Fairly के बाद 'Too' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। | 2. Rather के बाद 'too' का प्रयोग होता है। |
| 3. *Fairly + Adjective + noun* के पहले A का प्रयोग होता है। | 3. Rather + Adjective + noun के पहले A का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन *Rather + a/an + Adjective + Noun* का प्रयोग भी होता है। |

जैसे—

A fairly lovely girl. (✓)
A rather lovely girl. (×)
Fairly a lovely girl. (×)
A rather difficult problem . (✓)
A fairly difficult problem. (×)
Rather a difficult problem. (✓)
Fairly too wise. (×)
Fairly wise. (✓)
Rather too unwise. (✓)
Rather unwise. (×)

**X. Use of 'Late'**

**Rule :** Late का प्रयोग देर करके/से, उचित समय के बाद/नियत समय के बाद (After the usual time) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The Rajdhani Express comes late—*Present tense*
The Rajdhani Express came late—*Past tense*
The Rajdhani Express will come late—*Future Tense*

**Note :** (i) Late at night का प्रयोग होता है न कि Late night तथा Late in the night का। जैसे—

My wife often watches television until late night. (×)
My wife often watches television until late in the night. (×)
My wife often watches television until late at night. (✓)

(ii) Late का प्रयोग 'देर से', अंत में/आखिर में, हाल का, (after the right time, in time, recent) के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The Taj Express is late by ten minutes.
He met her in the late afternoon.
We have seen the late political developments in Bihar.

(iii) Late का प्रयोग 'पिछला' (former, recent and still living) अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Atal Bihari Bajpayi was the late Prime Minister of India.

(iv) Late का प्रयोग 'पिछला' (former, recent and not now living) के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Sarita was his late wife.

(v) Late की जगह lately का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Y. Use of 'Lately'

**Rule :** Lately का प्रयोग 'हाल में' (in recent times) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Present Perfect Tense के Interrogative तथा Negative Sentence में होता है। जैसे—

| Interrogative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. Have you seen the film lately ? | 1. No, I have not seen the film lately. |
| 2. Have you been to Patna lately ? | 2. No, I have not been to Patna lately. |
| 3. Have you seen her lately ? | 3. No, I have not seen her lately. |

## Z. Use of 'Recently'

**Rule :** Recently का प्रयोग 'थोड़े समय पूर्व का'/'हाल ही में', (not long ago/in recent times) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Present perfect tense तथा Simple Past Tense में होता है। जैसे—

Have you visited the Taj Mahal recently ?

Recently someone told me that the fire was caused by a cigarette.

**Note :** Present Perfect Tense में lately तथा recently का प्रयोग एक दूसरे के बदले होता है। लेकिन Simple Past Tense में Recently का प्रयोग होता है। न कि lately का यही lately तथा recently में फर्क है। जैसे—

Have you visited the Taj Mahal lately ? (√)

Lately someone told me that the fire was caused by a cigarette. (×)

## A. Use of 'Already'

**Rule :** Already का प्रयोग 'पहले से ही, इससे पहले ही तथा वर्णित या सोचे हुए समय से पहले (Previously/Prior to or at some specified or implied time) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में सामान्यतः Present Perfect Tense में होता है। जैसे—

He has already learnt his lesson.
She has already finished her task.
Have you already met the Police Inspector ?

**Note :** (i) Not + already का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। इसके बदले not + yet का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The new shop has not been opened already. (×)
The new shop has not been opened yet. (√)

(ii) All ready दो अलग-अलग शब्द से बना है इसलिए इसका अलग-अलग अर्थ होता है जैसे—

Are you all ready ? (√)
*क्या आप सब तैयार हैं ?*
Are you already ? (×)

## B. Use of 'Almost'

**Rule (1) :** Almost का प्रयोग 'लगभग', 'करीब-करीब', 'प्रायः सब' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Progress (प्रगति/उन्नति) को Express करने के लिए किया जाता है। इसका प्रयोग Just (ठीक) उस word के पहले होता है जिसको यह modify करता है। जैसे—

Nilu has almost finished her homework.
My job takes me to almost every part of the world.
Our publisher is almost ready to go to Darbhanga.

**Rule (2) :** Almost का प्रयोग negative verb के साथ होता है न कि hardly का। जैसे—

I was feeling so tired that I almost didn't come.

## C. Use of 'Nearly'

**Rule (1) :** Nearly का प्रयोग 'लगभग', 'करीब-करीब' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में progress (प्रगति/उन्नति) को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He is nearly ready to come here.
There are nearly twenty students in the class.
It is nearly ten o' clock.

**Note :** (i) 'लगभग'/'करीब-करीब' के अर्थ में almost तथा nearly का प्रयोग बिना किसी अंतर का होता है।

(ii) Almost तथा Nearly में फर्क :

| Almost | Nearly |
|---|---|
| 1. Almost का प्रयोग विचारों की समानता बताने के लिए होता है। जैसे—He is almost like a teacher to me. (√) | 1. Nearly का प्रयोग 'लक्ष्य की ओर प्रगति' या 'किसी संख्या से नजदीकी बताने के लिए होता है। जैसे—He has nearly ten boys. (√) |
| 2. Almost का प्रयोग never, no body, no one, nothing, anybody, anyone, any thing, none के पहले होता है। जैसे—He has almost nothing to eat. (√) | 2. जबकि Nearly का प्रयोग never, nobody, no one, nothing, anybody, any one, anything, none के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—He has nearly nothing to eat. (×) |

## D. Use of 'Most'

**Rule (1) :** Most का प्रयोग 'बहुत अधिक' (very much) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The person I like most (Adv) is my father. (√)
The person I like mostly is my father. (×)
What is worrying you most (Adv) ? (√)
What is worrying you mostly ? (×)

**Rule (2) :** Most का प्रयोग many/much के superlative degree के Adjective के रूप में सर्वाधिक/अधिकतम (In greatest degree, number or quantity) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

I did the most I could.
The Red Fort is the most beautiful Fort in India.

**Rule (3) :** Most का प्रयोग ज्यादातर/अधिकतर के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Most Politicians pretend to be what they are not.

**Rule (4) :** Most का प्रयोग 'प्रचुरतम मात्रा' (the greatest amount) के अर्थ में noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He had the most to lose and the least to gain.

**Rule (5) :** Most का प्रयोग 'अधिकांश भाग, सर्वाधिक संख्या' के अर्थ में pronoun के रूप में singular or plural number में (अर्थात दोनों नम्बर में) होता है। जैसे—

Most of the boys talked freely.

**Note :**

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. At the most | अधिक से अधिक, ज्यादा से ज्यादा, अधिकतम |
| 2. For the most part | मुख्यतया, बहुधा, प्रायः |
| 3. Most of | अधिकांश |
| 4. The most | अधिकतम, उच्चतम, सर्वोच्च |
| 5. To make the most of something | किसी-चीज का अच्छे से अच्छा उपयोग करना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. I can lend you my book for a week at the most.
2. At the most he might earn Rs 400 a week.
3. He is the most.( वह सर्वोच्च है।)
4. I saw the most. (मैंने सबसे अधिक देखा।)
5. Don't cry for more, make the most of what you have.

**E. Use of 'Mostly'**

**Rule (1) ) :** Mostly का प्रयोग अधिकतर, बहुधा, मुख्यतः के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में है। जैसे—

He is mostly absent. (√)
He is most absent. (×)

**Note :** Mostly का प्रयोग all, every, everyone ... etc. के पहले नहीं होता है, बल्कि almost/nearly का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We see eachother mostly everyday. (×)
We see eachother almost everyday. (√)
Mostly every family has a television. (×)
Nearly every family has a television. (√)

**F. Use of 'Just'**

**Rule (1) :** Just का प्रयोग 'बिल्कुल अभी-अभी', 'एक क्षण पहले', 'थोड़ी देर पहले' (to indicate an immediate past, a moment ago, a short time ago) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Present Perfect Tense में होता है। जैसे—

My son has just left for school.
He has just arrived here.

**Rule (2) :** Just का प्रयोग ठीक/सही (exactly) के अर्थ में adverb के रूप में noun, noun phrase, noun clause, adjective, adverb तथा prepositional phrase के पहले simple present or simple past tense में होता है। जैसे—

It is just four o'clock.
This is just what I need.
It was just nine o'clock that the dacoits entered his house.

**Rule (3) :** Just as का प्रयोग 'वैसा ही', 'ठीक उसी समय', 'बिल्कुल उसी समय' (exactly as , the same as, at the same moment as) के अर्थ में भी Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

It is just as I thought.
Just as I arrived, they all left the room.

**Rule (4) :** Just का प्रयोग 'समान रूप से', 'उसी के समान', के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Shobhana is just as beautiful as her mother.

**Rule (5) :** Just का प्रयोग 'थोड़ी देर पहले' या 'कुछ ही देर पहले' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में simple past tense में भी होता है। जैसे—

I just met him in the market.
I just saw them in the library.

**Rule (6) :** Just का प्रयोग 'इसी या उसी क्षण', 'अभी', 'तुरन्त' (at this or that moment, now, immediately) के अर्थ में present तथा past continuous tense में होता है। जैसे—

He is just finishing his speech.
He was just leaving the class.

**Note :** Just about or going to do something का प्रयोग nearest future में 'कुछ होने ही वाला है या होने जा रहा है' के अर्थ में present तथा past continuous tense में होता है। जैसे—

I was just about to tell you when you interrupted.
The clock is just going to strike ten.

**Rule (7) :** Just का प्रयोग 'सिर्फ/केवल' (simply, only, merely) के अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

Just wait and see what happens.
I have come here just to see you.

**Rule (8) :** Just का प्रयोग पूरी तौर से (absolutely) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The concert (संगीत) was just splendid (शानदार).

**G. Use of 'Just now'**

**Rule (1) :** Just now का प्रयोग 'इस क्षण' 'इस समय तो', 'इसी समय', (at this moment, at this very moment) के अर्थ में simple present tense में होता है। जैसे—

I am busy just now.
Ask him to meet me just now.

**Rule (2) :** Just now का प्रयोग 'कुछ क्षण पहले'/'एक क्षण पहले' (a moment ago/a few moments ago) के अर्थ में Simple Past Tense में होता है। जैसे—

He arrived just now. He rang up just now.

**Note :** (i) Just about का प्रयोग 'करीब-करीब' (almost/very nearly) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

I have met just about everyone.

(ii) Just about का प्रयोग अनुमानतः (approximately) के अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

They should be leaving just about now.

(iii) Just in case का प्रयोग 'एहतियात के तौर पर' (by way of precaution) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The sun is shining, but I'll take an umbrella just in case.

(iv) Just like that का प्रयोग 'अकस्मात/एकाएक' (suddenly) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He walked out on his wife just like that.

(v) Just the same का प्रयोग 'एक से', 'समान' तथा यद्यपि/फिर भी के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Are these two pictures not just the same ?
There are no clouds, but I'll take an umbrella just the same.

**H. Use of 'Justly'**

**Rule :** Justly का प्रयोग In accordance with justice or the law (न्याय/कानून के अनुसार/ठीक ढंग से) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He was justly punished for his crimes.

**Note :** Just का प्रयोग 'इंसाफपसंद', 'न्यायोचित', 'वैध', 'उचित', 'सही', 'ठीक', 'न्यायसंगत' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

He was a just king.
He was fighting for a just cause.
It was a just claim of his share in property.
It is just to everybody.
It is a just opinion.

**I. Use of 'Soon'**

**Rule (1) :** Soon का प्रयोग 'अल्प समय में', 'जल्दी', 'तुरत, 'अब से थोड़ी देर बाद' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में future action को express करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

I shall be back soon.
Come soon.
She will not come soon.

**Note :** (i) As soon as का प्रयोग ज्योंहि (no later than) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He started as soon as he received the telegram.

(ii) Sooner or later का प्रयोग 'आज नहीं तो कल' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

One day sooner or later he will feel his responsibility.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(iii) Soon after का प्रयोग 'थोड़ी देर बाद' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—
She came to see him soon after she arrived.
She will come to see him soon after she arrives.

**Rule (2) :** Soon का प्रयोग 'किसी खास समय के तुरंत बाद' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Past Tense के sentences में होता है। जैसे—
The Principal pressed the bell and the peon soon appeared.

**J. Use of 'Slowly'**

**Rule :** Slowly का प्रयोग धीरे-धीरे के अर्थ में Quickly के Opposite word तथा Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
Mohan is reading the book slowly.
*मोहन पुस्तक धीरे-धीरे पढ़ रहा है अर्थात् मोहन की आवाज तो तेज है पर पढ़ने की गति धीमी है।*

**K. Use of 'Lowly'**

**Rule :** Lowly का प्रयोग धीमे-धीमे के अर्थ में loudly के opposite word तथा Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
Mohan is reading the book lowly
*मोहन पुस्तक धीमे-धीमे पढ़ रहा है अर्थात् मोहन की आवाज धीमी है जिससे वह सुनाई नहीं पड़ती।*

**L. Use of 'Early'**

**Rule (1) :** Early का प्रयोग 'निर्धारित या उम्मीद किये हुए समय से पहले' (before the expected time) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
The Superfast Express arrived ten minutes early today.
He will come early today.

**Rule (2) :** Early का प्रयोग 'A period of time के प्रारंभ में' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
He goes to bed early. I get up early.

**Note :** (i) Early का प्रयोग 'आरम्भिक', 'शुरू का', 'जल्दी', 'शीघ्र भविष्य में जल्दी होने वाला', 'निर्धारित समय से पहले होने वाला' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
He is an early riser.
I look forward to an early reply from her.
It is an early train.
It was an early dinner.

(ii) The early bird catches the worm एक proverb है इसका अर्थ 'शीघ्र प्रयास करने वाले की कार्य पूरा करने की संभावना अधिक होती है, (The person who tries will probably succeed) होता है।

**M. Use of 'Also'**

**Rule (1) :** Also का प्रयोग 'भी' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में किसी clause or sentence के बीच में तथा उस word के बाद होता है जिसको यह modify करता है। जैसे—
I also beat my servant.
*मैंने भी अपने नौकर को पीटा अर्थात् अन्य व्यक्तियों ने भी उसे पीटा।*
I beat also my servant
*मैंने अपने नौकर को पीटा और अन्य तरीके से भी उसे दंडित किया।*
I beat my servant also.
*मैंने अपने नौकर को भी पीटा अर्थात् अन्य व्यक्तियों को भी पीटा।*

**Rule (2) :** Also का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में not only .. but also (केवल .. ही नहीं बल्कि) के Structure (बनावट) में होता है। जैसे—
He not only broke the pen but also threw it away.
Not only does he speak well but he writes well also.

**Note :** Also का प्रयोग Sentence के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में भी होता है। इस case में Also के बाद comma ( , ) का प्रयोग होता है तथा वह whole sentence को refer करता है। जैसे—
This is a good book, but is not bulky, Also, it costs much.

**ध्यान दें :** इस प्रकार के Sentence में it also costs much का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**N. Use of 'Even'**

**Rule (1) :** Even का प्रयोग 'फिर भी/ तो भी' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Auxiliary verbs के बाद या Intransitive forms of be (जैसे—is, are, am, was, were) के बाद होता है। इसका प्रयोग subject के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—
She has lost her purse. She has even lost her watch.
This woman is rude to everybody, she is even rude to her husband.

इस प्रकार के Sentence में even she has lost her watch तथा even she is rude to her husband का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि even का प्रयोग subject के पहले नहीं होता है।

**Rule (2) :** Even का प्रयोग 'एक सा', 'नियमित', 'संतुलित', 'चिकना', 'समतल', 'सम संख्या', 'एक रूप/गुण/स्वभाव/कार्य का', 'शांत', 'परिमाण में समान', 'पक्षपातरहित' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
This is an even surface.
His work is not very even.
2, 4, 6, 8 are even numbers.
They are even.
He is a man of even temper.
It is an even contest.

**Note :** (i) Even का प्रयोग 'एक-सा करना', 'समान करना', 'चिकना बनाना', 'संतुलित करना', 'समतल हो जाना' के अर्थ में verb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
He evened a board with a plane.
I evened up my accounts.
The racing roads evened before the race.

(ii) Even if/Even though or even when का प्रयोग 'ऐसा होने पर भी', 'चाहे' के अर्थ में Sentence or clause के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में होता है। अर्थात् Subordinate clause को Introduce करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—
Even if I have to walk all the way in rain, I will go there.
I like her even though she is so haughty.
Even if I become a rich man, I shall never be proud of wealth or power.
I shall go out, even if it rains today.
Even when I go to bed early, I'm still tired in the morning.

इस प्रकार के Sentences में सिर्फ Even का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—
Even I go to bed early, I'm still tired in the morning (×)

**Rule (3) :** Even का प्रयोग a danger of confusion को express करने वाले word or phrase के पहले होता है। जैसे—
Many people think that it shows in Norway even in the summer. (√)
Many people think that it shows in Norway in the summer. (×)

**O. Use of 'Else'**

**Rule (1) :** Else का प्रयोग 'अलावा', 'दूसरा', 'कोई और' (besides/in addition to) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
Did you find anybody else there ?
Have you anything else to do ?

**Rule (2) :** Else का प्रयोग 'अन्यथा' (otherwise) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
Run, else you will be late.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (3) :** Else का प्रयोग 'अतिरिक्त', 'अन्य', 'नहीं तो' (other/different) के अर्थ में इन शब्दों के बाद होता है। जैसे—

How, what, where, who, somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, something, somewhere, no body, no one etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

If you can't accompany me, I shall ask somebody else.
Would you like to have anything else ?
Where else did you go besides Mumbai ?

**Rule (4) :** Or else का प्रयोग 'यदि ऐसा नहीं तो' (if not/then) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Keep quiet or else I won't be able to finish my lesson today.

**Rule (5) :** Else का प्रयोग 'इसके अतिरिक्त कुछ और' (more; additional) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

What else do you expect from me ?

**Note :** Else के साथ apostrophe's ['s] का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

My scooter is out of order.
You may take somebody else's scooter or motor cycle.

## P. Use of 'Only'

**Rule (1) :** Only का प्रयोग 'केवल', 'एकमात्र तथा सर्वश्रेष्ठ' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

They were the only visitors there.
He was the only candidate for the post.

**Rule (2) :** Only का प्रयोग 'सिवाय इसके कि' (except that) के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

This book is likely to be very useful, only it's rather expensive.

**Rule (3) :** Only का प्रयोग 'लेकिन' (with the restriction; but) के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

You may visit, only don't stay long.

**Rule (4) :** Only का प्रयोग 'यद्यपि' (and yet, however) के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The apartment is lovely, only I can't afford it.

**Rule (5) :** Only का प्रयोग उस word or phrase के पहले होता है जिसको यह modify करता है। जैसे—

Mr. Thakur only posted the letter to Mr. Jha.
(=He didn't write it)
Mr. Thakur posted only the letter to Mr. Jha.
(= He didn't post the other letters)

**Note :** if only का प्रयोग wish (इच्छा) को express करने के लिए एक साथ होता है। कभी-कभी only का प्रयोग Main verb के पहले भी होता है। जैसे—

If only you would stay longer, your English would improve. (✓)
If you would only stay longer, your English would improve . (✓)
If you only would stay longer, your English would improve. (×)

## Q. Use of 'Alone'

**Rule (1) :** Alone का प्रयोग 'अकेले' के अर्थ में Adverb/Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The girl was sitting alone in the room.
Adv.

He lives alone in this house.
I have thought about getting married, but I prefer living alone.
He was alone in his room.
Adj.

## R. Use of 'Lonely'

**Rule :** Lonely का प्रयोग 'अकेला ही', 'बिना किसी साथी के', 'एकाकी', 'दुःखी', 'उदास', 'सुस्त', 'एकान्त', 'सुनसान', 'निर्जन' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I was very lonely at first but then I made some friends. (✓)
I was very alone at first but then I made some friends (×)
I didn't know anyone in Patna and felt very lonely. (✓)
I didn't know anyone in Patna and felt very alone. (×)

**Note :** (i) Alone का तात्पर्य without other people around you होता है जबकि lonely का तात्पर्य sad because you are alone and feel that nobody loves you or cares about you. होता है।

(ii) *On + possessive adjectives + own* का प्रयोग without any one's help or supervision; Independently के अर्थ में होता है। इसके बदले में alone का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Children learn a lot by doing things on their own. (✓)
Children learn a lot by doing things alone. (×)

## S. Use of 'There'

**Rule (1) :** There का प्रयोग उस स्थान पर, वहाँ के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He went there in the evening.
Don't sit there.

**Rule (2) :** There का प्रयोग sentence के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में तथा बाद में आने वाले उद्देश्य को संकेतित करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

There are seven days in a week.

**Rule (3) :** There का प्रयोग preposition के बाद that place or thing (वह स्थान या वस्तु) को denote करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Put the bag under there.

**Rule (4) :** There का प्रयोग verb के पहले verb को emphasis (जोर देना) करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

There goes the last bus.
There stands your walking stick in that corner.
There lies your patient in the operation theatre.

**Note :** (i)

| Phrase | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. All there | सावधान/चौकना |
| 2. So there | किसी इंकार या अवहेलना के पश्चात होने वाला उद्गार |
| 3. Then and there | उसी समय, उसी स्थान पर |
| 4. There and then | तत्काल, उसी समय |

(ii) There का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में होता है तो पहले preposition (to) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

My sister often goes to the indoor pool but I do not like going to there. (×)
My sister often goes to the indoor pool but I do not like going there. (✓)

ध्यान दें : लेकिन There के बाद preposition का प्रयोग होता है। तथा वह Adverb होता है। जैसे—

| There + Preposition (Adverbs) | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. There by | उस संबंध या सिलसिले में |
| 2. There from | वहाँ से, उससे |
| 3. There in | उसके भीतर/उसमें |
| 4. There in after | पुस्तक या दस्तावेज आदि के बाद वाले भाग में |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| There + Preposition (Adverbs) | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 5. There of | उसका/उस स्रोत से |
| 6. There under | उसके नीचे |
| 7. There upon | उस कारण से/ उसके तत्काल बाद |
| 8. There with | उसके साथ/उसके अतिरिक्त |

**T. Use of 'Quickly'**

**Rule :** Quickly का प्रयोग 'जल्दी से' (rapidly) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Go there quickly. Do it quickly.

**U. Use of 'Scarcely'**

**Rule :** Scarcely का प्रयोग 'मुश्किल से'/'शायद ही' (hardly/barely/not quite) के अर्थ में होता है, जैसे—

There were scarcely a hundred people present.
He has scarcely any money.

**Note :** (i) Scarcely तथा hardly का प्रयोग any, ever, at all तथा verb—can के साथ होता है। जैसे—

You hardly/scarcely ever read.
The load is so heavy that I can hardly/scarcely lift it.

(ii) Any, ever, at all तथा verb—can के बिना भी hardly/scarcely का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Hardly/scarcely had he reached the station when the train departed.

**V. Use of 'Barely'**

**Rule (1) :** Barely का प्रयोग 'मुश्किल से', 'शायद ही कुछ' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He can barely read and write.

**Rule (2) :** Barely का प्रयोग 'ज्यादा नहीं', 'ठीक' (not more than/only just) के अर्थ भी Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

There are barely twenty girls in the school.
We can barely see it.

**W. Use of 'Certainly'**

**Rule (1) :** Certainly का प्रयोग 'निश्चित रूप से', 'यकीन' (undoubtedly/positively) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He will certainly die if he drinks in excess.

**Rule (2) :** Certainly का प्रयोग किसी question का Answer affirmative sense में देने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Q. Will you pass me the towel, please ?
A. Certainly.

**Note :** Certainly not का प्रयोग किसी question का Answer negative sense में देने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Q. Will you lend me your bat ?
A. Certainly not.

**X. Use of 'Surely'**

**Rule (1) :** Surely का प्रयोग 'निःसन्देह', 'अवश्य' (with certainty) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Main verb के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He has been very irregular, he will surely fail.

**Rule (2) :** Surely का प्रयोग a strong belief in the truth or likelihood of what you are saying, and of to encourage the listener को express करने के लिए Sentence के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में subject के पहले अथवा Sentence के last में होता है। जैसे—

Surely they should have arrived by now.
You don't need to wear a coat in the weather, surely.

**Note :** 'निश्चित रूप से', 'यकीनन', 'निःसंदेह' तथा 'अवश्य' के अर्थ में surely तथा certainly का प्रयोग एक दूसरे के बदले होता है।

**Y. Use of 'Definitely'**

**Rule (1) :** Definitely का प्रयोग A sense of complete certainty about something (निश्चित रूप से) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

This is definitely the best film, she's ever made.

**Note :** definitely के बदले surely का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

It was an absolutely terrible flight. The next time I go to Delhi, I will definitely go by train. (✓)
It was an absolutely terrible flight. The next time I go to Delhi, I will surely go by train. (×)

**Z. Use of 'at Present'**

**Rule :** At present का प्रयोग 'आजकल', 'अब' (now a days, now) के अर्थ में Present Tense में होता है। जैसे—

At present they are preparing for the examination.
He does not need any more at present.

**Note :** (i) आजकल तथा अब के अर्थ में presently, shortly, directly का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Presently/shortly/directly he is in the bed room. (×)
At present he is in the bed room. (✓)

(ii) Presently/shortly/directly का प्रयोग 'जल्दी/शीघ्र ही', 'थोड़ी देर में' (Soon, in a short time, without delay) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में future Action को express करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

I shall be leaving this house presently/shortly/directly.

(iii) कभी-कभी Presently का प्रयोग 'इन दिनों/इस समय' के अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

The government is presently considering a proposal on job oriented education.

**A. Use of 'Shortly'**

**Rule :** Shortly का प्रयोग संक्षेप में या कुछ ही शब्दों में (briefly/in a few words) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Rima answered all the questions shortly.

**B. Use of 'Directly'**

**Rule (1) :** Directly का प्रयोग 'सीधे तौर पर' (in a direct manner) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Present, Past तथा Future Tense में होता है। जैसे—

She is looking directly at me.
She was looking directly at me.
She will be looking directly at me.

**Rule (2) :** Directly का प्रयोग 'तत्काल/फौरन' (at once) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Come in directly, don't delay.

**Rule (3) :** Directly का प्रयोग 'क्रमानुसार', 'आगे वाला', 'बिल्कुल सामने' के अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

The car was parked directly behind his truck.

**Rule (4) :** Directly का प्रयोग 'ज्यों ही', 'जैसे ही' (as soon as) के अर्थ conjunction के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Directly they arrived, they mentioned their programme.

**Note :** (i) Direct का प्रयोग 'सीधा' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The train goes there direct.

**C. Use of 'Hotly'**

**Rule :** Hotly का प्रयोग 'अपमानपूर्ण ढंग से' (Indignantly) के अर्थ में bad sense में होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Yadav denied all the charges hotly. (✓)
Mr. Yadav denied all the charges warmly. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**D. Use of 'Warmly'**

**Rule :** Warmly का प्रयोग 'जोशीले ढंग से'/'दोस्ताना ढंग से' के अर्थ में good sense में होता है। जैसे—

We thanked them warmly. (✓)
We thanked them hotly. (×)
Shobhana welcomed me warmly. (✓)
Shobhana welcomed me hotly. (×)

**E. Use of 'Coldly'**

**Rule :** Coldly का प्रयोग 'शत्रुता/ईर्ष्या के भाव से', 'कटुता से', (In an unfriendly way) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में bad sense में होता है। जैसे—

He received me coldly. (✓)
He received me cooly. (×)
You treated him coldly. (✓)
You treated him cooly. (×)

**F. Use of 'Cooly'**

**Rule :** Cooly का प्रयोग 'शांति से', 'साहसपूर्ण ढंग से', 'चतुराई से' (calmly, courageously, prudently) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में good sense में होता है। जैसे—

My wife manages everything cooly. (✓)
My wife manages everything coldly. (×)

**G. Use of 'No'**

No = Not + any
Adjective Adverb Adjective

**Rule (1) :** No का प्रयोग singular uncountable noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He has no money. (S.U.N.) I have no wealth. (S.U.N.)

**Rule (2) :** No का प्रयोग Plural countable noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

I have no books. He has no pens.

**Rule (3) :** No का प्रयोग singular countable noun के पहले Not a/ an या not any के बदले negative idea को Emphatic *(जोरदार)* बनाने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

He has no pen to lend you at present.
But—He has not a/not any pen to lend you at present. (✓)

**Rule (4) :** *No + positive degree (Adjective) + noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She has no black saree. I have no black paint.

**Rule (5) :** *No + comparative degree (Adjective) + noun* या *No + comparative degree (Adjective)* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is no pretier girl in my colony than Bhavna.
She is no fatter than Shobhana.

**Rule (6) :** *No + other + S.N.* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

No other student in the class is so intelligent as Rahul.

**Rule (7) :** *No + numerical Adjectives* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

No two persons look alike.

**Rule (8) :** No का प्रयोग निषेध (Prohibition) को express करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

No parking. No smoking.

**Note:** (i) *There + verb to be + no + gerund* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is no saying that .....

(ii) किसी question का Negative answer देने के लिए No का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Q. Are you happy.
A. No, I'm not.

**H. Use of 'Not'**

**Rule (1) :** *Not + a/an+ positive degree (Adjective) + singular noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

You are not a laborious student.
She is not an ugly girl.

**Note :** *Not + any + singular noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He has not any book. She has not any pen.

(ii) *Not + a/an+ singular noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Not a boy can pass the examination.

(iii) *Not + positive degree (Adjective)* का प्रयोग Noun के बिना होता है। जैसे—

He is not honest. She is not beautiful.

(iv) *Not + Possessive Adjective + Noun* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She is not my beloved.

(v) Not + proper noun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

You are not Krishna.

**Rule (2) :** Not का प्रयोग sentence को negative बनाने के लिए Auxiliary verb के बाद होता है। जैसे—

They are not playing cricket.
I do not like her.
He will not come here.

**Rule (3) :** Not का प्रयोग Infinitive के (to + $V^1$) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He asked me not to make a noise.
She asked me not to go out in the sun.

**Rule (4) :** Not का प्रयोग *Gerund (M.V + ing)* के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was right in not helping (Gerund) that terrorist.

**Rule (5) :** Not का प्रयोग appear, be afraid, believe, expect, fancy, fear, hope, seem, suppose, think, trust— verbs के बाद होता है। यहाँ Not— that clause के equivalent (समतुल्य) कार्य करता है। जैसे—

Q. Can you do well in the C. B. S. E. ?
A. I'm afraid not.

यहाँ I'm afraid not का अर्थ I'm afraid that I cannot do well होता है।

**I. Use of 'Seldom'**

**Rule :** Seldom का प्रयोग 'कभी-कभी' (not often) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

She seldom leaves her house alone.
You seldom see such scenes.

**Note :** Seldom के बाद if ever या or never का प्रयोग होता है न कि if never या or ever का। जैसे—

He seldom if ever comes here. (✓)
He seldom if never comes here. (×)
Seldom or never does she come here. (✓)
Seldom or ever does she come here. (×)

**J. Use of 'How'**

**Rule (1) :** How का प्रयोग 'कैसे', 'किस प्रकार' (in what way or manner) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

How did you go there ?
How did he escape ?

**Rule (2) :** How का प्रयोग Adjective के पहले 'किसी गुण की मात्रा' का पता करने लिए होता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



How tall are you ?
How long is the room ?
How high is the building ?

**Rule (3) :** How many का प्रयोग 'कितना' के अर्थ में number *(संख्या)* का पता करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

How many boys are there in the class ?

**Rule (4) :** How much का प्रयोग 'कितना' के अर्थ में quantity *(मात्रा)* का पता करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

How much milk does the pot hold ?

**Rule (5) :** How much का प्रयोग 'किसी वस्तु का भाव' पता करने के लिए भी होता है। जैसे—

How much is sugar ? How much are mangoes ?
*चीनी किस भाव बिकती है ?* *आम किस भाव बिकते हैं ?*

**Rule (6) :** *How + Adjective/Adverb* का प्रयोग exclamatory Sentence *(आश्चर्य बोधक वाक्य)* बनाने के लिए होता है। इस प्रकार के sentence में do, does, did का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। क्योंकि यह Interrogative Sentence नहीं है। बल्कि exclamatory sentence है। जैसे—

How sweetly she sings!
*वाह! वह कितना सुन्दर गाती है।*
How fluently you talk !
*वाह ! तुम कितना धाराप्रवाह बोलते हो।*

**Note :** How old, how often तथा howmanytimes का प्रयोग क्रमशः 'उम्र में कितना' तथा 'कितना बार' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

How old are you ?
*तुम्हारी उम्र कितनी है ?*
How often do you take tea in a day ?
*तुम एक दिन में कितनी बार चाय पीते हो ?*

### K. Use of 'Clean'

**Rule (1) :** Clean का प्रयोग 'साफ', 'स्वच्छ', 'नवीन', 'निर्दोष', 'पवित्र' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

We should breath in clean *(स्वच्छ)* air.
I have a clean *(नवीन)* paper.
He leads a clean *(पवित्र)* life.

**Rule (2) :** Clean का प्रयोग 'साफ करना' के अर्थ में verb के रूप भी होता है। जैसे—

Clean your teeth daily.

**Rule (3) :** Clean का प्रयोग 'बिल्कुल' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I clean forget your name.
*मैं बिल्कुल तुम्हारा नाम भूल गया हूँ।*

### L. Use of 'Cleanly'

**Rule (1) :** Cleanly का प्रयोग 'साफ-साफ', तेजी से', 'सफाई से', के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I write cleanly *(साफ-साफ)*.
He caught the ball cleanly *(तेजी से)*.

**Rule (2) :** Cleanly का प्रयोग 'स्वभाव से साफ-सुथरा' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Are cats cleanly animals ?

### M. Use of 'Pretty'

**Rule :** Pretty का प्रयोग 'सुन्दर', 'मनोहर', 'अच्छा', 'उत्तम', 'श्रेष्ठ', 'प्रशंसनीय' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

It is a pretty child.
It is a pretty joke.
She replied with a pretty wit (बुद्धि/समझ).

### N. Use of 'Prettily'

**Rule :** Prettily का प्रयोग 'सुन्दरता से', 'अच्छी तरह से', 'ठीक ढंग से' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He arranged the function prettily.

### O. Use of 'High'

**Rule :** High का प्रयोग 'ऊँचा', 'उच्च'; 'पद में ऊँचा', 'ऊँची पदवी', 'कर्कश', 'तीखी', 'अधिक' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

There was an aeroplane high in the sky.
He was a high official.
He speaks in a high tone.
He cannot afford high prices.
She is a woman of high character.

**Rule :** High का प्रयोग 'ऊँचाई पर', 'शान शौकत से', के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

He lives high.
Adv.

### P. Use of 'Highly'

**Rule :** Highly का प्रयोग 'उच्च सीमा तक', 'प्रशंसा करते हुए' (to a high degree/with high appreciation or praise) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Arjun babu is a highly paid official.
*अर्जुन बाबू अधिक वेतन पाने वाले अधिकारी हैं।*
He spoke highly of somebody.
*वे किसी व्यक्ति की प्रशंसा करते हुए बोले।*

### Q. Use of 'Thorough'

**Rule :** Thorough का प्रयोग 'पूरा', 'पूर्ण', 'असाध्य', 'अति सावधान', 'मेहनती' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He has thorough knowledge of physics.
He is a thorough gentleman.
It was a thorough research.
She is a thorough housewife.

### R. Use of 'Thoroughly'

**Rule :** Thoroughly का प्रयोग 'पूर्णतः' (completely) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

We should be thoroughly familiar with the problem. (✓)
We should be thorough familiar with the problem. (×)

### S. Use of 'Leisure'

**Rule (1) :** Leisure का प्रयोग 'अवकाश', 'फुरसत' (spare time) के अर्थ में noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

During the examination days students have no leisure for sports.

**Rule (2) :** At leisure का प्रयोग 'खाली समय में', 'फुरसत के वक्त में' (having free time/not busy) के अर्थ में phrase के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is seldom at leisure.
I'll take the report home and read it at leisure.

**Rule (3) :** At one's leisure का प्रयोग 'फुरसत के समय', 'खाली समय में', 'फुरसत होने पर' (when one is free) के अर्थ में Phrase के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

There is no hurry; you please read these papers at your leisure.

**Note :**

| Phrase | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| marry in haste, repent at leisure | *जल्दी की शादी, जीवन भर का पछतावा* |
| leisured (adj) | *फुरसत वाला, जिसके पास खाली समय हो* |
| The leisured classes | *आराम तलब लोग* |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**T. Use of 'Leisurely'**

**Rule** : Leisurely का प्रयोग 'बिना जल्दबाजी या उतावले के', 'आराम से किया हुआ या किया जाने वाला' (without haste or hurry) के अर्थ में Adjective तथा Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

You can go there leisurely.

**U. Use of 'Bright'**

**Rule (1)** : Bright का प्रयोग 'चमकीला', 'प्रसन्न', 'बुद्धिमान', 'चतुर' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Today we have a bright sunshine.
They have bright faces.
A bright boy learns quickly.

**V. Use of 'Brightly'**

**Rule** : Brightly का प्रयोग 'उज्ज्वलता से', 'चमक से', 'प्रसन्नता से' या 'प्रसन्नतापूर्वक' (shinningly, carefully) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The sun shines brightly.

**W. Use of 'Bad'**

**Rule** : Bad का प्रयोग 'बुरा', 'खराब', 'अप्रिय', 'बीमार होना', 'अस्वस्थ होना' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

It is bad to steal.
We have heard bad news.
She feels bad today.

**Note :**

| | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | To go bad | गल जाना, सड़ जाना |
| 2. | To go to the bad | नैतिक रूप से पतित हो जाना |
| 3. | To the bad | बुरी अवस्था में, घाटा में |
| 4. | With a bad grace | अनिच्छापूर्वक |
| 5. | Bad Blood | दुर्भावना |
| 6. | A bad way has a bad end | आग लायेगा, अंगारा उगलेगा |
| 7. | To make bad shot | गलत अनुमान लगाना |
| 8. | In bad | अकृपा का पात्र |

**X. Use of 'Badly'**

**Rule** : Badly का प्रयोग 'बुरी तरह से', 'बुरे ढंग से' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He has been badly hurt.

**Y. Use of 'Firm'**

**Rule** : Firm का प्रयोग 'ठोस', 'सख्त', 'अडिग', 'दृढ़' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is as firm as rock.
Mr. Kumar has taken firm steps in the education.

**Z. Use of 'Firmly'**

**Rule** : Firmly का प्रयोग 'दृढ़ता से', 'सख्ती से', 'अडिग होकर' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I faced the difficulties firmly.

**A. Use of 'Mighty'**

**Rule (1)** : Mighty का प्रयोग 'शक्तिशाली', 'विशालकाय', 'बृहद् आकार का' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Soviet Union was a mighty nation.

**Rule (2)** : Mighty का प्रयोग 'अत्यधिक' (very) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में Informal style में होता है। जैसे—

It is a mighty difficult task.
He is mighty pleased.

**B. Use of 'Mightily'**

**Rule** : Mightily का प्रयोग 'पराक्रम से', 'बल से' (vigorously) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Sohrab defeated Rustam mightily.

**C. Use of 'Right'**

**Rule (1)** : Right का प्रयोग 'ठीक', 'सही', 'उचित', 'सत्य', 'सही दिशा में होना', 'सीधा' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Do what is right.
What is the time by your watch ?
I feel all right (बिल्कुल ठीक).
It is a right way to the railway station.

**Rule (2)** : Right का प्रयोग 'ठीक', 'सीधी' (straight/directly) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Put it right in the middle of the field.

**Rule (3)** : Right का प्रयोग 'पूर्णतः/संतोषजनक रूप से' (completely/satisfactorily) के अर्थ में भी Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

The villain got right away.
Nothing seems to go right with him.

**D. Use of 'Rightly'**

**Rule** : Rightly का प्रयोग 'सही ढंग से', 'सही तरीके से', 'वास्तव में' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

She was rightly dressed.
I wasn't rightly sure.

**E. Use of 'Dead'**

**Rule** : Dead का प्रयोग 'मृत', 'प्राणहीन', 'शांत', 'अप्रचलित', 'सुन्न', 'अचेत', 'गहरी' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

It is a dead flower.
He is a dead man.
The students should study in the dead hours of the night.
He has dead fingers.
She was in a dead (deep) sleep.

**F. Use of 'Deadly'**

**Rule (1)** : Deadly का प्रयोग 'घातक', 'भयंकर', 'निष्ठुर', 'अधिक ऊबा देने वाला/वाली' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

It is a deadly poison.
He was my deadly enemy.
The dinner party was absolutely deadly.

**Rule (2)** : Deadly का प्रयोग 'अत्यधिक रूप से' (excessively) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

It is a deadly serious condition.

**G. Use of 'Good'**

**Rule** : Good का प्रयोग 'उत्तम', 'अच्छा गुण', 'सही', 'लाभदायक', 'ठीक', 'योग्य', 'लायक', 'उदार', 'मजबूत', 'सुरक्षित', 'भला', 'नेक', 'आनन्ददायक', 'अभिवादन या विदाई हेतु', 'मात्रा या संख्या में पर्याप्त' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

This is a good book.
Exercise is good for health.
He is a good doctor.
How good of you ?
His eye sight is still good.
This is a car with good brakes.
He lives a good life.
It is a good news.
Good morning, good night.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He has a good deal of money.

**Note** :Goodly का प्रयोग 'सुन्दर', 'काफी' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is a goodly man.
He has a goodly sum of money.

**H. Use of 'Well'**

**Rule (1)** :Well का प्रयोग 'स्वस्थ', 'अच्छा', 'संतोषजनक', 'उचित', 'ठीक अच्छी स्थिति में', के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is well now.
All is well with us.
It is well that you didn't go.
It would be well to start early to reach there in time.
He is very well as he is.

**Rule (2)** :Well का प्रयोग 'भली प्रकार से', 'अच्छी तरह से', 'उचित रीति से', 'चतुराई के साथ', 'संतोषजनक ढंग से', 'सावधानी के साथ', 'ठाट-बाट से', 'घनिष्ठता से', 'सौहार्दपूर्ण ढंग से', 'पूर्ण रूप से' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

They all behaved well.
Have you prepared your lesson well ?
The marriage festivities were organised well.
He plays the harmonium well.
Listen well to my advice.
He lives well.
I know him well.
She speaks well of you.
The intelligence kept the government well informed about the communal tension.

**Note** :

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. As well | इसके अतिरिक्त, भी |
| 2. As well as | तथा और |
| 3. Well off | सम्पन्न, सब प्रकार से सुखी |
| 4. Very well | सहमति प्रकट करने की भावना से, अच्छा, जैसा आप चाहते हैं, वैसा ही होगा |
| 5. Well then | तब फिर |
| 6. Well to do (adj) | खुशहाल |
| 7. Well born (adj) | कुलीन |
| 8. Well bred (adj) | शिष्ट, सभ्य |
| 9. Well informed (adj) | विस्तृत ज्ञान प्राप्त |
| 10. Well known (adj) | प्रसिद्ध |
| 11. Well read (adj) | पंडित, बहुत पढ़ा लिखा |
| 12. Well balanced (adj) | संतुलित |
| 13. Well tried (adj) | अच्छी तरह आजमाया गया |
| 14. Well wisher (n) | शुभचिन्तक |
| 15. Well doing (n) | उत्तम कार्य |

**Note** :Well का प्रयोग 'कुआं' के अर्थ में noun के रूप में होता है।

**I. Use of 'ill'**

**Rule (1)** :ill का प्रयोग 'बीमार', 'अस्वस्थ', 'बुरा', 'दोष', 'असन्तोषजनक', 'अपराधी', 'दुर्विचार', 'कुभावना', 'विरोधी', 'प्रतिकूल', 'अनाड़ी', 'अल्प ज्ञानी' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

She is ill these days.
He has ill luck.
You have ill manners.
He has ill fortune.
It is an ill example of scholarship.

**Rule (2)** :ill का प्रयोग 'बुरी तरह से', 'अनाड़ीपन से', 'अशोभनीय तरह से', 'ईर्ष्या से', 'घृणापूर्वक', 'बदनसीबी से', 'दुर्भाग्य से', 'कठिनाई से', 'असुविधा से' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He was ill injured.
Buying a new vehicle is an expense I can ill afford.

**Note** :ill का प्रयोग 'बुराई', 'नीचता', 'क्षति', 'नुकसान', 'रोग', 'कष्ट', 'दुर्भाग्य' के अर्थ में noun के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

He did ill unto his brother.
You have done whatever ill you could do to me.

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. ill at ease | परेशान, चिन्तित |
| 2. ill breeding (n) | अशिष्ट व्यवहार |
| 3. ill mannered (adj) | असभ्य, अशिष्ट |
| 4. ill starred (adj) | अभागा |
| 5. ill treatment (n) | बुरा व्यवहार |
| 6. ill will (n) | शत्रुता |
| 7. ill advised (adj) | अविवेकी |
| 8. ill bred (adj) | अशिष्ट |
| 9. ill defined | ठीक ढंग से समझाया न गया हो |

**J. Use of 'Straight'**

**Rule (1)** :Straight का प्रयोग 'सीधा', 'बिल्कुल लम्बे और समस्तर', 'सीधे', 'स्पष्टवादी', 'एकदम सीधा', 'बिना झुके', 'निरन्तर', 'पक्का सरासर', 'शुद्ध', 'मिलावट रहित' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

This is a straight line.
We require a straight table so that things won't slide off it.
Stand straight.
He is a straight speaking person.
He has straight hair.
He is a straight Congress man.
It is straight vodka.

**Rule (2)** :Straight का प्रयोग 'सीधा', 'स्पष्टता से', 'सम्मान व ईमानदारी से', 'सच्चाई का कब्जे में होना' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He went straight to the bus stand.
She spoke out straight.
I live straight.
I wish to set you straight before you commit mistakes.

**Note** :Straightly का प्रयोग भी Adverb के रूप में होता है।

**K. Use of 'Sudden'**

**Rule** :Sudden का प्रयोग 'एकाएक', 'आकस्मिक', 'अचानक आने या होने वाला', 'जल्दी से', 'फुर्ति से' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He saw a sudden change in the weather.
He made a sudden departure.
He made a sudden turn of the wrist.

**Note** :All of a sudden का प्रयोग 'बिना पूर्व सूचना के' अर्थ में Phrase के रूप में होता है।

**L. Use of 'Suddenly'**

**Rule** :Suddenly का प्रयोग एकदम सहसा, अचानक, एकाएक के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He met his old friend suddenly.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**M. Use of 'Sound'**

**Rule** :Sound का प्रयोग 'स्वस्थ', 'अच्छी हालत में', 'ठीक', 'कानूनी रूप से' 'त्रुटि रहित', 'गहरी', 'तर्कसंगत', 'साख वाला' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is sound in body.
It is a sound title to property.
She is in sound sleep.
It is a sound reasoning.
He is a sound businessman.

**N. Use of 'Soundly'**

**Rule** :Soundly का प्रयोग 'सुख से', 'सच्चाई से', 'दृढ़ता से' (heartily, truly) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He does his work soundly.

**O. Use of 'Easy'**

**Rule** :Easy का प्रयोग 'आसान', 'चिन्ता से मुक्त', 'आरामदायक', 'उदार', 'जो कष्टप्रद न हो', 'विनीत', 'अनौपचारिक', 'सरल', 'सहज', 'सुगमता से समझ में आने वाला' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

This is an easy question.
He is easy in his mind.
That is an easy arm chair.
He was an easy master.
He has an easy manner.

**P. Use of 'Easily'**

**Rule** :Easily का प्रयोग 'आसानी से' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He easily comes here.

**Q. Use of 'First'**

**Rule** :First का प्रयोग 'प्रथम', 'पहला' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Sunday is the first day of the week.

| | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | First of all | *सबसे पहले* |
| 2. | First and last | *प्रथम और अंतिम/कुल मिलाकर* |
| 3. | From first to last | *शुरू से अंत तक* |
| 4. | First born (n/adj) | *सबसे बड़ा बच्चा* |

**R. Use of 'Firstly'**

**Rule** :Firstly का प्रयोग 'आगे', 'पहले' आदि में (in the first place) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Firstly he lives in Darbhanga.

## *Some Important rules of Prepositions and Adverbs*

**Rule (1)** :*Not/Never/always + to + V*[1] (Infinitive) का प्रयोग होता है न कि *To + not/never/always + V*[1] का । जैसे—

He requested me not to go out in the sun. (✓)
He requested me to not go out in the sun. (×)
I advised him not to go there. (✓)
I advised him to not go there. (×)

**Rule (2)** :Preposition का प्रयोग Adverb of manner के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He wanted to live in peacefully. (×)
He wanted to live peacefully. (✓)
She tried to solve the sum with carefully. (×)
She tried to solve the sum carefully. (✓)

**Rule (3)** :In or In the का प्रयोग Next/last + week/month/year के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Aditi came here in last month. (×)
Aditi came here in the last month. (×)
Aditi came here last month. (✓)
His grandmother died in last year. (×)
His grandmother died in the last year. (×)
His grandmother died last year. (✓)

**Note** :लेकिन since, from, before, by, तथा after prepositions का प्रयोग Next/last + week/ month/ year के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

Awadesh has been ill since last year. (✓)
Awadesh has been ill last year. (×)
Sima will come to attend the class from next month. (✓)
Sima will come to attend the class next month. (×)
She must return before/after next week. (✓)
She must return next week. (×)

**Rule (4)** :On-prepositon का प्रयोग Next/last + Monday/Tuesday ... etc के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Rakesh left for Mumbai on last Monday. (×)
Rakesh left for Mumbai last Monday. (✓)
Vikas will return from Vishnupur on next Sunday. (×)
Vikas will return from Vishnupur next Sunday. (✓)

**Note** :(i) सामान्यतः Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, ... etc. के पहले on-preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He came here on Tuesday. (✓)
He came here Tuesday. (×)
She will go there on Sunday. (✓)
She will go there Sunday. (×)

(ii) On-preposition का प्रयोग *Monday/Tuesday/Wednesday... etc + next/last* के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Rakesh left for Mumbai on Monday last. (✓)
Rakesh left for Mumbai Monday last. (×)
Vikas will return from Vishnupur on Sunday next. (✓)
Vikas will return from Vishnupur Sunday next. (×)

**Rule (5)** :In-preposition का प्रयोग all/this+ day/night/morning/afternoon/evening/week/month/year etc के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Veena reached here in this morning. (×)
Veena reached here this morning. (✓)
I usually work in all night. (×)
I usually work all night. (✓)

**Note** :Since, from, before, after, तथा by-prepositions का प्रयोग This + morning/evening/afternoon के पहले जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है। जैसे—

I have been waiting for her since this morning. (✓)
I have been waiting for her this morning. (×)
I will see my mother-in-law before this evening. (✓)
I will see my mother-in-law this evening. (×)
My brother will have reached there by this afternoon. (✓)
My brother will have reached there this afternoon. (×)

**Rule (6)** :On-prepositon का प्रयोग Adverbs of time जैसे— Today, yesterday, tomorrow, the day before yesterday, the day after tomorrow के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Are you coming here on today ? (×)
Are you coming here today ? (✓)
He went there on yesterday. (×)
He went there yesterday. (✓)
He will go there on tomorrow. (×)
He will go there tomorrow. (✓)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (7) :** Preposition का प्रयोग Adverbs of place जैसे—here तथा there के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She arrived here at ten o' clock. (✓)
She arrived at here at ten o' clock. (×)
We should come here as soon as possible. (✓)
We should come on here as soon as possible. (×)

**Note :** लेकिन from here, from there तथा from here to there का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (8) :** Double negative words or phrases का प्रयोग नहीं होता है क्योंकि double negative words or phrases के प्रयोग से sentence का meaning (अर्थ) Affirmative हो जाता है। अतः Negative idea (नकारात्मक विचार) को express करने के लिए एक ही negative word or phrase का प्रयोग होता है।

**Note :** Negative words जैसे—nothing, hardly, nobody, no one, until, lest, unless, none, forbade, prevented, prohibited, etc. जैसे—

I cannot do no work. (×)
I cannot do any work. (✓)
He does not want to talk to nobody. (×)
He does not want to talk to anybody. (✓)
She forbade me not to go there . (×)
She forbade me to go there. (✓)
My wife prevented me from not going there. (×)
My wife prevented me from going there. (✓)
Your father prohibited you from not going out in the sun. (×)
Your father prohibited you from going out in the sun. (✓)

## Inversion

Adverbs तथा Adverb phrases का प्रयोग sentence के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में sentence को emphasis (जोर देना) करने के लिए होता है। इस case में verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले होता है।

**Inversion :** verb का subject के पहले प्रयोग करना ही Inversion कहलाता है।

Inversion means putting the verb before the subject.

जैसे—

No sooner did the bell ring than the boys ran out of their classes.

*ज्योंही घंटी बजी त्योंही लड़के अपनी कक्षाओं से बाहर दौड़ आये।*

Hardly had I left the house when it began to rain.

*मैं मुश्किल से घर से निकला ही था कि वर्षा होने लगी।*

उपरोक्त sentences क्रमशः no sooner तथा hardly से प्रारंभ हुआ है तथा Auxiliary verbs did, had का प्रयोग क्रमशः subject– the bell तथा I के पहले हुआ है, जो Inversion को दर्शा रहा है। यहाँ no sooner तथा hardly दोनों Adverbs हैं।

Inversion
- Partial Inversion
- Complete Inversion

**1. Partial Inversion :** जब Auxiliary verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले तथा Main verb का प्रयोग subject के बाद होता है तो वह partial Inversion कहलाता है। जैसे—

No sooner did (A.V) I (S) sit down than a beggar arrived.

**2. Complete Inversion :** जब Main verb या Auxiliary verb + Main verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले होता है तो वह complete Inversion कहलाता है। जैसे—

up went (M.V) Veena (S).

Just outside the school campus was (A.V) waiting (M.V) my friend (S)

## Correct use of Inversion

**Rule (1) :** No sooner से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

No sooner did I leave the house than it began to rain.

**Rule (2) :** Hardly / scarcely / rarely / seldom / never से स्टार्ट होने वाले Sentences में Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Hardly does he come here.
Seldom had he seen such a beautiful girl.

**Rule (3) :** Only + Adverb / Adverb phrase से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Only by working hard did Suman get success.
Only last month did she die.

**Note :** Only yesterday, only the day before yesterday, only last month, only then, only after a year, only in a few countries, only in this way etc से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में भी Inversion का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (4) :** No expresions जैसे—At no time, under no circumstances, in no way, on no account, on no condition से स्टार्ट होने वाले Sentences में Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Under no circumstances will he do it.

**Rule (5) :** Place expressing Adverbial phrases से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में भी Inversion का प्रयोग होता है।

Place expressing Adverbial phrases जैसे—on a hill, round the corner, in the valley, under the table, outside the gate, Along the northern frontier, along the southern frontier, ten miles beyond the school, under the tree, on the bed, nowhere else.

उपरोक्त place expressing Adverbial phrases से Sentence स्टार्ट हो तथा come, walk, lie, stand, go—verbs का प्रयोग हो तो total (पूरा) verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले होता है। इस case में do / does / did का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Under the table is lying a cat. (✓)
Round the corner went Aditya. (✓)
Round the corner did Aditya go. (×)

**Rule (6) :** Present or past के unfulfilled wish / desire, condition को express करने वाले sentences के conditional clause में if का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। if का प्रयोग होने पर inversion का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. Were I a bird, I would fly in the sky.
   यहाँ were I a bird का तात्पर्य If I were a bird होता है।
2. If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.

Example (1) में if का प्रयोग नहीं है इसलिए Inversion का प्रयोग हुआ है। Example (2) में if का प्रयोग है इसलिए inversion का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है।

**Rule (7) :** Adverbs of place जैसे—here, there, away, out, up, indoors, outdoors से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में inversion का प्रयोग होता है।

**Case I**—यदि subject noun हो तो main verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Away went (M.V) Aditi (N → S)
There goes (M.V.) Aditya. (N → S)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Case II**—यदि subject pronoun हो तो main verb का प्रयोग subject के बाद होता है। जैसे—

Away she went.

**Rule (8)** : Direct speech में Reporting verb का प्रयोग reported speech के बाद हो तथा Reporting verb का subject कोई noun हो तो Reporting verb में inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

"Let me go out," said Aditya. (✓)
"Let me go out," Aditya said. (×)
"I can solve this sum," said Aditi. (✓)
"I can solve this sum," Aditi said. (×)

**Note** : लेकिन Reporting verb का subject कोई pronoun हो तो Reporting verb में Inversion का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अर्थात् Pronoun (subject) + verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

"Please, give me a book," he said. (✓)
"Please, give me a book," said he. (×)
"Are you busy ?" she said. (✓)
"Are you busy ?" said she. (×)

**Rule (9)** : Neither, nor तथा so से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She wrote a letter, so did I.

यहाँ so did I का तात्पर्य I wrote a letter too (मैं भी पत्र लिखा) होता है।

You did not write a letter, Neither did I.

यहाँ Neither did I का तात्पर्य I did not write a letter too (मैं भी पत्र नहीं लिखा) होता है।

He did not go there, nor did I,

यहाँ nor did I का तात्पर्य I did not go there too (मैं भी वहाँ नहीं गया) होता है।

**Rule (10)** : Not only... but also से दो verbs जुड़े हों तथा Not only से sentence स्टार्ट हो तो not only के साथ Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Not only does he speak well, but he writes well also.

**Rule (11)** : So + Adverb of manner से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में भी Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

So well did she sing that everyone began to admire her.

**Note** : To such a degree, To such a point, To such an extent, to such lengths etc से स्टार्ट होने वाले sentences में भी Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

To such an extent has Mr. Thakur analysed the poetry that no problem is left.

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Pick out Adverbs and state their Kinds :*

1. An idle man is never happy.
2. Veena has lately returned form Mumbai.
3. She sings beautifully.
4. He often comes here.
5. He always tries to do his best.
6. The girl works hard.
7. These bananas are almost ripe.
8. He certainly went.
9. Lata sings delightfully.
10. The weather is delightfully cool.
11. Aditya slept soundly.
12. She seldom comes here.
13. Her father is out.
14. The sea is very stormy.
15. Don't go far.
16. He is far better now.
17. He is poor, hence he can not pay fees.
18. When do you get up ?
19. I don't know the time when she awakes.
20. How does he pay his fee ?
21. This is the place where I live.
22. He is good enough for my purpose.
23. It is healthy to rise early.
24. The little children ran hither and thither
25. There is air everywhere.
26. He spoke very angrily.
27. She sometimes comes here.
28. Once or twice I met her there.
29. Today, My son got up very early.
30. She is going to Gaya shortly.
31. He answered rather rudely.
32. He is quite wrong.
33. Too many cooks spoil the broth.
34. Wisdom is too high for a fool.
35. The patient is no better today.
36. He will return soon.
37. Don't walk so fast.
38. Why are you late ?
39. Come in; it is hot outside.
40. Formerly he lived in Kolkata.
41. The holidays will begin tomorrow.
42. My master has gone out just now.
43. He writes well.
44. She did it once, but she will not do again.
45. Have you ever seen a balloon go up ?
46. You are probably right.
47. Whence has he come ?
48. When has he come ?
49. How fluently he talks ?
50. Why do you look sad ?

**Q. 2.** *In the following sentences (i) pick out the italic words and identify them (ii) Also tell whether they are Adjectives or Adverbs :*

1. The sum is *hard*.
2. He worked *hard*.
3. We had a *long* talk.
4. He waited *long* for her.
5. This is a *direct* question.
6. She went home *direct*.
7. This is a *straight* line.
8. He went *straight* to the station.
9. My mother spoke in a *loud* voice.
10. Don't talk so *loud*.
11. Srinath was our *fast* bowler.
12. Srinath could bowl *fast*.
13. He is a *late* comer.
14. He comes *late*.
15. Manali is the *only* daughter of her parents.
16. She can *only* guess.
17. I have food *enough* to last a month.
18. Aditya sings well *enough*.
19. I have a *high* opinion of that girl.
20. Always aim *high*.
21. Aditi is the *best* girl in this class.
22. She behaves *best*.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



23. It is an *ill* wind that blows no body good.
24. He can *ill* afford to lose her.
25. Binay is no *better* than a fool.
26. She knows *better* than to quarrel.
27. Naresh lives in the *next* house.
28. When I *next* see her, I shall speak to her.
29. She went to the *back* entrance.
30. Go *back*.
31. There is *much* truth in what she says.
32. The patient is *much* better.
33. There is a *good deal of* water in the pot.
34. He talks *a good* deal.
35. There is *a little* difficulty in it.
36. You are *little* known outside.
37. The *first* student is intelligent.
38. He stood *first*.
39. You are an *early* riser.
40. You rise *early*.
41. The work is *hard* to do.
42. He hit the ball *hard*.

**Q. 3.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of adverbs given in the brackets :*

1. She works ..... . *(hard/hardly)*
2. My brother ..... does any work. *(hard/hardly)*
3. He writes ..... . *(clean/cleanly)*
4. I have not seen her ..... . *(late/lately)*
5. Chintoo and Pintoo are ..... related. *(near/nearly)*
6. His girl friend was ..... dressed. *(pretty/prettily)*
7. He arrived ..... . *(late/lately)*
8. Stand ..... . *(nearly/near)*
9. One should fix one's hopes ..... . *(highly/high)*
10. The story of this film is ..... amusing. *(high/highly)*
11. He ..... forgets her name. *(cleanly/clean)*
12. Players come at 4 O'clock ..... . *(sharp/sharply)*
13. She spoke ..... to the stranger. *(sharply/sharp)*
14. I could ..... recognize her. *(hard/hardly)*
15. You have been ..... served. *(rightly/right)*
16. The teacher had come ..... . *(just now/justly)*
17. The student was ..... punished. *(justly/justnow)*
18. He answered ..... . *(right/rightly)*
19. The student came ..... . *(lately/late)*
20. The boy was ..... asleep. *(sound/soundly)*
21. He thrashed the boy ..... . *(sound/soundly)*
22. He found the road ..... . *(easy/easily)*
23. The station is quite ..... . *(near/nearly)*
24. Mr. pathak found me running ..... . *(fast/fastly)*
25. As the boy came ..... he was punished. *(late/lately)*

**Q. 4.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable Adverbs given in the brackets:*

1. It is ..... hot to go outside. *(too/very)*
2. The rose is ..... beautiful. *(very/too)*
3. She talks ..... much. *(too/very)*
4. He was ..... pleased when he heard the news. *(very/too)*
5. It is ..... hot today. *(too/very)*
6. My daughter's health is ..... good. *(too/very)*
7. The news is ..... good to be true. *(very/too)*
8. I am ..... tired, but not ..... late to catch the train. *(very/too)*
9. He is ..... glad to receive her letter. *(very/much)*
10. Lata can sing ..... better than Asha. *(very/much)*
11. Mr. Pathak was ..... pleased to her. *(very/much)*
12. It is a ..... amusing story. *(very/much)*
13. The boy was ..... interested in the story. *(much/very)*
14. Old men are ..... afraid of death. *(very/much)*
15. She is ..... disgusted with her life. *(much/very)*
16. It was a ..... pleasing sight. *(very/much)*
17. You are a ..... promising boy. *(much/very)*
18. He is the ..... best boy of his class. *(very/much)*
19. He is ..... the brightest boy of his class. *(very/much)*
20. He talks ..... . *(very/much)*
21. He is ..... contented. *(very/much)*
22. This mango is ..... sweeter than that mango. *(very/much)*
23. Rajagir is ..... colder in winter than Patna. *(very/much)*
24. This is the ..... book I wanted. *(very/much)*
25. Children are ..... playful. *(much/very)*
26. He came ..... slowly. *(very/much)*
27. She is ..... better today. *(much/very)*
28. He was ..... surprised to learn this. *(very/much)*
29. This news is ..... annoying. *(very/much)*
30. Mr. Nitish Kumar is the ..... best leader here. *(very/much)*
31. You are ..... hopeful. *(fairly/rather)*
32. She was ..... hopeless. *(rather/fairly)*
33. Binod is ..... clever, but his brohter is ..... stupid. *(fairly/rather)*
34. Lalan is ..... rich, but his uncle is ..... poor. *(rather/fairly)*
35. Manu did ..... well in her examination, but her brother did ..... badly. *(rather/fairly)*
36. This book is ..... heavy, but that one is ..... light. *(fairly/rather)*
37. We are ..... late, let us hurry. *(rather/fairly)*
38. The train is ..... fast. It gets there in one hour. *(rather/fairly)*
39. She has given me ..... a lot; I don't think I can eat so much. *(rather/fairly)*
40. He was bold ..... to catch the snake. *(very/enough)*
41. The food was ..... for ten men. *(enough/very)*
42. The man does not work ..... . *(very/enough)*
43. You have ..... time to do this work. *(much/enough)*
44. He was clever ..... to see through her game. *(enough/too)*
45. The weather is fair ..... for me. *(very/enough)*
46. He was kind ..... to help her. *(enough/much)*
47. He was ..... frightened to speak. *(too/enough)*
48. He is ..... rich. *(very/so/quite)*
49. He was ..... gloomy . *(so/very)*
50. I was ..... tired. *(quite/very)*
51. Aditya sings well and ..... does Aditi. *(so/very)*
52. He did that once ..... . *(before/ ago)*
53. My grandmother died five years ..... . *(ago/before)*
54. I never saw her ..... . *(before/ago)*
55. He never ..... saw such a pleasing picture. *(ago/before)*
56. He seldom or ..... tells a lie. *(ever/never)*
57. He will pay ..... for his foolishness. *(dear/dearly)*
58. The rose smells ..... . *(sweet/sweetly)*
59. He went to Patna two months ..... . *(before/ago)*
60. He is ..... noble that he cannot displease any man. *(so/such)*
61. He does not love ..... a boy. *(such/so)*
62. He is reading the Ramayana ..... . *(slow/slowly)*
63. He stayed at Darbhanga for ..... . *(sometime/sometimes)*
64. ..... my mother gets angry. *(sometimes/sometime)*
65. It is nothing ..... but pride. *(else/ever)*
66. She seldom if ..... helps the poor. *(ever/never)*
67. It was ten years ago ..... she died. *(that/since)*
68. It is five years ..... he died. *(since/that)*
69. He saw me a few days ..... . *(before/back)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



70. He came here an hour ..... . *(ago/before)*
71. I asked him ..... to sleep in the class. *(not/no)*
72. He hasn't returned ..... . *(yet/still)*
73. He is ..... in bed. *(still/yet)*
74. He ..... loves her. *(yet/still)*
75. He has done the work ..... . *(already/yet)*
76. She is not ready ..... . *(yet/already)*
77. He has ..... begun the work. *(just/justly)*
78. The new edition of this book is ..... out. *(just/justly)*
79. ..... a child could be seen there. *(no/not)*
80. There was ..... an intelligent boy to answer this question. *(not/no)*
81. Her health is ..... good. *(none too/only too)*
82. He gets up ..... . *(early/soon)*
83. Mr. Thakur is not here ..... . *(just/just now)*
84. The theft took place ..... at night. *(late/lately)*
85. Have you seen Veena ..... . *(lately/late)*
86. Sudhirjee managed everything..... . *(coolly/warmly)*
87. His beloved welcomed him ..... *(warmly/hotly)*
88. The person I like ..... is Dr. S. S. Prasad. *(most/mostly)*
89. The authors were ..... absent in Lucent Publication. *(mostly/most)*
90. He ..... looks fresh and handsome. *(always/ever)*
91. Do you ..... meet Amitabh Bachchan when you live in Mumbai ? *(ever/always)*
92. My younger brother went to Delhi in 2005 and has lived there ..... . *(since/ever since)*
93. Five weeks have passed ..... he came here. *(since/ever since)*
94. Ramanand worked ..... to pass the C.D.S Examination. *(hardly/hard)*
95. I have ..... any money. *(hard/hardly)*
96. There are ..... two girls in the class. *(barely/ nearly)*
97. She will ..... fail in the C.B.S.E because she does not study at all. *(Certainly/purely)*
98. He is ..... never at home. *(almost/nearly)*
99. ..... other girl can tempt me. *(no/not)*
100. ..... a drop of water was available in that pot. *(no/not)*

**Q. 5.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. He is too glad to meet you.
2. Peace is too kind for man.
3. It is very hot to play cricket.
4. The rabbit runs enough fast to win the race.
5. Aditya has acted enough boldly to deserve praise.
6. When his dearest wife died, he was little sorry.
7. When Aman felt little hungry and thirsty, he cried for help.
8. He is very more intelligent than Rahul.
9. Krish is much very stronger Ashish.
10. He is very the best player in his cricket team.
11. You talk very but do nothing.
12. He is very obliged to you.
13. That news was much distressing.
14. This sum is much difficult but that is much easy.
15. He is very interested in your story.
16. It gives much too pain.
17. It is too much painful.
18. My sister-in-law will be too only glad to see me.
19. He is present a teacher.
20. Rahul wants to stand first in the Board Examination and so he works hardly.
21. Mr. Mishra has gone presently.
22. Presently Raman is a sales representative.
23. As the accountant came lately, he was punished.
24. It was only five years ago since he left this job.
25. He never ago saw such a bad man.
26. He does cheerfully his duties.
27. She can only pass when she works hard.
28. We can almost get everything in the black market.
29. We must work with honestly and sincerely.
30. With most humbly and respectfully I beg to state.
31. He worked in all night.
32. He will come on next Monday.
33. He will come Sunday.
34. Mr. Thakur writes with patiently and confidently.
35. He goes to home everyday.
36. You hardly do no work.
37. He came here on yesterday.
38. He prevented me from not going there.
39. I forbade her not to enter this room.
40. My daughter writes too neatly and spells too accurately.
41. Tendulkar was so young when he started playing international cricket.
42. Two hours have elapsed since he had fallen asleep.
43. I first read these rules in 1993 and have remembered it since ever.
44. I have received no letter, neither from him nor from her.
45. I am not by no means as clever as he is.
46. The rain sudden began to fall.
47. He goes to the cinema off and on.
48. She has been learning English now and then.
49. Your brother recovered his health by and by.
50. He will, of course, come here tomorrow.
51. Did she go there ? of course she did.
52. She lost her daughter and certainly she felt much grieved.
53. Blankets have been distributed freely among the poor.
54. He returned back while I was away from home.
55. He has come here immediately.
56. He went directly to Patna.
57. She was direct at a fault.
58. He sought for his missing brother far and away.
59. How much late were you ?
60. She did not come back timely ?
61. I am comparatively better today.
62. She behaved cowardly before the headmaster.
63. Please kindly help her in her work.

**Q. 6.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. I came directly (1)/ to my residence (2)/ from the airport. (3)/ No error (4)
2. She does not hardly (1)/ know what (2)/ happened yesterday. (3)/ No error (4)
3. It was most (1)/ unfortunate that he (2)/ died at the (3)/ early age of 41. (4)/ No error (5)
4. In the last week (1)/ I told him to come (2)/ in time but he still (3)/ comes late everyday. (4)/ No error (5)
5. The real important thing (1)/ of our life is our livelihood (2)/ which discriminates us from animals. (4)/ No error (5)
6. She is too much beautiful (1)/ so most of the boys (2)/ run after her and (3)/ want to influence her. (4)/ No error (5)
7. Whenever is the matter (1)/ I shall do this work (2)/ because I have to expose (3)/ my working capacity at any cost. (4)/ No error (5)
8. The culprits of (1)/ the bomb explosion have (2)/ not yet (3)/ been discovered. (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



9. Whatever work (1)/ that which you undertake (2)/ put your best (3)/ efforts in it. (4)/ No error (5)
10. Your scooter would not (1)/ have given you so much trouble (2)/ if you had (3)/ maintained it proper. (4)/ No error (5)
11. The taxi driver who had come (1)/ to receive us at (2)/ the airport was speaking (3)/fluently french. (4)/ No error (5)
12. Whenever you speak (1)/ take care that (2)/ others are not hurt (3)/ by your words. (4)/ No error (5)
13. I (1)/ was delighted (2)/ to see him (3)/ fully recover. (4)/ No error (5)
14. The observers feel that (1)/ the stronger team has to face defeat (2)/ because the players (3)/ don't play whole hearted. (4)/ No error (5)
15. Although he is usually (1)/ rude with everyone (2)/ he behaved nice with (3)/ all of us today. (4)/ No error (5)
16. He ran so fastly (1)/ that he reached (2)/ the destination in (3)/ just two minutes. (4)/ No error (5)
17. In spite of toiling (1)/ very hardly he (2)/ realized that he had (3)/ not earned anything substantial. (4)/ No error (5)
18. We were very much (1)/ carefully in our approach (2)/ and hence we would (3)/ complete the complicated task. (4)/ No error (5)
19. Hard had he (1)/ thrown the ball (2)/ when it fell (3)/ on the ground. (4)/ No error (5)
20. We are confident (1)/ enough to earn (2)/ our livelihood by (3)/ toiling hardly. (4)/ No error (5)
21. All said and done (1)/ it is the basic values that (2)/ are most importance and (3)/ help you in the long run. (4)/ No error (5)
22. She was so (1)/ emotional stable that (2)/ she was not moved (3)/ by their decision to suspend her. (4)/ No error (5)
23. The villagers fled away their houses (1)/ when they saw (2)/ the flood water rising. (3)/ No error (4)
24. This machine looks (1)/ good but is very (2)/ badly designed (3)/ and does not work good. (4)/ No error (5)
25. Vikas has been writing (1)/that essay (2)/ for two hours (3)/ but he still has not finished. (4)/ No error (5)
26. He is sure (1)/ to succeed because (2)/ he is used (3)/ to working very hardly. (4)/ No error (5)
27. All of them (1)/ work very careful (2)/ right from the beginning (3)/till they finish. (4)/ No error (5)
28. He has been working with me (1)/ for the last ten years (2)/but I can not claim (3)/ that I have underfood him thorough. (4)/ No error (5)
29. He was looking impatient (1)/ at the unwanted visitor (2)/ who showed (3)/ no signs of leaving the room. (4)/ No error (5)
30. The old man continued living a hard life (1)/ but never he asked (2)/ for any help from neighbours. (3)/ No error (4)
31. Ajay is the most (1)/ succeeded for all (2)/ the businessmen (3)/ in this city today. (4)/ No error (5)
32. Some people get (1)/ used to change (2)/ very easily than (3)/ others do. (4)/ No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.**

1. never : Adverb of time frequency/number.
2. lately : Adverb of time.
3. beautifully : Adverb of manner.
4. often : Adverb of frequency/number.
   here : Adverb of place.
5. always : Adverb of frequency.
6. hard : Adverb of manner.
7. almost : Adverb of degree or quantity.
8. certainly : Adverb of affirmation.
9. delightfully : Adverb of manner.
10. delightfully : Adverb of degree or quantity.
11. soundly : Adverb of manner.
12. seldom : Adverb of frequency.
    here : Adverb of place.
13. out : Adverb of place.
14. very : Adverb of degree or quantity.
15. far : Adverb of place.
16. far : Adverb of degree or quantity.
17. hence : Adverb of Reason.
18. when : Interrogative Adverb of time.
19. when : Relative Adverb.
20. how : Interrogative Adverb of manner.
21. where : Relative Adverb.
22. enough : Adverb of degree or quantity.
23. early : Adverb of time.
24. hither, thither : Adverb of place.
25. everywhere : Adverb of place.
26. very : Adverb of degree or quantity.
    angrily : Adverb of manner.
27. sometimes : Adverb of frequency.
    here : Adverb of place.
28. once, twice : Adverb of frequency.
29. today : Adverb of time.
    very : Adverb of degree.
    early : Adverb of time.
30. shortly : Adverb of time.
31. rather : Adverb of degree or quantity.
    rudely : Adverb of manner.
32. quite : Adverb degree or quantity.
33. too : Adverb of degree or quantity.
34. too : Adverb of degree or quantity.
35. today : Adverb of time.
36. soon : Adverb of time.
37. so : Adverb of manner.
    fast : Adverb of manner
38. why : Interrogative Adverb of Reason.
39. in : Adverb of place.
    out side : Adverb of place.
40. formerly : Adverb of time.
41. tomorrow : Adverb of time.
42. out : Adverb of place.
    just now : Adverb of time.
43. well : Adverb of manner.
44. once : Adverb of frequency/number.
    again : Adverb of frequency/number.
45. ever : Adverb of frequency/number.
    up : Adverb of place.
46. probably : Adverb of Affirmation.
47. whence : Interrogative Adverb of place.
48. when : Interrogative Adverb of time.
49. how : interrogative Adverb of manner.
    fluently : Adverb of manner.
50. why : Interrogative Adverb of Reason.

**Q. 2.**

1. hard : Adjective
2. hard : Adverb
3. long : Adjective
4. long : Adverb
5. direct : Adjective
6. direct : Adverb

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7. straight | : Adjective | 8. straight | : Adverb |
| 9. loud | : Adjective | 10. loud | : Adverb |
| 11. fast | : Adjective | 12. fast | : Adverb |
| 13. late | : Adjective | 14. late | : Adverb |
| 15. only | : Adjective | 16. only | : Adverb |
| 17. enough | : Adjective | 18. enough | : Adverb |
| 19. high | : Adjective | 20. high | : Adverb |
| 21. best | : Adjective | 22. best | : Adverb |
| 23. ill | : Adjective | 24. ill | : Adverb |
| 25. better | : Adjective | 26. better | : Adverb |
| 27. next | : Adjective | 28. next | : Adverb |
| 29. back | : Adjective | 30. back | : Adverb |
| 31. much | : Adjective | 32. much | : Adverb |
| 33. a good deal of | : Adjective | 34. A good deal of | : Adverb |
| 35. a little | : Adjective | 36. little | : Adverb |
| 37. first | : Adjective | 38. first | : Adverb |
| 39. early | : Adjective | 40. early | : Adverb |
| 41. hard | : Adjective | 42. hard | : Adverb |

**Q. 3.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. hard | 2. hardly | 3. cleanly | 4. lately |
| 5. nearly | 6. prettily | 7. late | 8. near |
| 9. high | 10. highly | 11. clean | 12. sharp |
| 13. sharply | 14. hardly | 15. rightly | 16. just now |
| 17. justly | 18. right | 19. late | 20. sound |
| 21. soundly | 22. easy | 23. near | 24. fast |
| 25. late | | | |

**Q. 4.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. too | 2. very | 3. too | 4. very |
| 5. very | 6. very | 7. too | 8. very; too |
| 9. very | 10. much | 11. much | 12. very |
| 13. much | 14. much | 15. much | 16. very |
| 17. very | 18. very | 19. much | 20. much |
| 21. very | 22. much | 23. much | 24. very |
| 25. very | 26. very | 27. much | 28. much |
| 29. very | 30. very | 31. fairly | 32. rather |
| 33. fairly; rather | | 34. fairly ; rather | |
| 35. fairly; rather | | 36. rather; fairly | |
| 37. rather | 38. fairly | 39. rather | 40. enough |
| 41. enough | 42. enough | 43. enough | 44. enough |
| 45. enough | 46. enough | 47. too | 48. very |
| 49. very | 50. very | 51. so | 52. before |
| 53. ago | 54. before | 55. before | 56. never |
| 57. dearly | 58. sweet | 59. ago | 60. so |
| 61. such | 62. slowly | 63. sometime | |
| 64. sometimes | 65. else | 66. ever | 67. that |
| 68. since | 69. back | 70. ago | 71. not |
| 72. yet | 73. still | 74. still | 75. already |
| 76. yet | 77. just | 78. just | 79. not |
| 80. not | 81. none too | 82. early | 83. just now |
| 84. late | 85. lately | 86. cooly | 87. warmly |
| 88. most | 89. mostly | 90. always | 91. ever |
| 92. ever since | 93. since | 94. hard | 95. hardly |
| 96. barely | 97. certainly | 98. almost | 99. no |
| 100. not | | | |

**Note :** For. Question No. 57.

(i) Dear का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में 'प्रिय', 'प्यार करने लायक', 'भाषणों में प्रयुक्त सम्बोधन', 'महँगा', 'आवश्यक/बेहद', 'कीमती' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

1. what a dear little child!
   Adj.
2. My dear friends.
   Adj.
3. That silk gown is quite dear.
   Adj.
4. Amar is my dearest friend.
   Adj.
5. A dear price to pay for one's independence.
   Adj.
6. He lost his dear pen.
   Adj.

(ii) dear का प्रयोग noun के रूप में 'प्रिय व्यक्ति', के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

You are a dear to help me in my adversity.
N

(iii) Dear का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'महँगी' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Buy cheap and sell dear.
Adv.

(iv) Dearly का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'बहुत अधिक', 'वास्तव में' (earnestly) तथा 'बहुत अधिक क्षति उठाकर' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He loves his sister dearly.
Adv.

victory was dearly bought.
Adv.

**Q. 5.**

1. He is very glad to meet you.
2. Peace is very kind for man.
3. It is too hot to play cricket.
4. The rabbit runs fast enough to win the race.
5. Aditya has acted boldly enough to deserve praise.
6. When his dearest wife died, he was a little sorry.
7. When Aman felt a little hungry and thirsty, he cried for help.
8. He is much more intelligent than Rahul.
9. Krish is very much stronger than Ashish.
10. He is the very best player in his cricket team.
11. You talk much but do nothing.
12. He is much obliged to you.
13. That news was very distressing.
14. This sum is very difficult but that is very easy.
15. He is much interested in your story.
16. It gives too much pain.
17. It is much too painful.
18. My sister-in-law will be only too glad to see me.
19. He is presently a teacher.
20. Rahul wants to stand first in the Board Examination and so he works hard.
21. Mr. Mishra has gone just now.
22. At present Raman is a sales representative.
23. As the accountant came late, he was punished.
24. It was only five years ago that he left this job.
25. He never before saw such a bad man.
26. he cheerfully does his duties. or, he does his duties cheerfully.
27. She can pass only when she works hard.
28. We can get almost everything in the black market.
29. We must work honestly and sincerely. or we must work with honesty and sincerity.
30. Most humbly and respectfully I beg to state.
31. He worked all night.
32. He will come next Monday.
33. He will come on Sunday.
34. Mr. Thakur writes patiently and confidently. or Mr. Thakur writes with patience and confidence.
35. He goes home every day.

**Note : (i)** Home का प्रयोग सामान्यतः noun के रूप में होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(ii) Home के पहले Adjective (my, your, his ... etc.) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है तो इसका प्रयोग Adverb of place के रूप में होता है। इसलिए इसके पहले 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। दूसरे शब्दों में जब Home का प्रयोग Adverb of place के रूप में होता है। तो इसके पहले Adjective का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. She goes home every Sunday (✓)
2. She goes to home every Sunday (×)

36. You hardly do any work.
37. He came here yesterday.
38. he prevented me from going there.
39. I forbade her to enter this room.
40. My daughter writes very neatly and spells very accurately.
41. Tendulkar was very young when he started playing international cricket.
42. Two hours have elapsed since he fell asleep.
43. I first read these rules in 1993 and have remembered it ever since.
44. I have received no letter, either from him or from her.
45. I am by no means as clever as he is.
46. The rain suddenly began to fall.
47. He goes to the cinema now and then.

Note : Now and then का प्रयोग occasionally के अर्थ में होता है जबकि off and on का प्रयोग irregular के अर्थ में होता है।

48. She has been learning English off and on.
49. Your brother recovered his health gradually.
50. He will certainly come here tomorrow.
51. Did she go there ? certainly she did.
52. She lost her daughter and, of course, she felt much grieved.
53. Blankets have been distributed free among the poor.
54. He came back while I was away from home. or He returned while I was away from home.
55. He has just come here.
56. He went direct to Patna.
57. She was directly at a fault.
58. He sought for his missing brother far and wide/far and near.
59. How much later were you ? or How late were you ?
60. She did not come back in time.
61. I am comparatively well today.
62. She behaved in a cowardly manner before the headmaster.
63. Please help her in her work. or kindly help her in her work.

Note : Please तथा kindly का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है। हमलोगों को please तथा kindly में से किसी एक का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। अब प्रश्न उठता है कि Please और kindly में फर्क/अंतर क्या होता है।

please तथा kindly के प्रयोग में फर्क :

(i) किसी कार्यवश जब हमलोग अपने seniors or superiors से बात करते हैं तो हमलोगों को kindly का प्रयोग करना चाहिए।

(ii) किसी कार्यवश जब हमलोग अपने equals or juniors से बात करते हैं तो हमलोगों को Please का प्रयोग करना चाहिए।

Q. 6.

1. (1) Came directly की जगह went straight का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (1) Hardly के पहले not का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि hardly खुद negative meaning रखता है।
3. (4) Early का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है क्योंकि at the age of 41 का अर्थ इकतालीस वर्ष की अवस्था होता है, जो स्वतः early age को बताता है। अतः early का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है।
4. (1) in the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि last + week/month/year के पहले in the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
5. (1) Real की जगह really का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि real एक Adjective है तथा really एक Adverb है। important Adjective है जिसकी विशेषता एक Adverb बताता है न कि Adjective। जैसे—
   A really important thing (✓)
   A real important thing (×)
6. (1) Too much की जगह very का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Too much का प्रयोग 'बहुत ज्यादा' के अर्थ में noun के पहले negative sense में होता है। लेकिन very का प्रयोग 'बहुत' के अर्थ में Adjective or Adverb के पहले होता है। Given sentence के part (1) में Adjective—beautiful का प्रयोग हुआ जिसकी विशेषता Adverb ही बता सकता है जैसे—
   She is very beautiful. (✓)
   Adv. Adj.
   I run very fast. (✓)
   Adv. Adv.
7. (1) Whenever is the matter की जगह whatever the matter is का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि whenever का प्रयोग 'जब कभी' के अर्थ में Time को denote करने के लिए होता है। लेकिन what ever का प्रयोग 'जो कुछ भी' के अर्थ में thing (वस्तु) को denote करने के लिए होता है। whenever/whatever/whichever/wherever + subject + verb का प्रयोग होता है न कि whenever/whatever/whichever/wherever + verb + subject का। जैसे—
   Whenever she had a cold, she ate only fruit. (✓)
   I'll do whatever you want. (✓)
8. (3) Given sentence के Part (3) में yet का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Yet का प्रयोग अबतक (बोलने के समय तक) के अर्थ में Present perfect Tense के negative sentence में sentence के last में होता है। अतः yet का प्रयोग Given sentence के part (4) में होगा।
9. (2) That which का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि whatever का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में of any sort, degree के अर्थ में होता है और इसके बाद that, which या that which का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। what ever + noun + subject + verb का प्रयोग होता है।
10. (4) Proper की जगह Properly का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि subject + verb + object + adverb का प्रयोग होता है। Given sentence में verb maintained के बाद object—it का प्रयोग हुआ है अतः object—it के बाद Adverb– properly का प्रयोग होगा न कि adjective—proper का।
11. (4) Fluently french की जगह french fluently का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि subject + verb + object + adverb of manner का प्रयोग होता है।

ध्यान दें : (i) Subject + Adverb of manner + Verb + Object का प्रयोग होता है जैसे—

She fluently speaks English. (✓)

लेकिन *Subject + Verb + Adverb of manner + Object* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She speaks fluently English. (×)

12. (5) Given sentence correct है।
13. (4) Full recover की जगह fully recovered का प्रयोग Adverb of quantity के रूप में Adjective के पहले होता है न कि Verb के पहले। recover— verb है जबकि recovered, recover का past participle है जो Adjective का काम करता है अतः fully recovered का प्रयोग होगा न कि fully recover का।
14. (4) Hearted की जगह heartedly का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि hearted Adjective है जबकि heartedly Adverb है। Verb की विशेषता Adverb बताता है न कि Adjective। अतः Given sentence में verb– play की विशेषता Adverb– heartedly बतायेगा न कि Adjective– hearted।
15. (3) Nice की जगह nicely का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Verb की विशेषता Adverb बताता है न कि Adjective। nice–Adjective है जबकि nicely–Adverb है। अतः Verb–behaved की विशेषता Adverb–nicely बतायेगा न कि Adjective– nice। Adjective noun तथा

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



pronoun की विशेषता बताता है न कि verb की। जैसे—

It is a nice story. (✓)
It is a nicely story (×)
Shobhana behaved nicely with me. (✓)
Shobhana behaved nice with me. (×)

16. (1) Fastly की जगह fast का प्रयोग होगा। fastly एक slang है जो अंग्रेजी भाषा में प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है। fast का प्रयोग adjective तथा Adverb दोनों ही forms (रूपों) में होता है। जैसे—

Aditya is a fast runner. (✓)
Adjective N
Aditya is a fastly runner (×)
He runs fast. (✓)
V Adv.
He runs fastly. (×)

17. (2) Hardly की जगह hard का प्रयोग होगा। hardly का प्रयोग 'न के बराबर' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि hard का प्रयोग 'कठिन/उत्साह' के साथ के अर्थ में होता है। Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए hard का प्रयोग ही उचित है।

18. (2) Carefully की जगह careful का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि verb to be– is, are, am, was, were के बाद Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि adverb का। जैसे—

She is careful. (✓)
A.v. Adj.
She is carefully. (×)
A.v. Adv.

19. (1) Hard की जगह hardly का प्रयोग होगा।

20. (4) Hardly की जगह hard का प्रयोग होगा।

21. (3) Importance की जगह Important का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Adverb + Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि Adverb + Noun का। most का प्रयोग very के अर्थ में Adjective के पहले होता है न कि Noun के। अतः

Most Importance (×)
Most Important. (✓)

22. (2) Emotional की जगह emotionally का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि emotionally का प्रयोग adverb के रूप में 'भावनात्मक रूप से' के अर्थ में Adjective के पहले होता है जबकि emotional का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में 'भावुक' के अर्थ में Noun के पहले होता है। Given sentence में stable का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में हुआ है अतः emotionally का प्रयोग होगा न कि enotional का। जैसे—

I was emotionally hurt. (✓)
Adv. Adj.
I was emotional hurt. (×)
Adj. Adj.
I have emotional attachment with students. (✓)
Adj. N
I have emotionally attachment with my students. (×)
Adv. N

23. (1) Fled के बाद away का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि fled, flee का past form है। flee का अर्थ run away or hurry away from (भाग जाना) होता है fled में away का अर्थ छिपा हुआ है। अतः fled के बाद away का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

They killed their enemies and fled the country. (✓)
They killed their enemies and fled away the country. (×)

24. (4) Good की जगह well का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Verb की विशेषता Adverb बताता है न कि Adjective। Verb—work की विशेषता well बतायेगा न कि good.। चूँकि well का प्रयोग Adjective/Adverb के रूप में होता है तथा good का प्रयोग Adjective/noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is a good man. (✓)
Adj. N
He is a well man. (×)
Adv. N
One should work for the good of the poor. (✓)
N
One should work for the well of the poor. (×)
Adv.
He is quite well. (✓)
Adv Adj.
He is quite good. (×)
Adv. Adj.
She speaks well. (✓)
V. Adv
She speaks good (×)
V. Adj.

25. (4) He still has not finished की जगह he has not finished yet का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि still का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Affirmative sentence में होता है जबकि yet का प्रयोग negative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

My mother-in-law is still on bed.—Affirmative (✓)
My mother-in-law is yet on bed. (×)
She has not come yet. (✓)
She has not come still. (×)

26. (4) Hardly की जगह hard का प्रयोग होगा।

27. (2) Careful की जगह carefully का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Verb की विशेषता Adverb बताता है न कि Adjective। Given sentence में Verb-work की विशेषता Adverb–carefully बतायेगा न कि Adjective–careful।

28. (4) Thorough की जगह thoroughly का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि verb की विशेषता Adverb बताता है न कि Adjective। Given sentence में Verb–understood की विशेषता Adverb–thoroughly बतायेगा न कि Adjective–thorough

29. (1) Impatient की जगह Impatiently का प्रयोग होगा। जब look at का प्रयोग 'देखना' के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके साथ Adverb का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adjective का। Given sentence में look at का प्रयोग देखना के अर्थ में हुआ है इसलिए Adverb–Impatiently का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adjective–Impatient का। जैसे—She looks Suspiciouly at her husband का अर्थ वह अपने पति को संदेह की दृष्टि से देखती है।

ध्यान दें : जब look का प्रयोग 'दिखना' के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके बाद Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि Adverb का। जैसे—
You look impatient. का अर्थ तुम अधीर दिखते हो।

30. (2) but never he asked की जगह but he never asked का प्रयोग होगा। never, always, seldom, hardly, rarely, scarcely etc का प्रयोग main verb के पहले तथा verb to be (Auxiliary verbs) is, are, am, was, were के बाद होता है। जैसे—

She never comes late. (✓)
Adv. M.V
You are never late. (✓)
A.V. Adv.

31. (2) Succeeded की जगह successful का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि the + most + Adjective का प्रयोग होता है इसलिए the most successful का प्रयोग होगा। succeeded, succeed का $V^3$ form है। तथा successful Adjective है।

32. (3) Very की जगह more का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence comparative degree में है।

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 18 Preposition

Pre + position = Preposition

pre का अर्थ पहले (before) होता है, जबकि position का अर्थ स्थान (place) होता है। अतः preposition एक ऐसा word है, जो noun or pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर noun or pronoun का संबंध sentence के अन्य शब्दों से दिखलाता है।

*A preposition is a word used before a noun or pronoun to show its relation with the other words of the sentence.* जैसे—

1. The book is *on* the table.
2. The pen is *in* the inkpot
3. The cat is *under* the table.
4. The book is *between* the inkpot and the chair.
5. The boy is *behind* the hut.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में on, in, under, between, behind का प्रयोग क्रमशः the table, the inkpot, the table, the inkpot, the hut—nouns के पहले प्रयुक्त हुआ जो वाक्य के अन्य शब्दों—the book, the pen, the cat, the book, the boy से संबंध बताता है। अतः on, in, under, between, behind prepositions हैं।

## Correct Use of Prepositions

### (A) Use of 'At'

**Rule (1) :** At का प्रयोग छोटे स्थानों के नाम (name of smaller places) के पहले 'में' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

My brother lives *at* Jajuar. (गाँव)
I live *at* Musallahpur hat. (मुहल्ला)
My sister-in-law lives *at* Darbhanga. (शहर)

**Rule (2) :** At का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए शब्दों के बाद 'लक्ष्य' के अर्थ को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| shout *at* | grumble *at* | shoot *at* | laugh *at* | mock *at* | bite *at* |
| look *at* | kick *at* | aim *at* | smile *at* | growl *at* | |

**Rule (3) :** At का प्रयोग समय को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए 'पर'/में के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He will reach *at* 5 a.m. He came *at* 6 O' clock

**Rule (4) :** At का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *At* home | *At* the station | *At* a party | *At* page 50 |
| *At* school | *At* the airport | *At* a match | *At* the bottom |
| *At* college | *At* the theatre | *At* a lecture | *At* a conference |
| *At* university | *At* the bus stop | *At* a concert | |
| *At* the bridge | *At* the platform | *At* the top | |

**Rule (5) :** 'At' का प्रयोग समय सूचक शब्दों के पहले होता है।

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *At* night | *At* noon | *At* dawn | *At* dusk |
| *At* midnight | *At* afternoon | *At* daybreak | *At* twilight |

**Rule (6) :** At का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| *At* this moment | *At* bed time |
| *At* this juncture | *At* this hour |
| *At* Easter | *At* Christmas |

**Rule (7) :** At का प्रयोग कीमत/दर/चाल की दर को अभिव्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Milk sells *at* Rs. 22/- a litre. (दर—rate)
He got that book *at* Rs. 50. (कीमत—price)
The motorcycle is running at eighty kilometres an hour. (चाल की दर—speed)

**Rule (8) :** At का प्रयोग temporary action (अस्थायी कार्य) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He is *at* work. अर्थ—He is working now.
She is at play. अर्थ—She is playing now.

**Rule (9) :** At का प्रयोग उम्र (age) तथा चरण (stage) को अभिव्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

My grandfather died *at* the age of sixty.
I left college *at* twenty five.

### (B) Use of 'In'

**Rule (1) :** In का प्रयोग बड़े स्थानों (bigger places) जैसे—देश, शहर, महादेश, राज्य, महानगर आदि के नामों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| We live in India. | (देश) |
| India is in Asia. | (महादेश) |
| She lived in Uttar Pradesh | (राज्य) |
| Mr. Thakur lives in Patna | (शहर) |
| My father-in-law lives in Mumbai. | (महानगर) |

**Rule (2) :** In का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित phrases में होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| In the night. | In the evening. |
| In the morning. | In the afternoon. |

ध्यान दें : In the night or at night के प्रयोग में फर्क होता है।

**Note :** In the night का प्रयोग 'किसी निश्चित रात' के अर्थ में होता है, जबकि at night का प्रयोग 'किसी रात' के अर्थ में होता है।

**Rule (3) :** In का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित शब्दों के पहले 'में या के अंदर' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *In* the world | *In* a newspaper | *In* a queue | *In* a city |
| *In* the sky | *In* a street | *In* a village | *In* the house |
| *In* a letter | *In* the room | *In* hospital. | *In* the bus |
| *In* a town | *In* the bag | *In* the rain | |
| *In* prison | *In* church | | |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

We live *in* the world.
He is *in* the room.
Twenty passengers were sitting in the bus.

**Rule (4) :** In का प्रयोग permanent action (स्थायी कार्य) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

His brother is *in* the Army. He is *in* the Navy.
I am *in* the education. He is *in* the politics.

**Rule (5) :** In का प्रयोग period of time expressing words (अवधि/समय सूचक शब्दों) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *In* a week | *In* January | महीनों के नाम |
| *In* this week | *In* February | |
| *In* this month | | |
| *In* this season | *In* summer | ऋतुओं के नाम |
| *In* spring | *In* winter | |
| *In* autumn. | | |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



*In* 1999 — *In* the year of 1942
*In* 2001 — *In* the year of 1993 → सालों का नाम
*In* 1947 — *In* this century

*In* the eighteenth century
*In* the sixteenth century → शताब्दियों के नाम

*In* the Victorian age
*In* the Elizabethan age → उस का नाम

**Rule (6) :** In का प्रयोग *A/An + car /taxi/jeep* के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He goes to college *in* a car. (✓)
She went to school *in* a jeep. (✓)
Her lover goes to the office *in* a taxi. (✓)
He goes to college by a car. (×)
She went to school *by* a jeep (×)
Her lover goes to the office by a taxi. (×)

**Rule (7) :** In का प्रयोग possessive adjectives + car/taxi/jeep के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He is sitting *in* his car.
She goes to school *in* her jeep.
You are going to college *in* your taxi.

**(C) Use of 'Into'**

**Rule (1) :** Into का प्रयोग motion inside anything—*(किसी चीज के भीतर की ओर गति)* के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

The frog fell *into* the well.
He jumped *into* the river.
The robbers broke *into* my house.

**Rule (2) :** Into का प्रयोग एक माध्यम से दूसरे माध्यम में या एक अवस्था से दूसरे अवस्था में परिवर्तन के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Translate *into* English.
Milk turns *into* curd.
Water turns *into* ice.

**Rule (3) :** Into का प्रयोग 'का/के/की के' अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

The police inspector enquired *into* the case.
*पुलिस इन्सपेक्टर ने मुकदमे की जाँच की।*
That old man has insight *into* man's character.
*बूढ़े व्यक्ति को मनुष्य के चरित्र का ज्ञान है।*

**Rule (4) :** Into का प्रयोग verbs के बाद होने पर उसका अर्थ परिवर्तित हो जाता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Break into | = *जबरदस्ती प्रवेश करना* | Do into | = *अनुवाद करना* |
| Eat into | = *नष्ट करना* | Let into | = *अनुमति देना* |
| Look into | = *जाँच करना* | See into | = *विचार करना* |
| Turn into | = *अनुवाद करना, बदलना* | | |

**(D) Use of 'On'**

**Rule (1) :** On का प्रयोग 'स्थान स्पर्श' के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए 'पर' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There are two books *on* the table.
He was carrying a suitcase *on* his head.
The headmaster is sitting *on* a wheel chair.

**Rule (2) :** On का प्रयोग 'को'/'पर' के अर्थ में time expressing words (समय को सूचित करने शब्दों) के पहले होता है। निश्चितता के भाव का बोध होने पर ऐसा प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| *On* Monday | *On* Tuesday |
| *On* Monday evening | *On* the morning of the event |
| *On* the same night | *On* the evening of the 1st January |

अग्रलिखित समय सूचक शब्दों के पहले in का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

*In* Monday (×)
*In* Tuesday (×)
*In* Monday evening (×)
*In* the following evening (×)
*In* the morning of the event (×)
*In* the same night (×)
*In* the evening of the 1st January. (×)

**Rule (3) :** On का प्रयोग *A/An/the + bus/train/aeroplane/ship* के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was *on* a bus/a train/a plane/a ship.

**Rule (4) :** On का प्रयोग *A/An + cycle/scooter/motorcycle* के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He was *on* a cycle/a scooter/a motorcycle.

**Rule (5) :** On का प्रयोग *Possessive Adjectives + cycle/scooter/motorcycle* के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He goes to school *on* his cycle/scooter/motorcycle.

**Rule (6) :** On का प्रयोग foot, horse's back, a horse, a camel, a camel's back, an elephant, elephant's back, a buffalo, buffalo's back के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He walks *on* foot. He was riding *on* a horse.

**Rule (7) :** On का प्रयोग 'की ओर' के अर्थ में Direction (दिशा) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The robber drew a dagger *on* him.

**Rule (8) :** On का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *on* television | *on* a diet | *on* demand |
| *on* a cold day | *on* holiday | *on* 15th March |
| *on* the radio | *on* business | *on* duty |
| *on* the phone | *on* a tour | *on* loan |
| *on* the telephone | *on* a trip | *on* page 50 |
| *on* strike | *on* the wall | *on* loan |
| *on* leave | *on* a journey | *on* guard |
| *on* fire | *on* the committee | *on* the whole sale |

**Rule (9) :** On का प्रयोग 'के विषय'/संबंध में के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

This is a book *on* English Grammar.
This book is *on* Phulan Devi.

**Rule (10) :** On का प्रयोग 'आधिकारिक रूप से सदस्य' होने के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He is *on* the staff of the B.P.S.C.
She is *on* the committee.

**Rule (11) :** On का प्रयोग कुछ phrases में भी होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *on* the first floor | *on* the second floor | *on* the left |
| *on* the ground floor | *on* the front of a letter | *on* a list |
| *on* the back of paper | *on* the right | *on* a farm |

**(E) Use of 'Between'**

**Rule (1) :** Between का शाब्दिक अर्थ 'के बीच में' होता है। इसका प्रयोग two persons or things (दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं) के लिए होता है। जैसे—

1. She was sitting between her husband and her father. (✓)
2. Divide these mangoes between you and me. (✓)
3. She was sitting between her husband to her father. (×)
4. Divide these mangoes between you and I. (×)

ध्यान दें : (i) Between के बाद 'and' का प्रयोग होता है न कि to का।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(ii) Between के बाद हमेशा objective case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है न कि nominative case के pronoun का। यही कारण है कि उपरोक्त sentences (3) और (4) गलत हैं।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. Contact us *between* 7 a. m. and 7 p. m. (√)
2. Contact us between 7 a. m. to 7 p. m. (×)
3. There is friendship *between* him and her. (√)
4. There is friendship between he and she. (×)

**Note :** contact us from 7 a. m. to 7 p. m. का प्रयोग भी होता है।

**Rule (2) :** Between के बाद each, every का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

That batsman blew a whistle between each ball. (×)
That batsman blew a whistle *between* the balls. (√)

**Note :** Between के बाद *each/every + S. N. + and + the next* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is good relation *between* each boy and the next. (√)
There is friendship *between* every girl and the next. (√)

**Rule (3) :** Between का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के बीच पारस्परिक संबंध (reciprocal relationship) बताने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

There is co-operation *between* these three families. (√)
There is co-operation among these three families. (×)
There is alliance *between* these six countries. (√)
There is alliance among these six countries. (×)

ध्यान दें—Between का प्रयोग differences के बाद होता है, Among का नहीं। जैसे—

What are the differences *between* oxen and bulls ? (√)
What are the differences among oxen and bulls ? (×)

**(F) Use of 'Among'**

**Rule (1) :** Among का शाब्दिक अर्थ 'के बीच में' होता है। इसका प्रयोग more than two persons or things (दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं) के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Divide these mangoes *among* the children. (√)
Divide these mangoes between the children. (×)

**Note : Among और Amongst के प्रयोग में फर्क—**

(i) Among और Amongst का प्रयोग consonant starting plural noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

*Among* the boys. (√)
Amongst the boys. (√)

(ii) जबकि vowel starting words के पहले amongst का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Among का। जैसे—

*Amongst* our brothers. (√)
Among our brothers. (×)
*Amongst* us. (√)
Among us. (×)

**(G) Use of 'Beside' and 'Besides'**

Beside का प्रयोग 'बगल में' 'समीप या बाहर' (by the side of/out side) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Go and sit beside your father.
The child was sitting beside the mother.

जबकि Besides का प्रयोग 'अतिरिक्त'/'के अलावा' (in addition to) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

*Besides* Sweta, all of the girls were present in the class.
*Besides* the Ramayana, I have the Gita.
*Besides* Urdu, I know English and Hindi.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. Go and sit besides your father. (×)
2. The child was sitting besides the mother. (×)
3. Beside Sweta, all of the girls were present in the class. (×)
4. Beside the Ramayana, I have the Gita. (×)
5. Beside Urdu, I know English and Hindi. (×)

**Note :** Besides तथा except का प्रयोग 'के अतिरिक्त'/'के अलावे' के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है।

Besides plus (+ — जोड़) or addition का अर्थ रखता है, जबकि except minus (– — घटाव) or subtraction का अर्थ रखता है। यही Besides तथा except में फर्क होता है। जैसे—

Besides a book, you have bought a note book.

अर्थ—आपने पुस्तक के अलावे नोटबुक खरीदा है। अर्थात् आपने दो चीजें खरीदी हैं—एक पुस्तक और एक नोटबुक।

Except Mohan, I like all the boys.

*अर्थ—मोहन को छोड़कर, मैं सभी लड़कों को पसंद करता हूँ।*

**(H) Use of 'Above'**

**Rule (1) :** Above का प्रयोग 'ऊपर' (higher than/over) के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है। जैसे—

The kites rose *above* the cloud.
The aeroplane is flying *above* the cloud.

**Rule (2) :** Above का प्रयोग more than in number or quantity (संख्या या मात्रा में अधिक) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There are above fifty students in the class.
*वर्ग में पचास से अधिक छात्र हैं।* —संख्या
Her expenses are above her means.
*उसका खर्च उसके आमदनी से अधिक है।* —मात्रा

**Rule (3) :** Above का प्रयोग 'से परे' (superior to) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Sudhir jee is a publisher above suspicion.

**Rule (4) :** Above का प्रयोग level बताने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Mount Everest is 8848 metres *above* sea level.

**(I) Use of 'Over'**

**Rule (1) :** Over का प्रयोग 'के ऊपर' (स्पर्श करते हुए) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Please spread the cloth *over* the table.

**Rule (2) :** Over का प्रयोग 'के ऊपर' (स्पर्श नहीं करता हुआ) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The clouds are *over* our heads.
The plane is flying *over* the town.

**Rule (3) :** Over का प्रयोग all over *(सर्वत्र/सभी जगह)* के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

1. English is spoken all *over* the world.
   यहाँ all over का अर्थ every part of the world है।
2. He has friends all *over* the country.
   यहाँ all over का अर्थ every part of the country है।

**Rule (4) :** Over का प्रयोग more than (से अधिक) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Ganguly is *over* forty.
*मि० गांगुली की उम्र 40 वर्ष से अधिक है।*
His income is not *over* his expenses.
*उसकी आमदनी उसके खर्च से अधिक नहीं है।*

**Rule (5) :** Over का प्रयोग to be over (समाप्त होने) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The college is *over* at 4 p.m.
*कॉलेज चार बजे शाम में समाप्त होता है।*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (6) :** Over का प्रयोग 'एक छोर से दूसरे छोर' या 'आर-पार' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There is a bridge *over* the river.

**Note :** (i) Across का प्रयोग भी इस अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There is a bridge across the river.

(ii) Across का प्रयोग 'के उस पार' के अर्थ में भी होता है। जैसे—

My uncle lived just across Ashok Rajpath.

*मेरे चाचाजी अशोक राजपथ के ठीक उस पार रहते थे।*

**Rule (7) :** Over का प्रयोग In excess (अत्यधिक) के अर्थ में भी होता है। अत्यधिक का अर्थ यहाँ आवश्यकता से अधिक है। जैसे—

He overworks in the factory.

*वह कारखाने में अत्यधिक अर्थात शक्ति से ज्यादा काम करता है।*

My father overtook me.

*मेरे पिताजी एकाएक पीछे से मेरे पास आ पहुँचे।*

**Note :** कुछ ऐसे verbs हैं, जिनके आगे over जुड़कर उनके अर्थ में परिवर्तन कर देता है। जैसे—

| Over + verb | Meaning |
|---|---|
| overeat | आवश्यकता से अधिक खाना |
| over wise | आवश्यकता से अधिक चतुर |
| overdraw | जमा की गई राशि से अधिक निकालना |
| overcrowd | आवश्यकता से अधिक भीड़ लगाना |

**(J) Use of 'Upon'**

Upon का प्रयोग things in motion *(वस्तुएँ जो गति में हों)* के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The dog sprang *upon* the table.

The lion sprang *upon* the prey.

**(K) Use of 'Below'**

**Rule (1) :** Below का प्रयोग lower than (से नीचे) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

My father is *below* seventy. (✓)

My father is under seventy. (×)

**Rule (2) :** Below का प्रयोग less than (से कम) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

His income is *below* Rs. 5000/- a month. (✓)

His income is under Rs. 5000/- a month. (×)

**Rule (3) :** Below का प्रयोग inferior to (से निम्न/नीचे) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

This work is *below* my dignity. (✓)

This work is under my dignity. (×)

**(L) Use of 'Under'**

**Rule (1) :** Under का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'नीचे' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He was sitting *under* the tree.

The cat is sitting *under* the chair.

**Rule (2) :** Under का प्रयोग 'अधीन' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

A writer is *under* the publisher.

Administration is *under* the government.

**Rule (3) :** Under का प्रयोग less than (से कम) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

She was *under* age.

*उसकी उम्र अवश्यकता से कम थी।*

I have *under* rupees two hundred.

*मेरे पास दो सौ रुपये से कम है।*

**Rule (4) :** Under का प्रयोग according to (के अनुसार) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The police arrested the terrorist *under* the warrant of the court.

I inherited the property *under* my mother's will.

**Rule (5) :** Under का प्रयोग in the course of; during the time of (अवस्था में) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He has written this book under suspicion.

*उसने इस पुस्तक को शंका की अवस्था में लिखा है।*

**(M) Use of 'Beneath'**

Beneath का प्रयोग 'नीचे' के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है। जैसे—

He was sitting beneath the tree.

**Note :** Under तथा beneath का प्रयोग बिना किसी अंतर का होता है।

**(N) Use of 'Behind'**

**Rule (1) :** Behind का प्रयोग At the back of (के पीछे) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

My daughter was hiding *behind* the door.

*मेरी पुत्री दरवाजे के पीछे छिपी हुई थी।*

He has left nothing *behind* him.

*वह अपने पीछे कुछ नहीं छोड़ गया है।*

**(O) Use of 'By'**

**Rule (1) :** By का प्रयोग 'के किनारे'/'के समीप' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में By तथा Beside का प्रयोग एक-दूसरे के बदले होता है। जैसे—

The child came and sat *by* her. (✓)

The child came and sat *beside* her. (✓)

Her village is *by* the river. (✓)

Her village is *beside* the river. (✓)

**Rule (2) :** By का प्रयोग 'निर्दिष्ट समय से पहले' या 'तक' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The Rajadhani Express will arrive here *by* 11 O'clock.

*By* the end of this month, she will have returned from Mumbai.

He will have informed the police of the accident *by* tomorrow morning.

**Rule (3) :** By का प्रयोग 'से'/'द्वारा' के अर्थ में यातायात के साधन के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *By* cycle | *By* aeroplane | *By* boat | *By* taxi |
| *By* scooter | *By* motorcycle | *By* plane | *By* car |
| *By* train | *By* helicopter | *By* ship | *By* jeep |
| *By* steamer | | | |

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He goes to college *by* train. (✓)

He goes to college in/with train. (×)

He comes here *by* scooter. (✓)

He comes here on scooter. (×)

**Rule (4) :** By का प्रयोग during (के दौरान/दरम्यान) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He travelled *by* night. (✓)

*वह रात के दरम्यान यात्रा किया।*

The sun shines *by* day. (✓)

*सूर्य दिन के दौरान चमकता है।*

He travelled before night. (×)

The sun shines before day. (×)

**Rule (5) :** By का प्रयोग Passive voice में 'के द्वारा' के अर्थ में Passive object के पहले होता है। जैसे—

The boy was beaten *by* the teacher. (✓)

The boy was beaten with the teacher. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (6) :** By का प्रयोग rate (दर), weight (वजन) measurement (माप) expressing words (अभिव्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों) के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Apples are sold *by* the kilo. (√)
Apples are sold with the kilo. (×)
This room is 10 ft. *by* 8 ft. (√)
This room is 10 ft. with 8 ft. (×)
Silver is sold *by* the gram. (√)
Silver is sold with the gram. (×)

**Rule (7) :** By का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य के पहले होता है, जिससे परिणाम प्राप्त होता है। जैसे—

Veena got a prize *by* hard work. (√)
Veena got a prize with hard work. (×)

**Rule (8) :** By का प्रयोग विधि/तरीका (method) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *By* order | *By* cheque | *By* bankdraft |
| *By* hand | *By* post | *By* mail |
| *By* money | *By* messenger | |

**Rule (9) :** By का प्रयोग 'मार्ग'/'रास्ते से' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *By* air | *वायु मार्ग से* | *By* rail | *रेल मार्ग से* |
| *By* sea | *समुद्री मार्ग से* | *By* road | *सड़क मार्ग से* |
| *By* underground | *भूमिगत मार्ग से* | | |

**Rule (10) :** by का प्रयोग phrases में भी होता है। जैसे—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *by* chance | *संयोग से* | *by* heart | *कंठस्थ* |
| *by* force | *जबर्दस्ती* | *by* God | *ईश्वर की शपथ* |
| *by* two years | *दो वर्षों से* | *by* myself | *अकेला* |
| *by* the neck | *गला से* | *by* mistake | *गलती से* |

**(P) Use of 'of'**

**Rule (1) :** 'of' का प्रयोग 'से' के अर्थ में कारण के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| She died of fever | *वह बुखार से मर गयी।* |
| He died of malaria | *वह मलेरिया से मर गया।* |
| His wife is tired of work. | *उसकी पत्नी काम से ऊब गई है।* |
| I am fond of music. | *मुझे संगीत से शौक है।* |

**Note :** (i) यदि किसी व्यक्ति की मृत्यु illness/disease *(बीमारी)*, hunger/starvation *(भूख,)* thirst *(प्यास)*, grief *(दुःख)*, shame *(शर्म)* के कारण होती है, तो die के बाद 'of' preposition का प्रयोग होता है, न कि from, with, by का। जैसे—

He died *of* grief. (√)
He died from grief. (×)
He died with grief. (×)
He died by grief. (×)

(ii) यदि किसी व्यक्ति की मृत्यु wound *(घाव)*, over eating, over drinking, food poisoning के कारण होती है, तो die के बाद from preposition का प्रयोग होता है, न कि of, with, by, for का। जैसे—

He died *from* a wound. (√)
He died of a wound. (×)
He died for a wound. (×)
He died with a wound (×)
He died by a wound (×)

(iii) यदि किसी व्यक्ति की मृत्यु आत्महत्या (one's own hand or suicide) व हिंसा (violence) के कारण होती है, तो die के बाद by preposition का प्रयोग होता है, न कि of, with, from, for का। जैसे—

He died *by* violence. (√)
He died of violence. (×)
He died for violence. (×)
He died with violence. (×)
He died from violence. (×)

(iv) यदि किसी व्यक्ति की मृत्यु लापरवाही (negligent) के कारण होती है, तो die के बाद through preposition का प्रयोग होता है, न कि other prepositions का। जैसे—

His grandfather died *through* neglect. (√)
His grandfather died from neglect. (×)
His grandfather died of neglect. (×)
His grandfather died by neglect. (×)
His grandfather died for neglect. (×)

(v) यदि कोई व्यक्ति अपने देश व अपने विश्वास के लिए मर जाता है, तो die के बाद for preposition का प्रयोग होता है, न कि from, of, with, by, through का। जैसे—

He died *for* his country. (√)
He died of his country. (×)
She died *for* her belief. (√)
She died from her belief. (×)

(vi) यदि किसी व्यक्ति की मृत्यु युद्ध के मैदान में/बिस्तर पर होती है, तो die के बाद in preposition का प्रयोग होता है, न कि other prepositions का। जैसे—

He died *in* battle. (√) He died *in* his bed. (√)
*उसकी मृत्यु युद्ध के मैदान में हुई।* *उसकी मृत्यु बिस्तर पर हुई।*
He died into battle. (×) He died into his bed. (×)

ध्यान दें : (i) Die in harness का प्रयोग 'अंतिम समय तक काम करते-करते मरना' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Ram Lakhanbabu died *in* harness.

(ii) Die का प्रयोग 'के साथ समाप्त होना' या 'विलुप्त होना' के अर्थ में होने पर, इसके बाद with preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Die *with* somebody

इन वाक्यों को देखें :
जैसे—

She died *with* her lover. (√)
She died of her lover. (×)

(iii) Cause के बाद of तथा Reason के बाद for का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

What is the cause *of* murder. ? (√)
What is the cause for murder ? (×)
What is the reason *for* the absence of the teacher ? (√)
What is the reason of the absence of the teacher ? (×)

**Rule (2) :** of का प्रयोग 'का', 'के', 'की' के अर्थ में संबंध या अधिकार के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Mr. A.K. Thakur is the son *of* Shree Maneshwar Thakur.
This is the publication *of* Sudhirjee.

**Rule (3) :** Of का प्रयोग 'में' के अर्थ में होता है, न कि in, into का। जैसे—

Binay is confident *of* his success. (√)
*विनय को अपनी सफलता में विश्वास है।*
Binay is confident in/into his success. (×)
Satyendarjee is convinced *of* this fact. (√)
*सत्येन्दरजी को इस तथ्य में विश्वास है।*
Satyendarjee is convinced in/into this fact. (×)
My brother-in-law is weak *of* understanding. (√)
*मेरा साला समझदारी में कमजोर है।*
My brother-in-law is weak in/into understanding. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (4)** : Of का प्रयोग 'में से' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Mr. Mishra is one *of* my friends.

*मि० मिश्रा मेरे मित्रों में से एक मित्र हैं।*

I have eaten one *of* those apples.

*मैंने उन सेबों में एक सेब खाया है।*

**Rule (5)** : Of का प्रयोग 'के बारे में'/'के विषय में' के संबंध में के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He has heard *of* that accident.

*उसने उस दुर्घटना के बारे में सुना है।*

Someone has informed the police *of* the robbery.

*किसी ने डकैती के विषय में/के संबंध में पुलिस को सूचित कर दिया है।*

Do you know *of* me ?

*क्या तुम मेरे बारे में जानते हो ?*

**Rule (6)** : 'Of' का प्रयोग origin / sources (स्रोत) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

Pandit Nehru came *of* a rich family.

He comes *of* a poor family.

This house is made *of* bricks.

This table is made *of* wood.

**Rule (7)** : 'Of' का प्रयोग quality *(गुण)*, possession *(अधिकार)*, apposition, space in time or point of reference के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Our publisher is a man *of* principle. —*Quality*

I lived in the house *of* Anand. —*Possession*

Vikas, the son *of* Mr. Chandra Kishore Thakur, got married. —*Apposition*

The doctor came back within an hour *of* the appointed time. —*Sp in time*

Guriya is blind *of* one eye. —*Poi t reference*

**Rule (8)** : Of का प्रयोग कुछ शब्दों के बाद या phrases में होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| full *of* | think *of* |
| sure *of* | cured *of* |
| short *of* money | ashamed *of* |
| aware *of* | hard *of* heart |
| proud *of* | get rid *of* |
| the first *of* August | A dress *of* cotton |
| take care *of* | A mile *of* the town. |
| accused *of* crime | worth *of* |

**(Q) Use of 'Off'**

**Rule (1)** : Off का प्रयोग 'at a distance from', far from के अर्थ में separation (बिलगाव) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

There was a village a little way *off* the sea coast.

*समुद्र तट से कुछ दूर पर एक गाँव था।*

That oldman fell *off* the ladder.

*वह बूढ़ा व्यक्ति सीढ़ी से छिटककर दूर गिर पड़ा।*

He put *off* his coat.

*उसने अपना कोट उतारा।*

**(R) Use of 'till' and 'until'**

Till / until का प्रयोग 'तक' के अर्थ में ending time के पहले होता है। जबकि starting time के पहले from का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He works in the factory from 9 a.m. *till* 3 p.m.

He works in the factory from 9 a.m. *until* 3 p.m.

ध्यान दें : 'To' का प्रयोग भी ending time के पहले 'तक' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He works in the factory from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m.

इन वाक्यों को देखें।

1. My father-in-law will stay here *till* next Friday. (✓)
2. My father-in-law will stay here *until* next Friday. (✓)
3. My father-in-law will stay here to next Friday. (×)

उपरोक्त वाक्य संख्या (3) से स्पष्ट होता है कि to का प्रयोग अकेले नहीं होता है।

**(S) Use of 'In front of'**

'In front of' का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'के सामने' के अर्थ में होता है। यह सदा वस्तु के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

There is a tree *in front of* my house. (✓)

*मेरे घर के सामने एक पेड़ है।*

There was a beautiful garden *in front of* my school. (✓)

*मेरे विद्यालय के सामने एक सुन्दर उद्यान था।*

There is a tree before my house. (×)

There was a beautiful garden before my school. (×)

**Note** : In front of तथा Before का प्रयोग 'के सामने' के अर्थ में इस प्रकार भी होता है। जैसे—

Manoj is standing *in front of* me in the queue. (✓)

*मनोज मेरे सामने कतार/पंक्ति में खड़ा है।*

Manoj is standing before me in the queue. (✓)

**(T) Use of 'Around' and 'Round'**

**Rule (1)** : Around का प्रयोग 'बाहर से चारों ओर', 'यहाँ-वहाँ', 'बहुत स्थानों में' तथा 'के विभिन्न भागों में' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

They were sitting *around* the garden.

*वे लोग उद्यान के विभिन्न भागों में बैठे हुए थे।*

Stop walking *around* and start some business.

*यहाँ-वहाँ टहलना बंद करो और कोई व्यापार प्रारंभ करो।*

**Rule (2)** : जबकि round का प्रयोग 'चारों ओर' के अर्थ में वृत्ताकार पथ तथा चक्राकार पथ के लिए होता है। जैसे—

We were sitting *round* the dinning table.

*हमलोग डाइनिंग टेबुल के चारों ओर बैठे हुए थे।*

The earth moves round the sun.

*पृथ्वी सूर्य के चारों ओर घूमती है।*

**Rule (3)** : Around का प्रयोग 'लगभग' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There were *around* fifty students in the class.

*वर्ग में लगभग पचास छात्र थे।*

**(U) Use of 'Amid' and 'Amidst'**

**Rule (1)** : Amid / Amidst का प्रयोग 'के बीच में' (in the middle of) के अर्थ में place को सूचित करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

A beautiful girl was sitting *amid / amidst* the young.

*एक सुन्दर लड़की जवान व्यक्तियों के बीच में बैठी हुई थी।*

There was a small cottage *amid / amidst* the building.

*मकानों के बीच में एक छोटी झोपड़ी थी।*

**Rule (2)** : Uncountable nouns के पहले 'के बीच में' के अर्थ में Amid / Amidst का प्रयोग होता है, न कि Among / Amongst का। जैसे—

Honesty is useless *amid / amidst* dishonesty.

*ईमानदारी बेइमानी के बीच में व्यर्थ/बेकार होती है।*

**(V) Use of 'Up' and Down'**

**Rule (1)** : Up का प्रयोग 'ऊपर को', 'ऊँचा', 'चरम सीमा पर', 'ऊपर' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He got *up* to ask a question. (up—ऊपर को)

Prices of articles are still going *up*. (up—ऊँचा)

Stop writing, the time is *up* (up—चरम सीमा पर)

Climb *up* a tree.

Walk *up* the stairs.

Row *up* a river.

Walk *up* the road.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



ध्यान दें :

| S. No | Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Up and down | to and fro | इधर-उधर |
| 2. | Ups and downs | changes of fortune | भाग्य का उत्थान-पतन |
| 3. | On the up | frank, honest, sincere | ईमानदार, सच्चा |
| 4. | Up with | to raise | उठाना, उभाड़ना |

**Rule (2) :** Down का प्रयोग 'नीचे', 'उतराव', 'गिरावट' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The sun has gone *down*.
Jump *down* carefully.
Sit *down* please.
He was walking *down* the street.

ध्यान दें :

| S. No | Phrasce | English-Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Bent down | inclined | झुका हुआ |
| 2. | Down to the ground | completely | पूर्ण रूप से |
| 3. | Down to the present day | up to this day | आज तक |
| 4. | To get down | to descend | उतरना |
| 5. | To hiss down | to silence | चुप करना |

**(W) Use of 'Through'**

**Rule (1) :** Through का प्रयोग by means of *(के माध्यम से)* के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He knew it *through* a newspaper.
*वह समाचार पत्र के माध्यम से इसे जाना।*

**Rule (2) :** Through का प्रयोग from one side to the other *(इस पार से उस पार तक/आर-पार)* के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The beggar went *through* the market.
Can you see *through* glass ?

**Rule (3) :** Through का प्रयोग from beginning to the end *(शुरू से आखिर तक)* के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

People got bored and could not sit *through* the night.

**Note :** (i) Get through = परीक्षा में उत्तीर्ण होना जैसे—

They got *through* the examination.
*वे लोग परीक्षा में उत्तीर्ण हुए।*

(ii) Go through = अनुभव करना जैसे—

He went *through* many difficulties.

(iii) All *through* the year = *सालभर*

(iv) *Through* life = *जीवन भर*

**Rule (4) :** जबकि throughout का प्रयोग in every part of *(प्रत्येक स्थान पर/हर जगह)* के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He was with me *throughout* the day

**(X) Use of 'Beyond'**

**Rule (1) :** Beyond का प्रयोग the farther side of *(उस तरफ/उससे आगे)* के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Don't go *beyond* the river.
There is a village *beyond* the pond.

**Rule (2) :** Beyond का प्रयोग later than (बाद तक) के अर्थ में समय को सूचित करने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Don't remain out *beyond* midnight.

**Rule (3) :** Beyond का प्रयोग except *(सिवाय/इसके अलावे)* के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

My uncle has nothing *beyond* his provident fund.

**Note :**

| S. No | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | To get beyond | *पहुँच से बाहर होना* |
| 2. | To go beyond | *नीलाम में* |

**(Y) Use of 'During'**

**Rule (1) :** During का प्रयोग in course of *(दौरान/दरम्यान)* के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है। जैसे—

The sun gives us light *during* the day.
Nobody would talk *during* my discourse.

**Rule (2) :** During का प्रयोग certain period of time के पहले होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| *During* the war | *During* the winter |
| *During* the strike | *During* Easter |
| *During* the meeting | *During* his childhood / 1947 |
| *During* the middle age | *During* the function |
| *During* Dipawali | *During* the examination |
| *During* Holi | *During* the summer vacation |
| *During* the summer | *During* the week |
| *During* the day | *During* the month |
| *During* the night | *During* the year |
| *During* the spring | *During* the morning |

**Rule (3) :** During का प्रयोग 'स्थिति' (state) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

The people suffer hardship during the war.

**Rule (4) :** During का प्रयोग 'किसी कार्य के दौरान आदत' को दिखाने के लिए भी किया जाता है। जैसे—

During the dinner he talked about his plan.

**(Z) Use of 'Against'**

**Rule (1) :** Against का प्रयोग In contravention of (के विरुद्ध) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The workers have acted *against* the orders of the director.
One should not go *against* the rule.

**Rule (2) :** Against का प्रयोग opposite (के विपरीत/प्रतिकूल) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Sailing *against* the current is difficult.
It is difficult to paddle the cycle *against* the wind.

**Rule (3) :** Against का प्रयोग 'पर', 'से सटकर' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There is a ladder *against* the wall.
She is leaning *against* the chair.

**Rule (4) :** Against का प्रयोग तुलना (comparison) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

The director knows nothing *against* my character.
I am writing this book *against* the circumstances.

**(A) Use of 'From'**

**Rule (1) :** From का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'से' के अर्थ में separation *(अलगाव—स्थान से अलग होने)* के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He has come *from* Mumbai.
The wind blew *from* the South
The fruits have fallen *from* this tree.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (2) :** From का प्रयोग 'से' के अर्थ में (time) समय के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। Present, past, future time को अभिव्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

Mukesh will come here *from* Sunday next.
I attended the meeting *from* morning to evening.
He will teach the students *from* 10 a.m.
My brother learnt English *from* the age of twelve.
I loved her *from* my childhood.

**Rule (3) :** From का प्रयोग 'से' के अर्थ में cause (कारण) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

His beloved has been suffering *from* fever.

**Rule (4) :** From का प्रयोग 'से' के अर्थ में origin (स्रोत) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

This story has been taken *from* the Panchatantra.

**Rule (5) :** From का प्रयोग 'से' के अर्थ में 'एक वस्तु से भिन्न गुण वाली दूसरी वस्तु' बनाने के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

Curd is made from milk. *दही दूध से बनाया जाता है।*
Furniture is made from wood. *फर्नीचर लकड़ी से बनाया जाता है*

**(B) Use of 'Across'**

**Rule (1) :** Across का प्रयोग on the opposite side of (के उस पार/के पार) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

My elder sister lives *across* the Ganga river.
*मेरी बड़ी बहन गंगा नदी के उस पार रहती है।*

**Rule (2) :** Across का प्रयोग from one side to the other. *(एक ओर से दूसरी ओर तक/एक छोर से दूसरे छोर तक)* के अर्थ में होता है।

There is a bridge *across* the river.

**Rule (3) :** Across का प्रयोग on both sides *(के दोनों ओर)* के अर्थ में होता है।

There were trees *across* the house.
*घर के दोनों ओर पेड़ थे।*
She was putting the shawl *across* her shoulders.
*वह अपने दोनों कंधे पर शॉल रखी हुई थी।*

**(C) Use of 'About'**

**Rule (1) :** About का प्रयोग 'के बारे में'/'के संबंध में' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He has doubt *about* his honesty.
*उसे अपने ईमानदारी के संबंध में शक है।*
What do you know *about* this incident ?
*इस घटना के बारे में तुम क्या जानते हो ?*

**Rule (2) :** About का प्रयोग लगभग, प्रायः, करीब-करीब के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

It is *about* eight O' clock.
*लगभग आठ बजे हैं।*
The college is *about* six miles from my village.
*मेरे गाँव से करीब-करीब 6 मील की दूरी पर कॉलेज है।*

**Rule (3) :** About का प्रयोग around (बाहर से चारों ओर) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The books were lying *about* the office.
*ऑफिस के बाहर चारों ओर पुस्तकें पड़ी हुई थीं।*
A circle is drawn *about* a triangle.
*त्रिभुज के बाहर चारों ओर एक वृत्त खींचा गया है।*

**Rule (4) :** *About + Infinitive (to + V^1)* का प्रयोग Immediate action को express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He is *about* to die.
*वह मरने ही वाला है—वह मरने-मरने को है।*
The election is *about* to begin.
*चुनाव प्रारंभ होने ही वाला है—चुनाव प्रारंभ होने-होने को है।*

**(D) Use of 'Along'**

**Rule (1) :** Along का प्रयोग 'किनारे-किनारे' (in the same line) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He was walking *along* the road.
*वह सड़क के किनारे-किनारे टहल रहा था।*

**Rule (2) :** Along + with का प्रयोग 'के साथ-साथ' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Varsha went to Malasia *along* with her husband.
*वर्षा अपने पति के साथ-साथ मलेशिया गयी।*

**(E) Use of 'Before'**

**Rule (1) :** Before का प्रयोग 'के समाने' (in presence of) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

She was standing *before* the police inspector.
The case was brought *before* the judge.
The accused appeared *before* the magistrate.

**Rule (2) :** Before का प्रयोग 'से पहले' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

I take meal *before* going to my tuition centre.
The patient had died *before* the doctor came.

**ध्यान दें :** (i) Long before का प्रयोग 'बहुत पहले' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The Indians knew farming long *before* the Europeans.
*भारतीय यूरोपियन से बहुत पहले खेती करना जानते थे।*

(ii) जबकि Before long का प्रयोग 'शीघ्र' (soon) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

I shall go to my village *before* long.
*मैं शीघ्र अपने गाँव जाऊँगा।*

**(F) Use of 'After'**

**Rule (1) :** After का प्रयोग 'के बाद' के अर्थ में Time expressing words *(समय को सूचित करने वाले शब्दों)* के पहले होता है। जैसे—

He went there *after* five days.
She went to her college *after* 11 a.m.
Tuesday comes *after* Monday.
April comes *after* March.

**Rule (2) :** After का प्रयोग 'के बाद' के अर्थ में place (स्थान) को सूचित करने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

B comes *after* A.
From Patna, Hazipur comes *after* the Ganga river.

**Rule (3) :** After का प्रयोग 'के अनुसार'/'के शैली में' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

These poems have been written *after* William Shakespeare.
*ये कविताएँ विलियम शेक्सपीयर के शैली में लिखी गई हैं।*

**Rule (4) :** After का प्रयोग phrasal terms में भी होता है। जैसे—

| | |
|---|---|
| Day *after* day | Village *after* village |
| Hoof *after* hoof | *After* that |
| The day *after* tomorrow | One *after* another |

**(G) Use of 'With'**

**Rule (1) :** With का प्रयोग 'से/के द्वारा' के अर्थ में Instrument/tool (औजार) के पहले होता है, जिसकी सहायता से कार्य किया जाता है। जैसे—

He writes *with* a pen.
She writes *with* a pencil.
He cuts the mango *with* a knife.
The carpenter cuts the tree *with* an axe.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



लेकिन pencil का प्रयोग Uncountable noun के रूप में होने पर, इसके पहले a का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, न ही with preposition का प्रयोग होता है। सिर्फ In preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He writes *in* pencil. (✓)
He writes *in* ink. (✓)
He writes with pencil. (×)
He writes in a pencil. (×)

**Rule (2) :** With का प्रयोग 'लेकर', 'के साथ'/'साथ-साथ' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Subodh went to Shimla *with* his wife.
His son went to college *with* his friends.
A beautiful girl came *with* her lover.

**Rule (3) :** With का प्रयोग 'के रहते हुए भी'/'के बावजूद' के अर्थ (in spite of) के अर्थ में होता है।

*With* all his wealth, he is unhappy.
*With* all his bad habits, he is a good man.

**Rule (4) :** With का प्रयोग 'से' के अर्थ में cause (कारण) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

A young and beautiful girl was trembling *with* fear.
Your eyes are red *with* tears.

**Rule (5) :** With का प्रयोग separation *(विलगाव/वियोग/जुदाई)* के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He parted *with* his beloved at Patna Junction.

**Rule (6) :** With का प्रयोग manner (तरीका) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

The soldiers fought *with* courage.
The boys were sitting in the class *with* patience.

**Rule (7) :** With का प्रयोग affirmation *(सहमति)* तथा contrary (विरोध) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

I was agreed *with* her for marriage.
The Indian soldiers will fight *with* the enemies.

**Rule (8) :** With का प्रयोग quality *(गुण)* तथा features *(विशेषता)* के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

A girl *with* big blue eyes reads in his class.
The man *with* his hands in his pockets was standing at the gate.

**Rule (9) :** With का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित शब्दों के बाद होता है। जैसे—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| quarrel *with* | contented *with* | satisfied *with* |
| sympathy *with* | charged *with* | differ *with* |
| acquainted *with* | disgusted *with* | deal *with* |

**(H) Use of 'Without'**

Without का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'के बिना/छोड़कर/रहित /के सिवा' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

A woman cannot live *without* a man.
We cannot live *without* water.
One cannot write *without* a pen.
We cannot see *without* eyes.

**Note :** Without delay का प्रयोग शीघ्र (soon) तथा without doubt का प्रयोग 'निश्चित रूप से' (certainly) के अर्थ में होता है।

**(I) Use of 'Within'**

**Rule (1) :** Within का प्रयोग 'के भीतर/के अंदर' के अर्थ में समय तथा स्थान के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

I shall do it *within* an hour.
*मैं इसे एक घंटा के भीतर कर दूँगा।*
He will come *within* this month.
*वह इस महीना के भीतर आ जायेगा।*
Patna Junction is *within* two kilometres from my residence.
*पटना जंक्शन मेरे निवास स्थल से दो किलोमीटर के भीतर है।*

**Note :** Within का अर्थ before the end of a period of time होता है, जबकि In का अर्थ at the end of a period of time होता है।

**Rule (2) :** Within का प्रयोग 'के अन्दर' के अर्थ में capability (सामर्थ्य) तथा limitation (सीमा) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

We should keep our expenses *within* our income.
This is *within* a kilometre.

**(J) Use of 'Towards'**

**Rule (1) :** Towards का प्रयोग सामान्यतः in the direction of (की ओर) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He was going *towards* the college.
*वह कॉलेज की ओर जा रहा था।*
She went *towards* office.
*वह ऑफिस की ओर गयी।*

**Rule (2) :** Towards *का प्रयोग 'के प्रति' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—*

My brother is kind *towards* the poor.
*मेरा भाई गरीबों के प्रति दयालु है।*

**Rule (3) :** Towards का प्रयोग 'के निकट'/'के लगभग' (nearly) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

It is now *towards* night.
*अभी रात लगभग है।*

**(K) Use of 'To'**

**Rule (1) :** To का प्रयोग 'की ओर' के अर्थ में लक्ष्य (destination) को बताने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He was going *to* Patna Market.
*वह पटना मार्केट जा रहा था।*
She is going *to* Patna College.
*वह पटना कॉलेज जा रही है।*

**Rule (2) :** To का प्रयोग 'तक' के अर्थ में time तथा place को सूचित करने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है। जैसे—

She waited for me from morning *to* evening.
The postman delivers the letters from door *to* door.

**Rule (3) :** To का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है। जैसे—

| verbs | preposition | place |
|---|---|---|
| Go | | |
| Get | | |
| Come | to | a place |
| Send somebody | | |
| Send something | | |

But—leave for a place, start for a place का प्रयोग होता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

He is going *to* college. (✓)
He is going for college. (×)
The principal has not come *to* the office. (✓)
The principal has not come for the office. (×)
She is leaving for Patna today. (✓)
She is leaving to Patna today. (×)

**Note :** (i) सामान्यतः home के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। लेकिन for का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Please send her home. (✓)
Please send her to home. (×)
You should leave for home. (✓)
You should leave to home. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(ii) *Possessive Adjectives/phrase + home* के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The publisher came *to* my home yesterday. (√)
The publisher came my home yesterday. (×)
I went to her home last night. (√)
I went her home last night. (×)

**Rule (4)** : 'To' का प्रयोग 'पहले' के अर्थ time (समय) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

It is quarter to ten.
*पौने दस बजे हैं—10 बजने से 15 मिनट पहले।*
It is ten minutes to ten.
*दस बजने से 10 मिनट पहले—10 बजने में 10 मिनट है।*

**Rule (5)** : 'To' का प्रयोग 'पर' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He was invited *to* tea.
Her mother invited me *to* dinner.

**Rule (6)** : 'To' का प्रयोग 'के प्रति' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He must be careful *to* his duty.
*उसे अपने कर्तव्य के प्रति अवश्य सावधान होना चाहिए।*
Show affection *to* your neighbours.
*अपने पड़ोसियों के प्रति स्नेह दिखाओ।*

**Rule (7)** : To का प्रयोग 'को' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The landlord gave money *to* all.
*जमींदार ने सभी को पैसा दिया।*

**Rule (8)** : 'To' का प्रयोग 'से' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Harishchandra always spoke the truth *to* the people.
*हरिश्चन्द्र हमेशा लोगों से सच बोलते थे।*
He said *to* me.
*उसने मुझे से कहा।*

**Rule (9)** : 'To' का प्रयोग 'तुलना' (comparison) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

They won by six goals *to* three.
*वे लोग छः तीन से जीत गये।*
He was junior *to* all his friends.
*वे अपने सभी मित्रों में छोटे थे।*

**Rule (10)** : 'To' का प्रयोग पास/समीप के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The girl went *to* her lover.
*लड़की अपने प्रेमी के पास गयी।*
He came *to* me.
*वह मेरे पास आया।*

**Rule (11)** : 'To' का प्रयोग 'के लिए' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He goes *to* walk in the morning.
*वह सुबह में टहलने जाता है।*
My uncle came *to* see me.
*मेरे चाचा मुझे देखने के लिए आये।*

**Note** : Intention (इरादा), purpose (उद्देश्य), restriction (प्रतिबंध) के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए भी to का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

| Sentence | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| He is *to* write a letter. | *वह पत्र लिखने वाला है/को है।* |
| He has *to* do this work. | *उसे इस कार्य को करना है।* |
| He was *to* play cricket. | *वह क्रिकेट खेलने वाला था/को था।* |
| She had *to* stay in Patna. | *उसे पटना में ठहरना पड़ा।* |
| You will have *to* appear at the Examination. | *तुम्हें परीक्षा में शामिल होना होगा।* |

**ध्यान दें** : For तथा since के प्रयोग संबंधित नियम time and tense chapter में दिया गया है।

## Some important prepositional phrases

| | |
|---|---|
| According to *के अनुसार* | At the bottom of *के जड़/मूल में* |
| At enemity with *दुश्मनी के भाव के साथ* | At home in *निपुण* |
| As to *के विषय में* | At variance with *के विरुद्ध* |
| By virtue of *के आधार पर* | By means of *के माध्यम से* |
| By force of *की मदद से* | By dint of *की मदद से* |
| Because of *के कारण* | By the side of *के बगल में* |
| For want of *के अभाव के कारण* | For the sake of *लाभार्थ* |
| For the God's sake *ईश्वर के नाम पर* | For the purpose of *के लिए/के उद्देश्य से* |
| For fear of *के भय से* | In front of *के सामने* |
| In honour of *के सम्मान में* | In favour of *के पक्ष में* |
| In face of *के विरुद्ध में/की उपस्थिति में* | In defence of *के बचाव में* |
| In course of *के दौरान/के दरम्यान* | In consequence of *के परिणाम स्वरूप* |
| In connection with *के संबंध में* | In cause of *की स्थिति में* |
| In accordance with *के अनुकूल* | In lieu of *के बदले में* |
| In opposition to *के विरुद्ध* | In spite of *के बावजूद* |
| In point of *के विचार से* | Instead of *के बदले में* |
| In order to *के लिए* | In regard to *के संबंध में* |
| In the teeth of *विषम परिस्थिति के बावजूद* | In the event of *की स्थिति में* |
| In view of *के विचार से* | In sight of *ज्ञात होना* |
| With reference to *के संबंध में* | With regard to *के संबंध में* |
| With respect to *के संबंध में* | With a view to *के उद्देश्य से* |
| On behalf of *की ओर से* | On account of *के कारण* |
| On the eve of *के अवसर पर* | On the part of *के हित में* |
| On the score of *के आधार पर* | On the pretence of *के बहाने से* |
| On the point of *के करीब/समीप* | On the verge of *के करीब/समीप* |
| On the brink of *के करीब/समीप* | |

## Master Key of Prepositions

### Verbs starting with 'A'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Abstain | *अलग रहना* | from | something |
| Accede | *स्वीकार करना* | to | request |
| Accord | *राजी होना* | with | something |
| Accuse | *दोषारोपण करना* | of | something |
| Acquit | *मुक्त करना* | of | charges |
| Admit | *स्वीकार करना* | of | excuse |
| Admit | *प्रवेश करने देना* | to/into | secret |
| Agree | *सहमत होना* | to | proposal |
| Agree | *सहमत होना* | with | a person |
| Agree | *सहमत होना* | on | a matter |
| Arrive | *पहुँचना* | at | conclusion |
| Arrive | *पहुँचना* | at | a smaller place |
| Arrive | *पहुँचना* | in | a bigger place |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aim | निशाना लगाना/लक्ष्य बनाना | at | something |
| Appoint | बहाल/नियुक्त करना | to | some post |
| Associate | मिलना | with | some group |
| Act | काम करना | from | fear |
| Attend | ध्यान देना | to | something |
| Attend | देखभाल करना | upon | a person |
| Apologize | क्षमायाचना करना | to | a person |
| Apologize | क्षमायाचना करना | for | something |
| Avenge | बदला लेना | on | one's enemies |
| Acquaint | परिचय करना | with | a person |
| Addict | आदी होना | to | something |
| Amaze | अचंभित होना | at | something |
| Abide | दृढ़ता से पालन करना | by | a promise |
| Abide | रहना/ठहरना | with | a person |
| Abide | रहना/ठहरना | in/at | a place |
| Accord (something) | स्वीकृति देना | to | some body |
| Account | उत्तरदायी | for | a fact |
| Approve | मंजूर करना/ स्वीकृति प्रदान करना | of | an action |
| Adapt (oneself) | अनुकूल बनाना | to | circumstances |
| Alight | सवारी पर से उतरना | from | carriage |
| Alight | नीचे उतरना | on | the ground |
| Allot | वितरण करना/आवंटन करना | to | a person |
| Answer | उत्तर देना | to | a person |
| Answer | उत्तर देना | for | something |
| Appeal | अपील करना/निचली अदालत के फैसले पर पुनर्विचार के लिए प्रार्थना करना | to | a person |
| Appeal | अनुनय विनय करना | for | help |
| Appeal | ध्यान आकृष्ट करना | against | a sentence |
| Apply | आवेदन करना | to | a person |
| Apply | आवेदन करना | for | some post |
| Argue | तर्क/बहस करना | with | a person |
| Argue | तर्क/बहस करना | For/against | a point |
| Ask | पूछताछ करना | of/from | a person |
| Ask | माँगना/याचना करना | for | something |
| Attribute (something) | श्रेय देना | to | somebody |
| Abound | अधिकता में होना | in/with | something |
| Absolve | पाप/दोष से मुक्त करना | of/from | a charge |
| Allude | संकेत कर कहना | to | a fact |
| Admonish | चेतावनी देना/डाँटना | of/for | a fault |
| Adhere | चिपकना/किसी मत पर दृढ़ रहना | to | a rule |
| Acquiesce | सहमत होना | in | something |

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Accrue | उपार्जन करना/वृद्धि होना | to | somebody |
| Accrue | उपार्जित होना/बढ़ना | from | something |
| Assure (a person) | विश्वास दिलाना | of | a fact |
| Assure | बीमा/ सुरक्षित करना | against | loss |
| Assent | सहमत होना | to | your terms |
| Avail (oneself) | उपयोग करना/ फायदा उठाना/लाभदायक होना | of | an opportunity |
| Ascribe | जिक्र करना/उल्लेख करना | to | a cause |
| Aspire | आकांक्षा करना | after/for | fame |
| Attain | पहुँचना | to | a high place |
| Appear | हाजिर/उपस्थित होना | at | the examination |
| Arrest | गिरफ्तार करना/बंदी बनाना | in | jail |
| Accustom | आदि होना/अभ्यस्त होना | to | desert climate |
| Accompany | स्वर संगत करना/सुर मिलाना | by | a friend |
| Act | प्रभावित करना/प्रभाव डालना | on/upon | body/food |
| Accompany | साथ होना/ संग होना | on | a walk |

## Adjectives starting with 'A'

| Adjectives | Hindi meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Astonished | अचंभित | at | one's misconduct |
| Astonishing | अचंभित करने वाला | to | a person |
| Annoyed | नाराज | at | something |
| Annoyed | नाराज | with | a person |
| Anxious | चिन्तित | for | one's safety |
| Anxious | उत्सुक | about | the result |
| Apparent | स्पष्ट | to | a person |
| Ashamed | लज्जित | of | one's behaviour |
| Associated | सम्बद्ध | with | a person |
| Associated | सहयोगी | in | some business |
| Appropriate | अनुकूल | to | the occasion |
| Averse | प्रतिकूल | to | something |
| Angry | क्रोधित | with | a person |
| Angry | क्रोधित | at | something |
| Afraid | भयभीत | of | something |
| Adjacent | समीप | to | something |
| Accused | दोषी | of | theft |
| Acquainted | परिचित | with | a person |
| Acquainted | परिचित | with | a thing |
| Acquitted | रिहाई | of | the charge |
| Addicted | आदी | to | smoking |
| Affectionate | स्नेही | to | a person |
| Absorbed | मग्न | in | something |
| Aggravated | उग्र | at | something |
| Aggravated | बिगाड़ | with | a person |
| Acceptable | स्वीकार्य | to | a person |
| Accessible | सुलभ/सुगम | to | somebody |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Adjectives | Hindi meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Accessory | सहायक | to | a crime |
| Accomplished | कुशल | in | an art |
| Accountable | उत्तरदायी | to | a person |
| Accountable | उत्तरदायी | for | a thing |
| Accruing | बढ़ने वाला | to | a person |
| Accruing | जमा होने वाला | from | something |
| Accurate | यथार्थ/ठीक | in | one's statistics |
| Adequate | पर्याप्त | to | a person's want |
| Adverse | प्रतिकूल | to | a person's interest |
| Afflicted | दुःखी/पीड़ित | with | pain |
| Agreeable | सुहावना/रुचिकर/स्वीकार्य | to | one's wishes |
| Akin | एकता/समान/सजातीय | to | a person/thing |
| Alarmed | सतर्क | at | a rumour |
| Alien | प्रतिकूल/असंगत | to | a person's character |
| Alienated | अलगाव/हटाना | from | the party |
| Amused | विनोदित | at | something |
| Amazed | चकित/आश्चर्यित | at | something |
| Alive | जीवित/सचेत | to | the problems |
| Ambitious | महत्वाकांक्षी | for | something |
| Answerable | जिम्मेदार | to | a person |
| Answerable | उत्तरदायी | for | something |
| Assiduous | परिश्रमी | in | one's studies |
| Apprised | सूचित | of | a matter |
| Applicable | लागू | to | a situation |
| Apprehensive | आशंकित/भयभीत | of | the result |
| Appalled | भयभीत | at | the sight |
| Absent | अनुपस्थित | from | class |
| Aware | सावधान | of | one's intention |
| Assured | आश्वासन प्राप्त/निश्चित | of | the truth |
| Abounding | भरपूर/प्रचुर मात्रा में/बहुतायत | in/with | fish |
| Absolved | दोष मुक्त | of | a charge |
| Adapted | अनुकूल बनाने योग्य | to | one's taste |

## Nouns starting with 'A'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Apology | क्षमा याचना | for | one's misconduct |
| Attack | आक्रमण | on | somebody |
| Ambition | महत्वाकांक्षा | for | something |
| Affection | स्नेह | for | somebody |
| Alliance | मैत्री/संधि | with | the country |
| Alliance | विवाह सम्बंध | with | a person |
| Allusion | इशारा | to | something |
| Access | पहुँच | to | a person |
| Access | पहुँच | to | a place |
| Assurance | विश्वास | of | one's support |

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aptitude | रुचि | for | business |
| Acquaintance | परिचय | with | a person |
| Ability | योग्यता | for | some work |
| Ability | क्षमता | in | some work |
| Approach | पहुँच | to | something |
| Approach | पहुँच | to | some place |
| Arrival | आगमन | at | a smaller place |
| Arrival | आगमन | in | a bigger place |
| Abundance | आधिक्य | of | something |
| Answer | उत्तर | to | a question |
| Abhorrence | घृणा | of | something |
| Ability | योग्यता/क्षमता | for/in | some work |
| Abstinence | परहेज/संयम | from | wine |
| Accession | किसी पद या स्थिति पर पहुँचना | to | the throne |
| Accomplice | सह अपराधी | with | a person |
| Accomplice | गलत कार्य में साथी | in | a crime |
| Accusation | दोषारोपण/अभियोग | of | theft |
| (In) Accordance | अनुकूलता/सहमति | with | rule |
| Admission | प्रवेश/भर्ती/दाखिला | to | a society of persons |
| Admission | प्रवेश/भर्ती/दाखिला | into | a place |
| Amend | सुधार/संशोधन | for | some fault |
| Anxiety | चिन्ता/व्याकुलता/व्यग्रता/उत्कण्ठा | for | anyone's safety |
| Affinity | लगाव/नाता/आकर्षण | with | something |
| Affinity | लगाव/आकर्षण | between | two persons |
| Affinity | लगाव/नाता | to/for | a person |
| Appetite | खाने-पीने की इच्छा/चाव/मोह | for | food |
| Apprehension | भय/डर/शंका | of | danger |
| Aptitude | प्राकृतिक रुचि/कुशलता/चातुर्य | for | Mathematics |
| Assault | आक्रमण/प्रहार | an | a person or thing |
| Assent | सहमति | to | an opinion |
| Assurance | आत्मविश्वास | of | help |
| Attack | हमला/आक्रमण | on | a place |
| Attention | ध्यान/नम्र व्यवहार | to | study/something |
| Attraction | आकर्षण/आकर्षित करने की शक्ति | to/towards | a thing |
| Authority | आदेश देने का अधिकार | over | a person |
| Authority | किसी विषय का महान विद्वान | on | a subject |
| Authority | अधिकारी/हाकिम | for | doing |
| Adherence | चिपकाव/लगाव | to | a rule |
| Alternative | विकल्प | to | something |
| Analogy | समानता/अनुरूपता | between | two things |
| Animosity | शत्रुता/दुश्मनी | against | a person |
| Aversion | अरुचि/घृणा | to/from | a person/thing |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Antidote | विष का अंत करने वाली दवा | against | infection |
| Antidote | विषनाशक | to | some poison |
| Attitude | व्यवहार/रुख/रवैया | towards | somebody/something |
| Attachment | लगाव/प्रेम | to | a person/thing |

## Verbs starting with 'B'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Buy | खरीदना | from | a person |
| Buy | खरीदना | from | a shop |
| Buy | खरीदना | for/at | Rs. 50 |
| Borrow | उधार लेना | from | a person |
| Borrow | ऋण लेना | of | a person |
| Beware | सावधान होना | of | false friends |
| Believe | विश्वास करना | in | one's honesty |
| Beg | याचना करना | of | a person |
| Beg | क्षमायाचना करना | for | delay |
| Blame | दोषारोपण करना | for | something |
| Blame | दोषारोपण करना | on | a person |
| Bark | भौंकना, जोर से बोलना | at | a person/thing |
| Bear | सहना, बर्दाश्त करना | with | a man's impatience |
| Become | होना | of | the children |
| Beg (a person) | विनती/निवेदन करना | to | do a thing |
| Believe | विश्वास करना | in | a person |
| Belong | किसी के अधिकार में होना/ किसी की सम्पत्ति होना | to | a person |
| Boast | गर्व से कहना | of | one's cleverness |
| Blush | लजाना/सकुचाना | at | some thought |
| Blush | शर्म से चेहरा लाल पड़ जाना | for/with | shame |
| Break (the news) | समाचार देना | of | a person's death |
| Break (bad news) | बुरा समाचार देना | to | a person |
| Break (cut relations) | तोड़ना/निकालना | with | a person |
| Bring (a thing) | लाना | to | light |
| Bring (a thing) | प्रस्तुत करना | under | notice |
| Bestow (a thing) | अर्पण करना/ उपहार देना | on | a person |
| Brood | चिन्ता करना | over | past mistakes |
| Bow | सलाम करना/ सिर झुकाना | to | a person/thing |
| Border | किनारा होना/ सीमा होना | on | a place |

| Note : Phrases | Hindi meaning |
|---|---|
| Burst into laughter | ठहाका मारकर हँसना |
| Burst into tears | फूट-फूट कर रोना |
| Burst into anger | क्रोधित होना |
| Burst upon the city | अचानक चढ़ाई करना |

## Adjectives starting with 'B'

| Adjective | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Busy | व्यस्त | with | some work |
| Busy | व्यस्त | at | some work |
| Born | जन्मा हुआ | of | rich parents |
| Blind | अंधा | in | one eye |
| Blind | अनभिज्ञ | to | a person's fault |
| Blind | काना | of | one eye |
| Blessed | आनन्दमय | with | good health |
| Blessed | सौभाग्यशाली | in | one's children |
| Backward | पिछड़ा | in | one's study |
| Beneficial | लाभप्रद | to | the health |
| Bent | नतमस्तक | on | mischief |
| Bound | तैयार | for | a place |
| Bereft | वंचित/महरूम | of | one's parents |
| Born | पैदा हुआ | in | England |
| Boastful | शेखी/गर्व | of | something |
| Based | आधारित | on | facts |
| Bolck | मार्ग में रुकावट पैदा करना | up | the path |
| Beset | अनिष्ट की आशंका प्रकट करना | with | difficulties |

## Nouns starting with 'B'

| Noun | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Bargain | खरीदने-बेचने का समझौता | with | a person |
| Bargain (V) | आशा करना | for | something |
| Battle | युद्ध/लड़ाई/संग्राम | with | a person |
| Battle | युद्ध/लड़ाई/संग्राम | for | something |
| Bar | रोक | to | success |
| Blindness | अंधापन/दृष्टिहीनता. | to | one's own faults |
| Belief | विश्वास/मत/धारणा | in | life |
| Basis | आधार/बुनियाद | for | something |

## Verbs starting with 'C'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Congratulate | बधाई देना | on | one's success |
| Cure | आरोग्य करना | of | some disease |
| Cut | काटना | into | pieces |
| Cut | काटना | in | half |
| Compare | तुलना करना | with | a person |
| Compare | तुलना करना | to | a thing |
| Care | देखभाल करना | for | a person |
| Care | देख-रेख करना | for | a thing |
| Charge | दोषारोपित करना | with | theft |
| Charge | फीस/मूल्य माँगना | to | a person |
| Consist | से बना होना | of | ten members |
| Consist | में रहना | in | something |
| Challenge | चुनौती देना | to | fight |
| Comply | आज्ञानुसार कार्य करना | with | one's request |
| Confer | उपाधि/मान प्रदान करना | on | a person |
| Confer | परामर्श करना | with | one's physician |
| Confide | विश्वास करना | in | one's ministers |
| Confide | गुप्त बात कहना | to | none |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Convict | अपराधी ठहराना | of | theft |
| Compete | प्रतियोगिता करना | with | a person |
| Confine | कैद करके रखना | in | a cage |
| Confine | सीमा के अंदर रहना | to | the subject |
| Conflict | तालमेल न रखना | with | a person |
| Conform | अनरूप होना | to | the rules |
| Connive | अनदेखी करना | at | an escape from jail |
| Consult | परामर्श करना | with | one's colleagues |
| Consult | परामर्श करना | on/about | some matter |
| Canvass | मत याचना करना | for | votes |
| Commence | प्रारंभ करना | with | something |
| Compensate | क्षतिपूर्ति करना | for | one's loss |
| Complain | शिकायत करना | to | a person |
| Complain | शिकायत करना | against | a person |
| Complain | शिकायत करना | of | a thing |
| Complain | शिकायत करना | about | a thing |
| Conceal | छिपाना | from | a person |
| Condemn | दंड देना | to | death |
| Concur | सहमत होना | with | a person |
| Concur | सहमत होना | in | one's opinion |
| Condense | संक्षिप्त रूप से कहना | of | the incident |
| Contribute | अंशदान करना | to | a fund |
| Concede | स्वीकार करना | to | demand |
| Caution (a person) | सावधान करना | against | error |
| Combat | लड़ना | with | difficulties |
| Clear (a person) | मुक्त करना/बरी करना | of | blame |
| Cling | चिपकना | to | a person/thing |
| Close | स्वीकार करना | with | an offer |
| Coincide | सहमत होना | with | one's opinion |
| Commence | प्रारंभ करना | with | a thing |
| Communicate (a thing) | सूचना/खबर देना | to | a person |
| Communicate | बातचीत करना | with | a person |
| Converse | बातचीत करना | with | a person |
| Converse | वार्तालाप | about | something |
| Cope | सफलतापूर्वक प्रबंध करना/ संभालना | with | a situation |
| Correspond | पत्राचार करना/ अनुरूप होना | with | a person/ something |
| Correspond | समतुल्य होना | to | something |
| Cure (a man) | आरोग्य करना/ संरक्षित करना | of | a disease |
| Crave | याचना करना | for | happiness |
| Convince (a person) | समझाना/प्रमाण देकर सहमत करना | of | a fact |
| Consent | सहमति/स्वीकृति देना | to | some proposal |

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Conform | अनुरूप होना/अनुकूल बनाना | with | one's views |
| Conform | अनुरूप होना/अनुकूल बनाना | to | the rules |
| Confess | अपराध/दोष स्वीकार करना | to | a fault |
| Condole | खेद प्रकट करना/ सहानुभूति दिखलाना | with | a person |
| Condemn (a person) | दोषी करार देना | for | murder |
| Comment | टिप्पणी करना | on/upon | a matter |
| Count | निर्भर करना/आश्रित होना | on | a person/ something |
| Contend | झगड़ा करना/ईर्ष्या करना/ विरोध प्रकट करना | with | a person |
| Contend | प्रतिस्पर्धा करना | for/ about | a thing |
| Consent | सहमति/स्वीकृति देना | to | a proposal |
| Compete | प्रतियोगिता में भाग लेना | in | a race |
| Clamour | कोलाहल करना/निरन्तर माँग या शिकायत करना | for | something |
| Complete | मुकाबला करना | for | something |
| Cheat (a person) | ठगना / बेईमानी करना | of | his due |
| Converge | एकरूप होना/एक परिणाम पर पहुँचना | on | a place |
| Co-opt | कोई सदस्य जोड़ लेना | to | the committee |
| Conductive | संचालक/संवाहक | to | electric current |
| Cost | लागत/खर्च होना | of | something |
| Converge | एक बिन्दु पर मिलना | at | a point |
| Credit (one's account) | किसी खाते में जमा करना | with | Rs-500/ |
| Contrast | भेद/अंतर बतलाना | with | something |

**Note :** Cheat on का प्रयोग to be sexually unfaithful (प्रेम/मुहब्बत में छलना/धोखा देना) के अर्थ में Informal style में होता है। जैसे—
He was cheating on his wife

## Adjectives starting with 'C'

| Adjective | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Confident | विश्वस्त | of | success |
| Congratulated | बधाई | on | one's success |
| Cured | चंगा | of | a disease |
| Cautious | सावधान | of | something |
| Capable | सामर्थ्य | of | improvement |
| Committed | वचनबद्ध | to | something |
| Contrary | विरुद्ध | to | a rule |
| Comparable | तुलनीय | to | something |
| Charged | आरोपित | with | theft |
| Charged | सौंपा गया | with | some work |
| Charged | मूल्य माँगा गया | for | the broken cup |
| Charged | रेकॉर्ड किया गया | to | one's account |
| Conscious | सचेत | of | something |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Adjective | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Convinced | संतुष्ट | of | one's sincerity |
| Convicted | मुजरिम करार किया गया | of | murder |
| Capable | समर्थ/योग्य | of | improvement |
| Characterised | चरित्र चित्रण किया गया | by | a thing |
| Compatible | अनुकूल/अनुरूप | with | one's temper |
| Careful | सावधान/होशियार | of | his money |
| Careful | सावधान/होशियार | about | his dress |
| Certain | निश्चित निःसंदेह/पक्का/पूरा यकीन | of | success |
| Clear (a person) | दोष मुक्त करना | from/of | blame |
| Close | समीप का /पास वाला | to | a person/thing |
| Clothed | कपड़ा पहने हुए (खास तरह से) | in | red |
| Clothed | वस्त्र पहने हुए (अनुशासनहीन तरीके से) | with | shame |
| Common | सामान्य/सार्वजनिक | to | several persons/things |
| Competent | सक्षम/समर्थ/योग्य/निपुण | for | certain work |
| Composed | बना हुआ | of | materials |
| Concerned | चिंतित/परेशान | at/about | something |
| Concerned | चिंतित/परेशान | about/for | a person |
| Concerned | व्यस्त | in | some business |
| Concerned | चिंतित | for | one's welfare |
| Conductive | प्रेरक/सहायक | to | a situation |
| Congenial | अनुकूल | to | one's tastes |
| Covetous | लोभी | of | other person's goods |
| Creditable | प्रशंसा के योग्य | to | one's judgement |
| Customary | प्रथागत | for | a person |
| Contrasted | फर्क/अन्तर | with | something |
| Contrasted | विरोधात्मक | to | one's previous behaviour |

## Nouns starting with 'C'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Candidate | उम्मीदवार | for | the post |
| Capacity | सामर्थ्य | for | mastering facts |
| Care | चिन्ता/देखभाल | of | one's health |
| Care | जिम्मेदारी | for | someone's safety |
| Claim | दावा | on/against | a person |
| Claim | दावा | to | the throne |
| Confidence | विश्वास | in | a person |
| Comment | टिप्पणी | on | something |
| Compassion | दया | for | somebody |
| Contact | सम्पर्क | with | somebody |
| Contact | सम्पर्क | with | something |
| Correspondence | पत्राचार | with | a person |
| Correspondence | समानता | to | a thing |
| Correspondence | समानता | between | two objects |

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Contrast | विरोध | to | a person |
| Contrast | विरोध | to | a thing |
| Contrast | विषमता | between | two things |
| Comparison | तुलना | to | a thing |
| Comparison | तुलना | with | a person |
| Control | नियंत्रण | over | one's class |
| Compact | समझौता | with | a person |
| Competition | प्रतियोगिता | with | a person |
| Competition | प्रतियोगिता | for | something |
| Complicity | बुरे कार्यों में सहयोग | in | a crime |
| Compliance | अनुपालन | with | a request |
| Condemnation | दोषारोपण | to | death |
| Confidence | विश्वास | in | a person |
| (In) Conformity | तदनुसार/उसके अनुकूल | with | any one's request |
| Conformity | अनुकूलता | to | rule |
| Compensation | क्षतिपूर्ति/मुआवजा | for | a loss |
| Connection | संबंधन | with | a person/thing |
| Connivance | किसी अपराध में सहयोग | of | a person |
| Connivance | अनदेखी | at/in | a crime |
| Consciousness | चेतना/होश | of | guilt |
| Consideration | विचार/महत्व | for | a person's feelings |
| Contempt | घृणा/तिरस्कार/उपेक्षा | for | a person/thing |
| Controversy | विवाद | on/about | something |
| Controversy | विवाद | with | a person |
| Contribution | सहयोग/चंदा | to | fund |
| Contribution | अंश दान | towards | a project |
| Cause | कारण/वजह | of | anxiety |
| Cause | कारण/वजह | for | family rejoicing |
| Certainty | निश्चितता | about | a matter |
| Certificate | प्रमाण पत्र | of | good conduct |
| (Health) Certificate | प्रमाणपत्र | from | a doctor |
| Complaint | शिकायत/दावा | against | a person |
| Complaint | शिकायत | about | a thing |
| Conversation | बात/वार्तालाप | with | a person |
| Conviction | सजा/अपराध सिद्धि | of | guilt |
| Craving | उत्कण्ठा | for | anything |
| Copy | नकल/प्रतिलिपि | from | nature |
| Copy | नकल/प्रतिलिपि | of | one' father |
| Chance | मौका/अवसर | of | success |
| Choice | चुनाव/पसन्द | of | a thing |
| Choice | चुनाव/पसन्द | between | two things |
| Command | काबू/नियंत्रण | of | situation |
| Comparison | तुलना | between | two things |
| Concern | संबंध/वास्ता | to/about | a matter |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Concern | चिन्ता/व्याकुलता | for | someone/something |
| Concern | हिस्सा/व्याकुलता | in | a business |
| Confidence | भरोसा/विश्वास | in | some one |
| Consequence | नतीजा/परिणाम | of | something |
| (In) consequence | फलस्वरूप/के कारण | of | the air disaster |
| Control | नियंत्रण/पथ प्रदर्शन | of | prices |
| Contrast | प्रतिकूलता/विषमता | between | the two brothers |
| Certainty | निश्चितता | of | success |

## Verbs starting with 'D'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Deal | व्यापार करना | in | business |
| Deal | बर्ताव करना | with | a person |
| Defend | बचाव करना | from | all blame |
| Defend | बचाव करना | against | enemies |
| Deposit | जमा करना | in | State Bank of India |
| Deposit | जमा करना | with | one's lawyer |
| Deprive | वंचित करना | of | one's freedom |
| Derive | प्राप्त करना | from | bad actions |
| Despair | निराश होना | of | success |
| Differ | सहमत न होना | with | a person |
| Differ | अलग-अलग होना | from | a thing |
| Disagree | असहमत होना | with | a person |
| Disagree | असहमत होना | on | some matter |
| Dispose | बेचना | of | property |
| Dissuade | विचार बदलवाना | from | going there |
| Distinguish | फर्क बतलाना | between | two things |
| Distinguish | फर्क बतलाना | from | a thing |
| Dream | स्वप्न देखना | of | an I. A. S. |
| Defer | स्थगित करना | to | date |
| Depend | निर्भर करना | on | a person |
| Depend | निर्भर करना | upon | a thing |
| Desist | छोड़ देना | from | an attempt |
| Determine | निश्चय करना | on | something |
| Dig | खोदना | for | something |
| Dispute | वाद-विवाद होना | with | a person |
| Dispute | वाद-विवाद होना | about | something |
| Dwell | रहना | in | some place |
| Deviate | विचलित होना | from | path |
| Decide (the issue) | निर्णय करना | in | a person's favour |
| Debar | मना/निषेध करना | from | doing any thing |
| Degenerate | भ्रष्ट हो जाना | into | an obsession |
| Degenerate | गिरना | into | a lower position |
| Dash | टक्कर देना/टकराना | against | a wall |

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Dash | तेजी से गुजरना | over | anything |
| Defraud (a person) | धोखा देना/ठगना | of | his money |
| Digress | प्रसंग से बहकना | from | the path |
| Disapprove | अस्वीकार करना/नामंजूर करना | of | something |
| Dissent | विस्मित होना | from | an opinion |
| Decide | निर्णय/तय करना | on | something |
| Decide | फैसला देना/निर्णय करना | against | something |
| Declare | अपनी रुचि/सम्मति प्रकट करना (पक्ष या विपक्ष में) | for | something |
| Declare | अपनी रुचि/सम्मति प्रकट करना | against | something |
| Defend (a person) | बचाव/प्रतिवाद करना | from | harm |
| Delight | प्रसन्न/खुश होना | in | music |
| Dispense | काम चला लेना (बिना किसी के) | with | a man's services |
| Dissent | मतभेद/मतांतर होना | from | an opinion |
| Divert (a person) | अलग करना/लक्ष्य बदलना | from | a purpose |
| Divide | बाँटना/अलग करना | in | half |
| Divide | छोटे-छोटे टुकड़े करना/हिस्सों में बाँट देना | into | four parts |
| Drive | कहने/करने का विचार करना | at | some point |
| Decrease | कम करना/होना घटाना/घटना | in | size |
| Dabble | किसी काम को ऊपरी तौर पर करना | in | politics |
| Deal | कार्यवाही करना/किसी विषय से संबंधित होना | with | a subject |
| Deal | वितरण करना/बाँटना | out | the cards |
| Deliver (a person) | बचाना/सुरक्षित रखना | from | danger |
| Deliver | समर्पण करना | up | stolen goods |
| Dilate | अधिक विस्तार से व्याख्या करना/विस्तृत विवरण देना | on | a subject |
| Dip | डूबना/डुबाना | into | a book/the ink |
| Dip | डुबकी लगाना | in | a river |
| Drink | किसी के आरोप्य के निमित्त पीना | to | a person's health |
| Dwell | लिखना/विचार करना | on | a subject/one's past |
| Deliberate | परामर्श करना/राय लेना | on | the matter |
| Denude | नंगा करना/निरावृत करना | of | forest/trees |
| Depart | प्रस्थान करना | to | a place |
| Depart | पुरानी प्रथा से हटना | from | old customs |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Derogate | महत्व घटना/मान घटना | from | one's virtues |
| Disassociate | साथ छोड़ देना/अलग हो जाना | from | a person |
| Due | इस कारण से | to | some cause (rains) |
| Disabuse | गलतफहमी/भ्रम दूर करना | of | the illusion |
| Divest | नंगा करना/ कपड़ा उतारना/छीन लेना/ दुटकारा दिलाना | of | one's clothes |

## Adjectives starting with 'D'

| Adjective | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Deaf | बहरा/अनसुना | to | all advice |
| Deficient | अभाव | in | common sense |
| Dependent | आश्रित व्यक्ति | on | one's parents |
| Desirous | इच्छुक | of | going / abroad |
| Different | भिन्न | from | something |
| Disgusted | घृणित | with | one's conduct |
| Devoid | रहित | of | something |
| Deprived | वंचित | of | rights |
| Derogatory | अपमानपूर्ण | to | one's character |
| Destitute | अभावग्रस्त | for | money |
| Dexterous | दक्ष | in / at | doing something |
| Delighted | प्रसन्न/आनंदित | with | success |
| Dependent | निर्भर/पराधीन | on | a person / thing |
| Deprived | सुविधाओं से वंचित | of | some good things |
| Disappointed | निराश/दुःखी | of | a thing not obtained |
| Disappointed | निराश/दुःखी | in | a thing obtained |
| Disappointed | निराश/दुःखी | with | a person |
| Disgusted | अरुचिकर/असहनीय/ घृणा | with | a thing |
| Displeased | क्रोधित/नाराज/अप्रसन्न | with | a person |
| Disqualified | अयोग्य ठहराना | for | a post |
| Distinct | स्वभाव या गुण में भिन्न | from | something else |
| Doubtful | सन्देहपूर्ण | of | success |
| Dull | मंदबुद्धि/अस्पष्ट | of | understanding |
| Defective | त्रुटिपूर्ण/खराब/दोषी | in | workmanship |
| Delighted | प्रसन्न/खुश | at | the news |
| Determined | कृत संकल्प/दृढ़निश्चय | on | doing something |
| Disappointed | निराश/दुःखी | at | something |
| Disgusted | नफरत/घृणा/अरुचि | at / with | a person |
| Disqualified | प्रतियोगिता में भाग लेने के अयोग्य ठहराना | from | competing |
| Doubtful | अनिश्चित/डांवाडोल | about | what to do |
| Designed | किसी विशेष उद्देश्य की पूर्ति हेतु तैयार करना | for | a purpose |
| Detrimental | हानिकारक | to | health |

## Nouns starting with 'D'

| Noun | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Doubt | संदेह | of | something |
| Doubt | संदेह | about | something |
| Descent | वंश क्रम | from | forefathers |
| Decline | पतन | of | a kingdom |
| Decline | अवनति | in | price |
| Delight | आनंद | in | something |
| Delight | आनंद | in | somebody |
| Disgust | घृणा | at | something |
| Dislike | नापसंदगी | of / for | a thing |
| Dislike | नाराजगी | for / of | a person. |
| Decision | निर्णय/फैसला | on | some case |
| Degradation | पदावनति | from | some rank |
| Dependence | निर्भरता | on | a person / thing |
| Desire | इच्छा | for | wealth |
| Disagreement | असहमति | with | a person |
| Disgust | घृणा | at | something |
| Distaste | अरुचि | for | something |
| Duty | कर्तव्य | to | a person / a country |
| Decision | निर्णय/फैसला | of | some dispute |
| Deviation | लीक से हटना/अलग हो जाना | from | rule |
| Discouragement | अनुत्साह/मायूसी | to | a person |
| Disgrace | बदनामी का कारण/ कलंक | to | a person |
| Drawback | कमी/नुकसान/असुविधा | to | to success |
| Danger | खतरा/भय | of | something |
| Demand | माँग | for | something |
| Difference | असमानता/भिन्नता | between | two or more things |
| Difficulty | परेशानी/एतराज/आपत्ति | in | doing something |
| Disagreement | असहमति | on / over | something |
| Disagreement | भिन्न-भिन्न राय होना/कहा सुनी | between | two neighbours |
| Discussion | विवाद/विचार-विमर्श/ शास्त्रार्थ | on / about | some subject |
| Distrust | अविश्वास/संदेह | of | a person |
| Digression | विचलन/मुख्य विषय से हटना/भटकना | from | a subject |
| Dissent | भिन्न राय होना/मतभेद | from | a proposal |
| Departure | प्रस्थान | from | a place |
| Departure | भिन्नता | from | accepted behaviour |
| Departure | रवानगी/कूच | of | this train |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Verbs starting with 'E'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Excuse | क्षमा करना | for | something |
| Excuse | मुक्त करना | from | something |
| Escape | बचकर भाग जाना | from | jail |
| Export | निर्यात करना | from | a country |
| Excel | उत्कृष्ट होना | in | something |
| Encroach | अतिक्रमण करना | on | one's right |
| Enter | शुरुआत करना | upon | a career |
| Enter | शामिल होना | into | an agreement |
| Explain | वर्णन करना | to | a person |
| Exchange | अदला-बदली करना | for | another thing |
| Exchange | अदला-बदली करना | with | a person |
| Enlist | भर्ती होना | in | the military |
| Embark | शुरू करना | on/upon | some business |
| Entrust (somebody) | सौंपना/सुपुर्द करना | with | something |
| Entrust (some thing) | सुपुर्द करना/ सौंपना | to | somebody |
| Exempt (a person) | मुक्त करना/बरी करना | from | a fine |
| Exonerate (a person) | निर्दोष ठहराना/बरी करना | from | blame |
| Explain | समझाना | to | a person |
| Elicit | किसी भेद को निकलवाना | from | a person |
| Embark | शुरू करना | on/upon | business |
| Engage | व्यस्त रखना | in | fight |
| Exult | खूब खुशी मनाना | in/at | victory/success |
| Exult | खूब खुशी मनाना | over | arrival |
| Emerge | बाहर आना | from | darkness |
| Endow (an institution) | सहायतार्थ देना | with | money |
| Entitle (someone) | अधिकार प्रदान करना | to | a thing |
| Embroil | झंझट में डालना/ झगड़े में शामिल करना | in | a street quarrel |
| Employ | नियुक्त करना/काम में लगाना | in | a factory |
| Enrich | धनवान/समृद्ध बनाना, सुधार करना | with | something |
| Enlarge | विस्तार में कहना/ वर्णन करना | on/upon | something |
| Extend | विस्तार करना | to | a place |
| Extend (a visit) | प्रसारित करना | for | another week |
| Expostulate | सविनय आपत्ति/ एतराज करना | with | a person |
| End | परिणाम होना | in | failure |
| Export | निर्यात करना | from | Brazil |
| Enquire | पूछना/जानकारी करना | of | a person |
| Enquire | पूछना/जानकारी करना | about | the train |
| Enquire | पूछना/जानकारी करना | into | the matter |
| Enquire | स्वास्थ्य/क्रियाकलाप के बारे में पूछना | after | a person |

## Adjective starting with 'E'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Eligible | योग्य | for | promotion |
| Equal | समान | to | the occasion |
| Essential | आवश्यक | to/for | happiness |
| Engaged | व्यस्त | in | something |
| Engaged | सगाई हुआ | to | a person |
| Exhausted | थका हुआ | with | some work |
| Envious | ईर्ष्यालु | of | someone |
| Envious | ईर्ष्यालु | of | something |
| Exposed | अरक्षित छोड़ा गया | to | danger |
| Exonerated | अभियोग मुक्त | from | blame |
| Effective | प्रभावशाली | for | a purpose |
| Eminent | उत्कृष्ट | for | one's writing |
| Endowed | सम्पन्न | with | natural ability |
| Entitled | अधिकृत | to | something |
| Estranged | विरक्त/विछिन्न | from | a friend |
| Eager | आतुर/अधीर/उतावला | for | distinction |
| Eager | उत्सुक/इच्छुक | in | the pursuit of knowledge |
| Easy | सरल/सहज/आसान | of | access |
| Employed | नियुक्त | in | gardening |
| Empty | खाली/निरर्थक | of | its contents |
| Enraged | नाराज/क्रोधित/रंज | at | something done |
| Exempted | मुक्त/बरी | from | a fine |
| Exclusive | को छोड़कर/के अतिरिक्त | of | taxes |
| Inclusive | सम्मिलित करके/मिलाकर | of | taxes |
| Enamoured | के पीछे पागल हो जाना/प्रेमोन्मत्त होना | of | the theatre |
| Enamoured | के पीछे पागल हो जाना/प्रेमोन्मत्त होना | with | something (an idea) |

## Nouns starting with 'E'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Entrance | प्रवेश | into | a place |
| Excuse | क्षमा | for | doing something |
| Experience | अनुभव | of | a thing |
| Experience | अनुभव | in | doing something |
| Exception | अपवाद | to | a rule |
| Enmity | शत्रुता | with/for | a person |
| Expert | निपुण | in | something |
| Engagement | व्यस्तता | in | some work |
| Engagement | सगाई | to | a person |
| Engagement | वचनबद्धता | with | a person |
| Election | चुनाव/निर्वाचन | to | the committee |
| Eagerness | उत्सुकता/अधीरता | for | a thing |
| Encroachment | अतिक्रमण | on | one's right, land |
| Equality | समानता | with | a person |
| Escape | बचकर निकल जाना | from | danger |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Esteem | आदर/मान | for | a person |
| Exemption | मुक्ति/छूट | from | punishment |
| Exposure | खुलाव/विलोपन | to | something |
| Expression | अभिव्यक्ति | of | some thought |
| Envy | ईर्ष्या/डाह/जलन | at | another success |
| Explain | स्पष्टीकरण | for | one's misconduct |

## Verbs starting with 'F'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Forbid | मना करना | to | something |
| Focus | केन्द्र बिन्दु पर लाना | on | something |
| Fire | गोली चलाना | on/at | somebody |
| Fill | भरना | with | something |
| Fight | संघर्ष करना | for | freedom |
| Furnish | फर्नीचर से सजाना | with | a thing/book |
| Furnish | सामान जुटाना | to | a person |
| Fight | लड़ना | with | courage |
| Fight | लड़ना | against | the enemy |
| Feed | खाना/चरना | in | the meadows |
| Free | मुक्त करना | from/of | something |
| Free | स्वतंत्र करना | from/of | somebody |
| Fall | फँस जाना | among | thieves |
| Fall | आक्रमण करना | on | the enemy |
| Fall | जमीन पर गिर जाना | in | the storm |
| Fall | गिरना | from | the tree |
| fail | असफल होना | in | attempt |
| fail | असफल होना | of | a purpose |
| flirt | प्रेम का स्वांग करना | with | somebody |
| furnish (a person) | फर्नीचर से सजाना/ सा-मान जुटाना | with | a thing |
| feel | हमदर्दी दिखलाना | for | a person |
| fly | एकाएक गुस्से में हो जाना | into | rage |
| furnish (a thing) | प्रदान करना | to | a person |
| feed | खाना/खिलाना | on | milk/grass |
| feed (a cow) | खाना/खिलाना | with | grass |
| fly | अचानक आक्रमण करना | at | someone |
| (be) fed | तंग आ जाना | up with | one's misconduct |

## Adjectives starting with 'F'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meanings |
|---|---|---|---|
| Free | स्वतंत्र | from | faults |
| Fond | प्रेमी | of | music |
| Full | से भरा | of | mistakes |
| Fit | योग्य | for | the post |
| Famous | प्रसिद्ध | for | something |
| Familiar | परिचित | with | a person |
| Familiar | परिचित | with | some facts |
| Familiar | जानकार | to | English |
| Faithful | विश्वासपात्र | to | a person |
| Fascinated | आकर्षित | by | a thing |
| Favourable | सहायक/पक्ष में | to | a person |
| Foreign | असंगत/विदेशी | to | something |
| False | मिथ्या/झूठा | to | a person |
| False | मिथ्या/झूठा | of | heart |
| Fatal | घातक | to | one's life |
| Fascinated | आकर्षक | with | someone |
| Favourable | लाभकारी | for | an action |
| Favourable | लाभकारी | to | a person |
| Fearful | भयानक/डरावना | of | consequence |
| Fertile | उपजाऊ | in | resources |
| Fruitless | निरर्थक/फलहीन | of | results |
| Fatigued | थका-मांदा | with | travelling |
| Full | भरा हुआ/परिपूर्ण | of | persons/things |

## Nouns starting with 'F'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Facility | सुविधा | for | something |
| Failure | असफलता | of | a plan |
| Failure | असफलता | of | a person |
| Failure | असफलता | in | something |
| Faith | विश्वास | in | a person |
| Faith | विश्वास | in | a thing |
| Fear | भयभीत | of | a thing |
| Freedom | स्वतंत्रता | from | care |
| Freedom | स्वतंत्रता | of | work |
| Feeling | संवेदना | towards | a person |
| Feeling | स्पर्श ज्ञान | about | a thing |
| Familiarity | परिचय | with | a person/thing |
| Fine | जुर्माना/अर्थ दंड | for | an offence |
| Fondness | प्रेम/स्नेह/अनुराग | for | anything |
| Fidelity | तथ्य या मूल के अनुसार/हु-ब-हू | to | something |
| Fidelity | वफादारी/स्वामिभक्ति | to | someone |
| Fitness | उचित/सही/अनुकूलता | for | a job |

## Verbs starting with 'G'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meanings |
|---|---|---|---|
| Glory | प्रसन्न होना | in | success |
| Grieve | दुःखी होना | at | an event |
| Grieve | दुःखी होना | for/about | an event |
| Grieve | दुःखी होना | for | a person |
| Guess | अनुमान करना | at | a thing |
| Grumble | झुँझलाना | at | a person |
| Grumble | झुँझलाना | at | a person |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meanings |
|---|---|---|---|
| Gaze | टकटकी लगाकर देखना | at/on | a person |
| Gaze | टकटकी लगाकर देखना | at/on | a thing |
| Glance | निगाह डालना | at | a book |
| Glance | निगाह डालना | over | a letter |
| Glare | घूरकर देखना | at | each other |
| Gain | पाना/जीतना/अर्जित करना | on | someone |
| Get | पहुँचना/प्राप्त करना | at | facts |
| Get | परेशानी में उलझ जाना | into | trouble |
| Get away | बच निकलना | from | one's clutch |
| Get on | किसी व्यक्ति के साथ निभाना | with | a person |
| Get out | बाहर निकलना | of | debt |
| Glory | खुशी मनाना/प्रसन्न होना | in | success |
| Grapple | भिड़ना/टकराना | with | difficulties |
| Guard | सुरक्षा करना | against | a bad habit |

### Adjectives starting with 'G'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Good | अच्छा | at | Mathematics |
| Good | अच्छा | for | headache |
| Guilty | दोषी | of | theft |
| Greedy | लोभी | for | a thing |
| Glad | खुश | of | success |
| Grateful | कृतज्ञ | to | a person |
| Grateful | कृतज्ञ | for | a thing |
| Glad | खुश | about | a thing |
| Gifted | प्रतिभा सम्पन्न | with | an ability |

### Nouns starting with 'G'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Guess | अनुमान | at | a thing |
| Grasp | पकड़ना | of | a thing |
| Gratitude | कृतज्ञता | to | a person |
| Gratitude | कृतज्ञता | for | a thing |
| Grief | दुःख | at | something |
| Grief | दुःख | for | a person |
| Glance | दृष्टि | at | a person/thing |
| Glance | दृष्टि | over | a wide surface |

### Verbs starting with 'H'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Happen | होना | to | a person |
| Hide | छिपाना | from | a person |
| Hinder | बाधा डालना /रोकना | from | doing something |
| Hint | संकेत देना | at | a thing |
| Hover | मँडराना | over | a nest |
| Hope | आशा करना | for | better times |
| Hunt | खोजना | for | a thing |
| Hunt | खोजना | after | a thing |
| Hear | सुनना | of | an incident |
| Hanker | जिज्ञासा होना | after | wealth |

### Adjectives starting with 'H'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Honest | ईमानदार | in | one's dealings |
| Honoured | सम्मान | with | a thing |
| Hopeful | आशान्वित | of | gain |
| Harmful | हानिकारक | to | health |
| Hungry | लालायित | for | affection |
| Hungry | लालायित | after | wealth |
| Horrified | भयंकर | at | a sight |
| Hostile | शत्रुतापूर्ण/प्रतिकूल | to | a person |
| Healed | सही करने वाली (औषधि) | of | a disease |
| Held | काबू में रखा/रोके रखा | in | high esteem |
| Hurtful | दुःखदायी/हानिकारक/नुकसान देह | to | health |

### Nouns starting with 'H'

| Nouns | Hindi Meanings | Preposition | Meanings |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hope | आशा | of | something |
| Hope | आशा | for | something |
| Hunger | भूख | for | something |
| Heir | उत्तराधिकारी | to | the throne |
| Heir | उत्तराधिकारी | of | a person |
| Hindrance | रुकावट | to | a thing |
| Hint | संकेत | at | a thing |
| Hatred | घृणा | of/for | a person |
| Hatred | घृणा | of | something |
| Hostility | दुश्मनी | to | somebody |
| Harmony | सामञ्जस्य/समन्वय | with | a thing |

### Verbs starting with 'I'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Invite | आमंत्रित करना | to | dinner/lunch |
| Invest | रुपया लगाना | in | some projects |
| Introduce | परिचय कराना | to | a person |
| Interfere | हस्तक्षेप करना | with | a person |
| Interfere | हस्तक्षेप करना | in | something |
| Insist | आग्रह करना | on | doing something |
| Inquire | जाँच करना/तहकीकात करना | into | a matter |
| Inquire | पूछताछ करना | of | a person |
| Inquire | पूछताछ करना | about | something |
| Involve | फँसाना | in | something |
| Increase | बढ़ना | in | number |
| Inform | सूचित करना | of | something |
| Inform | सूचित करना | against | a person |
| Import | आयात करना | into | a country |
| Import | आयात करना | from | a country |
| Impress | प्रभाव डालना | on | a person |
| Impress | प्रभाव डालना | with | an idea |
| Impose | जुर्माना करना | on | a person |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Inflict | चोट पहुँचाना | on | a person |
| Initiate | आरंभ करना | into | an order. |
| Infer | नतीजा निकालना | from | one's remarks |
| Infest | भरमार होना | with | rats |
| Inspire | प्रेरणा देना | with | courage |
| Impart (a thing) | सूचना प्रदान करना | to | a person |
| Intrude (something) | थोपना/गले मढ़ना | on | ones' leisure |
| Intrude (something) | ठूँसना/घुसेड़ना | into | something |
| Impute | दोषारोपण करना | to | something |
| Indulge | लिप्त होना/शौक पूरा करना | in | wine |
| Incite (a person) | उकसाना भड़काना/उत्तेजित करना | to | some action |
| Indulge (oneself) | मजा लेना | with | wine |
| Intersect | विभक्त/विभाजित करना | with | each other |
| Intermingle (one thing) | परस्पर आश्रित होना | with | another |

## Adjectives starting with 'I'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Introduced | प्रवेश कराया गया | into | place |
| Inspired | प्रेरित | with | hope |
| Innocent | निर्दोष | of | a crime |
| Informed | सूचित किया गया | of | the fact |
| Ignorant | अनभिज्ञ | of | facts |
| Ill | बीमार | with | fever |
| Indifferent | उदासीन | to | one's interest |
| Injurious | हानिकारक | to | the health |
| Interested | रुचि रखने वाला | in | something |
| Interested | रुचि रखने वाला | in | a person |
| Intimate | घनिष्ठ | with | a person |
| Introduced | परिचय कराया गया | to | a person |
| Independent | स्वतंत्र | of | a thing |
| Identical | अनुरूप/समान | with | a thing |
| Impatient | व्याकुल | with | a person |
| Impatient | व्याकुल | at | something |
| Impatient | व्यग्र | of | something |
| Impertinent | असंगत | to | something |
| Incumbent | जरूरी | on/upon | a person |
| Indebted | आभारी/अनुगृहीत | to | a person |
| Indebted | आभारी/अनुगृहीत | for | something |
| Indebted | ऋणी | in | a large sum |
| Insensible | चेतनाहीन | to | shame |
| Invested | अधिकृत | with | full powers |
| Invested | निवेश किया गया | in | share market |
| Involved | फँसा हुआ/उलझा हुआ | in | something |

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Irrelevant | असंबद्ध/विसंगत | to | a topic |
| Inclined | प्रभावित/रुझान | to | laziness |
| Inclusive | सम्मिलित करके/मिलाकर | of | extras |
| Infected | संक्रमित/रोगाणुग्रस्त | with | small pox |
| Infested | कीड़े आदि की भरमार होना | with | rats |
| Irrespective | की परवाह न करते हुए/बिना किसी भेदभाव के | of | consequences |
| Indispensable | अनिवार्य/अत्यावश्यक | to | result |
| Intent | कृतसंकल्प/उतारू | on | doing something |
| Imbued | प्रभावित/सराबोर | with | confidence |
| Immersed | पानी में डूबा हुआ | in | water |
| Imperative | आदेशात्मक | on | a person |
| Impertinent | अभद्र/अशिष्ट | to | one's boss |
| Implicated | संबंधित/अपराध या अभियोग में फँसा हुआ | in | a crime |
| Indulgent | लाड़-प्यार दिखाने वाला | to | one's children |
| Infatuated | प्रेम में पागल/दिवाना/प्रेम में अंधा/आसक्त/मुग्ध | with | the idea/that girl. |

## Nouns starting with 'I'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Inquiry | पूछताछ | into | a matter |
| Identity | पहचान | with | a person |
| Identity | पहचान | with | a thing |
| Interest | रुचि | in | a thing |
| Interest | रुचि | with | a person |
| Invitation | आमंत्रण | to | a party |
| Interference | हस्तक्षेप | in | a thing |
| Interference | हस्तक्षेप | with | a thing |
| Impression | प्रभाव | on | a person |
| Impression | छाप | of | a thing |
| Impression | निशान | of | a person |
| Impediment | अड़चन/अड़ंगा | to/in | progress |
| Incentive | प्रेरक/प्रोत्साहक | to | work |
| Inclination | झुकाव/अभिरुचि | to/for | study |
| Indifference | उदासीनता/उपेक्षा | to | a thing |
| Indulgence | लत/आसक्ति | in | wine |
| Indulgence | तुष्टीकरण/पक्षपात | to | a person |
| Influence | प्रभाव | with/over | a person |
| Influence | प्रभाव | on | someone's actions |
| Interview | घनिष्ठता/गहरा स्नेह | with | a person |
| Intimacy | घनिष्ठता/निकट संबंध | with | a person |
| Information | सन्देह/समाचार/अनुभव | about/on | something |
| Investigation | जाँच-पड़ताल | of | an accident |
| improvement | सुधार/प्रगति | in | something |
| Improvement | किसी से अपेक्षाकृत अच्छा होना/बढ़कर होना | on | some other thing |
| Insight | अंतर्दृष्टि, ज्ञान | into | a man's character |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Intercourse | संसर्ग/सम्पर्क | with | a person |
| Immersion | डुबाना | into | water |
| Implication | उलझना | in | some crime |
| Implication | उलझाव | on | someone |
| Imputation | दोषारोपण | of | guilt |
| Imputation | आरोप/लाँछन | against | somebody |

### Verbs starting with 'J'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Jump | कूदना | at | a thing |
| Jump | पहुँचना | to | a conclusion |
| Jeer | हँसी उड़ाना | at | a person |
| Join | शामिल होना | in | a game |
| Judge | निर्णय करना | of | a thing |
| Join (one thing) | मिलाना/जोड़ना | to | another |
| Judge (a person) | निर्णय देना | by | his deeds |
| Jest | दिल्लगी करना/ हँसी उड़ाना | about | a thing |
| Just | इंसाफ करना | to | everyone |

### Adjectives starting with 'J'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Jealous | ईर्ष्यालु | of | a person |
| Jealous | ईर्ष्यालु | of | a thing |

### Nouns starting with 'J'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Jurisdiction | क्षेत्राधिकार | over | some place |
| Jurisdiction | न्याय करने का अधिकार | in | something |

### Verbs starting with 'K'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Keep away | से दूर रहना | from | wine |
| Keep | रखना | to | the point |
| Kick | घृणा दिखलाना | against | authority |
| Knock | खटखटाना | at | the door |

### Adjectives starting with 'K'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Kind | दयालु | to | all |
| Known | परिचित | to | all |

### Nouns starting with 'K'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Knowledge | ज्ञान | of | a thing |
| Knack | दक्षता | for | a thing |
| Knack | कौशल | of | doing something |
| Key | कुँजी | of | problems |

### Verbs starting with 'L'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Long | इच्छा रखना | for | a thing |
| Listen | सुनना | to | a person |
| Listen | सुनना | to | a thing |
| Land | उतरना | at | an airport |
| Laugh | हँसना | at | a person |
| Lead | ले जाना | to | Patna Market |
| Lead | फँसा देना | into | a thing |
| Lean | सहारा लेकर खड़ा होना | against | the wall |
| Learn | जानना | of | one's illness |
| Lack | अभाव होना | in | something |
| Live | जीवनयापन करना | on | fruits |
| Live | जीवन निर्वाह करना | within | one's income |
| Live | जीवन निर्वाह के लिए निर्भर करना | on | small income |
| Live | जीवकोपार्जन करना | by | hard work |
| Live | जीना | for | something |
| Live | रहना | at | a smaller place |
| Live | रहना | in | a bigger place |
| Look | खोजना | for | something |
| Labour | परिश्रम करना | for | the public good |
| Labour | परिश्रम करना | at | some work |
| Labour | परिश्रम करना | in | a good cause |
| Labour | परिश्रम करना | under | the management |
| Level | समतल करना | with | the ground |
| Lament | विलाप करना | for | the dead |
| Languish | हतोत्साहित होना | in | jail |
| Lean | निर्भर रहना | on | a staff |
| Lean | झुकाव होना/टिका होना | to | a certain opinion |
| Look | देखभाल करना | after | some business |
| Look | देखना/निगाह डालना | at | a person/thing |
| Look | ध्यान से समझना | into | a matter |
| Look | किसी चीज को जल्दी से जाँचना/पढ़ना | through | an account |
| Lust | तीव्र अभिलाषा होना/ रखना | for | riches |
| Look up | किसी की प्रशंसा करना/ इज्जत करना | to | something |
| Lay | व्यय करना | out | a hundred rupees |
| Lay | दिल में स्थान देना | to | heart |
| Lay | किसी के समक्ष कोई बात विचाराधीन रखना | before | a person |
| Land | जलपोत से जमीन पर जाना/उतरना | at | Mumbai |
| Laugh | किसी व्यक्ति के साथ हँसने में साथ देना | with | a person (share laughter with him) |
| Lay | भविष्य के लिए बचाकर एकत्र करना | by | money |
| Lay | प्राण न्यौछावर करना | down | one's life |
| Live | आमदनी से अधिक खर्च करना | beyond | one's means |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Lie | छिप कर प्रतीक्षा करना | in | wait |
| Look | अपने अतीत की ओर देखना | on | something |
| Lash | चाबुक मारना | with | a whip |
| Leave | प्रस्थान करना | for | a place |
| Lure (some body) | लुभाना/फुसलाना | into | a trap |

### Adjectives starting with 'L'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Lame | लँगड़ा | of | one leg |
| Liable | जिम्मेवार | for | something |
| Loyal | विश्वासपात्र | to | a person |
| Limited | सीमित | to | an area |
| Liable | जवाबदेह | to | a fine |

### Nouns starting with 'L'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Lack | अभाव | of | money |
| Liking | पसंद | for | a thing |
| Love | प्रेम | for | a thing |
| Lust | लालसा | for | money |
| Limit | सीमा | to | a thing |
| Look | दृष्टि | of | a thing |
| Lecture | व्याख्यान/भाषण | on | a subject |
| Longing | तीव्र इच्छा | for/after | a thing |
| Liability | बाध्यता | to | an illness |
| Libel | अपमान | against | a person |
| Liking | पसंद | for | a person |
| Leniency | उदारता/नरमी | to | a person |
| Leisure | अवकाश/फुरसत | for | amusement |
| Likeness | सम्भाव्यता | to | a person/thing |

### Verbs starting with 'M'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mourn | शोक करना | for | the dead |
| Merge | विलय होना | into | anything |
| Meet | मिलना | with | success |
| Marvel | चकित होना | at | the report |
| Marry | शादी करना | to | a person |
| Match | मिलाना | with | a thing |
| Mix | मिश्रित करना | with | water. |
| Murmur | शिकायत करना | at | injustice |
| Murmur | शिकायत करना | against | new taxes |
| Mediate | ध्यान करना | on | an issue |
| Mortgage (land) | बंधक रखना | to | a person |
| Make (Some thing) | निर्माण करना/ तैयार करना | of | a thing |
| Meddle | विघ्न डालना/ हस्तक्षेप करना | with | other men's business |
| Make | समझना/पता लगाना | out | the meaning |
| Make | क्षतिपूर्ति करना | up/for | some loss |
| Make | संकल्प करना | up | one's mind |
| Marvel | आश्चर्यचकित होना | at | report |
| Make | लेकर भाग जाना | off/with | stolen goods |

### Adjectives starting with 'M'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Married | विवाहित | to | a person |
| Mad | पागल | for | a thing |
| Mad | पागल | with | anger |
| Mistaken | भ्रमपूर्ण | for | a thing |
| Mistaken | भ्रमपूर्ण | about | a thing |
| Mistaken | गलत | in | a belief |
| Made | के लिए बना हुआ | for | a player |
| Made | का बना हुआ | of | iron |
| Moved | हृदय को द्रवित किया हुआ | to | tears |
| Moved | हृदय को द्रवित किया | with | pity |
| Moved | हृदय द्रवित हुआ | at | a sight |
| Moved | हृदय द्रवित हुआ | by | entreaties |
| Motive | कारण/प्रेरक | in/for | something |
| Mad | चिड़चिड़ा/क्रोधी | about/at | missing the train |
| Mindful | सावधान | of | something |

### Nouns starting with 'M'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Method | विधि/ढंग | of | doing something |
| Motive | उद्देश्य | of | an action |
| Malice | ईर्ष्या | against | a person |
| Match | एक सा/ समान/मेल खाता हुआ | for | something |
| Menace | खतरा/नुकसान | to | health |

### Adjectives starting with 'N'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Negligent | लापरवाह | of | one's duty |
| Negligent | लापरवाह | in | one's work |
| Necessary | आवश्यक | to | a thing |
| Notorious | कुख्यात | for | something bad |
| Natural | स्वाभाविक | to | a person |

### Nouns starting with 'N'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Need | आवश्यकता | of | money |
| Neglect | उपेक्षा | of | duty |
| Neglect | उपेक्षा | in | doing something |
| Nomination | नियुक्ति | to | a post |
| Nomination | नामांकन | of | a person |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Verbs starting with 'O'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Object | आपत्ति करना | to | doing something |
| Occur | ध्यान में आना | to | one's mind |
| Originate | प्रारंभ करना | with | a person |
| Originate | उत्पन्न होना | in | some place |
| Officiate | किसी पदाधिकारी के पद पर काम करना | for | a person |
| Operate | चीर-फाड़ करना | on | a patient |
| Offend | नाराज करना/क्रोधित करना | against | good taste |
| Overwhelm | भावविह्वल करना/अभिभूत करना | with | grief/kindness |

## Adjectives starting with 'O'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Obedient | आज्ञाकारी | to | one's parents |
| Obliged | आभारी | to | a person |
| Obliged | आभारी | for | something |
| Obnoxious | हानिकर | to | a person |
| Occupied | व्यस्त | with | a work |
| Occupied | व्यस्त | in | doing a work |
| Occupied | कब्जा | by | a person |
| Offensive | आक्रामक | to | a person |
| Overwhelmed | अभिभूत | with | grief |
| Offended | नाराज हुआ | with | a person |
| Oblivious | विस्मरणशील | of | the past |
| Offended | नाराज/क्रोधित | at | something done |
| Obstinate | जिद्दी/अड़ी | in | one's resistance |
| Opposite | प्रतिकूल/विपरीत | to | a place |
| Overcome | काबू पाना/पार करना | with | sorrow |
| Owing | इस वजह से | to | one's careless driving |
| Open | आलोचना का शिकार होना | to | conviction |
| Obligatory | अनिवार्य/बाध्यकारी/आभारी | on | a person |

## Nouns starting with 'O'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Obedience | आज्ञापालन | to | one's husband |
| Objection | एतराज/विरोध | to | one's going there |
| Opinion | विचार | on/about | something |
| Order | आदेश | for/against | doing something |
| Opportunity | अवसर | for | doing something |
| Obligation | आभार/दायित्व | to | a person |
| Offence | अपराध/भावना पर आघात | against | something (morality, laws) |
| (take) Offence | किसी बात पर नाराज हो जाना/बुरा मानना | at | something |
| Opposition | विरोधी | to | a person |
| Order | व्यवस्था, नियम/वस्तुओं का सही क्रम | for/against | doing a thing |

## Verbs starting with 'P'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Punish | सजा देना | for | something |
| Protect | बचाना | from | harm |
| Protect | रक्षा करना | against | the water |
| Profit | लाभ होना | by | the mistake of other |
| Prohibit | मना करना | from | doing something |
| Prevent | मना करना | from | doing something |
| Prevail | विजय पाना | upon | a person |
| Prevail | विजय पाना | over | one's enemy |
| Provide | आवश्यकता की पूर्ति करना | for | one's children |
| Provide | तैयार रखना | against | the evil day |
| Provide | प्रदान करना | with | something |
| Plunge | डुबकी लगाना | into | a river |
| Part | वियोग होना | with | a person |
| Part | अलग होना | with | a thing |
| Play | खेलना | with | a person |
| Play | बजाना | on | a musical instrument |
| Plot | षड्यंत्र करना | against | a person |
| Pray | प्रार्थना करना | for | pardon |
| Prepare | तैयार होना | for | the worst |
| Prepare | तैयार होना | against | harm |
| Preside | सभापतित्व करना | at/over | a meeting |
| Perish | नष्ट करना | by | the sword |
| Perish | मर्माहत होना | with | cold |
| Participate | सम्मिलित होना | with | a person |
| Participate | सम्मिलित होना | in | something |
| Pertain | संबंध रखना | to | a question |
| Prefer | अधिक पसंद करना | to | something |
| Pounce | झपटना | on | something |
| Proceed | पहले से प्रारंभ व्यापार को आगे बढ़ाना | with | a business |
| Proceed | कानूनी कार्रवाई करना | against | a person |
| Proceed | उत्पन्न होना | from | a thing |
| Proceed | शुरू करना | to | a business |
| Persist | आग्रह करना | in | doing something |
| Ponder | चिंतन करना | on/over | a subject |
| Provoke | उत्तेजित करना | to | a person |
| Pay | बदले में देना | for | one's broken watch |
| Pride (one self) | पर गर्व करना | on | a thing |
| Partake | भाग लेना/शरीक होना | in/of | the feast/a meal |
| Pass | स्वीकृत होना/मान जाना | for | a learned man |
| Persevere | निरंतर प्रयास करना | in | one's study |
| Pine | तड़पना/बेचैन होना | for | the lost child |
| Present | सामने रखना/भेंट करना | at | the bank |
| Present | विचारार्थ कोई वस्तु प्रस्तुत करना | to | a person |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Preserve | क्षति होने से बचाना | from | all harm |
| Press | प्रेरित करना | upon | a person |
| Protest | विरोध प्रदर्शित करना | against | injustice |
| Pass | भूल से छूट जाना/चुकना | over | something (regard) |
| Pass | गुजरना | by | a man's door |
| Pry | निहारना/ताक-झाँक करना | into | a secret |
| Purge (the mind) | शुद्ध करना | of | false notions |
| Put | ठहरना/बर्दाश्त करना | up with | a person/a thing |
| Point | संकेत | at | a person |
| Point | स्पष्ट करना | to | result |

## Adjectives starting with 'P'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Proud | घमंड | of | something |
| Proficient | निपुण | in | Mathematics |
| Profitable | लाभदायक | to | a person |
| Prepared | तैयार | for | something |
| Preferable | अधिक अच्छा | to | something |
| Polite | विनम्र | to | a person |
| Polite | विनम्र | in | manners |
| Peculiar | विचित्र | to | a person |
| Peculiar | विचित्र | to | a place |
| Partial | पक्षपाती | to | a person |
| Parallel | समानान्तर | to | a thing |
| Proper | (उपयुक्त) | for/to | an occasion |
| Popular | लोकप्रिय | with | one's neighbour |
| Pertinent | उपयुक्त | to | a question |
| Prodigal | खर्चीला | of | something |
| Prompt | तत्पर | in | doing something |
| Precious | बहुमूल्य | to | a person |
| Painful | कष्टदायक/दुःखदायी | to | one's feelings |
| Poor | निर्धन/गरीब | in | resources |
| Popular | लोकप्रिय | for | one's bravery |
| Possessed | कब्जे में | of | wealth |
| Possessed | आक्रांत/प्रभावित | with | an idea |
| Pleased | प्रसन्न/खुश | with | a person |
| Profuse | प्रचुर/अत्यधिक | in | something |
| Profuse | प्रचुर/अत्यधिक | with | one's money |

## Nouns starting with 'P'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Payment | भुगतान | for | something |
| Precaution | बचाव | against | something |
| Punishment | दंड | for | a crime |
| Preparation | तैयारी | for | examination |
| Prevention | बचाव | against | a disease |
| Prejudice | पक्षपात | against | a person |
| Prejudice | पक्षपात | against | a thing |
| Progress | उन्नति | in | something |
| Provision | प्रबंध | for | something |
| Preface | भूमिका | to | the book |
| Proof | प्रमाण | of | something |
| Preference | पसंद | for | one thing |
| Preference | पसंद | to/over | other thing |
| Partnership | साझेदारी | with | a person |
| Partnership | साझेदारी | in | a thing/a busines |
| Power | अधिकार/प्रभुत्व | over | a person |
| Proof | प्रमाण/सबूत | against | temptation/cold |
| Pride | अहंकार/घमंड | in | strength |
| Proficiency | दक्षता/प्रवीणता | in | mathematics/musi |
| Protest | प्रतिवाद/विरोध | against | a decision |
| Peace | सुलह करना/झगड़ा समाप्त करना | with | one's neighbour |
| Pity | दया | for | the poor |
| Penalty | दंड/किसी अपराध के कारण सजा | for | an offence |
| Pity | किसी पर तरस खाना | on | a person |
| Pursuit | प्राप्त करने का प्रयास | on | a person |
| Partiality | पक्षपात/तरफदारी | for | a person |
| Passion | उत्कंठा/लालसा | for | something (cricket, music) |
| Penance | प्रायश्चित/तपस्या | for | a guilt |
| Penetration | प्रवेश/वेधन | into | something (motive subject etc.) |
| Perseverance | दृढ़ता/धैर्य/निरन्तर उद्यम | in | something |
| Persistence | स्थिरता/निरन्तरता | in | an effort |
| Piety | ईश्वरभक्ति/पवित्रता | towards | God |
| Popularity | लोकप्रियता | with | people |
| Pretension | अधिकार/मिथ्या अभिमान | to | scholarship |
| Profit | लाभ | to | a seller |

Note : In pursuit of = खोज में/पकड़ने के प्रयास में

## Verbs starting with 'Q'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Quarrel | झगड़ना | with | a person |
| Quarrel | झगड़ना | over | a matter |
| Qualify | योग्य बनना | for | the post |
| Quarrel | झगड़ा/कलह करना | about | something |
| Quake | भय से बत्तख की बोली बोलना | with | fear |
| Quo'te | उद्धृत करना | from | a book |

Note: A quarrel with some one– किसी से झगड़ा मोल लेना
Quarrel with one's bread and butter– रोजी पर लात मारना

## Adjectives starting with 'Q'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Qualified | योग्य | for | something |
| Quick | तेज | at | Mathematics |
| Quick | फुर्तीला | of | understanding |
| Quarrelsome | झगड़ालू | with | everyone |

Note : Be quit of some body/something किसी से छुटकारा पान

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### Nouns starting with 'Q'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Quarrel | झगड़ा | with | a person |
| Quarrel | विवाद | between | two men |
| Qualification | योग्यता | for | the post |
| Quarrel | किसी से झगड़ा होना | against | a person / a thing |

### Verbs starting with 'R'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Replace | प्रतिस्थापित करना | by | something |
| Repose | विश्राम करना | on | a bed |
| Revolt | विद्रोह करना | against | the government |
| Rule | शासन करना | over | a country |
| Retaliate | प्रतिशोध लेना | on | an enemy |
| Remind | स्मरण दिलाना | of | something |
| Refrain | दूर रहना | from | something |
| Rebel | विद्रोह करना | against | the authority |
| Recover | चंगा होना | from | an illness |
| Refer | उल्लेख करना | to | a book |
| Rejoice | खुश होना | at | something |
| Rely | निर्भर करना | on | a person |
| Rely | निर्भर करना | on | a thing |
| Repent | पश्चाताप करना | of | an action |
| Restrain | रोकना | from | an act |
| Result | घटित होना | from | a cause |
| Result | परिणाम निकलना | in | consequence |
| Reconcile | निपटारा करना | to | one's work |
| Reconcile | मैत्री करना | with | an opponent |
| Revenge | बदला लेना | on | one's enemy |
| Reproach | धिक्कारना | with | a fault |
| Reward | पुरस्कृत करना | with | something |
| Reflect | इज्जत पर बट्टा लगाना | on | one's character |
| Relieve (one) | भारमुक्त करना | of | a task |
| Rob (a person) | किसी व्यक्ति से कोई वस्तु छीन लेना | of | something |
| Run | पीछा करना | after | wealth |
| Run | ऋणग्रस्त होना | in | debt |
| Resolve | निश्चय करना | on | going there |
| Resolve | पृथक करना | into | factors |
| Rest | आराम करना | with | a person |
| Rail | दोष निकालना/तीखी शिकायत करना | at / against | anyone |
| Relate | संबंध होना/जोड़ना | to | a matter |
| Render | अनुवाद करना | from | one language |
| Render | अनुवाद करना | into | another language |
| Repose (confidence) | भरोसा करना | in | a person |
| Rid | हटाना/निकालना/मुक्त या साफ करना | of | an unwelcome thing |
| Reason | तर्क / विचार-विमर्श करना | with | a person |
| Reason | तर्क/विचार-विमर्श करना | about | a thing |
| Reprimand (a person) | फटकारना | for | a fault |
| Relapse | पूर्वस्थिति में लौटना | into | idleness |
| Recoil | भयभीत होना/चौंकना | from | doing something |
| Recoil | टकराकर वापस आना/पलटकर आना | on / upon | a thing |
| Reply | उत्तर देना/जवाब देना | to | a letter |
| Research | खोज करना/शोध करना | on | something |
| Remonstrate | प्रतिवाद करना | with | a person |
| Remand | अधिक जानकारी प्राप्त करने के लिए किसी अपराधी को फिर से हिरासत में भेजना | for | four days |
| Remonstrate | प्रतिवाद करना | against | unlawful acts |
| Remonstrate | प्रतिवाद करना | about | one's misbehaviour |

### Adjective starting with 'R'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Related | संबंधित | to | a person |
| Reduced | न्यून/कम | to | poverty |
| Respectful | आदरपूर्ण | to | all |
| Responsible | उत्तरदायी | for | a thing |
| Responsible | उत्तरदायी | to | a person |
| Restricted | प्रतिबंधित | to | place / person |
| Rich | अमीरी | in | something |
| Ready | तैयारी | for | something |
| Ready | तैयार | in | one's answer |
| Relevant | प्रासंगिक/संबद्ध | to | the statement point |
| Replete | परिपूर्ण | with | examples |
| Requisite | अपेक्षित | for | something |
| Requisite | अपेक्षित | for | a purpose |
| Respectful | सम्मानपूर्ण | towards | one's superiors |
| Reckless | असावधान/लापरवाह | of | expenditure |
| Regardless | सत्कारहीन/अनादर युक्त | of | consequences |
| Repentant | पश्चाताप करने वाला | of | one's sin |
| Revenge | बदला लेना | on | a person for doing something |
| Rid | मुक्त करना | of | trouble |
| Rich | अमीर | in | something |
| Reconciled | मेल-मिलाप/पुनर्मिलन झगड़ा निपटाना | with | an opponent |
| Reconciled | अनुकूल | to | one's fate |
| Repugnant | निराशाजनक/प्रतिकूल | to | one's wishes |
| Resolved | दृढ़/निश्चय/संकल्पित | on | doing a thing |

### Nouns starting with 'R'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Request | प्रार्थना | for | a thing |
| Reply | जवाब | to | a letter |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Reward | ईनाम | for | a thing |
| Revenge | बदला लेना | on/upon | a person |
| Revenge | प्रतिशोध लेना | for | the insult |
| Response | प्रतिक्रिया | to | something |
| Respect | आदर | for | a person |
| Relief | आराम | from | some trouble |
| Remedy | इलाज/उपचार | for | an illness |
| Relation | संबंध | with | a person |
| Regret | पश्चाताप | for | something |
| Recovery | सही हालत में हो जाना | from | an illness |
| Rivalry | प्रतियोगिता | with | a person |
| Readiness | तत्परता | at | figures |
| Readiness | तत्परता | in | answering |
| Readiness | शीघ्रता | for | journey |
| Reason | कारण/वजह | for | a thing |
| Reason | कारण/वजह | against | a thing |
| Reflection | कोई बात जो बदनामी का कारण होती है | on | one's character |
| Reference | संकेत/निर्देश/संदर्भ | to | a thing/a person |
| Regard [with/in] | संबंध/मामला | for | a man's feelings |
| Regard | इस संबंध में | to | something |
| Relapse | फिर से गिरना/पिछड़ना | into | a bad habit |
| Relation | संबंध | of | one thing to another |
| Relation | संबंध | between | two persons |
| Reliance | भरोसा/विश्वास | on | a man's words |
| Relish | पसंद/स्वाद/मनोरंजन | for | food |
| Remorse | पश्चाताप | for | a crime |
| Reply | उत्तर/जवाब | to | a letter |
| Repentance | पश्चाताप/पछतावा | of | sin |
| Reputation | नाम/कीर्ति/यश प्रतिष्ठा | for | boldness |
| Request | प्रार्थना | for | a thing |
| Request | प्रार्थना | to | a person |
| Resignation | समर्पण/पदत्याग/इस्तीफा | to | fate |
| Resistance | विरोध/प्रतिरोध | to | injustice |
| Respect | प्रशंसा/श्रद्धा/आदर/प्रतिष्ठा | for | a man/rules |
| Result | परिणाम /नतीजा | of | an action |
| Reverence | महान आदर/पूज्यभाव | for | teachers |
| Revolt | विद्रोह/क्रांति | against | tyranny |
| Rival | प्रतिस्पर्धा/दुश्मनी | in | business |
| Reaction | प्रतिक्रिया | to | something |
| Resemblance | एकरूपता/समरूपता | to | a person/a thing |
| Resemblance | एकरूपता/समरूपता | between | two persons or things |
| Ratio | अनुपात | of | one to six |
| Remonstrance | आपत्ति/एतराज | against | a person's conduct |
| Remonstrance | आपत्ति/एतराज | with | a person |

## Verbs starting with 'S'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Save | बचाना | from | harm |
| Send | भेजना | for | a person |
| Send | भेजना | for | a thing |
| Shelter | आश्रय लेना | from | the rain |
| Share | बाँटना | in | another's troubles |
| Stare | टकटकी लगाकर देखना | at | a person |
| Stare | टकटकी लगाकर देखना | in | the face |
| Struggle | संघर्ष करना | for | the right |
| Struggle | संघर्ष करना | against | wrong |
| Succeed | सफल होना | in | something |
| Suffer | तकलीफ सहना | from | a disease |
| Surrender | शत्रु के सामने नतमस्तक होना | to | the enemy |
| Supply | उपलब्ध कराना | to | a person |
| Submit | सामने रखना | to | an authority |
| Suspect | शक करना | of | something |
| Sympathize | सहानुभूति दिखाना | with | a person |
| Sympathize | सहानुभूति दिखाना | in | one's troubles |
| Supply | आपूर्ति करना | with | a thing |
| Succeed | सफल होना | to | the throne |
| Smile | मुस्कराना | at | a person |
| Search | खोजना | for | the lost watch |
| Seek | ढूँढना/प्रयास करना | for | happiness |
| Substitute (something) | स्थानापन्न करना | for | something |
| Search | जाँच पड़ताल करना | into | a matter |
| Seek | खोजना | after | happiness |
| Set | प्रारंभ करना/काम में जुट जाना | about | a business |
| Set | हमला करना | on/upon | a traveller |
| Shoot | घायल करना/जान से मारना | at | a target |
| Smell | सूँघना/गंध लेना | of | fish |
| Speak | संक्षिप्त रूप से बोलना | of | a subject |
| Speak | विस्तृत रूप से बोलना | on | a subject |
| Speak | शिकायत करना/फटकारना | to | a friend |
| Stand | विरोध करना | against | an enemy |
| Stand | समर्थन/प्रतीक्षा करना पक्ष में खड़े होना | by | a friend |
| Stand | डटे रहना/जमे रहना | to | one's opinion |
| Start | प्रस्थान करना | for | Patna |
| Stick | चिपके रहना | to | the point |
| Strike | हमला करना | at | a dog |
| Strike (some body) | नाम हटा देना | of | something |
| Strip (a person) | नंगा करना/उतार देना | of | one's cloth/property |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Succeed | सफल/कामयाब होना | in | an undertaking |
| Sue | निवेदन/अनुनय-विनय करना | for | peace |
| Sweep (the dirt) | साफ करना | off | the floor |
| Sail | यात्रा करना (नाव/जहाज से) | for | a foreign country |
| Scoff | मजाक करना/ताना मारना | at | something |
| See | विचार करना | into | an affair |
| See | देखभाल करना | to | business |
| Side | झगड़े में समर्थ करना | with | a person |
| Side | समर्थन करना | in | a dispute |
| Stand | शिष्टाचार का जरूरत से ज्यादा पालन करना | on | ceremonies |
| Show | प्रदर्शन करना | over | one's new house |
| Shudder | भयभीत होना | at | one's act of cruelty |
| smile (fortune) | | upon | a person |
| Subscribe | चंदा देना | to | the flood relief fund |
| Sentence (a person) | दंड देना/निर्णय देना | to | imprisonment |
| Stoop | पतित होना/गिरना | to | dishonesty |
| Strike | आक्रमण करना | on | a target |
| Succumb | मरना/चापलूसी के कारण मार्ग से भटक जाना | to | injuries/bribery |
| Subject (a person) | का विषय बनाना/के प्रभाव में डालना | to | torture |
| Satiate | संतुष्ट करना | with | food |
| Subsist | जीवित रहना/जीना | on | food |

## Adjectives starting with 'S'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Similar | सदृश | to | something |
| Sacred | पवित्र | to | a person |
| Satisfied | संतुष्ट | with | something |
| Sensitive | जरा-सी बात का बुरा मान जाने वाला | to | something |
| Shocked | आघात | at | one's behaviour |
| Shocking | धक्का पहुँचाया गया | to | everybody |
| Similar | अनुरूप | to | a person |
| Skilful | चतुर | in | doing something |
| Slow | मंद गति से चलना | at | something |
| Slow | मंद गति से चलना | in | making up one's mind |
| Sorry | उदास | for | a person |
| Sorry | उदास | about | something |
| Subject | अधिकार में होना | to | rules |
| Sufficient | पर्याप्त | for | a purpose |
| Suitable | उचित | for | a purpose |
| Sure | निश्चित | of | success |
| Suspicious | शंकापूर्ण | of | a person |
| Short | अल्प/कम होना | of | money |
| Sanguine | आशापूर्ण | of | success |
| Suited | योग्य | to | the occasion |
| Satisfactory | संतोषजनक/पर्याप्त | to | a person |
| Secure | सुरक्षित करना/सुदृढ़ करना | from | harm |
| Secure | सुरक्षित करना/सुदृढ़ करना | against | attack |
| Silent | शांत/चुप | on/about | a subject |
| Slow | धीमा करना | of | speech |
| Stained | धब्बा लगा हुआ/कलंकित | with | blood/crime |
| Steeped | पाप में डूबा हुआ या अज्ञान में | in | vice/ignorance |
| Strange | अनोखा/अजीब | to | a person |
| Suited | अनुकूल/उपयुक्त | to/for | a post |
| Serviceable | कामनायक | to | a person |
| Sick | दुःखी होना | of | being blamed |
| Sympathetic | सहानुभूतिपूर्ण | to | sufferers |
| Simultaneous | एक ही समय में होने वाला/समकालीन | with | an event |
| Startled | भौंचक्का/अचंभित | at | a sight |
| Subject | उन्मुक्त करना | to | authority |
| Subsequent | आगामी/आने वाले | to | another event |
| Subordinate | सहायक स्थिति में रखना | to | a person |
| Suitable | ठीक/सही/उचित | for/to | the occasion |
| Synonymous | समानार्थक/पर्याय | with | another word |
| Satiated | तृप्त | with | pleasure/a thing |

## Nouns starting with 'S'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Search | खोज | for/after | money |
| (in) Search | खोज में | of | a job |
| Sin | पाप | against | God |
| Skill | निपुणता | in | something |
| Stranger | अजनबी | to | a place |
| Surprise | आश्चर्य | at | something |
| Sympathy | सहानुभूति | for/with | a person |
| Superiority | वरिष्ठता | over | a person |
| Share | अंश/हिस्सा/भाग | in | the property/a thing |
| Share | हिस्सा/भाग | with | a person |
| Share | हिस्सा/भाग | of | a thing |
| Sympathy | सहानुभूति | with | a cause |
| Submission | आज्ञाकारिता | to | authority |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Succession | उत्तराधिकार देने का कार्य | to | an estate |
| Supplement | परिशिष्ट/पूरक | to | a book |
| Substitute | प्रतिस्थापित | for | something else |
| Suggestion | सुझाव/सलाह | for | some course of action |
| Subscription | अंशदान/चंदा | to | the famine relief |
| (A) Slave | दास/गुलाम | to | bad habits |
| (The) Slave | दास/गुलाम | of | bad habits |
| Slur | कलंक/बदनामी | on | one's character |
| Sorrow | अफसोस/शोक/संताप | for | misfortune |
| Stain | कलंक/धब्बा | on | one's character |

## Verbs starting with 'T'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Testify | प्रमाण देना | to | a fact |
| Think | विचार करना | of/about | something |
| Think | चिन्तन करना | over | a matter |
| Throw | फेंकना | at | a person |
| Translate | अनुवाद करना | into | English |
| Trespass | हस्तक्षेप करना | against | rules |
| Trespass | अतिक्रमण करना | on/upon | a person's land |
| Trespass | अनाधिकार प्रवेश करना | into | a person's house |
| Trust | विश्वास करना | in | a person |
| Trust | विश्वास करना | to | one's honesty |
| Triumph | विजयी होना | over | vice |
| Tremble | काँपना/थरथराना | with | fear |
| Trade | नयी खरीद के मूल्य के रूप में अपनी पुरानी चीज दे देना | in | some goods |
| Trade | व्यापार करना | with | a country |
| Trade | अनुचित लाभ उठाना | on/upon | the weakness |
| Tower | बहुत योग्य होना | above | a person |
| Touch | किसी स्थान पर पहुँचना | at | a place |
| Touch | थोड़ा सा प्रकाश डालना | on/upon | a subject |
| Threaten (some one) | धमकी देना/भय दिखाना | with | a consequence |
| Think | पर विचार करना | over | a matter |
| Think | ध्यान देना/विचार या चिन्तन करना | of/about | a thing |
| Taste | स्वाद लेना/चखना | of | salt |
| Tell | वर्णन करना | of/about | an event |
| Tamper | अनधिकृत परिवर्तन करना | with | records |
| Talk | बातचीत करना | with/to | a person |
| Talk | विचार करना | over | a matter |
| Talk | बातचीत करना | of/about | an event |
| Treat | किसी विषय पर कुछ लिखना/ कहना | of | a subject |

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Treat | व्यवहार करना | with | a person |
| Tide | मुसीबत में सहायता करना | over | a crisis |
| Translate | अनुवाद करना | into | English |
| Turn | प्रवेश करना | into | the restaurant |
| Turn | सेवा से निकाल देना | away | three servants |
| Take | स्वयं को किसी बात का आदी बनाना | to | a bad habit |
| Take | मान लेना/गलत समझ बैठना | for | the truth |
| Take | पसंद करने लगना | to | a person |
| Take | काम में लगाना | on | a task |
| Take (revenge) | मुकाबला करना | on | a person |
| Take | रुचि लेना | up | music (Study) |
| Trifle | तिरस्कार करना | with | a man's feeling |
| Trust | विश्वास करना | in | honesty |
| Tear | बुरा भला कहना/ आक्रमण करना | into | a person/a thing |
| Thank | धन्यवाद देना | for | the party |
| Tinker | कच्चा काम करना | at/with | something |
| Trace | तलाश करना/ढूँढ़ना | to | a place |
| Tire | थक जाना | of | work |
| Trample | रौंदना | on | somebody's toes |
| try | प्रयास करना | to | come |
| tamper | रिश्वत देकर दबाव डालना | with | a jury |

## Adjective starting with 'T'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tired | थका हुआ | of | doing something |
| Thankful | अहसानमंद | for | one's mercy |
| True | सत्य | to | one's friends |
| Thankful | अहसानमंद | for | something |
| Tired | थका हुआ | with | one's exertion |
| Temperate | आत्मसंयमी | in | one's habit |
| Thankful | अहसानमन्द | to | a person |

## Nouns starting with 'T'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Talent | निपुणता | for | something |
| Taste | स्वाद | for | music |
| Thirst | प्यास | for | something |
| Tolerance | सहनशीलता | for | something |
| Temptation | लालच | to | evil |
| Traitor | देशद्रोही | to | one's country |
| Taste (experience) | अनुभव करना | of | hard work |
| Taste (liking) | पसंद/रुचि | for | hard work |
| Temperance | आत्मसंयम | in | diet |
| Testimony | प्रमाण | to/against | a man's character |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### Nouns starting with 'U'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Use | उपयोग | of | something |
| Use | उपयोग | for | something |

### Adjective starting with 'U'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Useful | उपयोगी | for | many purposes |
| Unequal | असमान | to | the task |
| Unfit | अयोग्य | for | the job |
| Unjust | अन्याय | to | a person |
| Uneasy | बेचैन | about | consequences |

### Verbs starting with 'V'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Venture | जोखिम उठाना | upon | an undertaking |
| Vie | स्पर्धा या होड़ करना | with | another person |
| Vote | मतदान करना | for | a person/a thing |
| Vote | समर्थन/विरोध करना | against | a person/a thing |
| (with) a View | इस इरादे से | to | reaching there in time |

### Nouns starting with 'V'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Victim | मुसीबत का शिकार | of | a trick |
| Victory | विजय | over | one's enemy |

### Adjectives starting with 'V'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vain | व्यर्थ | of | one's beauty |
| Versed | कुशल | in | Mathematics |
| Vexed | परेशान | at | one's failure |
| Vexed | परेशान | with | a person |
| Vested | निहित स्वार्थ | in | a person |
| Void | रहित | of | meaning |
| Veiled | नाड़ीगय | in | mystery |
| Victorious | विजेता | over | difficulties |

### Verbs starting with 'W'

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Wait | प्रतीक्षा करना | at | the station |
| Wait | प्रतीक्षा करना | for | a person |
| Wait | प्रतीक्षा करना | for | a thing |
| Warn | चेतावनी देना | of | the danger |
| Warn | चेतावनी देना | against | a person |
| Warn | चेतावनी देना | against | a thing |
| Wonder | आश्चर्यित होना | at | one's stupidity |
| Wonder | आश्चर्यित होना | about | something |
| Wish | इच्छा करना | for | something |
| Withdraw | वापस हट जाना | from | a contest |
| Wrestle | कुश्ती लड़ना | with | an adversary |
| Wish | शुभकामना देना | for | a person |
| Work | रचना/कृति करना | at | mathematics |
| Work | काम करना | for | small wages |
| Wait | भेंट करना | on | a person |
| Wink | जानबूझकर ध्यान न देना | at | one's fault |
| Weep | विलाप करना/रोना | for | a misfortune |
| Write | लिखना | in | ink/pencil |
| Write | लिखना | with | a pen or pencil |

### Adjectives starting with 'W'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Weak | कमजोर | in | Mathematics |
| Worth | योग्य | for | praise |
| Wanting | कमी/अभाव | in | something |
| Weak | दुर्बल/कमजोर | of | understanding |
| Weary | नीरस/उबाऊ | of | doing nothing |
| Welcome | सत्कार/अभिनंदन/स्वागत | to | my house |
| Worthy | योग्य/लायक | of | praise |
| Wide | विषय से हटकर/अप्रासंगिक | of | the mark |

### Nouns starting with 'W'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Want | अभाव/चाह | of | money |
| Warrant | गिरफ्तारी | for | one's arrest |
| Witness | गवाही | to | something |
| Wonder | आश्चर्य | at | somebody's behaviour |
| Wonder | आश्चर्य | at | something |

### Verbs starting with 'Y'

| Verbs | Hindi Meanings | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Yield | उत्पन्न करना | to | temptation |
| Yearn | तीव्र इच्छा करना | for | affection |

### Adjectives starting with 'Z'

| Adjectives | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Zealous | उत्साही | for | improvement |
| Zealous | उत्साही | in | a cause |

### Nouns starting with 'Z'

| Nouns | Hindi Meaning | Preposition | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| Zeal | उत्साह | for | something |
| Zest | जोश/अभिरुचि | for | something |

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions :*

1. The calculator is ..... the table.
2. He was angry ..... me.
3. That man is found guilty ..... theft.
4. Your teacher is not satisfied ..... your study.
5. He should take care ..... his health.
6. Mukesh travelled ..... train.
7. She jumped ..... the well



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



8. You must beware ..... tigers.
9. He quarrelled ..... my brother.
10. The thieves broke ..... his house.
11. R.K. thakur is senior ..... me.
12. Meena is satisfied ..... her husband.
13. His wife died ..... cancer.
14. My father was acquainted ..... him.
15. He prefers tea ..... coffee.
16. I am fond ..... music.
17. My wife has been suffering ..... fever for two days.
18. The teacher congratulated her ..... her success.
19. Gandhijee was born ..... 1869.
20. The aeroplane was flying ..... the clouds.
21. The police inspector enquired ..... the case.
22. His beloved prevented him ..... going there.
23. The car is running ..... seventy kilometres an hour.
24. He complained ..... his classmate.
25. Distribute these apples ..... the children.
26. He aimed his pistol ..... the criminal.
27. What is the time ..... your watch ?
28. My neighbour is jealous ..... me.
29. His teacher ordered him to write ..... ink.
30. The dog sprang ..... the table.
31. It has been raining heavily ..... Sunday last.
32. Please open your book ..... page forty.
33. The examination begins ..... Wednesday.
34. The Mughal ruled ..... India.
35. Raman has no acquaintance ..... charchika.
36. Sunil offered her an apology ..... his misbehaviour.
37. He is a candidate ..... the primary teacher.
38. He has confidence ..... his success.
39. Mr. Gupta felt grief ..... the death of his brother.
40. She praised his obedience ..... his father.
41. Akbar was an heir ..... the throne.
42. Her husband is addicted ..... gambling.
43. That student acted contrary .....the instructions of the principal.
44. The dog is very faithful ..... his master.
45. Prabha is good ..... Mathematics.
46. She was proficient ..... English.
47. Is that boy related ..... you ?
48. He was shocked ..... the news of his father's death.
49. This shirt is similar ..... that.
50. You should abstain ..... bad things.
51. He apologized ..... the teacher for his mistake.
52. He never despaired ..... success.
53. The shopkeeper deals ..... Nepalese goods.
54. Mohan deals fairly ..... his friend.
55. Some goods are imported ..... America ..... India.
56. I have informed the police inspector ..... the terrorist.
57. He was prohibited ..... doing this work.
58. The two sisters quarrelled ..... themselves.
59. Your answer is ..... the point.
60. Manoj will return ..... a week.
61. The medicine cured her ..... her disease.
62. He arrived ..... the station ... 10 a.m.
63. Rajendra borrowed Rs. 1000 ..... him.
64. She did not hide the truth ..... her husband.
65. His wife insisted ..... his leaving the place at once.
66. Someone was knocking ..... the door.
67. We must protest ..... injustice.
68. The happiness of your country consists ..... the freedom of its citizens.
69. Good students are respectful ..... all.
70. She exchanged the blouse ..... the handkerchief.
71. The old man is affectionate ..... all.
72. He compared her face ..... the moon.
73. They were making arrangements ..... the function.
74. As soon as he received the call ..... his residence he left the office.
75. The Student did not pay attention ..... what the teacher said.
76. The house was ..... fire.
77. He is ambitious ..... fame.
78. I am ignorant ..... my brother's misconduct.
79. Death is preferable ..... disgrace.
80. He is pleased ..... my performance.
81. Listen ..... your teacher carefully.
82. He gazed ..... the beautiful scenery.
83. He reminded you ..... your promise.
84. Mukesh is appointed ..... the vacant post.
85. He is disgusted ..... my conduct.
86. Binay is not eligible ..... this post.
87. Health is essential ..... happiness.
88. Your religious views are different ..... his.
89. Quinine is remedy ..... malaria.
90. He has sent me an invitation ..... dinner.
91. His great pride ..... his health is foolish.
92. ..... advising me, he gave me money.
93. I am true ..... the publisher.
94. He has been learning music ..... two years.
95. It is difficult for me to part ..... money.
96. The young man was killed ..... a criminal ..... a knife.
97. He will become a regular student ..... tomorrow.
98. He has been unwell ..... Saturday.
99. He was staying ..... Jajuar, a big village ..... Bihar.
100. The train is ..... time.

Q. 2. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. They walked (1)/besides (2)/each other (3)/in silence. (4)/No error (5)
2. His relation (1)/to Kalpana (2)/is (3)/good. (4)/No error (5)
3. The teacher (1)/has not (2)/control upon (3)/the students. (4)/No error (5)
4. We (1)/travelled (2)/with steamer (3)/to reach there. (4)/No error (5)
5. His statement (1)/is very much (2)/similar about (3)/yours. (4)/No error (5)
6. The shopkeeper (1)/deals with grain (2)/but did not deal (3)/honestly with me. (4)/No error (5)
7. He (1)/appealed to the judge (2)/for his release (3)/from jail. (4)/No error (5)
8. I complained against (1)/the magistrate (2)/against Munna (3)/about his misconduct. (4)/No error (5)
9. We (1)/are (2)/responsible for God (3)/for our actions. (4)/No error (5)
10. The doctor referred (1)/the patient for the P.M.C.H (2)/without (3)/examining him. (4)/No error (5)
11. My cousin has been (1)/married with (2)/the richest man (3)/of the village. (4)/No error (5)
12. He was (1)/shocked to hear that (2)/her mother (3)/died of an accident. (4)/No error (5)
13. Mr. Kishori Thakur (1)/is (2)/blind (3)/with one eye. (4)/No error (5)
14. On a holiday (1)/I prefer (2)/writing than going out (3)/visiting friends. (4)/No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



15. I have been working on (1)/the problem from a long time (2)/but is still not (3)/able to solve it. (4)/No error (5)
16. Mr. Mishra and his wife (1)/were invited (2)/for the cultural function (3)/at my house. (4)/No error (5)
17. Beside chocolate (1)/they also bought (2)/many balloons (3)/for the child. (4)/No error (5)
18. Yesterday, Binay (1)/came across with (2)/one of his (3)/old friends. (4)/No error (5)
19. Of what I know (1)/of her (2)/I hesitate to (3)/trust in him. (4)/No error (5)
20. He left to Delhi (1)/this morning (2)/for some (3)/official work. (4)/No error (5)
21. He cannot (1)/prevent (2)/me (3)/to go there. (4)/No error (5)
22. My book has been (1)/missing (2)/from my room (3)/till Yesterday. (4)/No error (5)
23. Akbar (1)/came on the throne (2)/at a very (3)/early age. (4)/No error (5)
24. You (1)/must provide (2)/to your children (3)/against the evil day. (4)/No error (5)
25. I will (1) /send you (2)/this book (3)/latest by 10th february. (4)/No error (5)

Q. 3. *Correct the following sentences :*

1. His wife was dressed up black.
2. She is married with a rich man.
3. Are you careful to your health ?
4. The old man died of overeating.
5. This is different to the other.
6. His suggestion was helpful for me.
7. Her dress is made up silk.
8. I depend over my publisher's word.
9. She is greedy of money.
10. He has no acquaintance to this man.
11. The publisher's capacity of hard work seems unlimited.
12. My wife prevented me to speaking.
13. What are you laughing ?
14. Is Manu coming in plane ?
15. Ruby has been absent from Monday last.
16. Mr. Thakur stood among Aditi and Aditya.
17. Poverty comes from idleness.
18. My brother in-law travelled by a bicycle.
19. Did he stay on home yesterday ?
20. The workers work in the factory from 10 a.m. and 4. p.m.
21. The train comes on 6 O'clock.
22. Milk sells by Rs 22/a litre.
23. I was born in June 9, 1972
24. Kumharar Park is close of my residence.
25. He will come up on Monday.
26. I congratulated her at her success in the SBI Examination.
27. We must be faithful of our master.
28. What is the time from your watch?
29. He prefers milk than tea.
30. He enquired me of the murder.
31. The master has no control on his servants.
32. She relied upon my co-operation.
33. We have duty for our parents.
34. Let me glance on that beautiful girl.
35. He is quick in understanding.
36. An enquiry was made in the matter.
37. An old man is accused to crime.
38. He feels sure to his success.
39. I have no reliance over your word.
40. He was not aware to your intention.
41. There is no limit of his zeal.
42. The police inspector went to his constable.
43. What will you do by this little book ?
44. He complained upon me.
45. Mr. Prasad has signed to the contract.
46. He persisted to say this
47. I insisted on him to go away.
48. She assisted to do this.
49. Due to the accident, he could not go.
50. He is busy in his work.

Q. 4. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. They all met in a room (1)/which was close to the centre (2)/to discuss about the plan of action. (3)/No error (4)
2. When the police accused him with theft, (1)/nobody believed them, (2)/as he was well known for his honesty. (3)/No error (4)
3. The meeting sheduled to be held (1)/between 2 P.M. to 3 P.M. (2)/was postponed suddenly. (3)/No error (4)
4. He was conferred with an honorary D. Litt. degree (1)/in recognition of his services (2)/to the cause of learning. (3)/No error (4)
5. The myth that some races (1)/are naturally superior than others (2)/has now been fully demolished. (3)/No error (4)
6. This particular issue (1)/has been hanging in fire (2)/for a long time. (3)/No error (4)
7. In the past (1)/people travelled (2)/by foot. (3)/No error (4)
8. You should know (1)/that the ultimate decision in the matters (2)/rests upon the board of directors. (3)/No error (4)
9. In some tribal areas (1)/people worship snakes (2)/and are not scared from them. (3) No error (4)
10. His new proposal (1)/seems hardly different (2)/than that the one I've just rejected. (3)/No error (4)
11. To lead a well-balanced life (1)/you shall have to cultivate other interests (2)/beside your professional ones. (3)/No error (4)
12. After nagging constantly for months (1)/and administering weekly tests (2)/the teacher was at least pleased for the boys' progress. (3)/No error (4)
13. I'd appreciate spending half an hour with you (1)/to discuss about how these and other experience (2)/might be mutually beneficial. (3)/No error (4)
14. The teacher was happy (1)/when he entered the class (2)/which comprised of a hundred students. (3)/ No error (4)
15. Yet, firms and other concerns are spending large sums of money all the time (1)/and some how we take this for granted (2)/and never stop to wonder where it comes from. (3)/No error (4)
16. Thank for your invitation for lunch (1) which I am very pleased (2)/to accept. (3)/No error (4)
17. Both the boys (1)/came late in the hall (2)/and sat besides me. (3)/No error (4)
18. I signed on the receipt (1)/in the morning but the pay (2)/has not been disbursed to me. (3)/No error (4)
19. In my opinion (1)/a pencil is always (2)/preferable than a pen. (3)/No error (4)
20. You must make up the (1)/time you wasted this afternoon (2)/by working late over to night. (3)/ No error (4)
21. The extraordinary ability of the satellites to (1)/see, listen and communicate has made them integral with (2)/modern warfare and nuclear war strategies in particular. (3)/No error (4)
22. He looked like a lion (1)/baulked from (2)/its prey. (3)/No error (4)
23. Often in political campaigns, a point is reached at which (1)/the candidates take out their gloves (2)/and start slagging with bare fists. (3)/No error (4)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



24. One of the major aims of the Air force (1)/was the complete demolition of all means of transportation (2)/by the bombing of rail lines and terminals. (3)/No error (4)
25. The celebrated singer was (1)/surrounded by the usual crowd (2)/of lackeys and hangers-in. (3)/No error (4)

**Q. 5.** *Choose the most suitable preposition :*

1. He was astonished ..... the sad news.
(a) at (b) in (c) with (d) to
2. He is confident ..... his success.
(a) of (b) for (c) about (d) towards
3. Exercise is beneficial ..... health.
(a) towards (b) for (c) to (d) in
4. My wife always grumbles ..... her bad luck.
(a) in (b) over (c) at (d) upon
5. We travelled ..... boat to reach Sri Lanka.
(a) by (b) on (c) for (d) about
6. His statement is very much similar ..... mine.
(a) to (b) of (c) about (d) on
7. He is jealous ..... me.
(a) with (b) into (c) of (d) at
8. She has a passion ..... dance and music.
(a) upon (b) at (c) in (d) for
9. He came ..... me in the market.
(a) at (b) into (c) across (d) of
10. No one can hinder him ..... doing this.
(a) into (b) from (c) for (d) of
11. Good sleep is necessary ..... good health
(a) of (b) for (c) at (d) from
12. I beg pardon ..... you for being late.
(a) with (b) of (c) for (d) off
13. Only the blood stained road was a witness ..... his assassination.
(a) of (b) to (c) at (d) on
14. I continued to smile ..... his threats.
(a) at (b) on (c) upon (d) over
15. Fortune continued to smile ..... me.
(a) at (b) in (c) with (d) upon
16. Pakistan is supplying arms ..... the terrorists.
(a) with (b) for (c) to (d) against
17. America supplies Pakistan ..... arms.
(a) with (b) for (c) to (d) against
18. Contentment is essential ..... happiness.
(a) for (b) to (c) in (d) of
19. His house is adjacent ..... mine.
(a) with (b) to (c) from (d) of
20. She has strong antipathy ..... smoking.
(a) for (b) against (c) to (d) of
21. He is envious ..... my achievements.
(a) to (b) for (c) of (d) in
22. He stood ..... the court charged with the murder of his wife.
(a) in (b) for (c) before (d) of
23. Since he is ill, he is confined ..... bed.
(a) in (b) on (c) to (d) of
24. Some politicians are very sensitive ..... criticism
(a) at (b) on (c) to (d) for
25. Shakespeare had a great insight ..... human nature.
(a) over (b) upon (c) for (d) into
26. In the morning, Mr. Thakur simply takes a glance ..... the newspaper headlines.
(a) at (b) on (c) of (d) through
27. We must conform ..... the rules of the game.
(a) in (b) at (c) from (d) to
28. A honorary degree was conferred ..... him.
(a) at (b) upon (c) for (d) on
29. The mother was concerned ..... the safety of her child.
(a) at (b) about (c) for (d) with
30. When I heard of my grandmother's death, I burst ..... tears.
(a) at (b) upon (c) into (d) in
31. President Saddam hussain has been familiar ..... a gun all his life
(a) with (b) for (c) by (d) on
32. He dealt very politely ..... me.
(a) in (b) at (c) with (d) to
33. He never parted ..... the silver up that he had got as a reward.
(a) to (b) with (c) of (d) for
34. He Complied ..... my request.
(a) with (b) by (c) of (d) through
35. A crime is charged ..... a man.
(a) with (b) against (c) of (d) for
36. Success consists ..... industry.
(a) in (b) of (c) with (d) for
37. She was removed ..... the office of the director.
(a) to (b) of (c) from (d) through
38. She shuddered ..... the dreadful sight.
(a) at (b) on (c) over (d) upon
39. She smiled ..... my mistakes.
(a) on (b) upon (c) over (d) at
40. I rejoiced ..... her success.
(a) of (b) on (c) at (d) for
41. The dog snapped ..... the thief and caught his leg.
(a) of (b) at (c) on (d) over
42. I shall proceed ..... him.
(a) against (b) to (c) for (d) on
43. He was overwhelmed ..... sorrow.
(a) of (b) on (c) by (d) with
44. He was involved ..... a crime.
(a) in (b) into (c) at (d) of
45. I am displeased ..... you but I am not displeased ..... your fun.
(a) at; with (b) with; at (c) with; on (d) with ; to
46. A man is angry ..... a person; he may be angry ..... a thing.
(a) At; with (b) with; on (c) with; at (d) with; of
47. Our villagers voted ..... the congress candidate.
(a) for (b) to (c) of (d) by
48. The publisher introduced me ..... Rajeevjee
(a) for (b) to (c) of (d) with
49. It is needless to lament ..... the dead.
(a) to (b) of (c) for (d) with
50. The dead body is devoid ..... sense .
(a) to (b) of (c) for (d) with
51. He took the man ..... hospital.
(a) for (b) towards (c) to (d) at
52. Mr. Thakur is habituated ..... rising early.
(a) to (b) for (c) of (d) in
53. We were deprived ..... our freedom.
(a) from (b) of (c) for (d) to
54. Our publisher is accustomed ..... hard labour.
(a) of (b) for (c) to (d) from
55. He is tired *(मानसिक थकावट)* ..... poverty
(a) with (b) of (c) for (d) at
56. My wife was tired *(शारीरिक थकावट)* ..... the walk.
(a) of (b) with (c) by (d) for
57. He enquired ..... me ..... the matter.
(a) of, about (b) into, about
(c) of, into (d) into, of

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



58. He will enquire ..... the matter
(a) of (b) about (c) into (d) after.
59. He enquired ..... the health
(a) after (b) of (c) into (d) about
60. He was indignant ..... me.
(a) at (b) with (c) for (d) of
61. He was indignant ..... my remark.
(a) at (b) for (c) of (d) with
62. She is obliged ..... you ..... your help.
(a) for; to (b) with; for (c) to; for (d) to; with
63. He is grateful ..... me ..... my help.
(a) to; for (b) for; to (c) with; for (d) to; with
64. The Indians fought ..... the English ..... freedom.
(a) for; with (b) to; with (c) with; for (d) of; for
65. He will be indebted ..... you ..... your help.
(a) to; for (b) for; to (c) with; for (d) to; with
66. I have a lot of experience ..... teaching
(a) of (b) in (c) into (d) for
67. I differ ..... you.
(a) from (b) of (c) with (d) for
68. India differs ..... England.
(a) with (b) from (c) of (d) for
69. He is blind ..... one eye. *(शारीरिक अन्धता)*
(a) of (b) to (c) with (d) for
70. A father is blind *(मानसिक अन्धता)*..... the faults of his son
(a) of (b) to (c) with (d) in
71. There was no cause ..... anxiety.
(a) of (b) with (c) for (d) in
72. What was the cause ..... his anxiety ?
(a) for (b) of (c) with (d) off
73. He is blessed ..... good health and is blessed ..... children.
(a) with; in (b) with; into
(c) in; with (d) of; with
74. ..... accordance ..... the law of India the president is the supreme head of the government.
(a) In; with (b) with; in (c) with; to (d) In; to
75. He prides himself ..... his good health.
(a) on (b) in (c) of (d) for
76. He has pride ..... wealth.
(a) on (b) for (c) of (d) in
77. She is proud ..... her wealth.
(a) on (b) for (c) in (d) of
78. He takes pride ..... poetry.
(a) in (b) of (c) for (d) on
79. I am vexed ..... my brother.
(a) at (b) with (c) of (d) for
80. She was vexed ..... her mother's illness.
(a) with (b) of (c) at (d) from
81. The responsibility is ..... my shoulders now
(a) at (b) on (c) over (d) off
82. He is independent ..... his parents.
(a) off (b) of (c) for (d) from
83. It is ten O'clock ..... my watch.
(a) to (b) from (c) by (d) with
84. None ..... the brave deserve the fair.
(a) but (b) by (c) from (d) to
85. He went ..... his depth.
(a) through (b) beyond (c) into (d) in
86. She was sitting in her office ..... herself.
(a) from (b) of
(c) by (d) No preposition
87. His attainments (योग्यता) are ..... yours.
(a) under (b) beneath (c) beyond (d) below
88. My mother in-law is clumsy (फूहड़) ..... cooking.
(a) at (b) in (c) into (d) on
89. To dwell ..... the wicked is bad.
(a) Among (b) between (c) in (d) into
90. We should never go ..... moral laws.
(a) to (b) against (c) above (d) towards
91. He was advised to abstain ..... all alcoholic drinks
(a) in (b) at (c) from (d) by
92. He was killed ..... a highway man ..... a dagger.
(a) by; for (b) by; with (c) in; for (d) with; for
93. Take this medicine and you will get rid ..... the bad cold.
(a) from (b) over (c) at (d) of
94. I challenged my opponent ..... a fight.
(a) for (b) with (c) to (d) of
95. They were horrified ..... the sight.
(a) on (b) at (c) over (d) into
96. The insects are a great nuisance ..... us.
(a) with (b) for (c) to (d) at
97. India is committed ..... a policy of peaceful existence.
(a) for (b) with (c) to (d) of
98. A hawker moves ..... house to house to sell his goods.
(a) from (b) against (c) between (d) through
99. The soldiers rebelled ..... the government.
(a) at (b) on (c) with (d) against
100. There was no agreement ..... the great powers ..... a treaty to ban nuclear weapons.
(a) between; about (b) among; on
(c) in; for (d) with; about
101. He is a slur ..... his family.
(a) on (b) for (c) into (d) at
102. We should not connive ..... his wrong doing.
(a) on (b) for (c) at (d) upon

**Q. 6.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. The aircraft was overloaded (1)/ there was something wrong of the battery (2)/ and the engine was making a queer noise. (3)/ No error (4)
2. I warned him (1)/ for the danger (2)/ he was going (3)/ to face during the hiking. (4)/ No error (5)
3. Ordinarily, when in difficulty (1)/ Renuka prefers keeping her counsel (2)/ than running about (3)/ taking advice. (4)/ No error (5)
4. Sheila advised to (1)/ her child not to (2)/ play with the ball (3)/ on the road. (4)/ No error (5)
5. Basu was trying to pass (1)/ through the gap on (2)/ the fence when he (3)/ tore his shirt. (4)/ No error (5)
6. I have been teaching in this school (1)/ since several years (2)/ but have never met (3)/ such a hopeless class as this. (4)/ No error (5)
7. It is easy to see that (1)/ a lawyer's demeanour in court (2)/ may be prejudicial against the interests of his client. (3)/ No error (4)
8. The reason we have not been able to pay income tax (1)/ is due to fact (2)/ that we did not receive pay on time. (3)/ No error (4)
9. The policemen fired all the (1)/ students when (2)/ they were attacked (3)/ by some of them. (4)/ No error (5)
10. He was not promoted (1)/ to the rank of colonel (2)/ till for a few (3)/ months of his resignation. (4)/ No error (5)
11. All the players (1)/ except Sam (2)/ were present (3)/ on the field. (4)/ No error
12. Despite of a good monsoon (1)/ this year, the production (2)/ of food grains in the (3)/ country did not go up. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Yesterday, while (1)/ crossing the road (2)/ he was (3) run out by a truck. (4)/ No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



14. The girl wrote an essay (1)/so well (2)/that her teacher was exceedingly (3)/pleased at her. (4)/No error (5)
15. He tried (1)/to open the cane (2)/by a cane opener. (3)/No error(4)
16. When the students reached late (1)/the teacher objected their entering the class (2)/without his permission. (3)/No error (4)
17. The captain and his (1)/wife were invited (2)/for the cultural (3)/function at my home. (4)/No error (5)
18. The government decided to (1)/write of the debts (2)/of the farmers who were (3)/below the poverty line. (4)/No error (5)
19. Children visiting the (1)/park are amused (2)/by the monkeys (3)/play in the cages. (4)/No error (5)
20. The great actor was (1)/angry with the treatment (2)/during the party (3)/in Ashoka Hall. (4)/No error (5)
21. Don't go by his appearance, (1)/he is capable at (2)/doing any work (3)/without any hesitation. (4)/No error (5)
22. The teacher pointed out the (1)/students that they might (2)/learn something from Kalidas because (3)/Kalidas was the Shakespeare of India. (4)/No error (5)
23. The consequence, of (1)/the action was not fully realised to (2)/the authorities. (4)/No error (5)
24. I am pleased to sanction (1)/one special increment (2)/to all the employees (3)/with the month. (4)/No error (5)
25. I have (1)/an appointment (2)/on the 9th of September (3)/on five o'clock. (4)/No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. on | 2. with | 3. of | 4. with |
| 5. of | 6. by | 7. into | 8. of |
| 9. with | 10. into | 11. to | 12. with |
| 13. of | 14. with | 15. to | 16. of |
| 17. from | 18. on | 19. in | 20. above |
| 21. into | 22. from | 23. at | 24. against |
| 25. among | 26. at | 27. by | 28. of |
| 29. in | 30. upon | 31. since | 32. at |
| 33. on | 34. over | 35. with | 36. for |
| 37. for | 38. in | 39. at | 40. to |
| 41. to | 42. to | 43. to | 44. to |
| 45. at | 46. in | 47. to | 48. at |
| 49. to | 50. from | 51. to | 52. of |
| 53. in | 54. with | 55. from/into | 56. against |
| 57. from | 58. between | 59. beside | 60. within |
| 61. of | 62. at/at | 63. from | 64. from |
| 65. on | 66. at | 67. against | 68. in |
| 69. to | 70. for | 71. to | 72. to |
| 73. for | 74. from | 75. to | 76. on |
| 77. of | 78. of | 79. to | 80. with |
| 81. to | 82. at | 83. of | 84. to |
| 85. with | 86. for | 87. to | 88. from |
| 89. for | 90. to | 91. in | 92. besides |
| 93. to | 94. for | 95. with | 96. by, with |
| 97. from | 98. since | 99. at, in | 100. behind |

**Q. 2.**

1. (2) besides की जगह beside का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (2) to की जगह with का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (3) upon की जगह over का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) with की जगह 'by' का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) about की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (2) with की जगह in का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (5) Given sentence correct है।
8. (1) against की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (3) for की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (2) for की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (2) with की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (4) died of an accident की जगह died by an accident का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (4) with की जगह of का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (3) than की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (2) from की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (3) for की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (1) Beside की जगह Besides का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (2) Came across का प्रयोग होगा with का नहीं।
19. (1) of की जगह from का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (1) to की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (4) to go there की जगह from going there का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (4) till की जगह since का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (2) on की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (3) to की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (5) given sentence correct है।

**Q. 3.**

1. His wife was dressed in black.
2. She is married to a rich man.
3. Are you careful about your health ?
4. The old man died from overeating.
5. This is different from the other.
6. His suggestion was helpful to me.
7. Her dress is made of silk.
8. I depend on my publisher's word.
9. She is greedy for money.
10. He has no acquaintance with this man.
11. The publisher's capacity for hard work seems unlimited.
12. My wife prevented me from speaking.
13. What are you laughing at ?
14. Is Manu coming by plane ?
15. Ruby has been absent since Monday last.
16. Mr. Thakur stood between Aditi and Aditya.
17. Poverty comes of idleness.
18. My brother-in-law travelled on a bicycle.
19. Did he stay at home yesterday ?
20. The workers work in the factory from 10 am to 4 pm.
21. The train comes at 6 O'clock.
22. Milk sells at Rs 22/– a litre.
23. I was born on June 9, 1972.
24. Kumharar Park is close to my residence.
25. He will come on Monday.
26. I congratulated her on her success in the SBI examination.
27. We must be faithful to our master.
28. What is the time by your watch ?
29. He prefers milk to tea.
30. He enquired of me into the murder.
31. The master has no control over his servants.
32. She relied on my co-operation.
33. We have duty to our parents.
34. Let me glance at that beautiful girl.
35. He is quick of understanding.
36. An enquiry was made into the matter.
37. An old man is accused of crime.
38. He feels sure of his success.
39. I have no reliance on your word.
40. He was not aware of your intention.
41. There is no limit to his zeal.
42. The police inspector went with his constable.
43. What will you do with this little book ?
44. He complained against me.
45. Mr. Prasad has signed the contract.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



46. He persisted in saying this.
47. I insisted on him going away.
48. She assisted in doing this.
49. Owing to the accident, he could not go.
50. He is busy at his work.

Q. 4.

1. (3) about का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। discuss के बाद about का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
2. (1) with की जगह of का प्रयोग होगा। accused के बाद of preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
3. (2) to की जगह and का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि between के बाद हमेशा and का प्रयोग होता है न कि to का।
4. (1) with की जगह on का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि confer on a person का प्रयोग 'उपाधि प्रदान करना' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि confer with one's doctor का प्रयोग 'परामर्श करना' के अर्थ में होता है। यहाँ given sentence के अर्थ के लिए on preposition ही उपयुक्त है।
5. (2) than की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि superior के बाद हमेशा to preposition का प्रयोग होता है न कि than का।
6. (2) In की जगह on का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि On fire का प्रयोग होता है न कि In fire का।
7. (3) by की जगह on का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि on foot का प्रयोग होता है न कि by foot का।
8. (3) upon की जगह with का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि rest with a person का प्रयोग 'करने के लिए किसी की जिम्मेदारी होना' के अर्थ में होता है।
   ध्यान दें: (1) Rest on a pillow = टेक पर रखना
   जैसे—He rested his head on a pillow
   (ii) Rest on a person/thing = घूर कर देखना, आँखें टिकाना
   जैसे—His eyes rested on her face
   (iii) Rest on a thing = किसी बात पर निर्भर करना
   जैसे—His fame rests more on his novels than on his plays
   (iv) Rest on some body = किसी पर निर्भर होना
   जैसे—India's hopes of a medal rested on Rakesh Sharma of Modinagar
   (v) Rest on one's laurels = उपलब्ध सफलता पर ही संतोष करके बैठ जाना
   जैसे—He retired at the peak of his career and is resting on his laurels.
9. (3) From की जगह of का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि scared के बाद of preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
10. (3) Than की जगह from का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि different के बाद from preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (3) beside की जगह besides का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि besides का प्रयोग 'के अलावे' के अर्थ में होता है जो given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
12. (3) for की जगह at का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (2) about का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि discuss के बाद about का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
14. (3) of का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि comprised के बाद of preposition का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
15. (3) to wonder की जगह wondering का प्रयोग होगा। stop के बाद —ing form का प्रयोग होता है।
16. (1) Invitation के बाद for की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (3) besides की जगह beside का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि beside का प्रयोग 'के बगल' में के अर्थ में होता है।
18. (1) on की जगह over का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (3) than की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि preferable के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
20. (3) over का प्रयोग to night के पहले अनावश्यक है इसलिए over का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
21. (2) with की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (2) from की जगह of का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि baulked के बाद of का प्रयोग होता है।
23. (2) out की जगह off का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि take off का leave the ground के अर्थ में तथा take out का प्रयोग to remove from within (अंदर से बाहर निकालना) के अर्थ होता है।
24. (3) of rail lines and terminals की जगह at rail lines and terminals का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (3) hangers in की जगह hangers on का प्रयोग होगा।

Q. 5.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | 2. (a) | 3. (c) | 4. (c) | 5. (a) | 6. (a) | 7. (c) |
| 8. (d) | 9. (c) | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (b) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (c) | 17. (a) | 18. (b) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) | 21. (c) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (c) | 24. (c) | 25. (d) | 26. (a) | 27. (d) | 28. (d) |
| 29. (b) | 30. (c) | 31. (a) | 32. (c) | 33. (b) | 34. (a) | 35. (b) |
| 36. (a) | 37. (c) | 38. (a) | 39. (d) | 40. (c) | 41. (b) | 42. (a) |
| 43. (d) | 44. (a) | 45. (b) | 46. (c) | 47. (a) | 48. (b) | 49. (c) |
| 50. (b) | 51. (c) | 52. (a) | 53. (b) | 54. (c) | 55. (b) | 56. (b) |
| 57. (a) | 58. (c) | 59. (a) | 60. (b) | 61. (a) | 62. (c) | 63. (a) |
| 64. (c) | 65. (a) | 66. (b) | 67. (c) | 68. (b) | 69. (a) | 70. (b) |
| 71. (c) | 72. (b) | 73. (a) | 74. (a) | 75. (a) | 76. (b) | 77. (d) |
| 78. (a) | 79. (b) | 80. (c) | 81. (d) | 82. (b) | 83. (c) | 84. (a) |
| 85. (b) | 86. (c) | 87. (d) | 88. (a) | 89. (a) | 90. (b) | 91. (c) |
| 92. (b) | 93. (d) | 94. (c) | 95. (b) | 96. (b) | 97. (c) | 98. (a) |
| 99. (d) | 100. (b) | 101. (a) | 102. (c) | | | |

Q. 6.

1. (2) of की जगह with का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (2) for की जगह of का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि warn of the danger का प्रयोग 'चेतावनी देना के अर्थ में होता है। जो given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
3. (3) than की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि prefer के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
4. (1) to का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि advise के बाद प्रयुक्त object के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
5. (2) on की जगह in का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि gap के बाद In—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
6. (2) since की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि several years period of time है न कि point of time.
7. (3) against की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि prejudicial के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (2) due to का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि the reason के बाद due to, because तथा owing to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जबकि the reason ..... that तथा the reason why ..... that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
   The reason why she always remains ill is that she does not take care of her health.
9. (1) fired के बाद at का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि fired at a person or fired at a thing का प्रयोग होता है।
10. (3) till का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि given sentence के अर्थ के लिए till का प्रयोग आवश्यक नहीं है।
11. (4) on की जगह in का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि field के पहले In—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
12. (1) of का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि despite खुद inspite of का अर्थ रखता है इसलिए despite के बाद of का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



13. (4) out की जगह over का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि run over का अर्थ कुचल देना या धक्का देकर गिरा देना होता है। जबकि run out का अर्थ समाप्त हो जाना होता है। अतः run over ही given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है। जैसे—
A school girl was run over by a car.
Wheat stocks at the ration shops are running out.

14. (4) at का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि pleased के साथ with preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

15. (3) by की जगह with का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि given sentence में a cane opener का प्रयोग औजार के रूप में किया गया है। अतः with का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

16. (2) objected के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि objected के बाद हमेशा to—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

17. (3) for की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Invite के बाद to—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

18. (2) write of की जगह write off का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि write off का अर्थ समाप्त करना या अंत करना होता है जो given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।

19. (3) by की जगह at का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि amused के बाद at—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

20. (2) with की जगह at का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि angry at something का प्रयोग होता है या angry with a person का प्रयोग होता है। given sentence के अर्थ के लिए at—preposition ही उपयुक्त है।

21. (2) at की जगह of का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि conscious, ambitious desirous के बाद भी of preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
He is desirous of getting a job. (✓)
He is desirous at getting a Job. (×)

22. (1) pointed out के बाद to—preposition का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि point out to somebody का प्रयोग होता है। point out something का प्रयोग भी होता है।

23. (3) to की जगह by का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि passive style के sentence में सामान्यतः passive object के पहले by—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

24. (4) with की जगह from का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Present or future tense के वाक्यों में 'से' के अर्थ में from का प्रयोग होता है।

25. (4) on की जगह at का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि time expressing words के पहले at preposition का प्रयोग होता है न कि on का।

Note : (i) Marry something with something का प्रयोग 'सम्पर्क जोड़ना', 'गठबंधन करना', 'घनिष्ठ सम्बंध स्थापित करना' [combine (sth) Successfully with sth else', to unite intimately] के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Training that marries well with the needs of the job.

(ii) Marry in haste, repent at leisure (Idiom) का प्रयोग 'जल्दी करो और खूब पछताओ' के अर्थ में होता है।

(iii) Marry money का प्रयोग 'धनवान से शादी करना' के अर्थ में होता है।

(iv) Marry off (phrasal verb) का प्रयोग 'विवाह कर देना', 'विवाह में देना' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Her father married her off to a good boy.

(v) Marry into (phrasal verb) का प्रयोग 'शादी करके किसी परिवार का अंग बन जाना' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He married into the french aristocracy (फ्रेंच कुलीन परिवार/ वर्ग).

(vi) Marry up (phrasal verb) का प्रयोग 'ठीक प्रकार से जोड़ना' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

The two halves of the structure did not marry up.

ध्यान दें : 1. जब एक लड़का की शादी एक लड़की से हो (अर्थात लड़का की प्राथमिकता हो ) तथा लड़का से related word sentence का subject हो, तो marry के साथ with-preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—He married with her.

2. जब एक लड़की की शादी एक लड़का से हो (अर्थात लड़की की प्राथमिकता हो) तथा लड़की से Related word sentence का subject हो तो marry के साथ to-preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—She married to him.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. She is married to Rakesh. (✓)
2. Vikas and Ruby are getting married. (✓)
3. P.C. Smith was married with two children. (×)
4. She had an affair with a married man. (×)
5. Jamie is getting married to Laurva. (✓)

(vii) Blind (adj.) का प्रयोग 'अंधा', 'नेत्रहीन' के अर्थ में होता है तथा इस अर्थ में इसके साथ in-preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—He is blind in the left eye.

(viii) Blind (adj.) का प्रयोग 'देख कर अनदेखा बनना' के अर्थ में होने पर, इसके साथ to-preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—Mothers are sometimes blind to the faults of their children.

(ix) Blinded by rage (phrase) का प्रयोग 'बहुत अधिक क्रोधित' (very angry) के अर्थ में होता है।

(x) Blind (v) का प्रयोग 'विवेकहीन बना देना' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसके साथ to-preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Her sympathy for him blinded her to his faults.

(xi) Blind का प्रयोग 'धोखा' के अर्थ में noun के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

His appointment as a diplomat was a blind for his spying.

(xii) Blind of one eye (Phrase) का प्रयोग 'काना' (having one eye) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—He is blind of one eye. (वह काना है।)

इन वाक्यों को देखें—

1. She has been blind since birth. (✓)
2. He started to go (= become) blind in his sixties. (✓)
3. She was blinded in an accident at an early age. (✓)
4. She trains guide dogs for the blind. (✓)
5. We mustn't let our prejudices (पक्षपात/पूर्व धारणा) blind us to the facts of the situation. (✓)
6. He was blind with fury. (= so angry that he could not behave reasonably) (✓)
7. She seems blind to his faults. (✓)

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Conjunction 19

*A conjunction is a word which joins two or more than two words, phrases, clauses or sentences.*

Conjunction वह शब्द है, जो दो या दो से अधिक words, phrases, clauses या sentences को जोड़ता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Veena *and* Sweta went to market.
Mukesh gave me a book *and* an inkpot.
I went to see him *but* he was not there.
Give me tea *or* coffee.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में and, but, or का प्रयोग क्रमशः Veena और Sweta, a book और an inkpot, I went to see him और he was not there तथा tea और coffee को जोड़ने के लिए किया गया है। अतः and, but, or conjunctions हैं, इन्हें connecting words भी कहते हैं।

| Conjunctions | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. and | और |
| 2. as well as | और भी, तथा |
| 3. otherwise | नहीं तो |
| 4. or else | नहीं तो |
| 5. therefore | अतः, इसलिए, फलतः |
| 6. so | |
| 7. hence | |
| 8. consequently | |
| 9. either ..... or | या तो ..... या |
| 10. Neither ..... nor | न तो ..... न |
| 11. Both ..... and | और ..... भी |
| 12. So ..... that | इतना ..... कि |
| 13. too ..... to | इतना ..... कि |
| 14. so ..... as | इतना ..... जितना कि |
| 15. As ..... as | इतना ..... जितना कि |
| 16. whether ..... or | चाहे ..... या |
| 17. As ..... so | जैसा ..... वैसा ही |
| 18. As soon as | ज्योंही ..... त्योंही |
| 19. But ..... | पर, परन्तु, लेकिन, मगर, किन्तु |
| 20. or ..... | या, वा, अथवा, नहीं तो, कि और न |
| 21. No sooner ..... than | ज्योंही ..... त्योंही |
| 22. Hardly ..... when | मुश्किल/कठिनता से ..... कि |
| 23. Scarcely ..... when | |
| 24. Not only ..... but also | केवल ..... ही नहीं ..... बल्कि |
| 25. where | जहाँ |
| 26. wherever | जहाँ कहीं भी |
| 27. whence | जहाँ से/ कहाँ से |
| 28. when | जब |
| 29. whenever | चाहे कभी, जब चाहे, किसी भी अवसर पर |
| 30. till or until | तबतक ... जबतक |
| 31. while | जबतक ..... तबतक |
| 32. Because | क्योंकि |
| 33. As | क्योंकि |
| 34. since | चूँकि |
| 35. that | ताकि, कि |
| 36. lest | ताकि ..... न, ऐसा न हो ..... कि |
| 37. such ..... that | इतना ... कि |
| 38. if | यदि |
| 39. unless | जबतक ... तबतक, यदि ... नहीं |
| 40. provided | बशर्ते ... कि |
| 41. as if | मानो ... कि |
| 42. though | यद्यपि ... फिर भी/तथापि |
| 43. Although | |
| 44. however | चाहे कितनी ही |
| 45. As ..... as | उतना ..... जितना |
| 46. No less than | अपेक्षाकृत कम नहीं |
| 47. Whereas | विरोधी भावना में, जबकि |
| 48. Nevertheless | तथापि, तो भी |
| 49. As though | विषय में, बारे में, मानो |
| 50. how (adv) | कैसे, किस प्रकार |
| 51. however (conj) | तथापि, बहरहाल |
| 52. however (adv.) | कुछ भी हो, यद्यपि, कितना भी |
| 53. Yet (adv) | अबतक, तबतक, अभी तक, अबतक भी |
| 54. As yet | इस समय तक |
| 55. Not yet | अभी नहीं |
| 56. yet (conj) | फिर भी |
| 57. As (conj) | तब, उस समय |
| 58. As to | विषय में |
| 59. so as to | इस वजह से |
| 60. As far as | जहाँ तक |
| 61. As (adv) | उसी प्रकार से, उतना |

उपरोक्त conjunctions के प्रयोग को इन वाक्यों के माध्यम से समझने की कोशिश करें : जैसे—

1. *and* : Subhash and Pankaj have come.
   सुभाष और पंकज आये हैं।
2. *as well as* : He has abused me as well as threatened to beat me.
   उसने मुझे गाली दी है और मारने को भी धमकाया है।
3. *otherwise* : Labour hard, otherwise you will fail.
   परिश्रम करो, नहीं तो फेल हो जाओगे।
4. *or else* : Hurry up, or else you will miss the train.
   जल्दी करो, नहीं तो गाड़ी छूट जायेगी।
5. *therefore* : Mr. Roy is ill therefore he has not come.
   मि. राय बीमार हैं इसलिए वे नहीं आये हैं।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



6. *so* : I reached the station late, so I missed the train.
*मैं स्टेशन देर से पहुँचा इसलिए गाड़ी छूट गयी।*

7. *hence* : He has no money hence he cannot help you.
*उसे पैसा (धन) नहीं है अतः वह आपकी मदद नहीं कर सकता है।*

8. *consequently* : She is weak in Hindi, consequently she has got plucked.
*वह हिन्दी में कमजोर है फलतः वह असफल हुई।*

9. *either ... or* : Either you or your brother stole my watch.
*या तो तुमने या तुम्हारे भाई ने मेरी घड़ी चुराई।*

10. *neither ... nor* : He is neither my friend nor my enemy.
*वह न तो मेरा मित्र है और न मेरा शत्रु ही।*

11. *both ... and* : I both love and honour him.
*मैं उससे प्यार करता हूँ और उसका आदर भी।*

12. *so ... that* : He was so weak that he could not walk.
*वह इतना कमजोर था कि चल नहीं सकता था।*

13. *too ... to* : She is too tired to work.
*वह इतनी थकी है कि काम नहीं कर सकती।*

14. *so ... as* : He is not so rich as he appears to be.
*वह इतना अमीर नहीं है जितना कि मालूम होता है।*

15. *as ..... as* : You are not as clever as he is.
*तुम इतने चालाक नहीं हो जितना कि वह।*

16. *whether ..... or* : I did not care whether you go or stay.
*मुझे परवाह नहीं चाहे तुम जाओ या ठहरो।*

17. *as ... so* : As is the child, so is the man.
*जैसा बच्चा होता है, वैसा ही आदमी बनता है।*

18. *as soon as* : As soon as the thief saw the police, he ran away.
*ज्योंही चोर ने सिपाही को देखा त्योंही वह भाग गया।*

19. *but* : He is poor indeed, but his character is spotless.
*वह वास्तव में गरीब है लेकिन उसका चरित्र निष्कलंक है।*

20. *or* : Go at once, or you will miss the train.
*अभी जाओ नहीं तो गाड़ी नहीं मिलेगी।*
To be sure, it is Krishna or his younger brother that has stolen my pen.
*कृष्णा ने अथवा उसके छोटे भाई ने मेरी कलम अवश्य चुरायी है।*

21. *no sooner...than* : No sooner had I reached the station than the train steamed off.
*ज्योंही मैं स्टेशन पर पहुँचा त्योंही गाड़ी चल दी।*
No sooner did the bell ring than the boys ran out of their classes.
*ज्योंही घंटी बजी त्योंही लड़के अपनी कक्षाओं से बाहर निकल आये।*
No sooner does he arrive than he begins to work.
*ज्योंही वह पहुँचता है त्योंही काम करना शुरू कर देता है।*

22. *hardly ... when* : He had hardly reached the station when it began to rain.
*वह मुश्किल से स्टेशन पर पहुँचा ही था कि वर्षा होने लगी।*

23. *scarcely ... when* : I had scarcely reached the school when the bell rang.
*मैं मुश्किल से स्कूल पहुँचा ही था कि घंटी बज गयी।*

24. *not only...but also* : The publisher not only gave me advice but also helped me with money.
*प्रकाशक ने मुझको केवल उपदेश/सलाह ही नहीं दिया है, बल्कि रुपये से भी मदद की है।*

25. *where* : Stay where you are.
*ठहरो जहाँ तुम हो।*

26. *wherever* : Wherever you go, you will get respect.
*जहाँ कहीं भी तुम जाओगे, सम्मान पाओगे।*

27. *whence* : He went whence he had come.
*जहाँ से वह आया था चला गया।*

28. *when* : When the cat is away, the mice play.
*जब बिल्ली नहीं रहती है तब चूहे खेलते हैं।*

29. *whenever* : Come whenever you please.
*जब चाहे आप आ सकते हैं।*

30. *till or until* : He won't leave this place till / until you promise to help him.
*तब तक वह इस स्थान को नहीं छोड़ेगा जबतक तुम उसकी मदद करने की प्रतिज्ञा नहीं करोगे।*

31. *while* : Strike the iron while it is hot.
*जबतक लोहा गर्म है तब तक मारो।*

32. *because* : He did not go to school because he was ill.
*वह स्कूल नहीं गया क्योंकि वह बीमार था।*

33. *as* : As you were not there, I came back.
*क्योंकि तुम वहाँ नहीं थे, इसलिए मैं वापस लौट आया।*

34. *since* : Since you say so, I believe it.
*चूँकि तुम ऐसा कहते हो, इसलिए मैं विश्वास करता हूँ।*

35. *that* : We eat that we may live.
*हम लोग खाते हैं ताकि हमलोग जिन्दा रहें।*

36. *lest* : Walk carefully lest you should fall.
*सावधानी से चलो ताकि तुम गिर न जाओ।*

37. *such... that* : He is such a good man that all respect him.
*वह इतना अच्छा आदमी है कि सभी लोग आदर करते हैं।*

38. *if* : If you go, I shall stay at home.
*यदि तुम जाओगे तो मैं घर पर ठहरूँगा।*

39. *unless* : You will not pass unless you labour hard.
*जबतक तुम परिश्रम नहीं करोगे तब तक तुम पास नहीं होगे।*
*यदि तुम परिश्रम नहीं करोगे तो तुम पास नहीं करोगे।*

40. *provided* : I will trust you provided you tell the truth.
*मैं तुम्हारा विश्वास करूँगा बशर्ते कि तुम सच बता दो।*

41. *as if* : He ran as if the devils were after him.
*वह इस तरह दौड़ा मानो कि उसके पीछे भूत हो।*

42. *though* : Though he is poor, he is honest.
*यद्यपि वह गरीब है फिर भी ईमानदार है।*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



43. *although* : He is an honest man although he is not rich.
*यद्यपि वह धनवान नहीं है तथापि वह ईमानदार आदमी है।*

44. *however* : You will not pass however hard you may labour.
*तुम पास नहीं करोगे चाहे कितनी भी मेहनत करो।*

45. *As ..... as* : He is as strong as I.
*वह उतना बलवान है जितना मैं।*

46. *no less than* : I like you no less than him.
*आपको मैं उससे कम नहीं चाहता हूँ।*

47. *whereas* : He is very gentle whereas his brother is very rude.
*वह बहुत नेक है जबकि उसका भाई बहुत असभ्य/गँवार है।*

48. *neverthless* : He was not invited, neverthless he went to attend the party.
*वह निमंत्रित नहीं था तथापि वह पार्टी एटैंड (उपस्थित/शामिल) करने गया।*

49. *as though* : He talks as though he is highly educated.
*वह ऐसे बात करता है कि मानो वह बहुत पढ़ा-लिखा (शिक्षित) है।*

50. *how* (adv.) : How did you go there ?
*आप कैसे वहाँ गये ?*

51. *however* (conj.) : However, he decided to stay.
*तथापि उसने ठहरने का निर्णय लिया।*

52. *however* (adv.) : He will never succeed, however hard he tries.
*वह सफल कभी नहीं होगा चाहे वह कितना भी कोशिश करे।*

53. *yet* (adv.) : They have not gone yet.
*वे लोग अबतक नहीं गये हैं।*
Hasn't he returned yet ?
*क्या वह अबतक वापस नहीं लौट आया है ?*

54. *as yet* : As yet he is silent on this point.
*इस समय तक वह इस बात पर चुप है।*

55. *not yet* : May I go home now ? No, not yet.
*क्या मैं अब घर जा सकता हूँ? नहीं, अभी नहीं।*

56. *yet* (conj.) : She is haughty and foolish, and yet people like her.
*वह जिद्दी और मूर्ख है, और फिर भी लोग उसे (स्त्री) पसंद करते हैं।*

57. *as* : I saw him as he was getting down the train.
*मैंने उसे तब देखा जब वह ट्रेन से नीचे उतर रहा था।*

58. *as to* : As to your brother, I will deal with him later on.
*मैं उससे तुम्हारे भाई के विषय में बाद में बात (डील) करूँगा।*

59. *so as to* : He stood up so as to see better.
*वह मदद करने की वजह से खड़ा हुआ।*

60. *as far as* : He is a good man as far as I know.
*वह अच्छा आदमी है जहाँ तक मैं जानता हूँ।*

61. *as* : He is as tall as you.
*वह उतना लंबा है जितना तुम।*

## Kinds of Conjunction

1. Co-ordinating conjunctions
2. Subordinating conjunctions

**1. Co-ordinating conjunctions** : And, but, or, nor, for, yet, so, as well as, either ..... or, neither ..... nor, both ..... and, not only ..... but also, only, then, therefore, no less than, otherwise, or else, still, while/whereas, nevertheless, etc. को co-ordinating conjunctions कहते हैं।

Co-ordinate का शाब्दिक अर्थ—"समान श्रेणी/कोटि का" होता है। इनका प्रयोग हमेशा दो समान श्रेणी/कोटि (equal rank) words (शब्दों) phrases (शब्द-समूहों), clauses (वाक्यांशों) तथा sentences (वाक्यों) को जोड़ने के लिए किया जाता है। अर्थात समान function करने वाले शब्दों को जोड़ने के लिए किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. Binay and Sudhir were playing cricket.
Noun Noun
Subject Subject
Two subjects

2. You and I are students.
Pronoun Pronoun
Subject Subject
Two subjects

3. Veena and I went to Vishnupur.
Noun Pronoun
Subject Subject
Two subjects

4. I love you and your brothers.
Pronoun Noun
Object Object
Two objects

5. My father is poor but honest.
Adjective Adjective
Two adjectives

6. He speaks loudly and fluently.
Adverb Adverb
Two adverbs

7. The frog lives in water and on land
Phrase Phrase
Two phrases

8. Anshu is good but her uncle is bad.
Sentence Sentence
Two sentences

9. He is the student who lives in Patna and whose beloved lives in Ranchi.
Clause Clause
Two clauses

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में आपने देखा कि Co-ordinating conjunction—and, but का प्रयोग क्रमशः दो Nouns, दो Pronouns, एक Noun और एक Pronoun, एक Pronoun और एक Noun, दो Adjectives, दो Adverbs,

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



दो Phrases, दो sentences तथा दो clauses को जोड़ने के लिए किया गया है। ये समान श्रेणी/कोटि के शब्द हैं।

**Co-ordinating conjunctions**

| Cumulative or copulative conjunctions | Alternative or, Disjunctive conjunctions | Adversative conjunctions | Illative conjunction |
|---|---|---|---|
| as — and, both ... and, as well as, No less than, Not only ... but also. | as—or, either ... or, neither...nor, otherwise, else. | as—But, still yet, nevertheless, whereas while, only. | as–for, therefore, so, consequently. |

**1. Cumulative or copulative conjunctions** : ये co-ordinating conjunctions जो एक statement को दूसरे statement से जोड़ने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं cumulative or cupulative conjunctions कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*and* : Trust in God and do the right.
*both ... and ...* : She was both fined and imprisoned.
*as well as* : Raman as well as Ajit was present there.
*no less than* : She no less than her lover is innocent.
*not only...but also* : He was not only foolish but also obstinate.

**2. Alternative or Disjunctive conjunctions** : ये co-ordinating conjunctions जो दो alternatives *(विकल्पों के बीच choice (विकल्प)* देने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं। Alternative or Disjunctive conjunctions कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*or* : She must weep or she will die.
*either ... or* : Either he is mad or he feigns madness.
*neither ... nor* : Neither a borrower nor a lender be.
*otherwise/else* : Work hard, else or otherwise you will not pass.

**3. Adversative conjunctions:** ये co-ordinating conjunctions जो दो statements के बीच opposition or contrast *(विरोध/अंतर)* के भाव को express *(अभिव्यक्त)* करते हैं Adversative conjunctions कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*but* : He is slow, but he is steady.
*still/yet* : He was annoyed, still/yet he kept quiet.
*nevertheless* : He had no chance of success; nevertheless he persevered.
*whereas/while* : She is beautiful, whereas/while her friends are ugly.
*only* : He was all right; only he was fatigued.

**4. Illative conjunctions** : ये co-ordinating conjunctions जो Inference *(निष्कर्ष)* के भाव को Express करते हैं illative conjunctions कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*for* : She will pass, for she works very hard.
*therefore* : She was found stealing, and therefore she was arrested.
*so/consequently* : Binay did not work; so or consequently he failed.

**2. Subordinating conjunctions** : As, because, since, if, though, although, that, before, after, till, until, unless, whether, lest, as if, in case, so that, as long as, as soon as, which, when, where, why, how, as though etc को Subordinating conjunctions कहते हैं।

Subordinate का शाब्दिक अर्थ—"आश्रित या दूसरे पर निर्भर रहने वाला" होता है। इसका प्रयोग Subordinate clause *(आश्रित वाक्यांश)* को Principal clause *(प्रधान वाक्यांश)* से जोड़ने के लिए किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

1. Bhavna was fined as she came late.
2. If he comes, I shall go.
3. Nilu is honest, though she is poor.
4. Although it was raining, I went out.
5. You will fail unless you work hard.
6. The terrorist ran away lest he should be caught.
7. Even if you don't like her, you can help her.
8. I do not know where she lives.
9. My father took medicine so that he might recover.
10. When I returned to my residence, my wife was preparing coffee.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में आपने देखा कि Subordinating conjunctions—as, if, though, although, unless, lest, even if, where, so that, when का प्रयोग Subordinate clause तथा Principal clause को जोड़ने के लिए किया गया है।

**Note: (i) Principal clause** *(प्रधान वाक्यांश/उपवाक्य)*: वह clause जो पूर्ण अर्थ रखता है, अर्थात् अपने अर्थ के लिए दूसरे clause (subordinate clause) पर निर्भर नहीं करता है, Principal clause कहते हैं। इसे Independent clause भी कहते हैं।

**(ii) Subordinate clause** *(आश्रित वाक्यांश/उपवाक्य)*: वह clause जो पूर्ण अर्थ नहीं रखता है, अर्थात् अपने अर्थ के लिए Principal clause पर निर्भर करता है। इसे Subordinate clause कहते हैं। इसे Dependent clause भी कहते हैं।

**Kinds of subordinating conjunctions :**

Subordinating conjunctions →
- Conjunctions of Time
- Conjunctions of Cause or Reason
- Conjunctions of Result or Consequence
- Conjunctions of Purpose
- Conjunctions of Condition
- Conjunctions of Concession or Contrast
- Conjunctions of Comparison
- Conjunctions of Extent or Manner

**1. Conjunctions of Time** : ये subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb Clauses of Time को introduce करते हैं, Conjunctions of time कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*before* : She had died before she reached twenty five.
*after* : The doctor came after the patient had died.
*since* : Many things have happened since I saw you.
*till/until* : Wait here till/until I return.
*as soon as* : I will leave as soon as you come.
*while* : Make hay while the sun shines.
*so long as* : His name will live so long as the world lasts.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



*when* : It happened when I was in Delhi.
*as* : He found it as he was walking to college.
*whenever* : He comes to me whenever he needs money.

**2. Conjunctions of Cause or Reason :** वे subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb clauses of Cause or Reason को introduce करते हैं Conjunctions of Cause or Reason कहलाते हैं।

*because* : I love her because she loves me.
*since* : He will go there since you desire it.
*as* : As he was not there, I spoke to his brother.

**3. Conjunctions of Result or Consequence :** वे subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb clauses of Result or Consequence को Introduce करते हैं Conjunctions of Result or Consequence कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*that* : He was so intelligent that he won the first prize.

**4. Conjunctions of purpose:** वे subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb clauses of purpose को introduce करते हैं conjunctions of purpose कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*that* : We eat that we may live.
*so that* : He worked hard so that he might pass.
*lest* : Walk carefully lest you should fall.
*in order that* : He works hard in order that he may become rich.

**5. Conjunctions of condition :** वे subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb clauses of condition को introduce करते हैं conjunctions of condition कहलाते हैं।

*if* : He will dismiss you if you are late again.
*as if* : She behaves as if she were mad.
*unless* : He cannot be pardoned unless he confesses his fault.
*provided/provided that* : I agree to these terms provided/provided that you agree to mine.

**6. Conjunctions of concession or contrast:** वे subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb clauses of concession or contrast को introduce करते हैं Conjunctions of concession or contrast कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

*although* : He is an honest man although he is poor.
*though* : He is not contented though he is poor.
*however* : He will never pass however hard he may try.

**7. Conjunction of comparison :** वे subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb clauses of comparison को introduce करते हैं conjunctions of comparison कहलाते हैं।

*as* : He is as clever as I.
He loves me as much as you.
*than* : She likes me no less than you.
He is taller than you.

**8. Conjunctions of Extent or Manner :** वे subordinating conjunctions जो Adverb clauses of Extent or Manner को introduce करते हैं Conjunctions of Extent or Manner कहलाते हैं।

*as* : Men will reap as they sow.
*according as* : He chose the candidates according as they were fit.

**Note :** (i) Till, Since, for, after, but तथा before का प्रयोग prepositions or conjunctions के रूप में होता है।

| Used as prepositions | Used as conjunctions |
|---|---|
| 1. Stay till Friday. | 1. I shall stay here till you return. |
| 2. He has not met her since Tuesday. | 2. He will go since you desire it. |
| 3. He died for his country. | 3. You must stay here, for such is your duty. |
| 4. The dog ran after the cat. | 4. He came after I had left. |
| 5. Everybody but Aditya was present. | 5. I tried, but did not succeed. |
| 6. He stood before the painting. | 6. Look before you leap. |

(ii) In order that, on condition that, even if, so that, provided that, as though, in as much as, as well as, as soon as, as if को Compound Conjunctions कहा जाता है।

### Use of compound conjunctions

इन वाक्यों में compound conjunctions के प्रयोग को देखें :

*in order that* : The notice was published in order that all might know the facts.
*on condition that* : The principal will forgive him on condition that he does not repeat the offence.
*even if* : Such an act would not be kind even if it were just.
*so that* : I saved some bread so that I should not go hungry next day.
*provided that* : She can borrow the novel provided that she returns it soon.
*as though* : She walks as though she is slightly lame.
*in as much as* : He must refuse my request, in as much as he believes it unreasonable.
*as well as* : Amit as well as Sumit was present there.
*as soon as* : She took off her dress as soon as she entered the bed room.
*as if* : He looks as if he were tired.

### Correlative Conjunctions

Either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but also, both ... and, no sooner ... than, though ..... yet, hardly / scarcely ... when, whether ... or, so ... as, such ... that etc ऐसे conjunctions हैं, जो pair form (युग्म रूप) में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। अतः इन्हें correlative conjunctions कहते हैं। ये co-ordinating conjunctions के श्रेणी में आते हैं।

Correlative conjunctions का प्रयोग (i) एक Noun को दूसरे Noun/Pronoun से, (ii) एक Pronoun को दूसरे Pronoun/Noun से, (iii) एक Adjective को दूसरे Adjective से, (iv) एक Verb को दूसरे Verb से, (v) एक Adverb को दूसरे Adverb से, (vi) एक Phrase को दूसरे Phrase से, (vii) एक Subject को दूसरे Subject से, (viii) एक Object को दूसरे Object से तथा (ix) एक Complement को दूसरे Complement से जोड़ने के लिए किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

Either you or your classmate has stolen my pen.
Pronoun Subject — Noun Subject
Two subjects

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



You can neither read nor write.
Verb Verb
Two verbs

She is not only intelligent but also laborious.
Adjective Adjective
Two Adjectives

He is both teacher and writer.
Complement Complement
Two complements

No sooner did My wife enter the kitchen than the cook stood up.
Sentence Sentence
Two sentences

Though he is poor yet he is honest.
Sentence Sentence
Two sentences

The principal has appointed neither him nor me.
Object Object
Two objects

He would rather die than beg.
Verb Verb
Two verbs

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में आपने देखा कि Correlative conjunctions का प्रयोग क्रमशः दो Subjects, दो Verbs, दो Adjectives, दो Complements, दो Sentences, दो Objects, दो Verbs को जोड़ने के लिए किया गया है।

## Some Important Rules of Conjunction

**Rule (1) :** Either ... or का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में होता है। Either के बाद हमेशा or का प्रयोग होता है न कि nor का। जैसे—

He is either intelligent or honest. (√)
He is either intelligent nor honest. (×)
Either you or your teacher was present in the class. (√)
Either you nor your teacher was present in the class. (×)

**Rule (2) :** Neither ... nor का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में होता है। Neither के बाद हमेशा nor का प्रयोग होता है, न कि or का। जैसे—

My brother is neither good nor wise. (√)
My brother is neither good or wise. (×)
Neither Rahul nor Ashish was playing. (√)
Neither Rahul or Ashish was playing. (×)

**Rule (3) :** Both ... and का प्रयोग 'और भी' के अर्थ में होता है। Both के बाद हमेशा and का प्रयोग होता है न कि as well as तथा but का। जैसे—

Varsha is both tall and beautiful. (√)
Varsha is both tall as well as beautiful. (×)
Varsha is both tall but beautiful. (×)

**Rule (4) :** Not only ... but also का प्रयोग 'केवल ..... ही नहीं बल्कि' के अर्थ में होता है। Not only के बाद हमेशा but also का प्रयोग होता है न कि and also का। जैसे—

He is not only foolish but also mad. (√)
He is not only foolish and also mad. (×)
She was not only beaten but also fined. (√)
She was not only beaten and also fined. (×)

**Rule (5) :** Not either के बाद हमेशा or का प्रयोग होता है, nor का नहीं। जैसे—

She is not either tall or beautiful. (√)
She is not either tall nor beautiful. (×)

**Rule (6) :** Either ... or से दो से अधिक शब्दों को जोड़ने के लिए or के बाद भी or का प्रयोग किया जाता है, nor का नहीं। जैसे—

His beloved gave him either a watch or a pen or a mobile. (√)
His beloved gave him either a watch or a pen nor a mobile. (×)

**Rule (7) :** Neither ... nor से दो से अधिक शब्दों को जोड़ने के लिए nor के बाद nor का प्रयोग किया जाता है, or का नहीं। जैसे—

Her lover is neither intelligent nor laborious nor honest. (√)
Her lover is neither intelligent nor laborious or honest. (×)

**Rule (8) :** Although/though के बाद yet का प्रयोग होता है। But का नहीं। इसके साथ प्रयुक्त clause के लास्ट (अंत) में comma का प्रयोग होने पर yet का प्रयोग नहीं भी होता है। जैसे—

Although/though he is poor, yet he is honest. (√)
Although/though he is poor, but he is honest. (×)
Although/though he is poor, he is honest. (√)

**Note :** Although/though के बाद comma और yet दोनों का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (9) :** If ... then का प्रयोग होता है। न कि if ... than/that का। जैसे—

If you come here, then I will teach you. (√)
It you come here, than/that I will teach you. (×)

**Note :** Then के अलावे सिर्फ comma का प्रयोग भी होता है।

If you come here, I will teach you. (√)

**Rule (10) :** Hardly ... when/before तथा scarcely ... when/before का प्रयोग 'मुश्किल से/कठिनता से ... कि' के अर्थ में होता है। Hardly/scarcely के बाद then/than/that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Scarcely/Hardly had he reached the school when/before it began to rain. (√)
*मुश्किल से वह स्कूल पहुँचा ही था कि वर्षा होने लगी।*
She had hardly/scarcely recovered from fever when/before she was attacked with cold.
*वह कठिनता से बुखार से छुटकारा पायी थी कि जुकाम (ठंढ़) से आक्रांत हो गई।*
Scarcely/hardly had he reached the school then/than/that it began to rain. (×)
She had hardly/scarcely recovered from fever then/than/that she was attacked with cold. (×)

**Rule (11) :** No sooner ... than का प्रयोग "ज्योंही .... त्योंही" के अर्थ में होता है। No sooner के बाद हमेशा Than का प्रयोग होता है। No sooner के बाद when/then/but/that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

No sooner had I reached the station than the train departed. (√)
*ज्योंही मैं स्टेशन पहुँचा त्योंही गाड़ी प्रस्थान कर गई।*
No sooner had I reached the station but/then/when/that the train departed. (×)
No sooner does he arrive than he begins to work. (√)
*ज्योंही वह पहुँचता है, त्योंही काम करना प्रारंभ कर देता है।*
No sooner does he arrive but/then/when/that he begins to work. (×)

**Rule (12) :** As ... as का 'इतना .... जितना' अथवा 'उतना .... जितना' के अर्थ में Affirmative और Negative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

Bhavna is as beautiful as he says. —*Affirmative*
Sweta is not as intelligent as Prabha. —*Negative*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (13) :** So ... as का प्रयोग 'इतना .... जितना' अथवा 'उतना .... जितना' के अर्थ में Negative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

Priyadarshani is not so dull as the teacher expected.
—*Negative*

**Rule (14) :** As ... so का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'जैसा .... वैसा' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

As you do, so you get.
*जैसा तुम करते हो, वैसा तुम पाते हो।*

**Rule (15) :** So ... that का प्रयोग 'इतना .... कि' के अर्थ में Affirmative or Negative sentence में होता है। जैसे—

He is so weak that he cannot walk. —*Negative*
*वह इतना कमजोर है कि चल नहीं सकता।*

He is so handsome that every girl will be ready to marry him. —*Affirmative*
*वह इतना सुन्दर है कि प्रत्येक लड़की उससे शादी करने के लिए तैयार हो जायेगी।*

**Rule (16) :** Whether ... or का प्रयोग 'कि ... या' के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है। जैसे—

The boy does not know whether he will pass the examination or not.
*लड़का नहीं जानता है कि वह परीक्षा पास करेगा या नहीं।*

**Rule (17) :** Such ... as का प्रयोग 'ऐसा .... जो', 'ऐसा ..... जिसे', 'ऐसा ... जिसको, 'ऐसी .... जो', 'ऐसी .... जिसे', 'ऐसी ..... जिसको' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Such a boy as I know is at the party.
*ऐसा लड़का जिसे मैं जानता हूँ पार्टी में है।*

**Rule (18) :** Such ... that का प्रयोग 'ऐसा ..... कि', 'ऐसी .... कि' के अर्थ में होता है। इस case में that के बाद प्रयुक्त clause result (परिणाम) को अभिव्यक्त करता है। जैसे—

It was such a cold night that I stopped writing.
*ऐसी ठंढ रात थी कि मैंने लिखना बंद कर दिया।*

**Rule (19) :** Such that का प्रयोग "ऐसा कि" के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

His speech was such that everyone liked him.
*उसका भाषण ऐसा था कि प्रत्येक उसे पसंद करता था।*

उपरोक्त वाक्य को इस प्रकार से भी प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Such was his speech that everyone liked.

**Rule (20) :** Between के बाद हमेशा 'and' (conjunction) का प्रयोग होता है, 'to' preposition का नहीं। जैसे—

Contact us between 10 a.m. and 6 p.m. (✓)
Contact us between 10 a.m. to 6 p.m. (×)
There is enmity between Munna and Daya. (✓)
There is enmity between Munna to Daya. (×)

**Rule (21) :** Else का प्रयोग सामान्यतः अन्य, परन्तु, नहीं तो, अन्यथा के अर्थ में होता है, इसके बाद हमेशा but का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He wants nothing else but to go to bed. (✓)
*वह अन्य कुछ नहीं (चाहता है) बल्कि बिस्तर पर जाना चाहता है।*

**Rule (22) :** Not ... but का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'बल्कि' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He does not like Priti but Nilu.
Not Mr. Prasad but Mr. Mishra can solve this sum.

**Rule (23) :** Not तथा never के बाद or का प्रयोग होता है, Nor का नहीं। Not तथा never negative meaning रखता है, इसलिए nor का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए। जैसे—

He did not phone or write to his father. (✓)
He did not phone nor write to his father. (×)

**Rule (24) :** As if तथा As though का प्रयोग 'मानो' के अर्थ Present Tense में होता है। जैसे—

She looks as if/as though she is a heroine.
*वह अभिनेत्री है अनुमानतः सत्य है।*

As if तथा as though का प्रयोग असंभव चीजों को explain (वर्णन) करने के लिए Simple Past Tense में Present के अर्थ में होता है।

Structure :

(i) $S + V^2/V^2$ + *as if/as though* + $S$ + *were* + ...
(ii) $S + V^2/V^2$ + *as if/as though* + $S + V^2$ + ... (present के अवास्तविक परिस्थिति)
(iii) $S + V^2/V^2$ + *as if/as though* + $S$ + *had* + $V^3$ + ... (past के अवास्तविक परिस्थिति) जैसे—

(i) She talks as if/as though she were a queen.
(ii) You speak as if/as though you knew me.
(iii) He talks to me as if/as though he had lived in England.

ध्यान दें : As though = as if = मानो (✓) As although (×)
Even though = यद्यपि (✓) Even although (×)

**Rule (25) :** Even if का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में 'चाहे' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

I will not cheat the students even if I am hanged.

**Rule (26) :** Doubt के बाद affirmative sentence में if/whether का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि negative or Interrogative sentence में doubt के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He doubts if/whether Manisha will marry him.
—*Affirmative* (✓)
He doubts that Manisha will marry him. (×)
I have not any doubt that the publisher will cheat me.
—*Negative* (✓)
I have not any doubt if/whether the publisher will cheat me. (×)

ध्यान दें : Doubtful के बाद भी Affirmative sentence में if/whether का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि Negative or Interrogative sentence में doubtful के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I am doubtful if/whether my teacher will allow me to go to the circus. —*Affirmative* (✓)
I am doubtful that my teacher will allow me to go to the circus. (×)
He is not doubtful that his brother will finish his home work. —*Negative* (✓)
He is not doubtful if/whether his brother will finish his home work. (×)

**Rule (27) :** यदि the reason का प्रयोग किसी sentence में हो, तो इसके बाद that का प्रयोग होता है। Due to, because, because of तथा on account of का नहीं। जैसे—

This is the reason that he is not appearing at the examination. (✓)
This is the reason due to he is not appearing at the examination. (×)
This is the reason because he is not appearing at the examination. (×)
This is the reason because of he is not appearing at the examination. (×)
This is the reason on account of he is not appearing at the examination. (×)

**Note :** The reason why के बाद भी that का प्रयोग होता है। Due to, because, because of तथा on account of का नहीं। जैसे—

The reason why I don't love her is that she has betrayed my friend. (✓)



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



The reason why I don't love her is because/because of she has betrayed my friend. (×)
The reason why I don't love her is due to/on account of she has betrayed my friend. (×)

**Rule (28)** : Indirect speech में Reporting verbs के रूप में प्रयुक्त tell, wish, suggest, state, report, pray, notice, inform, learn, maintain, hold, forget, find, expect, discover, confirm, conceive, complain, admit, agree, answer, announce, argue, assure, claim, calculate etc. के बाद that का प्रयोग Conjunction के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He wished that he were a king. (√)
He wished he were a king. (×)
He prayed that God might bless me. (√)
He prayed God might bless me. (×)

**Note** : Believe, hope, suppose, think, confess, consider, declare, grant, hear, know, perceive, propose, see, say, understand etc—verbs के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है और नहीं भी होता है। लेकिन आधुनिक भाषा में उपरोक्त verbs के बाद that का प्रयोग प्रचलन में नहीं है। जैसे—

He thinks that I am honest. (√)
He thinks I am honest. (√)
She hopes that she will win the first prize. (√)
She hopes she will win the first prize (√)

**Rule (29)** : निम्नलिखित Nouns तथा Adjectives के बाद भी that का प्रयोग होता है।

**Nouns**—wish, advice, understanding, agreement, argument, certain, belief, claim, threat, thought, statement, sense, saying, rule, conclusion, decision, dream, report, expectation, promise, hope, feeling.

**Adjectives**—pleased, worried, possible, angry, anxious, aware, clear, probable, confident, conscious, happy, important, lucky, natural, obvious, true, certain, convinced. जैसे—

He is confident that he will pass the examination. (√)
He is confident he will pass the examination. (×)
It is certain that the BJP will win the election. (√)
It is certain the BJP will win the election. (×)
I saw the dream that I would be an I.P.S. (√)
I saw the dream I would be an I.P.S. (×)
Mr. Prasad gave me the advice that I wrote a book. (√)
Mr. Prasad gave me the advice I wrote a book. (×)

**Rule (30)** : Subject + Verb to be + that + clause (complement) का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Your aim is that you will compete the competitive examination. (√)
Your aim is you will compete the competitive examination. (×)
Our performance is that we shall win the match. (√)
Our performance is we shall win the match. (×)

**Rule (31)**: That का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में 'के उद्देश्य से' तथा 'ताकि' (In order that/so that) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Your elder brother worked hard that he might succeed in the examination.

**Rule (32)** : Other or Rather के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है न कि but का। जैसे—

He is no other than my brother. (√)
He is no other but my brother. (×)
She would rather buy some sarees than a washing machine. (√)
She would rather buy some sarees but a washing machine. (×)

**Rule (33)** : Comparative degree के Adjective or Adverb के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is stronger than I. (√)
He is stronger then I. (×)
Mr. Roy works more carefully than you. (√)
Mr. Roy works more carefully then you. (×)

**Note** : (i) More or less का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में Adjective तथा Adverb के पहले comparative बनाने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

She is more beautiful than Veena.
Adv. Adj.

Binay works less carefully than Vikas.
Adv. Adv.

(ii) More or less का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

More girls than five are ugly.
Adj. N

He gave her less money than she needed.
Adj. N

**Rule (34)** : *Adjective/Adverb + though/as + clause* के structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग Emphasis करने अर्थात जोर डालने के लिए होता है। इस structure में although का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Tired though/as he was, he did not stop working. (√)
Tired although he was, he did not stop working. (×)
Rich though/as Amar is, he is greedy. (√)
Rich although Amar is, he is greedy. (×)

## Correct use of Conjunctions

### (A) Use of 'Till', 'Until' and 'Unless'

Till (conj) = up to the time when *(उस समय तक/जब तक)*
Till (prep) = up to the time of *(जब तक का)*
Until (prep & conj) = up to the time when *(जब तक, तक, जब तक ... नहीं)*

Till/until का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में समय का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। until negative meaning रखता है, अतः इसके साथ not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I shall wait until/till you come. (√)
*जब तक आप नहीं आते, मैं ठहरूँगा।*
I shall wait until/till you do not come. (×)
He will not go there until it stops raining. (√)
*जब तक वर्षा नहीं रुकती वह वहाँ नहीं जायेगा।*
He will not go there until it does not stop raining. (×)

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में till तथा until दोनों का प्रयोग correct है, लेकिन until का प्रयोग ज्यादा प्रचलित है।

### (B) Use of 'Unless'

Unless का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में 'अगर नहीं/ यदि नहीं' (if not) के अर्थ में होता है, यह negative meaning रखता है तथा condition (शर्त) को अभिव्यक्त करता है। अतः इसके साथ not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

You should not waste your time unless you are timid. (√)
*अगर तुम कायर नहीं हो, तो तुम्हें समय बर्बाद नहीं करना चाहिए।*
They cannot apply unless they are postgraduate. (√)
*अगर वे लोग स्नातकोत्तर नहीं हैं, तो वे लोग दरखास्त नहीं दे सकते।*
You should not waste your time unless you are not timid. (×)
They cannot apply unless they are not postgraduate. (×)

**Note** : Until तथा unless में फर्क यह है कि until समय सूचक है तथा unless शर्त सूचक है। until तथा unless दोनों के साथ प्रयुक्त clause में not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। क्योंकि ये खुद negative meaning रखते हैं।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### (C) Use of 'When' and 'While'

When का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में किसी action (कार्य) के समाप्त होने के फलस्वरूप दूसरा action (कार्य) हो, तो होता है। while का नहीं। जैसे—

The students stood up when the teacher came. (✓)
The students stood up while the teacher came. (×)
When I reached the station, the train started. (✓)
While I reached the station, the train started. (×)

जबकि while का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में एक ही समय में दो कार्य के साथ-साथ होने का बोध कराने के लिए होता है; when का नहीं। जैसे—

While I was watching T. V., my mother was cooking. (✓)
When I was watching T. V., my mother was cooking. (×)
While I was in Patna, my beloved was in Darbhanga. (✓)
When I was in Patna, my beloved was in Darbhanga. (×)

**When तथा While के प्रयोग में फर्क :**

| Use of When | Use of While |
|---|---|
| 1. When का प्रयोग Age (उम्र) or life की अवधि बताने के लिए होता है। जैसे— | 1. While का प्रयोग Age or life की अवधि बताने के लिए नहीं होता है। जैसे— |
| When I was a child, I lived in my village. (✓) | While/As I was a child, I lived in my village. (×) |
| 2. *It + was + Time expressing words* के बाद प्रयुक्त clause के पहले when का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे— | 2. *It + was + Time expressing words* के बाद प्रयुक्त clause के पहले while का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे— |
| It was half past ten when I returned. (✓) | It was half past ten while I returned. (×) |
| 3. When का प्रयोग 'जबतक' (as long as) के अर्थ में नहीं होता है। जैसे— | 3. जबकि while का प्रयोग 'जबतक' (as long as) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे— |
| When there is life, there is hope. (×) | While there is life, there is hope. (✓) |
| 4. When का प्रयोग preposition के बाद होता है। जैसे— | 4. While का प्रयोग preposition के बाद नहीं होता है। जैसे— |
| There are detailed rules of when you can and you can't appeal. (✓) | There are detailed rules of while you can and you can't appeal. (×) |

### (D) Use of 'Lest'

Lest का प्रयोग 'ताकि ···· न' तथा 'ऐसा न हो कि' के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में होता है। यह negative meaning रखता है। इसलिए इसके साथ प्रयुक्त clause में not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Lest के बाद should का प्रयोग होता है; न कि will, may, would तथा might का। जैसे—

Work hard lest you should fail.
*कठिन परिश्रम करो, ताकि तुम असफल न हो जाओ।*
Work hard lest you should not fail. (×)
Work hard lest you will fail. (×)
Work hard lest you would fail. (×)
Work hard lest you might fail. (×)
Run with care lest you should fall. (✓)
*सावधानी से दौड़ो ताकि तुम गिर न जाओ।*
Run with care lest you should not fall. (×)
Run with care lest you may/might/will/would fall. (×)

### (E) Use of 'Otherwise', 'Else' and 'Or else'

Otherwise, else तथा or else का प्रयोग 'नहीं तो/अन्यथा' के अर्थ में होता है। इसके साथ प्रयुक्त clause में not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Don't walk on the slippery place otherwise/else/or else you will slip. (✓)
*तुम फिसलने वाले स्थान पर नहीं चलो, नहीं तो तुम फिसल जाओगे।*
Don't walk on the slippery place otherwise/else/or else you will not slip. (×)

### (F) Use of 'Since'

Since का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में 'जब से ..... तब से' के अर्थ में होता है। Since के साथ प्रयुक्त clause में Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि इसके पहले प्रयुक्त clause में Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

My brother has not written to me since he went to Mumbai.
*मेरा भाई जबसे मुम्बई गया है तब से उसने एक पत्र भी नहीं लिखा है।*
My brother has not written to me since he goes to Mumbai. (×)
My brother did not write to me since he went to Mumbai. (×)

**Note :** (i) *It + is + periods of time + since + clause* का प्रयोग होता है। since के बाद प्रयुक्त clause के साथ Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

It is eight years since my grandmother died. (✓)
It is eight years since my grandmother has died. (×)

(ii) यदि audience (श्रोता) or reader (पाठक) को कारण का पता पहले से हो तो sentence के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में As or Since का प्रयोग होता है। इस case में As or since की जगह because or for का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

As she is ill, she does not come to attend the class. (✓)
Because/for she is ill, she does not come to attend the class. (×)
Since you are unable to pay the fees, your name will be struck off from the college register. (✓)
Because/for you are unable to pay the fees, your name will be struck off from the college register. (×)

### (G) Use of 'For'

For का प्रयोग some additional information (कुछ अतिरिक्त जानकारी) के लिए होता है न कि because, since तथा as का। जैसे—

The passengers decided to stop the bus and drink water, for they were feeling thirsty. (✓)
The passengers decided to stop the bus and drink water, because/since/as they were feeling thirsty. (×)

**Note :** For clause का प्रयोग sentence के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

For it is June, the days are long. (×)
The days are long, for it is June. (✓)

### (H) Use of 'Because'

Because का प्रयोग 'प्रधान कारण' के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए 'क्योंकि' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Mukesh is not present in the class because he is ill. (✓)
*मुकेश वर्ग में उपस्थित नहीं है, क्योंकि वह बीमार है।*

**Note :** (i) Because की जगह for, since तथा as का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Because के माध्यम से Audience (श्रोता) or reader (पाठक) को ऐसी जानकारी मिलती है जो उसे पता नहीं था। जैसे—

Because Mr. Kapoor had been ill for two months, he lost his job. (✓)
For/since/as Mr. Kapoor had been ill for two months, he lost his job. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(ii) किसी question (प्रश्न) के Answer (उत्तर) के लिए सिर्फ because का प्रयोग होता है; न कि for, since तथा as का। जैसे—

Q. Why were you punished ?

A. I was punished because I had stolen his watch. (√)

A. I was punished for/since/as I had stolen his watch. (×)

(iii) Not, but or other conjunctions (अन्य conjunctions) के बाद because का प्रयोग होता है न कि for, since तथा as का। जैसे—

She has beaten me, not because I insulted her but because I abused her sister. (√)

She has beaten me, not for/since/as I insulted her but for/since/as I abused her sister. (×)

**(I) Use of 'So' and 'Therefore'**

So तथा therefore का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में 'जिस कारण से', इसलिए, परिणामस्वरूप के अर्थ में होता है। इन दोनों का प्रयोग बिना किसी अंतर का होता है। जैसे—

Munna was guilty so he was punished. (√)

Munna was guilty therefore he was punished. (√)

**Note :** (i) So तथा therefore के प्रयोग में फर्क :

| Use of So | Use of Therefore |
|---|---|
| 1. So का प्रयोग बोलचाल की अंग्रेजी भाषा में अर्थात Informal style में होता है। | 1. therefore का प्रयोग प्रामाणिक अंग्रेजी भाषा में अर्थात formal style में होता है। |
| 2. So or so that का प्रयोग result (परिणाम) को express करने के लिए होता है। जैसे— He injured his foot, so that he was unable to play in the match. (√) | 2. therefore that का प्रयोग result को express करने के लिए नहीं होता है। जैसे— He injured his foot, therefore that he was unable to play in the match. (×) |
| 3. So का प्रयोग Result clause के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में होता है। | 3. जबकि therefore का प्रयोग Result clause के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में first word or first phrase के बाद तथा main verb के पहले होता है। |

(ii) यदि therefore का प्रयोग Result clause के स्टार्टिंग में न होकर बाद में हो, तो comma ( , ) से separate (अलग) कर दिया जाता है। इस case में therefore Adverb होता है न कि Conjunction। जैसे—

He missed the morning train; he, therefore, is waiting for the next train. (√)

He missed the morning train; he, so, is waiting for the next train. (×)

उपरोक्त वाक्य में therefore की जगह so का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**(J) Use of 'If' and 'When'**

If तथा when का प्रयोग future (भविष्य) की चर्चा करने के लिए होता है लेकिन इनके प्रयोग में differences (अंतर/फर्क) होता है।

**Differences between the use of If and When**

| Use of If | Use of When |
|---|---|
| 1. If से अनिश्चित (uncertainty) के भाव का बोध होता है। जैसे— If you come, I shall help you. [किन्तु पता नहीं आएगा या नहीं] | 1. जबकि when से निश्चितता (certainty) के भाव का बोध होता है। जैसे— When you come, I will help you. [उपरोक्त वाक्य से यह पता चलता है कि तुम अवश्य आओगे।] |
| 2. If से condition (शर्त) का बोध होता है। इस case में if का अर्थ on condition that or supposing that होता है। जैसे— If you want to see me, you must come to my office. | 2. जबकि when से time का बोध होता है। इस case में when का अर्थ at the time that होता है। जैसे— When you will be sixteen, your father will send you to Delhi for higher education. |

**(K) Use of 'If' and 'Whether'**

★ If or whether का प्रयोग 'कि' के अर्थ में Reporting verbs—ask, want to know, enquire, demand etc. or R.V. + object के बाद Reported speech के पहले Indirect speech में होता है। जैसे—

*Direct*—He said, "Are you busy ?"

*Indirect*—He asked if/whether I was busy.

*Direct*—She said to me, "Do you love me ?"

*Indirect*—She asked me if/whether I loved her.

★ If or whether का प्रयोग not know, not sure तथा wonder के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He does not know if/whether he has committed a crime.

I am not sure if/whether she will sign the agreement.

**Note :** (i) or not का प्रयोग होने पर, clause के स्टार्टिंग (प्रारंभ) में whether का प्रयोग होता है न कि if or that का। जैसे—

He does not know whether she will come or not. (√)

He does not know if/that she will come or not. (×)

★ Whether का प्रयोग preposition के बाद होता है, न कि If or that का। जैसे—

Mr. Thakur needs a long discussion about whether he should settle in Patna. (√)

Mr. Thakur needs a long discussion about if/that he should settle in Patna. (×)

★ Whether का प्रयोग Infinitive (to + $V^1$) के पहले होता है, न कि If or that का। जैसे—

He doesn't know whether to accept or refuse the proposal. (√)

He doesn't know if/that to accept or refuse the proposal. (×)

**(L) Use of 'As soon as' and 'As long as'**

★ As soon as का प्रयोग 'ज्योंही ... त्योंही' (at the moment that no later than) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

As soon as the publisher entered the office, his employees began to work. (√)

★ As long as का प्रयोग 'जबतक' (while) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

You need not fear as long as God is with you. (√)

**Note :** (i) As soon as के बदले as long as का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

As long as the publisher entered the office, his employees began to work. (×)

(ii) As long as के बदले as soon as का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

You need not fear as soon as God is with you. (×)

(iii) As soon as or as long as का प्रयोग Affirmative तथा negative दोनों sentences में होता है। जैसे—

My wife solved the problem as soon as I had expected. —*Affirmative*

No one can do anything as long as God is displeased with him. —*Negative*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



(iv) As long as or so long as का प्रयोग 'शर्त पर कि/बशर्ते कि' (on condition that/provided that) के अर्थ में conjunctions of condition के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He can take my motorcycle as long as/so long as he drives carefully.

**(M) Use of 'Like' and 'As'**

★ Like का प्रयोग 'के समान' या 'जैसा कि' के अर्थ में preposition के रूप में noun, pronoun तथा gerund के पहले होता है। जैसे—

You are like (Prep.) your grand father (N).

There is nothing like (Prep.) listening (Gerund) to music.

My son looks like (Prep.) me (Pron.).

**Note :** जब like का प्रयोग Preposition के रूप में होता है तो इसके बाद objective case में noun, pronoun तथा gerund का प्रयोग होता है। न कि nominative case में। जैसे—

He looks like me. (✓)
He looks like I. (×)
They look like us. (✓)
They look like we. (×)

★ As का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में subject + verb के पहले होता है। इस case में As के बाद nominative case के pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। न कि objective case के pronoun का। जैसे—

He asked me to do as he had done. (✓)
He asked me to do like he had done. (×)

**Note :** (i) Subject + Verb के पहले conjunction के रूप like का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, बल्कि As का।

(ii) As का प्रयोग preposition के रूप में नहीं होता है।

**As तथा like के प्रयोग में फर्क :**

| Use of As | Use of Like |
|---|---|
| 1. As का प्रयोग prepositional phrase में एक Example (उदाहरण) देने के लिए होता है। जैसे— | 1. Like का प्रयोग prepositional phrase में एक example (उदाहरण) देने के लिए नहीं होता है। जैसे— |
| In 1939, as in 1914, everybody wanted war. (✓) | In 1939, like in 1914, everybody wanted war. (×) |
| 2. As का प्रयोग 'जब' के अर्थ में conjunction of time के रूप में होता है। जैसे— | 2. Like का प्रयोग 'जब' के अर्थ में conjunction of time के रूप में नहीं होता है। जैसे— |
| I saw her as she was getting off the bus. (✓) | I saw her like she was getting off the bus. (×) |
| 3. As का प्रयोग 'के रूप में' (In the capacity of) के अर्थ में noun के पहले होता है। इस case में noun के बाद verb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे— | 3. Like का प्रयोग 'के समान' (in the manner of) के अर्थ में noun के पहले होता है। इस case में भी noun के बाद verb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे— |
| Mr. Gupta worked as a doctor. (✓) | Mr. Srivastav worked like a doctor. (✓) |
| *मि. गुप्ता एक डॉक्टर के रूप में काम किया अर्थात मि. गुप्ता डॉक्टर था।* | *मि. श्रीवास्तव एक डॉक्टर के समान काम किया अर्थात मि. श्री वास्तव डॉक्टर नहीं था।* |
| Mr. Gupta worked as a doctor did. (×) | Mr. Srivastav worked like a doctor did. (×) |
| 4. Regard, view, represent, treat, acknowledge, portray—verbs के object के बाद complement के रूप में As का प्रयोग 'के रूप में' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे— | 4. Regard, view, represent treat, acknowledge, portray—verbs के object के बाद complement के रूप में like का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। |
| The boys regard him as a good teacher. (✓) | The boys regard him like a good teacher. (×) |
| Munni is viewed as a prostitute. (✓) | Munni is viewed like a prostitute. (×) |
| She treats him as a good lover. (✓) | She treats him like a good lover. (×) |

**(N) Use of 'But' and 'However'**

★ But का प्रयोग 'लेकिन', 'किन्तु' तथा 'परन्तु' के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He is hard working but not intelligent.

★ But का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में contrary to expectation; In contrast तथा on the contrary के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

He cut his knee but didn't cry.
She likes opera but her husband does not.

★ But का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप मे negative meaning expressing clause के बाद होता है। जैसे—

We cannot do anything but wait.

★ But का प्रयोग 'सिवाय' (except) के अर्थ में preposition के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

They are all wrong but me.

★ But का प्रयोग 'केवल' (only) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He left but an hour ago.
He is but a boy.

**Note :** (i) But that का प्रयोग 'सिवाय उसके' (except that) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

I would have helped him but that I was short of money at the time.

(ii) But then का प्रयोग 'इसके विपरीत' (on the other hand) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

Mumbai is a noisy place but then, it is a place of entertainment.

★ But का प्रयोग Relative pronoun के रूप में 'जो नहीं' (who do not/who does not) के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

There is not one of them but wishes to go.

**Note :** But me no buts का प्रयोग 'मुझसे बहस न करो', 'बहाने बाजी न करो' तथा 'अगर-मगर न करो' के अर्थ में होता है।

★ However का प्रयोग 'तथापि/बहरहाल' (all the same; nevertheless) के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

However, he decided to stay.

★ However/Howsoever का प्रयोग 'कुछ भी हो; यद्यपि; कितना भी' (In whatever way or degree) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He will never succeed, however hard he tries.

★ However का प्रयोग but के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में होता है इस अर्थ में However तथा but का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She has not succeeded, but, however she is not worried. (×)
She has not succeeded, but she is not worried. (✓)
She has not succeeded, however she is not worried. (✓)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



लेकिन however का प्रयोग Adverb of manner or Adverb of degree के रूप में हो तो इसके पहले but का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

But however hard he tried, he could not succeed.

**(O) Use of 'That'**

★ That का प्रयोग 'कि' के अर्थ में conjunction के रूप में Indirect speech में Reported speech के पहले होता है। जैसे—

*Direct* : He said to me, "I shall help you."
*Indirect*: He told me that he would help me. (√)
He told me he would help me. (×)
*Direct* : She said to you, "I love you very much."
*Indirect*: She told you that she loved you very much. (√)
She told you she loved you very much. (×)

**Note** : (i) Indirect speech के Reported speech में Interrogative/Imperative sentence का प्रयोग हो तो इसके पहले that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

*Direct* : He said to me, "Are you happy ?"
Interrogative
*Indirect*: He asked me if I was happy. (√)
He asked me that I was happy. (×)
*Direct* : He said, "Bring a glass of water."
Imperative
*Indirect*: He ordered to bring a glass of water. (√)
He ordered that bring a glass of water. (×)
*Direct* : He said to me, "Where do you live ?"
*Indirect*: He asked me where I lived. (√)
He asked me that where I lived. (×)

(ii) Indirect speech के Reported speech में optative/exclamatory sentence का प्रयोग हो तो इसके पहले that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

*Direct* : He said, "May you live long !"
*Indirect*: He blessed that I might live long. (√)
He blessed I might live long. (×)
*Direct* : He said, "Alas ! I am ruined."
*Indirect*: He exclaimed with sorrow that he was ruined. (√)
He exclaimed with sorrow he was ruined. (×)

**No Use of Conjunctions**

**Rule (1)**: Indirect speech में प्रयुक्त if, whether, who, whom, whose, which, what, when, how, where, why के पहले that/as to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He asked me that how old I was. (×)
He asked me as to how old I was. (×)
He asked me how old I was. (√)
The teacher asked her that what her name was. (×)
The teacher asked her as to what her name was. (×)
The teacher asked her what her name was. (√)

**Note** : If, whether ... etc. से Assertive sentence स्टार्ट हो तो that का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

**Rule (2)**: As, since, beacause से कोई sentence स्टार्ट हो, तो इसके बाद so/therefore का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Because she did not work hard, therefore/so she failed. (×)
Because she did not work hard, she failed. (√)

**Rule (3)**: Relative Pronouns : who, which, that, whom, whose तथा इनके पहले प्रयुक्त noun या Antecedent के बीच conjunction (and) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

She is a beautiful girl, and whom I love very much. (×)
She is a beautiful girl whom I love very much. (√)
She has bought a pen, and which is green. (×)
She has bought a pen which is green. (√)
He is Mukesh, and who studies in my college. (×)
He is Mukesh who studies in my college. (√)

## Practice Set

**Q.1.** *Pick out the conjunctions and state their kinds :*

1. I like her because she is beautiful.
2. He will do this if he is allowed.
3. Rajendra is happy though he is very poor.
4. She knows when I shall come.
5. She is neither beautiful nor intelligent.
6. Though you are poor, yet you are honest.
7. Ajit not only passed but also won a scholarship.
8. He had hardly reached the station when it began to rain.
9. He waited for me till the train arrived.
10. Rakesh passed the examination because he worked hard.
11. The principal will not forgive you, unless you tell him the truth.
12. He can travel by land or by air.
13. His brother fled away lest the snake should bite him.
14. The pomegranate is ripe but is costly.
15. Please wait until he comes back.
16. While he was playing, I was reading.
17. The girls danced when the boys sang.
18. Five months have passed since I met her.
19. Both Mukesh and Binay are handsome.
20. He does not know why he is anxious.

**Q.2.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable conjunctions given in the brackets*

1. She was intelligent ..... she was poor. *(and, but)*
2. He waited for me ..... I came back. *(until/unless)*
3. The patient had died ..... the doctor came. *(before/after)*
4. Five years have passed ..... I left the college. *(since/before)*
5. Neither the father ..... his son was arrested. *(nor/or)*
6. Both Meena ..... Veena are beautiful. *(and, as well as)*
7. Although she works hard, ..... she fails. *(but, yet)*
8. Make haste, ..... you will miss the bus. *(otherwise, or)*
9. I want to know ..... has called out my name. *(who/whom)*
10. ..... it is costly, yet we have bought it. *(Although, if)*
11. Hardly had we reached the college ..... the bell rang. *(when, than)*
12. Make hay ..... the sun shines. *(while, when)*
13. She is not only laborious ..... naughty. *(and also, but also)*
14. The people know ..... God is almighty. *(that, if)*
15. You should not touch the electric wire ..... you are careless. *(unless/until)*
16. No sooner did the students see the teacher ..... they started running to their classroom. *(than, when)*
17. The thief ran away ..... he should be caught. *(lest/unless)*
18. ..... you come, I shall go. *(if, though)*
19. Either you ..... your sister has done it. *(or, nor)*
20. He would rather die ... beg. *(than, but)*

**Q.3.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Both Shyam (1)/as well as Ghanshyam (2)/are interested to (3)/prepare the examination. (4)/No error (5)
2. Scarcely had I bought (1)/the ticket than (2)/the postmaster showed (3)/the green flag. (4)/No error (5)
3. I asked him (1)/that why he was (2)/not preparing for the (3)/ Air force examination. (4)/No error (5)
4. Fifteen years (1)/have passed (2)/that he came back (3)/from Darbhanga. (4)/No error (5)
5. In Bihar leaders are (1)/taking bad advantage of casteism (2)/I think it is (3)/nothing than bad things. (4)/No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



6. The criminal had (1)/hardly put the precious things (2)/in his bag than (3)/the landlord got up. (4)/No error (5)
7. Either you (1)/and he (2)/went there (3)/to see the helpless. (4)/No error (5)
8. While I opened (1)/the gate of my house (2)/I found (3)/a dead cat. (4)/No error (5)
9. No sooner did the jeep arrive (1)/at the station (2)/then a young police officer (3)/jumped out of it. (4)/No error (5)
10. His book has been (1)/missing from (2)/his room (3)/since yesterday. (4)/No error (5)
11. I have never (1)/visited (2)/nor intend to visit (3)/foreign countries. (4)/No error (5)
12. His manners indicate (1)/that he has no other intention (2)/than (3)/to steal his money. (4)/No error (5)
13. The headmaster advised the student (1)/who had failed in the examination twice (2)/that not to attempt it again (3)/until he had time to prepare for it properly. (4)/No error (5)
14. Nishant could not (1)/go to the picnic (2)/for his mother (3)/was not well. (4)/No error (5)
15. He says he (1)/is going to (2)/cut down (3)/his smoking. (4)/No error (5)
16. When learning to swim (1)/one of the most important things (2)/is to relax (3)/No error. (4)
17. He not only comes here (1)/for swimming but also for coaching (3)/new swimmers. (4)/No error (5)
18. A more irrational world (1)/to this one in which (2)/we presently live (3)/could hardly be conceived. (4)/No error (5)
19. Hardly had (1)/I left the house (2)/than it began (3)/to rain. (4)/No error (5)
20. You should take (1)/a book with you (2)/unless (3)/you have to wait. (4)/No error (5)

**Q.4.** *Correct the the following sentences :*

1. While the cock crew, the farmer woke up.
2. When the leader was speaking, the people were listening carefully.
3. She works hard until she will fail in the examination.
4. His friend was not only fined and also sent to jail.
5. He plays neither cricket or football.
6. He inquired that where was the college.
7. Two weeks have passed before he came here.
8. The crops will die since the rains fall.
9. He asked me that whether Mukesh had gone.
10. Take care unless you should fall.
11. Unless you do not apologize, I shall punsih you.
12. No sooner does Mukesh arrive then he begins to study.
13. He would have the book rather but the note book.
14. I have no other hobby but that of collecting books.
15. He visited not only Mumbai also Kolkata.
16. Scarcely had she left than a storm began to blow.
17. No sooner had the fight started but Mohan fled away.
18. He is poor, yet he is honest.
19. He returned his residence before the sun had set.
20. Work hard or you will fail.

**Q.5.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. There is (1)/a beautiful and old church (2)/in the centre (3)/of the town. (4)/No error (5)
2. I was treated (1)/if (2)/I were (3)/an old friend. (4)/No error (5)
3. I'll go (1)/with you (2)/as soon as (3)/I don't have to sing. (4)/No error (5)
4. He'll pay (1)/you as long as (2)/he receives (3)/the parcel. (4)/No error (5)
5. Remember to go (1)/there early, (2)/so long as (3)/you may not get a seat. (4)/No error (5)
6. At night we used to go out (1)/with our friends (2)/nor stay at home (3)/listening to music. (4)/No error (5)
7. She has lived (1)/in Newyork for many years (2)/but regards Newyork (3)/as her home. (4)/No error (5)
8. Since it's his birthday (1)/on Monday (2)/so he's (3)/having a party. (4)/No error (5)
9. If you are a naughty boy, (1)/so the big crocodile (2)/will come (3)/and eat you. (4)/No error (5)
10. His English (1)/is so poor (2)/so his beloved (3)/has to translate everything. (4)/No error (5)
11. He hadn't taken (1)/any warm clothes (2)/with him (3)/so that he felt cold. (4)/No error (5)
12. We took (1)/our umbrellas (2)/so we (3)/wouldn't get wet. (4)/No error (5)
13. I shall either go home (1)/to Muzaffarpur or my family (3)/will come to Patna. (4)/No error (5)
14. Inside the examination room (1)/we could (2)/neither smoke (3)/or talk. (4)/No error (5)
15. Two of the biggest firms (1)/are Apple and IBM (2)/which both are (3)/in the computer business. (4)/No error (5)
16. No sooner had (1)/we arrived (2)/when (3)/it began to rain. (4)/No error (5)
17. The magazine (1)/covers everything from politics (2)/until what's (3)/happening in Hollywood. (4)/No error (5)
18. When I was (1)/driving to the airport, (2)/my car (3)/broke down. (4)/No error (5)
19. The weather here (1)/is always warm and (2)/this is the reason because (3)/there are so many public swimming pools. (4)/No error (5)
20. Neither the salary (1)/ or the work (2)/ atmosphere was (3)/ good in that office. (4)/ No error (5)

**Q.6.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. Scarcely had he gone, than a police man knocked at the door.
2. Both Aditya as well as Aditi came.
3. She continued to be lazy, as long as she was sixteen years old.
4. Until you stop here, you will find no time for work.
5. I doubt that he was there.
6. She was so ill as she could not walk.
7. Although he came, but I didn't see him.
8. He worked hard, because he will succeed.
9. He lay down, as if dead.
10. As any other job, teaching has many difficulties.
11. No sooner had I started when it began to rain.
12. Not only he tried to pass but also to secure position in the class.
13. Either you shall have to stay here or to go home.
14. Gandhijee was not only a maker of a nation, but also of a religion.
15. Walking is good both for health and recreation.
16. Sometimes she weeps and sometimes she laughs as though she were mad.
17. Some people envy me since I am a very successful artist.
18. Because you refuse to co-operate, I shall have to take legal steps.
19. The servant must have opened the box, since no one else had the key.
20. He was late for he had no watch to see time.

**Q.7.** *Correct the following sentences :*

1. He had gone away after I reached there.
2. Mr. Thakur will not teach you after he has taken money.
3. Either he will ask me or you.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



4. Neither he reads nor writes English.
5. However you speak fast, I shall follow you.
6. He was afraid lest he should not pass.
7. Fifteen years have passed as I got service.
8. Two hours passed since he has reached here.
9. Unless you do not labour hard, you cannot pass.
10. He went home before he had completed his studies.
11. He loves you if you were his own child.
12. Until it rains, we must stay here.
13. He learnt little as long as he was 16 years old.
14. No sooner had I reached the station before the train left.
15. No sooner did the bell rang than all the students rushed in.
16. I shall not examine you after I have taken my fee.
17. Sanskrit is not only difficult to read but also to write.
18. Hardly had he left home than it began to rain.
19. Though is he poor, but he is happy.
20. He has gone both to Mumbai and Delhi.

**Q.8.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. He (1)/encouraged me (2)/so I might not (3)/lose heart. (4)/No error (5)
2. I (1)/do not doubt (2)/if (3)/he was there. (4)/No error (5)
3. He (1) is known (2)/not only for his riches (3)/but also for his wisdom. (4)/No error (5)
4. I want her (1)/to study science, (2)/because she will have (3)/a better chance. (4)/No error (5)
5. He asked (1)/that how long (2)/you would be (3)/absent. (4)/No error (5)
6. I asked her (1)/that whether (2)/her mother (3)/was at home. (4)/No error (5)
7. He had scarcely (1)/read the letter (2)/than (3)/a telegram arrived. (4)/No error (5)
8. You will (1)/do nothing (2)/till (3)/you are lazy. (4)/No error (5)
9. He (1) has (2) no brother (3)/nor sister. (4)/No error (5)
10. It is extremely (1)/doubtful (2)/that he will (3)/succeed in this work. (4)/No error (5)
11. Unless she (1)/goes by air, (2)/she will (3)/reach soon. (4)/No error (5)
12. I (1)/shall not go (2)/except (3)/you permit me. (4)/No error (5)
13. Immediately the principal (1)/finished his speech, (2)/I started (3)/reciting my poem. (4)/No error (5)
14. The accident (1)/took place (2)/as the train (3)/was crossing a bridge. (4)/No error (5)
15. As soon as (1)/the bell rang, (2)/than (3)/the students rushed out of their classes. (4)/No error (5)
16. Unless you do not pay (1)/attention to what (2)/I say, (3)/you will not succeed. (4)/No error (5)
17. No sooner did (1)/the chairman begin speaking, (2)/some participants (3)/started shouting slogans. (4)/No error (5)
18. Not only it is our duty (1) to support our parents (2)/but also to respect them. (3)/No error (4)
19. When the police approached him, (1)/he held up his both hands, (2)/to show that (3)/he was surrendering. (4)/No error (5)
20. Scarcely we had finished observing this (1)/when we were surprised by about a dozen of the old birds (2)/jumping in the most unsafe and funny manner towards the sea (3)/No error (4)

**Q.9.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable conjunctions (connectors/subordinators)*

1. He was tired, ....., he went home.
2. Do you know ..... he was.
3. ..... you apologize, I shall punish you.
4. Two months have passed ..... he left college.
5. He ran hard ..... he should miss the train.
6. I had no other hobby ..... that of collecting books.
7. He would have the mobile set rather ..... the motorcycle.
8. No sooner had the fight begun ..... he ran away.
9. Scarcely had he left ..... a storm began to blow.
10. I have neither written to her ..... spoken to her.
11. He visited not only Delhi, ..... Rajgir.
12. My daughter won both a prize ..... a scholarship.
13. Either my brother was there ..... my son-in-law was there.
14. He is slow ..... he is steady.
15. ..... there is life, there is hope.
16. I have never seen him ..... that unfortunate event happened.
17. Man proposes ..... God disposes.
18. Though he slay me, ..... I will trust him.
19. Time ..... tide wait for no man.
20. Give me something to drink, ..... I shall die of thirst.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q 1.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | because | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 2. | if | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 3. | though | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 4. | when | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 5. | neither ... nor | *co-ordinating conjunction.* |
| 6. | though ... yet | *co-ordinating conjunction.* |
| 7. | not only ... but also | *co-ordinating conjunction.* |
| 8. | hardly ... when | *co-ordinating conjunction.* |
| 9. | till | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 10. | because | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 11. | unless | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 12. | or | *co-ordinating conjunction.* |
| 13. | lest | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 14. | but | *co-ordinating conjunction.* |
| 15. | until | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 16. | while | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 17. | when | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 18. | since | *subordinating conjunction.* |
| 19. | Both ..... and | *co-ordinating conjunction.* |
| 20. | why | *subordinating conjunction.* |

**Q 2.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. but | 2. until | 3. before | 4. since |
| 5. nor | 6. and | 7. yet | 8. otherwise |
| 9. who | 10. although | 11. when | 12. while |
| 13. but also | 14. that | 15. unless | 16. than |
| 17. lest | 18. if | 19. or | 20. than |

**Q 3.**

1. (2) As well as की जगह and का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Both ... and का प्रयोग होता है।
2. (2) than की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि scarcely ... when का प्रयोग होता है।
3. (2) that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि Interrogative word के पहले that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
4. (3) that की जगह since का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि since का प्रयोग conjunction के रूप में अबसे ..... तबसे के अर्थ में होता है।
5. (4) nothing than की जगह nothing but का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (3) than की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि hardly ... when का प्रयोग होता है।
7. (2) and की जगह or का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Either ... or का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (1) while की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा। विशेष जानकारी के rules लिए पढ़ें।
9. (3) then की जगह than का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि no sooner ... than का प्रयोग होता है।
10. (5) Given sentence correct है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



11. (3) nor की जगह or का प्रयोग होगा। Not तथा never के बाद or का प्रयोग होता है न कि nor का।
12. (3) than की जगह but का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (3) that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि यह अनावश्यक है।
14. (3) for की जगह because का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (1) He says के बाद that का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (1) when की जगह while का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (1) He not only comes here की जगह He comes here not only का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (2) to की जगह than का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि comparative degree के बाद सामान्यतः than का प्रयोग होता है।
19. (3) than की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि hardly के बाद when का प्रयोग होता है।
20. (3) unless की जगह In case का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि precaution (सावधानी) को express करने के लिए In case का प्रयोग होता है न कि unless का।

**Q 4.**
1. When the cock crew, the farmer woke up.
2. While the leader was speaking, the people were listening carefully.
3. She works hard unless she will fail in the examination.
4. His friend was not only fined but also sent to jail.
5. He plays neither cricket nor football.
6. He inquired where the college was.
7. Two weeks have passed since he came here.
8. The crops will die before the rains fall.
9. He asked me whether Mukesh had gone.
10. Take care lest you should fall.
11. Unless you apologize, I shall punish you.
12. No sooner does Mukesh arrive than he begins to study.
13. He would have the book rather than the note book.
14. I have no other hobby than that of collecting books.
15. He visited not only Mumbai but also Kolkata.
16. Scarcely had she left when a storm began to blow.
17. No sooner had the fight started than Mohan fled away.
18. Though he is poor, yet he is honest.
19. He returned to his residence after the sun had set.
20. Work hard otherwise/else you will fail.

**Q. 5.**

1. (2) and का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
यदि दो Adjectives similar qualities को describe नहीं करे तो किसी noun के पहले प्रयुक्त दोनों Adjectives के बीच And का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
लेकिन–A red and green umbrella. (✓)
A red green umbrella. (×)
A gold and silver bracelet. (✓)
A gold silver bracelet. (×)
A hunting and fishing knife. (✓)
A hunting fishing knife. (×)
2. (2) If की जगह as if का प्रयोग होगा जो sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
3. (3) as soon as की जगह as long as का प्रयोग होगा। as soon as का प्रयोग ज्योंही ... त्योंही के अर्थ में होता है जबकि as long as का प्रयोग 'जबतक/बशर्ते कि' के अर्थ में होता है।
4. (2) as long as की जगह as soon as का प्रयोग होगा। जो Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
5. (3) So long as की जगह otherwise का प्रयोग होगा। otherwise का प्रयोग 'नहीं तो' के अर्थ में होता है जो अर्थयुक्त है।
6. (3) nor की जगह or का प्रयोग होगा जो Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
7. (3) But की जगह therefore का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (3) So का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। क्योंकि यदि किसी sentence का first clause if, since, as तथा because से स्टार्ट हो तो second caluse के पहले so तथा that's why का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
9. (2) So का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। If clause के बाद so का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
10. (3) So की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि ... so ... that का प्रयोग 'ताकि' के अर्थ में होता है।
11. (4) so that की जगह सिर्फ so का प्रयोग होगा। So that का प्रयोग किसी भी Action के purpose (उद्देश्य) को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जबकि So का प्रयोग किसी भी action के result को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—
I'd forgotten to take my umbrella so that I got wet. (×)
I'd forgotten to take my umbrella so I got wet. (✓)
12. (3) So की जगह so that का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (1) I shall either go home की जगह Either I shall go home का प्रयोग होगा। Either ... or का प्रयोग दो clauses को जोड़ने के लिए किया गया है।
14. (4) or की जगह nor का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि neither के बाद nor का प्रयोग होता है।
15. (3) which both are की जगह which are both का प्रयोग होगा जो Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
16. (3) When की जगह than का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि No sooner के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है।
17. (3) Until what's की जगह to what's का प्रयोग होगा। Time के लिए until or till का प्रयोग होता है जबकि distance, area or slope के लिए to or as far as का प्रयोग होता है।
18. (1) when की जगह while का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (3) because का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है। This is the reason के बाद because का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। This is the reason तथा This is why का प्रयोग 'यही कारण है' या 'इस कारण से' के अर्थ में होता है।
20. (2) or की जगह nor का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि neither के बाद nor का प्रयोग होता है।

Note : the reason तथा somebody's reason के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
The reason ..... is that. (✓)
The reason ..... is because. (×)
Somebody's reason ..... is that. (✓)
Somebody's reason ..... is because. (×)

**Q. 6.**
1. Scarcely had he gone, when a policeman knocked at the door.
2. Both Aditya and Aditi came.
3. She continued to be lazy, until she was sixteen years old.
4. As long as you stop here, you will find no time for work.
5. I doubt if he was there.
6. She was so ill that she could not walk.
7. He came but I did not see him.
8. He worked hard so that he might succeed.
9. He lay down, as if he were dead.
10. Like any other job, teaching has many difficulties.
11. No sooner had I started than it began to rain.
12. He tried not only to pass but also to secure position in the class.
13. You shall have either to stay here or to go home.
14. Gandhijee was a maker not only of a nation but also of a religion.
15. Walking is good for both health and recreation.
16. Sometimes she weeps and sometimes she laughs as if she were mad.
17. Some people envy me because I am a very successful artist.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



18. Since you refuse to co-operate, I shall have to take legal steps.
19. The servant must have opened the box, for no one else had the key.
20. He was late because he had no watch to see time.

**Q.7.**

1. He had gone away before I reached there.
2. Mr. Thakur will not teach you before he has taken money.
3. He will ask me either you or me.
4. He neither reads nor writes English.
5. However fast you speak, I shall follow you.
6. He was afraid lest he should fail.
7. Fifteen years have passed since I got service.
8. Two hours have passed since he reached here.
9. Unless you labour hard, you cannot pass.
10. He went home after he had completed his studies.
11. He loves you as if you were his own child.
12. As long as it rains, we must stay here.
13. He learnt little until he was 16 years old.
14. No sooner had I reached the station than the train left.
15. No sooner did the bell ring than all the students rushed in.
16. I shall not examine you before I have taken my fee.
17. Sanskrit is difficult not only to read but also to write.
18. Hardly had he left home when it began to rain.
19. Though he is poor, yet he is happy.
20. He has gone to both Mumbai and Delhi.
    or, He has gone both to Mumbai and to Delhi.

**Q. 8.**

1. (3) So I might not की जगह so that I might not का प्रयोग होगा। so that तथा In order that का प्रयोग subordinate clause को Introduce करने तथा purpose को express करने के लिए किया जाता है।
2. (3) If की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा।
   Note : Affirmative sentence में doubt के बाद प्रयुक्त clause के पहले if or whether का प्रयोग होता है जबकि Negative or Interrogative sentence में doubt के बाद प्रयुक्त clause के पहले that का प्रयोग होता है।
3. (5) Given sentence correct है।
4. (3) Because she will have की जगह So that she may have का प्रयोग होगा।
   Note : Main cause or reason को express करने के लिए because का प्रयोग होता है तथा purpose को express करने के लिए so that or in order that का प्रयोग होता है। so that or in order that के बाद may का प्रयोग होता है।
5. (2) that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि यह अनावश्यक है।
6. (2) that का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि If or whether के पहले that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
7. (3) than की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि scarcely के बाद when का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (3) till की जगह as long as का प्रयोग होगा।
   Note : As long as का प्रयोग 'time how long' के अर्थ को express करने के लिए किया जाता है तथा till or until का प्रयोग 'time before' के अर्थ को express करने के लिए किया जाता है।
9. (4) nor की जगह or का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि no, not तथा never के बाद or का प्रयोग होता है।
10. (3) that की जगह whether का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Affirmative sentence में doubtful के बाद whether का प्रयोग होता है न कि that का।
11. (1) unless की जगह if का प्रयोग होगा।
    Note : Structure I : if + S.C. (simple present tence) + (,) + P.C. (simple future tense) + (.)
    Structure II : if + S.C. (simple past tence) + (,) + P.C. (simple past tense) + (.)
    Structure III : if + S.C. (past perfect tense) + (,) + P.C. (past perfect tense) + (.)
    उपरोक्त structures में if का प्रयोग होता है न कि unless का। जैसे—
    If you work hard, you will pass.
    If he won a lottery, he would buy a car.
    If he had worked hard, he would have passed.
12. (3) except की जगह unless का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (1) Immediately की जगह as soon as का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (3) As की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि As का प्रयोग कारण के भाव तथा when का प्रयोग at a certain time को express करने के लिए किया जाता है।
15. (3) than का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है। As soon as के बाद than का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
16. (1) unless you do not pay की जगह unless you pay attention का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि unless स्वयं negative meaning रखता है इसलिए unless के साथ donot का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
17. (3) than का प्रयोग some participants के पहले होगा क्योंकि No sooner के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है।
18. (1) Not only it is our duty की जगह It is our duty not only का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (2) His both hands की जगह both his hands का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (1) scarcely we had finished की जगह scarcely had we finished का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि scarcely + Anxiliary verb + Subject + $V^1/V^3$ का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है।

**Q. 9.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. therefore | 2. who | 3. unless | 4. since |
| 5. lest | 6. than | 7. than | 8. than |
| 9. when | 10. nor | 11. but also | 12. and |
| 13. or | 14. but | 15. while | 16. since |
| 17. and | 18. yet | 19. and | 20. else |

## Combination of Sentences : I

Co-ordinating conjunctions का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा (join/combine) जाता है। [जोड़ने के बाद ये compound sentence हो जाते हैं।]

**Type I :** Co-ordinating conjunction '*and*' का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. Man proposes. God disposes.
   Man proposes and God disposes.
2. The sun rises in the east. The sun sets in the west.
   The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

**Q 1.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using 'and':*

1. The sun set. The farmers returned home.
2. He finished his breakfast. He went for a walk.
3. God made the country. Man made the town.
4. She keeps a telephone set. She keeps a mobile set.
5. Give me blood. I shall give you freedom.
6. My wife took a lamp. She showed me the way.
7. Your brother goes to bed early. He gets up early.
8. She can speak Sanskrit. She can write Sanskrit.
9. I wrote a book. I published it.
10. Be just. Fear not.

**Type II :** Coordinating conjunction *as well as* का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. She can speak French. She can speak German.
   She can speak French as well as German.
2. Aditya can play cricket. He can play carrom.
   Aditya can play cricket as well as carrom.

**Q. 2** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using 'as well as':*

1. He keeps cows. He keeps oxen.
2. You speak Hindi. You speak Maithili.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. He was exhausted. He was hungry.
4. Mr. Thakur is honest. He is laborious.
5. She was second in Mathematics. She was second in Physics.
6. Vikas is to blame. His sister is to blame.
7. The farmer grows wheat. The farmer grows barley.
8. Rahul is the captain of the team. He is the monitor of the class.
9. The principal admired her. The teachers admired her.
10. Tigers are like cats. Lions are like cats.

**Type III** : Co-ordinating conjunction '*not only ..... but also*' का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He was fined. He was sent to jail.
   He was not only fined but also sent to jail.
2. Bhavna lost her ticket. She lost her suitcase.
   Bhavna lost not only her ticket but also her suitcase.

**Q. 3.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using 'not only ..... but also':*

1. His brother was fined. He was expelled.
2. He comes late. He is often absent.
3. Children should learn how to read English. Children should learn how to write it.
4. Our mother gives us food to eat. Our mother looks after us carefully.
5. I travelled by day. I travelled by night.
6. Aditya came first in his class. Aditya won the first prize.
7. My father grows maize. My father grows wheat.
8. The publisher is wise. He is praised by his neighbours.
9. He is praised by his teachers. He is praised by his neighbours.
10. The daffodils has a rich colour. The daffodils has a sweet smell.

**Type IV** : Co-ordinating conjunction–*but* का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He has a lot of money. He is unhappy.
   He has a lot of money, but he is unhappy.
2. She is poor. She is honest.
   She is poor, but she is honest.

**Q. 4.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using but:*

1. He has a cricket ball. He has no bats.
2. She is very ugly. She is intelligent.
3. Vikas works hard. Binay is idle.
4. I do not write fast. I write well.
5. Many were invited. Few have come.
6. The author is poor. The author is honest.
7. You write slowly. You write neatly.
8. Pathan began badly. He ended well.
9. Naresh went out for a walk His wife stayed at home.
10. My wife is slow. She is steady.

**Type V** : Co-ordinating conjunction–'still or yet' का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He does not deserve. His elder brother helps him.
   He does not deserve, still or yet his elder brother helps him.
2. It was raining. He went out for a walk.
   It was raining, still or yet he went out for a walk.

**Q. 5.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using still or yet:*

1. Krishna worked very hard. Krishna failed.
2. She was annoyed. She kept quiet.
3. He won the first prize. He was not satisfied.
4. The old woman was tired. She went on walking.
5. Nawab was wounded. Nawab remained cheerful.
6. The doctor did his best. The patient died.
7. It was raining. The children went to school.
8. He has a lot of faults. I love him.
9. He failed in the first attempt. He persevered.
10. He was rather unkind to us. We did not mind much.

**Type VI** : Co-ordinating conjunction–*nevertheless* का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. She failed. She persevered.
   She failed; nevertheless she persevered.
2. I lost all my wealth. I remained cheerful.
   I lost all my wealth; nevertheless I remained cheerful.

**Q. 6.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using 'nevertheless':*

1. He had a lot of faults. I praised him very much.
2. She lost all her wealth. She remained cheerful.
3. The dog was injured in the leg. It struggled on.
4. There was no news of his wife. He went on hoping.
5. He was not invited. He went to attend the party.

**Type VII.** Co-ordinating conjunction '*or*' or '*either.....or*' का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He is guilty, his brother is guilty.
   Either he or his brother is guilty.
2. He is a rogue. He is a fool.
   He is either a rogue or a fool.
3. Go at once. You will miss the train.
   Go at once or you will miss the train.
4. Labour hard. You will never be able to pass the examination.
   Labour hard or you will never be able to pass the examination.

**Q. 7.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using 'or' or 'either.....or'.*

1. Are you asleep ? Are you awake ?
2. Attend to your class. Leave the school.
3. He is intelligent. He is laborious.
4. Will he have tea ? Will he have coffee ?
5. The students must obey the rules. The students must leave the hostel.
6. She must return the pen. She must pay the price of the pen.
7. He could travel by bus. He could travel by train.
8. She will meet me at the station. She will wait for me at my residence.
9. He must confess his crime. He must go to jail.
10. Take it. Leave it.

**Type VIII** : Co-ordinating conjunction '*neither ..... nor*' का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. She is not wise. She is not beautiful.
   She is neither wise nor beautiful.
2. He does not borrow money. He does not lend money.
   He neither borrows nor lends money.

**Q. 8.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using 'neither ..... nor.'*

1. He does not admit it. He does not deny it.
2. I am not a liar. I am not a coward.
3. She does not want power. She does not want wealth.
4. My father did not drive. He did not send a letter.
5. Mr. Pathak has not come to the office. He has not sent an application for leave.
6. Binay has not finished his work. Vikas has not finished his work.
7. Your father is not an engineer. Your father is not an advocate.
8. She is not beautiful. She is not active.
9. His grandfather cannot hear. His grandfather cannot see.
10. He did not work hard. I did not work hard.

**Type IX** : Co-ordinating conjunction '*otherwise*' or '*else*' का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. Labour hard. You will fail.
   Labour hard, otherwise you will fail.
2. Go to school in time. You will be punished.
   Go to school in time, otherwise you will be punished.
3. Hurry up. You will miss the train.
   Hurry up, else you will miss the train.

**Q. 9.** *Combine/join the following pairs of sentences by using 'otherwise' or 'else.':*

1. Work hard. You will not pass the examination.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



2. Run fast. You will not win the race.
3. She admitted her mistake. She would have been dismissed from service.
4. Give him food to eat. He will die of hunger.
5. You have made a few mistakes. Your letter is very good.
6. Walk quickly. You will miss train.
7. She must tell the truth. She will be punished.
8. He must do his homework. He will be fined.
9. The criminal ran away. The people would have killed him.
10. Give her milk to drink. She will be weak.

**Type X** : Co-ordinating conjunctions so, therefore, for or consequently, hence का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He is ill. He has not come.
   He is ill, therefore he has not come.
2. I reached the station late. I missed the train.
   I reached the station late, so I missed the train.
3. I must die one day. All men are mortal.
   I must die one day, for all men are mortal.
4. You are weak in English. You have got plucked.
   You are weak in English, consequently you have got plucked.
5. He has no money. He cannot help you.
   He has no money hence he cannot help you.

**Q. 10.** *Combine/join the following pairs of sentences by using so, therefore, for or consequently, hence.*

1. She is very ill. She cannot attend the class.
2. You seem to be very rich. You spend a lot of money on luxuries.
3. I was driving the car on the wrong side. The traffic police stopped me.
4. My relatives would not believe me. I had to give them proofs.
5. It was very dark. They took a torch with them.
6. Aditya has not done well in the last examination. He must work very hard for the coming examination.
7. She has not much time. She must work very hard.
8. It was raining heavily. He took a rain coat with him.
9. Something was certainly burning in the room. A horrible smell was coming.
10. He reached the busstand late. He missed the bus.

## Combination of Sentences : II

Subordinating conjunctions का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। [जोड़ने के बाद ये complex sentence हो जाते हैं]

**Type I : Subordinating conjunctions** : *When, as, while, before, after, since, as soon as, till, until* का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He was younger. He thought so.
   When he was younger, he thought so.
2. He found it. He was walking to Kumahrar.
   He found it as he was walking to Kumahrar.
3. The sun shines. Make hay now.
   Make hay while the sun shines.
4. Think. You speak.
   Think before you speak.
5. I reached the station. The train had left.
   I reached the station after the train had left.
6. He has been very busy. He arrived here.
   He has been very busy since he arrived here.
7. The thief saw the police. He immediately ran away.
   As soon as the thief saw the police, he ran away.
8. He will get ready. Do not go till then.
   Do not go until he is ready.

**Q. 1.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using when, as, while, before, after, since, as soon as, till, until :*

1. Strike now. The iron is hot.
2. It stopped raining. They went out.
3. He reached home. The sun had not set then.
4. He found the suitcase. He was walking to the office.
5. He was frightened. He heard the noise.
6. The sun will rise. The world lasts.
7. The teacher entered the class room. The boys became silent.
8. He had left home. Your message arrived afterwards.
9. The match was over. They returned home.
10. He waited. The train arrived.

**Type II : Subordinating conjunctions** : *because, as, since* का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He loves me. I am honest.
   He loves me because I am honest.
2. Mr. Singh was not at home. I left the message with his wife.
   As Mr. Singh was not at home, I left the message with his wife.
3. He says so. You must believe it.
   Since he says so, you must believe it.

**Q. 2.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using because, as or since.*

1. He was very busy. I didn't call.
2. He ran away. He was afraid.
3. She came down the street. She met her lover.
4. It is raining. He will take an umbrella with him.
5. He won the first prize. He had worked so hard.
6. My brother has not read the book. He cannot tell you anything about it.
7. Smt. Gandhi will be remembered forever. She died for her country.
8. She was poor. I helped her.
9. She could not attend the meeting. She was ill.
10. His brother was hanged. He had committed murder.

**Type III : Subordinating conjunctions** : *if, unless, though, although, lest, so that* का प्रयोग कर दो simple sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. You will pass. You labour hard.
   You will pass if you labour hard.
2. You go. I shall stay at home.
   If you go, I shall stay at home.
3. You will not pass. You labour hard.
   You will not pass unless you labour hard.
4. He is poor. He is honest.
   Though/Although he is poor, he is honest.
5. He was weak. He could not walk.
   He was so weak that he could not walk.
6. Walk carefully. You should fall.
   Walk carefully lest you should fall.

**Q. 3.** *Combine/join each of the following pairs of sentences by using if, unless, though, although, lest or so that.*

1. You make a promise. You keep it.
2. We must take medicine in time. We shall not get better.
3. She came late. She was allowed to take her examination.
4. He is not contented. He is very rich.
5. He worked hard. He might pass.
6. He was honest. Nothing would make him take the bribe.
7. I am tired. I cannot work.
8. You must work hard. You will not pass the examination.
9. She is very old. She enjoys good health.
10. He will not pay. He is compelled.

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Non-finites 20

रूप (form) की दृष्टि से Verb के दो भेद होते हैं—

VERB
- Finite verbs
- Non-finite Verbs
  - Infinitive (to + $V^1$)
  - Gerund ($V^1$ + ing)
  - Participle ($V^1$ + ing/ed/en etc)

**1. Finite verbs :** वे verbs जो sentence के subject तथा tense के मुताबिक अपना रूप (form) बदल लेते हैं, Finite verbs कहलाते हैं। जैसे—

I want to write.
He wants to write.
She wanted to write.
He is an advocate.
You are a student.
They were students.

उपरोक्त sentences (वाक्यों) में want, wants, wanted, is, are तथा were finite verbs हैं क्योंकि ये verbs subject तथा Tense के मुताबिक प्रयुक्त हुए हैं। इस प्रकार, finite verbs Subject तथा Tense से प्रभावित होकर सीमित (finite) हो जाते हैं।

**2. Non-Finite Verbs :** वे verbs जो sentence के subject तथा tense के मुताबिक अपना रूप (form) नहीं बदल कर हमेशा एक ही form (रूप) में रहते हैं, Non-Finite Verbs कहलाते हैं। दूसरे शब्दों में verb के infinitive तथा participle forms को Non-finite verbs कहा जाता है। जैसे—

I want to write.
He wants to write.
She wanted to write.

उपरोक्त sentences (वाक्यों) में 'to write'– Non-Finite Verb है क्योंकि यह subject तथा tense से अप्रभावित है। इसी प्रकार, Non-finite verbs subject तथा tense के द्वारा सीमित (finite) नहीं होते हैं।

अब प्रश्न उठता है कि Finite verb तथा Non-finite verb में क्या फर्क (अंतर) है? इस फर्क को नीचे दिये गए Table के माध्यम से समझें—

| Finite Verbs | Non-Finite Verbs |
|---|---|
| Finite verb का अपना एक subject होता है। जैसे— He wants to write. यहाँ Finite verb—wants का subject— 'He' है। | Non-Finite Verb का अपना कोई subject नहीं होता है। जैसे— He wants to write यहाँ non-finite verb 'to write' का अपना कोई Subject नहीं है। यह object के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। |

Non-Finite Verbs के तीन भेद होते हैं—

1. Infinitive— [To + $V^1$]
2. Gerund— [$V^1$ + ing]
3. Participle— [$V^1$ + ing/$V^1$ + ed/en/Having + $V^3$]

**1. Infinitive :** सामान्यतः verb के उस रूप को Infinitive कहा जाता है जो To + $V^1$ के form (रूप) में रहता है। Verb के इस रूप पर subject के number तथा person का कोई प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। जैसे—

to go, to eat, to laugh etc.

दूसरे शब्दों में Infinitive अपने पहले 'To' लेकर या To के बिना प्रयुक्त होता है।

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

1. Allow me to go.
   *मुझे जाने की अनुमति दें।*
2. Let me go.
   *मुझे जाने दो।*

उपरोक्त वाक्य (1) में go के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग हुआ है जबकि वाक्य (2) में go के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है। अतः वाक्य (1) में to go तथा वाक्य (2) में go Infinitives है।

Infinitives
- Infinitive with to or To-Infinitives
- Infinitive without to or Bare Infinitive

**(i) To-Infinitive/Infinitive with to :** वह Infinitive जो अपने पहले 'To' लेता है। To-infinitive/Infinitive with to कहलाता है। To-Infinitive या Infinitive with 'to ही Infinitive के नाम से अंग्रेजी भाषा में प्रचलित है।

(i) Active form of Infinitive— *To + $V^1$*
जैसे— To go, To come, To drink
(ii) Passive form of Infinitive— *To be + $V^3$*
जैसे— To be gone, To be come, To be drunk.

**(ii) Bare Infinitive/Infinitive without to :** वह infinitive जो अपने पहले 'To' नहीं लेता है Bare Infinitive या Infinitive without to कहलाता है।

(i) Active form of Bare Infinitive— *+ $V^1$*
जैसे— go, come, drink
(ii) Passive form of Bare Infinitive— *be + $V^3$*
जैसे— be gone, be come, be drunk

**2. Gerund :** वह verb जिसके last (अंत) में 'ing लगा रहता है तथा जो noun की तरह प्रयुक्त होता है Gerund कहलाता है। जैसे—

walking, reading, playing

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

Walking is an exercise.
He likes reading stories.
They are fond of playing cards.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में walking, reading तथा playing noun की तरह प्रयुक्त हुए हैं अतः ये Gerunds हैं। लेकिन इसमें verb के लक्षण भी हैं। Gerund एक प्रकार का noun है लेकिन विभिन्न परिस्थितियों (different cases) में इसमें Noun और verb दोनों के लक्षण रहते हैं। इसे समझने के लिए इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें। जैसे—

1. He likes reading stories.
2. She began walking slowly.

उपरोक्त वाक्य (1) में reading एक Gerund है। चूँकि यह Transitive verb-likes का object है, अतः इसे noun कहेंगे। पुनः stories, reading का object है, अतः इसे verb कहेंगे।

उपरोक्त वाक्य (2) में walking भी एक Gerund है। चूँकि यह verb-began का object है अतः इसे noun कहेंगे। पुनः adverb-slowly, walking

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



को modify कर रहा है अतः इसे verb कहेंगे। Adverb— verb, adjective तथा अपने आप को modify करता है।

**3. Participle :** ($V^1$ + *ing*/$V^1$ + *ed/en/having* + $V^3$) के form को participle कहा जाता है। यह Verb तथा Adjective के रूप में कार्य करता है।

1. [$V^1$ + ing] — Present participle.
   जैसे— playing, walking, drinking.
2. [$V^1$ + ed/en ... etc]—past participle.
   जैसे— played, walked, drink.
3. [Having + $V^3$] — perfect participle
   जैसे— Having played, Having taken, Having seen.

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

1. A camel is running.
   *एक ऊँट दौड़ रहा है।*
2. He saw a running camel.
   *उसने एक दौड़ते हुए एक ऊँट को देखा।*
3. The work has tired him.
   *काम ने उसे थका दिया है।*
4. A tired man was sitting under a tree.
   *एक थका हुआ आदमी एक पेड़ के नीचे बैठा था।*
5. Having taken breakfast, he went to the office.
   *नाश्ता लेकर वह ऑफिस चला गया।*
6. Having failed twice, he did not dare to take the examination.
   *दो बार अनुत्तीर्ण होने पर, उसने परीक्षा देने का साहस नहीं किया।*

**ध्यान दें :** (i) वाक्य (1) में 'running', Main verb-run का present participle form है जो helping verb—is के साथ प्रयुक्त होकर Main verb का कार्य कर रहा है तथा present continuous tense बना रहा है।

(ii) वाक्य (2) में 'running' noun—camel के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर camel की विशेषता बता रहा है। अतः running-Adjective का कार्य कर रहा है।

(iii) वाक्य (3) में 'tired', Main verb—tire का past participle form है जो helping verb—has के साथ प्रयुक्त होकर Main verb का कार्य कर रहा है तथा Present Perfect Tense बना रहा है।

(iv) वाक्य (4) में 'tired', noun-man के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर Man की विशेषता बता रहा है। अतः tired—Adjetive का कार्य कर रहा है।

(v) वाक्य (5) तथा (6) में क्रमशः Having taken, Having failed perfect participle हैं क्योंकि ये Having + $V^3$ के बनावट पर आधारित है।

अतः इससे स्पष्ट होता है कि participle Verb तथा Adjective के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

### Kinds of participle

Participle तीन प्रकार के होते हैं—

Participle
- Present Participle
- Past Participle
- Perfect Participle

**1. Present Participle**—verb के उस form (रूप) को present participle कहा जाता है जिसके last (अंत) में 'ing' लगा रहता है। जैसे—

| Main Verb | Present Participle |
|---|---|
| walk | walking |
| run | running |
| swim | swimming |

**Note :** (i) Present Participle को $M.V^4$ के नाम से भी जाना जाता है।

(ii) Active style के sentence में present participle का प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है तो यह Adjective का कार्य करता है। जैसे—

Sleeping children. — *सोते हुए बच्चे।*
Falling leaves. — *गिरती हुई पत्तियाँ*

**2. Past participle :** verb के उस form (रूप) को past participle कहा जाता है जिसके last में *–ed/t/en* लगा रहता है। जैसे—

| Main Verb | Past Participle |
|---|---|
| work | worked |
| sleep | slept |
| write | written |

**Note :** (i) Past Participle को $M.V^3$ के नाम से भी जाना जाता है।

(ii) Active तथा Passive style के sentence में Past Participle का प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है तो यह Adjective का कार्य करता है। जैसे—

A retired clerk — *Active*
*एक अवकाश प्राप्त किरानी*
A broken chair — *Passive*
*एक टूटी हुई कुर्सी*

(iii) कुछ ऐसे Past Participles भी हैं जिनके स्थान परिवर्तन से अर्थ में फर्क आ जाता है। जैसे—

The concerned officers
*चिंतित पदाधिकारीगण*
The officers concerned.
*पदाधिकारीगण जो प्रभावित है/था।*

**3. Perfect Participle :** Verb के उस form को perfect participle कहा जाता है जो (Having + $V^3$) के structure (बनावट) पर आधारित होता है।

Perfect Participle
- Active form → Having + $V^3$ — जैसे— Having taken
- Passive form → Having been + $V^3$ — जैसे— Having been read

### Use of Non-Finite Verbs

**A. Use of Infinitive with 'To'**

**Rule (1) :** Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग किसी verb के subject के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

To find (S) fault is (V) easy. To walk (S) is (V) a good exercise.

To err (S) is (V) human, To forgive (S) is (V) divine.

**Rule (2) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग किसी Transitive Verb के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He wants (V) to go. (O)

She refused (V) to obey (O) her husband.

I like (V) to play cards. (O)

**Rule (3) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग किसी verb के complement के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Her desire is (V) to see (C) me again.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



He is to sell his car.
V C

She was to go to Gaya.
V C

To see is to believe
V C

My greatest pleasure is to guide.
V C

**Note :** यहाँ 'C' का अर्थ complement है।

**Rule (4) :** 'Infinitive with to' का प्रयोग किसी preposition के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. He is about to come.
   Prep O
2. You had no choice but (= except) to obey.
   Prep O
   [तुम्हारे पास आज्ञा पालन करने के सिवा कोई विकल्प नहीं था।]
3. Now a days we want nothing but (= except) to earn money.
   Prep O
   [आजकल हमलोग पैसा कमाने के सिवा कुछ नहीं चाहते हैं।]

**Note :** (i) उपरोक्त वाक्य (2) तथा (3) में but का प्रयोग except (के सिवा / अलावे / छोड़कर) के अर्थ में preposition के रूप में हुआ है।

(ii) जब Infinitive with to का प्रयोग subject, object, complement के रूप में होता है तो यह Noun का कार्य करता है और इसे Noun Infinitive कहा जाता है।

**Rule (5) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग Adjective की तरह किसी noun को qualify करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He has no money to buy.
N inf.

I have no house to live in.
N inf.

He is a man to be admired.
N inf.

My son likes milk to drink.
N inf.

This is not the time to play.
N inf.

**Rule (6) :** Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग Adverb की तरह किसी Adjective को qualify करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He is too ill to do any work.
Adj. Inf.

He was surprised to see his beloved with a handsome boy.
Adj. inf.

It is difficult to solve this sum.
Adj. inf.

The girls were anxious to learn.
Adj. inf.

He is unable to attend the class.
Adj. inf.

**Rule (7) :** Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग Adverb की तरह किसी verb को qualify करने के लिए किया जाता है। इस case में Infinitive with to से कार्य करने के purpose (उद्देश्य) or cause (कारण) का बोध होता है। जैसे—

He wants to help his classmate —*Purpose*
She sold her ring to buy those sarees —*Purpose*
She started weeping to see the dead body of her father — *Cause*

**Rule (8) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग किसी sentence को qualify करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

To be honest, he is not going to help her.
To tell the truth, I quite forgot my promise.

**Note :** (i) जब Infinitive with to का प्रयोग Noun, Verb, Adjective तथा sentence को qualify करने के लिए किया जाता है तो यह Gerundial or qualifying infinitive कहलाता है।

**Rule (9) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए verbs के बाद होता है।

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Afford | दे सकना, खर्च कर सकना |
| Begin | प्रारंभ करना |
| Attempt | प्रयास करना |
| Beg | भीख माँगना |
| Bother | परेशान होना, चिन्ता करना |
| Care (negative) | चिन्ता करना, परेशान होना, फिक्र, परवाह करना |
| Choose | चुनना |
| Consent | सहमति देना/स्वीकृति देना |
| Continue | जारी रखना/करते रहना |
| Dare | हिम्मत करना/खतरे का सामना करना |
| Endeavour | कोशिश करना/प्रयास करना |
| Hesitate | संकोच करना/हिचकिचाना |
| Intend | इरादा करना, अभिप्राय करना |
| Learn | सीखना, ज्ञानोपार्जन करना |
| Like | पसंद करना |
| Love | प्रेम करना, प्यार करना |
| Undertake | किसी कार्य करने को राजी होना |
| Manage | प्रबंध करना |
| Arrange | क्रम में रखना / आयोजन करना |
| Seem | मालूम पड़ना |
| Forget | भूलना |
| Agree | सहमत होना |
| Regret | पश्चाताप करना |
| Mean | चाहना, अर्थ बताना |
| Need | आवश्यक होना, अभाव होना |
| Neglect | उपेक्षा करना, भूल जाना |
| Offer | प्रदान करना, देना |
| Plan | योजना बनाना |
| Prefer | अधिक पसंद करना |
| Prepare | तैयार करना, साधन जुटाना |
| Be prepared to | करने को तैयार |
| Pretend | बहाना बनाना |
| Proceed | अग्रसर होना, आगे बढ़ना, जारी रखना |
| Refuse | अस्वीकार करना |
| Try | प्रयास करना, जाँचना |
| Wish | इच्छा करना, चाहना |
| Remember | याद करना |
| Promise | प्रतिज्ञा करना |
| Swear | कसम खाना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Purpose | प्रस्तावित करना |
| Fail | असफल होना |
| Hope | आशा करना |
| Decide | निर्णय करना |
| Determine | दृढ़ होना |

जैसे— He endeavoured to help me.
V inf.

Raman dared to challenge me.
V inf

They planned to visit the Taj Mahal.
V inf.

His daughter attempted to commit suicide.
V inf.

She hesitates to speak here.
V inf.

**Note :** उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Infinitive with to के बदले that clause का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Raman dared that he could challenge me. (×)
Raman dared to challenge me. (✓)

**Rule (10) :** नीचे दिये गए verbs के बाद object + Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है, न की that-clause का।

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Allow | आज्ञा देना, मंजूर करना |
| Advise | सलाह देना, परामर्श देना |
| Compel | विवश करना, मजबूर करके हासिल करना |
| Encourage | उत्साहित करना, हिम्मत बँधाना |
| Expect | आशा करना, प्रतीक्षा करना, अनुमान करना |
| Forbid | किसी काम को करने से रोकना, अनुमति न देना |
| Force | विवश करना |
| Instruct | पढ़ाना, निर्देश करना, खबर करना |
| Invite | निमंत्रण देना, ध्यान आकर्षित करना |
| Oblige | बाध्य करना, कृपा करना, अहसान करना |
| Order | आदेश देना |
| Permit | आज्ञा / अनुमति देना |
| Persuade | विश्वास दिलाना, फुसलाना |
| Request | प्रार्थना करना, नम्रता से माँगना |
| Tell | कहना |
| Want | चाहना, आवश्यकता होना, इच्छा करना |
| Warn | सचेत करना, पहिले से सूचना देना |
| Teach | पढ़ाना |
| Tempt | लालच करना |
| Urge | विनती करना |
| Show | दिखाना |
| Remind | पुनः याद दिलाना |

जैसे—

The teacher allowed the students to enter the class room.
V O inf

The teacher allowed the students that they should enter the class room. (×)

He forbade his daughter to go out at night. (✓)
V O inf

He forbade his daughter that she should go out at night. (×)

She ordered her servant to bring a cup of tea. (✓)
V O inf.

She ordered her servant that he should bring a cup of tea. (×)

**Rule (11) :** नीचे दिये गए verbs के बाद भी Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।

| Verbs | Hindi meaning |
|---|---|
| Appear | प्रकट होना, दिखाई देना, हाजिर होना |
| Forget | भूल जाना, याद न रहना |
| Guarantee | गारण्टी देना |
| Happen | होना, घटित होना, संयोग होना |
| Learn | सीखना, शिक्षा प्राप्त करना |
| Pretend | बहाना बनाना |
| Promise | प्रतिज्ञा करना, वादा करना |
| Prove | सिद्ध करना, प्रमाणित करना |
| Remember | स्मरण रखना, याद करना |
| Seem | प्रतीत होना, दिखाई देना |
| Swear | शपथ लेना, कसम लेना |
| Threaten | धमकी देना, धमकाना, भय दिखाना |

जैसे—

He forgot to remember the lesson.
V inf

वह पाठ याद करना भूल गया।

I pretended to be angry.
V inf

मैंने क्रुद्ध होने का बहाना किया।

**Note :** (i) उपरोक्त verbs के बाद that-clause का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

He forgot that he would remember the lesson.
वह भूल गया कि वह पाठ याद करता।

I pretended that I was angry.
मैंने बहाना किया कि मैं क्रुद्ध था।

(ii) Agree, decide, forget, remember, learn—verbs के बाद Infinitive with to तथा that-clause का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन इसके अर्थ में फर्क / अंतर होता है। जैसे—

He decided to settle in Raigir.
V inf.

वह राजगीर में बसने का निर्णय लिया।

I learnt that Binay had settled in Raigir.
V that-clause

मुझे जानकारी मिली कि विनय राजगीर में बस गया है।

**Rule (12) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए Adjective के बाद होता है। जैसे—

| Adjectives | Hindi meaning |
|---|---|
| Able | समर्थ / योग्य |
| Unable | असमर्थ / अयोग्य |
| Anxious | उत्सुक / बेचैन |
| Glad | प्रसन्न / आनन्ददायक |
| Happy | सुखी, खुश, भाग्यशाली |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Adjectives | Hindi meaning |
|---|---|
| Pleased | प्रसन्न |
| Surprised | आश्चर्यित, अचंभित |
| Shocked | आघाती |
| Lucky | भाग्यशाली |
| Likely | उपयुक्त / संभावित |
| Right | सही / ठीक |
| Wrong | गलत |
| Stupid | सुस्त / मूर्ख |
| Fit | ठीक, सही, उचित, उपयुक्त |
| Delight | प्रसन्नचित |
| Angry | रंज / क्रुद्ध |
| Astonished | अचंभित |
| Horrified | भयभीत |
| Disappointed | निराश |

जैसे— I am able to do this work.
Adj inf.

He was pleased to see her.
Adj. inf.

You are anxious to meet your beloved.
Adj. inf.

**Rule (13) :** Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग nouns जैसे— wish, decision, need, pleasure के बाद होता है। जैसे—

It is a pleasure to see her again.
N inf.

She told me about her decision to leave the house.
N inf.

## B. No Use of Infinitive with to

(Use of Bare Infinitive or Infinitive without to)

**Rule (1) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग Modal Auxiliary verbs (जैसे—can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must) के बाद नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He can help you. (✓)
He can to help you. (×)
It may rain today. (✓)
It may to rain today. (×)
One must do one's duty. (✓)
One must to do one's duty. (×)

**Rule (2) :** Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग dare not/daren't तथा need not/needn't के बाद नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He daren't come here. (✓)
He daren't to come here. (×)
She need not go there. (✓)
She need not to go these. (×)

**Note :** (i) जब dare तथा need का प्रयोग Marginal Auxiliary Verbs के रूप में Interrogative sentence में होता है, तो इसके बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Dare he oppose his father ? (✓)
Dare he to oppose his father ? (×)

(ii) Dare तथा Need का प्रयोग Main verb के रूप में हो तो इसके बाद जरूरत के मुताबिक Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He dares to go there. (✓)
He dares go there. (×)
She needs to come here. (✓)
She needs come here. (×)

**Rule (3) :** यदि Active style के sentence में feel, hear, see, notice, watch—verbs का प्रयोग हो तथा इसके बाद object का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He felt the earth shake. (✓)
He felt the earth to shake. (×)
He heard her cry. (✓)
He heard her to cry. (×)
I saw her run. (✓)
I saw her to run. (×)
The court noticed him appear. (✓)
The court noticed him to appear. (×)
He watched the film enjoy. (✓)
He watched the film to enjoy. (×)

**Note :** (i) see, hear, feel, smell, listen, notice, watch-verbs का प्रयोग Active sentence में हो तथा इसके बाद object का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद present participle का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—

He saw the horse running in the field.
*उसने घोड़ा को मैदान में दौड़ते हुए देखा।*
I heard him shouting.
*मैंने उसे चिल्लाते हुए सुना।*

(ii) see, hear, know का प्रयोग passive style के sentence में हो तो इसके बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She was seen to enter the bed room. (✓)
She was seen enter the bed room. (×)
He was heard to say that he loved his wife. (✓)
He was heard say that he loved his wife. (×)
I am known to all. (✓)
I am known all. (×)

(iii) Help के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है और नहीं भी होता है। जैसे—

He helped me to buy a watch. (✓)
He helped me buy a watch. (✓)

**Rule (4) :** Let + object के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Let me do this work. (✓)
Let me to do this work. (×)
Let us go to the cinema. (✓)
Let us to go to the cinema. (×)

**Rule (5) :** यदि Active style के sentence में make का प्रयोग हो तथा इसके बाद object का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

They made me weep. (✓)
They made me to weep. (×)

**Note :** यदि passive style के sentence में Make का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

She was made to weep. (✓)
She was made weep. (×)
He was made to laugh. (✓)
He was made laugh. (×)

**Rule (6) :** Had better, had sooner, had rather, would rather, would sooner के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

You had better come now. (✓)
*अच्छा होता तुम अब चले आते।*
You had better to come now. (×)

**Note :** (i) Had better .....would sooner के बाद than का प्रयोग हो तो than के बाद भी Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



You had better go than stay here. (√)
यहाँ ठहरने की अपेक्षा अच्छा होता तुम चले जाते।
You had better go than to stay here. (×)
You had better to go than stay here. (×)
You had better to go than to stay here. (×)
He had rather stay than depart. (√)
He would rather die than tell a lie. (√)
He would sooner die than tell a lie. (√)

**Rule (7)** : यदि दो Infinitives 'and, or, except, but, than as तथा like' से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हो तो इन शब्दों के पहले Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है तथा इन शब्दों के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He wants to come and talk to me. (√)
वह आना चाहता है और मुझसे बात करना चाहता है।
He wants to come and to talk to me. (×)
He wants come and talk to me. (×)
There is nothing to do but wait. (√)
There is nothing to do but to wait. (×)
There is nothing do but wait. (×)

**Rule (8)** : But or Except के पहले do, does तथा did का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He does nothing but play. (√)
He does nothing but to play. (×)
She does everything but talk. (√)
She does everything but to talk. (×)

दूसरे शब्दों में : *Do/Does/did + any thing/nothing/every thing + But/except* के बाद Infinitive with to प्रयोग नहीं होता।

**Note** : (i) But/Except के पहले do/does/did को छोड़कर अन्य verbs का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He wants nothing but to earn money. (√)
वह पैसा कमाने के सिवा कुछ नहीं चाहता है।
He wants nothing but earn money. (×)

**Rule (4)** : why तथा why not का प्रयोग प्रश्न पूछने के लिए तथा सुझाव (suggestion) देने के लिए होता है। इस case में why or why not के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Why pay more fees at other institutions ? (√)
Why to pay more fees at other institutions ? (×)
Why not go to a good teacher ? (√)
Why not to go to good teacher ? (×)

**Infinitives Are Sometimes Used To Join A pair of Sentences**

I. Infinitives का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

1. He has some bills. He must pay them.
   He has some bills to pay.
2. She has five children. She must provide for them.
   She has five children to provide for.
3. He was very tired. He could not go any further.
   He was too tired to go any further.
4. Aditi went to the shop. She wanted to buy a pair of shoes.
   Aditi went to the shop to buy a pair of shoes.
5. Aditya switched on the radio. He wanted to hear the news.
   Aditya switched on the radio to hear the news.
6. The children went to the park. They wanted to fly their kites there.
   The children went to the park to fly their kites there.

II. Infinitives का प्रयोग कर clause को इस प्रकार replace किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. India expects that every man will do his duty.
   India expects every man to do his duty.
2. This is the way in which it should be done.
   This is the way to do it.
3. I have no advice that I can offer you.
   I have no advice to offer you.
4. It is said that he is a great scholar.
   He is said to be a great scholar.

III. यदि Infinitive का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो तो Introductory subject 'it' का प्रयोग कर sentence को इस प्रकार लिखा जा सकता है।

जैसे—

1. To steal is wrong.
   It is wrong to steal.
2. To eat too much is harmful.
   It is harmful to eat too much.
3. To waste your time is foolish.
   It is foolish to waste your time.
4. To play with explosives is dangerous.
   It is dangerous to play with explosives.
5. To live without-air is impossible.
   It is impossible to live without air.

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Fill in the blanks with Infinitives with or without to :*

1. ..... is worth ambition. *(reign)*
2. He doesn't mean ..... here. *(stay)*
3. His custom is ..... daily. *(ride)*
4. It is yet..... . *(decide)*
5. He had no choice but ..... . *(obey)*
6. The speaker is about ..... . *(begin)*
7. We eat ..... . *(live)*
8. The students are anxious..... . *(learn)*
9. This medicine is pleasant..... . *(take)*
10. .....the truth, I quite forget my promise. *(tell)*
11. .....honest, he is not going to help me. *(be)*
12. He made me ..... . *(laugh)*
13. I bade him ..... . *(go)*
14. He daren't ..... me. *(touch)*
15. He dares ..... me. *(challenge)*
16. You need ..... it. *(do)*
17. We made her ..... . *(sing)*
18. We should ..... for justice. *(fight)*
19. You could ..... her. *(help)*
20. It is better to go away from here than..... . *(stay)*
21. Let us ..... it. *(forget)*
22. He had better..... it. *(do)*
23. You would rather ..... it. *(do)*
24. I want to meet him and ..... him about my problems. *(tell)*
25. I have no house..... in. *(live)*

**Q. 2.** *Fill in the blanks using the verbs within brackets with or without to :*

1. He may..... this. *(do)*
2. He does not need ..... for help. *(ask)*
3. He is slow ..... his work. *(do)*
4. They come ..... their grandfather. *(bury)*
5. He saw her..... . *(weep)*
6. Let him ..... this work. *(do)*
7. I was made ..... . *(laugh)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



8. You had better..... permission. (ask)
9. He would rather die than..... so. (suffer)
10. You do nothing but..... . (play)
11. He helped her..... the load. (lift)
12. You do nothing but ..... at others. (laugh)
13. Our publisher wants nothing but ..... the publication. (establish)
14. He likes ..... here and read the newspaper. (sit)
15. Let us ..... together. (dance)
16. He wants us..... for him. (wait)
17. You promised ..... her. (help)
18. She appears .....a good woman. (be)
19. She is glad ..... me. (meet)
20. I used..... there. (live)
21. They want..... to Delhi. (go)
22. Have you any questions..... . (ask)
23. It is difficult to make you..... . (understand)
24. He is about..... . (die)
25. Let him..... there. (sit)

Q. 3. *Fill in the blanks with the verbs in brackets with or without 'to':*

1. They try ..... fault with me. (to find)
2. He refused ..... the orders. (to obey)
3. We ..... her sing in the room. (to hear)
4. My desire is ..... you again. (to see)
5. Every body wishes .....life. (to enjoy)
6. I .....five bales of cotton. (to want)
7. You have ..... me some money. (to give)
8. I requested him ..... my house. (to visit)
9. Exercise ..... beneficial. (to be)
10. We saw him ..... (to leave)
11. The mother made the child ..... the milk. (to drink)
12. He would rather die than ..... a lie. (to tell)
13. I hope ..... this time. (to pass)
14. The teacher permitted the boys ..... . (to go)
15. Mr. Bose asked her son .....home before dark. (to come)
16. You need not ..... all the questions. (to answer)
17. He made us .....for an answer. (to wait)
18. He wouldn't let any one ..... his bicycle. (to use)
19. I managed..... . (to pass)
20. I heard the postman ..... at the door. (to knock)
21. He was seen ..... (to leave)
22. Then she let the child ..... out. (to go)
23. Jaya wanted ..... photograph. (to learn)
24. It is easy ..... others. (to advise)
25. He got up ..... a question. (to ask)

Q. 4. *Fill in the blanks with the verbs in brackets with or without 'to':*

1. I went .....the minister. (see)
2. Did you really see him .....your brother ? (beat)
3. Better ..... in the midst of alarms. (dwell)
4. He bade me ..... everything. (tell)
5. He had no choice but ..... . (obey)
6. You need not ..... him back. (send)
7. He was seen ..... the money. (take)
8. The children came ..... the concert. (see)
9. He asked me if I could teach him..... cricket. (play)
10. Please ..... this packet to my father. (deliver)
11. The official made me ..... in a form. (fill)
12. We aren't allowed .....on the grass. (walk)
13. I'll wait for you ..... your breakfast. (finish)
14. The peace talks are likely ..... several weeks. (last)
15. Let-him ..... there. (sit)
16. You had better ..... leave. (take)
17. I donot mean ..... Manali. (visit)
18. She always tries ..... fault with me. (find)
19. The ability ... is nature's gift to human kind. (think)
20. Make him ..... (sit)
21. I had better ..... before I go. (eat)
22. She always wanted ..... to Australia. (go)
23. It's going ..... this evening. (rain)
24. Her story is hard ..... . (believe)
25. ..... is human. (err)

Q. 5. *Correct the following sentences:*

1. To see is believe.
2. She has no house living in.
3. He bade me to go.
4. He may to do this.
5. He wants helping his brother.
6. He dares go there.
7. He heard her to cry.
8. She was made laugh.
9. We had better to ask permission.
10. Let me to do this.
11. He need not to ask.
12. He does nothing but to play.
13. My teacher helped me solve this problem.
14. She is fond of played Ludo.
15. She prevented me from go there.
16. Your friend is addicted to drink.
17. Manali worked hard pass the SBI clerk examination.
18. He is too tired work.
19. She was seen enter the college campus.
20. Let us to dance together.
21. His wife does not let him to go.
22. Anshu saw Babu to sleep.
23. Ruby is anxious learn.
24. He does everything but to speak.
25. He had rather to stay than depart.

Q. 6. *Correct the following sentences:*

1. She eats living.
2. There is no time playing cricket.
3. Birds of a feather flocked together.
4. To cut your coat according to your cloth.
5. Making castles in the air.
6. Killing two birds with one stone.
7. Making a mountain of a mole hill.
8. Great to cry little wool.
9. We have pay taxes.
10. He did nothing but to laugh.
11. She would rather walk than to ride the bike.
12. I saw him to talk to his belief.
13. It may to rain today.
14. It is a pleasure meet her again.
15. The publisher ordered his servant bring a packet of cigarettes.
16. My sister-in-law pretended be sad.
17. I am surprised see you here.
18. Mr. Prasad wants nothing but buy a flat.
19. Veena is not able do anything for her children.
20. The peon requested the principal going at once.
21. He promises getting a good result.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



22. The old man started laughing watch the commedy film.
23. She is astonished seeing her lover with a beautiful girl.
24. You have qualifying the competitive examination.
25. The patient is about die.

**Q. 7.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. The situation (1)/compelled me (2)/writing (3)/the book. (4)/No error (5)
2. We (1)/want (2)/nothing but (3)/earn money. (4)/No error (5)
3. She (1)/was not ready (2)/appearing (3)/at the examination. (4)/No error (5)
4. My wife (1)/cannot (2)/to allow (3)/drinking here. (4)/No error (5)
5. I did not (1)/allow her (2)/watching (3)/the film. (4)/No error (5)
6. The old woman (1)/has (2)/some food (3)/to eat. (4)/No error (5)
7. She (1)/dares (2)/oppose (3)/her husband. (4)/No error (5)
8. She (1)/is pleased (2)/meeting (3)/her lover. (4)/No error (5)
9. Let (1)/us (2)/to go (3)/to the cinema. (4)/No error (5)
10. You were (1)/invited (2)/participating (3)/in the marriage ceremony. (4)/No error (5)
11. The news (1)/is (2)/too good (3)/to true. (4)/No error (5)
12. My mother (1)/wants to come (2)/and to talk (3)/to her grand son. (4)/No error (5)
13. I forbade (1)/my brother (2)/doing (3)/that work. (4)/No error (5)
14. Anshu (1)/was (2)/made (3)/weeping. (4)/No error (5)
15. She (1)/was seen (2)/reading (3)/the Ramayana. (4)/No error (5)
16. The teacher (1)/always encourages (2)/the students (3)/work hard. (4)/No error (5)
17. The strikers (1)/held a meeting (2)/discussing (3)/the terms of the employers. (4)/No error (5)
18. Mr. Pathak (1)/sent his son (2)/to Germany (3)/to be educated. (4)/No error (5)
19. You had better (1)/to stop (2)/taking medicine (3)/which has harmful side-effects. (4)/No error (5)
20. He (1)/planned (2)/to not go on (3)/a vacation this year. (4)/No error (5)
21. Do you (1)/know (2)/to play (3)/the harmonium ? (4)/No error (5)
22. The teacher (1)/instructed (2)/the students (3)/to go. (4)/No error (5)
23. She dare not (1)/to tell me (2)/what-happened (3)/last night. (4)/No error (5)
24. Mr. Thakur (1)/told the students (2)/maintain (3)/silence. (4)/No error (5)
25. He said (1)/that (2)/he would die (3)/rather than to beg. (4)/No error (5)

**Q. 8.** *Combine/join the following pairs of sentences by using Infinitives :*

1. Vikas went to the post office. He wanted to buy some stamps.
2. Veena visits the poor. She wants to relieve their sufferings.
3. Aditya works very hard. He wants to win a scholarship.
4. His uncle went to Agra yesterday. His object was to visit the Tajmahal.
5. Aditi went to the market. She wanted to buy some fruits.
6. He went to the library. He wanted to borrow a book.
7. The boys went to the beach. They wanted to have a picnic.
8. He has a large family. He must support it.
9. She had no money. She could not help the poor.
10. He is going to Rajgir. He will start business there.
11. I want to serve my country. This is my greatest desire.
12. You should not play with explosives. It is dangerous.
13. We should respect our parents. This is our duty.
14. He collects old stamps. This is his favourite hobby.
15. She is very ill. She cannot do any work.

**Q. 9.** *Rewrite each of the following sentences using the Infinitives :*

1. The principal expected that all students would pass.
2. He expects that he will succeed.
3. It was known that he was a great leader.
4. I hoped that I would win the first prize.
5. Vikas studied hard that he might pass the examination.
6. He says that she is very active.
7. I advised her that she should not disobey her husband.
8. The doctor warned the patient that he should not touch wine.
9. The students promised that they would help us.
10. You shall have to work very hard if you want to win the first prize.
11. He was glad when he heard of your success.
12. It was believed that he was innocent.
13. The student did not expect that he would fail in the examination.
14. The officer ordered that the town should be burnt.
15. I was surprised when I heard of your failure.

**Q. 10.** *Re-write the following sentences by beginning them with the Introductory 'it'.*

Examples :

1. To lie is a sin.
   It is a sin to lie.
2. To cheat others is wrong.
   It is wrong to cheat others.

1. To talk too much is bad.
2. To write a book is not a joke.
3. To criticise others is very easy.
4. To climb Everest is very difficult.
5. To sit in the sun on a cold day is pleasant.
6. To bribe a public servant is a penal offence.
7. To get up late in the morning is not good for health.
8. To live beyond one's means is foolish.
9. To betray your best friend is disgraceful.
10. To remove corruption from the society is impossible.
11. To waste your money is foolish.
12. To show mercy to others is a divine quality.
13. To read your handwriting is impossible.
14. To live in peace and to let others live in peace should be the principle of our life.
15. To do good to others should be the motto of our life.

**Q. 11.** *Rewrite the following sentences using the Infinitives :*

1. Earning money is difficult.
2. Finding fault is easy.
3. Swimming is an exercise.
4. Saying is easy but doing is difficult.
5. He is so tired that he cannot run.
6. Writing a good book is difficult.
7. Raman wishes that he might enjoy life.
8. Saying is believing.
9. He will be delighted if he joins you.
10. She is so weak that she can not work.

**Q. 12.** *Complete the following sentences by using suitable Infinitives*

1. He is anxious ..... .
2. I went to the hospital ..... .

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. You work hard ..... .
4. He doesn't want ..... .
5. They refused ..... .
6. He is too young ..... .
7. He was seen ..... .
8. He heard her..... .
9. He made me ..... .
10. It is every one's duty..... .

**Q. 13.** *Write a sentence on each of the following patterns :*

1. Noun + Verb + Infinitive
2. Noun + Verb + Pronoun + Infinitive
3. Infinitive + Verb + Infinitive
4. Subject + Verb + Infinitive + Noun
5. Subject + Verb + Pronoun + Infinitive + Adverb
6. Infinitive + Verb + Adjective
7. It + Verb + Adjective + Infinitive
8. It + Verb + Adjective + for + Pronoun + Infinitive
9. Pronoun + Verb + Infinitive + Object
10. There + Verb + nothing + Infinitive

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. To reign | 2. to stay | 3. to ride | 4. to decide |
| 5. to obey | 6. to begin | 7. to live | 8. to learn |
| 9. to take | 10. to tell | 11. to be | 12. laugh |
| 13. go | 14. touch | 15. to challenge | 16. to do |
| 17. sing | 18. fight | 19. help | 20. stay |
| 21. forget | 22. do | 23. do | 24. tell |
| 25. to live | | | |

**Q.2.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. do | 2. to ask | 3. to do | 4. to bury |
| 5. weep | 6. do | 7. to laugh | 8. ask |
| 9. suffer | 10. play | 11. to lift/lift | 12. laugh |
| 13. to establish | 14. to sit | 15. dance | 16. to wait |
| 17. to help | 18. to be | 19. to meet | 20. to live |
| 21. to go | 22. to ask | 23. understand | 24. to die |
| 25. sit | | | |

**Q.3.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. to find | 2. to obey | 3. hear | 4. to see |
| 5. to enjoy | 6. want | 7. to give | 8. to visit |
| 9. is | 10. leave | 11. drink | 12. tell |
| 13. to pass | 14. to go | 15. to come | 16. answer |
| 17. wait | 18. use | 19. to pass | 20. knock |
| 21. to leave | 22. go | 23. to learn | 24. to advise |
| 25. to ask | | | |

**Q.4.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. to see | 2. beat | 3. dwell | 4. tell |
| 5. to obey | 6. send | 7. to take | 8. to see |
| 9. to play | 10. deliver | 11. fill | 12. to walk |
| 13. to finish | 14. to last | 15. sit | 16. take |
| 17. to visit | 18. to find | 19. to think | 20. sit |
| 21. eat | 22. to go | 23. to rain | 24. to believe |
| 25. to err | | | |

**Q.5.**

1. To see is to believe.
2. She has no house to live in.
3. He bade me go.
4. He may do this.
5. He wants to help his brother.
6. He dares to go there.
7. He heard her cry.
8. She was made to laugh.
9. We had better ask permission.
10. Let me do this.
11. He need not ask.
12. He does nothing but play.
13. My teacher helped me to solve this problem.
14. She is fond of playing Ludo.
15. She prevented me from going there.
16. Your friend is addicted to drinking.
17. Manali worked hard to pass the SBI clerk examination.
18. He is too tired to work.
19. She was seen to enter the college campus.
20. Let us dance together.
21. His wife does not let him go.
22. Anshu saw Babu sleep.
23. Ruby is anxious to learn.
24. He does everything but speak.
25. He had rather stay than depart.

**Q.6.**

1. She eats to live.
2. There is no time to play cricket.
3. Birds of a feather flock together.
4. Cut your coat according to your cloth.
5. To make castles in the air.
6. To kill two birds with one stone.
7. To make a mountain of a mole hill.
8. Great cry little wool.
9. We have to pay taxes.
10. He did nothing but laugh.
11. She would rather walk than ride the bike.
12. I saw him talk to his belief.
13. It may rain today.
14. It is a pleasure to meet her again.
15. The publisher ordered his servant to bring a packet of cigarettes.
16. My sister-in-law pretended to be sad.
17. I am surprised to see you here.
18. Mr. Prasad wants nothing but to buy a flat.
19. Veena is not able to do anything for her children.
20. The peon requested the principal to go at once.
21. He promises to get a good result.
22. The old man started laughing to watch the commedy film.
23. She is astonished to see her lover with a beautiful girl.
24. You have to qualify the competitive examination.
25. The patient is about to die.

**Q.7.**

1. (3) writing की जगह to write का प्रयोग होगा। verb—compel के बाद हमेशा object + infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है।
2. (4) earn money की जगह to earn money का प्रयोग होगा। Nothing but के पहले do, does, did को छोड़कर अन्य verbs का प्रयोग हो तो nothing but के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। Given sentence में nothing but के पहले want का प्रयोग हुआ है अत: to earn money का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।
3. (3) appearing की जगह to appear का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) to allow की जगह allow का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Modal Auxiliary Verb–can के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
5. (3) watching की जगह to watch का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि allow—verb के बाद Object + Infinitive का प्रयोग होता है।
6. (5) Given sentence correct है।
7. (3) Oppose की जगह to oppose का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि dare का प्रयोग

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Main verb के रूप में होता है तो इसके बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है।

8. (3) Meeting की जगह to meet का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि pleased–Adjective के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
9. (3) To go की जगह go का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Let के बाद object का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन इसके बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
10. (3) Participating की जगह to participate का प्रयोग होगा। verb—Invite के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (4) To true की जगह to be true का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (3) To talk की जगह talk का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि दो Infinitives 'and' से जुड़े रहते हैं तो 'and' के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
13. (3) Doing की जगह to do का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Verb—forbid के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
14. (4) Weeping की जगह to weep का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Make—verb का प्रयोग passive style के sentence में होता है तो इसके बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
15. (3) Reading की जगह to read का प्रयोग होगा। जब Verb—see का प्रयोग passive style के sentence में होता है तो इसके बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
16. (4) Work hard की जगह to work hard का प्रयोग होगा। verb–encourage के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
17. (3) Discussing की जगह to discuss का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (5) Given sentence correct है।
19. (2) To stop की जगह stop का प्रयोग होगा। Had better के बाद Infinitive with 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
20. (3) To not go on की जगह not to go on का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (3) To play की जगह how to play का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (5) Given sentence correct है।
23. (2) To tell की जगह tell का प्रयोग होगा। dare not के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
24. (3) Maintain की जगह to maintain का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (4) To beg की जगह beg का प्रयोग होगा। Would rather than के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Q.8.**

1. Vikas went to the post office to buy some stamps.
2. Veena visits the poor to relieve their sufferings.
3. Aditya works very hard to win a scholarship.
4. His uncle went to Agra yesterday to visit the Tajmahal.
5. Aditi went to the market to buy some fruits.
6. He went to the library to borrow a book.
7. The boys went to the beach to have a picnic.
8. He has a large family to support it.
9. She had no money to help the poor.
10. He is going to Rajgir to start business there.
11. This is my greatest desire to serve my country.
12. It is dangerous to play with explosives.
13. This is our duty to respect our parents.
14. This is his favourite hobby to collect old stamps.
15. She is too ill to do any work.

**Q.9.**

1. The principal expected all students to pass.
2. He expects to succeed.
3. He was known to be a great leader.
4. I hoped to win the first prize.
5. Vikas studied hard to pass the examination.
6. She is said to be very active.
7. I advised her not to disobey her husband.
8. The doctor warned the patient not to touch wine.
9. The students promised to help us.
10. You shall have to work very hard to win the first prize.
11. He was glad to hear of your success.
12. He was believed to be innocent.
13. The student did not expect to fail in the examination.
14. The officer ordered to burn the town.
15. I was surprised to hear of your failure.

**Q.10.**

1. It is bad to talk too much.
2. It is not a joke to write a book.
3. It is very easy to criticise others.
4. It is very difficult to climb Everest.
5. It is pleasant to sit in the sun on a cold day.
6. It is a penal offence to bribe a public servant.
7. It is not good for health to get up late in the morning.
8. It is foolish to live beyond one's means.
9. It is disgraceful to betray your best friend.
10. It is impossible to remove corruption from the society.
11. It is foolish to waste your money.
12. It is a divine quality to show mercy to others.
13. It is impossible to read your handwriting.
14. It should be the principle of our life to live in peace and to let others live in peace.
15. It should be the motto of our life to do good to others.

**Q.11.**

1. To earn money is difficult.
2. To find fault is easy.
3. To swim is an exercise.
4. To say is easy but to do is difficult.
5. He is too tired to run.
6. To write a good book is difficult.
7. Raman wishes to enjoy life.
8. To say is to believe.
9. He will be delighted to join you.
10. She is too weak to work.

**Q.12.**

1. He is anxious to meet his beloved.
2. I went to the hospital to see my colleague.
3. You work hard to pass the examination.
4. He doesn't want to write a letter.
5. They refused to come here.
6. He is too young to marry.
7. He was seen to enter the office.
8. He heard her cry.
9. He made me weep.
10. It is every one's duty to respect his parents.

**Q.13.**

1. Aditya wants to play.
2. My wife forbade me to go out at night.
3. To see is to believe.
4. The publisher wants to help Mr. Thakur.
5. He ordered me to stay there.
6. To smoke is bad.
7. It is wrong to steal.
8. It was hard for him to live on his small income.
9. She went to see the Exhibition.
10. There is nothing to say you.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Gerund

### C. Use of Gerund

**Rule (1) :** Gerund का प्रयोग noun की तरह किसी verb के subject के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Walking is an exercise.
S V

Reading is my favourite pastime.
S V

Hunting tigers is a favourite sport in this country.
S V

Swimming is good for health.
S V

**Rule (2) :** Gerund का प्रयोग noun की तरह किसी verb के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He likes reading poetry.
V O

Children love making mud castles.
V O

I enjoy flying kites.
V O

Stop playing
V O

**Rule (3) :** Gerund का प्रयोग noun की तरह किसी preposition के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

She is fond of swimming
Prep. O

She prevented me from playing.
Prep. O

You were punished for telling a lie.
Prep. O

He is tired of waiting.
Prep. O

**Rule (4) :** Gerund का प्रयोग noun की तरह किसी verb के complement के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Her hobby is dancing.
V C

Seeing is believing.
V C

His passion is gambling.
V C

What she doesn't like is drinking.
V C

**Rule (5) :** Gerund का प्रयोग noun or pronoun के Apposition के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

Your view, uniting the people, is admirable.

It is foolish playing with fire.

**Rule (6) :** Gerund का प्रयोग 'The' के बाद होता है। जैसे—

The barking of a dog.

*एक कुत्ता का भौंकना*

The running of business.

*व्यापार चलाना*

**Rule (7) :** Gerund का प्रयोग possessive के बाद होता है। जैसे—

I postponed my mother's going to Rajgir.

We appreciate Lata's singing.

They should not mind your coming late.

**Note: (i)** Possessive का तात्पर्य Apostrophe's' ['s] Apostrophe [ 's ] of, possessive Adjectives तथा possessive pronouns होता है।

**(ii)** Possessive Adjective का प्रयोग Gerund के पहले होता है लेकिन Possessive Pronouns का प्रयोग Gerund के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे—

You should not mind mine coming late. (×)

You should not mind my coming late. (✓)

**Rule (8) :** Gerund का प्रयोग verb के रूप में होता है तो इसके बाद object का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। जैसे—

He was good at playing hockey.
V O

My son is fond of singing a song.
V O

Some students believe in befooling the teachers.
V O

**Rule (9) :** Gerund का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए verbs के बाद होता है।

| Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Appreciate | *प्रशंसा करना / गुणगान करना* |
| Avoid | *दूर रहना / बचना / टालना* |
| Admit | *स्वीकार करना / मानना* |
| Detest | *घृणा करना* |
| Deny | *इन्कार करना* |
| Delay | *विलंब करना / टालना* |
| Dislike | *घृणा करना / नापसंद करना* |
| Endure | *बर्दाश्त करना* |
| Enjoy | *आनंद मनाना* |
| Escape | *बचकर भाग जाना / बचना* |
| Excuse | *क्षमा करना / माफ करना* |
| Fancy | *कल्पना करना* |
| Forgive | *क्षमा करना* |
| Mind | *ध्यान देना* |
| Mention | *उल्लेख करना / वर्णन करना* |
| Postpone | *स्थगित करना* |
| Resist | *प्रतिरोध करना* |
| Propose | *प्रस्ताव रखना* |
| Suggest | *सुझाव देना* |
| Consider | *विचार करना / सोचना* |
| Contemplate | *चिंतन करना / विचार करना* |

जैसे— He proposed going to the zoo.
She dislikes coming here.
Please, excuse her coming late.

**Rule (10) :** Gerund का प्रयोग prepositions—from, before, after, at, in, on, by, without, for, to, besides के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He saved her from drowning.
Prep. Gerund

On reaching Rajgira, he phoned me.
Prep Gerund

The Indian team was hopeful of winning the match.
Prep. Gerund

After taking breakfast, he went to the office.
Prep. Gerund

**Rule (11) :** Gerund का प्रयोग allow, advise, forbid तथा permit के बाद होता है। जैसे—

He did not allow smoking there.

My father advised walking in the morning.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



She forbade going out in the sun.
The house owner permitted teaching the children in his building.

**Note :** Allow, advise, forbid तथा permit verbs के बाद object का प्रयोग हो तो object के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे— Her father allowed her to go to the planetaorium.
She forbade me to go out at midnight.

**Rule (12) :** Gerund का प्रयोग verb + preposition के बाद होता है।

| Verb | अर्थ | +Preposition | +Gerund |
|---|---|---|---|
| Abstain | अलग रहना | from | Gerund |
| Aim | निशाना साधना | at | " |
| Excel | उत्तम होना | in | " |
| Excuse | माफ करना | for | " |
| Insist | आग्रह करना | on | " |
| Persist | आग्रह करना/दृढ़ रहना | in | Gerund |
| Prevent | बाधा डालना | from | " |
| Think | सोचना | of | " |
| Go | जारी रखना | on | " |
| Keep | जारी रखना | on | " |
| Look forward | आशा करना | to | " |
| Refrain | दूर रहना, बचते रहना | from | " |
| Succeed | सफल होना | in | " |
| Take | खर्च को किसी बात का आदी बनाना | to | Gerund |

जैसे— Krishna looks forward to meeting his beloved.
*कृष्ण अपने प्रेमिका से मिलने का आशा करता है।*
We should abstain from smoking.
*हमलोगों को स्मोकिंग से अलग/दूर रहना चाहिए।*
He prevented me from going out at night.
*उसने मुझे रात में बाहर जाने से मना किया।*

**Rule (13) :** Gerund का प्रयोग Adjective + Preposition के बाद होता है।

| Adjective | अर्थ | +Preposition | +Gerund |
|---|---|---|---|
| Addicted | आदी/व्यसन में लिप्त | to | Gerund |
| Bent | नतमस्तक | on | " |
| Confident | निश्चित | of | " |
| Desirous | इच्छुक/उत्सुक | of | " |
| Disqualified | अयोग्य | from | Gerund |
| Hopeful | आशान्वित | of | " |
| Tired | थका हुआ | of | " |
| Habituated | आदी | to | " |
| Accustomed | आदी | to | Gerund |

जैसे— Are you addicted to gambling ?
*क्या तुम जुआ खेलने के आदी हो ?*
We are hopeful of winning the match.
*हमलोग मैच जितने के लिए आशान्वित हैं।*
He is desirous of going abroad.
*उसे विदेश जाने की आकांक्षा है।*

**Note :** (1) with a view to, be used to के बाद Gerund का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
The students come to me with a view to getting some knowledge.
*छात्रगण मेरे पास कुछ ज्ञान पाने/लेने के उद्देश्य से आते हैं।*
Mr. Thakur is used to working at night.
*मि० ठाकुर रात में काम करने के आदी हैं।*

**Rule (14) :** Gerund का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गए शब्दों के बाद होता है। जैसे—
Avoid, enjoy, mind, hate, worth, any use, some use, much use, no use, no good, any good etc.

इन वाक्यों को देखें :
1. We must avoid drinking. (√)
   We must avoid to drink. (×)
2. It is no use crying now. (√)
   It is no use to cry now. (×)
3. He does not mind waiting her. (√)
   He does not mind to wait her. (×)

**Note :** उपरोक्त शब्दों के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**Rule (15) :** Gerund का प्रयोग can't bear (बर्दाश्त न करना), can't help (टालना) तथा can't stand (बर्दाश्त न करना) के बाद होता है। जैसे—
A baby can't bear living away from its mother.
You can't help laughing at her foolishness.

**Note :** Can't bear, can't help तथा can't stand के बाद object का प्रयोग भी होता है। जैसे—
She can't bear it.
You can't help me.

**Rule (16) :** Gerund का प्रयोग passive sense में verbs—need तथा want के बाद होता है। जैसे—
1. Your car needs painting.
अर्थ– = Your car needs to be painted.
2. The bicycle wants repairing.
अर्थ– = The bicycle wants to be repaired.

**Note :** (i) *Go + Gerund* का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है। जैसे—

| Go + Gerund | Go Gerund |
|---|---|
| Go + walking | Go walking |
| Go + riding | Go riding |
| Go + swimming | Go swimming |
| Go + dancing | Go dancing |

(ii) Infinitive with 'to' तथा Gerund दोनों में Noun तथा verb के गुण हैं। अतः different sentences (विभिन्न वाक्यों) में एक का प्रयोग दूसरे के स्थान पर किया जा सकता है। जैसे—
To walk is an exercise. (√)
Walking is an exercise. (√)
To see is to believe. (√)
Seeing is believing. (√)

लेकिन इन वाक्यों में Infinitive with to का प्रयोग Gerund के स्थान पर तथा Gerund का प्रयोग Infinitive with to के स्थान पर नहीं हो सकता है। नीचे दिये गए वाक्य पर ध्यान दें। जैसे—
Do not stop writing. (√)
Do not stop to write. (×)
He wants to go there. (√)
He wants going there. (×)

(iii) जब noun or pronoun का प्रयोग Gerund के पहले हो तो वह noun or pronoun possessive case में होता है। जैसे—
I was pleased at Mohan's going there. (√)
I was pleased at Mohan going there. (×)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



They insisted upon my starting at once. (√)
They insisted upon me starting at once. (×)
We heard of their winning the match. (√)
We heard of them winning the match. (×)
We enjoyed the clown's falling from the roof. (√)
We enjoyed the clown falling from the roof. (×)

लेकिन जब noun से a lifeless thing (एक निर्जीव वस्तु) का बोध हो तो Gerund के पहले प्रयुक्त noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' or Apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

There is no danger of the wall's falling down. (×)
There is no danger of the wall falling down. (√)
There is no fear of the train's coming late. (×)
There is no fear of the train coming late. (√)

(iv) Gerund का प्रयोग passive form में हो तो Gerund के पहले प्रयुक्त noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' or Apostrophe ( ' ) अर्थात Possessive case का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Do you approve of Naresh's being punished ? (×)
Do you approve of Naresh being punished ? (√)

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Fill in the blanks with gerund form of the verbs given in the brackets :*

1. .....is a good exercise. *(walk)*
2. .....is believing. *(see)*
3. He gave up ..... . *(smoke)*
4. He prefers ..... to swimming. *(walk)*
5. My father hates ..... money. *(borrow)*
6. Your uncle is addicted to..... . *(drink)*
7. Adity is accustomed to..... . *(dance)*
8. After.....the newspaper I gave up smoking. *(read)*
9. He is looking forward to ..... me. *(see)*
10. The Ramayana is worth..... . *(read)*
11. My wife proposed.....to the cinema. *(go)*
12. My hobby is.....the students. *(teach)*
13. .....is better than spending. *(save)*
14. I postponed her..... to Mumbai. *(go)*
15. He avoids..... a cheat. *(meet)*
16. Mr. Thakur did all this with a view to.....your career. *(make)*
17. He is used to ..... a lie. *(tell)*
18. You don't allow.....here. *(spit)*
19. It is no use ..... over spilt milk. *(cry)*
20. My father-in-law prohibited me from.....out late night. *(go)*
21. The doctor advised.....in the morning. *(walk)*
22. The house needs ..... . *(repair)*
23. .....a lie is easier than ..... the truth. *(tell, speak)*
24. ..... is not easy. *(read)*
25. .....is prohibited. *(park)*

**Q. 2.** *Rewrite the following sentences using the Gerund :*

1. To see is to believe.
2. To walk is a healthy exercise.
3. To remove corruption from the society is an uphill task.
4. It is not easy to swim.
5. To give is better than to receive.
6. To help the needy is our great duty.
7. To talk too much is not a sign of intelligence.
8. To scold her lover over trifles is her habit.
9. To stand first in the class is his aim.
10. To keep oneself free from tension is the best remedy for good health.
11. To smoke is injurious to health.
12. To show mercy is a divine attribute.
13. To respect and obey our teachers is our moral duty.
14. To kill birds is a cruel sport.
15. No one likes to pay taxes.
16. To ride a bicycle is not very difficult.
17. To bathe in cold water is very refreshing in hot water.
18. To walk in this park is not allowed.
19. To criticise others is not good.
20. He likes to walk in the morning.
21. He enjoys to see a film in the evening.
22. To start a business in this place will be profitable.
23. To ask questions is easier than to answer them.
24. You hate to talk to a mean fellow like him.
25. To find fault is easy.

**Q. 3.** *Correct the following sentences in respect of the Gerunds and other connecting words:*

1. Illness prevented her from attend the meeting.
2. He is looking forward to see you again.
3. A to roll stone gathers no moss.
4. Stop to play with fire.
5. There is no harm to go there.
6. He is not accustomed to sleep in the open.
7. Mr. Thakur tried to dissuade her from married an old man.
8. Your coat needs to wash.
9. Would you mind to open the gate ?
10. He likes to ride.
11. They were punished for come late.
12. He was annoyed at miss the bus.
13. You are not capable of worked hard.
14. This camera is not suitable for taken pictures in the dark.
15. They are thinking of moved to another house.
16. I will excuse you from attended the meeting.
17. Gandhijee insisted on do things honestly.
18. Who is responsible for break this table ?
19. He has begun to chew betels for a week.
20. He can't help to laugh.
21. They locked the house before to go out.
22. The accused persisted to assert his innocence.
23. I objected to meet her.
24. He is averse to play cards.
25. We can not live without to eat.

**Q. 4.** *Complete the following sentences by adding a construction with a Gerund :*

1. He is tired of ..... .
2. Would you mind ..... .
3. There is no danger of the wall ..... .
4. We must avoid ..... .
5. Children love ..... .
6. Bhavna likes American style of ..... .
7. We can make fire by ..... .
8. He began ..... .
9. There is no fear of the train ..... .
10. He was punished for ..... .

**Q. 5.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Imagine (1)/to live with someone (2)/who never (3)/stops talking. (4)/No error (5)
2. He is (1)/thinking of (2)/to leave this job (3)/and going abroad. (4)/No error (5)
3. He preferred (1)/playing football (2)/to study (3)/his lessons. (4)/No error (5)
4. I have (1)/no objection (2)/to your lived (3)/here. (4)/No error (5)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



5. Veena does not (1)/approve of (2)/her husband working (3)/as a teacher. (4)/No error (5)
6. I am (1)/ambitious of (2)/becoming the famous author (3)/of India. (4)/No error (5)
7. They (1)/Should not prevent (2)/her from (3)/work here. (4)/No error (5)
8. To Use (1)/unfair means (2)/at the examination (3)/is not desirable. (4)/No error (5)
9. He must have (1)/consulted with me (2)/before (3)/to take this decision. (4)/No error (5)
10. The teacher (1)/was displeased (2)/at my not attend (3)/the class regularly. (4)/No error (5)

**Q. 6.** *Rewrite the following sentences putting the verbs in brackets into the correct form Gerund or Infinitive :*

1. He is fond of ..... . *(dance)*
2. She was made ..... . *(give up, smoke)*
3. I saw her .....in the car. *(sit)*
4. I prefer.....to ..... . *(play, read)*
5. Mr. Thakur made her ..... it again. *(do)*
6. Would you mind.....him one hundred rupees ? *(lend)*
7. We must avoid ..... . *(drink)*
8. Let her ..... early as she wanted.....her lover. *(go, meet)*
9. I went.....my elder brother. *(see)*
10. .....something is better than.....nothing. *(do, do)*
11. He does not mind your.....late. *(come)*
12. She does not enjoy.....to the cinema. *(go)*
13. .....everbody is..... nobody. *(please, please)*
14. They stopped ..... . *(talk)*
15. One should try ..... the situation. *(understand)*
16. It is no use ..... him to stay. *(ask)*
17. The destruction was horrible ..... . *(see)*
18. Are you going ..... English and Sanskrit ? *(learn)*
19. He was congratulated on .....the prize. *(win)*
20. It is rude ..... others in conversation. *(Interrupt)*
21. .....with explosives is dangerous. *(play)*
22. Are you agreeable to ..... them use your car ? *(let)*
23. Our country is going .....more food this year. *(grow)*
24. The work is going... more difficult than I expected. *(be)*
25. It was extremely selfish of her.....all the sweets and ..... none for the rest of us. *(take, leave)*

**Q. 7.** *Join the following pairs of sentences by using Gerund :*

**Examples :**

**Type I :** The student was punished. He came late to school.
= The student was punished for coming late to school.

**Type II :** May I smoke ? Does any body object ?
= Does any body object to my smoking ?

1. My brother won the first prize. Have you heard about it ?
2. May I borrow your book ? Do you mind ?
3. He married an old woman. His parents disapproved (of).
4. The soldier showed cowardice. He was shot for.
5. He was dismissed. He disobeyed his boss (for).
6. Mr. Thakur teaches English. He is very good at this.
7. Vikas studied too much. He ruined his health (by).
8. She murdered her husband. She was sent to prison (for).
9. May I leave now ? Is there any objection (to) ?
10. Krishna cheated at the examination. He was expelled (for).

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. walking | 2. seeing | 3. smoking | 4. walking |
| 5. borrowing | 6. drinking | 7. dancing | 8. reading |
| 9. seeing | 10. reading | 11. going | 12. teaching |
| 13. saving | 14. going | 15. meeting | 16. making |
| 17. telling | 18. spitting | 19. crying | 20. going |
| 21. walking | 22. repairing | 23. telling, speaking | |
| 24. reading | 25. parking | | |

**Q.2.**

1. Seeing is believing.
2. Walking is a healthy exercise.
3. Removing corruption from the society is an uphill task.
4. Swimming is not easy.
5. Giving is better than receiving.
6. Helping the needy is our great duty.
7. Talking too much is not a sign of intelligence.
8. Scolding her lover over trifles is her habit.
9. Standing first in the class is his aim.
10. Keeping oneself free from tension is the best remedy for good health.
11. Smoking is injurious to health.
12. Showing mercy is a divine attribute.
13. Respecting and obeying our teacher is our moral duty.
14. Killing birds is a cruel sport.
15. No one likes paying taxes.
16. Riding a bicycle is not very difficult.
17. Bathing in cold water is very refreshing in hot water.
18. Walking in this park is not allowed.
19. Criticising others is not good.
20. He likes walking in the morning.
21. He enjoys seeing a film in the evening.
22. Starting a business in this place will be profitable.
23. Asking questions is easier than answering them.
24. You hate talking to a mean fellow like him.
25. Finding fault is easy.

**Q.3.**

1. Illness prevented her from attending the meeting.
2. He is looking forward to seeing you again.
3. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
4. Stop playing with fire.
5. There is no harm in going there.
6. He is not accustomed to sleeping in the open.
7. Mr. Thakur tried to dissuade her from marrying an old man.
8. Your coat needs washing.
9. Would you mind opening the gate ?
10. He likes riding.
11. They were punished for coming late.
12. He was annoyed at missing the bus.
13. You are not capable of working hard.
14. This camera is not suitable for taking pictures in the dark.
15. They are thinking of moving to another house.
16. I will excuse you from attending the meeting.
17. Gandhijee insisted on doing things honestly.
18. Who is responsible for breaking this table ?
19. He has begun chewing betels for a week.
20. He can't help laughing.
21. They locked the house before going out.
22. The accused persisted to asserting his innocence.
23. I objected to meeting her.
24. He is averse to playing cards.
25. We can not live without eating.

**Q.4.**

1. He is tired of working.
2. Would you mind closing the gate ?
3. There is no danger of the wall falling down.
4. We must avoid smoking.
5. Children love playing.
6. Bhavna lies American style of living.
7. We can make fire by rubbing two sticks together.
8. He began reading the Gita yesterday.
9. There is no fear of the train coming late.
10. He was punished for disobeying his teacher.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



Q.5.
1. (2) To live with someone की जगह living with someone का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (3) To leave this job की जगह leaving this job का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (3) To study की जगह to studying का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) To your lived की जगह to your living का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) Her husband working की जगह her husband's working का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (5) Given sentence correct है।
7. (4) Work की जगह working का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि from preposition के बाद Gerund (M.V + ing) का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (1) To use की जगह using का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (4) To take this decision की जगह taking this decision का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (3) At my not attend की जगह at my not attending का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि 'at' preposition के बाद Gerund का प्रयोग होता है।

Q.6. 1. dancing 2. to give up, smoking 3. sit, sitting
4. playing, reading 5. do 6. lending
7. drinking 8. go, to meet 9. to see
10. to do, to do or doing, doing 11. coming
12. going
13. To please, to please or pleasing, pleasing 14. talking
15. to understand 16. asking 17. to see
18. to learn 19. winning 20. to interrupt
21. to play 22. letting 23. to grow
24. to be 25. to take, leave

Q.7. 1. Have you heard about my brother winning the first prize.
2. Do you mind borrowing your book ?
3. His parents disapproved of his marrying an old woman.
4. The soldier was shot for showing cowardice.
5. He was dismissed for disobeying his boss.
6. Mr. Thakur is very good at teaching English.
7. Vikas ruined his health by studying too much.
8. She was sent to prison for murdering her husband.
9. Is there any objection to my leaving now ?
10. Krishna was expelled for cheating at the Examination.

## D. Use Of Participles

### 1. Use of Present Participle

**Rule (1) :** Present participle का प्रयोग continuous/progressive/Imperfect Tenses में होता है। जैसे—

He is playing cricket.
She was singing a song.
You will be doing your home work.

**Rule (2) :** Present participle का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He has a smiling face.
I saw a running horse.
A rolling stone gathers no moss.

**Rule (3) :** Find, catch, leave, see, hear, feel, smell, listen (to), notice, watch-verbs के बाद object का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसके बाद Present Participle का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Aditi caught $\underset{O}{\text{him}}$ $\underset{P.P.}{\text{stealing}}$ her purse.
His beloved left $\underset{O}{\text{him}}$ $\underset{P.P.}{\text{lying}}$ in bed.
I found $\underset{O}{\text{her}}$ $\underset{P.P.}{\text{talking}}$ to a young handsome boy.
She saw me crossing the road.
The teacher heard the students making a noise.

**Note :** Verbs–spend/waste के साथ Time or money expressing words (समय/पैसा सूचक शब्दों) का प्रयोग हो तो इसके बाद Present Participle का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

My wife spends two or three hours adorning herself.
*मेरी पत्नी अपने आप को सजाने-संवारने में दो या तीन घंटे व्यतीत करती है।*
His mother spent the whole night looking after him.
*उसकी माँ उसकी देखभाल करने में सारी रात गुजार देती थी।*
We wasted a whole afternoon trying to repair the car.

**Rule (4) :** Present participle का प्रयोग verb to be + busy के बाद होता है।

He is busy preparing for the U.P.S.C examination.
I was busy compiling this book.

**Note :** *Verb to be + busy* के बाद Infinitive with to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He is busy to prepare for the U.P.S.C Examination. (×)
I was busy to compile this book. (×)

**Rule (5) :** Present participle का प्रयोग *As/since/because/if/though/although + subject + verb* को replace करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. As he knew that he wouldn't be able to buy some food on his journey he took large supplies with him.
   = knowing that he wouldn't be able to buy some food on his journey he took large supplies with him.
2. As he feared that the police would recognize him he never went out in day light.
   = fearing that the police would recognize him he never went out in day light.
3. Because he was tired, he sat down to rest.
   = Being tired, he sat down to rest.

**Rule (6) :** Present participle का प्रयोग Relative pronoun + verb को replace करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. People who wish/wished to visit the caves.
   = people wishing to visit the caves.
2. Children who need/needed medical attention.
   = Children needing medical attention.

**Rule (7) :** जब एक ही subject के द्वारा दो कार्य एक साथ किए जाएँ या एक कार्य दूसरे कार्य के तुरन्त बाद किए जाएँ, तब sentence में प्रथम कार्य के लिए present participle का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. He jumped up. He ran away.
   = jumping up he ran away.
2. He opened the drawer and took out a pistol
   = opening the drawer he took out a pistol.
3. The children saw the headmaster. They ran away.
   = seeing the headmaster, the children ran away.

**Rule (8) :** जब एक ही subject के द्वारा दो कार्य सम्पादित होते हैं तो दोनो कार्यों में से एक कार्य के लिए present participle का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. She was in her studyroom.
   She was doing some home work.
   = She was in her studyroom doing some home work.
2. He was in his workshop. He was doing something.
   = He was in his workshop doing something.

**Rule (9) :** किसी sentence में दो actions (कार्यों) की चर्चा हो तथा दूसरा action (कार्य) पहले action (कार्य) का part (भाग) या result (रिजल्ट—परिणाम) हो तो दूसरे Action (कार्य) के लिए present participle का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He fired, wounding one of the bandits.
The old man fell from the ladder, breaking his right leg.
I fell, striking my head against the door and cutting it.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (10) :** Present-participle का प्रयोग while or when के बाद होता है। जैसे—

Aditya saw a deer while walking in the zoo.
Be careful when crossing the road.

यहाँ while walking in the zoo तथा when crossing the road का अर्थ क्रमशः while he was walking in the zoo तथा when you are crossing the road होता है।

**Rule (11) :** Continued Action (जारी कार्य) के दौरान कोई Action (कार्य) हो तो continued action के लिए present participle का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The children fainted sitting in the sun.
Ramu burst into tears telling the story of his father's death.

यहाँ sitting in the sun तथा telling the story of his father's death का अर्थ क्रमशः while they were sitting in the sun तथा when he was telling the story of his father's death होता है।

### 2. Use of Past Participle

**Rule (1) :** Past Participle का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

A burnt child dreads the fire.
A lost opportunity never returns.

**Rule (2) :** Past Participle का प्रयोग Present/Past/Future के Perfect Tenses बनाने में होता है। जैसे—

I have written a letter —*Present Perfect Tense*
He had finished his work —*Past perfect Tense*
He will have written a letter —*Future perfect Tense*

**Rule (3) :** Past Participle का प्रयोग Perfect Participle बनाने में होता है।

| Having + $V^3$ | Perfect-Participle |
|---|---|
| Having + done | Having done |
| Having + seen | Having seen |
| Having + written | Having written |
| Having + finished | Having finished |

जैसे— Having read the instructions, he snatched up the fire extinguisher.
Having failed twice, he didn't want to try again.

**Rule (4) :** Past Participle का प्रयोग Perfect Infinitive बनाने में होता है।

| To have + $V^3$ | Perfect-Infinitive |
|---|---|
| To have + written | To have written |
| To have + met | To have met |
| To have + made | To have made |

जैसे—He is pleased to have met her there.
She is displeased to have failed in the examination.

**Rule (5) :** Past Participle का प्रयोग Passive style के sentence में होता है। जैसे—

A tiger was killed by him.
My watch has been stolen.

**Rule (6) :** Past Participle का प्रयोग subject + verb को replace करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The Principal satisfied with her performance, he promoted her.
= Satisfied with her performance, the principal promoted her.

**Rule (7) :** Past Participle का प्रयोग permanent habit/state/character (स्थायी आदत/स्थिति/चरित्र) को express करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

A well read man
A well behaved student.

### 3. Use of Perfect Participle

**Rule (1) :** जब दो Actions (कार्यों) के होने में समय अंतराल कम हो तो पहले Action (कार्य) के लिए Perfect Participle का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Having taken breakfast, Aditya went to school.
Having killed the tiger, he carried it home.
Having typed the letter, he posted it.

## *Some Important-fact of Participles*

1. Participles का प्रयोग noun or pronoun को qualify करने के लिए predicatively तथा absolutely होता है।

(A) Predicatively as
He seems worried. (modifying the subject)
He kept me waiting. (modifying the object)

(B) Absolutely with a noun or pronoun going before, as

1. The weather being fine, I went out.
2. Manu having arrived, we were freed from-anxiety.
3. Her master being absent, the business was neglected.
4. The sun having risen, the birds began to sing.

**Note :** (i) Underlined phrases को absolute phrases कहा जाता है। participle के पहले प्रयुक्त noun or pronoun को Nominative absolute कहा जाता है।

(ii) Participles का प्रयोग noun or pronoun को qualify करने के लिए Adjective के रूप में Attributively भी होता है।

A rolling stone gathers no moss.
Your tattered coat-needs mending.
A burnt child dreads the fire.
A lost opportunity never returns.

2. Absolute phrase को आसानी से subordinate clause में बदला जा सकता है। जैसे—

The sea being smooth, we went for a sail.
= we went for a sail because the sea was smooth —Sub ordinate clause.

God willing, we shall meet-again.
= If God is willing, we shall meet again—Subordinate clause.

3. Gerund तथा Present Participle दोनों का रूप verb + ing होता है। इसलिए कभी-कभी छात्रगण कन्फ्यूज कर जाते हैं कि sentence में प्रयुक्त verb + ing Gerund है या Present Participle.

इस कन्फ्यूजन को दूर करने के लिए इसके प्रयोग पर ध्यान दें।

(a) यदि verb + ing का प्रयोग noun के रूप में हो तो उसे Gerund कहा जाता है।

(b) यदि verb + ing का प्रयोग Continuous Tense बनाने या Adjective के रूप में हो तो इसे Participle कहा जाता है। जैसे—

I. Her hobby is dancing
[dancing = Noun = Gerund]
II. She is dancing.
[dancing = Verb = Participle]
III. She is my dancing partner.
[dancing = Adjective = Participle]

4. Participles का प्रयोग कर दो sentences को इस प्रकार join/combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Type I.** We saw the children. They were playing with fire works.

= We saw the children playing with fire works.

**Type II.** He watched the girls. They were building houses of sand.

= He watched the girls building houses of sand.

**Type III.** The fishermen heard the girl. She was shouting for help.

= The fishermen heard the girl shouting for help.

**Type IV.** We listened to the radio. It was playing in the next room.

= We listened to the radio playing in the next room.

**Type V.** Can you see the man ? He is selling vegetables in the street.

= Can you see the man selling vegetables in the street ?

5. Participle construction का प्रयोग कर किसी sentense को इस प्रकार Rewrite किया जाता है। जैसे—

**Type I :** The hunter took careful aim and shot the tiger.

= The hunter, taking careful aim, shot the tiger.

= Taking careful aim, the hunter shot the tiger.

**Type II :** He saw her weeping and went to see what was wrong.

= Seeing her weeping, he went to see what was wrong.

**Type III :** As the weather was warm, Mr. Thakur took off his coat.

= The weather being warm, Mr. Thakur took off his coat.

**Type IV :** When they arrived at the station, They saw the train just going out.

= On arriving at the station, they saw the train just going out.

6. Past participle का प्रयोग कर किसी sentence को इस प्रकार Rewrite किया जाता है। जैसे—

**Type I:** The letter was written in a very bad handwriting and was difficult to read.

= The letter, (being) written in a very bad handwriting, was difficult to read.

**Type II :** Manali was encouraged by her success and made further efforts.

= (Being) encouraged by her success, Manali made further efforts.

### Errors in the use of participles

चूँकि participles एक Verb-Adjective है, अतः sentence में उस noun or pronoun का स्पष्ट उल्लेख रहना चाहिए जिसको इसे modify करना है। जैसे—

Walking through the park, the sun was very hot.

अब इस sentence को पढ़ने से ऐसा लगता है कि sun ही पार्क में टहल रहा था; क्योंकि participle walking जिस noun or pronoun को refer करना चाहता है उसका लोप है अतः यह sentence Incorrect (अशुद्ध) है। इसका correct form होगा—

Walking through the park, I found the sun very hot.

**इन वाक्यों को देखें :**

Being a very hot day, I remained in my tent. (×)
It being a very hot day, I remained in my tent. (✓)

Being a rainy day, I did not go out. (×)
It being a rainy day. I did not go out. (✓)

Walking in the garden, the clock struck ten. (×)
Walking in the garden, I heard the clock strike ten. (✓)

Climbing up the hill, a temple was seen by him. (×)
Climbing up the hill, I saw a temple. (✓)

Being fine, I went out for a walk. (×)
The weather being fine, I went out for a walk. (✓)

**Note :** Supposing, considering, regarding, concerning, touching, speaking, owing to, referring, allowing, granting, judging etc. ऐसे participles हैं जो subject से बिल्कुल स्वतंत्र होते हैं अर्थात इन सारे participles का प्रयोग noun or pronoun के बिना होता है। जब participles का प्रयोग noun or pronoun के बिना होता है तो इसे Impersonal absolute कहा जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें जो correct (शुद्ध) है।

Considering his abilities, he should have done better. (✓)

Roughly speaking, the distance from here to the nearest railway station is five miles. (✓)

Assuming that she is guilty, what is the punishment ? (✓)

यहाँ participle जिस noun or pronoun को refer करना चाहता है वह Indefinite (अनिश्चित/असीमित) है जिसका उल्लेख करना आवश्यक नहीं है।

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Pick out the participle in each of the following sentences, say whether it is a present or a past participle, and also how it is used.*

1. The students, playing in the park, had a merry time.
2. The car, driven recklessly by Kameshwarjee, dashed against a tree.
3. They heard the people shouting in the street.
4. Being dissatisfied, he resigned his position.
5. Hearing a noise, he turned round.
6. He saw the storm approaching.
7. Waving their handkerchiefs, the spectators cheered loudly the winning team.
8. Taking pity on the mouse, the magician turned it into cat.
9. He can hear her singing a song.
10. Hearing the noise, the girl woke up.
11. Deceived by her lover, she lost all hope.
12. We heard the clouds thundering.
13. I pity that old man carrying such a heavy load on his head.
14. Seeing the sunshine, I threw upon the window.
15. Seizing him by the arm, his friend led him away.
16. Encouraged by his beloved, he persevered.
17. The students coming home from college look in at the open door.
18. Generally speaking, I get what I deserve.
19. The enemy, beaten at every point, fled from the field.
20. God willing, we shall have another good monsoon.

**Q. 2.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable participles :*

1. He saw a .....old man. *(tired, tiring)*
2. My uncle is an ..... person. *(amusing, amused)*
3. This is a ..... egg. *(boiled, boiling)*
4. The police inspector found the .....articles. *(stealing, stolen)*
5. He has.....my name. *(forgotten, forgetting)*
6. My grandfather has bought a.....stick. *(walked/walking)*
7. He saw me.....the road. *(crossing/crossed)*
8. Having.....the glass, the boys ran away. *(breaking, broken)*
9. All the furniture was.....there. *(sent, sending)*
10. Gandhijee loved all .....creatures. *(living, lived)*
11. He kept me ..... . *(waited/waiting)*
12. ..... a noise, she woke up. *(hearing, heard)*
13. ..... the police man, the criminal ran away. *(seeing, seen)*
14. A .....stone gathers no moss. *(rolling, rolled)*
15. He will be.....the film this time tomorrow. *(watched, watching)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



16. When my son saw me, he started ..... . *(wept, weeping)*
17. Dr. S.S. Prasad is a ...professor. *(retired, retiring)*
18. The weding hall was beautifully..... . *(decorated, decorating)*
19. This book is very ..... . *(interesting, interested)*
20. Your bed room needs to be.... . *(painting, painted)*
21. His speech was ..... . *(excited, exciting)*
22. Having.... his homework, he went to school. *(finishing, finished)*
23. Our publisher appreciates..... writers and staffs. *(working, worked)*
24. The ..... chair should not be kept in the office. *(breaking, broken)*
25. His house was .....in 1999. *(building, built)*

**Q. 3.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable participle form of the verb given in the brackets :*

1. A .....opportunity never returns. *(lose)*
2. ..... dogs seldom bite. *(bark)*
3. The..... soldiers were carried to hospital. *(wound)*
4. She seems..... . *(worry)*
5. My brother-in-law has..... everything. *(manage)*
6. The Illiad was..... by Homer. *(write)*
7. Tendulkar hurt his right-hand, ..... cricket. *(play)*
8. I met a girl ..... a basket of eggs. *(carry)*
9. We saw the trees ..... with mangoes. *(lade)*
10. He saw a..... horse. *(run)*
11. She is a .....girl. *(spoil)*
12. The..... sun is beautiful to look at. *(rise)*
13. ..... by his friends, he felt very sad. *(cheat)*
14. ..... in love, she committed suicide. *(disappoint)*
15. The sun having....., the fog dispersed. *(rise)*
16. Having.....the work in the evening, we went home. *(complete)*
17. It..... a rainy day, I did not go to college. *(be)*
18. Do you see the boy ..... on the horse ? *(ride)*
19. The teacher ..... absent, the boys made a noise. *(be)*
20. On ..... at the station, we saw the train just going out. *(arrive)*
21. ..... the room, I found the light quite dazzling. *(enter)*
22. He is busy ..... for the competitive examination. *(prepare)*
23. ..... a police inspector, you should not help a terrorist. *(be)*
24. Mr. thakur wasted four weeks .....for his residence. *(look)*
25. He watched her ..... through the window. *(peep)*

**Q. 4.** *Rewrite the following sentences, using the participle construction. :*

**Examples :**

**Type I :** Mr. Thakur heard the noise and woke up.
= Hearing the noise, Mr. Thakur woke up.

**Type II :** He opened the drawer and took out his pistol.
= opening the drawer, he took out his pistol.

**Type III :** As the weather was warm, He took off his coat.
= The weather being warm, He took off his coat.

**Type IV :** He was discouraged by his failure and made no further efforts.
= (Being) discouraged by his failure, he made no further efforts.

1. The criminal saw the policeman and ran away.
2. Mr. Arjun Singh put on his over coat and went out for a walk.
3. Mr. Jha was dissatisfied with the job and resigned it.
4. As my brother was not ready, I had to go alone.
5. He walked up to the front door and rang the bell.
6. The students loudly knocked at the gate and demanded admission.
7. As the weather was fine, he went out.
8. He went to the director and submitted his application.
9. He turned to the right and entered a village.
10. Navin was encouraged by his success and made further efforts.
11. The tourists were charmed with the scenery and decided to prolong their way.
12. I took up my gun and went out to shoot the tiger.
13. As it was a very hot day, My father stayed in the house.
14. When he arrived at the station, he found that the train had just left.
15. The soldiers ran with all their speed and were able to catch the terrorists.
16. As he did not know the way, he asked a policeman.
17. The dacoit opened the window and entered the bed room very quietly.
18. Nawab was driven out of the state and settled down in Nepal.
19. She was depressed by tiredness and decided to take rest.
20. He was tired of waiting and decided to return home.
21. I was annoyed at my mother's rude behaviour and went to bed without having dinner.
22. The Rajdhani Express was delayed by the fog and steamed into the station an hour late.
23. The letter was very badly written and we had great difficulty in understanding its contents.
24. I was filled with ambition by my unexpected success and determined to win even greater triumphs.
25. The oldman was robbed of all his money and found himself helpless in a strange city.

**Q. 5.** *Join the following pairs of sentences by making use of participles :*

**Examples :**

**Type I :** He listened to the radio. It was playing in the next room.
= He listened to the radio playing in the next room.

**Type II :** He opened the drawer. He found the missing chain.
= opening the drawer, he found the missing chain.

**Type III :** She was rejected by all her lovers.
She decided to leave the city.
= Being rejected by all her lovers, she decided to leave the city.

**Type IV :** The train was ready to leave the station. The people had taken their seats.
= The people having taken their seats, the train was ready to leave the station.

**Type V :** Pankaj typed the letter. He put it before the officer for his signature.
= Having typed the letter, pankaj put it before the officer for his signature.

1. I saw Vikas. He was taking a photograph with his camera.
2. He saw some girls. They were quarrelling with one another.
3. Can you see the woman ? She is selling vegetables in the street.
4. We watched the boys. They were swimming in the pool.
5. She could smell something. It was burning in the kitchen.
6. The police found a man. He was hiding in the bush.
7. He drove along the road. He saw many beautiful buildings.
8. The magician took pity on the mouse. He turned it into a cat.
9. It was a very hot day. I remained in my tent.
10. We met a man. He was carrying a load of wood.
11. We saw some workers. They were building a bridge.
12. The soldier mounted his horse. He rode away.
13. She was encouraged by her husband. She made further efforts.
14. The stable door was open. The horse was stolen.
15. Shobhana received permission from her father. She went to Kolkata.
16. He was deserted by his wife. He died of a broken heart.
17. She returned home. She found the missing child.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



18. This book is written in a simple language. It is suitable for competitors.
19. The terrorist removed all traces of his crime. He left the hotel.
20. The enemies were beaten at every point. They fled from the field.
21. A crow stole a piece of cheese. She flew to her nest to enjoy the tasty meal.
22. Mr. Thakur met his friend in the street. He asked him where he was going.
23. A hungry fox saw some bunches of grapes. They were hanging from a vine.
24. Aditya finished the work. He went to bed.
25. He failed in the first attempt. He made no further efforts.

**Q. 6.** *Correct the following sentences in respect of participles and other connected words :*

1. Being a rainy day, he did not go out.
2. He saw a dead deer walking in the field.
3. Waiting for a bus, a brick fell on my head.
4. Being too costly for him, he could not buy the T.V.
5. Walking in the field, a snake bit her.
6. Sleeping on the bed, a mouse ran over the child.
7. Climbing up the hill, a mosque was seen by me.
8. Sitting on the gate, A wasp stang her.
9. Entering the house, the darkness faced me.
10. Going round the corner, I saw a beautiful scene.
11. Walking across the bridge, his walking stick broke.
12. Sleeping in my room, a thief suddenly appeared.
13. Sleeping in my room, a ghost haunted me.
14. Reading in the study room, My daughter disturbed me.
15. Returning from the college, my hat blew off.
16. Ploughing his field a hidden treasure was discovered.
17. Working in the field, a dead man was seen.
18. Climbing up the tree, the house was seen by him.
19. Running through the forest, his clothes were torn by thorns.
20. Having failed in the first attempt, further attempts were not made by him.

**Q. 7.** *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. Heard (1)/the noise, (2)/my son (3)/woke up. (4)/No error (5)
2. Having (1)/working hard, (2)/he (3)/felt tired. (4)/No error (5)
3. Opened (1)/the almirah, (2)/he took out (3)/the watch. (4)/No error (5)
4. We (1)/saw a laboure (2)/carried a basket (3)/on his head. (4)/No error (5)
5. Taken off our shoes, (1)/we creep (2)/cautiously (3)/along the passage. (4)/No error (5)
6. The police Inspector (1)/spent (2)/a lot of money (3)/modernized the house. (4)/No error (5)
7. The mechanic (1)/wasted (2)/a whole afternoon (3)/trying to repair the car. (4)/No error (5)
8. He (1)/was stood (2)/at the door (3)/when I arrived. (4)/No error (5)
9. He (1)/found a tree (2)/lied (3)/across the road. (4)/No error (5)
10. Having tying one end of the rope (1)/to his bed, (2)/he threw the other end (3)/out of the window. (4)/No error (5)
11. Walking in the field (1)/late at night, a snake bit me (2)/and that was reason (3)/why I was in a hurry. (4)/No error (5)
12. Having had reached (1)/the station, I (2)/may buy my ticket (3)/and wait for the train for Mumbai. (4)/No error (5)
13. He complained to the police (1)/that his briefcase had been stolen (2)/that he was lifted (3)/without any money. (4)/No error (5)
14. Being a rainy day, (1)/Vijay decided (2)/to stay at home (3)/and work further on the problem. (4)/No error (5)
15. Coming towards (1)/the market, the basket (2)/of eggs slipped (3)/from her head. (4)/No error (5)
16. Being Sunday, (1)/I and my friends (2)/decided to go for a walk (3)/in the large forest. (4)/No error (5)
17. We were still talking (1)/about what we should do (2)/when we heard (3)/the children shouting. (4)/No error (5)
18. Being very often ill, /and frequently absent, (2)/he had no opportunity to finish his work (3)/or to do much of it in fact. (4)/No error (5)
19. Taking tea, (1)/he went to the office (2)/and disposed (3)/of a lot of work. (4)/No error (5)
20. Judge every thing in the light of what, (1)/the pleaders of both the parties had said, (2)/the judge came to the conclusion (3)/that the case was false. (4)/No error (5)
21. School offers many opportunities of meeting (1)/ helpful people, reading useful books (2)/and obtain information about (3)/a variety of public careers. (4)/No error (5)
22. Children visiting (1)/the park are amused (2)/by the monkeys (3)/play in the cages. (4)/No error (5)
23. The child (1)/picked up (2)/a burned paper (3)/from the street. (4)/No error (5)
24. The parents scolded the child (1)/for having broke the window (2)/but their words fell (3)/on deaf ears. (4)/No error (5)
25. I finished my work (1)/before we reached his place (2)/with great difficulty (3)/because of heavy traffic. (4)/No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

Q. No. 1 का Q. 1 से 20 तक के प्रश्नों का उत्तर छात्रगण स्वयं ढूँढें।

**Q. 2.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. tired | 2. amusing | 3. boiled | 4. stolen |
| 5. forgotten | 6. walking | 7. crossing | 8. broken |
| 9. sent | 10. living | 11. waiting | 12. hearing |
| 13. seeing | 14. rolling | 15. watching | 16. weeping |
| 17. retired | 18. decorated | 19. interesting | 20. painted |
| 21. exciting | 22. finished | 23. working | 24. broken |
| 25. built | | | |

**Q. 3.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. lost | 2. barking | 3. wounded | 4. worried |
| 5. managed | 6. written | 7. playing | 8. carrying |
| 9. laden | 10. running | 11. spoiled | 12. rising |
| 13. cheated | 14. Disappointed | 15. risen | 16. completed |
| 17. being | 18. riding | 19. being | 20. arriving |
| 21. entering | 22. preparing | 23. being | 24. looking |
| 25. peeping | | | |

**Q. 4.**

1. Seeing the police man, the criminal ran away.
2. Putting on his over coat, Mr. Arjun Singh went out for a walk.
3. (Being) dissatisfied with the job, Mr. Jha resigned it.
4. My brother being not ready, I had to go alone.
5. Walking up to the front door, He rang the bell.
6. Loudly knocking at the gate, the students demanded admission.
7. The weather being fine, he went out.
8. Going to the director, he submitted his application.
9. Turning to the right, he entered a village.
10. (Being) encouraged by his success, Navin made further efforts.
11. (Being) charmed with the scenery, the tourists decided to prolong their way.
12. Taking up my gun, I went out to shoot the tiger.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



13. It being a very hot day, My father stayed in the house.
14. On arriving at the station, he found that the train had just left.
15. Running with all their speed, the soldiers were able to catch the terrorists.
16. Not knowing the way, he asked a policeman.
17. Opening the window, the dacoit entered the bed room very quietly.
18. (Being) driven out of the state, Nawab settled down in Nepal.
19. (Being) depressed by tiredness, she decided to take rest.
20. (Being) tired of waiting, he decided to return home.
21. (Being) annoyed at my mother's rude behaviour, I went to bed without having dinner.
22. (Being) delayed by the fog, the Rajdhani Express steamed into the station an hour late.
23. The letter, being very badly written, we had great difficulty in understanding its contents.
24. (Being) filled with ambition by my unexpected success, I determined to win even greater triumphs.
25. (Being) robbed of all his money, the oldman found himself helpless in a strange city.

Q. 5.

1. I saw Vikas taking a photograph with his camera.
2. He saw some girls quarrelling with one another.
3. Can you see the woman selling vegetables in the street ?
4. We watched the boys swimming in the pool.
5. She could smell something burning in the kitchen.
6. The police found a man hiding in the bush.
7. Driving along the road, he saw many beautiful buildings.
8. Taking pity on the mouse, the magician turned it into a cat.
9. It being a very hot day, I remained in my tent.
10. We met a man carrying a load of wood.
11. We saw some workers building a bridge.
12. Mounting his horse, the soldier rode away.
13. (Being) encouraged by her husband, she made further efforts.
14. The stable door being open, the horse was stolen.
15. Having received permission from her father, Shobhana went to Kolkata.
16. Being deserted by his wife, he died of a broken heart.
17. Returning home, she found the missing child.
18. This book, being written in a simple language, is suitable for competitors.
19. Removing all traces of his crime, the terrorist left the hotel.
20. The enemies, being beaten at every point, fled from the field.
21. Stealing a piece of cheese, A crow flew to her nest to enjoy the tasty meal.
22. Having met his friend in the street, Mr. Thakur asked him where he was going.
23. A hungry fox saw some bunches of grapes hanging from a vine.
24. Having finished the work, Aditya went to bed.
25. Having failed in the first attempt, He made no further efforts.

Q. 6.

1. It being a rainy day, he did not go out.
   or, As it was a rainy day, he did not go out.
2. He saw a dead deer while he was walking in the field.
   or, He saw a dead deer while walking in the field.
3. While I was waiting for a bus, a brick fell on my head.
4. The T.V being too costly for him, he could not buy it.
5. While she was walking in the field, a snake bit her.
6. Sleeping on the bed, the child was run over by a mouse.
7. Climbing up the hill, I saw a mosque.
8. Sitting on the gate, she was stung by a wasp.
9. Entering the house, I faced the darkness.
10. Going round the corner, a beautiful scene was seen.
11. While he was walking across the bridge, his walking stick broke.
12. While I was sleeping in my room, a thief suddenly appeared.
13. While I was sleeping in my room, a ghost haunted me.
14. While I was reading in the study room, My daughter disturbed me.
15. While I was returning from the college, my hat blew off.
16. While a farmer was ploughing his field, he discovered a hidden treasure.
17. While I was working in the field, I saw a dead man.
18. Climbing up the tree, he saw the house.
19. Running through the forest, thorns tore his clothes.
20. Having failed in the first attempt, he made no further attempts.

Q. 7.

1. (1) heard की जगह hearing का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (2) working की जगह worked का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (1) opened की जगह opening का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (3) Carried की जगह carrying का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (1) Taken off our shoes की जगह taking off our shoes का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (4) Modernized the house की जगह modernizing the house का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (5) Given sentence correct है।
8. (2) Stood की जगह standing का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (3) Lied की जगह lying का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (1) Having tying की जगह Having tied का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (1) Walking in the field के बदले while I was walking in the field का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (1) Having had reached की जगह Having reached का प्रयोग होगा। Had का प्रयोग नहीं होता है Having + $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग perfect participle के रूप में होता है।
13. (3) Lifted की जगह left का प्रयोग होगा। leave का अर्थ 'छोड़ना' तथा इसका past form left होता है जबकि lift का अर्थ 'उठाना' तथा इसका past form– lifted होता है। दिये गए sentence के अर्थ के लिए left उपयुक्त है।
14. (1) Being a rainy day की जगह It being a rainy day का प्रयोग होता है। Participle—being के पहले Introductory subject—It का प्रयोग sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है। It का प्रयोग weather, season तथा Time के लिए होता है।
15. (1) Coming की जगह while she was coming towards का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (1) Being Sunday की जगह It being Sunday का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (5) Given sentence correct है।
18. (5) Given sentence correct है।
19. (1) Taking tea की जगह Having taken tea का प्रयोग होगा जो sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
20. (1) Judge की जगह judging का प्रयोग होगा। Judging, considering, viewing, referring, regarding etc. का प्रयोग participles की तरह स्वतंत्र रूप से subject के बिना होता है।
21. (3) Obtain की जगह obtaining का प्रयोग होगा। and के पहले reading का प्रयोग है इसलिए and के बाद obtaining का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (4) Play की जगह playing का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (3) Burned की जगह burnt का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (2) Broke की जगह broken का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (1) Finished की जगह had finished का प्रयोग होगा।

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Question Tags 21

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें :

1. तुम मुझे प्यार करते हो, न? You love me, *don't you*?
2. वह पत्र लिखता था, न? He wrote a letter, *didn't he*?
3. तुम नहीं पढ़ते हो, न? You do not read, *do you*?
4. वह सच बोलता है, न? He speaks the truth, *doesn't he*?
5. उसने तुम्हें धोखा दिया है, न? He has deceived you, *hasn't he*?
6. वह तुम्हारा भाई है, न? He is your brother, *isn't he*?
7. वे लोग झूठ नहीं बोलते हैं, न? They don't tell a lie, *do they*?
8. आदित्य चाय नहीं पीता है, न? Aditya does not take tea, *does he*?
9. मुझे साईकिल है, न? I have a bicycle, *haven't I*?
10. उसे साहस था, न? He had courage, *hadn't he*?

उपरोक्त Sentences का प्रयोग सामान्यतः बोलचाल की भाषा में होता है। speaker (वक्ता) इस प्रकार के sentences का प्रयोग अपने अनुमान/विचार आदि को express (व्यक्त) करने के लिए करते हैं। लेकिन साथ ही अपनी जिज्ञासा/संदेह के कारण की पुष्टि Audience (श्रोता) से चाहते हैं। इस प्रकार के अंग्रेजी Sentences का first part (प्रथम भाग) Assertive/Imperative होता है तथा second part (दूसरा भाग) Interrogative होता है। यह second part (दूसरा भाग) Question tag कहलाता है। अब आपके मन में एक प्रश्न उठ सकता है कि Question तथा Question tag में क्या अंतर/फर्क होता है।

### Questions तथा Question tags में फर्क :

| Questions | Question tags |
|---|---|
| 1. Questions complete (पूर्ण) Sentences होते हैं। | 1. जबकि Question tags sentences के last (अंत) में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। |
| 2. इसका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से होता है। | 2. इसका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से नहीं होता है। |
| 3. जब हम किसी बात को नहीं जानते हैं तो Questions का प्रयोग करते हैं। | 3. परन्तु जब हमारे सामने कोई ऐसा तथ्य/अनुमान/विचार आता है जिस पर हम पूर्णतः आश्वस्त नहीं रहते हैं तो इसकी पुष्टि के लिए Question tags का प्रयोग करते हैं। |
| 4. इसका प्रयोग औपचारिक रूप से किया जाता है। | 4. इसका प्रयोग अनौपचारिक रूप से किया जाता है। |
| 5. Questions का प्रयोग करने वाला व्यक्ति Audience (श्रोता) से यह उम्मीद रखता है कि वह उसके प्रश्न का जवाब देगा। | 5. Question tags का प्रयोग करने वाला व्यक्ति Audience (श्रोता) से यह उम्मीद रखता है कि वह उसके Statement (कथन) की पुष्टि करेगा। |

### Contracted forms of auxiliary verbs + Not

| Auxiliary verbs + Not | Short forms used in question tags | Auxiliary verbs + Not | Short forms used in question tags |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. do + not | don't | 2. does + not | doesn't |
| 3. did + not | didn't | 4. am I not... | aren't I ... ? |
| 5. Is + not | Isn't | 6. are + not | aren't |
| 7. has + not | hasn't | 8. have + not | haven't |
| 9. had + not | hadn't | 10. was + not | wasn't |
| 11. were + not | weren't | 12. shall + not | shan't |
| 13. will + not | won't | 14. can + not | can't |
| 15. should + not | shouldn't | 16. would + not | wouldn't |
| 17. could + not | couldn't | 18. may + not | mayn't |
| 19. might + not | mightn't | 20. ought + not | oughtn't |
| 21. must + not | mustn't | 22. used + not | usedn't |
| 23. need + not | needn't | 24. dare + not | daren't |

### Formate of Question tags

(i) Affirmative—Auxiliary verbs + subject + ?
(ii) Negative—Auxiliary verbs + n't + subject + ?

**Question tags बनाते समय नीचे दी गई बातों का ध्यान रखें :**

1. Question tags बनाने में main verb जैसे—go, drink, come, etc. का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

He writes a letter, don't write he ? (×)
He writes a letter, doesn't he ? (✓)
He does not drink milk, does drink he ? (×)
He does not drink milk, does he ? (✓)

2. Question tags में subject के रूप में pronoun or there का प्रयोग होता है।

3. Question Tags में subject के रूप में noun का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

4. Question Tags में Auxiliary verbs or Auxiliary verbs + n't का प्रयोग given sentence (दिये गए वाक्य) के Tense या Question tag में प्रयुक्त होने वाले subject के Number तथा Person पर निर्भर करता है।

5. किसी sentence के last (अंत) में Question tag का प्रयोग हो या करना हो तो Question tag के Auxiliary verbs का चुनाव Sentence में प्रयुक्त Auxiliary verb पर निर्भर करता है।

6. यदि question tag में Auxiliary verbs का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Question tag में do/does/did का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है।

### How to Make Question Tags

**Question Tags बनाने का नियम :**

**Rule (1) :** Affirmative sentence का question tag negative होता है अर्थात् *Auxiliary verb + n't + Subject (A. P) + ?* का प्रयोग Question tag में होता है।

**Note :** A. P = Appropriate pronoun (उपयुक्त सर्वनाम) जैसे—

He writes a letter, *doesn't he* ?
She is ugly, *isn't she* ?
He came here last night, *didn't he* ?
You are courageous, *aren't you* ?
She was a salesgirl, *wasn't she* ?
I am wrong, *aren't I* ?
You will help me, *won't you* ?
He spoke the truth, *didn't he* ?
He has done his homework, *hasn't he* ?
He had gone there, *hadn't he* ?

**Rule (2) :** Negative sentence का Question tag Affirmative होता है। अर्थात् *Auxiliary verb + Subject (A. P) + ?* का प्रयोग Question tag में होता है। जैसे—



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



She does not make a noise, *does she*?
I don't drink wine, *do I*?
You are not laborious, *are you*?
She did not see me, *did she*?
He will not tell me a story, *will he*?
I am not right, *am I*?
He did not tell a lie, *did he*?
He has not helped her, *has he*?
You had not played well, *had you*?
She was not lazy, *was she*?

**Rule 3** :यदि किसी sentence में negative words जैसे—Neither, no, not, never, none, no one, nobody, nothing, few, little, hardly, rarely, scarcely, seldom etc... का प्रयोग हो तो Sentence का अर्थ negative होता है इसे negative sentence माना जाता है अतः इसका Question tag Affirmative होता है। अर्थात् *Auxiliary verb + Subject (A. P) + ?* का प्रयोग question tag में होता है। जैसे—

We have no friends, *have we*?
No one knows this matter, *do they*?
They have nothing, *have they*?
Nobody is perfect, *are they*?
A barking dog seldom bites, *does he*?
Nothing is yours, *is it*?
Few students have come to attend the class, *have they*?
Neither of us helped you, *did we*?
I know little about you, *do I*?
It is rarely found, *is it*?

**Note** :A few तथा a little positive meaning रखता है। इसका प्रयोग किसी sentence में हो तो वह Affirmative sentence होता है। अतः इसका Question tag negative होता है। जैसे—

I have a little money, *haven't I*?
*मुझे थोड़ा धन है, न ?*
I have read a few books, *haven't I*?
*मैंने कुछ पुस्तकें पढ़ी है, न ?*

**Rule (4)** :Affirmative Imperative sentence का *question tag Affirmative —'will you ?'* या *negative—'won't you ?'* दोनों होता है। जैसे—

Switch on the radio, *will you*?
Switch on the radio, *won't you*?
Please give me money, *will you*?
Please give me money, *won't you*?
Kindly post this letter, *will you*?
Kindly post this letter, *won't you*?

**Rule 5** :Negative Imperative sentence का question tag Affirmative—'will you ?' होता है। जैसे—

Don't open the window, *will you*?
Don't spit here, *will you*?
Don't switch off the light, *will you*?
Don't be late tomorrow, *will you*?
Don't make a noise, *will you*?

**Rule 6** :यदि Affirmative imperative sentence का प्रयोग more urgency (ज्यादा आवश्यक) के भाव को express करने के लिए हो तो question tag—Negative *'won't you ?'* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Remember to shut the window, *won't you ?*
Be careful while solving the sums, *won't you ?*

**Rule 7** :यदि Imperative sentence में प्रयुक्त verb से डाँट-फटकार के भाव का बोध हो तो Question tag—can't you ? का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Use your own mind, *can't you ?*
Use your own book, *can't you ?*

**Rule 8** :यदि Imperative sentence Let us या Let's से स्टार्ट हो तो इससे प्रस्ताव/सुझाव (proposal/Suggestion) का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए question tag—"shall we ?" का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Let us dance together, *shall we*?
Let us help her, *shall we*?
Let us do this work, *shall we*?
Let's go there, *shall we*?
Let's read the Gita, *shall we*?

**Rule 9** :यदि Imperative sentence let me/him/her/them/Shyam/Veena etc... से स्टार्ट हो तो question tag—'will you ?' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Let me do this work, *will you*?
Let her be my beloved, *will you*?
Let him go, *will you*?
Let them do their homework, *will you*?
Let Veena watch T. V, *will you*?

**Rule 10** :यदि किसी sentence में used to का प्रयोग हो तो question tag में usedn't/didn't का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He used to come here, *usedn't he*?
He used to come here, *didn't he*?
They usedn't to come here, *used they*?
They usedn't to come here, *did they*?

**Rule 11** :Dare not/daren't तथा need not/needn't का प्रयोग marginal Auxiliary verbs के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग किसी sentence में हो तो उसका question tag—affirmative —*'dare/need + subject (A. P.) + ?'* के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

He daren't come here, *dare he*?
I needn't go there, *need I*?
He need not work hard, *need he*?
You dare not face your teacher, *dare you*?
They daren't touch the naked wire, *dare they*?

**Rule 12** :Dare तथा Need का प्रयोग Main verb के रूप में किसी sentence में हो तो उसका question tag इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

He dares to oppose his father, *doesn't he*?
She needs your note book, *doesn't she*?
We needed your help, *didn't we*?
She dared to abuse me, *didn't she*?
You don't dare to go there, *do you*?
They do not need to go there, *do they*?
He did not need to read the Gita, *did he*?
I don't dare to beat him, *do I*?
Nobody will dare to beat me, *will they*?
He will need nothing, *will he*?

**Note** :(i) Negative question tag में Auxiliary verbs + not के Contracted form (संक्षिप्त रूप)—Auxiliary verb + n't का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) I am your best teacher. का question tag— negative—*'aren't I ?'* का प्रयोग होता है न कि *'amn't I ?'* का।

(iii) I am not your best teacher. का question tag—affirmative—*'am I ?'* का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'are I ?' का।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### How to select the Subjects of Question tags

Question tags बनाते समय subjects के selection (चुनाव/चयन) में हम लोगों को कनफ्यूजन होता है। इसी कनफ्यूजन को समाप्त करने के लिए यहाँ हमलोग Question tags के subjects के चयन संबंधित अध्ययन करेंगे। Question tags के subjects का selection (चुनाव/चयन) इस प्रकार किया जाता है।

**Rule 1 :** यदि किसी sentence का subject—personal pronoun हो तो question tag का subject वही Personal pronoun होता है। जैसे—

They write, don't they ?
He reads the Ramayana, *doesn't he* ?
You know me, *don't you* ?
We did our homework, *didn't we* ?
I did not see her yesterday, *did I* ?

**Ruel 2 :** यदि किसी sentence का Subject-Noun हो तो question tag का subject, प्रयुक्त Noun के number, person तथा gender के मुताबिक he/she/it/they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Binay and Sudhir are friends, *aren't they* ?
Bhavna is an intelligent girl, *isn't she* ?
Rudransh has a ball, *hasn't he* ?
The sofaset was not strong enough, *was it* ?
The girls were playing kho–kho, *weren't they* ?

**Rule 3 :** यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में there, one, this/that, these/those का प्रयोग हो तो question tags में subjects के रूप में क्रमशः there, one, it तथा they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

There is a book on the table, *isn't there* ?
One cannot do this sum, *can one* ?
This is your book, *isn't it* ?
That is my table, *isn't it* ?
These are your caps, *aren't they* ?
Those were his buffaloes, *weren't they* ?

**Note :** one, this/that, these/those का प्रयोग noun के पहले हो तो ये Adjectives होते हैं। इसका प्रयोग sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो Question tag में Subject के रूप में one, this/that, these/those के बाद प्रयुक्त noun के number, person तथा gender के मुताबिक he/she/it/they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

One girl can do this work, *can't she* ?
This man always disturbed me, *didn't he* ?
This pen is useless, *isn't it* ?
That boy has no knowledge, *has he* ?
These books are yours, *aren't they* ?
Those women were beautiful, *weren't they* ?

**Rule 4 :** यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में no one, any one, someone, everyone, everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody का प्रयोग हो तो question tag में subject के रूप में they का प्रयोग होता है न कि he का। जैसे—

Someone stole my watch, *didn't they* ?
Anyone can lift this box, *can't they* ?
Everybody is the master of his fate, *aren't they* ?
Nobody has seen God, *have they* ?
Some body knocked at the door, *didn't they* ?

**Rule 5 :** यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में everything, something, anything तथा nothing का प्रयोग हो तो question tag में subject के रूप में 'it' का प्रयोग होता है न कि they का। जैसे—

Everything looks beautiful, *doesn't it* ?
Nothing is yours, *is it* ?
Something was there, *wasn't it* ?
Anything can be done for her, *can't it* ?

**Rule 6 :** यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में All of us/you/them; None of us/you/them; one of us/you/them; anyone of us/you/them; some of us/you/them; most of us/you/them; everyone of us/you/them; either of us/you/them; neither of us/you/them का प्रयोग हो तो question tag में subjects के रूप में क्रमशः we, you तथा they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

All of us can do this sum, *can't we* ?
All of you can do this sum, *can't you* ?
All of them can do this sum, *can't they* ?
Either of you is innocent, *aren't you* ?
Neither of us was laborious, *were we* ?
None of them have seen the Red Fort, *have they* ?
Most of you are honest, *aren't you* ?
Most of them don't know this, *do they* ?
Some of us are intelligent, *aren't we* ?
Everyone of them has courage, *haven't they* ?

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags :*

1. I am innocent, ..... ?
2. I am not clever, ..... ?
3. I'm reading the Gita, ..... ?
4. You are writing a letter, ..... ?
5. You are not helping me, ..... ?
6. Mahant Babu is very poor , ..... ?
7. They are playing cricket, ..... ?
8. We are ready to face the difficulties, .....?
9. She has given me a notebook, ..... ?
10. Manu has sympathy for you, ..... ?
11. The students have played well, ..... ?
12. He has been preparing for the examination for years, ..... ?
13. Veena and Nilu will be present there, ..... ?
14. They will win the match, ..... ?
15. Krishna will not tell you a story, ..... ?
16. I shall have courage, ..... ?
17. It will be raining, ..... ?
18. He cannot lift this box, ..... ?
19. We can help the needy, ..... ?
20. It might rain today, ..... ?
21. The girls could do this work, ..... ?
22. We shan't go there, ..... ?
23. We may win the cricket match, ..... ?
24. You should not scold your daughter, ..... ?
25. We ought to respect our elders, ..... ?
26. He was very courageous, ..... ?
27. They were not ready to go there, .....?
28. He was to come here, ..... ?
29. She was learning how to prepare tea, ..... ?
30. You must help your brother, ..... ?
31. He had an ox, ..... ?
32. You had to support your classmate, ..... ?
33. Binay had not done that work, ..... ?
34. You know me very well, ..... ?
35. The boys make a noise, ..... ?
36. You always help me, ..... ?
37. He does not go to school in time, ..... ?
38. He writes Hindi well, ..... ?
39. He leaves for Delhi, ..... ?
40. My beloved does not do her work, .....?

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



41. She likes you, ..... ?
42. They did their work, ..... ?
43. The passengers went to the station, .....?
44. He made a mistake, ..... ?
45. Aditya and Aditi did not go to school yesterday, .....?
46. He wanted to kill her, ..... ?
47. Anjali did not come to attend the class in time, .....?
48. I cannot drive a motorcycle, ..... ?
49. The publisher leaves for Rajasthan tomorrow, ..... ?
50. You often go to your teacher to ask a question, ..... ?

**Q. 2** *Fill in the blanks with question tags :*

1. You have already finished your home work, ..... ?
2. I leave for Mumbai tomorrow, ..... ?
3. He dare not talk to me, ..... ?
4. He does not dare to talk to me, .....?
5. He dares to scold me, ..... ?
6. You daren't come here, ..... ?
7. You don't dare to come here, .....?
8. Badal dares to go everywhere, .....?
9. We dare not face our teacher, ..... ?
10. He need not go there, ..... ?
11. They needed your help, ..... ?
12. Radha needn't work, ..... ?
13. Radha does not need to work, ..... ?
14. He needs my help, ..... ?
15. She does not need money, ..... ?
16. She used to walk in the morning, .....?
17. She used to walk in the evening, .....?
18. You used not to work hard, .....?
19. Let the girls go out, .....?
20. I dare not ask her father, .....?
21. He will need you, .....?
22. I have dared to oppose the government, ..... ?
23. I used to like her, .....?
24. I used not to like her, .....?
25. He used the money to establish the publication, .....?
26. We can buy anything in this shop, .....?
27. None of the food was wasted, ..... ?
28. He was weary of failure, ..... ?
29. Now he has no money, ..... ?
30. Nobody is ready, ..... ?
31. Neither of us was guilty ,.....?
32. Veena has no one to support, .....?
33. No one was ambitious, ..... ?
34. Nothing is mine, ..... ?
35. I have little money, ..... ?
36. You know a little about me, ..... ?
37. Few students were present in the class, ..... ?
38. You have a few good books, ..... ?
39. It is rarely found these days, ..... ?
40. He seldom comes here, ..... ?
41. Open the window, .....?
42. Please attend the class in time, .....?
43. Work hard, ..... ?
44. Please take your seat, ..... ?
45. Don't spit here, .....?
46. Don't be disappointed, .....?
47. Let us dance together, .....?
48. Let's work, ..... ?
49. Let us complete this project, .....?
50. Let her do that, ..... ?

**Q. 3** *Fill in the blanks with question tags :*

1. Nobody liked your activities, .....?
2. He knows little about the plan, .....?
3. I don't know a little about your plan, .....?
4. Do it at once, ..... ?
5. Bring a bottle of whisky, .....?
6. Please help me to follow my instructions, .....?
7. Don't go there again, .....?
8. Kindly don't tease the animals, ..... ?
9. Let us start the work, .....?
10. Let her study, .....?
11. Nobody dares to oppose him, ..... ?
12. There is a girl in my class, .....?
13. There are twenty boys in my class, ..... ?
14. There were six girls there, .....?
15. There was no one to help him, ..... ?
16. One can help you, .....?
17. This is useful, .....?
18. That was not for you, .....?
19. These are yours, .....?
20. Those are mine, ..... ?
21. One man can do this work, .....?
22. This student is honest, ..... ?
23. That man has stolen my watch, .....?
24. These bananas are rotten, .....?
25. Those girls are industrious, .....?
26. This girl is very beautiful, .....?
27. No one dares to come here, .....?
28. Anyone will not do this work, .....?
29. Someone might come today, .....?
30. Everybody was ready, .....?
31. Somebody has broken the chair, .....?
32. Nobody can challenge you, .....?
33. No money has been spent, .....?
34. Nothing was sold, .....?
35. Everything looks bright and beautiful, .....?
36. All of us were absent, .....?
37. All of you were there, .....?
38. All of them had gone there, ..... ?
39. Some of us can do it, .....?
40. Neither of us has deceived her, .....?
41. Everyone of them was wise, .....?
42. One must do one's duty, .....?
43. Most of them don't know the truth, .....?
44. None of those boys are ready to go there, .....?
45. I am the best cricketer, .....?
46. You won't be late, ..... ?
47. Let us try to get the result, .....?
48. No man dares to go out, .....?
49. You have nothing to do, .....?
50. Everyone wants to help the poor, .....?

**Q. 4** *Correct the following italicized question tags :*

1. We must obey our parents, *must we* ?
2. Money begets money, *doesn't they* ?
3. They took him there, *did they* ?
4. You are going home just now, *aren't you* ?
5. Mohan will begin reading today, *won't they* ?
6. You don't know him, *don't you* ?
7. He will not help me, *won't he* ?
8. You, he and I are right, *aren't they* ?

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



9. You and he know little about her, *don't you* ?
10. You and I are good friends, *aren't they* ?
11. He and I were playing cricket, *weren't they* ?
12. You, he and she can speak English, *can't they* ?
13. Only a few students work hard, *doesn't they* ?
14. Switch on the fan, *shall we* ?
15. Don't insult the poor, *won't you* ?
16. Use your own book, *will you* ?
17. Let us take exercise, *shan't we* ?
18. Let's go to visit the Golghar *will you* ?
19. Let her go to her bedroom to study, *won't you* ?
20. We finished our homework yesterday, *did we* ?
21. They were making a noise, *were they* ?
22. This news surprised me, *didn't they* ?
23. Henry struck Mary, *don't she* ?
24. The teacher will forgive him, *won't she* ?
25. They told me the truth, *did they* ?
26. Someone has stolen my books, *hasn't he* ?
27. Enter by the left door, *won't he* ?
28. One should keep one's promises, *shouldn't he* ?
29. Somebody taught him this in his boyhood, *didn't he* ?
30. No one has picked his pocket, *hasn't he* ?
31. Women are washing their clothes, *are they* ?
32. Let me do this, *won't you* ?
33. Never deceive a friend, *won't you* ?
34. Manners make character, *don't it* ?
35. We refused them admission, *did we* ?
36. One cannot gather grapes from thistles, *can he* ?
37. None of us have seen the Qutub Minar, *haven't we* ?
38. I am his best friend, *amn't I* ?
39. Most of you have finished this chapter, *have you* ?
40. All of them were naughty, *weren't we* ?
41. Those girls are active, *aren't she* ?
42. That was enough for me, *wasn't that* ?
43. There is beauty in it, *isn't it* ?
44. Gandhijee used to spin in the afternoon, *didn't use he* ?
45. He dares to go there, *daren't he* ?
46. It had been raining for two hours, *hadn't it been* ?
47. We ought to respect our elders, *oughtn't to we* ?
48. They have dared to beat him, *have they* ?
49. India was under the foreign rule, *was it* ?
50. I am free now, *amn't I* ?

Q. 5. *Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

1. You (1)/will be sixteen (2)/on your next birthday, (3)/won't you be ? (4)/No error (5)
2. He (1)/should help (2)/his poor brother, (3)/shouldn't he ? (4)/No error (5)
3. Most of them (1)/voted (2)/against the proposal, (3)/didn't we ? (4)/No error (5)
4. There (1)/was not (2)/a single seat vacant, (3)/was it ? (4)/No error (5)
5. It (1)/was (2)/a horrible accident, (3)/was it ? (4)/No error (5)
6. My wife (1)/easily loses (2)/her temper, (3)/don't I ? (4)/No error (5)
7. They (1)/couldn't attend (2)/the meeting, (3)/couldn't they ? (4)/No error (5)
8. He (1)/flew from (2)/Patna to Rajgir, (3)/didn't he ? (4)/No error (5)
9. Our publisher (1)/smokes (2)/too many cigarettes, (3)/don't we ? (4)/No error (5)
10. The students (1)/haven't paid (2)/their fees, (3)/has he ? (4)/No error (5)
11. Your friend (1)/didn't pass (2)/the examination, (3)/did they ? (4)/No error (5)
12. The publisher (1)/gave me (2)/permission to write this book, (3)/didn't it ? (4)/No error (5)
13. Mohan, (1)/Vijay's brother, (2)/is feeling better today, (3)/aren't they ? (4)/No error (5)
14. We (1)/shall fly (2)/to Delhi next year, (3)/shall not we ? (4)/No error (5)
15. This book (1)/is for the young learners (2)/of the English language, (3)/isn't this ? (4)/No error (5)
16. She has (1)/little knowledge (2)/of music, (3)/hasn't she ? (4)/No error (5)
17. At last the tired traveller (1)/came upon (2)/a fertile place in the desert, (3)/didn't they ? (4)/No error (5)
18. Farmers (1)/should know (2)/the modern ways of cultivation, (3)/shouldn't he ? (4)/No error (5)
19. One should (1)/always mind (2)/one's own business, (3)/shouldn't he ? (4)/No error (5)
20. He would not (1)/return the money (2)/that he borrowed, (3)/will he ? (4)/No error (5)
21. The captain as well as (1)/five other members (2)/of the team was present, (3)/weren't they ? (4)/No error (5)
22. Each of the students (1)/has done (2)/well in the Annual examination, (3)/haven't they ? (4)/No error (5)
23. The old lady (1)/can hardly walk (2)/and is now confined to her house, (3)/can't she ? (4)/No error (5)
24. There are not (1)/any good restaurants (2)/in this part of the town, (3)/are they ? (4)/No error (5)
25. Give me (1)/three thousand (2)/rupees, please. (3)/will you ? (4)/No error (5)

Q. 6. *Rewrite the following sentences, adding question tags :*

1. He does not tell a lie.
2. He knows Sanskrit.
3. We should love our country.
4. The teacher had warned you several times.
5. You needed my co-operation.
6. He used to like her.
7. It may rain today.
8. We must obey our parents.
9. You have done nothing.
10. There were twenty students in the class.
11. That was not for you.
12. One should love one's country.
13. These boys are naughty.
14. Let the girls go out.
15. Don't come late at night.
16. Let us go to watch the film.
17. Nobody could harm you.
18. Carry out the orders.
19. Somebody has beaten his younger brother.
20. No student was allowed to attend the class.
21. Neither of you has paid the fees.
22. None of us have been able to do this.
23. She loves me very much.
24. Come tomorrow.
25. Please have a cup of tea.
26. There are a lot of dogs in my village.
27. Hardly anybody has come here,.
28. She seldom goes there.
29. We shall win the race.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



30. Teachers should know the modern system of education.
31. Mr. Thakur wanted to be an I. A. S.
32. He tried his best.
33. He knows how to prepare tea.
34. You don't need to read other books.
35. He dares to oppose me.
36. Don't waste your time.
37. This book is not useless.
38. Nothing could be done.
39. I am not confused.
40. I am an honest man.
41. I saw her last night.
42. It is true.
43. She has a few books.
44. We shall discuss the matter.
45. Most of them were preparing for the examination.
46. Those are his classmates.
47. He lived only a few years in Patna.
48. His fortune did not improve with time.
49. Don't smoke here.
50. There is nothing similar in the world.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.** 1. aren't I ? 2. am I ? 3. aren't I ? 4. aren't you ? 5. are you ? 6. isn't he ? 7. aren't they ? 8. aren't we ? 9. hasn't she ? 10. hasn't she ? 11. haven't they ? 12. hasn't he ? 13. won't they ? 14. won't they ? 15. will he ? 16. shan't I ? 17. won't it ? 18. can he ? 19. can't we ? 20. mightn't it ? 21. couldn't they 22. shall we ? 23. mayn't we ? 24. should you ? 25. oughtn't we? 26. wasn't he? 27. were they ? 28. wasn't he ? 29. wasn't she ? 30. mustn't you ? 31. hadn't he ? 32. hadn't you ? 33. had he ? 34. don't you ? 35. don't they ? 36. don't you ? 37. does he ? 38. doesn't he ? 39. doesn't he ? 40. does she ? 41. doesn't she ? 42. didn't they ? 43. didn't they ? 44. didn't he ? 45. did they ? 46. didn't he ? 47. did she ? 48. can I ? 49. doesn't he ? 50. don't you ?

**Q. 2.** 1. haven't you ? 2. don't I ? 3. dare he ? 4. does he ? 5. doesn't he ? 6. dare you 7. do you ? 8. doesn't he ? 9. dare we ? 10. need he ? 11. didn't they ? 12. need she ? 13. does she ? 14. doesn't he ? 15. does she ? 16. Usedn't she ?/didn't she ? 17. didn't she ?/usedn't she ? 18. did you ?/used you ? 19. will you ? 20. dare I ? 21. won't he ? 22. haven't I ? 23. usedn't I ?/didn't I ? 24. used I ?/did I ? 25. usedn't he ?/didn't he ? 26. can't we ? 27. was it ? 28. wasn't he ? 29. has he ? 30. are they ? 31. were we ? 32. has she ? 33. were they ? 34. is it ? 35. have I ? 36. don't you ? 37. were they ? 38. haven't you ? 39. is it ? 40. does he ? 41. will you ?/won't you ? 42. will you ?/won't you ? 43. Will you ?/won't you ? 44. will you ?/won't you ? 45. will you ? 46. will you ? 47. shall we ? 48. shall we ? 49. shall we ? 50. will you ?

**Q. 3.** 1. did they ? 2. does he ? 3. do I ? 4. will you ?/won't you ? 5. will you ?/won't you ? 6. will you ?/won't you ? 7. will you ? 8. will you ? 9. shall we ? 10. will you ? 11. do they ? 12. isn't there ? 13. aren't there ? 14. weren't there ? 15. was there ? 16. can't one ? 17. isn't it ? 18. was it ? 19. aren't they ? 20. aren't they ? 21. can't he ? 22. isn't he ? 23. hasn't he ? 24. aren't they ? 25. aren't they ? 26. isn't she ? 27. do they ? 28. will they ? 29. mightn't they ? 30. weren't they ? 31. haven't they ? 32. can they ? 33. has it ? 34. was it ? 35. doesn't it ? 36. weren't we ? 37. weren't you ? 38. hadn't they ? 39. can't we ? 40. have we ? 41. weren't they ? 42. mustn't one ? 43. do they ? 44. are they ? 45. aren't I ? 46. will you ? 47. shall we ? 48. does he ? 49. have you ? 50. don't they ?

**Q. 4.** 1. mustn't we ? 2. doesn't it ? 3. didn't they ? 4. aren't you ? 5. won't he ? 6. do you ? 7. will he ? 8. aren't we ? 9. do you ? 10. aren't we ? 11. weren't we ? 12. can't you ? 13. don't they ? 14. will you ?/won't you ? 15. will you ? 16. can't you ? 17. shall we ? 18. shall we ? 19. will you ? 20. didn't we ? 21. weren't they ? 22. didn't it ? 23. didn't she ? 24. won't he ? 25. didn't they ? 26. haven't they ? 27. will you ?/won't you ? 28. shouldn't one ? 29. didn't they ? 30. have they ? 31. aren't they ? 32. will you ? 33. will you ? 34. don't they ? 35. didn't we ? 36. can one ? 37. have we ? 38. aren't I ? 39. haven't you ? 40. weren't they ? 41. aren't they ? 42. wasn't it ? 43. isn't there ? 44. usedn't he ?/didn't he ? 45. doesn't he ? 46. hadn't it ? 47. oughtn't we ? 48. haven't they ? 49. wasn't it ? 50. aren't I ?

**Q. 5**

1. (4) won't you be की जगह won't you का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (5) Given sentence correct है।
3. (4) didn't we की जगह didn't they का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (4) was it की जगह was there का प्रयोग होगा।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



5. (4) was it की जगह wasn't it का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (4) don't I की जगह doesn't she का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (4) couldn't they की जगह could they का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (5) Given sentence correct है।
9. (4) don't we की जगह doesn't he का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (4) has he की जगह have they का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (4) did they की जगह did he/she का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (4) didn't it की जगह didn't he का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (4) aren't they की जगह isn't he का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (4) shall not we की जगह shan't we का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (4) isn't this की जगह isn't it का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (4) hasn't she की जगह has she का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (4) didn't they की जगह didn't he का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (4) shouldn't he की जगह shouldn't they का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (4) shouldn't he की जगह shouldn't one का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (4) will he की जगह would he का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (4) weren't they की जगह wasn't he का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (4) haven't they की जगह hasn't he का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (4) can't she की जगह can she का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (4) are they की जगह are there का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (5) Given sentence correct है।

Q. 6.

1. He does not tell a lie, *does he*?
2. He knows Sanskrit, *doesn't he*?
3. We should love our country, *shouldn't we*?
4. The teacher had warned you several times, *hadn't he*?
5. You needed my co-operation, *didn't you*?
6. He used to like her, *usedn't he ?/didn't he*?
7. It may rain today, *mayn't it*?
8. We must obey our parents, *mustn't we*?
9. You have done nothing, *have you*?
10. There were twenty students in the class, *weren't there*?
11. That was not for you, *was it*?
12. One should love one's country, *shouldn't one*?
13. These boys are naughty, *aren't they*?
14. Let the girls go out, *will you*?
15. Don't come late at night, *will you*?
16. Let us go to watch the film, *shall we*?
17. Nobody could harm you, *could they*?
18. Carry out the orders, *will you ? /won't you*?
19. Somebody has beaten his younger brother, haven't they?
20. No student was allowed to attend the class, *was he*?
21. Neither of you has paid the fees, *have you*?
22. None of us have been able to do this, *have we*?
23. She loves me very much, *doesn't she*?
24. Come tomorrow, *will you ?/won't you*?
25. Please have a cup of tea, *will you?/won't you*?
26. There are a lot of dogs in my village, *aren't there*?
27. Hardly anybody has come here, *have they*?
28. She seldom goes there, *does she*?
29. We shall win the race, *shan't we*?
30. Teachers should know the modern system of education, *shouldn't they*?
31. Mr. Thakur wanted to be an I.A.S., *didn't he*?
32. He tried his best, *didn't he*?
33. He knows how to prepare tea, *doesn't he*?
34. You don't need to read other books, *do you*?
35. He dares to oppose me, *doesn't he*?
36. Don't waste your time, *will you*?
37. This book is not useless, *is it*?
38. Nothing could be done, *could it*?
39. I am not confused, *am I*?
40. I am an honest man, *aren't I*?
41. I saw her last night, *didn't I*?
42. It is true, isn't it?
43. She has a few books, *hasn't she*?
44. We shall discuss the matter, *shan't we*?
45. Most of them were preparing for the examination, *weren't they*?
46. Those are his classmates, *aren't they*?
47. He lived only a few years in Patna, *didn't he*?
48. His fortune did not improve with time, *did it*?
49. Don't smoke here, *will you*?
50. There is nothing similar in the world, *is there*?

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 22 Emphatic With Do/Does/Did

Emphatic (adj) का शाब्दिक अर्थ 'जोरदार' होता है। सामान्यतः Sentence (वाक्य) को Emphatic बनाने के लिए Main verb के पहले do/does/did का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक किया जाता है।

**1. Emphatic :** Main verb के पहले do/does/did का प्रयोग करना Emphatic कहलाता है।

**2. Non-Emphatic :** Main verb के पहले प्रयुक्त do/does/did को हटाना Non-Emphatic कहलाता है।

### 1. Non-Emphatic से Emphatic बनाने का नियम

**Rule (1) :** यदि Sentence (वाक्य) Simple Present Tense में हो तो do/does का प्रयोग subject के number तथा person के मुताबिक करके Emphatic बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Non-Emphatic | Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. I write a letter. | 1. I do write a letter. |
| 2. We write a letter. | 2. We do write a letter. |
| 3. You write a letter. | 3. You do write a latter. |
| 4. He writes a letter. | 4. He does write a letter. |
| 5. She writes a letter. | 5. She does write a letter. |
| 6. It rains. | 6. It does rain. |
| 7. They write letters. | 7. They do write letters. |
| 8. The boy writes a letter. | 8. The boy does write a letter. |
| 9. The girls write letters. | 9. The girls do write letters. |
| 10. Aditya and Aditi write letters. | 10. Aditya and Aditi do write letters. |
| 11. Veena writes a letter. | 11. Veena does write a letter. |

**Note :** do/does के बाद हमेशा $M.V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (2) :** यदि Sentence Simple Past Tense में हो तो did का प्रयोग कर Emphatic बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Non-Emphatic | Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. He wrote a letter | 1. He did write a letter. |
| 2. I loved her very much. | 2. I did love her very much. |
| 3. She told a lie. | 3. She did tell a lie. |
| 4. They wanted to go. | 4. They did want to go. |
| 5. You watched T. V. | 5. You did watch T.V. |

**Note :** did के बाद हमेशा $M.V^1$ का प्रयोग होता है।

**Rule (3) :** यदि कोई *Sentence Subject + has/have/had + complement* के Structure (बनावट) पर आधारित हो तो उसे *Subject + do/does/did + have + complement* के Structure (बनावट) का प्रयोग कर Emphatic बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Non-Emphatic | Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. He has a note book. | 1. He does have a note book. |
| 2. I have a T. V. Set. | 2. I do have a T. V. Set. |
| 3. They have balls. | 3. They do have balls. |
| 4. She has an earring. | 4. She does have an earring. |
| 5. You had an inkpot. | 5. You did have an inkpot. |
| 6. He had a mobile set. | 6. He did have a mobile set. |

**Note :** do/does/did के बाद have का प्रयोग होता न कि has तथा had का।

**Rule (4) :** Imperative Sentence का Emphatic, Main verb के पहले do का प्रयोग कर बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Non-Emphatic | Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. Come here. | 1. Do come here. |
| 2. Go out. | 2. Do go out. |
| 3. Have patience. | 3. Do have patience. |
| 4. Please give me a word. | 4. Please do give me a word. |
| 5. Have a rest now. | 5. Do have a rest now. |

**Note :** does/did का प्रयोग Imperative Sentence के Main verb के पहले emphatic बनाने के लिए नहीं किया जाता है।

Emphatic Sentence में प्रयुक्त do/does/did का अर्थ अवश्य/जरूर होता है।

| Emphatic Sentence | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1. He does write a letter. | 1. वह अवश्य/जरूर पत्र लिखता है। वह पत्र लिखता तो है। |
| 2. You do love me. | 2. तुम मुझे अवश्य/जरूर प्यार करते हो। तुम मुझे प्यार करते तो हो। |
| 3. He did speak the truth. | 3. वह अवश्य/जरूर सच बोलता था। वह सच बोलता तो था। |
| 4. She did write to me. | 4. वह मुझे अवश्य/जरूर पत्र लिखती थी। वह पत्र लिखती तो थी। |
| 5. Please do help the poor. | 5. कृपया गरीबों की मदद अवश्य/जरूर करें। |

### 2. Emphatic से Non-Emphatic बनाने का नियम

**Rule (1) :** यदि Emphatic Sentence Simple Present Tense के Structure *Subject + do/does + $M.V^1$ + object* पर आधारित हो तो do/does को हटाकर Non-Emphatic (बनाया) जाता है। अर्थात् *Subject + $M.V^1$/$M.V^s$ + object* के Simple Present Tense के Structure को follow किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Emphatic | Non-Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. You do read a book. | 1. You read a book. |
| 2. He does know me. | 2. He knows me. |
| 3. I do drink milk. | 3. I drink milk. |
| 4. They do go to school. | 4. They go to school. |
| 5. Shyama does love me. | 5. Shyama loves me. |

**Rule (2) :** यदि Emphatic Sentence Simple Past Tense के Structure (बनावट) *Subject + did + $M.V^1$ + Object* पर आधारित हो तो did को हटाकर Non-Emphatic बनाया जाता है। अर्थात् *Subject + $M.V^2$ + Object* के Simple Past Tense के Structure को follow किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Emphatic | Non-Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. He did buy a pen. | 1. He bought a pen. |
| 2. I did come here. | 2. I came here. |
| 3. He did go there. | 3. He went there. |
| 4. She did read at night. | 4. She read (रेड) at night. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (3) :** यदि Emphatic Sentence *Subject + do/does/did + have + complement* के structure पर आधारित हो तो *do/does/did* को हटाकर Non-Emphatic बनाया जाता है। अर्थात् *Subject + has/have/had + complement* के structure को follow किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Emphatic | Non-Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. He does have a car. | 1. He has a car. |
| 2. They do have toys. | 2. They have toys. |
| 3. She did have an instrument box. | 3. She had an instrument box. |
| 4. You do have a note book. | 4. You have a note book. |

**Note :** Non-Emphatic Sentence में do have के बदले have, does have के बदले has तथा did have के बदले had का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**Rule (4) :** Emphatic Imperative Sentence *Do + M.V¹ + other words* या *please/kindly + do + M. V¹ + other words* के structure पर आधारित रहता है। इससे do हटा कर Non-Emphatic बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Emphatic | Non-Emphatic |
|---|---|
| 1. Do sing it again. | 1. Sing it again. |
| 2. Do come in. | 2. Come in. |
| 3. Do post the letter. | 3. Post the letter. |
| 4. Do have faith in God. | 4. Have faith in God. |
| 5. Please do help me. | 5. Please help me. |
| 6. Please do have a cup of coffee. | 6. Please have a cup of coffee. |
| 7. Do get out. | 7. Get out. |
| 8. Do Switch on the fan. | 8. Switch on the fan. |
| 9. Kindly do give me money. | 9. Kindly give me money |
| 10. Do begin the work at once. | 10. Begin the work at once. |

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Make the following sentences Emphatic :*

1. We believe her.
2. They live in Paris.
3. He speaks English well.
4. It costs a hundred rupees.
5. He tried hard.
6. She bought a new necklace.
7. Do it now.
8. They paid the bill.
9. He went to school yesterday.
10. My brother visited Delhi last year.
11. Our baker sells good cakes.
12. Call me early tomorrow.
13. Eat slowly.
14. Some birds fly very fast.
15. The ship sank in the storm.
16. We had an enjoyable holiday.
17. We have done our duty.
18. She often goes to the pictures.
19. Our country needs honest and dedicated leaders.
20. The rose smells sweet.
21. I gave the present to my son.
22. Take medicine in time.
23. Please come in time.
24. Have mercy on her.
25. Tell me what you want.
26. She had a piece of chain.
27. She laughed at him.
28. He offered me a job.
29. Please give me your note book.
30. Have faith in God.
31. Answer these questions.
32. She has a watch.
33. He ran fast.
34. I have love and sympathy for you.
35. Show me your notebook.
36. Have coffee now.
37. Everybody wants to succeed.
38. Aditya plays cricket.
39. Someone stole my watch.
40. He makes a noise.
41. I knew the fact.
42. He reads the Ramayana.
43. Help the poor.
44. Please give me some money.
45. They tried to win the match.
46. Have a bottle of whisky.
47. He has a mobile set.
48. Compose carefully.
49. I saved her from drowning.
50. I loved her very much.

Q. 2. *Make the following sentences Non-Emphatic :*

1. Indian workers do work hard.
2. The cow does eat grass.
3. Your buffalo does give milk.
4. You do love your country.
5. Veena does sing a song.
6. I do go to college to achieve knowledge.
7. He does learn how to ride a bicycle.
8. The poll does start tomorrow.
9. He did kill a tiger.
10. A fire did break out.
11. Ram did help Sugreev.
12. The government did help the poor.
13. Dashrath did reign in Ayodhaya.
14. He did have a golden chain.
15. Do try to help me.
16. Please do speak the truth.
17. You do have peace.
18. He did have a motor car.
19. You did have a chance.
20. He does have an apple.
21. They do have enemies.
22. Aditi does dance well.
23. The hen did lay eggs.
24. Do work hard.
25. The sun does rise in the east.
26. He did raise his hands in prayer.
27. Please do lay the table.
28. They did hang the pictures on the wall.
29. He did finish the work yesterday.
30. Sita does have two sons.
31. He does have courage.
32. He did have an ox.
33. Do switch off the light.
34. He does teach her.
35. He does recite the poems.
36. The Indians did win the match.
37. Most people did oppose this.
38. Do open the door.
39. Do help your neighbours.
40. Kindly do post the letter.
41. Do take your chair, please.
42. Please do sit down.
43. Do give him a warning.
44. Do put out the light.
45. Please do enter by this door.
46. Do advertise the post.
47. Do feed the poor.
48. I did make him weep.
49. He did offer me a chair.
50. We do elect him our leader.

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 23 Common Error

*Find out the error part of the following sentences :*

## Syntax

1. Mr. Mishra (1)/ with his wife (2)/ and children (3)/ were present at the station. (4)/ No error (5)
2. A large number of students (1)/ has applied (2)/ for the Job (3)/ in the Navy (4)/ No error (5)
3. The dog (1)/ along with the boys (2)/ were walking (3)/ in the forest. (4)/ No error (5)
4. He is (1)/ one of the persons (2)/ who is (3)/ always against bad activity. (4)/ No error (5)
5. Bad news (1)/ always (2)/ travel (3)/ fast (4)/ No error (5)
6. Guriya noticed me (1)/ that a gang of dacoits (2)/ were coming to (3)/ attack my house. (4)/ No error (5)
7. Varsha is (1)/ the only one of (2)/ those girls who (3)/ makes a castle in the air. (4)/ No error (5)
8. The accountant (1)/ and the cashier (2)/ is (3)/ absent today. (4)/ No error (5)
9. Many of (1)/ the questions (2)/ asked in this question paper (3)/ was easy. (4)/ No error (5)
10. If I was you (1)/ I would not have (2)/ committed (3)/ this blunder. (4)/ No error (5)
11. The majority of labourers (1)/ is demanding (2)/ and increase (3)/ in wages. (4)/ No error (5)
12. I am sure that (1)/ neither the house (2)/ nor its contents (3)/ are for sale. (4)/ No error (5)
13. The Hindi and the Marathi are (1)/ different forms of the sanskrit language (2)/ which were once spoken (3)/ in almost every part of India. (4)/ No error (5)
14. Two thirds (1)/ of the books (2)/ were (3)/ rubbish. (4)/ No error (5)
15. Many a student (1)/ are (2)/ frustrated (3)/ because of unemployment. (4)/ No error (5)
16. None of (1)/ my friends (2)/ are applying (3)/ for this job. (4)/ No error (5)
17. A group of friends (1)/ want to visit (2)/ the new plant (3)/ as early as possible. (4)/ No error (5)
18. The Cabinet Ministers (1)/ and the Prime Minister (2)/ was at the airport (3)/ to receive the foreign dignitary. (4)/ No error (5)
19. Twice (1)/ Twelve (2)/ are (3)/ twenty four (4)/ No error (5)
20. A series of lectures (1)/ of Indian philosophy (2)/ are arranged (3)/ by the university. (4)/ No error (5)
21. The house (1)/ with all its furniture (2)/ and exotic plants (3)/ were sold for Rs. 60,000. (4)/ No error (5)
22. The teacher (1)/ asked the students (2)/ if everyone of them were interested in (3) going on an excursion. (4)/ No error (5)
23. Several visitors (1)/ are expected (2)/ to visit (3)/ the place tomorrow. (4)/ No error (5)
24. Many a profound thinker (1)/ believes that (2)/ the march of civilization (3)/ has not coincided with real human progress. (4)/ No error (5)
25. Bacteria (1)/ is probably (2)/ the most common form (3)/ of life on earth. (4)/ No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

1. (4) चूँकि दिये गए sentence में with से जुड़े शब्दों (his wife and children) के पहले Singular Noun—Mr. Mishra का प्रयोग हुआ। Mr. Mishra के मुताबिक Singular Verb—was का प्रयोग होगा। अतः part (4) sentence का error part है, क्योंकि इस part में were का प्रयोग है।
2. (2) has की जगह have का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि A large number of + P.N. के साथ P.V. का प्रयोग होता है।
3. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि A long with + other words के पहले The dog का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो Singular है। अतः S.V.—was का प्रयोग correct है।
4. (3) is की जगह are का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि one of the + P.N. + who के structure में who के पहले प्रयुक्त P.N. के मुताबिक P.V. का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ who के पहले P.N.—Persons का प्रयोग हुआ है। Persons के मुताबिक P.V.—are का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (3) travel की जगह travels का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि news Singular है।
6. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि A/An + Collective Noun + of P.N. के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ A gang of dacoits के साथ S.V.—was का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (4) makes की जगह make का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ one of those girls का प्रयोग who के पहले हुआ है। who के पहले P.N.—girls का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः P.V.—make का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (3) is की जगह are का प्रयोग होगा। The accountant and the cashier से two different persons का बोध होता है। अतः P.V.–are का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (4) was की जगह were का प्रयोग होगा। दिये गए sentence में Many of के बाद P.N.–questions का प्रयोग हुआ है। Questions के मुताबिक P.V.–were का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (1) was की जगह were का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि दिया गया sentence suppositional है और if से स्टार्ट हुआ है। इस तरह के sentence में हमेशा P.V.–were का प्रयोग होता है। अतः P.V.–were correct होगा।
11. (2) is की जगह are का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि The majority of + P.N. के साथ P.V. का प्रयोग होता है। अतः P.V.—are का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (5) Given sentence correct है। क्योंकि nor के बाद प्रयुक्त Noun—contents Plural है और P.V.–are का प्रयोग भी किया गया है।
13. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि which के पहले S.N. के रूप में The Sanskrit language का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः S.V.–was का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि two thirds of के बाद S.C.N.–book प्रयोग हुआ है। लेकिन यहाँ book का प्रयोग S.U.N. की तरह मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए किया गया है।
15. (2) are की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Many a के बाद S.N.–student का प्रयोग किया गया है। Many + a + S.N. के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है।
16. (3) are की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि None of + P.N./P. Pron. के साथ Singular और Plural दोनों Verb का प्रयोग होता है, लेकिन Singular Verb को भाषा में अधिक प्रेफर किया जा रहा है। अतः छात्रगण भी S.V. को प्राथमिकता दें तो ज्यादा बेहतर होगा। वैसे P.V. गलत नहीं

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


होता है। इस आधार पर given sentence में कोई गलती नहीं है। प्रचलन के आधार पर part (3) गलत है।

17. (2) want की जगह wants का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि A group of + P.N. के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है। अतः S.V.– wants का प्रयोग होगा।

18. (3) was की जगह were का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि The Cabinet Ministers and the Prime Minister, sentence का subject है, जो Plural है।

19. (3) are की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Arithmetic sum के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग प्रचलित है यहाँ Twice twelve के साथ S.V.–is का प्रयोग उपयुक्त और correct है

20. (3) are की जगह is का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि series Singular है, लेकिन देखने में Plural लगता है। अतः series के मुताबिक S.V.–is का प्रयोग होगा।

21. (4) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। with all its furniture and exotic plants के पहले S.N. के रूप में the house का प्रयोग हुआ है। अतः The house के मुताबिक S.V.–was का प्रयोग होगा।

22. (3) were की जगह was का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि every one of + P.N./P. Pron के साथ S.V. का प्रयोग होता है।

23. (5) Given sentence correct है। क्योंकि several + P.N. के साथ P.V. का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ several के बाद P.N.–visitors तथा P.V.–are का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो correct है।

24. (5) Given sentence correct है।

25. (2) is की जगह are का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Bacteria–P.N. है, जो sentence के subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है।

★★★

## Article

1. We all (1)/ must (2)/ respect (3)/ an honest person. (4)/ No error (5)
2. My father does not go (1)/ to the city on the foot (2)/ he goes there (3)/ by train. (4)/ No error (5)
3. He goes (1)/ to the bed (2)/ at night (3)/ every day. (4)/ No error (5)
4. The man (1)/ can not live (2)/ by bread (3)/ alone. (4)/ No error (5)
5. It is written in Gita (1)/ that God incarnates (2)/ himself (3)/ in times of trouble. (4)/ No error (5)
6. A person I met (1)/ in the theatre (2)/ was the play bright (3)/ himself. (4) No error (5)
7. Both the civilians (1)/ and army men (2)/ joined (3)/ the first world war. (4)/ No error (5)
8. This candidate lacks (1)/ an experience (2)/ otherwise (3)/ he is well qualified. (4)/ No error (5)
9. A sun is (1)/ shining brightly (2)/ about (3)/ the horizon. (4)/ No error (5)
10. An information supplied (1)/ to us was not (2)/ as useful as we first (3)/ thought it would be. (4)/ No error (5)
11. He is very thirsty (1)/ give him (2)/ little water (3)/ to drink. (4)/ No error (5)
12. I was an unhappy (1)/ to hear the news (2)/ of my brother failing (3)/ in the final examination. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Pt. J. L. Nehru (1)/ was a great politician (2)/ and a great (3)/ statesman. (4)/ No error (5)
14. A price of (1)/ this car is (2)/ higher than (3)/ that of your car. (4)/ No error (5)
15. The programme which (1)/ comes on the television (2)/ these days in the evenings (3)/ is very interesting. (4)/ No error (5)
16. It (1)/ has been raining (2)/ very heavily (3)/ since the last night. (4)/ No error (5)
17. Suman could not (1)/ go to picnic (2)/ because her mother (3)/ was not well. (4)/ No error (5)
18. As he was feeling very thirsty (1)/ after the long journey (2)/ he went in a bar (3)/ and ordered cold drink. (4)/ No error (5)
19. A tallest man (1)/ I have ever seen (2)/ lives near the village (3)/ where I was born. (4)/ No error (5)
20. Page after page (1)/ of the Gita was read (2)/ and it gave great consolation (3)/ to his mind. (4)/ No error (5)
21. The principal (1)/ offered me (2)/ a tea but (3)/ I denied it. (4)/ No error (5)
22. I was (1)/ born (2)/ on 9th June (3)/ 1970 in Muzaffarpur. (4)/ No error (5)
23. Mr. Hemchandra Jha is planning (1)/ to settle in Patna (2)/ as soon as (3)/ he retires in May the next year. (4)/ No error (5)
24. They appointed (1)/ him a manager (2)/ as he is (3)/ efficient. (4)/ No error (5)
25. He looks (1)/ at every thing (2)/ from its (3)/ the best side. (4)/ No error (5)

### Answers With Explanation

1. (5) Given sentence is correct.
2. (2) on the foot की जगह on foot का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (2) to the bed की जगह to bed का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि 'सोने के लिए' के अर्थ में to bed का प्रयोग मूल उद्देश्य से हुआ है।
4. (1) Man का प्रयोग विस्तृत अर्थ 'मानव जाति' के अर्थ में हुआ है, अतः The का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
5. (1) Gita के पहले The का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Gita हिन्दुओं का धार्मिक ग्रंथ है।
6. (1) A की जगह The का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The के प्रयोग से definite व्यक्ति का बोध होता है।
7. (2) Army men के पहले The का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Both के बाद प्रयुक्त first plural noun civilians के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग हुआ है अतः Second plural noun Army men के पहले भी 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (2) Experience के पहले an का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि Experience Uncountable Noun है।
9. (1) Sun के पहले A की जगह The का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि sun एक star (unique thing) है।
10. (1) Information के पहले An की जगह the का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि definite information का बोध हो रहा है।
11. (3) little का अर्थ 'नहीं के बराबर (मात्रा)' होता है। अतः little के पहले A का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि given sentence 'थोड़ा' के अर्थ का बोध करा रहा है।

    A little = थोड़ा (मात्रा) = positive sense.
12. (1) unhappy सिर्फ Adjective है, जिसके पहले an का प्रयोग हुआ है, अतः An का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। न ही किसी दूसरे Article का, क्योंकि unhappy के बाद Noun absent है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



13. (3) part (3) में A का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि politician और statesman का प्रयोग एक ही व्यक्ति Pt. J. L. Nehru के लिए हुआ है। जैसे—
A great politician and great statesman (√)
A great politician and a great statesman (×)

**Note :** Politician—A person who follows politics as a career.
Statesaman—One who is experienced in the art of government

14. (1) A की जगह The का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Noun + of + Noun के बनावट में first Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है।
15. (2) on the television की जगह on televsion का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (4) last night के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि last night के पहले since का प्रयोग हुआ है। इससे point of time का बोध हो रहा है।
17. (2) Go to picnic की जगह Go to the picnic का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (4) Cold drink के पहले A का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ cold drink का प्रयोग countable noun के रूप में हुआ है।
19. (1) A की जगह the का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि tallest superlative है। Superlative के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।
20. (5) Given sentence is correct.
21. (3) Tea—Uncountable है, इसलिए Tea के पहले A का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
22. (3) 9th, ordinal है, इसलिए 9th के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (4) Next year के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि next + week/year/month etc. के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
24. (2) Manager के पहले a का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि Appoint + object के बाद complement के रूप में Noun—manager का प्रयोग हुआ है।
25. (4) best side के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि best side के पहले Possessive Adjective—its का प्रयोग हुआ है। Possessive के बाद Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

★★★

## Noun and the Number

1. One of my friend (1)/came running to (2)/me and gave me (3)/this good news. (4)/No error (5)
2. The sun whose (1)/ray give life (2)/to the earth was venerated (3)/as God by our ancestors. (4)/No error (5)
3. It is said (1)/by some persons (2)/that one of the local bank (3)/has started a new scheme of lending. (4)/No error (5)
4. We all (1)/take vegetable (2)/and fruit. (3) No error (4)
5. Perfumeries seem to be (1) costly in Arabian countries (2)/because of high demand (3)/as well as expenditure. (4)/No error (5)
6. The publisher was astonished (1)/to know that the gentries (2) of the village were not (2)/invited to the marriage party. (4)/No error (5)
7. The students of poor family (a)/have applied (2)/for free ship (3)/in concerning colleges of Patna University. (4)/No error (5)
8. The half pants (1)/of my brother-in-law are (2)/shorter than (3)/those of my brother. (4)/No error (5)
9. Mrs. Thakur told her son (1)/a story in details (2) when he was to sleep (3) on bed last night. (4)/No error (5)
10. The dreg of the Ganga river (1)/were also affected (2)/by the beating (3)/in irregular way. (4)/No error (5)
11. The earthquake (1)/is a natural phenomena (2)/and it is (3)/beyond human control. (4)/No error (5)
12. The customer (1)/handed over (2)/a five hundred-rupees note (3)/ to the shopkeeper. (4)/No error (5)
13. The class teacher (1)/gave her home works (2)/ and instructed her to do it (3)/in the morning. (4)/No error (5)
14. Dr. C. K. Narayan declared that (1)/Ramu's intestine was (2) not working properly and so he needed (3)/medical treatment for a long time. (4)/No error (5)
15. Shobhana does her best (1)/but she does not under stand why (2)/she does not get expected (3) mark in the examination (4)/No error (5)
16. They will not (1)/be allowed (2)/to go (3)/to play outdoor games. (4)/No error (5)
17. Mr. Thakur said (1)/that he had never seen (2)/such a lovely spectacles (3)/in his life. (4)/No error (5)
18. Her first offspring (1)/could not survive (2)/but her other two offsprings (3)/are alive till now. (4)/No error (5)
19. I know (1)/that (2)/he has three issues (3)/two daughters and a son. (4)/No error (5)
20. The surrounding (1)/of this museum (2)/attracts a large number of people (3)/coming from the other places. (4)/No error (5)
21. A pair of goggle (1)/was brought from (2) the market for Vikas (3) making him fit to a gentleman. (4)/No error (5)
22. Interviews for (1)/the post of SBI clerks (2)/will begin (3)/from saturday. (4)/No error (5)
23. Five summons (1)/have been issued by the high court (2)/but he has not (3)/turned up yet. (4)/No error (5)
24. In the last elections (1)/the electorates (2)/opposed the politicians (3)/and puzzled them. (4)/No error (5)
25. The pendula of these clocks (1)/are not working (2)/properly hence (3)/ she has decided to sell them. (4)/No error (5)

### Answers With Explanation

1. (1) दिये गए sentence के part (1) में friend की जगह friends का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि one of, either of, neither of, every one of, each of ...etc के बाद plural noun का प्रयोग होता है न कि singular noun का।
2. (2) Ray की जगह rays का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Sun (सूरज) से rays (किरणें) जनता निकलती है।
3. (3) Bank की जगह banks का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि one of the + Plural noun का प्रयोग होता है न कि one of the + singular noun का।
4. (2) Vegetable की जगह vegetables का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि vegetables का 'सब्जी' के अर्थ में uncountable noun के रूप में प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
We like to eat vegetable. (√)
We like to eat vegetable. (×)
लेकिन vegetable का प्रयोग countable noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
A potato is a vegetables. (√)
A potato is a vegetables. (×)
**Note :** दिये गए sentence में fruit का प्रयोग 'फल' के अर्थ में uncountable noun के रूप में किया गया है।
5. (1) Perfumeries seem की जगह perfumery seems का प्रयोग होगा। Perfumery का प्रयोग 'गंध द्रव्य के अर्थ में singular uncountable noun के रूप में होता है। इसका plural perfumeries नहीं होता है। अतः इसके साथ Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है।
6. (2) Gentries की जगह Gentry का प्रयोग होगा। Gentry का प्रयोग भद्र पुरुष/शिष्ट लोग/कुलीन जन/आर्य लोग (people of good social position/the class of people below the nobility and above the vulgar) के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



7. (3) Freeship की जगह free studentship का प्रयोग होगा। आम तौर पर छात्रगण freeship का प्रयोग करते हैं जो गलत है। free studentship का प्रयोग करना चाहिए।

8. (1) Half pants की जगह shorts का प्रयोग होगा। Half pants का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। shorts का प्रयोग घुटने तक का पायजामा या जाँघिया (short trousers) के अर्थ में होता है। इसका प्रयोग plural noun के रूप में होता है। इसके साथ p.v. का प्रयोग होता है। बोल चाल की भाषा में लोग half pants का प्रयोग करते हैं जो गलत है।

9. (2) In details की जगह In detail का प्रयोग होगा। detail के पहले preposition का प्रयोग हो तो detail singular form में प्रयुक्त होता है, न कि plural form—details के रूप में।

10. (1) Dreg की जगह dregs का प्रयोग होगा। dregs का प्रयोग 'तलछट' के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है।

11. (2) Phenomena की जगह phenomenon का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि A/An + Adjective + S.N. का प्रयोग होता है। न कि A/An + Adjective + P.N. का।

12. (3) Five hundred-rupees note की जगह a five hundred-rupee note का प्रयोग होगा। A + cardinal Adjective + hundred (in singular form) + hyphen (–) + rupee (in singular form) + note का प्रयोग होता है।

13. (2) Home works की जगह home work का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि home work, urgent work, important work, class work में प्रयुक्त work को singular uncountable noun माना जाता है। अतः इसका plural-works प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

14. (2) Ramu's intestine was की जगह Ramu's intestines were का प्रयोग होगा। intestines का प्रयोग 'आँतें' के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है possessive ('s) के बाद प्रयुक्त P.N. intestines के साथ P.V.–were का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

ध्यान दें : (i) small intestine (✓)
(ii) large intestine (✓) का प्रयोग होता है।

15. (4) Mark की जगह marks का प्रयोग होगा। Marks का प्रयोग 'परीक्षा के प्राप्तांक' के अर्थ में सामान्यतः होता है, जबकि Mark का प्रयोग 'चिह्न' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में भी Mark का plural marks होता है। यहाँ दिये गए sentence के अर्थ की स्पष्टता के लिए Marks (प्राप्तांक) उपयुक्त है।

16. (5) Given sentence is correct

ध्यान दें : (i) outdoor का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में noun के पहले होता है। जैसे—

(i) He likes an outdoor game. (✓)
He likes an outdoors game. (×)

(ii) Outdoors का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में verb को modify करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—
He went outdoors. (✓)
He went outdoor. (×)
*वह घर से बाहर गया।*

17. (3) Spectacles की जगह spectacle का प्रयोग होगा।

ध्यान दें : (i) Spectacles का प्रयोग 'चश्मा' के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
His spectacles are new. (✓)
His spectacles is new. (×)
*उसका चश्मा नया है।*

(ii) Spectacle का प्रयोग 'दृश्य' के अर्थ में singular countable noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
What a beautiful spectacle. ! (✓)
What beautiful spectacle. ! (×)
*कितना अच्छा दृश्य !*

लेकिन What beautiful spectacles !
(i) *कितना अच्छा दृश्य !* (ii) *कितना अच्छा चश्मा !*
अतः दिये गए sentence के अर्थ के लिए spectacle उपयुक्त है।

18. (3) Offsprings की जगह offspring का प्रयोग होगा। offspring का प्रयोग संतान (Issue) के अर्थ में singular or plural sense में होता है। लेकिन इसका plural offsprings नहीं होता है।

19. (3) Issues की जगह Issue का प्रयोग होगा।

ध्यान दें : (i) Issue का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'संतान' के अर्थ में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग singular or plural दोनों sense में होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका plural-Issues नहीं होता है। जैसे—
Sudir Babu has one issue but I have two issue. (✓)
Sudir Babu has one issue but I have two issues. (×)

(ii) Issue का प्रयोग 'मुद्दा (विषय)' या अंक के अर्थ में भी होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग singular-issue तथा plural-issues के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
What are the issues of this conflict ? (✓) (मुद्दे)
What are the issue of this conflict ? (×)
Do you need one issue of this book ? (✓) (अंक)

20. (1) Surrounding की जगह Surroundings का प्रयोग होगा।

ध्यान दें : (i) Surrounding का प्रयोग 'चारों तरफ का' के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
Our surrounding villages are small. (✓)

(ii) Surroundings का प्रयोग 'किसी जगह या उसके चारों तरफ की चीजें, आस-पास का वातावरण या परिस्थितियाँ के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
We must adjust ourselves to our surroundings. (✓)
We must adjust ourselves to our surrounding. (×)

21. (1) A pair of goggle की जगह A pair of goggles का प्रयोग होता है। Goggles का प्रयोग 'धूप का रंगीन चश्मा' के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है। जबकि Goggle का प्रयोग 'तिरछी नजर फेरना / आँख मारना' के अर्थ में verb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—
Your goggles are new. (✓)
Your goggles are new. (×)
Raman goggled Meena yesterday (✓)
Raman gogglesed Meena yesterday (×)

22. (5) Given sentence is correct.

23. (1) Summons की जगह summonses का प्रयोग होगा। summons का प्रयोग 'न्यायालय में उपस्थित होने वाला बुलावा पत्र' के अर्थ में singular countable noun के रूप में होता है। जबकि summonses का प्रयोग plural countable noun के रूप में होता है। अतः Given sentence के part (1) में five summonses का प्रयोग होगा।

24. (2) Electorates की जगह electorate का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि electorate स्वतः plural noun के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है। इसका plural-electorates नहीं होता है। Electorate का प्रयोग 'नियोजक या निर्वाचकगण अर्थात voters के अर्थ में plural noun के रूप में होता है।

25. (1) pendula की जगह pendulums का प्रयोग होगा। Pendulum का प्रयोग 'बड़ी घड़ी का लंगर' के अर्थ में singular countable noun के रूप में होता है। इसका plural pendulums होता है, न कि pendulum।

कंठाग्र करें : (i) Pendulate (v)— लोलक की तरह झुलना, अनिश्चित रहना।

(ii) Pendulous (adj)— झुलता हुआ / लटकता हुआ।

(iii) Swing of the pendulum (phrase)–alteration of power between political parties— राजनीतिक दलों के अधिकार का उलट-पलट।

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Noun and the case

1. His son's-in-law's friend (1)/was serious ill (2)/so he went (3)/ to see him. (4)/ No error (5)
2. Mr. Khanna suggested me (1)/that-I should go to the nursery (2)/to bring some beautiful (3)/spring's flowers. (4)/ No error (5)
3. The Prime Minister of India's (1)/Mr. Manmohan Singh's visit (2)/to Malasia strengthened the relation ship (3)/between India and Malasia. (4)/ No error (5)
4. Your man servant behaviour (1)/is undoubted by (2)/indecent but I don't (3)/understand how you tolerate it. (4)/ No error (5)
5. The publisher said (1)/that he appreciated (2)/his employees coming on time (3)/and co-operating him. (4)/ No error (5)
6. India and America's present condition (1)/indicate that (2)/ both the countries will have (3)/to face economic crisis. (4)/ No error (5)
7. This (1)/is (2)/a major problem (3)/for todays society. (4)/ No error (5)
8. Her parent's (1)/have invited me (2)/to go on holiday (3)/with them. (4)/ No error (5)
9. The old man (1)/didn't give (2)/me (3)/a minute of peace. (4)/ No error (5)
10. Over (1)/a thousand of people (2)/have died (3)/from the disease. (4)/ No error (5)
11. A friend of your's (1)/phoned (2)/and wants you (3)/to call her. (4)/ No error (5)
12. In Henry's opinion (1)/less money (2)/should be spent (3)/on weapons. (4)/ No error (5)
13. He (1)/has booked (2)/five seats (3)/for tomorrow nights' performance. (4)/ No error (5)
14. I'm sorry (1)/but I was (2)/very busy and (3)/couldn't spare the time (4)/ No error (5)
15. Now a day's (1)/pollution is (2)/a very serious (3)/problem. (4) No error (5)
16. Diseases (1)/such as AID'S (2)/and Cancer (3)/cause a lot of suffering. (4)/ No error (5)
17. My wife (1)/often goes to the indoor's pool (2)/but I don't like (3)/going there. (4)/ No error (5)
18. Asia's countries (1)/have learned (2)/a great deal (3)/from western countries. (4)/ No error (5)
19. Its good to go out (1)/to work because (2)/you come into contact (3)/with other people. (4)/ No error (5)
20. The manager of the shop (1)/told me that (2)/he was not responsible (3)/for these types' fault. (4)/ No error (5)
21. He (1)/wants to study (2)/public administration (3)/at Southern California's University. (4)/ No error (5)
22. On the day's election (1)/they couldn't (2)/be bothered (3)/to go and vote. (4)/ No error (5)
23. The teachers will be able (1)/to visit our schools (2)/and compare our teaching's methods (3)/with their own. (4)/ No error (5)
24. When I return home, (1)/I hope to (2)/contribute (3)/to my country's economic development. (4)/ No error (5)
25. I've come here (1)/to do (2)/a master degree (3)/in international journalism. (4)/ No error (5)

### Answers With Explanation

1. (1) His son's-in-law's friend की जगह His son-in-law's friend का प्रयोग होगा। Compound noun के last term के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है।

2. (4) Spring's flowers की जगह spring flowers का प्रयोग होगा। सामान्यतः summer, autumn, winter, spring के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive नहीं बनाया जाता है। इसका प्रयोग Noun तथा Adjective के रूप में होता है। Noun के रूप में होने पर जरूरत के मुताबिक of का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन Adjective के रूप में होने पर of तथा Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—
   Summer's flowers. (×)
   The flowers of summer. (✓)
   Noun
   But Summer flowers. (✓)
   Adj

3. (1) India's की जगह India का प्रयोग होगा। यदि किसी noun के बाद noun-in-apposition का प्रयोग हो तो noun in apposition में प्रयुक्त noun के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग कर possessive बनाया जाता है। जैसे—
   Mohan, Sohan's friend, was honest. (✓)
   Mohan's, Sohan's friend, was honest. (×)

4. (1) Your man servant behaviour की जगह your man servant's behaviour का प्रयोग होगा।
   Your man servant's behaviour का अर्थ 'आपके नौकर का व्यवहार' होता है।

5. (3) His employees coming on time की जगह his employees' coming on time का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Gerund (M.V. + ing) के पहले प्रयुक्त noun के साथ जरूरत के मुताबिक Apostrophe 's' or Apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग possessive बनाने के लिए होता है। यहाँ Gerund-coming के पहले plural noun-employees का प्रयोग हुआ है अतः employees के साथ Apostrophe ( ' ) का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

6. (1) India and America's present condition की जगह India's and America's present condition का प्रयोग होगा।
   ध्यान दें : India's and America's present-condition. or India's present-condition and America's present condition.
   *भारत की वर्तमान स्थिति और अमेरिका की वर्तमान स्थिति।*
   Separate possession (अलग-अलग अधिकार) का बोध कराने के लिए 'and' से जुड़े दोनों nouns के साथ Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
   Salim and Karim's house.
   *सलीम और करीम (दोनों) का घर*
   Salim's and Karim's house.
   *सलीम का घर और करीम का घर*

7. (4) Todays society की जगह today's society का प्रयोग होगा।

8. (1) Her parent's की जगह Her parents का प्रयोग होगा।

9. (3) A minute of peace की जगह A minute's peace का प्रयोग होगा।

10. (2) A thousand of people की जगह a thousand people का प्रयोग होगा।

11. (1) A friend of your's की जगह A friend of yours का प्रयोग होगा। 'yours' possessive pronouns है इसलिए इसके साथ Apostrophe ( ' ) or Apostrophe 's' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

12. (5) Given sentence is correct.

13. (4) Tomorrow nights' performance की जगह Tomorrow night's performance का प्रयोग होगा।

14. (4) couldnt की जगह couldn't का प्रयोग होगा।

15. (1) Now a day's की जगह Now a days का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि यह Adverb है। Adverb के साथ 's' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

16. (2) AID'S की जगह AIDS का प्रयोग होगा।

17. (2) The indoor's pool की जगह The indoor pool का प्रयोग होगा। Indoor Adjective है। सामान्यतः Adjective के साथ 's' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



18. (1) Asia's countries की जगह Asian countries का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (1) Its good की जगह it's good का प्रयोग होगा। its, possessive Adjective है इसका प्रयोग noun के पहले होता है जबकि it's का अर्थ it is होता है। it's good का अर्थ it is good होता है।
20. (4) These types' fault की जगह these types of fault का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (4) Southern California's University की जगह the University of Southern California का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (1) On the day's election की जगह on the day of the election का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (3) Our teaching's methods की जगह our teaching methods का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (5) Given sentence is correct.
25. (3) A master degree की जगह A master's degree का प्रयोग होगा।

★★★

## Pronoun

1. Myself and Mukesh (1)/will take care of (2)/the function (3)/on Monday. (4)/No error (5)
2. The director asked (1)/the candidate (2)/to what state (3)/he came from. (4)/No error (5)
3. The teacher does not know (1)/who of the students (2)/has broken (3)/the window. (4)/No error (5)
4. The Bhartiya Janta Party (1)/was ready (2)/to prove the majority (3)/and their political existence. (4)/No error (5)
5. This is the girl (1)/whom won (2)/the gold medal (3)/in the debate competition. (4)/No error (5)
6. Whereever they go (1)/Maithils easily (2)/adapt themself to (3)/local circumstances. (4)/No error (5)
7. Shila (1)/is (2)/more beautiful (3)/than her. (4)/No error (5)
8. Mahatma Gandhi taught us (1)/that one should respect (2)/the religions of others (3)/as much as his own. (4)/No error (5)
9. He, you and I (1)/will go to (2)/visit the Tajmahal (3)/together. (4)/No error (5)
10. It was him (1)/who got injured (2)/in an accident (3)/yesterday. (4)/No error (5)
11. I suppose (1)/you have heard (2)/the latest news (3)/Girish has married that girl. (4)/No error (5)
12. As soon as I (1)/saw my mother (2)/I ran to her (3)/and embraced me. (4) No error (5)
13. He was unable (1)/to get a residence (2)/suitable for (3)/her wife and him (4)/No error (5)
14. The spectators (1)/are requested (2)/to be in (3)/its seats. (4)/No error (5)
15. The accountant (1)/must follow (2)/one's technique (3)/to deal the business. (4)/No error (5)
16. There (1)/is no question (2)/of my failing (3)/in the CBSE Examination. (4)/No error (5)
17. He had come (1)/to know about (2)/my difficulties (3)/he would have certainly helped. (4)/No error (5)
18. Mr. Satyendra Prasad, (1)/our colleague, (2)/he will attend the meeting (3)/on our behalf. (4)/No error (5)
19. Each student was (1)/given a bunch of grapes (2)/which pleased them very much. (4)/No error (5)
20. Last summer (1)/she went (2)/to her brother-in-law's village (3)/and enjoyed very much. (4)/No error (5)
21. He and I (1)/have done (2)/my work together (3)/to earn more and more money. (4)/No error (5)
22. Neither of the two (1)/daughters loves (2)/their mother for her (3)/unkind and cruel behave. (4)/No error (5)
23. Mukesh is the son of (1)/Mr. Chandra Kishore Thakur who is my brother-in-law (2)/whose house is (3)/three kilometres away from Jajuar. (4)/No error (5)
24. Does Sohan believe (1)/that they have blamed (2)/us for the accident (3)/especially you and I ?(4)/No error (5)
25. When Binay comes back (1)/from vacation (2)/Mr. Mishra and me will plan (3)/to visit the Golghar. (4)/No error (5)

### Answers With Explanation

1. (1) Myself and Mukesh की जगह Mukesh and I का प्रयोग होगा। Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग subject के रूप में नहीं होता है, तथा first person, third person के pronouns का प्रयोग एक साथ subject के रूप में हो, तो pronouns के (3, 1) के क्रम का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
   He and I (✓)
   Mohan and I (✓)
2. (3) To what state की जगह which state का प्रयोग होगा। see rule.
3. (2) Who of the students की जगह which of the students का प्रयोग होगा। selection (चुनाव) के अर्थ के लिए which का प्रयोग होता है न कि who का।
4. (4) Their political existence की जगह its political existence का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि sentence का subject, the Bhartiya Janta Party है, अतः इसके लिए possessive—its का प्रयोग होगा, न कि their का।
5. (2) Whom की जगह who का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि verb के subject के रूप में who का प्रयोग होता है, न कि whom का।
6. (3) Themself की जगह themselves का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि themself गलत शब्द है।
7. (4) Her की जगह she का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि than के बाद Nominative Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (4) His की जगह one's का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि that से स्टार्ट होने वाले clause का subject one है, अतः इसके लिए Possessive—one's का प्रयोग होगा, न कि his का।
9. (1) He, you and I की जगह you, he and I का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि तीनों Persons के Pronouns का प्रयोग एक साथ हुआ है, जो subject का काम कर रहा है, अतः Pronouns का क्रम 231 होगा।
   You, he and I (✓)
   He, you and I (×)
10. (1) Him की जगह he का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि It + A.V. + Nominative + Relative Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
   It is I who helped you. (✓)
   Nom. Pro. Relative
   It is me who helped you. (×)
11. (1) Given Sentence के प्रथम भाग में suppose के बाद that का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (4) दिए गए sentence के part (4) में me की जगह her का प्रयोग होगा, तब sentence का अर्थ सुस्पष्ट होगा।
   अर्थ—ज्योंही मैं अपनी माँ को देखा, मैं उसके (माँ) पास दौड़कर गया और उसे (माँ) आलिंगन किया।
13. (4) Her wife and him की जगह his wife and his का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (4) Its की जगह their का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि given sentence का subject the spectators Plural Noun है अतः Plural Possessive their का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (3) One's की जगह his का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि given sentence का singular subject—The accountant है, अतः The accountant के possessive his का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (3) Of my failing की जगह of me failing का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Preposition के बाद Objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है, अतः of के बाद me का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



17. (4) Given sentence के part (4) में helped के बाद me का प्रयोग होगा, तब अर्थ स्पष्ट होगा।

18. (3) Given sentence के part (3) में he का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। जैसे—
Mohan, my brother, is honest. (√)
Mohan, my brother, he is honest. (×)

**Note :** Noun-in-apposition के case में—
(i) Noun + ( , ) + Noun + ( , ) + Verb + Object
(ii) Pronoun + ( , ) + Noun + ( , ) + Verb + Object का प्रयोग होता है, न कि दूसरे Noun के बाद प्रयुक्त comma (,) के बाद Nominative case के Pronoun का।

19. (5) Given sentence correct है।

20. (4) Given sentence के part (4) में enjoyed के बाद herself का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि enjoyed, pride, ..... etc. के बाद Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

21. (3) My की जगह our का प्रयोग होगा।

**ध्यान दें :** (i) You and I का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए objective case के Pronoun—us, possessive—our तथा Reflexive Pronoun—ourselves का प्रयोग होता है।
(ii) You and he का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए objective case के Pronoun—you, Possessive—your तथा Reflexive Pronoun—Yourselves का प्रयोग होता है।
(iii) He and I का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए Objective case के Pronoun—us, Possessive—our तथा Reflexive Pronoun—ourselves का प्रयोग होता है।
(iv) You, he and she का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए objective case के Pronoun—you, possessive—your तथा Reflexive Pronoun—yourselves का प्रयोग होता है।
(v) You, he and I का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए objective case के Pronoun—us, Possessive—our तथा Reflexive Pronoun—ourselves का प्रयोग होता है।

22. (3) Their की जगह her का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि Neither के बाद हमेशा Singular Verb तथा Singular Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

23. (3) Given sentence के part (3) में whose के पहले 'and' का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि किसी antecedent के लिए दो Relative Pronouns का प्रयोग होने पर दूसरे Relative Pronoun के पहले 'and' का प्रयोग होता है।

24. (4) You and I की जगह you and me का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि यह object के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है।

25. (3) Mr. Mishra and me की जगह Mr. Mishra and I का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि यह subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। Objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग subject के रूप में नहीं होता है।

★★★

## Adjective

1. Every one (1)/ felt that (2)/ the big glittering diamond (3)/ was most unique. (4)/ No error (5)
2. The teacher (1)/ said that (2)/ Amit was capable of doing (3)/ more better work. (4)/ No error (5)
3. Amar (1)/ was the richest (2)/ of the two (3)/ persons. (4)/ No error (5)
4. He is (1)/ very blind (2)/ to read (3)/ smallest of prints. (4)/ No error (5)
5. Your new dress (1)/ is prettier (2)/ and attractive (3)/ than mine. (4)/ No error (5)
6. This road is (1)/ the worst than (2)/ any other road in Patna (3)/ But remains unreported. (4)/ No error (5)
7. History and civics (1)/ are more easier (2)/ than physics (3) and Mathematics. (4)/ No error (5)
8. Firstly we should (1)/ think over the meaning of (2)/ the words and (3)/ then use them. (4)/ No error (5)
9. The maruti flew (1)/ off/the road and fell into the valley (2)/ because as high (3)/ was driving faster. (4)/ No error (5)
10. There is (1)/ still little tea (2)/ left (3)/ in the cup. (4)/ No error (5)
11. The high we climb (1)/ up the mountain (2)/ the cooler (3)/ we feel. (4)/ No error (5)
12. Though the first portion (1)/ of the book was dull (2)/ the later part (3)/ was quite interesting. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Rajeev Gandhi (1)/ was the first (2)/ politician of (3)/ his time. (4)/ No error (5)
14. Jamshedpur (1)/ is further (2)/ from Patna (3)/ than Ranchi. (4)/ No error (5)
15. Of Patna, Muzaffarpur (1)/ and Darbhanga (2)/ the former has (3)/ the largest number of scooters. (4)/ No error (5)
16. Shiv Kumar's command (1)/ over Sanskrit (2)/ is (3)/ the most excellent. (4)/ No error (5)
17. No other man (1)/ of the town (2)/ is more taller (3)/ than Ramashish. (4)/ No error (5)
18. This article has been (1)/ published in (2)/ the last issue of (3)/ The Times of India. (4)/ No error (5)
19. Even your (1)/ next relation (2)/ did not come (3)/ to your co-operation. (4)/ No error (5)
20. The doctor observed (1)/ that the patient (2)/ was gradually (3)/ becoming weak. (4)/ No error (5)
21. Napoleon was (1)/ greater than (2)/ any emperor (3)/ of his time. (4)/ No error (5)
22. These days (1)/ students (2)/ prefer study (3)/ than love. (4)/ No error (5)
23. The barber told me (1)/ that he would not (2)/ accept fewer (3)/ than fifteen rupees. (4)/ No error (5)
24. The all of India (1)/ mourned (2)/ the death of (3)/ Mr. Rajeev Gandhi. (4)/ No error (5)
25. Anshu (1)/ is the older (2)/ of the two (3)/ sisters. (4)/ No error (5)

### Answers With Explanation

1. (4) unique स्वतः highest degree of quality का बोध कराता है, अतः इसके पहले Most का प्रयोग कर Superlative नहीं बनाया जाता है। अतः most unique की जगह सिर्फ unique का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (4) more better का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है, क्योंकि यह double Comparative है। अतः more better की जगह सिर्फ better का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (2) richest की जगह richer का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से select करने के लिए Comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
4. (2) very की जगह too का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि बुरे गुण बताने वाले Adjective के पहले 'too' का प्रयोग होता है।
5. (3) more attractive का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि C.d. + and + C.d. का प्रयोग होता है।
6. (2) the worst की जगह worse का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि than के पहले Comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
7. (2) more easier की जगह सिर्फ easier का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि more + Comparative का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
8. (1) firstly की जगह first का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि first—Adjective है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



9. (4) faster की जगह fast का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि तुलना नहीं किया गया है।
10. (2) little की जगह some का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (1) high की जगह higher का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि The + C.d. + S + V. (,) + the + C.d. + S + V का प्रयोग होता है।
12. (3) later की जगह latter का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (2) first की जगह foremost का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (2) further की जगह farther का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (3) former की जगह first का प्रयोग होगा।
16. (4) the most excellent की जगह excellent का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि यह स्वतः highest degree of quality को express करता है। अतः, इसके पहले most का प्रयोग कर Superlative नहीं बनाया जाता है।
17. (3) more taller की जगह सिर्फ taller का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (3) last की जगह latest का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (2) next की जगह nearest का प्रयोग होगा।
20. (4) weak की जगह weaker का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (3) any emperor की जगह anyother emperor का प्रयोग होगा।
22. (4) than की जगह 'to' का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (3) fewer की जगह less का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (1) all की जगह whole का प्रयोग होगा।
25. (2) older की जगह elder का प्रयोग होगा।

★★★

## Time and Tense

1. No sooner had he arrive (1)/ than his friends arranged a reception (2)/ in his honour (3)/ in the best hotel in town. (4)/ No error (5)
2. Manali was trying for admission (1)/ in the Engineering college (2)/ even though her parents wanted (3)/ her to take up medicine. (4)/ No error (5)
3. He told me that (1)/ he could not buy the paintings, (2)/ which he wanted very much (3)/ because he had not enough money. (4)/ No error (5)
4. Although he had worked hard (1)/ and was understanding as much about the subject (2)/ as I did (3)/ he failed to get a second class in the examination. (4)/ No error (5)
5. She has told me that her brother might have done much better (1)/ at the university last year (2)/ had he not given so much time (3)/ to the students union. (4)/ No error (5)
6. Even though he was over ninety (1)/ he still enjoyed reading novels (2)/ and sometimes spend (3)/ an evening at the cinema. (4)/ No error (5)
7. I will now deal with him (1)/ in a manner different (2)/ from the one I have adopted so far. (3)/ No error (4)
8. Mr. Kharuna is planning (1)/ to settle in Kolkata (2)/ as soon as (3)/ he will retire in April next year. (4)/ No error (5)
9. The film show (1)/ began (2)/ when we arrived (3)/ in the hall. (4)/ No error (5)
10. No sooner had the news appeared in the paper (1)/ than (2)/ there is a rush (3)/ in the counter. (4)/ No error (5)
11. He always want (1)/ to get the best (2)/ of facilities whether (3)/ he deserves it or not. (4)/ No error (5)
12. I believe that (1)/ next time when you (2)/ will coming to Mumbai (3)/ you will bring my book. (4)/ No error (5)
13. Naresh told me (1)/ that Raman expect (2)/ every friend to meet him (3)/ once a week. (4)/ No error (5)
14. Washing the dishes (1)/ she remembered that (2)/ she was to go (3)/ to the market. (4)/ No error (5)
15. Two hours (1)/ have elapsed (2)/ since he had gone out. (4)/ No error (5)
16. All of a sudden (1)/ Anjani remembered that (2)/ he has not (3)/ locked the office. (4)/ No error (5)
17. Mr. Thakur would attempt to open (1)/ the lock with all her might (2)/ when her spectacles slipped (3)/ off and fell down. (4)/ No error (5)
18. Having worked (1)/ for the whole day, (2)/ you could have taken some rest (3)/ and start work tomorrow. (4)/ No error (5)
19. We take up (1)/ this issue in the (2)/ next meeting of (3)/ our housing society. (4)/ No error (5)
20. Last week when (1)/ I reach Vijay's house (2)/ he had already (3)/ left for Delhi. (4)/ No error (5)
21. Unless you gave (1)/ your consent (2)/ we shall not accept (3)/ this project. (4)/ No error (5)
22. Had the opportunity (1)/ been given to him (2)/ he will have (3)/ proved successful. (4)/ No error (5)
23. Since most of the urban people (1)/ have been lived in polluted areas (2)/ they suffer from severe (3)/ diseases caused by pollution. (4)/ No error (5)
24. The boss told his secretary (1)/ that she was a lazy girl (2)/ and she has done (3)/ her work very badly. (4)/ No error (5)
25. If I am well (1)/ I would (2)/ prefer tea (3)/ to cold drinks. (4)/ No error (5)

### Answers With Explanation

1. (1) arrive की जगह arrived का प्रयोग होगा। had के बाद $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग होता है।
2. (3) wanted की जगह had wanted का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (3) which he wanted की जगह which he had wanted का प्रयोग होगा।
4. (2) was understanding की जगह understood का प्रयोग होगा।
5. (1) She has told me की जगह she told me का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (3) spend की जगह spent का प्रयोग होगा sentence का starting clause Past Tense में हो तो बाद वाला clause भी Past Tense में होता है।
7. (3) I have adopted की जगह I have been adopting का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (4) he will retire की जगह he retires का प्रयोग होगा। Nearest future के fixed programme or plan को express करने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है।
9. (2) began की जगह had begun का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (3) There is a rush की जगह there was a rush का प्रयोग होगा। No sooner से start होने वाला clause Past Perfect Tense में हो तो than के बाद वाले clause के साथ Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (1) want की जगह wants का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि sentence का subject 'he' third person singular number का है।
12. (3) will be coming की जगह come का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि given sentence के part (2) में when का प्रयोग है, और when, if, before, after, in case, as long as, as soon as से स्टार्ट (start) होने वाले clause में future action के लिए भी Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
    1. When he comes, he will give me some money.
    2. If you work hard, you will succeed.
13. (2) expect की जगह expected का प्रयोग होगा। Indirect speech में Reporting verb Past Tense में हो तो Reported speech का verb भी Past Tense में होगा। जैसे—
    Direct—He said, Binay is right."
    Indirect—He said that Binay was right.



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



14. (3) She was to go की जगह she had to go का प्रयोग होगा। She was to go का अर्थ 'वह जाने वाली थी, होता है जबकि She had to go का अर्थ 'उसे जाना था' होता है she had to go sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।

15. (4) had gone out की जगह went out का प्रयोग होगा। since का प्रयोग conjunction of time के रूप में हो तो since से जुड़े हुए clause के साथ Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है तथा since के पहले वाले clause अर्थात् principal clause के साथ Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

16. (3) he has not की जगह he had not का प्रयोग होगा। Principal clause Past Tense में है इसलिए Subordinate clause भी Past Tense में होगा। अतः यहाँ Past Perfect Tense उपयुक्त है।

17. (1) Would attempt की जगह attempted का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि past action को express करने के लिए simple past Tense (subject + $M.V^2$ + object) का प्रयोग होता है।

18. (4) start की जगह started का प्रयोग होगा। could have + $M.V^3$ + and + $M.V^3$ का प्रयोग होता है न कि could have + $M.V^3$ + and + $M.V^1$ का।

19. (1) we take up की जगह we will take up का प्रयोग होगा। चूँकि Next meeting से future का बोध होता है।

20. (2) reach की जगह reached का प्रयोग होगा।

21. (1) gave की जगह give का प्रयोग होगा। conditional sentence में Principal clause के साथ Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग होता है तथा Subordinate clause के साथ Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। Subordinate clause सामान्यतः if, unless, until, in case, as soon as, as long as, before, after से स्टार्ट होता है। जैसे—

Unless you work hard, you will not succeed. (✓)
Unless you worked hard, you will not succeed. (×)

22. (3) he will have की जगह he would have been का प्रयोग होगा। *Had + subject + been + $M.V^3$ + (,) + subject + would have been + $M.V^3$* का प्रयोग passive voice में होता है।

23. (2) have been lived की जगह live का प्रयोग होगा। permanent action के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We live in India. (✓)
We have been living in India. (×)

24. (3) She has done के बदले she had done का प्रयोग होगा। Reporting verb told Past Tense में है इसलिए Reported speech भी Past Tense में होगा।

25. (1) If I am well के बदले If I were well का प्रयोग होगा। conditional clause में If + subject + were या were + subject का प्रयोग होता है तथा Principal clause में subject + would + $M.V^1$ का। जैसे—
If I were a bird, I would fly. or Were I a bird, I would fly.

**Note :** would के बदले could or might का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक किया जा सकता है।

★★★

## Adverb

1. When the thief (1)/ entered the house, (2)/ the watchman on duty (3)/ was fast aslept. (4)/ No error (5)
2. He ultimately decided (1)/ to willingly and cheerfully accept (2)/ the responsibility entrusted to him. (3)/ No error (4)
3. He only is responsible (1)/ for the suffering caused (2)/ to the whole family. (3)/ No error (4)
4. In spite of a thoroughly search (1)/ of the business premises, (2)/ the tax authorities could not find (3)/ any incriminating docomments. (4)/ No error (5)
5. Mahesh thought that he (1)/ would pass in the examination (2)/ he did not answer (3)/ most of the questions correct. (4)/ No error (5)
6. Kunal's father advised (1)/ him not to (2)/ ride the motorcycle (3)/lately at night. (4)/ No error (5)
7. He walked (1)/ quick so that (2)/he would not (3)/ be late. (4)/ No error (5)
8. Even though he found the subject (1)/ rather interesting Raghu could not (2)/ manage good marks (3)/ in the examination. (4)/ No error (5)
9. We could not see (1)/ the places clear (2)/ as the train was (3)/ moving very fast. (4)/ No error (5)
10. Although the patient (1)/ was rudely with the nurses, (2)/ he behaved (3)/ nicely with the doctor. (4)/ No error (5)
11. The father told his son (1)/that he was a lazy boy (2)/ and that he had done (3)/ his work very bad. (4)/ No error (5)
12. Sir, with respectfully and most humbly (1)/ I want to say that (2)/ I am a poor student (3)/ of your college. (4)/ No error (5)
13. This is the most difficult problem (1)/ of our book, there is (2)/ no an intelligent student (3)/ to answer this a question. (4)/ No error (5)
14. My wife does her work (1)/ show and steadily (2)/ I think she can not finish (3)/ it within proposed time . (4)/ No error (5)
15. We are sure that (1)/ they will definitely help us (2)/ if we approach (3)/ them well in advance. (4)/ No error (5)
16. Unless we work (1)/ careful we may over look something (2)/ in the contract. (3)/ No error (4)
17. He avoids (1)/ taking the (2)/ prescribed medicine (3)/ at regularly intervals. (4)/ No error (5)
18. His good qualities include (1)/ his ability to take (2)/ quickly and (3)/ appropriate decision. (4)/ No error (5)
19. His strictly discipline (1)/had made him (2)/very unpopular among (3)/ all the employees. (4)/ No error (5)
20. Jamshedji knew that (1)/ an industrial revolution can (2)/ be brought only in the country (3)/ by setting up Iron and steel industry. (4)/ No error (5)
21. We were happy that (1)/ the audience responded well (2)/ and gave all the speakers (3)/ a patiently listening. (4)/ No error (5)
22. Hari has faith in God (1)/ and will do never wrong (2)/ even in the most (3)/ tiring and unusual circumstances. (4)/ No error (5)
23. Though he is quick (1)/ in analysing a problem (2)/ he takes always time (3)/ for finding a solution. (4)/ No error (5)
24. Their team is (1)/ most like to lose (2)/ as all their players (3)/ lack self confidence. (4)/ No error (5)
25. Amit has been deceiving Mona (1)/ for many years but she (2)/ has not still tumbled to it. (3)/ No error (4)

### Answers With Explanation

1. (4) Aslept की जगह asleep का प्रयोग होगा। Asleep का प्रयोग Adjective or Adverb के रूप में होता है। Aslept गलत शब्द है जैसे—
My son is asleep.
Adj.
Aditi fell asleep.
V. Adv.
अतः given sentence में fast asleep का प्रयोग होगा न कि fast aslept का।

2. (2) willingly and cheerfully का प्रयोग Accept के बाद होगा क्योंकि Infinitive अर्थात् to + $V^1$ के बीच में Adverb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। इसलिए to accept willingly and cheerfully का प्रयोग होगा न कि to willingly and cheerfully accept का।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. (1) he only की जगह only he का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि only का प्रयोग उस word के पहले होता है जिसकी यह विशेषता बतलाता है। जैसे—
Only he saw me. *(केवल उसने मुझे देखा।)*
He only saw me. *(उसने मुझे केवल देखा।)*
He saw only me. *(उसने केवल मुझे देखा।)*
Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए only he ही उपयुक्त है।

4. (1) Thoroughly की जगह thorough का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि thorough Adjective है जबकि thoroughly Adverb है। Given sentence में noun— search के पहले Adjective—thorough का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adverb—thoroughly का।

5. (4) Correct की जगह correctly का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि correct—Adjective है तथा correctly—Adverb है। Given sentence में Verb— answer की विशेषता Adverb—correctly बतायेगा न कि Adjective—correct।

6. (4) lately की जगह late का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि lately का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'हाल ही में' (recently) के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि late का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'नियत समय के बाद या देर से' (after the fixed time or schedule) के अर्थ में होता है। Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए late का प्रयोग ही उपयुक्त है।

7. (2) Quick की जगह quickly का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि quik—Adjective है जबकि quickly—Adverb है। Given sentence में verb—walked की विशेषता Adverb—quickly बतायेगा न कि Adjective—quick।

8. (2) Rather की जगह fairly का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि rather का प्रयोग bad qualities को express करने वाले Adjective के पहले होता है जबकि fairly का प्रयोग good qualities को express करने वाले Adjective के पहले होता है। given sentence में प्रयुक्त Adjective-interesting, good quality को express कर रहा है इसलिए Adverb-fairly का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adverb-rather का।

9. (2) clear की जगह clearly का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि clear-Adjective है जबकि clearly-Adverb है। given sentence में प्रयुक्त verb-see की विशेषता Adverb-clearly बतायेगा न कि Adjective-clear।

10. (2) Rudely की जगह rude का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि rudely-Adverb है जबकि rude-Adjective है। verb to be-is, are, am, was, were के बाद Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि Adverb का। अतः given sentence में verb to be-was के बाद Adjective-rude का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adverb-rudely का।

11. (4) Bad की जगह badly का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि bad-Adjective है जबकि badly-Adverb है। Given sentence में verb—done की विशेषता Adverb—badly बतायेगा न कि Adjective—bad।

12. (1) Respectfully के पहले with का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Adverb के पहले preposition का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अतः given sentence में Adverb—respectfully के पहले with—preposition का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

13. (3) No की जगह not का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि not + a/an + Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि no + a/an + Adjective का।

14. (2) Slow and steadily की जगह slowly and steadily का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Verb की विशेषता Adverb बताता है न कि Adjective। Given sentence में Verb-does की विशेषता Adverb-slowly and steadily बतायेगा न कि Slow and steadily। slow adjective है जबकि slowly Adverb है।

15. (2) Definitely का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि sure के बाद definitely का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। sure का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में 'निश्चित/निःसंदेह' के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि definitely का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में 'निश्चित रूप से' के अर्थ में होता है। दोनों शब्द का अर्थ समान है इसलिए sure के बाद definitely का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

16. (2) Careful की जगह carefully का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि careful—Adjective है जबकि carefully-Adverb है। Given sentence में Verb-work की विशेषता बताने के लिए Adverb- carefully का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adjective-careful का।

17. (4) Regularly की जगह regular का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Regularly—Adverb है जबकि Regular-Adjective है। Given sentence में प्रयुक्त Noun intervals. के पहले Adjective-regular का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adverb-regularly का।

18. (3) Quickly की जगह quick का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि quick—Adjective है जबकि quickly-Adverb है। Given sentence में Noun-decisions के पहले Adjective-quick का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adverb-quickly का।

19. (1) Strictly की जगह strict का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि strictly-Adverb है जबकि strict-Adjective है। Given sentence में Noun-discipline के पहले Adjective-strict का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adverb strictly का।

20. (3) Be brought only in the country की जगह only be brought in the country का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि only Verb-brought को modify कर रहा है। Given sentence passive voice में है इसलिए be brought के पहले only का प्रयोग होगा।

21. (4) A patiently listening की जगह a patient listening का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि patiently-Adverb है जबकि patient- Adjective है। Given sentence में Noun-listening के पहले Adjective-patient का प्रयोग होगा न कि Adverb-patiently का। patient (Adj) का अर्थ 'सहनशील', 'संतोषी' होता है तथा patiently का अर्थ संतोष से, धैर्यपूर्वक, धीरता से होता है।

22. (2) Never का प्रयोग Main Verb-do के पहले होगा क्योंकि Adverb का प्रयोग Main Verb के पहले होता है।

23. (3) Always का प्रयोग Main Verb-Takes के पहले होगा क्योंकि Adverb का प्रयोग Main Verb के पहले होता है।

24. (2) Like की जगह likely का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि like का प्रयोग Verb के रूप में 'पसंद करना' तथा Noun के रूप में 'पसंद के अर्थ में होता है जबकि likely का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में 'उपयुक्त' या 'संभावित' के अर्थ में होता है। Given sentence में most का प्रयोग Adverb के रूप में very के अर्थ में हुआ है अतः Adverb-Most का प्रयोग Adjective-likely के पहले होगा न कि Noun-like।

25. (3) still का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Present Perfect Tense के negative sentence में yet का प्रयोग होता है न कि still का। Yet का प्रयोग सामान्यतः sentence के अंत में अर्थात् Main verb के बाद होता है।

★★★

## Prepostion

1. We saw a man (1)/from the mist (2)/but we could not (3)/see who he was. (4)/No error (5)
2. Every animal in the zoo (1)/is fed regularly (2)/and attended to (3)/very promptly. (4)/No error (5)
3. The manager has decided (1)/to visit all the departments (2)/of the factory tomorrow morning (3)/to review of the situation. (4)/No error
4. From over the last five years (1)/I have been trying (2)/my best to convince him (3)/but without success. (4)/No error (5)
5. We have observed that (1)/many good programmes (2)/suffer of shortage (3)/of funds and other resources. (4)/No error (5)
6. You deserve to be (1)/rewarded by your successful (2)/completion of the entire work (3)/in such a short time. (4)/No error (5)
7. Mahesh who was (1)/junior in most (2)/other employees in his office (3)/has been promoted. (4)/No error (5)



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



8. Selling match boxes (1)/on the road are (2)/the only means of earnings (3)/in respect of most of the people. (4)/No error (5)
9. A committee comprising (1)/of eminent members (2)/from various technical institutions (3)/was set up. (4)/No error (5)
10. Ambedkar's life (1)/was a saga of dedication (2)/in the cause of (3)/social reforms in India. (4)/No error (5)
11. If you are going (1)/on Monday next (2)/when will you return back (3)/to your home ? (4)/No error (5)
12. If you do not (1)/submit the report (2)/in the next two days (3)/all of us will be punished. (4)/No error (5)
13. As there was no time (1)/the remaining items (2)/were deferred into (3)/the next meeting. (4)/No error (5)
14. Ram is a very good painter (1)/but paintings (2)/are not easily (3)/access with the public. (4)/No error (5)
15. He assured me (1)/that he should abide with (2)/my decision in (3)/all the circumstances. (4)/No error (5)
16. The author has explained (1)/how the book (2)/should be used (3)/in the preface for the book. (4)/No error (5)
17. People took notice of (1)/the big stone on (2)/the road only after (3)/someone tripped with it. (4)/No error (5)
18. Ignorance is (1)/highly detrimental for (2)/the successful working (3)/of a democracy. (4)/No error (5)
19. The issues were (1)/so critical that they (2)/could hardly be resolved (3)/upon such a limited time. (4)/No error (5)
20. Had I been (1)/at your place (2)/I would not have (3)/approved of the proposal. (4)/No error (5)
21. The government (1)/aims on rehabilitating (2)/the affected victims (3)/in the calamity (4)/No error (5)
22. Left to himself (1)/Indra prefers (2)/travelling by bus (3)/than travelling by train. (4)/No error (5)
23. Because of his (1)/innocence he cannot distinguish a cheat (3)/for an honest person. (4)/No error (5)
24. He has a scheme (1)/of his own which (2)/he thinks preferable (3)/than that of any other person's. (4)/No error (5)
25. There has not been (1)/any rainfall in this (2)/part of the country (3)/since the last two years. (4)/No error (5)

## Answers With Explanation

1. (2) from की जगह in का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि In the mist का अर्थ 'कोहरा में' होता है जबकि from the mist का अर्थ 'कोहरा से देखा' होता है। given sentence के अर्थ के लिए In—preposition ही उपयुक्त है।
2. (3) to की जगह on या upon का प्रयोग होगा attend on/upon का अर्थ देखभाल करना होता है जो given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है। जबकि attend to का अर्थ ध्यान देना होता है।
3. (4) of का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि review के बाद प्रयुक्त object के पहले of का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—
   He reviewed the work done in his office.
   The editor wants to review my work.
4. (1) from की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि present perfect continuous tense में period of time के पहले for का प्रयोग होता है। for over five years तथा for over the last five years का प्रयोग होता है।
5. (3) of की जगह from का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि suffer के बाद सामान्यतः from preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
   She was suffering from fever.
6. (2) by की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि reward somebody for something का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
   The governor rewarded her for her bravery.
   लेकिन passive style के sentence में be + rewarded + by + passive object का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
   The students were rewarded by the principal.
7. (2) In की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि junior के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
   ध्यान दें: senior, inferior, prior, posterior superior, latin comparatives के बाद हमेशा to preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (4) In respect of की जगह सिर्फ of का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि In respect of का अर्थ संबंध में (as regards) होता है जबकि of का अर्थ का/के/की होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के लिए of उपयुक्त है।
9. (2) of का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि comprise का अर्थ 'से बना होना' (consist of/be composed of) होता है अतः comprise के बाद of preposition का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—
   This book comprises ten chapters (✓)
   This book comprises of ten chapters (×)
   But— This book consists of ten chapters (✓)
   This book consists ten chapters (×)
10. (3) In की जगह to—preposition का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि dedication to something का प्रयोग होता है। जबकि dedication of a person का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
    His dedication to writing is well known (✓)
    His dedication in writing is well known (×)
11. (3) back का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि return के बाद back का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। return का अर्थ come back, go back होता है जैसे—
    Mr. Thakur will return home tomorrow (✓)
    Mr. Thakur will return back home tomorrow (×)
    Mr. Thakur will come back/go back home tomorrow (✓)
12. (3) In की जगह within का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि In का प्रयोग at the end of a period of time के अर्थ में होता है जबकि within का प्रयोग before the end of a period of time के अर्थ में होता है। In तथा within के प्रयोग में यही फर्क होता है। अतः given sentence के अर्थ के लिए within का प्रयोग उपयुक्त है।
13. (3) Into की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि defer का प्रयोग 'स्थगित करना या बाद वाले समय तक रोकना' के अर्थ में होता है तो इसके बाद for—preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
    Let's defer the decision for a few weeks (✓)
    Let's defer the decision into a few weeks (×)
14. (4) with की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि accessible के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
15. (2) with की जगह by का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि abide के बाद by—preposition का प्रयोग होता है। Abide by a promise/decision का प्रयोग होता है।
16. (4) for की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि preface के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
    He had written a fine preface to the book (✓)
    He had written a fine preface for the book (×)
17. (4) with की जगह over का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि trip के बाद over preposition का प्रयोग होता है। trip over something का प्रयोग 'किसी चीज से ठोकर खाकर गिर जाना' के अर्थ में होता है।
18. (2) for की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि detrimental के बाद to preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
19. (4) upon की जगह within का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि within such a limited time का अर्थ 'इतने सीमित समय के अंदर' होता है जो given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
20. (2) at की जगह in का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि place के पहले In का प्रयोग होता है। न कि at का।
    लेकिन at Rampur (smaller place) तथा in Patna (bigger place) का प्रयोग होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



21. (2) on की जगह at का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि aim के बाद at—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
22. (4) than की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि prefer के बाद to—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
23. (4) for की जगह from का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि distinguish के बाद from— preposition का प्रयोग होता है। distinguish from a person/a thing का प्रयोग 'फर्क बतलाना' या 'अलग पहचान करना' के अर्थ में होता है।
24. (4) than की जगह to का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि preferable के बाद to—preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
25. (4) Since की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि *the + last + time expressing words* से Indefinite period of time का बोध होता है अतः इसके पहले for का प्रयोग होता है न कि since का। जैसे—
For the last two years (✓)
Since the last two years (×)
लेकिन— Since last two years (✓)
For last two years (×)

★★★

## Conjunction

1. Not only we saw (1)/the Education Minister but (2)/also the Chief Minister. (3)/No error (4)
2. Unless their paths diverged (1)/Lennon and Mc. Cartney wrote (2)/many hits together. (3)/No error (4)
3. She certainly has gone up (1)/in my estimation since she (2)/told the manager what she thought of him. (3)/No error (4)
4. It is else than (1)/his stupidity which stands (2)/in the way of his progress. (3)/No error (4)
5. Even though they were n't expecting us (1)/they managed to knock-up (2)/a marvellous meal. (3)/No error (4)
6. Either he nor his brother (1)/was informed about (2)/the venue of (3)/the meeting of our society. (4)/No error (5)
7. The driver (1)/was thrown out (2)/of the car and fortunately (3)/he was not hurt seriously. (4)/No error (5)
8. He came very close to me (1)/and asked me that if (2)/I would lend (3)/him some money. (4)/No error (5)
9. No sooner did (1)/Ankit reach (2)/the station then (3)/it started raining. (4)/No error (5)
10. We insisted, (1)/but neither Moni or his brother (2)/is ready to (3)/work on a holiday. (4)/No error (5)
11. You cannot withdraw (1)/ all your money unless, (2)/ you do not (3)/give a prior notice. (4) No error (5)
12. Avinash is not so (1)/good a batsman to (2)/be selected for (3)/the national cricket team. (4)/No error (5)
13. The player (1)/was asked (2)/that why he had not (3)/attended the prayer. (4)/No error (5)
14. Can you (1)/tell me (2)/why did you not (3)/speak the truth ? (4)/No error (5)
15. For he cannot do (1)/a lot of work (2)/at a time, he rejects (3)/many offers. (4)/No error (5)
16. The future is (1)/yet to come (2)/but you have a (3)/right to shape it. (4)/No error (5)
17. While purchasing (1)/a computer one (2)/should keep one's (3)/priorities in mind. (4)/No error (5)
18. The child complained that (1)/he denied his (2)/father's love due to (3)/his step-mother's intervention. (4)/No error (5)
19. Sooner than he had arrived (1)/his friends arranged a reception in his honour (2)/in the best note (3)/in the town. (4)/ No error (5)
20. The position of the match (1)/is so that India have (2)/scored three hundred runs (3)/in forty four overs. (4)/No error (5)

★★★

## Answers With Explanation

1. (1) Not only we saw की जगह we saw not only का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (1) unless की जगह until का प्रयोग होगा।
3. (2) since की जगह ever since का प्रयोग होगा। ever since का प्रयोग 'तब से अबतक सदा' के अर्थ में होता है जबकि since का प्रयोग 'तब और अब के बीच' या 'तब से अबतक' के अर्थ में होता है।
4. (1) else than की जगह nothing else but का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि It is nothing else but ..... का प्रयोग होता है।
5. (2) they managed to knock up के पहले yet का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि though के बाद yet का प्रयोग होता है।
6. (1) nor की जगह or का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि either ..... or का प्रयोग होता है।
7. (3) and की जगह but का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि contrast (प्रतिकूलता) के भाव को express करने के लिए but का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
She works hard but she always fails.
8. (2) that if की जगह सिर्फ if का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि Indirect speech में if, whether, who, which, what, when, where, whose तथा whom के पहले that or as to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—
She asked me why I was angry. (✓)
She asked me that why I was angry. (×)
9. (3) then की जगह than का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि No sooner के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है।
10. (2) or his brother की जगह nor her brother का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि neither के बाद nor का प्रयोग होता है न कि or का। Moni feminine gender singular number में है इसलिए his की जगह her का प्रयोग होगा।
11. (3) unless you do not की जगह unless you का प्रयोग होगा, unless/until/lest से स्टार्ट होने वाले clause में not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है क्योंकि ये खुद negative meaning रखते हैं।
12. (2) to की जगह as का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि so के बाद as का प्रयोग होता है।
13. (3) that why he had not की जगह why he had not का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि Indirect speech में why के पहले that का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
14. (3) why did you not की जगह why you did not का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि why से start होने वाले clause का structure ...why + subject + verb होता है। जबकि Interrogative sentence का structure I.W + A.V + Subject + M.V. + ? होता है।
15. (1) for की जगह as, since or because का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि conjunction of Reason के रूप में for का प्रयोग sentence के प्रारंभ में नहीं होता है जबकि As, since तथा because का प्रयोग होता है।
**Note :** for से start होने वाले clause का प्रयोग sentence के starting में नहीं होता है।
16. (3) But की जगह 'and' का प्रयोग होगा। But का प्रयोग 'किन्तु' के अर्थ में contrast (भेद/अंतर) के भाव को express करने के लिए किया जाता है जबकि 'and' का प्रयोग 'और' के अर्थ में एक ही प्रकार के कार्यों या गुणों को जोड़ने के लिए या भेद/अंतर बताने के लिए होता है।
17. (1) While purchasing की जगह before purchasing का प्रयोग होगा। जो Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
18. (3) due to की जगह because of का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (1) Sooner than he had arrived की जगह as soon as he arrived का प्रयोग होगा जो Given sentence के अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त है।
20. (2) So that की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि is, are, am, was तथा were के बाद complement के रूप में प्रयुक्त clause के पहले that का प्रयोग होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 24 Correction of Sentences

## Syntax

1. Jeans was not permitted in our college.
2. The furniture in this room are made of teak.
3. A swarm of bees are hovering over the flowers.
4. Not only his wife, but even his mother find him selfish.
5. Five years are too long to wait.
6. The president no less than the secretary are responsible.
7. Three fourths of the house was constructed.
8. Every man and woman work for the welfare of the poor.
9. Five lacs of rupees are a huge sum.
10. It is I who is to blame.
11. He, rather than his father, are to blame.
12. She commanded me as if she was my wife.
13. You, like your brothers, always drinks.
14. All is well that end well.
15. Rice and curry are my favourite dish.
16. I, Ramu, is an honest man.
17. Whisky and soda are served in the party today.
18. The shoes is too old to use.
19. Shakespeare's poetry are immortal.
20. Nothing but sand were seen there.
21. God blesses you !
22. Truth and honesty are the best policy.
23. Draughts are a table game.
24. The crew have not come yet.
25. The West-Indies has not won any match this year.
26. Riches grows in hell.
27. You are one of the students who does not copy in the examination.
28. Strawberries and peaches is my favourite dish.
29. One of the flowers are artificial.
30. Either of the boys have to purchase a train ticket for me.
31. Nobody deny the fact.
32. Half of the coins is false.
33. The United States are a great country.
34. The percentage of honest persons are small.
35. This is one of those problems which has many solutions.
36. A red and black cow were grazing in the field.
37. None of the candidates have appeared for an interview.
38. The Japanese is hard working.
39. Many an animal live on grass.
40. More than one examinee were expelled.
41. Letter after Letter pinpoint the need for hard work.
42. I like a boy who show intelligence.
43. There seems to be three lions in the den.
44. Churchill, statesman and writer, are no more.
45. Tales from Tagore are a nice collection of stories.
46. Dick, together with his friends, were drowned.
47. Bread and milk are wholesome food.
48. The officer, alongwith his clerks, are in the office.
49. The philosopher and the statesman is required.
50. Is there any body in the office ? No, there are no one.

### Answers With Explanation

1. Jeans were not permitted in our college.
2. The furniture in this room is made of teak.
3. Aswarm of bees is hovering over the flowers.
4. Not only his wife, but even his mother finds him selfish.
5. Five years is too long to wait.
6. The president no less than the secretary is responsible.
7. Three fourths of the house was constructed.
8. Every man and woman works for the welfare of the poor.
9. Five lakh of rupees is a huge sum.
10. It is I who am to blame.
11. He, rather than his father, is to blame.
12. She commanded me as if she were my wife.
13. You, like your brothers, always drink.
14. All is well that ends well.
15. Rice and curry is my favourite dish.
16. I, Ramu, am an honest man.
17. Whisky and soda is served in the party today.
18. The shoes are too old to use.
19. Shakespeare's poetry is immortal.
20. Nothing but sand was seen there.
21. God bless you.
22. Truth and honesty is the best policy.
23. Draughts is a table game.
24. The crew has not come yet.
25. The West Indies have not won any match this year.
26. Riches grow in hell.
27. You are one of the students who don't copy in the examination.
28. Strawberries and peaches are my favourite dish.
29. One of the flowers is artificial.
30. Either of the boys has to purchase a train ticket for me.
31. Nobody denies the fact.
32. Half of the coins are false.
33. The United States is a great country.
34. The percentage of honest persons is small.
35. This is one of those problems which have many solutions.
36. A red and black cow was grazing in the field.
37. None of the candidates has/have appeared for an interview.
38. The Japanese are hard working.
39. Many an animal lives on grass.
40. More than one examinee was expelled.
41. Letter after Letter pinpoints the need for hard work.
42. I like a boy who shows intelligence.
43. There seems to be three lions in the den.
44. Churchill, statesman and writer, is no more.
45. Tales from Tagore is a nice collection of stories.
46. Dick, together with his friends, was drowned.
47. Bread and milk is wholesome food.
48. The officer, along with his clerks, is in the office.
49. The philosopher and the statesman are required.
50. Is there any body in the office ? No, there is no one.

★★★

## Article

1. He thinks he is Napoleon.
2. Don't trust that fellow; he is liar.
3. Deccon Queen is the express train which runs from Pune to Mumbai each day.
4. The Secretary and the Treasure was present there.
5. He pulled the dog by a tail.
6. She is wiser of the two.
7. The prosperity of country depends upon its citizens.
8. The Mankind is facing a great danger.
9. He came here by the sea but went by the air.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



10. He was elected a chairman.
11. He was moving from a village to a village.
12. What sort of a book do you like the best ?
13. Wages are paid by a day.
14. The older you get, wiser you grow.
15. He shot himself dead with the pistol after bidding his wife good bye.
16. She comes to college by a bicycle.
17. The English is a very popular language in the Delhi University.
18. My Christian friends go to the church every Sunday.
19. He, being an M. A, is qualified for a post.
20. Baidhnath Babu is living happy and leisurely life after his retirement from his Service.
21. Can you reproduce this lesson a word for a word ?
22. While learning to swim, one of most important things is to relax.
23. They were invited to the dinner the day before yesterday.
24. Hard work is an only way to get the success.
25. Mr. Thakur was listening to a radio when he arrived.

## Answers With Explanation

1. He thinks he is a Napoleon.
2. Don't trust that fellow, he is a liar.
3. The Deccon Queen is an express train which runs from Pune to Mumbai each day.
4. The Secretary and treasure was present there.
5. He pulled the dog by the tail.
6. She is the wiser of the two.
7. The prosperity of a country depends upon its citizens.
8. Mankind is facing a great danger.
9. He came here by sea but went by air.
10. He was elected chairman.
11. He was moving from village to village.
12. What sort of book do you like best ?
13. Wages are paid by the day.
14. The older you get, the wiser you grow.
15. He shot himself dead with a pistol after bidding his wife good bye.
16. She comes to college by bicycle.
17. English is a very popular language in the Delhi University.
18. My Christian friends go to church every Sunday.
19. He, being an M. A, is qualified for the post.
20. Baidhnath Babu is living a happy and leisurely life after his retirement from his service.
21. Can you reproduce this lesson word for word ?
22. While learning to swim, one of the most important things is to relax.
23. They were invited to dinner the day before yesterday.
24. Hard work is the only way to get success.
25. Mr. Thakur was listening to the radio when he arrived.

★★★

## Noun and the Number

1. The gentry of this town does not like it.
2. The police has arrested him.
3. He gave me good advices.
4. I shall go to my quarter.
5. Commander-in-chiefs get handsome pay.
6. All the passer-bys saw her.
7. He has got a summon today.
8. He had no issues.
9. He gave me thank.
10. Dr. D.N. Jha is a man of letter.
11. Alik Babu is a man of part.
12. His house is built of bricks.
13. My publisher is true to his words.
14. Let me buy some fruits.
15. Mr. Prasad eats fishes every day.
16. The house is out of repairs.
17. Your hairs are black.
18. I found hair in the cap.
19. There are two grey hair on his coat collar.
20. My younger brother has three pairs of shoes.
21. Sad news were given to me.
22. His circumstance is not good.
23. He has got four dozens of books.
24. I have got a few dozen of pens and score of eggs.
25. There are hundred of birds in the tree.
26. He has got twelve-inches rule.
27. I have a ten years old dog.
28. Let us take a two-miles walk.
29. Bring a 50 centimetres rule.
30. He stopped his study.
31. My wife is in high spirit today.
32. He did three-fourth of the work.
33. Manu got full mark in Grammar.
34. Mr. Thakur does not like those sort of boys.
35. He has got two summons.
36. Dr. Hemant Jha, with his wife, went to the picture to see 'Gandhi'.
37. Our surrounding was pleasant.
38. The rich is happier than the poor.
39. It is kind to give something to a poor.
40. She gave him some informations.
41. I have to do several works.
42. There were many works that I had to do.
43. The Indian team defeated the English by an inning.
44. He has sold many of his furnitures.
45. The clergy is in the church.
46. Spectacles is now a costly item.
47. I have eaten one quarters of the cake.
48. He lives in the government quarter.
49. The wages of daily workers has been raised.
50. Peoples above seventy five years of age are not allowed to travel by air.

## Answers With Explanation

1. The gentry of this town do not like it.
2. The police have arrested him.
3. He gave me good advice.
4. I shall go to my quarters.
5. Commanders-in-chief get handsome pay.
6. All the passers-by saw her.
7. He has got a summons today.
8. He had no issue.
   **Note :** Issue का प्रयोग 'संतान' के अर्थ में होता है, तो इसका plural Issues नहीं होता है।
9. He gave me thanks.
10. Dr. D.N. Jha is a man of letters.
11. Alik Babu is a man of parts.
12. His house is built of brick.
13. My publisher is true to his word.
14. Let me buy some fruit.
15. Mr. Prasad eats fish every day.
    **Note :** Brick, bread, fish, fruit, का प्रयोग सामान्यतः Uncountable noun के रूप में होता है, अतः इस अर्थ में इसका plural नहीं होता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



16. The house is out of repair.
17. Your hair is black.
18. I found a hair in the cup.
19. There are two grey hairs on his coat collar.
20. My younger brother has three pair of shoes.

Note : Pair, dozen, score, gross (= 144), hundred-weight, stone, hundred, thousand आदि के पहले numeral Adjectives का प्रयोग हो तो ये singular form में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

21. Sad news was given to me.
22. His circumstances are not good.
23. He has got four dozen of books.
24. I have got a few dozens of pens and scores of eggs.
25. There are hundreds of birds in the tree.
26. He has got a twelve-inch rule.
27. I have a ten-year old dog.
28. Let us take a two-mile walk.

Note : A ten-rupee note, A ten-year old dog. A three-foot rule, A two-mile walk, A ten-man committee के बनावट में singular noun का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् A + numeral Adjective + hyphen (–) + S.N. का प्रयोग होता है।

29. Bring a 50 centimetre rule.
30. He stopped his studies.
31. My wife is in high spirits today.
32. He did three–fourths of the work.
33. Manu got full marks in Grammar.
34. Mr. Thakur does not like boys of that sort.
35. He has got two summonses.
36. Dr. Hemant Jha, with his wife, went to the pictures to see 'Gandhi'.
37. Our surroundings were pleasant.
38. The rich are happier than the poor.
39. It is kind to give something to the poor.
40. She gave him some information.
41. I have to do several pieces of work.
42. There was a lot of work that I had to do.
43. The Indian team defeated the English by an innings.
44. He has sold many pieces of his furniture.
45. The clergy are in the church.
46. Spectactes are now a costly item.
47. I have eaten one quarter of the cake.
48. He lives in the government quarters.
49. The wages of daily workers have been raised.
50. People above seventy-five years of age are not allowed to travel by air.

★★★

## Noun and the Case

1. Bhavana studies in a womens' college.
2. Binay's car is more costly than Mukesh.
3. Everybody's should do his duty.
4. Raman's desire was to be come a doctor's.
5. He is a friend of my younger brother.
6. Miss Shobhana works in S. Lal & Sons's shop.
7. Has he met Mohan and Sohan's children ?
8. Does she like the building's decoration ?
9. Sneha lives in this girl's hostel.
10. My father-in-law decision is constant.
11. The audience listened to Dinkar and Bachchan's poems.
12. The bullock cart's wheel was broken.
13. Mr. Thakur's house is at the throw of a stone from here.
14. There is no money in the bank in Chandra Kishore's and Chandra Mukhi's joint account.
15. What is this book's price ?
16. The publisher paid his employees two month's wages.
17. One should not laught at the poor's suffering.
18. What is his programme of tomorrow ?
19. I praise Sudhir's honesty who is my best collegue.
20. Your performance in the examination is not so good as my.
21. He wants to marry my brother's-in-law younger sister.
22. Has he made five horses's stable ?
23. Criminals' should be punished.
24. The principal gave him two hundred rupees from Poor Boys's Fund.
25. Charles'wife was very beautiful and intelligent.

### Answers With Explanation

1. Bhavana studies in a women's college.
2. Binay's car is more costly than Mukesh's.
3. Everybody should do his duty.
4. Raman's desire was to become a doctor.
5. He is a friend of my younger brother's.
6. Miss Shobhana works in S. Lal & Sons' shop.
7. Has he met Mohan's and Sohan's children ?
8. Does she like the decoration of the building ?
9. Sneha lives in this girls' hostel.
10. My father-in-law's decision is constant.
11. The audience listened to Dinkar's and Bachchan's poems.
12. The wheel of the bullock cart was broken.
13. Mr. Thakur's house is at a stone's throw from here.
14. There is no money in the bank in Chandra Kishore and Chandra Mukhi's joint-account.
15. What is the price of this book ?
16. The publisher paid his employees two months' wages.
17. One should not laugh at the suffering of the poor.
18. What is his tomorrow's programme ?
19. I praise the honesty of Sudhir who is my best colleague.
20. Your performance in the examination is not so good as mine.
21. He wants to marry my brother-in-law's younger sister.
22. Has he made five horses' stable ?
23. Criminals should be punished.
24. The principal gave him two hundred rupees from Poor Boys' Fund.
25. Charles's wife was very beautiful and intelligent.

★★★

## Pronoun

1. Mukesh and me are going to Delhi.
2. He did not laugh at you and I.
3. Let you and she dance together.
4. My son looks like I
5. Divide these apples between you and I.
6. Everyone but he knows the fact.
7. Talking she is pleasant.
8. He requested I to go there.
9. Rekha is as beautiful as her.
10. America is a country. She is very big.
11. You, I and he are friends.
12. I and he read the Mahabharata.
13. I and you attend the class everyday.
14. You, he and I are robbers.
15. You and I are sinners.
16. Either of these four books is useful.
17. Any of those two chairs was broken.
18. Neither of these five pens is costly.
19. None of these two boys is laborious.
20. They all love each other.
21. The two women struck one another.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



22. They hurt theirself.
23. They themself admitted their guilt.
24. I was sitting by mineself.
25. We exerted ourself.
26. Mohan has hurt himselves.
27. I mineself will speak to him.
28. Sonika poisoned herselves.
29. The child cried himself.
30. One must not praise himself
31. Each must do its best.
32. The Infant was playing himself.
33. You know myself.
34. They enjoyed in the party.
35. He presented in the class.
36. Alik babu shaves himself on Sundays.
37. The gate opened itself.
38. Himself is Mr. D.K. Mishra.
39. Herself is Mrs. Veena Thakur.
40. Mr. Pandey and myself were present there.
41. He has sold himself's car.
42. Your father must look after him.
43. The hermit often talked to him.
44. The Chief Minister distributed the blankets among themselves.
45. Nilu depends on yourself and myself.
46. Everyone should protect oneself from cold.
47. Everyone can't be honest, can he ?
48. Everything has his own importance.
49. One should do his duty.
50. One should help himself.

## Answers With Explanation

1. Mukesh and I are going to Delhi.
2. He did not laugh at you and me.
3. Let you and her dance together.
4. My son looks like me.
5. Divide these apples between you and me.
6. Everyone but he /him knows the fact.
7. Talking her is pleasant.
8. He requested me to go there.
9. Rekha is as beautiful as she.
10. America is a country, it is very big.
11. You, he and I are friends.
12. He and I read the Mahabharata.
13. You and I attend the class everyday.
14. I, you and he are robbers.
15. I and you are sinners.
16. Any of these four books is useful.
17. Either of those two chairs was broken.
18. None of these five pens is costly.
19. Neither of these two boys is laborious.
20. They all love one another.
21. The two women struck each other.
22. They hurt themselves.
23. They themselves admitted their guilt.
24. I was sitting by myself.
25. We exerted ourselves.
26. Mohan has hurt himself.
27. I myself will speak to him.
28. Sonika poisoned herself.
29. The child cried itself.
30. One must not praise oneself.
31. Each must do his best.
32. The infant was playing itself.
33. You know me.
34. They enjoyed themselves in the party.
35. He presented himself in the class.
36. Alik Babu shaves on sundays.
37. The gate opened.
38. He is Mr. D. K. Mishra.
39. She is Mrs. Veena Thakur.
40. Mr. Pandey and I were present there.
41. He has sold his own car.
42. Your father must look after himself.
43. The hermit often talked to himself.
44. The Chief Minister distributed the blankets among them.
45. Nilu depends on you and me.
46. Everyone should protect himself from cold.
47. Everyone cannot be honest, can they ?
48. Everything has its own importance.
49. One should do one's duty.
50. One should help oneself.

★★★

## Adjective

1. Aman is not so thinner as Suman.
2. He treats me brother.
3. This sum is too more difficult to solve.
4. This tea is too hottest to drink.
5. You can drive enough fast to reach the station in time.
6. She was poorer enough to buy the books she needed.
7. He looked his servant angry.
8. Coffee is more preferable to tea.
9. Drinking is preferable than smoking.
10. He was tall and more handsome
11. You are more intelligent and honest than I.
12. She is the most beautiful and healthy girl in her family.
13. You are relatively better today.
14. This stick is more longer than that.
15. Your father is more wiser than mine.
16. She is the most poorest woman in the village.
17. The weather is comparatively better today.
18. You are more laborious than more intelligent.
19. She was as industrious as and honest than her sister.
20. His wife is wise than and as beautiful as mine
21. The more you get, the most you want.
22. You are getting fatter and fat.
23. She is becoming more and beautiful.
24. He is becoming richer and rich.
25. Manoj is equally as active as Lalan.
26. No another drama in Sanskrit is so good as Shankuntala.
27. Lead is the heaviest of all other metals.
28. Brijanandan Babu is the fattest man of the village.
29. He was the most honest in the lot.
30. You are the wisest of the two students.
31. Rahul is one of the most laborious student if not the most laborious. (student)
32. The climate of Ranchi is better than Gaya.
33. The villagers of this district are more laborious than that one.
34. Very few Indian king were so great as Ashok.
35. Very few boys are so more industrious as Suman.

## Answers With Explanation

1. Aman is not so thin as Suman
2. He treats me brotherly.
3. This sum is too difficult to solve.
4. This tea is too hot to drink.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



5. You can drive fast enough to reach the station in time.
6. She was poor enough to buy the books she needed.
7. He looked at his servant angrily.
8. Coffee is preferable to tea.
9. Drinking is preferable to smoking.
10. He was tall and handsome.
11. You are more intelligent and more honest than I.
12. She is the most beautiful and healthiest girl in her family.
13. You are relatively well today.
14. This stick is longer than that.
15. Your father is wiser than mine.
16. She is the poorest woman in her village.
17. The weather is comparatively well today.
18. You are more laborious than intelligent.
19. She was as industrious as and more honest than her sister.
20. His wife is wiser than and as beautiful as mine.
21. The more you get, the more you want.
22. You are getting fatter and fatter.
23. She is becoming more and more beautiful.
24. He is becoming richer and richer.
25. Manoj is as active as Lalan.
    or, Manoj and Lalan are equally active.
26. No other drama in Sanskrit is so good as Shankuntala.
27. Lead is the heaviest of all metals.
28. Brijanandan Babu is the fattest man in the village.
29. He was the most honest of the lot.
30. You are the wiser of the two students.
31. Rahul is one of the most laborious students, if not the most laborious (student).
32. The climate of Ranchi is better than that of Gaya.
33. The villagers of this district are more laborious than those of that one.
34. Very few Indian kings were so great as Ashoka.
35. Very few boys are so industrious as Suman.

★★★

## Time and Tense

1. I have written to you yesterday about this matter.
2. He has finished his letter last night.
3. Binay has been in Rajgir two months ago.
4. I asked him what he has done.
5. Aditya ran outside to see what is happening.
6. The publisher gave me a prize so that I may work well again.
7. He lived in Patna since 1989.
8. The servant has not come when called.
9. The old woman has died of cold last night.
10. A moment ago I have heard strange news.
11. He had gone to Delhi last week.
12. My grandmother had died in 1988.
13. The train left before we reached the station.
14. The patient died before the doctor arrived.
15. I finished my work before he came to see me.
16. He told me that she was ill for five days.
17. My wife was fasting for two days when the doctor came.
18. He will reach home before the sun will set.
19. I shall leave this place by the time she will come.
20. He would come if you wish it.
21. He was enquiring what you have heard.
22. We learnt at school that the earth was not flat but round like a ball.
23. Were I in his place I should have paid the money.
24. Should he meet me he will know me at once ?
25. He is here since 2001.

## Answers With Explanation

1. I wrote to you yesterday about this matter.
2. He finished his letter last night.
3. Binay was in Rajgir two months ago.
4. I asked him what he had done.
5. Aditya ran outside to see what was happening.
6. The publisher gave me a prize so that I might work well again.
7. He has lived in Patna since 1989.
8. The servant did not come when called.
9. The old woman died of cold last night.
10. A moment ago I heard strange news.
11. He went to Delhi last week.
12. My grandmother died in 1988.
13. The train had left before we reached the station.
14. The patient had died before the doctor arrived.
15. I had finished my work before he came to see me.
16. He told me that she had been ill for five days.
17. My wife had been fasting for two days when the doctor came.
18. He will have reached home before the sun sets.
19. I shall have left this place by the time she comes.
20. He would come if you wished it.
21. He was enquiring what you had heard.
22. We learnt at school that the earth is not flat but round like a ball.
23. Were I in his place I should pay the money.
24. Should he meet me he would know me at once.
25. He has been here since 2001.

★★★

## Adverb

1. The teacher wants to know as to why he beat his friend.
2. He runs fastly.
3. He is working very hardly on this project.
4. Firstly she insulted her husband; secondly she asked him to leave her house at once.
5. She carefully does her work.
6. His grandmother is very fat that she can not walk fast.
7. You scarcely go to the cinema.
8. Last night, My brother returned lately.
9. During the winter months, they always were in the kitchen.
10. In Sweden many wives and husbands stay at home alternatively to look after their children.
11. Some were killed and others were injured badly.
12. He is afraid he speaks English very bad.
13. Aditya, my elderly son, is still at home.
14. The course has been especially designed for students preparing for the first certificate examination.
15. At first, he would like to introduce himself.
16. Firstly, I could not understand the local people at all.
17. The editor said that my letter was too long to be fully published.
18. It was raining hardly and we all got wet.
19. He tried hardly to remember where he had parked the car.
20. When we arrived at the hotel, we couldn't hardly believe our eyes.
21. I keep telling my self how I am lucky to have such wonderful children.
22. They probably will under stand and try to help you.
23. He sends them money but scarcely goes to see them.
24. When the plane took off, she held my hand strongly.
25. He was elected as president of our society.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Answers With Explanation

1. The teacher wants to know why he beat his friend.

   **Note** : As to का प्रयोग why के पहले नहीं होता है।

2. He runs fast.

   **Note** : fastly का प्रयोग नहीं होता है यह एक slang है।

3. He is working very hard on this project.

   **Note**: working hard का प्रयोग working dedicatedly के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि hardly working का प्रयोग not working at all के अर्थ में होता है।

4. First she insulted her husband; then she asked him to leave her house at once.
5. She does her work carefully.
6. His grand mother is so fat that she can not walk fast.
7. You rarely go to the cinema.
8. Last night, My brother returned late.
9. During the winter months, they were always in the kitchen.
10. In Sweden many wives and husbands stay at home alternately to look after their children.

    **Note** : Alternately का प्रयोग 'बारी-बारी से' (in turns, reciprocally, first one then the other) के अर्थ में adverb के रूप में होता है। जबकि alternatively का प्रयोग 'यथाक्रम' (another possibility is) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है।

11. Some were killed and others were badly injured.

    **Note** : badly + past participle का प्रयोग होता है।

12. He is afraid he speaks English very badly.

    **Note** : Bad का प्रयोग बुरा, खराब, अप्रिय, बीमार/अस्वस्थ होना के अर्थ में में Adjective के रूप में होता है। जबकि Badly का प्रयोग 'बुरी तरह से' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

    It is bad to steal. (Adj) *(खराब)*

    I have heard some bad news. (Adj) *(अप्रिय)*

    He feels bad today (Adj) *(अस्वस्थ होना)*

    He has been badly hurt, (Adv) *(बुरी तरह से)*

13. Aditya, my elder son, is still at home.

    **Note** :elderly का प्रयोग प्रौढ़/वयोवृद्ध (some what old; between middle and old age) के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है जबकि elder का प्रयोग परिवार के वरिष्ठ सदस्य' (older or senior in family) के अर्थ में होता है।

14. The course has been specially designed for students preparing for the first certificate examination.

    **Note** : especially का प्रयोग 'विशिष्ट रूप से/प्रमुख रूप से' के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। जबकि Specially का प्रयोग 'खास तौर पर' (particularly) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है। especially का प्रयोग Subject के बाद होता है जबकि specially का प्रयोग Auxiliary verb के बाद तथा Main verb के पहले होता है। अर्थात A.V तथा M.V के बीच में होता है।

15. First of all, he would like to introduce himself.
16. At first, I could not understand the local people at all.

    **Note** : (i) first का प्रयोग सबसे पहले (before any thing else) के अर्थ में Adjective के रूप में होता है।

    (ii) At first का प्रयोग आरंभ में (in the beginning) के अर्थ में होता है।

    (iii) firstly का प्रयोग आगे, पहले, आदि में (in the first place) के अर्थ में Adverb के रूप में होता है।

    (iv) First of all का प्रयोग 'सबसे पहले' के अर्थ में होता है।

    **ध्यान दें** : (i) First, firstly and first of all introduce the first item in a list or sequence while then, second and secondly introduce the next item.

    **Such as**(i) First, open all the windows, then turn off the gas and, if necessary, call an ambulance.

    (ii) These new computers have several advantages, first of all, they are faster than the older machines. Secondly, they are far easier to use, and thirdly they are more reliable.

    (iii) At first introduces a situation which is in contrast with a later situation (after a change has taken place)

    **Such as**—At first I didn't like the climate, but after two years I got used to it.

17. The editor said that my letter was too long to be published in full.

    **Note** : fully का प्रयोग completely के अर्थ में होता है। जबकि In full का प्रयोग without any part missing or removed के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे—

    It is a fully furnished apartment.

18. It was raining hard and we all got wet.
19. He tried hard to remember where he had parked the car.
20. When we arrived at the hotel, we could hardly believe our eyes.

    **Note** : hardly negative meaning रखता है इसलिए इसके साथ not (negative word) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

21. I keep telling myself how lucky I am to have such wonderful children.

    **Note** : *How + Adjective/ Adverb + Subject + Verb* का प्रयोग होता है।

22. They will probably understand and try to help you.

    **Note**: Probably का प्रयोग Auxiliary verb तथा main verb के बीच में होता है।

23. He sends them money but rarely goes to see them.

    **Note**: Rarely का प्रयोग almost never के अर्थ में frequency को express करने के लिए किया जाता है।

24. When the plane took off, she held my hand tightly.

    **Note** : Strongly का प्रयोग verbs—suggest, advise, recommend, agree, disagree, believe, feel etc के साथ होता है। जैसे—
    I would strongly advise you to think again.

25. He was elected president of our society.

    **Note**: Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग verbs—appointed, elected, considered, called etc के साथ नहीं होता है। जबकि Adverb 'As' का प्रयोग Regard के साथ होता है। जैसे—

    I regard Amar as my friend. (✓)
    I regard Amar my friend. (×)

★★★

## Preposition

1. I always have a good breakfast at the morning.
2. He was married at 1998 and have two children a boy and a girl.
3. He needs to discover another source of income, beside oil.
4. She went swimming in the river besides my house.
5. He wandered silently between the passengers on the boat.
6. The main purpose of the visit is to develop a closer relationship among the two countries
7. The play deals in the struggle of a married couple to live their own lives.
8. He is not well acquainted to me.
9. He aimed on the bird; fired, but missed it.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



10. We must abide of the law.
11. Keep your expenses in your income.
12. He abstains to luxuries.
13. She excels into music as well as dancing
14. Diabetes eats our vitality and health.
15. He is so clever that I cannot cope to him.
16. According the law one man cannot kill another.
17. The train arrived in the station.
18. He appealed the judge of his release from jail.
19. We are accountable for God to our action.
20. Ramanand complained against the teacher to subject about his mischief
21. He has accommodated himself of the new situation.
22. He hindered me going.
23. A child cannot distinguish along right and wrong.
24. He always adhere from his principles.
25. May I request to you to excuse me ?
26. We should pray God.
27. He ordered for a drink.
28. He recommended for my name to the officer.
29. A good man will not boast to his wealth.
30. He discussed about the matter.
31. The preface of this book is very short.
32. The teacher inflicted punishment to the student.
33. He is vexed with his brother's illness.
34. What is your subscription for the Famine Relief Fund ?
35. The Marwaris have great aptitude of business.
36. I have a strong affection to that poor girl.
37. He offered her an apology to his conducts.
38. Miss Veena has no control on her class..
39. The thief was acquitted for the charge.
40. Ultimately she became reconciled to her husband.
41. All of us were shocked with the news of his health.
42. I defended him of all blame.
43. They bravely defended their country from enemies.
44. I enquired for her why she had insulted her husband.
45. He revenged himself his enemy for murder of his brother.
46. Mr. Jha rewarded her of a watch for saving his child from drowning.
47. Mr. Thakur struggled for many difficulties .
48. He warned me for the danger, of pickpockets.
49. The poor beggar was addicted of smoking.
50. I prevented her to selling her ornaments.

## Answers With Explanation

1. I always have a good breakfast in the morning.
2. He was married in 1998 and has two children, a boy and a girl.
3. He needs to discover another source of income, besides oil.
4. She went swimming in the river beside my house.
5. He wandered silently among the passengers on the boat.
6. The main purpose of the visit is to develop a closer relationship between the two countries.
7. The play deals with the struggle of a married couple to live their own lives.'
8. He is not well acquainted with me.
9. He aimed at the bird, fired, but missed it.
10. We must abide by the law.
11. Keep your expenses within your income.
12. He abstains from luxuries.
13. She excels in music as well as dancing
14. Diabetes eats into our vitality and health.
15. He is so clever that I cannot cope with him.
16. According to the law one man cannot kill another.
17. The train arrived at the station.
18. He appealed to the judge for his release from jail.
19. We are accountable to God for our action.
20. Ramanand complained to the teacher against Sujeet about his my chief.
21. He has accommodated himself to the new situation.
22. He hindered me from going.
23. A child cannot distinguish between right and wrong.
24. He always adhered to his principles.
25. May I request you to excuse me ?
26. We should pray to God.
27. He ordered a drink.
28. He recommended my name to the officer.
29. A good man will not boast of his health.
30. He discussed the matter.
31. The preface to this book is very short.
32. The teacher inflicted punishment on the student.
33. He is vexed at his brother's illness.
34. What is your subscription to the famine relief fund?
35. The marwaris have great aptitude for business.
36. I have a strong affection for that poor girl.
37. He offered her an apology for his conducts.
38. Miss Veena has no control over her class.
39. The thief was acquitted of the charge.
40. Ultimately she became reconciled with her husband.
41. All of us were shocked at the news of his death.
42. I defended him from all blame.
43. They bravely defended their country against enemies.
44. I enquired of her why she had insulted her husband.
45. He revenged himself on his enemy for the murder of his brother.
46. Mr. Jha rewarded her with a watch for saving his child from drowning.
47. Mr. Thakur struggled against many difficulties.
48. He warned me of the danger against pickpockets.
49. The poor beggar was addicted to smoking.
50. I prevented her from selling her ornaments.

★★★

## Conjunction

1. Both Shobhana as well as Bhavna are beautiful.
2. As you are my younger brother so I shall take care of you.
3. No change took place since he has died.
4. The crops will die before the rains will fall.
5. She behaves as if she is a child.
6. He took the medicine that he might get will.
7. Mr. Thakur was writing the book, at that time the publisher came to him.
8. No sooner we reached the stadium, it started raining cats and dogs.
9. Because Suman is intelligent, therefore, everybody likes him.
10. Work hard lest you may not fail.
11. He is more intelligent but not so hard working as his elder brother.
12. Your father will return on either Sunday or Monday.
13. He asked me that who I was.
14. Most of the girls are doing their graduation because they may get good husbands.
15. The students not only the teacher but also was responsible for what happened in the class.
16. Although Vikas is hard working, but he does not get a job.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



17. It is nothing else than a trick being played upon Mr. Thakur.
18. I have no choice than to start my own business.
19. The teacher asked Aditya that why he was late.
20. No other country but India has spoken against terrorism.

## Answers With Explanation

1. Both Shobhna and Bhavna are beautiful.
   or, Shobhna as well as Bhavna is beautiful.
2. I shall take care of you because you are my younger brother.
   I shall take care of you because you are my younger brother.
3. No change has taken place since he died.
4. The crops will have died before the rains fall.
5. She behaves as if she were a child.
6. He took the medicine so that/in order that he might get well.
7. Mr. Thakur was writing the book, when the publisher came to him.
8. No sooner did we reach the stadium than it started raining cats and dogs.
9. Everybody likes Suman because he is intelligent.
10. Work hard lest you should fail.
11. He is more intelligent than but not so hard working as his elder brother.
12. Your father will return either on Sunday or on Monday.
13. He asked me who I was.
14. Most of the girls are doing their graduation so that they may get good husbands.
15. Not only the students but also the teacher was responsible for what happened in the class.
16. Although Vikas is hard working, yet he does not get a job.
17. It is nothing else but a trick being played upon Mr. Thakur.
18. I have no choice but to start my own business.
19. The teacher asked Aditya why he was late.
20. No other country than India has spoken against terrorism.

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 25 Transformation of Sentences-I

## I. Interchange of Affirmative and Negative sentences :

Affirmative sentence को Negative sentence में तथा Negative sentence को Affirmative sentence में Transform करने से पहले यह जानना आवश्यक है कि Affirmative sentence में Negative word का प्रयोग नहीं होता है जबकि Negative sentence में Negative word का प्रयोग आवश्यक होता है।

**Negative words** : No, not, never, nothing, neither, nor, nobody, none, no one ..... etc. negative meaning (नकारात्मक अर्थ) रखते हैं इसलिए ये Negative words कहलाते हैं।

Affirmative sentence को Negative sentence में Transform करने के लिए यह necessary (आवश्यक) है कि sentence में इस प्रकार का परिवर्तन लाया जाए ताकि Sentence में एक negative word हो तथा Sentence के meaning (अर्थ) में परिवर्तन भी नहीं हो। इस प्रकार Negative sentence को Affirmative sentence में Transform करने के लिए यह necessary है कि sentence में इस प्रकार का परिवर्तन लाया जाए ताकि sentence में प्रयुक्त negative word का लोप हो सके तथा sentence के meaning में परिवर्तन भी नहीं हो।

**Rules for Interchanging of Affirmative and Negative Sentences :**

**A. Affirmative sentence से Negative sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने का नियम :**

**Rule (1)** : Affirmative sentence में प्रयुक्त Main word (प्रमुख शब्द) के opposite word (विलोम शब्द) की मदद से Affirmative sentence को negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. Man is mortal. | 1. Man is not immortal. |
| 2. You are wise. | 2. You are not foolish. |
| 3. He is a rich man. | 3. He is not a poor man. |
| 4. I am innocent. | 4. I am not guilty. |
| 5. She is always careful. | 5. She is never careless. |
| 6. He is doubtful. | 6. He is not sure. |
| 7. She dislikes me. | 7. She does not like me. |
| 8. He is dishonest. | 8. He is not honest. |
| 9. It is harmful. | 9. It is not harmless. |
| 10. He was healthy. | 10. He was not unhealthy. |

**Rule (2)** : कभी-कभी दो (double) negative meaning expressing words का प्रयोग कर Affirmative sentence से negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. I love you. | 1. I am not without love for you. |
| 2. She was wise. | 2. She was not without wisdom. |
| 3. Every cactus plant has a thorn. | 3. There is no cactus plant without a thorn. |
| 4. Where there is will there is way. | 4. There is no way without will. |
| 5. Everyone hates her. | 5. There is no one who does not hate her. |
| 6. He was hopeful. | 6. He was not without hope. |
| 7. Every gain has risk. | 7. There is no gain without risk. |
| 8. Everyone makes a mistake. | 8. There is no one who does not make a mistake. |
| 9. Every rose has a thorn. | 9. There is no rose without a thorn. |
| 10. You have money. | 10. You are not without money. |

**Rule (3)** : Verb 'to fail' का प्रयोग कर या हटाकर (लोप कर) Affirmative sentence से Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. He saw the Taj Mahal. | 1. He did not fail to see the Taj Mahal. |
| 2. My son plays cricket. | 2. My son does not fail to play cricket. |
| 3. He will help the helpless. | 3. He will not fail to help the helpless. |
| 4. When you are late, your father beats you. | 4. Your father does not fail to beat you when you are late. |
| 5. You must have seen the Golghar when you went to Patna. | 5. You must not have failed to see the Golghar when you went to Patna. |
| 6. Speak the truth. | 6. Don't fail to speak the truth. |
| 7. I failed to see her when she came in. | 7. I did not/could not see her when she came in. |

**Rule (4)** : Affirmative sentence में प्रयुक्त only / alone को none but में बदल कर negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. Only a millionaire can afford such extravagance | 2. None but a millionaire can afford such extravagance. |
| 2. Only you can solve this problem. | 2. None but you can solve this problem. |
| 3. The brave alone deserve the fair. | 3. None but the brave deserve the fair. |
| 4. Only a foolish man would behave like this. | 4. None but a foolish man would behave like this. |
| 5. Only the publisher has inspired me to write this book. | 5. None but the publisher has inspired me to write this book. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (5)** : Affirmative sentence में प्रयुक्त As soon as को no sooner ..... than में बदलकर Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. As soon as he saw me, he ran away. | 1. No sooner did he see me than he ran away. |
| 2. As soon as I had reached the station, the train steamed off. | 2. No sooner had I reached the station than the train steamed off. |
| 3. As soon as he arrives, he begins to work. | 3. No sooner does he arrive than he begins to work. |
| 4. As soon as the bell rang, the boys ran out of their classes. | 4. No sooner did the bell ring than the boys ran out of their classes. |
| 5. As soon as he came, he made objections. | 5. No sooner did he come, than he made objections. |

**Rule (6)** : Affirmative sentence में प्रयुक्त whenever/when को Never but में बदलकर Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. Whenever the child cries, the mother sucks it. | 1. The child never cries but the mother sucks it. |
| 2. Whenever I go to you, I don't find you. | 2. I never go to you but I don't find you. |
| 3. It always pours when it rains. | 3. It never rains but (it) pours. |
| 4. Whenever she sees me, she is reminded of her lover. | 4. She never sees me but is reminded of her lover. |

**Rule (7)** : यदि Affirmative sentence positive degree में हो तो उसे Comparative degree में बदलकर Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is as strong as I. | 1. I am not stronger than he. |
| 2. She is as tall as Nilu. | 2. Nilu is not taller than she. |
| 3. He is as good as Aditya. | 3. Aditya is not better than he. |
| 4. I know him as well as you do. | 4. You do not know him better than I do. |

**Rule (8)** : यदि Affirmative sentence comparative degree में हो तो उसे positive degree में बदल कर Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is more intelligent than I. | 1. I am not so intelligent as he. |
| 2. You are duller than your brother. | 2. Your brother is not so dull as you. |
| 3. The aeroplane flies faster than birds. | 3. Birds don't fly so fast as the aeroplane. |
| 4. Iron is more useful than any other metal. | 4. No other metal is so useful as Iron. |
| 5. Ashoka was greater than most other kings. | 5. Very few kings were so great as Ashoka. |
| 6. They have more money than honesty. | 6. They do not have as much honesty as money. |

**Rule (9)** : यदि Affirmative sentence Superlative degree में हो तो उसे Positive degree में बदलकर Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. Iron is the most useful of all metals. | 1. No other metal is so useful as Iron. |
| 2. America is the richest country in the world. | 2. No other country in the world is so rich as America. |
| 3. Kolkata is the largest town in India. | 3. No other town in India is so large as Kolkata. |
| 4. Ashoka was one of the greatest of kings. | 4. Very few kings were so great as Ashoka. |

**Rule (10)** : यदि Affirmative sentence Comparative degree में हो तो उसे Positive degree में बदलकर Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. Mumbai is richer than any other town in India. | 1. No other town in India is so rich as Mumbai. |
| 2. Delhi is better than all other towns in India. | 2. No other town in India is as good as Delhi. |
| 3. Pt. Nehru was greater than all other men in India. | 3. No other man in India was so great as Pt. Nehru. |
| 4. Gold is heavier than most other metals. | 4. Very few metals are as heavy as gold. |

**Rule (11)** : यदि Affirmative sentence Subject + verb + too + Adjective/Adverb + to + $V^1$ के structure पर आधारित हो तो so ..... that का प्रयोग कर Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is too proud to apologize. | 1. He is so proud that he will not apologize. |
| 2. He is too honest to accept a bribe. | 2. He is so honest that he will not accept a bribe. |

**Rule (12)** : यदि Affirmative sentence so ..... that के structure पर आधारित हो तथा not (negative words) का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो too ..... not to का प्रयोग कर negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is so kind hearted that he will forgive me. | 1. He is too kind hearted not to forgive me. |
| 2. The house is so large that it will accommodate all of us. | 2. The house is too large not to accommodate all of us. |

**Rule (13)** : कुछ ऐसे Affirmative sentences हैं जिनका transformation किसी particular rule (खास नियम) के आधार पर नहीं होता है। ऐसे Affirmative sentences के अर्थ/भाव को समझकर (suitable word या Phrase) उपयुक्त शब्द या शब्द समूह का प्रयोग कर Affirmative से Negative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Affirmative | Negative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is a good musician. | 1. He is no mean musician. |
| 2. She is a woman of marked intelligence. | 2. She is a woman of no mean intelligence. |
| 3. I abstain from wine. | 3. I do not take wine. |
| 4. My brother went to school everyday. | 4. My brother never absented himself from school. |
| 5. It is unique. | 5. Nothing is like this. |
| 6. I lived only a few years in Darbhanga. | 6. I didn't live many years in Darbhanga. |
| 7. All the girls wept. | 7. There was no girl but wept. |
| 8. Only a few persons would be cruel to a beggar. | 8. Not many persons would be cruel to a beggar. |
| 9. I seldom go there. | 9. I don't go there very often. |
| 10. The two brothers are alike. | 10. The two brothers are not unlike each other. |
| 11. They won all the matches. | 11. They didn't lose a single match. |

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Transform (change/convert) the following sentences from Affirmative to negative :*

1. He is always careful.
2. She is wise.
3. His voice is sweet.
4. This is possible.
5. He is a good player.
6. He was prohibited from smoking.
7. We won all the matches.
8. She seldom comes here.
9. The doctor had always treated his patients fairly.
10. Every one will admit it.
11. I shall always remember you.
12. All the women wept.
13. Mr. Thakur abstains from wine.
14. The poor alone deserve help.
15. He is wiser than you.
16. He loves her.
17. You must have seen the Qutub Minar.
18. I was doubtful whether it was you.
19. Man is mortal.
20. They were innocent.
21. Everyone disliked her.
22. She is a bad girl.
23. Everybody will admit that he did his best.
24. You are richer than I.
25. You are honest.
26. He is sometimes foolish.
27. He is always happy.
28. Few women can keep a secret.
29. It always pours when it rains.
30. As soon as the train started, he came to the station.
31. Everybody believes in his honesty.
32. Everyone who was present praised my speech.
33. Where there is smoke there is fire.
34. The brave alone deserve the fair.
35. As soon as the bell rang, the students went into the classroom.
36. He failed to notice me when he came in.
37. Every gain has risk.
38. Alfred was the best king that ever reigned in England.
39. Every rose has a thorn.
40. He had money.
41. He saw the Golghar.
42. He failed to keep his word.
43. Only a fool would behave like that.
44. As soon as I reached the station, the train left.
45. Dukharna Pahalwan was as brave as a lion.
46. Only a rich man can afford to lead such a luxurious life.
47. She is sometimes careless.
48. Mumbai is the biggest city in India.
49. Only a little child could talk like that.
50. Everyone will admit that Gandhijee was a great man.
51. Only the rich can travel by aeroplane.
52. Only you can do this.
53. Brutus loved Caesar.
54. As soon as the teacher entered the classroom, every student was silent.
55. As soon as he saw a tiger approaching, he climbed up a tree.
56. He was more laborious than his brother.
57. As soon as he came, he made objections.
58. Patna is bigger than any other town in Bihar.
59. The rose is the most beautiful flower.
60. Keep quiet.
61. You are too lazy to work.
62. The pencil is too small to write with.
63. Lead is the heaviest of all metals.
64. He can do as well as his brother can.
65. He always gets up in the morning.
66. He lived only a few years in Patna.
67. He is too weak to stand up.
68. A good student must be healthy.
69. He is always careful.
70. Every one loves you.
71. You saw the Gateway of India.
72. My daughter plays carrom.
73. When you are late, your teacher beats you.
74. He failed to see me when I came in.
75. Only a coward would flee from his duty.
76. Only my wife has helped me to write this book.
77. As soon as he saw the tiger, he fled.
78. As soon as the robber saw the police, he ran away.
79. As soon as she arrives, she begins to work.
80. Whenever the baby cries, the mother sucks it.
81. Whenever you see her, you are reminded of your beloved.
82. Whenever he comes to me, he does not find me.
83. Shobhana is as beautiful as Bhavna.
84. He is taller than Vikas.
85. The aeroplane flies faster than birds.
86. They have more money than honesty.
87. The pen is mightier than the sword.
88. He reads as carefully as I do.
89. Shakespeare is greater than all other dramatists.
90. Australia is larger than any other island in the world.
91. Akbar was one of the greatest emperors.
92. Mt. Everest is the highest peak in the world.
93. Milton was greater than most other poets of England.
94. He is too honest to be a successful businessman.
95. It was too hot to work.
96. The milk is too hot to drink.
97. Jesus Christ was so kind hearted that he loved even his enemies.
98. The classroom is so large that it will accommodate all of the students.
99. She was a good singer.
100. Only a few students were present in the class.
101. He seldom goes there.
102. The two sisters are alike.
103. He qualified the written examination.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**B. Negative sentence से Affirmative sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने का नियम :**

**Rule (1) :** Negative sentence में प्रयुक्त Main word (प्रमुख शब्द) के opposite word (विलोम शब्द) की मदद से Negative sentence को Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. Never tell a lie. | 1. Always speak the truth. |
| 2. He was not gallant. *(शूरवीर)* | 2. He was cowardly. *(कायर)* |
| 3. Your brother is not intelligent. | 3. Your brother is dull. |
| 4. He will never forget her. | 4. He will always remember. |
| 5. They are not industrious. *(उद्यमी)* | 5. They are lazy. *(आलसी)* |
| 6. He doesn't believe in God. | 6. He disbelieves in God. |
| 7. We are not immortal. | 7. We are mortal. |
| 8. You are not inferior. | 8. You are superior. |
| 9. He was not learned. *(विद्वान)* | 9. He was ignorant. *(अज्ञानी)* |
| 10. Nothing is impossible. | 10. Everything is possible. |

**Rule (2) :** कभी-कभी दो (double) negative meaning expressing words को हटाकर या लोप कर Negative sentence से Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is not without love for her. | 1. He loves her. |
| 2. I am not without honesty. | 2. I have honesty. |
| 3. There is no girl who is not playing. | 3. All the girls are playing. |
| 4. The author did not leave any book uncorrected. | 4. The author corrected all the books. |
| 5. There is no smoke without fire. | 5. Where there is fire there is smoke. |
| 6. The two sisters are not unlike each other. | 6. The two sisters are alike each other. |
| 7. There was no one present who did not cheer. | 7. Everyone present cheered. |
| 8. No one could deny that she was pretty. | 8. Everyone could admit that she was pretty. |
| 9. There is no thunder without lighting. | 9. There is always some lighting before thunder. |
| 10. No body will deny that he did his best. | 10. Every body will admit that he did his best. |

**Rule (3) :** Verb 'to fail' को हटाकर (लोप कर) या प्रयोग कर Negative sentence से Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. He did not fail to see the Qutub Minar. | 1. He saw the Qutab Minar. |
| 2. My daughter didn't fail to respect her teacher. | 2. My daughter respected her teacher. |
| 3. You did not fail to obey your teachers. | 3. You obeyed your teachers. |
| 4. He didn't buy the book. | 4. He failed to buy the book. |
| 5. She did not fail to appear at the SBI Clerk examination. | 5. She appeared at the SBI Clerk examination. |

**Rule (4) :** Negative sentence में प्रयुक्त None but को only/alone में बदलकर Negative sentence से Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. None but you wanted to help her. | 2. Only you wanted to help her. |
| 2. None but Aditi can do this work. | 2. Only Aditi can do this work or Aditi alone can do this work. |
| 3. None but the rich can buy this luxurious car. | 3. Only the rich can buy this luxurious car. |
| 4. None but graduates can apply for this post. | 4. Only graduates can apply for this post. or, Graduates alone can apply for this post. |
| 5. None but the brave deserve the fair. | 5. Only the brave deserve the fair. |

**Rule (5) :** Negative sentence में प्रयुक्त no sooner ..... than को As soon as में बदलकर Negative sentence से Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. No sooner did the bell ring than the students went into the classroom. | 1. As soon as the bell rang, the students went into the class room. |
| 2. No sooner did the thief see the police man than he ran away. | 2. As soon as the thief saw the police man, he ran away. |
| 3. No sooner did he enter the hall than the lecture began. | 3. As soon as he entered the hall, the lecture began. |
| 4. No sooner did he see me than he came up and spoke to me. | 4. As soon as he saw me, he came up and spoke to me. |
| 5. No sooner did he see a snake than he ran away. | 5. As soon as he saw a snake, he ran away. |

**Rule (6) :** Negative sentence में प्रयुक्त Never but को whenever/when में बदल कर Negative sentence से Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. The child never cries but the mother sucks it. | 1. Whenever the child cries, the mother sucks it. |
| 2. I never go to you, but do not find you. | 2. Whenever I go to you, I do not find you. |
| 3. It never rains but (it) pours. | 3. It always pours when it rains. |
| 4. She never sees me but is reminded of her lover. | 4. Whenever she sees me, she is reminded of her lover. |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (7)** : यदि Negative sentence Positive degree में हो तो उसे Comparative degree में बदलकर Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is not so fat as I. | 1. I am fatter than he. |
| 2. Meena is not so beautiful as Veena. | 2. Veena is more beautiful than Meena. |
| 3. He is not as good as Vikas. | 3. Vikas is better than he. |
| 4. I am not as tall as you. | 4. You are taller than I. |
| 5. No other bowler in the Indian Cricket team is so good as Jahir Khan. | 5. Jahir Khan is better than any other bowler in the Indian Cricket team. |
| 6. No other story-book is so popular as the Arbian Nights. | 6. The Arbian Nights is more popular than all other story books. |

**Rule (8)** : यदि Negative sentence Comparative degree में हो तो उसे Positive degree में बदलकर Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is not wiser than you. | 1. You are as wise as he. |
| 2. I am not duller than you. | 2. You are as dull as I. |
| 3. She doesn't know you better than I do. | 3. I know you as well as she does. |
| 4. He does not have more money than honesty. | 4. He has as much honesty as money. |
| 5. You can't run faster than a horse. | 5. A horse can run as fast as you can. |
| 6. Copper is not more useful than Iron. | 6. Iron is as useful as copper. |

**Rule (9)** : यदि Negative sentence Positive degree में हो तो उसे Superlative degree में बदल कर भी Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. No other peak in the world is as high as Mt. Everest. | 1. Mt. Everest is the highest peak in the world. |
| 2. No other animal is so ferocious as the tiger. | 2. The tiger is the most ferocious of all animals. |
| 3. Very few buildings are so beautiful as the Taj Mahal. | 3. The Taj Mahal is one of the most beautiful buildings. |
| 4. Very few metals are as costly as gold. | 4. Gold is one of the costliest metals. |

इन वाक्यों को गौर से देखें :

1. She is not the cleverest of all girls.
2. She is not cleverer than some other girls.
3. Some girls are not less clever than she.
4. Some girls are at least as clever as she.

नोट : उपरोक्त प्रकार के sentences के लिए बताये गए Rules को follow नहीं करें।

**Rule (10)** : यदि Negative sentence *subject + Verb + too + Adjective/Adverb + not + to + V*[1] के structure पर आधारित हो तो so ..... that का प्रयोग कर Affirmative sentence में इसप्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. He is too clever not to under stand the tricks. | 1. He is so clever that he will understand the tricks. |
| 2. Your speech is too impressive not to impress the audience. | 2. Your speech is so impressive that it will impress the audience. |

**Rule (11)** : यदि Negative sentence so ..... that के structure पर आधारित हो तो too ..... to का प्रयोग कर Affirmative sentence में इसप्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. He was so weak that he could not play. | 1. He was too weak to play. |
| 2. The news is so good that it can't be true. | 2. The news is too good to be true. |

**Rule (12)** : कुछ ऐसे Negative sentences हैं जो so ..... that के structure पर आधारित नहीं होते हैं फिर भी too ..... to का प्रयोग कर Affirmative sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किये जाते हैं। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. His services can't be forgotten. | 1. His services have been too great to be forgotten. |

**Rule (13)** : कुछ ऐसे Negative Sentences हैं जिनका Transformation किसी Particular rule (खास नियम) के आधार पर नहीं होता है। ऐसे Negative sentences के अर्थ/भाव को समझकर Suitable word or phrase (उपयुक्त शब्द या शब्द समूह) का प्रयोग कर Negative से Affirmative sentence में इसप्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Negative | Affirmative |
|---|---|
| 1. Your fortune did not improve with time. | 2. Your fortune became worse with time. |
| 2. Don't make a noise. | 2. Keep quiet. |
| 3. He is no fool. | 3. He is a clever man. |
| 4. Don't smoke here. | 4. Refrain from smoking here. |
| 5. He was asked not to smoke. | 5. He was prohibited from smoking. |
| 6. I didn't find the road very bad. | 6. I found the road fair. |
| 7. Not many people were present there. | 7. Only a few people were present there. |
| 8. There is nothing similar in the world. | 8. Everything is dissimilar in the world. |
| 9. Don't spit here. | 9. Refrain from spitting here. |
| 10. She didn't live for many days in Patna. | 10. She lived for only a few days in Patna. |
| 11. Lata is no mean singer. | 11. Lata is a good singer. |

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Transform (change or convert) the following sentences from Negative to Affirmative :*

1. He was not gallant.
2. His brother was not intelligent.
3. I shall never forget him.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


4. The boys are not laborious.
5. She doesn't believe in God.
6. Man is not immortal.
7. I am not senior.
8. Nothing is impossible.
9. Her conduct is not decent.
10. She was not kind.
11. No one will deny it.
12. He is not without pity for the poor.
13. He is not a bad friend.
14. He is not an ungrateful person.
15. She was not guilty.
16. He is no fool.
17. Brutus was not without love for Caesar.
18. You don't disbelieve me.
19. There is no one who will not die one day.
20. There was no alternative for him but to surrender.
21. There is no doubt that he will be invited to attend the function.
22. There is no smoke without fire.
23. There was no one present who was not happy.
24. There was nobody but believed in his honesty.
25. There is nothing in the world which does not change.
26. There was no one present who did not cheer.
27. The two brothers are not unlike each other.
28. There was no one present who didn't shed tears at his death.
29. He is not without money.
30. I am not without hope.
31. He can never forget the happy days he passed in her company.
32. Nobody will deny that your sister did her best.
33. None but a coward could fail to do his duty.
34. There is no rose without a thorn.
35. She did not fail to see the Red fort.
36. Your brother did not fail to love his neighbours.
37. We don't fail to respect our parents.
38. He didn't play cricket.
39. He didn't see you when you came in.
40. You must not have failed to see the Jama Maszid when you went to Delhi.
41. He did not fail to appear at the examination.
42. There is no gain without risk.
43. None but he wanted to help me.
44. None but you will solve it.
45. None but your brother can solve this sum.
46. None but the brave deserve the fair.
47. None but a child could talk like this.
48. None but your friend can help you.
49. None but he deserves to be promoted.
50. None but a millionaire could afford such extravagance.
51. No sooner did he enter the hall than the lecture began.
52. No sooner had the children heard the bell than they ran away.
53. No sooner did the bell ring than the teacher entered the class.
54. No sooner had he seen the lion than he fled.
55. No sooner had they heard the bell than they ran out side.
56. No sooner did the thief see the police man than he ran away.
57. No sooner did he see me than he came up and spoke to me.
58. No sooner did he see a bear than he ran away.
59. No sooner did he go out than it began to rain.
60. The baby never cries but the mother sucks it.
61. He never comes to me but does not find me.
62. It never rains but pours.
63. You never see her but are reminded of your beloved.
64. He is not as intelligent as my friend.
65. You are not more laborious than your brother.
66. The sword is not as mighty as the pen.
67. Birds don't fly so fast as the aeroplane.
68. This girl is not more beautiful than that.
69. She does not run as fast as her friend.
70. He does not have as much honesty as money.
71. He does not know me better than you do.
72. You do not read more carefully than I do.
73. You are not taller than your classmate.
74. She is not more active than you.
75. He is not as good as Aditya.
76. A foolish friend is not as good as a wise enemy.
77. Birds are not as useful as animals.
78. I can't help you as much as he can.
79. I don't like her as much as you do.
80. No other newspaper in India is so powerful as the Hindustan.
81. No other island in the world is so large as Australia.
82. No other metal is as heavy as lead.
83. Very few emperors were as great as Akbar.
84. No other animal is so ferocious as the tiger.
85. Very few poets of England were as great as Milton.
86. Very few buildings are so beautiful as the Taj Mahal.
87. No other peak in the world is as high as Mount Everest.
88. He is too intelligent not to understand it.
89. You are too kind hearted not to forgive him.
90. She is too merciful not to take pity on the poor.
91. He is so upright that he can't accept a bribe.
92. You are so slow that you can't win the race.
93. The news is so good that it can't be true.
94. The tea is so hot that I can't take it.
95. My heart is so full that I can't express my feelings.
96. He is so late that he will not catch the train.
97. Your services can't be forgotten.
98. Her fortune did not improve with time.
99. He was asked not to drink wine.
100. Don't make a noise.
101. Don't spit here.
102. He didn't live for many years in Muzaffarpur.
103. Not many women can keep a secret.
104. There is nothing similar in the world.
105. She is no mean dancer.
106. Never tell a lie.

## II. Interchange of Interrogative and Assertive Sentences :

सामान्यतः Interrogative Sentence का प्रयोग प्रश्न पूछने के लिए होता है, लेकिन Transformation of Sentences के अंतर्गत इसका तात्पर्य प्रश्न पूछना नहीं होता है। Interrogative sentence के अर्थ या भाव में परिवर्तन किये बिना Assertive Sentence में परिवर्तन करना तथा Assertive Sentence के अर्थ या भाव में परिवर्तन किये बिना Interrogative Sentence में परिवर्तन करना Interchange of Interrogative and Assertive sentence कहलाता है।

**Rules for interchanging of Interrogative and Assertive sentences :**

**A. Interrogative Sentences से Assertive Sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने का नियम :**

**Rule 1 :** Auxiliary verbs से Start (प्रारंभ) होने वाले Interrogative Sentences को Assertive sentences में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है।

**Step 1 :** Interrogative form of sentences [*verb + subject + object + ?*] को Assertive form of Sentences [*Subject + verb + object + (.)* में बदल कर लिखें।


yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Step 2 :** Interrogative Sentences में negative words—no, not, never ... etc का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Assertive Sentence में negative words—no, not, never... etc का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक करें। or, Interrogative Sentence में negative words—no, not, never ... etc का प्रयोग हो तो Assertive Sentence में negative words—no, not, never ... etc का प्रयोग नहीं करें।

**Step 3 :** Question marks अर्थात् Note of Interrogation (?) की जगह full stop (.) का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

| Interrogative | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. Are you a Student ? | 1. You are not a student. |
| 2. Are you not a student ? | 2. You are a student. |
| 3. Do you love me ? | 3. You do not love me. |
| 4. Does he not write a letter? | 4. He writes a letter. |
| 5. Can the deaf hear ? | 5. The deaf can not hear. |
| 6. Can we live without water? | 6. We can not live without water. |
| 7. Shall I ever forget her ? | 7. I shall never forget her. |
| 8. Did I play cricket ? | 8. I did not play cricket. |
| 9. Have I no sympathy for him ? | 9. I have sympathy for him. |
| 10. Am I right ? | 10. I am not right. |

**Rule 2 :** यदि Interrogative Sentence 'who' से start हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में Transform करने के लिए Everyone, no one, no body, none का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**Case I.** यदि Interrogative Sentence में negative word का प्रयोग हो तो Assertive Sentence को Everyone से start किया जाता है।

**Case II.** यदि Interrogative Sentence में negative word का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Assertive Sentence को no one, no body, none से start किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Interrogative | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. Who does not know Pt. Nehru ? | 1. Everyone knows Pt. Nehru. |
| 2. Who has not heard of Gandhijee ? | 2. Everyone has heard of Gandhijee . |
| 3. Who does not wish to be happy ? | 3. Everyone wishes to be happy. |
| 4. Who would not cry when struck ? | 4. Every one would cry when struck. |
| 5. Who can deny that honesty is the best policy | 5. Nobody can deny that honesty is the best policy. or. Every one can admit that honesty is the best policy. |
| 6. Who has seen the wind ? | 6. No one has seen the wind. |
| 7. Who can surpass her in loveliness ? | 7. No one can surpass her in loveliness |
| 8. Who can do this work ? | 8. No one can do this work. |
| 9. Who can stand against a woman's will ? | 9. No one can stand against a woman's will. |
| 10. Who can forget those happy days ? | 10. No one can forget those happy days. |

**Rule 3 :** कुछ ऐसे Interrogative sentences हैं जिसे Assertive Sentences में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Interrogative | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. When will he become an engineer ? | 1. He will never become an engineer. |
| 2. When will my daughter have sense ? | 2. My daughter will never have sense. |
| 3. When can their glory fade ? | 3. Their glory can never fade. |
| 4. How can I repay your sympathy ? | 4. I can never repay your sympathy. |
| 5. How can man die better than facing fearful odds ? | 5. Man can not die better than facing fearful odds. |
| 6. Where will an honest man not be respected ? | 6. An honest man will be respected every where. |
| 7. Where shall I have happiness and peace ? | 7. I shall have happiness and peace no where. |
| 8. What more can you do ? | 8. You can do nothing more. |
| 9. What though we happen to be late ? | 9. It does not much matter though we happen to be late. |
| 10. What if he is more intelligent than I ? | 10. It does not matter much even though he is more intelligent than I. |
| 11. What does it matter if we lose ? | 11. It does not matter much even if we lose. |
| 12. Why waste time ? | 12. It is useless to waste time. or , It is no use wasting time. or, It is extremely foolish to waste time. |
| 13. Why cry over spilt oil ? | 13. It is no use crying over spilt oil. or, It is no use to cry over spilt oil. or, it is mere waste of time to cry over spilt oil. |
| 14. Why eat so much ? | 14. It is no use eating so much. or, It is useless to eat so much or, It is extremely improper to eat so much. |

**Note : Interrogative** —*Assertive*

1. If you prick us, do we not bleed ?
   —If you prick us, we bleed.
2. If you tickle us, do we not laugh?
   —If you tickle us, we laugh.

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Transform (change/convert) the following sentences from Interrogative to Assertive :*

1. Are you not laborious?
2. Are you a student ?
3. Am I a teacher ?
4. Am I not an author ?
5. Has he helped her ?

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



6. Did he abuse me ?
7. Was he not absent ?
8. Does he take tea ?
9. Will you ever forget his kindness ?
10. Can the lame walk on foot ?
11. Can the lizard change its colour ?
12. Can a man live for ever ?
13. Could you lift that box ?
14. Should we not help the poor ?
15. Is money every thing ?
16. Does he not make a noise ?
17. Is there any thing refer than love ?
18. Who would not run from a lion ?
19. Who does not love his mother ?
20. Who does not know Gandhijee ?
21. Who can describe the beauty of nature ?
22. Who wants to be poor ?
23. Who looks after the helpless ?
24. Who would not hate such a liar ?
25. Who could do better under the circumstances?
26. Who has no peace ?
27. Who does not know the owl ?
28. Who can touch pitch without being defiled ?
29. Who does not wish to be happy ?
30. Who is here so rude as not to love his country?
31. Why waste time in this fruitless occupation ?
32. When will she become a receptionist ?
33. How can I repay you ?
34. How can he cheat me ?
35. What if she is the daughter of a business man ?
36. What if he doesn't give you money ?
37. What more can I do for him ?
38. What if I am the grandson of a head man ?
39. Why cry over spilt milk?
40. When will you take your responsibility?
41. Can we live without water ?
42. Who will break the record of Sachin Tendulkar?
43. How can man die better than facing fearful odds ?
44. When can their glory fade ?
45. Shall we ever forget our national heroes ?
46. Who can deny that honesty is the best policy ?
47. Is this the way a gentle man should behave ?
48. Can wealth give happiness ?
49. Why blame him ?
50. Where can a man get gold free from cost ?
51. Is there any differences between these two things ?
52. Is this man honest in his dealings ?
53. Was I not sure it was you ?
54. Does he ever drink ?
55. Does anyone like to live here ?
56. Will the glory of our culture ever fade ?
57. Is he serious in his studies ?
58. Does he help her in need ?
59. Have you ever seen the Red fort ?
60. Has he helped her ?
61. Shall we do any thing to displease you ?
62. Will she not marry him ?
63. Do you ever go to see a film ?
64. Who will come to my help?
65. When can I forget your obligation ?
66. Has he done anything to help you ?
67. Is there anything more valuable than good health ?
68. Can a man live by bread alone ?
69. What is sweeter than honey ?
70. Ought we not to love our country ?
71. Is honesty not the best policy ?
72. Does a rolling stone gather any moss ?
73. Was Rome built in a day ?
74. Is all that glitters gold ?
75. Who would talk to such a rude and rough man ?
76. Isn't the Mahabharat the oldest epic in the world ?
77. When can you forgive him for his dishonesty ?
78. Should you do any such foolish thing ?
79. Should one obey unjust orders ?
80. Can anyone tolerate such an insult ?
81. Have you anything to say against me ?
82. Who can predict the out come of the match ?
83. Did they not elect him secretary of the school ?
84. Did the jury not find him guilty of murder ?
85. Who can compare with him in wit and intelligence ?
86. Who disbelieves me ?
87. Who else could have stolen it ?
88. Who can challenge God ?
89. Is virtue not its own reward ?
90. Does a bad workman not quarrel with his tools ?
91. Who is not the architect of his own fortune ?
92. Does A stich in time not save nine ?
93. Is necessity not the mother of invention ?
94. Does slow and steady not win the race ?
95. Is well begun not half done ?
96. Do time and tide not wait for none ?
97. Is face not the index of the mind ?
98. Do birds of a feather not flock together ?
99. Are the fruits of labour not sweeter than the gifts of fortune ?
100. Might this business not lead me to great heights of success ?
101. Is greed not the source of unhappiness in life ?
102. If you prick us, do we not bleed ?
103. If you tickle us, do we not laugh ?

**B. Assertive Sentence से Interrogative Sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने का नियम :**

**Rule (1) :** सामान्यत: Assertive Sentences को Interrogative sentences में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है।

Step 1 : Assertive form of Sentences [*subject + verb + object + (.)*] को interrogative form of Sentences [*verb + subject + object + (?)*] में बदल कर लिखें।

Step 2 : Assertive Sentence में negative words no, not, never ... etc का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Interrogative Sentence में negative words no, not, never ... etc का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक करें। or, Assertive Sentence में negative words—no, not, never ... etc का प्रयोग हो तो Interrogative Sentence में negative words—no, not, never ... etc का प्रयोग नहीं करें।

Step 3 : Full stop (.) की जगह question marks अर्थात् Note of Interrogation (?) का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

| Assertive | Interrogative |
|---|---|
| 1. He makes a noise. | 1. Does he not make a noise ? |
| 2. Gandhijee did not tell a lie. | 2. Did Gandhijee tell a lie? |
| 3. He was guilty . | 3. Was he not guilty ? |
| 4. The dumb can not speak | 4. Can the dumb speak ? |
| 5. We must respect our teachers. | 5. Must we not respect our teachers ? |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | |
|---|---|
| 6. He was a villain to do such a deed. | 6. Was he not a villain to do such a deed? |
| 7. We never forget her kindness to us. | 7. Can we ever forget her kindness to us ? |
| 8. There is nothing greater than love. | 7. Is there any thing greater than love ? |
| 9. Blood is thicker than water | 9. Isn't blood thicker than water. |
| 10. We were not born simply to die. | 10. Were we born simply to die? |
| 11. There is nothing better than a busy life | 11. Is there anything better than a busy life ? |
| 12. Prevention is better than cure. | 12. Isn't prevention better than cure ? |

**Rule (2) :** यदि Assertive Sentence Everyone, noone, no body, none से स्टार्ट (start प्रारंभ) हो तो उसे Interrogative Sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने के लिए 'who' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**Case I :** यदि Assertive Sentence Everyone से स्टार्ट हो तथा negative word का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Interrogative Sentence को who से स्टार्ट किया किया जाता है तथा suitable negative word का प्रयोग कर Interrogative Sentence में Transform किया जाता है।

**Case II :** यदि Assertive Sentence no one, no body, none से स्टार्ट हो तो Interrogative Sentence में Transform करने के लिए who का प्रयोग होता है तथा negalive word का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

| Assertive | Interrogative |
|---|---|
| 1. Every one loves his country. | 1. Who does not love his country ? |
| 2. Every one knows Smt. Gandhi. | 2. Who does not know Smt. Gandhi ? |
| 3. Every one wants to be successful. | 3. Who does not want to be successful ? |
| 4. Every one believes in God ? | 4. Who does not believe in God ? |
| 5. Every one likes to get money. | 5. Who does not like to get money ? |
| 6. Nobody will believe such a liar. | 6. Who will believe such a liar? |
| 7. No one could do better under the circumstances. | 7. Who could do better under the circumstances ? |
| 8. No one can touch pitch without being defiled. | 8. Who can touch pitch without being defiled ? |
| 9. No one can be expected to submit for ever to injustice. | 9. Who can be expected to submit for ever to injustice? |
| 10. No one is without problems. | 10. Who is without problems ? |

**Rule (3) :** कुछ ऐसे Assertive Sentences हैं। जिसे Interrogative Sentences में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Assertive | Interrogative |
|---|---|
| 1. He will never become an I.A.S. | 1. When will he become an I.A.S ? |
| 2. Your brother will never have honesty. | 2. When will your brother have honesty ? |
| 3. You can never repay his kindness. | 3. How can you repay his kindness ? |
| 4. A truthful man will be respected every where. | 4. Where will a truthful man not be respected ? |
| 5. I can do nothing more. | 5. What more can I do ? |
| 6. It does not matter much even though nobody helps me. | 6. What if nobody helps me. |
| 7. It is useless to waste time in this fruitless occupation. | 7. Why waste time in this fruitless occupation ? |
| 8. It is no use crying over spilt juice | 8. Why cry over spilt juice ? |
| 9. It is useless to drink so much | 9. Why drink so much ? |

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Transform (change/convert) the following Sentences from Assertive to Interrogative :*

1. He was a laborious man.
2. You are not innocent.
3. They will not help me.
4. He does not tell a lie.
5. He helped me last month.
6. The dumb can not speak.
7. Man is mortal.
8. The blind can not see.
9. The beauty of Radha is beyond description.
10. Money is not everything.
11. No body will vote for him.
12. Everyone is ready to die for his country.
13. His regulation will never die.
14. This is an interesting story.
15. There is nothing better than a busy life.
16. This is not the way to do it.
17. Nilu always abused me.
18. He always speaks the truth.
19. I like to read a detective novel.
20. Lata sings very beautifully.
21. He eats when he is hungry.
22. Your uncle never helps the poor.
23. We do not ever hurt the sentiments of others.
24. His father earns a lot of money.
25. I go to temple every Sunday.
26. The publisher helps me whenever I am in need.
27. Children like sweets.
28. I love him more than his father.
29. If you prick us, we bleed.
30. If you tickle us, we laugh.
31. Nothing is so valuable as good health.
32. Virtue is its own reward.
33. Knowledge is greater than power.
34. A man is known by the company he keeps.
35. It is useless to flog a dead horse.
36. He came to meet you in the evening.
37. I bought a grand gift to present on my son's birthday.
38. The rose is the loveliest of all flowers.
39. We can not get blood out of a stone.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



40. Prevention is better than cure.
41. There is nothing brighter than hope.
42. Cowards die many times before their death.
43. We could have done nothing without your help.
44. Everyone would love his country.
45. Everyone was delighted to hear his sweet song.
46. Fools rush in where angels fear to tread.
47. Honesty is the best policy.
48. Face is the index of the mind.
49. Time and tide wait for none.
50. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
51. It does not matter if we fail.
52. I shall never forget those happy days.
53. It can not be right.
54. Everyone wants to lead in his life.
55. No one can challenge him.
56. She will never do so.
57. You were tired.
58. He wants to help me.
59. I can not abandone my honesty.
60. There is nothing greater than sympathy.
61. The publisher promised to help me.
62. Everyone wants to earn money.
63. Everyone knows that a little knowledge is a dangerous thing.
64. Everyone wants to go ahead in his life.
65. Everybody has heard the name of Mother Teressa.
66. No one will believe in his honesty.
67. No one could do better under the circumstances.
68. You have never seen such a beautiful garden.
69. A mother can not forget her son.
70. No one can put up with such a conduct.
71. Everyone wishes to be happy.
72. Birds of a feather flock together.
73. Slow and steady wins the race.
74. No thing is more valuable than good health.
75. If you prick us, we bleed.
76. If you tickle us, we laugh.

Note : (i) Flog (v)– to beat hard with a whip or rod—चाबुक से मारना/डण्डे से मारना।

(ii) Tread (v)– To set foot on, trample —पग रखना, ऊपर होकर चलना (किसी वस्तु के)।

## III. Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentences :

सामान्यतः Exclamatory Sentence से आश्चर्य, सुख/हर्ष, दुःख/विषाद, क्रोध/रंज, घृणा/नफरत, प्रशंसा आदि का बोध होता है।

Exclamatory Sentence के अर्थ/भाव को समझकर Assertive Sentence में तथा Assertive Sentence के अर्थ/भाव को समझकर Exclamatory Sentence में Transform (बदला) किया जाता है।

ध्यान दें :

1. Exclamatory Sentence —How beautiful this scene is!
अर्थ-कितना सुन्दर यह दृश्य है!

2. Assertive Sentence—This scene is very beautiful.
अर्थ-यह दृश्य बहुत सुन्दर है।

### Rules for Interchanging of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentences :

**A. Exclamatory Sentence से Assertive Sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने का नियम :**

**Rule (1)** :यदि Exclamatory Sentence what/how से start हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है।

Step 1 :Exclamatory form of Sentence को Assertive form of Sentence में बदल कर *subject + verb + other words* के order (क्रम) में रखें।

Step 2 :What/How के बाद Adjective/Adverb का प्रयोग हो तो what/How के बदले very का प्रयोग करें।

Step 3 :What के बाद noun का प्रयोग हो तो what के बदले great, fine, lovely, wonderful, strange, peculiar, terrible etc में से किसी एक Suitable Adjective का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. What a pretty flower it is! | 1. It is a very pretty flower. |
| 2. What delicious flavour these mangoes have! | 2. These mangoes have very delicious flavour. |
| 3. What a wonderful creature an elephant is! | 3. An elephant is a very wonderful creature. |
| 4. What a fool you are! | 4. You are a great fool. |
| 5. What a lovely sight it is ! | 5. It is a very lovely sight |
| 6. What a piece of work is man ! | 6. Man is a wonderful/ strange piece of work. |
| 7. How beautiful a girl she is ! | 7. She is a very beautiful girl. |
| 8. How old you are ! | 8. You are very old. |
| 9. How beautifully she dances ! | 9. She dances very beautifully. |
| 10. How stupid of me to forget her name! | 10. It was very stupid of me to forget her name. |

Note : यदि Exclamatory Sentence में Subject तथा Verb का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Assertive Sentence में Transform (बदलते) करते समय Sentence के अर्थ/भाव के मुताबिक Suitable subject तथा Verb का प्रयोग अपने विवेक से करें ताकि Sentence का अर्थ सरलता से स्पष्ट हो जाय। जैसे—

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. What a big house ! | 1. It is a very big house. |
| 2. What a fall ! | 2. It is/was a great fall. |
| 3. What a lovely garden ! | 3. It is a very lovely garden. |
| 4. How nice ! | 4. It is very nice. |
| 5. How funny ! | 5. It is very funny. |
| 6. What a man! | 6. He is a strange man. |
| 7. What a building ! | 7. It is a big building. |
| 8. How beautiful a girl! | 8. She is a very beautiful girl. |

**Rule (2)** :यदि Exclamatory Sentence would that, O that, oh that, O for, oh for, If I could only, oh if I could only etc. से start हो तो Assertive Sentence में Transform करते समय Assertive Sentence को I wish or I earnestly desire से स्टार्ट किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. O that I were rich ! | 1. I wish I were rich. |
| 2. Would that I had not wasted my time, when I was young ! | 2. I wish I had not wasted my time, when I was young. |
| 3. O that he were my sincere friend! | 3. I wish that he were my sincere friend. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 4. Oh that I had not lived to see this day ! | 4. I wish I had not lived to see this day. |
| 5. O for a cup of tea! | 5. I wish for a cup of tea. or I wish I had a cup of tea. |
| 6. Oh for a good building! | 6. I wish I had a good building. |
| 7. If I could only gain the first prize ! | 7. I wish that I could gain the first prize. or I earnestly desire to get the first prize. |
| 8. Oh if I could only see my native place again! | 8. I wish I could see my native place again. or I earnestly desire to see my native place again. or I should very much like to see my native place again. |

**Rule (3) :** यदि Exclamatory Sentence Infinitive (to + $V^1$) से स्टार्ट हो तो Assertive Sentence में Transform (बदलते) करते समय Assertive Sentence को it is strange + that clause के रूप में लिखा जाता है तथा that clause में Subject के बाद should का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. To think of her winning a prize ! | 1. It is strange that she should win a prize. |
| 2. To think of your forgetting your own name! | 2. It is strange that you should forget your own name. |

**Rule (4) :** यदि Exclamatory Sentence के दो पार्ट (भाग) हों तथा दोनों पार्ट (भाग) 'and' से जुड़े हों तो Assertive Sentence में Transform करते समय Assertive Sentence को *It is + adjective (strange/astonishing/shocking/mean) + that clause* के रूप में लिखा जाता है तथा that clause में उपयुक्त Subject के बाद should का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. A saint and afraid of ghosts! | 1. It is strange that a saint should be afraid of ghosts. |
| 2. Such a teacher and the builder of our nation ! | 2. It is shocking that such a teacher should be the builder of our nation. |
| 3. An electrician and afraid of sparks! | 3. It is strange/shocking that an electrician should be afraid of sparks. |

**Rule (5) :** यदि Exclamatory Sentence *how + adjective + of* से स्टार्ट हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है : अर्थात् Assertive Sentence को *Subject + verb + Adjective + enough + Infinitive (to + $V^1$) + Object + (.)* के Structure में बदल दिया जाता है। जैसे—

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. How stupid of her to do that work ! | 1. She was stupid enough to do that work. |
| 2. How selfish of you to cheat your assistant ! | 2. You were selfish enough to cheat your assistant. |
| 3. How foolish of her to marry me! | 3. She was foolish enough to marry me. |

**Rule (6) :** यदि Exclamatory Sentence Alas से स्टार्ट हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में It is extremely sad or It is sad to think का प्रयोग कर Transform किया जाता है।

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. Alas ! he is ruined. | 1. It is extremely sad that he is ruined. |
| 2. Alas that my best friend is no more! | 2. It is extremely sad that my best friend is no more. |
| 3. Alas that he should die so young! | 3. It is sad to think that he should die so young. |

**Rule (7) :** यदि Exclamatory Sentence Exclamatory sound + Sentence के structure पर आधारित हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है।

**Condition I :** यदि Exclamatory Sentence—Bravo! + Sentence के Structure पर आधारित हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में *It is a matter of Praise + that + clause* के Structure में बदल कर Transform किया जाता है।

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. Bravo! They have done well. | 1. It is a matter of praise that they have done well. |
| 2. Bravo! you have saved the life of the child. | 2. It is a matter of praise that you have saved the life of the child. |
| 3. Bravo! well played. | 3. It is a matter of praise that you played well. |

**Condition II :** यदि Exclamatory Sentence—Hurrah! + Sentence के structure पर आधारित हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में *It is a matter of joy + that + clause* के Structure में बदलकर Transform किया जाता है।

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. Hurrah! we have won the match | 1. It is a matter of joy that we have won the match. |
| 2. Hurrah ! the world cup is ours. | 2. It is a matter of joy that the world cup is ours. |

**Condition III**—यदि Exclamatory sentence– fie! fie! + sentence के structure पर आधारित हो तो उसे Assertive Sentence में *It is a matter of contempt /shame + that + clause* के structure में बदल कर Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. Fie ! fie ! he has cheated his friend. | 1. It is a matter of contempt/shame that he has cheated his friend. |
| 2. Fie! Fie! you have deceived your own brother. | 2. It is a matter of contempt/shame that you have deceived your own brother. |
| 3. Fie! Fie! you are a liar. | 3. It is a matter of contempt/shame that you are a liar. |

**Rule (8) :** कुछ ऐसे Exclamatory Sentences हैं जिसे Assertive Sentences में किसी खास नियम को follow (अनुकरण) कर Transform नहीं किया जाता है; बल्कि different (विभिन्न) methods से Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


| Exclamatory | Assertive |
|---|---|
| 1. What might be done, if men were wise! | 1. Great things might be done, if men were wise. |
| 2. Too late! Too late! He is now no more. | 2. It is now too late, he is no more. |
| 3. Well done! | 3. That was well done. Or you have done well. |
| 4. How sweet are the uses of adversity! | 4. Sweet Indeed, are the uses of adversity. |
| 5. O what a fall was there, my country men! | 5. That was a terrible fall, my country men. |
| 6. Woe worth the day when I first met that woman! | 6. It was an evil day when I first met that woman. |
| 7. Death before dishonour! | 7. It is better to die than to be dishonoured. |
| 8. A horse! A horse! My kingdom for horse. | 8. A horse I must have, even at the price of my kingdom |
| 9. What sweet delight a quiet life brings! | 9. A quiet life brings a very sweet delight. |
| 10. That she should dare to oppose me! | 10. It is strange that she should dare to oppose me. |

## Practice Set

Q. 1. *Transform (change/convert) the following Sentences from Exclamatory to Assertive:*

1. What a charming sight it is !
2. What a fool you are!
3. What a scene it is!
4. What a piece of work man is!
5. What an interesting story it is!
6. What a beautiful woman she is !
7. What a funny fellow he is!
8. What a terrible woman she is!
9. What noble thoughts you have!
10. What beautiful eyes she has!
11. What a defeat it was!
12. What a man he is!
13. What a beautiful scene this is!
14. What a horrible sight!
15. What tiny men the pygmies must have been!
16. What a wonderful creature an elephant is!
17. What a creature!
18. What a fool!
19. What a girl she is!
20. What a lovely child!
21. What an idea!
22. What a delicious flavour these mangoes have!
23. What a sweet voice it is!
24. What a gallant fight it was!
25. What a silly question it is!
26. What folly!
27. What delay!
28. What a lame excuse!
29. What a pity he was drowned!
30. What a miserable life you lead!
31. What a foolish question to ask!
32. What sweet delight a quiet life brings!
33. What a wonderful creature a lion is!
34. How dark the night was!
35. How sweetly you sing!
36. How carefully he drives the jeep!
37. How easily they crack the nuts with their teeth!
38. How happy is the man of blameless life!
39. How stupid of me to forget his name!
40. How well fitted the camel is for the work he has to do!
41. How wonderful!
42. How fast he speaks!
43. How beautiful these flowers are!
44. How funny!
45. How old you are!
46. How swiftly he writes!
47. How fast the train is!
48. How horrible the noise is!
49. How nasty the man is!
50. How stupid some people are!
51. How terrible the sight was!
52. How noble the lady was!
53. How sweet it smells!
54. How funny his manners are!
55. How sweet the smile of children is!
56. How beautiful the stars look at night!
57. How innocent he looks!
58. How childish your talks are!
59. How nice!
60. How awkwardly he manages his sword!
61. How the mighty fallen is!
62. How sad the deserted city looks!
63. How sweet the moon light sleeps upon this bank!
64. How beautiful the night is!
65. How charming she looks!
66. How bright the day is!
67. How carelessly he keeps his things!
68. How sweet her voice is!
69. How kind of you to help me!
70. What a nuisance he is!
71. What a change from a beggar to a millionaire!
72. Would that we had never met him!
73. Would that my brother were here today!
74. O that my grand father were alive!
75. O that I were a king!
76. O that I could see my grand father!
77. O that I were young again!
78. O that he were my sincere friend!
79. Would that he were not unkind to me!
80. Would that I were true to my word!
81. Would that you had not failed at your examination!
82. Oh that I were safe at home!
83. Oh for the wings of a dove!
84. Oh for a good horse!
85. O that the desert were my dwelling place!
86. O for a cup of coffee!
87. Oh for a good house!
88. O that it were not cloudy today!
89. If I could only get the first prize!
90. If I could only stand first in the examination!
91. O if only I could raise the cover and look inside!
92. If only we had thought of this before!
93. If only I could get one more chance!
94. If I could only see her!
95. To think of their quarrelling here!
96. To think of your failure in English!
97. O for a prize!
98. A student and afraid of studies!
99. A fireman and afraid of sparks!

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



100. A saint and afraid of ghosts!
101. Such a notorious thief he is!
102. O for a draught of cold water!
103. A swimmer and afraid of water!
104. To think of my seeing you here!
105. Death before dishonour!
106. Such a mischievous boy he is!
107. How clever of you to betray her!
108. How foolish of him to give me his note book!
109. Alas! I am ruined.
110. Alas! he is no more.
111. Alas that he should die so young!
112. Alas that the poor should die of hunger!
113. Such a girl and my wife!
114. Fie! Fie! You have deceived your father.
115. Hurrah! We have won the match.
116. Bravo! She won the lottery.
117. To think of our meeting here.
118. Well done!
119. Too late! Too late! You can not catch the train now.
120. How dangerous a thing a little knowledge is!
121. To think of your daring to criticize my conduct!
122. Would that he had not spent the money!

**B. Assertive Sentence से Exclamatory Sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने का तरीका :**

Exclamatory sentence से Assertive Sentence में Transform (बदलने) करने की विपरीत प्रक्रिया (opposite process) को अपना कर Assertive Sentence से Exclamatory Sentence में Transform किया जाता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :

| Assertive | Exclamatory |
|---|---|
| 1. It is a very horrible sight. | 1. What a horrible sight! |
| 2. She dances very beautifully! | 2. How beautifully she dances! |
| 3. Man is a strange piece of work. | 3. What a piece of work man is! |
| 4. You are a great fool. | 4. What a fool you are! |
| 5. It is a lovely garden. | 5. What a lovely garden it is! |
| 6. I wish I were a king. | 6. Would that/o that I were king! |
| 7. He wishes he were young again | 7. O that/would that he were young again! |
| 8. She wishes she could get one more chance. | 8. O that/would that she could get one more chance! or O for/oh for one more chance! or if only she could get one more chance! |
| 9. I earnestly desire to see him. | 9. If I could only see him! |
| 10. It is strange that we should quarrel here. | 10. To think of our quarrelling here! |
| 11. It is shocking that such a man should be her husband. | 11. Such a man and her husband! |
| 12. It is a pity that a student should be afraid of hard labour. | 12. A student and afraid of hard labour! |
| 13. I was kind enough to save her. | 13. How kind of me to save her! |
| 14. She was selfish enough to betray her lover. | 14. How selfish of her to betray her lover! |
| 15. It is extremely sad that my grand mother is no more | 15. Alas that my grand mother is no more. |
| 16. It is a matter of praise that he won the first prize. | 16. Bravo! He won the first prize. |
| 17. It is a matter of joy that they have won the match. | 17. Hurrah! They have won the match. |
| 18. It is a matter of contempt/ Shame that you are a thief | 18. Fie! Fie! you are a thief. |

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Transform (change/convert) the following Sentences from Assertive to exclamatory :*

1. This is a very good plan.
2. He was a great fool.
3. It is a very charming sight.
4. Man is a strange piece of work.
5. You are a great fool.
6. It is an interesting story.
7. She is a very beautiful woman.
8. He is a very funny fellow.
9. She is a very terrible woman.
10. You have very noble thoughts.
11. She has beautiful eyes.
12. It was a great defeat.
13. This is a very beautiful scene.
14. It was a very horrible sight.
15. The pygmies must have been very tiny men.
16. An elephant is a very wonderful creature.
17. It was a peculiar creature.
18. He was a great fool.
19. It was a very lovely child.
20. It was a good idea.
21. These mangoes have very delicious flavour.
22. It is a very sweet voice.
23. It was a very gallant fight.
24. It is a very silly question.
25. It was a great folly.
26. It was great delay.
27. It is a very lame excuse.
28. It was a pity that he was drowned.
29. You lead a very miserable life.
30. It is a very foolish question to ask.
31. A quiet life brings a very sweet delight.
32. A lion is a very wonderful creature.
33. The night was very dark.
34. You sing very sweetly.
35. He drives the jeep very carefully.
36. They crack the nuts with their teeth very easily.
37. The man of blameless life is very happy.
38. I was stupid enough to forget his name.
39. The camel is very well fitted for the work he has to do.
40. It is very wonderful.
41. He speaks very fast.
42. These flowers are very beautiful.
43. It is very funny.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



44. You are very old.
45. He writes very swiftly.
46. The train is very fast.
47. The noise is very horrible.
48. The man is very nasty.
49. Some people are very stupid.
50. The sight was very terrible.
51. The lady was very noble.
52. It smells very sweet.
53. His manners are very funny.
54. The smile of children is very sweet.
55. The stars look very beautiful at night.
56. He looks very innocent.
57. Your talks are very childish.
58. It is very nice.
59. He manages his sword very awkwardly.
60. The might are indeed fallen.
61. The deserted city looks very sad.
62. The moon light sleeps very sweetly upon this bank.
63. Night is very beautiful.
64. She looks very charming.
65. The day is very bright.
66. He keeps his things very carelessly.
67. Her voice is very sweet.
68. You are kind enough to help me.
69. He is a big nuisance.
70. From a beggar to a millionaire is a wonderful change.
71. I wish that he had not spent the money.
72. I wish that we had never met him.
73. I wish my brother were here today.
74. I wish my grand father were alive.
75. I wish I were a king.
76. I wish I could see my grand father.
77. I wish I were young again.
78. I wish he were not unkind to me.
79. I wish I were true to my word.
80. I wish you had not failed at your examination.
81. I wish I were safe at home.
82. I wish I had the wings of a dove.
83. I wish I had a good horse.
84. I wish the desert were my dwelling place.
85. I wish I had a cup of coffee.
86. I wish I had a good house.
87. I wish it were not cloudy today.
88. I earnestly desire to get the first prize.
89. I earnestly desire to stand first in the examination.
90. I wish I could raise the cover and look inside.
91. I wish I could get one more chance.
92. I wish I were a king.
93. I earnestly desire to see her.
94. It is strange that they should quarrel here.
95. It is strange that you should fail in English.
96. I wish I had won a prize.
97. It is strange that a student should be afraid of studies.
98. It is strange/astonishing that a fire man should be afraid of sparks.
99. It is strange that a saint should be afraid of ghosts.
100. He is a notorious thief.
101. I wish I had a draught of cold water.
102. It is strange that a swimmer should be afraid of water.
103. It is strange that I should see you here.
104. It is better to die than to be dishonoured.
105. He is a mischievous boy.
106. You were clever enough to betray her.
107. He was foolish enough to give me his note book.
108. It is extremely sad that I am ruined.
109. It is extremely sad that he is no more.
110. It is extremely sad that he should die so young.
111. It is extremely sad that the poor should die of hunger.
112. It is shocking that such a girl should be my wife.
113. It is a matter of contempt that you have deceived your father.
114. It is a matter of joy that we have won the match.
115. It is a matter of praise that she won the lottery.
116. It is strange that we should meet here.
117. It is well done.
118. It is now too late for you to catch the train.
119. A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.
120. It is strange that you should dare to criticise my conduct.

## IV. Interchange of one part of speech for another :

Sentence के अर्थ में परिवर्तन किये बिना एक part of speech के बदले दूसरे part of Speech का प्रयोग कर Sentence को रूपान्तरित (Transform) करने की प्रक्रिया को Interchange of parts of speech कहा जाता है।

### Rules for interchanging one part of speech for another

**Rule (1) :** Verb के बदले Noun का प्रयोग कर Sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. This kind of joke does not amuse her. *(amuse—verb)*
   = This kind of joke does not give her any amusement. *(amusement—noun)*
2. It costs ten rupees. *(costs—verb)*
   = The cost is ten rupees. *(cost—noun)*
3. The soldiers fought bravely. *(fought—verb)*
   = The soldiers put a brave fight. *(fight—noun)*
4. You have disgraced your family. *(disgraced—verb)*
   = You have a disgrace to your family. *(disgrace—noun)*
5. He could not consent to my going. *(consent—verb)*
   = He could not give his consent to my going. *(consent—noun)*

**Rule (2) :** Noun के बदले Verb का प्रयोग कर Sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. I gave a curt reply. *(reply—noun)*
   = I replied curtly. *(replied—verb)*
2. She promised her support to the motion. *(support—noun)*
   = She promised to support the motion. *(support—verb)*

**Rule (3) :** Noun के बदले Adjective का प्रयोग कर sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. You showed generosity even to your enemies. *(generosity—noun)*
   = You were generous even to your enemies.
2. There is a slight difference between the two pictures. *(difference—noun)*
   = The two pictures are slightly different. *(different—Adjective)*

**Rule (4) :** Adverb के बदले Adjective का प्रयोग कर Sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. A dog is wonderfully faithful. *(wonderfully—Adverb)*
   = The faithfulness of a dog is wonderful. *(wonderful—Adjective)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



2. She will probably come tomorrow. *(Probably—Adverb)*
= It is probable that she will come tomorrow. *(probable—adjective)*

3. He passed an hour anxiously. *(anxiously—Adverb)*
= He passed an anxious hour. *(anxious—Adjective)*

**Rule (5) :** Adjective के बदले Adverb का प्रयोग कर Sentence को इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. It is quite evident that she has been insulted. *(evident —Adjective)*
= Evidently she has been insulted.

2. My brother is careless in everything that he does. *(Careless—Adjective)*
= Everything that my brother does is done carelessly. *(carelessly—Adverb)*

3. Your father was very generous to all. *(generous—Adjective)*
= Your father treated all very generously. *(generously—Adverb)*

**Rule (6) :** Noun के बदले Adverb का प्रयोग कर Sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. It is not my intention to harm him. *(intention—noun)*
= I do not harm him intentionally. *(intentionally—Adverb)*

**Rule (7) :** Adverb के बदले verb का प्रयोग कर sentence को इस प्रकार Transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. You gave me help ungrudgingly. *(ungrudgingly—Adverb)*
= You did not grudge me help. *(grudge—verb)*

**Rule (8) :** Adverb के बदले noun का प्रयोग कर sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. Man is at times inclined to act dishonestly. *(dishonestly—Adverb)*
= Man is at times inclined to dishonesty. *(dishonesty—Noun)*

2. The teacher examined the copy carefully. *(carefully—Adverb)*
= The teacher examined the copy with care. *(care—noun)*

**Rule (9) :** Verb के बदले Adverb का प्रयोग कर Sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. He presumed to ignore my advice. *(presumed—verb)*
= He presumptuously ignored my advice. *(presumptuously—Adverb)*

**Rule (10) :** Adjective के बदले Noun का प्रयोग कर Sentence को इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है। जैसे—

The act made the negro slaves free. *(free—adjective)*
= The act gave freedom to the negro slaves. *(freedom—noun)*

**Note :** इसी प्रकार other parts of speech का Interchange कर sentence को Transform किया जाता है।

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the verbs in italics by nouns :*

1. I *believe* that he is sincere.
2. I did not *intend* to harm you.
3. You promised to *co-operate* fully with me.
4. They *fought* bravely.
5. I have not *intendaed* to leave the city.

**Q. 2.** *Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the nouns in italics by verbs :*

1. The *cost* of this book is two hundred rupees.
2. You have not given your *advice* to my brother.
3. She can not give me any *entertainment*.
4. He made a *success* of all his under takings.
5. You are a *disgrace* to your family.

**Q. 3.** *Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the adjectives in italics by nouns :*

1. A horse is wonderfully *faithful*.
2. The fox is wonderfully *intelligent*.
3. He was *successful* in winning the first prize.
4. The two shades are slightly *different*.
5. He was *generous* even to his enemies.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.**

1. My *belief* is that he is sincere.
2. It was not my *intention* to harm you.
3. You promised your full *co-operation* with me.
4. They put up a brave *fight*.
5. I have no intention of leaving the city.

**Q. 2.**

1. This book *costs* two hundred rupees.
2. You have not *advised* my brother.
3. She can not *entertain* me.
4. He *succeeded* in all his undertakings.
5. You have *disgraced* your family.

**Q. 3.**

1. The *faithfulness* of a horse is wonderful.
2. The *intelligence* of the fox is wonderful.
3. He made a *success* of winning the first prize.
4. There is a slight *difference* between the two shades.
5. He showed *generosity* even to his enemies.

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Analysis of Sentences 26

Analysis का अर्थ 'वाक्य विश्लेषण' होता है। यह synthesis का opposite word है। किसी Sentence के अंगों या अंशों को अलग-अलग कर उनके खंडों के आपसी संबंध को बतलाने का नाम Analysis है। अतः इसे हम वाक्य विश्लेषण कहते हैं।

### 1. Sentence

**Sentence :** शब्दों के अर्थपूर्ण संगठन को Sentence कहते हैं जिसमें कम-से-कम एक subject और एक predicate रहते हैं। जैसे—

A bad boy quarrels with his friends.

### 2. Subject and Predicate

**Subject and Predicate :** I. Subject उस शब्द या शब्द समूह को कहते हैं जो किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु के विषय में कुछ प्रकट करे तथा II. Predicate उस शब्द या शब्द समूह को कहते हैं जो Subject के बारे में क्या कहा जाता है वह स्पष्ट करे। जैसे—

**Def. :** I. *The name of the person or thing we speak about is called the subject.*

II. *What we say about the subject is called the predicate.* जैसे—

| Subject | Predicate |
|---|---|
| 1. girls | play hockey. |
| 2. The poor little boy | sat in a corner. |
| 3. The students of our class | made Ajay captain. |
| 4. A good boy | reads his book. |
| 5. Mountains | add to the beauty of a country. |

### 3. Finite Verb

**Finite verb :** वह verb जो अपने subject के number तथा person के मुताबिक प्रयुक्त होता है finite verb कहलाता है। जैसे—

I <u>write</u> a letter.
finite verb

He <u>writes</u> a letter.
finite verb

### 4. Absolute verb

**Absolute verb :** वह verb जो अपने subject के number तथा person के मुताबिक प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है Absolute verb कहलाता है। जैसे—

I can speak English.

He can speak English.

### 5. Clause

**Clause :** शब्दों के उस समूह को clause कहते हैं जिसमें एक subject तथा एक predicate होता है, या एक subject तथा एक finite verb होता है। यह एक Sentence का part होता है।

**Def. :** *A clause is group of words forming part of a Sentence, and containing a subject and predicate.* जैसे—

1. <u>They rested</u> <u>when evening came.</u>
I II

2. <u>We know</u> <u>that he is not sincere in his duty.</u>
I II

उपरोक्त example no (1) तथा (2) में दो-दो शब्द समूहों का प्रयोग हुआ है जिनमें क्रमशः एक subject तथा एक predicate है, लेकिन ये शब्द समूह स्वतंत्र Sentence नहीं हैं बल्कि एक ही Sentence के parts हैं अतः ये शब्द समूह clauses हैं।

### 6. Kinds of Clause

**I. Principal clause :** वह clause जिसमें Sentence का Main verb होता है तथा जिसका अर्थ स्वतः स्पष्ट हो जाता है। अर्थात् यह अपने अर्थ के लिए दूसरे clause पर निर्भर नहीं करता है। principal clause कहलाता है। जैसे—

1. <u>They rested</u> <u>when evening came.</u>
P.C S.C

2. <u>We know</u> <u>that he is not sincere in his duty.</u>
P.C S.C

उपरोक्त example no. (1) में they rested—principal clause है तथा example no. (2) में we know—principal clause है। चूंकि इसका अर्थ स्वतः स्पष्ट हो रहा है।

**Note :** Principal clause को Main clause or Independent clause भी कहा जाता है।

**II. Co-ordinate clause :** Co-ordinating conjunctions से जुड़े हुए clause को Co-ordinating clause कहा जाता है तथा इसका संबंध principal और Subordinate clause दोनों से हो सकता है। जैसे—

1. He went to Sonepur fair and bought a horse.
(a) He went to Sonepur fair. —*Principal clause.*
(b) and bought a horse.
—*Co-ordinate clause or Principal clause*
(c) Co-ordinating conjunction. —*'and'*

**Note :** And, but, as well as, yet, either or, neither ..... nor etc को Co-ordinating Conjunctions कहा जाता है। विशेष जानकारी के लिए Conjunction-chapter का अध्ययन करें।

**III. Subordinate clause :** वह clause जो अपने meaning (अर्थ) के लिए Principal clause पर निर्भर करता है तथा जो sub ordinating conjunctions से स्टार्ट होता है, Subordinate clause कहलाता है। जैसे—

1. He went to market and bought a costly wrist watch that was stolen a few weeks later.
(a) He went to market. —*Principal clause.*
(b) and bought a costly wrist watch. —*Co-ordinate clause*
(c) that was stolen a few weeks later-subordinate clause.

**Note :** that, if, as if, whether, until, unless, lest, when, where, because .... etc. को subordinating conjunctions कहा जाता है। विशेष जानकारी के लिए conjunction chapter का अध्ययन करें।

➢ **Subordinate clause तीन प्रकार के होते हैं।**
1. Noun clause
2. Adjective Clause
3. Adverb Clause

### 1. Noun Clause

**1. Noun Clause :** वह clause जिसमें एक subject और एक predicate रहता है तथा जो noun के समान कार्य करता है Noun clause कहलाता है।

**Def. :** *A noun clause is a group of words which contains a subject and a predicate of its own, and does the work of a noun.* जैसे—

He expects that he will get a prize.

उपरोक्त Sentence में that he will get a prize ऐसा group of words है जिसमें एक subject है। यह clause verb-expects का object है तथा यह noun की तरह कार्य कर रहा है। अतः यह noun clause है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**2. Adjective clause**

**2. Adjective clause :** यह clause जिसमें एक subject और एक predicate रहता है तथा Adjective के समान कार्य करता है। Adjective clause कहलाता है। यह Principal clause में प्रयुक्त noun or pronoun की विशेषता बतलाता है।

**Def. :** *An adjective clause is a group of words which contains a subject and a predicate of its own, and does the work of an adjective.* जैसे—

The chair which has a broken leg is mine.

उपरोक्त Sentence में which has a broken leg ऐसा group of words है जो noun-chair को qualify कर रहा है। इसलिए यह Adjective का कार्य करता है। इस clause में एक subject और एक predicate है। अतः यह Adjective clause है।

**3. Adverb clause**

**3. Adverb clause :** यह clause जिसमें एक subject और एक predicate रहता है तथा जो Adverb के समान कार्य करता है Adverb clause कहलाता है। यह principal clause में प्रयुक्त verb, Adjective तथा Adverb की विशेषता बतलाता है।

**Def. :** *An adverb clause is a group of words which contains a subject and a predicate of its own, and does the work of an adverb.* जैसे—

1. Strike the Iron, while it is hot.

उपरोक्त Sentence में while it is hot ऐसा group of words है जो verb-strike को qualify कर रहा है। इसलिए यह Adverb का कार्य करता है। इस clause में एक Subject और एक Predicate है। अतः यह Adverb clause है।

2. He is wiser than I thought.

उपरोक्त sentence में than I thought ऐसा group of words है जो Adjective wiser को qualify कर रहा है। इसलिए यह Adverb का कार्य करता है। इस clause में एक subject और एक predicate है अतः यह Adverb clause है।

3. He ran so fast that I could not overtake him.

उपरोक्त Sentence में that I could not over take him ऐसा group of words है जो Adverb-fast को qualify कर रहा है। इसलिए यह Adverb का कार्य करता है। इस clause में एक Subject और एक Predicate है। अतः यह Adverb clause है।

## 7. Sentences : Simple, compound and complex

**Analysis की दृष्टि से Sentence चार प्रकार के होते हैं :**

1. Simple Sentence
2. Compound Sentence
3. Complex Sentence
4. Mixed Sentence

**1. Simple Sentence :** यह Sentence जिसमें एक Subject और एक Predicate रहता है या सिर्फ एक finite verb रहता है। Simple Sentence कहलाता है।

**Def. :** *A simple Sentence is one which has only one subject and one predicate.*

or, *A Sentence which has only one finite verb is called a simple Sentence.* जैसे—

| | Subject | Predicate |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | An honest man | is loved by all. |
| 2. | He | writes a letter. |
| 3. | The sun | rises in the east. |
| 4. | Dogs | bark at night. |
| 5. | They | are playing cricket. |

or,

| | Subject | Finite verb | | Subject | Finite verb |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Rain | falls. | 2. | He | speaks. |
| 3. | He | works. | 4. | You | learn. |
| 5. | They | talk. | | | |

**2. Compound Sentence :** यह Sentence जो दो या दो से अधिक Principal clauses से मिलकर बना होता है। Compound Sentence कहलाता है। इस Sentence में दो या अधिक Principal clauses Co-ordinating conjunctions से जुड़े होते हैं।

**Def. :** *A Compound Sentence is one made up of two or more principal (main or independent) clauses.* जैसे—

1. The moon rose and everything looked bright.
2. He got the book from the library and read it and enjoyed it.

उपरोक्त examples में से example no. (1) में the moon rose तथा everything looked bright दोनों Principal clauses—co-ordinating conjunction 'and' से जुड़े हैं। प्रत्येक Principal clause में एक subject और एक predicate है। अतः यह Compound sentence है। Example no. (2) में he got the book from the library, (he) read it, तथा (he) enjoyed it तीनों principal clauses co-ordinating conjunction 'and' से जुड़े हैं। प्रत्येक Principal clause में एक Subject और एक Predicate है अतः यह Compound Sentence है।

**How to Identify Compound Sentences**

➢ यदि किसी Sentence में दो या दो से अधिक clauses co-ordinating conjunctions जैसे—and, as, well as, but, for, nevertheless so, still, yet, where as (जबकि), while (जबकि), both ... and, either... or, neither.... nor, not only..... but also से जुड़े हों, तो वह Sentence Compound Sentence होता है।

**Note : (i) Double Sentence :** यह Compound Sentence जो दो Principal clauses से बना होता है Double Sentence कहलाता है।

**(ii) Multiple Sentence :** यह Compound Sentence जो दो से अधिक Principal clauses से बना होता है Multiple Sentence कहलाता है।

**3. Complex Sentence :** यह Sentence जो एक principal clause तथा एक या एक से अधिक subordinate clause से मिलकर बना होता है। Complex Sentence कहलाता है। इस Sentence में एक principal clause तथा एक या एक से अधिक subordinate clause, sub-ordinating conjunctions से जुड़े होते हैं।

**Def. :** *A Complex Sentence consists of one principal clause and one or more subordinate clauses.* जैसे—

1. They rested when evening came.
2. As we tried to enter the inn the Innkeeper said that there was no room.

उपरोक्त examples में से example no. (1) में they rested—principal clause है क्योंकि इसका अर्थ स्वतः स्पष्ट हो रहा है। जबकि when evening came—subordinate clause है क्योंकि यह अपने अर्थ के लिए principal clause—they rested पर निर्भर करता है। दोनों clauses में एक subject और एक predicate है। example no (1) में एक principal clause तथा एक subordinate clause subordinating conjunction 'when' से जुड़ा हुआ है अतः यह complex Sentence है।

Example no. (2) में As we tried to enter the Inn—subordinate clause है क्योंकि इसका अर्थ स्वतः स्पष्ट नहीं हो रहा है तथा that there was no room भी subordinate clause है। दोनों subordinate

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



clauses अपने अर्थ के लिए principal clause the innkeeper said पर निर्भर करता है। example no (2) में एक principal clause तथा दो subordinate clauses subordinating conjunctions As तथा that से जुड़ा हुआ है। अतः यह Complex Sentence है।

### How to Identify Complex Sentences

➢ यदि किसी Sentence में दो या दो से अधिक clauses किसी subordinating conjunction जैसे—

as, as if, as though, as that, as long as, as much as, as than, all though, though, as far as, so far as, as soon as, according as, after, before, because, if whether, even if, in case, that, so that, in order that, provided, provided that, not withstanding that, than, now that, the moment, the minute, considering that, who, whom, whose, which, what, how, when, where, while, till, until, unless से जुड़े हों, तो वह Sentence, Complex Sentence होता है।

**4. Mixed Sentence :** वह Sentence जो कम-से-कम दो principal clauses तथा कम-से-कम एक subordinate clause से मिलकर बना होता है, Mixed Sentence कहलाता है।

जैसे—He went to market and bought a costly wrist watch that was stolen a few weeks later.

उपरोक्त example में he went to market तथा (he) bought a costly wrist watch दोनों principal clauses co-ordinating conjunction 'and' से जुड़े हुए हैं तथा that was stolen a few week later-subordinate clause है। given Sentence दो principal clauses तथा एक subordinate clause से मिलकर बना हुआ है अतः यह Mixed Sentence है।

## 8. Clause

### 1. More About Noun Clauses

Noun clause subordinate clause होता है जो complex sentense में noun के समान इस प्रकार कार्य करता है—

I. The subject to a verb
II. The object to a verb
III. The object to a preposition
IV. The complement to a verb
V. In apposition to a noun or pronoun.

### I. The Subject to a verb

**Rule (1) :** Noun clause का प्रयोग Complex Sentence में verb के subject के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. What he said was tree.
2. Where he is going is not known to any one.
3. That he will return within an hour is certain.
4. Why refused the job is a mystery.
5. Whether he did so is doubtful.

### II. The object to a verb

**Rule (2) :** Noun clause का प्रयोग Complex Sentence में verb के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. I asked the girl how old she was.
2. Tell me where you found this bag of gold.
3. I shall be glad to know when he will pay it.
4. You denied that you had written the letter.
5. No one knows who he is.

### III. The object to a preposition

**Rule (3) :** Noun Clause का प्रयोग Complex Sentence में Preposition के object के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. Pay careful attention to what your teacher says.
2. My success in future depends upon who is placed over me.
3. Except that he speaks too fast he is an excellent teacher.
4. There is no meaning in what you say
5. The father laughed at what the girls were doing.

### IV. The complement to a verb

**Rule (4) :** Noun Clause का प्रयोग Complex Sentence में verb के complement के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

1. My belief that he is not guilty.
2. This is where he lives.
3. His wish is that he may please you.
4. This is exactly what I expected.
5. Life is what we make it.

### V. In apposition to a noun or pronoun.

**Rule 5 :** Noun clause का प्रयोग Complex Sentence में Noun or Pronoun के apposition में होता है। जैसे—

1. The news that he intended to come gave us much pleasure.
2. It was unfortunate that he was absent.
3. The hope that I shall succeed sustains me.
4. The report that he had gone is unknown to me.
5. The fact that you are guilty gives me much pain.

**Note :** (i) Apposition के case में conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग verb के बाद नहीं भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे—

1. I fear (that) he will not succeed.
2. He said (that) he would go immediately.

(ii) Apposition के case में conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग noun के बाद होता है। जैसे—

The fact that he is not clever gives us much pain.

### 2. More about Adjective Clauses

➢ Adjective clause subordinate clause होता है जो Complex Sentence के principal clause में प्रयुक्त noun or pronoun को qualify करता है तथा Adjective के समान कार्य करता है।

**Rule (1) :** Adjective clause, Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb से Introduce होता है। जैसे—

1. This is the house that Jack built.
2. He is the man whom we all respect.
3. The time when the train leaves is not known to me.
4. The reason why she failed is obvious.
5. What is the name of the village where she was born.

**Rule (2) :** कभी-कभी Relative pronoun co-ordinate clause का Introduce करता है। जैसे—

1. I met Raman, who (= and he) gave me your message.
2. She released the bird, which (= and it) at once flew away.

उपरोक्त example no. (1) में who gave me your message-Adjective clause नहीं है क्योंकि यह principal clause में प्रयुक्त noun—Raman की विशेषता नहीं बताता है इसलिए यह एक co-ordinate clause है। example no. (2) में which at once flew away—Adjective clause नहीं है, क्योंकि यह principal clause में प्रयुक्त noun-the bird की विशेषता नहीं बताता है। इसलिए यह एक co-ordinate clause है।

But—She is the girl who broke the window.

उपरोक्त Sentence में who broke the window-Adjective clauses है क्योंकि यह principal clause में प्रयुक्त noun the girl की विशेषता बताता है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (3) :** कभी-कभी but से स्टार्ट होने वाले clauses भी Adjective clauses होते हैं लेकिन but का अर्थ *Relative Pronoun + do/does/did/ was/were ... etc + not* होता है। जैसे—

1. There was not a man but shed tears at his death.
   [= that is, who did not shed tears at his death.]
2. There was not a woman present but wept to hear such news.
   [= that is, who did not weep to hear such news.]
3. There was not a soldier but fought bravely.
   [= that is, who did not fight bravely.]
4. Nor is there a man here but loved my grandfather.
   [= that is, who did not love my grandfather.]
5. And not a soldier of the five thousand at marathon but died at post.
   [= that is, who did not die at his post.]

**Rule (4) :** As से स्टार्ट होने वाला clause Adjective clause होता है। इस case में As relative Pronoun के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है तथा इसके पहले As, such as, the same का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. He wants the same kind of mobile set as he has lost.
2. It was such a sight as I had never seen before.
3. This is the same book as mine.
4. It was such a day as he has rarely seen in Mumbai.
5. You saw the same places as we saw last year.

**Rule (5) :** कभी-कभी 'than' का प्रयोग preposition के रूप में relative pronoun का पहले adjective clause में होता है। जैसे—

1. They elected Aditya than whom no better boy ever went to school.
2. We will follow Gandhi Jee than whom India knew no better leader.
3. We came to a spot than which mine eyes have seldom seen a lovelier.
4. It was a deed than which no nobler was ever done.

**Rule (6) :** Infinitive with to का प्रयोग Adjective clause के समान होता है। जैसे—

1. Give me some food which I may eat.
   = Give me some food to eat.
2. The doctor has given her medicine which she must take.
   = The doctor has given her medicine to take.
3. He has work which he must do.
   = He has work to do.
4. I have no shirts which I can wear.
   =I have no shirts to wear.
5. My mother gave me a two rupee coins which I might put in my money box.
   = My mother gave me a two rupee coins to put in my money box.

**Note :** जब Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb का प्रयोग Objective case में होता है तो इसका प्रयोग नहीं भी होता है या इसे express नहीं भी किया जाता है। अर्थात् इसे understood कर लिया जाता है। जैसे—

1. This is the boy *(whom)* I know well.
2. The house I left *(= which I left)* was a good one.
3. The reason *(why)* I have come is ask for money.
4. One day *(when)* you pass the examination, I shall give you a reward.
5. Where is the ring *(which)* your bhabhi gave you ?
6. This is the room *(which)* I slept in.

## 3. More About Adverb (Clauses)

➢ Adverb clause Subordinate clause होता है। जो complex Sentence के principal clause में प्रयुक्त verb, Adjective or Adverb को qualify करता है तथा Adverb के समान कार्य करता है।

### Kinds of Adverb clauses

1. Adverb clauses of time.
2. Adverb clauses of place.
3. Adverb clauses of purpose.
4. Adverb clauses of cause or reason.
5. Adverb clauses of condition.
6. Adverb clauses of result or consequence.
7. Adverb clauses of comparison.
8. Adverb clauses of supposition or concession.

### 1. Adverb clauses of Time

➢ Adverb clauses of Time को subordinating conjunctions जैसे—As, as soon as, before, since, after, while, until, till when, when ever etc से Introduce किया जाता है।

जैसे—

1. He arrived at the destination as the sun was setting.
2. As she came into the room all rose to their feet.
3. As soon as he heard of my success, he wrote to me.
4. Before you go bring me some milk.
5. He has not been well since he returned from Rajgir.
6. After the vote was taken, the meeting broke up.
7. Don't talk while he is reading.
8. Wait until I come.
9. You were commanded to wait till the signal was given.
10. When she finishes her work, she goes out to play.
11. The doctor always comes whenever he is sent for.
12. No sooner did the bell ring than the boys left the room.
13. As they were going down the hill, the horse fell.
14. So long as the rain continued, he remained in his tent.
15. Just as she entered the class room, the clock struck ten.

### 2. Adverb clauses of Place

➢ Adverb clauses of place को subordinating conjunctions जैसे—where, whence, whither, wherever etc से Introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. You can stay where you are.
2. Where there is a will, there is away.
3. She makes friend whereever she goes.
4. You can go whereever you like.
5. Go quickly whence you came.
6. Whither I go, ye can not come.
7. The wind bloweth whither it listeth.
8. He can not climb down whence I have descended.

### 3. Adverb clauses of Purpose

➢ Adverb clauses of purpose को Subordinating Conjunctions जैसे—that तथा lest से Introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. I drew my sword that I might defend myself.
2. I die that India may live.
3. You ran hard that you might catch the train.
4. In order that you might escape, you changed your dress.
5. She worked hard that she might become rich.
6. You took medicine that you might get well.
7. She worked hard lest she should fail.
8. He ran hard lest he should miss the train.
9. Write it down lest you forget all about it.
10. We eat so that we may live.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 4. Adverb clauses of Cause or Reason

➢ Adverb clauses of cause or reason को subordinating conjunctions as, because, since, that से Introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. As you were not there, I spoke to your father.
2. You will succeed because you work hard.
3. He did it because he wanted to.
4. You will never help him, because you do not trust him.
5. Since he promises to help me, I will tell him the secret.
6. Since he swears to serve me faithfully, I will employ him.
7. He was very pleased that you had won the first prize.
8. I am glad that you like it.

### 5. Adverb clauses of condition

➢ Adverb clauses of condition को subordinating conjunctions जैसे—if, whether unless से Introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. If you make a promise, you keep it.
2. If it rains, he will stay at home.
3. If it is fine this afternoon, they will play football.
4. You must go, whether he comes or not.
5. I must speak the truth, whether you like it or not.
6. He will forgive me on condition that I confess my guilt.
7. He will not pass unless he works harder.
8. I will not let him go, unless he blesses me.

**Note** : (i) कभी-कभी Adverb clauses of condition में Subordinating conjunctions का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

1. Had you acted on my advice, you would have succeeded.
2. Were my brother-in-law here, he would help me.
3. Should I be given an appointment, I shall feel obliged.
4. Had you the wings of a bird, I would fly away.

(ii) कभी-कभी Adverb clauses of condition Relative pronoun, Relative Adjective or Relative adverb से Antecedent के बिना (without any antecedent) introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. Whatever you do, be just.
2. Whatever happens, keep calm.
3. Whichever way the criminal goes, we shall be sure to catch him.
4. However cleverly she may cheat, she will be found out at last.
5. Whatever happens, don't lose temper.

### 6. Adverb clauses of Result or Consequence

➢ Adverb clauses of result or consequence को Subordinating conjunction 'that' से Introduce किया जाता है। इस clause में that के पहले प्रयुक्त principal clause में so or such का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

1. So good a man is he that all respect him.
2. So great a storm arose that the ships were wrecked.
3. So bravely did I fight that I won the admiration of all.
4. She behaved in such a way that all praised her.
5. I labour so diligently that I am sure to succeed.
6. You talked such non sense that no body would listen to you.
7. You spoke in such a way that all could understand you.
8. He walked so fast that he arrived in good time.

**Note** : कभी-कभी Adverb clauses of result or consequence में subordinating conjunction 'that' को express नहीं किया जाता है। अर्थात् understood हो जाता है। जैसे—

1. He was so weak (that) he could not speak.
2. She was so old (that) she could hardly walk.
3. It is so small (that) we can not see it.
4. He was so deaf (that) he could not hear thunder.

### 7. Adverb clauses of Comparison

➢ **Adverb clauses of comparison दो प्रकार के होते हैं—**

(a) Adverb clauses of comparison of Degree.
(b) Adverb clauses of comparison of Manner

#### (a) Adverb clauses of Comparison of Degree

➢ Adverb clauses of comparison of Degree को Subordinating conjunction-than or Relative Adverb–'As' से Introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. I must work harder than you do.
2. You can run faster than I can.
3. The sooner you begin, the earlier you will finish it.
4. No one can dance better than Aditi.
5. You are not so laborious as I think.
6. He is as intelligent as he is industrious.
7. You are as stupid as you are lazy.

**Note** : Adverb clauses of comparison of Degree में verb अक्सर (often) express नहीं किया जाता है अर्थात् verb को understood कर लिया जाता है। जैसे—

1. You are more laborious than your brother (is).
2. I work harder than you (do).
3. No body knows it better than I (do).
4. The wolf is not so fierce as the tiger (is).
5. My arrival is as sure as death (is sure).

#### (b) Adverb clauses of Comparison of Manner

➢ Adverb clauses of comparison of manner को subordinating conjunctions—As, As if, As though से Introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. As you sow, so shall you reap.
2. You may do as you please.
3. She was walking as if she was in a hurry.
4. Do as you like.
5. She then listened as if she expected something to happen.

### 8. Adverb clauses of Supposition or Concession

➢ Adverb clauses of supposition or concession को subordinating conjunctions—though, although, even if से Introduce किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. Though he is poor, he is honest.
2. Though He slay me, yet I will trust in Him.
3. Although she did not work hard, she passed.
4. Although he forbade this, I have done it.
5. He will be able to get in although he has ticket.
6. Even if it rains, he will come.
7. He will speak the truth even if you kill him.
8. Even if she is old, she is able to do a great deal of work.

## I. Analysis of Simple Sentences

➢ Simple Sentence का Analysis इस प्रकार किया जाता है—

**Rule (1)** : Simple Sentence का Analysis करने के लिए सर्वप्रथम Simple Sentence को दो Main parts (मुख्य भागों) में divide (विभाजित) किया जाता है।

(i) The Subject and (ii) The predicate



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



जैसे—

| Subject | Predicate |
|---|---|
| The sun | rises in the east. |
| The dog | is dead. |
| My teacher | gave me a book. |
| Dogs | bark at night. |
| He | was playing cricket. |

**Rule (2)** :यदि किसी Sentence का Subject अनेक शब्दों (several words) से मिलकर बना हो तो उसमें एक शब्द (one word), अन्य शब्दों (other words) से ज्यादा महत्वपूर्ण (more important) होता है। इसी मुख्य शब्द (chief word) को subject word या simple subject कहा जाता है।

**Def. (1)** :*The chief word in the complete subject is called the subject word or simple subject.* जैसे—

The old man, tired of work, is sleeping

**Note** :उपरोक्त Sentence में chief word (मुख्य शब्द) man है जो noun है अत: The noun—man, subject word है।

**Def. (2) : Subject word**—*The Subject word is a noun or a word or a group of words that does the work of a noun.* जैसे—

1. I tried my best.
2. The poor are always poor.
3. To err is human.
4. To find fault is easy.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में subject words क्रमश: I, the poor, to err, fault है।

**Def. (3) : Attribute or Enlargement** :*In the complete subject, the subject word is qualified by an adjective or adjective equivalent called its enlargement or attribute.*

**Def. (4) : Adjective equivalent** :*A word or group of words which does the work of an adjective is called an adjective equivalent.* जैसे—

1. Barking dogs seldom bite.
2. A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.
3. Aditya's father is an author.
4. His views are quite different.
5. Premchandra, the author, wrote the panchatantra.
6. A stitch in time saves nine.
7. A desire to excel is commendable.

उपरोक्त simple Sentences का analysis इस प्रकार किया जाता है।

➢ **Look at the analysis of the above Simple Sentences in Tabular form**

| Subject | | Predicate |
|---|---|---|
| **Subject word** | **Attribute** | |
| Dogs | Barking | Seldom bite |
| knowledge | A little | is a dangerous thing |
| Father | A ditya's | is an author |
| Views | His | are quite different |
| Premchandra | the author | wrote the Panchatantra |
| Stich | (a) A<br>(b) In time | saves nine |
| Desire | (a) A<br>(b) To excel | is commendable |

ध्यान दें :

Example No. (1) में attribute—Barking एक participle or participal Adjective है।

Example No. (2) में attribute—A littel एक Adjective है।

Example No. (3) में attribute—Aditya's a noun in possessive case है।

Example No. (4) में attribute—His एक Possessive Adjective है।

Example No. (5) में attribute—the author a noun in apposition है।

Example No. (6) में attribute—in time a group of words है जो Adjective का कार्य कर रहा है।

Example No. (7) में attribute—to excel एक gerundial Infinitive है।

**Note** :A, an, तथा the को attributes कहा जाता है लेकिन कभी-कभी ये parts of the subject word के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

**Rule (3)** :Predicate एक या एक से अधिक शब्दों से मिलकर बना होता है। (i) जब predicate में एक word रहता है तो वह word verb होता है। क्योंकि verb के बिना हम लोग कुछ नहीं कह सकते हैं।

(ii) जब predicate में एक से अधिक words रहते हैं तो उसमें सबसे आवश्यक word verb होता है।

**Def. (5) : Predicate word** :*The verb is the essential word in the predicate it is some times called the predicate word.*

**Def. (6) : Adverbial qualification or Extension** :*The verb in the predicate may be qualified by an adverb or Adverb equivalent, called, in analysis, its Extension or Adverbial qualification.*

**Def. (7) : Adverb equivalent** :*A word or group of words which does the work of an adverb is called an adverb equivalent.* जैसे—

1. She rose to go.
2. You went home
3. The flames spread everywhere.
4. He spoke distinctly.
5. The postman called again.

➢ **Look at the Analysis of the above Simple Sentences in Tabular form.**

| Subject | | Predicate | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Subject word** | **Attribute** | **Verb** | **Adverbial qualification** |
| She | | rose | to go |
| You | | went | home |
| Flames | the | spread | everywhere |
| He | | spoke | distinctly |
| postman | the | called | again |

ध्यान दें।

Example No. (1) में Adverbial qualification Gerundial Infinitive—to go है।

Example No. (2) में Adverbial qualification, Adverbial accusative—home है।

Example No. (3) में Adverbial qualification, Adverb—every where है।

Example No. (4) में Adverbial qualification, Adverb—distinctly है।

Example No. (5) में Adverbial qualification, Adverb—again है।

**Rule (4)** :जब the verb in the predicate एक Intransitive verb होता है, तो वह अकेले Predicate form करता है। जैसे—

1. Dogs bark.
2. The girls have been singing.
3. Black clouds are gathering.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



अग्रलिखित वाक्यों में verbs-bark, have, been, singing तथा are gathering क्रमशः केवल एक word तथा a group of two or more words का है जो predicate form करता है।

**Rule (5)** कभी-कभी the verb in the predicate, An intransitive verb of Incomplete Predication का होता है। इस case में Intransitive verb के बाद Noun, Adjective or Pronoun etc. का प्रयोग predicate के complete sense को express करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The child seems happy.

उपरोक्त वाक्य में प्रयुक्त The child seems से सिर्फ अर्थ स्पष्ट नहीं होता है। The child seems के बाद Adjective happy का प्रयोग होने पर ही अर्थ स्पष्ट होता है अतः इससे स्पष्ट होता है कि Intrasitive verb का अर्थ स्पष्ट करने के लिए किसी-न-किसी word की आवश्यकता होती है जो predicate के sense को complete करता है।

**Def. (8) : Complement :** *A word or group of words which requires to complete the predicate is called a complement.*

**Def. (9) : Subjective complement :** *The complement of an Intransitive verb serves to describe the subject, and is therefore called a subjective complement.*

**इन वाक्यों में Predicates को देखें :**

1. The earth is a planet.
2. It is I.
3. My book is here.
4. The room is to let.
5. The farmer seems worried.
6. He is honest.
7. The building is under construction.

➢ **Look at the Analysis of the above simple Sentences in Tabular form.**

| Subject | | Predicate | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Subject word | Attribute | Verb | Adverbial qualification |
| earth | The | is | a planet. |
| it | | is | I |
| book | My | is | here |
| room | The | is | to let |
| farmer | The | seems | worried |
| He | | is | honest |
| building | The | is | under construction |

**ध्यान दें :**

Example No. (1) में complement—a planet एक noun है।
Example No. (2) में complement—I एक Pronoun है।
Example No. (3) में complement—here एक Adverb है।
Example No. (4) में complement—to let एक Infinitive है।
Example No. (5) में complement—worried एक participle (past participle) है।
Example no (6) में complement—honest एक Adjective है।
Example no (7) में complement—under construction एक group of words है जो Adjective का कार्य कर रहा है।

**Def. (10) : Predicative Adjective :** *when the predicate is completed by an adjective, such an adjective is said to be used predicatively or to be a predicative adjective.*

**Def. (11) : Predicative noun** *when the predicate is completed by a noun, the noun is said to be a predicative noun.*

**Rule (6)** कभी-कभी the verb in the predicate, transitive verb होता है। जो अपने complete sense के लिए object लेता है। जैसे—

Cats catch mice.

अग्रलिखित वाक्य में प्रयुक्त cats catch से सिर्फ अर्थ स्पष्ट नहीं होता है। cats catch के बाद object mice का प्रयोग होने पर ही अर्थ स्पष्ट होता है। अतः इससे स्पष्ट होता है कि Transitive verb का अर्थ स्पष्ट करने के लिए object की आवश्यकता होती है जो एक complete predicate बनाता है।

**इन वाक्यों में predicates को देखें :**

1. He knows me.
2. Children like sweets.
3. They love fighting.
4. Birds build nests.
5. They make a noise.
6. The students try to get success.
7. He tried to solve the problem.
8. The foolish crow tried to sing.

➢ **Look at the Analysis of the above Simple Sentences in Tabular form :**

| Subject | | Predicate | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Subject word | Attribute | Verb | Object |
| He | | knows | me |
| children | | like | sweets |
| they | | love | fighting |
| birds | | build | nests |
| they | | make | a noise |
| students | the | try | to get success |
| He | | tried | to solve the problem |
| crow | (a) the (b) foolish | tried | to sing |

**ध्यान दें :**

Example No. (1) में object—me एक Pronoun है।
Example No. (2) में object—sweets एक noun है।
Example No. (3) में object—fighting एक Gerund or verbal noun है।
Example No. (4) में object—nests एक noun है।
Example No. (5) में object—a noise एक noun है।
Example No. (6) में object—to get success एक group of words है जो noun का कार्य कर रहा है।
Example no (7) में object—to solve the problem एक group of words है जो noun का कार्य कर रहा है।
Example no (8) में object—to sing एक Infinitive है।

**Rule (7)** :Subject word की तरह object word में भी Attributes रहता है। जैसे—

1. The hunter shot a big tiger.
2. He gave me a red pen.
3. The beggar killed an old dog.

➢ **Look at the analysis of the above Simple Sentences in Tabular form—**

| Subject | | Predicate | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Subject word | Attribute | Verb | Object | attribute |
| hunter | The | shot | tiger | (a) a (b) big |
| he | | gave | (a) me (b) pen | (a) a (b) red |
| beggar | The | killed | dog | (a) an (b) old |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (8) :** कभी-कभी the verb in the predicate Transitive verb होता है जो दो objects—direct object तथा indirect object लेता है।

**Def. (12) : Direct object :** *things expressing words are said to be direct object*

as— a pen, a book, a gift, a doll etc.

**Def (13) : Indirect object :** *persons expressing words are said to be Indirect objects.*

as—me, us, you, him, her, it, them.

**इन वाक्यों में Predicates को देखें :**

1. I teach you English.
2. He bought me a book.
3. She gave me a pen.
4. He offered her a job.
5. My grand father told me stories.

➢ **Look at the analysis of the above simple Sentences in Tabular form :**

| Subject | | | Predicate | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Subject word | Attribute | Verb | Indirect Object | Direct Object |
| I | | teach | you | English |
| He | | bought | me | a book. |
| She | | gave | me | a pen. |
| He | | offered | her | a job. |
| grand father | my | told | me | stories. |

**Rule (9) :** कुछ ऐसे Transitive verbs है जिसे अर्थ की स्पष्टता के लिए object के अतिरिक्त complement की आवश्यकता होती है। जैसे—The boys made Aditya monitor

उपरोक्त वाक्य में Transitive verb—made का object Aditya है जो अर्थ स्पष्ट नहीं कर पाता है। यहाँ अर्थ की स्पष्टता के लिए एक word की आवश्यकता है जो word monitor है। चूँकि Monitor object of transitive verb के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करता है। अतः इसे complement कहा जाता है।

**Def. (14) : Objective complement :** *The complement which refers to the object is called an objective complement.*

**इन वाक्यों में predicates को देखें :**

1. His words filled us with terror.
2. I found him guilty.
3. My parents named me Ajay.
4. We made him captain.
5. They made him chairman.

➢ **Look at the analysis of the above Simple Sentences in Tabular form :**

| Subject | | Predicate | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Subject word | Attribute | Verb | Object | Complement |
| words | his | filled | us | with terror |
| I | | found | him | guilty |
| Parents | my | made | me | Ajay |
| we | | made | him | captain |
| They | | made | him | chairman |

## Solved Examples

**Q. 1.** *Analysis the following Sentences in Tabular form :*

1. A burnt child dreads the fire.
2. A sick room should be well aired.
3. He recognized my voice at once.
4. Suman became an engineer.
5. Every man is the architect of his fortune.
6. You promised me a present.
7. My friends elected me captain of the team.
8. This circumstance makes the matter very serious certainly.
9. Your teacher has been teaching you English.
10. The jury found her guilty of murder.
11. The earth is round.
12. She sold her cow below its value.
13. The student, anxious to learn, works hard.
14. The court appointed him guardian of the orphan child.
15. Shristi called his uncle a fool.

| Subject | | | Predicate | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Subject word | Attribute | Verb | object | complement | Adverbial qualification |
| child | (a) A (b) burnt | dreads | the fire | | |
| room | (a) A (b) sick | should be | | aired | well |
| He | | recognized | | | my voice at once |
| Suman | | became | | an engineer | |
| man | Every | is | | the architect of his fortune | |
| you | | promised | me | a present | |
| friends | my | elected | me | captain of the team | |
| circumstance | this | makes | the matter | very serious | Certainly |
| teacher | your | has been teaching | you *ind.o.* English *d.o.* | | |
| jury | the | found | her | guilty of murder | |
| earth | the | is | | round | |
| she | | sold | her *ind. o.* cow *d. o.* | | below its value |
| student | (a) The (b) anxious to learn | works | | | hard |
| court | The | appointed | him | guardian of the orphan child | |
| Shristi | | called | his uncle | a fool | |

## Practice Set–1

**Q. 1.** *Analyse the following Simple Sentences (in tabular form) :*

1. He shot an arrow in the air.
2. We must be cautious in our movements.
3. The criminal was ordered to be severely punished.
4. My Nephew became a good scholar.
5. I found the weary man sound asleep.
6. The farmer killed that poisonous snake.
7. A fierce tiger was shot today.
8. The tired ox will sleep soundly.
9. The village watch men fell asleep in the night.
10. He came to see my mother-in-law.
11. They walked side by side.
12. She went away vexed and disappointed.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



13. The rich are not always happy.
14. Sweet are the uses of adversity.
15. A stick in time saves nine.
16. I get my living by teaching.
17. The city life suited her in all respects.
18. They have come to stay.
19. The computer operator seems tired.
20. Honey tastes sweet.
21. The boys look healthy.
22. The weather is hot.
23. I teach you English.
24. It is easy to find fault.
25. Who are you ?

## II. Analysis of compound sentences

Compound sentence का Analysis इस प्रकार किया जाता है।

**Rule (1)** : Pick out the finite verb of each clause.

**Rule (2)** : If the finite verb is understood, but not expressed, supply it.

**Rule (3)** : Pick out the subject to each finite verb in succession.

**Rule (4)** : If the subject to any finite verb is under stood, but not expressed, supply it.

**Rule (5)** : Then write out each clause with its subject, predicate and adverbial qualification

**Rule (6)** : Pick out the connective word, by which anyone clause is joined to any other clause.

**Note** : (i) Connective words को conjunction कहा जाता है। Conjunction के संबंध में विशेष रूप से conjunction chapter में अध्ययन करें।

(ii) Adverbial qualifications को Adverbial adjuncts भी कहा जाता है।

➢ **Adverbial qualifications or Adverbial adjuncts आठ प्रकार के होते हैं।**

1. Adverb—She sleeps soundly.
2. Adverbial phrase—We walked side by side.
3. Adjective—You went away sad. You stood alone.
4. Participle—She went away vexed and disappointed.
5. Girundial Infinitive—He came to see my mother-in-law.
6. Adverbial Accusative—You walked all day you walked five miles.
7. Preposition with object—The boy fell into a deep well.
8. Absolute phrase—We all started, he remaining behind.

➢ इन compound sentences में प्रयुक्त Principal clauses, predicates तथा connective words को देखें:

1. The sen rose with power, *and* the fog dispersed. *(Comulative)*
2. Either you must leave the house *or* I must leave the house. *(Alternative)*
3. She called at my house, *but* I did not see her. *(Adversative)*
4. I came back tired, *for* I had walked all day *(Illative)*
5. The night is dark, *and* he is far from home. *(Comulative)*
6. His greatest enemy, *as well as* his best friends, repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge, *(Comulative)*
7. He has neither seen my face, *nor* heard my name. *(Alternative)*
8. The sky was clear, the winds had gone down, *and* the full moon was setting radiantly in the west. *(Comulative)*

➢ **Look at the analysis of the above compound sentences in Tabular form :**

| Clauses | Connective word | Subject | | Predicate | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Simple subject or Subject word | Attribute of Subject | Verb | Complement | Adverbial Qualifications |
| A. The sun rose with power | | Sun | The | rose | | With power |
| B. The fog dispersed | and | Fog | The | dispersed | | |
| A. You must leave the house | | You | | must leave | the house | |
| B. I must leave the house. | Either ... or | I | | must leave | the house | |
| A. She called at my house | | She | | called | | at my house. |
| B. I did not see her. | but | I | | did not see | her | |
| A. I came back tired. | | I | | come back | tired | |
| B. I had walked all day | for | I | | had walked | | all day. |
| A. The night is dark | | Night | The | is | dark | |
| B. He is far from home. | and | He | | is | far fromhome | |
| A. His greatest enemy repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge | | Enemy | (a) His (b) Greatest | declared | him | (a) repeatedly (b) to be innocent of the fault (c) laid to his charge. |
| B. His best friends repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge. | as well as | Friends | (a) His (b) best | declared | him | (a) repeatedly (b) to be innocent of the fault (c) laid to his charge. |
| A. He has not seen my face. | | He | | has not seen | my face | |
| B. He has not heard my name | neither .. nor | He | | has not heard | my name | |
| A. The sky was clear. | | Sky | The | was | clear | |
| B. The winds had gone down. | | Winds | The | had gone | | down |
| C. The full moon was setting radiantly in the west. | and | Moon | (a) The (b) Full | was setting | | (a) radiantly (b) in the west. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Practice Set–2

**Q. 2.** *Analysis the following compound sentences (in tabular form) :*

1. Either you or your friend must have opened the door; for no other person had the key.
2. He has read the book of life for a long time, and he has read other books a little.
3. The student thanked the gentleman heartily, dried up his tears, and went home.
4. You as well as I are tired of all this work.
5. God made the country and man made the town.
6. He is rich, yet he is not happy.
7. He must weep, or he will die.
8. You are laborious, therefore you will succeed.
9. She is unwell, so she can not attend the class.
10. I am slow, but I am sure.
11. He is not only a teacher but also a writer.
12. Ashoka was not only a great king but was a good ruler also.
13. The body dies, but the soul is immortal.
14. Wise men love truth while fools shun it.
15. He is very rich, still he is not contented.
16. It rained heavily; therefore the streets were flooded.
17. He was a reliable man; consequently all trusted him.
18. Either this man is mad or he is a fool.
19. The way was long and the night was cold.
20. He was not only fined, but also sentenced.

## III. Analysis of Complex sentences

➢ Complex sentence का Analysis इस प्रकार किया जाता है—

**Rule (1) :** To find out the principal clause or main clause.

**Rule (2) :** To find out the subordinate clause or clauses, showing the relation which each clause bears to the principal clause.

**Rule (3) :** To analysis separately the principal and each subordinate clause.

➢ **Look at the analysis of the following complex sentences :**

1. I have two nephews who are engineers.
   (a) I have two nephews—Principal clause.
   (b) Who are engineers—Subordinate Adjective clause qualifying the noun 'nephews' in (a)
   Connective word / conjunction—who
   This is a complex sentence.
2. You know that she is not sincere in her duty.
   (a) You know—Principal clause.
   (b) That she is not sincere in her duty.—Subordinate noun clause object to the verb know in (a)
   Connective word / Conjunction—that.
   This is a complex sentence.
3. Nobody believes him, because he is a liar.
   (a) Nobody believes him—Principal clause.
   (b) because he is a liar—Subordinate adverb clause of Reason.
   Connective word / conjunction—because.
   This is a complex sentence.
4. That America invaded Iraq for oil is known to all.
   (a) Is known to all—Principal dause.
   (b) That America invaded Iraq for oil—Subordinate noun clause subject to the verb is in (a)
   Connective word / conjunction—that
   This is a complex sentence.
5. This is the place where he was born.
   (a) This is the place—Principal clause.
   (b) Where he was born—Subordinate adjective clause qualifying the noun 'place' in (a)
   Connective word / conjunction—where.
   This is a complex sentence.
6. When he went out, there were no clouds in the sky.
   (a) There were no clouds in the sky—Principal clause.
   (b) When he went out—Subordinate adverb clause of time.
   Connective word / conjunction—when.
   This is a complex sentence.
7. The Police know that he lives in a bad company and commits crimes.
   (a) The police know—Principal clause
   (b) That he lives in a bad company—Subordinate noun clause object the verb 'know' in (a)
   (c) and commits crimes—Cordinate to (b)
   Connective word / conjunction—that, and
   This is a complex sentence.
8. The problem is that you never come in time.
   (a) The problem is—Principal clause.
   (b) That you never come in time—Subordinate noun clause complement to the verb 'is' in (a)
   Connective word / conjunction—that
   This is a complex sentence.
9. The woman you are talking about does not live here.
   (a) The woman does not live here—Principal clause
   (b) That you are talking about—Subordinate adjective clause qualifying the noun 'man' in (a)
   Connective word / conjunction—that
   This is a complex Sentence.
10. Shakespeare, who is the greatest dramatist of the world was an Elizabethan poet.
   (a) Shakespeare was an Elizabethan poet principal clause.
   (b) Who is the greatest dramastist of the world-subordinate adjective clause qualifying the noun 'shakespeare' in (a)
   Connective word / conjunction—who
   This is a complex sentence.

➢ **Complete analysis of the complex sentence in tabular form :**

Example : When ever he heard the question, the old man who lived in that house, answered that the earth is flat.

**The Analysis of the Complex sentence in Tabular form.**

| Clauses | Kinds of clauses | Connective | Subject | | | Predicate | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Subject word | Attribute | Verb | Object | Complement | Adverbial qualification |
| 1. The old man answered | Principal clause | | man | a. the b. old | answered | | | |
| 2. When ever he heard the question | Subordinate adverb clause of time qualifying the verb answered in (1) | when ever | he | | heard | the question | | |
| 3. Who lived in that house | Subordinate Adjective clause qualifying the noun 'man' in (1) | | who | | lived | | | in that house |
| 4. That the earth is flat | Subordinate noun clause, object to the verb—answered in (1) | that | earth | the | is | | flat | |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Practice Set–3

**Q. 3.** *Analysis the following complex sentence :*

1. Why she left is a mystery.
2. I asked the girl how old she was.
3. Tell me where he lives.
4. There is no meaning in what you say.
5. We must never forget this, that honesty is the best policy.
6. Your belief is that she will not come.
7. Her great fear is that she may fail.
8. The patient was sure that he would recover.
9. He is the man whom we all respect.
10. He is the student who broke the chair.
11. He gave me everything I asked for.
12. The equator shows where days and nights are of equal length.
13. He that is down needs fear no fall.
14. All that glitters is not gold.
15. The house I live in is very old and is not comfortable.
16. You must know that the air is never quite at rest.
17. She did not know that her husband had been shot.
18. I have seen the house where Premchandra was born.
19. I forgot to tell you the time when I shall return.
20. This is the same story that I heard five years ago.
21. They accepted every plan we proposed.
22. A stone that goes on rolling gathers no moss.
23. Where is peace, there is prosperity.
24. He was always honest, though he was poor.
25. He returned home, after he had finished the work.
26. He will succeed, because he has worked hard.
27. I gave him a prize that he might work harder next year.
28. When the cat is away, the mice will play.
29. A friend who helps you in time of need is a real friend.
30. If I were you, I would do it at once.
31. Unless you leave the house at once, I will send for a police man.
32. He speaks better than he writes.
33. Karl Marx, who wrote Das capital, was an intellectual giant.
34. Newton, who discovered the law of gravitation, was a scientific genius.
35. He replied that he worked whenever he liked.
36. I think that he destroyed the letter which you sent there.
37. Your success will depend on how hard you work.
38. He travelled home by the way his father showed him.
39. It is quite evident rain will fall today.
40. Sir Isacc Newton, after deep mediation, discovered that there was a law in nature called attraction, by virtue of which every particle of matter that the world is composed of draws towards itself every other particle of matter with a force which is proportional to its mass and distance.
41. When we met, we shook hands and felt very happy.

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 27 Transformation of Sentences-II

## I. Conversion of Simple Sentences into Compound Sentences :

**Rule (1) :** किसी word or phrase को Co-ordinate clause में विस्तारित (enlarge) कर simple sentences से compound sentences में इस प्रकार tranform किया जाता है।

**A. Conjunctions :** *and, both ..... and, not only ..... but also* का प्रयोग कर simple sentences से compound sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Simple sentences | Compound sentences |
|---|---|
| I must work very hard to make up for the lost time. | I must work very hard and make up for the lost time. |
| Seeing a bull coming, she lay on the ground. | She saw a bull coming, and lay on the ground. |
| The teacher punished the student for disobedience. | The student was disobedient, and so the teacher punished him. |
| Mr. Kumar received praise and reward. | Mr. Kumar was both praised and rewarded. |
| Besides robbing the rich man, the robber also murdered him. | The robber not only robbed the rich man but also murdered him. |
| Besides being laborious he is intelligent. | He is not only laborious but also intelligent. |
| Owing to bad health, he could not work. | He was in bad health, and so he could not work. |
| Besides making a promise, he kept it. | He not only made a promise, but he also kept it. |

**B. Conjunctions :** *but, yet, nevertheless* का प्रयोग कर simple sentence से compound sentence में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Simple sentences | Compound sentences |
|---|---|
| Notwithstanding his sorrow, he is hopeful. | He is sorrowful, but yet hopeful. |
| Inspite of his riches, he is unhappy. | He is very rich, but still he is unhappy. |
| Not withstanding his hard work, he did not succeed. | He worked hard, yet did not succeed. |
| In the face of many hindrances, he preserved. | He met with many hindrances, nevertheless he preserved. |

**C. Conjunctions :** *or, either ..... or, otherwise* का प्रयोग कर simple sentences से compound sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Simple Sentences | Compound sentences |
|---|---|
| He must confess his fault to escape being fined. | He must confess his fault, or he will be fined. |
| To avoid punishment, he must apologize. | Either he must apologize, or he will be punished. |
| You must not attempt to escape, on pain of death. | You must not attempt to escape, or you will be put to death. |
| He must run away at once to escape being caught. | He must run away at once, otherwise he will be caught. |
| We must eat to live. | We must eat, or we cannot live. |

## II. Conversion of Compound Sentences into Simple Sentences :

**Rule (2) :** Compound sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार Transform (बदला) किया जाता है।

**A.** Finite verbs के बदले participles का प्रयोग कर compound sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Compound Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| He took his coat and set off. | Taking his coat, he set off. |
| The sun rose and the fog dispersed. | The sun having risen, the fog dispersed. |
| She finished her work and returned home. | Having finished her work, she returned home. |
| He finished his exercise and put away his books. | Having finished his exercise, he put away his books. |

**B.** Clause के बदले preposition का प्रयोग कर compound sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Compound Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| He not only made a promise, but kept it. | Besides making a promise, he kept it. |
| He was a mere boy but he offered to fight the giant. | In spite of his being a mere boy he offered to fight the giant. |
| Mr. Thakur shaved himself and then took his bath. | After shaving himself, Mr. Thakur took his bath. |
| He must not be late, or he will be fined. | In the event of his being late, he will be fined. |

**C.** Clause के बदले Infinitive (to + $V^1$) तथा Gerund का प्रयोग कर compound sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Compound Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| He must confess his fault or he will be fined. | He must confess his fault to escape being fined. |
| You must work hard, or you will not get promotion. | You must work hard to get promotion. |
| Either you must help me or I must try to carry out my task alone. | To try to carry out my task alone, you must help me. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Compound Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| We must eat, or we can not live. | We must eat to live. |
| He must either pay the bill at once or return the goods. | Falling the prompt payment the goods must be returned by him. |

## III. Conversion of Simple Sentences into Complex Sentences :

**Rule (3) :** किसी word or phrase को subordinate clause में विस्तारित (expand) कर simple sentences से complex sentences में इस प्रकार transform (बदला) किया जाता है। यह subordinate clause, Noun, Adjective or Adverb clause हो सकता है। जैसे—

### 1. Noun clause

| Simple Sentences | Complex Sentences |
|---|---|
| I am certain of giving you satisfaction. | I am certain that I shall give you satisfaction. |
| You do not know the day of his birth. | You don't know when he was born. |
| He hoped to win the first prize. | He hoped that he would win the first prize. |
| You all know the reason of his popularity. | You all know why he is popular. |
| The time of his coming no one knows. | When he will come no one knows. |

### 2. Adjective clause

| Simple Sentences | Complex Sentences |
|---|---|
| He paid off his father's debts. | He paid off the debts which his father had contracted. |
| Our publisher is a man of his word. | Our publisher is a man who keeps his word. |
| She told me the time of his departure. | She told me the time when he would depart. |
| Your silence proves your guilt. | The fact that you are silent proves your guilt. |
| The reason of his success is known to all. | The reason why he succeeded is known to all. |
| A liar is seldom trusted. | A person who tells lies is seldom trusted. |

### 3. Adverb Clause

| Simple Sentences | Complex Sentences |
|---|---|
| On reaching manhood you will have to work for your living. | As soon as you have reached manhood, you will have to work for your living. |
| He may go anywhere. | He may go wherever he likes. |
| She succeeded unexpectedly. | She succeeded although her success was not expected. |
| At sunset she returned home. | When the sun set, she returned home. |
| You were absent on account of illness. | You were absent because you were ill. |
| The news is too good to be true. | The news is so good that it cannot be true. |
| On seeing the snake, he ran away. | As soon as he saw the snake, he ran away. |
| Without her help, I can do nothing. | Unless she helps me, I can do nothing. |
| Do it to the best of your ability. | Do it as well as you can. |
| On entering the room he saw his colleague. | As soon as he entered the room, he saw his colleague. |

## IV. Conversion of Complex Sentences to Simple Sentences :

**Rule (4) :** किसी Clause (Noun, Adjective or Adverb Clause) को a phrase or word में बदलकर, complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार transform किया जाता है।

### 1. Noun Clause

**Rule (1) :** यदि noun clause conjunction 'that' से स्टार्ट हो तो उसे noun के द्वारा substitute (प्रतिस्थापन) कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| It is sad that he died so young. | His death at so young an age is sad. |
| He said that he was innocent. | He declared his innocence. |
| He admitted that he had done wrong. | He admitted his fault. |
| That he should be present is essential. | Your presence is essential. |
| That he is drunk aggravates his offence. | His drunkenness aggravates his offence. |

**Rule (2) :** यदि Noun clause Relative adverb (जैसे—when where, how, ..... etc.) से स्टार्ट हो तो उसे noun के द्वारा substitute कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| Tell me when and where you were born. | Tell me the time and place of your birth. |
| Tell me where you live. | Tell me your address. |
| No one knows when she died. | No one knows the day of her death. |
| Tell me where your uncle lives. | Tell me the address of your uncle. |
| He remarked how impudent the girl was. | He remarked on the girl's impudence. |

**Rule (3) :** यदि Noun clause Relative pronoun (जैसे—who, which that ..... etc.) से स्टार्ट हो तो उसे noun के द्वारा substitute (प्रतिस्थापन) कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| We need not disbelieve what he said. | We need not disbelieve his word. |
| What he spoke on that occasion was unworthy of him. | His speech on that occasion was unworthy of him. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 2. Adjective Clause

**Rule (1) :** Adjective clause के बदले Adjective or participle का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| Such students as work hard may win a prize. | Hard working students may win a prize. |
| He is a man who possesses great courage. | He is a very courageous man. |
| The moment which is lost is lost for ever. | A lost moment is lost for ever. |
| People who work hard prosper in the world. | Hard working people prosper in the world. |

**Rule (2) :** Adjective clause के बदले Possessive Adjective or a noun in possessive case का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| They soon forgot the labours they had endured. | They soon forgot their past labours. |
| I saw the place where Premchandra was born. | I saw the birth place of Premchandra. |
| The teacher who has written this book is honest and laborious. | The author of this book is honest and laborious. |
| He came upon a hut where a hermit lived. | He came upon a hermit's hut. |
| This is the place where the freedom fighters meet. | This is the freedom Fighter's meeting place. |

**Rule (3) :** Adjective clause के बदले a noun in apposition का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| Patna, which is the capital of Bihar, is situated on the Ganga. | Patna, the capital of Bihar, is situated on the Ganga. |
| The son who was his chief pride in his old age is dead. | His son, the pride of his old age, is dead. |
| This rule, from which all our troubles have come, is much disliked. | This rule, the source of all our troubles, is much disliked. |

**Rule (4) :** Adjective clause के बदले एक Gerundial Infinitive का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| He has no money that he can spare. | He has no money to spare. |
| You have no advice that you can offer me. | You have no advice to offer me. |

**Rule (5) :** Adjective clause के बदले a preposition with its object का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex sentences | Simple sentences |
|---|---|
| The benefits that he derived from his early training were soon lost. | The benefits of his early training were soon lost. |
| Youth is the time when the seeds of character are sown. | Youth is the time for the formation of character. |

**Rule (6) :** Adjective clause के बदले compound noun का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| That is the place where my grandmother was buried. | That was my grand mother's burial place. |

### 3. Adverb clause

**Rule (1) :** Adverb clause के बदले एक preposition or prepositional phrase का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| The student was pleased that he had won a prize. | The student was pleased at having won a prize. |
| You will not pay unless you are compelled. | You will pay only under compulsion. |
| He can talk as much as he likes. | He can talk to his heart's content. |
| When the cat is away the mice will play. | In the absence of the cat the mice will play. |
| He is pushing his business wherever he can find an opening. | He is pushing business in every possible direction. |

**Rule (2) :** Adverb clause के बदले participle का प्रयोग कर complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| As the main point has been gained, success is certain. | The main point having been gained, success is certain. |
| When he had finished his work, he went out to play. | Having finished his work, he went out to play. |
| As the war was ended, the soldiers returned. | The war being ended, the soldiers returned. |

**Rule (3) :** Adverb clause के बदले Gerundial Infinitive का प्रयोग कर Complex sentences से simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| We were surprised, when we heard him confess. | We were surprised to hear him confess. |
| He is so exhausted that he can't walk. | He is too exhausted to walk. |
| He was so tired that he could not stand. | He was too tired to stand. |
| We eat that we may live. | We eat to live. |
| He was wonder-struck when he heard her saying this. | He was wonder-struck to hear her saying this. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (4) :** कुछ ऐसे Adverb clauses containing complex sentences हैं जिसे simple sentences में इस प्रकार convert (बदला) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Simple Sentences |
|---|---|
| When the cat is away, the mice will play. | In the absence of the cat the mice will play. |
| While there is life, there is hope. | Life and hope are inseparable. |
| As you sow, so you will reap. | You will but reap the fruits of your sowing. |
| Because he was ill he stayed at home. | Owing to his illness he stayed at home. |

## V. Conversion of Compound Sentences into Complex Sentences :

**Rule (5) :** किसी एक coordinate clause को एक subordinate clause में बदल कर compound sentences से complex sentences में इस प्रकार convert किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Compound Sentences | Complex Sentences |
|---|---|
| Speak the truth, and you need have no fear. | If you speak the truth, you need have no fear. |
| Leave this room, or I will compel you to do so. | Unless you leave this room, I will compel you to do so. |
| He was a poor man, but he was always honest. | He was always honest, although he was poor. |
| He didn't work hard, therefore he failed. | He failed because he did not work hard. |
| Waste not, want not. | If you don't waste, you will not want. |
| He was very tired, and therefore he fell sound asleep. | He fell sound asleep, because he was very tired. |
| I wish to become rich, therefore I work hard. | I work hard that I may become rich. |
| She heard the news, and set off at once. | When she heard the news, she set off at once. |
| He is poor, but honest. | Although he is poor, he is honest. |
| Keep quiet or you will be fined. | Unless you keep quiet, you will be fined. |

## VI. Conversion of Complex Sentences into Compound Sentences.

**Rule 6 :** Subordinate caluse को Cordinate clause में बदल कर Complex sentences से Compound sentences में इस प्रकार convert किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Complex Sentences | Compound Sentences |
|---|---|
| You are honest, though poor. | You are poor, but honest. |
| She has found the necklace that she had lost. | She had lost a necklace, but she has found it. |
| If you don't work hard, you will not pass. | You must work hard or you will not pass. |
| He is more a teacher than a writer. | He is something of a writer, but rather more of a teacher. |
| Unless you study regularly, you will make no progress. | Study regularly or you will make no progress. |
| I am certain that you have made a mistake. | You have made a mistake, and of this I am certain. |
| As soon as he saw the tiger, he ran away. | He saw the tiger, and at once he ran away. |
| If you don't make the confession, I must do so. | Either you or I must make the confession. |
| She worked hard so that she might win the prize. | She aimed at winning the first prize and worked hard. |
| He is glad that you have recovered from illness. | You have recovered from illness, and he is glad of it. |

## VII. The Interchange of Principal and Subordinate Clauses :

**Rule 7 :** Principal clause तथा Subordinate clause के place में परिवर्तन कर sentence को इस प्रकार Rewrite किया जाता है। लेकिन ध्यान रखें कि sentence के अर्थ में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं हो।

दूसरे शब्दों में—Principal clause तथा subordinate clause को इस प्रकार Interchange किया जाता है। जैसे—

1. No sooner did the sun rise than the mist cleared up.
   = The mist cleared up as soon as the sun rose.
2. Unless you confess your guilt, you will be punished.
   = Confess you guilt that you may not be punished.
3. He is more eager to win a prize than to work for one.
   = He is not so eager to work for a prize as to win one.
4. He is not such a clever man as he was said to be.
   = He was said to be a cleverer man than he is.
5. He can't walk fast, because he is a little lame.
   = He is a little lame so he can't walk fast.

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Convert the following simple sentences into compound sentences :*

1. Seeing a bear coming, he fled.
2. We must take rest, on pain of losing our health.
3. Besides being a teacher, he is a good author.
4. We must walk two hours a day to preserve our health.
5. Owing to ill health, he was unable to work.
6. Taking off his clothes, he plunged into the river.
7. With all his wealth, he is not happy.
8. In addition to advising them, he helped them liberally.
9. To avoid punishment, he ran away.
10. Being a cripple he cannot ride a horse.
11. In spite of his great strength, he was overcome.
12. Drawing his sword, he rushed at the enemy.
13. Against the wishes of my family I left college.
14. The sun having risen, the fog dispersed.
15. Hearing their principal's footsteps the students ran away.
16. My brother-in-law being now in Mumbai, I shall go there to meet him.
17. He fled away, to escape being killed.
18. In spite of all my advice, he has done this foolish thing.
19. To his great disappointment, he failed to carry out his purpose.
20. The real culprit having confessed, the accused was acquitted.
21. Finding herself in difficulty, she went to her teacher for help.
22. For all his riches, he is not contented.
23. You escaped punishment by confessing your fault.
24. The agreement having been signed, all were satisfied.
25. Not withstanding his recent failure, he is still hopeful.

**Q. 2.** *Convert the following compound sentences into simple sentences :*

1. He saw a bear coming and fled in terror.
2. He is rich, yet he is not contented.
3. He is well versed in books, but wanting in common sense.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



4. Make haste, or else you will be late.
5. Give us some clear proofs of your assertion, otherwise no one will believe you.
6. He must apologize, or he will be punished.
7. Not only was the sailor set free, but he was provided with some money for his journey home.
8. The hermit took pity on the poor girl and turned her into a beautiful bird.
9. I did my best to be punctual, but still I was occassionally behind time.
10. I advised you to make the best use of your time, but you paid no heed.
11. The judge, as well as the jury, believed the prisoner to be guilty.
12. The robber not only robbed the poor man but also killed him.
13. My grandmother was very tired with walking, and so she sat down to take a little rest.
14. She tried hard, but she did not succeed.
15. Your elder brother is a well read man, but in matters of business he is a fool.
16. He called me, but I gave him no answer.
17. He worked hard, yet he did not pass.
18. Every attempt was made to check the spread of AIDS; yet a large number of persons died.
19. Walk quickly, else you will not overtake him.
20. He is a very rich man but still he is unhappy.
21. The sun shone out, and the locusts all flew away into their hiding places.
22. The old woman frequently begged her sons to live together in peace, but she was disregarded.
23. Turn to the right and you will find the house of your uncle.
24. He is out of health, and therefore he cannot go to school.
25. I am the son of poor parents, and therefore I have to encounter many trials and difficulties at the outset of my career.
26. Not only energy, but patience is necessary to success in life.
27. He ordered me to halt, but I took no notice.
28. The teacher came into the classroom and every student rose from his seat.
29. He had no money with him, and he could not give the beggar anything.
30. Her health failed during the examination, and everyone was very sad.
31. My colleague arrived and we went for a walk.
32. The criminal escaped several times but was finally caught.
33. We should make the best use of our younger days, or we shall repent it in our old age.
34. I found myself getting weaker and weaker; so I consulted a doctor.
35. Sweetness of scent, as well as brightness of colour, makes the rose the queen of flowers.
36. She found a necklace, and was delighted at her good luck.
37. Your brother brought the lamp and you began your home work.
38. You neither returned the goods nor paid the bill.
39. His real character was now exposed to view, and every one laughed at him.
40. Walk quickly or you will not reach the station on time.

**Q. 3.** *Convert the following simple sentences into complex sentences, each containing a noun clause :*

1. Tell me the time and place of your birth.
2. He cannot foretell the time of his departure.
3. You confessed your crime.
4. You know the name of the writer of this book.
5. No one knows the day of his death.
6. I expect to meet my friend tonight.
7. He doesn't know the time of the arrival of the train.
8. No one can tell the time of his coming.
9. He bought his friend's car.
10. I hoped to win the prize.
11. All his statement should be accepted.
12. I shouted to my neighbours to come to my help.
13. The greatness of your labour can be seen from the result.
14. Obedience to your parents is your first duty.
15. You will hear of my success.
16. He wishes me to play for his team.
17. Nawab's hiding place is still unknown.
18. Mr. Khanna pleaded ignorance of the law.
19. I believe my success to be certain in that case.
20. We must hope for better times.
21. The verdict of the judge was against the accused.
22. Speak the truth.
23. I confessed my guilt.
24. The king expressed a desire for the presence of the minister.
25. Her death at so young an age is much to be regretted.

**Q. 4.** *Convert the following simple sentences into complex sentences, each containing an adjective clause :*

1. She was a woman of great ability.
2. My uncle, the police inspector of this police station, is on leave.
3. I saw a wounded soldier.
4. An honest man is the noblest work of God.
5. Indira Gandhi was the first Indian woman to become the Prime Minister.
6. His dwelling place is not known to me.
7. A student of industrious habits is sure to succeed.
8. My present residence suits me exactly.
9. The publication is far from here.
10. The value of walking is great.
11. Our publisher is a man of his principle.
12. His leave application has been despatched.
13. He is a man of irresponsible nature.
14. Do you know the road to the bus stand ?
15. The classroom is not the place for the students to play in.
16. She was a woman of irreproachable conduct.
17. After a storm; the weather is generally calm.
18. The reason of his success is known to us.
19. He is not a man to tell a lie.
20. Your offence is not pardonable.
21. The boy near me is my son.
22. Aditya is unhappy in his present school.
23. This is not the method of business.
24. That was the act of a coward.
25. His explanation could not be true.

**Q. 5.** *Convert the following simple sentences into complex sentences, each containing an adverb clause :*

1. For all his wealth, he is unhappy.
2. Having finished my work, I went for a walk.
3. He is too dull to understand.
4. Owing to ill-health his father has resigned.
5. After the death of her husband she left Delhi.
6. I worked to the best of my ability.
7. In spite of all riches, he is never contented.
8. For all his experience he is still incompetent.
9. Your cleverness is not inferior to that of any other student in the class.
10. Of all the girls in the class Aditi is the most intelligent.
11. You always do your work to the best of your power.
12. With the first appearance of the sun, the birds begin to sing.
13. Nobody can become rich without hard work.
14. She was too fond of amusement to become a prosperous man.
15. He works day and night with a view to becoming rich.
16. Without leave from the teacher, you should not be absent.
17. We eat to live.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


18. Notwithstanding the heat of the sun we must go out.
19. You are too lazy to succeed.
20. I wrote according to instructions.
21. The problem is too difficult to be solved.
22. You were very sorry on finding out your mistake.
23. Mr. Jha resigned his post on the ground of unfair treatment.
24. With his permission I will go away.
25. Till the day of the operation, my mother-in-law did more work.
26. Naresh purposes to become rich by sticking steadily to his work.

**Q. 6.** *Convert the following complex sentences containing noun clauses into simple sentences :*

1. I believe that you are innocent.
2. All believe that he is guilty of murder.
3. You confessed that you were guilty.
4. He ordered the police that they should imprison the terrorists.
5. No one in this publication has any doubt, that I got secret help from the publisher.
6. I admit that Milton was a great poet, but deny that he was a good man.
7. The villagers are now ready to confess that the charge against my uncle was groundless.
8. That the old man will die is certain.
9. I hope that better times will come.
10. He does not know when he well return.
11. You know what you are, but you don't know what you will be.
12. I asked why you came here.
13. They could not make out what those lines of poetry meant.
14. Tell him when and where you were born.
15. No one knows when he passed M.A.
16. That the rose is the sweetest and most beautiful of flowers is admitted by almost everyone.
17. You are anxious to know where I live and what my occupation is.
18. How long he will stay is doubtful.
19. It is reported that our soldiers have won a victory.
20. The law will punish whoever is guilty.

**Q. 7.** *Convert the following complex sentences containing Adjective clauses into simple sentences :*

1. He saw a man who was blind.
2. The student who works hard is sure to succeed.
3. This is the place where my son was born.
4. Abhay who was the pride of his family is dead.
5. A stone that is rolling gathers no moss.
6. Most of the proses that Premchandra wrote have been preserved.
7. You sold the book which belonged to your friend.
8. The handkerchief that was lost has been found.
9. He has no money with which he can help me.
10. The explanation you gave was not to the point.
11. This is the room which is used for cooking.
12. Brijnandan Babu died in the village where he was born.
13. The man who wrote this book is a teacher.
14. The devil that men do lives after them.
15. The time when the Superfast Express will arrive is not given.
16. The smell which comes from this bathroom is very bad.
17. The opinion he has formed of you is unjust.
18. This is the building in which I live.
19. The relation in which I stand to you at present may be reversed at some future time.
20. The first year in which the college was opened was 1999.

**Q. 8.** *Convert the following complex sentences containing Adverb clauses into simple sentences :*

1. I did as I was told.
2. The higher we go up, the cooler the air becomes.
3. She failed in the examination, because she was unable to answer more than a quarter of the questions.
4. He is so weak that he can't walk.
5. An honest businessman speaks as he thinks.
6. As we felt cold, we lit a fire.
7. Though you are poor, you are contented.
8. When she entered the bedroom, she heard a loud noise.
9. As you were not there, he left a message for you.
10. Wherever he goes, I shall follow him.
11. The ox is so old that it can't work.
12. As soon as the criminal saw the policeman, he ran away.
13. She appointed my brother because I recommended him.
14. As the sun has set, we had better start for home.
15. Because he has done this, I shall punish him.
16. No sooner did I see him than he disappeared.
17. When the trick was found out, the house owner ordered the man to be expelled from the house at once.
18. Although she has failed thrice, she will try again.
19. As soon as the student heard the news, he phoned to me.
20. The peasantry became poorer, as the landlord became richer.

**Q. 9.** *Convert the following compound sentences into complex sentences :*

1. Hand over the prisoner to me, and I will examine him.
2. He put on his hat and went outside.
3. I wish to win the first prize, therefore I work hard.
4. You are poor, but contented.
5. He put his hand in his pocket and gave me fifty rupees.
6. You must do your work well, or your master will be angry with you.
7. He falls sound asleep, and immediately the fever leaves him.
8. I ran to the busstand, but I missed the bus.
9. Take exercise daily or your health will be ruined.
10. He persevered in his efforts, and succeeded at last.
11. Walk quickly, else you will not catch the train.
12. He confessed his fault or he would have been punished.
13. Mosquitoes cause malaria, and this is well known.
14. Go away at once, otherwise I will send for a police man.
15. Be industrious, and you will succeed.
16. My father has lost all his teeth, consequently, he cannot eat hard food.
17. He must weep or he will die.
18. I called upon Mr. Pathak and he introduced me to his partner.
19. Take this medicine regularly and you will soon get better.
20. He is eighty years old, and yet he still has good sight.
21. Give me the book and I will read it.
22. Be just and fear not.
23. Murder has no tongue, but it will some day speak.
24. It is now late; so we had better go to bed.
25. It is cold, so he will wear a coat.
26. He landed at Rajgir, and there he spent a very enjoyable week.
27. She is my wife, therefore I love her.
28. You must be careful of your money, or you will soon lose it.
29. We were defeated indeed, but not disgraced.
30. He thoroughly dislikes that woman, and therefore he can't admire her.
31. Be kind and help her.
32. I placed the book on the table, and it is still there.
33. Do this, or you will be dismissed.
34. Wise men love truth, whereas fools shun it.
35. I stand up to speak, and everyone is at once silent.
36. My daughter has never done such a thing before; he shall therefore be pardoned.
37. Help yourself and God will help you.
38. Sign your name, or I shall not agree to this.
39. I aimed at winning the prize and worked hard.
40. Your brother's health was bad last year, and hence he was not promoted at the end of the term.
41. He desired me to start, and so I am ready to do so.

**Q. 10.** *Convert the following complex sentences into compound sentences :*

1. I have found the pen that I have lost.
2. If you buy this car, you will run into debt.
3. If you don't work hard, you will lose your position in the class.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



4. He is more a philosopher than a poet.
5. Unless you consult the dictionary, you will not know the exact meaning of this word.
6. Unless you do your work well, your master will be angry with you.
7. Unless he speaks the truth in your behalf, you will not be acquitted.
8. If you don't apologize, you will be dismissed.
9. As soon as I received the news, I left the place.
10. If he doesn't take exercise, he will be ill.
11. If you believe in my words, you will not be misled.
12. You could do this, if you tried.
13. If he were not my senior, I would endeavour to teach him better manners.
14. If you eat too much, you will be ill.
15. You spoke the truth, because you feared the disgrace of falsehood.
16. I shall pay off all my debts in time, if only my creditors will have patience.
17. Although Mr. Thakur is a strict teacher, his intentions are good.
18. If you act so foolishly, you will certainly be ruined.
19. The people will give all their votes to 'X', lest 'Y' should be elected.
20. I still trusted him though he had deceived me.
21. I was educated at a public school where I learnt English.
22. As soon as the cat appeared, the mice ran into their holes.
23. She failed because she did not work hard.
24. You know what I told him.
25. When the sun set, I returned home.
26. Those luggage should be carefully guarded, as everyone is trying to steal them.
27. The government can't impose taxes, unless the parliament consents.
28. He has had no trouble of any kind, since he came here.
29. The thief fled as soon as my pistol came in sight.
30. When the students have worked out the sum, they may go out to play.
31. If he had helped me in the time of need, I would now be ready to give help to him.
32. Aditya went to school as soon as he had finished his breakfast.
33. I had a buffalo that gave enormous quantities of milk.
34. The sea is as deep as the mountains are high.
35. I left for home yesterday, as soon as I received that letter.
36. If I were recommended for my work, it would encourage me to be equally industrious in future.
37. I will not let you go, unless you promise to help me.
38. She worked hard so that she might stand first in the examination.
39. He must begin his book with a preface as other writers do.
40. She will make tea, when the water is boiling.
41. I selected this student as the best in the class, after I had examined all of them.

**Q. 11.** *Interchange the principal and Subordinate clauses in the following sentences.*

or, *Rewrite the following sentences, making the Principal and Subordinate clauses change places :*

1. No sooner did the sun rise than the fog disappeared.
2. No sooner did the bell ring than the children ran into their classes.
3. No sooner had I reached the station than the train steamed off.
4. No sooner did the bell ring than the boys ran out of their classes.
5. No sooner does he arrive than he begins to work.
6. Unless you amend your ways, you will get into trouble.
7. He always felt an appetite as soon as he heard the dinner bell.
8. As soon as you saw the policeman, you ran away.
9. The girl was sent back to his parents because she was taken seriously ill.
10. You are such a false man, that no one will believe your words.
11. We don't trust that man because he is always talking about religion.
12. She was instructed to leave all those things in the place where she had put them.
13. The patient is progressing as well as he could be expected.
14. The judge put several questions to the accused, which he couldn't answer.
15. His coat was not returned until it had been washed.
16. He is not such a wise man as he was reputed to be.
17. He never borrowed what he didn't afterwards repay.
18. The patient is progressing as well as could be expected.
19. My brothers live on the same kind of food that I take my self.
20. The promise that I have made shall be faithfully kept.

## Miscellaneous

**Q. 12.** *Rewrite the following sentences according to the directions given in the brackets :*

or, *Rewrite as directed in brackets :*

1. The news is so good that it can't be true. *(Rewrite using 'too')*
2. The sun was too hot for us to sit outside. *(Rewrite using so ..... that)*
3. Aditi was plucking the flowers. *(Begin with the flowers .....)*
4. You are more intelligent than I. *(Begin with I .....)*
5. Nothing can be gained without effort. *(Rewrite the sentence beginning with 'can')*
6. Please switch off the light. *(Change the voice)*
7. No other woman in the colony is as beautiful as Nilu. *(Rewrite the sentence using Superlative degree of 'beautiful')*
8. You come home late every night. Your father doesn't like it. *(Combine into simple sentence)*
9. He is sometimes foolish. *(Convert into negative)*
10. Only the evening star has yet appeared. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'none')*
11. You must work hard or you will not pass. *(Convert into complex sentence)*
12. Unless you work hard you will not pass. *(Convert into compound sentence)*
13. The tiger was wounded but not killed. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'Although')*
14. Search his pockets and you will find the ring. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'if')*
15. Truth causes hurt when one is dishonest. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'hurt' as a verb)*
16. Health is better than wealth. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'preferable')*
17. Japan is the most prosperous country in Asia. *(Rewrite the sentence using comparative degree of 'prosperous')*
18. Though he came late to school he was not punished. *(Begin with Inspite of .....)*
19. He saw no one in the office. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'anyone')*
20. He saw the danger and paused. *(Begin with when .....)*
21. Time is so precious that it can't be wasted. *(Convert into simple sentence)*
22. Except that he hurt his hand, he was lucky. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'hurt' as a noun)*
23. Not only did his father give him money but his mother too. *(Rewrite the sentence using 'besides')*
24. Only Hindus are admitted. *(Convert into complex sentence)*
25. He finished his exercise and put away his books. *(Begin with Having finished .....)*
26. My pocket has been picked. *(Begin with someone .....)*
27. He is greater than I. *(Convert into negative)*
28. One should keep one's promises. *(Begin : Promises .....)*
29. Who taught you Grammar ? *(Begin : By whom .....)*
30. She is too clever not to see through your tricks. *(Rewrite the sentence without using 'not')*
31. The enemy has defeated our army. *(Begin : Our army .....)*
32. What a beautiful scene this is! *(Convert into Assertive)*

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Synthesis of Sentences 28

Synthesis का शाब्दिक अर्थ combination or joining together (संयोजन) होता है। यह Analysis (विश्लेषण) का opposite word है। Synthesis वह Process (प्रक्रिया/विधि) है जिसके द्वारा हम कई छोटे-छोटे Sentences को मिलाकर एक लम्बा Sentence बनाते हैं।

➢ *Synthesis means the combination of a number of simple sentences into one new sentence—simple, compound or complex.*

➢ Synthesis करके जब हम कई Sentences को मिलाकर एक Sentence बनाते हैं तो वह Sentence simple, compound or complex हो सकता है।

Synthesis के Process को समझने के लिए Simple, Compound, तथा Complex Sentence को समझना आवश्यक ही नहीं अपितु अनिवार्य है। बनावट की दृष्टि से Sentence मुख्यतः तीन प्रकार के होते हैं—

1. Simple Sentence *(सरल वाक्य)*
2. Compound Sentence *(यौगिक/संयुक्त वाक्य)*
3. Complex Sentence *(मिश्रित वाक्य)*

**1. Simple Sentence :** वह Sentence जिसमें एक Subject तथा एक Finite verb रहता है Simple Sentence कहलाता है। जैसे—

He (S) is playing (finite verb).

She (S) was singing (finite verb) a song (object).

**Note : Finite Verb :** वह verb जो अपने Subject के number तथा person के मुताबिक प्रयुक्त होता है finite verb कहलाता है। जैसे—

Aditya plays cricket. Girls play football.

**2. Compound Sentence :** वह Sentence जो दो या दो से अधिक Principal clauses से मिलकर बना होता है, Compound Sentence कहलाता है। ये Clauses co-ordinating conjunctions से जुड़े होते हैं। जैसे—

He is playing (P.C) but (Co-ordinating conj.) she is dancing (P.C)

He is poor (P.C) yet (Co-ordinating conj.) he is honest (P.C.)

**3. Complex Sentence :** वह sentence जो एक Principal clause तथा एक या एक से अधिक Subordinate clause से मिलकर बना होता है complex sentence कहलाता है। ये clauses subordinating conjunctions से जुड़े होते हैं। जैसे—

All is well (P.C) that ends well. (S.C)

No sooner did I reach the station (P.C) than the train started (S.C)

**Note : (i) Clause :** शब्दों के वैसे समूह को clause कहते हैं जिसमें एक subject तथा एक predicate रहता है।

**(ii) Principal Clause :** वह clause जिसका अर्थ स्वतः स्पष्ट हो जाय उसे principal clause कहते हैं।

**(iii) Sub-ordinate Clause :** वह clause जो meaning (अर्थ) के लिए Principal clause पर निर्भर करता है Sub-ordinate clause कहलाता है।

## A. Combination of two or more simple sentences into a single simple sentence.

I. दो या दो से अधिक simple sentences को combine (जोड़) कर single simple sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है—

**Rule (1) :** Participles का प्रयोग कर simple Sentences को इस प्रकार combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) He fled. (b) He had seen a bear coming. | 1. Seeing or having seen a bear coming, he fled. |
| 2. (a) He jumped up. (b) He ran away. | 2. Jumping up, he ran away |
| 3. (a) She failed in the examination. (b) She gave up her studies | 3. Having failed in the examination, she gave up her studies. |
| 4. (a) He heard a noise. (b) He got up. | 4. Hearing a noise, he got up. |
| 5. (a) He saw a lion. (b) He cried out. | 5. Seeing a lion, he cried out. |
| 6. (a) He lost his fortune. (b) He is now a beggar | 6. Having lost his fortune, he is now a beggar. |
| 7. (a) He is tired of play. (b) He wants to rest. | 7. Being tired of play, he wants to rest. |
| 8. (a) The police man ran after the thief. (b) He caught him. | 8. Running after the thief, the policeman cought him. |
| 9. (a) He had his dinner. (b) He began to do his homework. | 9. Having had his dinner, he began to do his homework. |
| 10. (a) The child was hungry. (b) It cried for milk. | 10. The child, being hungry, cried for milk. |

**Rule (2) :** Absolute phrase का प्रयोग कर simple sentences को इस प्रकार combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) The soldiers arrived. (b) The mob dispersed. | 1. Thesoldiershavingarrived, the mob dispersed. |
| 2. (a) The bank was closed. (b) He could not withdraw any money | 2. The bank being closed, he could not withdraw any money. |
| 3. (a) The weather is fine. (b) We go for a walk. | 3. The weather being fine, we go for a walk. |
| 4. (a) It is a very hot day. (b) He remains indoors. | 4. It being a very hot day, he remains indoors. |
| 5. (a) The sun rose. (b) The fog disappeared. | 5. The sun having risen, the fog disappeared. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (3) :** A Preposition with a noun or a gerund का प्रयोग कर simples sentences को इस प्रकार combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) I gave them my advice. (b) I helped them liberally | 1. Besides giving them my advice, I helped them liberally. |
| 2. (a) Her mother died. (b) She heard the news. (c) She fainted. | 2. On hearing the news of her mother's death, she fainted. |
| 3. (a) He did not succeed. (b) He had made every effort. | 3. With all his efforts, he did not succeed. |
| 4. (a) He has failed many times. (b) He still hopes to succeed. | 4. In spite of many failures, he hopes to succeed. |
| 5. (a) You had a great deal of influence. (b) But you could not get the government job. | 5. With all your influence, you could not get the government job. |

**Rule (4) :** Infinitive (to + $V^1$) का प्रयोग कर simple sentences को इस प्रकार combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है।

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) We must help the poor. (b) It is our duty. | 1. It is our duty to help the poor. |
| 2. (a) I want to educate my daughter. (b) I send her to school. | 2. I send my daughter to school to be educated. |
| 3. (a) He is too weak. (b) He cannot attend school. | 3. He is too weak to attend school. |
| 4. (a) He has five daughters. (b) He must get them married. | 4. He has five daughters to get married. |
| 5. (a) She is very fat. (b) She cannot run. | 5. She is too fat to run. |
| 6. (a) My brother had not enough industry. (b) He could not therefore win a prize. | 6. My brother had not enough industry to win a prize. |

**Rule (5) :** A noun or a phrase in Apposition का प्रयोग कर Simple Sentences को इस प्रकार combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) He fled from his creditors. (b) This was very dishonest. | 1. He fled from his creditors, a very dishonest act. |
| 2. (a) Satish is my friend. (b) He plays cricket with me. | 2. Satish, my friend, plays cricket with me. |
| 3. (a) Delhi is the capital of India. (b) It is situated on the bank of the Yamuna. | 3. Delhi, the capital of India, is situated on the bank of the Yamuna. |
| 4. (a) Mr. Thakur is his tenant. (b) He pays the rent regularly. | 4. Mr. Thakur, his tenant, pays the rent regularly. |
| 5. (a) Mr. Arjun Babu is my houseowner. (b) He always speaks the truth. | 5. Mr. Arjun Babu, my houseowner, always speaks the truth. |

**Rule (6) :** An adverb or an adverbial phrase का प्रयोग कर simple sentences को इस प्रकार combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) You were unconscious of your faults. (b) Your unconsciousness was complete. | 1. You were completely / wholly / utterly / quite unconscious of your faults. |
| 2. (a) She deserved to succeed. (b) She failed. | 2. She failed undeservedly. |
| 3. (a) The sun had set. (b) She had not come back home. | 3. She had not come back home by sunset. |
| 4. (a) The train is very late. (b) This is unusual | 4. The train is unusually late. |
| 5. (a) I tried to console him in his grief. (b) It was all in vain. | 5. In vain I tried to console him in his grief. |

**Note :** ऊपर वर्णित (described) Several methods का प्रयोग कर दो से अधिक Simple Sentences को इस प्रकार Combine (जोड़ा) किया जाता है।

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) The Sarpanch was ill (b) The villagers heard the news. (c) They crowded to the Gram Kachahari. (d) They wished to inquire about his health. | 1. Having heard the news of the Sarpanch's illness, the villagers crowded to the Gram Kachahari to inquire about his health. |
| 2. (a) I went to Mumbai. (b) Mumbai is the London of India. (c) I went there during the Durga Puja holidays. (d) My purpose was to see the Gateway of India there. | 2. During the Durga Puja holidays I went to Mumbai, the London of India, to see the Gateway of India there. |

## Practice Set

*Q. 1. Combine each set of simple sentences into one simple sentence by using a participle (present, past or perfect participles) :*

1. I felt sleepy. I went to bed.
2. He went to Delhi last year. He wished to see the prime Minister
3. He worked hard. He felt tired.
4. She found herself alone. She began to weep.
5. He received a letter. He became very happy.
6. I finished my dinner. I went out for a walk.
7. You drew your sword. You rushed at the enemy.
8. He took this journey to Mumbai yesterday. He desired to get the medical advice.
9. You felt tired. You laid your work aside.
10. She hurt her foot. She stopped.
11. You must confess your fault. Without making such a confession you will be fined.
12. The hermit took pity on the mouse. He turned it into a cat.
13. I sat down to rest a little. I had had along and tiring walk.
14. Turn to the right. You will then find the house.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



15. I took up my gun. I went out to shoot the tiger.
16. He was walking along the foot path one day. He saw a dead dog.
17. The headman was very ill. He could not attend the meeting.
18. He was very careful to make a clear will before his death. He left an equal share of his property to each of his sons.
19. You came to me. You wanted leave. You were ill.
20. I heard Aditya. He was shouting very loudly. He was calling me.
21. My father cannot eat hard food. He is very old. He has lost his teeth.
22. He has told you the facts. He has nothing more to say. He will sit down.
23. You were returning home. You saw a man. He looked very ill. He was lying by the road side.
24. I first selected a site. Then I levelled it. Then I dug the foundations. Finally I began to build a house.
25. He explained his case to the doctor. He was seated on a chair against the table at the time. He held his mobile set in his right hand.

**Q. 2.** *Combine each set of simple sentences into one simple sentence by using absolute phrase:*

1. The Sun rose. The fog disappeared.
2. The police arrived. The mob dispersed.
3. The lecture was over. The students streamed out of the classroom.
4. Your classmate arrived. You were very pleased.
5. It is extremely hot. One could not do any work.
6. The agreement was signed. All were satisfied.
7. The storm ceased. The Sun came out.
8. The real culprit has confessed his guilt. The accused is therefore acquitted of the charge.
9. It was very late. He went to bed at once.
10. Her father is dead. She has to support her widowed mother.
11. It is a bank holiday. We cannot withdraw any money.
12. The teacher was out of the classroom. The door was shut. The children made a lot of noise.
13. The fog was very dense. No one could see his way through the streets.
14. There is no money left. I have to borrow from my friends.
15. The film was very boring. I left it in the middle.
16. Your career is very bright. You will prove to be a very successful student.
17. The meeting was over. We all went home.
18. The charges of corruption were proved. He was dismissed from service.
19. The Bihar government conceded the demands of the employees. The strike was called off.
20. There is no evidence of his involvement in the crime. He is set free.
21. Potatoes are very bad this year. The prices of potatoes will rise.
22. You were not present in the house. I left a message with your brother.
23. The clouds dispersed. The sun came out bright in the sky.
24. The publisher has resigned from his post. There is no question of taking him back in service.
25. The rainy season set in. The farmers became busy in their fields.

**Q. 3.** *Combine each set of simple sentences into one simple sentence by using a preposition with a noun or a gerund :*

1. I finished my work. I went home.
2. The student realized his mistake. He grew very nervous.
3. He has failed many times. He still hopes to succeed.
4. She failed at the examination. Idleness was the cause of her failure.
5. I made a promise. I kept it also.
6. You are sorrowful. You are still hopeful.
7. They were defeated. They were much disappointed at this.
8. He is very rich. He is not very happy.
9. He will be promoted to a higher post. He will have to serve five years for it .
10. You heard the news. You rode away at once.
11. The sun set. Their journey was not ended.
12. He stood there for hours. He did not move. He did not speak.
13. My father is a man of character. He would not do any thing mean.
14. You are speaking the truth. Your manner shows this.
15. I work hard. I desire to earn my own living.
16. I gave him a book. I had exchanged one with him.
17. His wife died suddenly. This gave him a rude shock. He never fully recovered from it.
18. He searched for the book. He could not find it.
19. He died in the prime of his life. Cancer was the cause of his death.
20. The school will be closed for the summer vacation. They will go home.
21. I saved up my money. An evil day might come.
22. She made heroic efforts to succeed. She failed.
23. I bought a new pen. Its cost was fifty rupees. It was made by an American company.
24. He declared me to be guilty. Everyone else declared me to be guilty.
25. I saw her in the market. Her husband was with her. Her children were with her.

**Q. 4.** *Combine each set of simple sentences into one simple sentence by using an Infinitive :*

1. He is very weak. He cannot walk.
2. I am true to my word. I will not break my promise.
3. Vikas has left Patna. He will settle in Mumbai.
4. The Publisher gave an assurance to the authors. He will look into their grievance. He will solve their problems.
5. You cannot afford a car. You are too poor.
6. The criminal took out a knife. His intention was to frighten the old man.
7. He speaks the truth. He is not afraid of it.
8. He has six children. He must provide for them.
9. You wasted all your money on food and drink. It was foolish.
10. I have some bills. I must pay them.
11. I want to earn my livelihood. I work hard for this reason.
12. She could not prepare well for the examination. She had not sufficient time.
13. His parents will hear of his marriage. They will be delighted.
14. You work very hard. You want to pass the examination.
15. You are very intelligent. You cannot commit such mistakes.
16. Everyone should be honest and industrious. Our country expects this of every man.
17. You must confess your fault. You will be fined otherwise.
18. You have told me all. There is nothing more to be said.
19. His car was old. The loan on it had to be paid.
20. His house and goods were sold. His debts had to be paid.
21. He cannot afford a T. V. Set. He is too poor.
22. You stayed at home and looked after your aged parents. This was your reason for staying there.
23. In a cricket match each side must have its captain. The captain controls the game.
24. I work hard. I want to pass with good marks. I want to come out first in the examination.
25. He spoke on my behalf. It was very kind of him.

**Q. 5.** *Combine each set of Simple Sentences into one Simple Sentence by using a noun or a phrase in Apposition:*

1. Prakash Mishra lives in Patna. He is the D.S.P. It is a large town.
2. Tommy is my faithful dog. I love him.



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. Your brother is a great painter. He has painted this picture.
4. Gandhijee never told a lie. He is called 'the father of Nation'.
5. My brother is a doctor. He lives at Katra. Katra is the police station of my village.
6. Sometimes he travelled in Nepal. Sometimes he travelled in Japan. Sometimes he travelled in Switzerland. He always carried with him the same mildness of temper.
7. Shakespeare is the greatest playwright of the world. He was not a very educated man.
8. His father was a millionaire. He sent him to Delhi for his education.
9. Your friend is a notorious criminal. He is involved in many cases of rape and murder.
10. The Taj Mahal was built by Shah Jahan. It is the finest mausoleum in the world.
11. Tendulkar is a good batsman. He made a hundred runs yesterday.
12. His grandfather was a multi-millionaire. He founded many charitable societies to help the poor.

Q. 6. *Combine each set of simple sentences into one simple sentence by using an adverb or an adverbial phrase :*

1. He escaped from the accident. It was very fortunate.
2. You are the best student. There is no doubt about it.
3. She neglected her studies. This was foolish.
4. He will come to attend my son's birthday celebration. It is certain.
5. You have answered all the questions. The answers are correct.
6. He tried to climb the mountain. He did not succeed in it.
7. He begged for pardon. His request was not granted.
8. Mr. Gupta invested all his money in a single bank. The investment was not a prudent one.
9. The master dismissed his old employee. This was a foolish act.
10. He is singing. His voice is sweet.
11. The sun set. The travellers had not returned.
12. The rose is the best of flowers. This is certain.
13. You answered me. Your answer was wrong.
14. She forgot her handkerchief. That was careless.
15. I visited Shimla. I did so for reasons of health.
16. You are not qualified for the post. You are not qualified in any degree.
17. I admitted my error. I expressed my regret.
18. You will return to me. You will not be long absent.
19. Beware of wine. This is of the first importance.
20. You insulted him. It was intentional.

### Miscellaneous

Q. 7. *Combine the following sets of sentences into simple sentences, by any of the methods shown above :*

1. She amused us very much. She told us a funny story.
2. The old man was carrying a basket. It was filled with apples.
3. He is going to Mumbai. He has got twelve months' leave. He wishes to become an accountant.
4. He has not much money. He cannot spare any.
5. I was determined to win a prize. I worked very hard.
6. I labour day and night. By this means I hope to become rich.
7. The child was drowning. It shouted for help. An old man heard the child's shouts. He plunged into the river. He risked his own life.
8. He is an honest man. This is well known to all.
9. I was fined for some reason. The reason was unknown.
10. We had no hope of his recovery. We all felt sad.
11. You are a clever student. No other student is more clever.
12. He bought this chair two years ago. It is still good. It is fit to sit.
13. You go to college. You wish to learn. You want to grow up honest, healthy and clever.
14. He has no dictionary. He is therefore unable to look up the meaning of this word.
15. I see you are working hard. I am therefore much pleased.
16. He was in debt. He was thrown into prison for that reason.
17. The earth is round. People of science have proved this.
18. You could not speak. You were thoroughly ashamed of your misconduct.
19. He was a leader. He did not follow other men. Such was his nature.
20. Our success is said to be certain. This is by no means clear.

## B. Combination of two or more simple sentences into a single compound sentence.

II. दो या दो से अधिक Simple Sentences को Combine (जोड़) कर Single Compound Sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है।

**Rule (1) :** Co-ordinating Conjunctions जैसे—and, both ... and, not only ..... but also, not less than, as well as से simple Sentences को combine (जोड़) कर Compound Sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) He finished his breakfast. (b) He went for a walk | 1. He finished his breakfast and went for a walk |
| 2. (a) He is a rogue. (b) He is a mad man. | 2. He is both a rogue and mad man. |
| 3. (a) She learns English. (b) She learns Hindi | 3. She learns English as well as Hindi. |
| 4. (a) He was fined (b) He was expelled. | 4. He was not only fined but also expelled. |
| 5. (a) Mohan is guilty. (b) Vijay is guilty no less. | 5. Vijay no less than Mohan is guilty. |

**Rule (2) :** Co-ordinating conjunctions जैसे—or, nor, neither, either ... or, neither ... nor, else, other wise से simple sentences को combine (जोड़) कर compound sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) He must weep. (b) He will die. | 1. He must weep or he will die. |
| 2. (a) Make haste. (b) You will be late | 2. Make haste or you will be late. |
| 3. (a) I do not play football (b) I do not play cricket. | 3. I do not play football, nor do I play cricket. |
| 4. (a) You do not smoke. (b) You do not drink. | 4. You do not smoke, neither do you drink. |
| 5. (a) Veena can do it. (b) Nilu can do it. | 5. Either Veena or Nilu can do it. |
| 6. (a) The schools are not open today. (b) The colleges are not open today. | 6. Neither the schools nor the colleges are open today. |
| 7. (a) Run fast. (b) You will be late. | 7. Run fast, else you will be late. |
| 8. (a) Mend your ways. (b) You will suffer. | 8. Mend your ways otherwise you will suffer. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Rule (3) :** Co-ordinating conjunctions जैसे—but, still, yet, nevertheless, however, only से Simple sentences को combine (जोड़) कर compound sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) You are poor.<br>(b) You are contented. | 1. You are poor but you are contented. |
| 2. (a) She is rich.<br>(b) She is unhappy. | 2. She is rich still she is unhappy. |
| 3. (a) He worked hard.<br>(b) He failed. | 3. He worked hard, yet he failed. |
| 4. (a) He failed<br>(b) He persevered. | 4. He failed, nevertheless he persevered. |
| 5. (a) She was ill.<br>(b) She decided to go | 5. She was ill, however, she decided to go. |
| 6. (a) He was all right.<br>(b) He was fatigued. | 6. He was all right, only he was fatigued. |

**Rule (4) :** Co-ordinating conjunctions जैसे—therefore, so, for, consequently, hence से Simple Sentences को combine (जोड़) कर Compound Sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) He was obstinate.<br>(b) He was punished. | 1. He was obstinate, therefore he was punished. |
| 2. (a) He is unwell.<br>(b) He cannot attend college. | 2. He is unwell, so he can not attend college. |
| 3. (a) We will die one day.<br>(b) All men are mortal. | 3. We will die one day, for all men are mortal. |
| 4. (a) He would not believe me.<br>(b) I had to give him proof | 4. He would not believe me, consequently I had to give him proof. |
| 5. (a) Smt. Gandhi died for us.<br>(b) We honour her. | 5. Smt. Gandhi died for us, hence we honour her. |

**Note :** जब simple sentences में comparison (तुलना) का भाव हो तब उन्हें as ... as, so ... as या than का प्रयोग कर जोड़ते हैं।

(a) जब simple sentences में समानता (equality) का भाव व्यक्त हो तब उन्हें as ... as का प्रयोग कर जोड़ते हैं।

(b) लेकिन simple sentences से जब negative comparison of equality (नकारात्मक समानता की तुलना) का बोध हो तो Not so ... as या not as ... as का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(c) जब simple sentences से अधिक अच्छा या अधिक खराब जैसी तुलना का भाव व्यक्त हो तो Comparative degree + than का प्रयोग कर उन्हें जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

| Separate | Combined. |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) She is beautiful.<br>(b) Her sister is beautiful | 1. She is as beautiful as her sister. |
| 2. (a) You did not run quickly.<br>(b) Your brother ran quickly | 2. You did not run so quickly as your brother. |
| 3. (a) This book is easier.<br>(b) That book is easy. | 3. This book is easier than that book. |

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Combine each set of simple sentences into one compound sentence :*

1. He likes to play cricket. His brother also likes it.
2. You are poor. You are not dishonest.
3. It was raining heavily. He would take an umbrella with him.
4. Volleyball is a vigorous and healthy game. Every student should play it.
5. She heard the sad news. She burst into tears.
6. The moon moves round the earth. The earth moves round the sun.
7. You were fined. You were sent to jail.
8. My friend is foolish. He is also obstinate.
9. He did B.A. I did M. A. He became a clerk. I became an author.
10. He passed the test. His friend also passed the test.
11. You are very weak. You cannot walk.
12. Are you a poet ? Are you a philosopher ?
13. You did not come. You did not inform me.
14. I can understand Sanskrit. I can speak Sanskrit.
15. He is poor. He is happy.
16. He was a criminal. He was jailed.
17. Gandhijee died for us. We honour him even today.
18. He went to the market. He did not buy anything.
19. You are lazy. You are equally foolish.
20. He is very fat. He cannot run.
21. You were guilty. You were punished.
22. He is a fool. He is a knave.
23. Veena washed the shirts. Aditi ironed the shirts. Aditya folded the shirts.
24. He was surprised. He was pleased.
25. Tell me the truth. Be silent.

## C. Combination of two or more simple sentences into a single complex sentence :

Complex sentence में एक Principal clause के अतिरिक्त कम-से-कम एक Subordinate clause का प्रयोग होता है।

**Subordinate clause** तीन प्रकार के होते हैं :

1. Noun clause. 2. Adjective clause.
3. Adverb clause.

**1. Noun clause :** वह clause जो Noun के समान काम करता है। Noun clause कहलाता है। यह verb के subject, object, complement तथा preposition के object or Apposition to a noun के रूप में काम करता है। जैसे—

1. Whether he is fit for the job is doubtful.
2. I told that he would come.
3. It depends on how he works.
4. This is what she says.
5. The fact, that Rahul is ill, is false.

उपरोक्त Examples में से Example no. (1) में whether he is fit for the job—Noun clause है क्योंकि यह verb-is का Subject है। Exampleo. (2) में that he would come—Noun clause है क्योंकि verb— told का object है। Example no. (3) में how he works—Noun clause है क्योंकि preposition—on का object है। Example no. (4) में what she says—Noun clause है क्योंकि verb—is का complement है। Example no. (5) में that Rahul is ill—Noun clause है क्योंकि यह noun—fact के apposition में है।

**2. Adjective clause :** वह clause जो Adjective के समान काम करता है Adjective clause कहलाता है। Adjective clause, Adjective की तरह Noun or Pronoun को qualify करता है। यह Relative Pronoun, (जैसे—who, which, that), Relative Adverb (जैसे—where, why, when, how etc) से स्टार्ट होता है। यह noun or pronoun को restrict or qualify करता है। जैसे—

1. The man that you saw yesterday is my friend.
2. The boy who came here a month ago has stood first in the Board Examination.
3. This is the place where he was born.

उपरोक्त Examples में से Example no. (1) में that you saw



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



yesterday—Adjective clause है क्योंकि यह noun—man को restrict or qualify करता है। Example no. (2) में who came here a month ago—Adjective clause है क्योंकि यह noun-boy को restrict or qualify करता है। Example no. (3) में where he was born—Adjective clause है क्योंकि यह noun-place को restrict or qualify करता है।

**Note :** (i) Adjective clause 'but' से स्टार्ट होता है तो but का अर्थ who does not होता है। जैसे—

There is not a boy but wants to play.

(ii) Adjective clause 'As' से स्टार्ट होता है जो As के पहले such or same का प्रयोग होता है। As का अर्थ who होता है। जैसे—

1. This is the same boy as abused me yesterday.
2. You will not find such a great rascal as you saw in the market yesterday.

उपरोक्त Example no. (1) में as abused me yesterday—Adjective clause है क्योंकि यह noun—boy को qualify करता है। Example no. (2) में As you saw in the market yesterday—Adjective clause है क्योंकि यह Noun—rascal को qualify करता है।

**3. Adverb clause :** यह clause जो Adverb के समान काम करता है Adverb clause कहलाता है। यह subordinating conjunction से स्टार्ट होता है। यह principal clause में प्रयुक्त verbs, adjective तथा adverb को qualify करता है। जैसे—

1. Strike the iron while it is hot.
2. He is wiser than I thought.
3. He ran so fast that I could not overtake him.

उपरोक्त Examples में से Example no (1) में while it is hot—Adverb clause है क्योंकि यह verb—strike को qualify करता है। Example no (2) में than I thought—adverb clause है क्योंकि यह Adjective—wiser को qualify करता है। Example no (3) में that I could not overtake him—Adverb clause है क्योंकि यह Adverb—fast को qualify करता है।

**III.** दो या दो से अधिक simple sentences को combine (जोड़) कर single complex sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है।

## 1. Noun clause

**Rule (1) :** Noun clause से Simple Sentences को Combine (जोड़) कर Complex Sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है—

| Separate | Combined |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) The rose is the sweetest of all flowers. (b) This is certain. | 1. It is certain that the rose is the sweetest of all flowers. |
| 2. (a) He may be innocent. (b) I do not know. | 2. I do not know whether he is innocent. |
| 3. (a) Mr. Thakur is absent today. (b) Do you know the reason? | 3. Do you know why Mr. Thakur is absent today ? |
| 4. (a) He is going to some place. (b) No one knows it. | 4. No one knows where he is going. |
| 5. (a) He would win the first prize. (b) That was his hope. (c) His hope was not fulfilled. | 5. His hope, that he would win the first prize, was not fulfilled. |
| 6. (a) He is short sighted. (b) Otherwise he is fit for the post. | 6. Except that he is short sighted, he is fit for the post. |

## 2. Adjective clause.

**Rules (2) :** Adjective clause से simple sentences को combine कर complex sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है—

| Separate | Combined |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) He met his old friend. (b) He is now a D. S. P | 1. He met his old friend who is now a D. S. P |
| 2. (a) Aman once had a goose. (b) The goose laid everyday a golden egg. | 2. Aman once had a goose, that everyday laid a golden egg. |
| 3. (a) The student sits near me. (b) His father is a teacher | 3. The student, whose father is a teacher, sits near me. |
| 4. (a) This is a golden chance. (b) It should not be lost. | 4. This is a golden chance which should not be lost. |
| 5. (a) I shall always be grateful to him. (b) He helped me. | 5. I, whom he helped, shall always be grateful to him |
| 6. (a) This is the field. (b) The finest potatoes grow here. | 6. This is the field where the finest potatoes grow. |
| 7. (a) You did not come to attend the class yesterday. (b) Can you tell me the reason ? | 7. Can you tell me the reason why you did not come to attend the class yesterday |

## 3. Adverb clause

**Rule (3) :** Adverb clause से simple sentences को combine (जोड़) कर Complex Sentence इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है।

[With the help of subordinating conjunctions if, since, because, unless, when, where, while, though, as, until, before, than, that etc.] जैसे—

| Separate | Combined |
|---|---|
| 1. (a) You will succeed. (b) You have worked hard | 1. You will succeed, since you have worked hard. |
| 2. (a) I told him to stay. (b) I returned. | 2. I told him to stay until I returned. |
| 3. (a) The sun shines. (b) Make hay now. | 3. Make hay while the sun shines. |
| 4. (a) He had no sleep last night. (b) He must be very tired today. | 4. He, who had no sleep last night, must be very tired today. |
| 5. (a) Don't eat too much. (b) You will be ill. | 5. If you eat too much you will be ill. |
| 6. (a) He waited for his brother. (b) He waited till his arrival. | 6. He waited for his brother until he came. |
| 7. (a) You are contented. (b) You are poor. | 7. You are contented though you are poor. |
| 8. (a) I work hard. (b) My object is to win a prize. | 8. I work hard that I may win a prize. |
| 9. (a) You were fined. (b) You had copied in the examination. | 9. You were fined because you had copied in the examination. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Separate | Combined |
|---|---|
| 10. (a) I began late. (b) I finished first. | 10. I finished first though I began late. |
| 11. (a) She is ill. (b) She cannot attend the class. | 11. As she is ill, she can not attend the class. |
| 12. (a) I had left home. (b) He came later. | 12. I had left home before he came. |
| 13. (a) I arrived. (b) He had left. | 13. I arrived after he had left. |
| 14. (a) You will do it. (b) You come home. | 14. You will do it as soon as you come home. |
| 15. (a) The sun set. (b) We returned home | 15. When the sun set, we returned home. |
| 16. (a) He wants to go. (b) His son begins to cry. | 16. Whenever he wants to go, his son begins to cry. |
| 17. (a) You must work hard. (b) Otherwise you won't pass. | 17. You won't pass unless you work hard. |
| 18. (a) It is very simple. (b) Even a child can understand it. | 18. It is so simple that even a child can understand it. |
| 19. (a) You did not have much wealth. (b) You were not unhappy. | 19. Although you did not have much wealth, you were not unhappy. |
| 20. (a) Aditya is more intelligent. (b) Aditi is less intelligent. | 20. Aditya is more intelligent than Aditi. |
| 21. (a) The bell rang. (b) They all came up at once. | 21. As soon as the bell rang, they all came up. |
| 22. (a) Vikas is clever. (b) Rajesh is equally clever. | 22. Vikas is as clever as Rajesh. |
| 23. (a) It looks. (b) It will rain. | 23. It looks as if it will rain. |
| 24. (a) How should he do this sum ? (b) He does not know this. | 24. He does not know how he should do this sum. |
| 25. (a) There is heavy rainfall there. (b) Maize will not grow at such a place. | 25. Maize will not grow where there is heavy rainfall. |
| 26. (a) He may be in the college. (b) I do not know. | 26. I do not know whether he is in the college. |
| 27. (a) What did he say ? (b) This was it. | 27. This was what he said. |
| 28. (a) Let us wait. (b) The rain stops. | 28. Let us wait till the rain stops. |
| 29. (a) Ankit tiptoed into the room. (b) He didnot want to disturb the class. | 29. Ankit tiptoed into the room lest he should disturb the class. |
| 30. (a) I can keep the book. (b) I like. | 30. I can keep the book as long as I like. |

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Combine each set of simple sentences into single complex sentence containing a noun clause :*

1. You are a hardworking student. Everybody knows it.
2. Your brother will soon recover his health. There is no doubt of this.
3. He deceived me. That was my complaint.
4. She is going some where. I do not know. Her best friends don't know.
5. When will the Rajdhani Express arrive ? Tell me.
6. He will do it. He declares it openly.
7. You are right. I am sure of it.
8. Gandhijee was a great man. No one can deny this fact.
9. The messenger told us something about that matter. I heard it.
10. Who wrote Gitanjali ? Can you tell me that ?
11. You did not go. The reason is unknown.
12. I am very happy to present this book before you. I can not express my happiness in words.
13. Is there any hope of his success ? That was my question.
14. You were innocent. That was the verdict of the judge.
15. He was very sorry. He could not adequately express his sorrow.
16. He did not do it. I want to know the reason.
17. Where have you put my towel ? Tell me.
18. The headmaster was dismissed from his post. The reason was clearly explained to him.
19. He has seen this girl somewhere before. He cannot remember the place.
20. You will succeed. I expect it.
21. Someone will be selected to watch my work. My reputation will depend on him.
22. I have seen that student's face before somewhere. I am sure of it.
23. You said something. I did not heart it.
24. He has suffered many losses. No one pities him. This is a fact.
25. You will not remain here another day. You told him so.

**Q. 2** *Combine each set of simple sentences into single complex sentence, containing an adjective clause :*

1. She met her old classmate. He is now an incometax officer.
2. This is the place. I was born here.
3. I proposed many plans. They were all accepted.
4. Your brother is a good singer. He lives in Mumbai. He is coming today.
5. He is a teacher. He is selfish. He is dishonest. Such a teacher is not respected.
6. The receptionist has a duty to perform. The duty is difficult.
7. A small cottage stood at the foot of the hill. I stopped there for the night.
8. This is a news. I heard it yesterday.
9. They ate the food. It was not well cooked.
10. The time was twelve o'clock. The accident happened then.
11. They came upon a certain cottage. Here a beggar was living with his family.
12. You have done much good to the people. Your services cannot be paid too highly.
13. He is telling me a story. It is false.
14. He suffered from a pain. The pain was acute.
15. This is the burrow. A rabbit lives here.
16. He is not keeping good health. Can you tell me the reason ?
17. His travelling companion was an old lady. Her name is Mrs. Mathur. He met her in the train.
18. You are not employed. You have not inherited a rich property. Such a student should start his own business.
19. He lives in this house. It is a very old building.
20. The body of conspirators met together secretly. Their place of meeting was a private house. Their object was to murder the leader.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



21. Some people came here yesterday night. They looked like terrorists.
22. The Prime Minister is now lying seriously ill. We are all very anxious for his life.
23. Once there lived a farmer. He had a goose. The goose laid an egg every day. The egg was golden.
24. Daniel came alive out of the den. In that den tigers were kept.
25. William Wordsworth led the Romantic movement in English poetry. He was a great poet of nature.

**Q.3.** *Combine each set of simple sentences into single complex sentence containing an adverb clause :*

1. You have been very unfortunate. You are always cheerful.
2. She is a clever girl. No other girl in the class is more clever.
3. He was sleeping. They arrived.
4. You must write correctly. You will not pass.
5. A man gets more wealth. He then wants more.
6. You are a lazy boy. The other boys in the class are not equally lazy.
7. He must do his homework. He will be punished.
8. He will return. Do not go till then.
9. I had left home. He came later.
10. The thief ran away somehow. I do not know how.
11. Take exercise regularly. Then you can keep fit. Then you can do a lot of work.
12. I drew my sword. My object was to defend myself.
13. He must take his medicine. He will not get better.
14. Your grandfather is very old. He enjoys good health.
15. She was not there. I spoke to her father.
16. Strike now. The iron is hot.
17. The actor must be very tired. He had no sleep last night.
18. Success attends hard work. Failure attends bad work.
19. You must have my receipt. You then consent to paying the money.
20. She has treated me in a certain way. I will treat her in the same way.
21. I ran quickly. I soon overtook him.
22. She will not go out in the rain. She is afraid of getting wet.
23. Niramala is clever. Her cleverness equals Veena's.
24. They were hanged. They had committed murder.
25. I came to his house. He was out.
26. He takes off his clothes. He goes to bed.
27. You saw me. You ran away then.
28. It is a very simple book. Even a poor student can understand it.
29. He became more and more rich. He was never contented.
30. A robber goes about his work very cautiously. He does not wish to be caught.
31. I was directed to do something in a certain way. I did it accordingly.
32. He went to Agra. He wanted to see the Taj Mahal.
33. You make a promise. You keep it also.
34. She heard the sad news. She burst into tears.
35. The cat is away. The mice will play.
36. It was raining. I decided to stay at home.
37. I went there. I found him sleeping.
38. He fell down. He was running after a bus.
39. You will succeed. You have worked hard for it.
40. We go higher. We feel cooler.
41. He is handsome. His brother is not so handsome.
42. He is poor. He is honest.
43. A great storm arose. All the huts were blown off.
44. You must sign your name. He will then agree to your terms.
45. There is peace. There is happiness.
46. He must hurry. He will miss the train otherwise.
47. The school bell rang. All immediately went to their places.
48. He walked with caution. He did not want to fall down.
49. You found out your mistake. You were then very sorry.
50. No more funds are available. The work has been stopped.

## Miscellaneous

**Q. 4.** *Combine the following simple sentences into complex sentences by using Noun, Adjective or Adverb clause :*

1. Go to her. She will help you.
2. You did not pay heed to my warning. You fell into trouble.
3. You are a troublesome fellow. I cannot work with you.
4. They were hanged. They had committed many murders.
5. He did not come to attend the class. The reason is not known.
6. He is very happy. He cannot express his happiness.
7. She took the medicine. She then felt better. It cured her of headache.
8. He spoke in defence of his absent friend. He could not have spoken better.
9. He wept at the sad news. A child would have wept in the same way.
10. He gave his employee the same instructions again and again. He wished him to avoid making mistakes.
11. I waited for her. I waited till her arrival.
12. This is the school. He was educated here.
13. They will succeed in their mission. It depends on their unity.
14. His conduct was very peculiar. I was unable to understand it. It had been described to me.
15. Your difficulties become greater and greater. You show more and more energy.
16. He did not educate his daughter in the languages. He said that one tongue was enough for a woman.
17. My student is going to Delhi. He has got long leave. His brother is already there. He wishes to become an incometax officer.
18. There is a will. There is a way too. This is generally true.
19. We played the game very skilfully. No one could have played it more skilfully. They had been thoroughly well trained.
20. She had not learned to read and write. She was very ignorant. She could not talk even fluently. Such a woman should not pretend to be a doctor.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



**Q. 5.** *Combine the following sentences without using 'and' or but :*

1. He is a sincere publisher. No one can doubt this fact.
2. He does not like her. She is a naughty girl.
3. I was angry with my student. I shouted at him.
4. You finished your work. You sat down to relax.
5. My daughter attends school regularly. She is able to pass the examination.
6. This box is heavy. He cannot lift it.
7. The girl had won a prize. She was very pleased.
8. He is poor. He is not happy.
9. I did it. It was in accordance with your advice.
10. You are intelligent. Your classmate is equally intelligent.
11. You should not attack your enemies. The circumstances for attacking them must be favourable.
12. He will succeed. He will have to work hard.
13. Work hard. You will fail.
14. The passengers were robbed. They were beaten.
15. He is mischievous. He is crooked.
16. You will not do it. You will not allow others to do it.
17. He is honest. I know it.
18. He has murdered his wife. This is a fact. It is known to all.
19. This is the place. He was born here.
20. I was walking on the road. I met an old man.

**Q. 6.** *Do as directed :*

1. He learns Sanskrit. He learns Hindi. *(Combine the sentences using 'as well as')*
2. He may slay me. I will trust Him. *(Join the sentences using 'yet')*
3. He must work hard. He will not succeed. *(Rewrite, combining into a complex sentence using 'unless')*
4. My father was very angry. He kept quiet. *(Combine into a compound sentence)*
5. Rajeshwari was sleeping alone. Just then a stranger attacked her. *(Combine the sentences using 'while')*
6. I had to borrow some money from a friend. I had lost my purse. *(Join the sentences using 'because')*
7. Hari had been driving all day. He was tired and wanted to sleep. *(Combine the sentences using a relative pronoun)*
8. It began to rain. We ran indoors. *(Join the sentences using 'as soon as')*
9. You sent me a present. Thank you very much for it. *(Combine the sentences by means of a relative pronoun)*
10. Tell the truth. You will be punished. *(Join the sentences using 'otherwise')*
11. She is not in the kitchen. She is not in the drawing room. *(Join the sentences using 'neither ..... nor')*
12. Make haste. You will be late. *(Join the sentences using 'or')*
13. You will go to Patna by bus. You will go to Patna by car. *(Join the sentences using 'either... or')*
14. He read the book. He remembered what he had read. *(Join the sentences using 'not only .... but also')*
15. He worked very hard. He failed in the examination. *(Join the sentences using 'still')*
16. He is a rogue. He is a mad man. *(Join the sentences using 'both .... and')*
17. He had deceived his friends. They still trusted him. *(Rewrite as one sentence using 'Although....')*
18. His handwriting is good. Your handwriting is not equally good. *(Combine the sentences using 'so ....as')*
19. He reached home. The sun had not set then. *(Join the sentences using 'before')*
20. He hurried home. His mother might blame him. *(Rewrite as one sentence, using 'lest')*
21. He will get ready. Do not go till then. *(Join the sentences using 'until')*
22. Shakespeare was a dramatist. He was also a poet. *(Rewrite as one sentence, using 'besides')*
23. You won a lottery. You bought a bike. *(Begin with 'Having won ....')*
24. He could hardly see his way. It was very dark. *(Rewrite as one sentence, using 'so .... that')*
25. He must walk fast. He will miss the train. *(Rewrite as one sentence using 'unless')*

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 29 Synonyms

Synonyms का अर्थ समानार्थक या पर्यायवाची शब्द होता है। वे शब्द जो अर्थ में लगभग समान होते हैं, किन्तु उनके रूप में विभिन्नता होती है, उन्हें synonyms कहते हैं।

## A

1. *Abandon (v)*— त्यागना
   *Syns* : give up, leave, forsake
2. *Abbreviate (v)*— संक्षिप्त करना
   *Syns* : abridge, condense, shorten
3. *Abdicate (v)*— पद त्यागना
   *Syns* : quite, abandone, surrender
4. *Ability (n)*— प्रवीणता/योग्यता
   *Syns* : competence, capability, talent, proficiency
5. *Abnormal (adj.)*— असाधारण/प्रतिकूल
   *Syns* : anomalous, peculiar, different
6. *Absence (n)*— अनुपस्थिति
   *Syns* : dearth, deficiency, scarcity
7. *Absolute (adj.)*— पूर्ण/शुद्ध
   *Syns* : complete, exact, genuine
8. *Abstain (v)*— बचे/पृथक् रहना
   *Syns* : avoid, decline, refrain
9. *Abundant (adj.)*—प्रचुर/अधिक
   *Syns* : plentiful, full, bountiful
10. *Accelerate (v)*— जल्दी करना
    *Syns* : advance, expedite, hasten, hurry
11. *Accent (n)*— दबाव/जोर
    *Syns* : emphasis, stress, pitch, tone
12. *Accept (v)*— (i) स्वीकार करना (ii) विश्वास करना
    *Syns* : (i) acquire, gain, obtain (ii) acknowledge, believed, recognise
13. *Access (n)*— समीप में पहुँच
    *Syns* : admission, admittance, approach, entrance
14. *Accident (n)*— दुर्घटना
    *Syns* : calamity, casualty , disaster, collision
15. *Accord (v)*— स्वीकृति देना
    *Syns* : agree, allow, confer, grant
16. *Accuse (v)*— दोषी या अपराधी ठहराना
    *Syns* : blame, charge, attribute, criminate
17. *Acquaint (v)*— जानपहचान करना
    *Syns* : disclose, familiarise, inform, reveal
18. *Acquaintance (n)*— जानपहचान
    *Syns* : colleague,friend, companionship
19. *Advanced (adj.)*— उन्नति करता हुआ
    *Syns* : extreme, foremost, forward, progressive
20. Advantageous (adj.)— लाभदायक
    *Syns* : beneficial, profitable, gainful, convenient.
21. *Adventurous (adj.)*— साहसिक
    *Syns* : bold, daring, reckless, risky
22. *Affectionate (adj.)*— स्नेही
    *Syns* : devoted, friendly, kind.
23. *Aggravate (v)*— उत्तेजित/क्रोधित करना
    *Syns* : exaggerate, irritate, annoy, intensify.
24. *Alliance (n)*— संधि/समझौता
    *Syns* : coalition, compact, treaty, agreement.
25. *Almighty (adj.)*— सर्वशक्तिमान
    *Syns* : all powerful, great, omnipotent, invincible.
26. *Although (conj)*— यद्यपि/ यदि ऐसा हो
    *Syns* : evenif, even though, though, while.
27. *Altruistic (adj.)*— परोपकारी
    *Syns* : benevolent, humane, generous, charitable.
28. *Always (adv.)*— हमेशा
    *Syns* : ever, evermore, forever, without, exception
29. *Ambiguous (adj.)*— संदिग्ध/अस्पष्ट
    *Syns* : confused, doubtful, obscure, vague.
30. *Among (prep)*— बीच में
    *Syns* : amidst, amongst, between, midst.
31. *Analysis (n)*— विघटन/विभाजन /
    *Syns* : division, enquiry, review, scrutiny
32. *Ancestor (n)*— विश्लेषण पूर्वज
    *Syns* : forefather, predecessor, Antecedent, forerunner
33. *Ancient (adj.)*— प्राचीन
    *Syns* : obsolete, oldfashioned, aged, out-of-date.
34. *Anonymous (adj.)*— गुमनाम
    *Syns* : nameless, unknown, faceless, impersonal.
35. *Antipathy (n)*— घृणा/अनिच्छा
    *Syns* : disgust, dislike, ill-will, enmity, hate.
36. *Anxiety (n)*— चिन्ता/व्यग्रता
    *Syns* : desire, distress, dread, tension, worry.
37. *Anxious (adj.)*— व्याकुल/चिन्तित
    *Syns* : impatient, worried, tortured, afraid
38. *Apathetic (adj.)*— उदासीन/निरुत्साह
    *Syns* : emotionless, impassive, indifferent, passive
39. *Apology (n)*— क्षमा-प्रार्थना
    *Syns* : acknowledgement, justification, defence, excuse
40. *Apparent (adj.)*— स्पष्ट/प्रत्यक्ष
    *Syns* : clear, declared, obvious, visible
41. *Applause (n)*— प्रशंसा/स्तुति
    *Syns* : approval, praise, commendation, congratulation
42. *Aristocrat (n)*— शिष्ट मनुष्य/स्त्री
    *Syns* : nobleman, peer, noble woman, peeress
43. *Arrival (n)*— आगमन/उपस्थिति
    *Syns* : appearance, approach, entrance, occurence
44. *Arrogant (adj.)*— अहंकारी/हठी
    *Syns* : conceited, haughty contemptuous, proud

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



45. *Artificial (adj.)*— कृत्रिम/बनावटी
*Syns* : man-made, bogus, synthetic, unnatural

46. *Ascend (v)*— ऊपर जाना/चढ़ना/उठाना
*Syns* : mount, move up, go up, climb

47. *Aspirant (n)*— आकांक्षी
*Syns* : applicant, suitor, candidate, competitor

48. *Assassin (n)*— घातक/हत्यारा
*Syns* : bravo, killer, murderer, slayer

49. **Audible (adj.)**— श्रव्य
*Syns* : appreciable, clear, detectable, distinct

50. Awkward (adj.)— भद्दा/कठिन/व्यग्र
*Syns* : clumsy, delicate, difficult, inexpert

## B

1. *Bandit (n)*— डाकू/लुटेरा
*Syns* : desperado, highwayman, hijacker, robber, thief, gunman, ganster.

2. *Bankrupt (adj.)*— दिवालिया
*Syns* : insolvent, ruined, spent, beggared, broke

3. *Barbarian (n)*— असभ्य/गँवार
*Syns* : Boor, illeterate, philistine, savage

4. *Barbarous (adj.)*— असभ्य/अनपढ़
*Syns* : brutal, cruel, ferocious, vulgar, ignorant

5. *Barren (adj.)*— बंजर/निष्फल
*Syns* : desert, fruitless, infertile, dry

6. *Basics (n)*— आधार
*Syns* : essentials, fundamentals, facts, necessaries

7. *Battalion (n)*— सैन्यदल/पलटन
*Syns* : army, brigade, company, regiment.

8. *Before (adv.)*— पहले/आगे
*Syns* : ahead, earlier, sooner, previously

9. *Behaviour (n)*— व्यवहार/चाल-ढाल
*Syns* : conduct, dealing, habits, manner

10. Benevolence (n)— दया/परोपकारिता
*Syns* : compassion, goodness, sympathy, kindness

11. *Betray (v)*— विश्वासघात करना/भण्डाफोड़ करना
*Syns* : abandon, desert, forsake, disclose, expose

12. *Bigot (n)*— कट्टर/हठधर्मी
*Syns* : dogmatist, racist, religionist, sexist

13. *Biography (n)*— जीवन कथा
*Syns* : history, life history, curriculum, record

14. *Bishop (n)*— बड़ापादरी
*Syns* : archbishop, metropolition

15. Blasphemous (adj.)— ईश्वर-निन्दक/पाखंडी
*Syns* : irreligious, impious, profane, godless

16. *Borrow (v)*— ऋण लेना/अनुकरण करना
*Syns* : adopt, imitate, take, use

17. *Boycott (v)*— बहिष्कार करना
*Syns* : exclude, ignore, prohibit, refuse, reject

18. *Brave (adj.)*— वीर/बहादुर
*Syns* : bold, courageous, heroic, valiant

19. *Brilliant (adj.)*— चमकदार/दीप्यमान
*Syns* : expert, famous, skilful illustrious, intelligent.

20. *Buoyant (adj.)*— प्रसन्न
*Syns* : bright, cheerful, happy, joyful

21. *Bureaucrat (n)*— कर्मचारी
*Syns* : administrator, officer, official

22. *Business man (n)*— व्यापारी
*Syns* : employer, executive, merchant, trader

23. *Brittle (adj.)*— सहज टुटने योग्य
*Syns* : not tough, fragile

## C

1. *Cajole (v)*— धोखा देना/फुसलाना
*Syns* : coax, flatter, mislead, tempt

2. *Calamity (n)*— दुःख/संकट
*Syns* : adversity, catastrophe, disaster, downfall, tragedy

3. *Calm (adj.)*— शांति/विश्राम
*Syns* : quiet, relaxed, mild, peaceful, tranquil

4. *Camoutflage (n)*— छल
*Syns* : deception, disguise, blind, cloak

5. *Community (n)*— समुदाय/बिरादरी
*Syns* : society, association, fellowship

6. *Catalogue (n)*— सूची पत्र
*Syns* : list, record, register

7. *Cautious (adj.)*— सचेत/सावधान
*Syns* : alert, careful, vigilant, watchful

8. *Celebrate (v)*— प्रशंसा करना/उत्सव मनाना
*Syns* : commend, glorify, extol, honour

9. *Cemetery (n)*— श्मशान/कब्रिस्तान
*Syns* : burialground, churchyard, gravegyard

10. *Colleague (n)*—साथी
*Syns* : ally, assistant, helper, partner

11. *Comfortable (adj.)*— सुखदायी
*Syns* : delightful, enjoyable, pleasant, restful

12. *Command (v)*— आज्ञा देना/शासन करना / अधिकार में लेना
*Syns* : charge, compel, dominiate, govern

13. *Compare (v)*— तुलना करना
*Syns* : contrast, parallel, resemble, match

14. *Compassionate (adj.)*— कृपालु/दयालु
*Syns* : benevolent, humane, kind hearted, merciful

15. *Compile (v)*— संग्रह करना/संकलित करना
*Syns* : accumulate, arrange, gather, organise

16. *Complicated (adj.)*— जटिल/पेंचिला
*Syns* : complex, difficult, elaborate, intricate

17. *Conceal (v)*— छिपाना/गुप्त रखना
*Syns* : bury, disguise, hide, obscure

18. *Condemn (v)*— निन्दा करना/अपराधी ठहराना
*Syns* : blame, convict, reproach

19. *Confident (adj.)*— विश्वस्त
*Syns* : convinced, satisfied, secure, sure

20. *Congratulations (n)*— अभिनंदन/बधाई
*Syns* : compliments, good wishes, greetings

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



21. *Contemporary (adj.)*— समकालिक
*Syns* : current, latest, modern, recent

22. *Controversy (n)*— विवाद
*Syns* : argument, debate, dispute, quarrel

23. *Convenience (n)*— आराम/सुविधा
*Syns* : advantage, service, appliance, comfort

24. *Copy (n)*— प्रतिलिपि
*Syns* : duplicate, pattern, photostat, xerox

25. *Courageous (adj.)*— साहसी/निडर
*Syns* : brave, heroic, lion-hearted, high hearted

26. *Courteous (adj.)*— विनम्र/दयालु
*Syns* : attentive, polite, respectful, urbande

27. *Cowardice (n)*— कायरता
*Syns* : faint-heartedness, fear

28. *Credible (adj.)*— विश्वसनीय
*Syns* : believable, reasonable, reliable, sincere

29. *Credulous (adj.)*— सहजविश्वास करने योग्य
*Syns* : trusting, uncritical, wide-eyed

30. *Critical (adj.)*— चतुर/गुणदोष विवेचक
*Syns* : crucial, urgent, vital

31. **Cruel (adj.)**— क्रुर/निष्ठुर
*Syns* : brutal, fierce, ferocious, murderous

32. *Customer (n)*— ग्राहक
*Syns* : buyer, client, consumer, purchaser

## D

1. **Dangerous (adj.)**— खतरनाक/भयंकर
*Syns* : hazardous, perilous, serious, threatening

2. *Dearth (n)*— अकाल/कमी/अभाव
*Syns* : absence, shortage poverty, scarcity

3. *Dedication (n)*— समर्पण
*Syns* : devotion, loyalty, faithfulness

4. *Delightful (adj.)*— आनंदप्रद
*Syns* : enjoyable, fascinating, pleasant

5. *Democracy (n)*— प्रजातंत्र
*Syns* : autonomy, republic, self government

6. *Depreciate (v)*— दाम कम होना
*Syns* : decrease, reduce, minimise, devalue

7. *Descend (v)*— नीचे आना
*Syns* : dismount, deteriorate

8. *Despair (v)*—निराशा होना
*Syns* : collapse, giveup, surrender

9. *Destroy (v)*—नष्ट करना
*Syns* : demolish, devastate, eliminate, extinguish

10. *Device (n)*—औजार/साधन
*Syns* : apparatus, tool, Instrument, appliance

11. *Devil (n)*— दुष्ट मनुष्य/असुर
*Syns* : demon, fiend, imp

12. *Diagnose (v)*— लक्षण देखकर रोग का निर्णय करना
*Syns* : analysis, determine, distinguish, isolate

13. *Difficult (adj.)*— कठिन/विषम
*Syns* : complicate, hard, uphill, thorny

14. *Diplomat (n)*— राजनीतिक कुशल
*Syns* : go-between, mediator, moderator, negotiator

15. *Disgraceful (adj.)*— अपमान कारक/लज्जाजनक
*Syns* : dishonourable, dreadful, shameful, mean

16. *Dismay (v)*— हताश करना
*Syns* : depress, disappoint, terrify, discourage, horrify

17. *Diversity (n)*— भिन्नता/विषमता
*Syns* : difference, variety, range

18. *Drainage (n)*—पानी और कूड़ा-कचड़ा का निकास
*Syns* : sewage, waste

19. *Dramatist (n)*— नाटककार
*Syns* : comedian, playwright, play-writer, script-writer

20. *Drunkard (n)*— पियक्कड़
*Syns* : drinker, drunk, lush, soak

21. *Duration (n)*— दीर्घ-स्थायी/अवधि
*Syns* : period, extent, stretch, length

22. *Dwarf (n)*— बौना
*Syns* : Elf, Gnome, Lilliputian, Pigmy, Tom, Thumb

23. *Dynamic (adj.)*— शक्तिमान
*Syns* : active, energetic, forceful, powerful

## E

1. *Earthquake (n)*— भूकम्प
*Syns* : quake, shake, earth, tremor

2. *Economical (adj.)*— अल्पव्यय संबंधी
*Syns* : frugal, inexpensive, thrifty, reasonable

3. *Efficient (adj.)*— कार्यक्षम
*Syns* : capable, competent, poweful, proficient

4. *Eligible (adj.)*— उपयुक्त/योग्य
*Syns* : fit, proper, worthy, qualified, suitable

5. *Emanicipate (adj.)*— मुक्त करना
*Syns* : deliver, discharge, free, liberate

6. *Embarrass (v)*— व्याकुल करना
*Syns* : distress, fluster, shame, showup

7. *Emigration (n)*— परदेशगमन
*Syns* : departure, journey, migration, removal

8. *Eminent (adj.)*—श्रेष्ठ/विशिष्ट
*Syns* : famous, renowned, prominent, illustrious, important

9. *Enormous (adj.)*— बहुत बड़ा
*Syns* : gigantic, huge, immense, prodigious, vast

10. *Enthusiast (n)*— उत्साही
*Syns* : devotee, follower, lover, supporter

11. *Eruption (n)*— विस्फोट
*Syns* : explosion, inflammation, outbreak, outburst

12. *Exaggerate (v)*— बढ़ाना
*Syns* : amplify, magnify, enlarge

13. *Excellence (n)*— विशिष्टता/श्रेष्ठता/महत्त्व
*Syns* : goodness, greatness, purity, virtue

14. *Excess (n)*— अधिकता
*Syns* : extravagance, leftover, surplus, remainder

15. *Excuse (v)*— दोषमुक्त/क्षमा करना
*Syns* : apologise, defend, forgive, condone.

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



16. *Exhale (v)*— साँस निकालना
*Syns* : emit, expel, expire, discharge
17. *Experienced (adj.)*— अनुभवी
*Syns* : competent, expert, skilful, veteran
18. *Exterior (n)*— बाहरी भाग
*Syns* : outside, covering, surface, skin
19. *Extraordinary (adj.)*—असाधारण/अद्भुत
*Syns* : exceptional, marvellous, special, fantastic
20. *Extravagance (n)*— अतिशय/अतिव्यय
*Syns* : excess, folly, profusion, waste
21. *Extravagant (adj.)*— फुटाऊ/खर्चीला
*Syns* : expensive, lavish, costly, excessive
22. *Extremist (n)*— आतंकवादी/विपल्यवादी
*Syns* : militant, terrorist, zealot, radical
23. *Extrovert (adj.)*— बहिर्मुखी
*Syns* : amiable, hearty, social, outgoing

F

1. *Fabulous (adj.)*— काल्पनिक
*Syns* : amazing incredible, wonderful, immense
2. *Failure (n)*— असफलता
*Syns* : break down, downfall, ruin, failing
3. *Familiar (adj.)*— परिचित/समान्य प्रचलित
*Syns* : acquainted, friendly well-known, ordinary
4. *Fascination (n)*— आकर्षण/माया
*Syns* : attraction, charmglamour, interest
5. *Fathom (v)*—भली-भाँती समझना
*Syns* : comprehend, penetrate, work out, interpret
6. *Fertile (adj.)*— उपजाऊ
*Syns* : abundant, plentiful, luxuriant, fruitful
7. *Festive (adj.)*— आनंदित/प्रसन्न
*Syns* : cordial, gala, gleeful, jovial
8. *Flammable (adj.)*— ज्वलनशील
*Syns* : combustible, inflamable
9. *Flock (v)*—समूह/झुण्ड
*Syns* : buch, crowd, group, herd, swarm, troop
10. *Flourish (v)*— सफल होना/विकास करना
*Syns* : bloom, develop, prosper, succeed
11. *Follower (n)*— अनुयायी/अनुचर
*Syns* : devote, disciple, pupil, supporter
12. *Fore father (n)*— पूर्वज
*Syns* : ancestor, procreator
13. *Foreigner (n)*— विदेशी
*Syns* : alien, new comer, stranger
14. *Forever (adj.)*— सदा के लिए
*Syns* : always, evermore, for all time
15. *Fragile (adj.)*— भंगुर
*Syns* : brittle, breakable, dainty
16. *Fragment (n)*— टुकड़ा/अंश
*Syns* : piece, part, particle
17. *Frightful (adj.)*— भयंकर/डरावना
*Syns* : dreadful, fearful, horrible, terrible
18. *Fulfil (adj.)*— निभाना/निर्वाह करना
*Syns* : accomplish, achieve, execute, obey
19. *Funeral (n)*— अत्येष्टि/ श्राद्ध
*Syns* : burial, interment
20. *Funny (adj.)*— खिलवाड़ी
*Syns* : amusing, humorous, comical, laughable
21. *Furnish (v)*— तैयार/पूर्ति करना
*Syns* : afford, appoint, decorate, grant, offer

G

1. *Gain (v)*— लाभ करना/कमाना
*Syns* : advance, increase, progress, obtain
2. *Gather (v)*—संग्रह करना
*Syns* : accumulate, assemble, collect, heap
3. *General (adj.)*— सामान्य
*Syns* : common, universal, normal, ordinary
4. *Genial (adj.)*— दयालु/सुखप्रद
*Syns* : friendly, glad, happy, joyous, kind
5. *Genuine (adj.)*— यथार्थ
*Syns* : actual, authentic, natual, bonafide, original
6. *Glamorous (adj.)*— जादूपूर्ण/आकर्षक
*Syns* : attractive, charming, fascinating, lovely
7. *Glorious (adj.)*— तेजस्वी/यशस्वी
*Syns* : brilliant, delightful, excellent, majestic
8. *Grateful (adj.)*— कृतज्ञ
*Syns* : obliged, obligated, sensible, thankful
9. *Grumble (v)*— गुर्राना/दुःख से निवेदन करना
*Syns* : growl, murmur, mutter, rumble
10. *Gunman (n)*— लुटेरा/डाकू
*Syns* : bandit, terrorist, killer, bandit.

H

1. *Habital (n)*— वासस्थान
*Syns* : environment, home surroundings, territory
2. *Handicap (n)*— असुविधा/बाधा
*Syns* : barrier, block, obstacle, hindrance
3. *Handicraft (n)*— शिल्प/दस्तकारी
*Syns* : craft, workmanship, skill, artisanship
4. *Handsome (adj.)*— सुन्दर
*Syns* : attractive, graceful, majestic
5. *Haughty (adj.)*— अहंकारी/डीठ
*Syns* : arrogant, lofty, proud, scornful
6. *Hazardous (adj.)*— संकटमय
*Syns* : dangerous, difficult, haphazard, risky
7. *Hereditary (adj.)*— वंशपरम्परा से प्राप्त होने योग्य
*Syns* : ancestral, genetic, inborn, inherited
8. *Hermit (n)*—तपस्वी/संन्यासी/फकीर
*Syns* : ascetic, monk, solitarian
9. *Heroic (adj)*—पराक्रमयुक्त
*Syns* : bold, brave, lion-hearted, courageous
10. *Hijack (v)*— अपहरण करना (वायुयान)
*Syns* : kidnap, seize, skyjack, snatch, steal
11. *History (n)*— इतिहास
*Syns* : annals, chronicle, chronology, antiquity

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



12. *Homage (n)*—पूजा/उपासना/सेवा
*Syns* : worship, reverence, loyalty, tribute
13. *Honorary (adj.)*— अवैतनिक
*Syns* : no minal, unpaid, unofficial
14. *Humanity (n)*— मानवता
*Syns* : humankind, mankind, mortality, people
15. *Hungry (adj.)*— भूखा/लोभी
*Syns* : desirous, eager, greedy, starving
16. *Husbandry (n)*— किसानी
*Syns* : agriculture, cultivation, farming, thrift.
17. *Hysteria (n)*— बदहोशी
*Syns* : madness, neurosis, panic

## I

1. *Ignorance (n)*— अज्ञानता
*Syns* : blindness, innocense, oblivion
2. *Illegal (adj.)*— गैरकानूनी/अवैध
*Syns* : banned, prohibited, unlawful, illicit
3. *Illuminate (v)*— प्रकाश युक्त करना/सुसज्जित करना
*Syns* : brighten. enlighten, lightup
4. *Immediate (adj.)*— तुरंत/अति समीप
*Syns* : instant, recent, urgent, prompt
5. *Immense (adj.)*—बहुत बड़ा
*Syns* : enormous, gigantic, great, huge, large, vast
6. *Impolite (adj.)*— अशिष्ट/असभ्य
*Syns* : coarse, rough, rude, insolent
7. *Incident (n)*— घटना
*Syns* : event, instance, occurrence
8. *Individual (n)*— व्यक्ति/अकेला
*Syns* : body, fellow, party person, soul
9. *Innocence (n)*— निर्दोष
*Syns* : honesty, Ignorance, chastity, trustfulness
10. *Internal (adj.)*— आन्तरिक/भीतरी
*Syns* : domestic, inner, inside, interior
11. *Invasion (n)*— आक्रमण
*Syns* : attack, raid, seizure
12. *Isolated (adj.)*— पृथक्/निर्जन
*Syns* : deserted, lonely, remote, solitary

## J

1. *Jealous*— ईर्ष्यालु
*Syns* : desirous, envious, rival, suspicious
2. *Journey (n)*— यात्रा
*Syns* : voyage, trip, tour, travel
3. *Judicious (adj.)*— न्याययुक्त/उचित
*Syns* : careful, prudent, reasonable
4. *Junction (n)*— मिलने का स्थान/संधि
*Syns* : Joint, meeting point, linking
5. *Justice (n)*— न्याय
*Syns* : legitimacy, law, fairness
6. *Justify (v)*— न्याय करना/निर्दोष बतलाना
*Syns* : excuse, forgive, pardon, support
7. *Juvenile (n)*— तरुण
*Syns* : adolescent, minor, youth

## K

1. *Keep (v)*— अधिकार रखना/बचाना
*Syns* : possess, restrain, retain, support
2. *Kill (v)*— हत्या करना/नष्ट करना
*Syns* : assassinate, butcher, destroy slay, murder
3. *Kind (adj.)*— दयालु
*Syns* : affectionate, benevolent, generous, merciful
4. *Knock (v)*— खटखटाना/धक्का देना
*Syns* : blow, hit, strike
5. *Knowledge (n)*— ज्ञान
*Syns* : information, perception, wisdom, learning
6. *Known (adj.)*— परिचित/प्रसिद्ध
*Syns* : obvious, popular, famous, familiar

## L

1. *Laborious (adj.)*— परिश्रमी/उद्यमी
*Syns* : industrious, laboured, uphill, tiresome
2. *Landlord (n)*— जमींदार
*Syns* : owner, proprietor, host
3. *Laughter (n)*— हँसने वाला व्यक्ति
*Syns* : amusement, laughing, merriment, giggling
4. *Leisure (n)*— अवकाश/विश्राम
*Syns* : holiday, sparetime vacation, relaxation
5. *Lethal (adj.)*— प्राणघातक
*Syns* : fatal, noxious, poisonous, destructive
6. *Literal (adj.)*— मूलार्थक
*Syns* : factual, exact, plain, simple, actual, strict
7. *Loathsome (adj.)*— घृणित
*Syns* : hateful, horrible, nasty, odious
8. *Lover (n)*— स्त्री का प्रेमी
*Syns* : boy friend, sweat heart, admirer
9. *Lubricate (v)*— चिकना करना
*Syns* : grease, oil, smear, wax.
10. *Luxurious (adj.)*— सुखभोगी
*Syns* : comfortable, deluxe, expensive, lavish
11. *luxury (n)*— विलास/विषयसुख
*Syns* : bliss, comfort, pleasure, delight, enjoyment

## M

1. *Malevolent (adj.)*— द्रोही/कुबुद्धि
*Syns* : hostile, vindictive, ill-natured, vicious
2. *Malnutrition (n)*— अपर्याप्त पोषण
*Syns* : hunger, starvation
3. *Marriage (n)*— विवाह
*Syns* : matrimony, nuptials, wedding, coupling
4. *Match (n)*— समान गुण वाला व्यक्ति/प्रतिद्वन्दी
*Syns* : game, test, trial, venue
5. *Maximum (adj.)*— अधिकतम
*Syns* : supreme, utmost, most, largest
6. *Meagre (adj.)*— थोड़ा/अपूर्ण
*Syns* : inadequate, deficient, little, scanty
7. *Melancholy (adj.)*— उदास
*Syns* : miserable, mournful, sorrowful, unhappy

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



8. *Memorial (n)*— स्मारक
*Syns* : mausoleum, momento, monument
9. *Merchant (n)*— व्यापारी/सौदागर
*Syns* : broker, dealer, vendor, salesman, trader
10. *Militant (adj.)*— युद्ध में लगा हुआ
*Syns* : aggressive, fighting, vigorous
11. *Minimum (n)*— न्यूनतम
*Syns* : bottom, least, lowest, slightest
12. *Modern (adj.)*— आधुनिक/नया
*Syns* : new, recent, up-todate, current, fresh
13. *Modest (adj.)*— विनीत/लज्जावान
*Syns* : bashful, humble, quiet, moderate
14. *Momentary (adj.)*— क्षणिक/अस्थायी
*Syns* : temporary, transient, shortlived
15. *Momentum (n)*— वेग/गति/चाल
*Syns* : power, strength, stimulus force, energy
16. *Mountain (n)*— पर्वत
*Syns* : mount, peak, height
17. *Musician (n)*— संगीतज्ञ
*Syns* : performer, player, singer, vocalist
18. *Mournful (adj.)*— दुःखी/शोकाकुल
*Syns* : depressed, painful, tragic, woeful
19. *Mysterious (adj.)*— गुप्त
*Syns* : curious, secret, hidden, mystical
20. *Mythical (adj.)*— काल्पनिक
*Syns* : imaginary, legendary fabled, fairytale

## N

1. *Narrow (adj.)*— संकुचित/सँकरा
*Syns* : limited, restricted, marginal, cramped
2. *Naughty (adj.)*— उपद्रवी/नटखट
*Syns* : mischievous, playful disobedient, roguish
3. *Necessary (adj.)*— आवश्यक/अनिवार्य
*Syns* : compulsory, essential, needful, obligatory
4. *Nightmare (n)*— बुरा सपना
*Syns* : bad dream, horror, trial
5. *Non-violent (adj.)*— शांति
*Syns* : pacifist, peaceful
6. *Notorious (adj.)*— कुख्यात
*Syns* : Infamous, flagrant, undisputed.
7. *Nourish (v)*— पालन-पोषण करना/बढ़ाना
*Syns* : cherish, comfort, cultivate, encourage
8. *Nuisance (n)*— बाधा/पीड़ा कष्ट कारक
*Syns* : irritation, offence, pain, trouble
9. *Nutritious (adj.)*— पौष्टिक
*Syns* : healthful, beneficial, nourishing, nutritive
10. *Noxious (adj.)*— हानिकारक
*Syns* : baneful, corrupting, destructive, harmful, injurious

## O

1. *Oblivious (adj.)*— भुलक्कड़
*Syns* : careless, forgetful, ignorant, negligent
2. *Obnoxious (adj.)*— घृणित/अप्रिय
*Syns* : abhorent, abominable, odious, repulsive
3. *Obvious (adj.)*— स्पष्ट/प्रत्यक्ष
*Syns* : apparent, clear, transparent, distinct
4. *On looker (n)*— दर्शक
*Syns* : observer, spectator, watcher, witness, viewer
5. *Opaque (adj.)*— अपारदर्शक
*Syns* : cloudy, obscure, unclear, dim
6. *Opponent (n)*— शत्रु/विरोधी
*Syns* : challenger, antagonist, enemy, foe
7. *Orator (n)*— वक्ता
*Syns* : lecturer, preacher, speaker
8. *Optional (adj.)*— वैकल्पिक/ऐच्छिक
*Syns* : extra, voluntary, possible
9. *Overcome (v)*— जीतना/विजय प्राप्त करना
*Syns* : defeat, over throw, triumpth
10. *Owner (n)*— स्वामी/अधिकारी
*Syns* : lord, master, proprietor

## P

1. *Paradox (n)*— असत्याभास
*Syns* : ambiguity, puzzle, riddle
2. *Particular (adj.)*— विशिष्ट/अपूर्व
*Syns* : peculiar, special, specific, distinct
3. *Passionate (adj.)*— कामुक/क्रोधी
*Syns* : aroused, emotional, sexy, eager
4. *Peasant (n)*— देहाती/किसान
*Syns* : boor, country man
5. *Pedestrian (n)*— पैदल चलने वाला
*Syns* : foot-traveller, walker
6. *Pilgrimage (n)*— तीर्थयात्रा
*Syns* : crusade, expedition, tour, trip, journey, mission
7. *Precious (adj.)*— बहुमूल्य/उत्कृष्ट
*Syns* : costly, fine, valuable, dearest
8. *Prediction (n)*— भविष्यवाणी
*Syns* : forecast, prognosis, prophecy
9. *Presence (n)*— उपस्थिति/समीपता
*Syns* : attendance
10. *Previous (adj.)*— पूर्व/पहिले का
*Syns* : earlier, former, prior
11. *Programme (n)*— कार्यक्रम
*Syns* : agenda, syllabus, curriculum
12. *Proseperous (adj.)*— सौभाग्यशाली/सफल
*Syns* : successful, rich, lucky, wealthy, fortunate
13. *Punctual (adj.)*— सामयिक/समय पर कार्य करने वाला
*Syns* : early, exact, up-to-time, prompt
14. *Puzzled (adj.)*— व्याकुल/परेशान
*Syns* : be wildered, doubtful, perplexed, mixed

## Q

1. *Quaint (adj.)*— पुराने ढंग का/विचित्र
*Syns* : antiquated, odd, strange
2. *Quarrelsome (adj.)*— झगड़ालू
*Syns* : illtempered, irritable

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. *Questioner (n)*— प्रश्न पूछने वाला
*Syns* : enquirer, examiner, interviewer

4. *Queer (adj.)*— झक्की/विचित्र
*Syns* : curious, puzzling, uncommon, strange

**R**

1. *Rainy (adj.)*— बरसाती
*Syns* : damp, wet, drizzly

2. *Random (adj.)*— आकस्मिक
*Syns* : accidental, chance, incidental, unplanned

3. *Ratify (v)*— दृढ़/प्रमाणित करना
*Syns* : affirm, approve, certify, authorise

4. *Raucous (adj.)*— कर्कश शब्द करने वाला
*Syns* : harse, hoarse, loud, noisy

5. *Ready (adj.)*— पूरी तैयारी से
*Syns* : arranged, fit, completed, prepared

6. *Rebellious (adj.)*— राजद्रोही/उपद्रवी
*Syns* : disloyal, untruly, disobedient, revolutionary

7. *Rebuke (v)*— निंदा करना/डपटना
*Syns* : chide, blame, admonish, scold

8. *Recess (n)*— अवकाश
*Syns* : break, interval, rest

9. *Rectify (v)*— शुद्ध करना/समाधान करना
*Syns* : amend, correct, remedy, repair, reform

10. *Referee (n)*— निर्णयकर्ता
*Syns* : arbitrator, judge, umpire

11. *Refrain (v)*— रोकना/रुकना
*Syns* : abstain, avoid, quit

12. *Refugee(n)*— शरणार्थी
*Syns* : escapee, exile, deserter, absconder

13. *Reliance (n)*— विश्वास/भरोसा
*Syns* : assurance, belief, confidence, faith, trust

14. *Religious (adj.)*— धार्मिक
*Syns* : devotional, divine, spiritual, sacred

15. *Rescue (v)*— मुक्त करना
*Syns* : deliver, liberate, recover, release

16. *Resemble (v)*— अनुकरण करना/सदृश होना
*Syns* : approach, favour, duplicate, take after

17. *Residence (n)*— निवास स्थान/घर
*Syns* : home, house, palace, quarters

18. *Respectful (adj.)*— सम्मानपूर्वक
*Syns* : courteous, humble, obedient, polite

19. *Restaurant (n)*— भोजनालय/होटल
*Syns* : buffet, cafe, eating house

20. *Revenue (n)*— आय/मालगुजारी
*Syns* : income, returns, gain, profit

21. *Rightful (adj.)*— यथोचित
*Syns* : lawful, legal, true

22. *Rogue (n)*— दुर्जन/दुष्ट
*Syns* : cheat, deceiver, devil, villain, scoundrel

23. *Roomy (adj.)*— विशाल/विस्तृत
*Syns* : wide, spacious, sizable, large

24. *Rotation (n)*— चक्कर
*Syns* : revolution, orbit, cycle

**S**

1. *Safety (n)*— रक्षा/बचाव
*Syns* : assurance, protection, safe guard, security

2. *Savings (n)*— संचित धन/बचत
*Syns* : capital, fund, resources

3. *Scandal (n)*— मान-हानि / अफवाह / कलंक/अपमान
*Syns* : disgrace, rumours, shame, uproar

4. *Scholar (n)*— विद्वान/छात्र
*Syns* : expert, intellectual, academic, pupil

5. *Scornful (adj.)*— तिरस्कार युक्त
*Syns* : arrogant, defiant

6. *Scribble (v)*— अस्पष्ट लिखना
*Syns* : doodle, jot, serawl, write

7. *Seminary (n)*— शिक्षालय/पाठशाला
*Syns* : academy, college, institute, school

8. *Shriek (v)*— चीखना/ठहाका मारकर हँसना
*Syns* : howl, scream, shout

9. *Solemn (adj.)*— महत्वपूर्ण/गम्भीर
*Syns* : ceremonial, sober, momentous, ritual

10. *Spendthrift (adj.)*— अतिव्ययी
*Syns* : extravagant, improvident, prodigal, wasteful

11. *Spontaneous (adj.)*— स्वेच्छानुसार
*Syns* : extempore, free. voluntary, wiling

12. *Stamina (n)*— आन्तरिक शक्ति
*Syns* : power, strength, vigour

13. *Stormy (adj.)*— प्रचण्ड वायु/उदंड
*Syns* : dirty, foul, windy, turbulent

14. *Stupid (adj.)*— मूर्ख/बेवकूफ
*Syns* : foolish, dull, idiotic

15. *Successful (adj.)*— सफल/सम्पन्न
*Syns* : satisfactory, lucky, victorious, wealthy

16. *Survery (v)*— जाँचना/ध्यान से देखना
*Syns* : assesss, consider, inspect, examine

17. *Sympathy (n)*— सहानुभूति
*Syns* : pity, condolence, comfort, rapport

18. *Synonymous (adj.)*— पर्यायवाची/समान अर्थ वाला
*Syns* : comparable, corresponding, identical

**T**

1. *Talented (adj.)*— गुणी/बुद्धिमान
*Syns* : able, apt, adept, clever

2. *Talkative (adj.)*— बकवादी
*Syns* : chatty, garrulous gossipy, wordy

3. *Tantamount (adj.)*— समान/तुल्य
*Syns* : equal, equivalent

4. *Target (n)*— लक्ष्य
*Syns* : aim, ambition, goal

5. Tee to taller (n)— मादक द्रव का व्यवहार न करने वाला
*Syns* : abstainer, non-drinker

6. *Terror (n)*— भय/डर/आतंक
*Syns* : Anxiety, dread, horror, fear, fright

7. *Timid (adj.)*— कायर/डरपोक
*Syns* : afraid, cowardly, fearful, timorous

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



8. *Tolerate (v)*— सहन करना
*Syns* : accept, allow, bear, abide

9. *Tourist (n)*— पर्यटक
*Syns* : travellor, tripper, voyager

10. *Tragedy (n)*— दुख से भरा हुआ/शोकान्त/दुर्घटना
*Syns* : adversity, disaster, catastrophe, calamity

11. *Transparent (adj.)*— पारदर्शक/स्वच्छ
*Syns* : apparent, clear, obvious, translucent, visible

12. *tremendous (adj.)*— भयंकर/डरावना
*Syns* : excellent, exceptional, fabulous, terrific

13. *Trespasser (n)*— बिना अधिकार प्रवेश करने वाला
*Syns* : criminal, infringer, intruder, offender

14. *Trophy (n)*— विजय चिह्न/उपहार
*Syns* : award, cup, momento, memorial

15. *Turbulent (adj.)*— उपद्रवी/अशांत
*Syns* : agitated, wild, violent, boisterous, choppy

16. *Tutor (n)*— शिक्षक/गुरु
*Syns* : coach, educator, guide, teacher

17. *Twilight (n)*— गोधूली का समय
*Syns* : sundown, sunset, dusk, evening

18. *Twinkle (v)*— चमकना/जगमगाना
*Syns* : glitter, shine, glimmer, sparkle

19. *Tyrant (n)*— तानाशाह/निष्ठुर शासक
*Syns* : autocrat, dictator, monarch, slave-driver

## U

1. *Uphill (adj.)*— कठिन/चढ़ने वाला
*Syns* : difficult, laborious, tough, wearisome

2. *Urgent (adj.)*— आवश्यक
*Syns* : compelling, critical, crucial, eager

3. *Utmost (adj.)*— अत्यंत/सर्वाधिक
*Syns* : extreme, final, first, farthest

4. *Utterance (n)*— उच्चारण/अंतिम प्रयास या परिणाम
*Syns* : announcement, statement, declaration, speech

## V

1. *Vacant (adj.)*— खाली
*Syns* : empty, free, unfilled

2. *Vanish (v)*— लुप्त होना/नष्ट होना
*Syns* : depart, die out, disappear, disperse

3. *Veteran (n)*— अनुभवी/निपुण
*Syns* : moster, old hand, old timer

4. *Victory (n)*— विजय/जीत
*Syns* : conquest, triumph, win

5. *Vigilant (adj.)*— सावधान/चौकन्ना
*Syns* : alert, attentive, watchful, cautious

6. *Vigorous (adj.)*— बलवान/ओजस्वी
*Syns* : active, dynamic, energetic, efficient

7. *Voyage (n)*— यात्रा (जल में)
*Syns* : journey, passage, travels, trip

8. *Vulgar (adj.)*— समान्य/अशिष्ट/असभ्य
*Syns* : common, boorish, native, unrefined

## W

1. *Watchman (n)*— पहरेदार/रखवाला
*Syns* : caretaker, custodian, guard

2. *Well-known (adj.)*— प्रसिद्ध
*Syns* : famous, renowned, popular

3. *Whole some (adj.)*— लाभदायक
*Syns* : advantageous, beneficial, worthy

4. *world-wide (adj.)*— सर्वत्र/व्याप्त
*Syns* : general, globle, international, univeral

5. *Wrestle (v)*— कुश्ती लड़ना/मल्लयुद्ध करना
*Syns* : battle, combat, contend, contest

## Y

1. *Yearly (adj.)*— वार्षिक
*Syns* : annual, per-annum

2. *Yield (v)*— हवाला करना/उत्पन्न करना
*Syns* : abdicate, allow, comply, concede

3. Youthful (adj.)— युवा
*Syns* : boyish, childish, young, immature

## Z

1. *Zeal (n)*— उत्साह/जोश
*Syns* : devotion, spririt, zest

2. *Zealous (adj.)*— उत्साही
*Syns* : devoted, eager, passionate, spirited

3. *Zenith (n)*— शीर्ष बिन्दु/उच्चतम्
*Syns* : apex, climax, top, vertex, optimum

4. *Zest (n)*— स्वाद/स्वादिष्ट/आनंददायक
*Syns* : appetite, charm, enjoyment, flavour

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 30 Antonyms

जब एक word का meaning (अर्थ) दूसरे word के meaning (अर्थ) के विपरीत हो, तो वह word दूसरे word का antonym कहलाता है।

भाषा की समृद्धि के लिए Antonyms को जानना आवश्यक ही नहीं अपितु अनिवार्य है। विभिन्न प्रतियोगिता परीक्षाओं में इससे सम्बंधित प्रश्न रहते है। इन्हें कंठाग्र करने का प्रयत्न करें।

## A

1. *Acknowledge (v)*— पहुँच स्वीकार करना
   *Ants* : Deny / Disown
2. *Accept (v)*—स्वीकार करना
   *Ants* : Reject
3. *Abundance (n)*— आधिक्य
   *Ants* : Dearth (n)
4. *Absolute (adj.)*— पूर्ण
   *Ants* : Limited
5. *Admire (v)*—प्रशंसा करना
   *Ants* : Despise (v)
6. *Alive (adj.)*— जीवित
   *Ants* : Dead (adj.)
7. *Ancient (adj.)*— प्राचीन
   *Ants* : Modern
8. *Abstain (v)*— अलग रहना
   *Ants* : Pursue
9. *Absence (n)*— अनुपस्थिति
   *Ants* : Presence
10. *Abolish (v)*— उन्मूलन करना
    *Ants* : Conform
11. Abnormal (adj.)— असामान्य
    *Ants* : Normal
12. *Active (adj.)*— सक्रिय
    *Ants* : Inactive
13. *Acquit (v)*— मुक्त करना
    *Ants* : Convict
14. *Advantage (n)*— लाभ/सुविधा
    *Ants* : Disadvantage
15. *Abandon (v)*— छोड देना
    *Ants* : Retain
16. *Awkward (adj.)*— विचित्र
    *Ants* : Graceful
17. *Alien (n)*— विदेशी
    *Ants* : Native
18. *Attentive (adj.)*— सावधान
    *Ants* : Inattentive
19. *Attract (v)*— आकर्षित करना
    *Ants* : Repel
20. *Attack (n)*— आक्रमण करना
    *Ants* : Defend
21. *Adversity (n)*— विपत्ति
    *Ants* : Prosperity
22. *Affirm (v)*— स्वीकार करना
    *Ants* : Deny
23. *Agree (v)*— सहमत होना
    *Ants* : Differ
24. *Agreeable (adj.)*— मान्य
    *Ants* : Disagreeable
25. *Allow (v)*— अनुमति देना
    *Ants* : Disallow
26. *Always (adv.)*— हमेशा
    *Ants* : Never
27. *Attach (v)*— जोड़ना
    *Ants* : Detach
28. *Associate (v)*— मिलाना
    *Ants* : Dissociate
29. *Assemble (n)*— सम्मिलन
    *Ants* : disperse
30. *Ascend (v)*— ऊपर चढ़ना
    *Ants* : Descend
31. *Arrival (n)*— आगमन
    *Ants* : Departure
32. *Approach (v)*— पहुँच पाना
    *Ants* : Retreat
33. *Appear (v)*— प्रगट होना
    *Ants* : Disappear / vanish
34. *Analysis (n)*— विच्छेद
    *Ants* : synthesis
35. *Angel (n)*— देवदूत
    *Ants* : Devil
36. *Activity (n)*— क्रियाशीलता
    *Ants* : Passivity
37. *Ample (adj.)*— पूर्ण
    *Ants* : Scanty
38. *Armament (n)*— शस्त्रीकरण
    *Ants* : Disarmament
39. *Awareness*— जानकारी
    *Ants* : Ignorance
40. *Acquire (v)*— प्राप्त करना
    *Ants* : Forfeit

## B

1. *Bad (adj.)*— खराब
   *Ants* : Good
2. *Barbarous (adj.)*— असभ्य
   *Ants* : Civilized
3. *Barren (adj.)*— बंजर
   *Ants* : Fertile
4. *Breadth (n)*— चौड़ाई
   *Ants* : Length

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



5. *Back (adj.)*— पीछे
*Ants* : Front

6. *Background (n)*— सबसे पिछला भाग
*Ants* : Foreground

7. *Backward (adj.)*— पिछड़ा
*Ants* : Forward / Advanced / Bold

8. *Badly (adj.)*— बुरे प्रकार से
*Ants* : Well

9. *Balance (n)*— तुल्यता / स्थिरता / बचत
*Ants* : Difference / Instability / Uncertainty

10. *Balk (v)*— विघ्न डालना/निराश करना
*Ants* : Accept / Assist

11. *Ban (v)*— प्रतिबंध लगाना/रोकना
*Ants* : Allow / Sanction

12. *Banish (v)*— हटा देना/निकाल देना
*Ants* : Admit / Accept / Welcome

13. *Bankrupt (n)*— दिवालिया
*Ants* : Solvent

14. *Bare (v)*— नंगा/प्रकट करना
*Ants* : Clothed / Embelished

15. *Barely (adj.)*— केवल/मात्र
*Ants* : Fully

16. *Base (n)*— पेंदी/आधार/तल
*Ants* : Top / Apex

17. Bashful (adj.)— लज्जालु/विनीत
*Ants* : Bold / Confident Forward

18. *Basic (adj.)*— आधार
*Ants* : Secondary / Supplemantary

19. *Bastard (n)*— अवैध संतान
*Ants* : Unscoundrel

20. *Battle (n)*— युद्ध/संग्राम/लड़ाई
*Ants* : Truce / Peace

21. *Bear (v)*— भार सहना/उत्पन्न करना
*Ants* : Abandon / Give up

22. *Bearable (adj.)*— सहने योग्य
*Ants* : Unbearable / Intolerable / Insufferable

23. *Beaten (adj.)*— पराजित
*Ants* : Victorious / Successful

24. *Beautiful (adj.)*— सुन्दर
*Ants* : Ugly / hideous

25. *Becoming (n)*— उचित/अनुरूप
*Ants* : Unbecoming / Inappropriate / Improper

26. *Beefy (adj.)*— मांस युक्त/पुष्ट
*Ants* : Scrawny / Punx

27. *Before (adj.)*— आगे/पहले
*Ants* : After / Behind

28. *Begin (v)*— आरंभ करना
*Ants* : Finish / End / Stop

29. *Beginner (n)*— नवसिखुवा
*Ants* : Expert / Veteran

30. *Behind (prep)*— पीछे
*Ants* : Infront / Ahead

31. *Being (n)*— अस्तित्व
*Ants* : Nothingness / Oblivion

32. *Believable (adj.)*— विश्वास के योग्य
*Ants* : Unbelievable / Incredible

33. *Believe (vt)*— विश्वास करना
*Ants* : Disbelieve / Doubt

34. *Believer (n)*— विश्वास करने वाला
*Ants* : Disbeliever / Sceptic / Agnostic

35. *Belittle (v)*— छोटा करना/घृणा करना
*Ants* : Praise / Exaggerate / Magnify

36. *Below/beneath*— नीचे/नीचे पद में/न्यून
*Ants* : Above / over (adj. / prep)

37. *Bend (v)*— झुकाना
*Ants* : Straighten

38. *Benificial (adj.)*— लाभदायक
*Ants* : Disadvantageous

39. *Benifit (n)*— लाभ/सुविधा
*Ants* : Detriment

40. *Benefit (v)*— लाभ उठाना/उपकार करना
*Ants* : Damage / Injure

## C

1. *Callous (adj.)*— कठोर/कठिन
*Ants* : Kind / Compassionate

2. *Callow (adj.)*— अनुभव शून्य
*Ants* : Experienced / Sophisticated

3. *Calm (adj.)*— शांत
*Ants* : Stormy / Excited / Frantic

4. *Calm (v)*— शांत करना
*Ants* : Agitate / Stir

5. Cancel (v)— काटना/नष्ट करना
*Ants* : Confirm

6. Candid (adj.)— निष्कपट
*Ants* : Secretive / Guarded / Equivocal

7. *Canny (adj.)*— सीधा/मितव्ययी/चतुर
*Ants* : Careless / Foolish

8. *Capacious (adj.)*— विस्तृत/फैलाऊ
*Ants* : Narrow / Small / Cramped

9. *Capricious (adj.)*— अस्थिर/अनियमित
*Ants* : Stable / Consistent / Constant

10. *Capture (v)*— गिरफ्तार करना
*Ants* : Free / Liberate

11. *Care (n)*— सावधानी/ध्यान
*Ants* : Happiness / Neglect

12. *Carefree (adj.)*—चिन्ता विहीन
*Ants* : Anxious / Worried / Miserable

13. *Careful (adj.)*— सावधान
*Ants* : Careless / Inattentive / Extravagant

14. *Catch (v)*— पकड़ना/फँसाना
*Ants* : Drop / Lose / Release

15. *Catholic (adj.)*— उदारचित्त/सार्वभौमिक
*Ants* : Limitted / Narrow



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



16. *Cause (n)*— कारण
*Ants* : Effect / Result

17. *Cautious (adj.)*— सचेत/सावधान
*Ants* : Incautious / Careless / Reckless

18. *Cease (v)*— रुकना/समाप्त होना
*Ants* : Start / Begin / Commence

19. Celebrated (adj.)— प्रसिद्ध
*Ants* : Unknown / Obscure / Unsung

20. *Celebrity (n)*— प्रशंसा/यश
*Ants* : Obscurity

21. *Celibacy (n)*— अविवाहित जीवन
*Ants* : Marriage / Promiscutty

22. *Censure (v)*— दोष लगाना/निन्दा करना
*Ants* : Praise / Approve / Commend

23. *Certain (aj.)*— निश्चित/विश्वस्त
*Ants* : Uncertain / Unsure / Indefinite

24. *Certainty (n)*— निश्चय
*Ants* : Uncertainty / Doubt

25. *Chance (n)*— अवसर/संभावना
*Ants* : Design / Certainty

26. *Change (v)*— स्थान परिवर्तन करना
*Ants* : Retain / Stay

27. *Changeable (adj.)*— परिवर्तनशील/अस्थिर
*Ants* : Unchangeable / Constant / Variable

28. *Characteristic (adj.)*— अनोखा/विशिष्ट गुण
*Ants* : Uncharacteristic / Untypical / Unusual

29. *Charge (v)*— दोष लगाना
*Ants* : Absolve / Acquit

30. *Charitable (adj.)*— दयालु
*Ants* : Uncharitable / Unkind

31. Charm (v)— मोहित/प्रसन्न करना
*Ants* : Repel / Alienate

32. *Charming (adj.)*— सुहावना/मनोहर
*Ants* : Disgusting / Repulsive

33. *Chaste (adj.)*— पवित्र/सती
*Ants* : Promiscuous / Immoral

34. *Chastise (v)*— दंड देना
*Ants* : Praise / Reward

35. *Chastity (n)*— शुद्धता/पवित्र
*Ants* : Promiscuty / Immorality

36. *Cheap (adj.)*— सस्ता
*Ants* : Expensive / Highclass / Admirable

37. *Cheek (v)*— संशोधन करना
*Ants* : Neglect / Ignore / Start / Release

38. *Cheerful (adj.)*— आनंदित/प्रसन्न
*Ants* : Sad / Cheerless / Dull / Unwilling

39. *Cheerless (adj.)*— दुःखी/उदास
*Ants* : Cheerful / Happy / Bright

40. *Cherish (v)*— लालन-पालन करना
*Ants* : Abandon / Neglect

## D

1. *Damage (v)*— हानि/बदनाम करना
*Ants* : Repair / Improve

2. *Dangerous (adj.)*— खतरनाक
*Ants* : Safe / Harmless

3. *Daring (adj.)*— साहसी/शूरवीर
*Ants* : Cowardly / Cautious

4. *Dark (adj.)*— अंधकारमय/काला
*Ants* : Light / Fair / Cheerful

5. *Darken (v)*— अँधेरा होना/ दूषित करना
*Ants* : Lighten / Brighten

6. *Daunt (v)*— उत्साहहीन करना/धमकाना
*Ants* : Encourage / Hearten

7. *Dawn (n)*— प्रभात/उदय
*Ants* : Dusk / End

8. *Dead (ad.)*— मृत
*Ants* : Live / Alive / Living / Lively

9. *Deaf (adj.)*— बहिरा/ध्यान न देने वाला
*Ants* : Headful / Attentive

10. *Dear (adj.)*— बहुमूल्य/प्यारा/मँहगा
*Ants* : Worthless / Disagreeable / Cheap

11. *Dearth (n)*— अकाल
*Ants* : Abundance / Surfeit

12. *Death (n)*— मृत्यु
*Ants* : Life / Birth

13. *Decadent (adj.)*— क्षय होने वाला/ अवनतिका
*Ants* : Prosperous / Moral / Virtuous

14. *Decay (v)*— सड़ना/गलना/क्षय होना
*Ants* : Thrive / Flourish / Prosper

15 *Decent (adj.)*— शिष्ट/सहनीय
*Ants* : Indecent / Unsuitable / Dishonest

16. *Decided (adj.)*— निश्चित/निर्णित
*Ants* : Doubtful / Indecisive

17. *Decisive (adj.)*— निश्चित/पक्का, निर्णायक
*Ants* : Hesitant / Indecisive / Insignificant

18. *Decline (v)*— अंत होना/क्षय होना
*Ants* : Accept / Flourish / Increase

19. *Decrease (n)*— कमी/न्यूनता
*Ants* : Increase

20. *Decry (v)*— निन्दा करना/आक्षेप करना
*Ants* : Praise / Overrate

21. *Dedicate (adj.)*— समर्पित
*Ants* : Indifferent / Apathetic

22. *Deep (adj.)*— गहरा/गंभीर
*Ants* : High / Shallow / Light / Superficial

23. *Defeat (v)*— पराजित करना/हराना
*Ants* : Lose / Surrender / Advance

24. *Defeat (n)*— पराजय/हार
*Ants* : Victory / Success / Triumph

25. *Defective (adj.)*— दोषयुक्त/अपूर्ण
*Ants* : Perfect / Intact / Normal

26. *Defend (v)*— रक्षा करना/बचाना
*Ants* : Attack / Criticize

27. *Deference (n)*— अनुरोध/आदर/श्रद्धा
*Ants* : Disrespect / Discourtesy

28. *Deficit (n)*— कमी/घाटा
*Ants* : Surplus / Surfeit

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



29. *Definite (adj.)*— निश्चित
*Ants* : Indefinite/Uncertain/Indetermind

30. *Defy (v)*— ललकारना/अनादर करना
*Ants* : Obey/Surrender

31. *Degrade (v)*— पद नीचा करना/अपमान करना
*Ants* : Dignify/upgrade/Promote/Improve

32. *Delay (v)*— विलम्ब/देर करना
*Ants* : Advance/Accelerate

33. *Deliberate (adj.)*— विचारपूर्वक
*Ants* : Accidental/Unintentional/Hasty

34. *Delicate (adj.)*— कोमल/मृदु
*Ants* : Coarse/Robust/Strong/Rough

35. *Delicious (adj.)*— मधुर/रमणीय
*Ants* : Revolting/Disgusting/Nasty

36. *Deliver (v)*— बचाना/मुक्त करना सौंपना
*Ants* : Collect/Receive

37. *Delux (adj.)*— अति उत्तम
*Ants* : Basic/Plain/Poor

38. *Demise (n)*— समर्पण/मृत्यु
*Ants* : Birth/Start

39. *Demolish (v)*— नष्ट/ध्वंस करना
*Ants* : Build/Construct/Create

40. *Demon (n)*— भूत/पिशाच/दानव
*Ants* : Angel

## E

1. *Early (adj.)*— प्रातःकाल/ शीघ्र होने वाली
*Ants* : Late/Belated/Overdue

2. *Earthly (adj.)*— सांसारिक
*Ants* : Heavenly/Spiritual

3. *Ease (v)*— शांत करना/कम करना
*Ants* : Aggravate/Increase/Hinder

4. Easy (adj.)— सुगम/सहज
*Ants* : Difficult/Uneasy/Formal

5. Easygoing (adj.)— सरल प्रकृति का
*Ants* : Intolerant/Tense

6. *Economical (adj.)*— अल्पव्ययी/कमखर्ची
*Ants* : Extravagent/Wasteful/Expensive

7. *Edible (adj.)*— भक्षणीय/खाने योग्य
*Ants* : Inedible

8. *Educated (adj.)*— शिक्षित
*Ants* : Illiterate/Ignorant

9. Efficient (adj.)— निपुण/दक्ष
*Ants* : Inefficient/Disorganised

10. Elaborate (adj.)— बड़ी प्रयत्न से किया हुआ
*Ants* : Young, Youthful, Simple, Plain

11. *Elderly (adj.)*— अधेड़/बूढ़ा
*Ants* : Young, Youthful

12. *Elementary (adj.)*— मौलिक/प्रारंभिक
*Ants* : Complicated/Advanced/Senior

13. *Eligible (adj.)*— उपयुक्त/ग्रहण करने योग्य
*Ants* : Ineligible/Unsuitable/Unqualified

14. *Emerge (v)*— निकलना/दृष्टिगोचर होना/उभड़ आना
*Ants* : Enter/Disappear/Fade

15. *Eminent (adj.)*— श्रेष्ठ/विशिष्ट
*Ants* : Unimportant/Unknown

16. *Emotional (adj.)*— भावुक
*Ants* : Unemotional/Apathetic/Cold

17. *Emphasize (v)*— दबाव डालना
*Ants* : Under state/Playdown/minimize

18. *Emphatic (adj.)*— दृढ़/जोर/दबाव
*Ants* : Insignificant/Hesitant/Tentative

19. *Employed (adj.)*— नियुक्त
*Ants* : Unemployed/Jobless/Unoccupied

20. *Empty (adj.)*— खाली/निरर्थक
*Ants* : Full/Occupied/Meaningful/Worthwhile

21. *Encourage (v)*— साहस देना/प्रेरित/उत्तेजित करना
*Ants* : Discourage/Dissuade/Hinder

22. *End (n)*— अंत/समाप्त/मृत्यु
*Ants* : Beginning/Start/Birth

23. *Endless (adj.)*— अनन्त/निरन्तर
*Ants* : Finite/Limited/Transient

24. *Energetic (adj.)*— कर्मठ/उद्योगी
*Ants* : Lazy/Inactive/Weak.

25. *Enforced (adj.)*— कार्यान्वित
*Ants* : Voluntary/Optional

26. *Engage (v)*— काम में लगना/वचनबद्ध होना
*Ants* : Dismiss/discharge/Giveup

27. *Engaged (adj.)*— सगाई किया हुआ
*Ants* : Free/unoccupied/Unattached

28. *Enjoy (v)*— आनन्द लेना
*Ants* : Dislike/Hate

29. *Enjoyable (adj.)*— आनंददायक
*Ants* : Unpleasant/Disagreeable/Hateful

30. *Enlarge (v)*— विस्तार करना/फैलाना
*Ants* : Reduce/Diminish/Lessen

31. *Enlightened (adj.)*— ज्ञान प्राप्त/ज्ञानी
*Ants* : Ignorant/Illiterate/Narrowminded

32. *Enemity (n)*— शत्रुता/विरोध
*Ants* : Friendship/Love/Good will

33. *Enough (adj.)*— पर्याप्त/उचित
*Ants* : Insufficient/Inadequate

34. *Enormous (adj.)*— विशाल/असाधारण
*Ants* : Minute/Tiny

35. *Entangle (v)*— व्याकुल करना/जाल में फँसाना
*Ants* : Disentangle/Unravel/Release

36. *Enter (v)*— प्रवेश/भर्ती करना
*Ants* : Leave/Depart/Withdraw

37. *Enthusiastic (adj.)*— उत्साही
*Ants* : Apathetic/Indifferent/Uninterested

38. *Entire (adj.)*— सम्पूर्ण
*Ants* : Partial/Incomplete/Qualified

39. *Entrance (n), Entry (n)*— प्रवेश/प्रवेश मार्ग
*Ants* : Exit/Departure

40. *Equal (adj.)*— समान
*Ants* : Unequal/Different/Uneven



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## F

1. *Factual (adj.)*— सचमुच/वास्तविक/सत्य
   *Ants* : Untrue / Fictitious / Unreal
2. *Fall (v)*— गिरना/निम्न स्तर पर पहुँचना/ढुलकना
   *Ants* : Succeed / Increase / Thrive
3. *Failure (n)*— असफल
   *Ants* : Success / Triumph
4. *Faint (adj.)*— मलिन/मुर्छित
   *Ants* : Clear / Loud / Great / Strong
5. *Fair (adj.)*— सुन्दर/स्पष्ट
   *Ants* : Unfair / Dark / Ugly
6. *Faith (n)*— विश्वास
   *Ants* : Disbelief / Distrust / Disloyalty
7. *Faithful (adj.)*— विश्वसनीय
   *Ants* : Disloyal / Unfaithful
8. *Fake (adj.)*— बेईमान
   *Ants* : Genuine / Authentic / Sincere
9. *False (adj.)*— असत्य/मिथ्या/झूठा
   *Ants* : True / Loyal / Faithful / Genuine
10. False hood (n)— मिथ्या/झूठा
    *Ants* : Truth
11. *Familiar (adj.)*— परिचित/प्रचलित
    *Ants* : Unfamiliar / Strange / Formal
12. *Famous (adj.)*— प्रसिद्ध/विख्यात Unkown / Obscure
13. *Fantastic (adj.)*— मनमौजी/भद्दा
    *Ants* : Real / Ordinary / Poor
14. *Far (adj.)*— दूर
    *Ants* : Near / Neighbouring
15. *Fascinate (v)*— मनमोहित करना/आकर्षित करना
    *Ants* : Bore / Repel / Turnoff
16. *Fat (adj.)*— मोटा
    *Ants* : Thin / Lean / Minor
17. *Fatal (adj.)*— हानिकारक/घातक
    *Ants* : Harmless / Beneficial
18. *Fatigue (n)*— परिश्रम/थकावट
    *Ants* : Energy / Vigour
19. *Fault (n)*— दोष/दुर्गुण
    *Ants* : Merit / Strength / Asset
20. *Fruitless (adj.)*— असफल/फलहीन
    *Ants* : Imperfect / Guilty / Fruitful
21. *Favour (n)*— पक्ष/अनुग्रह
    *Ants* : Disfavour / Disapproval / Disservice
22. *Favour (v)*— कृपा/अनुमोदन करना/पक्ष लेना
    *Ants* : Oppose / Dislike / Hinder
23. *Favourable (adj.)*— अनुकूल
    *Ants* : Unfavourable / Critical / Disadvantageous
24. *Fearful (adj.)*— भयानक/भयंकर
    *Ants* : Bold / Intrepid
25. *Feeble (adj.)*— दुर्बल/अस्पष्ट
    *Ants* : Strong / Robust Effective / Forceful
26. *Ferocious (adj.)*— भयंकर/जंगली
    *Ants* : Mild / Gentle / Tame
27. *Fertile (adj.)*— उपजाऊ
    *Ants* : Infertile / Barren / Unimaginative
28. *Few (adj.)*— अल्प/नगण्य
    *Ants* : Many / Pentiful / Frequent
29. *Fiction (n)*— मिथ्या कथा/उपन्यास
    *Ants* : Fact / Truth
30. *Fictional (adj.)*— काल्पनिक
    *Ants* : Real / Actual
31. *Fierce (adj.)*— क्रुर/भयंकर
    *Ants* : Tame / Gentle / Mild
32. *Final (adj.)*— अंतिम/आखिरी/निर्णीत
    *Ants* : First / Introductory
33. *Fine (adj.)*— स्पष्ट/सुन्दर/कोमल
    *Ants* : Poor / Dull / Coarse
34. *Finish (v)*— समाप्त करना/पूर्ण करना
    *Ants* : Start / Begin
35. *First (adj.)*— प्रथम/प्रधान
    *Ants* : Last / Subsidary / Lowly
36. *Fix (v)*— स्थिर करना/दृढ़ करना
    *Ants* : Break / Cancel / Change
37. *Flexible (adj.)*— मुलायम/लचीला
    *Ants* : Regid / Stiff / inflexible / Set
38. *Float (v)*— तैरना/उपलाना/स्थापित करना
    *Ants* : Sink / Submerge / Terminate
39. *Flop (v)*— फड़फड़ाना
    *Ants* : Succeed / Flourish
40. *Flourish (v)*— सफल होना
    *Ants* : Fail / Decline

## G

1. *Gain (v)*— लाभ/उन्नति
   *Ants* : Loss
2. *Gallant (adj.)*— भड़कीला/शूरवीर
   *Ants* : Cowardly / Discourteous / Rude
3. *Gather (v)*— एकत्र करना
   *Ants* : Scatter / Disperse / Separate
4. *General (adj.)*— सामान्य/साधारण
   *Ants* : Unusual / Specific / Detailed
5. *Generally (adv.)*— प्रायः/बहुधा/सामान्यतया
   *Ants* : Unusually / Particularly / Rarely
6. *Generous (adj.)*— उदार/दानी
   *Ants* : Mean / Selfish / Meagre
7. *Genial (adj.)*— दयालु/सुखदायक
   *Ants* : Unfriendly / Unkind / Morose
8. *Genius (n)*— अपूर्वबुद्धि का मनुष्य
   *Ants* : Dolt / Dunce / Stupidity
9. *Gentle (adj.)*— भला/सज्जन
   *Ants* : Cruel / Harsh / Fierce
10. *Get (v)*— प्राप्त करना/पाना
    *Ants* : Losel / Misunderstand / Leave
11. *Ghastly (adj.)*— डरावना
    *Ants* : Pleasant / Charming / Healthy
12. *Gigantic (adj.)*— विशाल
    *Ants* : Diminutive / Tiny

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



13. *Give (v)*— देना/सौंपना
*Ants* : Accept/Receive/Take/Withdraw
14. *Glad (adj.)*— प्रसन्न/खुश
*Ants* : Unhappy/Sad/Reluctant
15. *Glamourous (adj.)*— जादूपूर्ण/आकर्षक
*Ants* : Dowdy/Dull/Boring
16. *Gloomy (adj.)*— मलिन
*Ants* : Bright/Happy/Cheerful
17. *Glorious (adj.)*— श्रेष्ठ/तेजस्वी
*Ants* : Unknown/Dull/Miserable
18. *Glory (n)*— यश/गर्व/शोभा/महत्व
*Ants* : Disgrace/Ugliness/Shame/Blashphemy
19. *Go (v)*— जाना/प्रस्थान करना
*Ants* : Come/Arrive/Breakdown
20. *Golden (adj.)*— सोने का/चमकीला/बहुमूल्य
*Ants* : Dark/Unfavourable
21. *Good (adj.)*— अच्छा
*Ants* : Bad/Inadequate/Poor
22. *Goodness (n)*— अच्छाई
*Ants* : Badness/Meanness/Harm
23. *Good will (n)*— दया भाव/मंगल कामना
*Ants* : Ill wil/Hostility/Enmity
24. *Gracious (adj.)*— कृपापूर्ण/दयालु
*Ants* : Discourteous/Ungracious
25. *Gradual (adj.)*— उत्तरोत्तर/क्रमिक
*Ants* : Sudden/Abrupt
26. *Grand (adj.)*— सुन्दर/श्रेष्ठ
*Ants* : Interior/Unimpressive/Lowly
27. *Graphic (adj.)*— सुचित्रित/स्पष्ट
*Ants* : Dull/Vague
28. *Grateful (adj.)*— कृतज्ञ/सुखकर
*Ants* : Ungrateful
29. *Gratitude (n)*— कृतज्ञता/धन्यवाद
*Ants* : Ingratitude
30. *Grave (adj.)*— गंभीर/स्थिर
*Ants* : Carefree/frivolous/Trivial
31. *Great (adj.)*— बड़ा/असामान्य/प्रधान
*Ants* : Small/Unimportant/Ordinary
32. *Greedy (adj.)*— लालची
*Ants* : Generous/Altrusitic/Apathetic
33. *Grief (n)*— खेद/पश्चाताप
*Ants* : Joy/Delight/Celebration
34. *Grieve (n)*— दुःख देना
*Ants* : Rejoice/Cheer
35. *Grow (v)*— उपजाना/बढ़ाना/विकसित करना
*Ants* : Shrink/Decrease/Fail

## H

1. *Halt (v)*— रुकना
*Ants* : Go/Begin/Further
2. *Handicap (n)*— असुविधा/बाधा
*Ants* : Advantage/Benefit
3. *Handsome (adj.)*— सुन्दर
*Ants* : Ugly/Plain/Meagre
4. *Haphazard (adj.)*— अनियमित
*Ants* : Regular/Systematic/Methodical
5. *Happy (adj.)*— खुश
*Ants* : Sad/Displeased/Unfortunate
6. Hard (adj.)— कठिन/ठोस
*Ants* : Soft/Easy/Gentle
7. Hardly (adv.)— मुश्किल से/कठिनता से
*Ants* : Fully/Undoubtedly
8. *Hardship (n)*— कठोर शारीरिक क्लेश
*Ants* : Prosperity/Ease/Comfort
9. *Hardworking (adj.)*— कठोर परिश्रमी
*Ants* : Lazy/Idle
10. *Hardy (adj.)*— साहसी
*Ants* : Delicate/Weak/Cowardly
11. *Harm (n)*— हानी/नाश/दोष
*Ants* : Good/Benefit
12. *Harmful (adj.)*— हानिकारक
*Ants* : Harmless/Beneficial/Good
13. *Harmony (n)*— एकता/अनुरूपता
*Ants* : Disagreement/Dissonance
14. *Haste (n)*— जल्दी/शीघ्रता
*Ants* : Delay/Care
15. *Hasten (v)*— जल्दी करना
*Ants* : Slow/decelerate/Delay
16. *Hasty (adj.)*— जल्दी/तुरन्त
*Ants* : Slow/Cautious/Leisurely
17. *Hateful (adj.)*— घृणाप्रद
*Ants* : Admirable/Lovable/Good
18. *Haughty (adj.)*— अहंकारी/घमंडी
*Ants* : Modest/Humble
19. *Hazardous (adj.)*— संकटमय//विपत्तिजनक
*Ants* : Safe/Sure
20. *Healthy (adj.)*— स्वस्थ
*Ants* : Unhealthy/ill/Adverse
21. *Hearten (v)*— उत्साहित करना
*Ants* : Discourage/Depress/Dishearten
22. *Heartless (adj.)*— साहस रहित
*Ants* : Compassionate/Kind/Merciful
23. *Hearty (adj.)*— स्नेहपूर्ण/निष्कपट
*Ants* : Cool/Slight/Weak
24. *Heat (n)*— गरमी/क्रोध/सम्भोग की इच्छा
*Ants* : Cold/Apathy
25. *Heavenly (adj.)*— स्वर्गीय/दिव्य
*Ants* : Dreadful/Ugly/Hellish
26. *Heavily (adv.)*— भार से/दुःख से/तीव्रता से
*Ants* : Light/Slight/Happy
27. *Helpful (adj.)*— उपकारक/उपयोगी
*Ants* : Useless/Unsympathetic
28. *Helpless (adj.)*— अनाथ/असहाय
*Ants* : Fit/Capable
29. *Hero (n)*— नायक/पराक्रमी पुरुष
*Ants* : Coward/Villain
30. *Heroic (adj.)*— पराक्रमयुक्त
*Ants* : Cowardly/Timid/Simple

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



31. *Hesitant (adj.)*— हिचकने वाला
*Ants* : Determined / Firm / Confident

32. *Hide (v)*— छिपाना/गुप्त रखना
*Ants* : Reveal / Disclose

33. *Hideous (adj.)*— भयंकर/डरावना
*Ants* : Beautiful / Pleasant

34. *High (adj.)*— ऊँचा स्थान/ढीठ
*Ants* : Low / Lowly / Deep

35. *Hindrance (n)*— अवरोध/रुकावट
*Ants* : Aid / Help / Advantage

36. *Hoarse (adj.)*— कर्कश
*Ants* : Smooth / Soft / Mellow

37. *Hold (v)*— पकड़ना/थामना
*Ants* : Giveup / Handover / Release

38. *Hollow (adj.)*— खोखला
*Ants* : Solid / Full / Meaningful

39. *Holy (adj.)*— पवित्र
*Ants* : Impious

40. *Homogeneous (adj.)*— सजातीय
*Ants* : Different / Dissimilar / Beterogeneous

## I

1. *Icy (adj.)*— बहुत ठंढा
*Ants* : Boiling / Hot / Warm

2. *Idle (adj.)*— आलसी/निकम्मा
*Ants* : Industrious / Active / Busy / Meaningful

3. *Ignorance (n)*— अज्ञानता
*Ants* : Knowledge / Education / Enlightenment

4. *Ill (adj.)*— अस्वस्थ/रोगी/बुरा
*Ants* : Healthy / Well / Friendly / Favourable

5. *Illegal (adj.)*— अवैध/गैरकानूनी
*Ants* : Legal / Lawful

6. *Illegible (adj.)*— अस्पष्ट/न पढ़ने योग्य
*Ants* : Legible / Clear

7. *Illegitimate (adj.)*— अवैध/अनुचित
*Ants* : Lawful / Legal / Legtimate

8. *Illicit (adj.)*— नियम विरुद्ध/अवैध
*Ants* : Licit / Legal / Lawful

9. *Illuminate (v)*— प्रकाश युक्त/सुसज्जित करना
*Ants* : Darken / Confuse

10. *Illusion (n)*— माया/छल
*Ants* : Reality / Truth

11. *Illustrious (adj.)*— प्रसिद्ध/प्रख्यात
*Ants* : Unknown / Obscure

12. *Imaginary (adj.)*— काल्पनिक
*Ants* : Real / Actual

13. *Immature (adj.)*— अपरिपक्व/समय से पहले का
*Ants* : Ripe / Mature

14. *Immense (adj.)*— बहुत बड़ा
*Ants* : Tiny / Minute

15. *Imminent (adj.)*— निकट/आसन्न/भयावह
*Ants* : Distant / Remote

16. Immortal (adj.)— अमर/अजर/अविनाशी
*Ants* : Mortal / Ephemeral / Transitory

17. *Important (adj.)*— महत्वपूर्ण/प्रभावशाली
*Ants* : Unimportant / Insignificant / Minor

18. *Impossible (adj.)*— असंभव
*Ants* : Possible / Plausible / Tolerable

19. *Imprison (v)*— कैद या बंद करना
*Ants* : Free / Liberate / Release

20. *Improve (v)*— उन्नति करना/सुधारना
*Ants* : Worsen / Deteriorate / Impair / Reduce

21. Impudent (adj.)— निर्लज्ज
*Ants* : Polite / Respectful / Modest

22. *Inadequate (adj.)*— अपर्याप्त/दोषपूर्ण
*Ants* : Adequate / Sufficient / Competent

23. *Inaugurate (v)*— विधिपूर्वक अधिकारी बनाना/आरंभ करना
*Ants* : Terminate / Windup

24. *Include (v)*— समावेश करना
*Ants* : Exclude / Omit

25. *Incombustible (adj.)*— अदाह्य/आग से न जलने योग्य
*Ants* : Flammable / Inflammable

26. *Increase (v)*— बढ़ना/विस्तार करना/फैलना
*Ants* : Decrease / Reduce

27. *Independent (adj.)*— आजाद/अनाश्रित
*Ants* : Dependent / Subservient

28. *Individual (adj.)*— व्यक्ति/अकेला
*Ants* : Collective / Ordinary

29. *Induce (v)*— फुसलाना/बहकाना
*Ants* : Dissuade / Hinter / Deter

30. *Industrious (adj.)*— परिश्रमी/कर्मठ/उद्योगी
*Ants* : Idle / Indolent / Lazy

31. *Inertia (n)*— निश्चलता/जड़ता/अप्रवृति
*Ants* : Action / Activity / Energy

32. *Infamous (adj.)*— कुख्यात/अपमानपूर्ण
*Ants* : Honourable / Reputable

33. *Inferior (adj.)*— अनुत्तम/हीन
*Ants* : Superior / Senior / Excellent

34. *Ingenuous (adj.)*— निष्कपट/दयालु
*Ants* : Insincere / Artful

35. *Inhale (v)*— साँस खींचना
*Ants* : Exhale / Expire

36. *Initial (adj.)*— आदि का/प्रारंभ
*Ants* : Final

37. *Initiate (v)*— प्रारंभ करना
*Ants* : End / Close

38. *Injurious (adj.)*— हानिकारक
*Ants* : Innocuous / Advantageous / Favourable

39. *Innocence (n)*— निर्दोषता/पवित्रता
*Ants* : Guilt / Sin

40. *Innocent (adj.)*— निर्दोष/निष्कलंक
*Ants* : Guilty / Sinful

## J

1. *Jaundiced (adj.)*— पीलिया रोग ग्रस्त/निराश
*Ants* : Optimistic / Naive

2. *Jealousy (n)*— ईर्ष्या
*Ants* : Admiration / Trust

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



3. *Join (v)*— जोड़ना/साथ होना
*Ants* : Detach/Separate/Leave
4. *Joyful (adj.)*— आनंदपूर्ण
*Ants* : Depressed/Miserable/Sad
5. *Judicious (adj.)*— न्याययुक्त/उचित
*Ants* : Injudicious/Foolish/Ill-advised
6. *Juicy (adj.)*— रसीला
*Ants* : Dry/Unexisting
7. *Just (adj.)*— सच्चा/उचित/न्याय
*Ants* : Unjust/dishonest/Undeserved
8. *Justice (n)*— न्याय/न्यायाधीश
*Ants* : Injustice/Dishonesty
9. *Juvenile (adj.)*— तरुण/यौवन संबंधी
*Ants* : Adult/Mature

## K

1. *Keen (adj.)*— तीव्र/उत्सुक
*Ants* : Blunt/Dull/Apathetic
2. *Keep (v)*— रखना
*Ants* : Giveup/Discard/Abandon
3. *Kind (adj.)*— दयालु
*Ants* : Unkind/Mean/Nasty
4. *Kindly (adj.)*— कृपालु/उपकारी
*Ants* : Unkind/Mean/Disagreeable
5. *Know (v)*— जानना
*Ants* : Ignore/Misunderstand
6. *Knowing (adj.)*— ज्ञान
*Ants* : Ingenuous/Innocent/Accidental
7. *Knowledge (n)*— ज्ञान/परिचय
*Ants* : Ignorance/Illiteracy
8. *Known (adj.)*— जाना हुआ/प्रसिद्ध/परिचित
*Ants* : Unknown/Secret
9. *Known-how (n)*— ज्ञात
*Ants* : Inability/Ignorance

## L

1. *Laborious (adj.)*— परिश्रमी/उद्यमी
*Ants* : Easy/Simple/Effortless/Natural
2. *Lack (n)*— अभाव/न्यूनता
*Ants* : Abundance/Excess/Sufficiency
3. *Large (adj.)*— विशाल/बड़ा
*Ants* : Small/Slight/Meagre
4. *Last (adj.)*— अंतिम/पिछला
*Ants* : First/Initial
5. *Late (adj.)*— देर से आया हुआ
*Ants* : Punctual/Early/alive/Existing
6. *Later (adj.)*— उत्तर काल का/बाद का
*Ants* : Former
7. *Laughable (adj.)*— हँसने-हँसाने योग्य
*Ants* : Serious/Grave
8. *Lavish (adj.)*— खर्चीला
*Ants* : Meagre/Frugal
9. *Lawful (adj.)*— कानूनी
*Ants* : Unlawful/Illegal
10. *Lazy (adj.)*— आलसी
*Ants* : Active/Industrious/Energetic
11. *Lead (v)*— नेतृत्व करना/मार्ग दिखाना
*Ants* : Follow/Trail
12. *Learned (adj.)*— विद्वान
*Ants* : Ignorant/Illiterate
13. *Leave (v)*— चले जाना/प्रस्थान करना
*Ants* : Come/Arrive/Stay
14. *Legal (adj.)*— वैध/कानूनी
*Ants* : Illegal/Unlawful
15. *Leisure (n)*— अवकाश
*Ants* : Work/Occupation
16. *Lend (v)*— ऋण देना/उधार देना
*Ants* : Borrow/Detract
17. *Lengthen (v)*— बढ़ाना/विस्तार करना
*Ants* : Shorten/Curtail/Decrease
18. *Lethal (adj.)*— प्राणघातक
*Ants* : Harmless/Sake
19. *Liberal (adj.)*— उदार/दयालु
*Ants* : Miserly/Narrow-minded
20. *Liberate (v)*— मुक्त करना
*Ants* : Confine/Imprison
21. *Lie (v)*— असत्य/झूठ
*Ants* : Truth/Fact
22. *Life (n)*— जीवन/चेतना
*Ants* : Death/Demise
23. *Lifeless (adj.)*— निर्जीव
*Ants* : Alive/Animate/Lively
24. *Lift (v)*— उठाना
*Ants* : Drop/Lower/place
25. *Light (n)*— प्रकाश
*Ants* : Dark/Darkness/Ignorance
26. *Lighten (v)*— प्रकाशित करना
*Ants* : Darken
27. *Light-hearted (adj.)*— प्रसन्न चित्त
*Ants* : Miserable/Gloomy
28. *Light weight (adj.)*— हल्की वजन का
*Ants* : Heavy/Weighty/Heavey weight
29. *Like (adj.)*— पसंद
*Ants* : Unlike/Dissimilar/Different
30. *Like (v)*— पसंद करना
*Ants* : Dislike/Hate
31. *Link (v)*— मिलाना/जोड़ना
*Ants* : Detach/Separate
32. *Listen (v)*— ध्यान से सुनना
*Ants* : Ignore
33. *Literal (adj.)*— मूलार्थक
*Ants* : Loose/Vague/Inaccurate
34. *Little (adj.)*— अल्प/छोटा/तुच्छ
*Ants* : Big/large/Long/Considerable
35. *Live (adj.)*— जिन्दा
*Ants* : Dead/Inactive

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



36. *Living (adj.)*— जीवित
*Ants* : Dead / Extinct / Obsolete

37. *Loath (adj.)*— अनिच्छुक/विमुख
*Ants* : Eager / Enthusiastic

38. *Loathsome (adj.)*— घृणित
*Ants* : Lovable / Delightful

39. *Local (adj.)*— स्थानीय
*Ants* : National / General

40. *Lock (v)*— ताला लगाना/बंद करना
*Ants* : Unlock / Open / Separate

## M

1. *Mad (adj.)*— पागल/उनमत्त
*Ants* : Calm / Sensible / Apathetic

2. *Magnificent (adj.)*— देदीप्यमान
*Ants* : Modest / Poor

3. *Magnitude (n)*— परिमाण/महत्व
*Ants* : Smallness / Triviality

4. *Main (adj.)*— मुख्य/प्रधान
*Ants* : Subsidary / Minor

5. *Maintain (v)*— निर्वाह करना/सँभालना
*Ants* : Break off / Neglect / Deny

6. *Mojor (adj.)*— प्रमुख/व्यस्क
*Ants* : Minor / Unimportant / Trivial

7. *Majority (n)*— बहुमत/व्यस्कता
*Ants* : Minority

8. *Make (v)*— बनाना/सम्पादन करना
*Ants* : Demolish / Destroy

9. *Male (adj.)*— पुरुष संबंधी
*Ants* : Female

10. *Malevolent (adj.)*— द्वेषी/कुबुद्धि
*Ants* : Benevolent / Friendly / Kind

11. *Manage (v)*— प्रबंध/व्यवस्था करना
*Ants* : Mismanage / Fail

12. *Manual (adj.)*— हाथ से किया हुआ
*Ants* : Automatic / Mechanical

13. *Married (adj.)*— विवाहित
*Ants* : Unmarried / Single

14. *Marvellous (adj.)*— आश्चर्यजनक/अद्भुत
*Ants* : Ordinary / Drealful

15. *Matching (adj.)*— समान गुण का
*Ants* : Unlike / Different / Dissimilar

16. *Mature (adj.)*— परिपक्व/प्रौढ़
*Ants* : Immature / Childish / Green

17. *Maximum (adj.)*— अधिकतम
*Ants* : Minimum / Least

18. *Meagre (adj.)*— थोड़ा/अपूर्ण
*Ants* : Abunadant / Copious / Obese

19. *Mean (adj.)*— नीच/कुलीन
*Ants* : Generous / Honourable / Luxurious

20. *Meaningful (adj.)*— सार्थक/अर्थपूर्ण
*Ants* : Meaningless / Unimportant / Trivial

21. *Meet (v)*— भेंट करना/एकत्र होना
*Ants* : Avoid / Separate / Disperse

22. *Melancholy (adj.)*— खिन्नमनस्य/उदास
*Ants* : Cheerful / Joyful / Merry

23. *Melodious (adj)*— सुरीला
*Ants* : Discordant / Harsh / Grating

24. *Memorable (adj.)*— स्मरण करने योग्य
*Ants* : Forgettable / Commonplace

25. *Mend (v)*— मरम्मत करना/संशोधन करना
*Ants* : Break / Tear / Worsen

26. *Merciful (adj.)*— दयापूर्ण
*Ants* : Merciless / Cruel

27. *Mercy (n)*— दयालुता
*Ants* : Severify / Cruelty / inhumanity

28. Merge (v)— डुबाना/मिलाना
*Ants* : Diverge / Split / Separate

29. *Merit (n)*— गुण/योग्यता
*Ants* : Inferiority / Fault / Disadvantage

30. *Meritorious (adj.)*— गुणसम्पन्न/प्रशंसा के योग्य
*Ants* : Worthless / Discreditable

31. *Merry (adj.)*— हँसमुख/आनंदित
*Ants* : Miserable / Sad / Gloomy

32. *Midnight (n)*— आधी रात
*Ants* : Midday / Noon

33. *Mighty (adj.)*— शक्तिशाली
*Ants* : Tiny / Feeble / Puny

34. *Mild (adj.)*— दयालु/मृदु
*Ants* : Cruel / Harsh / Strong / Spicy

35. *Militant (adj.)*— युद्ध में लगा हुआ
*Ants* : Pacific / Peaceful / Retiring

36. *Mind (n)*— मस्तिष्क/विचार/स्मरण शक्ति/मत
*Ants* : Body / Disinclination

37. *Mindful (adj.)*— सावधान/सचेत
*Ants* : Heedless / Oblivious

38. *Mindless (adj.)*— असावधान/अचेत/मूर्ख
*Ants* : Intelligent / Thoughtful / Interesting

39. *Minimize (v)*— छोटा-से-छोटा बनाना
*Ants* : Maximize / Increase / Exaggerate

40. *Minimum (adj.)*— न्यूनतम
*Ants* : Maximum / Most

## N

1. *Narrow (adj.)*— संकुचित
*Ants* : Wide / Broad / Broad-minded

2. Nasty (adj.)— अपवित्र/गन्दा
*Ants* : Delightful / Pleasant / Agreeable

3. National (adj.)— राष्ट्रीय/देशीय
*Ants* : Local / International / Domestic

4. *Natural (adj.)*— स्वाभाविक प्राकृति
*Ants* : Abnormal / Unnatural / Artificial

5. *Naughty (adj.)*— उपद्रवी/दुष्ट/नटखट
*Ants* : Good / Decent / Obedient

6. *Near (adj.)*— समीप/निकट/पास में
*Ants* : Far / Distant / Remote

7. *Neat (adj.)*— सुन्दर/साफ/स्वच्छ
*Ants* : Clumsy / Untidy / Disorderly

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


8. *Necessary (adj.)*— अनिवार्य/आवश्यक
*Ants* : Unnecessary / Non-essential / Dispensable
9. *Needy (adj.)*— जरूरतमंद
*Ants* : Wealthy / Affluent
10. *Neglect (n)*— उपेक्षा/असावधानी
*Ants* : Care / Attention
11. *Negligent (adj.)*— असावधान/लापरवाह
*Ants* : Careful / Attentive
12. *Nervous (adj.)*— शीघ्र घबड़ा जाने वाला
*Ants* : Bold / Calm / Laid-back
13. *Never (adv.)*— कभी नहीं
*Ants* : Always / Forever
14. *New (adj.)*— नया/हाल का/अपरिचित
*Ants* : Old / Obsolete / Second-hand
15. *Nice (adj.)*— सुन्दर
*Ants* : Unpleasant / Nasty / Rough
16. *Night (n)*— रात
*Ants* : Day / Light
17. *No*— नहीं
*Ants* : Yes
18. *Noble (adj.)*— कुलीन/विनम्र
*Ants* : Dishonourable
19. *Noisy (adj.)*— कोलाहलपूर्ण
*Ants* : Quiet / Soft
20. *None*— कोई नहीं
*Ants* : Many
21. *Nonsense (n)*— अनर्थक/असंगत
*Ants* : Sense / Wisdom
22. *Normal (adj.)*— यथाक्रम/सामान्य
*Ants* : Abnormal / Unusual / Irrational
23. *Nothing (n)*— कुछ भी नहीं
*Ants* : Something
24. *Notice (v)*— ध्यान देना/सूचित करना
*Ants* : Overlook / Ignore / Disregard
25. *Nuisance (n)*— बाधा/कष्टप्रद
*Ants* : Help / Blessing / Advantage
26. *Nurse (v)*— पालना/प्रबंध करना
*Ants* : Neglect / Hinder
27. *Nutritious (adj.)*— पौष्टिक
*Ants* : Unhealthy

## O

1. *Obedient (adj.)*— आज्ञाकारी/कर्त्तव्यपरायण
*Ants* : Disobedient / Untruly / Intractable
2. *Obey (v)*— आज्ञापालन करना
*Ants* : Disobey / Ignore / Defy
3. *Objection (n)*— विरोध/आक्षेप
*Ants* : Approval / Acceptance
4. *Obligatory (adj.)*— आवश्यक/बाध्यकारी
*Ants* : Voluntary / Optional
5. *Oblivious (adj.)*— भुलाने वाल/भुलक्कड़
*Ants* : Aware / Conscious / Attentive
6. *Obnoxious (adj.)*— अनिष्ठा/अप्रिय
*Ants* : Delightful / Pleasant / Agreeable
7. *Obscure (adj.)*— अस्पष्ट/अप्रसिद्ध
*Ants* : Clear / Plain / Distinct / Famous
8. *Obscure (v)*— छिपाना
*Ants* : Clarify / Reveal / Brighten
9. *Observe (v)*— अनुसरण करना/ध्यान देना
*Ants* : Overlook / Ignore / Disobey
10. *Obsolete (adj.)*— अप्रचलित
*Ants* : Current / Modern / Up-to-date
11. *Obstacle (n)*— विघ्न/बाधा
*Ants* : Help / Advantage
12. *Obstinate (adj.)*— हठी/स्वेच्छाचार
*Ants* : Clear / advance / Faciliate / Help
13. *Obstract (v)*— विघ्न डालना/रोकना
*Ants* : Amenable / Flexable
14. *Occassional (adj.)*— समय-समय पर होने वाला
*Ants* : Regular / Habitual
15. *Occupied (adj.)*— भरा हुआ/छेका हुआ
*Ants* : Free / Vacant / Empty
16. *Occupty (v)*— भरना/छेकना/पद धारण करना
*Ants* : Leave / Abandon / Quit
17. *Odd (adj.)*— अनोखा/असंगत
*Ants* : Ordinary / Usual / Regular
18. *Off (adj.)*— दूर का/बढ़ा हुआ/लुप्त
*Ants* : On / Available / Present
19. *Offend (v)*— अप्रसन्न करना/क्रोधित करना
*Ants* : Please / Delight
20. *Offer (v)*— प्रस्ताव करना/निवेदन करना
*Ants* : Withdraw / Refuse Withold
21. *Offhand (adj.)*— असावधान
*Ants* : Careful / Thorough
22. *Official (adj.)*— अधिकार संबंधी
*Ants* : Unofficial / Unauthorised / Informal
23. *Offspring (n)*— सन्तान/फल
*Ants* : Parent / Ancestor / Forebear
24. *Often (adv.)*— प्राय:/बारबार
*Ants* : Seldom / Never
25. *Ok (okay) (n)*— स्वीकृति
*Ants* : Refusal / Denial
26. *Ok (okay) (v)*— स्वीकार करना
*Ants* : Refuse / forbid / Veto
27. *Old (adj.)*— वृद्ध/प्राचीन
*Ants* : Young / New / Modern
28. *Omission (n)*— त्याग/लोप/भूल
*Ants* : Addition / Inclusion
29. *Omit (v)*— त्यागना/भूल जाना
*Ants* : Add / Include
30. *Once (adv.)*— एक बार/पहिले
*Ants* : Now / Often
31. *Opaque (adj.)*— अपारदर्शक
*Ants* : Transparent / Clear / Lucid
32. *Open (v)*— खोलना/आरंभ करना
*Ants* : Shut / Close
33. *Opponent (n)*— शत्रु/विरोधी
*Ants* : Ally / Partner / Colleague

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



34. *Oppose (v)*— विरोध करना
*Ants* : Support / Defend. / Promote

35. *Opposite (adj.)*— प्रतिकूल/सामने का
*Ants* : Same / Identical / Like

36. *Optimistic (adj.)*— आशावाद से संबंधित
*Ants* : Pessimistic / Gloomy

37. *Order (n)*— आदेश/आज्ञा
*Ants* : Disorder / Disarray / Chaos

38. *Ordinary (adj.)*— प्रचलित/सामान्य
*Ants* : Unusual / Extraordinary / Unique

39. *Organize (v)*— संगठन बनाना
*Ants* : Destroy / Jumble / Disorganize

40. *Origin (n)*— उदगम/आरंभ
*Ants* : End / Deat / Demise

## P

1. *Pacific (adj.)*— शांत/स्थिर
*Ants* : Hostile / Aggressive / Stormy

2. *Pack (v)*— गठरी बनाना
*Ants* : Unpack / Empty

3. *Palatial (adj.)*— महल जैसा
*Ants* : Humble / modest / Cramped

4. *Paradise (n)*— स्वर्ग/वैकुण्ठ
*Ants* : Hell

5. *Parallel (adj.)*— समरूप
*Ants* : Different / Divergent

6. *Pardon (v)*— क्षमा/माफ करना
*Ants* : Blame / Punish

7. *Part (v)*— हिस्सा लगाना/अलग करना
*Ants* : Gather / Join / Marry / Arrive

8. *Partial (adj.)*— अपूर्ण
*Ants* : Complete / Whole / Impartial

9. *Particular (adj.)*— विशिष्ट/अपूर्व
*Ants* : General / Ordinary / Careless

10. *Pass (v)*— पार करना/आगे बढ़ाना
*Ants* : Halt / Stop / Fail / Rject

11. *Passionate (adj.)*— कामुक/क्रोधी
*Ants* : Apathetic / Frigid

12. *Passive (adj.)*— धैर्ययुक्त/निष्क्रीय
*Ants* : Active / Assertive / Emotional

13. *Past (adj.)*— बीता हुआ
*Ants* : Present / future

14. *Pathetic (adj.)*— कारुणिक/दुखी
*Ants* : Comical / Cheerful / Admirable / Excellent

15. *Patience (n)*— धैर्य
*Ants* : Impatience / Agitation / Exasperation

16. *Pause (v)*— रूकना/ठमकना
*Ants* : Continue / Proceed

17. *Pay (v)*— ऋण चुकाना
*Ants* : Owe / Withhold

18. *Peace (n)*— शांति/संधि
*Ants* : Noise / Conflict / War / agitation

19. *Peaceful (adj.)*— शांत
*Ants* : Noisy / Agitated / Hostile

20. *Peak (n)*— चोटी
*Ants* : Bottom / Nadir / Trough

21. *Peculiar (adj.)*— अनोखा/असाधारण
*Ants* : Normal / Ordinary

22. *Pedestrian (n)*— पैदल चलने वाला
*Ants* : Driver

23. *Pedestrian (adj.)*— क्षुद्र/उत्साहहीन/पैदल चलने वाला
*Ants* : Imaginative / Inspired / Exciting

24. *Penalty (n)*— दण्ड/जुर्माना
*Ants* : Reward / Advantage

25. *Perfect (adj.)*— पूर्ण
*Ants* : Imperfect / Fautly / Defective

26. *Perform (v)*— विधान करना/ प्रयोग करना/नाटक खेलना
*Ants* : Neglect / Omit

27. *Peril (n)*— भय/सन्देह
*Ants* : Safety / Security

28. *Perish (v)*— नाश होना/मरना
*Ants* : live / Survive

29. *Permit (v)*—आज्ञा देना/स्वीकार करना
*Ants* : Ban / Forbid / Refuse

30. *Pernicious (adj.)*— हानिकारक
*Ants* : Beneficial / Favourable

31. *Perpendicular (adj.)*— सीधा/लम्बाकार
*Ants* : Horizontal

32. *Personal (adj.)*— व्यक्तिगत/निजी/अपना
*Ants* : Public / General

33. *Physical (adj.)*— शारीरिक
*Ants* : Mental / Spiritual

34. *Pick (v)*— चुनना
*Ants* : Reject / Discard

35. *Pious (adj.)*— पुण्यात्मा/धार्मिक
*Ants* : Impious / Irreligious / Sincere

36. *Playful (adj.)*— चंचल/खिलाड़ी
*Ants* : Solemn / Serious

37. *Please (v)*— प्रसन्न करना/होना
*Ants* : Displease / Dissatisfy / Annoy / Bore

38. *Pleasure (n)*— आनंद
*Ants* : Displeasure / Sorrow / Pain

39. *Plentiful (adj.)*— अधिक
*Ants* : Meagre / Sparse / Scanty

40. *Poisonous (adj.)*— विषैला
*Ants* : Harmless / Non-toxic

41. *Polite (adj.)*— विनम्र/सभ्य
*Ants* : Rude / Impolite / Uncouth

42. *Poor (adj.)*— गरीब/नीच/अल्प
*Ants* : Wealthy / Rich / Superior / Satisfactory

43. *Popular (adj.)*— लोकप्रिय
*Ants* : Unpopular / Unknown / Highbrow

44. *Poverty (n)*— निर्धनता/कमी
*Ants* : Wealth / Luxury / Abundance

45. *Powerful (adj.)*— शक्तिशाली/बलवान
*Ants* : Powerless / Weak / Ineffective

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


46. *Praise (v)*— प्रशंसा करना/सराहना
*Ants* : Criticise/Condemn

47. *Practical (adj.)*— व्यवहारिक
*Ants* : Inexperienced/Theoretical/Impractical

48. *Precede (v)*— पूर्व में होना
*Ants* : Follow/Succeed

49. *Precious (adj.)*— बहुमूल्य
*Ants* : Worthless/Cheap

50. *Precise (adj.)*— यथार्थ/ठीक
*Ants* : Loose/Imprecise/Inaccurate/Careless

## Q

1. *Quaint (adj.)*— पुराने ढंग का/विचित्र
*Ants* : Ugly/Modern/Newfangled

2. Quarrel (n)— कलह/झगड़ा
*Ants* : Reconciliation/Agreement

3. Queer (adj.)— अपूर्व/अद्भुत
*Ants* : Ordinary/Conventional/Normal/Well

4. *Quick (adj.)*— फुर्तीला
*Ants* : Slow/Sluggish/Long/Dull

5. *Quickly (adv.)*— तीव्रता से/झटपट
*Ants* : Slowly/Thoroughly

6. *Quiet (adj.)*— शान्ति
*Ants* : Loud/Noisy/Busy

7. *Quit (v)*— छोड़ना
*Ants* : Start/Begin/Continue

## R

1. *Radiant (adj.)*— दीप्तिमान
*Ants* : Dark/Dull/Gloomy

2. *Radical (adj.)*— मौलिक/स्वाभाविक
*Ants* : Minor/Superficial/Conservative

3. *Raise (v)*— उठाना/ऊँचा करना
*Ants* : Lower/Demolish/End

4. *Rally (v)*— एकत्र करना
*Ants* : Disperse/Deteriorate

5. *Random (adj.)*— एकाएक/उत्पन्न
*Ants* : Deliberate/Systematic/Premeditated

6. *Rapid (adj.)*— तीव्र/जल्दी से करने वाला
*Ants* : Slow/leisurely

7. *Rare (adj.)*— विरल
*Ants* : Common/Frequent

8. *Rash (adj.)*— उतावला/अविवेकी
*Ants* : Careful/Cautious/Prudent

9. *Rational (adj.)*— विचारयुक्त/उचित
*Ants* : Irratioanl/Illogical/Insane

10. *Ready (adj.)*— पूरी तैयारी से
*Ants* : Incomplete/Unprepared/Reluctiant

11. *Real (adj.)*— वास्तविक/यथार्थ/सत्य
*Ants* : Unreal/Imaginary/Imitation/False

12. *Realistic (adj.)*— सत्यरूप का/वास्तविकता
*Ants* : Unrealistic/Idealistic/Impractical/Romantic

13. *Rear (n)*— सबसे पीछे का भाग
*Ants* : Front/Vanguard

14. *Receive (v)*— पाना
*Ants* : Give/Send/Present

15. *Recent (adj.)*— नवीन/हाल का
*Ants* : Old/Former

16. *Reckless (adj.)*— असावधान
*Ants* : Careful/Cautious/Prudent

17. *Recognize (v)*— पहिचानना/स्मरण करना
*Ants* : Forget/Overlook/Ignore

18. *Recommend (v)*— सौंपना/संस्तुति करना
*Ants* : Reject/Veto/Disapprove

19. *Recover (n)*— फिर से प्राप्त करना/चंगा होना
*Ants* : Lose/Deteriorate

20. *Rectify (v)*— शुद्ध करना/समाधान करना
*Ants* : Damage/Break

21. *Recurrent (adj.)*— बार-बार होने वाला
*Ants* : Isolated/Single/Unique

22. *Reduce (v)*— पूर्व स्थिति में पहुँचाना/कम करना
*Ants* : Increase/Enlarge

23. *Refined (adj.)*— संस्कार किया हुआ/अतिसूक्ष्म
*Ants* : Crude/Coarse/Unrefined

24. *Refuse (v)*— अस्वीकार करना
*Ants* : Accept/Consent/Grant

25. *Regular (adj.)*— नियमित
*Ants* : Irregular/Unusual/Erratic/Uneven

26. *Rejoice (v)*— प्रसन्न होना
*Ants* : Mourn/lament

27. *Relapse (n)*— बुरी दशा में पुनः पतन/पलटा
*Ants* : Improvement/Recovery

28. *Relax (v)*— शिथिल होना/ढीला पड़ना
*Ants* : Tighten/Increase/Intensify/Exercise

29. *Release (v)*— मुक्त करना
*Ants* : Imprison/Engage/Suppress

30. *Religious (adj.)*— धार्मिक
*Ants* : Irreligions/Impious/Ungodly

31. *Reluctant (adj.)*— अनिच्छुक/असंतुष्ट
*Ants* : Willing/eager/Ready

32. *Remain (v)*— ठहरना/बच जाना/रहना
*Ants* : Go/depart/Leave

33. *Remember (v)*— स्मरण रखना/याद करना
*Ants* : Forget/Over Look

34. *Remote (adj.)*— दूरस्थ/अल्पमात्र
*Ants* : Near/Accessible/Likely

35. *Remove (v)*— हटाना/दूर करना
*Ants* : Place/Install/Put on

36. *Renounce (v)*— त्यागना/अस्वीकार करना
*Ants* : Calm/Maintain/Embrace

37. *Renowned (adj.)*— प्रसिद्ध/नामी
*Ants* : Unknown/Obscure/Unsung

38. *Repair (v)*— मरम्मत करना
*Ants* : Break/Tear/Harm

39. *Repel (v)*— विरोध करना/पीछे को हटाना/टालना
*Ants* : Welcome/Attract/Delight

40. *Reply (v)*— जवाब देना
*Ants* : Ask

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## S

1. *Sacred (adj.)*— पवित्र/अलौकिक/ईश्वर/पूजा संबंधी
   *Ants* : Profane/Secular/Temporal
2. *Sad (adj.)*— शोकाकुल/उदासीन/दुखी
   *Ants* : Happy/Cheerful/Fortunate
3. *Safe (adj.)*— सुरक्षित/भयरहित
   *Ants* : Insecure/Dangerous/Unreliable/Harmful
4. *Salient (adj.)*— प्रधान/मुख्य
   *Ants* : Unimportant/Inconspicuous
5. *Sallow (adj.)*— भूरे रंग का
   *Ants* : Rosy/Glowing
6. *Same (adj.)*— समान/वही
   *Ants* : Different/Dissimilar
7. *Sanction (v)*— आज्ञा देना/अनुमोदन करना/दृढ़ करना
   *Ants* : Prohibit/Ban/Reject
8. *Sanguine (adj.)*—आशायुक्त/चमकीला
   *Ants* : Pessimistic/Gloomy
9. *Satisfaction (n)*— संतोष
   *Ants* : Dissatisfaction/Discontent/Loss
10. *Satisfactory (adj.)*— संतोषप्रद
    *Ants* : Unsatisfatory/Inadequate/Unacceptable/Poor
11. *Satisfied (adj.)*— संतुष्ट/प्रसन्न
    *Ants* : Dissatisfied/Unhappy
12. *Save (v)*— रक्षा करना/बचाना/किफायत करना
    *Ants* : Endanger/Cause/Waste/Spend
13. *Scant (adj.)*— न्यून/कम/संकुचित
    *Ants* : Abundant/Ample/Sufficient
14. *Scarce (adj.)*— अल्प/न्यून/विरल/ दुर्लभ
    *Ants* : Plentiful/Abundant/Frequent
15. *Scatter (v)*— फैलाना/छितराना/बिखेरना
    *Ants* : Collect/Gather/Assemble
16. *Secondary (adj.)*— अप्रधान/दूसरे क्रम का
    *Ants* : Primary/Prime/Main
17. *Secret (adj.)*— गुप्त/छिपा हुआ/अप्रकाशित
    *Ants* : Public/Open/Obvious
18. *Secular (adj.)*— अनन्त/लौकिक
    *Ants* : Holy/Religious/Sacred
19. *Seeming (adj.)*— दिखावटी/कृत्रिम
    *Ants* : Actual/Real/Genuine
20. *Seldom (adv.)*— कदाचित/विरले ही
    *Ants* : Often/Frequently
21. *Selfish (adj.)*— स्वार्थी/खुदगर्ज
    *Ants* : Unselfish/Altrustic/Selfless
22. *Sell (v)*— बेचना
    *Ants* : Buy/Purchase
23. *Senior (adj.)*— वयोवृद्ध/बड़े पद का/उम्र में बड़ा
    *Ants* : Junior/Subordinate/Inferior
24. *Senseless (adj.)*— ज्ञानहीन/निर्बुद्धि
    *Ants* : Sensible/Wise/Conscious
25. *Sensible (adj.)*— सज्जन/लौकिक
    *Ants* : Foolish/Silly/Unaware
26. Separate (adj.)— पृथक/अलग
    *Ants* : United/Same
27. *Separate (v)*— पृथक होना/अलग होना
    *Ants* : Join/Unite/Marry/Mix
28. *Serious (adj.)*— गंभीर
    *Ants* : Cheerful/Trivial/Minor
29. *Shade (n)*— छाया/अंधकार
    *Ants* : Sunlight/Light
30. *Shadowy (adj.)*— अंधकारमय/छायादार
    *Ants* : Bright/Sunny/Distinct
31. *Shallow (adj.)*— छिछला/तुच्छ/ओछा
    *Ants* : Serious/Profound
32. *Shame (n)*— अपमान/लज्जा
    *Ants* : Pride/Honour/Credit
33. *Shocking (adj.)*— उद्वेगकारी
    *Ants* : Admirable/Wonderful/Delightful
34. *Shrink (v)*— सिकुड़ना/सकुचाना
    *Ants* : Stretch/Expand/Confront
35. *Silence (n)*— चुप्पी/शांति/सन्नाटा
    *Ants* : Noise/Speech/Communication
36. *Simple (adj.)*— सरल/सीधा सादा/अभिन्न
    *Ants* : Difficult/Complicated/Fancy/Compound
37. *Sincere (adj.)*— ईमानदार/सच्चा/यथार्थ/वास्तविक
    *Ants* : Insincere/False/Dishonest
38. *Singular (adj.)*— अकेला/अनोखा
    *Ants* : Ordinary/Common
39. *Slavery (n)*— दासत्व/गुलामी
    *Ants* : Freedom/Liberty/Emancipation
40. *Slim (adj.)*— दुबला-पतला/दुर्बल
    *Ants* : Fat/Thick/Strong
41. *Solitary (adj.)*— निर्जन/एकान्त/असहाय
    *Ants* : Sociable/Busy
42. *Sorrow (n)*— शोक/दुःख/व्यथा
    *Ants* : Joy/Delight/Pleasure
43. *Sour (adj.)*— खट्टा/चिड़चिड़ा
    *Ants* : Sweet/Fresh/Amiable
44. *Spiritual (adj.)*— धार्मिक/निराकार/आध्यात्मिक
    *Ants* : Material/Corporeal/Secular
45. *Straight (adj.)*— सीधा/सरल
    *Ants* : Bent/Indirect/Evasive
46. *Stubborn (adj.)*— हठी/दुर्दान्त/अड़ियल
    *Ants* : Compliant/Docile/Malleable
47. *Subsidary (adj.)*— सहायता देनेवाला/अतिरिक्त
    *Ants* : Central/Principal/Major
48. *Successful (adj.)*— सफल/विजयी
    *Ants* : Unsuccessful/Vain/Ineffective/Poor
49. *Support (v)*— किसी के पक्ष में बोलना
    *Ants* : Neglect/Abandon/Vain/Oppose/Contradict
50. *Suspend (v)*— लटकाना/विघ्न डालना
    *Ants* : Continue/Resume
51. *Sympathetic (adj.)*— सहानुभूति/दयायुक्त
    *Ants* : Indifferent/Unfriendly
52. *Sympathize (v)*— समवेदना/सहानुभूति प्रकट करना
    *Ants* : Disregard/Disapprove

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


53. *Sympathy (n)*— समवेदना/कृपा/सहानुभूति
*Ants* : Indifference/Hostility/Disapproval

53. *Synthetic (adj.)*— मिलावट/कृत्रिम रचना सबंधी
*Ants* : Real/Genuine/Natural

## T

1. *Take (v)*— लेना
*Ants* : Give/Refuse
2. *Tall (adj.)*— लंबा
*Ants* : Short/Small/Low
3. *Tame (adj.)*— पालतू
*Ants* : Wild/Fierce
4. *Tasteful (adj.)*— स्वादिष्ट/रुचिकर
*Ants* : Tasteless/Garish/Improper
5. *Tedious (adj.)*— श्रम करने वाला/थकानेवाला
*Ants* : Exciting/Interesting
6. *Telescope (v)*— छोटा करके दिखाना
*Ants* : Elongate extend/Amplify
7. *Tense (adj.)*— खींचा हुआ/कसा हुआ
*Ants* : Slack/Calm/Cool/Relaxed
8. *Terminate (v)*— समाप्त करना/ अन्त करना
*Ants* : Begin/Start/Commence/Initiate
9. *Terrible (adj.)*— भयंकर/डरावना
*Ants* : Brilliant/Wonderful/Pleasant
10. *Terrific (adj.)*— भयंकर
*Ants* : Awful/dreadful/Useless
11. *Thankful (adj.)*— कृतज्ञ/उपकारी
*Ants* : Ungrateful
12. *Tidy (adj.)*— स्वच्छ/व्यवस्थित
*Ants* : Untidy/Messy/Scruffy
13. *Tie (v)*— बाँधना
*Ants* : Untie/Loosen
14. *Tough (adj.)*— तोड़ने में कड़ा/पुष्ट/कठिन
*Ants* : Soft/Tender/Weak/Easy
15. *Tragedy (n)*— दुःखान्त नाटक
*Ants* : Fortune/Joy/Comedy
16. *Transient (adj.)*— अस्थिर/नश्वर/अनित्य
*Ants* : Permanent/Constant/Perpetual
17. *Transparent (adj.)*— पारदर्शक/स्वच्छ
*Ants* : Opaque/Cloudy
18. *Tribute (n)*— उपहार/शुल्क/कर
*Ants* : Blame/Criticism/Reproach
19. *Triumph (n)*— विजय/प्रसन्नता/हर्ष
*Ants* : Defeat/Failure/Disaster
20. *Trouble (n)*— कष्ट/परेशानी
*Ants* : Luck/Pleasure/Peace
21. *Troublesome (adj.)*— कष्टकारक/दुखःदायी
*Ants* : Easy/Pleasant
22. *Turbulent (adj.)*— पीड़ाकर/बखेड़िया
*Ants* : Calm/Peaceful/Quiet

## U

1. *Ugly (adj.)*— कुरूप/घृणित/निन्दनीय
*Ants* : Beautiful/Attractive/Pleasant/Friendly
2. *Ulterior (adj.)*— दूर का/दूरस्थ
*Ants* : Overt/Obvious
3. *Ultimate (adj.)*— अंतिम/पिछला/अन्त का
*Ants* : First/Secondary/Minimum
4. *Underhand (adj.)*— गुप्त
*Ants* : Honest/Honourable/Fair/Above-board
5. *Understand (v)*— समझना/जानना
*Ants* : Misunderstand/Ignore
6. *Understanding (n)*— समझ/ज्ञान
*Ants* : Ignorance/Misunder standing
7. *Union (n)*— संघ/मेल-मिलाप
*Ants* : Separation/Parting/Divorce/Disagreement
8. *Unite (v)*— एकत्र करना/ मिलना जोड़ना
*Ants* : Separate/Split/Divorce
9. *Unity (n)*— मेल/एकता
*Ants* : Division/Discord/Disunity
10. *Universal (adj.)*— सर्वव्यापी
*Ants* : Particular/Restricted/Local
11. *Upgrade (v)*— पद से नीचे करना
*Ants* : Downgrade/Demote
12. *Uphold (v)*— समर्थन करना/बढ़ना/सहारा देना
*Ants* : Oppose/Discard
13. *Up-per (adj.)*— ऊपर का/ऊपरी
*Ants* : Lower/Inferior
14. *Upto-date (adj.)*— प्रचलित
*Ants* : Out of date/Outdate/Old-fashioned
15. *Upward (adj.)*— ऊपर की ओर
*Ants* : Downward
16. *Urgent (adj.)*— आवश्यक
*Ants* : Unimportant/Trivial/Casual

## V

1. *Vacant (adj.)*— खाली
*Ants* : Full/Occupied/Expressive
2. *Vacate (v)*— खाली करना/परित्याग करना
*Ants* : Occupy/Inhabit
3. *Vain (adj.)*— निरर्थक/व्यर्थ
*Ants* : Modest/Significant/Successful
4. *Valid (adj.)*— न्याययुक्त/सप्रमाण
*Ants* : Invalid/Null/Void/Illegal
5. *Valuable (adj.)*— बहुमूल्य
*Ants* : Worthless/Cheap/Useless
6. *Vanish (v)*— लुप्त हो जाना
*Ants* : Appear/Materialize
7. *Vanity (n)*— झूठा अभिमान
*Ants* : Modesty/Humility/Worth
8. *Variable (adj.)*— अस्थिर/बदलने योग्य अनित्य
*Ants* : Constant/Uniform/Steady
9. *Victorious (adj.)*— विजयी
*Ants* : Unsuccessful/Losing
10. *Vigorous (adj.)*— पुष्ट/प्रबल
*Ants* : Frail/feebe/Weak

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



11. *Virtue (n)*— गुण/धर्म प्रभाव
*Ants* : Vice/Sin/Failing/Disadvantage
12. *Visible (adj.)*— दृष्टिगोचर
*Ants* : Invisible/Hidden
13. *Virtuous (adj.)*— धर्मपरायण/सच्चरित्र/सदाचारी
*Ants* : Evil/Sinful/Promiscuous
14. *Voluntary (adj.)*— ऐच्छिक
*Ants* : Compulsory/Obligatory
15. *Vulgar (adj.)*— असभ्य/लौकिक
*Ants* : Decorous/Mannerly

## W

1. *Wake (v)*— जगाना
*Ants* : Sleep/Snooze/Doze
2. *Want (n)*— अभाव/दरिद्रता न्यूनता
*Ants* : Presence/Abundance/Wealth
3. *Wanting (adj.)*— कम/थोड़ा/गैरहाजिर
*Ants* : Sufficient/Adequate/Acceptable
4. *War (n)*— युद्ध/संग्राम/लड़ाई
*Ants* : Peace/Harmony/Truce
5. *Warm (adj.)*— गरम/सहानुभूतिपूर्ण
*Ants* : Cold/Cool/Unfriendly
6. *Warmth (n)*— उष्णता/उत्साह/सच्चाई
*Ants* : Cool/Chill/Apathy
7. *Wasteful (adj.)*— हानिकारक/नष्टकारी
*Ants* : Thrifty/Frugal/Economical
8. *Watch (v)*— ध्यान देना/चौकसी करना/रक्षा करना
*Ants* : Ignore/Disregard/Neglect
9. *Watchful (adj.)*— सावधान/चौकन्ना/जाग्रत
*Ants* : Inattentive/Careless
10. *Watery (adj.)*— भीगा हुआ/द्रव जैसा
*Ants* : Solid/Dry/Thick
11. *Wax (v)*— बढ़ाना/वृद्धि/प्राप्त करना
*Ants* : Wane/Decrease/Fade
12. *Wealth (n)*— धन/ऐश्वर्य
*Ants* : Poverty/Dearth
13. *Wed (v)*— विवाह करना
*Ants* : Divorce/Separate
14. *Weep (v)*— रोना/विलाप करना
*Ants* : Laugh/Rejoice
15. *Whisper (v)*— कानाफुसी करना
*Ants* : Shout/Yell
16. *Whole (adj.)*— सम्पूर्ण/पूरा
*Ants* : Part/Partial/Incomplete/Broken
17. *Wicked (adj.)*— दुष्ट/पापी/अधर्मी
*Ants* : Virtuous/Good/Righteous
18. *Wide (adj.)*— चौड़ा/फैला हुआ/विस्तार
*Ants* : Narrow/Limited/Restricted/Tight
19. *Widespread (adj.)*— दूर-दूर तक फैला हुआ
*Ants* : Local/Limited/Rare
20. *Wilful (adj.)*— जिद्दी
*Ants* : Accidental/Unintentional/Docile
21. *Win (v)*— जीतना
*Ants* : Lose/Fail/Repel
22. Wise (adj.)— ज्ञानी
*Ants* : Stupid/Silly/Foolish
23. *Wit (n)*— समझ
*Ants* : Stupidity/Gravity
24. *Withdraw (v)*— निकाल लेना
*Ants* : Keep/Profer/Stay/Proceed
25. *Withstand (v)*— प्रतिरोध करना
*Ants* : Surrender/Yeld
26. *Work (n)*— कार्य/परिश्रम
*Ants* : Leisure/Play/Holiday/Retirement
27. *Worried (adj.)*— चिन्तित/व्याकुल
*Ants* : Carefree/Calm/Unconcerned
28. *Worship (v)*— पूजा करना
*Ants* : Blaspheme/Loathe/Despise
29. *Wreck (v)*— नष्ट करना
*Ants* : Build/Create/Save/Repair
30. *Wretched (adj.)*— बदनसीब, आभागा
*Ants* : Happy/Well/Fortunate

## Y

1. *Yield (v)*— प्रदान करना
*Ants* : Resist/Withstand/Defy
2. *Young (adj.)*— युवा
*Ants* : Old/Elderly/Mature
3. *Youth (n)*— यौवन
*Ants* : Age/Old age
4. *Youthful (adj.)*— युवा
*Ants* : Old/Elderly

## Z

1. *Zany (adj.)*— सनकी
*Ants* : Ordinary/Run-of-the mill/Conventional
2. *Zeal (n)*— उत्साह, जोश
*Ants* : Apathy/Indifference
3. *Zealous (adj.)*— उत्साही
*Ants* : Apathetic/Indifferent
4. *Zenith (n)*— उच्चतम स्थान
*Ants* : Nadir/Bottom
5. *Zest (n)*— उत्साह
*Ants* : Apathy/Indifference/Distaste

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# One Word Substitution 31

- Being unable to pay one's debt. —*Insolvent* (दिवालिया)
- The study of the functions of the body. —*Physiology* (शरीर शास्त्र)
- The science of fortelling events by stars. —*Astrology* (ज्योतिष विज्ञान)
- Government by officials in a state. —*Bureaucracy* (नौकरशाही)
- An office without any work but high pay. — *Sinecure* (सेवाशून्य वैतनिक)
- A medicine to counteract the effect of a poison. —*Antidote* (विषहर)
- An admirer of art. —*Dillettante* (कलाप्रेमी)
- A man having the qualities of women. —*Effeminate* (स्त्रीस्वभावक)
- That which cannot be moved. —*Immobile* (निश्चल)
- The study of insects. —*Entomology* (कीटशास्त्र)
- Word for word. —*Verbatim* (शाब्दिक)
- Wish to do good to others. —*Benevolence* (परोपकार)
- Whose meaning is difficult to understand. —*Abstruse* (दुर्बोध, गूढ़)
- Way out for water or steam. —*Outlet* (निर्गम द्वार)
- Want of sleep. —*Insomnia* (अनिद्रा)
- Usual behaviour of a social group. —*Custom* (प्रथा, रिवाज)
- Use of mild words in place of words required by truth. —*Euphemism* (कोमल वचन)
- Troops trained for being dropped by parachute. —*Paratroops* (छतरी सेना)
- Touch or stroke lovingly. —*Fondle* (दुलारना) —*Caress* (लाड़ प्यार करना)
- A traditional story related to deities. —*Myth* (पौराणिक कथा)
- That which is pig like. —*Porcine* (सूअर जैसा)
- Thing to be corrected in a printed book. —*Corrigenda* (शुद्धिकर पत्र)
- Things taken by robbers. —*Booty* (लूट का माल)
- That which is lion like. —*Leonine* (सिंह जैसा)
- That which is fox like. —*Vulpine* (लोमड़ी जैसा धूर्त)
- That which is dog like. —*Canine* (श्वान (जैसा)
- That which exists separately from other people. —*Independent* (स्वतंत्र)
- That which cannot be perceived by touch. —*Intangible* (अस्पृश्य)
- That which cannot be calculated. —*Incalculable* (अगणनीय)
- That which can be rooted out. —*Eradicable* (उन्मूलनीय)
- Study of the development of plants and animals from earlier forms. — *Geneology* (वंशानुक्रम)
- Study of oceans and their phenomena. — *Oceanography* (समुद्र विज्ञान)
- Study of law. —*Nomology* (विधि-विज्ञान)
- Study of fossils. —*Palaeontology* (जीवाश्म विज्ञान)
- Study of ancient things like tombs, buried towns. — *Archaeology* (पुरातत्व विज्ञान)
- Strong desire for food, wealth. —*Greed* (लालच, लोभ)
- Strong dislike between two persons. —*Antipathy* (घृणा)
- Stream flowing into another big river. —*Tributary* (सहायक नदी)
- Stealing from the writings of others. —*Plagiarism* (साहित्यिक चोरी)
- Statement that is obviously true. —*Platitude* (सामान्योक्ति)
- That which can be easily believed. —*Credible* (विश्वसनीय)
- That which cannot be put out or extinguished. — *Inextinguishable* (जिसे बुझाया नहीं जा सकता)
- That which cannot be satisfied. —*Insatiable* (अतृप्त)
- That which cannot be erased or removed. —*Indelible* (अमिट)
- That which can easily be curved without breaking. —*Flexible* (लचीला)
- That which cannot be corrupted. —*Incorruptible* (ईमानदार)
- To escape from hard realities. —*Escapism* (पलायनवाद)
- The system which is observed to do progress or reform. —*Reformism* (सुधारवाद)
- Temple dedicated to all the gods. —*Pantheon* (सर्वेश्वर मंदिर)
- Talk that brings bad reputation to somebody. —*Scandal* (बदनामी)
- The study of population. —*Demography* (जनसांख्यिकी)
- The study of physical phenomenon of lakes. —*Limnology* (सरोवर विज्ञान)
- Spreading by infection. —*Infectious* (संक्रामक)
- Specialist in mental or emotional disturbance. —*Psychiatrist* (मनोरोग विशेषज्ञ)
- Speak in a very low tone. —*Whisper* (फुसफुसाना)
- Something that is hidden. —*Mystery* (रहस्य)
- Somebody that foretells the coming of something. —*Harbinger* (पथ प्रदर्शक)
- Soldiers on big guns mounted on wheels. —*Artillery* (तोप चलाने वाला सैनिक, तोपखाना)
- So deep that the bottom cannot be reached. —*Unfathomable* (अथाह/अगाध)
- A small shop that sells fashionable clothes, cosmetics etc. —*Boutique* (दूकान)
- Shamelessly rude. —*Impudent* (निर्लज्ज, ढीठ)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- Serious crime like murder, arson. —*Felony (महापराध)*
- Send rays of light or heat. —*Radiate (विकिरण करना)*
- Send back a criminal into custody for further investigation. —*Remand (हवालात में वापस भेजना)*
- Secret place difficult to access. —*Recess (गुप्त स्थान)*
- Secret agreement for a fraudulent purpose. —*Collusion (कपटसंधि, जालसाजी)*
- Search in the dark. — *Grope/ Fumble (टटोलना)*
- Search for something. —*Quest (खोज, अन्वेषण)*
- Secret religious meeting. —*Conventicle (गुप्त धार्मिक सभा)*
- Sea with a group of many islands. —*Archipelago (द्वीप समूह)*
- A signature on the back of a paper or cheque. —*Endorsement (हस्ताक्षर)*
- Showing contemptuous indifference. —*Supercilious (घमंडी)*
- A short summary of a book or speech. —*Epitome (सारांश)*
- Signal under martial law for people to remain indoors. —*Curfew (कर्फ्यू)*
- Showing deep sorrow for wrong doing. — *Contrite (प्रायश्चित करने वाला)*
- A short saying or poem which express an idea in a very clever and amusing way. —*Epigram (चुटकुला, व्यंग्य कविता)*
- A short journey for pleasure. —*Excursion (सैर-सपाटा)*
- A short expression of general truth. —*Proverb, Dictum, Maxim, Adage (कहावत)*
- A short amusing story about some real person or event. —*Anecdote (किस्सा)*
- Scornful and contemptuous language. —*Opprobrium (अपमानजनक भाषा)*
- Science of weight. —*Metrology (माप विज्ञान)*
- Science of time. —*Horology (समय विज्ञान)*
- Science of writing and compiling a dictionary. —*Lexicography (शब्दकोष विज्ञान)*
- Science of the races of mankind and their relation to one another. — *Ethnology (मानव जाति विज्ञान)*
- Science of the physical structure of the body. — *Anatomy (शरीर रचना विज्ञान)*
- Science of the habits of living things in relation to their environment. —*Ecology (परिस्थिति विज्ञान)*
- Science of the constitution of the whole universe. — *Cosmography (विश्व रचना विज्ञान)*
- Science of the causes of diseases. — *Etiology/Aetiology (कारण विज्ञान)*
- Science of mankind as an animal. —*Anthropology (मानवशास्त्र)*
- Science of mechanical and industrial arts. —*Technology (शिल्प विज्ञान)*
- Science of healthy living. — *Hygiene (स्वास्थ्य विज्ञान)*
- Science of inscriptions. —*Epigraphy (पुरालेख शास्त्र)*
- Science of human beauty. — *Kalology (सौन्दर्य विज्ञान)*
- Science of fixing dates. —*Chronology (कालक्रम विज्ञान)*
- Science of crimes and criminals. —*Criminology (अपराध विज्ञान)*
- Study of coins. —*Numismatics (मुद्रा शास्त्र)*
- Science of climate. —*Climatology (जलवायु विज्ञान)*
- Science of blood. —*Haematology (रुधिर विज्ञान)*
- Science of birds. —*Ornithology (पक्षी विज्ञान)*
- Science dealing with the proper use of terms. —*Terminology (शब्दावली विज्ञान)*
- Science dealing with heredity. —*Genetics (आनुवंशिक विज्ञान)*
- Science and technology of metals. —*Metallurgy (धातुकर्म विज्ञान)*
- Science and philosophy of human law. —*Jurisprudence (विधि शास्त्र)*
- Science and art of preparing and making good food. —*Gastronomy (उत्तम आहार विज्ञान)*
- Science and art of flying in aircraft. —*Aviation (विमानन)*
- School for very young children. —*Kindergarten*
- Say in advance what is likely to happen. —*Forecast/predict/Foretell (भविष्यवाणी करना)*
- Say aloud from memory. —*Recite (सस्वर पाठ करना)*
- Saving of property from loss by fire. —*Salvage (उबार, आग से सम्पत्ति की रक्षा)*
- Salt water lake separated from the sea by sand banks. —*Lagoon (लैगून)*
- Rules for formal behaviour among people. —*Etiquette (शिष्टाचार/उपचार)*
- Room for washing kitchen utensils. —*Scullery (रसोई के बर्तन माँजने की जगह)*
- Roof supported by columns at the entrance of a building. —*Portico/porch (द्वारमंडप)*
- Ritual washing of the body. —*Ablution (धार्मिक स्नान)*
- Rising in arms against an establishment / government. —*Insurrection/Rebellion (विद्रोह)*
- Rise or fall in the level of the sea. —*Tide (ज्वार-भाटा)*
- Right or advantage available to a person. —*Privilege (सुविधा/विशेषाधिकार)*
- Reward for a work or service. —*Remuneration (पारिश्रमिक, मेहनताना)*
- Return to one's own country. —*Repatriate (देश को लौटना)*
- Return the same sort of ill treatment. — *Retaliate (बदला लेना, प्रतिशोध लेना)*
- Reduction in a tax or debt. —*Rebate (छूट)*
- Religious discourse. —*Sermon (उपदेश)*
- Reserved in speech. —*Reticent (अल्पभाषी)*
- Responsible according to law. — *Liable (उत्तरदायी)*
- Restore to former position. —*Rehabilitate (पुनः स्थापित करना)*
- Resulting in death or ending in disaster. —*Fatal (मृत्यु का कारण)*
- Relation between different aspects of a thing. —*Perspective (परिप्रेक्ष्य)*
- Reasoning power of the mind. — *Intellect (विचार शक्ति)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- Receiving guests warmly. —*Hospitality (आतिथ्य सत्कार)*
- Record of events in the order of their happenings. —*Chronicle (इतिहास)*
- To raise a pattern or design on the surface of something. —*Emboss (उभरी नक्काशी करना)*
- Quick to judge and understand. —*Perspicacious (स्पष्ट बुद्धि वाला, wise)*
- Question or problem difficult to answer or understand. —*Puzzle/Riddle/Enigma (पहेली/कठिन प्रश्न)*
- Put under the surface of water. —*Submerge (पानी में डुबोना)*
- Put off for a future time. —*Postpone/procrastinate (स्थगित करना)*
- Put into the form of a code. —*Codify (संकेतबद्ध करना)*
- Pull out of usual shape. —*Distort (विकृत करना, तोड़ना)*
- Public merry making and feasting. —*Carnival (आनंदोत्सव, मनोरंजक मेला)*
- Public activity which take place in a very elaborate, colourful and expensive way. —*Extravaganza (अतिशयी नाटक)*
- Place of good climate for invalids. —*Asylum (आश्रय, शरण)*
- Property left to someone by a will. —*Legacy (पैतृक संपत्ति)*
- Property inherited from one's father. —*Patrimony (वर्शौती)*
- Producing a lot of books or other things. —*Prolific (बहुफलदायक)*
- Process of sewing designs on cloth or other materials. —*Embroidery (कशीदाकारी)*
- Principle that the war should and could be abolished. —*Pacifism (शांतिवाद)*
- Habit of independent thought. —*Individualism (व्यक्तिवाद)*
- Prevention of loss, waste, damage. —*Conservation (संरक्षण)*
- Prevent from being carried out. —*Circumvent (लागू न होने देना)*
- Pretence of having a virtuous character. —*Hypocricy (पाखण्ड, आडंबर)*
- Present from or before birth. —*Congenital (जन्मजात, सहज)*
- Marriage of God. —*Theogamy (ईश विवाह)*
- Lover of dogs. —*Canophilist (कुत्तों का शौकीन)*
- Loss of memory. —*Amnesia (स्मृति लोप)*
- A group of talkative girls/women. —*Gaggle (स्त्रियों का समूह)*
- Guided by one's sense of duty. —*Conscientious (कर्तव्यनिष्ठ)*
- Gust of wind. —*Draught (हवा का झोंका)*
- Handwriting that can be easily read. —*Legible (पठनीय)*
- Happening at the sametime. —*Simultaneous (समकालिक)*
- Government run by a dictator. —*Dictatorship (तानाशाही)*
- Government by person of highest social order. —*Aristocracy (कुलीनतंत्र)*
- Government by intelligentsia. —*Meritocracy (बुद्धिजीवियों की सरकार)*
- Government by the rich and the powerful class. —*Plutocracy (धनिकतंत्र)*
- Government by officials. —*Bureaucracy (नौकरशाही)*
- Government by elected representatives. —*Democracy (प्रजातंत्र)*
- Government by elected representatives without a monarch. —*Republic (गणतंत्र)*
- Government by divine laws. —*Theocracy (धर्मतंत्र)*
- Government by a king/queen. —*Monarchy (राजतंत्र)*
- Government by a few people. —*Oligarchy (अल्पतंत्र)*
- Governing body of a university. —*Senate (अधिसभा)*
- Hater of books. —*Misobiblic (पुस्तक द्वेषी)*
- Hater of learning. —*Misologist (शिक्षा द्वेषी)*
- Hater of marriage. —*Misogamist (विवाह द्वेषी)*
- Having more than one meaning. —*Ambiguous/Equivocal (अनेकार्थी)*
- Imaginary ailments (disease). —*Hypochondria (काल्पनिक बीमारी)*
- Offering made to God. —*Oblation (बलि, आहुति, चढ़ावा)*
- An official agreement to a proposal. —*Assent (सहमति)*
- Gathering of all things. —*Omnibus (सर्वसंग्रह)*
- An official announcement issued to the press. —*Communique (सरकारी घोषणा)*
- An official counting of the population. —*Census (जनगणना)*
- One who analyses handwriting. —*Graphologist (हस्त लेखा विशेषज्ञ)*
- One who attacks. —*Assaulter /Assailant (आक्रमणकारी/ हमलावर )*
- One who believes that nothing can be said about God. —*Agnostic (अज्ञेयवादी)*
- One who can neither read nor write. —*Illiterate (अनपढ़/अशिक्षित)*
- One who cannot be corrected. —*Incorrigible (असुधारातीत)*
- A garland of flowers. —*Wreath (पुष्पहार/माला)*
- Give tit for tat. —*Retaliate (प्रतिशोध लेना)*
- Departure of many people. —*Exodus (बहिर्गमन)*
- Gift of money to a retiring people. —*Gratuity (उपदान)*
- Give the right to vote. —*Enfranchise (मताधिकार देना)*
- Greedy for money. —*Repacious (लोभी)*
- General instructions. —*Directive (निर्देश)*
- Future generation. —*Posterity (भावी पीढ़ी)*
- Free from punishment. —*Impunity (सजा से मुक्ति, उद्धार)*
- Form opinion in advance. —*Pre-conceive (पूर्व धारणा बनाना)*
- For warning of an impending danger. —*Premonition (पूर्व सूचना)*
- Fixed sum of money paid to somebody as income in his life time. —*Annuity (वार्षिकाना)*
- Fit for bad temper or anger. —*Tantrum (आवेश, झल्लाहट)*
- Fear of foreigners. —*Xenophobia (विदेशियों से भय)*
- Fear of one self. —*Autophoby (अपने आप से भय)*
- Fear of home surroundings. —*Ecophobia (घर के चारों ओर की वस्तुओं से भय)*
- Fear of dead body. —*Necrophobia (शव से भय)*
- Fear of animals. —*Zoophobia (जानवरों से भय)*



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- Fear of height. —*Aerophobia (ऊँचाई से भय)*
- Faithful supporter. —*Henchman (सेवक, अनुचर)*
- Fail to pay a debt in time. —*Default (वादा खिलाफी करना)*
- Expert in horse riding. —*Cavalier (घुड़सवार)*
- Existing since old times. —*Antique (पुरातन/प्राचीन)*
- Existing for ever. —*Eternal (शाश्वत/नित्य)*
- Amount of money paid to free a prisoner. —*Ransom (फिरौती)*
- Refreshment or amusement after hard work. —*Recreation (मनोरंजन)*
- Animals with four feet. —*Quadruped (चौपाया)*
- Any soft drink except water. —*Beverage (पेय/मादक पेय)*
- Art of growing vegetables, fruits, flowers. —*Horticulture (बागवानी)*
- Art of making fireworks. —*Pyrotechnics (आतिशबाजी)*
- Art of map making. —*Cartography (मानचित्र बनाने की कला)*
- Style of speaking well. —*Elocution (वाकपटुता)*
- Artificial centre for honey bees. —*Hive (मधुमक्खी का छत्ता)*
- Assembly of worshippers. —*Congregation (धर्ममंडली)*
- Author's explanatory remarks at the beginning of a book. —*Preface (प्रस्तावना)*
- Distinguishing marks of an office. —*Insignia [(अधिकार चिह्न/बैज (Badge))]*
- A bed of a new born baby. —*Cradle/Crib (खटोला, बच्चे का पालना)*
- Belief not based on reason or knowledge. —*Superstition (अंधविश्वास)*
- Bird that comes and goes with seasons. —*Migratory (प्रवासी)*
- Blessing given by a priest. —*Benediction (आशीर्वाद, मंगल कामना)*
- Board of directors in a company or organization. —*Directorate (निदेशक मंडल)*
- A body of delegates. —*Delegacy (प्रतिनिधि मंडल)*
- A book of a sacred / religious nature. —*Scripture (धर्मग्रन्थ)*
- Books, pictures etc intended to arouse sexual desire. —*Erotica (अश्लील ग्रंथ/कामोत्तेजक साहित्य)*
- Bring back to life. —*Revive (होश में लाना)*
- Bring under control by force. —*Capture (कब्जा/अधीन करना)*
- Bring under control in war. —*Subjugate (अधीन/दमन करना)*
- A building for the display of works of art. —*Gallery (कला भवन)*
- That can be expressed in words. —*Expressible (कथनीय)*
- Call back to the mind. —*Recall (स्मरण करना)*
- Capable of being reached. —*Accessible (सुगम/सुलभ)*
- Centre of attraction. —*Cynosure (आकर्षण बिंदु)*
- A building equipped with a powerful telescope for astronomical observations. —*Observatory (वेधशाला)*
- Brief account of a subject. —*Summary/compendium (सारांश)*
- Break an agreement, law or promise. —*Violate (उल्लंघन करना)*
- A building where military weapons are prepared or stored. —*Arsenal (शस्त्रागार)*
- That can live without outside help. —*Viable (जीने में सक्षम)*
- A caretaker of a public building. —*Custodian (संरक्षक)*
- Attachment to what is natural. —*Naturalism (प्रकृतिवाद)*
- Approximate calculation of something. —*Estimate (आकलन/अनुमान)*
- Any kind of grain used for food. —*Cereal (अनाज)*
- Angry at injustice. —*Indignant (रोष)*
- Anxious to help somebody. —*Solicitous (ध्यान रखने वाला)*
- That can be preceived by the senses. —*Preceptible (अनुभवगम्य)*
- Ceremony of crowning a king. —*Coronation (राज्याभिषेक)*
- A chain of flowers, leaves, ribbons etc. —*Festoon (तोरण/झालर)*
- Change in direction. —*Diversion (दिशा परिवर्तन)*
- Change to something abnormal, unnatural. —*Perversion (विकृति/पथभ्रष्टता)*
- Child of unusual or remarkable talent. —*Prodigy (प्रतिभासंपन्न बालक)*
- Chief actor or character in a story or drama. —*Protagonist (नायक/मुख्य पात्र)*
- Habitual character and disposition. —*Ethos (आचार/लोकाचार)*
- Using of new words. —*Neologism (नये शब्दों का प्रयोग)*
- One who holds that nothing is or can be known of the existence of God. —*Agnostic (वह व्यक्ति जिसका सिद्धांत यह है कि ईश्वर के विषय में न जाना गया है, न जाना जा सकता है।)*
- To destroy completely. —*Annihilate (उन्मूलन करना)*
- That which is open to more than one interpretation. —*Ambiguous (अनिश्चित/संदिग्ध अस्पष्ट)*
- Capable of living both on land and water. —*Amphibious (स्थल तथा जल में रहने योग्य)*
- In a state of mutual hostility. —*Antagonistic (विरोधी/विपक्षी)*
- Neutral party called upon to settle a dispute without reference to any other party. —*Arbiter (पंच/निर्णय करने वाला/मध्यस्थ)*
- A government by one man. —*Autocracy (वह राज्य जिसमें एक व्यक्ति (राजा) शासन करता हो)*
- A narrative describing one subject under the guise of another or a sustained metaphor. —*Allegory (दृष्टान्त/कथा)*
- Kind of substance in the blood tending to neutralise others that are harmful. —*Antibody (रक्त में उपस्थित ऐसा पदार्थ जो हानिकारक तत्वों को नष्ट करता रहता है।)*
- The science of bee keeping cultivation and maintenance of bee-hives. —*Apiculture (मधुमक्खियों का पालन)*
- Recurrence of some disease after generation or similarity in special features with remote ancestors. —*Atavism (विशेष रूपों में पुरखों से समानता)*
- To mitigate or lessen the suffering or pain. —*Alleviate (छुटकारा देना/कम करना / सान्त्वना देना)*
- A positive and emphatic advancement of change or statement against a person. —*Allegation (मिथ्या अभियोग/झूठी प्रतिज्ञा)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- One who has regard for others as the basic principle of his actions. —*Altruistic (परोपकारी)*
- A person guilty of setting fire to the property. —*Arsonist (सम्पत्ति या घर जलाने का अपराध करने वाला)*
- Sensitiveness to the action of a particular food. —*Allergy (किसी प्रकार के भोजन या दवा से प्रभावित हो जाना)*
- To make better, to improve or to lift to a better place. —*Ameliorate (सुधार लेना/करना, दुरुस्त होना)*
- By which human form and personality is attributed to God. —*Anthropomorphism (ईश्वर को मनुष्य के आकार का मानने का सिद्धान्त)*
- A cessation of active use of arms signifying a short period of truce. —*Armistice (युद्ध विराम)*
- A mistake in the chronological order or a thing which is out of harmony with a period —*Anachronism (काल गणना का भ्रम)*
- A mechanic or craftsman who has acquired skill in a particular craft. —*Artisan (शिल्पकार/कारीगर)*
- A government by officials. —*Bureaucracy (नौकरशाही)*
- A man who is a great lover of books. —*Bibliophile (पुस्तक का प्रेमी)*
- The state of having two wives. —Bigamy *(एक पत्नी या पति रहते दूसरा विवाह करने का अपराध)*
- Belonging to a class between the gentry and the labourers. —*Bourgeois (मध्यम वर्गीय)*
- Socially unconventional, a man of free and easy habits. —*Bohemian (व्यक्ति या व्यक्तियों का समूह विशेषकर कलाकार जो अपनी कला को नवीन ढंग से प्रस्तुत करते हैं।)*
- One who readily believes everything and everyone. —*Credulous (सहज विश्वासी)*
- A citizen of the world. —*Cosmopolitan (सारे विश्व का नागरिक)*
- A man who is recovering from an illness. —*Convalescent (पुनः स्वास्थ्य लाभोन्मुख)*
- The state of being without a wife; abstaining from marital relationship. —*Celibacy (ब्रह्मचर्य/अविवाहित जीवन)*
- Centre of attraction or interest. —*Cynosure (आकर्षण केन्द्र/ध्रुवतारा)*
- A person who really understands the value of art, antiques etc. —*Connoisseur (कला का निर्णायक/जो किसी कला में पारंगत हो)*
- Hundred in Anniversary. —*Centenary (सौवीं वर्षगांठ)*
- Any language in speaking only. —*Colloquialism (बोलचाल की शैली/चलती भाषा)*
- To seize by authority. —*Confiscate (जब्त करना)*
- To give someone something to make good for loss or damage. —*Compensate (क्षति पूर्ति करना)*
- Reaching the final or the highest point. —*Consummation (समापन/समाप्ति)*
- A man who has lots of investments in the private sector. —*Capitalist (पूँजीपति/ महाजन)*
- A ruler or boss who uses force in order to make people obey him. —*Dictator (तानाशाह/अधिनायक)*
- One who is engaged in the diplomatic service of a country. —*Diplomat (कूटनीतिज्ञ/राजनयिक)*
- Nature of double dealing. —*Duplicity (कपट/छल/दुरंगी)*
- A person who fails in the performance of his duty or commits an offence. —*Deliquent (अपराधी/दोषी)*
- Fruit or sweet-dish usually eaten after the main meals. —*Dessert (भोजन के उपरान्त खाये जाने वाले फल, मेवा, मिठाई, आईसक्रीम आदि)*
- A dabbler in the arts and literature. —*Dilettante (कलानुरागी/नवशिक्षुआ)*
- The state of being miserable bereft of all material possessions. —*Destitution (अभावग्रस्तता/अभाव)*
- A democratic orator. —*Demagogue (भड़काने वाला नेता या वक्ता)*
- The inability of a person to shun alcoholic drinks. — *Dipsomania (शराब की लत)*
- Something regularly found among a particular people or community. —*Endemic (स्थानीय मनुष्यों में प्रचलित)*
- A person who likes to indulge in refined sensuous pleasure. —*Epicure (इन्द्रियसुख में निरत/विषयासक्त)*
- To remove all traces of. —*Eradicate (नष्ट करना/जड़ सहित उखाड़ना)*
- A professor who has retired from service. —*Emeritus (सेवा से अवकाश प्राप्त परन्तु सम्मानित पद पर बनाये रखे हुए)*
- An unusual bent of mind. —*Eccentricity (व्यवहार की विचित्रता)*
- One who is always seeking to escape from the harsh realities of life. —*Escapist*
- To quicken the completion of work. —*Expedite (जल्दी करना/शीघ्रता करना)*
- To free from the confines of something to liberate from. —*Emancipate (मुक्त या उद्धार करना)*
- A short but pithy and weightly saying, a short witty phrase. — *Epigram (छोटी कविता/चुटकुला)*
- Substitution of a mild for a very blunt expression. — *Euphemism (मंगल भाषण)*
- That which is all inclusive. — *Exhaustive (थकाने वाला)*
- Not refined and fluent but full of jerky movements. — *Erratic (सनकी/अनियमित/जिसका भरोसा नहीं किया जा सके)*
- Thatwhichtriestoside-trackthemainissuebyirrelevance. —*Evasive (टालमटोल करने वाला)*
- A state of mental weariness form of occupation. —*Ennui (खिन्नता/ऊब)*
- To make atonement for one's sins. —*Expiate (पापों से निवृत करना/प्रायश्चित से पवित्र करना)*
- Words or phrases inscribed on a person's tomb. —*Epitaph (समाधि (कब्र) के ऊपर के पत्थर पर खुदा हुआ लेख)*
- A person authorised to execute a legal deed. —*Executor (मृतक के इच्छा पत्र का उत्तरसाधक)*
- One who is subject to failure or to committing mistakes. —*Fallible (भूल करने वाला)*
- The animals of a particular region or epoch. —*Fauna (प्रदेश विशेष के पशु वर्ग)*
- A man who is genuinely interested in the welfare and emancipation of women. —*Feminist (स्त्री उद्धारक या स्त्री का कल्याण करने वाला)*
- A man with narrow and prejudiced religious views. —*Fanatic (कट्टर/हठधर्मी)*



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- One who cannot be easily pleased. —*Fastidious* (जिसे प्रसन्न करना कठिन हो)
- Something artificial having the appearance of some thing got up. —*Factitious* (कृत्रिम/प्रचलित)
- As opposed to realistic, imagined not real. —*Fictitious* (काल्पनिक/मनगढ़ंत)
- Extremely showy and colourful personality; valuable and verbose speech. —*Flamboyant* (दिखावा करने वाला)
- Tendency to grow downwards. —*Geotropism* (अधोमुख बढ़ने की प्रवृत्ति)
- Act of killing one's clan, family or community. —*Genocide* (नरसंहार)
- A connoisseur of wines and table delicacies. —*Gourmet* (स्वादिष्ट भोजन, अच्छी शराब आदि का पारखी)
- The act of killing a human being. —*Homicide* (नर हत्या)
- Traits, mental or physical, received from forefathers by birth. —*Hereditary* (आनुवंशिक/पुश्तैनी)
- One who lives in seclusion with thoughts of God. —*Hermit* (साधु/एकान्तवासी)
- Voluntary fees paid for professional services which carry no salary. —*Honorarium* (पारिश्रमिक/व्यवसाय का शुल्क)
- One who expresses ideas which are not in keeping with conventional religious teaching. —*Heretic* (नास्तिक/पाखंडी)
- One who is not orthodox. —*Heterodox* (नास्तिक/धर्म विरुद्ध)
- One who generously acts for the welfare and amelioration of mankind. —*Humanitarian* (मनुष्य जाति से प्रेम करने वाला)
- A gesture of respect and devotion. —*Homage* (श्रद्धांजलि/सम्मान प्रदर्शन)
- Rhetorical exaggeration in speaking or in a piece of writing. —*Hyperbole* (बढ़ा चढ़ा कर कही गई बात/अलंकार)
- A person who pretends to be what he is not, a pretender. —*Hypocrite* (छली/पाखंडी)
- That which cannot be broken through. —*Impregnable* (सहज में न जीतने योग्य/दुर्गम/दुर्जेय)
- That which can be easily understood. —*Intelligible* (बोधगम्य/स्पष्ट)
- That which is most likely to happen in future. —*Imminent* (शीघ्र होने वाली घटना)
- One who cannot be soothed or calmed or near pacified. —*Implacable* (जिसे संतुष्ट न किया जा सके/कठोर)
- That which cannot be put into practice. —*Impracticable* (असाध्य/दुष्कर)
- One who cannot be corrected or reformed. —*Incorrigible* (जिसको सुधारा नहीं जा सकता/बिगड़ा हुआ)
- To accuse or charge a person with a crime in due form of law. —*Indict* (अपराध या दोष लगाना)
- That which cannot be easily imitated or copied. —*Inimitable* (जिसकी नकल न की जा सके/अद्वितीय)
- That which cannot be defeated. —*Invincible* (न जीते जाने योग्य/अजेय)
- A personal peculiarity of temperament or constitution. —*Idiosyncrasy* (मानसिक प्रवृत्ति की विशेषावस्था)
- A man who is easily irritated and loses temper. —*Irritable* (शीघ्र क्रुद्ध होने वाला)
- A disease in which a man suffers from sleeplessness. —*Insomnia* (नींद न आने का रोग)
- A country or a people or community which is in open revolt or rebellion. —*Insurgent* (बागी/विद्रोही, क्रान्तिकारी या बगावत करने वाला)
- A man who has a most uncompromising attitude especially in politics. —*Intransigent* (जिद्दी/हठी/दुराग्रही)
- Ascribing or attributing to something or someone. —*Imputation* (दोषारोपण)
- A decision which cannot be changed or modified. —*Irrevocable* (अटल/अखंडनीय)
- Produced or manufactured within the country without foreign aid or collaboration. —*Indigenous* (स्वदेशीय)
- A deceptive appearance, statement or belief. —*Illusion* (भ्रम/मोह/धोखा)
- Use of language or gesture which implies threat to someone. —*Intimidation* (धमकी/डाँट-डपट)
- The act of provoking and goading a man. —*Instigation* (प्रोत्साहन/कुकर्म कराने के लिए उसकाना)
- Something which provides interest and attraction. —*Incentive* (उत्पादन वृद्धि हेतु कर्मचारियों को अतिरिक्त भत्ता)
- A subtle allusive and generally deprecatory remark. —*Innuendo* (व्यंग/वक्रोक्ति)
- Something that is too delightful or beautiful for words. —*Ineffable* (अवर्णनीय/अकथनीय)
- A man who has no money. —*Impecunious* (निर्धन/धनहीन)
- Ill timed circumstances. —*Irony* (व्यंग्य/ताना)
- A person who is well versed in law. —*Jurist* (विधिवेत्ता/न्यायशास्त्र का विशेषज्ञ)
- An excessively morbid desire to steal. —*Kleptomania* (बिना जरूरत के चोरी करने की आदत)
- Technical knowledge of a particular work. —*Know-how* (विशेष कार्य का तकनीकी ज्ञान)
- Extremely extravagant in manners and morals. —*Licentious* (अनैतिक/दुराचारी)
- A hater of mankind. —*Misanthrope* (मनुष्य द्रोही/मनुष्य से घृणा करने वाला)
- A hater of women. —*Misogynist* (स्त्री जाति से द्वेष करने वाला)
- A person who believes in being married to one person at a time. Or, A man who has only one wife. —*Monogamist* (एक पत्नी वाला मनुष्य)
- Belonging to this world, earthly. —*Mundane* (लौकिक/सांसारिक)
- Application of name or descriptive term to an object to which it is not literally applicable. —*Metaphor* (रूपक/लक्षण)
- A scene or situation which is gruesomely imaginative or full of gruesome details. —*Macabre* (भयानक/खौफनाक/उग्र)
- One who plays the role of bringing two antagonistic parties together. —*Mediator* (मध्यस्थ/पंच/समझौता करानेवाला)
- A change that befalls something. —*Mutation* (परिवर्तन)
- A drama which is marked by very crude appeal to feelings and emotions —*Melodrama* (राग-द्वेष, काम-क्रोध आदि भावनाओं को खूब उत्तेजित करने वाला सुखान्त नाटक)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- One who believes in the philosophy that nothing has real existence. —*Nihilist (शून्यवादी)*
- A quick remedy or apartent medicine or similarly a pet scheme. —*Nostrum (गुप्त औषधी)*
- Science and study that treats of coins as medals. —*Numismatics (मुद्राशास्त्र)*
- Extremely loud and showy as opposed to reserved and modest. —*Ostentatious (प्रदर्शन करने का शौकीन/दिखावटी)*
- To banish or turn out of society and fellowship. —*Ostracise (जाति से बाहर करना/बहिष्कृत करना)*
- The art of spelling words correctly. —*Orthography (व्याकरण का वर्ण विचार भाग)*
- An unscrupulous person, who puts experience before principle. —*Opportunist (अवसरवादी)*
- The act of fixing of a proper position for something. —*Orientation (स्थिति निर्धारण/परिस्थितियों के अनुसार ढालने की योग्यता)*
- The science of languages. —*Philology (भाषा विज्ञान)*
- Science dealing with stamp-collection. —*Philately (डाक-टिकट एकत्र करने का कार्य)*
- Science of vocal natural sounds. —*Phonology (ध्वनि विज्ञान)*
- To make evasive or misleading statements. —*Prevaricate (वाक् छल करना/घुमाकर बोलना)*
- Statement showing remarkable degree of prediction. —*Prophecy (भविष्यवाणी)*
- Study of ancient writings and inscriptions. —*Palaeography (प्राचीन शिलालेखों का अध्ययन)*
- A passage marking the close of a speech. —*Peroration (व्याख्यान का उपसंहार/लंबा भाषण)*
- A man who practises psychiatry. —*Psychiatrist (मनोचिकित्सक)*
- A school teacher or a man affecting learning. —*Pedagogue (अध्यापक)*
- Some previous example from the past. —*Precedent (पूर्व दृष्टान्त/उदाहरण)*
- A child born after the death of his father. — *Posthumous (पिता के मरने के बाद जन्म लेने वाला बच्चा)*
- A book published after the death of its author. — *Posthumous (लेखक के मरने के बाद प्रकाशित पुस्तक)*
- One who makes love now to one and now to another. — *Philanderer (इश्कबाज/आशिक/प्रेमी)*
- Original model. — *Prototype (मूलप्रति/एक नमूना/आदर्श/प्रतीक)*
- Application of pasteurism in order to sterilize milk etc. by exposure to high temperature. —*Pasteurisation (कृमियों के नाश करने की विधि)*
- Former holder of an office or a position. —*Predecessor (पूर्व अधिकारी)*
- To mediate; to pander over a question. —*Ruminate (किसी विषय/प्रश्न पर अधिक-विचार करना)*
- A state in which supremacy of people or its elected representatives is acknowledged. —*Republic (प्रजातंत्र राज्य)*
- To give up entirely. —*Renounce (त्यागना/छोड़ना/अस्वीकार करना)*
- To restore to good condition. —*Rehabilitation (पुनर्वासन)*
- A person who refuses compliance with. —*Recalcitrant (अड़ियल)*
- That which reminds one of something. —*Reminiscent (स्मरण कराने वाला)*
- A reasoner willing to avail himself of fallacies that will help his case. —*Sophist (झूठी दलील से धोखा देने वाला)*
- A very delicate flaw or mistake which is not expected from the person making it. —*Solecism (बोलने या लिखने में अशुद्ध प्रयोग)*
- A symbolic religious ceremony especially baptism. —*Sacrument (ईसाइयों का नामकरण संस्कार)*
- Someone on whom the blame for other's sins can be fixed. —*Scapegoat (दूसरे के लिए कष्ट उठाने वाला/बलिदान का बकरा)*
- Abounding in blood. —*Sanguine (उत्साहयुक्त/आशावादी)*
- Over bearing. —*Supercilious (गुस्सेवाला/अभिमानी)*
- Extremely refined in dress, conduct and speech–Fashionable and modernised. —*Sophisticated (परिष्कृत व्यक्तियों को अच्छा लगने वाला)*
- A person who flatters others for personal motives. —*Sycophant (चापलूस/जी हजूरी करने वाला/खुशामदी)*
- Affectedly and pompously formal person or style. —*Sententious (प्रभावशाली और ठाट-बाट वाला/आडम्बरी, सूत्रमय)*
- One who takes pleasure in cruel, in human and un natural acts of tyranny. —*Sadist (पीड़ा पहुँचाकर रतीभर सुख प्राप्त करने वाला व्यक्ति)*
- That which surpasses. —*Transcendental (अस्पष्ट/गुप्त/श्रेष्ठ)*
- Communication between mind and other than the known channel of senses. — *Telepathy (मानसिक संक्रमण/दूर स्थित एक मन का दूसरे पर प्रभाव)*
- The practice of taking exhorbitant or excessive interest on the money lent. —*Usury (सूद खोरी/अधिक ब्याज खाने वाला)*
- Guilty of accepting bribes extremely mercenary. —*Venal (धन लोभी)*
- Extreme enthusiasm for a cause. —Zeal *(उत्साह/जोश)*
- A person who is indifferent to pleasure or pain. —*Stoic (वैरागी/सुख-दुख को समान समझने वाला)*
- A person sent an a mission. —*Emissary (भेद लेने वाला दूत/गुप्तचर/भेदिया)*
- A person who spends his money recklessly. —*Spendthrift (मुक्त हस्त धन उड़ाने वाला)*
- Incapable of being penetrated. —*Impenetrable (अभेद्य/अथाह)*
- Incapable of being wouned or hurt. —*Invulnerable (जिसमें घाव या चोट न लग सके)*
- Incapable of being repaired. —*Irreparable (जो सुधारा या मरम्मत न किया जा सके)*
- Incapable of being avoided. —*Unavoidable / inevitable (अनिवार्य/आवश्यक)*
- Incapable of being explained or accounted for. —*Inexplicable (जिसका वर्णन न किया जा सके।)*
- Incapable of being expressed in words. —*Inexpressible (अकथनीय)*
- Not definitely or clearly expressed. —*Inexplicit (अस्पष्ट/अनिर्धारित)*
- Incapable of being justified or excused. —*Inexcusable (जिसे माफ न किया जा सके/असह्य)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- Incapable of being solved. —*Insoluble* (जो घुल न सके/अघुलनशील)
- Incapable of being defended. —*Indefensible* (जिसका प्रतिरक्षण न किया जा सके)
- Incapable of being taken by force of arms. —*Impregnable* (अजेय/अभेद्य)
- Incapable of being admitted or allowed. —*Inadmissible* (जिसे स्वीकार न किया जा सके)
- Incapable of being reached. —*Inaccessible* (पहुँच से परे/अगम्य)
- Incapable of being tired out. —*Inexhaustible* (कभी न थकने वाला/खत्म न होने वाला/अक्षय)
- Incapable of being perceived by the senses. —*Imperceptible* (अगम्य/अव्यक्त, जो समझ से परे हो)
- Incapable of being destroyed. —*Indestructible* (अविनाशी/जिसे नष्ट न किया जा सके)
- Incapable of being divided. —*Indivisible* (जिसे विभाजित न किया जा सके)
- Liable to be easily broken. —*Brittle* (भंगुर/सख्त, परन्तु सरलता से टूट जाने वाला)
- An assembly of worshippers. — *Congregation* (भक्तजनों का समुदाय)
- Occurring at the same time. —*Simultaneous* (समकालीन/एक ही समय होने वाला)
- Allowing the passage of rays of light. —*Transparent* (पारदर्शी/स्पष्ट)
- Not allowing the passage of light. —*Opaque* (अपारदर्शक)
- Of unknown or unadmitted authorship. —*Anonymous* (गुमनाम/बिना नाम का)
- Compulsory enlistment for military and other services. —*Conscription* (देश की सेवा हेतु फौज में अनिवार्य भर्ती)
- A figure with many angles or sides. —*Polygon* (बहुभुज/तीन या तीन से अधिक भुजा वाला)
- Belonging to all parts of the world. —*Universal* (व्यापक/सर्वव्यापी)
- The science of reasoning. —*Logic* (तर्कशास्त्र)
- The cessation of warfare before a treaty is signed. —*Armistice* (युद्ध विराम/विराम संधि)
- Signature of someone's name without his permission. —*Forgery* (जालसाजी)
- Property inherited from one's father or ancestors. —*Patrimony* (पैतृक सम्पत्ति)
- Incapable of being out into practice. —*Impracticable* (अव्यवहारिक)
- Incapable of being overcome. —*Insurmountable* (अपराजेय/अजेय/दुर्गम)
- Having no beginning or end to its existence. —*Eternal* (स्थायी/अनादि/अनन्त)
- His motive was merely to get money. —*Mercenary* (केवल धन के लिए कार्य करने वाला/लालची)
- Forbidden, prohibited by law. —*Illicit* (अवैध/निषिद्ध)
- Fond of entertaining guests. —*Hospitable* (सत्कार करने वाला)
- A general pardon of political offenders. —*Amnesty* (राजनैतिक अपराधियों को सामूहिक क्षमा दान)
- Objects possessed of life. —*Animate* (जीवित/जानदार)
- Persons who work in the same department of an office. —*Colleagues* (सहकर्मी/साथ-साथ काम करने वाले)
- A place where people lunch on payment. —*Restaurant* (भोजनालय/जलपान गृह)
- A place with a good climate for invalids. —*Sanitorium* (स्वास्थ्य निवास)
- Government in which no distinction is made between persons of different religions. —*Secular* (धर्म निरपेक्ष)
- One who is qualified to navigate an aircraft. —*Navigator* (जहाज या हवाई जहाज चलाने वाला)
- To increase the gravity of an offence or the intensity of a dispute. —*Aggravate* (उग्र होना/रुष्ट होना)
- To increase the speed of. —*Accelerate* (चाल बढ़ाना)
- Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation. —*Alimony* (तलाक हो जाने पर पत्नी को दिया जाने वाला खर्च या भत्ता)
- The act of talking impiously about sacred things. —*Blasphemy* (ईश्वर तथा धर्म की निन्दा)
- A man or woman with skin and hair of auburn colour. —*Blonde* (गोरे रंग एवं सुनहरे बालों वाली स्त्री या बालिका)
- Willful and persistent resistance to lawful authority. —*Contumacy* (अक्खड़पन/उद्दण्डता/अपमान)
- Belonging or pertaining to an individual from birth. —*Congenital* (एक जैसे स्वभाव वाले/अनुकूल/अनुरूप)
- To restrain by force or impel a person by force. —Coerce (धमकाना/जोर-जुल्म करना/जबरन काम करवाना)
- Eater of flesh. — *Carnivore* (मांस-भक्षी)
- Income just sufficient to live on. — *Subsistence* (जीवित रहने के साधन)
- A person who is insensible to kind thoughts or sympathetic feelings. — *Callous* (निर्दयी/निर्मोही)
- One who prescribes medicine. —*Physician* (चिकित्सक/दवा द्वारा इलाज करने वाला)
- Total loss of voice. —*Aphonia* (वाक्‌रोध/आवाज की रुकावट)
- To do away with a rule. — *Abrogate* (किसी नियम को आज्ञानुसार हटाना/रद्द करना)
- To make thin or fine or to reduce the strength. — *Attenuate* (दुर्बल करना/शक्ति कम करना)
- Deviation from the common rule or standard. —*Anomaly* (अनियमितता/अव्यवस्था)
- A person who starves the body for the good of the soul. —*Ascetic* (संन्यासी/योगी)
- Animals equally at home on land or at sea. —*Amphibian* (उभयचर जन्तु)
- Stealthily done. —*Surreptitious* (छल, कपट या चोरी से किया हुआ)
- One not concerned with right or wrong. —*Amoral* (अधर्मी)
- A person who opposes war or use of military. —*Pacifist* (शान्तिवादी)
- Severely abusive writing in journals. —*Scurrilous* (अशिष्ट लेख)
- Call upon God or any other power (like law) etc for help or protection. —*Invocation* (प्रार्थना/स्तुति)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


- Fear of being enclosed in a small closed space. —*Claustrophobia* (एक मानसिक बीमारी जिसमें बंद कमरे में डर लगता है।)
- Fear of crowds. —*Agoraphobia* (एक मानसिक बीमारी जिसमें भीड़ से डर लगता है।)
- Fear of strangers. —*Xenophobia* (एक मानसिक बीमारी जिसमें अनजाने व्यक्ति से डर लगता है।
- Mental derangement. —*Paranoia* (मानसिक उन्माद/पागलपन)
- Succession of rulers belonging to one family. —*Dynasty* (वंशज/वंश उत्तराधिकार)
- To cut something into two pieces. —*Sever* (काटना/छोटे-छोटे भागों में विभाजित करना)
- Flat metal or porcelain plate fixed on a wall as an ornament or memorial. —*Plaque* (शील्ड)
- Act of deceiving somebody in order to make money. —*Fraud* (धोखे बाजी)
- A short poem or speech addressed to the spectators after the conclusion of a drama. —*Epilogue* (किसी चरित्र या वक्ता का अंतिम संदेश, उपसंहार)
- Capable of being understood in either of two or more possible senses and therefore not definite. —*Ambiguous* (अनेक अर्थों वाली/ अनिश्चित अर्थवाली)
- Something capable of being done. —*Feasible* (व्यवहार में या प्रयोग में आने योग्य)
- One who walks on ropes. —*Acrobat* (नट)
- The study of the origin and history of words. —*Etymology* (शब्दों का इतिहास)
- The study of maps. —*Cartography* (मानचित्र बनाने की कला (का अध्ययन))
- Tough tissues in joints. —*Ligaments* (हड्डियों को एक दूसरे से बाँधने वाली तन्तुओं की पट्टी या स्नायु)
- Building in which dead bodies are kept for a time. —*Mortuary* (मुर्दाघर/शवगृह)
  or, A place for keeping dead bodies before burial or cremation. —*Mortuary* (मुर्दाघर/शवगृह)
- Clinic for the treatment for consumptives in hilly areas where the climate is salubrious. — *Sanatorium* (क्षय रोगियों का आरोग्य आश्रम)
- One who believes that gaining pleasure is the most important thing in life. —*Hedonist* (वह व्यक्ति जो सुख या आनंद (pleasure) के लिए जीता है।)
- A person who has no understanding for arts / uncivilized person. —*Philistine* (वैसा व्यक्ति जिसमें कला, संस्कृति को समझने की अभिरुचि न हो/गँवार)
- One who breaks the established traditions and image. —*Fatalist* (भाग्य पर भरोसा रखने वाला व्यक्ति)
- A person having deep study in a language. —*Philologist* (भाषा विज्ञानी/शब्द शास्त्रज्ञ)
- One who resists to the end. —*Diehard* (अंत तक विरोध करने वाला)
- Diehard, believer and supporter of some religion, cause or political ideology. —*Fanatic* (कट्टर, हठधर्मी, धर्मान्ध)
- Wild and noisy disorder. —*Pandemonium* (कोलाहल/हुल्लड़)
- Property handed down after the death of a person. —*Legacy* (वसीयत की हुई वस्तु या धन)
  or Property that which is given to a person by one's will. —*Legacy* (किसी भूतपूर्व मालिक की जिन्दगी में ही दूसरे के नाम स्थानान्तरित धन)
- Placing a thing beside another. — *Juxtapose* (आस-पास रखना। सटाना/अगल-बगल रखना)
- Expert in the scientific study of skin diseases. —*Dermatologist* (चर्म रोग विशेषज्ञ)
- Of very bad morals; characterised by debasement or degeneration. —*Depraved* (भ्रष्ट/नैतिक पतन)
- Body of human being or animal enabled for burial. —*Mummy* (रसायनों के द्वारा सम्भाल कर रखा गया शव)
- The abandonment of one's country or cause. —*Desertion* (त्याग/संबंध विच्छेद)
- Treatment by means of exercise and massage. —*Physiotherapy* (प्राकृतिक चिकित्सा प्रणाली)
- Bitter and violent attack in words. — *Diatribe* (कड़ी आलोचना/भर्त्सना उग्र भाषण, कटु निन्दा)
- To be biased against. —*Prejudiced* (पक्षपात/प्रतिकूल/हानिकारक)
- To examine one's own thoughts and feelings. —*Introspection* (अन्तर्दर्शन/अपने दिल से मनन करने का तरीका)
- A small enclosure for cattle, sheep, poultry etc. —*Fold* (भेड़ों, पशुओं तथा घरेलू मुर्गियों का बाड़ा)
- Large scale departure of people. — *Exodus* (निर्गमन/प्रस्थान)
- A sudden rush of wind. — *storm* (तूफान)
- A man of odd habits. — *Eccentric* (विचित्र/असाधारण)
- Lack of enough blood in the body. —*Anaemia* (रक्तहीनता/शरीर का पीलापन)
- Mania for stealing articles. —*Stealthiness/plagiarism* (वस्तुओं की चोरी/ग्रन्थ-चोरी)
- A child of unusual or remarkable talent. —*Precocious* (छोटी आयु में प्रतिभा सम्पन्न होने वाला (बच्चा)
- Belief that God is in everything and that everything is God. —*Pantheism* (विश्व देवतावाद)
- The state of being miserable, bereft of all possessions. —*Destitute* (अभावग्रस्त/निसहाय)
- That which cannot be called back. —*Irredeemable* (जिसे पूरा न किया जा सके/भ्रष्ट)
- One who journeys from place to place. —*Itinerant* (घुमक्कड़/घूमने फिरने वाला)
- Commencement of adjacent words with the same letter. —*Alliteration* (अनुप्रास)
- A specialist who tests eyesight. — *Ophthalmologist* (आँख का उपचार करने वाला चिकित्सक)
- A wall built to prevent the sea or a river from flooding an area. —*Embankment* (बाँध/तटबंध)
- Something that is poisonous or unhealthy. —*Trivial* (साधारण/कम महत्व का)
- A mental illness or condition in which somebody has an exaggerated belief in their own importance or power. —*Megalomania* (मानसिक बीमारी)
- A person who is inactive. —*Torpid* (शिथिल/सुस्त)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- Relating to tragedy. —*Tragic (दुःख से भरा)*
- Loss of memory. —*Amnesia (जिसकी स्मृति लोप हो गई हो/स्मृतिहीनता)*
- A small umbrella. —*Parasol (एक प्रकार का छोटा छाता जो स्त्रियाँ प्रयोग में लाती हैं।)*
- An insatiable, often periodic, craving for alcoholic drink. —*Dipsomania (ऐसा व्यक्ति जो शराब पीने की अत्यधिक इच्छा रखता हो तथा जो इसे अपने वश में नहीं कर सकता हो।)*
- A mental illness that causes a strong desire to set fire to things. —*Pyromania (ऐसी मनःस्थिति से ग्रसित व्यक्ति जो चीजों को जलाने की इच्छा रखता हो)*
- An infectious disease in back of the throat. —*Diphtheria (कंठ का संक्रामक रोग)*
- The practice of worshipping statues as gods. —*Idolatory (मूर्तिपूजा/भक्ति)*
- Criticising popular beliefs or established customs and ideas. —*Iconoclastic (लोकप्रिय विश्वास, रीति रिवाज और विचार विरोधी मूर्ति तोड़ने वाला)*
- A place where government/public records are kept —*Archive (ग्रन्थरक्षागृह)*
- Living together of a man and woman without being married to each other. —*Concubinage (अवैध पत्नीवाद)*
- Too much official formality. —*Red-Tapism (सरकारी दफ्तरों के कानूनों, कायदों की कड़ी पाबंदी)*
- That which lasts for a short time. —*Transitory (क्षणिक/क्षण भंगुर)*
- Constant efforts to achieve something. —*Perseverance (निरन्तर उद्यम/परिश्रम)*
- An occasion of great importance. —*Momentous (महत्व का)*
- To have a very high opinion of oneself. —*Conceited (घमण्डी/अभिमानी)*
- One who is given to pleasures of the flesh. —*Epicurean (खाने-पीने का शौकीन/भोग प्रेमी)*
- A person who enjoys food and drink of high quality and knows a lot about it. —*Epicure (खाने-पीने का शौकीन)*
- The sound of a funeral bell. —*Knell (मृत्यु के समय बजायी जाने वाली घंटी)*
- Belief that war and violence are unjustified. —*Pacifism (शांतिवादिता)*
- A group of girls. —*Bevy (लड़कियों का समूह)*
- Military waking signal sounded in the morning. —*Reveille (सुबह में सैनिकों को जगाने वाला गीत)*
  Or A tune that is played to wake soldiers in the morning. —*Reveille (सुबह में सैनिकों को जगाने वाला गीत)*
- The highest singing voice in women or boys. or A music in highest voice. —*Soprano (औरतों और लड़कों का गाने का सबसे ऊँचा गला या स्वर, सबसे ऊँचे सुर का गीत)*
- A song to put babies to sleep. —*Lullaby (बच्चों को सुलाने का गीत)*
- A hymn or song, sacred song sung in praise of God. —*Anthem (ईश्वर स्तुति/भजन)*
- A sea abounding in islands Or A group of islands — *Archipelago (द्वीपों का समुदाय)*
- A short walk for pleasure or exercise. —*Stroll (परिभ्रमण/पैदल घूमना)*
- To move along with quick, short twistings. —*Wriggle (शरीर ऐंठना)*
- One who possesses many talents. —*Versatile (चपल/चंचल/अस्थिर/बदलने योग्य)*
- A dramatic performance Or An entertainment in dumb show — *Masque (कठपुतली का तमाशा)*
- One who can use either of his hands with ease. —*Ambidextrous' (दायें और बायें, दोनों हाथों से समान रूप से काम कर सकना*
- A person who is skilled in horsemanship. —*Equestrian (घोड़े पर सवार व्यक्ति)*
- Extreme of old age when a man behaves like a fool. —*Dotage (वृद्धावस्था के कारण कमजोरी)*
- That can be felt or touched. —*Palpable (स्पर्शनीय)*
- One who has suddenly gained new wealth, power or prestige. —*Parvenu (व्यक्ति जो अमीर तो बन गया हो लेकिन आदतें न बदली हो।)*
- A short journey made by a group of persons together. —*Excursion (सैर/मनोरंजन हेतु भ्रमण)*
- That which makes it difficult to recognize the presence of real nature of somebody or something. —*Camouflage (छद्मावरण/वह वस्तु जिसके कारण किसी अन्य वस्तु की वास्तविकता का पता लगाना मुश्किल हो जाता है)*
- One who thinks that human nature is essentially evil. —*Cynic (मानवद्वेषी)*
- A style in which a writer makes a display of his knowledge. —*Pedantic (विद्या का व्यर्थ आडम्बर दिखाने वाला)*
- A person pretending to be somebody he is not. —*Impostor (ठगी/पाखंडी/छली मनुष्य)*
- One who specialises in the study of birds. —*Ornithologist (पक्षी-विद्या जानने वाला)*
- To mediate between two parties in a dispute. — *Intercede (मध्यस्थ होना)*
- Something which is not thorough or profound. —*Superficial (अगाध/बाहरी)*
- A house for storing grains. —*Granary (धान्यागार)*
- A light sailing boat built especially for racing. —*Yacht (सैर करने की नाव)*
- The original inhabitants of a country. —*Aborigines (किसी देश के आदि निवासी)*
- A short stay at a place. —*Sojourn (थोड़े समय के लिए कहीं पर ठहरना)*
- Opposed to great or sudden change. —*Conservative (नियम के बदलने का विरोध करने वाला)*
- Relationship by blood or birth. —*Consanguinity (सपिण्डता)*
- A person living permanently in a certain place. —*Domicile (घर/सर्वदा रहने का स्थान)*
- Anything written in a letter after it is signed. —*Postscript (लेख जो चिट्ठी समाप्त करने पर लिखा जाये)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- To cause troops etc to spread out in readiness for battle. —*Deploy* (पंक्ति में रखना/फैलाना)
- A person who is too concerned with small details or rules especially when learning or teaching. Or one who makes a vain display of his learning, a conceited fellow. —*Pedant* (विद्या का व्यर्थ आडम्बर दिखाने वाला/अभिमानी मुनष्य)
- Winding sheet of a corpse. —*Shroud* (कफन)
- According to custom. —*Customary* (प्रथानुसार)
- Abnormally high blood pressure. —*Hypertension* (अतिरक्तदाब)
- Art of beautiful handwriting. —*Calligraphy* (सुलेख)
- All the customs and beliefs of a society. —*Tradition* (परंपरा/चलन)
- Art or craft needing skill with hand. —*Handicraft* (हस्तशिल्प/दस्तकारी)
- Art of growing vegetables, fruit, flowers. —*Horticulture* (बागवानी)
- Art of map making. —*Cartography* (मानचित्र कला)
- Art and science of building construction. —*Architecture* (भवन निर्माण कला)
- Style of speaking well. —*Elocution* (वाक्पटुता)
- An author's explanatory remarks at the beginning of a book. — *Preface* (प्रस्तावना)
- Bearing youngs by eggs. —*Oviparous* (अंडज)
- Bearing living youngs. —*Viviparous* (सजीव प्रजक/सजीव बच्चा देने वाली)
- Belief not based on reason or knowledge. —*superstition* (अंधविश्वास)
- Belonging to long past. —*Ancient* (प्राचीन)
- A board of directors in a company. —*Directorate* (निदेशक मंडल)
- A body of voters. —*Electorate* (निर्वाचक मंडल)
- A brief account of a subject. —*Summary/Compendium* (सारांश)
- Capable of being wounded. —*Vulnerable* (आघात योग्य)
- Care taken in advance to avoid a risk. —*Precaution* (सतर्कता)
- A chief character in a story or drama. —*Protagonist* (मुख्यपात्र/नायक)
- A collection of poems or prose. — *Anthology* (काव्य संग्रह)
- In sufficient feeding or nourishing. — *Malnutrition* (कुपोषण)
- Favourable to health —*Wholesome* (स्वास्थ्यप्रद)
- A conference for discussion on a subject. —*Symposium* (विचार गोष्ठी)
- A list of household goods, furniture etc. —*Inventory* (सूचीपत्र)
- Scarcity of food. —*Famine* (अकाल)
- Fear of being in open space. —*Agoraphobia* (खुली जगह से भय)
- Fear of books. —*Bibliophobia* (पुस्तकों से भय)
- Fear of snakes. —*Ophiophobia* (साँपों से भय)
- Fear of water. —*Hydrophobia* (जल से भय)
- Fear of a dead body —*Necrophobia* (लाश से भय)
- Fear of animals. —*Zoophobia* (जानवरों से भय)
- Fear of height —*Aero phobia* (ऊँचाई से भय)
- Fear of home surroundings —*Ecophobia* (घर के चारों ओर की चीजों से भय)
- Fear of oneself —*Autophoby* (अपने आप से भय)
- Fear of foreigners —*Xenophobia* (विदेशियों से भय)
- Fond of much alcoholic drink. —*Bibulous* (शराबी)
- A person who is foolishly fond of one's wife. —*Henpecked/Uxorious* (पत्नी परायण/जोरू का गुलाम)
- To free a prisoner on payment. —*Ransom* (फिरौती लेकर आजाद करना)
- A funeral rite. —*Funeral/obsequies* (अंत्येष्टि)
- A girl/woman who flirts. —*Coquette* (नखरेबाज लड़की या स्त्री)
- To support a statement or theory. —*Corroborate* (संपुष्टि करना)
- A group of talkative girls or women. —*Gaggle* (स्त्रियों का समूह)
- A hater of new things. —Misoneist (नयी चीजों से घृणा करने वाला व्यक्ति)
- A hater of smoking. —*Misocapnic* (धूम्रपान विरोधी)
- A bad smell or taste. — *Foul* (बदबूदार)
- A person who helps in a wrong deed or cime. —*Accomplice/Accessary* (सहअपराधी)
- Helpful but not an essential part. —*Accessory* (सहायक)
- A holy or sacred place. —*Sanctuary* (पवित्र स्थान/देवालय)
- Honesty and uprightness of character. —*Integrity* (ईमानदारी/सत्यनिष्ठा)
- That which cannot be altered. —*Unalterable/Irrevocable* (अपरिवर्तनीय)
- Killing of large numbers of defenceless people. —*Massacre* (हत्याकांड/भीषण नरसंहार)
- The murder for political reasons. —*Assassination* (राजनैतिक कारणों से की जाने वाली हत्या)
- The murder of one's sister —*Sorocide* (बहन हत्या)
- The murder of one's husband. —*Mariticide* (पति हत्या)
- The murder of one's mother —*Matricide* (मातृ हत्या)
- The murder of one's wife —*Uxoricide* (पत्नी हत्या)
- A large retail store. —*Emporium* (बिक्री केन्द्र)
- A large destruction by fire. —*Holocaust* (विध्वंस/अग्निकांड)
- A law making body of a country/state. —*Legislature* (विधायिका)
- A legal enquiry to find out faults. —*Inquisition* (जाँच पड़ताल/खोजबीन)
- A list and explanation of difficult words. —*Glossary* (शब्द संग्रह)
- A lover of animals. —*Philozoic* (पशु प्रेमी)
- A lover of arts. —*Philotechnic* (कला प्रेमी)
- A lover of dogs. —*Canaphilist* (कुत्तों का शौकीन)
- A lover of God. —*Philotheist* (ईश्वर प्रेमी)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- A lover of learning. —*Philomath (विद्या प्रेमी)*
- A lover of women. —*Philogynist (स्त्रीप्रेमी)*
- A lover of poetry and art. —*Philomuse (कला प्रेमी/काव्य प्रेमी)*
- A marriage of God. —*Theogamy (ईश्वर विवाह)*
- A medicine that induces sleep. —*Narcotic (नींद लाने वाली दवा)*
- A name derived from father's name. —*Patronymic (पितृक नाम)*
- That which is not composed of matter. —*Incorporeal (आध्यात्मिक)*
- A notice of the death of a person. —*Obituary(मृत्यु सूचना)*
- One who cannot die. — *Immortal (अमर)*
- One who always gets into trouble. —*Scapegrace (मूर्ख/अशिष्ट व्यक्ति)*
- One who fluently speaks many languages. —*Polygot (भाषा विद्)*
- One who goes for a secret official mission. —*Emissary (जासूस)*
- One who habitually talks while sleeping. —*Somniloquist (नींद में बड़बड़ाने वाला व्यक्ति)*
- One who walks while asleep. —*Somnambulist (नींद में टहलने वाला व्यक्ति)*
- One who is excessively patriotic. —*Chauvinist (अंधदेश भक्त)*
- One who analyses handwriting —*Graphologist (हस्तलेखविशेषज्ञ)*
- One who makes a secret plan against somebody. —*Conspirator (षड्यंत्रकारी)*
- One who receives something. —*Recipient (प्राप्तकर्ता)*
- One who regains health and strength after illness. —*Convalescent (स्वास्थ्य लाभकर्ता)*
- One who plans to destroy all governments. —*Anarchist (अराजकतावादी व्यक्ति/आतंकवादी)*
- One who studies the mind. —*Psychologist (मनोवैज्ञानिक)*
- One who speaks two languages. —*Bilingual (द्विभाषी)*
- One who takes an active part in politics. —*Activist (सक्रिय व्यक्ति)*
- One who witnesses secretly to private conversation. —*Eavesdropper (चुपके से निजी वार्तालाप सुनने वाला व्यक्ति)*
- A person who belongs to a region from earliest time. —*Aboriginal (आदिवासी)*
- A permanent military station. —*Cantonment (छावनी)*
- A perfect happiness. —*Ecstasy/Bliss (परमानंद)*
- A person who holds a high office. —*Dignitary (उच्च पदाधिकारी)*
- A person who is kept as a prisoner. —*Captive (कैदी /बंदी)*
- A person who takes part in state affairs. —*Statesman (राजनेता)*
- A person who files a suit. —*Plaintiff (मुद्दई)*
- A person who uses disruptive forces to bring about political or social change. —*Extremist (उग्रवादी)*
- A policy of extending a country's empire and influence. —*Imperialism (साम्राज्यवाद)*
- Persuade by flattery. —*Cajole (खुशामद करना)*
- A political system without opposition. —*Totalitarianism (एकदलीय शासनतंत्र)*
- A person who is reserved in speech. —*Reticent (अल्पभाषी)*
- Science of poisons. —*Toxicology (विषविज्ञान)*
- Science of time. —*Horology(समय का विज्ञान)*
- Science of the races of mankind and their relation to one another —*Ethnology (मानवजाति विज्ञान)*
- Science of the fossils. —*Palaentology (जीवाश्म विज्ञान)*
- A temple dedicated to all the gods. —*Pan theon (सर्वेश्वरमंदिर)*
- That which is pig like. —*Porcine (सुअर जैसा)*
- That which can easily be curved without breaking. — *Flexible (लचीला)*
- That which eats grass. —*Herbivore /Herbivorous (शाकभक्षी प्राणी/शाक भक्षी)*
- That which has very harmful and dangerous effects. —*Detrimental (हानिकर/अहितकर)*
- That which is corpse like. —*Cadaverous (शवतुल्य/ मृतवत)*
- That which is cat like. —*Feline (बिल्ली जैसा/धूर्त)*
- That which is cow like. —*Bovine (गाय जैसा)*
- That which is fish like. — *Piscine (मछली जैसा)*
- That which is morally dangerous. —*Pestiferous (हानिकारक/रोगजनक)*
- That which is prohibited by law. —*Prohibitory (निषेधात्मक)*
- A whole body of wage earners. — *Proletariat (मजदूर वर्ग)*
- The word whose meaning is difficult to understand. —*Abstruse (गूढ़ /दुर्बोध)*
- Writing material pen, paper etc. —*Stationery (लेखन सामग्री)*
- A Post without remuneration. —*Honorary (अवैतनिक)*
- A woman whose husband is dead. —*Widow (विधवा)*
- A man whose wife is dead. —*Widower (विधुर)*
- An outline of a play, opera. —*Scenario (नाटकीय रूपरेखा)*
- A woman who entertains guests. —*Hostess (सत्कारिणी)*
- A vehicle which is used to carry a sick or wounded person. —*Ambulance (एम्बुलेंस)*
- A vehicle which is used to carry a dead body —*Hearse (शवयान)*
- A person who is very cruel. —*Fiend (क्रूर/नृशंस)*
- A written statement which gives us information. —*Memorandum (ज्ञापन/स्मरण पत्र)*
- A person who visits other countries for pleasure. —*Tourist (पर्यटक)*
- A thing which can easily be broken. —*Fragile (भंगुर)*
- Looking upon dark side of things. —*Pessimism (निराशावादिता)*
- A person who looks at the dark side of things. —*Pessimist (निराशावादी)*
- Looking upon bright side of things. —*Optimism (आशावादिता)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


- A person who looks at the bright side of things. —*Optimist (आशावादी)*
- An idle talk. —*Gossip (गप-शप)*
- That which cannot be understood. —*Incomprehensible (अबोध)*
- A substance which is used to kill an insect. —*Insecticide (कीटनाशक)*
- A substance which is used to kill a germ. —*Germicide (रोगाणुनाशक)*
- A substance which prevents wound from germs. —*Antiseptic (रोगाणुरोधी)*
- A swelling part of a body. —*Inflammation (सूजन)*
- A person who is a specialist in pregnancy and childbirth. —*Obstetrician (प्रसूति विशेषज्ञ)*
- A speech/statement which is delivered without preparation. —*Extempore (बिना तैयारी का भाषण)*
- A person who is a specialist in bone disease. —*Orthopedist (हड्डी रोग विशेषज्ञ)*
- A woman who is a specialist in reproductive organs. —*Gyanaecologist (स्त्री रोग विशेषज्ञ)*
- A person who is a specialist in heart disease. —*Cardiologist (हृदय रोग विशेषज्ञ)*
- A person who is a specialist in nervous system. —*Neurologist (तंत्रिका विशेषज्ञ)*
- A person who is a specialist in child disease. —*Pediatrician (शिशु रोग विशेषज्ञ)*
- A reminder of something. —*Memento (यादगार)*
- A person who examines teeth. —*Dentist (दंत चिकित्सक)*
- A person who examines eyesight and sells glasses. —*Optician (नेत्र दृष्टि जाँचकर चश्मा बनाने तथा बेचने वाला)*
- A group of ship. —*Fleet (बेड़ा)*
- A person who eat human flesh. —*Cannibal (नरभक्षी)*
- Persons living at the same time. —*Contemporary (समकालीन)*
- Person having the same opinions. —*Unanimous (सर्वसम्मत/एकमत)*
- A plant or an animal which lives on another. —*Parasite (परजीवी)*
- A child whose parents are dead. —*Orphan (अनाथ)*
- A person who is a great lover of his country. —*Patriot (देशभक्त)*
- A person who brings in goods from a foreign country. —*Importer (आयातक)*
- A person who sends goods to another country. —*Exporter (निर्यातक)*
- The dead body of a human being. —*Corpse (शव)*
- The dead body of an animal. —*Carcase (जानवरों का मृत शरीर)*
- A person who writes the life history of another person. —*Biographer (दूसरों की जीवनी लिखने वाला)*
- A person who writes his life history. —*Autobiographer (आत्मकथा लिखने वाला/खुद की जीवनी लिखने वाला)*
- The life history of a person written by himself. —*Autobiography (आत्मकथा)*
- The life history of a person written by another. —*Biography (जीवनी)*
- A man who remains unmarried. —*Bachelor (कुँवारा)*
- A woman who remains unmarried. —*Spinster/maid (कुँवारी)*
- One who can read and write. —*Literate (साक्षर/पढ़ा लिखा)*
- One who cannot read and write. —*Illiterate (अनपढ़/निरक्षर)*
- One who believes in the existence of God. —*Theist (आस्तिक)*
- One who does not believe in the existence of God. —*Atheist (नास्तिक)*
- A person who lives in a foreign country. —*Alien (विदेशी)*
- A person who leaves his own country and goes to settle in another. —*Emigrant (उत्प्रवासी)*
- A medicine which induces vomiting. —*Emetic (कै कराने की दवा)*
- That cannot be exhausted. —*Inexhaustible (अक्षय)*
- A person who comes to one country from another to settle. —*Immigrant (अप्रवासी)*
- One who commits the first act of attack. —*Aggressor (आक्रमणकर्ता)*
- One who is all powerful. —*Omnipotent (सर्वशक्तिमान)*
- One who is present everywhere. —*Omnipresent (सर्वत्र)*
- One who knows everything. —*Omniscient (सर्वज्ञ)*
- One who believes in fate. —*Fatalist (भाग्यवादी)*
- One who loves mankind. —*Philanthropist (मानव प्रेमी/परोपकारी)*
- One who plays, sings, paints pictures etc not for money, but for the love of it. —*Amateur (शौकिया)*
- The letters used in writing a language. —*Alphabet (वर्णमाला)*
- Yearly return of the date of an event. —*Anniversary (वार्षिकोत्सव/जयन्ती)*
- A substance like ether, chloroform. —*Anaesthetic (बेहोश करने वाली दवा)*
- A person who is skilled in making analysis. —*Analyst (विश्लेषण कर्ता)*
- One who eats too much. —*Glutton (पेटू/ख़ाऊ)*
- A female of gander. —*Goose (कुलहंसनी)*
- A place of shelter for ships. —*Harbour (बन्दरगाह)*
- An equipment of a horse. —*Harness (घोड़े का साज)*
- A spear on a rope for catching whales and other larger fish. —*Harpoon (हारपून-मछली पकड़ने की बर्छी या भाला)*
- An adult male of deer. —*Hart (हिरण)*
- A plane figure of seven sides. —*Heptagon (सप्तभुज)*
- A number of animals kept feeding or travelling together. —*Herd (पशुओं का झुंड)*
- A plane figure with six sides. —*Hexagon (षड्भुज)*
- A person who takes part in a hijack. —*Hijacker (अपहरणकर्ता)*
- A word that is the same in sound as another but different in meaning. —*Homonym (होमोनिम) श्रुतिसमभिन्नार्थक शब्द*
- A supreme ruler. —*Monarch (बादशाह/राजा/सुल्तान)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- A holiday which is taken by a newly married couple. —*Honeymoon* (सुहागरात मनाने का अवकाश)
- A diagram of the heavens showing the relative position of planets at the time of a person's death. —*Horoscope* (जन्मकुण्डली/जन्मपत्री)
- A person who entertains guests. —*Host* (मेजबान)
- A woman who entertains guest. —*Hostess* (महिला मेजबान)
- A dog used for hunting. —*Hound* (शिकारी कुत्ता)
- A person who carries off somebody by force. —*Kidnapper* (अपहरणकर्ता)
- A place where clothes are washed and pressed. —*Laundry* (कपड़े धोने की दुकान)
- An army officer who is below a captain in rank. —*Lieutenant* (नौसेना अधिकारी)
  or, A junior officer in the navy. —*Lieutenant* (लेफ्टिनेन्ट)
- Any alcoholic drink. —*Liquor* (मदिरा)
- A baggage of a traveller. —*Luggage* (यात्री का सामान)
- A young unmarried woman. —*Maiden* (अविवाहित जवान लड़की)
- A speech which is delivered for the first time. —*Maiden speech* (किसी के द्वारा दिया गया प्रथम भाषण)
- An animal that feeds its young with milk from the female mammary glands. —*Mammal* (स्तनपायी प्राणी)
- A book, document, letter etc written by hand or typed. —*Manuscript* (पांडुलिपि)
- A female of donkey/horse. —*Mare* (घोड़ी/गदही)
- A woman who is in charge of nursing in a hospital. —*Matron* (अस्पताल की प्रधान परिचारिका)
- A magnificent tomb. —*Mausoleum* (विशाल मकबरा)
- A medical student. —*Medico* (डॉक्टरी पढ़ने वाला)
- Something that serves as a reminder. —*Momento* (यादगार/निशानी)
- A person who lives in a metropolis. —*Metropolitan* (महानगर का निवासी)
- A tiny living organism causing disease. —*Microbe* (रोगाणु)
- An optical instrument for magnifying objects. —*Microscope* (सूक्ष्मदर्शी)
- A period of one thousand years. —*Millennium* (एक हजार वर्ष की अवधि)
- One thousand millions. —*Milliard* (मिलयर्ड) एक अरब
- A thousand times one thousand. —*Million* (दस लाख)
- A man of millions. —*Millionaire* (लखपति)
- A person who works in a mine. —*Miner* (माइन) खनिक
- A place where coins are made. —*Mint* (टकसाल—वह स्थान जहाँ सिक्के ढाले जाते हैं टकसाल कहलाता है।)
- An official record of the proceeding of a meeting. —*Minutes* (सभा की कार्यवाही का विवरण)
- An impudent girl. —*Minx* (एक ढीठ लड़की)
- An examiner presiding at some university examinations. —*Moderator* (विश्वविद्यालय की परीक्षाओं का अध्यक्ष)
- A building in which monks live. —*Monastery* (मठ/आश्रम)
- A supreme ruler. —*Monarch* (बादशाह/राजा/सुल्तान)
- A pupil who looks after the boys in the class in the absence of the teacher. —*Monitor* (कक्षा का मॉनिटर)
- A person who has withdrawn from the world for religious reasons. —*Monk* (साधु/संन्यासी/योगी)
- Two or more than two letters combined in one design. —*Monogram* (दो या दो से अधिक अक्षरों को मिलाकर बना हुआ डिजाइन)
- A drama to be performed by a single man. —*Monologue* (एकपात्री नाटक)
- A building which is constructed to keep alive one's memory. —*Monument* (स्मारक)
- A hotel for the motorists, in which parking and servicing facilities are available. —*Motel* (कार सहित व्यक्तियों के ठहरने का होटल)
- A building where works of art, scientific specimens and other objects of permanent value are kept and displayed. —*Museum* (संग्रहालय/अजायबघर)
- Flesh of sheep used as food. —*Mutton* (भेड़ का मांस)
- Secretion of a plant which attracts the insects or birds that pollinate flowers. —*Nectar* (मधुर पेय/अमृत)
- One who lives near another. —*Neighbour* (पड़ोसी)
- A person recently married. —*Neogamist* (नवविवाहित मनुष्य)
- A member of a wandering tribe. —*Nomad* (बंजारा/यायावर)
- A central part of an atom. —*Nucleus* (नाभिक)
- A room or place set apart for children. —*Nursery* (शिशुशाला)
  or, A place where young plants and trees are raised for transplantation elsewhere. —*Nursery* (पेड़-पौधों का घर)
- A lovely young girl. —*Nymph* (सुन्दर युवती)
- A notice of the death of a person. —*Obituary* (मृत्युसमाचार)
- A plane figure of eight sides. —*Octagon* (अष्टभुज)
- A young of animals. —*Offspring* (संतान/संतति)
- One who looks on. —*Onlooker* (दर्शक)
- A company of performers playing musical instruments. —*Orchestra* (विभिन्न प्रकार के वाद्ययंत्रों को एक साथ बजाना)
- A person who looks after horses at an inn. —*Ostler* (सराय में घोड़ों की देख-रेख करनेवाला साईस)
- A plane figure of the shape of an egg. —*Oval* (अंडाकार वस्तु)
- A person who tells the future and interprets character by reading the lines and configuration on the palm. —*Palmist* (हस्तरेखा शास्त्री)
- Remedy for all diseases. —*Panacea* (रामबाण/सर्वरोगनाशक औषधि)
- A place of perfect peace and happiness. —*Paradise* (पूर्ण शांति एवं सुख का स्थान)
- Supreme law making assembly. —*Parliament* (संसद)
- Words alike in sound but different in meaning and spelling. —*Paronym* (ऐसे शब्द जिनकी ध्वनि एक, परन्तु अर्थ और वर्तनी भिन्न हो)
- A person who is 15 years old. —*Adolescent* (किशोर)
- A person who is 60 years old. —*Sexagenarian* (साठ वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- A person who is 70 years old. —*Septuagenarian* (सत्तर वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- A person who is 80 years old. —*Octogenarian* (अस्सी वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- A person who is 90 years old. —*Nonagenarian* (नब्बे वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- A person who is 100 years old. —*Centenarian* (सौ वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- An event which happens once in two years. —*Biennial* (द्विवार्षिक, दो साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in three years. —*Triennial* (त्रिवार्षिक, तीन साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in four years. —*Quadrennial* (चार साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in five years. —*Quinquennial* (पाँच साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in six years. —*Sexennial* (छः साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in seven years. —*Septennial* (सात साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in eight years. —*Octennial* (आठ वर्ष में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in ten year. —*Decennial* (दस वर्ष में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- One who makes a scientific study of language. —*Linguist* (अनेक भाषाओं का ज्ञाता)
- A person who lives on vegetables. —*Vegetarian* (शाकाहारी)
- A person who eats vegetables and meat. —*Non-vegetarian* (मांसाहारी)
- One who believes in oneself. —*Egoist* (आत्मश्लाघी/ब्रह्मवादी)
- One who wastes money for luxury. —*Extravagant* (खर्चीला/फुटाऊ)
- One who abandons his religious faith. —*Apostate* (स्वधर्म त्यागी)
- A person who has a long experience of any occupation. —*Veteran* (अनुभवी व्यक्ति)
- An animal which gives milk and suckles its young one. —*Mammal* (स्तनपायी)
- Animals which live in water. —*Aquatic* (पानी में रहने वाला जानवर)
- Words opposite in meaning. —*Antonym* (विलोम शब्द)
- Word similar in meaning. —*Synonym* (समानार्थक शब्द)
- Assembly of listeners. —*Audience* (श्रोतागण)
- Baggage of a traveller. —*Luggage* (सामान)
- A place where fishes and water plants are kept. —*Aquarium* (जलजीवशाला)
- A person who playes violin. —*Violinist* (सारंगी बजाने वाला)
- An area of land planted with grapes. —*Vineyard* (अंगूर उद्यान)
- A man or woman who has not sexual experience. —*Virgin* (कुमार/कुमारी जिसने सम्भोग न किया हो।)
- Something that happens without a cause. —*Accident* (दुर्घटना)
- A person whose profession is to keep accounts. —*Accountant* (लेखाकार/मुनीम)
- Person with whom one is acquainted. —*Acquaintance* (जान पहचान वाला व्यक्ति)
- A set of instruments put together for a purpose. —*Apparatus* (उपकरण)
- A legal written statement. —*Affidavit* (शपथ पत्र/हलफनामा)
- A ground for the arrival and departure of aeroplanes. —*Aerodrome* (हवाई अड्डा)
- One who is engaged in husbandry. —*Agriculturist* (खेतिहार/किसान)
- One who drives an aeroplane. —*Pilot/Aeronaut* (पायलट/वायुयान चलाने वाला)
- The bony framework of the body. —*Skeleton* (कंकाल)
- A book giving information on every department of knowledge in alphabetical order. —*Encyclopaedia* (विश्व ज्ञान कोष)
- A building in which dead bodies are burnt. —*Crematorium* (शवदाह गृह)
- That which can be easily set on fire. —*Inflammable* (ज्वलनशील)
- A building in which soldiers live. —*Barrack* (बैरक/सैनिकों के रहने का मकान)
- That which can be heard. —*Audible* (श्रव्य)
- That which can be seen. —*Visible* (दृष्टिगोचर)
- A portable radio set. —*Transistor* (ध्वनिविस्तारक यंत्र)
- A change in shape, size, appearance, quality etc. —*Transformation* (रूपान्तरण)
- A company of persons such as pilgrims, merchants making a journey together for safety. —*Caravan* (काफिला/कारवाँ)
- Plans and promises which are declared by a candidate before the people in election. —*Manifesto* (घोषणा पत्र)
- A disease that is found regularly in a particular place. —*Endemic* (खास स्थान पर होने वाला बीमारी)
- A disease that causes death. —*Fatal* (घातक)
- A disease that affects many people at the same place and time. —*Epidemic* (महामारी/संक्रामक रोग)
- A disease widely epidemic. —*Pandemic* (देशव्यापी महामारी)
- An animal that creeps/crawls and lays eggs. —*Reptile* (रेंगने वाला प्राणी)
- Colouring matter of green part of plants. —*Chlorophyll* (पर्णहरित)
- Hundredth anniversary. —*Centenary* (सौवाँ वर्षगाँठ)
- A chemical used for surface cleaning. —*Detergent* (डिटरजेंट)
- A person who is authorised to execute a legal deed. —*Executor* (कार्यपालक)

  or, A person who is appointed to carry out the provisions of one's will. —*Executor* (मृतक के इच्छा पत्र का उत्तर साधक)
- The act of killing one's brother. —*Fatricide* (भ्रातृहंता)
- A person who is genuinely interested in the welfare and emancipation of women. —*Feminist* (स्त्री का कल्याण करने वाला)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



- That which cannot be read. —*Illegible* (अस्पष्ट)
- A deceptive appearance, statement or belief. —*Illusion* (भ्रम)
- A person who is well versed in law. —*Jurist* (कानून में प्रवीण)
- A definite system of naming especially in classification. —*Nomenclature* (नामकरण)
- An unscrupulous person who puts experience before principle. —*Opportunist* (अवसरवादी)
- State of being of one mind. —*Unanimous* (एकमत)
- A person who broadcasts something alive. —*Commentator* (टीकाकार)
- A set of terms. —*Ultimatum* (अंतिम शर्त)
- Government by elected representatives. —*Democracy* (प्रजातंत्र)
- That which cannot be burnt. —*Incombustible* (अदाह्य)
- An instrument which is used to view objects at a distance. —*Telescope* (दूरबीन)
- A journey by sea. —*Voyage* (समुद्रीयात्रा)
- A judgement of a court. —*Decree* (फैसला/डिग्री)
- A killer of a king. —*Regicide* (राजा का हत्यारा)
- A killer of an infant. —*Infanticide* (शिशु हत्यारा)
- A legal advisor. —*Solicitor* (कानूनी सलाहकार)
- A notice which is sent by a court. —*Summons* (बुलावा पत्र)
- A list of books and writings of an author. —*Bibliography* (ग्रंथी सूची)
- A door which opens into rooms by a narrow passage. —*Corridor* (गलियारा/रास्ता)
- A lover of good meals. —*Gourmand* (पेटू/भोजन प्रेमी)
- A person who breaks into a house to steal. —*Burglar* (सेंध मारने वाला)
- A person who brings goods illegally. —*Smuggler* (तस्कर)
- A person who purchases goods from a shop. —*Customer* (ग्राहक)
- A person who interviews someone. —*Interviewer* (साक्षात्कार लेने वाला)
- A person who always reads books. —*Bookworm* (किताबी कीड़ा)
- A person who is very careful in the use of money. —*Economical/frugal* (मितव्ययी/कंजूस)
- A person who lives and works for others. —*Altruist* (परोपकारी)
- A person who travels in space. —*Astronaut* (अंतरिक्ष यात्री)
- A person who travels to a holy place. —*Pilgrim* (तीर्थ-यात्री)
- A person who walks. —*Pedestrian* (पैदल चलने वाला व्यक्ति)
- From one generation to another. —*Hereditary* (आनुवंशिक)
- A period of ten years. —*Decade* (दशक)
- A person who is forced to flee to shelter. —*Refugee* (शरणार्थी)
- A person who is sent to other country to propagate religion. —*Missionary* (धर्म प्रचारक)
- Land that does not grow anything. —*Barren* (बंजर)
- A person who prepares and sells drugs. —*Druggist* (दवा विक्रेता)
- A person who runs a beauty parlour. —*Beautician* (शृंगार स्थल का संचालक)
- A person who frightens and wants to achieve his goal. —*Terrorist* (आतंकवादी)
- A person who works against his country. —*Traitor* (देशद्रोही)
- A person who is uncivilized. —*Barbarian* (असभ्य/अशिष्ट)
- A person who is employed in armed forces. —*Personnel* (सेना में नियुक्त कर्मचारी)
- A place where clothes are kept. —*Wardrobe* (कपड़ा रखने का स्थान)
- A place where dead bodies are buried. —*Cemetery* (कब्रिस्तान)
- A building in which people sit to listen to songs, music etc. —*Auditorium* (दर्शक कक्ष/रंग भवन)
- A place in which bees are kept. —*Apiary* (मधुमक्खियों के रहने का स्थान)
- A place in which birds are kept. —*Aviary* (पक्षीगृह)
- A planned activity. —*Campaign* (अभियान)
- A medical examination of a dead body. —*Postmortem* (शव परीक्षण)
- Amount paid to a man for his labour. —*Remuneration* (मेहनताना/पारिश्रमिक)
- Soldiers who fight on foot. —*Infantry* (पैदल सैनिक)
- Soldiers who fight on horseback. —*Cavalry* (घुड़सवार फौज)
- Land that grows things in abundance. —*Fertile* (उपजाऊ जमीन)
- That which is no longer in use. —*Obsolete* (अप्रचलित)
- A person who has a bad reputation. —*Notorious* (कुख्यात)
- A diplomatic representative in another country. —*Ambassador* (राजदूत)
- A person who believes in anything easily. —*Credulous* (सहज विश्वासी)
- A place where arms are kept. —*Armoury* (अस्त्र-शस्त्र रखने का स्थान)
- A person who studies stars, planets and other heavenly bodies. —*Astronomer* (खगोलशास्त्री)
- A group of ants. —*Swarm* (चींटियों का झुण्ड)
- A period of 15 days. —*Fortnight* (पंद्रह दिनों का समय-पखवाड़ा)
- A list of books. —*Catalogue* (पुस्तक की सूची)
- A blind adherent to creed. —*Bigot* (कट्टरपंथी)
- Any sort of drink except water. —*Beverage* (पेय पदार्थ)
- An instrument for measuring the pressure of the atmosphere. —*Barometer* (वायुदाबमापी यंत्र)
- One who abstains from alcoholic drinks. —*Teetotaller* (मादक द्रव्य व्यवहार न करने वाला मनुष्य)
- The state of living unmarried. —*Celibacy* (ब्रह्मचर्य/अविवाहित अवस्था)
- An imaginary line round the earth. —*Equator* (विषुवत् रेखा)
- A place where orphans are housed. —*Orphanage* (अनाथालय)

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 32 PHRASAL VERBS

### Phrasal verbs starting with 'A'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Account for | कारण बताना, हिसाब देना, स्पष्टीकरण देना |
| Ask for something | की माँग करना, के लिए अनुरोध करना |
| Ask for somebody | मिलने या बात करने के लिए संवाद देना |
| Ask after | किसी के बारे में समाचार पूछना |
| Ask in | अन्दर बुलाना |
| Answer back | मुँह लगे जवाब देना |
| Answer for | जिम्मेदार होना |
| Add to | बढ़ाना |
| Act on/upon | असर डालना |
| Add up | का योग करना |
| Allow for | ध्यान में लेना |
| Allow of | गुंजाइश रखना |
| Ache for | के लिए या करने के लिए प्रबल इच्छा रखना |
| Abound in/with Something | प्रचुर संख्या या मात्रा में होना |
| Abide by | विश्वासी होना, दृढ़ता से पालन करना |

### Phrasal verbs starting with 'B'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Back out | पीछे हटना |
| Back up | समर्थन देना |
| Bank on | भरोसा करना |
| Be off | जाना |
| Bear out | समर्थन देना, साथ देना |
| Beat up | खूब पीटना |
| Blow out | फूँककर बुझाना |
| Blow up | विस्फोट होना, बर्बाद करना |
| Break down | मशीन इत्यादि खराब हो जाना, स्वास्थ्य खराब हो जाना |
| Break in | चोरी करने की नीयत से घुसना, बलपूर्वक भीतर घुसना |
| Break into | तालाबन्द मकान या कमरे में जबर्दस्ती घुसना |
| Break out | एकाएक फैलना, चाहे वह लड़ाई हो या महामारी |
| Break with | दोस्ती समाप्त करना, आदत छोड़ना, संबंध विच्छेद करना |
| Break up | समाप्त होना, तितर-बितर हो जाना |
| Boil over | उफन पड़ना |
| Bring about | उत्पन्न करना |
| Bring under | वश में करना, नियंत्रण में करना |
| Bring round | होश में लाना |
| Bring down | गिराना, कम करना |
| Bring out | प्रकट या प्रकाशित करना |
| Bring up | पालन पोषण करना, पढ़ाना-लिखाना |
| Bring forth | उत्पन्न करना |
| Burn down | जलाकर बर्बाद कर देना, जलकर बर्बाद होना |
| Burn away | बर्बाद हो जाना |
| Burn out | बुझ जाना |
| Burn up | धधकना |
| Burst in | बाधा डालना |
| Burst in/on | अचानक आ जाना |
| Build on/upon | निर्भर करना |
| Build up | जमना, बढ़ना |
| Build up | धीरे-धीरे बनाना, हासिल करना |
| Brush away | हटा देना, भगा देना |
| Brush aside | ध्यान न देना, उपेक्षा करना |
| Back down | दावा छोड़ देना |
| Back off | दावा छोड़ देना |
| Bail out | जमानत देना |
| Bargain with | सौदा करना |
| Bargain for | स्वीकार करने के लिए तैयार होना |
| Beat down | कीमत कम करने के लिए मनाना |
| Bend down | झुकना |
| Bid up | ऊँची-बोली लगाकर कीमत बढ़ा देना |
| Block up | बंद कर देना, रोकना |
| Blot out | दृष्टि से छिपा देना, बर्बाद कर देना, मिटा देना |
| Blow in/into | शोरगुल करते हुए या प्रसन्नतापूर्वक प्रवेश करना |
| Boil away | उबालते रहना (कुछ भी अवशेष न रहने तक) |
| Boil down | उबाल कर किसी द्रव की मात्रा को कम कर देना |
| Branch off | कार, ट्रेन आदि का मुख्य मार्ग छोड़कर अन्य मार्ग से चलना |
| Branch out | शाखाओं की तरह फैलना |
| Bring along | साथ लाना |
| Bring forward | प्रस्तुत करना, दिखाना, आगे ले जाना |

### Phrasal verbs starting with 'C'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Call in | किसी को बुलवाना |
| Call off | समाप्त करना, वापस लेना |
| Call up | याद करना, टेलीफोन करना |
| Call for | माँग करना, आवश्यकता होना |
| Call on | थोड़ी देर के लिए जाना या रुकना |
| Call out | बुलाना |
| Call at | किसी के घर या स्थान आदि पर थोड़े देर के लिए जाना |
| Call back | वापस बुलाना |
| Call down | प्रार्थना करना |
| Care about | चिंतित होना |
| Care for | पसंद करना |
| Carry away | आपे से बाहर करना, उत्तेजित करना |
| Carry off | जीतना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Carry on | जारी रखना, चलाना, निभाना |
| Carry out | आज्ञा का पालन करना |
| Cast aside | छोड़ देना, त्याग कर देना |
| Catch up with | आगे निकलना |
| Catch out | गेंद को लपककर आउट करना |
| Cheer up | ढांढस बँधाना, बढ़ावा देना |
| Cheer up | अधिक प्रसन्न होना या करना |
| Clear away | छँट जाना |
| Clear off | छुटकारा पाना |
| Clear out | प्रस्थान करना, चला जाना |
| Climb down | नीचे की ओर आना, उतरना |
| Climb up | बढ़ना |
| Close down | स्थायी रूप से बंद करना |
| Close in on/upon | ढक देना |
| Close with | स्वीकार करना |
| Cloud over | अस्पष्ट करना, ढकना |
| Come about | होना |
| Come across | संयोग से मिलना |
| Come after | पीछा करना |
| Come along | जल्दी करना |
| Come at | पहुँचना, प्राप्त करना |
| Come at | हमला करना |
| Come away from | से अलग होना, जुदा होना |
| Come back | लौटना, वापस आना |
| Come between | संबंध में हस्तक्षेप करना |
| Come by | प्रयास से प्राप्त करना |
| Come down | उतरना, गिरना, नीचे आना |
| Come forward | अपने आपको प्रस्तुत करना |
| Come in | अन्दर आना |
| Come in for | हासिल करना |
| Come in on | भाग लेना |
| Come of | संतान होना, से आना |
| Come off | होना, हटाये जाने योग्य होना |
| Come off | से अलग होना |
| Come on | पीछे आना |
| Come out | बाहर निकलना, प्रकाशित होना |
| Come out with | कहना |
| Come over | दूर से आना |
| Come round | चक्कर काटकर आना |
| Come through | गंभीर बीमारी, घाव आदि से चंगा होना |
| Come to | होश में आना |
| Come under | के अधीन होना |
| Come up | प्रस्तुत होना, उठना |
| Come up with | सामना करना |
| Come up to | पहुँचना |
| Come upon | आक्रमण करना |
| Come down | शांत होना |

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Count on/upon | भरोसा करना |
| Crop with | बोना |
| Crop up | आशा के विपरीत दिखाई पड़ना |
| Crowd round | गोलबंद होना |
| Cry down | निंदा करना |
| Cry for | माँग करना |
| Cry off | मुकर जाना |
| Cry out | चिल्लाना |
| Cry up | प्रयास करना, बढ़ा-चढ़ा कर कहना |
| Cut across | ज्यादा छोटा मार्ग से गुजरना |
| Cut away | काट कर हटा देना |
| Cut back | घटाना |
| Cut down | काटकर गिराना, छोटा करना |
| Cut down on | खपत में कमी करना |
| Cut into | हस्तक्षेप करना |
| Cut in | हस्तक्षेप करना |
| Cut off | काटकर अलग करना |
| Cut out | कार्य करना बंद कर देना |
| Cut out | काटकर हटाना |
| Cut up | बर्बाद कर देना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'D'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Deal in | का व्यवसाय करना, बेचना |
| Deal with | संबंध रखना |
| Deal with | के बारे में होना |
| Deal with | व्यवहार करना, लेन-देन करना, विवेचन करना |
| Die away | क्षीण हो जाना, शांत हो जाना |
| Die down | क्षीण होना, कम होना (उत्तेजना आदि) |
| Die for | गहरी इच्छा या चाह रखना |
| Die off | एक-एक कर मरना |
| Die out | विलीन होना, विलुप्त होना |
| Dig out | खोद कर निकालना |
| Dig up | उखाड़ फेंकना |
| Do away with | मिटा देना, छुटकारा पाना |
| Do down | धोखा देकर किसी से फायदा लेना |
| Do with | उपयोग करना, काम चलाना |
| Do without | के बिना काम चलाना, पर आश्रित न होना |
| Drag into | जबर्दस्ती घसीटना, शामिल करना |
| Drag on | सुस्त ढंग से चलना |
| Drag on | लम्बा खींचना |
| Drag up | बुरे ढंग से पालन-पोषण करना |
| Drain away/off | बहाना, निकालना, बहना, निकलना |
| Draw back | पीछे हटना, अनिच्छा जाहिर करना |
| Draw in | ज्यादा छोटा होना |
| Draw on | पहुँचना |
| Draw out | विस्तारित करना |
| Dream up | किसी वाहन का रुकना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Draw away | सुस्ती से समय गुजारना |
| Dress down | कठोरता से भर्त्सना करना, भर्त्सना करना, बुरी तरह मारना |
| Drink in | सोखना, चूसना |
| Drink down/off/up | एक बार में गटगट कर पी जाना |
| Drive out | भगा देना |
| Drop away | (संख्या/मात्रा में) कम हो जाना |
| Drop across | अचानक मिलना |
| Drop back | अलग हो जाना |
| Drop in | किसी के यहाँ अकस्मात जाना, कभी-कभी जाना |
| Drop off | (संख्या/मात्रा में) कम हो जाना |
| Drop out | अलग हो जाना, हटना |
| Dry up | सूखना, सुखाना |
| Dwell on/ upon | किसी चीज के बारे में विस्तार से सोचना, बोलना या लिखना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'E'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Eat into | खा जाना, नष्ट करना |
| Eat up | सब खजाना |
| End off | समाप्त करना |
| Enter into | प्रारंभ करना, खोलना |
| Enter into | के साथ सहानुभूति दिखाना |
| Enter on/upon | आरम्भ करना |
| Explain away | व्याख्या द्वारा समझाना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'F'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Fade away | धीरे-धीरे नजरों से या याददाश्त से गायब होना |
| Fall away | खिसकना, छोड़ना |
| Fall back | हार मानना, पीठ दिखाना |
| Fall behind | पिछड़ जाना, पीछे छूट जाना |
| Fall down on | असफल होना |
| Fall flat | विफलभावी होना |
| Fall for | मुग्ध हो जाना, प्रभावित होना |
| Fall in | धँस जाना, दरार पड़ जाना |
| Fall off | (संख्या/मात्रा में) कम होना |
| Fall on/upon | टूट पड़ना, आक्रमण करना |
| Fall out with | झगड़ा करना, मतभेद हो जाना, घटित होना |
| Fall through | असफल होना, व्यर्थ होना |
| Feel for | टटोलना, खोजना |
| Feel out | दूसरे का विचार जानने की सावधानीपूर्वक कोशिश करना |
| Feel up to | योग्य होना |
| Fight off | भगा देना, के विरुद्ध संघर्ष करना |
| Fill out | फूला देना, फूल जाना |
| Fill up | पूरा भरना |
| Find out | पता लगाना, खोज निकालना |
| Finish off/up | पूरी तरह खा जाना |
| Follow out | अंत तक अनुसरण करना, जारी रखना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'G'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Get about | धीरे-धीरे फैल जाना |
| Get ahead | बढ़ना, प्रगति करना, अग्रसर होना |
| Get along | प्रबंध करना |
| Get along with | सहमत होना |
| Get at | पहुँचना |
| Get away | बचकर निकल जाना, भाग जाना |
| Get back | सत्ता में लौटना |
| Get by | जिन्दा रहना |
| Get down | निगल जाना |
| Get in | पहुँचना |
| Get into | पहनना |
| Get off | प्रस्थान करना |
| Get on | आगे बढ़ना, समृद्ध होना |
| Get on with (somebody) | दोस्ताना रूप से रहना या काम करना |
| Get on with something | जारी रखना |
| Get out | प्रकट होना, खुल जाना, प्रस्थान करना |
| Get over | भूलना |
| Get round | फुसला लेना, फँसा लेना |
| Get through | पहुँचाना, सम्पर्क करना |
| Get through | परीक्षा आदि में सफल होना |
| Get up | उठना, चढ़ना |
| Get somebody up | जगाना, उठाना |
| Give away | वितरण करना |
| Give in | मान जाना, झुक जाना |
| Give out | समाप्त होना |
| Give up | त्याग देना |
| Go about | भ्रमण करना |
| Go ahead | उन्नति करना, विकास करना |
| Go along with | साथ देना |
| Go at | आक्रमण करना |
| Go away | चला जाना |
| Go away with | के साथ फरार होना |
| Go back on | वादा से मुकर जाना |
| Go by | गुजरना |
| Go down | डूबना |
| Go down | कम होना, घटना |
| Go for | आक्रमण करना |
| Go forward | आगे बढ़ना |
| Go in | प्रवेश करना |
| Go off | विस्फोट होना, बन्दूक आदि छूटना |
| Go on | जारी रखना, आगे बढ़ाना |
| Go out | बुझ जाना |
| Go over | छानबीन करना |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Go through | पार करना, से होकर गुजरना, सहना |
| Go through | पास होना, अनुमोदित होना |
| Go under | असफल होना, दिवालिया होना |
| Go up | उठना |
| Grow on/upon | अधिक नियंत्रण प्राप्त करना, ज्यादा जड़ जमा लेना |
| Grow up | परिपक्व होना, बड़ा होना, सयाना होना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'H'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Hand down | सौंपना, परम्परागत ढंग से देना |
| Hand over | दूसरे को देना, भेजना |
| Hand somebody/ some thing over | सौंप देना, प्रभार सौंपना |
| Hang about | भटकना, बिना किसी उद्देश्य के खड़ा रहना |
| Hang back | हिचकिचाना, अनिच्छा जाहिर करना |
| Hang on | जकड़कर पकड़ना |
| Hang out | दिखाना, प्रदर्शित करना |
| Have something back | वापस पाना |
| Hear out | अन्त तक सुनना |
| Help out | किसी की परेशानी में किसी की मदद करना |
| Hit out | जबर्दस्त हमला करना |
| Hit on/upon | हाथ आना, सूझ पड़ना |
| Hold back | हिचकिचाना, अनिच्छा जाहिर करना |
| Hold back | प्रगति में बाधक होना |
| Hold in | नियंत्रण में रखना, रोकना |
| Hold off | दूर रहना |
| Hold off | परे रखना, दूर रखना |
| Hold on | परेशानी आदि में डटे रहना |
| Hold on | रुकना |
| Hold out | प्रतिरोध बनाए रखना, रास्ता न देना |
| Hold over | स्थगित करना |
| Hold up | रोककर रखना, लूटने के लिए रोकना |
| Hold with | का पक्ष लेना, समर्थन करना, अनुमोदन करना |
| Hunger after/for something | किसी चीज के लिए तीव्र लालसा रखना तथा उसे पाने का प्रयास करना |
| Hunt down | खोज डालना, छान मारना, हस्ती मिटाना |
| Hunt for | खोजना, ढूंढने का प्रयास करना |
| Hunt out | खोजते हुए पाने का प्रयास करना |
| Hush up | छिपाना, दबा लेना, शांत होना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'I'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Idle away | अनावश्यक कार्य में समय बिताना |
| Imbue with | भरना, प्रेरित करना |
| Inquire about/ upon | जानकारी माँगना |
| Inquire after | किसी व्यक्ति के स्वास्थ होने के बारे में पूछना |
| Inquire for | माँगना |
| Inquire into | छानबीन करना, जाँच पड़ताल करना |
| Insist on | जोर देना, घोषणा करना कि कोई उद्देश्य नहीं बदला जा सकता है |
| Interfere with | बाधा उत्पन्न करना या रोकना |
| Itch for | कोई चीज बहुत अधिक चाहना |
| Impress some-thing on/upon somebody | किसी व्यक्ति को जोर देकर बताना कि कोई चीज कितनी महत्वपूर्ण या गंभीर है। |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'J'

| Phrasa verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Jump at | उत्सुकता से स्वीकार करना |
| Jump on/upon | हमला करना, घोर निन्दा करना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'K'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Keep away from something | दूर रहना |
| Keep back | रोक लेना, दबा लेना |
| Keep down | दबा देना, दमन करना |
| Keep in with | के साथ दोस्ताना या अच्छा संबंध बनाये रखना |
| Keep off | दूर रहना, नहीं आना |
| Keep on | जारी रखना |
| Keep out | बाहर रहना |
| Keep to | स्वयं को सीमित रखना |
| Keep under | अधीन करना, दबा देना |
| Keep up | जारी रखना, अच्छी अवस्था में बनाए रखना |
| Keep up with | समान दूरी, स्थान या चाल में चलना |
| Kick somebody out | निष्कासित करना |
| Knock about | बार-बार चोट या ठोकर मारना |
| Knock about/ around | इधर-उधर घूमना, यात्रा करना और अनुभव प्राप्त करना |
| Knock down | मार कर गिरा देना |
| Knock off | बंद कर देना, काम छोड़ देना |
| Knock somebody up | जगाना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'L'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Lash out | तीव्र प्रहार करना |
| Laugh at | का उपहास उड़ाना |
| Laugh down | हँसते हुए अस्वीकृत कर देना |
| Laugh off | हँसकर बचना, छुटकारा पाना |
| Launch out | प्रारंभ करना |
| Launch out into | प्रारंभ करना |
| Lay about | उग्र रूप से प्रहार करना |
| Lay aside | बचत करना |
| Lay before | उपस्थित करना, पेश करना |
| Lay down | स्थापित करना |
| Lay in | ले रखना, जमा करना |
| Lay off | अस्थायी तौर पर निकाल देना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Lay off | आराम करना, काम बंद करना |
| Lay on | लगाना |
| Lay out | व्यय करना |
| Lay under | नियंत्रण में करना |
| Lay up | बिस्तर पर पड़े रहने के लिए बाध्य होना |
| Leave off | रुक जाना, बंद कर देना |
| Leave out | हटा देना |
| Leave over | स्थगित करना |
| Let in | प्रवेश करने देना |
| Let off | क्षमा करना, बाध्य न करना, सजा न देना |
| Let out | निकालना, बहाना |
| Let through | परीक्षा आदि में सफल होने देना |
| Let up | कम होना |
| Lie back | आराम की मुद्रा में पड़े रहना |
| Lie on/upon | आश्रित होना |
| Lie over | भविष्य के लिए छोड़ दिया जाना |
| Lie down | कलंक दूर करना |
| Live for | किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु को अपने जीवन का मुख्य उद्देश्य मानना |
| Live on | जीना जारी रखना |
| Live on something | भोजन के रूप में लेना |
| Live through | अनुभव करना और जीना |
| Live up to | अपने विश्वासों या सिद्धांतों को अमल में लाना |
| Live with something | स्वीकार्य तथा सहन करना |
| Look about for | के लिए खोज में रहना |
| Look after | देखभाल करना |
| Look down on | तिरस्कार की दृष्टि से देखना |
| Look for | ढूँढना, खोजना |
| Look forward to | आशा करना |
| Look in/on somebody | थोड़ी देर के लिए भेंट करना |
| Look into | निरीक्षण या अनुसंधान करना |
| Look on | दर्शक होना, देखना |
| Look out | तैयार रहना, ताक में रहना |
| Look over | छानबीन करना, परीक्षण करना |
| Look round | कोई निर्णय लेने से पहले संभावनाओं पर विचार करना |
| Look through | दोहराना, अध्ययन करना |
| Look to somebody | निर्भर करना |
| Look to something | किसी चीज के प्रति/के बारे में सावधान होना |
| Look up | ढूँढ निकालना |
| Look up | आँखें उठाना, मूल्य तथा उन्नति में प्रगति करना, सुधार होना |
| Look up to | इज्जत करना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'M'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Make after | पीछा करना |
| Make at | आक्रामक होते हुए बढ़ना |
| Make away with | आत्महत्या करना |
| Make for | पर आक्रमण करना |
| Make of | समझना, व्याख्या करना |
| Make off | बचने के ख्याल से जल्दी करना |
| Make off something | चुरा कर भाग जाना |
| Make out | निकालना, पता लगाना |
| Make some body/ something over | परिवर्तित करना |
| Make up | पूरा करना |
| Make up for | क्षतिपूर्ति करना |
| Meet with | अनुभव करना |
| Mess about | मूर्खतापूर्ण व्यवहार करना |
| Mess up | गड़बड़ या घायल करना |
| Move in | नये घर में प्रवेश करना |
| Move out | रहने का स्थान छोड़ देना |
| Move on | चलना, बढ़ना, सिपाही के चलने का संकेत करना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'N'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Nestle up/against/to | अपने आप को प्रेमपूर्वक चिपकाना |
| Nose something out | सूँघ कर पता लगाना |
| Note down | नोट बनाना, याद रखने के लिए लिख लेना |
| Nuzzle up/against/to | नाक रगड़ना, धकेलना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'O'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Offend against | गलत करना, हमला करना |
| Open with | प्रारंभ होना |
| Opt for something | चुनना, पर निर्णय करना |
| Opt out for | भाग न लेने का निर्णय करना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'P'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Part with | त्याग देना, छोड़ देना |
| Pass away | मर जाना, गुजर जाना |
| Pass for | स्वीकृत होना |
| Pass of | घटना आदि होना, सम्पन्न होना |
| Pass of | दर्द, संकट आदि समाप्त होना |
| Pass on | मर जाना |
| Pass out | स्कूल, कॉलेज आदि कोई परीक्षा पास करने पर छोड़ना |
| Pass over | ध्यान न देना, अनदेखी करना |
| Pass through | से गुजरना, झेलना |
| Pay back | ऋण लौटाना, चुकाना |
| Pay for | दर्द या सजा के रूप में कीमत अदा करना |
| Pay off | चुकता करना, मुक्त करना/होना |
| Pay up | पूरा चुकता करना |
| Pick off | नोचना, तोड़ना, अलग करना |


yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Pick out | छाँट लेना, चुनकर अलग करना |
| Pick up | पकड़ कर उठा लेना |
| Play at | सिर्फ आनंद के लिए खेलना, भाग जाना |
| Play on/upon | से लाभ उठाना |
| Play with | के साथ खिलवाड़ करना |
| Pull about | बुरे ढंग से व्यवहार करना |
| Pull apart | छोटे-छोटे टुकड़े में फाड़ देना |
| Pull down | ध्वस्त करना |
| Pull off | प्रतियोगिता में जीतना, सफल होना |
| Pull out | अलग कर देना |
| Pull in | आकर्षित करना |
| Pull round | बीमारी, कमजोरी आदि से चंगा होना |
| Pull through | परेशानियों या खतरों को टालने में सफल होना |
| Pull up | डाँटना, फटकारना |
| Pull up | थोड़ी देर के लिए रोकना |
| Push along | व्यक्ति या स्थान छोड़ना |
| Push off | जाना, प्रस्थान करना |
| Push over | गिरा देना, उलट देना |
| Push through | विशेष प्रयास के द्वारा किसी चीज को निष्कर्ष की स्थिति में लाना या पहुँचाना |
| Push something up | मूल्य आदि को बढ़ने के लिए बाध्य करना |
| Put something about | अफवाह या सूचना आदि फैलाना |
| Put across | किसी चीज को सफलतापूर्वक प्रस्तुत कर देना, बता देना |
| Put aside | बचाना, बचत करना |
| Put away | दराज, आलमीरा, पॉकेट आदि में यथास्थान रखना |
| Put back | पीछे हटाना, गतिरोध करना, स्थगित करना |
| Put by | भविष्य के लिए बचाकर रखना |
| Put down | दमन करना, दबा देना |
| Put down to | श्रेय देना |
| Put somebody down for | किसी सूची में नाम दर्ज करना |
| Put in | देना, समर्पित करना |
| Put in for | के लिए आवेदन करना |
| Put off | स्थगित करना |
| Put on | पहन लेना, धारण करना |
| Put on | टेप, रेडियो आदि खोल देना |
| Put something out | बुझा देना |
| Put through | जारी रखना |
| Put up | उठाना, खड़ा करना |
| Put upon | अनुचित लाभ उठाना |
| Put up with | बर्दाश्त करना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'Q'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Qualify for something | के लिए योग्य होना |
| Quarrel with | असहमत होना, मानने से इंकार कर देना |
| Quest for | खोजना |
| Queue up | कतार में आना, होना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'R'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Read out | बोल कर पढ़ना |
| Rub in | किसी बात पर पूरी तरह जोर देना |
| Rub off | रगड़कर साफ करना |
| Rub out | रबड़ से मिटाना |
| Rule out | योग्य नहीं मानना, के प्रश्न से बाहर मानना |
| Run across | अनौपचारिक रूप से थोड़ी देर के लिए जाना |
| Run after | पकड़ने की कोशिश करना |
| Run away | भाग जाना |
| Run down | कुचल देना |
| Run somebody in | हिरासत में लेना |
| Run into | टकरा जाना |
| Run off | चुराना और लेकर भाग जाना |
| Run out | समाप्त हो जाना |
| Run over | कुचल देना, रौंद डालना |
| Run through | उड़ा देना, खर्च कर देना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'S'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| See about | प्रबंध करना, इंतजाम करना |
| See off | विदा करना |
| See out | द्वार से बाहर तक पहुँचा देना, अंत तक देखना |
| See over | पर्यवेक्षण करना |
| See through | समझना, भाँपना, किसी से धोखा न खाना |
| See to | देख-रेख करना |
| Sell out | सारा बेच देना |
| Sell off | पैसे के अभाव में सस्ते में बेच देना |
| Send down | निष्कासित कर देना, नाम काट देना |
| Send something down | गिराना |
| Send for | बुला भेजना |
| Send out | फैलाना, बाँटना |
| Send out | पैदा करना, उत्पन्न करना |
| Set about | शुरू करना, हाथ में लेना |
| Set somebody against somebody | भिड़ा देना |
| Set apart | किसी खास उद्देश्य के लिए अलग करना और उसी उद्देश्य के लिए उपयोग में लाना |
| Set aside | भविष्य में उपयोग करना, अलग रखना |
| Set aside | अस्वीकृत कर देना |
| Set back | उन्नति में रुकावट डालना |
| Set down | बस आदि रोककर उतार देना |
| Set forth | घोषित करना, किसी विचार, बहस के बारे में बात करना |
| Set in | प्रारंभ होना |
| Set off | प्रस्थान करना, यात्रा शुरू करना |
| Set on | आक्रमण करने के लिए उकसाना |
| Set out | कोशिश करना |
| Set out | प्रस्थान करना, रवाना होना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Set to | जोश से शुरू करना, लगना |
| Set up | खड़ा या प्रारंभ करना |
| Set upon | हमला करना |
| Settle down | आराम से बैठना या लेटना |
| Settle in | नये घर या स्कूल में रहने के लिए अभ्यस्त होना |
| Settle on | चुनना, लेने के लिए निर्णय करना |
| Settle up | चुकता कर देना |
| Shake off | मुक्त कर लेना |
| Shake out | फैल जाना/छितरा जाना |
| Shake up | मिलाना |
| Show somebody in/into | अंदर ले जाना |
| Show off | प्रदर्शन करना, दिखावा करना, इठलाना |
| Show somebody out | बाहर ले जाना |
| Show somebody over/round/around | दिखाने के लिए जाना |
| Smile upon | पक्ष लेना, मदद करना |
| Shut down | दुकान आदि का बंद होना |
| Shut in | घेरना, कैद करना |
| Shut off | बंद होना या करना |
| Sleep in | सोना जारी रखना |
| Slip away | चुप-चाप चला जाना, विलुप्त होना, मरना |
| Shut out | रोकना, भीतर न आने देना |
| Shut up | जबान को लगाम देना, चुप कर देना |
| Sit back | आराम से बैठ जाना |
| Sit down | बैठ जाना, स्थान ग्रहण करना |
| Sit on/upon | जाँच के लिए बैठना |
| Sit out | भाग न लेना |
| Sit up | उठ बैठना |
| Stand against | का विरोध करना |
| Stand back | पीछे लौटना |
| Stand by | समर्थन करना, का पक्ष लेना, निभाना |
| Stand down | किसी के पक्ष में उम्मीदवारी वापस लेना, साक्षी का कटघरे से उतरना |
| Stand for | उम्मीदवार होना |
| Stand in | हिस्सा बाँटना |
| Stand off | अलग रहना, अलग हट जाना |
| Stand out | प्रमुख होना, श्रेष्ठ होना, स्पष्ट दिखाई देना |
| Stand with | के अनुकूल होना, के संगत होना |
| Stave something off | दूर रखना, विलम्ब करना |
| Stay away | अप्रिय व्यक्ति या वस्तु के पास नहीं जाना |
| Stay off | दूर रखना, वापिस नहीं आना |
| Stay out | घर से बाहर ठहरना |
| Stay out | हड़ताल पर रहना |
| Stay up | बिछावन पर नहीं जाना |
| Step out | तेजी से बाहर निकलना, बाहर कदम बढ़ाना |
| Step down | त्याग पत्र देना |
| Step in | मदद करने के लिए हस्तक्षेप करना |

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Step up | बढ़ाना |
| Stick at | जारी रखना |
| Stick out | बाहर निकालना |
| Stick to | के प्रति विश्वासी होना, |
| Stick up | डटे रहना |
| Stick up for | बचाव करना, पक्ष लेना |
| Stick with | वफादार होना |
| Stop by | थोड़ी देर के लिए आना या जाना |
| Stop off | विश्राम करना, पड़ाव डालना, घर से बाहर ठहरना |
| Stop out | घर से बाहर ठहरना |
| Stop over | यात्रा में मध्य विश्राम करना, पड़ाव डालना |
| Strike at | व्यक्ति या वस्तु पर प्रहार या वार करना |
| Strike somebody down | मार कर गिरा देना |
| Strike off | नाम काट देना, हटा देना |
| Strike on | आशा के विपरीत पाना |
| Strike up | दोस्ती या परिचय शुरू करना |
| Sum up | संक्षेप में वर्णन करना |
| Switch off | बंद करना |
| Switch on | चालू करना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'T'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Talk back to | उद्दण्डता से जवाब देना |
| Talk somebody down | मुँह बंद कर देना |
| Talk over/round | समझा लेना, अपनी बात मनवा लेना |
| Take after | समान होना, सदृश दिखना |
| Take away from | कम करना, कमजोर करना, घटाना |
| Take back | वापस ले लेना |
| Take off | उड़ान भरना |
| Take down | लिख लेना |
| Take in | घर में जगह देना |
| Take off | उतारना/हटाना |
| Take somebody/something on | जिम्मेदार होना, जिम्मेदारी ग्रहण करना |
| Take something out | निकालना, दूर करना, हटाना |
| Take over | उत्तरदायित्व लेना, का भार लेना |
| Take to | आकर्षित होना और पसंद करना |
| Take to | नियमित शुरू करना |
| Take up | उठाना |
| Take up with | के बारे में लिखना या बोलना |
| Take apart | फाड़कर टुकड़े-टुकड़े कर देना |
| Tear away from | हटना, कोई काम करना बंद कर देना |
| Tear down | पूरी तरह से बर्बाद कर देना |
| Tear up | टुकड़े-टुकड़े कर देना |
| Tell apart | अंतर करना |
| Tell from | अंतर करना |
| Tell off | डाँटना फटकारना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Think back | गुजरी हुई चीजों को याद करना |
| Think of | विचार करना |
| Think something out | सावधानीपूर्वक सोचकर योजना बनाना |
| Think something over | निर्णय करने के पहले सावधानीपूर्वक विचार करना, गौर करना |
| Think through | प्रभावों या नतीजों पर विचार करना |
| Think about | जाँचना, विचार करना |
| Think up | सोच निकालना |
| Throw about | फैला देना, बिखेर देना |
| Throw away | मूर्खता या असावधानी के कारण खो देना |
| Throw in | बिना मूल्य बढ़ोतरी के कुछ अतिरिक्त चीज की आपूर्ति करना |
| Throw off | छुटकारा पाने में सफल होना |
| Throw on/upon | पर छोड़ देना |
| Throw out | अनायास बोल देना |
| Throw somebody over | संबंध विच्छेद करना, त्याग देना, छोड़ देना |
| Throw up | अचानक इस्तीफा देना, त्यागपत्र देना |
| Touch up | तस्वीर, लेख आदि को बेहतर करने के लिए थोड़ा बहुत परिवर्तन करना |
| Touch on/ upon | का उल्लेख करना, थोड़ा-सा प्रकाश डालना |
| Try on | वस्त्र आदि को आजमा कर देखना |
| Try out | की परीक्षा लेना |
| Tumble down | गिर जाना |
| Tumble over | लुढ़क पड़ना, गिर पड़ना |
| Turn against | दुश्मन बन जाना |
| Turn away | नौकरी से निकाल देना/हटा देना |
| Turn back | लौटाना, वापस कर देना |
| Turn down | अस्वीकार करना, रद्द कर देना |
| Turn into | हो जाना/बन जाना |
| Turn off | दिशा बदलना |
| Turn on | निर्भर करना |
| Turn out | निकाल बाहर करना |
| Turn out | सिद्ध होना |
| Turn over | लुढ़कना/ लुढ़काना |
| Turn to | की ओर मुड़ना या उन्मुख होना, की सहायता माँगना |
| Turn up | उपस्थित होना |
| Turn upon | पर अश्रित होना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'U'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Use up | उपयोग करना |
| Usher in | नई चीज का प्रारंभ होना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'V'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Vouch for | के लिए जिम्मेवार होना |
| Vote down | मतदान के द्वारा हराना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'W'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Wait about/around | किसी से मिलने के पूर्व बिना मतलब के बहुत समय गुजार देना |
| Wait on | नौकर के रूप में सेवा करना |
| Wait up | सजग रहना |
| Wait upon | इंतजार करना, सेवा में प्रस्तुत होना |
| Wake up | जागना/जगाना |
| Wake up to | होश में आना/चौंक उठना |
| Walk away from | आसानी से छोड़ देना/ नष्ट कर देना |
| Walk into | में फँस जाना |
| Walk in on | परेशान करना |
| Walk off | छोड़ना, अलग होना, पीछा छोड़ना |
| Walk off with | चुरा ले जाना, बिना पूछे ले जाना |
| Walk out | हड़ताल पर चला जाना |
| Walk up | पहुँचना |
| Wash away/off/out | धोकर हटाना |
| Wash something down | धो डालना |
| Wash up | बर्तन आदि माँजना |
| Watch for | के बारे में सावधान रहना |
| Watch out | सावधान रहना, सतर्क रहना |
| Watch over | देख-रेख करना, रक्षा करना |
| Wave aside | दरकिनार कर देना, खारिज कर देना |
| Wave down | हाथ दिखाकर गाड़ी रोकना |
| Wave off | विदा करना |
| Wind down | बंद करना (व्यवसाय) |
| Wind up | समापन करना या होना |
| Wipe away/off | पोंछ कर हटा देना |
| Wipe out | अस्तित्व मिटा देना |
| Wipe up | किसी चीज से/पर धूल तरल को कपड़े से हटा देना |
| Work away at | कार्य जारी रखना |
| Work off | गुस्सा या परेशानी पर काबू पाना, छुटकारा पाना |
| Work on/upon | प्रभावित या उत्तेजित करना |
| Work out | हल करना |
| Work up | उत्तेजित करना, भड़काना |
| Write down as | के रूप में वर्णन करना |
| Write down | लिखना |
| Write out | सविस्तार लिखना |
| Write up | प्रकाशन के लिए काम करना, लेखक का काम करना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'Y'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Yearn for | तीव्र लालसा रखना |
| Yell out | तेज आवाज में चिल्लाना |

## Phrasal verbs starting with 'Z'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|
| Zip through | किसी चीज को बहुत तेजी से करना या पढ़ना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Fill in the blanks choosing the suitable option given below each sentence:*

1. The teacher gives many examples to ..... the idea contained in the poem.
   (a) bring about (b) bring in
   (c) bring forth (d) bring out [SSC (Audit) 2003]
2. Ram agreed to ..... my orders.
   (a) carry away (b) carry on
   (c) carry out (d) carry off
   [RRB (Guwahati) 1999]
3. He generally ..... at an odd hour.
   (a) turns over (b) turn on
   (c) turns up (d) turns off
   [I.S.C (Metro Railway 2003]
4. On account of overwork, he is .....
   (a) run down (b) runs down
   (c) ran out (d) run up
   [RRB (Guwahati) 1999]
5. Rita always sets her alarm so that she can ..... at 8 a.m.
   (a) think over (b) write down
   (c) think through (d) wake up
   [IGNOU (BED) 2003]
6. The old man ..... without any trouble last night.
   (a) passed away (b) passed for
   (c) passed by (d) passed out
7. The doctor advised me to ..... drinking.
   (a) give out (b) give up
   (c) give back (d) give over
8. I have ..... the business to my eldest son.
   (a) handed out (b) handed over
   (c) handed round (d) handed back
9. The sick man ..... last night.
   (a) passed away (b) passed by
   (c) passed down (d) passed for
10. You are unable to ..... the meaning of this passage.
   (a) make off (b) make out
   (c) make over (d) make up.

**Q. 2.** *Choose the suitable option that describes the meaning of the words or phrases printed in italics in each of the following sentences :*

1. He frequently *goes back on his words.*
   (a) repeat his words (b) confuses others
   (c) stumbles (d) breaks his promises
   [Indian Bank (P.O.) 2003]
2. I cannot *make out* what you say.
   (a) rely upon (b) believe
   (c) understand (d) solve
   [Hotel Management (Kolkata) 2003]
3. The party high command wanted to *stave off* an open battle.
   (a) postpone (b) wait and see
   (c) allow it to take its own course
   (d) prevent [SSC (Audit) 2003]
4. No one but his conscience advised him to *come back to* earth
   (a) return home (b) return to earth
   (c) return to reality (d) be honest
   [RRB(Bhopal) 2001]
5. Ramesh *takes after* his father.
   (a) follows (b) imitates (c) obeys (d) resembles
   [SSC (Audit) 2003]
6. The country's economy is beginning to *look up* now.
   (a) remain static (b) improve
   (c) look clear (d) go down [NDA 1995]
7. I cannot put up with that nasty fellow.
   (a) appreciate (b) endure
   (c) control (d) forgive [Bank (P.O) 1999]
8. Too *look quickly through* a book is an important study skill.
   (a) to skim (b) to summarize
   (c) to outline (d) to paraphrase.
   [LIC (AAO) 2003]
9. As she was turning out some papers she *came across* the letter she had been looking for.
   (a) saw from a distance (b) found unexpectedly
   (c) touched (d) read quickly.
   [RRB (ASM) Bhopal 2001]
10. She tries very hard to *keep up* with her rich neighbours.
   (a) to imitate (b) to keep touch
   (c) to avoid (d) to be on par
   [SSC (Audit) 2003]

**Q. 3.** *Substitute the italicised idiomatic expression with an appropriate word/phrase without changing the meaning of the sentence :*

1. He *backed up* his friends claim. [C.P.O. 2003]
2. The present disturbances will soon *blow over.* [C.P.O. 2003]
3. I have *hit upon* a good plan to get rid of him. [C.P.O. 2204]
4. The matter has been *cleared off* and will soon be settled. [C.P.O. 2003]
5. I must *think over* the matter before taking a final decision. [C.P.O. 2004]
6. He *broke down* in the middle of his speech. [C.P.O. 2004]
7. His folly has *brought about* his rain. [C.P.O. 2004]
8. He has *made up* his mind to be a doctor.
9. She did not *put back* home last night.
10. He has *entered upon* a good career.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.**
1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (d) 6. (a) 7. (b)
8. (b) 9. (a) 10. (b)

**Q. 2.**
1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (c) 5. (d) 6. (b) 7. (b)
8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (a)

**Q. 3.**
1. backed up : supported
2. blow over : pass by, be forgotten
3. hit upon : found by chance or unexpectedly
4. cleared off : got rid of, made an end of.
5. Think over : consider further.
6. broke down : collapsed.
7. brought about : caused to happen
8. made up : came to a decision.
9. put back : return
10. entered upon : made a start on.

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 33 Words Often Confused

## Words Starting With 'A'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of Speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Accept | verb | स्वीकार करना |
| (b) | Except | preposition | सिवाय/छोड़कर |
| 2. (a) | Access | noun | पहुँच |
| (b) | Excess | noun | अधिकता |
| 3. (a) | Adapt | verb | अनुकूल बनाना या नया रूप देना |
| (b) | Adopt | verb | अपनाना, गोद लेना |
| (c) | Adept | adjective | कुशल, निपुण, दक्ष |
| 4. (a) | Addition | noun | बढ़ोतरी |
| (b) | Edition | noun | पुस्तक का संस्करण |
| 5. (a) | Adverse | adjective | दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण, अवांछनीय |
| (b) | Averse | adjective | किसी कार्य को करने में अनिच्छुक |
| 6. (a) | Affect | verb | प्रभावित करना |
| (b) | Effect | noun | प्रभाव |
| (c) | Effect | verb | लागू करना |
| 7. (a) | All ready | phrase | पूर्ण तैयार, सभी लोग और सभी चीज तैयार |
| (b) | Already | adjective | पहले से ही |
| 8. (a) | All together | phrase | एक साथ, साथ-साथ, सभी लोग मिलकर |
| (b) | Altogether | adverb | पूरी तरह से, पूर्णतः पूरी तौर पर |
| 9. (a) | All ways | phrase | सभी तरह से |
| (b) | always | adverb | हमेशा, सदा |
| 10.(a) | Altar | noun | पूजा की वेदी |
| (b) | Alter | verb | बदलना |
| 11.(a) | Amend | verb | सुधार करना |
| (b) | Emend | verb | किसी साहित्यिक कृति का संशोधन या सम्पादन करना |
| 12.(a) | Alternate | adjective | एक दिन छोड़कर |
| (b) | Alternative | noun | विकल्प |
| 13.(a) | Advice | noun | सलाह |
| (b) | Advise | verb | सलाह देना |
| 14.(a) | Answer | verb | प्रश्न का उत्तर देना |
| (b) | Reply | verb | किसी बात का उत्तर देना |
| 15.(a) | Angle | noun | कोण |
| (b) | Angel | noun | देवता |
| 16.(a) | Accident | noun | दुर्घटना |
| (b) | Incident | noun | घटना |
| 17.(a) | Abatement | noun | समापन, कमी, छूट, कटौती |
| (b) | Abetment | noun | उकसाहट, दुष्प्रेरण |
| 18.(a) | Accede | verb | स्थान प्राप्त करना, स्वीकार करना |
| (b) | Exceed | verb | अतिक्रमण करना, सीमा से बाहर जाना |
| 19.(a) | Accent | noun | स्वराघात, उच्चारण चिह्न |
| (b) | Assent | verb | सहमत होना, स्वीकृति देना |
| 20.(a) | Accomplish | verb | पूरा करना, सँवारना, निखारना |
| (b) | Accomplice | noun | सह अपराधी, सहकर्मी |
| 21.(a) | Acetic | adjective | तेजाबी, अम्लीय |
| (b) | Ascetic | noun | वैरागी, संन्यासी |
| 22.(a) | Action | noun | कर्म, कार्य, कार्यवाही |
| (b) | Auction | n/v | नीलाम, नीलाम करना |
| 23.(a) | Adage | noun | कहावत, लोकोक्ति |
| (b) | Edge | noun | किनारा, छोर |
| 24.(a) | Affection | noun | स्नेह, लगाव |
| (b) | Affectation | noun | बनावटीपन, ढोंग, दिखावा |
| 25.(a) | Affluence | noun | प्रचुरता, विपुलता |
| (b) | Effluence | noun | बहिष्प्रवाह, बहिःस्राव |
| 26.(a) | Air | noun | हवा, वायु |
| (b) | Heir | noun | उत्तराधिकारी |
| 27.(a) | Alien | noun | विदेशी, पराया, पंक्तिबद्ध करना |
| (b) | Align | verb | जोड़ना |
| 28.(a) | Ailment | noun | बीमारी |
| (b) | Element | noun | तत्व, अवयव |
| 29.(a) | All right | phrase | सब सही/ठीक है |
| (b) | Alright | | का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। |
| 30.(a) | All round | adjective | सर्वतोमुखी, चौतरफा |
| (b) | All around | phrase | चौतरफा |
| 31.(a) | Allude | verb | इशारा करना/संकेत करना |
| (b) | Elude | verb | बच निकलना, टालना |
| 32.(a) | Amoral | adjective | नीति निरपेक्ष, नीति बाह्य |
| (b) | Immoral | adjective | अनैतिक |
| 33.(a) | Antic | noun | विचित्र, विलक्षण हरकत जो दूसरों को हँसाने के उद्देश्य से की जाए |
| (b) | Antique | adjective | प्राचीन, पुरातन |
| 34.(a) | Appraise | verb | मूल्यांकन करना |
| (b) | Apprise | verb | सूचित करना, नोटिस देना |
| 35.(a) | Artist | noun | कलाप्रेमी, संगीत करना, कलाकार |
| (b) | Artiste | noun | नट, अभिनेता, गायक, कारीगर |
| 36.(a) | Ascent | noun | उत्थान, आरोहण, चढ़ाई |
| (b) | Assent | noun | अनुमति, सहमति, स्वीकृति |
| 37.(a) | Aspire | verb | आकांक्षा करना, महत्वाकांक्षा रखना, ऊँचा उठना |
| (b) | Expire | verb | बुझना, अन्त या खत्म होना |
| (c) | Inspire | verb | प्रेरित करना, प्रेरणा देना, दिमाग में विचार |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of Speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 38.(a) | Assay | noun | शुद्धता की परीक्षा, जाँच, निर्धारण, प्रयोग |
| (b) | Essay | noun | निबंध, साहित्यिक रचना |
| 39.(a) | Assess | verb | कर लगाना, जुर्माना करना मूल्यांकन करना, निर्धारित करना |
| (b) | Ashes | noun | भस्म, राख |
| 40.(a) | Attach | verb | लगाना, जोड़ना, जब्त करना, सम्मिलित करना |
| (b) | Attache | noun | राजदूत सहायक |
| 41.(a) | Aught | noun | कण, किंचित, कोई वस्तु, अंश |
| (b) | Ought | verb | चाहिए |
| 42.(a) | Aural | adjective | कर्ण संबंधी, कान से संबंधित |
| (b) | Oral | adjective | मौखिक, जबानी |
| 43.(a) | Axle | noun | धुरी, अक्ष |
| (b) | Excel | verb | उत्कृष्ट कार्य करना, आगे निकल जाना |
| 44.(a) | Avenge | verb | दूसरे के लिए बदला लेना |
| (b) | Revenge | verb | प्रतिशोध लेना |
| 45.(a) | Award | verb | प्रदान करना |
| (b) | Reward | noun | पुरस्कार |
| 46.(a) | Addicted (in bad sense) | adjective | आसक्त |
| (b) | Devoted (in good sense) | adjective | आसक्त |
| 47.(a) | Allusion | noun | प्रसंग, किसी बात की ओर संकेत |
| (b) | Illusion | noun | भ्रम |
| 48.(a) | Amiable | adjective | प्रिय |
| (b) | Amicable | adjective | शान्तिपूर्ण |
| 49.(a) | Abate | verb | कम होना |
| (b) | Abet | adjective | निपुण |
| 50.(a) | Ail | verb | तकलीफ देना |
| (b) | Ale | noun | शराब (liquor) |
| 51.(a) | Artistic | adjective | सुन्दर |
| (b) | Artful | adjective | चतुर |
| (c) | Artificial | adjective | कृत्रिम |
| 52.(a) | Apposite | adjective | उपयुक्त, उचित |
| (b) | Opposite | adjective | विलोम |
| 53.(a) | Avocation | noun | गौण पेशा |
| (b) | Vocation | noun | पेशा |
| 54.(a) | Abstain | verb | अलग रहना (वस्तु) |
| (b) | Refrain | verb | अलग रहना (कार्य) |
| 55.(a) | Avert | verb | हटाना, टालना |
| (b) | Revert | verb | पूर्व स्थिति में आना |
| 56.(a) | Application | noun | प्रार्थना पत्र |
| (b) | Implication | noun | फँसाव, उलझाव, अभिप्राय |
| 57.(a) | Apprehend | verb | विचारना, सोचना, शंका करना |
| (b) | Comprehend | verb | समझना, ग्रहण करना |
| 58.(a) | Advance | noun | उन्नति |
| (b) | Advacement | noun | उन्नति |
| 59.(a) | Acquit | verb | निर्दोष ठहराना, छुटकारा देना |
| (b) | Quit | verb | छोड़ना, त्यागना, ऋण चुकाना |
| 60.(a) | Afflict | adjective | पीड़ित |
| (b) | Inflict | verb | प्रहार करना |
| 61.(a) | Auspicious | adjective | शुभ करने वाला, अच्छे शकुन का |
| (b) | Auspices | noun | शकुन विचार, रक्षा, संरक्षण |
| 62.(a) | Alone | adj./adv. | अकेला, एक, अकेले |
| (b) | Lonely | adjective | अकेला ही, |
| 63.(a) | Appreciable | adjective | प्रशंसा करने योग्य |
| (b) | Appreciative | adjective | गुणग्राही |
| 64.(a) | Abject | adjective | घृणित |
| (b) | Object | noun | उद्देश्य |
| 65.(a) | Auger | noun | बरमा |
| (b) | Augur | verb | शकुन होना |
| 66.(a) | Affirm | verb | जोर देकर कहना, मान्यता देना |
| (b) | Confirm | verb | पुष्टि करना |
| 67.(a) | Assiduous | adjective | परिश्रमी, तत्पर |
| (b) | Sedulous | adjective | उद्यमी, परिश्रमी, कार्य में स्थिरता से लगा हुआ |
| 68.(a) | Antagonist | noun | वैरी, प्रतिपक्षी |
| (b) | Protagonist | noun | पहलवान, कथा या नाटक का प्रधान पुरुष |
| 69.(a) | Adherence | noun | अवलम्बन, लगाव, भक्ति, |
| (b) | Adhesion | noun | स्थिरता, अवलम्ब, चिपकाव, लगाव |
| 70.(a) | Accessory | noun | सहायक उपकरण |
| (b) | Accessary | noun | अपराध में सहायक होने वाला व्यक्ति |
| 71.(a) | Abjure | verb | सौगंध खाकर विचार, अधिकार, दावा आदि को छोड़ना |
| (b) | Adjure | verb | शपथ दिलाकर कोई बात पूछना, अनुरोध करना |
| 72.(a) | Assassinate | verb | राजनैतिक कारणों से धर्मान्धता के वशीभूत होकर किसी की हत्या करना |
| (b) | Kill | verb | जान से मारना, नष्ट करना |
| 73.(a) | Abdicate | verb | पद या सिंहासन का त्याग करना |
| (b) | Abrogate | verb | निरस्त करना, रद्द करना |
| (c) | Arrogate | verb | झूठा दावा करना, आरोपित करना |
| (d) | Derogate | verb | मान घटना, मान कम करना, अनादर करना |
| 74.(a) | Accumulative | adjective | संचित, इकट्ठा |
| (b) | Cumulative | adjective | लगातार बढ़ता हुआ, संचित |
| 75.(a) | Acquirement | noun | उपार्जन, योग्यता, कौशल |
| (b) | Acquisition | noun | प्राप्ति, उपलब्धि, |
| 76.(a) | Acumen | noun | निर्णय लेने की क्षमता, कुशाग्र या तेज बुद्धि, विवेक |
| (b) | Acuity | noun | तीव्रता, तीक्ष्णता, कुशाग्रता |
| 77.(a) | Astronomy | noun | खगोल विज्ञान |
| (b) | Astrology | noun | ज्योतिष शास्त्र |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

| S.N. | Words | Parts of Speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 78. (a) | Autumn | noun | पतझड़ का मौसम |
| (b) | Autumnal | adjective | अधेड़ उम्र का |
| 79. (a) | Awesome | adjective | भयानक |
| (b) | Awful | adjective | भयानक |
| 80. (a) | Aviary | noun | चिड़ियाखाना |
| (b) | Apiary | noun | मधुमक्खी पालन का स्थान |

## Words Starting With 'B'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Bail | noun | जमानत |
| (b) | Bale | noun | गठरी, बंडल, गट्ठर |
| 2. (a) | Brake | noun | ब्रेक |
| (b) | Break | verb | तोड़ना |
| 3. (a) | Born | verb | पैदा करना |
| (b) | Borne | verb | सहन करना |
| 4. (a) | Beer | noun | जौ की शराब |
| (b) | Bear | noun | रीछ, भालू, मंदड़िया |
| (c) | Bear | verb | सहन करना, पैदा करना |
| (d) | Bare | adjective | नंगा, खुला हुआ, अर्जर |
| 5. (a) | Buy | verb | खरीदना |
| (b) | By | preposition | से, के द्वारा |
| 6. (a) | Blue | Adjective | नीला |
| (b) | Blew | verb (P. Tense) | बजाया |
| 7. (a) | Beside | preposition | पास, के बगल, समीप में |
| (b) | Besides | preposition | अतिरिक्त |
| 8. (a) | Bacon | noun | सुअर का मांस |
| (b) | Beacon | noun | संकेत प्रकाश, आकाशदीप |
| 9. (a) | Bad | adjective | बुरा, खराब |
| (b) | Bed | noun | शय्या, बिस्तर , पलंग, चारपाई |
| 10. (a) | Bag | noun | थैला, बोरा, झोला |
| (b) | Beg | verb | भीख माँगना, प्रतीक्षा में बैठे रहना, उत्सुकता से माँगना |
| 11. (a) | Bait | verb | जानवर या मछली पकड़ने के लिए चारा लगाना |
| (b) | Bat | noun | चमगादड़, बल्ला |
| 12. (a) | Bawl | verb | चिल्लाना, चीखना |
| (b) | Bowl | noun | प्याला, कटोरा |
| 13. (a) | Baron | noun | सामंत, नवाब, जमींदार |
| (b) | Barren | adjective | बंजर, बांझ, निरर्थक |
| (c) | Barn | noun | खलिहान, कोठार |
| 14. (a) | Better | verb | सुधारना |
| (b) | Better | Adjective | अधिक अच्छा, उन्नत |
| (c) | Batter | verb | फेंटना, बिगाड़ना, थकनाचूर करना |
| 15. (a) | Beach | noun | समुद्रतट |
| (b) | Bitch | noun | कुतिया |
| 16. (a) | Beautify | verb | आनंदित करना, धन्य घोषित करना |
| (b) | Beautify | verb | सुन्दर बनाना |

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 17. (a) | Beet | noun | चुकंदर |
| (b) | Beat | verb | पीटना, मारना, चोट पहुँचाना |
| 18. (a) | Bellow | verb | गरजना, चीखना, डकरना |
| (b) | Below | prep | नीचे, निचले स्थान पर |
| 19. (a) | Berth | noun | गाड़ी में सोने की जगह |
| (b) | Birth | noun | जन्म |
| 20. (a) | Biannual | adjective | साल में दो बार होने वाला |
| (b) | Biennial | adjective | द्वैवार्षिक |
| 21. (a) | Block | noun | प्रखंड, साँचा, पिंड, खंड |
| (b) | Bloc | noun | गुट, दल |
| 22. (a) | Blonde | adjective | गोरी, सुनहरी |
| (b) | Blond | adjective | गोरा, सुनहरा |
| 23. (a) | Breath | noun | सांस, श्वांस, दम |
| (b) | Breathe | verb | सांस लेना, दम लेना |
| 24. (a) | Bridal | adjective | विवाह संबंधी, वैवाहिक |
| (b) | Bridle | noun | लगाम, नियंत्रण, बागडोर |
| (c) | Bridle | verb | लगाम कसना, नियंत्रण रखना, बागडोर सँभालना |
| 25. (a) | Bustard | noun | सोहन चिड़िया (एक प्रकार की चिड़िया) |
| (b) | Bastard | noun | अवैध संतान, वर्ण संकर संतान, हरामी |
| 26. (a) | Bazaar | noun | बाजार |
| (b) | Bizarre | adjective | भद्दा, विचित्र |
| 27. (a) | Boar | noun | जंगली सुअर |
| (b) | Bore | verb | छेद करना |
| 28. (a) | Battle | noun | लड़ाई |
| (b) | War | noun | युद्ध |
| 29. (a) | Bill | noun | विधेयक |
| (b) | Act | noun | अधिनियम |
| 30. (a) | Board | noun | लकड़ी का टुकड़ा, तख्ता |
| (b) | Bored | adjective | ऊबा हुआ |
| 31. (a) | Border | noun | किनारा |
| (b) | Boarder | noun | वह जो किसी के साथ रहता है |
| 32. (a) | Barbarism | noun | असभ्यता की स्थिति |
| (b) | Barbarity | noun | क्रूरता |
| 33. (a) | Beneficial | adjective | लाभप्रद (वस्तु के लिए) |
| (b) | Beneficent | adjective | दयालु (व्यक्ति के लिए) |
| 34. (a) | Benevolent | adjective | दयालु |
| (b) | Beneficiary | adjective | वह जो लाभ पाता है |
| 35. (a) | Bury | verb | भूलना |
| (b) | Bery | noun | एक प्रकार का फल (बेरी) |
| 36. (a) | Blunder | noun | गंभीर गलती (a serious mistake) |
| (b) | Error | noun | त्रुटि |
| (c) | Mistake | noun | छोटी भूल/ गलती |
| 37. (a) | Baleful | adjective | बुरा, हानिकारक |
| (b) | Baneful | adjective | अभिशाप, खतरनाक, घातक हानिकारक |
| 38. (a) | Barbarous | adjective | निर्दयी, जंगली |
| (b) | Barbaric | adjective | गँवार, अभद्र, बर्बर |
| (c) | Barbarian | adjective | असभ्य, जंगली, बर्बर |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 39. (a) | Bereave | verb | वंचित करना, लूट लेना |
| (b) | Bereft | adjective | वंचित, महरूम |
| 40. (a) | Blatant | adjective | अतिस्पष्ट, निर्लज्जता एवं अशिष्टता से ध्यान आकर्षित करने वाला |
| (b) | Flagrant | adjective | घोर रूप से प्रत्यक्ष, निन्दाजनक |
| 41. (a) | Blench | verb | चौंकना, घबड़ाना, झिझकना |
| (b) | Blanch | verb | पीला पड़ जाना, गरम पानी से झुलसाना |
| 42. (a) | Blessed | adjective | सौभाग्यशाली, सम्मान के योग्य, सुखी |
| (b) | Blissful | adjective | परम सुख |
| 43. (a) | Bloom | verb | खिलना, फूलना |
| (b) | Blossom | verb | पुष्प खिलना |
| 44. (a) | Blush | verb | शर्म से चेहरा लाल पड़ जाना |
| (b) | Flush | verb | शौचघर आदि साफ करने के लिए पानी का तेज बहाव छोड़ना |
| 45. (a) | Boil | verb | उबलना |
| (b) | Broil | verb | आग पर भूनना, पकाना, अधिक गरम होना |
| 46. (a) | Boisterous | adjective | प्रचंड, प्रबल |
| (b) | Blusterous | adjective | अभिमानी, दंभी, कोलाहली, गरजने वाला |
| 47. (a) | Border | noun | किनारा, छोर, परिधि |
| (b) | Boundary | noun | सीमा, मर्यादा, अवधि |
| (c) | Frontier | noun | सीमान्त, सरहद |
| 48. (a) | Botch | verb/noun | पैबन्द लगाना, फोड़ा |
| (b) | Bodge | verb | अनाड़ी ढंग से रिपेयर करना |
| 49. (a) | Boycott | verb | बहिष्कार करना, भाग न लेना |
| (b) | Embargo | verb | जब्त करना अधिकार में लेना |
| 50. (a) | Breach | verb | सेंध लगाना, नियम भंग करना |
| (b) | Breach | noun | छिद्र, दरार |
| (c) | Breech | noun | बंदूक की नाली का पिछला भाग, चुतड़ |
| 51. (a) | Broach | verb | छेदना, चर्चा चलाना |
| (b) | Brooch | noun | साड़ी में लगाने वाला पिन |
| 52. (a) | Bustle | verb | उत्साह प्रदर्शित करना, जल्दी करना |
| (b) | Hustle | verb | जल्दी से चलना, धक्का देना |

## Words Starting With 'C'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Cattle | noun | पशु |
| (b) | Kettle | noun | केतली |
| 2. (a) | Cast | verb | फेंकना, झाड़ना, पटकना |
| (b) | Caste | noun | जाति, वर्ग |
| 3. (a) | Cheque | noun | चेक |
| (b) | Check | verb | जाँच पड़ताल करना |
| 4. (a) | Canvas | noun | खुरदरा कपड़ा, कैनवस, पाल, मोटा कपड़ा |
| (b) | Canvass | verb | मत याचना करना, वोट माँगना, आर्डर देना |
| 5. (a) | Cease | verb | बंद करना, रोकना |
| (b) | Seize | verb | बरामद होना, पकड़ना |
| 6. (a) | Cent | noun | एक सिक्का |
| (b) | Scent | noun | सुगन्ध, इत्र |
| 7. (a) | Childish | adjective | बच्चों जैसा, बचकाना (स्वभाव बुरे अर्थ में) |
| (b) | Childlike | adjective | भोला भाला (स्वभाव अच्छे अर्थ में) |
| 8. (a) | Choose | verb | चुनना, चुनाव करना |
| (b) | Chose | verb (P.T) | चुना |
| 9. (a) | Cite | verb | दृष्टान्त देना, उद्धृत करना |
| (b) | Sight | noun | दृश्य |
| (c) | Site | noun | स्थान |
| 10. (a) | Comic | adjective | मजाकिया या जान बूझकर बनाया गया रूप जिससे हँसी आए |
| (b) | Comical | adjective | भद्दा-फूहड़ रूप या बिना यत्न के बना ऐसा रूप जिसे देखकर हँसी आए |
| 11. (a) | Compliment | noun | पूरक भाग, जिससे पूरा हो |
| (b) | Compliment | noun | प्रशंसा |
| (c) | Compliment | verb | प्रशंसा करना |
| 12. (a) | Conscience | noun | विवेक, अन्तः करण |
| (b) | Cautious | adjective | सावधान |
| (c) | Conscious | adjective | सचेत |
| 13. (a) | Consistently | adverb | दृढ़तापूर्वक |
| (b) | Constantly | adverb | निरन्तर |
| 14. (a) | Continual | adjective | थोड़ा रुककर अर्थात् बार-बार |
| (b) | Continuous | adjective | लगातार |
| 15. (a) | Contract | noun | सन्धि या इकरारनामा |
| (b) | Contract | verb | सिकुड़ना |
| 16. (a) | Course | noun | पाठ्यक्रम, पथ |
| (b) | Coarse | adjective | तुच्छ, घटिया |
| 17. (a) | Credible | adjective | विश्वास के योग्य |
| (b) | Creditable | adjective | प्रशंसा के योग्य |
| (c) | Credulous | adjective | शीघ्र विश्वासी, जो कहा जाए उस पर जल्दी ही विश्वास कर लेने वाला |
| 18. (a) | Callous | adjective | कठोर, सख्त, निष्ठुर |
| (b) | Callus | adjective | चमड़े का मोटा या घना भाग |
| 19. (a) | Canal | noun | नहर |
| (b) | Kennel | noun | कुत्ता का घर |
| 20. (a) | Cannon | noun | तोप |
| (b) | Canon | noun | कानून, नियम, सिद्धांत, अधिनियम |
| 21. (a) | Capital | noun | राजधानी, मुख्य वस्तु |
| (b) | Capitol | noun | यू.एस.का संसद भवन, रोम में जुपीटर का मंदिर कैपीटोल |
| 22. (a) | Career | noun | जीवन, पेशा, जीवन उन्नति |
| (b) | Carrier | noun | सवारी पर सामान लादने की जगह, माल ढोने वाला श्रमिक |
| 23. (a) | Careless | adjective | लापरवाह |
| (b) | Carefree | adjective | चिन्ता मुक्त, प्रसन्न |
| 24. (a) | Cell | noun | कोशिका, बंदीगृह, कुटिया, गुफा |
| (b) | Sell | verb | बेचना, विक्रय करना, व्यापार करना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 25.(a) | Censer | noun | धूपदान, धूपिया |
| (b) | Censor | noun | दोषान्वेषक, प्रकाशन, नियंत्रक |
| (c) | Censure | verb | निन्दा या आलोचना करना |
| 26.(a) | Cereal | noun | अनाज, अन्न, दलिया |
| (b) | Serial | noun | कहानी का क्रमिक प्रकाशन |
| 27.(a) | Cession | noun | समर्पण, त्याग |
| (b) | Session | noun | बैठक, सभा, अधिवेशन, सत्र |
| 28.(a) | Cafe | noun | शराब या कॉफी क्रय करके पीने का स्थान |
| (b) | Chafe | verb | रगड़ना, मलना, रगड़कर खुरदरा कर देना |
| (c) | Chaff | noun | भूसी, पोकर, कुट्टी |
| 29.(a) | Choir | noun | गायक मंडली, गायन स्थल |
| (b) | Coir | noun | नारियल का जटा |
| (c) | Chord | noun | जीवा, साज का एक तार |
| (d) | Cord | noun | डोरी, रस्सी |
| 30.(a) | Coat | noun | कोट, लेप, आवरण |
| (b) | Quote | verb | उद्धृत करना, हवाला देना |
| 31.(a) | Comparable | adjective | तुलना करने योग्य |
| (b) | Comparative | adjective | तुलनात्मक |
| 32.(a) | Cymbal | noun | करताल, मंजीरा |
| (b) | Symbol | noun | प्रतीक, संकेत |
| 33.(a) | Critic | noun | आलोचक, समीक्षक |
| (b) | Critique | noun | समालोचना, समीक्षा |
| 34.(a) | Council | noun | परिषद् मंत्रणा सभा |
| (b) | Counsel | noun | परामर्श, सलाह, योजना, उद्देश्य |
| (c) | Consel | verb | परामर्श या सलाह देना |
| 35.(a) | Corpse | noun | शव/लाश |
| (b) | Corps | noun | कोर, दल, समूह |
| (c) | Crops | noun | फसल |
| 36.(a) | Corporal | adjective | शारीरिक, भौतिक |
| (b) | Corporeal | adjective | दैहिक, पार्थिव |
| 37.(a) | Confirm | verb | पक्का या पुष्टि करना, स्थापित करना |
| (b) | Conform | verb | सदृश करना, अनुरूप करना |
| 38.(a) | Confident | adjective | विश्वासी, साहसी |
| (b) | Confidant | noun | विश्वास पात्र, अंतरंग मित्र |
| 39.(a) | Concur | verb | सहमत होना, हामी भरना |
| (b) | Conquer | verb | जीतना, विजेता होना, बलपूर्वक प्राप्त करना |
| 40.(a) | Comprehensive | adjective | व्यापक, विस्तृत |
| (b) | Comprehensible | adjective | पूरी तरह से समझ में आने योग्य |
| 41.(a) | Complacent | adjective | संतुष्ट, आत्मसंतुष्ट |
| (b) | Complaisant | adjective | भद्र, विनीत, अनुग्रही |
| 42.(a) | Costume | noun | वेश-भूषा (dress) |
| (b) | Custom | noun | रिवाज |
| 43.(a) | Ceiling | noun | घर की छत |
| (b) | Sealing | verb (P.) | सील कर रहा |
| 44.(a) | Cemetery | noun | श्मशान |
| (b) | Symmetry | noun | सुडौलपन |

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 45.(a) | Ceremonious | adjective | औपचारिक, व्यावहारिक |
| (b) | Ceremonial | adjective | उत्सव संबंधी औपचारिक |
| 46.(a) | Contemptible | adjective | नीच |
| (b) | Contemptuous | adjective | घृणित |
| 47.(a) | Continuance | noun | निरंतरता, स्थिरता, नित्यता |
| (b) | Continuation | noun | क्रम, विस्तार |
| 48.(a) | Considerable | adjective | मान्य, अधिक, पूज्य, बड़ा |
| (b) | Considerate | adjective | विचारवान, दूरदर्शी |
| 49.(a) | Calender | noun | कपड़ा या कागज दबाने की मशीन, फकीर |
| (b) | Calendar | oun | पञ्चांग, पत्रिका |
| 50.(a) | Casual | adjective | आकस्मिक |
| (b) | Causal | adjective | कारण से संबंधित |
| 51.(a) | Coma | noun | सुस्ती, अप्राकृतिक निद्रा |
| (b) | Comma | noun | अल्प विराम (,) |
| 52.(a) | Cue | noun | संकेत का शब्द, सूचना |
| (b) | Queue | noun | कतार, पंक्ति |
| 53.(a) | Contagious | adjective | स्पर्श से रोग फैलने वाली |
| (b) | Continguous | adjective | समीप, पास या पड़ोस का |
| (c) | Infectious | adjective | संक्रामक |
| 54.(a) | Clear | adjective | स्पष्ट, प्रत्यक्ष |
| (b) | Clean | adjective | स्वच्छ, शुद्ध, पवित्र |
| 55.(a) | Cool | adjective | शीतल, शान्त, उदासीन |
| (b) | Cold | adjective | उदासीन, उत्साहहीन |
| (c) | Cold | noun | जुकाम, सर्दी |
| (d) | Coldly | adverb | उदासीनता से |
| 56.(a) | Centre | noun | केन्द्र, बीच का भाग |
| (b) | Middle | adjective | मध्य का, बीच वाला |
| 57.(a) | Cloudy | adjective | अस्पष्ट |
| (b) | Clouded | adjective | धुँधला |
| 58.(a) | Concave | adjective | खोखला |
| (b) | Convex | adjective | उन्नतोदर, कछुए के पीठ के आकार का |
| 59.(a) | Concrete | adjective | इन्द्रियों से जानने योग्य, जो देखी या छुई जा सके |
| (b) | Concrete | noun | कंकरीट |
| 60.(a) | Converse | verb | बोलना, वार्तालाप करना |
| (b) | Converse | noun | विलोम, व्युत्क्रम |
| 61.(a) | Crime | noun | अपराध, मूर्खतापूर्ण कार्य, गलत काम |
| (b) | Sin | noun | पाप, दुष्कर्म |
| (c) | Vice | noun | दुर्गुण |
| 62.(a) | Collision | noun | विरोध, टक्कर, मुठभेड़ |
| (b) | Collusion | noun | जाल, कपट, दलबन्दी |
| 63.(a) | Capability | noun | योग्यता, सामर्थ्य, शक्ति ऐसे अविकसित गुण जिनका विकास किया जा सकता है। |
| (b) | Capacity | noun | क्षमता, धारित, रखने की सीमा |
| (c) | Ability | noun | योग्यता, चतुरता |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 64.(a) | Census | noun | जनगणना |
| (b) | Consensus | noun | अनुकूलता, एकमत |
| 65.(a) | Chastise | verb | दंड देना, पीटना |
| (b) | Chasten | verb | पवित्र या स्वच्छ करना |
| (c) | Castigate | verb | दंड देना, ताड़ना |
| 66.(a) | Cheerful | adjective | प्रफुल्ल, प्रसन्न |
| (b) | Cheery | adjective | प्रसन्न, मगन |
| 67.(a) | Civil | adjective | नागरिक संबंधी |
| (b) | Civic | adjective | नगर से संबंधित, नागरिक |
| (c) | Civilian | adjective | प्रशासनिक अधिकारी, नागरिक |
| 68.(a) | Client | noun | वह व्यक्ति जो किसी मामले में वकील की सलाह लेता है |
| (b) | Customer | noun | क्रेता, ग्राहक |
| 69.(a) | Clinch | verb | कील गाड़ना, सौदा तय करना |
| (b) | Clench | verb | कसकर पकड़ना, जकड़ना |
| 70.(a) | Comfy | adjective | आरामदायक |
| (b) | Cosy | adjective | आरामदायक |
| 71.(a) | Comment | verb | टिप्पणी करना, आलोचना करना |
| (b) | Commentate | verb | टीका करना |
| 72.(a) | Compel | verb | मजबूर करना, दबाव डालना |
| (b) | Impel | verb | विवश करना, मजबूर करना |
| 73.(a) | Competition | noun | स्पर्धा, प्रतियोगिता |
| (b) | Contest | verb | तर्क या विवाद करना, विरोध करना |
| 74.(a) | Complicated | adjective | जटिल, कठिन, पेचीदा |
| (b) | Complex | noun | सम्मिश्रित, जटिल, पेचीदा |
| 75.(a) | Compose | verb | निर्माण करना, संघटन करना |
| (b) | Compile | verb | संकलित करना |
| (c) | Concoct | verb | कई वस्तुओं को मिलाकर एक नई वस्तु बनाना, मनगढ़न्त कहानी कहना |
| 76.(a) | Compulsive | adjective | बाध्यकारी, दबाव डालने वाला |
| (b) | Impulsive | adjective | मनोवेगपूर्ण, प्रेरक |
| (c) | Impetuous | adjective | प्रबल, प्रचंड, उतावला |
| 77.(a) | Condole | verb | खेद प्रकट करना, सहानुभूति दिखलाना |
| (b) | Console | verb | सांत्वना प्रदान करना |
| 78.(a) | Congenial | adjective | अनुकूल, अनुरूप |
| (b) | Genial | adjective | स्नेहपूर्ण, सद्भावपूर्ण, प्रसन्नचित्त |
| 79.(a) | Consequent | adjective | परिणामस्वरूप होने वाला |
| (b) | Subsequent | adjective | आगामी, आगे वाला |
| 80.(a) | Conserve | verb | संभाल कर रखना, संरक्षण प्रदान करना |
| (b) | Preserve | verb | बचाना, सुरक्षा करना |
| 81.(a) | Comprise | verb | शामिल करना, समाविष्ट होना |
| (b) | Constitute | verb | नियुक्त करना, स्थापित करना, कानूनी शक्ल प्रदान करना |
| 82.(a) | Consistent | adjective | नियमित, पक्का |
| (b) | Persistent | adjective | बार-बार होने वाला, निरन्तर, लगातार |
| 83.(a) | Constraint | noun | दबाव, प्रतिबंध |
| (b) | Restraint | noun | प्रतिबंध, रुकावट |
| 84.(a) | Contrary | adj. n. | विपरीत, प्रतिकूल |
| (b) | Converse | adj. n. | उल्टा, विलोम |
| (c) | Reverse | adj. n. | विलोम, विपरीत |
| 85.(a) | Cooperate | verb | साथ-साथ काम करना, सहयोग करना |
| (b) | Collaborate | verb | मिलकर कार्य करना |
| 86.(a) | Cultured | adjective | शिष्ट, सुधार किया हुआ |
| (b) | Cultivated | adjective | उच्च एवं शिक्षित व्यक्ति |
| 87.(a) | Cynical | adjective | निन्दा करने वाला |
| (b) | Sceptical | adjective | अविश्वासी, संदेह करने वाला |

## Words Starting With 'D'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Die | verb | मरना |
| (b) | Dye | verb | रँगना |
| 2. (a) | Desert | noun | रेगिस्तान/मरुस्थल |
| (b) | Desert | verb | त्यागना |
| (c) | Dessert | noun | भोजन के बाद खाए जाने वाला फल, मेवा, मिष्टान आदि |
| 3. (a) | Dear | adjective | प्यारा, महँगा |
| (b) | Deer | noun | हिरण |
| 4. (a) | Dairy | noun | दुग्धशाला |
| (b) | Diary | noun | डायरी |
| 5. (a) | Discover | verb | खोज करना |
| (b) | Invent | verb | आविष्कार करना |
| 6. (a) | Dose | noun | खुराक |
| (b) | Doze | verb | ऊँघना |
| 7. (a) | Drought | noun | सूखा, अनावृष्टि |
| (b) | Draught | noun | घूँट, खुराक, मद्यपान |
| (c) | Draft | noun | हुण्डी |
| 8. (a) | Daily | adverb | प्रतिदिन |
| (b) | Dally | verb | मन बहलाना, खिलवाड़ करना |
| 9. (a) | Damp | adjective | नम, आर्द्र |
| (b) | Dump | verb | बोझ उतारना, विदेश भेजना, धम्म से गिराना |
| 10. (a) | Descent | noun | उतार-ढलाव, अवरोहण, वंश परम्परा |
| (b) | Dissent | verb | विसम्मत होना, विरोध करना |
| (c) | Decent | adjective | शालीन, सुसभ्य |
| 11. (a) | Dual | noun | दोहरा, द्विविध |
| (b) | Duel | noun | युद्ध, लड़ाई, झगड़ा |
| 12. (a) | Decease | noun | मृत्यु |
| (b) | Disease | noun | बीमारी |
| 13. (a) | Deference | noun | सम्मान |
| (b) | Difference | noun | अंतर |
| 14. (a) | Disinterested | adjective | स्वार्थ रहित, तटस्थ, निष्पक्ष |
| (b) | Uninterested | adjective | रुचिहीन या जिसे रुचि न हो |
| 15. (a) | Direct | adjective | सीधा |
| (b) | Directly | adverb | अविलम्ब |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 16. (a) | Deny | verb | इनकार करना |
| (b) | Refuse | verb | असहमत होना |
| 17. (a) | Defy | verb | चुनौती देना |
| (b) | Deify | verb | देवपूजा करना |
| 18. (a) | Differ | verb | मतभेद होना |
| (b) | Defer | verb | देर करना |
| 19. (a) | Dependent | adjective | निर्भर |
| (b) | Dependant | noun | दूसरे पर निर्भर करने वाला |
| 20. (a) | Deface | verb | विकृत करना, सूरत बिगाड़ना |
| (b) | Efface | verb | मिटाना, खुरचना |
| 21. (a) | Depression | noun | उदासी, मायूसी |
| (b) | Depreciation | noun | मूल्य में गिरावट |
| 22. (a) | Delightful | adjective | प्रसन्नतादायक, आनंददायक |
| (b) | Delicious | adjective | अति स्वादिष्ट |
| 23. (a) | Definite | adjective | सुनिश्चित |
| (b) | Definitive | adjective | विश्वसनीय, निश्चयात्मक |
| 24. (a) | Distinct | adjective | सुस्पष्ट, असाधारण, विशिष्ट |
| (b) | Distinctive | adjective | भिन्न |
| 25. (a) | Durable | adjective | टिकाऊ, दृढ़ |
| (b) | Endurable | adjective | सहाय्य: जितना सहन किया जा सके |
| 26. (a) | Divers | adjective | अनेक, विविध प्रकार के |
| (b) | Diverse | adjective | अनेक प्रकार की, भिन्न प्रकार का |
| 27. (a) | Delude | verb | धोखा देना, जानबूझकर बहकाना |
| (b) | Elude | verb | चालाकी से बच जाना |
| 28. (a) | Discriminate | verb | अंतर या भेदभाव करना, अलग-अलग ढंग से व्यवहार करना |
| (b) | Incriminate | verb | अभियोग या दोष लगाना |
| 29. (a) | Decry | verb | निन्दा करना, अवमूल्यन करना |
| (b) | Descry | verb | देखना, खोजना, भाँपना |
| 30. (a) | Destiny | noun | भाग्य, किस्मत |
| (b) | Destination | noun | लक्ष्य, गन्तव्य स्थान |
| 31. (a) | Drown | verb | पानी में डूबकर मर जाना (व्यक्ति के लिए) |
| (b) | Sink | verb | डूबना (वस्तु के लिए) |
| 32. (a) | Dearth | noun | अभाव |
| (b) | Dearness | noun | महँगाई |
| 33. (a) | Defective | adjective | दोषी, त्रुटिपूर्ण |
| (b) | Deficient | adjective | अपूर्ण, त्रुटिपूर्ण |
| 34. (a) | Dominant | adjective | नियंत्रण तथा अधिकार रखने वाला |
| (b) | Domineer | verb | क्रूरता से शासन करना, अत्याचार करना |
| (c) | Dominate | verb | प्रभाव या काबू रखना |
| 35. (a) | Delivery | noun | जनन, समर्पण, छुटकारा |
| (b) | Deliverance | noun | मुक्ति, छुटकारा |
| 36. (a) | Decided | adjective | निश्चित |
| (b) | Decisive | adjective | निश्चित, असंदिग्ध |
| 37. (a) | Dew | noun | ओस |
| (b) | Due | adj. & adv. | योग्य, उचित, ठीक हिसाब से |

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 38. (a) | Deduce | verb | तर्क द्वारा निर्णय करना, वंश का अन्वेषण करना |
| (b) | Deduct | verb | कम करना, घटाना |
| 39. (a) | Device | noun | उपाय, विधि, प्रयोग |
| (b) | Devise | verb | विचार या उपाय करना, चिन्तन करना |
| 40. (a) | Deprecate | verb | विपरीत प्रार्थना करना |
| (b) | Depreciate | verb | दाम कम होना, पछताना |
| 41. (a) | Deadly | adjective | मृतक के समान, घातक, प्राण नाशक |
| (b) | Deathly | adjective | घातक |
| 42. (a) | Debate | verb | विवाद करना |
| (b) | Deliberate | adjective | विचार पूर्वक |
| 43. (a) | Deceptive | adjective | धोखा देने वाला, कपटी |
| (b) | Deceitful | adjective | धूर्त, कपटी, छली |
| 44. (a) | Delegate | verb | नियुक्त करना, सौंपना |
| (b) | Relegate | verb | बहिष्कार करना, देश से निकालना |
| 45. (a) | Delusion | noun | मोह, भ्रम, माया |
| (b) | Illusion | noun | माया, छल, इन्द्रजाल |
| 46. (a) | Demonstrate | verb | प्रमाणित करना, |
| (b) | Remonstrate | verb | निवारण के लिए यत्न करना, प्रतिवाद करना |
| 47. (a) | Denote | verb | निर्दिष्ट या सूचित करना |
| (b) | Connote | verb | अर्थ सूचित करना |
| 48. (a) | Depository | noun | संग्रह स्थान, कोठी |
| (b) | Repository | noun | सुरक्षा कोष, भंडार |
| 49. (a) | Depraved | adjective | दुराचारी, दुष्ट |
| (b) | Deprived | adjective | वंचित, लोप |
| 50. (a) | Derisive | adjective | हास्यप्रद, उपहासजनक |
| (b) | Derisory | adjective | उपहास योग्य |
| 51. (a) | Desirable | adjective | वांछनीय |
| (b) | Desirous | adjective | उत्सुक, इच्छुक |
| 52. (a) | Devoted | adjective | वफादार, बहुत चाहने वाला |
| (b) | Devout | adjective | धर्मपरायण |
| 53. (a) | Dedicated | adjective | समर्पित |
| (b) | Diagnosis | noun | लक्षणों से रोग निर्धारण |
| (c) | Prognosis | noun | पूर्वानुमान, पूर्वज्ञान |
| 54. (a) | Differentiate | verb | विभेद करना, परिवर्तन करना |
| (b) | Distinguish | verb | फर्क बतलाना |
| 55. (a) | Digress | verb | मुख्य विषय से हटना या विचलित होना |
| (b) | Diverge | verb | विचलित होना, मतभेद होना |
| (c) | Deviate | verb | घूम जाना, हटना, विचलित होना |
| 56. (a) | Dilate | verb | बड़ा होना, फैलाना |
| (b) | Dilute | verb | पतला या हल्का करना, तनु होना |
| 57. (a) | Discreet | adjective | समझदार, होशियार |
| (b) | Discrete | adjective | भिन्न, जुदा |
| 58. (a) | Discrepancy | noun | हिसाब में अंतर, भिन्नता |
| (b) | Disparity | noun | असमानता, भिन्नता |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 59. (a) | Disperse | verb | इधर-उधर भेजना, तितर-बितर करना |
| (b) | Dispel | verb | भगाना, दूर करना, हटाना |
| (c) | Dissipate | verb | बिखेरना, दूर करना, मिटाना |
| 60. (a) | Disposal | noun | बिक्री, निपटारा, प्रबंध |
| (b) | Dispersal | adjective | विसर्जन |
| (c) | Dispersion | noun | फैलाव, अलगाव, छितराव |
| (d) | Disposition | noun | तरीके से रखा जाना, प्रवृत्ति |
| 61. (a) | Dissect | verb | विच्छेदन करना, चीर-फाड़ करना |
| (b) | Bisect | verb | दो समान भागों में विभाजन करना |
| 62. (a) | Dissent | verb | मतभेद या विचार करना |
| (b) | Dissension | noun | विरोध, कलह, मतभेद |
| 63. (a) | Dissolute | adjective | बदचलन, दुराचारी |
| (b) | Dissipated | adjective | असंयमी |
| 64. (a) | Distract | verb | ध्यान हटाना, एकाग्रता भंग करना |
| (b) | Detract | verb | घटाना, कम करना |
| 65. (a) | Distrust | verb | विश्वास न करना, शक करना |
| (b) | Mistrust | verb | अविश्वास करना |
| 66. (a) | Disturbed | adjective | परेशान, बाधा डालना, व्याकुल |
| (b) | Perturbed | adjective | व्यग्र, व्याकुल |
| 67. (a) | Doctrine | noun | सिद्धान्त, उपदेश |
| (b) | Dogma | noun | मत, उपदेश |
| 68. (a) | Doubtful | adjective | सन्देशपूर्ण |
| (b) | Dubious | adjective | संदिग्ध, सन्देहयुक्त |
| 69. (a) | Dower | noun | दहेज, उपहार, स्त्रीधन |
| (b) | Dowry | noun | दहेज |
| 70. (a) | Down town | adjective | शहर के मुख्य व्यवसाय वाले भाग से संबंधित |
| (b) | Up town | adjective | नगर के ऊपरी भाग की ओर |
| 71. (a) | Dramatist | noun | नाटककार |
| (b) | Playwright | noun | नाटककार |
| 72. (a) | Drab | adjective | नीरस, हल्का बादामी रंग का |
| (b) | Dreary | adjective | नीरस, उबाल |
| 73. (a) | Doze | verb | ऊँघना, झपकी लेना |
| (b) | Drowse | verb | ऊँघना, झपकी लेना, मंद होना |
| (c) | Snooze | verb | झपकी लेना |

## Words Starting With 'E'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Eligible | adjective | चुना जाने योग्य |
| (b) | Illegible | adjective | अस्पष्ट या जिसे पढ़ा न जा सके |
| 2. (a) | Expand | verb | फैलाना |
| (b) | Expend | verb | खर्च करना |
| 3. (a) | Emigrant | noun | अपना देश छोड़कर दूसरे देश में रहने वाला |
| (b) | Immigrant | noun | दूसरे देश से आकर किसी देश में रहना |
| 4. (a) | Eminent | adjective | प्रसिद्ध |
| (b) | Imminent | adjective | शीघ्र आने वाला |
| 5. (a) | Elicit | verb | प्रकाशित करना, निकालना |
| (b) | Illicit | adjective | अवैध, गैर कानूनी |
| 6. (a) | Eruption | noun | विस्फोट |
| (b) | Irruption | noun | अचानक आक्रमण |
| 7. (a) | Effective | adjective | प्रभावशाली |
| (b) | Efficient | adjective | कुशल |
| 8. (a) | Envelop | verb | ढकना, बंद करना, छिपाना |
| (b) | Envelope | noun | लिफाफा/आवरण |
| 9. (a) | Extant | | प्रचलित, विद्यमान, मौजूद |
| (b) | Extent | | विस्तार, फैलाव, सुविस्तृत क्षेत्र |
| 10. (a) | Enduring | adjective | सहन शक्ति |
| (b) | Endurable | adjective | सहने योग्य |
| 11. (a) | Extinct | adjective | अप्रचलित, विलुप्त, मृत |
| (b) | Instinct | noun | मूल प्रवृत्ति, आन्तरिक भावना |
| 12. (a) | Esteem | verb | आदर करना |
| (b) | Estimate | verb | मूल्य निरूपण करना |
| 13. (a) | Expert | adjective | दक्ष, निपुण, चतुर |
| (b) | Excerpt | noun | पुस्तक से उद्धृत अंश, उद्धरण, |
| 14. (a) | Elementary | adjective | सामान्य |
| (b) | Elemental | adjective | प्रकृति की शक्ति |
| 15. (a) | Exhausting | adjective | थका हुआ है |
| (b) | Exhaustive | adjective | विस्तृत, गहन |
| 16. (a) | Efficacious | adjective | उत्तम, इष्टप्रद |
| (b) | Effectual | adjective | वांछित फलदायक |
| 17. (a) | Expect | verb | आशा, प्रतीक्षा, अनुमान करना |
| (b) | Hope | verb | आशा करना, भरोसा करना |
| 18. (a) | Economical | adjective | मितव्ययी, किफायती |
| (b) | Economic | adjective | आर्थिक |
| 19. (a) | Empty | adjective | खाली, रिक्त (Pocket) |
| (b) | Vacant | adjective | रिक्त, खाली (Post) |
| 20. (a) | Excuse | verb | क्षमा करना, क्षमा याचना करना |
| (b) | Pardon | verb | मतभेद होने पर या कही गयी बात सुनने पर क्षमा माँगना |
| 21. (a) | Excellence | noun | श्रेष्ठता, महानता |
| (b) | Excellent | adjective | बहुत बढ़िया, अतिउत्तम |
| 22. (a) | Emerge | verb | दिखलाई देना, बाहर आना |
| (b) | Immerge | verb | डूब जाना |
| 23. (a) | Excite | verb | उत्तेजित करना, भड़काना |
| (b) | Incite | verb | उकसाना, भड़काना |
| 24. (a) | Exceedingly | adverb | अत्यन्त |
| (b) | Excessively | adverb | अतिशय रूप में |
| 25. (a) | Exceptional | adjective | असाधारण, गैरमामूली |
| (b) | Exceptionable | adjective | आपत्तिजनक, एतराज के योग्य |
| 26. (a) | Envious | adjective | ईर्ष्यालु, डाही |
| (b) | Enviable | adjective | ईर्ष्या करने योग्य |
| 27. (a) | Elude | verb | चालाकी से बच जाना |
| (b) | Allude | verb | किसी बात की ओर संकेत करना |
| 28. (a) | Expedient | adjective | लाभदायक |
| (b) | Expeditious | adjective | शीघ्र एवं दक्ष |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 29. (a) | Expenditure | noun | व्यय, खर्च |
| (b) | Expenses | noun | लागत, खर्च, क्षतराशि, शुल्क |
| 30. (a) | Eatable | adjective | खाने योग्य |
| (b) | Edible | adjective | खाने योग्य |
| 31. (a) | Education | noun | शिक्षा |
| (b) | Edification | noun | नैतिक तथा बौद्धिक सुधार |
| 32. (a) | Effeminate | adjective | नारी जैसा, दुर्बल, कमजोर |
| (b) | Effete | adjective | कमजोर या टूटने के कगार पर, दुर्बल |
| 33. (a) | Egoist | noun | आत्माभिमानी, अहंकारी, स्वार्थी |
| (b) | Egotist | noun | अभिमानी व्यक्ति |
| 34. (a) | Elapse | verb | समय का गुजरना, बीतना |
| (b) | Lapse (from/ into) | verb | गिर जाना, फिसल जाना |
| (c) | Lapse | noun | सही मार्ग से भटकना, समय का बीत जाना |
| 35. (a) | Elect | adjective | चुना हुआ |
| (b) | Elite | noun | गणमान्य व्यक्ति, संभ्रांत पुरुष |
| 36. (a) | Elevated | adjective | जमीन की सतह से ऊँचा उठा हुआ |
| (b) | Elated | adjective | उल्लासित, हर्षित |
| 37. (a) | Eloguence | noun | वाक्पटुता, बातचीत करने की कला |
| (b) | Elegance | noun | लालित्य, पवित्रता, सौन्दर्य, स्वच्छता |
| 38. (a) | Emotional | adjective | भावात्मक, भावजन्य |
| (b) | Emotive | adjective | भावोभाव उत्पन्न करने वाला |
| 39. (a) | Endemic | adjective | स्थानीय मनुष्यों में प्रचलित |
| (b) | Epidemic | noun | महामारी |
| 40. (a) | Entomology | noun | कीट विज्ञान |
| (b) | Etymology | noun | शब्दसाधन, शब्दों का इतिहास मतलब, स्रोत आदि |
| 41. (a) | Envisage | verb | विचार करना, सोचना |
| (b) | Envision | verb | ध्यान करना, धारणा बनाना |
| 42. (a) | Envy | verb | ईर्ष्या करना, जलन होना |
| (b) | Envy | noun | ईर्ष्या, जलन |
| (c) | Jealousy | noun | ईर्ष्या, डाह |
| 43. (a) | Epigram | noun | चुटकुला, सूक्ति |
| (b) | Epigraph | noun | शिलालेख, आदर्श वाक्य |
| (c) | Epitaph | noun | स्मारक, कब्र या समाधि के ऊपर का लेख |
| (d) | Epithet | noun | विशेषण, उपाधि |
| 44. (a) | Equable | adjective | सम, शांत स्वभाव का, शांत चित्तवाला |
| (b) | Equitable | adjective | उचित, निष्पक्ष, न्यायसंगत |
| 45. (a) | Erode | verb | नष्ट करना, खा जाना |
| (b) | Corrode | verb | धीरे-धीरे क्षय होना, मुर्चा खा जाना |
| 46. (a) | Eugenics | noun | मानव जाति की उन्नति विषयक शास्त्र, सृजनविज्ञान |
| (b) | Genetics | noun | उत्पत्ति विषयक शास्त्र |
| 47. (a) | Evasion | noun | बचाव, टालमटोल |
| (b) | Evasiveness | noun | कपटता, टालमटोल, उपेक्षाभाव |
| 48. (a) | Evince | verb | प्रदर्शित करना, दिखाना |
| (b) | Evoke | verb | चेतन करना, जगाना, कारण बनना, पुकारना, बुलाना |
| 49. (a) | Exacerbate | verb | कटु बनाना, बदतर बनाना |
| (b) | Exasperate | verb | क्रुध करना, नाराज करना |
| 50. (a) | Exalt | verb | प्रशंसा करना |
| (b) | Exult | verb | खूब खुशी बनाना |
| 51. (a) | Example | noun | उदाहरण, दृष्टान्त |
| (b) | Sample | noun | आदर्श, नमूना |
| (c) | Specimen | noun | आदर्श, प्रतिरूप, नमूना |
| 52. (a) | Exceed | verb | से श्रेष्ठ होना, अधिक होना |
| (b) | Excel | verb | उत्तम होना, बढ़ना |
| 53. (a) | Except | verb | छोड़ना, विरोध या एतराज करना |
| (b) | Exempt | verb | मुक्त रखना, अलग रखना |
| 54. (a) | Exclude | verb | वर्जित करना, वंचित रखना |
| (b) | Preclude | verb | अलग रखना, बंद करना, रोकना |
| 55. (a) | Excruciate | verb | अत्यंत कष्ट देना, मानसिक वेदना देना |
| (b) | Excoriate | verb | खाल निकालना |
| (c) | Execrate | verb | घृणा करना, शाप देना |
| 56. (a) | Exercise | noun | व्यायाम, कसरत, अभ्यास |
| (b) | Exorcise | verb | झाड़-फूँक कर प्रेत हटाना |
| 57. (a) | Exotic | n. adj | विदेशी वस्तु, परदेश से लाई हुई |
| (b) | Erotic | adjective | प्रेम संबंधी, कामुक |
| 58. (a) | Explain | verb | व्याख्या या अर्थ स्पष्ट करना, समझना |
| (b) | Explicate | verb | स्पष्ट या व्याख्या करना, विस्तार देना |
| 59. (a) | Explicit | adjective | निश्चित, स्पष्ट |
| (b) | Implicit | adjective | शंकाहीन, उपलक्षित |
| 60. (a) | Extempore | adjective | बिना पूर्व तैयारी के |
| (b) | Impromptu | noun | बिना पहले से सोची हुई रचना या निबन्ध |
| 61. (a) | Extemporise | verb | तत्काल लिखना |
| (b) | Temporise | verb | टालमटोल करना, समझौता करना निर्णय लेने में देर करना |
| 62. (a) | Extended | adjective | फैला हुआ, लगातार, दीर्घकालिन |
| (b) | Extensive | adjective | विस्तृत, लम्बा |
| 63. (a) | Exterior | adjective | बाहरी, बाह्य |
| (b) | External | adjective | बाहरी, बाह्य, भौतिक |
| 64. (a) | Extract | verb | हठपूर्वक लेना, खींचना, सार निकालना |
| (b) | Excerpt | verb | पुस्तक से उद्धत अंश, उद्धरण |
| (c) | Extricate | verb | विमुक्त या निस्तार करना, निकालना, भेजना |
| 65. (a) | Enquiry | noun | पूछताछ, जाँच पड़ताल, अन्वेषण, रेख |
| (b) | Inquiry | noun | पूछताछ, जाँचपड़ताल, अन्वेषण |

## Words Starting With 'F'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Fair | adjective | सुन्दर, साफ, उचित |
| (b) | Fair | noun | मेला |
| (c) | Fare | noun | किराया, भोजन |
| (d) | Fare | verb | प्रगति करना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2. | (a) Floor | noun | फर्श/सतह |
| | (b) Flour | noun | आटा |
| 3. | (a) Feet | noun | पाँव |
| | (b) Feat | noun | करतब |
| 4. | (a) Farther | adverb | दूर |
| | (b) Further | adverb | आगे |
| 5. | (a) Feel good | verb | प्रसन्न होना |
| | (b) Feel well | verb | स्वस्थ होना |
| 6. | (a) Formally | adverb | औपचारिक रूप से |
| | (b) Formerly | adverb | भूतपूर्व, पहले समय का |
| 7. | (a) Forth | adverb | आगे |
| | (b) Fourth | adjective | चौथा |
| 8. | (a) Foul | adjective | गंदा |
| | (b) Fowl | noun | चिड़िया (a bird) |
| 9. | (a) False | adjective | झूठा |
| | (b) Fall | noun | पतन |
| 10. | (a) Final | adjective | अंतिम, आखरी |
| | (b) Finale | noun | अंत, समाप्ति, समापन |
| 11. | (a) Flair | noun | टोह लेने की क्षमता, जन्म जात प्रवृति |
| | (b) Flare | verb | भभकना, उत्तेजित होना |
| 12. | (a) Fallible | adjective | भ्रमकारी |
| | (b) Fallacious | adjective | मिथ्याजनक, भ्रमजनक |
| 13. | (a) Famous | adjective | प्रसिद्ध, विख्यात |
| | (b) Infamous | adjective | बदनाम, निन्दनीय |
| 14. | (a) Fatal | adjective | घातक महत्वपूर्ण, भाग्य निर्णायक |
| | (b) Fateful | adjective | महत्वपूर्ण, भाग्य निर्णायक |
| 15. | (a) Fearful | adjective | भयानक, भयंकर |
| | (b) Fearsome | adjective | डरावना, डरानेवाला |
| 16. | (a) Fate | noun | किस्मत, तकदीर, भाग्य |
| | (b) Fortune | noun | भाग्य, ऐश्वर्य, सम्पति |
| 17. | (a) Fawn | noun | हिरण का बच्चा |
| | (b) Fauna | noun | किसी प्रदेश के पशु वर्ग |
| 18. | (a) Fervent | adjective | गरम, तीक्ष्ण, उत्सुक |
| | (b) Fervid | adjective | प्रचंड, प्रज्वलित |
| 19. | (a) Festive | adjective | प्रसन्न, खुश, आनन्दित, |
| | (b) Festal | adjective | उत्सव संबंधी, खुश |
| 20. | (a) Fiance | noun | मंगेतर (A man engaged to be married) |
| | (b) Fiancee | noun | मंगेतर (A girl engaged to be married) |
| 21. | (a) Fictional | adjective | उपन्यास संबंधी |
| | (b) Fictitious | adjective | काल्पनिक, बनावटी |
| | (c) Factitious | adjective | नकली, बनावटी |
| 22. | (a) Field | noun | खेत, चारागाह |
| | (b) Meadow | noun | घास लगा हुआ चौरस मैदान, चरागाह |
| 23. | (a) Financial | adjective | वित्त संबंधी |
| | (b) Fiscal | adjective | वित्त सम्बंधी |
| 24. | (a) Flavour | noun | सुगन्ध, स्वाद का एहसास |
| | (b) Savour | noun | स्वाद, रस, गन्ध, |
| 25. | (a) Foment | verb | सेकना, उकसाना, भड़काना |
| | (b) Ferment | verb | उत्तेजित करना, फेन उत्पन्न करना, जगाना |
| 26. | (a) Food | noun | भोजन, खाद्य पदार्थ |
| | (b) Feed | verb | भोजन करना, खाना खिलाना, चराना, पालना |
| 27. | (a) Forceful | adjective | जोरदार, शक्तिशाली |
| | (b) Forcible | adjective | दबाने योग्य, प्रबल, पुष्ट स्पष्ट, प्रभाव युक्त |
| 28. | (a) Forego | verb | आगे-आगे चलना |
| | (b) Forgo | verb | त्यागना, छोड़ना, अवहेलना करना |
| 29. | (a) Fortunate | adjective | भाग्यवान, सौभाग्यपूर्ण |
| | (b) Fortuitous | adjective | दैवाधीन, आकस्मिक |
| 30. | (a) Funeral | adjective | अन्त्येष्टि क्रिया, श्राद्ध कर्म |
| | (b) Funereal | adjective | शोकाकुल |

## Words Starting With 'G'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Gate | noun | फाटक, दरवाजा |
| | (b) Gait | noun | चाल |
| 2. | (a) Gaol | noun | जेल |
| | (b) Goal | noun | उद्देश्य, लक्ष्य |
| 3. | (a) Gilt | adjective | स्वर्णिम |
| | (b) Guilt | noun | अपराध, दोष |
| 4. | (a) Ghastly | adjective | पीला, भयानक |
| | (b) Ghostly | adjective | भूत प्रेत संबंधित |
| 5. | (a) Gamble | verb | जुआ खेलना |
| | (b) Gambol | verb | फुदकना |
| 6. | (a) Gauge/Gage | noun | गैज, माप, मानक |
| | (b) Gauze | noun | जाली |
| | (c) Gaze | verb | टकटकी लगाकर देखना |
| 7. | (a) Genteel | adjective | कुलीन, शिष्ट |
| | (b) Gentle | adjective | भद्र, सज्जन, नेक |
| 8. | (a) Graceful | adjective | सुन्दर, आकर्षित |
| | (b) Gracious | adjective | दयालु, हमदर्द |
| 9. | (a) Grate | noun | अग्निकुंड/स्थल |
| | (b) Great | adjective | महान, बड़ा |
| 10. | (a) Gesture | noun | चेष्टा, भाव, संकेत |
| | (b) Gesticulate | verb | हावभाव दिखलाना, नाटक करना |
| 11. | (a) Giant | noun | राक्षस |
| | (b) Gigantic | adjective | विशाल, बड़ा, राक्षस तुल्य |
| | (c) Gargantuan | adjective | विशाल मात्रा में, (खाना/पीना) |
| 12. | (a) Glance | verb | निगाह डालना, शीघ्रता से देखना |
| | (b) Glimpse | noun | झलक |
| | (c) Glimpse | verb | झलक प्राप्त करना, निगाह डालना, एक झलक देखना |
| 13. | (a) Gleam | verb | जगमगाना |
| | (b) Glow | verb | चमकना, दमकना |
| | (c) Glimmer | verb | टिमटिमाना |
| 14. | (a) Gourmand | noun | पेटू, अच्छा भोजन करने का शौकीन |
| | (b) Gourmet | noun | स्वादिष्ट भोजन अच्छी शराब आदि का पारखी |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 15. | (a) Gruesome | adjective | भीषण, भयंकर |
| | (b) Grisly | adjective | भयंकर, डरावना |
| 16. | (a) Guarantee | noun | जमानत, जमानतदार |
| | (b) Warranty | noun | अधिकार, प्रतिज्ञा |
| 17. | (a) Guise | noun | पहनावा, छद्मवेश रंग-ढंग |
| | (b) Disguise | verb | छिपाना, वेश बदलना |
| | (c) Disguise | noun | कपटवेश, स्वांग, |

## Words Starting With 'H'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Heal | verb | ठीक करना, स्वस्थ बनाना, घाव भरना |
| | (b) Heel | noun | एड़ी |
| 2. | (a) Hole | noun | बिल, सुराख |
| | (b) Whole | adjective | सम्पूर्ण, तमाम |
| 3. | (a) Hair | noun | बाल |
| | (b) Heir | noun | उत्तराधिकारी |
| | (c) Hare | noun | खरगोश |
| 4. | (a) Hanged | verb (P.P) | फाँसी दिया गया (व्यक्ति) |
| | (b) Hung | verb (P.P) | किसी वस्तु को लटकाया गया |
| 5. | (a) Holy | adjective | पवित्र |
| | (b) Wholly | adverb | सम्पूर्ण रूप से |
| | (c) Holey | adjective | छेददार, सुराखदार |
| 6. | (a) Hew | verb | काटना |
| | (b) Hue | noun | रंग |
| 7. | (a) Hail | verb | स्वागत करना |
| | (b) Hail | adjective | ओला, ओलावृष्टि |
| | (c) Hale | adjective | स्वस्थ, मजबूत |
| 8. | (a) Human | adjective | मानवीय |
| | (b) Humane | adjective | दयालु |
| 9. | (a) Hard | adjective | कठिन, कठोर |
| | (b) Hardy | adjective | बहादुर |
| 10. | (a) Handy | adjective | निपुण |
| | (b) Handful | adjective | सीमित |
| 11. | (a) Heroin | noun | मादक पदार्थ, हेरोइन |
| | (b) Heroine | noun | नायिका |
| 12. | (a) Hey | interjections | प्रसन्नता, प्रश्न सूचक, ध्यान आकर्षित करने वाला अव्यय |
| | (b) Hay | noun | सूखी घास |
| 13. | (a) Historic | adjective | ऐतिहासिक |
| | (b) Historical | adjective | इतिहास संबंधी |
| 14. | (a) Hoard | noun | गोदाम, खजाना, गुप्त स्थान |
| | (b) Horde | noun | खानाबदोश जाति, भीड़, झुंड |
| 15. | (a) Homely | adjective | घरेलू, परिचित, भोला भाला, साधारण |
| | (b) Homily | noun | उपदेश, प्रवचन |
| 16. | (a) Hop | verb | लँगड़ाना, फुदकना, एक टाँग पर कूदना |
| | (b) Hope | noun | आशा, उम्मीद, भरोसा, आकांक्षा |
| 17. | (a) Honourable | adjective | सम्मानीय |
| | (b) Honorary | noun | अवैतनिक |
| 18. | (a) Humility | noun | विनम्रता, विनय |
| | (b) Humiliation | noun | अपमान, दर्प दमन, दीनता |
| 19. | (a) Habitable | adjective | निवास योग्य |
| | (b) Inhabitable | adjective | रहने योग्य |
| 20. | (a) Hear | verb | सुनना, कान लगाना |
| | (b) Listen | verb | ध्यान से सुनना, |
| 21. | (a) Hire | verb | किराये पर रखना (व्यक्ति के लिए) |
| | (b) Rent | verb | किराये पर लेना या देना (मकान आदि) |
| 22. | (a) Humanist | noun | मनुष्य की प्रकृति का अध्ययन करने वाला |
| | (b) Humanitarian | noun | मनुष्य जाति से प्रेम करने वाला |
| 23. | (a) House | noun | घर, भवन, समुदाय |
| | (b) Home | noun | वास स्थान, जन्मभूमि, घर |

## Words Starting With 'I'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Idle | adjective | सुस्त |
| | (b) Ideal | adjective | आदर्श |
| | (c) Idol | noun | मूर्ति |
| 2. | (a) Industrial | adjective | औद्योगिक |
| | (b) Industrious | adjective | परिश्रमी |
| 3. | (a) Ingenuous | adjective | भोला |
| | (b) Ingenious | adjective | कुशल |
| 4. | (a) Informant | noun | सूचना देने वाला |
| | (b) Informer | noun | भेद बताने वाला |
| 5. | (a) Imaginary | adjective | काल्पनिक |
| | (b) Imaginative | adjective | कल्पनापूर्ण |
| 6. | (a) Imperious | adjective | अभिमानी, ढीठ |
| | (b) Imperial | adjective | श्रेष्ठ, तेजस्वी |
| 7. | (a) Incumbent | adjective | आश्रित, अवलम्बी |
| | (b) Recumbent | adjective | झुका हुआ |
| 8. | (a) Intelligible | adjective | समझने योग्य |
| | (b) Intellectual | adjective | मानसिक बुद्धि संबंधी |
| 9. | (a) Irrelevant | adjective | असंबद्ध, असंगत |
| | (b) Irreverent | adjective | श्रद्धा या भक्ति हीन, अनादर करने वाला |
| 10. | (a) Ignorant | adjective | अज्ञानी, निर्बुद्धि |
| | (b) Illiterate | adjective | अशिक्षित, अनपढ़ |
| 11. | (a) Irony | adjective | व्यंग्योक्ति, ताना, तोहे के सदृश्य |
| | (b) Witty | adjective | खुशमिजाज, हाजिरजवाब |
| 12. | (a) Incredible | adjective | अविश्वसनीय |
| | (b) Incredulous | adjective | अविश्वासी, सन्देही |
| 13. | (a) Illegible | adjective | जो पढ़ी न जा सके, अपठनीय |
| | (b) Ineligible | adjective | अयोग्य, अवांछनीय |
| 14. | (a) Impossible | adjective | असंभव |
| | (b) Impassable | adjective | जिसे पार न किया जा सके |
| 15. | (a) Intolerable | adjective | असहनीय |
| | (b) Intolerant | adjective | ऐसा व्यक्ति जो सहनशील न हो |
| 16. | (a) Ill | adjective | अस्वस्थ, रोगी, बुरा |
| | (b) Sick | adjective | बीमार, रोगग्रस्त |
| 17. | (a) Immovable | adjective | अचल, अडिग |
| | (b) Irremovable | adjective | अचल, स्थिर |
| 18. | (a) Impersonate | verb | भेष बदलना, साकार करना |
| | (b) Personate | verb | भेष बदलना, रूप बनाना, अभिनय करना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 19. | (a) Impractical | adjective | अव्यवहारी |
| | (b) Impracticable | adjective | अव्यावहारिक |
| 20. | (a) Incidental | adjective | मामूली या साधारण सी घटना |
| | (b) Accidental | adjective | संयोग से |
| 21. | (a) Indifferent | adjective | उदासीन, तटस्थ |
| | (b) Diffident | adjective | आत्मविश्वास से रहित |
| 22. | (a) Inept | adjective | अनुचित, अयोग्य, मूर्खतापूर्ण, अनुपयुक्त |
| | (b) Inapt | adjective | अयोग्य, अप्रवीण |
| 23. | (a) Infectious | adjective | संक्रामक (रोग) |
| | (b) Contagious | adjective | स्पर्श से फैलने वाला, देखकर फैलने वाला |
| 24. | (a) Inflammable | adjective | प्रज्वलनशील, जल्दी से जलने योग्य |
| | (b) Flammable | adjective | ज्वलनशील |
| 25. | (a) Inflicted | adjective | दंडित किया हुआ, यातना दिया हुआ |
| | (b) Afflicted | adjective | सताया हुआ, दुःख का मारा |
| 26. | (a) Inheritance | noun | पैतृक धन |
| | (b) Heritage | noun | पैतृक सम्पत्ति |
| 27. | (a) Inhuman | adjective | क्रूर, निर्दयी, निष्ठुर |
| | (b) Inhumane | adjective | शत्रुतापूर्ण, निष्ठुर, हानिकारक |
| 28. | (a) Insidious | adjective | विश्वासघाती |
| | (b) Invidious | adjective | ईर्ष्यालु, द्वेष उत्पन्न करने वाला |
| 29 | (a) Insolent | adjective | धृष्ट, ढीठ |
| | (b) Impudent | adjective | निर्लज्ज, ढीठ |
| | (c) Impertinent | adjective | गँवार, अशिष्ट, अभद्र |
| 30. | (a) Instant | adjective | वर्तमान, आधुनिक |
| | (b) Instantaneous | adjective | तुरन्त |
| 31. | (a) Instrument | noun | यंत्र, उपकरण |
| | (b) Implement | noun | यंत्र/औजार |
| 32. | (a) Insulate | verb | पृथक या अलग करना |
| | (b) Isolate | verb | पृथक या विच्छेद करना |
| 33. | (a) Intense | adjective | बहुत गंभीर, प्रचंड, उग्र |
| | (b) Intensive | adjective | गहन, वृद्धि करने वाला, बलदायक |
| 34. | (a) Interior | adjective | भीतरी, आन्तरिक |
| | (b) Internal | adjective | आन्तरिक, अन्दरूनी घरेलू, देशीय |
| 35. | (a) Interment | noun | दफनाना, मुर्दे को गाड़ना |
| | (b) Internment | noun | सीमित स्थान में नजरबन्दी |
| 36. | (a) Intrusive | adjective | बिना अधिकार के प्रवेश करने वाला |
| | (b) Obtrusive | adjective | बलात हस्तक्षेपी, धृष्ट जो उभरकर आए |

## Words Starting With 'J'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Judicial | adjective | निष्पक्ष, न्याय संबंधित |
| | (b) Judicious | adjective | विवेकशील |
| 2. | (a) Jealous | adjective | ईर्ष्यालु |
| | (b) Zealous | adjective | जोश और उमंग से भरा हुआ |
| 3. | (a) Jest | noun | हास्यास्पद चीज, मजाक |
| | (b) Zest | noun | उत्साह |
| 4. | (a) Jocular | adjective | परिहासिक, दिल्लगीबाज |
| | (b) Jocose | adjective | खिलाड़ी, विनोदी |
| | (c) Jocund | adjective | आनन्दित, प्रसन्नहृदय, प्रमुदित |
| | (d) Jovial | adjective | हँसमुख, प्रसन्न |
| 5. | (a) Join | verb | जोड़ना, संबंध करना, मिलाना |
| | (b) Joint | noun | सन्धि, जोड़, कब्जा |
| 6. | (a) Juvenile | adjective | यौवन संबंधी |
| | (b) Jejune | adjective | स्वल्प, निःसार, तत्वरहित |
| 7. | (a) Junction | noun | संधि, मिलने का स्थान, संगम |
| | (b) Juncture | noun | संधि, घटनाक्रम, समय |
| 8. | (a) Jewel | noun | रत्न |
| | (b) Gem | noun | रत्न |

## Words Starting With 'K'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Knotty | adjective | कठिन |
| | (b) Naughty | adjective | नटखट, बदमाश |
| 2. | (a) Knot | noun | विवाह बंधन, गाँठ, मुसीबत, सुन्दर क्यारी |
| | (b) Nought | noun | शून्य, कुछ नहीं |

## Words Starting With 'L'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Last | adjective | अन्तिम |
| | (b) Latest | adjective | आधुनिकतम |
| 2. | (a) Lightening | verb | हल्का करना |
| | (b) Lightning | noun | बिजली चमकना |
| | (c) Lighting | noun | प्रकाश व्यवस्था |
| 3. | (a) Loan | noun | उधार |
| | (b) Lend | verb | उधार देना |
| 4. | (a) Luxurious | adjective | ऐश्वर्य |
| | (b) Luxuriant | adjective | अधिकता से, अधिक फैलने वाला |
| 5. | (a) Letter | noun | पत्र |
| | (b) Latter | adjective | पिछला, दूसरा |
| 6. | (a) Lesson | noun | पाठ |
| | (b) Lessen | verb | कम करना |
| 7. | (a) Lose | verb | खोना |
| | (b) Loose | adjective | ढीला |
| | (c) Loss | noun | हानि |
| 8. | (a) Late | adverb | देर से |
| | (b) Lately | adverb | हाल में |
| 9. | (a) Loth | adjective | अनिच्छुक |
| | (b) Loathe | verb | घृणा करना |
| 10. | (a) Lion | noun | शेर |
| | (b) Loin | noun | पैर का भाग |
| 11. | (a) Limitless | adjective | असहनीय |
| | (b) Unlimited | adjective | असीमित |
| 12. | (a) Lay | verb | अंडा देना |
| | (b) Lie | verb | झूठ बोलना |
| 13. | (a) Lovely | adjective | सुन्दर, प्यारा |
| | (b) Lovable | adjective | प्यार के योग्य |
| 14. | (a) Licence | noun | अनुमति |
| | (b) License | verb | अनुमति देना |
| 15. | (a) Latitudes | noun | अक्षांश रेखाएँ |
| | (b) Longitudes | noun | देशान्तर रेखाएँ |
| 16. | (a) Legal | adjective | वैधानिक, कानून के अनुसार |
| | (b) Lawful | adjective | कानून के अनुसार, नियमित |
| 17. | (a) Liable | adjective | कानून से बाध्य, जवाबदेह |
| | (b) Likely | adjective | अनुकूल, ठीक, उपयुक्त, संभव |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 18. | (a) Licentious | adjective | व्यभिचारी, लंपट, दुराचारी, अनैतिक |
| | (b) Lascivious | adjective | कामी, भोगी, लंपट |
| | (c) Lecherous | adjective | कामुक |
| 19. | (a) Limpid | adjective | शुद्ध, स्वच्छ |
| | (b) Languid | adjective | मंद, शिथिल, स्फूर्तिहीन |
| 20. | (a) Linage | noun | रेखाओं की संख्या से संबंधित |
| | (b) Lineage | noun | वंश, कुल, वंशपरम्परा |
| 21. | (a) Liquor | noun | मदिरा, अल्कोहलिक ड्रिंक |
| | (b) Liqueur | noun | मीठी सुगन्धित मदिरा |
| 22. | (a) Location | noun | स्थान निर्धारण, स्थिति |
| | (b) Locality | noun | स्थान |
| | (c) Locale | noun | स्थानीय समाचार (घटना) स्थल |
| | (d) Local | adjective | स्थानीय |
| 23. | (a) Lonely | adjective | अकेला ही बिना किसी साथी के |
| | (b) Lonesome | adjective | अकेला होने के कारण दुःखी |
| 24. | (a) Long | adjective | लंबा |
| | (b) Lengthy | adjective | विस्तृत |
| 25. | (a) Lunch | noun | किसी भी समय किया गया हल्का भोजन |
| | (b) Dinner | noun | दिन का मुख्य भोजन, दावत |
| | (c) Supper | noun | दिन का अंतिम भोजन (रात्रि भोजन) |
| 26. | (a) Lure | noun | लुभाने वाली वस्तु |
| | (b) Allure | verb | लालच देना, प्रलोभित करना |
| 27. | (a) Lusty | adjective | स्त्री संभोग की इच्छा रखने वाला |
| | (b) Lustful | adjective | कामातुर |

## Words Starting With 'M'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Marry | verb | शादी करना |
| | (b) Merry | verb | प्रसन्न/खुश होना |
| 2. | (a) Meet | verb | मिलना |
| | (b) Meat | noun | मांस |
| 3. | (a) Mail | noun | डाक |
| | (b) Male | noun | नर |
| 4. | (a) Moral | noun | नैतिक उपदेश, आचार, व्यवहार शिक्षा |
| | (b) Morale | noun | मनोबल, सामूहिक, नैतिक |
| 5. | (a) Magnet | noun | चुम्बक |
| | (b) Magnate | noun | धनवान व्यक्ति |
| 6. | (a) Mean | verb | समझना, मतलब/अर्थ निकालना |
| | (b) Mean | adjective | नीच |
| | (c) Mien | noun | शक्ल (appearance) |
| 7. | (a) Mourn | verb | पश्चाताप करना, शोक से विलाप करना |
| | (b) Morn | noun | सुबह, सवेरा |
| 8. | (a) Martial | adjective | युद्धप्रिय, योद्धा |
| | (b) Marital | adjective | वैवाहिक, पति-पत्नी संबंधी |
| | (c) Marshal | noun | सेनाध्यक्ष, पुलिस का मुख्य अधिकारी |
| 9. | (a) Memorable | adjective | याद रखने योग्य |
| | (b) Memorial | noun | स्मारक |
| 10. | (a) Medal | noun | मेडल |
| | (b) Meddle | verb | हस्तक्षेप करना |
| 11. | (a) Metal | noun | धातु |
| | (b) Mettle | noun | शक्ति, क्षमता |
| 12. | (a) Momentary | adjective | क्षणिक |
| | (b) Momentous | adjective | बहुत महत्वपूर्ण |
| 13. | (a) Main | adjective | प्रधान/मुख्य |
| | (b) Mane | noun | शेर या घोड़ा के गरदन पर का लम्बा बाल |
| 14. | (a) Machine | noun | मशीन |
| | (b) Machinery | noun | मशीन के कल-पुर्जे, शासन-तंत्र |
| 15. | (a) Meter | noun | मापक यंत्र, मीटर |
| | (b) Metre | noun | मीटर (A unit of length in the metric system) |
| 16. | (a) Maize | noun | मक्का |
| | (b) Maze | noun | भूल भुलैया |
| 17. | (a) Mental | adjective | मानसिक, बुद्धि संबंधी |
| | (b) Mantel | noun | अँगीठी के चारों ओर की लकड़ी इत्यादि की बनावट |
| 18. | (a) Mysterious | adjective | गुप्त, अस्पष्ट |
| | (b) mystical | adjective | गुप्त |
| 19. | (a) Mutual | adjective | परस्पर, आपस का |
| | (b) Common | adjective | सामान्य, सार्वजनिक |
| 20. | (a) mead | noun | घास का मैदान |
| | (b) Meed | noun | ईनाम/पुरस्कार |
| 21. | (a) Mayor | noun | महापौर |
| | (b) Mare | noun | घोड़ी |
| 22. | (a) Magic | noun | जादूगरी, मंत्र, जादू |
| | (b) Magical | adjective | जादू जैसा |
| 23. | (a) Magisterial | adjective | शासन का |
| | (b) Magistral | adjective | मुख्य |
| 24. | (a) Magnificent | adjective | शानदार, भव्य राजसी, शोभायमान |
| | (b) Munificent | adjective | उदार, दयालु |
| 25. | (a) Malevolent | adjective | ईर्ष्यालु |
| | (b) Malicious | adjective | द्वेषपूर्ण, बुरी नीयत रखने वाला |
| 26. | (a) Malign | adjective | हानिकारक, भयंकर, घातक, खतरनाक |
| | (b) Malignant | adjective | विद्वेषी, वैर रखने वाला |
| 27. | (a) Marital | adjective | वैवाहिक, दाम्पत्य |
| | (b) Matrimonial | adjective | विवाह संबंधी |
| 28. | (a) Melodic | adjective | सुरीला |
| | (b) Melodious | adjective | मधुर, सुरीली |
| 29. | (a) Meretricious | adjective | भड़कीला, भड़कदार |
| | (b) Meritorious | adjective | प्रशंसा योग्य, गुणवान, काबिल, गुणी |
| 30. | (a) Misanthropist | noun | मानवद्वेषी |
| | (b) Misogynist | noun | नारीद्वेषी |
| | (c) Misogamist | noun | विवाह संबंधी |
| 31. | (a) Mitigate | verb | शांत, करना, कम करना |
| | (b) Militate | verb | प्रतिकूल या अनुकूल होना |
| 32. | (a) Moan | verb | कराहना, विलाप करना |
| | (b) Groan | verb | कराहना, दर्द के कारण चिल्लाना |
| 33. | (a) Mobile | adjective | चलता-फिरता |
| | (b) Movable | adjective | जो आगे-पीछे हटाया जा सके |
| 34. | (a) Modest | adjective | शिष्ट, विनम्र, संकोची |
| | (b) Moderate | adjective | न बहुत ज्यादा, न बहुत कम |
| 35. | (a) Monogram | noun | दो या दो से अधिक अक्षरों को मिलाकर बना हुआ डिजाइन |
| | (b) Monograph | noun | एक ही पदार्थ या एक तरह के पदार्थों पर लिखा गया निबंध |
| 36. | (a) Mythical | adjective | काल्पनिक, पौराणिक |
| | (b) Mythological | adjective | काल्पनिक, अवास्तविक |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Words Starting With 'N'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Naval | adjective | नौ सेना संबंधी |
| | (b) Navel | noun | नाभि |
| 2. | (a) Night | noun | रात |
| | (b) Knight | noun | शूरवीर, सामंत |
| 3. | (a) Negligent | adjective | असावधान |
| | (b) Negligible | adjective | अल्प/नगण्य |
| 4. | (a) Necessary | adjective | आवश्यक/जरूरत |
| | (b) Necessity | noun | आवश्यकता |
| 5. | (a) Notable | adjective | महत्वपूर्ण, नोट करने योग्य |
| | (b) Notorious | adjective | कुख्यात (for bad qualities) |
| | (c) Famous | adjective | प्रसिद्ध (for good qualities) |
| 6. | (a) Nadir | noun | पाताल, पतन की चरमावस्था |
| | (b) Zenith | noun | उच्चतम स्थान |
| 7. | (a) Narration | noun | कथन, वृत्तांत, वर्णन |
| | (b) Narrative | noun | कहानी, किस्सा, वर्णन, वृत्तांत |
| 8. | (a) Nationalise | verb | राष्ट्रीयकरण करना, सरकार द्वारा अपने अधिकार में लेना |
| | (b) Naturalise | noun | नागरिकता का अधिकार प्रदान करना |
| 9. | (a) Naught | noun | कुछ नहीं, शून्य, पूर्ण असफलता |
| | (b) Nought | noun | कुछ नहीं, बरबादी, शून्य |
| 10. | (a) Nefarious | adjective | अतिदुष्ट, घृणित, जघन्य |
| | (b) Felonious | adjective | नीच, दुष्ट, कुकर्मी, |
| 11. | (a) Net | noun | जाल, फंदा |
| | (b) Gross | noun | बारह दर्जन, सम्पूर्ण राशि |
| 12. | (a) Numerous | adjective | अनेक, बहुत सारे |
| | (b) Numerable | adjective | जिसकी गणना की जा सके |
| | (c) Innumerable | adjective | अनगिनत, असंख्य |
| 13. | (a) Nurse | noun | परिचारिका, रोगियों की देखभाल करने वाली/वाला |
| | (b) Nurture | noun | पालन-पोषण, देखभाल |
| | (c) Nourish | verb | पालन करना, पोषण करना |
| | (d) Cherish | verb | सावधानी से पोषण करना, आशा धारण करना |
| 14. | (a) Nuritious | adjective | पौष्टिक, पुष्टिकर |
| | (b) Nutritional | adjective | आहार या पोषण का, पोषण संबंधी |
| 15. | (a) Non-chalant | adjective | उत्साहहीन, उदासीन, बेपरवाह |
| | (b) Insouciant | adjective | लापरवाह, निश्चिंत |

## Words Starting With 'O'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | (a) Once | adverb | एक बार |
| | (b) One's | possessive pronoun | किसी व्यक्ति का |
| 2. | (a) Ordinance | noun | विशेष आदेश, सरकार के द्वारा बनाया गया कानून |
| | (b) Ordnance | noun | युद्ध सामग्री, तोप |
| 3. | (a) Official | adjective | ऑफिस संबंधी |
| | (b) Officious | adjective | अनुचित हस्तक्षेप करने वाला, झगड़ालू |
| 4. | (a) Oar | noun | पतवार |
| | (b) Ore | noun | अयस्क |
| 5. | (a) Odious | adjective | घृणित, घिनौना |
| | (b) Odorous | adjective | सुगन्धित |
| 6. | (a) Order | noun | आदेश/आज्ञा |
| | (b) Ardour | noun | उत्साह, जोश |
| 7. | (a) Object | verb | विरोध करना, मना करना |
| | (b) Subject | verb | अधीन करना, उन्मुक्त करना |
| 8. | (a) Obliged | verb. (P.P) | बाध्य या विवश किया |
| | (b) Obligated | verb. (P.P) | किसी व्यक्ति को कोई कार्य करने के लिए विवश किया |
| 9. | (a) Obnoxious | adjective | घृणित, घिनौना |
| | (b) Noxious | adjective | हानिकारक, अनिष्टकर, बुरा, खराब |
| | (c) Noisome | adjective | अप्रिय, हानिकारक |
| 10. | (a) Obscure | adjective | अस्पष्ट, ऐसी बात जो समझ में न आये |
| | (b) Abstruse | adjective | जटिल, कठिन |
| | (c) Obtuse | adjective | जिसकी धार तेज न हो, भोथर |
| | (d) Obtruse | adjective | धृष्ट, ढीठ |
| 11. | (a) Observation | noun | अवलोकन, कथन, टीका टिप्पणी |
| | (b) Observance | noun | प्रथा, रीति, प्रचलन |
| 12. | (a) Obsolete | adjective | पुरानी, अप्रचलित |
| | (b) Obsolescent | adjective | अप्रचलित, पुराना |
| 13. | (a) Obstacle | noun | बाधा, रुकावट, अड़चन |
| | (b) Obstruction | noun | बाधा, रुकावट |
| 14. | (a) Obstinate | adjective | जिद्दी, हठी |
| | (b) Obdurate | adjective | जिद्दी, कठोर, हृदय, निष्ठुर |
| 15. | (a) Occupied | adjective | प्रयोग में, भरा हुआ |
| | (b) Preoccupied | adjective | विचार मग्न, तल्लीन, लापरवाह |
| 16. | (a) Oculist | noun | नेत्र चिकित्सक |
| | (b) Optician | noun | चश्मा बनाने एवं बेचने वाला |
| 17. | (a) Odium | noun | भारी घृणा, साखी नफरत |
| | (b) Odour | noun | ख्याति, गंध, प्रसिद्धि |
| | (c) Opprobrium | noun | अपयश, बदनामी, कलंक, निंदा |
| | (d) Opprobrious | adjective | अपमानजनक, निन्दात्मक, बदनामी दिलाने वाला |
| 18. | (a) Offer | verb | प्रदान करना, बदलना, प्रस्ताव रखना, अर्पण करना |
| | (b) Proffer | verb | प्रस्ताव रखना, भेंट या अर्पण करना, प्रदान करना |
| 19. | (a) Operator | noun | यंत्र, मशीन चालक |
| | (b) Operative | adjective | लागू हुआ, प्रभावपूर्ण, चीर-फाड़ से संबंधित |
| 20. | (a) Oppression | noun | अत्याचार, उत्पीड़न, जुल्म, दमन |
| | (b) Repression | noun | दमन, जुल्म |
| 21. | (a) Oration | noun | सार्वजनिक व्याख्यान |
| | (b) Orison | noun | प्रार्थना, स्तुति |
| 22. | (a) Orchestrate | verb | सम्मिलित गायन-वादन के लिए स्वर या साज मिलाना |
| | (b) Organise | verb | आयोजन या संगठित करना, सुव्यवस्थित रूप देना, संगठन बनाना |
| 23. | (a) Orient | verb | परिस्थिति या वातावरण के अनुकूल बनाना |
| | (b) Orientate | verb | अनुकूल बनाना |
| 24. | (a) Oriental | adjective | पूर्व से संबंधित |
| | (b) Occidental | adjective | पाश्चात्य, यूरोपियन |
| 25. | (a) Orthopaedic | adjective | विकृत हड्डियों के उपचार से संबंधित |
| | (b) Paediatricis | noun | बाल चिकित्सा से संबंधित विज्ञान |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 26. (a) | Ostentatiously | adverb | दिखावटी तौर से |
| (b) | Ostensibly | adverb | प्रत्यक्ष रूप से |
| 27. (a) | Outrageous | adjective | निन्दापूर्ण, अत्याचारी, मर्यादा-हीन |
| (b) | Outre | adjective | परम्परा के विपरीत |
| 28. (a) | Ornate | adjective | सुसज्जित, खूब सजा हुआ |
| (b) | Ornamental | adjective | सुशोभित करने वाला |

## Words Starting With 'P'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Peace | noun | शांति |
| (b) | Piece | noun | टुकड़ा |
| 2. (a) | Pole | noun | खंभा |
| (b) | Poll | noun | मतदान |
| 3. (a) | Practice | noun | अभ्यास |
| (b) | Practise | verb | अभ्यास करना |
| 4. (a) | Practicable | adjective | व्यवहार में लाने योग्य |
| (b) | Practical | adjective | व्यावहारिक |
| 5. (a) | Principle | noun | सिद्धांत |
| (b) | Principal | noun | प्राचार्य |
| 6. (a) | Precede | verb | पहले आना |
| (b) | Proceed | verb | दूसरी जगह जाना |
| 7. (a) | Precedent | noun | पूर्ववर्ती उदाहरण |
| (b) | President | noun | सभापति, राष्ट्रपति |
| 8. (a) | People | noun | आदमी, लोग |
| (b) | Pupil | noun | शिष्य |
| 9. (a) | Populous | adjective | घनी आबादी वाला |
| (b) | Popular | adjective | लोकप्रिय |
| 10. (a) | Persecute | verb | अन्यायपूर्ण ढंग से तंग करना |
| (b) | Prosecute | verb | अभियोग चलाना |
| 11. (a) | Place | noun | स्थान/जगह |
| (b) | Plaice | noun | एक प्रकार की मछली (a flat fish) |
| 12. (a) | Pray | verb | प्रार्थना करना |
| (b) | Prey | noun | शिकार |
| (c) | Prey | verb | शिकार करना, लूटपाट करना |
| 13. (a) | Prescribe | verb | दवा का निर्देश देना |
| (b) | Proscribe | verb | कानूनी संरक्षण से अलग करना |
| 14. (a) | Plane | noun | हवाई जहाज |
| (b) | Plain | adjective | समतल, सपाट, चौरस |
| (c) | Plan | noun | योजना, रूपरेखा |
| 15. (a) | Propose | verb | प्रस्तावित करना |
| (b) | Purpose | noun | इरादा |
| 16. (a) | Price | noun | दाम |
| (b) | Prize | noun | ईनाम |
| 17. (a) | Portable | adjective | हाथ से उठा कर ले जाने योग्य |
| (b) | Potable | adjective | पीने योग्य |
| 18. (a) | pore | noun | छिद्र |
| (b) | Pour | verb | डालना |
| 19. (a) | Physic | noun | दवा/औषधि |
| (b) | Physique | noun | शरीर की बनावट |
| (c) | Physics | noun | भौतिक विज्ञान |
| 20. (a) | Personal | adjective | व्यक्तिगत |
| (b) | Personnel | noun | कर्मचारी वर्ग |
| 21. (a) | Passed | verb | व्यतीत हुआ |
| (b) | Past | adjective | पिछला, इससे पहला |
| 22. (a) | Pane | noun | शीशा, खिड़की में लगी काँच की पट्टी |
| (b) | Pain | noun | दर्द |
| 23. (a) | Pare | verb | नाखून काटना, छीलना, घटाना, कम करना |
| (b) | Pair | noun | जोड़ा, युगल, युग्म |
| 24. (a) | Peal | noun | झंकार |
| (b) | Peel (off) | verb | छिलका उतारना |
| (c) | Peel | noun | छिलका |
| 25. (a) | Pectoral | adjective | छाती या सीने पर पहनने वाला |
| (b) | Pictorial | adjective | चित्रमय, सजीव |
| 26. (a) | Polish | noun | पॉलिश, चमक |
| (b) | Police | noun | पुलिस, सिपाही |
| 27. (a) | Plait | noun | सिलवट, चुनट, झुर्री |
| (b) | Plate | noun | तश्तरी, थाली |
| 28. (a) | Plaintiff | noun | अभियोगी, मुद्दई |
| (b) | Plaintive | adjective | शोकपूर्ण, शोकाकुल |
| 29. (a) | Pick | verb | चुनना |
| (b) | Peak | noun | चोटी, शिखर |
| 30. (a) | Pale | adjective | पीला, उदास |
| (b) | Pail | noun | एक प्रकार का बरतन |
| 31. (a) | Pedal | noun | साईकिल का पैडल |
| (b) | Paddle | noun | पतवार, साइकिल का पैडल |
| 32. (a) | Prophesy | verb | भविष्यवाणी करना |
| (b) | Prophecy | noun | भविष्यवाणी |
| 33. (a) | Pitiable | adjective | दयनीय, दीन |
| (b) | Piteous | adjective | दयापात्र, दीन |
| (c) | Pitiful | adjective | जिसे देखकर मन में दया की भावना जागृत हो। |
| 34. (a) | Part | noun | भाग |
| (b) | Portion | noun | एक निश्चित भाग |
| 35. (a) | Petrol | noun | पेट्रोल (तेल) |
| (b) | Patrol | verb | नियंत्रण करना |
| 36. (a) | Primary | adjective | प्राथमिक |
| (b) | Primitive | adjective | प्राचीन, आदि |
| 37. (a) | Punctual | adjective | समयनिष्ठ |
| (b) | Punctilious | adjective | शिष्टाचार या कर्त्तव्य की बारीकियों का ध्यान रखने वाला |
| 38. (a) | Possible | adjective | संभव, जो मुमकिन हो |
| (b) | Probable | adjective | सम्भाव्य |
| 39. (a) | Premier | adjective | प्रथम, प्रधान |
| (b) | Premiere | noun | किसी नाटक या फिल्म का प्रथम प्रदर्शन |
| 40. (a) | Premises | noun (P) | भवन, मकान आदि |
| (b) | Premise | noun | तर्क का आधार |
| 41. (a) | Pursue | verb | पीछा करना, शिकार करना |
| (b) | Peruse | verb | जाँच करना |
| (c) | Persuade | verb | विश्वास दिलाना, समझना |
| 42. (a) | Paradox | noun | असंगत कथन, विरोधाभास |
| (b) | Parody | noun | व्यंग्यपूर्ण काव्य, कविता का हास्यजनक अनुकरण |
| 43. (a) | Power | noun | शक्ति, बिजलीघर, अधिकार, प्रभुत्व, शासन |
| (b) | Strength | noun | शक्ति, ताकत |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 44. (a) | Prerequisite | noun adj. | पूर्व अपेक्षित, पूर्वकांक्षित, आवश्यक |
| (b) | Prerogative | noun | विशेषाधिकार |
| 45. (a) | Permeate | verb | रिसना, प्रवेश करना, भेदना |
| (b) | Permute | verb | क्रम बदलना, क्रम परिवर्तन करना |
| 46. (a) | Physician | noun | चिकित्सक, डॉक्टर |
| (b) | Physicist | noun | भौतिक विज्ञानी |
| 47. (a) | Presentiment | noun | पूर्वाभास, पूर्वबोध |
| (b) | Presentment | noun | प्रस्तुतीकरण, पेशी |
| 48. (a) | Presumptive | adjective | पूर्वकल्पित, संभावित, अनुमानतः |
| (b) | Presumptuous | adjective | दुस्साहसी, आत्माभिमानी |
| 49. (a) | Perpetuate | verb | जारी रखना |
| (b) | Perpetrate | verb | अपराध करना |
| 50. (a) | Packet | noun | छोटी गठरी |
| (b) | Package | noun | गठरी, पोटली, बंडल |
| (c) | Parcel | noun | बंडल, पुलिन्दा |
| 51. (a) | Palate | noun | तालु, स्वाद |
| (b) | Palette | noun | चित्रकार का रंग मिलाने की तख्ती या प्लेट |
| 52. (a) | Palpate | verb | शरीर के किसी भाग को छूकर या टटोल कर बीमारी का पता लगाना |
| (b) | Palpitate | verb | काँपना, थरथराना, धक-धक करना |
| 53. (a) | Panacea | noun | रामबाण, सर्वरोग नाशक |
| (b) | Placebo | noun | मृत के लिए प्रार्थना |
| 54. (a) | Paralysed | adjective | लकवा रोग से ग्रसित |
| (b) | Petrified | adjective | स्तब्ध या सुन्न कर दिया |
| 55. (a) | Parameter | noun | निश्चित या निर्धारित सीमा |
| (b) | Perimeter | noun | परिमाप, घेरा |
| 56. (a) | Parlous | adjective | भयंकर, संकटपूर्ण |
| (b) | Perilous | adjective | खतरनाक, विपदजनक |
| 57. (a) | Parricide | noun | पितृघाती, समीप के संबंधी की हत्या करने वाला |
| (b) | Patricide | noun | पितृ हत्या, पिता का वध |
| 58. (a) | Particular | adjective | विशिष्ट, सावधान, स्थिर विलक्षण |
| (b) | Peculiar | adjective | अनोखा, असामान्य, असाधारण |
| 59. (a) | Partly | adverb | कुछ सीमा तक |
| (b) | Partially | adverb | आंशिक रूप से, थोड़ा सा |
| 60. (a) | Pastry | noun | आटा, घी, आदी के मिश्रण से बना भट्टी में पका हुआ खाद्य पदार्थ |
| (b) | Pasty | noun | एक प्रकार की कचौड़ी |
| (c) | Patty | noun | एक प्रकार का समोसा |
| (d) | Pate | noun | सिर या खोपड़ी |
| 61. (a) | Peaceful | adjective | शान्त, शान्तिपूर्ण |
| (b) | Peaceable | adjective | शांतिप्रिय, शांत |
| 62. (a) | Pedant | noun | किताबी शिक्षा पर अधिक महत्व देने वाला |
| (b) | Pedagogue | noun | पांडित्यप्रिय अध्यापक |
| 63. (a) | Pendant | noun | झुमका, रोशनी के लिए झाड़-फानूस |
| (b) | Pendent | adjective | लटकता हुआ, मुरझाया हुआ |
| 64. (a) | Peninsula | noun | तीन ओर पानी से घिरा भू-भाग, प्रायद्वीप |
| (b) | Peninsular | adjective | प्रायद्वीपीय, तीन ओर पानी से घिरा भू-भाग |
| 65. (a) | Perceptive | adjective | ज्ञान विषयक, शीघ्रता से समझने वाला |
| (b) | Percipient | adjective | विवेकशील, समझदार |
| 66. (a) | Perspicacious | adjective | बात को शीघ्र समझने वाला, तेज दृष्टि वाला |
| (b) | Perspicuous | adjective | स्पष्ट, सुबोध |
| 67. (a) | Perfume | noun | इत्र, सुगंध, खुशबू |
| (b) | Scent | noun | इत्र, सुगंध |
| (c) | Fragrance | noun | सुगंध, खुशबू |
| 68. (a) | Perfunctory | adjective | बेमन से, दिखावटी |
| (b) | Peremptory | adjective | जिसमें बहस की गुंजाइश न हो |
| 69. (a) | Persistence | noun | स्थिरता |
| (b) | Pertinacity | noun | जिद, हठ धर्मी |
| (c) | Tenacity | noun | हठ |
| (d) | Tenaciousness | noun | जिद्द, हठ |
| 70. (a) | Personage | noun | विख्यात या श्रेष्ठ पुरुष, विशिष्ट व्यक्ति |
| (b) | Personality | noun | व्यक्तित्व, व्यक्ति की निजी विशेषता |
| 71. (a) | Perspective | adjective | दृश्य, स्वरूप |
| (b) | Prospect | noun | विस्तृत दृश्य, आशा, उम्मीद |
| 72. (a) | Pervade | verb | व्याप्त होना, सब जगह फैलाना, प्रभावित करना |
| (b) | Permeate | verb | रिसना, प्रवेश करना, भेदना |
| (c) | Percolate | verb | छनना, टपकना, थोड़ा-थोड़ा करके बह निकलना |
| 73. (a) | Perverse | adjective | जान बूझकर गलत व्यवहार करने वाला |
| (b) | Perverted | verb.(P.P) | किसी वस्तु का दुरुपयोग किया भ्रष्ट किया |
| 74. (a) | Phrase | noun | शब्दसमूह |
| (b) | Phase | noun | विकास की स्थिति, समकालिक |
| 75. (a) | Picturesque | adjective | चित्र जैसा, सुन्दर, स्पष्ट, विशेष आकर्षक |
| (b) | Picaresque | noun | साहसिक कारनामों से भरी कहानी |
| 76. (a) | Pillar | noun | स्तम्भ खंभा, आधार |
| (b) | Column | noun | स्तम्भ |
| 77. (a) | Poetic | adjective | कविता संबंधी |
| (b) | Poetical | adjective | कविता में वर्णन किया हुआ |
| 78. (a) | Policy | noun | कूटनीति, चतुराई, युक्ति |
| (b) | Polity | noun | राज्य शासन विधि, व्यवस्थित समाज |
| 79. (a) | Politic | adjective | चतुर, व्यवहार कुशल, |
| (b) | Political | adjective | राजकीय, राजनीति |
| 80. (a) | Port | noun | बन्दरगाह |
| (b) | Harbour | noun | बन्दरगाह, पोताश्रय |
| 81. (a) | Pose | verb | किसी विशिष्ट स्थिति में बैठना, व्यग्र करना, खड़ा कर देना |
| (b) | Propose | verb | प्रस्ताव करना |
| (b) | Propound | verb | प्रतिपादन या निवेदन करना |
| 82. (a) | Prate | verb | बड़बड़ करना, वृथा बकवाद करना |
| (b) | Prattle | verb | बालकों की तरह बड़बड़ाना, प्रलाप करना |
| 83. (a) | Predict | verb | भविष्य बतलाना |
| (b) | Predicate | verb | विधान करना, निर्देश करना |
| 84. (a) | Predilection | noun | पूर्व स्नेह, पक्षपात |
| (b) | Proclivity | noun | प्रवृत्ति, झुकाव, रुझान |
| 85. (a) | Predominate | verb | प्रबल होना, प्रभाव रखना, पराक्रम में बढ़ना |
| (b) | Preponderate | verb | भार में अधिक होना, दूसरों पर अधिक प्रभाव डालना |
| 86. (a) | Preparatory | adjective | आरम्भ का तैयार करने वाला |
| (b) | Prefactory | adjective | भूमिका संबंधी |
| (c) | Preliminary | adjective | प्राथमिक, पारिभाषिक |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 87. (a) | Premonition | noun | पूर्व सूचना, पहिले से चेतावनी |
| (b) | Prescience | noun | पूर्व ज्ञान |
| 88. (a) | Prestigious | adjective | गौरव पूर्ण |
| (b) | Prodigious | adjective | आश्चर्यजनक, बहुत बड़ा, अद्भुत |
| 89. (a) | Presume | verb | साथ मान लेना, साहस करना, भरोसा करना, निर्भर होना |
| (b) | Assume | verb | सत्य मान लेना, ग्रहण करना, कार्य-भार संभालना, छल करना |
| 90. (a) | Pretence | noun | बहाना, झूठा दावा, दिखावा |
| (b) | Pretext | noun | बहाना, असत्य कारण |
| 91. (a) | Prevaricate | verb | गोल बात करना, द्व्यर्थक बात करना, झूठ बोलना |
| (b) | Procrastinate | verb | काम टालना, विलम्ब करना |
| 92. (a) | Previous | adjective | पहिले से, पहले का, पिछला |
| (b) | Prior | adjective | पिछला, पूर्ववर्ती, पहले |
| 93. (a) | Procedure | noun | काम करने का ढंग, कार्य शैली |
| (b) | Proceedings | noun | मीटिंग आदि की कार्यवाही का आलेख |
| 94. (a) | Prolific | adjective | उपजाऊ, उर्वर, प्रजननशील |
| (b) | Prolix | adjective | जटिल, बहुत लिखना, बोलने वाला (वाचाल) |
| (c) | Profligate | adjective | दुराचारी, दुश्चरित्र, बहुत खर्चीला |
| 95. (a) | Propensity | noun | प्रवृत्ति, झुकाव |
| (b) | Proclivity | noun | प्रवृत्ति, झुकाव, रुझान |
| 96. (a) | Proportional | adjective | अनुरूप, तुल्य |
| (b) | Proportionate | adjective | अनुरूप, सदृश |
| 97. (a) | Proposal | noun | प्रस्ताव |
| (b) | Proposition | noun | प्रतिज्ञा, प्रस्तावना, साध्य, कर्तव्य निर्देश |
| 98. (a) | Provincial | adjective | प्रान्तीय |
| (b) | Parochial | adjective | ग्राम्य, देहात का, |
| 99. (a) | Prudent | adjective | चतुर, विवेकी, नीतिज्ञ, मितव्ययी |
| (b) | Prudential | adjective | विवेक युक्त, बुद्धिमान का |
| 100. (a) | Psychologist | noun | मानस शास्त्र जानने वाला |
| (b) | Psychiatrist | noun | मनोचिकित्सक |
| 101. (a) | Pungent | adjective | तीखा, तीव्र |
| (b) | Poignant | adjective | मर्मस्पर्शी, कष्टदायक, तीक्ष्ण, तीखा |
| (c) | Piquant | adjective | चटपटा, मन में खलबली पैदा करने वाला |
| (d) | Plangent | adjective | झनाने वाला, काँपाने वाला |
| 102. (a) | Puny | adjective | नन्हा, दुर्बल, शक्तिहीन |
| (b) | Puny | noun | अनुभवहीन युवा मनुष्य |
| (c) | Pusillanimous | adjective | कमजोर दिलवाला, नीच प्रकृति वाला, कायर |

## Words Starting With 'Q'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Querry | noun | प्रश्न, पूछताछ, जाँच पड़ताल |
| (b) | Quarry | noun | वह स्थान जहाँ जमीन से पत्थर प्राप्त किया जाता है। खदान, खुली खान |
| 2. (a) | Quiet | noun | शांत, चुपचाप |
| (b) | Quite | adverb | बिल्कुल, पूर्णतः |
| 3. (a) | Quest | noun | खोज |
| (b) | Bequest | noun | मृत्यु लेख द्वारा अर्पित दान |
| 4. (a) | Queen | noun | रानी |
| (b) | Quean | noun | वेश्या |
| 5. (a) | Quantity | noun | मात्रा, परिमाण |
| (b) | Quality | noun | गुण |
| 6. (a) | Quarrelsome | adjective | झगड़ालू, विवादी |
| (b) | Querulous | adjective | विलापी, दुःखी, सर्वदा शिकायत करने वाला |
| 7. (a) | Quota | noun | निर्धारित अंश |
| (b) | Quorum | noun | कार्यवाही संख्या, न्यूनतम आवश्यक संख्या |
| 8. (a) | Quote | verb | उद्धृत करना, हवाला देना, दाम बताना |
| (b) | Cite | verb | उद्धरण करना, अपनी बात के समर्थन में कोई दृष्टान्त देना |
| 9. (a) | Queasy | adjective | नुनक मिजाज, शंकालु, पापी, |
| (b) | Qualmish | adjective | जिसका जी मिचला रहा हो, वमनेच्छु |
| (c) | Squeamish | adjective | जल्दी जी मचलाने वाला |
| (d) | Quiescent | adjective | स्थिर, शान्त, निश्चल |

## Words Starting With 'R'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Rain | verb | वर्षा होना |
| (b) | Reign | verb | शासन करना |
| (c) | Rein | noun | लगाम |
| 2. (a) | Recollect | verb | किसी भूली वस्तु को याद करना |
| (b) | Remember | verb | याद करना |
| 3. (a) | Respectable | adjective | प्रतिष्ठित |
| (b) | Respectful | adjective | सम्मानपूर्ण |
| (c) | Respective | adjective | अपनी-अपनी |
| 4. (a) | Root | noun | जड़ |
| (b) | Route | noun | यात्रा का रास्ता |
| 5. (a) | Rout | noun | हार, पराजय |
| (b) | Riot | noun | झगड़ा |
| 6. (a) | Ring | noun | अंगूठी |
| (b) | Wring | verb | निचोड़ना |
| 7. (a) | Right | noun | अधिकार, हक |
| (b) | Right | adjective | ठीक |
| (c) | Write | verb | लिखना |
| (d) | Rite | noun | रीति/रस्म, धार्मिक रिवाज |
| (e) | Wright | noun | लेखक |
| 8. (a) | Roll | noun | हाजरी |
| (b) | Role | noun | भूमिका |
| 9. (a) | Refuse | verb | इनकार करना |
| (b) | Refuge | noun | आश्रय |
| 10. (a) | Raise | verb | उठाना |
| (b) | Raze | verb | मिटाना, फेंकना, खुरचना |
| (c) | Rays | noun | किरणें |
| (d) | Rise | verb | उठना |
| 11. (a) | Revel | verb | खुशी मानना |
| (b) | Reveal | verb | प्रकट करना |
| 12. (a) | Rob | verb | लूटना |
| (b) | Steal | verb | चुराना |
| (c) | Steel | noun | स्टील |
| 13. (a) | Rent | verb | कमरा, मकान, जमीन आदि भाड़ा/किराया पर लेना |
| (b) | Hire | verb | व्यक्ति या वस्तु का सेवा/उपयोग के लिए भाड़ा देना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 14. (a) | Review | noun | समालोचना, समीक्षा, पुनर्विचार |
| (b) | Revue | noun | नाटकीय मनोरंजन |
| 15. (a) | Rich | adjective | अमीर |
| (b) | Richly | adverb | धनी रूप से |
| 16. (a) | Resource | noun | स्रोत |
| (b) | Recourse | noun | सहायता के लिए शरण, सहारा, साधन, आसरा खोजना |
| 17. (a) | Reck | verb | देखभाल करना |
| (b) | Wreck | verb | नष्ट होना, बर्बाद होना |
| 18. (a) | Road | noun | सड़क |
| (b) | Rode | verb (P.P) | सवार हुआ |
| 19. (a) | Racialist | noun | प्रजातिवाद भड़काने वाला |
| (b) | Racist | noun | प्रजातिवाद भड़काने वाला |
| 20. (a) | Rack | noun | बर्तन चारा रखने की टाँड़, सामान रखने या लटकाने का पाटन |
| (b) | Wrack | noun | समुद्री शैवाल, अपार क्षति |
| 21. (a) | Rapacious | adjective | अतिलोलुप, बलपूर्वक ग्रहणकारी, |
| (b) | Voracious | adjective | बहुत लालची या भूखा |
| 22. (a) | Rascal | adjective | धूर्त, बदमाश, दुष्ट |
| (b) | Rogue | noun | धूर्त, पाजी |
| (c) | Rapscallion | noun | बदनाम या बदमाश व्यक्ति |
| 23. (a) | Ravage | verb | नष्ट कर देना, लूटना |
| (b) | Ravish | verb | मोहित करना, बलात्कार ले जाना |
| 24. (a) | Rebut | verb | खंडन करना, विपरीत तर्क पेश करना |
| (b) | Rebuff | verb | दो टूक जवाब देना, झिड़क देना |
| 25. (a) | Reciprocal | noun/adj. | पारस्परिक |
| (b) | Mutual | adjective | पारस्परिक, आपस में, |
| 26. (a) | Reckless | adjective | असावधान, लापरवाह, |
| (b) | Feckless | adjective | लापरवाह, बेकार |
| 27. (a) | Reconcile | verb | झगड़ा निपटाना, मित्रता करा देना, मेल करा देना |
| (b) | Conciliate | verb | मना लेना, अनुकूल करना |
| 20. (a) | Refund | verb | धन को पुनः प्रदान करना, दोबारा देना |
| (b) | Rebate | verb | बिल में छूट देना, कटौती करना |
| 29. (a) | Recover | verb | खोयी हुई चीज फिर से पाना |
| (b) | Recoup | verb | क्षतिपूर्ति करना, घटाना, निकाल लेना |
| 30. (a) | Refute | verb | गलत साबित करना, खंडन करना |
| (b) | Repudiate | verb | संबंध विच्छेद करना, अपनाने से मना करना, छोड़ देना |
| 31. (a) | Reliable | adjective | विश्वास या भरोसे के लायक |
| (b) | Reliant | adjective | भरोसा करने वाला, विश्वासी |
| 32. (a) | Reluctant | adjective | अनिच्छुक |
| (b) | Reticent | adjective | अल्पभाषी, चुप, मौन |
| 33. (a) | Repel | verb | हतोत्साहित करना, हटाना, डटकर मुकाबला करना, अलग-अलग रहना |
| (b) | Repulse | verb | खदेड़ना, पीछे धकेलना, दुत्कार देना, अस्वीकार करना |
| 34. (a) | Repetitive | adjective | पुनरावृत्ति, पूर्ण आवृत्ति |
| (b) | Repetitious | adjective | दोहराया हुआ, पुनरावृत्त |
| 35. (a) | Replenisment | noun | पुनःपूर्ति, |
| (b) | Repletion | noun | पूर्णता, प्रचुरता, बहुतायत |

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 36. (a) | Reproach | verb | धिक्कारना, फटकारना, भर्त्सना करना |
| (b) | Reprove | verb | फटकारना, झिड़कना, डाँट लगाना |
| (c) | Rebuke | verb | सख्ती से बर्ताव करना, डाँटना, बुरा-भला कहना |
| 37. (a) | Repulsive | adjective | घृणित, वीभत्स |
| (b) | Repugnant | adjective | अरुचिकर, प्रतिकूल, निराशाजनक |
| (c) | Repellent | adjective | अप्रिय, घृणित |
| 38. (a) | Reservation | noun | सुरक्षित अधिकार, आरक्षण |
| (b) | Reserve | verb | भविष्य के लिए बचाकर रखना |
| (c) | Preserve | verb | बचाना, सुरक्षा करना, खतरे से बचाना |
| 39. (a) | Resin | noun | लार, लीसा |
| (b) | Rosin | noun | बिरोजा (resin in solid form) |
| 40. (a) | Retire | verb | अवकाश ग्रहण करना, कार्य भार से मुक्त होना |
| (b) | Retreat | verb | पीछे हटना |
| 41. (a) | Reverent | adjective | आदर भाव प्रकट करते हुए |
| (b) | Reverend | adjective | आदरणीय, माननीय, |
| 42. (a) | Revolve | verb | चक्कर लगाना, परिक्रमा करना, |
| (b) | Rotate | verb | घूर्णन करना, घूमना |
| 43. (a) | Reward | verb | पुरस्कार, देना, इनाम देना |
| (b) | Award | verb | इनाम देना, दंड देना, जुर्माना करना |
| 44. (a) | Risky | adjective | खतरे वाला |
| (b) | Risque | adjective | अश्लील, अभद्र, अशोभनीय |
| 45. (a) | Rouse | verb | जागना, जगाना |
| (b) | Arouse | verb | जागृत या उत्तेजित करना |
| 46. (a) | Royal | adjective | राजसी, राजकीय शाही |
| (b) | Regal | adjective | राजकीय, वैभवपूर्ण, शानदार, एकदम बढ़िया |

## Words Starting With 'S'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Stationary | adjective | स्थिर, अचल |
| (b) | Stationery | noun | लेखन सामग्री |
| 2. (a) | Stare | verb | टकटकी लगा कर देखना |
| (b) | Stair | noun | सीढ़ी |
| 3. (a) | Story | noun | कहानी |
| (b) | Storey | noun | मंजिल |
| 4. (a) | Soldier | noun | सैनिक |
| (b) | Shoulder | noun | कंधा |
| 5. (a) | Sensible | adjective | विवेकशील |
| (b) | Sensitive | adjective | संवेदनशील |
| 6. (a) | Sensuous | adjective | इंद्रियग्राह्य |
| (b) | Sexual | adjective | कामुक, सेक्सी |
| 7. (a) | Soul | noun | आत्मा |
| (b) | Sole | noun | एकाकी, प्रधान |
| 8. (a) | Spectacle | noun | तमाशा |
| (b) | Spectacles | noun | चश्मा |
| 9. (a) | Scent | noun | सुगंध |
| (b) | Cent | noun | शतांश |
| 10. (a) | Seize | verb | पकड़ लेना |
| (b) | Seige | noun | सैनिक घेरा |
| (c) | Cease | verb | रुकना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 11. (a) | Stimulus | noun | उद्दीपन |
| (b) | Stimulant | adjective | उत्तेजक |
| 12. (a) | See | verb | देखना |
| (b) | Sea | noun | समुद्र |
| 13. (a) | Suit | noun | कपड़े का सूट |
| (b) | Suit | verb | अनुकूल होना |
| (c) | suite | noun | कमरे का सेट |
| (d) | Soot | noun | कालिख |
| 14. (a) | Shade | noun | छाया |
| (b) | Shadow | noun | परछाई |
| 15. (a) | Sore | adjective | दुःखी, पीड़ायुक्त चिन्तित, परेशान |
| (b) | Sour | adjective | खट्टा |
| (c) | Soar | verb | मँडराना |
| 16. (a) | Sail | verb | पोत से सैर करना |
| (b) | Sale | noun | बिक्री, विक्रय |
| (c) | Sell | verb | बेचना |
| 17. (a) | Social | adjective | समाज से संबंधित |
| (b) | Sociable | adjective | मिलनसार, |
| 18. (a) | Statue | noun | प्रतिमा, मूर्ति |
| (b) | Statute | noun | लिखित कानून |
| 19. (a) | Seam | noun | सिलाई में जोड़, संधि |
| (b) | Seem | verb | प्रतीत होना, मालूम पड़ना |
| 20. (a) | Septic | adjective | सड़न पैदा करने वाला |
| (b) | Sceptic | adjective | धर्म में विश्वास न रखने वाला, संशयवादी |
| 21. (a) | Superficial | adjective | सतह पर, हल्का थोड़ा, बाहरी, महत्वहीन |
| (b) | Superfluous | adjective | अवश्यकता से अधिक, अनावश्यक |
| 22. (a) | Sow | verb | बीज बोना |
| (b) | Sew | verb (P.P) | सिया |
| 23. (a) | Spare | adjective | जिसकी फिलहाल जरूरत न हो, खाली, अपर्याप्त |
| (b) | Save | verb | बचाना, रक्षा करना |
| 24. (a) | Sure | adjective | निश्चित |
| (b) | Secure | adjective | सुरक्षित |
| 25. (a) | Salutary | adjective | लाभप्रद, स्वास्थ्यवर्द्धक |
| (b) | Salutation | noun | प्रणाम, सलाम |
| (c) | Salubrious | adjective | स्वस्थ |
| 26. (a) | Sometime | noun | कुछ समय |
| (b) | Sometimes | adverb | यदा कदा, कभी कभी |
| 27. (a) | Smell | verb | सूँघना, गंध लेना |
| (b) | Smelly | adjective | बदबूदार, गंधैला |
| 28. (a) | Straight | adjective | सीधा, स्पष्टवादी |
| (b) | Strait | adjecitve | तंग, परेशान |
| 29. (a) | Sweat | noun | पसीना |
| (b) | Sweet | adjective | मीठा, सुन्दर, आकर्षक, स्वच्छ, खुशबूदार |
| 30. (a) | Spacious | adjective | विस्तृत, पर्याप्त, |
| (b) | Specious | adjective | बाहरी रूप से अच्छा, असल में गुणरहित |
| 31. (a) | Stop | verb | रोकना, अवरोध करना, बंद कर देना |
| (b) | Stay | verb | एक ही स्थान पर ठहरना, एक ही हालत में बने रहना |
| 32. (a) | Salary | noun | वेतन, तनख्वाह |
| (b) | Wages | noun | पारिश्रमिक, हर्जाना, प्रतिफल |

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 33. (a) | Sarcastic | adjective | व्यंग्यपूर्ण |
| (b) | Sardonic | adjective | व्यंग्यमय, उत्साह भरा, कटु |
| 34. (a) | Satire | noun | व्यंग्य, व्यंग्य लेख |
| (b) | Satyr | noun | वन देवता जो आधा मनुष्य तथा आधा बकरे के रूप का होता है |
| 35. (a) | Scarce | adjective | अल्प, न्यून, विरल, दुर्लभ |
| (b) | Scant | adjective | न्यून, कम, थोड़ा, संकुचित |
| (c) | Scanty | adjective | कम, थोड़ा, अल्प |
| 36. (a) | Scheme | noun | योजना, उपाय, व्यवस्था |
| (b) | Schedule | noun | सूची, परिसंख्या, नामावली |
| 37. (a) | Scream | verb | चीखना, चिल्लाना |
| (b) | Screech | verb | चिल्लाना, चीख मारना |
| (c) | Shriek | verb | जोर से चीखना, ठहाका मारकर हँसना |
| 3 8.(a) | Scrumptious | adjective | स्वादिष्ट, आनन्ददायक |
| (b) | Sumptuous | adjective | बहुमूल्य, अत्युत्तम |
| 39. (a) | Seasonal | adjective | ऋतु संबंधी |
| (b) | Seasonable | adjective | उचित समय पर होने वाला |
| 40. (a) | Sewage | noun | मल, मैला, पायखाना |
| (b) | Sewerage | noun | परनालियों का क्रम |
| 41. (a) | Shallow | adjective | छिछला, तुच्छ, ओछा, मूर्ख |
| (b) | Callow | adjective | पखहीन, अनुभवशून्य |
| 42. (a) | Shiver | verb | काँपना, हिलाना, छितराना |
| (b) | Quiver | noun | तरकस |
| 43. (a) | Signal | noun | संकेत, चिन्ह |
| (b) | Single | adjective | पृथक, अकेला, शुद्ध, अविभक्त |
| 44. (a) | Simile | noun | निर्देशन, उपमा |
| (b) | Metaphor | noun | रूपक, लक्षण |
| 45. (a) | Skilful | adjective | प्रवीण, कुशल, निपुण |
| (b) | Skilled | adjective | चतुर, अभ्यस्त |
| 46. (a) | Slim | adjective | दुबला-पतला, दुर्बल, धूर्त |
| (b) | Slight | adjective | दुर्बल, थोड़ा, अपूर्ण |
| (c) | Slender | adjective | दुबला, पतला, क्षीण, दुर्बल |
| 47.(a) | Smother | verb | घोंट कर मार देना |
| (b) | Strifle | noun | झगड़ा या विरोध करने वाला |
| (c) | Strangle | noun | गला घोंटने वाला |
| (d) | Suffocate | verb | गला घोंट कर मारना |
| 48. (a) | Solid | adjective | ठोस, घना, दृढ़ गम्भीर |
| (b) | Stolid | adjective | जड़ी, मूर्ख, शीघ्र उत्तेजित न होने वाला |
| (c) | Stout | adjective | दृढ़ वीर, प्रबल |
| 49. (a) | Soluble | adjective | किसी द्रव में घुलने या घुलाने योग्य |
| (b) | Solvable | adverb | व्याख्या करने योग्य, उत्तर निकालने योग्य |
| 50. (a) | Specially | adverb | विशेष रूप से |
| (b) | Especially | adverb | विशेषतः, प्रधानतः |
| 51. (a) | Spoil | verb | लूटना, छीनना, नष्ट या भ्रष्ट करना |
| (b) | Despoil | verb | अपहरण करना, लूटना |
| 52. (a) | Stable | noun | अस्तबल, अश्वशाला |
| (b) | Staple | noun | नोकदार मुड़ा हुआ तार |
| 53. (a) | Stalactite | noun | चूना मिले हुए जल के उपकरण से बना हुआ गुफा की छत में से लटकता हुआ चूने का खंभा |
| (b) | Stalagmite | noun | गुफा की छत की उपकरण से फर्श पर जमा हुआ चूने का खम्भ |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com


| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 54. (a) | Stress | noun | दबाव, बल, भार, प्रयत्न |
| (b) | Strain | noun | तनाव, झुकाव, ऐंठन |
| 55. (a) | Strict | adjective | दृढ़, नियत, कठोर, |
| (b) | Stringent | adjective | कठोर, दृढ़ आवश्यक, अशिथिल |
| 56. (a) | Subconscious | adjective | प्रायः अचेत |
| (b) | Unconscious | adjective | अचेत, न जानने वाला |
| 57. (a) | Submerged | verb | जल के भीतर डुबकी लगाना |
| (b) | Immersed | adjective | मग्न, लीन, डुबाया हुआ |
| 58. (a) | Subtle | adjective | धूर्त, चतुर, विलक्षण |
| (b) | Supple | adjective | कोमल, लचीला, मुलायम |
| 59. (a) | Summary | noun | संक्षेप, सारांश |
| (b) | Synopsis | noun | संकलित, संग्रह, संक्षेप |
| 60. (a) | Summon | verb | आह्वान करना, बुलाना |
| (b) | Summons | noun | न्यायालय में उपस्थित होने वाला बुलावा पत्र |
| 61. (a) | Supernatural | adjective | अलौकिक, अद्भुत |
| (b) | Preternatural | adjective | अमानुषी, विलक्षण |
| 62. (a) | Supersede | verb | उल्लंघन करना, अलग करना |
| (b) | Surpass | verb | अतिक्रमण करना, उत्कृष्ट होना, अधिक होना |
| 63. (a) | Supplement | noun | परिपूरक, समाचार पत्र का परिशिष्ट |
| (b) | Complement | noun | संपूरक |
| 64. (a) | Suspect | verb | शंक, करना, कल्पना करना |
| (b) | Suspicious | adjective | शंकापूर्ण, सन्देहयुक्त, अविश्वासी |
| 65. (a) | Suspense | noun | अनिश्चय, संशय, दुविधा |
| (b) | Suspension | noun | अवलम्बन, देर |
| 66. (a) | Sympathy | noun | समवेदना कृपा, सहानुभूति |
| (b) | Empathy | noun | तदनुभूति, परानुभूति |

## Words Starting With 'T'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Tasteful | adjective | मधुर, सुरुचिपूर्ण |
| (a) | Tasty | adjective | स्वादिष्ट |
| 2. (a) | Tale | noun | कहानी |
| (b) | Tail | noun | पूँछ |
| 3. (a) | Throne | noun | सिंहासन |
| (b) | Thrown | verb | फेंका हुआ |
| 4. (a) | Teem | verb | भरा हुआ |
| (b) | Team | noun | टीम |
| 5. (a) | Temper | noun | क्रोध, रंज |
| (b) | Tamper | verb | हस्तक्षेप करना |
| 6. (a) | Temporary | adjective | अस्थायी, क्षणिक |
| (b) | Temporal | adjective | सांसारिक, अल्पकालिक |
| 7. (a) | Transient | adjective | अस्थायी, अल्पकालीन, क्षणभंगुर |
| (b) | Transitory | adjective | क्षणिक, क्षणभंगुर |
| 8. (a) | Temperance | noun | आत्मसंयम, मद्यपान से परहेज |
| (b) | Temperament | noun | स्वभाव, प्रकृति |
| 9. (a) | Tortuous | adjective | चक्करदार, टेढ़ामेढ़ा, कुटिल, कपटपूर्ण |
| (b) | Torturous | adjective | यातना कारक, सताने वाला |
| 10. (a) | Topical | adjective | प्रकरण संबंधी, स्थानीय |
| (b) | Tropical | adjective | उष्णकटिबन्धीय या कर्क और मकर रेखाओं की बीच का प्रदेश |
| 11. (a) | Thrash | verb | मारना, पीटना, पूर्ण रूप से पराजित कर देना |
| (b) | Thresh | verb | पीटना, साफ करना अनाज साफ करना |
| 12. (a) | Than | conjunction | से, अपेक्षा, तुलना में |
| (b) | Then | adverb | तब, उस समय |
| 13. (a) | Tenor | noun | उच्च स्वर, प्रवृत्ति, तात्पर्य, अर्थ |
| (b) | Tenure | noun | पट्टा, सम्पत्ति रखने का अधिकार, नौकरी का स्थायित्व |
| 14. (a) | Tense | adjective | कसा हुआ, बेचैन, उद्विग्न |
| (b) | Terse | adjective | स्पष्ट व संक्षिप्त, अशिष्ट, अभद्र |
| 15. (a) | Tepid | adjective | गुनगुना, मामूली गरम, शिथिल, निरुत्साहित |
| (b) | Insipid | adjective | स्वाद रहित, नीरस, फीका |
| (c) | Vapid | adjective | नीरस, फीका, निर्जीव |
| 16. (a) | Terminal | noun/adj. | अन्तिम स्थान, प्रत्येक सत्र के उपरान्त होने वाला तने या शाखा के अंत में उगने वाला |
| (b) | Terminus | noun | रेल, बस, आदि का अन्तिम स्टेशन |
| 17. (a) | Terrible | adjective | भयानक, डरावना, खौफनाक, प्रचुर, अप्रिय |
| (b) | Terrific | adjective | विशाल, अत्यधिक, अति उत्तम, अद्भुत, भयानक |
| 18. (a) | Testament | noun | इच्छापत्र, वसीयतनामा |
| (b) | Testimony | noun | साक्ष्य, प्रमाण, शपथपूर्वक कथन |
| 19. (a) | Thrilled | verb (P.P) | रोमांचित हुआ, पुलकित हुआ, सनसनी पैदा हुआ |
| (b) | Enthralled | adjective | मोहित, आकर्षित |
| 20. (a) | Timid | adjective | कायर, डरपोक |
| (b) | Timorous | adjective | भीरु, कायर |
| 21. (a) | Tiresome | adjective | कष्टकारक, थकाने वाला |
| (b) | Tedious | adjective | श्रम करने वाला, थकाने वाला, मंद, धीमा |
| 22. (a) | Tolerance | noun | सहनशीलता |
| (b) | Toleration | noun | सहन, धार्मिक विषयों में व्यक्तिगत स्वतंत्रता |
| 23. (a) | Tonight | noun/adv. | आज की रात, आज रात में |
| (b) | Tonite | noun | भड़काने वाला एक पदार्थ (विस्फोटक पदार्थ) |
| 24. (a) | Translucent | adjective | अर्द्धपारदर्शक, स्वच्छ |
| (b) | Transparent | adjective | पारदर्शक, स्वच्छ, विमल |
| 25. (a) | Traverse | adjective | तिरछा, टेढ़ा-मेढ़ा |
| (b) | Transverse | adjective | तिरछा, टेढ़ा-मेढ़ा |
| 26. (a) | Treacherous | adjective | विश्वासघाती, अविश्वसनीय |
| (b) | Traitorous | adjective | दगाबाज, छली, कपटी |
| 27. (a) | Treble | adjective | तीक्ष्ण, बहुत तेज (आवाज) तीन गुना |
| (b) | Triple | adjective | तिगुना |
| 28. (a) | Trend | noun | प्रवृत्ति, झुकाव, फैशन, प्रवाह |
| (b) | Tendency | noun | प्रवृत्ति, झुकाव |
| 29. (a) | Trial | noun | परीक्षण, जाँच, मुकदमे का न्यायिक विचार |
| (b) | Test | noun | जाँच, विश्लेषण |
| 30. (a) | Triumphant | adjective | विजयी |
| (b) | Triumphal | adjective | विजय से संबंधित |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 31. (a) | Troop | noun | व्यक्तियों तथा पशुओं का झुंड, घुड़सवार सेना की टुकड़ी, सैनिक |
| (b) | Troupe | noun | अभिनेता अथवा कलाकारों की मंडली, वफादार सेवक |
| 32. (a) | Tumult | noun | कोलाहल, शोर, उपद्रव |
| (b) | Turmoil | noun | कोलाहल |
| 33. (a) | Turpid | adjective | नीच, दुष्ट |
| (b) | Torpid | adjective | चेतना शून्य, मंद, सुस्त, आलसी |
| (c) | Tumid | adjective | फूला हुआ, विस्तृत, विशाल |
| (d) | Turgid | adjective | फूला हुआ, सूजा हुआ आडम्बरी |

## Words Starting With 'U'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Urban | adjective | शहरी |
| (b) | Urbane | adjective | शिष्ट |
| 2. (a) | Umpire | noun | अम्पायर (क्रिकेट का) |
| (b) | Empire | noun | साम्राज्य |
| 3. (a) | Union | noun | संघ |
| (b) | Unity | noun | एकता |
| 4. (a) | Uninterested | adjective | रुचिविहीन, रुचि न रखना |
| (b) | Disinterested | adjective | निष्पक्ष |
| 5. (a) | Unwanted | adjective | अवांछित, अनचाहा |
| (b) | Unwonted | adjective | अनभ्यस्त, अनोखा, अनूठा |
| 6. (a) | Use | noun | प्रयोग, उपयोग, चलन |
| (b) | Usage | noun | व्यवहार, प्रयोग, आचरण, रीति |
| 7. (a) | Undertone | noun | धीमा शब्द |
| (b) | Overtone | noun | संकेत, अर्थ, अभिप्राय |

## Words Starting With 'V'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Vacant | adjective | रिक्त (पद) |
| (b) | Empty | adjective | खाली (बरतन) |
| 2. (a) | Vanish | verb | लुप्त हो जाना |
| (b) | Banish | verb | वनवास देना |
| 3. (a) | Venal | adjective | अर्थ के लालच में पड़कर सिद्धांत त्यागने वाला |
| (b) | Venial | adjective | क्षम्य |
| 4. (a) | Vain | adjective | व्यर्थ, बेकार |
| (b) | Vein | noun | नस, रक्त, नली, नाड़ी |
| (c) | Vane | verb | रोना (Weep) |
| (d) | Wail | verb | रोना |
| 5. (a) | Valuable | adjective | बहुमूल्य |
| (b) | Invaluable | adjective | अमूल्य |
| 6. (a) | Vale | noun | घाटी |
| (b) | veil | noun | पर्दा |
| 7. (a) | Vacation | noun | अवकाश |
| (b) | Vocation | noun | व्यवसाय |
| (c) | Avocation | adjective | शौक, नियमित धन्धा |
| 8. (a) | Verbal | adjective | मौखिक |
| (b) | Verbose | adjective | अनावश्यक शब्दों से भरा हुआ |
| (c) | Oral | adjective | मौखिक, जबानी |
| 9. (a) | Virtuous | adjective | सदाचारी, सच्चरित्र |
| 10. (a) | Venture | noun | साहसिक कार्य |
| (b) | Adventure | noun | साहसिक या बहादुरी का काम |
| 11. (a) | Violence | noun | तीव्र एवं प्रबल शक्ति तोड़ फोड़ का काम, हिंसात्मक प्रदर्शन |
| (b) | Violation | noun | नियम या कानून का उल्लंघन |
| 12. (a) | Various | adjective | अनिश्चित, भिन्न |
| (b) | Variable | adjective | परिवर्तनशील, अस्थिर |
| 13. (a) | Vacate | verb | खाली करना, कब्जा छोड़ना, रिक्त करना, पद त्यागना |
| (b) | Evacuate | verb | खाली करना, पीछे हटना, मल त्याग करना |
| (c) | Vacuous | adjective | दीन, विचारहीन बुद्धिहीन, निरर्थक |
| 14. (a) | Valiant | adjective | वीर, साहसी, हिम्मत वाला |
| (b) | Valorous | adjective | वीर, साहसी, |
| (c) | Gallant | adjective | बहादुर, वीर, साहसी |
| 15. (a) | Vertex | noun | शिखर, शिरोबिन्दु, त्रिभुज का शीर्ष |
| (b) | Vortex | noun | हवा का बवंडर, पानी में भँवर, आग का बगूला |
| 16. (a) | Vigorous | adjective | जोरदार, सक्रिय, प्रभावशाली, तगड़ा |
| (b) | Rigorous | adjective | सख्त, कठोर |
| 17. (a) | Violent | adjective | हिंसात्मक, बहुत जोर का |
| (b) | Virulent | adjective | विषाक्त, जहरीला, विद्वेषपूर्ण, घातक, हानिकारक |
| (c) | Vehement | adjective | उत्कट, तीव्र, बलवान, प्रचंड |

## Words Starting With 'W'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Waive | verb | लौटा लेना |
| (b) | Wave | verb | घुमाना, दिखाना |
| 2. (a) | Wreath | noun | माला |
| (b) | Wreathe | verb | माला गूँथना |
| 3. (a) | Week | noun | सप्ताह |
| (b) | Weak | adjective | कमजोर |
| 4. (a) | Wait | verb | प्रतीक्षा करना |
| (b) | Weight | noun | वजन |
| 5. (a) | Womanly | adjective | स्त्रियोचित (in good sense) |
| (b) | Womanish | adjective | स्त्री जैसा आचरण रखने वाला (in bad sense) |
| 6. (a) | Waste | verb | बर्बाद करना |
| (b) | Waist | noun | कमर |
| 7. (a) | Wear | verb | पहनना |
| (b) | Ware | noun | सामान |
| (c) | Were | verb | थे |
| 8. (a) | Way | noun | रास्ता |
| (b) | Weigh | verb | तोलना |
| 9. (a) | Wine | noun | शराब |
| (b) | Vine | noun | बेल |
| 10. (a) | Wonder | verb | हैरान होना |
| (b) | Wander | verb | भटकना |
| 11. (a) | Wither | verb | मुर्झित होना, सूखना जाना |
| (b) | Whither | adverb | कहाँ |
| 12. (a) | Wilful | adjective | हठी, जिद्दी |
| (b) | Willing | adjective | प्रसन्नतापूर्वक तैयार |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13. (a) | Whether | conjunction | यदि |
| (b) | Weather | noun | मौसम |
| 14. (a) | Wet | adjective | भींगा हुआ |
| (b) | Whet | verb | तेज करना/ धार बनाना |
| 15. (a) | While | conjuction | जिस समय |
| (b) | Wile | noun | ट्रीक (trick) |
| 16. (a) | Wary | adjective | सावधान, चौकना |
| (b) | Chary | adjective | सावधान, सचेत, सहज में संतुष्ट न होने वाला |
| 17. (a) | Whose | pro & adj. | किसका |
| (b) | Who's | adjective | कौन है (who is) |
| 18. (a) | Worth | adjective | के योग्य, लायक, उपयोगी |
| (b) | Worth | adjective | लाभप्रद, सार्थक, उचित |
| 19. (a) | Wriggle | verb | टेढ़-मेढ़े चलना, बल खाते चलना |
| (b) | Wiggle | verb | शरीर को दाँयें-बाँयें घुमाना |
| 20. (a) | Wink | verb | आँख मिचका कर संकेत देना, जल्दी-जल्दी आँख खोलना, बंद करना |
| (b) | Blink | verb | जल्दी-जल्दी आँखें खोलना, बंद करना |

## Words Starting With 'Y'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Yoke | noun | जुआ |
| (b) | Yolk | noun | अंडे का पीला वाला भाग |
| 2. (a) | Your | adjective | तुम्हारा (belong to you) |
| (b) | You're (you are) | | तुम्हारा है |
| (c) | Yearn | verb | तीव्र लालसा करना या होना |

## Words Starting With 'Z'

| S.N. | Words | Parts of speech | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (a) | Zeal | noun | उत्साह, जोश |
| (b) | Zealous | adjective | उत्साही |

## Practice Set

Q. 1 *Fill in the blanks with suitable words given in the brackets :*

1. He can not ..... my offer. *(accept/except)*
2. All ..... Aditya were present in the class. *(except/accept)*
3. You cannot ..... to my request. *(accede/exceed)*
4. Does your expenditure ..... your income ? *(exceed/accede)*
5. I have no ..... to the Chief Minister. *(access/excess)*
6. Your income should not be in .... to your income. *(excess/access)*
7. I gave him a piece of ..... *(advice/advise)*
8. I ..... him to give up smoking. *(advised/adviced)*
9. We should ..... ourselves to the changing circumstances. *(adapt/adopt/adept)*
10. The method which you have ..... is wrong. *(adopted/adapted)*
11. Hema is ..... in dancing. *(adept/ adopt/adapt)*
12. The driver met with a serious ..... *(accident/incident)*
13. Mr. Thakur related an interesting ..... in his life. *(incident/accident)*
14. The people of ..... countries are very hard working. *(occident/accident)*
15. True love does not ..... with the passing of time. *(alter/altar)*
16. Gandhijee died at the ..... of his mother land. *(altar/alter)*
17. We are ..... to drinking, it ruins health. *(averse/adverse)*
18. Due to ..... circumstances he cannot pay his college dues. *(adverse/averse)*
19. Overwork ..... my health. *(affected/effected)*
20. My advice had no ..... on him. *(effect/affect)*
21. Our teacher explained the ..... in the drama. *(allusions/illusions)*
22. She thought that she had seen a ghost, but it was only an ..... *(illusion/allusion)*
23. Gardening is my ..... *(avocation/vocation)*
24. Teaching is his ..... *(vocation/avocation)*
25. The police ..... the pickpocket. *(apprehended/comprehended)*
26. He cannot ..... this scheme. *(comprehend/apprehend)*
27. He ..... the murder of his brother by getting the murderer hanged. *(avenged/revenged)*
28. He ..... himself on his enemy. *(revenged/avenged)*
29. The communal ..... sowed the seed of Pakistan. *(award/reward)*
30. I will give you a ..... if you top the list in the university. *(reward/award)*
31. The soldiers made another ..... to climb the hill, but failed. *(assay/essay)*
32. His ..... was adjudged to be the best one. *(essay/assay)*
33. He is an ..... man. *(artful/artificial)*
34. He does not believe in ..... acting. *(artificial/artful)*
35. Mahatma Gandhi was ..... in 1948. *(assassinated/killed)*
36. The hunter ..... the lion. *(killed/assassinated)*
37. May I know your date of ..... ? *(birth/berth)*
38. Please reserve the lower ..... in the train. *(berth/birth)*
39. Do not walk ..... footed. *(bare/bear)*
40. I cannot ..... this insult. *(bear/bare)*
41. The accused has been released on. *(bail/bale)*
42. The ..... of cotton are still lying here. *(bales/bails)*
43. One can not control a horse without a ..... *(bridle/bridal)*
44. She looks graceful in her ..... dress. *(bridal/bridle)*
45. I was ..... in 1970. *(born/borne)*
46. He has ..... many sufferings. *(borne/born)*
47. The daughter is sitting ..... her mother. *(beside/besides)*
48. ..... this turban, he has two more. *(besides/beside)*
49. Akbar was a ..... ruler. *(benevolent, beneficial)*
50. Exercise is ..... for health. *(beneficial/beneficiary)*
51. He is the only ..... of the property of his deceased uncle. *(beneficiary/beneficial)*
52. Mr. Gupta has gone for ..... hunting. *(boar/bore)*
53. You ..... me in the party. *(bore/boar)*
54. In many parts of the world ..... prevails even today. *(barbarism/barbarity)*
55. Taimur was notorious for the ..... *(barbarity/barbarism)*
56. I have committed a ..... in trusting my servant. *(blunder/mistake)*
57. He made a ..... in visiting me at late hours. *(mistake/blunder)*
58. To ..... is human, to forgive divine. *(err/mistake)*
59. He is a Rajput by ..... *(caste/cast)*
60. I ..... a glance at him. *(cast/caste)*
61. Your shoes are made of ..... *(canvas/cauvass)*
62. He is ..... for his own candidate. *(canvasing/canvassing)*
63. The teacher ..... an example from history. *(cited/sighted/sited)*
64. The ..... of our publication is very good. *(site/sight/cite)*
65. What a beautiful ..... it is! *(sight/site/cite)*
66. We do not like his ..... habits. *(childish/childlike)*
67. Gandhijee had a ..... smile on his face. *(childlike/childish)*
68. The priest is striking ..... in the temple. *(cymbols/symbols)*
69. Mr. Nitish Kumar is a ..... of self sacrifice. *(symbol/cymbol)*
70. I want a ..... sum of money to start business. *(considerable/considerate)*
71. We should be ..... to our neighbours. *(considerate/considerable)*
72. Villagers are often ..... *(credulous/credible)*
73. The story that he told me is not. *(credible/credulous)*

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



74. The Bihar government has shown ..... result. (creditable/credible)
75. They took the dead body to the ..... for burial. (cemetery/symmetry)
76. There is ..... in this building. (symmetry/cemetery)
77. One should not violate ..... of morality. (canons/cannons)
78. The sudden roar of the frightened us. (cannos/canons)
79. ..... my coat. (calender/calendar)
80. This new ..... is for 2010. (calendar/calender)
81. Please grace our house with your ..... visits. (casual/causal)
82. Pain in his leg is ..... (causal/casual)
83. Your behavior is ..... (coarse/course)
84. A ..... of love is not smooth. (course/coarse)
85. He has issued a ..... of Rs. 10,000 only. (cheque/check)
86. Do not ..... her from going there. (check/cheque)
87. Woman is a ..... of man. (complement/cpliment)
88. She was pleased with the ..... paid to her. (compliments/complements)
89. He had to stand in a ..... for an hour to get his ticket. (queue/cue)
90. Vikas is my ..... (confidant/confident)
91. Are you ..... of your success ? (confident/confidant)
92. Our government demanded the ..... of hostilities in Iraq. (cession/session)
93. Parliament is in ..... these days. (session/cession)
94. The film has already been approved by the ..... (censor. censure)
95. The communal leader was ..... by the people. (censured/censored)
96. Small pox is a ..... disease. (contagious/continguous)
97. The post office is ..... to our office. (continguous/contagious)
98. Cholera is ..... . (infectious/continguous)
99. We should not give ..... punishment to children. (corporal/corporeal)
100. Angels are not ..... beings. (corporeal/corporal)
101. He has joined national cadet..... (corps/corpse)
102. His heart was moved to see a ..... (corpse/corps)
103. Mr. Pathak is a ..... person. (complaisant/complacement)
104. Otherwise a wet blanket, there are occasions when he is quite ..... (complacement/complaisant)
105. India is a ..... country. (ceremonious/ceremonial)
106. At the convocation we must wear ..... dress. (ceremonial/ceremonious)
107. Yesterday was a ..... night . (cloudy/clouded)
108. The high court has ..... the death sentence on the accused. (confirmed/conformed)
109. Your thesis strictly ..... to the latest rules of the university. (conforms/confirms)
110. A person suffering from myopia should use ..... lens. (concave/convex)
111. A long sighted eye can be corrected by the .....lens of proper power. (convex/concave)
112. When I went to her house, she was ..... with her lover. (conversing/reversing)
113. Avinash is a ..... fellow. (contemptible/contemptuous)
114. Why does he look at me ..... ? (contemptuously/contemptibly)
115. Yesterday he purchased five metres of ..... (cloth/clothes)
116. He wore his ..... and went there. (clothes/cloth)
117. He is ..... of his weakness. (conscious/conscientious)
118. Our publisher, who is ..... is very popular. (conscientious/conscious)
119. He has written a very ..... topic. (comprehensive/comprehensible)
120. His talk is not ..... to us. (comprehensible/comprehensive)
121. He is member of legislative ..... (council/counsel)
122. She did not accept my ..... (counsel/council)
123. The Hindus have a ..... of burning the dead. (custom/habit)
124. He is not in the ..... of smoking. (habit/custom)
125. Practice ..... in five of he following idioms. (usage/habit)
126. We must improve our ..... (careers/carriers)
127. The ..... went on strike. (carriers/careers)
128. The prisoner is in the ..... (cell/sell)
129. Mangoes ..... thirty rupees a kilo. (sell/cell)
130. Begging is a ..... in Delhi. (crime/sin)
131. Telling a lie is a ..... (sin/crime)
132. Drinking is a ..... (vice/sin/crime)
133. Railway ..... are common these days. (collisions/collusions)
134. Robbers often act in ..... with the police. (collusion/collision)
135. Small pox is a terrible ..... (disease/decease)
136. The ..... of his son was a terrible shock to the old father. (decease/disease)
137. He has a ..... house. (decent/descent/dissent)
138. The ..... of the hill was very dangerous. (descent/decent)
139. He sent a note of ..... to the president. (dissent/descent/decent)
140. ..... policy is never good. (dual/duel)
141. He died in a ..... . (duel/dual)
142. The stamps on letters are ..... before they are delivered. (defaced/effaced)
143. The whole town was ..... from the surface of the earth. (effaced/defaced)
144. He is suffering from ..... (depression/depreciation)
145. The ..... value of the article is only Rs. 500. (depreciated/depressed)
146. This letter is the ..... proof of his complicity in the crime. (definite/definitive)
147. I am interested in the ..... reply. (definitive/definite)
148. Suman has a unique and ..... style of writing. (distinct/distinctive)
149. Every race has its ..... features. (distinctive/distinct)
150. Sincerity is the essential condition of a ..... friendship. (durable/endurable)
151. The great people of Bangladesh had to suffer ..... difficulties and hardships during the war of independence. (endurable/durable)
152. India and Pakistan are holding ..... talks on this issue. (direct/directly)
153. From office he went ..... to hospital to see his cousin. (directly/direct)
154. Some ..... can remain under water for hours. (divers/diverse)
155. People have ..... opinion about the affair. (diverse/divers)
156. He can no longer be ..... by false promises. (deluded/eluded)
157. He was so clever that he ..... police in no time. (eluded/deluded)
158. Rajeev is not ..... in his behaviour. (discriminate/incriminate)
159. When he declined to comply with their demand, they ..... him by involving him a false case. (incriminated/discriminated)
160. We could ..... from distance a lion prowling in bushes. (descry/decry)
161. It is not very uncommon that even an honest leader is ..... by detractors. (decried/descried)
162. Man is the maker of his own ..... (destiny/destination)
163. He reached his ..... early in the morning. (destination/destiny)
164. Please ..... your departure. (defer/differ)
165. East and West ..... in many respects. (differ/defer)
166. He ..... all charges against him. (denied/refused)
167. He ..... to offer any help. (refused/denied)
168. The invitation was extended to him with all sincerity but he ..... (declined/denied)
169. My income is meagre, yet I have many ..... to look after. (dependants/dependents)
170. India is no more a ..... country. (dependent/dependant)
171. Columbus ..... America. (discovered/invented)
172. Davy ..... the Safety Lamp for miners (invented/discovered)
173. There is a ..... of water in Chennai. (dearth/dearness)
174. Your uncle got fifty rupees as a ..... allowance. (dearness/dearth)
175. Pakistan ..... our foreign policy. (deprecates/depreciates)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



176. You ..... the good work of your neighbours. (depreciated/deprecated)
177. We can see camels in a ..... (desert/dessert)
178. The ..... course consisted of cream and fruit. (dessert/desert)
179. The murderer was hanged, so he got his ..... (deserts/desserts)
180. He drank milk in one ..... (draught/drought)
181. The ..... caused famine in the state. (drought/draught)
182. There is no ..... between your style and mine. (difference/deference)
183. We must show due ..... to our elders. (deference/difference)
184. Don't ..... the ban imposed by the Government. (defy/deify)
185. Gandhi is ..... in the whole of the world. (deified/defied)
186. Have you taken the ..... of your letters ? (delivery/deliverance)
187. We want ..... from the cycle of birth and re-birth. (deliverance/delivery)
188. It is the ..... policy of our government to help the Harijans. (decided/decisive)
189. The first battle of Panipat was ..... (decisive/decided)
190. Gandhijee is known for his ..... service to his country. (disinterested/uninterested)
191. I am ..... in what he says and does. (uninterested/disinterested)
192. Let him sleep, he is ..... (dozing/dosing)
193. He has taken four ..... of Mixture. (doses/dozes)
194. ..... drops spread on the green grass look like pearls. (Dew/Due)
195. He showed me ..... respect. (due/dew)
196. He gets milk from the ..... (dairy/diary)
197. He has a table ..... (diary/dairy)
198. He used a strange ..... to deceive me. (device/devise)
199. I ..... many plans but of no use. (devised/deviced)
200. Dr. Hemant Jha is an ..... doctor. (eminent/imminent)
201. He is in an ..... danger of losing his job. (imminent/eminent)
202. Dinosours are ..... now. (extinct/instinct)
203. Sometimes animals display the motherly ..... more than human beings. (instinct/extinct)
204. He is ..... for this post. (eligible/illegible)
205. His handwriting is ..... (illegible/eligible)
206. The job of an author is very ..... (exhausting/exhaustive)
207. He has dealt every topic in an ..... manner. (exhaustive/exhausting)
208. His speech ..... praise from one and all. (elicited, illicited)
209. He carries on an ..... trade in opium. (illicit/elicit)
210. I am very ..... in my habits. (economical/economic)
211. Let us discuss the ..... aspect of the partition. (economic/economical)
212. An ..... room has nothing in it. (empty/vacant)
213. He will find out a ..... seat. (vacant/empty)
214. The whole town was ..... in darkness. (envelop/envelope)
215. I put the paper in the ..... (envelopie/envelop)
216. Many ..... from Pakistan have settled in India. (emigrants/immigrants)
217. Many ..... into America came from Europe. (immigrants/emigrants)
218. She saw a tiger ..... from a forest. (emerging/immerging)
219. The child ..... his hand into the boiling water. (immerged/emerged)
220. The learned speaker ..... to many events and writers. (alluded/eluded)
221. He was so clever that he ..... the police every time. (eluded/alluded)
222. Our professors are very ..... (efficient/efficacious)
223. Quinine is an ..... remedy for Malaria. (efficacious/efficient)
224. 1947 was a ..... year in Indain history. (fateful/fatal)
225. Cancer is a ..... disease. (fatal/fateful)
226. The ..... mill is working. (flour/floor)
227. The ..... is made of marble chips. (floor/flour)
228. The Banaras Hindu University was ..... by Pt. Madan Mohan Malaviya. (founded/foundered)
229. All her efforts ..... on the rock of failure. (foundered/founded)
230. Every one of us wants perfect ..... success. (felicity/facility)
231. I will give you every ..... if you stay with me. (facility/felicity)
232. Sundri has a .....appearance. (graceful/gracious)
233. God is ..... to us. (gracious/graceful)
234. His behavior towards me is ..... (gentle/genteel)
235. He is ..... in his manners. (genteel/gentle)
236. The ..... figure disappeared suddenly. (ghostly/ghastly)
237. The ..... murder was shocking. (ghastly/ghostly)
238. The prisoner ran away from the ..... (gaol/goal)
239. The ..... of life should be fixed. (goal/gaol)
240. Many persons .....on the occassion of Diwali. (gamble/gambled)
241. The deer were ..... in the forest. (gamboling/gambling)
242. It is wicked to ..... wheat, when the poor are dying. (hoard/horde)
243. The country was over-run by ..... of Turks. (hordes/hoards)
244. There was a ..... meeting between the two leaders. (historic/historical)
245. The Taj Mahal is a ..... building (historical/historic)
246. Our publisher is an ..... person. (honourable/honorary)
247. He is an ..... magistrate. (honorary/honourable)
248. ..... always pays. (humility/humiliation)
249. He prefers health to ..... (humiliation/humility)
250. ..... habits will ruin you. (idle/ideal)
251. He does not believe in ..... worship. (idol/idle)
252. Dr. C. K. Narayan was an ..... doctor. (ideal/idol)
253. India will soon become an .....country. (industrial/industrious)
254. Every young man must be ..... to achieve success. (industrious/industrial)
255. He belongs to an ..... family. (imperial/imperious)
256. His attitude towards his subordinates is ..... (imperious/imperial)
257. He is a very ..... and hard-working boy. (intelligible/intelligent)
258. The professor teaches so nicely that whatever he speaks is ..... to every student in the class. (intelligible/intelligent)
259. We should not write anything ..... in the General English paper. (irrelevant, irreverent)
260. The young man of today is ..... towards old customs and ceremonies. (irreverent/irrelevant)
261. I am totally ..... of my brother's love affair. (ignorant/illiterate)
262. According to the latest census, the number of ..... is the lowest in Kerala. (illiterate/ignorant)
263. Her story is ..... (incredible/incredulous)
264. He is a type of ..... person I had never seen before. (incredulous/incredible)
265. If you write an ..... hand in the examination, you will get very poor marks. (illegible/ineligible)
266. She has been declared ..... for the award of social service degree. (ineligible/illegible)
267. It is not ..... for him to win the race. (impossible/impassable)
268. Rivers are ..... during the rainy season. (impassable/impossible)
269. My father is very popular for his ..... nature. (ingenuous/ingenious)
270. Mr. Pathak invented a very ..... excuse for his absence. (ingenious/ingenuous)
271. He must give an ..... statement. (explicit/implicit)
272. Students should have ..... faith in their teachers (implicit/explicit)
273. The ..... court will decide this case. (judicial/judicious)
274. Your selection of books is very ..... (judicious/judicial)
275. He is very .....of my wealth. (jealous/zealous)
276. You are a very ..... student. (zealous/jealous)
277. How can you solve this ..... problem ? (knotty/naughty)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



278. Beware of this ..... boy. (naughty/knotty)
279. Nilu has ..... hair. (luxuriant/luxurious)
280. Lalan led a very ..... life. (luxurious/luxuriant)
281. He returned home ..... at night. (late/lately)
282. He has been ..... appointed principal. (lately/late)
283. The hen ..... four eggs. (laid/lied)
284. ..... down on the grass. (lie/lay)
285. This girl is very ..... (lavely/lovable)
286. I love him for his ..... nature. (lovable/lovely)
287. Do not run after worldly pleasures, they are ..... (momentary/momentous)
288. Our college advisory committee took many ..... decisions. (momentous/momentary)
289. He is a ..... so he cannot vote. (minor/minor)
290. The condition of the ..... is miserable. (miner/minor)
291. Behave in ..... manner. (manly/mannish)
292. She behaves in a ..... way. (mannish/manly)
293. We should not be ..... in the performance of our duties. (negligent/negligible)
294. There is a ..... difference between the twins. (negligible/negligent)
295. Nawab was a ..... criminal. (notorious/famous)
296. Udit Narayan is a ..... singer. (famous/notorious)
297. Every ..... was alert on the election day. (official/officious)
298. His ..... manner has made him unpopular. (officious/official)
299. The president has issued a new ..... (ordinance/ordnance)
300. ..... were fired at the enemy. (ordnance/ordinance)
301. Comparisons are ..... (odious/odorous)
302. ..... breeze blew in the gardens. (odorous/odious)
303. ..... makes a man perfect. (practice/practise)
304. A young cricketer ..... daily in the field. (practises/practices)
305. He wants a ..... of new shoes. (pair/pare)
306. Why don't you ..... your nails ? (pare/pair)
307. Your ..... is a very popular figure in the city. (principal/principle)
308. I respect my publisher because he is a man of ..... (principle/principal)
309. Your English teacher is very ..... for his sweet nature. (popular/populous)
310. Kolkata is a ..... town. (populous/popular)
311. Rahul was the ..... of this meeting. (president/precedent)
312. In support of his argument the speaker quoted a ..... from history. (precedent/president)
313. This book has been ..... by the university. (precribed/proscribed)
314. The government has..... this magazine as it preaches violence. (proscribed/prescribed)
315. The money lender .....his debtor. (persecuted/prosecuted)
316. I ..... my studies in difficult circumstances. (prosecuted/persecuted)
317. She is in a ..... condition. (pitiable/piteous)
318. ..... cries for help were heard. (piteous/pitiable)
319. My mother has a ..... attitude towards the poor. (pitiful/pitiable)
320. I need ..... for my motorcycle. (patrol/petrol)
321. The military is ..... the disturbed area. (patrolling/petrolling)
322. One should try to fulfil one's ..... requirements. (primary/primitive)
323. We are proud of our ..... civilization. (primitive/primary)
324. A dose of ..... will be useful for the patient. (physic/physique)
325. We enjoy robust ..... (physique/physic)
326. What are your ..... views ? (personal/personnel)
327. This compartment is reserved for the military ..... (personnel/personal)
328. The policeman ..... the thief to his hiding spot. (pursued/persued)
329. When I went to his house, I found him ..... this file. (persuing/pursuing)
330. Dr Vijay Prakash is an eminent ..... of Bihar. (physician/physicist)
331. Sir. C.V. Raman was a great ..... (physicist/physician)
332. The teacher asked the student to remain ..... (quiet/quite)
333. I am ..... well, thank you. (quite/quiet)
334. Our principal is a ..... person. (respectable/respectful)
335. Children should be ..... to their parents. (respectful/respectable)
336. The students took their ..... seats. (respective/respectable)
337. I have ..... four rooms on twenty eight hundred rupees per month. (rented/hired)
338. I ..... a taxi and reached the place of marriage. (hired/rented)
339. You must not ..... to work with him. (refuse/refuge)
340. He has taken ..... in my house. (refuge/refuse)
341. The ..... should not look down upon the poor. (rich/richly)
342. Kolkata is a ..... populated city. (richly/rich)
343. The sun is ..... (stationary/stationery)
344. He spends about fifty rupees on ..... every month. (stationery/stationary)
345. Man is a ..... animal. (social/sociable)
346. He is a man of ..... nature. (sociable/social)
347. A ..... student is loved by his teachers. (sensible/sensitive)
348. Don't tease him, he is very..... and may not lose his temper. (sensitive/sensible)
349. The ..... of Queen Victoria has been removed from Amritsar. (statue/statute)
350. Parliament passed a ..... (statute/statue)
351. The bird was ..... in the air. (soaring/soring)
352. He has a ..... throat. (sore/soar)
353. The mangoes are ..... (sour/sore)
354. Every shoe has a ..... (sole/soul)
355. ..... is immortal. (soul/sole)
356. The patient died of ..... fever caused by severe pains. (septic/sceptic)
357. Modern science makes people ..... about religious matters. (sceptic/septic)
358. Your knowledge of history is only ..... (superficial/superfluous)
359. He is fond of using ..... words in his speech. (superfluous/superficial)
360. His memory ..... of sweet flowers. (smells/smellies)
361. To respect the old is a ..... principle. (smelly/smell)
362. He told me an interesting ..... (story/storey)
363. Our house has two ..... (storeys/storys)
364. The climate of Gaya does not ..... me. (suit/suite)
365. I rented a ..... of four rooms. (suite/suit)
366. The lamp ..... is used in boot polish. (soot/shoot)
367. Your house contains many ..... rooms. (spacious/specious)
368. Your arguments, though ....., do not appeal to me. (specious/spacious)
369. The constable ..... the thief. (seized/sieged)
370. The enemy laid ..... to the town. (siege/seize)
371. He lost his ..... (temper/tamper)
372. Don't ..... with the seal. (tamper/temper)
373. He is a ..... clerk. (temporary/temporal)
374. A king has only ..... pleasures. (temporal/temporary)
375. Youth is ..... (transient/transitory)
376. Early pleasures are..... (transitory/transient)
377. The saint carried a long..... stick in his hand. (tortuous/torturous)
378. The patriots like Bhagat Singh bore ..... treatment in the jail. (torturous/tortuous)
379. Rural people need greater help of the government than the ..... (urban/urbane)
380. His ..... manners won him popularity. (urbane/urban)
381. I sent him a ..... message. (verbal/oral)
382. There is no ..... test for the examination. (oral/verbal)
383. His style is ..... (verbose/verbal)

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



384. We must lead a ..... life. *(virtuous/virtual)*
385. The Prime Minister is the ..... ruler of the country. *(virtual/virtuous)*
386. He worked hard, but all in ..... *(vain/vein)*
387. Blood runs in the ..... *(veins/vains)*
388. The ..... of Kashmir is beautiful. *(vale/veil)*
389. She dropped her ..... *(veil/wail)*
390. Do not ..... over the dead past. *(wail/veil)*
391. Teaching is my ..... *(vocation/vocation)*
392. Where did he spend his summer ..... ? *(vacation/vocation)*
393. Arjun Babu is on casual ..... today. *(leave/vocation)*
394. I decided to enter politics, and it was a ..... in the right direction. *(venture/adventure)*
395. You must lead a life of ..... *(adventure/venture)*
396. Gandhijee was opposed to ..... for achieving his aims. *(violence/violation)*
397. Crossing a road on red signal is a ..... of traffic rules. *(violation/violence)*
398. She had many ..... qualities. *(womanly/womanish)*
399. He is ..... in his habits. *(womanish/womanly)*
400. Don't ..... your time. *(waste/waist)*
401. Her ..... is slim. *(waist/waste)*
402. I ..... my hankerchief as the train steamed off. *(waved/waived)*
403. He has ..... his claim to the property of his brother. *(waived/waved)*
404. I do not know ..... he will come or not. *(whether/weather)*
405. How pleasant the ..... is ! *(weather/whether)*

**Q. 2.** *Make sentences with the pairs of words given below, so as to bring out clearly the difference in meaning between the two words in each pair :* *[In I.A.S. Exam.]*

(a) Industrial; Industrious, (b) Lay; Lie.
(c) Principle; Principal. (d) Eligible; Illegible.
(e) Quiet; Quite. (f) Economic; Economical.
(g) Censor; Censure. (h) Conform, Confirm.
(i) Eminent; Imminent. (j) Averse; Adverse.

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1**

1. accept 2. except 3. accede
4. exceed 5. access 6. excess
7. advice 8. advised 9. adapt
10. adopted 11. adept 12. accident
13. incident 14. occident 15. alter
16. altar 17. averse 18. adverse
19. affected 20. effect 21. allusions
22. illusion 23. avocation 24. vocation
25. apprehended 26. comprehend 27. avenged
28. revenged 29. award 30. reward
31. assay 32. essay 33. artful
34. artificial 35. assassinated 36. killed
37. birth 38. berth 39. bare
40. bear 41. bail 42. bales
43. bridle 44. bridal 45. born
46. borne 47. beside 48. besides
49. benevolent 50. beneficial 51. beneficiary
52. boar 53. bore 54. barbarism
55. barbarity 56. blunder 57. mistake
58. err 59. caste 60. cast
61. canvas 62. canvassing 63. cited
64. site 65. sight 66. childish
67. childlike 68. cymbols 69. symbol
70. considerable 71. considerate 72. credulous
73. credible 74. creditable 75. cemetry
76. symmetry 77. canons 78. cannons
79. calender 80. calendar 81. casual
82. causal 83. coarse 84. course
85. cheque 86. check 87. complement
88. compliments 89. queue 90. confidant
91. confident 92. cession 93. session
94. censor 95. censured 96. contagious
97. continguous 98. infectious 99. corporal
100. corporeal 101. corps 102. corpse
103. complaisant 104. complacement 105. ceremonious
106. ceremonial 107. cloudy 108. confirmed
109. conforms 110. concave 111. convex
112. conversing 113. contemptible 114. contemptuously
115. cloth 116. clothes 117. conscious
118. conscientious 119. comprehensive 120. comprehensible
121. council 122. counsel 123. custom
124. habit 125. usage 126. careers
127. carriers 128. cell 129. sell
130. crime 131. sin 132. vice
133. collisions 134. collusion 135. disease
136. decease 137. decent 138. descent
139. dissent 140. dual 141. duel
142. defaced 143. effaced 144. depression
145. depreciated 146. definite 147. definitive
148. distinct 149. distinctive 150. durable
151. endurable 152. direct 153. directly
154. divers 155. diverse 156. deluded
157. eluded 158. discriminate 159. incriminated
160. descry 161. decried 162. destiny
163. destination 164. defer 165. differ
166. denied 167. refused 168. declined
169. dependants 170. dependent 171. discovered
172. invented 173. dearth 174. dearness
175. deprecates 176. depreciated 177. desert
178. dessert 179. deserts 180. draught
181. drought 182. difference 183. deference
184. defy 185. deified 186. delivery
187. deliverance 188. decided 189. decisive
190. disinterested 191. uninterested 192. dozing
193. doses 194. Dew 195. due
196. dairy 197. diary 198. device
199. devised 200. eminent 201. imminent
202. extinct 203. instinct 204. eligible
205. illegible 206. exhausting 207. exhaustive
208. elicited 209. illicit 210. economical
211. economic 212. empty 213. vacant
214. enveloped 215. envelope 216. emigrants
217. immigrants 218. emerging 219. immerged
220. alluded 221. eluded 222. efficient
223. efficacious 224. fateful 225. fatal
226. flour 227. floor 228. founded
229. foundered 230. felicity 231. facility
232. graceful 233. gracious 234. gentle
235. genteel 236. ghostly 237. ghastly
238. gaol 239. goal 240. gamble
241. gamboling 242. hoard 243. hordes
244. historic 245. historical 246. honourable
247. honorary 248. humility 249. humiliation
250. idle 251. idol 252. ideal
253. industrial 254. industrious 255. imperial
256. imperious 257. intelligent 258. intelligible
259. irrelevant 260. irreverent 261. ignorant
262. illiterate 263. incredible 264. incredulous
265. illegible 266. ineligible 267. impossible
268. impassable 269. ingenuous 270. ingenious



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



271. explicit
272. implicit
273. judicial
274. judicious
275. jealous
276. zealous
277. knotty
278. naughty
279. luxuriant
280. luxurious
281. late
282. lately
283. laid
284. lie
285. lovely
286. lovable
287. momentary
288. momentous
289. minor
290. miner
291. manly
292. mannish
293. negligent
294. negligible
295. notorious
296. famous
297. official
298. officious
299. ordinance
300. ordnance
301. odious
302. odorous
303. practice
304. practises
305. pair
306. pare
307. principal
308. principle
309. popular
310. populous
311. president
312. precedent
313. prescribed
314. proscribed
315. persecuted
316. prosecuted
317. pitiable
318. piteous
319. pitiful
320. petrol
321. patrolling
322. primary
323. primitive
324. physic
325. physique
326. personal
327. personnel
328. pursued
329. persuing
330. physician
331. physicist
332. quiet
333. quite
334. respectable
335. respectful
336. respective
337. rented
338. hired
339. refuse
340. refuge
341. rich
342. richly
343. stationary
344. stationery
345. social
346. sociable
347. sensible
348. sensitive
349. statue
350. statute
351. soaring
352. sore
353. sour
354. sole
355. soul
356. septic
357. sceptic
358. superficial
359. superfluous
360. smells
361. smelly
362. story
363. storeys
364. suit
365. suite
366. soot
367. spacious
368. specious
369. seized
370. siege
371. temper
372. tamper
373. temporary
374. temporal
375. transient
376. transitory
377. tortuous
378. torturous
379. urban
380. urbane
381. verbal
382. oral
383. verbose
384. virtuous
385. virtual
386. vain
387. veins
388. vale
389. veil
390. wail
391. vocation
392. vacation
393. leave
394. venture
395. adventure
396. violence
397. violation
398. womanly
399. womanish
400. waste
401. waist
402. waved
403. waived
404. whether
405. weather

Q. 2. में दिये गए words से छात्रगण स्वयं sentence बनावें।

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Idioms and Phrases 34

## Type I : Idioms and Phrases

### Phrases starting with 'A'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | ABC | साधारण ज्ञान |
| 2. | Above board | स्पष्ट |
| 3. | Above all | सबसे अधिक |
| 4. | After all | अन्त में, चाहे जो हो |
| 5. | All in all | सर्वेसर्वा |
| 6. | All the same | एक ही महत्त्व का |
| 7. | All over | सभी जगह |
| 8. | Along with | साथ-साथ |
| 9. | All along | शुरू से अन्त तक; पूरी दूरी तक |
| 10. | All day long | दिन भर |
| 11. | At once | तुरंत |
| 12. | At home in | निपुण |
| 13. | Again and again | बार-बार |
| 14. | At random | बिना लक्ष्य के |
| 15. | As usual | सदा की भाँति |
| 16. | At the latest | अन्तिम समय |
| 17. | At heart | हृदय से |
| 18. | At the top of | उच्चतम स्वर में |
| 19. | At all hazards | हर तरह के कष्ट के बावजूद |
| 20. | At length | अन्त में |
| 21. | At enemity with | शत्रुता रखना |
| 22. | At a stretch | लगातार |
| 23. | Apple of one's eye | दुलारा, प्यारा |
| 24. | Apple of discord | झगड़े की वस्तु |
| 25. | At the eleventh hour | अन्तिम समय में |
| 26. | At bottom | भीतर से |
| 27. | At daggers drawn | कट्टर दुश्मनी होना |
| 28. | At a loss | घबरा जाना |
| 29. | At sixes and sevens | तितर-बितर |
| 30. | As if | मानो |
| 31. | At hand | नजदीक |
| 32. | As a matter of fact | सचमुच |
| 33. | At the point of | करीब |
| 34. | At all costs | किसी भी कीमत पर |
| 35. | At stake | खतरे में |
| 36. | At variance with | विपरीत |
| 37. | At all | तनिक भी |
| 38. | At all events | चाहे जो कुछ हो। |
| 39. | As a rule | सदा |
| 40. | Apple-pie-order | बिल्कुल ठीक हालत में |

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 41. | At a time | एक बार में |
| 42. | At times | कभी-कभी |
| 43. | As long as | जब तक |
| 44. | As soon as | ज्योंही |
| 45. | At large | स्वतंत्र |
| 46. | At the same time | उसी समय |
| 47. | As a result of | के फलस्वरूप |
| 48. | At the instance of | के उकसाने या कहने पर |
| 49. | At last | अन्त में |
| 50. | At any cost | किसी भी कीमत पर |
| 51. | As a whole | पूरे रूप में |
| 52. | All at once | एकाएक |
| 53. | At no time | कभी नहीं |
| 54. | At least | कम से कम |
| 55. | At fault | गलती में |
| 56. | After a fashion | किसी भाँति, संतोषप्रद ढंग से नहीं। |
| 57. | All told | सब मिलाकर |
| 58. | A bird's eye view | विहंगम दृष्टि |
| 59. | A lame excuse | असंतोषजनक बहाना |
| 60. | A man of letters | विद्वान आदमी |
| 61. | A man of parts | सुयोग्य व्यक्ति |
| 62. | A man of spirit | उत्साही आदमी |
| 63. | A man of straw | वह आदमी जिसका कोई मत न हो। |
| 64. | A slip of the pen | लिखने में गलती |
| 65. | A slip of the tongue | बोलने में गलती |
| 66. | A snake in the grass | आस्तीन का साँप, वह आदमी जो देखने में मैत्री भाव रखता है पर हृदय में कपट। |
| 67. | At one's wit's end | चकित |
| 68. | As yet | अभी तक |
| 69. | At any rate | किसी भी तरह |
| 70. | At one's best | सबसे अच्छी हालत में |
| 71. | As such | अतः |
| 72. | A good for nothing fellow | बेकार आदमी |
| 73. | An iron-will | दृढ़निश्चय |
| 74. | A jail bird | कुख्यात अपराधी |
| 75. | A promising youth | होनहार युवक |
| 76. | A utopian scheme | आदर्श किन्तु कार्यान्वित न होने वाली योजना |
| 77. | At one's finger's ends | पूर्ण ज्ञात |
| 78. | At arm's length | दूर |
| 79. | At a blow | एक ही प्रहार में |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 80. | At sight | देखते ही |
| 81. | At ease | चिन्तारहित |
| 82. | All the while | इस अवधि में |
| 83. | Add fuel to the fire | आग में घी डालना |

## Phrases starting with 'B'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Bed of roses | फूलों की सेज |
| 2. | Bag and baggage | बोरिया-बिस्तर समेत |
| 3. | By far | बहुत |
| 4. | Beck and call | आज्ञा में रहना |
| 5. | By dint of | के द्वारा |
| 6. | By means of | के द्वारा |
| 7. | Beat black and blue | अत्यधिक |
| 8. | Below the mark | उचित स्तर से नीचे |
| 9. | By hook or by crook | गलत या सही किसी ढंग से करना |
| 10. | By fits and starts | रुक-रुककर करना |
| 11. | Big gun | बड़ा या प्रभावशाली व्यक्ति |
| 12. | Bosom friend | जिगरी दोस्त |
| 13. | Burning question | ज्वलन्त प्रश्न |
| 14. | By all means | हर तरह से |
| 15. | By no means | किसी प्रकार नहीं |
| 16. | By and by | कुछ समय के बाद, धीरे-धीरे |
| 17. | By the by | बातों ही बातों में |
| 18. | Before long | शीघ्र |
| 19. | Body and soul | पूर्णतया |
| 20. | By leaps and bounds | दिन दूनी और रात चौगुनी |
| 21. | By chance | संयोगवश |
| 22. | By fair means or foul | उचित या अनुचित ढंग से। |
| 23. | By return of post | लौटती डाक से। |
| 24. | By and large | मोटा-मोटी तौर से। |
| 25. | Because of | कारण से |
| 26. | Beside the point | असंगत |
| 27. | Bid fair | आशा दिलाना |
| 28. | Bird's eye view | सरसरी निगाह |
| 29. | Bring to book | दण्ड देना |
| 30. | Break the ice | चुप्पी तोड़ना |
| 31. | By the way | बातचीत के क्रम में। |
| 32. | By nature | स्वभावतः |
| 33. | By fair means | उचित तरीके से |
| 34. | Break the record | नया कीर्तिमान स्थापित करना |
| 35. | Bad blood | शत्रुता |
| 36. | Black sheep | नीच व्यक्ति |
| 37. | Bone of contention | झगड़े की वस्तु |
| 38. | Beat about the bush | घुमा-फिरा कर बातें करना |
| 39. | Better half | पत्नी |
| 40. | Birds of a feather | एक ही प्रकृति का मनुष्य |
| 41. | Bolt from the blue | आकस्मिक विपत्ति |
| 42. | By force of | की सहायता से |
| 43. | Broad day light | दिन-दहाड़े |
| 44. | Bid farewell to | विदाई देना |
| 45. | Breathe one's last | मर जाना |

## Phrases starting with 'C'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Cat and dog life | कलहपूर्ण जीवन |
| 2. | Come to light | विदित होना |
| 3. | Castles in the air | हवाई किला बनाना |
| 4. | Cut a sorry figure | बुरी हालत में होना |
| 5. | Come true | सच्चा सिद्ध होना |
| 6. | Cry in the wilderness | आरण्यरोदन, व्यर्थ वस्तु |
| 7. | Crocodile tears | दिखावटी आँसू |
| 8. | Cut and dried | बिल्कुल तैयार |
| 9. | Child's play | आसान काम |
| 10. | Come to blow | हाथापाई करना |
| 11. | Come into force | लागू होना |
| 12. | Capital punishment | मृत्यु दण्ड |
| 13. | Chicken hearted | कायर |
| 14. | Cold war | अमैत्रीपूर्ण संबंध |
| 15. | Cold blooded | निर्दयतापूर्ण |
| 16. | Close shave | बाल-बाल बचना |
| 17. | Cock-and-bull story | झूठी कहानी |

## Phrases starting with 'D'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Dead against | एकदम विरुद्ध |
| 2. | Dead line | निर्दिष्ट सीमा |
| 3. | Day in, day out | दिन-रात |
| 4. | Die in harness | अपने पद पर ही मृत्यु होना |
| 5. | Dead letter | जो कभी लागू था लेकिन अब लागू नहीं है। |
| 6. | Dark horse | छिपा रुस्तम व्यक्ति |
| 7. | Drop in the ocean | सागर में बूँद के समान |
| 8. | Dry facts | नीरस तथ्य |
| 9. | Do away with | छुटकारा पाना |
| 10. | Do one's utmost | जितना हो सके करना |
| 11. | Do-in-the managerpolicy | जिस सिद्धांत से न अपना लाभ हो और न दूसरे का। |
| 12. | Due to | कारण से |
| 13. | Double minded | अस्थिर बुद्धिवाला |
| 14. | Dead loss | कतई पूरा न होने वाला नुकसान |
| 15. | Do well | प्रगति करना, यश पाना |
| 16. | Down and out | हतोत्साह |
| 17. | Drop a subject | किसी विषय पर विवाद बंद करना |
| 18. | Drop in on | मिलने जाना |
| 19. | Drop out of | छोड़ देना |
| 20. | Draw a line | मर्यादा तय करना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Phrases starting with 'E'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Every now and then | अक्सर |
| 2. | Escape one's lips | बोल जाना |
| 3. | Escape notice | ध्यान न जाना |
| 4. | Elbow room | काम करने की स्वतंत्रता |
| 5. | Eat out | होटल में भोजन करना |
| 6. | Eat one's words | शब्द वापस लेना |
| 7. | Eat humble pie | गर्व त्यागना, विनम्र हो जाना |
| 8. | Ease someone out | शिष्टतापूर्वक नौकरी से निकालना |

## Phrases starting with 'F'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | For want of | कमी से |
| 2. | Far and wide | बहुत दूर तक |
| 3. | Far and near | चारों ओर |
| 4. | For good | हमेशा के लिए |
| 5. | For fear of | भय से |
| 6. | Fair and square | निष्पक्ष |
| 7. | Fair play | ईमानदारी |
| 8. | For the sake of | के लिए |
| 9. | From head to foot | ऊपर से नीचे तक |
| 10. | From time to time | कभी-कभी |
| 11. | For the time being | तब तक के लिए |
| 12. | Fast living | विलासपूर्ण जीवन |
| 13. | Fish out of water | कष्टप्रद अवस्था में |
| 14. | First and foremost | सर्वप्रथम |
| 15. | Fancy price | मुँहमाँगी कीमत |
| 16. | Fool's paradise | मन के लड्डू |
| 17. | For nothing | व्यर्थ में |
| 18. | Far and away | बहुत अधिक |
| 19. | Few and far between | बहुत कम |
| 20. | From bad to worse | बदतर |
| 21. | From door to door | द्वार-द्वार जाकर |
| 22. | Fair hand | साफ लिखावट |
| 23. | Free lance | स्वतंत्र |
| 24. | French leave | बिना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना |
| 25. | Face to face | आमने-सामने |
| 26. | Fish in troubled waters | दलदली से लाभ उठाना |
| 27. | From the bottom of one's heart | तहे दिल से। |
| 28. | Fair sex | नारी जाति |
| 29. | For good and all | सदा के लिए |
| 30. | For long | अधिक दिनों तक |
| 31. | Fall into a rage | क्रुद्ध होना |
| 32. | Fall short of | कम होना |
| 33. | Fall flat on | प्रभाव नहीं डालना |
| 34. | For the purpose of | के लिए, के प्रयोजन से |
| 35. | Fast living | ऐश आराम की जिन्दगी |
| 36. | Feather one's nest | अवैध तरीके से कमाई करके रखना |
| 37. | Fed up with | तंग आ जाना |
| 38. | Fellow feeling | भाईचारा, अपनापन |
| 39. | Few and far between | बहुत कम |
| 40. | Fight shy of | टालना |
| 41. | Force one's hand | मन की बात प्रकट करने के लिए मजबूर करना |
| 42. | Forty winks | बहुत थोड़ी देर के लिए झपकी लेना |
| 43. | Fringe benefits | वेतन के अलावा मिलने वाला लाभ |
| 44. | Fair play | न्यायसंगत बर्ताव |
| 45. | Fair weather friend | मुसीबत में साथ न देने वाला मित्र |
| 46. | Fall in with | सहमत होना |
| 47. | Fall out with | झगड़ा करना |
| 48. | Fall to one's lot | नसीब में होना |
| 49. | Fall behind in | पिछड़ जाना |
| 50. | Fall a prey to | ठग जाना |

## Phrases starting with 'G'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Get rid of | छुटकारा पाना |
| 2. | Gala day | आनंदोत्सव का दिन |
| 3. | Good for nothing | बेकार |
| 4. | Gift of the gab | चतुराईपूर्वक धारा प्रवाह बोलने की शक्ति |
| 5. | Golden mean | मध्यम मार्ग |
| 6. | Good samaritan | दयालु व्यक्ति |
| 7. | Get the better of | किसी को हराना |
| 8. | Get by heart | जबानी याद करना |
| 9. | Go a long way | बहुत हद तक |
| 10. | Golden opportunity | सुनहला अवसर |
| 11. | Get ahead of | आगे निकल जाना |
| 12. | Get along with | मित्रवत रहना |
| 13. | Get away with | बुरा काम करके सजा से मुक्त रहना |
| 14. | Get down to | काम गंभीरतापूर्वक आरंभ करना |
| 15. | Get even with | बदला लेना |
| 16. | Get hold of | मतलब समझ पाना |
| 17. | Get into a soup | झंझट में पड़ना |
| 18. | Get into the swing of things | नई परिस्थिति में घुलमिल जाना |
| 19. | Get on one's nerves | तंग करना |
| 20. | Get on with | काम चालू करना, साथ होना |
| 21. | Get out of | बाहर निकल जाना |
| 22. | Get out of line | अनुशासन भंग करना |
| 23. | Get the sack | नौकरी से हटाया जाना |
| 24. | Get the upper hand | मात करना, प्रमुखता प्राप्त करना |
| 25. | Get through with | काम पूरा करना |
| 26. | Get wind of | रहस्य का पता लगाना |
| 27. | Get word | संदेश मिलना |
| 28. | Give a break | अवसर देना |
| 29. | Give a piece of mind | कोसना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 30. | Give a ring | टेलीफोन करना |
| 31. | Go through fire and water | कोई भी खतरा मोल लेना |
| 32. | Go to rack and ruin | विनाश होना |
| 33. | Green room | अभिनेता का भेष-भूषा का कमरा, नेपथ्य |
| 34. | Get off scot free | अदण्डित भाग जाना |
| 35. | Go a long way | बहुत कुछ करना |

## Phrases starting with 'H'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Hard and fast | कठोर, निश्चित |
| 2. | Hue and cry | हल्ला गुल्ला |
| 3. | Hand in hand | हाथ में हाथ दिये हुए |
| 4. | Hole and corner policy | गुप्त नीति |
| 5. | Heart and soul | मन से |
| 6. | Here and there | जहाँ-तहाँ |
| 7. | Hand to hand | हाथों-हाथ, हाथ से |
| 8. | Hard cash | रोकड़ |
| 9. | How and why | क्यों और कैसे |
| 10. | Hard up | तंगी में होना |
| 11. | Heart to heart | स्पष्ट ढंग से |
| 12. | High time | उत्तम या सही समय |
| 13. | Hard nut to crack | टेढ़ी खीर |
| 14. | Hammer and tongs | बड़े जोर-जोर से |
| 15. | Hang by a thread | बहुत नाजुक स्थिति में होना |
| 16. | Hard up | रुपयों की तंगी होना |
| 17. | Haul over the coals | कोसना, भर्त्सना करना |
| 18. | Have a brush with | थोड़ी सी अनबन होना |
| 19. | Have a mind | राजी होना, दिल करना |
| 20. | Have a thing at one's fingers tips | पूर्णतः ज्ञात होना |
| 21. | Have clean hands | निर्दोष पाना |
| 22. | Have in hand | कोई काम हाथ में होना |
| 23. | Have an eye on a thing | किसी वस्तु पर दृष्टि रखना |
| 24. | Have one's hands full | किसी काम में व्यस्त होना |
| 25. | Have too many irons in the fire | एक ही साथ अनेक काम करने की कोशिश करना |
| 26. | Hen-pecked husband | जोरू का गुलाम |
| 27. | Herculean task | बहुत कठिन कार्य |
| 28. | High and low | सर्वत्र |
| 29. | High living | ऐश आराम की जिन्दगी |
| 30. | Hit the nail on the head | सही बात कहना |
| 31. | Hold one's tongue | खामोश रहना |
| 32. | Hush money | रिश्वत |
| 33. | Hand in glove | अत्यन्त घनिष्ठ |
| 34. | High handed | निरंकुश |
| 35. | Hard times | बुरे दिन |
| 36. | Have one's way | अपनी इच्छा के अनुसार काम करना |

## Phrases starting with 'I'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Iron hand | कड़ाई से |
| 2. | In the long run | अन्ततोगत्वा |
| 3. | In favour of | के पक्ष में |
| 4. | In front of | के सामने |
| 5. | In lieu of | के बदले में |
| 6. | In order to | के लिए |
| 7. | In quest of | खोज में |
| 8. | In the hope of | आशा में |
| 9. | In case | अगर |
| 10. | In course of | के क्रम में |
| 11. | In detail | विस्तार में |
| 12. | In no time | शीघ्र |
| 13. | In spite of | के बावजूद |
| 14. | In the teeth of | के मुकाबले में |
| 15. | In time | ठीक समय पर |
| 16. | In connection with | के संबंध में। |
| 17. | In defence of | की प्रतिरक्षा में, बचाव में |
| 18. | In consideration of | दृष्टिगत करते हुए, के विचार से |
| 19. | Ins and outs | विस्तृत विवरण |
| 20. | In view of | ध्यान रखते हुए |
| 21. | In proportion to | अनुपात में |
| 22. | In respect of | दृष्टिकोण से |
| 23. | In the face of | के सामने |
| 24. | In point of | दृष्टि से |
| 25. | In a fix | घबड़ाहट में |
| 26. | In a nutshell | संक्षेप में |
| 27. | In full swing | पूरे जोर में |
| 28. | In regard to | के संबंध में |
| 29. | In the dark | अज्ञात रहना |
| 30. | In the nick of time | ठीक समय पर |
| 31. | Instead of | बदले में |
| 32. | Ill at ease | परेशानी में होना |
| 33. | In vogue | प्रचलित |
| 34. | Irony of fate | विधि की विडम्बना |
| 35. | In all respects | सभी प्रकार से |
| 36. | In full | पूरा |
| 37. | In fact | वस्तुतः |
| 38. | In the meantime | इस बीच में |
| 39. | In any case | किसी भी हालत में |
| 40. | In force | लागू |
| 41. | In good faith | बिना किसी बुरी नीयत के। |
| 42. | In hot haste | बड़ी जल्दीबाजी में |
| 43. | In a hurry | जल्दी में |
| 44. | In an instant | पल भर में |
| 45. | In name only | नाममात्र का। |
| 46. | In office | सत्तारूढ़ |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 47. | In season and out of season | हर समय, वक्त-कुवक्त |
| 48. | In case of | की स्थिति में |
| 49. | In defiance of | की अवज्ञा करके |
| 50. | In honour of | के सम्मान में |
| 51. | In keeping with | से मेल खाते हुए। |
| 52. | In the eye of | की नजर में |
| 53. | In place of | के बदले |
| 54. | In the interests of | के हित में |
| 55. | In the name of | के नाम पर |
| 56. | In order that | ताकि |
| 57. | In the end | अंत में |
| 58. | In one's mind's eye | अन्तश्चक्षु में |
| 59. | In fault | दोषी |
| 60. | In black and white | लिखित |
| 61. | In due course | कालक्रम में |
| 62. | In the same beal | समान परिस्थिति में होना |
| 63. | In a temper | गुस्से में होना |
| 64. | In an instant | एक ही क्षण में |
| 65. | In course of time | समय बीतने पर |

## Phrases starting with 'J'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Jack of all trades | जो आदमी किसी भी काम में निपुण न हो, किन्तु सबमें हाथ डाले |
| 2. | Jaundiced eye | पक्षपातपूर्ण दृष्टिकोण |
| 3. | Jail bird | बार-बार जेल जानेवाला अपराधी |
| 4. | Join in with | हिस्सा लेना |
| 5. | Jump to a conclusion | पूरा विचार न करते हुए। |

## Phrases starting with 'K'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Keep an eye on | निगरानी रखना |
| 2. | Keep abreast of | पीछे नहीं पड़ना |
| 3. | Kith and kin | बन्धु-बान्धव |
| 4. | Keep in view | नजर में रखना |
| 5. | Keep company | साथ देना |
| 6. | Keep body and soul together | जीवित रहना |
| 7. | Keep good time | ठीक समय बताना |
| 8. | Keep in mind | न भूलना |
| 9. | Keep in touch with | सम्पर्क बनाए रखना |
| 10. | Keep late hours | देर तक जगे रहना |
| 11. | Keep the wolf from the door | दरिद्रता से संघर्ष करना |
| 12. | Kick a habit | आदत छोड़ देना |
| 13. | Kill two birds with one stone | एक ही समय में दो काम करना |
| 14. | Know by sight | शक्ल से पहचानना |
| 15. | Keep one's word | प्रतीक्षा पूरी करना |

## Phrases starting with 'L'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Lose sight of | उपेक्षा करना |
| 2. | Lame excuse | फालतू बहाना |
| 3. | Look blank | चकित रह जाना |
| 4. | Lie in wait | घात में रहना |
| 5. | Life and soul | जान, प्राण |
| 6. | Long and short | सारांश |
| 7. | Loaves and fishes | व्यक्तिगत लाभ |
| 8. | Learn by rote | बिना अर्थ समझे हुए रटकर याद करना |
| 9. | Lion's share | सबसे बड़ा हिस्सा |
| 10. | Long face | मुँह लटकाए हुए। |
| 11. | Left handed compliment | प्रशंसा के रूप में शिकायत |
| 12. | Loose tongue | गैर जवाबदेह बातें। |
| 13. | Lump sum | एकमुश्त |
| 14. | Lose heart | निराश होना |
| 15. | Laugh in one's sleeves | मन में हँसना |
| 16. | Lend one's ear | ध्यान से सुनना |
| 17. | Little by little | धीरे-धीरे |
| 18. | Lose heart | धीरज खोना |
| 19. | Lose one's cool | उत्तेजित होना |
| 20. | Lose one's head | संयम खो बैठना |
| 21. | Lose one's way | रास्ता भूलना |

## Phrases starting with 'M'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Make a name | नाम कमाना |
| 2. | Maiden speech | जीवन में प्रथम सार्वजनिक भाषण |
| 3. | Make good | क्षतिपूर्ति करना |
| 4. | Make up one's mind | निश्चय करना |
| 5. | Miss the bus | सुअवसर खो देना |
| 6. | Man of parts | गुणवान व्यक्ति |
| 7. | Man in the street | साधारण आदमी |
| 8. | Man of action | कर्मठ व्यक्ति |
| 9. | Make an ass of oneself | बेवकूफ बनाना, गदहपनी करना |
| 10. | Make the best of both the worlds | दोनों हाथ लड्डू |
| 11. | Make a fortune | धनी हो जाना |
| 12. | Make friends | दोस्ती करना |
| 13. | Make or mar | बनाना या बिगाड़ना |
| 14. | Man of the world | दुनियादारी समझने वाला व्यक्ति |
| 15. | Mind one's own business | दूसरे के काम में दखल न देना |
| 16. | More or less | कम या अधिक, करीब-करीब |
| 17. | Move heaven and earth | आकाश-पाताल एक करना |
| 18. | Make a fool of oneself | बेवकूफ बनाना |
| 19. | Make a mess of | गोल माल करना |
| 20. | Maiden name | विवाहित स्त्री का विवाह पूर्व नाम |
| 21. | Make a hash | गड़बड़ घोटाला कर देना |
| 22. | Miss the beat | अवसर खोना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## Phrases starting with 'N'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Null and void | बेकार |
| 2. | Now and again | कभी-कभी |
| 3. | Nip in the bud | आरंभ में ही नष्ट कर देना |
| 4. | No end | अनन्त |
| 5. | Narrow escape | बाल-बाल बचना। |
| 6. | Neck and neck | बराबरी में। |
| 7. | Night and day | दिन-रात |
| 8. | Nine day's wonder | जो काम कुछ दिन के लिए तहलका मचा दे और फिर समाप्त हो जाए। |
| 9. | Now and then | कभी-कभी |
| 10. | Now or never | अभी या कभी नहीं |
| 11. | Never mind | कोई बात नहीं। |

## Phrases starting with 'O'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Off and on | कभी-कभी |
| 2. | Of no avail | व्यर्थ |
| 3. | On account of | कारण से |
| 4. | Owing to | कारण से |
| 5. | On the contrary | वरन |
| 6. | Of late | हाल ही में |
| 7. | Out of question | असंभव |
| 8. | Out and out | पूर्णतः |
| 9. | Over head and ears | बहुत ज्यादा |
| 10. | On the alert | सतर्क होना |
| 11. | On the brink of | किनारे पर |
| 12. | Open and aboveboard | स्पष्ट, निश्छल |
| 13. | Once again | फिर एक बार |
| 14. | Once for all | अन्तिम बार |
| 15. | On the eve of | अवसर पर |
| 16. | Of course | अवश्य |
| 17. | Out of pocket | बिना पैसे के |
| 18. | Over and above | के अलावा |
| 19. | Of the opinion | मत का |
| 20. | On credit | उधार |
| 21. | On an average | औसतन |
| 22. | On good terms | मैत्रीभाव |
| 23. | On time | ठीक निर्धारित समय पर |
| 24. | On and on | निरन्तर |
| 25. | Once upon a time | एक बार |
| 26. | On the verge of | के सन्निकट |
| 27. | On the whole | सब कुछ ध्यान में रखते हुए। |
| 28. | On an account | किसी हालत में नहीं |
| 29. | Out of form | अच्छे form में नहीं होना |
| 30. | Open secret | वह रहस्य जो सबको मालूम हो। |
| 31. | Over and over again | बार-बार |
| 32. | Out of the way | गलत ढंग से |
| 33. | Off one's head | बुद्धि भ्रष्ट होना |
| 34. | Oily tongue | खुशामद की भाषा |
| 35. | On one's guard | सावधान/सचेत रहना |
| 36. | On one's last legs | खत्म होने की तैयारी में होना |
| 37. | On the spot | तत्काल, उसी क्षण |
| 38. | On the whole | साधारणतया |
| 39. | Once and for all | आखरी बार निश्चित रूप से |
| 40. | Once in a while | कभी-कभी, एकाध बार |
| 41. | One and all | सबके सब |
| 42. | Open fire | गोली चलाना प्रारंभ करना |
| 43. | Open handed man | रुपया उदारता से खर्च करने वाला व्यक्ति। |
| 44. | Open hearted man | खुले दिल का आदमी |
| 45. | Open one's mind | अपने गुप्त विचार देना |
| 46. | Out at elbows | गरीब, निर्धन |
| 47. | Out of date | पुराना |
| 48. | Out of doors | घर से बाहर |
| 49. | Out of hand | बिना विलम्ब, तत्काल |
| 50. | Out of one's mind | पागल हो जाना |
| 51. | Out of temper | गुस्से में होना |
| 52. | Overnight | रात में |
| 53. | Over one's head | समझ में न आना |
| 54. | Other than | अतिरिक्त |
| 55. | On the spur of the moment | पहले से बिना निश्चित किये, तत्काल |
| 56. | On a large scale | बड़े पैमाने पर |
| 57. | One one's account | किसी की खातिर |
| 58. | On the strength of | के बल पर |
| 59. | On all hands | सभी के द्वारा |
| 60. | Out of favour | खफा होना |

## Phrases strarting with 'P'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Part and parcel | आवश्यक अंग |
| 2. | Pros and cons | पक्ष और विपक्ष |
| 3. | Put on end to | समाप्त करना |
| 4. | Pandora's box | दुःख का भंडार |
| 5. | Put on flesh | मोटा होना |
| 6. | Play the fool | बेवकूफ की तरह हरकत करना |
| 7. | Put someone to death | जान से मार देना |
| 8. | Play a double game | धोखेबाजी करना |
| 9. | Play hide and seek | लुका-छिपी खेलना |
| 10. | Pick and choose | छाँटकर चुनना |
| 11. | Poison someone's ears | किसी के विरुद्ध कान भरना |
| 12. | Play false | धोखा देना |
| 13. | Put into action | कार्यान्वित करना |
| 14. | Pick a quarrel with | किसी के साथ उलझना |
| 16. | Pick up the late | दूसरे का बिल चुकाना |
| 17. | Pink of condition | उत्तम स्वास्थ्य होना |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 18. | Play a trick on | किसी के साथ मजाक करना |
| 19. | Play second fiddle | निचला स्थान स्वीकारना |
| 20. | Play truant | भाग जाना |
| 21. | Plum oneself on | डींग मारना |
| 22. | Provide against a rainy day | बुरे दिन के लिए बचत करना |
| 23. | Pull one's punches | नर्म आलोचना करना |
| 24. | Pull one's weight | जिम्मेदारी निभाना |
| 25. | Pull well with | मिलजुल कर काम करना |
| 26. | Put a spoke in one's wheel | प्रगति में रुकावट |
| 27. | Put down in black and white | लिखकर रखना |
| 28. | Put on trial | केस करना |
| 29. | Put one's foot down | सख्त मनाही करना |
| 30. | Put one's shoulder to the wheel | स्वयं खूब प्रयास करना |
| 31. | Put the sword | कत्ल करना |
| 32. | Put to shame | लज्जित करना |
| 33. | Put to bed | सुलाना |
| 34. | Put the cart before the horse | कोई काम उल्टे सिरे से प्रारंभ करना |
| 35. | Put one out of countenance | लज्जित करना |

## Phrases starting with 'Q'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Queer fish | अस्थिर व्यक्ति |
| 2. | Quite a few | बहुत सारे |
| 3. | Quick of understanding | तेज बुद्धि वाला |
| 4. | Quarrel with one's bread and butter | जहाँ से रोटी मिलती है वहाँ के वरिष्ठ अधिकारी से झगड़ा करना |

## Phrase starting with 'R'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Red letter day | शुभ-सौभाग्य का अत्यन्त महत्वपूर्ण दिन |
| 2. | Rhyme or Reason | कारण |
| 3. | Rainy day | तकलीफ के दिन |
| 4. | Run short | घट जाना |
| 5. | Run a muck | सनक जाना |
| 6. | Right hand man | मुख्य सहायक व्यक्ति |
| 7. | Run the risk of | खतरा मोल लेना |
| 8. | Red handed | अपराध करते समय |
| 9. | Root and branch | समूल (totally) |
| 10. | Read between the lines | अतिरिक्त मतलब समझ जाना |
| 11. | Ready money | नकद रुपया |
| 12. | Red tape | official कार्यवाही में देर होना |
| 13. | Rest on one's laurels | और यश प्राप्ति हेतु कोशिश न करना |
| 14. | Right here | इसी जगह |
| 15. | Right now | तत्काल, इसी समय |
| 16. | Rise like a phoenix from its ashes | नष्ट की हुई वस्तु का फिर से जीवित होना |
| 17. | Rise to the occasion | किसी विशेष अवसर का मुकाबला करना |
| 18. | Rough guess | मोटा अन्दाजा |
| 19. | Rule the roost | दूसरे पर रोब डालना, अधिकार जमाना |

## Phrases starting with 'S'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Small fry | साधारण आदमी |
| 2. | Sine die | अनिश्चित काल के लिए |
| 3. | Sooner or later | कभी न कभी |
| 4. | Set free | आजाद कर देना |
| 5. | Sleeping partner | निष्क्रिय हिस्सेदार |
| 6. | Stuff and nonesense | बेकार |
| 7. | Sum and substance | सारांश |
| 8. | Stand somebody in good stead | लाभ होना |
| 9. | Snake in the grass | छिपा हुआ दुश्मन |
| 10. | Safe and sound | सुरक्षित |
| 11. | Slip of the tongue | गलती से जो बात जबान से निकल जाए |
| 12. | Slip of the pen | असावधानी के कारण लिखने में सामान्य भूल |
| 13. | So long as | जब तक |
| 14. | Short cut | छोटा रास्ता |
| 15. | See eye-to-eye | पूर्णतः सहमत होना, एक ही विचार से देखना |
| 16. | Send word | संवाद भेजना |
| 17. | Show of hand | हाथ उठाकर |
| 18. | Scot free | बचकर निकलना |
| 19. | Seasoned food | मसालेदार भोजन |
| 20. | See the light | प्रकाशित होना |
| 21. | Set a scheme on foot | योजना आरंभ करना |
| 22. | Set at liberty | रिहा करना |
| 23. | Set one's face against | कड़ा विरोध करना |
| 24. | Set one's heart on | बहुत चाहना |
| 25. | Set one's teeth on edge | घृणा पैदा करना |
| 26. | Shut one's mouth | किसी को चुप कराना |
| 27. | Slip through one's fingers | हाथ से निकल जाना |
| 28. | Snake in the grass | आस्तीन का साँप |
| 29. | Spare time | आराम का समय |
| 30. | Stand one's ground | अपनी बात पर डटे रहना |
| 31. | Stone's throw | बहुत थोड़ा फासला होना |
| 32. | Strike a bargain | सौदा पटाना |
| 33. | Sum and substance | कुल मिलाकर मतलब |
| 34. | Sworn enemies | कट्टर दुश्मन |

## Phrases starting with 'T'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Tooth and nail | पूरी ताकत से |
| 2. | Talk big | डींग मारना |
| 3. | Time and again | बार-बार |
| 4. | To and fro | आगे-पीछे |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 5. | Take to one's heels | भाग जाना |
| 6. | Tall talk | घमंड भरी लम्बी-चौड़ी बात |
| 7. | To the letter | अक्षरशः |
| 8. | Turn over a new leaf | बुरे आचरण को अच्छी दिशा में पूर्ण रूप से बदलना |
| 9. | Through thick and thin | सभी परिस्थितियों में |
| 10. | Throw cold water | उत्साह भंग करना |
| 11. | Through and through | पूर्णतः |
| 12. | To the last far thing | पैसा-पैसा कर |
| 13. | To his face | मुँह पर ही। |
| 14. | To the utmost | यथासाध्य |
| 15. | To the point | उपयुक्त |
| 16. | Take advantage of | लाभ उठाना |
| 17. | Take effect | असर करना |
| 18. | Take something in one's hand | अपने हाथ में ले लेना |
| 19. | Take heart | हिम्मत बाँधना |
| 20. | Testing time | परीक्षा की घड़ी |
| 21. | This and that | इधर-उधर, यह-वह |
| 22. | Think twice | सावधानीपूर्वक निर्णय लेना |
| 23. | Take stock of | परिस्थिति पर सावधानीपूर्वक विचार करना |
| 24. | Take someone into confidence | विश्वास में लेना या प्राप्त करना |
| 25. | Three R's | पढ़ना, लिखना और गणित |
| 26. | Take notice | ध्यान देना |
| 27. | Take the chair | सभापति होना |
| 28. | Take to one's heels | भाग जाना |
| 29. | Take care of | देखभाल करना, सावधान होना |
| 30. | Take hold of | पकड़ना |
| 31. | Take place | होना |
| 32. | Take part in | भाग लेना |
| 33. | Throw dust in one's eyes | आँखों में धूल झोंकना, धोखा देना |
| 34. | Take a fancy | बहुत पसन्द आना |
| 35. | Take a leap in the dark | परिणाम की परवाह किए बगैर कोई खतरे का काम करना |
| 36. | Take by storm | अचानक प्रभावित करना |
| 37. | Take into account | विचार में लेना |
| 38. | Take one at his word | किसी के कहने पर विश्वास करना |
| 39. | Take one's time | जल्दी न करना |
| 40. | Take oneself off | चले जाना |
| 41. | Take sides | दो के झगड़े में किसी एक का पक्ष लेना |
| 42. | Take the air | हवा में घूमना |
| 43. | Take the bull by the horns | संकट का डटकर मुकाबला करना |
| 44. | Take the law into one's hands | किसी को अपने ही हाथों सजा देना |
| 45. | Take time off | छुट्टी लेना |
| 46. | Take to heart | हृदय से अनुभव करना |
| 47. | Take to task | कोसना, भर्त्सना करना |
| 48. | Through and through | पूर्णतः |
| 49. | Through thick and thin | प्रतिकूल परिस्थिति में |
| 50. | Throw away money | अंधाधुंध खर्च करना |
| 51. | Throw cold water upon | हतोत्साहित करना |
| 52. | Time after time | बार-बार |
| 53. | To and fro | आगे-पीछे |
| 54. | Turn over a new leaf | नया जीवन प्रारंभ करना |
| 55. | Turn up one's nose at | नीचा समझना |

## Phrases starting with 'U'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Up to the mark | संतोषप्रद |
| 2. | Ups and downs | उतार-चढ़ाव |
| 3. | Uphill task | बहुत कठिन कार्य |
| 4. | Up and doing | काम में सक्रिय रूप से लगना |
| 5. | Under consideration | विचाराधीन |
| 6. | Under lock and key | ताला चाभी से बंद करके। |
| 7. | Unless and until | जब तक नहीं ..... तब तक नहीं |
| 8. | Under the nose of | आँखों के सामने |
| 9. | Up–to–date | आधुनिक |
| 10. | Up in arms | लड़ने को तैयार होना |
| 11. | Under a cloud | संशयास्पद होना। |
| 12. | Upon one's sweet will | अपनी इच्छा पर |

## Phrases starting with 'W'

| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | With regard to | के संबंध में |
| 2. | With a view to | लक्ष्य से |
| 3. | Without fail | निःसंदेह |
| 4. | With reference to | के संबंध में |
| 5. | With an eye to | ध्यान रखते हुए |
| 6. | Ways and means | साधन |
| 7. | Why and wherefore | मुख्य कारण |
| 8. | Worship the rising sun | नये प्रभावशाली व्यक्ति का सम्मान करना |
| 9. | With respect to | के संबंध में |
| 10. | With might and main | सारी शक्ति के संबंध में |
| 11. | With a vengeance | खूब-मूल के साथ |
| 12. | Wide of the mark | निशाने से दूर |
| 13. | White elephant | जिस सम्पत्ति से लाभ के बदले हानि हो। |
| 14. | Well and good | ठीक है। |
| 15. | What's what | किस परिस्थिति में क्या उचित है। |
| 16. | Wheels within wheels | जटिल कार्य का और जटिल होना |
| 17. | Within an ace | करीब करीब |
| 18. | Wolf in sheep's clothing | चिकना जताने वाला खतरनाक आदमी |
| 19. | Worn out | राज पता लगा लेना |
| 20. | Will and pleasure | मर्जी |
| 21. | With one voice | सर्वसम्मति से |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 22. | Warm reception | सत्कार |
| 23. | Without reserve | बिना किसी बात को छिपाये हुए |
| 24. | Well-to-do | धनी-सम्पन्न |
| 25. | Well-off | सम्पन्न और सुखी |

## Type II : Idioms and Phrases

| S.N. | Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | At random | Aimlessly |
| 2. | At first sight | At the first meeting |
| 3. | Above all | More than anything else |
| 4. | At a discount | Declining |
| 5. | Above board | Openly |
| 6. | Apple of one's eye | An object of love |
| 7. | Apple of discord | Cause of quarrel |
| 8. | Apple pie order | In perfect order |
| 9. | At daggers drawn with | To be enemies |
| 10. | An axe to grind | Selfish motive |
| 11. | At one's wit's end | To be in a confusion |
| 12. | At an arm's length | To keep at a distance |
| 13. | To add fuel to the fire | To increase anger |
| 14. | At a stone's throw | Very near |
| 15. | At a loss | To be puzzled |
| 16. | As a matter of fact | Really |
| 17. | At all hazards | Inspite of risks |
| 18. | At hand | Near |
| 19. | At all events | Positively |
| 20. | At sea | Weak |
| 21. | A feather in the cup | A very good achievement |
| 22. | At home in | To be strong |
| 23. | As a rule | Usually |
| 24. | All in all | The most important and powerful person |
| 25. | At sixes and sevens | In disorder |
| 26. | Man of Iron | A man of strong will power |
| 27. | To show white feather | To show fear |
| 28. | At the eleventh hour | At the last moment |
| 29. | To rise like a phoenix | To start afresh from as low position |
| 30. | To meet one's waterloo | To meet one's defeat |
| 31. | A man of letters | Scholar |
| 32. | High and dry | Isolated |
| 33. | To bury the hatchet | To make peace |
| 34. | To set the Thames on fire | Surprising things |
| 35. | To put the cat among pigeons | To be placed in a wrong situation |
| 36. | To sound a red alert | To make alert |
| 37. | To beat about the bush | To talk about unimportant things |
| 38. | A boon in disguise | A benefit in loss |
| 39. | A big shot | Important person |
| 40. | To play ducks and drakes | To squander money |
| 41. | To break the duck | To begin |
| 42. | To die a dog's death | Unheroic death |
| 43. | Rise from ashes | To rise from low |
| 44. | My hands are full | I am busy |
| 45. | To give someone a piece of mind | To scold |
| 46. | A bull in the china shop | An awkward person |
| 47. | To get away with | To escape |
| 48. | To kick one's heels | To waste time |
| 49. | Make hay while the sun shines | To make best use of favourable opportunities |
| 50. | To put a spoke in one's wheel | To disturb |
| 51. | Fancy price | High price |
| 52. | Far-and away | Certainly |
| 53. | Fair-weather friends | Friends only in good days |
| 54. | Far and wide | All around |
| 55. | Hole and corner policy | Improper policy |
| 56. | Cut no ice | To make no effect |
| 57. | Once and for all | For ever |
| 58. | Oily tongue | One who flatters |
| 59. | Hand in glove | Close friendship |
| 60. | To work like a dog | To work very hard |
| 61. | To keep one's fingers crossed | Wishing good for somebody |
| 62. | To keep the wolf away from the door | To keep off poverty from oneself |
| 63. | A red letter day. | An important day |
| 64. | To have several irons in the fire | To have many pieces of work |
| 65. | Pull the wool over somebody's eyes | To deceive |
| 66. | A blue book | A government report |
| 67. | To feather's one's nest | To provide money even dishonestly |
| 68. | Odds and ends | Various articles |
| 69. | A hot line | Direct telephone line between Heads of states |
| 70. | To read between the lines | To understand more than the actual |
| 71. | Feet of clay | To be weak |
| 72. | A mare's nest | A discovery which looks valuable |
| 73. | To stand one's guns | To preserve when hardships press |
| 74. | To throw up one's nose at a thing | Disgust |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 75. | A lady's man | A lover of woman's company |
| 76. | A baker's dozen | Thirteen |
| 77. | To clinch the issue | Decide |
| 78. | To turn the corner | Pass the crisis |
| 79. | To rock the boat | Upset the balance |
| 80. | To chew the cuds | To muse on |
| 81. | A duck in a thunder storm | Distressed |
| 82. | Fair and square | In a fairway |
| 83. | All the same | Yet |
| 84. | A man of the world | An experienced man, often with a cosmopolitan background |
| 85. | Midas touch | Ability to succeed in all projects |
| 86. | To come down in the world | To lose one's social and financial position |
| 87. | To cut both ends | To argue in support of both sides of the issue |
| 88. | A sleeping partner | An inactive business partner |
| 89. | French leave | Absence without permission |
| 90. | An arm chair job | An easy and well paid regular job |
| 91. | Run-of-the mill | Ordinary |
| 92. | Hole and corner | Secret |
| 93. | Hammer and sickle | Emblem of socialism |
| 94. | Null and void | Invalid |
| 95. | Meek and mild | Gentle and mind |
| 96. | Back stairs gossip | Gossip among servants |
| 97. | To bell the cat | To take great personal risk |
| 98. | To bite the dust | To suffer defeat |
| 99. | To be in the driving seat | In control |
| 100. | To cross swords | To enter into a dispute |
| 101. | To cut a sorry figure | To create poor impression |
| 102. | To die in harness | To die while actively engaged in one's regular work |
| 103. | To get into hot water | To get into difficulties |
| 104. | To egg on | To urge on |
| 105. | To drive at | To employ |
| 106. | To go through fire and water | To pass through difficulties |
| 107. | To go to dogs | To be ruined |
| 108. | To hang fire | To hesitate |
| 109. | To keep one's card close to one's chest | Be secretive |
| 110. | To hit below the belt | Give an unfair blow |
| 111. | To hit the jackpot | To have a big success |
| 112. | To jump to a conclusion | To arrive on a conclusion without justification |
| 113. | To keep the ball rolling | To maintain progress |

| S.N. | Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 114. | To let oneself go | To allow emotionally |
| 115. | To lead a cat and dog life | To quarrel constantly |
| 116. | To knock the bottom out of | To make a scheme |
| 117. | To make good | To repair |
| 118. | To miss the bus/boat | To lose an opportunity |
| 119. | To make one's blood cold | To frighten |
| 120. | To make both ends meet | To live within one's income |
| 121. | To make a mountain out of a mole hill | To exaggerate a small matter |
| 122. | To look through coloured glasses | To see things not as they are |
| 123. | To look off colours | Seem unwell |
| 124. | To look black at somebody | Look at him angrily |
| 125. | To kick up a row | To create a disturbance |
| 126. | By far | Beyond all comparison |
| 127. | To bear a grudge | To have better feeling |
| 128. | By dint of | By means of |
| 129. | By no means | In no way |
| 130. | By virtue of | On account of |
| 131. | By all means | Certainly |
| 132. | By and by | After some time |
| 133. | Bag and baggage | Completely |
| 134. | To blow one's own trumpet | To speak proudly of oneself |
| 135. | Back out | To break a promise |
| 136. | Bad blood | Enmity |
| 137. | Blue blood | Noble blood |
| 138. | To bury the hatchet | To make peace |
| 139. | To break the ice | To break the silence |
| 140. | By leaps and bounds | Rapidly |
| 141. | To burn the candle at both ends | To waste one's energy, time and money uselessly |
| 142. | By hook or by crook | By all means |
| 143. | To burn the midnight oil | To work very hard till late at night. |
| 144. | Below one's dignity | Below one's position |
| 145. | Beside the mark | Not to the point |
| 146. | A brown study | Dreaming |
| 147. | A burning question | An important question |
| 148. | A bolt from the blue | A sudden shock |
| 149. | A black sheep | A disgraceful person |
| 150. | A big gun | An important figure |
| 151. | A broken reed | An independent person/thing |
| 152. | A bird's eye view | A general study/view |
| 153. | To carry the day | To succeed |
| 154. | To beggar description | Beyond description |
| 155. | Birds of a feather | Persons having the same professions |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 156. | To beat hollow | To defeat completely |
| 157. | To bear the brunt of | To bear the consequences |
| 158. | A bed of thorns | Full of sufferings and sorrows |
| 159. | A bed of roses | Full of joy and pleasures |
| 160. | Between the devil and the deep sea | Between two great difficulties |
| 161. | To the backbone | Thoroughly |
| 162. | A bird of passage | A migratory person |
| 163. | To build castles in the air | To form imaginary schemes |
| 164. | Bread and butter | Livelihood |
| 165. | To come to hand | Receive |
| 166. | A cat's paw | To make somebody a tool |
| 167. | A cock and bull story | An imaginary story |
| 168. | To burn one's fingers | To get into trouble |
| 169. | To burn one's boats | To decide |
| 170. | A cool head | A calm judgement |
| 171. | To cry for the moon | To wish for something impossible |
| 172. | To catch red-handed | To catch in the act of doing |
| 173. | To come to grief | To be ruined/to fail |
| 174. | To cut a sorry figure | To produce a poor result |
| 175. | Crocodile tears | False tears |
| 176. | A child's play | Something very easy |
| 177. | To come of age | To be major |
| 178. | To carry fire and sword | To cause destruction |
| 179. | To cry over spilt milk | To reach a crisis |
| 180. | To change hands | To pass from one person to another |
| 181. | To come to a head | To reach a crisis |
| 182. | To cross swords | To fight |
| 183. | To clinch the issue | To decide the matter |
| 184. | To chew the cud | To think deeply |
| 185. | A cry in the wilderness | A useless cry |
| 186. | Cast down | Depressed |
| 187. | To feather one's nest | To care for one's selfish interest |
| 188. | By fits and starts | Irregularly |
| 189. | A dead letter | No longer in use |
| 190. | A dark horse | A competition of unknown capabilities |
| 191. | To dance to one's tune | To carry out orders |
| 192. | Democle's sword | An impending danger |
| 193. | A drug in the market | An unsaleable thing due to lack of demand |
| 194. | Every inch | Completely |
| 195. | A fair weather friend | A selfish friend |
| 196. | Eye for eye | Tit for tat |
| 197. | A drawn game | In which no team wins |
| 198. | From hand to mouth | A miserable existence |
| 199. | Fed up | To be tired of |
| 200. | A fish out of water | To be in an uncomfortable position |
| 201. | A fool's paradise | Joy based on false hopes |
| 202. | Face to face | Personally |
| 203. | To face the music | To face trouble |
| 204. | To fish in troubled waters | To take advantage of the troubles of others |
| 205. | To give a slip | To escape |
| 206. | First and foremost | Important |
| 207. | A fly visit | Hasty and brief visit |
| 208. | Foul play | Bad intention |
| 209. | A fatal disease | A disease that causes death |
| 210. | A gala day | A day of rejoicings |
| 211. | To get the sack | To be dismissed |
| 212. | To go without saying | To be clear |
| 213. | To go a long way | A great help |
| 214. | Give and take | Mutual co-operation |
| 215. | To go through fire and water | To make sacrifice |
| 216. | To get into hot water | To get into trouble |
| 217. | To grease the palm | To bribe |
| 218. | To go hand to hand | To go together |
| 219. | To gain ground | To progress |
| 220. | To be a good hand at | To be expert |
| 221. | Hand to hand | A close fight |
| 222. | Hide and seek | To deceive |
| 223. | Heart to heart | Free and frank |
| 224. | High spirits | To be very happy |
| 225. | Half hearted | Lacking enthusiasm |
| 226. | The high and the low | Of all ranks |
| 227. | Hammer and tongs | With all one's might |
| 228. | To hit below the belt | To fight unfairly |
| 229. | Hale and hearty | Very healthy and sound |
| 230. | Hue and cry | To raise alarm |
| 231. | A hard nut to crack | A problem difficult to solve |
| 232. | Heart and soul | With full energy |
| 233. | To hammer out | To plan |
| 234. | To have a hand in | To take part |
| 235. | To have clean hands | To be innocent |
| 236. | To hit the nail on the head | To do what is proper at a proper time |
| 237. | Hen-pecked | A husband under the control of his wife |
| 238. | To have a windfall | An unexpected good fortune |
| 239. | Hush money | A bribe |
| 240. | Head and shoulders | Very superior |
| 241. | To have finger in the pie | To interfere |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|
| 242. Head and ears | Completely |
| 243. Hand and glove with | Very friendly |
| 244. Hard and fast | Rigid |
| 245. To hold one's own | To maintain one's position boldly |
| 246. To have one's way | To do one's own will |
| 247. Hobson's choice | No choice at all |
| 248. To hold one's tongue | To keep silence |
| 249. In the long run | In the end |
| 250. In a nutshell | Briefly |
| 251. An iron hand | Severe hand |
| 252. In the nick of time | Just in time |
| 253. To be in vogue | To be in fashion |
| 254. In the air | Widespread |
| 255. In black and white | In writing |
| 256. In cold blood | Cruelty |
| 257. Ins and outs | Full details |
| 258. In the course of | During |
| 259. In hot water | In difficulty |
| 260. Jack of all trades | A person supposed to know everything but master of none |
| 261. A jail bird | A person who has been to jail many times |
| 262. Kith and kin | Relatives |
| 263. To keep body and soul together | To remain alive |
| 264. To keep the wolf from the door | To keep away hunger and starvation |
| 265. Knit one's brow | To get angry |
| 266. To keep one's head above water | To escape debt |
| 267. To knock down | Bad defeat |
| 268. Lion's share | A major share. |
| 269. Let down | To fail to keep promise |
| 270. To laugh in one's sleeves | To laugh in secret, but not openly |
| 271. Loaves and fishes | Material comforts |
| 272. Let off | Released |
| 273. The long and short | In brief |
| 274. To have no stone unturned | To make all possible efforts |
| 275. To look blue | Depressed |
| 276. To lead astray | To misguide |
| 277. To leap in the dark | A careless action |
| 278. A left-handed compliment | A false praise |
| 279. To lend a hand | To help |
| 280. A man in the street | An ordinary person |
| 281. A mare's nest | A rumour |
| 282. To mind one's own business | To leave other people alone |

| S.N. Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|
| 283. To make neither head nor tail of | Not to understand |
| 284. Maiden speech | A speech delivered the first time' |
| 285. To make up one's mind | To resolve |
| 286. A man of means | A rich man |
| 287. To mince matters | Not to talk plainly |
| 288. To make a clean sweep of | To remove |
| 289. A man of moment | An important person |
| 290. A man of word | A reliable person |
| 291. To make headway | To progress slowly and steadily |
| 292. A nine day's wonder | Pleasure for a short period |
| 293. A necessary evil | An unavoidable evil |
| 294. Once for all | Finally |
| 295. Out of gear | Out of order |
| 296. Odds and ends | Different things |
| 297. Off and on | Now and then |
| 298. Or no avail | Of no use |
| 299. Out of pocket | Without money |
| 300. Out of question | Impossible |
| 301. Over and above | Besides |
| 302. Out of place | Not proper to the occasion |
| 303. Out of date | Out of fashion |
| 304. On the eve of | Just before |
| 305. Off hand | Without previous preparation |
| 306. Out and out | Completely |
| 307. Nook and corner | Everywhere |
| 308. To nurse a grudge | To revenge |
| 309. Neck to neck | Side by side |
| 310 Now and again | Occasionally |
| 311. Neck or Nothing | With the use of everything |
| 312. The printer's devils | Misprints |
| 313. To play the games | To observe the rules |
| 314. To pick a quarrel | Intentionally begin a quarrel |
| 315. Pros and cons | Arguments for and against |
| 316. Palmy days | Prosperous and peaceful days |
| 317. To put one's shoulders to the wheel | To help oneself |
| 318. To put the cart before the horse | Reverse order |
| 319. To pull one's legs | To make a fool of |
| 320. A past master | Thorough master |
| 321. To poke one's nose | To interfere with |
| 322. To play with fire | To do something dangerous |
| 323. Pass through | Undergo |
| 324. To pay the piper | To bear the cost |
| 325. To put in cold storage | To neglect |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 326. | A queer fish | A strange person |
| 327. | To pour oil on troubled waters | To pacify matters |
| 328. | A rainy day | A time of difficulty |
| 329. | A red letter day | Lucky and important day |
| 330. | Root and branch | Entirely |
| 331. | To run down | Weak in health |
| 332. | A red rag to a bull | A cause for anger |
| 333. | Rough and ready | Unpolished manners |
| 334. | Red tapism | Official formality |
| 335. | Round the corner | Near |
| 336. | Run through | Waste |
| 337. | A rolling stone | One who is never constant to one's work |
| 338. | A royal road | An easy way to achieve an end |
| 339. | To smell a rat | To suspect something |
| 340. | Sweat of one's brow | Hard labour |
| 341. | To save one's skin | To accept without loss |
| 342. | Snake in the shoes | To be in a state of fear |
| 343. | Shoulder to shoulder | In co-operation |
| 344. | See through | Understand |
| 345. | Safe and sound | Safely |
| 346. | To stand on one's own legs | To be independent |
| 347. | To stick to one's guns | To stand firm |
| 348. | Swelled head | Pride |
| 349. | Snake in the grass | A hidden enemy |
| 350. | To see eye to eye with | To agree |
| 351. | A sheet anchor | The chief support |
| 352. | To sail under false colours | To try to deceive |
| 353. | To see a thing through coloured glasses | To see a thing with a prejudiced mind |
| 354. | Snuff and nonsense | Foolish |
| 355. | Smooth sailing | No difficulty |
| 356. | Spick and span | Very neat and tidy |
| 357. | Swan song | Last great achievement of work |
| 358. | To sink fast | To grow worse and worse |
| 359. | To steal a march | To get the advantage secretly |
| 360. | To stare in the face | To threaten |
| 361. | A stiff-necked person | An obstinate person |
| 362. | A short cut | An easy way |
| 363. | To set one's face against | To oppose |
| 364. | To shut one's eye to | To ignore |
| 365. | To step into another's shoes | To take another's place |
| 366. | A stone's throw | Very near |
| 367. | To stir a finger | To make the best effort |
| 368. | To see red | To see with angry eyes |

| S.N. | Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 369. | By the skin of one's teeth | Very narrowly |
| 370. | To sow the dragon's teeth | To do something |
| 371. | To sit on the fence | To remain neutral |
| 372. | Street Arabs | Homeless and parentless children |
| 373. | To speak one's mind | To speak frankly |
| 374. | A slow coach | A lazy person |
| 375. | To set at naught | To disregard |
| 376. | To turn a deaf ear to | To refuse to listen to |
| 377. | Tooth and nail | Violently |
| 378. | Through thick and thin | Under all circumstances |
| 379. | To toe the line | To follow another's opinion |
| 380. | To turn one's head | To be proud |
| 381. | To turn turtle | To upset |
| 382. | To tremble in the balance | Uncertain |
| 383. | To turn over a new leaf | A change for the better |
| 384. | To turn the corner | To pass the critical stage |
| 385. | To throw cold water on | To discourage |
| 386. | Talk of the town | A widespread topic |
| 387. | To throw dust in the eyes of | To deceive |
| 388. | To and fro | Backwards and forwards |
| 389. | Through and through | Completely |
| 390. | Time and tide | Courses of time |
| 391. | Time and again | Repeatedly |
| 392. | To my cost | Through suffering |
| 393. | The three R's | Reading, writing and (A) Arithmetic |
| 394. | Twinkling of an eye | Very quickly |
| 395. | To take away one's breath | To surprise |
| 396. | True to one's salt | To be loyal to someone |
| 397. | A turning point | Anything that brings change |
| 398. | A thorn in the flesh | To be a source of anger |
| 399. | Time hangs heavy on one's hands | Difficult to pass time |
| 400. | To throw down the gauntlet | To give an open challenge |
| 401. | Under the thumb of | Under the control of |
| 402. | Up one's sleeves | In reserve |
| 403. | Utopian scheme | A visionary scheme |
| 404. | A vexed question | A controversial question |
| 405. | Ups and downs | Good and bad times |
| 406. | Up to the mark | Up to a certain standard |
| 407. | Up and doing | Active |
| 408. | An uphill task | A difficult work |
| 409. | To while away | To pass in amusement |
| 410. | With open arms | Warmly and cordially |
| 411. | With a grain of salt | With some reservation |
| 412. | To win the palm | To win a prize |
| 413. | To worship the rising sun | To respect the man who is rising in power |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|
| 414. To weather the storm | To come out safely through a difficulty |
| 415. To wild up | To bring to an end. |
| 416. With one accord | With one voice |
| 417. To win laurels | To achieve success |
| 418. to be worth its weight in gold | To be very precious |
| 419. Wait upon | To serve |
| 420. Wide awake | Watchful |
| 421. A white lie | A harmless lie |
| 422. A white elephant | An expensive burdensome but useless thing |
| 423. Wear and tear | Decrease in value due to constant use |
| 424. Well-to-do | Rich |
| 425. A wet blanket | A dull fellow who spoils our joy |
| 426. Ways and means | Resources |
| 427. Why and wherefore | Reason |
| 428. A word of mouth | A solemn promise |
| 429. Windfall | Unexpected good fortune |
| 430. Wheels within wheels | Complication. |
| 431. Yeoman's service | Excellent |
| 432. A warm reception | To receive cordially |
| 433. A cold-blooded murder | Pitiless murder |
| 434. To move heaven and earth | To go up to the extreme |
| 435. To kill two birds with one stone | To accomplish two tasks in one attempt |
| 436. Judas kiss | False love |
| 437. Black ox | Misfortune |
| 438. To be at the zenith of | To be at the highest point of fame |
| 439. At death's door | About to die |
| 440. Donkey's years | After a long time |
| 441. Eagle eyed | Keen sighted |
| 442. Penny wise pound foolish | To bother about small coins and To throw bundles of rupees carelessly |
| 443. An old flame | Sweat heart |
| 444. Pen and ink | In writing |
| 445. Lame excuse | False excuse |
| 446. An iron will | Strong determination |
| 447. A herculean task | A work which needs tremendous efforts |
| 448. To see pink elephants | To show courage |
| 449. Blind alley | Unprofitable action |
| 450. The heels of achilles | The weak point in a person |
| 451. Kangaroo court | Unofficial court |

| S.N. Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|
| 452. Grist to one's mill | Useful for one's purpose |
| 453. Open question | A question without any agreed answer |
| 454. Lump in the throat | A highly emotional state |
| 455. All the go | In fashion |
| 456. All moonshine | Far from reality |
| 457. Fabian policy | Policy of cautious persistence |
| 458. A fly in the ointment | A problem in a situation |
| 459. A blind date | Meeting with someone you do not know |
| 460. Mother wit | Common sense |
| 461. Halcyon days | Happy and peaceful days |
| 462. Mad as a march hare | As mad as hare in spring |
| 463. A grass widow | A woman whose husband is temporarily away from her |
| 464. An olive branch | An offer of peace |
| 465. To make a pile | To make a fortune |
| 466. An old head on young shoulders | To be wise beyond one's years |
| 467. Elbow room | To give enough space to move or work in |
| 468. To burn a hole in the pocket | Money that is spent quickly |
| 469. A lady's habit | Riding dress of a lady |
| 470. To run in the same groove | To advance in harmony |
| 471. Until and unless | Under condition |
| 472. Slow and steady | Slow but at continuous pace |
| 473. To mind one's P's and Q's | To be very careful about one's behaviour |
| 474. ifs and buts | Doubtful |
| 475. Ins and outs | Full description |
| 476. To rain cats and dogs | To rain heavily |
| 477. Do's and don'ts | Rule for action especially in certain cirumstances |
| 478. Bag and baggage | With all belongings |
| 479. Pick holes in one's coat | To find the fault |
| 480. Pin drop silence | Unexpected peace |
| 481. Paradise on earth | A heaven on land. |
| 482. Old as hills | Very old |
| 483. Nine day's wonder | A short lived glory |
| 484. Needle woman | A lady tailor |
| 485. A nig-nog | A fool |
| 486. Much cry and little wool | Disappointing outcomes |
| 487. Miss the mark | To fail |
| 488. Many men, many minds | As many persons, so many opinions |
| 489. Leave for | To depart |
| 490. Kiss the dust | To be humiliated |
| 491. Kiss the rod | Accept the punishment |
| 492. Kick the bucket | To die |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Phrases | English Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| 493. | Itching palm | Habit of taking bribe |
| 494. | Itsy bitsy | Very small |
| 495. | In the same boat | In the same condition |
| 496. | In the nicke of time | Just in time |
| 497. | In spite of | Notwithstanding |
| 498. | In search of | In quest of |
| 499. | In short | In brief |
| 500. | In lieu of | In place of |
| 501. | In embryo | In under-developing stage |
| 502. | In deep waters | In great difficulties |
| 503. | In consideration of | Due to |
| 504. | In addition to | Alongwith |
| 505. | Himalayan blunder | A serious mistake |
| 506. | A green harm | An inexperienced person |
| 507. | A good egg | An excellent person |
| 508. | A golden opportunity | A very favourable chance |
| 509. | Grass roots | Initial stage |
| 510. | Gibble-gabble | A senseless chatter |
| 511. | Get rid of | To become free from |
| 512. | From time to time | Sometimes |
| 513. | From sun to sun | Between sunrise and sunset |
| 514. | for want of | Short of |
| 515. | From A to Z | From beginning to end |
| 516. | For the sake of | For one's sake |
| 517. | A fairy tale | An incredible story |
| 518. | Evergreen | Be fresh always |
| 519. | Even if | Though |
| 520. | Drop in the ocean | Very insignificant amount |
| 521. | Drop on one's knees | To bow |
| 522. | Do or die | To make a final effort |
| 523. | To die in one's bed | To die during sickness |
| 524. | To die with one's boots on | To die during war |
| 525. | To dig one's grave | To bring one's rain |
| 526. | A dead silence | Immense quietness |
| 527. | A damsel in distress | A helpless woman |
| 528. | Cut one's coat according to one's cloth | To accommodate within the available means |
| 529. | Commit suicide | To do self murder |
| 530. | Cold reception | A dry welcome |
| 531. | Close fisted | Miser |
| 532. | By degrees | Gradually |
| 533. | Burst into tears | To weep havily, suddenly |
| 534. | A beauty sleep | To sleep before midnight |
| 535. | Avail of | To make use of |
| 536. | At sake | In danger |
| 537. | At case | Easily |
| 538. | As soon as | No sooner |
| 539. | Acquainted with | To meet someone |

## Practice Set

**Q. 1.** *Choose the option that describes the meaning of each of the following idioms and phrases :*

1. *To catch a Tartar :*
   (a) To live carefully and cautiously
   (b) To catch a dangerous person
   (c) To trap a wanted criminal with great difficulty
   (d) To deal with a person who is more than one's match
   *[Bank P.O. 2002]*

2. *End in smoke :*
   (a) bear no fruit (b) produce good results
   (c) benefit the poor and downtrodden
   (d) motivate to produce *[Bank P.O. 2002]*

3. *In the blues :*
   (a) behave like a fool (b) being colourful
   (c) melancholic and low spirited
   (d) having many blue things *[SBI. P.O. 1999]*

4. *To turn over a new leaf :*
   (a) to disclose a secret (b) to divert from the path
   (c) to destroy a leaf
   (d) to commence a new course of life *[R.R.B. 1995]*

5. *To smell a rat :*
   (a) To suspect foul dealings (b) to be in a bad mood
   (c) bad smell
   (d) sings of plague epidemic *[MAT 2001]*

6. *A man of straw :*
   (a) an unreasonable person (b) a man of no substance
   (c) a very active person (d) a worthy fellow
   *[SBI (P.O) 2001]*

7. *To fall flat :*
   (a) to retreat (b) to meet accidentally
   (c) to be met with a cold reception
   (d) to quarrel *[MAT 2001]*

8. *To cast pearls before swine :*
   (a) to offer a person, a thing which he can't appreciate
   (b) to waste money over trifles
   (c) to spend a lot of money on the upkeep of domestic dogs
   (d) to spend recklessly *[Hotel Management 1999]*

9. *A red blanket :*
   (a) a man who is always drunk
   (b) a wife who is cold to her husband
   (c) to wear black and white clothes
   (d) none of these *[Bank (P.O) 2002]*

10. *To carry the coal to New castle :*
    (a) to finish a difficult job (b) to do the mental jobs
    (c) to work very hard (d) to do an unnecessary job
    *[B.Ed 2000]*

11. *To lose one's bearings :*
    (a) to become sick and tired (b) to lose one's strength
    (c) to be uncertain of one's position
    (d) to become hopeless *[RRB (Kolkata) 2001]*

12. *To keep one's temper :*
    (a) to become angry (b) to be in a good mood
    (c) to preserve one's energy (d) to be a loof from
    (e) none of these *[NABARD 1997]*

13. *To draw the line :*
    (a) to decide one's occupation (b) to prepare for a battle
    (c) to set limits (d) to with draw from activity
    *[SBI (P.O) 2001]*

14. *Right hand man :*
    (a) most efficient assistant (b) a foolish person
    (c) an honest person
    (d) one who cannot use his hand *[MAT 2001]*

15. *A pipe dream :*
    (a) a bad dream (b) a pleasant dream
    (c) an impracticable plan (d) a foolish idea
    *[RRB (ASM Muzaffarpur 2003]*



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



16. The green eyed monster :
(a) the creature of the sea (b) animal with green eyes
(c) personal jealousy (d) to get into trouble
[Bank (P.O.) 2002]

17. Dog in the manger :
(a) a person who has no home
(b) a person who is not liked by others
(c) a person who prevents others from enjoying something useless to him
(d) a person who puts himself in difficulty on account of other people
[Hotel Management 1999]

18. Wall of the wasp :
(a) to act in a childish way (b) to act in a foolish way
(c) anything which eludes or deceives
(d) to have desires unbacked by efforts
[GIC (AAO) 1993]

19. To bite the dust :
(a) to be defeated in a battle (b) to learn a lesson
(c) to be ashamed of (d) to work very hard
[RRB. (Kolkata 2001]

20. To get into hot waters :
(a) to suffer a financial loss (b) to be impatient
(c) to get into trouble
(d) to be in a confused state of mind
[RRB (ASM) Muzaffarpur 2003]

21. To cool one's heels :
(a) to be kept waiting for some time
(b) to rest for sometime
(c) to remain in a comfortable position
(d) to give no importance to someone
[MBA 1990]

22. The pros and cons :
(a) good and evil (b) former and latter
(c) foul and fair (d) for and against a thing
[Bank (P.O) 1992]

23. Alone board :
(a) friendly (b) able to face difficulties
(c) honestly (d) hard working
[RRB (ASM) Bhopal 2000]

24. Adhoc :
(a) for the special purpose (b) arranged systematically
(c) arranged in order (d) none of these
[RRB (ASM) Bangalore 2004]

25. Ante meridiem :
(a) an old mother (b) a greater mother
(c) between midnight and noon
(d) none of these
[RRB (ASM) Bangalore 2004]

**Q. 2. What do the following idioms and phrases mean ?**

1. At sixes and sevens. [IAS (Mains) 1998]
2. A queer fish. [CBI Sub inspector 1998]
3. A fish out of water. [Indian economic service 1998]
4. At a pinch. [CSIR 2004]
5. To read between the lines. [CBI (sub inspector 1998]
6. A hue and cry [Indian economic service 1998]
7. To hang fire [IAS (Mains) 1997]
8. To bury the hatchet [Indian Economic Service 1998]
9. To put one's foot down [IAS (Mains) 1998]
10. To live in an ivory tower [IAS (Mains) 1990]

**Q. 3. Choose the suitable option that describes the meaning of the words or phrases provided in italics in each of the following sentences**

1. Please look into the matter personally as it is very important
(a) see carefully (b) examine
(c) take care of (d) overlook
[Indian Bank P.O 2003]

2. Everybody is worried about his bread and butter these days
(a) governmental services (b) comfortable living
(c) money making (d) means of livelihood
[Stenographer's Exam 2001]

3. The old man is hard of hearing :
(a) felt hard hearing the news (b) somewhat deaf
(c) dreamy eyed guy (d) unmindful
[Hotel Management (Kolkatta) 2003]

4. Napolean won his laurels in the Battle of Waterloo :
(a) acquired distinction (b) defeated the enemies
(c) adopted aggressive attitude
(d) surrendered to his opponents
[RRB (Bhopal) 2001]

5. Sumit had to look *high and low* before he could find his scooter key :
(a) nowhere (b) always
(c) everywhere (d) somewhere
[CBI 1993]

6. My neighbour had to *pay through his nose* for a brand new car. :
(a) pay huge loans (b) pay a reasonable price
(c) pay an extremely high price
(d) make a quick buck
[SSC (Audit) 2003]

7. The expression *to be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth* means :
(a) to be born in a rich family (b) to be born as the first child
(c) to be born in a jeweller's family
(d) to be spoon fed, not breast fed
[RRB (Kolkata 2002]

8. In life we have *to take the rough with the smooth* :
(a) be tough in order to be successful
(b) say pleasant words to make things smooth
(c) accept unpleasant as well as pleasant things
(d) make unpleasant things better
[Income Tax 1994]

9. She was in *a brown study* and did not notice my entrance
(a) reverie (b) fear (c) dream (d) sleep
[Central Excise 1995]

10. They sold his house because it was *a real white elephant* :
(a) an expensive one (b) a big one
(c) a useless one (d) a rare thing
[CBI. 1994]

11. His rough behaviour would make him *bite the dust* :
(a) make a plan (b) eat the dust
(c) get humiliated (d) get killed
[RRB (Bhopal 2001]

12. In the fight he was beaten *neck and crop* :
(a) softly (b) profoundly
(c) completely (d) swiftly
[RRB (Bhopal) 2001]

13. If one aids and abets a criminal, he is also considered *guilty of crime* :
(a) suspicious (b) daring
(c) culpable (d) ruthless
[ITC (AAO) 2003]

14. During the last moments of his life, the criminal made a *clean breast* of everything he had done :
(a) showed his breast (b) fought like a hero
(c) confessed without reserve (d) faced bravely

15. I saw him *make a dry face* :
(a) abuse (b) feel sick
(c) cry with pain (d) show disappointment
[RRB (Maliendra) Patna 2001]

## Answers With Explanation

**Q. 1.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (d) | 2. (a) | 3. (c) | 4. (d) | 5. (a) | 6. (b) |
| 7. (c) | 8. (a) | 9. (d) | 10. (d) | 11. (c) | 12. (c) |
| 13. (c) | 14. (a) | 15. (c) | 16. (c) | 17. (c) | 18. (c) |
| 19. (a) | 20. (c) | 21. (a) | 22. (d) | 23. (c) | 24. (a) |
| 25. (c) | | | | | |

**Q. 2.**

1. In disorder 2. A strange fellow
3. In an uncomfortable position
4. If absolutely necessary, if circumstances make it essential
5. To understand the hidden meaning
6. A great stir 7. Linger on
8. Forget a quarrel
9. To reject with determination 10. To be unaware of the realities

**Q. 3.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. (b) | 2. (d) | 3. (b) | 4. (a) | 5. (c) | 6. (c) |
| 7. (a) | 8. (c) | 9. (a) | 10. (c) | 11. (d) | 12. (c) |
| 13. (c) | 14. (c) | 15. (d) | | | |

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Proverbs 35

1. Good mind, good find. आप भला तो जग भला।
2. All is well that ends well. अंत भला तो सब भला।
3. Little learning is a dangerous thing. नीम हकीम खतरे जान।
4. An empty vessel sounds much. अधजल गगरी छलकत जाय।
5. Truth fears no test. साँच को आँच क्या।
6. Haste makes waste. जल्दी काम शैतान का।
7. Let by gones be by gones. बीती ताही बिसारिये
8. Adversity flatters no man. विपत्ति का साथी कोई नहीं।
9. A drowning man catches a straw. डूबते को तिनके का सहारा।
10. Cut your coat according to your cloth. तेते पाँव पसारिये जेती लंबी सौर
11. Better today than tomorrow. कल करे सो आज कर।
12. Death keeps no calendar. मृत्यु का समय निश्चित नहीं है।
13. Every man is the architect of his fortune. प्रत्येक मनुष्य अपने भाग्य का विधाता है।
14. Honesty is the best policy. ईमानदारी सर्वोत्तम नीति है।
15. Example is better than precept. उपदेश से उदाहरण अच्छा है।
16. Penny wise, pound foolish. अशर्फी की लूट कोयले पर छाप।
17. One swallow does not make a summer. अकेला चना भाड़ नहीं फोड़ता।
18. Many men, many minds. अपनी डफली अपना राग।
19. Prevention is better than cure. अग्रसोची सदा सुखी।
20. Excess of everything is bad. अति सर्वत्र वर्जयेत्।
21. A figure among cyphers. अंधों में काना राजा।
22. Blood is thicker than water. अपना सो अपना।
23. Great cry little wool. ऊँची दूकान फीकी पकवान।
24. To kill two birds with one stone. एक पंथ दो काज।
25. Rome was not built in a day. काराज धीरे होत है, काहे होत अधीर।
26. One nail drives out another. काँटा ही काँटा निकालता है।
27. Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown. कोठी वाले रोवे, छप्पर वाले सोवे।
28. Handsome is that handsome does. काम प्यारा है, चाम प्यारा नहीं।
29. Much ado about nothing. खोदा पहाड़ निकली चुहिया।
30. An idle mind is the devil's workshop. खाली दिमाग शैतान का अड्डा।
31. Barking dogs seldom bite. गरजे सो बरसे नहीं।
32. Time and tide wait for no man. गया वक्त हाथ नहीं आता।
33. Let the past bury its dead. गड़े मुर्दा न उखाड़ो।
34. Familiarity breeds contempt. घर की मुर्गी-दाल बराबर।
35. A bad workman quarrels with his tools. चले न जाने आँगनवे टेढ़।
36. Birds of the same feather flock together. चोर-चोर मौसेरे भाई।
37. Ill gotten, Ill spent. चोरी का माल मोरी में।
38. Beauty has wings. चार दिन की चाँदनी फिर अँधेरी रात।
39. Small wits great beast. छोटा मुँह बड़ी बात।
40. Where there is a will, there is a way. जहाँ चाह वहाँ राह।
41. While there is life, there is hope. जब तक साँस तब तक आस।
42. Tit for Tat. जैसा को तैसा।
43. Like father, like son. जैसा बाप, वैसा बेटा
44. To add insult to injury. जले पर नमक छिड़कना
45. As you sow, so you reap. जैसी करनी, वैसी भरनी।
46. Might is right. जिसकी लाठी उसकी भैंस।
47. To kill the goose that lays the golden eggs. जिस थाली में खाना उसी में छेद करना
48. Man proposes, God disposes. तेरे मन में कुछ और है और दाता के कुछ और।
49. Oil and truth must come out. दूध का दूध, पानी का पानी।
50. Too many cooks spoil the broth. दो योगी मठ उजाड़।
51. There is a fly in the ointment. दाल में काला।
52. A bird in hand is worth two in the bush. नौ नगद न तेरह उधार।
53. Do good and forget. नेकी कर दरिया में डाल।
54. Make hay while the sun shines. बहती गंगा में हाथ धोना।
55. Look before you leap. बिना विचारे जो करे सो पीछे पछताय।
56. No vice like avarice. लालच बुरी बला।
57. An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth. शठे शाठ्यं समाचरेत्।
58. Silence is good. सबसे भला चुप।
59. All that glitters is not gold. हाथी के दाँत खाने के और दिखाने के और।
60. Nearer the church farther from heaven. चिराग-तले-अँधेरा।
61. A blind man is no judge of colours. बंदर क्या जाने अदरक का स्वाद।
62. A fox is not taken twice in the same snare. अकलमन्द दोबारा एक ही जाल में नहीं फँसता।
63. A friend in need is a friend indeed. मित्र वही जो विपत्ति में काम आए।
64. A nine days' wonder. चार दिन की चाँदनी फिर अँधेरी रात।
65. A stitch in time saves nine. समय पर एक टाँका नौ का काम देता है।
66. A bad name is worse than bad deeds. बद अच्छा बदनाम बुरा।
67. A closed mouth catches no flies. बिना रोए माँ भी दूध नहीं देती।
68. A wolf in sheep's clothing. मुख में राम बगल में छुरी।
69. A guilty conscience need no accuser. चोर की दाढ़ी में तिनका।
70. All's fair in love and war. लड़ाई और प्रेम में सब कुछ जायज़ है।
71. An empty brain is a devil's work shop. खाली बैठे शैतानी सूझे।
72. Anger is blind. क्रोध में मनुष्य अंधा होता है।
73. Better an empty house, than a bad tenant. बुरे किरायेदार से मकान खाली रखना अच्छा है।
74. Bullies are generally cowards. शेखीबाज कायर होते हैं।
75. By trying the Greeks got into Troy. हिम्मत करे इन्सान तो क्या नहीं हो सकता?
76. Child is the father of man. बेटा बाप से बड़ा।
77. Christmas comes but once a year. हर रोज ईद नहीं होती।
78. Coming events cast their shadows before. होनहार बिरवान के होत चिकने पात।
79. A burnt child dreads the fire. दूध का जला छाँछ या मट्ठा फूँककर पीता है।
80. A drop in the ocean. ऊँट के मुँह में जीरा।



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



81. Dead men tell no tales. मुर्दे बातें नहीं करते।
82. Death keeps no calendar. मौत और डाकक का समय नहीं।
83. Diamond cuts diamond. लोहा लोहे को काटता है।
84. Do as you would be done by.
जैसा अपने साथ चाहो, वैसा व्यवहार दूसरों के साथ करो।
85. Do not keep a dog and bark yourself. नौकर रखकर खुद भाड़ देना।
86. Dry bread at home is better than roast meat a bread.
बाहर की चिकनी चुपड़ी से घर की रूखी सूखी अच्छी।
87. Do not put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
आज का काम कल पर मत छोड़ो।
88. Every dark cloud has a silver lining.
बुरे दिनों के पश्चात् अच्छे दिन अवश्य आते हैं।
89. Every day is not Sunday. हर दिन दिवाली नहीं होती।
90. Every man is the architect of his own fate.
किस्मत अपने बनाए बनती है।
91. Too much familiarity breeds contempt.
आदर खो देता है— हर रोज का आना-जाना।
92. Fine feathers make fine birds. अच्छे लिबास से आदमी अच्छा लगता है।
93. Frailty, thy name is woman. कमजोरी, स्त्री का दूसरा नाम है।
94. Fury and anger carry the mind away.
क्रोध में मनुष्य को होश नहीं रहता।
95. God's mill grinds slow but sure. देर है मगर अंधेर नहीं।
96. Great boast small roast. ऊँची दुकान, फीका पकवान।
97. Handsome is that handsome does. अच्छा वह, जो अच्छा करे।
98. To make a mountain of a mole hill. राई का पर्वत बनाना।
99. If you desire peace be prepared for war.
यदि शान्ति चाहते हो तो युद्ध का प्रबन्ध करो।
100. Ill got, ill spent. हराम की कमाई हराम में गंवाई।
101. In excess nectar poisons. हद से ज्यादा अमृत भी जहर।
102. In for a penny. In for a pound. जहाँ सौ वहाँ सवा सौ।
103. It is folly to live in Rome and fight with the pope.
पानी में रहना और मगरमच्छ से बैर।
104. It is never too late to mend.
भूले का भूला शाम को घर आ जाए तो उसे भूला न जानिये।
105. It is no use crying over spilt milk.
Or, It is too late to shut the stable door when the horse is stolen. अब पछताये होत क्या जब चिड़िया चुग गई खेत।
106. It takes two to make a quarrel. एक हाथ से ताली नहीं बजती।
107. It's cutting people before sewing.
बिना के आगे बीज बनाना, जंघे के आगे गेए अपना पैर खोए।
108. Jack of all trades, master of none. हरफन मौला, हरफन अधूरा।
109. Judge a tree by its fruits, and by its leaves.
फूल की खुशी फल में है, पत्तों की सुन्दरता में नहीं।
110. Keep your mouth shut and your eyes open.
देखो सब कुछ, कहो बहुत थोड़ा।
111. Kill the snake so well as save the stick.
साँप भी मर जाए और लाठी भी न टूटे।
112. Kill two birds with one stone. एक पंथ दो काज।
113. Look before you leap. फूँक फूँक कर पग धरना।
114. Lost time is never found again. गया समय फिर हाथ आता नहीं।
115. Mad people think others mad.
दीवाने को सब दीवाने ही नजर आते हैं।
116. Many kiss the child for the nurse's sake. माँ से प्यार बच्चे का बहाना।
117. Men rule the world; women rule men.
मर्द दुनिया पर हुकूमत करते हैं और औरत मर्दों पर।
118. Modest dogs miss much meat. जिसने की शरम, उसके फूटे करम।
119. A wolf in sheep's clothing or mouth of money, heart of gall. मुँह में राम, बगल में छुरी।
120. Necessity is the mother of invention.
आवश्यकता आविष्कार की जननी है।
121. Never a rose without a thorn. फूल के साथ काँटे जरूर होते हैं।
122. Never put off till tomorrow what can you do today.
कल करे सो आज कर, आज का काम कल पर मत छोड़ो।
123. No man can serve two masters. धोबी का कुत्ता न घर का घाट का।
124. No pains, No gains. सेवा बिना सेवा कहाँ।
125. Nothing succeeds like success. चलती का नाम गाड़ी।
126. Nobody cries, 'stinking fish'. अपनी दही को कोई खट्टा नहीं कहता।
127. One bad fish spoils the whole water.
एक मछली सारे तालाब को गन्दा कर देती है।
128. One lie draws ten after it. एक झूठ के हजार झूठ होते हैं।
129. One man's meat is another man's poison.
जो चीज एक के लिये अच्छी है वह दूसरे के लिए बुरी भी हो सकती है।
130. Only the wearer knows where the shoe pinches.
जिस पर पड़े वही जाने।
131. Out of the frying pan into the fire. आसमान से गिरा, खजूर से अटका।
132. Pay well when are served well. जैसा काम, वैसा दाम।
133. Prevention is better than cure. इलाज से परहेज बेहतर है।
134. Reason governs the wise man and cudgels the fool.
or, wise use wisdom and fools use the might.
अकलमंद अकल से और मूर्ख लाठी से चलता है।
135. Religion is a stalking horse to shoot other's fowl.
मजहब एक बहाना है जिसकी आड़ में शिकार खेला जाता है।
136. Riches have wings. लक्ष्मी चंचला होती है या माया बादल की छाया।
137. Rome was not built in a day. कभी हथेली पर भी सरसों जमी है?
138. Save something against a rainy day.
आड़े वक्त के लिए कुछ बचाकर रखो।
139. Self-praise is no recommendation. अपने मुँह मियाँ मिट्ठू।
140. Self preservation is nature's first law. पहले आप पीछे बाप।
141. Sinning all the six days in the week but going to church on Sundays. नौ सौ चूहे खाकर बिल्ली चली हज को।
142. Stolen apples taste sweet. चोरी के बेर मीठे।
143. Strike while the iron is hot. मौके को हाथ से न जाने दो।
144. Sweep under your own mats.
पहले अपने गिरेबान (अंदर) में झांककर देखो।
145. Slow and steady wins the race. सहज पके सो मीठा होय।
146. Time is a great healer. वक्त सब जख्मों का मरहम है।
147. Truth fears no examination. साँच को आँच नहीं।
148. The nearer the church, the farther from heaven.
चिराग तले अँधेरा।
149. The face is index of the mind. चेहरा मन का दर्पण है।
150. The cock is at his best on his own dung hill.
अपनी गली में कुत्ता भी शेर हो जाता है।
151. The fire proves gold, adversity brave men.
आग सोने की कसौटी है, मुसीबत बहादुरों की।
152. The last straw breaks the camel's back.
आखिर जुल्म की भी हद होती है।

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



153. The key in use is always bright. चलते पुर्जे को जंग न लगता।
154. The stars govern men, but God governs the stars.
किस्मत की हुकूमत हम पर परन्तु ईश्वर की किस्मत पर।
155. There is a black sheep in every fold. बुरे सब जगह होते हैं।
156. To build castles in the air. ख्याली पुलाव पकाना।
157. To lead a cat and dog's life. झगड़े-फसाद की जिन्दगी गुजर-बसर करना।
158. To plough the sands and sow the waves. रेगिस्तान में हल चलाना।
159. Virtue is its own reward. नेकी अपना सिला आप है।
160. Wash your dirty linens at home. घर का भेद बाहर नहीं बताना चाहिए।
161. A rotten apple injures its companions.
एक सड़ी मछली सारे तालाब को गंदा कर देती है।
162. As the king so are the subjects. जैसा राजा, वैसी प्रजा।
163. As you sow, so you reap. जैसी करनी, वैसी भरनी।
164. Avarice is the root of all evils. लालच बुरी बला है।
165. Beggars and borrowers could not be choosers.
दान की बछिया के दाँत नहीं देखे जाते।
166. Do evil and look for like. कर बुरा तो हो बुरा।
167. Every potter praises his pot. अपने दही को सभी मीठा कहते हैं।
168. Everything looks pale to a jaundiced eye.
सावन के अन्धे को हरा ही हरा दिखता है।
169. Fortune favours the brave.
बहादुरों को भाग्य भी साथ देता है; पुरुष सिंह जे उद्यमी लक्ष्मी ताकी चेरि।
170. Gather thistles and expect pickles.
बोये पेड़ बबूल का आम कहाँ से खाय।
171. Good mind, good find. आप भला तो जग भला।
172. Guilty conscience is always suspicious.
चोर की दाढ़ी में तिनका था। पापी का मन सदा सशंकित रहता है।
173. Half a loaf is better than no bread. ना मामा से काना मामा अच्छा।
174. He that is warm thinks all are so. आप सुखी तो जग सुखी।
175. He who would catch fish must not mind getting wet.
नाचने उठे तो घूँघट कैसा।
176. He who would sow well, must reap well.
कर भला तो हो भला या अच्छा करो अच्छा पाओ।
177. High winds blow on high hills. बड़ों की बड़ी बात।
178. Living from hand to mouth. रोज कुँआ खोदना रोज पानी पीना।
179. Many a little makes a mickle. बूँद-बूँद करके घड़ा भरता है।
180. Many men, many minds. जितने नर उतनी बुद्धि या नाना मुनि नाना मति।
181. Misfortunes never come singly. मुसीबत अकेले नहीं आती।
182. Money begets money. धन से धन कमाया जाता है।
183. One flower makes no garland. एक फूल से माला नहीं बनती।
184. One today is better than two tomorrow. नौ नगद न तेरह उधार।
185. Poverty breeds strife. गरीबी झगड़े की जड़ है।
186. Respect yourself and you will be respected.
अपनी मर्यादा अपने हाथ।
187. Something is better than nothing.
नहीं से कुछ भला या नाही मामा से काना मामा अच्छा।
188. Too much courtesy, too much craft. मधुरी बानी, दगाबाज की निशानी।
189. To rob Peter to pay Paul. गाय मारकर जूता दान।
190. Vows made in storm are forgotten in calm.
दुःख में सुमिरन सब करै, सुख में करै न कोय।

***

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 36 Foreign Words and Phrases

### Abbreviations used

| Abbreviations | Full forms | Abbreviations | Full forms |
|---|---|---|---|
| Lat. | Latin | Fr. | French |
| Sp. | Spanish | Gr. | Greek |
| It. | Italian | Us. | American |
| Ger. | German | Norw. | Norwegian |

### Words/Thrases Starting with 'A'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Ab absurdo (Lat.) | from absurdity | मूर्खता से |
| 2. | Ab antiquo (Lat.) | from olden time | प्राचीनकाल से |
| 3. | Ab imopectore (Lat.) | from the heart's bottom | अन्तः करण से, तहे दिल से |
| 4. | Ab Initio (Lat.) | from the beginning | आरंभ से |
| 5. | Ab origine (Lat.) | from the origin | आरंभ से, आदि से |
| 6. | Abrege (Fr.) | abridgement | संक्षेप, सार |
| 7. | Addendum (Lat.) | an appendix; a thing or things added | परिशिष्ट, किसी पुस्तक के अंत में जोड़ा गया भाग |
| 8. | Ad arbitrium (Lat.) | at will | इच्छानुसार |
| 9. | Ad extremum (Lat.) | to the extreme or to the last | अन्त तक |
| 10. | Ad hoc (Lat.) | for this purpose without consideration of wider application | उस विशेष उद्देश्य के लिए |
| 11. | Ad infinitum (Lat.) | to infinity; without limit; for ever | अनन्त तक, अंतिम सीमा तक |
| 12. | Ad interim (Lat.) | for the mean time | बीच के समय के लिए, अन्तरिम |
| 13. | Ad libitum (Lat.) | at pleasure; as much as you like | इच्छानुसार |
| 14. | Ad manum (Lat.) | ready | प्रस्तुत, तैयार |
| 15. | Ad referendum (Lat.) | for further consideration | आगे विचार किये जाने के लिए |
| 16. | Ad vienneque pourra (Fr.) | at all cost | चाहे जो कुछ हो |
| 17. | Advivum (Lat.) | to the life | जीवन पर्यन्त |
| 18. | Aequo animo (Lat.) | with an equable mind | समान चित्त से |
| 19. | Affaire d'amour (Fr.) | a love affair | प्रेम का विषय |
| 20. | Affair de rien (Fr.) | a trifle | तुच्छ विषय |
| 21. | Affiche (Fr.) | publication, an advertisemend, a notice | प्रकाशन, विज्ञापन, सूचना |
| 22. | A fin de (Fr.) | in order to, for the sake of | वास्ते, निमित्त, लिये |
| 23. | A fond (Fr.) | thoroughly | पूर्ण रूप से |
| 24. | Aga cant (Fr.) | provoking man | उत्तेजना पैदा करने वाला मनुष्य |
| 25. | A'gauche (Fr.) | to the left | बायीं ओर |
| 26. | Age quod agis (Lat.) | do with all your power what you do | जो कुछ करो अपनी पूरी शक्ति लगा करो |
| 27. | Aidos (Gr.) | shame, modesty | लज्जा, नम्रता विनय |
| 28. | Aine (Fr.) | elder man | ज्येष्ठ पुरुष |
| 29. | A' jamais (Fr.) | for ever | सर्वदा के लिए |
| 30. | A'l' abandon (Fr.) | abandoned | परित्यक्त, छोड़ा हुआ |
| 31. | A'labonne aventure (Fr.) | by chance | दैव योग से, अकस्मात |
| 32. | A' la main (Fr.) | ready, in hand | प्रस्तुत, तैयार |
| 33. | A' la mort (Fr.) | to the death | मृत्यु तक |
| 34. | Aldea (Sp.) | a village | गाँव |
| 35. | Alectryon (Gr.) | a cock | मुर्गा |
| 36. | A'l' enivi (Fr.) | emulously | प्रतिद्वंद्विता या ईर्ष्या से |
| 37. | Allons ! (Fr.) | come along, let us go | आओ हमलोग चलें |
| 38. | A' maximis and minima (Lat.) | from the greatest to the smallest | सबसे बड़े से सबसे छोटे तक |
| 39. | Amant (Fr.) | a lover | प्रेमी |
| 40. | Ame de boue (Fr.) | a low minded person | नीच मनुष्य, नीच विचारों का व्यक्ति |
| 41. | Ame perdue (Fr.) | desperate person | निराशा युक्त पुरुष, जान पर खेलने वाल व्यक्ति |
| 42. | Amle (Fr.) | mistress, female friend | सहेली, महिला मित्र |
| 43. | Animo et jide (Lat.) | by courage and faith | साहस और विश्वास से |
| 44. | Anno Domini (Lat.) | in or after the year of our lord's death | ईस्वी, सन में, ईसामसीह के मृत्यु के बाद |
| 45. | Ante bellum (Lat.) | before the war | युद्ध के पहले |
| 46. | Ante mer idiem (Lat.) | before noon | दोपहर से पहले |
| 47. | Anti quarium (Lat.) | Collection of antiquities | प्राचीन पदार्थों का संग्रह |
| 48. | A' outrance (Fr.) | up to the death | मृत्यु पर्यन्त या तक |
| 49. | A' peu pres (Fr.) | nearly | प्रायः करीब-करीब |
| 50. | A' pied (Fr.) | on foot | पैदल |
| 51. | Apologia (Gr.) | an apologetic writing | क्षमा प्रार्थना का लेख |
| 52. | A Posteriori (Lat.) | from the effect to the cause | परिणाम से कारण तक |
| 53. | A' priori (Lat.) | from cause to effect | कारण से परिणाम तक |
| 54. | A' prima vista (It.) | at first sight | पहली दृष्टि में |
| 55. | Arbitrium (Lat.) | power of decision | निर्णय का अधिकार |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 56. | Ardentia verba (Lat.) | glowing words | उत्तेजित करने वाला शब्द |
| 57. | Argent comptant (Fr.) | ready money | नगद रुपया, प्रस्तुत धन |
| 58. | Assez blen (Fr.) | pretty well | बहुत ठीक, बहुत अच्छा |
| 59. | A' toute force (Fr.) | by all means | सब प्रकार से, हर साधन द्वारा |
| 60. | A' tout prix (Fr.) | at any price | किसी भी दाम पर |
| 61. | A' travers (Fr.) | across | आर-पार |
| 62. | Au contraire (Fr.) | on the contrary | इसके विपरीत |
| 63. | Audace (Fr.) | daring | साहसी |
| 64. | Audaces fortuna Juvat (Lat.) | fortune favours the bold | लक्ष्मी वीरों पर कृपा करती है |
| 65. | Au desespoir (Fr.) | in despair | निराशा में नाउम्मीदी में |
| 66. | Au fond (Fr.) | at the bottom | सबसे नीचे, तले पर |
| 67. | Au reste (Fr.) | As for the rest, besides | बाकी लोगों के लिए, इसके अतिरिक्त/अलावे |
| 68. | Autre fois convict (Fr.) | previously convited | पहले दोषी ठहराया गया अपराधी |
| 69. | Avenir (Fr.) | future | भविष्य |
| 70. | A' verbis ad verbera (Lat.) | from words to blows | बात ही बात में झगड़ा या मारपीट |
| 71. | Avernus (Lat.) | the internal region | नरक- |

## Words/Phrases Starting with 'B'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Badaud (Fr.) | a simpleton | मूर्ख, भोंदू, बुद्धू |
| 2. | Bana lite (Fr.) | trifles | तुच्छ विषय |
| 3. | Bando lero (Sp.) | a robber | लुटेरा, डाकू |
| 4. | Bab-bleu (Fr.) | a literary woman | विदुषी, पण्डिताइन, पढ़ी-लिखी स्त्री |
| 5. | Bavardage (Fr.) | idle talk | निरर्थक बकवाद |
| 6. | Beau garcon (Fr.) | handsome person | सुन्दर मनुष्य |
| 7. | Beau tour (Fr.) | a fine day | सुदिवस, अच्छा दिन |
| 8. | Beaux es prits (Fr.) | men of wit | बुद्धिमान मनुष्य |
| 9. | Beaux yeaux (Fr.) | fine eyes, a beautiful woman | सुन्दर नेत्र, सुन्दरी, सुन्दर स्त्री |
| 10. | Bel espirit (Fr.) | a man of genius | अपूर्व बुद्धि का मनुष्य |
| 11. | Belle a mie (Fr.) | female friend | सखी, सहेली, महिला मित्र |
| 12. | Belle mere (Fr.) | mother-in-law | सास |
| 13. | Bellum lethale (Lat.) | deadly war | भीषण संग्राम, भयंकर युद्ध |
| 14. | Ber ceau (Fr.) | a cradle | पालना |
| 15. | Besoin (Fr.) | need, desire | आकांक्षा, अभिलाषा |
| 16. | Bevue (Fr.) | a blunder | अशुद्धि, बड़ी भूल, दोष |
| 17. | Biennium | period of two years | दो वर्ष का काल या समय |
| 18. | Bis in dies (Lat.) | twice a day | दिन में दो बार |
| 19. | Bona fides (Lat.) | good faith | सच्चा हृदय या विश्वास |
| 20. | Bona mobilia (Lat.) | morable goods | चल सम्पत्ति |
| 21. | Bon marche (Fr.) | good bargain, cheap | अच्छा सौदा, सस्ता |
| 22. | Borne fortune (Fr.) | good for tune | सौभाग्य |
| 23. | Bonne mine (Fr.) | handsome appearrance | सुन्दर आकृति |
| 24. | Bour geois (Fr.) | a trader | व्यवसायी, व्यापारी, |
| 25. | Beutique (Fr.) | a shop, a trades man'stock | दूकान, व्यापारी का माल या उसकी पूँजी |
| 26. | Brioche (Fr.) | a blunder or mistake | अशुद्धि, भूल, गलती |
| 27. | Brune (Fr.) | a dark girl or woman | उदास लड़की या स्त्री |
| 28. | Burs chen schaft (Gr.) | an association of students | छात्र संघ विद्यार्थियों की मण्डली |

## Words/Phrases Starting with 'C'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Cachinnus (Lat.) | a loud laugh | ठहाके की हँसी |
| 2. | Cachot (Fr.) | dungeon | काल कोठरी |
| 3. | Cadeau (Fr.) | a present, a gift | उपहार, ईनाम |
| 4. | Caldarium (Lat.) | a hot bathe | उष्ण स्नान |
| 5. | Campo santo (Lat.) | a burying ground | समाधि, कब्रिस्तान |
| 6. | Canaille (Fr.) | a pack of hounds, the rabble | कुत्तों का झुंड, सर्व सामान्य मनुष्य |
| 7. | Caput (Lat.) | head | मस्तक |
| 8. | Charmante (Fr.) | a charming woman | सुन्दर स्त्री |
| 9. | Ci-devant (Fr.) | formerly, before this | पूर्व काल में, इसके पहले |
| 10. | Cito (Lat.) | quickly | शीघ्रता से |
| 11. | Cochleare (Lat.) | a spoonful | चम्मच भर कर |
| 12. | Cogito ergo sum (Lat.) | I think, therefore I exist | मैं विचार करता हूँ इसलिए मेरा अस्तित्व है |
| 13. | Con amore (It.) | with love, very earnestly | प्रेम से, बहुत सच्ची लगन से |
| 14. | Con cours (Fr.) | contest | प्रतियोगिता |
| 15 | Con diligenza (It.) | with diligence | परिश्रम से |
| 16. | Con dolore (It.) | with grief | दुःख से |
| 17. | Confer (Lat.) | Compare | मिलान करो |
| 18. | Con silio et animis (Lat.) | by wisdom and courage | बुद्धि तथा साहस द्वारा |
| 19. | Can spirito (It.) | with spirit | उत्साह से |
| 20. | Caup de bon heur (Fr.) | stroke of good luck | सौभाग्य |
| 21. | Coup de hasard (Fr.) | a lucky chance | सौभाग्य |
| 22. | Coupe jarret (Fr.) | a cut throat | हत्यारा |
| 23. | Creve coeur (Fr.) | deep sorrow, heart break | परम दुःख, हृदय विदारक घटना |
| 24. | Crimen falsi (Lat.) | crime of prejury | विश्वास घात |
| 25. | Culpa levis (Lat.) | a slight fault | छोटा-सा अपराध |
| 26. | Cum privilegio (Lat.) | with privilege | विशेष सुविधा के साथ |
| 27. | Currente calamo (Lat.) | a running pen | घसीट लिखावट में |

## Words/Phrases Starting with 'D'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Da capo (It.) | from the beginning | आरंभ से |
| 2. | Dames de halle (Fr.) | la market woman | बाजारू स्त्री |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3. | Data et accepta (Lat.) | expenses and receipts | आय-व्यय |
| 4. | De bon ne grace (Fr.) | willingly, with good grace | इच्छापूर्वक, अच्छे आचरण से |
| 5. | De cheance (Fr.) | for feiture | जब्ती |
| 6. | De die in diem (Lat.) | from day to day | दिन-दिन, प्रतिदिन |
| 7. | De facto (Lat.) | really, infact, actual | वस्तुतः सम्मुख, यथार्थ में |
| 8. | De gout (Fr.) | distaste | अरुचि |
| 9. | Dei gratia (Lat.) | by the grace of God | ईश्वर की दया से |
| 10. | De integro (Lat.) | a fresh, a new | नया, ताजा |
| 11. | De meure (Fr.) | dwelling | निवास, रहने का घर |
| 12. | De novo (Lat.) | a fresh | नया, ताजा |
| 13. | Deo favente (Lat.) | with God's Favour | ईश्वर की कृपा से |
| 14. | Deo gratias (Lat.) | thanks to god | ईश्वर को धन्यवाद |
| 15. | Depeche (Fr.) | message | संदेश |
| 16. | De rigueur (Fr.) | indispensable, compulsory | अनिवार्य, आवश्यक |
| 17. | Detenu (Fr.) | a prisoner | कैदी |
| 18. | De trop (Fr.) | too much, superflurous | अत्यन्त अधिक, आवश्यकता से अधिक |
| 19. | Dextro tempore (Lat.) | at the lucky moment | सौभाग्य के मुहूर्त में या शुभ मुहूर्त में |
| 20. | Dictum de dicto (Lat.) | hear say, report | जनश्रुति, अफवाह |
| 21. | Dies faustus (Lat.) | a lucky day | सौभाग्य का दिन |
| 22. | Dies festi (Lat.) | a day of festival | त्योहार का दिन |
| 23. | Dieu vous grade (Fr.) | may God guard you | ईश्वर तुम्हारी रक्षा करे |
| 24. | Dis tingue (Fr.) | distinguished | प्रसिद्ध |
| 25. | Divertissement (Fr.) | amusement, support | आनन्द, उत्सव मनबहलाव |
| 26. | Divisim (Lat.) | separately | अलग-अलग |
| 27. | Docendo discimus (Lat.) | a man learns by teaching | पढ़ाने से विद्या आती है |
| 28. | Donna emobile (It.) | women are changeable | स्त्रियाँ चंचल होती हैं |
| 29. | Drole (Fr.) | a regue | दुष्ट, बदमाश |
| 30. | Dulce et decorum est propatria mori (Lat.) | to die for one's country is glorious | अपने देश के लिए मरना गौरव की बात है |
| 31. | Dum spiro, spero (Lat.) | while I breathe, I hope | जब तक मैं जीवित हूँ मुझे आशा है या जबतक साँस तब तक आस |
| 32. | Durante vita (Lat.) | during life | जीवन काल में |

## Words/Phrases Starting with 'E'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Eclair cissement (Fr.) | explanation | व्याख्या |
| 2. | E' contra (Lat.) | conversely | विपरीत प्रकार से |
| 3. | Edaxrerum (Lat.) | devourer of all things | सब पदार्थों का भक्षण करने वाला |
| 4. | Egarement (Fr.) | confusion, perplexity | घबड़ाहट |
| 5. | Elegant (Fr.) | a man of fashion | ठाट वाला मनुष्य |
| 6. | Ele've (Fr.) | pupil | शिष्य, चेला |
| 7. | Emeritus (Lat.) | retired after long service | लम्बी नौकरी के बाद अवकाश प्राप्त |
| 8. | Emeute (Fr.) | a riot | बलवा |
| 9. | Emigre' (Fr.) | an emigrant | देश से हटा हुआ |
| 10. | En arriere (Fr.) | behind | पीछे की ओर |
| 11. | En avant ! (Fr.) | forward | आगे की ओर |
| 12. | En famile (Fr.) | amongst the family | परिवार में |
| 13. | En rapport (Fr.) | in sympathy with | सहानुभूति सहित |
| 14. | En revanche (Fr.) | in return | बदले में |
| 15. | En route (Fr.) | on the way | मार्ग में, राह में |
| 16. | Entente (Fr.) | under standing | बुद्धि |
| 17. | En tout (Fr.) | wholly | पूर्ण रूप से, बिल्कुल |
| 18. | Entrepreneur (Fr.) | contractor | ठीकेदार |
| 19. | Eperdu (Fr.) | distracted man | घबड़ाया हुआ (पुरुष) |
| 20. | Epicier (Fr.) | a grocer | पंसारी |
| 21. | Epouse (Fr.) | wife | स्त्री, पत्नी |
| 22. | Errare est humanum (Lat.) | To error is human | भूल करना मनुष्य का काम है |
| 23. | Escroc (Fr.) | a swindler | ठग, धोखा |
| 24. | Espada (Sp.) | a sword | तलवार |
| 25. | Es tanicia (Sp.) | a mansion | महल |
| 26. | Estro (It.) | Enthusiasm | उत्साह |
| 27. | Etourderie (Fr.) | headlessness, stupid mistake | लापरवाही, मूर्खता की भूल |
| 28. | Etourdi (Fr.) | foolish | मूर्ख |
| 29. | Etranger (Fr.) | a foreigner | परदेशी |
| 30. | Exabundantia (Lat.) | out of abundance | बहुतायत से बाहर |
| 31. | Ex accidenti (Lat.) | accidentally | अनायास, इत्तिफाक से |
| 32. | Examen (Lat.) | Examination | परीक्षा |
| 33. | Excuria (Lat.) | out of court | अदालत से बाहर |
| 34. | Exempligratia (Lat.) | for instance, by way of example | उदाहरण के रूप में, यथा |
| 35. | Ex officio (Lat.) | by virtue of his office | पदाधिकारेण |
| 36. | Ex parte (Lat.) | on one side only | एक ओर से एक तरफा |
| 37. | Experto crede (Lat.) | the experienced should be trusted | अनुभवी व्यक्ति का विश्वास करना चाहिए |
| 38. | Expressis verbis (Lat.) | in express terms | स्पष्ट शब्दों में |
| 39. | Ex tacito (Lat.) | silently | चुप चुप |
| 40. | Extra modum (Lat.) | Extra vagant beyond measure | अत्यधिक व्यय करने वाला, सीमा से अधिक |
| 41. | Ex utraque parte (Lat.) | on eitherside | दोनों ओर |
| 42. | Ex voto (Lat.) | according to one's prayer | प्रार्थना के अनुसार |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### Words/Phrases Starting with 'F'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Factum est (Lat.) | it is done | कार्य हो गया |
| 2. | Fadaise (Fr.) | a silly talk | मूर्खता की बात |
| 3. | farceur (Fr.) | a joker | ठिठोलिया |
| 4. | Fecit (Lat.) | made or executed | बनाया हुआ |
| 5. | Feliciter (Lat.) | happily, successfully | सुख से, सफलता से |
| 6. | Felo de se (Lat.) | Suicide | आत्महत्या |
| 7. | Fide et amore (Lat.) | by faith and love | श्रद्धा और प्रेम से |
| 8. | Fidus et audax (Lat.) | faithful and bold | विश्वासी तथा साहसी |
| 9. | Fillius nullius (Lat.) | a bastard | दोगला |
| 10. | Fille de joie (Fr.) | a prostitute | वेश्या |
| 11. | Flair (Fr.) | scent | गन्ध |
| 12. | Fortuna favet fortibus (Lat.) | fortune favours the bold | भाग्य साहसी लोगों के अनुकूल रहता है |
| 13. | Frais (Fr.) | expenses | व्यय, खर्च |
| 14. | Friand (Fr.) | delicate | मृदु, कोमल |
| 15. | Front a front (Fr.) | face to face | आमने-सामने |
| 16. | Funebre (Fr.) | mournful | शोकपूर्ण |
| 17. | Fureur (Fr.) | extravagant admiration | अत्यधिक प्रशंसा |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'G'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Gaillard (Fr.) | lively | आनन्दपूर्ण, प्रसन्न |
| 2. | Galant (Fr.) | given to unlawful intrigue | अवैध षड्यंत्र करने वाला |
| 3. | Garcon (Fr.) | a boy, bachelor | लड़का, छोकरा, कुँआरा |
| 4. | Garde a cheval (Fr.) | mounted guard | घुड़सवार रक्षक |
| 5. | Gemuthlicheit (Gr.) | comfortableness, good nature | आराम की अवस्था, अच्छा स्वभाव |
| 6. | Gloria in excelsis (Lat.) | glory to god is the highest | सबसे बड़ी महिमा ईश्वर की है। |
| 7. | Goutte a goutte (Fr.) | drop by drop | बूँद-बूँद करके |
| 8. | Grand merci (Fr.) | many thanks | अनेक धन्यवाद |
| 9. | Grosse tete et peu de sens (Fr.) | big head and little wit | बड़ी खोपड़ी छोटी बुद्धि |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'H'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Heure uscment (Fr.) | happily, fortunately | सुख से, सौभाग्य वश |
| 2. | Hic et ubique (Lat.) | here and every where | यहाँ और सर्वत्र |
| 3. | Hoc age (Lat.) | attend to what you do | जो करो उस पर ध्यान दो |
| 4. | Hommed' affaires (Fr.) | a business man | व्यापारी मनुष्य |
| 5. | Homme d' esprit (Fr.) | a man of coit | बुद्धिमान मनुष्य |
| 6. | Honoris caused (Lat.) | for the sake of honour, as an honour | सम्मान/प्रतिष्ठा के लिए |
| 7. | Horrible dictu (Lat.) | horrible to describe | वर्णन करना भयंकर है |
| 8. | Hors de combat (Fr.) | unfit for fighting | युद्ध करने के अयोग्य |
| 9. | Hors de propos (Fr.) | out side the purpose | लक्ष्य से बाहर |
| 10. | Hotel Dieu (Fr.) | a hospital | अस्पताल |
| 11. | Huissier (Fr.) | door keeper | दरबान |
| 12. | Humanum est errare (Lat.) | to err is human | भूल करना मनुष्य का काम है |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'I'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Illustrissimo (It.) | most illustrious | सबसे अधिक प्रसिद्ध |
| 2. | Impasse (Fr.) | an insoluble difficulty | न सुलझाने वाली कठिनाई |
| 3. | Impayable (Fr.) | In valuable | अमूल्य |
| 4. | Impedimenta (Lat.) | luggage | यात्रा की सामग्री |
| 5. | Impromptu (Lat.) | without study | बिना अध्ययन का |
| 6. | In abstracto (Lat.) | in the abstract | भाव रूप में |
| 7. | In articulo mortis (Lat.) | at the point of death | मृत्यु के मुँह में |
| 8. | Incamera (Lat.) | in the private room | कमरे के भीतर, गुप्त स्थान में |
| 9. | Indomino (Lat.) | int the Lord | ईश्वर में |
| 10. | In equilibris (Lat.) | inequilibrium | बराबरी में, संतुलन में |
| 11. | In extenso (Lat.) | at full length | पूरी तरह से |
| 12. | In extremis (Lat.) | at the point of death | मरने के निकट |
| 13. | Infra dignitatem (Lat.) | below one's dignity | मर्यादा के विरुद्ध |
| 14. | In limine (Lat.) | on the thresh hold | देहली पर, आरंभ में |
| 15. | In memoriam (Lat.) | in the memory of | स्मरणार्थ, यादगार में |
| 16. | In pace (Lat.) | in peace | शांति में |
| 17. | In petto (It.) | within the breast | हृदय के भीतर |
| 18. | In posse (Lat.) | Inpossibility | संभावना में |
| 19. | Insecula seculorum (Lat.) | for ever and for ever | सदा सर्वदा के लिए |
| 20. | Interrorem (Lat.) | as a warning | चेतावनी के रूप में |
| 21. | In toto (Lat.) | in the whole, entirely | पूर्णरूप से, निपट |
| 22. | In transitu (Lat.) | on the passage | मार्ग में |
| 23. | Ipso facto (Lat.) | really | सत्यता में, वास्तविक रूप में |
| 24. | Iterum (Lat.) | again | फिर से |
| 25. | Ivresse (Fr.) | drunkenness | मदिरापान, मतवालापन |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### Words/Phrases Starting with 'J'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Je ne sais quoi (Fr.) | I know not what | मैं नहीं जानता क्या ? |
| 2. | Jure divino (Lat.) | by divine law | दैवीनियम से |
| 3. | Jure humano (Lat.) | by human law | मनुष्य के बनाये नियम पर |
| 4. | Juste milieu (Fr.) | the happy medium | आनन्दमयी माध्यम |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'K'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Kren (Gr.) | horse-radish | मोटी मूली |
| 2. | Khema es aei (Gr.) | a possession to be kept for ever | सदा के लिए रखा जाने वाला अधिकार |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'L'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Labore et honore (Lat.) | by labour and honour | परिश्रम और सम्मान से |
| 2. | L' allegro (It.) | the cheerful man | प्रसन्नचित्त मनुष्य |
| 3. | L' avenir (Fr.) | the future | भविष्य |
| 4. | Lex scripta (Lat.) | the statue law | व्यवस्थित नियम |
| 5. | Libraire (Fr.) | a book seller | पुस्तक बेचने वाला |
| 6. | Lucri caus a (Lat.) | for the sake of gain | लाभ के लिए |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'M'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Magnum bonum (Lat.) | a great good | बड़ा उपकार या लाभ |
| 2. | Magnum-opus (Lat.) | a great work | बड़ा कार्य |
| 3. | Maitre d' hotel (Fr.) | a hotel keeper | होटल का अधिकारी |
| 4. | Mala fide (Lat.) | faithlessly, treacherously | विश्वासघात से |
| 5. | Matinee (Fr.) | Morning performance | सवेरे का खेल |
| 6. | Mauvaise honte (Fr.) | false modesty | झूठी लज्जा |
| 7. | Memorabilia (Lat.) | things worth remembering | स्मरण रखने योग्य वस्तुएँ या बातें |
| 8. | Meo periculo (Lat.) | at my own risk | स्वयं संकट या खतरा उठाकर |
| 9. | Meo voto (Lat.) | according to my will | मेरी इच्छानुसार |
| 10. | Mesa liance (Fr.) | marriage with one of lower status | हीन स्थिति के व्यक्ति से विवाह |
| 11. | Modus (Lat.) | mode, manner | विधि, प्रकार, ढंग |
| 12. | Mon ami (Fr.) | my friend | मेरा मित्र |
| 13. | Monsieur (Fr.) | sir | महाशय |
| 14. | Mot (Fr.) | a fragment, morsel, a piece of music | टुकड़ा, ग्रास, छोटा गीत |
| 15. | Mot juste (Fr.) | the right word | ठीक शब्द |
| 16. | Multum in parvo (Lat.) | much in little | थोड़े में बहुत |
| 17. | Mutatis mutandis (Lat.) | the name being changed | नाम बदल जाने पर |
| 18. | Mutuo consensu (Lat.) | Mutual agreement | पारस्परिक सहमति |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'N'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Naissance (Fr.) | birth | उत्पत्ति, जन्म |
| 2. | Ne exeat (Lat.) | let him not depart | उसको प्रस्थान न करने दो |
| 3. | Ne obliviscaris (Lat.) | do not forget | मत भूलो |
| 4. | Nicht wahr ? (Gr.) | is it not true ? | क्या यह सत्य नहीं है ? |
| 5. | Nil desperandum (Lat.) | nothing is to be dispaired of | निराश होने की कोई बात नहीं है |
| 6. | N' importe (Fr.) | it does not matter | कोई चिन्ता की बात नहीं है |
| 7. | Nisi Dominus frustra (Lat.) | unless God be with you, your toil is in vain | ईश्वर जब तक तुम्हारी सहायता न करे तब तक तुम्हारा सभी परिश्रम व्यर्थ है |
| 8. | Noli me tangere (Lat.) | do not touch me | मुझे स्पर्श मत करो |
| 9. | non mi ricordo (It.) | I do not remember | मुझे स्मरण नहीं है |
| 10. | Nota bene (Lat.) [Abbr. N.B] | take notice, mark well | भली भाँति ध्यान दो |
| 11. | Nous verrons (Fr.) | we shall see | हम लोग देखेंगे |
| 12. | Nulli secun dus (Lat.) | unparalled, second to none | अद्वितीय |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'O'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Observanda (Lat.) | things to be observed | ध्यान देने योग्य बात |
| 2. | Omnia vincit amor (Lat.) | love conquers all things | प्रेम सभी को जीत लेता है |
| 3. | Optimates (Lat.) | men of high rank | उच्च श्रेणी के मनुष्य |
| 4. | Otia dant vitia (Lat.) | idleness begets vice | आलस्य पाप का मूल होता है। |
| 5. | Ouvrage (Fr.) | a work | कार्य, काम |
| 6. | Ouvrier (Fr.) | operative, a worker | काम में लाने योग्य काम करने वाला |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'P'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Pactumillicitum (Lat.) | an illegal pact | गैरकानूनी |
| 2. | Padrone (It.) | master, ruler | मालिक, राजा, शासक |
| 3. | Par excellence (Fr.) | eminently | श्रेष्ठता या ख्याति से |
| 4. | Par exemple (Fr.) | for example | उदाहरण के रूप में, यथा |
| 5. | Particeps criminis (Lat.) | an accomplice | अपराध करने में सहायक |
| 6. | Passim (Lat.) | everywhere, dispersed | सर्वत्र, तितर-बितर |
| 7. | Pater noster (Lat.) | our father | हमारा पिता |
| 8. | Pax vobiscum! (Lat.) | peace be with you ! | आपका कल्याण हो आप शांत रहें |
| 9. | Peccavi (Lat.) | I have sinned | मैंने पाप किया है |
| 10. | Pen chant (Fr.) | desire | इच्छा, झुकाव |
| 11. | Per annum (Lat.) | per year | प्रतिवर्ष |
| 12. | Per centum (Lat.) | by the hundred | प्रति सैकड़ा |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13. | Per contra (Fr.) | on the contrary | प्रतिकूल रीति से |
| 14. | Perdiem (Lat.) | per day, daily | प्रतिदिन |
| 15. | Personnel (Fr.) | persons employed in any service or business | किसी कार्य में नियुक्त व्यक्तियों का वर्ग |
| 16. | Pia fraus (Lat.) | pious fraud | धार्मिक छल |
| 17. | Pleno jure (Lat.) | withfull authority | पूर्ण अधिकार से |
| 18. | Post mortem (Lat.) | after death | मृत्यु के उपरान्त |
| 19. | Post obitum (Lat.) | after death | मृत्यु के बाद |
| 20. | Presto (It.) | quickly | शीघ्रता से |
| 21. | Preux chevalier (Fr.) | a brave knight | वीर योद्धा |
| 22. | Prima facie (Lat.) | on the first view | पहली दृष्टि में |
| 23. | Proces verbal (Fr.) | written statement | लिखित वर्णन |
| 24. | Pro forma (Lat.) | according to the form | रीति के अनुसार |
| 25. | Publice (Lat.) | publicly | सर्व सामान्य रूप से |

## Words/Phrases Starting with 'Q'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Quaere (Lat.) | inquire | अन्वेषण करना, खोज करो |
| 2. | Quantum sufficit (Lat.) | a sufficient quantity | पर्याप्त परिमाण |
| 3. | Que sais je ? (Fr.) | what do I know ? | मैं क्या जानता हूँ ? |
| 4. | Quid rides (Lat.) | why do you laugh ? | तुम क्यों हँसते हो ? |
| 5. | Quis separabit (:at) | who shall separate us ? | हमलोगों को कौन पृथक करेगा |
| 6. | Qui vaa' ? (Fr.) | who goes there ? | वहाँ कौन जाता है ? |
| 7. | Qui vive ? (Lat.) | who lives there ? | वहाँ कौन रहता है |
| 8. | Quod vide (Lat.) | which see | जिसको देखो |
| 9. | Quo jure ? (Lat.) | by what right | किस अधिकार से |
| 10. | Quo vadis ? (Lat.) | whither thou goest ? | तू कहाँ जाता है ? |

## Words/Phrases Starting with 'R'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Ragione (It.) | company or firm | व्यवसाय, संघ, कम्पनी |
| 2. | Relache (Fr.) | relaxation, interval | विश्राम, मध्यावकाश |
| 3. | Res gestae (Lat.) | exploits | साहस के कार्य |
| 4. | Resume, (Fr.) | a summary, abstract | संक्षेप, सारांश, तत्व |
| 5. | Resuram (Lat.) | I shall rise again | मैं फिर उठूँगा |
| 6. | Reveur (Fr.) | a day dreamer | दिन में स्वप्न देखने वाला |
| 7. | Rifacimento (It.) | restatement | पुनः कथन, दुबारा बयान |
| 8. | Ruat caelum (Lat.) | let the heaven fall | चाहे वज्र गिरे, चाहे कैसी भी विपत्ति हो |
| 9. | Ruse de guerre (Fr.) | a stratagem of war | युद्ध का षड्यंत्र |

## [S] Words/Phrases Starting with 'S'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Sancta simplicitas (Lat.) | child like innocence | बच्चों के सदृश भोलापन |
| 2. | Sanctum sanctorum (Lat.) | holy of holies | अतिपवित्र स्थान |
| 3. | Sang-froid (Fr.) | coolness, indiffeence | उदासीन भाव |
| 4. | Sans cerermonie (Fr.) | without ceremony | बिना शिष्टाचार के |
| 5. | Sans souci (Fr.) | without care | बिना चिन्ता या ध्यान या सावधानी के |
| 6. | Satis verborum (Lat.) | enough of words | पर्याप्त शब्द हो गये। |
| 7. | Satsapienti (Lat.) | a nod is enough for the wise | बुद्धिमान के लिए संकेत पर्याप्त होता है |
| 8. | Savant (Fr.) | a learned man | बुद्धिमान मनुष्य |
| 9. | Savoir faire (Fr.) | knowing how to act | कार्य क्षमता, कार्य निपुणता |
| 10. | Secundum naturam (Lat.) | according to nature | प्रकृति के अनुसार |
| 11. | Secundum ordinem | according to order | क्रम के अनुसार |
| 12. | Sine odium (Lat.) | without hatred | बिना घृणा के |
| 13. | Spirituel (Fr.) | intellectual, witty | बुद्धिमान ठिठोलिया |
| 14. | Subjudice (Lat.) | under consideration | विचाराधीन |
| 15. | Sub poena (Lat.) | under penalty | दंड के अन्तर्गत |
| 16. | Suggestio falsi (Lat.) | false suggestion | झूठा प्रस्ताव |
| 17. | Sur sum corda (Lat.) | lift up your hearts | अपना हृदय ऊँचा करो |
| 18. | Suum cuique (Lat.) | let each have his own | प्रत्येक को अपना-अपना भाग लेने दो |
| 19. | Suus cuique mos (Lat.) | every one has peculiar habits | प्रत्येक मनुष्य का अलग-अलग स्वभाव होता है। |

## Words/Phrases Starting with 'T'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Tapis (Fr.) | under consideration | विचाराधीन |
| 2. | Tempus fugit (Lat.) | time flies | समय भागता जाता है |
| 3. | Terra Incognita (Lat.) | an unknown country | अज्ञात देश |
| 4. | Tete-a-tete (Fr.) | head to head, private talk | गुप्त वार्तालाप |
| 5. | Tour de force (Fr.) | a feat of strength or skill | बल या हुनर का कार्य |
| 6. | Tout au contraire (Fr.) | quite the contrary | बिल्कुल विपरीत |
| 7. | Tout a fait (Fr.) | completely | पूर्ण रूप से |
| 8. | Tout a vous (Fr.) | entirely yours | पूर्ण रूप से तुम्हारा |
| 9. | Tout le monde (Fr.) | all the world, every body | सम्पूर्ण संसार, सब प्राणी |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### Words/Phrases Starting with 'U'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Ubique (Lat.) | everywhere | सर्वत्र, हर जगह |
| 2. | Ultima thule (Lat.) | the utmost limit | अन्तिम सीमा |
| 3. | Ultra vires (Lat.) | beyond one's powers | किसी की शक्ति के बाहर |
| 4. | Vsus loquendi (Lat.) | current usage of speech | भाषा का प्रचलित प्रयोग |
| 5. | Utile dulci (Lat.) | the useful with the agreeable | रोचक के साथ-साथ उपयोगी |
| 6. | Ut Infra (Lat.) | as below | अधोलिखित, जैसा नीचे लिखा है। |
| 7. | Ut supra (Lat.) | as above | पूर्वोक्त, जैसा ऊपर लिखा है |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'V'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Vade mecum (Lat.) | a constant companion | सर्वदा साथ रहने वाला |
| 2. | Vale (Lat.) | fare well | विदाई |
| 3. | Valet de chambre (Fr.) | an attendant | सेवक, टहलुआ |
| 4. | Vaurien (Fr.) | a good for nothing | निकम्मा |
| 5. | Veni, vidi, vici (Lat.) | I came, I saw, I conquered | मैं आया, मैंने देखा, मैंने जीता |
| 6. | Versus (Lat.) (Abbr.–V) | against | विरुद्ध |
| 7. | Via (Lat.) | by way of | मार्ग से, रास्ते से |
| 8. | Via media (Lat.) | a middle course | मध्य का मार्ग |
| 9. | Vice (Lat.) | in place of | बदले में, वास्ते |
| 10. | Vice versa (Lat.) | the order being reversed, the terms being exchanged | क्रम बदल दिया गया, शब्द का क्रम उल्टा हुआ |
| 11. | Vide licet (Lat.) [Abbr. viz.] | to wit, namely | अर्थात् |
| 12. | Viet armis (:Lat.) | by force of arms | शस्त्रास्त्र के बल पर बाहुबल से |
| 13. | Virtus post nummos (Lat.) | money first and virtue afterwards | पहिले धन तब धर्म |
| 14. | Virtute officii (Lat.) | by virtue of office | अधिकार की शक्ति से, पदाधिकारेण |
| 15. | Vis-a-vis (Fr.) | opposite, facing | आमने-सामने |
| 16. | Vis comica (Lat.) | comic power | प्रहसन की शक्ति |
| 17. | Vita brevis, are longa (Lat.) | life is short, art is long. | जीवन छोटा है, कला या विद्या बहुत है |
| 18. | Viva voce (Lat.) | by oral testimony | मौखिक परीक्षा से |
| 19. | Volage (Fr.) | fickle | चंचल |
| 20. | Vulgo (Lat.) | commonly | सामान्य रूप से या में |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'W'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Weltgeist (Gr.) | world spirit | संसार की भावना |
| 2. | Weltschmerz (Gr.) | world sorrow, sympathy with universal misery | संसार का दुःख, संसार की दुर्दशा या दुर्भाग्य से सहानुभूति |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'X'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Xan thippe (Gr.) | a shrewish wife | कर्कशा पत्नी |
| 2. | Xystum (Lat.) | a shaded walk in a garden | बगीचे का वृक्षों से आच्छादित मार्ग |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'Y'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Yaboo (Pers.) | An afghan pony | अफगानी टट्टू |

### Words/Phrases Starting with 'Z'

| S.N. | Words/Phrases | English Meaning | Hindi Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Zeit vertreib (Gr.) | a pastime | क्रीड़ा, आनंद |
| 2. | Zollverein (Gr.) | a customs league | जर्मनी देश का चुंगी संघ |
| 3. | Zoon politikon (Gr.) | a political being | राजनीतिक प्राणी या मनुष्य |

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Spelling Test 37

विभिन्न प्रतियोगिता परीक्षाओं में spelling mistakes से प्रश्न प्रश्न पूछे जाते हैं। छात्रगण दिये गए words के spelling को ध्यान से देखें और कंठाग्र करने की कोशिश करें।

## [A]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Abbreviate *(v)* | संक्षिप्त करना | Abreviate |
| 2. | Accelerate *(v)* | चाल बढ़ाना | Acelerate |
| 3. | Accessary *(n)* | अपराध में सहायक होने वाला व्यक्ति | Acessary |
| 4. | Accommodate *(v)* | अनुकूल बनाना | Accomodate |
| 5. | Accompany *(v)* | साथ जाना | Acompany |
| 6. | Accountancy *(n)* | हिसाब लिखने की कला | Acountancy |
| 7. | Acquaintance *(n)* | परिचय | Acquiantance |
| 8. | Admittance *(n)* | स्वीकृति | Admitance |
| 9. | Admission *(n)* | प्रवेश | Admision |
| 10. | Aerodrome *(n)* | हवाईअड्डा | Airodrome |
| 11. | Aesthetics *(n)* | सौन्दर्यशास्त्र | Asthetics |
| 12. | Affectionate *(adj.)* | प्रिय | Afectionate |
| 13. | Aggressor *(n)* | आक्रमणकर्त्ता | Aggresor |
| 14. | Altogether *(adv.)* | पूर्णतः | Alltogether |
| 15. | Ambassador *(n)* | राजदूत | Ambasador |
| 16. | Anemometer *(n)* | यंत्र | Animometer |
| 17. | Anniversary *(n)* | जयन्ती | Aniversary |
| 18. | Apology *(n)* | माफी | Appology |
| 19. | Approximate *(adj.)* | करीब-करीब | Aproximate |
| 20. | Aquarium *(n)* | जल जीवशाला | Aquarrium |
| 21. | Archaeology *(n)* | प्राचीन वस्तुओं का अध्ययन | Archeaology |
| 22. | Assassination *(n)* | निर्मम हत्या | Assasination |
| 23. | Attendance *(n)* | उपस्थिति | Attendence |
| 24. | Auditorium *(n)* | श्रोता कक्ष | Audittorium |
| 25. | Autonomous *(adj.)* | स्वतंत्र | Autonomus |
| 26. | Accession *(n)* | वृद्धि | Accesion |
| 27. | Accessory *(n)* | अतिरिक्त सहायक सामान | Acessory |
| 28. | Accumulate *(v)* | संचय करना | Accummulate |
| 29. | Accustom *(v)* | आदी होना | Accustum |
| 30. | Adherent *(n)* | किसी दल का समर्थक | Adherrent |
| 31. | Admissible *(adj.)* | स्वीकार करने योग्य | Admisible |
| 32. | Adolescence *(n)* | किशोरावस्था | Adolesence |
| 33. | Adversary *(n)* | शत्रु | Adverssary |
| 34. | Aeronaut *(n)* | विमान चालक | Aironaut |
| 35. | Affiliation *(n)* | किसी संस्था का किसी बड़ी संस्था में सम्मिलित होना | Affiliasion |
| 36. | Affidavit *(n)* | शपथ पत्र | Affidabit |
| 37. | Aggravation *(n)* | वृद्धि, उग्रता | Aggravasion |
| 38. | Allegiance *(n)* | राज्यभक्ति, देशानुराग | Alligiance |
| 39. | Amalgamation *(n)* | एकता, मिलाप | Amallgamation |
| 40. | Ameliorate *(v)* | सुधार करना | Amileorate |
| 41. | Amphitheatre *(n)* | अखाड़ा | Amphitheater |
| 42. | Annihilation *(n)* | विनाश | Anihilation |
| 43. | Anthropology *(n)* | मानव विकास का इतिहास | Anthropologi |
| 44. | Appearance *(n)* | उपस्थिति | Apearance |
| 45. | Appreciation *(n)* | प्रशंसा | Appresiation |
| 46. | Appropriate *(adj.)* | उचित | Apropriate |
| 47. | Architecture *(n)* | भवन निर्माण कला | Architecchure |
| 48. | Arithmetic *(n)* | अंकगणित | Arithmatic |
| 49. | Assiduous *(adj.)* | परिश्रमी | Assidious |
| 50. | Auxiliary *(adj.)* | सहायक | Auxilliary |

## [B]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Barbarian *(adj.)* | असभ्य | Barbarrian |
| 2. | Barometer *(n)* | वायुदाब मापक यंत्र | Barometre |
| 3. | Battalion *(n)* | पलटन | Battalian |
| 4. | Beautician *(n)* | श्रृंगार स्थल का संचालक | Beautisian |
| 5. | Bibliography *(n)* | ग्रंथ सूची | Biblliograph |
| 6. | Biennial *(adj.)* | द्विवार्षिक | Bienial |
| 7. | Bilingual *(adj.)* | दो भाषाओं का ज्ञाता | Billingual |
| 8. | Brethren *(n)* | भाईलोग | Brotheren |
| 9. | Bureaucracy *(n)* | नौकरशाही | Bureuacracy |
| 10. | Balloon *(n)* | गुब्बारा | Ballon |
| 11. | Bibliophile *(n)* | पुस्तकों का प्रेमी | Bibliofile |
| 12. | Buffalo *(n)* | भैंस | Buffalow |

## [C]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Campaign *(n)* | सैनिक अभियान | Compiagn |
| 2. | Cannibal *(n)* | नरभक्षी | Canibal |
| 3. | Cardamom *(n)* | इलायची | Cardammom |
| 4. | Carriage *(n)* | घोड़ागाड़ी | Carraige |
| 5. | Cashier *(n)* | कोषाध्यक्ष | Casheir |
| 6. | Cassette *(n)* | कैसेट | Cassete |
| 7. | Catalogue *(n)* | सूचीपत्र | Catalougue |
| 8. | Caterpillar *(n)* | तितली | Caterpilar |
| 9. | Cauliflower *(n)* | फूलगोभी | Cauleeflower |
| 10. | Cavalry | घुड़सवार फौज | Cavalary |
| 11. | Cellulose *(n)* | सेलुलोस | Celulose |
| 12. | Centenarian *(adj.)* | सौ साल का व्यक्ति | Centenerian |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 13. Centigrade (adj.) | सेंटीग्रेड | Centigrate |
| 14. Chancellor (n) | कुलपति | Chancelor |
| 15. Characteristic (adj.) | चरित्र | Chracteristic |
| 16. Chauffeur (n) | मोटरचालक | Chaufeur |
| 17. Chloroform (n) | क्लोरोफार्म | Choloroform |
| 18. Chlorophyll (n) | पर्णहरित | Chlolorophyll |
| 19. Chocolate (n) | चॉकलेट | Choclate |
| 20. Christmas (n) | क्रिसमस | Christmus |
| 21. Cigarette (n) | सिगरेट | Cigarete |
| 22. Circumference (n) | परिधि | Circumfarence |
| 23. Circumstance (n) | परिस्थिति | Circumstence |
| 24. Classification (n) | वर्गीकरण | Clasification |
| 25. Coalition (n) | संगठन | Caolition |
| 26. Coefficient (n) | गुणांक | Cofficient |
| 26. Collision (n) | टक्कर | Collition |
| 27. Commentary (n) | आलोचना | Commentory |
| 28. Commission (n) | आयोग | Commision |
| 29. Commissioner (n) | आयुक्त | Commisioner |
| 30. Committee (n) | समिति | Commitee |
| 31. Competition (n) | प्रतियोगिता | Competetion |
| 32. Compulsory (adj.) | अनिवार्य | Compulsary |
| 33. Conceit (n) | अभिमान | Conciet |
| 34. Conceive (v) | गर्भवती होना | Concieve |
| 35. Conscience (n) | अंतःकरण | Consceince |
| 36. Continuity (n) | निरंतरता | Continuty |
| 37. Councillor (n) | परिषद का सदस्य | Councilor |
| 38. Courageous (adj.) | निर्भीक | Couragious |
| 39. Curriculum (n) | पाठ्यक्रम | Curiculum |
| 40. Cylinder (n) | खोखला बेलन | Cylindar |
| 41. Calligraphy (n) | सुन्दर लिखने की कला | Calligrafy |
| 42. Carnivorous (adj.) | माँसाहारी | Carnivorus |
| 43. Catastrophe (n) | गहरा संकट | Catastrophy |
| 44. Charioteer (n) | सारथी | Charioter |
| 45. Chronological (adj.) | कालक्रम के अनुसार | Chorono logical |
| 46. Collaborate (v) | मिलकर कार्य करना | Colaborate |
| 47. Colossal (adj.) | विशाल | Collossal |
| 48. Commandant (n) | सैनिक अधिकारी | Commandent |
| 49. Communication (n) | संचार | Communicasion |
| 50. Compassion (n) | संवेदना | Compasion |
| 51. Concession (n) | छूट/रियायत | Concesion |
| 52. Convenience (n) | सुविधा/आराम | Conveneince |
| 53. Corroboration | समर्थन | Coroboration |
| 54. Counsellor (n) | परामर्शदाता | Counselor |
| 55. Countenance (v) | समर्थन देना | Countenence |
| 56. Covetous (adj.) | लोभी | Covetious |
| 57. Customary (adj.) | रीति रिवाज के अनुसार | Customery |

[D]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Daniel (n) | सच्चा न्यायकर्ता | Daneil |
| 2. Deficiency (n) | अभाव | Defeciency |
| 3. Deteriorate (v) | खराब होना | Deterriorate |
| 4. Diabetes (n) | मधुमेह | Diabeties |
| 5. Dialogue (n) | संवाद | Dilouge |
| 6. Diaphragm (n) | मध्यपट | Diaphram |
| 7. Diarrhoea (n) | अतिसार | Diarrhoae |
| 8. Dictionary (n) | शब्दकोश | dictionery |
| 9. Diesel (n) | डीजल-तेल | Deisel |
| 10. Disciplinary (adj.) | अनुशासनीय | Disciplinery |
| 11. Discourteous (adj.) | असभ्य | Discourtious |
| 12. Dysentery (n) | पेचिस | Dysentary |
| 13. Derogatory (adj.) | अपमानजनक | Derogatary |
| 14. Differentiate (v) | अंतर बताना | Differensiate |
| 15. Discussion (n) | वाद विवाद | Discusion |
| 16. Distillation (n) | आसवन | Distilation |
| 17. Dyspepsia (n) | बदहजमी | Dyspepsea |

[E]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Eczema (n) | खाज | Ekzema |
| 2. Eligible (adj.) | चुने जाने योग्य | Elligible |
| 3. Encyclopedia (n) | विश्वज्ञानकोष | Encyclopedea |
| 4. Environment (n) | पातावरण | Enviroment |
| 5. Equilibrium (n) | संतुलन | Equillibrium |
| 6. Equivalent (adj.) | समतुल्य | Eqiuvalent |
| 7. Essential (adj.) | आवश्यक | Essensial |
| 8. Eucalyptus (n) | यूकलिप्टस | Ecalyptus |
| 9. Exhibition (n) | प्रदर्शन | Exibition |
| 10. Experience (n) | अनुभव | Exprience |
| 11. Earthquake (n) | भूकम्प | Earthquack |
| 12. Ecclesiastic (n) | पुरोहित | Eclesiastic |
| 13. Ecology (n) | जीव विज्ञान की वह शाखा जिसका संबंध जीवधारियों के अपने वातावरण से संबंधित आदतों से है। | Eccology |
| 14. Effeminate (adj.) | नारी जैसा, कायर | Efeminate |
| 15. Efficient (adj.) | योग्य | Efficeint |
| 16. Either (pron./adj.) | दो में से कोई एक | Ethier |
| 17. Eligibility (n) | योग्यता | Elligibility |
| 18. Emancipation (n) | मोक्ष | Emanicipation |
| 19. Embarrassment (n) | व्याकुलता | Embarassment |
| 20. Embroidery (n) | कसीदा | Embiodery |
| 21. Emission (n) | उत्सर्जन | Emision |
| 22. Emporium (n) | व्यवसाय केन्द्र | Emporrium |
| 23. Empirical (adj.) | आनुभविक | Emperical |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 24. | Encumbrance (n) | बोझ, भार | Encumbranse |
| 25. | Enthusiasm (n) | उत्साह | Enthusaism |
| 26. | Enunciation (n) | उच्चारण | Enunciasion |
| 27. | Equivocation (n) | वाक्छल | Equivocasion |
| 28. | Eradication (n) | उन्मूलन | Erradication |
| 29. | Erroneous (adj.) | अशुद्ध | Eroneous |
| 30. | Espionage (n) | जासूसी | Espoinage |
| 31. | Etiquette (n) | शिष्टाचार | Ettiquette |
| 32. | Exaggeration (n) | अतिशयोक्ति | Exageration |
| 33. | Exasperation (n) | क्रोध | Exasparation |
| 34. | Exoneration (n) | अपराध या उत्तर दायित्व से मुक्ति | Ezaneration |
| 35. | Expedient (adj.) | लाभदायक | Expedeint |

[F]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Fortieth (adj.) | चालीसवाँ | Fortith |
| 2. | Fahrenheit (n) | एक प्रकार का थर्मामीटर | Fahrenheight |
| 3. | Familiar (adj.) | परिचित | Familliar |
| 4. | Ferrous (adj.) | लोहे का | Fereous |
| 5. | Fundamental (adj.) | प्रधान | Fundamantal |
| 6. | Fermentation (n) | खमीर उठाना | Fermantation |
| 7. | Fidelity (n) | वफादारी | Fidellity |
| 8. | Futility (n) | निरर्थकता | futillity |

[G]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Garrulous (adj.) | बकवादी | Garulous |
| 2. | Generally (adv.) | प्रायः | Generaly |
| 3. | Geometrician (n | रेखागणित में प्रवीण | Geometrisian |
| 4. | Gonorrhoea (n) | सूजाक | Gonorhoea |
| 5. | Governor (n) | राज्यपाल | Governer |
| 6. | Grammar (n) | व्याकरण | Grammeyr |
| 7. | Grasshopper (n) | झींगुर | Grasshoper |
| 8. | Guarantee (n) | जमानत | Gurantee |
| 9. | Guardian (n) | संरक्षक | Guargian |
| 10. | Gymnastic (adj.) | व्यायाम संबंधी | Gymnustic |
| 11. | Garrison (n) | छावनी | Garrition |
| 12. | Genuine (adj.) | असली | Gencein |
| 13. | Giraffe (n) | जिराफ | Girafe |
| 14. | Glutton (n) | पेटू | Gluton |
| 15. | Gorgeous (adj.) | अतिसुन्दर | Gorgious |
| 16. | Gourmand (n) | पेटू | Gourmund |
| 17. | Government (n) | सरकार | Goverment |
| 18. | Grandeur (n) | सौन्दर्य | Granduer |
| 19. | Governor (n) | राज्यपाल | Governer |
| 20. | Gratuitous (adj.) | निःशुल्क | Gratutous |
| 21. | Gynaecology (n) | स्त्रीरोग चिकित्सा | Gyneacology |

[H]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Hammer (n) | हथौड़ा | Hammar |
| 2. | Handwriting (n) | हस्तलेख | Handwritting |
| 3. | Hangar (n) | विमानशाला | Hanggar |
| 4. | Harmonium (n) | हारमोनियम | Harmoniam |
| 5. | Heavenly (adj.) | स्वर्गीय | Heavenily |
| 6. | Haemoglobin (n) | हिमोग्लोबीन | Heamoglobin |
| 7. | Haemorrhage (n) | रक्तवाहिनियों से रुधिर का स्राव | Haeamorrhage |
| 8. | Handloom (n) | हाथ से चलाने का करघा | Handloum |
| 9. | Harpoon (n) | बर्छी | Harppon |
| 10. | Heifer (n) | बछिया | Hiefer |
| 11. | Hereditary (adj.) | पैतृक | Hereditory |
| 12. | Heterodox (adj.) | नास्तिक | Hetrodox |
| 13. | Heterogeneous (adj.) | भिन्न जाति का | Hetrogeneous |
| 14. | Hippopotamus (n) | दरियायी घोड़ा | Hipopotamus |
| 15. | Homeopath (n) | होमियोपैथ चिकित्सक | Homoepath |
| 16. | Hemisphere (n) | गोलार्द्ध | Hemesphere |
| 17. | Herbivorous (adj.) | शाकाहारी | Herbivorus |
| 18. | Herdsman (n) | चरवाहा | Herdman |
| 19. | Heretically (adj.) | नास्तिकता से | Hereticaly |
| 20. | Hermitage (n) | आश्रय, कुटी | Hermitaige |
| 21. | Heritage (n) | धरोहर | Herritage |
| 22. | Hermit (n) | संन्यासी | Hermitt |
| 23. | High spirited (adj.) | वीर, साहसी | High spirrited |
| 24. | Hindrance (n) | अवरोध | Hindrence |
| 25. | Honorarium (n) | पारिश्रमिक | Honorrariam |
| 26. | Hopefully (adv) | आशा से | Hopefuly |
| 27. | Hospitality (n) | अतिथि-सत्कार | Hospittallity |
| 28. | Hygiene (n) | आरोग्य शास्त्र | Hypeine |
| 29. | Hypermetropia (n) | दूर दृष्टि | Hyper matropia |
| 30. | Hysteria (n) | बदहोशी | Hysterea |

[I]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Idealism (n) | आदर्शवाद | Idialism |
| 2. | Ignorance (n) | अनभिज्ञता | Iggnorance |
| 3. | Immobile (adj.) | गतिहीन | Imobile |
| 4. | Influenza (n) | संक्रामक ज्वर | Influnza |
| 5. | Inflammable (adj.) | ज्वलनशील | Inflamable |
| 6. | Intelligence (n) | ज्ञान | Inteligence |
| 7. | Interview (n) | साक्ष्यपरीक्षा | Interveiw |
| 8. | Identically (adv) | समान रूप में | Identicaly |
| 9. | Ignominious (adj.) | कलंकी | Ignominous |
| 10. | Illegally (adv) | अवैध ढंग से | Illegaly |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 11. Illumination (n) | चमक | Illuminassion |
| 12. Immediately (adv.) | तुरन्त | Immediatly |
| 13. Immovability (n) | स्थिरता | Immovabillity |
| 14. Impiety (n) | अधर्म | Impeity |
| 15. Incessantly (adv) | सर्वदा | Incessantly |
| 16. Incipient (adj.) | प्रारंभिक | Incipeint |
| 17. Inconvenience (n) | असुविधा | Inconveneience |
| 18. Inferiority (n) | न्यूनता, हीनता | Inferoirity |
| 19. Inflammation (n) | उत्तेजना, ताप, सूजन | Inflamation |
| 20. Iniquitous (adj.) | पापी | Inquitous |
| 21. Inquietude (n) | मानसिक या शारीरिक शांति का अभाव | Inquieitude |
| 22. Insipient (adj.) | बुद्धिहीन | Insipeint |
| 23. Insobriety (n) | असंयम | Insobreiy |
| 24. Insociant (adj.) | सावधान | Insociant |
| 25. Instantaneous (adj.) | तुरंत | Instenteneous |
| 26. Intermission (n) | रुकावट | Intermision |
| 27. Invertebrate (adj.) | बिना रीढ़वाला | Invertibrate |
| 28. Irruption (n) | विस्फोट | Irrupsion |
| 29. Isochromatic (adj.) | एक ही रंग का | Isochoromatic |

[J]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Jaundice (n) | पीलिया रोग | Jaundise |
| 2. Jurisdiction (n) | क्षेत्राधिकार | Juridiction |
| 3. Judiciary (n) | न्यायपालिका | Judisiary |
| 4. Jubilee (n) | जयन्ती | Jubbilee |
| 5. Journey (n) | यात्रा | Journy |
| 6. Junction (n) | संधि | Juncsion |
| 7. Jeopardous (adj.) | आपत्तियुक्त | Jeopardus |
| 8. Jewellery (n) | आभूषण | Jewellary |
| 9. Joinchure (n) | विधवा स्त्री की सगाई | Joinchure |
| 10. Journalist (n) | पत्रकार | Journelist |
| 11. Joyfully (adv) | आनंदपूर्वक | Joyfuly |
| 12. Judiciary (n) | न्यायाधीशों का समुदाय | Judisiary |
| 13. Juniority (n) | लघुपन | Juniority |
| 14. Jurisdiction (n) | क्षेत्र अधिकार | Juridiction |
| 15. Jussive (adj.) | आज्ञार्थक | Jusive |

[K]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Kennel (n) | कुत्ते का घर | Kenel |
| 2. Kerosene (n) | मिट्टी तेल | Keroscene |
| 3. Knotting (n) | गठबंधन | Knoting |
| 4. Knowledge (n) | ज्ञान | Knowlege |
| 5. Kettleful (adj.) | केतली भरकर | Kettlefull |
| 6. Kidnapping (n) | बाल अपहरण | Kidnaping |
| 7. Knavishly (adv.) | धूर्तता से | Knavishlly |
| 8. Kitty (n) | बिल्ली का बच्चा | Kity |

[L]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Laboratory (n) | प्रयोगशाला | Labaratory |
| 2. Ladder (n) | सीढ़ी | Lader |
| 3. Lagoon (n) | दलदल | Laggoon |
| 4. Lantern (n) | लालटेन | Lantarn |
| 5. Legibility (n) | लिखने की स्पष्टता | Legibillity |
| 6. Lieutenant (n) | लेफ्टीनेन्ट | Leiutenant |
| 7. Locomotive (adj.) | चलनेवाला | Loccomotive |
| 8. Logarithm (n) | लघुगणक | Logarethm |
| 9. Luxurious (adj.) | विलासी | Luxarious |
| 10. Lactometer (n) | दूध की शुद्धता का परिमाण मापने का यंत्र | Lactometre |
| 11. Lectureship (n) | अध्यापक का पद | Lecturership |
| 12. Legendary (adj.) | पौराणिक | Legendery |
| 13. Legibility (n) | लिखने की स्पष्टता | Legibillity |
| 14. Leisure (n) | छुट्टी, फुरसत | Liesure |
| 15. Lenient (adj.) | कृपालु, दयावान | Leneint |
| 16. Librarian (n) | पुस्तकालय का अध्यक्ष | Libararian |
| 17. Liquefier (n) | गलने वाला | Liquefire |
| 18. Literature (n) | साहित्य | Litareture |
| 19. Locality (n) | स्थान | Locallity |
| 20. Locally (adv) | किसी मुख्य स्थान में | Localy |
| 21. Luscious (adj.) | स्वादिष्ट | Lusscious |
| 22. Lustful (adj.) | कामातुर | Lustfull. |
| 23. Luxuriance (n) | समृद्धि | Luxureance |
| 24. Lunatic (adj.) | पागल | Lunantic |

[M]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Machinery (n) | यंत्र का कार्य | Machinary |
| 2. Magazine (n) | पत्रिका | Megazine |
| 3. Magistrate (n) | मैजिस्ट्रेट | Magistrat |
| 4. Maintenance (n) | जीविका | Maintanance |
| 5. Malaria (n) | मलेरिया | Mallaria |
| 6. Malleable (adj.) | लचीला | Mallaeble |
| 7. Malnutrition (n) | अपर्याप्त पोषण | Mallnutrition |
| 8. Mammal (n) | स्तनधारी | Mamal |
| 9. Manageable (adj.) | प्रबंध करने योग्य | Managaeble |
| 10. Manganese (n) | मैंगनीज | Menganese |
| 11. Marriage (n) | विवाह | Marraige |
| 12. Marvellous (adj.) | अद्भुत | Marvelous |
| 13. Massage (n) | अंगमर्दन | Message |
| 14. Mathematics (n) | गणित | Mathmatics |
| 15. Meagre (adj.) | थोड़ा | Maegre |
| 16. Meritorious (adj.) | प्रशंसा | Meritorrious |
| 17. Meteor (n) | उल्कापात | Metoer |
| 18. Milestone (n) | दूरीसूचक पत्थर | Millstone |
| 19. Militant (adj.) | युद्ध में लगा हुआ | Millitant |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 20. | Millenarian *(adj.)* | हजारवर्ष का | Millenerian |
| 21. | Millennium *(n)* | एक हजार वर्ष का समय | Millenium |
| 22. | Millionaire *(n)* | लखपति | Millioniare |
| 23. | Misbehaviour *(n)* | दुराचार | Misbehaviour |
| 24. | Missile *(n)* | यंत्र | Misile |
| 25. | Mistress *(n)* | गृहिणी | Mistress |
| 26. | Mysterious *(adj.)* | गुप्त | Mystrious |
| 27. | Magnanimity *(n)* | उदारता | Magnanemity |
| 28. | Magnificent *(adj.)* | महाप्रतापी | Magnificient |
| 29. | Maleficent *(adj.)* | अपकारी | Maleficient |
| 30. | Manageable *(adj.)* | प्रबंध करने योग्य | Managable |
| 31. | Manufacture *(n)* | कारीगरी | Manufactur |
| 32. | Massacre *(n)* | मनुष्य संहार | Masacre |
| 33. | Mattress *(n)* | तोशक | Matress |
| 34. | Mausoleum *(n)* | समाधि, कब्र | Mausolim |
| 35. | Melancholy *(n/adj.)* | उदासीनता, उदास | Malencholy |
| 36. | Meliorate *(v)* | सुधारना | Melliorate |
| 37. | Microscope *(n)* | सूक्ष्मदर्शी | Microsope |
| 38. | Migratory *(n)* | भ्रमणकारी | Migratery |
| 39. | Miraculous *(adj.)* | चमत्कारी | Miraculus |
| 40. | Miscellaneous *(adj.)* | मिश्रित ढंग का | Miscllaneous |
| 41. | Mischievous *(adj.)* | उपद्रवी | Mischeivous |
| 42. | Moderately *(adv.)* | परिमित रूप से | Modernately |
| 43. | Moustache *(n)* | मूँछ | Moustash |
| 44. | Movability *(n)* | चलायमान अवस्था | Movabillity |
| 45. | Munificent *(adj.)* | उदार, दानी | Munificient |
| 46. | Museum *(n)* | अजायबघर | Musinm |

[N]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Naughty *(adj.)* | नटखट | Noughty |
| 2. | Necessaran *(n)* | दैववादी | Necesarian |
| 3. | Necessity *(n)* | आवश्यकता | Necesity |
| 4. | Neigh *(v)* | हिनहिनाना | Niegh |
| 5. | Negotiator *(n)* | मध्यस्थ | Negociator |
| 6. | Neighbour *(n)* | पड़ोसी | Nieghbour |
| 7. | Neither (adv) | दोनों में से कोई भी नहीं | Niether |
| 8. | Nonagenarian *(n)* | नब्बे वर्ष का व्यक्ति | Nonegenarian |
| 9. | Nuisance *(n)* | बाधा | Nuissance |
| 10. | Nursery *(n)* | जच्चीरा | Nurssory |
| 11. | Nauseous *(adj.)* | घृणाजनक | Nausious |
| 12. | Necessary *(adj.)* | आवश्यक | Necesary |
| 13. | Needful *(adj.)* | आवश्यक | Needfull |
| 14. | Ninety *(n)* | नब्बे | Ninty |
| 15. | Ninth *(n)* | नवाँ | Nineth |
| 16. | Notoriety *(n)* | दुर्नाम | Notoreity |

[O]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Obsolete *(adj.)* | अप्रचलित | Obsolite |
| 2. | Occasional *(adj.)* | कभी कभी | Occassional |
| 3. | Occupation *(n)* | व्यवसाय | Occupaision |
| 4. | Octagon *(n)* | अष्टभुज | Octaggon |
| 5. | Octennial *(adj.)* | आठ वर्ष में होने वाला | Octenial |
| 6. | Omniscient *(adj.)* | त्रिकालदर्शी | Omnisceint |
| 7. | Omnivorous *(adj.)* | सर्वभक्षी | Omnivorus |
| 8. | Orchestra *(n)* | ऑरकेस्ट्रा | Orchestara |
| 9. | Orphanage *(n)* | अनाथालय | Orphannage |
| 10. | Obedient *(adj.)* | आज्ञाकारी | Obediant |
| 11. | Obstreperous *(adj.)* | झगड़ालू | Obstrepirous |
| 12. | Occurrence *(n)* | घटना | Occurence |
| 13. | Octogenarian *(n)* | अस्सी साल की उम्र का मनुष्य | Octogenarrian |
| 14. | Omission *(n)* | लोप, भूल | Omision |
| 15. | Omnivorous *(adj.)* | सर्वभक्षी | Omnivotus |
| 16. | Opponent *(n)* | शत्रु | Oponent |
| 17. | Opportunity *(n)* | सुअवसर | Oportunity |
| 18. | Oppression *(n)* | निर्दयता | Oppresion |
| 19. | Opprobrium *(n)* | अपयश | Oprobrium |
| 20. | Oppugnance *(n)* | विरोध | Oppugnence |
| 21. | Ordinarily (adv) | साधारण रूप से | Ordinarilly |
| 22. | Oriental *(adj.)* | प्राचीन | oreintal |
| 23. | Originally (adv) | मौलिक रूप से | Originaly |
| 24. | Oscillation *(n)* | कम्पन | Oscilation |
| 25. | Oubliette *(n)* | गुप्त बन्दीगृह | Obliette |
| 26. | Outrageous *(adj.)* | निर्लज्ज | Outragious |
| 27. | Ovarisous *(adj.)* | अंडाधारण करने वाला | Ovareous |
| 28. | Overseer *(n)* | निरीक्षण करने वाला | Oversear |
| 29. | Oviferous *(adj.)* | अंडा देने वाला | Oviferus |
| 30. | Owned *(adj.)* | स्वीकृत | Ownd |

[P]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Paraffin *(n)* | पैराफीन | Parafin |
| 2. | Paragraph *(n)* | अनुच्छेद | Parragraph |
| 3. | Parallelogram *(n)* | समानान्तर | Paralelogram |
| 4. | Parameter *(n)* | गणित में स्थिर में राशि | Parametre |
| 5. | Passenger *(n)* | यात्री | Passanger |
| 6. | Passport *(n)* | विदेश गमनपत्र | Pasport |
| 7. | Pasteurization *(n)* | कृमिनाश करने की विधि | Pastuerization |
| 8. | Patience *(n)* | धैर्य | Pateince |
| 9. | Peculiar *(adj.)* | अनोखा | Peculear |
| 10. | Penguin *(n)* | समुद्री बगुला | Penguen |
| 11. | Pendulum *(n)* | पेंडुलम | Pendullum |
| 12. | Pepper *(n)* | मिर्च | Peper |
| 13. | Perpendicular *(adj.)* | लम्बरूप | Perpendicullor |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 14. Prosecutrix (n) | दुःख देने वाली | Proscutrix |
| 15. Petitioner (n) | निवेदक | Petetioner |
| 16. Pharmaceutical (adj.) | दवा बनाने संबंधी | Pharamaseutical |
| 17. Phenomenon (n) | प्रक्रिया | Phenomenum |
| 18. Philosophy (n) | दर्शन | phillosophy |
| 19. Phoenix (n) | अपूर्वव्यक्ति | Phonix |
| 20. Piano (n) | पियानो | Paino |
| 21. Piece (n) | टुकड़ा | Peice |
| 22. Plateau (n) | पठार | Plataeu |
| 23. Pneumonia (n) | निमोनिया | Neumonia |
| 24. Post-mortem (adj.) | पोस्टमॉर्टम | Post-martem |
| 25. Predecessor (n) | पूर्व अधिकारी | Predecesor |
| 26. Prevailing (adj.) | प्रचलित | Prevailling |
| 27. Professional (adj.) | व्यवसायी | Profesional |
| 28. Programme (n) | कार्यक्रम | Programe |
| 29. Propaganda (n) | अफवाह | Propganda |
| 30. Pyramid (n) | पिरामीड | Piramid |
| 31. Pyorrhoea (n) | पायरिया | Phorhoea |
| 32. Pancreas (n) | अग्न्याशय | Pancrias |
| 33. Parachute (n) | हवाई जहाज से उतरने का छाता | parashute |
| 34. Partially (adv) | आंशिक रूप से | Partialy |
| 35. Passionate (adj.) | कामुक, क्रोधी | Pasionate |
| 36. Pedestrian (n) | पैदल चलने वाला | Pedistrian |
| 37. Pensionary (n) | पेनशन लेने वाला | Pensionery |
| 38. Percipient (adj.) | ग्रहण करने योग्य | Percipiant |
| 39. Perennial (n/adj) | वर्षभर बराबर रहने वाला | Percnial |
| 40. Periodical (adj.) | नियत समय पर होने वाला | Peroidical |
| 41. Permission (n) | अनुमति | Permision |
| 42. Personally (adv) | साक्षात | Personaly |
| 43. Pessimism (n) | निराशावाद | Pesimism |
| 44. Petroleum (n) | मिट्टी का तेल | Petrolium |
| 45. Petticoat (n) | लहँगा घाघरा | Peticoat |
| 46. Philistine (n) | अशिक्षित मनुष्य | Phillistine |
| 47. Philosopher (n) | दार्शनिक | Philosophor |
| 48. Physiologist (n) | शरीर-धर्म विज्ञान में निपुण | Physiollogist |
| 49. Pianist (n) | पियानो बजाने वाला | Painist |
| 50. Pilgrimage (n) | तीर्थयात्रा | Pilgremage |
| 51. Pitiful (adj.) | करुणामय | Pitifull. |
| 52. Pollination (n) | परागण | Polination |
| 53. Pomegranate (n) | अनार | Pomgranate |
| 54. Posterior (adj.) | बाद का | Posterrior |
| 55. Posthumous (adj.) | पिता के मरने के बाद उत्पन्न | Posthumus |
| 56. Postmeridian (adj.) | दोपहर के बाद | Postmerridian |
| 57. Preposterous (adj.) | असंगत | Preposterious |
| 58. Procession (n) | जुलूस | Procesion |
| 59. Professor (n) | प्राध्यापक | Profesor |
| 60. Proficient (adj.) | प्रवीण | Proficeint |
| 61. Promissory (n) | प्रतिज्ञायुक्त | Promissary |
| 62. Pronunciation (n) | उच्चारण | Pronunciasion |
| 63. Proprietor (n) | अधिकारी | Propcitor |
| 64. Protein (n) | प्रोटीन | Protien |
| 65. Provincially (adv.) | प्रान्तीय रूप में | Provincialy |
| 66. Pseudologist (n) | असत्य वक्ता | Seudologist |
| 67. Psychiatry (n) | मानसिक रोगों की चिकित्सा | Sychiatry |
| 68. Psychologist (n) | मानस शास्त्र जानने वाला | Sychologist |
| 69. Psychology (n) | मनोविज्ञान | Sychology |
| 70. Psychometry (n) | मानसिक शक्ति की माप | Sychometry |
| 71. Psychopathology (n) | मस्तिष्क के रोगों का विज्ञान | Sycho pathology |
| 72. Psychotherapeutics (n) | रोगों की मानसिक चिकित्सा | Psychotherapuetics |
| 73. Puissance (n) | पराक्रम | Puisance |
| 74. Pusillanimous (adj.) | कायर | Pusilaninous |
| 75. Pyrrhonist (n) | नास्तिक | Pyrhonist. |

## [Q]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Quarrelled (v) | झगड़ा किया | Quarreled |
| 2. Questionnaire (n) | प्रश्नों का समूह | Questionaire |
| 3. Quietly (adv.) | चुपचाप | Queitly |
| 4. Quinine (n) | कुनैन की दवा | Qunine |
| 5. Quintal (n) | क्विंटल | Quntal |
| 6. Quotation (n) | उद्धरण | Qutation |
| 7. Quotient (n) | भागफल | Quoteient |
| 8. Quitter (n) | छोड़नेवाला | Quittor |
| 9. Quiver (n) | तरकस | Quivor |
| 10. Quizzable (adj.) | हँसी के योग्य | Quizable |
| 11. Quadrangular (n) | चतुष्कोण | Quadranguler |
| 12. Quadrennial (ajd) | प्रत्येक चार वर्ष में होने वाला | Quadrenial |
| 13. Quadruped (n) | चौपाया | Quadrupted |
| 14. Qualified (adj.) | योग्य | Qualifeid |
| 15. Quarrelling (n) | झगड़ना | Quarelling |
| 16. Querimonious (adj.) | झगड़ालू | Quarimonious |
| 17. Questionary (n) | प्रश्नों का क्रम | Questionery |
| 18. Queue (n) | कतार | Quee |
| 19. Quiescence (n) | शांति | Quiesence |
| 20. Quorum (n) | सभासदों की निर्दिष्ट संख्या | Qurum |

## [R]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Rebellion (n) | राजद्रोह | Rebelion |
| 2. Receive (v) | प्राप्त करना | Recieve |
| 3. Reception (n) | सत्कार | Recepsion |
| 4. Recognition (n) | पहचान | Reloggnition |
| 5. Rectangular (adj.) | आयताकार | Rectangullar |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6. | Reindeer (n) | बारहसिंगा | Reindiar |
| 7. | Relief (n) | राहत | Releif |
| 8. | Remittance (n) | भेजा हुआ धन | Remitance |
| 9. | Remainder (n) | शेष | Remiander |
| 10. | Reservoir (n) | जलाशय | Resevor |
| 11. | Restaurant (n) | भोजनालय | Restuarant |
| 12. | Rhinoceros (n) | गैंडा | Rhinocerus |
| 13. | Ribbon (n) | फीता | Ribon |
| 14. | Righteous (adj.) | पवित्र | Rightious |
| 15. | Runner (n) | दौड़नेवाला | Runer |
| 16. | Russian (n) | रूस देश की भाषा | Rusian |
| 17. | Raingauge (n) | वर्षा का जल मापने का यंत्र | Raingage |
| 18. | Receipt (n) | रसीद | Reciept |
| 19. | Receivable (adj.) | प्राप्त करने योग्य | Recievable |
| 20. | Recession (n) | अवरोध | Recesion |
| 21. | Recipient (n/adj) | प्राप्त करने वाला | Recipeint |
| 22. | Reconnaissance (n) | अनुसंधान | Reconaissance |
| 23. | Referee (n) | निर्णायक | Refree |
| 24. | Reference (n) | सन्दर्भ, उल्लेख | Referrcnce |
| 25. | Rehearsal (adj.) | नाटक का दुबारा वर्णन | Rehersal |
| 26. | Reliance (n) | विश्वास | Relience |
| 27. | Relief (n) | समाधान, गरीबों को सहायता | Releif |
| 28. | Remembrance (n) | यादगार | Remembrence |
| 29. | Remissible (Adj.) | देने योग्य | Remisible |
| 30. | Remittance (n) | भेजा हुआ धन | Remitance |
| 31. | Renaissance (n) | कला कौशल तथा विद्या की जागृति का काल | Renaisance |
| 32. | Repetition (n) | दुहराव | Repeatition |
| 33. | Requirement (n) | आकांक्षा, माँग | Requirrement |
| 34. | Requisition (n) | प्रार्थना, माँग | Requissition |
| 35. | Reservoir (n) | जलाशय | Reservior |
| 36. | Resourcefully (adv.) | साधनपूर्णता से | Resoarcefuly |
| 37. | Responsibility (n) | जवाबदेही | Responsibillity |
| 38. | Retrievable (adj.) | सुधारने योग्य | Retreivable |
| 39. | Rhetorical (adj.) | आलंकारिक | Rehetorical |
| 40. | Rheumatics (n) | गठिया के रोगी | Rhuematics |
| 41. | Rhombus (n) | विषमकोण समचतुर्भुज | Rombus |

[S]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Scavenger (n) | मेहतर | Scavanger |
| 2. | Scheme (n) | योजना | Sceem |
| 3. | Science (n) | विज्ञान | Secince |
| 4. | Scissors (p.n.) | कैंची | Scissor |
| 5. | Scoundrel (n) | दुष्ट | Scoundral |
| 6. | Scribble (n) | अस्पष्ट लेख | Scrible |
| 7. | Sculpture (n) | मूर्ति बनाने की कला | Sculpchure |
| 8. | Secretarial (adj.) | मंत्री संबंधी | Secreterial |
| 9. | Secretary (n) | सचिव | Secretery |
| 10. | Seismologist (n) | भूकम्प-विज्ञान में निपुण | Siesmologist |
| 11. | Seizor (n) | हरण करने वाला | Siezor |
| 12. | Consciousness (adj.) | आत्मज्ञान | Conciousness |
| 13. | Sensibility (n) | चेतना | Sensibillity |
| 14. | Septennial (adj.) | सात वर्ष में एक बार होने वाला | Septenial |
| 15. | Siege (n) | अवरोध/घेरा | Seige |
| 16. | Skeleton (n) | कंकाल | Skelton |
| 17. | Sluggish (adj.) | आलसी | Slugish |
| 18. | Sober (n) | शांत | Sobber |
| 19. | Sovereign (adj.) | श्रेष्ठ/प्रधान | Soveriegn |
| 20. | Spectrum (n) | स्पेक्ट्रम | Spectrom |
| 21. | Statistics (n) | सांख्यिकी | Statics |
| 22. | Stethoscope (n) | स्टेथोस्कोप | Stethouscope |
| 23. | Stereo (n) | डले हुए टाइप की तख्ती | Stared |
| 24. | Still (adj.) | शांत | Stil |
| 25. | Subsequence (n) | अनुगमन | Subsquence |
| 26. | Successor (n) | वारिस | Sucessor |
| 27. | Sufficient (adj.) | पर्याप्त | Sufficeint |
| 28. | Summons (n) | बुलावा/सम्मन | Sumons |
| 29. | Superintendent (n) | निरीक्षक | Superinetendant |
| 30. | Superstitious (adj.) | अंधविश्वासी | Superstious |
| 31. | Supposition (n) | कल्पना | Suposition |
| 32. | Surrender (n) | आत्मसमर्पण | Surnendor |
| 33. | Swimming (n) | तैरने की कला | Swimming |
| 34. | Symmetry (n) | समरूपता | Symetry |
| 35. | Synonym (n) | पर्यायवाची शब्द | Synonim |
| 36. | Satellite (n) | उपग्रह | Satelite |
| 37. | Scriptorium (n) | लेखनगृह | Scriptorriurm |
| 38. | Secretariate (n) | सचिवालय | Secretarriate |
| 39. | Seizure (n) | अचानक आक्रमण | Scigure |
| 40. | Separate (adj.) | अलग | seperate |
| 41. | Septuagenarian (n) | सत्तर साल का मनुष्य | septugenarian |
| 42. | Serviceable (adj.) | काम में आने वाला | Servicable |
| 43. | Sexennial (adj.) | प्रत्येक छठे वर्ष पर होने वाला | Sexenial |
| 44. | Sexagenarian (n) | साठ वर्ष का मनुष्य | Sexagennarian |
| 45. | Short witted (adj.) | कम बुद्धिवाला | Short withed |
| 46. | Simultaneous (adj.) | समकालीन | Simul tanious |
| 47. | Sociology (n) | समाजशास्त्र | Sociollogy |
| 48. | Solemnly (adv) | गंभीरता से | Solemly |
| 49. | Solitarian (n) | संन्यासी | Solitarrian |
| 50. | Species (n) | जाति, प्रकार | Spacies |
| 51. | Squirrel (n) | गिलहरी | Squirel |
| 52. | Statuesque (adj.) | मूर्ति के समान | Statusque |
| 53. | Stenographer (n) | सांकेतिक चिन्ह में लिखने वाला | Stenographor |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 54. Stimulating (adj.) | उत्तेजक | Stimullating |
| 55. Strategy (n) | युद्ध कौशल | Stratgy |
| 56. Subsequent (adj.) | आगामी | Subsiquent |
| 57. Subsidiary (adj.) | अतिरिक्त | Subsidiory |
| 58. Summation (n) | योग | Sumation |
| 59. Supposition (n) | कल्पना | Supositon |
| 60. Surveillance (n) | निरीक्षण | Survellance |
| 61. Swelling (ajd) | सूजन | Sweling |
| 62. Swimming (n) | तैरने की कला | Swiming |

[T]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Tactician (n) | युद्धविद्या में चतुर | Tactisian |
| 2. Talkies (n) | बोलती-चलती तस्वीर | Talkes |
| 3. Tantamount (adj.) | समान/तुल्य | Tentamount |
| 4. Tattoo (n) | गोदना | Tatoo |
| 5. Telegram (n) | टेलीग्राम | Telegramme |
| 6. Temperature (n) | तापक्रम | Temprature |
| 7. Terrific (adj.) | भयंकर | Terific |
| 8. Testimonial (adj.) | प्रमाण संबंधी | Testimmonial |
| 9. Theatre (n) | नाट्यशाला | Theater |
| 10. Theorem (n) | प्रमेय | Theorom |
| 11. Thief (n) | चोर | Theif |
| 12. Thermometer (n) | तापमापक यंत्र | Tharmometre |
| 13. Through (prep) | द्वारा | Thorough |
| 14. Thyroid (adj.) | ढाल के आकार का | Thyroed |
| 15. Tiffin (n) | तीसरे पहर का जलपान | Tifin |
| 16. Tiresome (adj.) | कष्टकारक | Tirsome |
| 17. Tobacco (n) | तम्बाकू | Tobaco |
| 18. Tolerance (n) | सहनशीलता | Tolerence |
| 19. Tomorrow (adj.) | कल | Tomorow |
| 20. Toothache (n) | दाँत दर्द | Toothake |
| 21. Torrent (n) | धारा/जलप्रवाह | Torent |
| 22. torture (n) | यातना | Torchure |
| 23. Tradesman (n) | व्यापारी | Trademan |
| 24. Traitor (n) | विश्वासघाती | Traiter |
| 25. Training (n) | प्रशिक्षण | Trainning |
| 26. Tranquilize (v) | आश्वासन देना | Tranquilize |
| 27. Transcend (v) | बढ़ना | Transcand |
| 28. Transient (adj.) | अनित्य | Transcient |
| 29. Translucent (adj.) | अर्द्ध-पारदर्शक | Translusent |
| 30. Transmission (n) | पहुँचाने या भेजने का कार्य | Transmision |
| 31. Transparent (adj.) | पारदर्शक | Transparrent |
| 32. Trapezium (n) | समलंब चतुर्भुज | Trapeziam |
| 33. Tremendous (adj.) | भयंकर | Trememdus |
| 34. Triangle (n) | त्रिभुज | Traingle |
| 35. Trespasser (n) | बिना अधिकार प्रवेश करने वाला | Trepasser |

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 36. Triumph (n) | विजय/प्रसन्नता | Truimph |
| 37. Troublesome (adj.) | कष्टकारक | Troublsome |
| 38. Tunnel (n) | सुरंग | Tunel |
| 39. Typhoid (n) | एक प्रकार का ज्वर | Typhide |
| 40. Tyrant (n) | उपद्रवी | Tyrrant |
| 41. Territory (n) | प्रदेश | Teritory |
| 42. Theoretical (adj.) | मानसिक | Theoretical |
| 43. Thesaurus (n) | विश्वकोश | The sourus |
| 44. Thunderous (adj.) | गड़गड़ाहट उत्पन्न करने वाला | Thundorous |
| 45. Tiresome (adj.) | कष्टकारक, थकाने वाला | Tirre some |
| 46. Tournament (n) | क्रीड़ायुद्ध, दंगल | Tounament |
| 47. Trapezium (n) | समलंब चतुर्भुज | Trapzium |
| 48. Treasure (n) | खजाना | Tresure |
| 49. Tributary (n) | सहायक | Tributory |
| 50. Triennial (adj.) | तीन साल पर होने वाला | Trienial |
| 51. Trigonometric (n) | त्रिकोणमिति | Trignometry |
| 52. Tuition (n) | अध्यापन | Tution |

[U]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Ulterior (adj.) | दूर का | Ulterrior |
| 2. Umbrella (n) | छाता | Umbrela |
| 3. Unbidden (adj.) | बिना आज्ञा का | Unbiden |
| 4. Unless (con.) | यदि नहीं/सिवाय | Unles |
| 5. Until (conj.) | जबतक | Untill |

[V]

| S.N. Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Vaccination (n) | टीका | Vacination |
| 2. Vacuum (n) | शून्यस्थान | Vacum |
| 3. Variability (n) | अस्थिरता | Variabillity |
| 4. Vaporization (n) | वाष्पीकरण | Vapporization |
| 5. Vegetarian (n) | शाकाहारी | Vagetarian |
| 6. Vehicle (n) | गाड़ी | Vehcle |
| 7. Velocity (n) | गति | Velosity |
| 8. Vermilion (n) | सिन्दूर | Vermillion |
| 9. Vertebrate (n) | हड्डीवाला प्राणी | Vertabrate |
| 10. Veterinary (adj.) | पशु चिकित्सा संबंधी | Vetrinary |
| 11. Vigorous (adj.) | ओजस्वी | Vigorus |
| 12. Villain (n) | बदमाश | Villan |
| 13. Violence (n) | उत्पात | Voilence |
| 14. Virtue (n) | गुण | Virtu |
| 15. Viscosity (n) | श्यानता | Viscocity |
| 16. Visibility (n) | प्रत्यक्षता | Visibillity |
| 17. Volcanic (adj.) | ज्वालामुखी से संबंधित | Volcanik |
| 18. Volunteer (n) | स्वयंसेवी | Voluntear |
| 19. Vulgarian (n) | असभ्य | Vulgarrian |
| 20. Voyage (n) | समुद्री यात्रा | Voyag |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



[W]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Waitress *(n)* | सेविका | Waitres |
| 2. | Warfare *(n)* | संग्राम | Warfair |
| 3. | Warrior *(n)* | योद्धा | Warior |
| 4. | Weight *(n)* | भार | Wieght |
| 5. | Welcome *(adj.)* | स्वागत | Welcom |
| 6. | Whittle *(n)* | बड़ी छुरी | Whitle |
| 7. | Willing *(adj.)* | इच्छुक | Wiling |
| 8. | Witty *(adj.)* | व्यंग्यपूर्ण | Wity |
| 9. | Writing *(n)* | लिखावट | Writting |
| 10. | Written *(adj.)* | लिखा हुआ | Writen |

[Y]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Yellow *(adj.)* | पीला | Yelow |
| 2. | Yeoman *(n)* | जमींदार | Yoeman |
| 3. | Yield *(v)* | उत्पन्न करना | Yeild |
| 4. | Youthsome *(adj.)* | यौवन | Youthesome |

[Z]

| S.N. | Right | Meaning | Wrong |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Zein *(n)* | प्रोटीन | Zien |
| 2. | Zigzagged *(adj.)* | मोड़ा हुआ | Zigzaged |

Miscellaneous words

| S.N. | Right | Wrong |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Achieve | Acheive |
| 2. | Monastery | Monastory |
| 3. | Boundary | Boundory |
| 4. | Height | Hieght |
| 5. | Deceive | Decieve |
| 6. | Brilliance | Briliance |
| 7. | Homogeneous | Homogenous |
| 8. | Illiterate | Iliterate |
| 9. | Addiction | Adication |
| 10. | Miscellaneous | Miscellanous |
| 11. | Contemporary | Contemporairy |
| 12. | Apology | A ppology |
| 13. | Memorandum | Memorandom |
| 14. | Anniversary | Aniversary |
| 15. | Conqueror | Conquerer |
| 16. | Mischievous | Mischeivous |
| 17. | Personnel | Personel |
| 18. | Aquarium | Acquarrium |
| 19. | Beginner | Beginer |
| 20. | Auxiliary | Auxilliary |
| 21. | Bulletin | Buletin |
| 22. | Government | Goverment |
| 23. | Grateful | Gratful |
| 24. | Handkerchief | Handkercheif |
| 25. | Opening | Openning |
| 26. | Alright | Allright |
| 27. | Neighbor | Nieghbour |
| 28. | Daffodils | Daffodills |
| 29. | Jewellery | Jewellary |
| 30. | Guidance | Guidence |
| 31. | Occasion | Ocassion |
| 32. | Harmonium | Harmoniom |
| 33. | Maintenance | Maintenence |
| 34. | Aeroplane | Airoplane |
| 35. | Nuisance | Nuissance |
| 36. | Benefitted | Benefited |
| 37. | Honorary | Honourary |
| 38. | Ceiling | Cieling |
| 39. | Controllor | Controller |
| 40. | Headquarters | Head quaters |
| 41. | Mischief | Mischeif |
| 42. | Archaeology | Archaoelogy |
| 43. | Restaurant | Restuarant |
| 44. | Curriculum | Curriculom |
| 45. | Altogether | Alltogether |
| 46. | Receipt | Reciept |
| 47. | Successful | Succesfull |
| 48. | Ninth | Nineth |
| 49. | Variety | Vareity |
| 50. | Acquaintance | Acquiantance |
| 51. | Mediterranean | Mediteranian |
| 52. | Glitter | Gliter |
| 53. | Believe | Beleive |
| 54. | Constellation | Constelation |
| 55. | Centenary | Centenory |
| 56. | Spoonful | Spoonfull |
| 57. | Anaesthetic | Ancasthetic |
| 58. | Tuition | Tution |
| 59. | Ceremony | Ceremoney |
| 60. | Woollen | Wollen |
| 61. | Violent | Viollent |
| 62. | Unforgettable | Unforgetable |
| 63. | Sovereignty | Sovereignity |
| 64. | Satellite | Sattellite |
| 65. | Omitted | Omited |
| 66. | Immediately | Immidiately |
| 67. | Humorous | Humourous |
| 68. | Furniture | Furniture |
| 69. | Ancestral | Ancesatral |
| 70. | Nonessential | Nonesential |
| 71. | Gatekeeper | Gatekiper |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 72. Aggregate | Agregate |
| 73. Collaborate | Colaborate |
| 74. Exaggerate | Exagerate |
| 75. Separate | Separrate |
| 76. Repetition | Repitition |
| 77. Allusion | Allussion |
| 78. Collision | Collission |
| 79. Anonymous | Anonymus |
| 80. Miraculous | Miraculus |
| 81. Synonymous | Synonymus |
| 82. Auspicious | Auspiceous |
| 83. Injurious | Injureous |
| 84. Luxurious | Luxurous |
| 85. Contemptuous | Contemptous |
| 86. Courteous | Courtious |
| 87. Simultaneous | Simultanious |
| 88. Disguise | Disgise |
| 89. Molecular | Molcular |
| 90. Muscular | Muscullar |
| 91. Diameter | Diametre |
| 92. Traveller | Traveler |
| 93. Barrister | Barister |
| 94. Lecturer | Lecturere |
| 95. Messenger | Messanger |
| 96. Ancestor | Ancesttor |
| 97. Bachelor | Bacheler |
| 98. Chancellor | Chanceller |
| 99. Emperor | Emperer |
| 100. Professor | Professer |
| 101. Superior | Supperior |
| 102. Abundance | Abundence |
| 103. Acceptance | Acceptence |
| 104. Alliance | Aliance |
| 105. Appearance | Apearance |
| 106. Arrogance | Arogance |
| 107. Reliance | Relliance |
| 108. Convenience | Conveneince |
| 109. Patience | Pateince |
| 110. Indispensable | Insdispenseble |
| 111. Available | Availlable |
| 112. Inflammable | Inflamable |
| 113. Innumerable | Inumerable |
| 114. Annual | Anual |
| 115. Cannibal | Canibal |
| 116. Leisure | Liesure |
| 117. Although | Allthrough |
| 118. Colleague | Collaegue |

| S.N. Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 119. Business | Bussiness |
| 120. Changeable | Changable |
| 121. Conceive | Concieve |
| 122. Committee | Comittee |
| 123. Dictionary | Dictionery |
| 124. Dining | Dinning |
| 125. Communism | Comunism |
| 126. Embarrass | Embarass |
| 127. Enthusiastic | Enthusiatic |
| 128. Epidemic | Epidmic |
| 129. Especially | Especially |
| 130. Excellence | Excelence |
| 131. Foreign | Foriegn |
| 132. Geography | Goegraphy |
| 133. Palaeolithic | Palaoelithic |
| 134. Grievance | Greivance |
| 135. Height | Hieght |
| 136. Imaginary | Imaginery |
| 137. Intelligence | Inteligence |
| 138. Necessary | Necesary |
| 139. Ninety | Ninty |
| 140. Naturally | Naturaly |
| 141. Occasionally | Occasionaly |
| 142. Opportunity | Oportunity |
| 143. Parliament | Parliamant |
| 144. Phenomenon | Phenomennon |
| 145. Physician | Physisian |
| 146. Propeller | Proppeller |
| 147. Recognize | Recogenize |
| 148. Remembrance | Remembrence |
| 149. Renaissance | Reniassance |
| 150. Running | Runing |
| 151. Satisfactorily | Satisfactorilly |
| 152. Scarcely | Scarcelly |
| 153. Sincerely | Sincerelly |
| 154. Specimen | Speciman |
| 155. Surgeon | Surgoen |
| 156. Usually | Usualy |
| 157. Valley | Vallay |
| 158. Cruelly | Crully |
| 159. Travelling | Traveling |
| 160. Beginning | Begining |
| 161. Swimming | Swiming |
| 162. Sitting | Siting |
| 163. Digging | Diging |
| 164. Quarrelling | Quarreling |
| 165. Planning | Planing |
| 166. Getting | Getting |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 167. Jeweller | Jewellor |
| 168. Advantageous | Advantagous |
| 169. Regrettable | Regretable |
| 170. Application | Aplication |
| 171. Explosion | Explossion |
| 172. Essential | Essenttial |
| 173. Residential | Residensial |
| 174. Bravery | Braverry |
| 175. Scenery | Scennery |
| 176. Military | Millitary |
| 177. Secondary | Secondery |
| 178. Machinery | Machinary |
| 179. Surgery | Surgary |
| 180. Missionary | Missionery |
| 181. Geometry | Geomatry |
| 182. Palaeolithic | Palacoelithic |
| 183. Skillful | Skifull |
| 184. Arithmetic | Arthmetic |
| 185. Museum | Musuem |
| 186. Syllable | Sylable |
| 187. Almighty | Allmighty |
| 188. Biscuit | Biscuite |
| 189. Bridegroom | Bridgroom |
| 190. Challenge | Challange |
| 191. Competition | Competition |
| 192. Cigarette | Cigarete |
| 193. Chief | Cheif |
| 194. Fulfil | Fullfil |
| 195. Fulfilled | Fulfilled |
| 196. Interview | Interveiw |
| 197. Magistrate | Magistrat |
| 198. Message | Messege |
| 199. Obedience | Obedeince |
| 200. Occurrence | Occurence |
| 201. Possession | Possesion |
| 202. Poisonous | Poisenous |
| 203. Saturday | Saturday |
| 204. Soldier | Soldeir |
| 205. Winning | Wining |
| 206. Stopped | Stoped |
| 207. Spelling | Speling |
| 208. Carried | Carreid |
| 209. Slipped | Sliped |
| 210. Permitted | Permited |
| 211. Prioritise | Prioratise |
| 212. Obnoxious | Obnoxcious |
| 213. Penetrate | Pennetrate |

| S.N. Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 214. Passageway | Passagway |
| 215. Report | Repport |
| 216. Tempestuous | Tempastuous |
| 217. Weather | Weathere |
| 218. Communicable | Communiceble |
| 219. Capricious | Caprisious |
| 220. Allegory | Alegary |
| 221. Veterinary | Veteinary |
| 222. Gaiety | gaitey |
| 223. Assessment | Assesment |
| 224. Synonymous | Synonimous |
| 225. Contempt | Contampt |
| 226. Tolerant | Tolerent |
| 227. Pursuit | Persait |
| 228. Weightage | Waitage |
| 229. Execution | Excution |
| 230. Excitement | Excitment |
| 231. Extraction | Extrection |
| 232. External | Externel |
| 233. Extrovert | Extrovart |
| 234. Exact | Exect |
| 235. Expect | Expact |
| 236. Excite | Exite |
| 237. Impact | Impect |
| 238. Entrusting | Intruisting |
| 239. Interesting | Intersting |
| 340. Entertaining | Entertening |
| 241. Supremacy | Supremecy |
| 242. Surfeit | Surfiet |
| 243. Surrender | Surender |
| 244. Spectroscope | Spactroscope |
| 245. Spinach | Spinache |
| 246. Splendid | Splaended |
| 247. Sacrosanct | Sacrosant |
| 248. Sacrificial | Sacrificeal |
| 249. Sabotage | Sabotege |
| 250. Description | Discription |
| 251. Dissemination | Dessemination |
| 252. Dissertation | Dessertatin |
| 253. Occurrence | Occurence |
| 254. Hurricane | Hurrecane |
| 255. Humanitarianism | Humanetarianism |
| 256. Octogenarian | Octogenarean |
| 257. Hullabaloo | Hulabaloo |
| 258. Conscience | Consience |
| 259. Magnificent | Magnificient |
| 260. Renaissance | Rennaissance |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| S.N. Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 261. Irreparable | Irreparrable |
| 262. Superfluous | Superflous |
| 263. Pharmaceutical | Pharmaceautical |
| 264. Recommendation | Reccommendation |
| 265. Necessity | Neccessity |
| 266. Address | Adrress |
| 267. Refrigerator | Refridgerator |
| 268. Reminiscence | Reminiscience |
| 269. visionary | Visionery |
| 270. Scenery | Scenary |
| 271. Cooperate | Coperate |
| 272. Useful | Usefull |
| 273. Fulfill | Fullfil |
| 274. Fabulous | Fabbulous |
| 275. Equitable | Equittable |
| 276. Travelling | Traveling |
| 277. Itinerary | Itinerery |
| 278. Necessary | Necessery |
| 279. Temporary | Temparory |
| 280. Apology | Appology |
| 281. Psychology | Psycholagy |
| 282. Archaelogy | Archaeology |
| 283. Appropriate | Appropreate |
| 284. Associate | Asociate |
| 285. Accomplice | Acomplice |
| 286. Accompaniment | Acompaniment |
| 287. Accomplishment | Acomplishment |
| 288. Accommodation | Accomodation |
| 289. Replacement | Replacment |
| 290. Replacing | Replaceing |
| 291. Freight | Frieght |
| 292. Protein | Protien |
| 293. Relieve | Releive |
| 294. Communication | Comunication |
| 295. Committee | Committe |
| 296. Ameliorate | Amelirate |
| 297. Disastrous | Disasterous |
| 298. Cruelty | Cruelity |
| 299. Beginning | Begining |
| 300. Requirement | Requirment |
| 301. Coinning | Coining |
| 302. Running | Runing |
| 303. Misdemeanour | Misdemeanur |
| 304. Harassment | Harasment |

| S.N. Right | Wrong |
|---|---|
| 305. Auspicious | Auspicious |
| 306. Capricious | Capracious |
| 307. Infallible | Infalible |
| 308. Occurrence | Occurence |
| 309. Subservient | Subserveint |
| 310. Negotiation | Negosiation |
| 311. Hesitancy | Hesitency |
| 312. Personel | Personel |
| 313. Impertinent | Impertinant |
| 314. Differ | Difer |
| 315. Missionary | Missionery |
| 316. Reign | Riegn |
| 317. Seize | Sieze |
| 318. Semblance | Semblence |
| 319. Gynaecology | Gyneacology |
| 320. Hypochondria | Hyppochondria |
| 321. Instantaneous | Instantanious |
| 322. Imminent | Iminent |
| 323. Formidable | Furmidable |
| 324. Mathematician | mathametician |
| 325. Exaggeration | Exageration |
| 326. Sacrilege | Sacrelege |
| 327. Alliteration | Allitration |
| 328. Idiocy | Idiosy |
| 329. Jaundice | Jamdise |
| 330. Industrialize | Industralize |
| 331. Pretence | Pretense |
| 332. Convenience | Conveneince |
| 333. Supposition | Supposition |
| 334. Anthropology | Anthopology |
| 335. Philosophy | Philosophy |
| 336. Sociology | Sosiology |
| 337. Homicide | Homoside |
| 338. Excursion | Excussion |
| 339. Possession | Possesion |
| 340. Intermission | Intermision |
| 341. Example | Exampal |
| 342. Commentary | Commentery |
| 343. Achievement | Acheivement |
| 344. Tranquillity | Tranquility |
| 345. Remuneration | Remunaration |
| 346. Promissory | Promissary |
| 347. Palaeolithic | Palaeolithic |

* * *

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# Miscellaneous 38

## 1. Young Ones of Animals and Birds
जानवरों का बच्चा

| Animals जानवर | Young ones बच्चा | Animals जानवर | Young ones बच्चा |
|---|---|---|---|
| Goat | kid | Hare | leveret |
| Wolf | cub | Tiger | cub |
| Stag | fawn | Sheep | lamb |
| Ram | lamb | Lion | whelp/cub |
| Leopard | cub | Horse | colt/filly/foal |
| Hen | chicken/chick | Frog | Tadpole |
| Fox | cub | Dog | puppy |
| Deer | fawn | Cow | calf |
| Cat | kitten | Bear | cub |
| Duck | duckling | Fish | minnow |
| Goose | gosling | Swan | cygnet |
| Camel | foal | Ant/bee | grub |
| Butterfly | Caterpillar | Cockroach | nymph |
| Eagle | eaglet | Pig | Pigling |
| Housefly | maggot | Mosquito | larva |
| Owl | owlet | Salmon | parr |
| Trout | fry | Ass | foal |

## 2. Special meaning of the names of animals

| | |
|---|---|
| A vixen | A corrupt woman |
| A viper | A wicked man |
| A duck | A simple man |
| A fox | A cunning fellow |
| A goose | A fool |
| A gull | To be easily be fooled |
| A scorpion | A flatterer |
| A phoenix | A noble man |
| A pig | A glutton |
| A parrot | One who crams (रटना) |
| A lamb | An innocent man |
| A monkey | One who imitates |
| A dog | A nasty man |
| A puppy | A nasty man |
| A hound/cur | A nasty man |

## 3. Places to Live In

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tiger | Lair | Spider | Web |
| Sheep | Pen | Rabbit | Burrow |
| Pigeon | Dovecote/cage | Owl | Tree/barn |
| Mouse | Hole | Fowl | Coop |
| Dog | Kennel | Cow | Shed |
| Bird | Nest | Bee | Hive |
| Soldiers | Barrack | Nun | Convent/ Nursery |
| Monk | Monastery | Lunatic | Asylum |
| King | Palace | Convict | Prison |
| Arab | Dowar | Eskimo | Igloo |
| Gypsy | Caravan | Hermit | Hermitage |
| Knight | Manson | Lumber man | Logcabin |
| Nobleman | Castle | Parson | Parsonage |
| Peasant | Cottage | Priest | Prestytery |
| Prisoner | Jail/cell | Swiss | Chalet |
| Vagrant | Pavement | Horse | Stable |
| Lion | Den | Pig | Sty |
| Squirrel | Drey | Wasp | Nest |
| Wild animals | den/lair | | |

## 4. Places where things are made

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ships | Dockyard | Milk products | Dairy |
| Alcoholic drinks | Distillery | Money | Mint |
| Leather | Tannery | Goods | Factory |
| Films | Studio | Beer | Brewery |
| Bread/cakes | Bakery | Flour/paper | Mill |
| Iron things | Smithy | | |

## 5. Places where games are played

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Boxing | Ring | Badmintion | Court |
| Billiards | A cloth covered table | Cricket | Pitch |
| Football | Ground/field | Running | Track/course |
| Tennis | Court | Wrestling | Arena |
| Chess | Chess board | Hockey | Ground/Field |
| Skating | Rink | Water Polo | Swimming pool |

## 6. Places where persons/things/animals etc. are kept/grown/exhibited /stored

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aeroplanes | Hangar | Birds | Aviary |
| Exercises | Gymnasium | Bees | Apiary |
| Athletic competitions | Stadium | Birds and animals | Zoo |
| Clothes | Wardrobe | Guns | Armoury |
| Clothes are washed | Laundry | Dead bodies are cremated | Crematorium |
| Fishes | Aquarium | Fruit trees | Orchard |
| Gas | Cylinder | Goods | Depot |
| Grains | Granary | Grapes | Vineyard |
| Dead bodies are buried | Cemetry | Historical things | Museum |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Luggage | Cloakroom | Medicines | Dispensary |
| Motor cars | Garage | Sick people | Hospital |
| Scientific experiments | Laboratory | Cooking utensils | Scullery |
| Ships are loaded/unloaded | Quay | Water is stored | Reservoir |
| Wine | Cellar | Young plants | Nursery |

## 7. Sounds of birds, animals and insects

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Monkeys | chatter | Mice | squeak |
| Lions | roar | Jackals | howl |
| Hyenas | laugh | Horses | neigh/snort |
| Hens | cluck | Crickets | chirp |
| Geese | cackle | Frogs | croak |
| Flies | buzz | Wolves | yell/howl |
| Vultures | scream | Eagles | scream |
| Elephants | trumpet | Duck | quack |
| Doves | coo | Goats/sheep | bleat/whine |
| Dogs | bark/yelp | Cows | low |
| Crows | cow | Cocks | crow |
| Cats | mew/purr | Cannel | grunt |
| Calves | bleat | Cattle | low |
| Bulls | below | Bears | growl |
| Bees | buzz/drone/hum | Birds | twitter chirp/sing/warble |
| Asses | bray | Apes | gibber |
| Nightingales | warble | Owls | hoot |
| Pigeons | coo | Puppies | yelp |
| Serpents | hiss | Sheep | bleat |
| Squirrels | squeak | Tigers | roar |
| Turkeys | gobble | Crocodiles | grunt |
| Snakes | hiss | Wolves | howl/yelp |
| Kites | scream | Swans | cry |
| Sparrows | chirp/twitter | Parrots | chatter/talk/screech |
| Beetles | drone | | |

## 8. Pair words

1. Friends and foes
2. Gods and goddesses
3. Gold and silver
4. Hale and hearty
5. Heart and soul
6. Here and there
7. High and low
8. Bag and baggage
9. Black and white
10. Boys and girls
11. Bread and butter
12. Carrots and radishes
13. Cats and dogs
14. Cups and saucers
15. Doctors and nurses
16. Doors and windows
17. East and west
18. Fair and square
19. Fat and wide
20. Horse and carriage
21. Hue and cries
22. Joys and sorrows
23. Knives and forks
24. Ladies and gentlemen
25. Law and order
26. Lean and thin
27. Loaves and fishes
28. Lock and key
29. Men and women
30. Prince and princess
31. Questions and answers
32. Rock and ruin
33. Slow and steady
34. Sum and substance
35. Ups and downs
36. Up and down
37. The sun and the moon
38. Flesh and blood

## 9. Movement of birds and animals

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Birds | fly | Cocks | strut |
| Crows | fly | Ducks | waddle |
| Eagles | swoop | Larks | soar |
| Owls | flit | Sparrows | flit |
| Turkeys | strut | Vultures | flap/rise/hobble |
| Bears | lumber | Deer | bound |
| Donkey | trot | Elephants | amble |
| Horses | gallop/trot | Hounds | bound |
| Lambs | frisk | Lions | prowl |
| Mouses | scamper | Rabbits | leap |
| Wolves | lope | Bulls | run |
| Dogs | scamper | Frogs | hop |
| Hares | lope | Snakes | crowl |
| Vermin | crawl | Snails | crawl |
| Grasshoppers | hop | Ants | crawl |

## 10. Comparison denoting words

1. As white as snow
2. As sweet as honey
3. As sure as death
4. As soft as butter
5. As stubborn as a mule
6. As brave as a lion
7. As busy as a bee
8. As cold as ice
9. As dry as dust
10. As dumb as a statue
11. As fair as a rose
12. As bold as brass
13. As blind as a bat
14. As black as coal
15. As wise as Solomon
16. As timid as a hare
17. As swift as an arrow
18. As stupid as an ass or a donkey
19. As sharp as a needle
20. As rich as a jew
21. As regular as a clock
22. As proud as a peacock
23. As merry as a cricket
24. As hot as fire
25. As heavy as lead
26. As hard as a stone
27. As happy as a king
28. As green as grass
29. As gentle as lamb
30. As fierce as a tiger
31. As firm as a rock
32. As fast as a hare
33. As sharp as a razor
34. As red as a rose
35. As loud as thunder
36. As good as gold
37. As faithful as a dog
38. As soft as silk
39. As smooth as velvet
40. As light as a feather
41. As hard as iron
42. As happy as a king
43. As greedy as a wolf
44. As gentle as a dove
45. As firm as a rock
46. As deep as a well

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



47. As dark as midnight
48. As clear as crystal
49. As bright as silver
50. As blind as a bat
51. As deaf as a post
52. As cunning as a fox
53. As brittle as glass
54. As bright as a day
55. As bold as a lion
56. As cheerful as a lark
57. As ferocious as a lion
58. As free as the air
59. As gloomy as night
60. As impatient as a lover
61. As industrious as an ant
62. As old as the hills
63. As simple as ABC
64. As solitary as a tomb.
65. As big as an elephant
66. As straight as an arrow
67. As steady as a rock
68. As variable as the weather
69. As stealthy as a cat
70. As brief as a dream
71. As honest as the day.

### 11. Rearrangement of letters

किसी भी शब्द के letters improper order में दिये गए रहते हैं, उसे proper order अर्थात् सही क्रम में रखकर meaningful word बनाना रहता है। Letters के proper arrangement को rearrangement of letters कहते हैं। कभी-कभी इससे संबंधित प्रश्न भी रहते हैं। अतः छात्र words के spelling को ध्यान में रखें।

### 12. Rearrangement of Words

शब्दों का समूह improper order में दिया रहता है, उसे आपको सही क्रम (proper order) में रखकर एक meaningful (अर्थपूर्ण) वाक्य बनाना रहता है। शब्दों को व्याकरण की दृष्टिकोण से सही क्रम में रख कर अर्थपूर्ण वाक्य बनाना ही Rearrangement of words कहलाता है।

## Practice Set

**Q.1.** *Rearrange the letters and make meaningful words :*

1. Peoing .....
2. The Ertmomer .....
3. Tevelsioin .....
4. Hiuelmasg .....
5. Smarubine .....
6. Dymltena .....
7. Booalln .....
8. Beterarom .....
9. Chorolofrom .....
10. Pienicilln .....
11. Vaiccaniont .....
12. Sthote Socpe .....
13. Viatinm .....
14. Pratirdge .....
15. Otsrihc .....
16. Hitamuspoppu .....
17. Gassrpperho .....
18. Rinohcreos .....
19. Mnogoseo .....
20. Ninightglae .....
21. Ckucoo .....
22. Jlleryewe .....
23. Drriaheao .....
24. Peom garntae .....
25. Aeaniam .....

**Q.2.** *Rearrange the jumbled words and make meaningful sentences :*

1. should/we/our country/love
2. cure/is better/prevention/than
3. rome/in a day/was not/ built
4. In the world/love is/thing/greatest/the
5. Captain/the/became/Sachin/team/of
6. Was/watching/television programme/a/my wife
7. Together/try/live/must/we/to
8. purchased/they/a new bag/have
9. neighbours/greet/with/love and/respect/your
10. The Ramayana/Mukesh/will read
11. Those/God/helps/themselves/help/who
12. Make/the sun/shines/hay/while
13. A bird/two/in the bush/in hand/is worth
14. mightier/is the pen/the sword/than.
15. Invention/necessity/mother/the of/is
16. the iron/it/hot/is/strike/while
17. Praises/every potter/pot/his own.
18. Vessel/An empty/much/sounds.
19. He/down/needs/that is/no fall/fear
20. At home/begins/charity
21. We/stand/united/divided/we/fall
22. friend/in/friend/indeed/a/is/a/need
23. is/all/gold/not/that/glitters
24. Workman/with/a bad/his tools/quarrels
25. together/flock/feather/of/the same/birds

## Answers With Explanation

**Q.1.**

1. Pigeon
2. Thermometer
3. Television
4. Helium gas
5. Submarine
6. Dynamite
7. Balloon
8. Barometer
9. Choloroform
10. Penicillin
11. Vaccination
12. Stethoscope
13. Vitamine
14. Partridge
15. Ostrich
16. Hippopotamus
17. Grasshopper
18. Rhinoceres
19. Mongoose
20. Nightingale
21. Cuckoo
22. Jewellery
23. Diarrhoea
24. Pomegranate
25. Anaemia

**Q.2.**

1. We should love our country.
2. Prevention is better than cure.
3. Rome was not built in a day.
4. Love is the greatest thing in the world.
5. Sachin became the captain of team.
6. My wife was watching a television programme.
7. We must try to live together.
8. They have purchased a new bag.
9. Greet your neighbours with love and respect.
10. Mukesh will read the Ramayana.
11. God helps those who help themselves.
12. Make hay while the sun shines.
13. A bird in hand is worth two in the bush.
14. The pen is mightier than the sword.
15. Necessity is the mother of invention.
16. Strike the iron while it is hot.
17. Every potter praises his own pot.
18. An empty vessel sounds much.
19. He that is down needs fear no fall.
20. Charity begins at home.
21. United we stand, divided we fall.
22. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
23. All that glitters is not gold.
24. A bad workman quarrels with his tools.
25. Birds of the same feather flock together.

★★★

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

# 39 The Same Word Used as Different Parts of Speech

## A

### 1. A

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Article | एक | A man is here. |
| (ii) Preposition | पर | He has gone a hunting. |

### 2. Above

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | ऊपर | God lives above. |
| (ii) Adjective | पहले का | The above rule is very important. |
| (iii) Noun | ऊपर | All good things come from above. |
| (iv) Preposition | अधिक ऊँचा | Aditi stood high above the rest. |

### 3. After

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | उपरान्त | Suman will go now, A man will come after. |
| (ii) Preposition | पीछे-पीछे | Aditya came after me. |
| (iii) Conjunction | इसके पीछे | Veena came after Nilu had gone. |
| (iv) Adjective | बाद का | Sinners reap the consequences in after days. |

### 4. As

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | जितना | This pen is not so good as that (is). |
| (ii) Pronoun | जो | He had the same idea as I had. |
| (iii) Conjunction | ज्योंही | As Binay was angry, his sons did not speak to him. |

### 5. Any

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | कोई व्यक्ति | Any boy can do this. |
| (ii) Adverb | बिल्कुल | She should not go any farther. |
| (iii) Pronoun | कोई एक | Any of these boys can do this work. |

### 6. All

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | सारा | My friend was robbed of his all. |
| (ii) Adjective | सम्पूर्ण | All men should take exercise. |
| (iii) Adverb | पूर्णतया | A saint lives all alone. |
| (iv) Pronoun | समूचा | All of his books are new. |

### 7. Age

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अवस्था | He died at the age of seventy five. |
| (ii) Verb | बूढ़ा हो जाना | Grief has aged this man. |

### 8. Air

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | हवा/हावभाव | The man gives himself the airs of a rich man. He has an air of importance. |
| (ii) Verb | हवा में सुखाना | He airs his clothes. |

### 9. Arm

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | भुजा/हथियार | She was carrying a baby in her arms. |
| (ii) Verb | अस्त्र सज्जित करना/ अस्त्र-शस्त्र प्रदान करना | Many hunters are armed with guns. |

### 10. About

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | प्रायः/लगभग | He wandered about aimlessly. |
| (ii) Preposition | आसपास/चारों ओर | There is something pleasing about him. |

## B

### 1. Better

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अधिक योग्य व्यक्ति | Every student should respect his betters. |
| (ii) Verb | सुधारना | Better the composition if you can. |
| (iii) Adjective | श्रेष्ठतर | This is a better pen. |
| (iv) Adverb | अधिक अच्छा | He can write better with his pen. |

### 2. But

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | मगर/केवल | He can but (only) go there. |
| (ii) Preposition | सिवाय | None but the brave deserve the fair. |
| (iii) Conjunction | किन्तु/लेकिन | Shyama went, but Gauri stayed at home. |
| (iv) Noun & Verb | मेरे सामने कोई एतराज न रखो | But me no buts. (मुझसे अगर मगर न करो) |

### 3. Back

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पीठ | There is a bag on his back. |
| (ii) Verb | सहायता देना | I back this boy. |
| (iii) Adjective | पिछला | Students went by the back door. |
| (iv) Adverb | पीछे की ओर | Naresh came back from Delhi. |

### 4. Both

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Pronoun | दोनों | Both of them have done this work. |
| (ii) Adjective | दोनों | I know both parties. |
| (iii) Conjunction | दोनों | Both Binod and Manoj are absent. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 5. Before

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Preposition | पहले | I reached Patna before sun set. |
| (ii) Adverb | पूर्व | He has never seen me before. |
| (iii) Conjunction | आगे | See me before you go to college. |

### 6. Book

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पुस्तक | Read this book. |
| (ii) Verb | रेल का टिकट ऑर्डर देना या लेना | He booked five tickets. |
| (iii) Adjective | कर्ज | He did not clear his book debts. |

### 7. Black

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कालिमा | Let us have an agreement in black and white. |
| (ii) Verb | काला करना | Mohan blackened his face. |
| (iii) Adjective | काला | I have got a black shirt. |

### 8. Blind

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अंधे लोग | We should help the blind. |
| (ii) Verb | अंधा करना/ विवेकहीन बना देना | Her sympathy for him blinded her to his faults. |
| (iii) Adjective | अंधा/नेत्रहीन देखा-अनदेखा कर देना | He is blind in the left eye. Mothers are sometimes blind to the faults of their children. |

### 9. Blow

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | घूँसा, मुक्का | He struck his enemy a heavy blow on his head. |
| | आघात/ धक्का | His father's death was a great blow to him. |
| (ii) Verb | बहना/चलना | The wind blows. |

### 10. Bridge

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पुल | A new bridge is under construction. |
| (ii) Verb | पुल बाँधना | It bridged a river. |

### 11. Bargain

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | सौदा, खरीदने बेचने का समझौता | He agreed to my bargain. |
| (ii) Verb | सौदा पक्का करना | He bargained vegetables. |

### 12. Bank

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | तट/किनारा | A river flows between its banks. |
| (ii) Verb | निर्भर करना | I am banking on your help. |

### 13. Battle

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | युद्ध/लड़ाई/संग्राम | The Battle of Panipat is written in golden letters in our history. |
| (ii) Verb | लड़ाई करना/टक्कर लेना | They battled with winds and waves. |

### 14. Bite

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | भोजन/खाना | I haven't had a bite since morning. |
| | तीखापन | There is a bite in the air this morning. |
| (ii) Verb | दाँतों से काटना | The dog bit me in the leg. |

### 15. Brave

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | बहादुर लोग | We should respect the brave. |
| (ii) Verb | साहसपूर्वक सामना करना | He braved the difficulties. |
| (iii) Adjective | वीर/साहसी | He is as brave as a lion. |

### 16. Brush

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | बुरुश | He has a tooth brush. |
| (ii) Verb | सफाई करना/रंग करना/झाड़ना | Brush your teeth. |

## C

### 1. Cure

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | चिकित्सा | Prevention is better than cure. |
| (ii) Verb | उपचार करना | A doctor can cure him of his illness. |

### 2. Cloud

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | बादल | The sky is full of clouds. |
| (ii) Verb | अंधेरा होना | The death of Smt. Gandhi clouded the future of India. |

### 3. Cow

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | गाय | The cow is a very useful animal. |
| (ii) Verb | डराना | Nothing could cow Pandit Nehru. |

### 4. Close

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | घेरा/अन्त | The chapter comes to a close. |
| (ii) Verb | बन्द करना | A teacher closes his door against students. |
| (iii) Adjective | घनिष्ठ | Vijay and Raman are close friends. |
| (iv) Adverb | पास-पास लगभग करीब-करीब | The boat kept close to the bank. She is close upon forty. |

### 5. Calm

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | शान्ति | There was a fearful calm in the meeting. |
| (ii) Verb | शान्त करना | Sharda Sinha can calm a large gathering of people with her sweet music. |

### 6. Catch

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पकड़ | It was an easy catch. |
| (ii) Verb | पकड़ना | Cats run to catch rats. |

### 7. Cut

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आकृति | The cut of her face is beautiful. |
| (ii) Verb | काटना | Cut your coat according to your cloth. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 8. Cheer

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | हर्षध्वनि | Loud cheers greeted Mrs. Gandhi. |
| (ii) Verb | शाबाशी देना | We cheered the visitors. |

### 9. Colour

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | रंग | The colour of my shirt is yellow. |
| (ii) Verb | रंगना | I have to colour this picture. |

### 10. Claim

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | दावा | Their claim to own the building is illegal. |
| | माँगने का अधिकार | You have no claim on my charities. |
| (ii) Verb | दावा करना/अपना अधिकार जताना | Have you claimed yet. |

### 11. Chair

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कुर्सी | Please take a chair and sit down. |
| (ii) Verb | पदाधिकारी बनाना | This teacher chaired five students. |

### 12. Crowd

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | भीड़/मजमा | I saw a crowd there. |
| (ii) Verb | भीड़ लगाना | Now, go to your places, don't crowd here. |

### 13. Corner

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कोना | He was in the corner of a room. |
| (ii) Verb | विषम परिस्थिति में फँसा देना | That question cornered me. |

## D

### 1. Down

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | तकदीर का उलट-फेर | Every man has his ups and downs. |
| (ii) Verb | पटक देना | India downed Pakistan in the end. |
| (iii) Adverb | नीचे | Aditya went down. |
| (iv) Adjective | केन्द्र को आने वाली ट्रेन | He came by the down train. |
| (v) Preposition | निम्न भाग में/नीचे | He fell down the tree. |

### 2. Dead

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | निर्जीव | There was a dead cow. |
| (ii) Adverb | पूर्णरूपेण | I feel dead tired today. |

### 3. Date

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | तारीख/दिनांक | On what date he will go home. |
| (ii) Verb | तारीख लिखना डालना | Never forget to date your letters. |

### 4. Drive

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | भ्रमण/सैर | Let us go for a drive. |
| (ii) Verb | हाँकना | He drives a car. |

### 5. Dog

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कुत्ता | The dog is a faithful animal. |
| (ii) Verb | खोजना/पकड़ना | The Policemen dogged the thief. |

### 6. Dress

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | वस्त्र/पोशाक | This lady has a fine dress. |
| (ii) Verb | पट्टी बाँधना | Dress his wound. |

### 7. Drink

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मदिरा | Every man should avoid intoxicating drinks. |
| (ii) Verb | पीना | I drink a glass of water in the morning. |

### 8. Dust

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | धूल | He threw dust in my eyes. |
| (ii) Verb | धूल झाड़ना | He told me to dust the table. |

### 9. Desert

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मरुस्थल | The Sahara is a great desert. |
| (ii) Verb | त्यागना | He deserted his wife. |

### 10. Draw

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | नम्बर निकालना, खींचना | The game ended in a draw. |
| (ii) Verb | खींचकर हटाना, आकर्षित करना, बाहर निकालना | Road accidents drew large crowds. |

### 11. Drop

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | द्रव दवा की बूँदें, निरापद | This is an eye drop. |
| (ii) Verb | बूँद-बूँद गिरना, नीचे गिर जाना | The plate dropped out of his hand. |

## E

### 1. Else

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | कुछ | I have nothing else to say. |
| (ii) Adverb | अन्य | He cannot go anywhere else. |
| (iii) Conjunction | नहीं तो | Do this else you shall be punished. |

### 2. Enough

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पर्याप्त मात्रा/परिमाण | He has done enough. |
| (ii) Adjective | काफी | Sohan has enough money to buy a house. |
| (iii) Adverb | पर्याप्त मात्रा में | Many students are not well enough to read. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 3. Early

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | प्रातःकाल | Early rising is very good. |
| (ii) Adverb | सवेरे | Why does she go to college so early today ? |

### 4. Either

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | दो में से प्रत्येक | There are trees on either side of the river. |
| (ii) Pronoun | कोई एक | Either of them may take it. |
| (iii) Conjunction | या | Either Ram or Sohan will go. |

### 5. Eye

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | नेत्र | Every man should keep a strict eye upon the boy. |
| (ii) Verb | सतर्क, दृष्टि रखना | The police eyed him with suspicion. |

### 6. Exile

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | देश निकाला | Ram came to Ayodhaya after an exile of 14 years. |
| (ii) Verb | देश से निकाल देना/ निष्कासित करना | Kaikeyi exiled Ram for 14 years. |

### 7. Exact

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | सही/ठीक | What is the exact size of this table ? |
| (ii) Verb | सख्ती से वसूल करना | The bank exacted money. |

## F

### 1. Face

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | चेहरा | He has a good face |
| (ii) Verb | डट कर सामना करना | India faces many problems. |
| (iii) Adjective | मुखपाता | Modern girls use face powder. |

### 2. Fair

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मेला | A great fair takes place at Sonepur. |
| (ii) Verb | अनुकूल होना | Fair the better. |
| (iii) Adverb | स्पष्ट/निर्मल | He bids fair to be a great scholar. |
| (iv) Adjective | निष्कलंक | Man loves a fair lady. |

### 3. Fast

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | उपवास | Many women observe fast very often. |
| (ii) Verb | उपवास करना | He fasted for two days. |
| (iii) Adjective | द्रुतगामी | He is a fast writer. |
| (iv) Adverb | जल्दी-जल्दी | He runs fast. |

### 4. Few

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Pronoun | कम/अल्प/कुछ | Few of the students were there. |
| (ii) Adjective | थोड़ा (दो-चार) | A few boys were in this class. |

### 5. For

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | लिए | The boy has been sent for. |
| (ii) Preposition | लिए | I have sent for you. |
| (iii) Conjunction | लिए | I worked for I was well. |

### 6. Fall

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पतन | This is his great fall. |
| (ii) Verb | गिरना | Books fall from his hand. |

### 7. First

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | प्रथम स्थान | He had full faith from the first. |
| (ii) Adjective | प्रधान | He is the first boy of this class. |
| (iii) Adverb | पहली बार | He went to Delhi first this year. |

### 8. Fleet

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Verb | भाग जाना | The lion fleeted through the forest. |
| (ii) Adjective | फुर्तीला | Aditya mounted a fleet horse. |

### 9. Figure

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आकृति | He cut a figure from his book. |
| (ii) Verb | दिखायी पड़ना | He figured as a great doctor. |

### 10. Fill

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | भर पेट | He ate his fill. |
| (ii) Verb | पूर्ण करना | Fill up the blanks. |

### 11. Find

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अनुसंधान | He did not inform you of the find. |
| (ii) Verb | पाना | We did not find this book there. |

### 12. Fish

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मछली | He caught a big fish. |
| (ii) Verb | मछली पकड़ना/मारना | They want to fish in the sea. |

### 13. Flower

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पुष्प/फूल | Some flowers are very sweet. |
| (ii) Verb | पुष्पित होना | Many plants flower in spring. |

### 14. Fool

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मूर्ख | Fools rush in where angels fear to tread. |
| (ii) Vreb | बेवकूफ बनाना | She tired to fool me. |

### 15. Feast

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | प्रीतिभोज | They enjoyed the feast. |
| (ii) Verb | आँखों को सौन्दर्य से तृप्त करना | Our eyes feasted on the charming scene. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## G

### 1. Glory

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कीर्ति | Every thing is the glory of God. |
| (ii) Verb | गर्व करना | He glories in acts of humanity. |

## H

### 1. Half

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अर्धभाग | Half of the time is over. |
| (ii) Adjective | आधा | Half truths are worse than lies. |
| (iii) Adverb | अशांत | He was half dead with fatigue. |

### 2. Home

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आवास | My home is at Muzaffarpur. |
| (ii) Verb | घर आना | Many birds home before it is dark. |
| (iii) Adjective | घर की ओर | She is going home. |

### 3. Hold

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | बंधन | He has no hold upon his children. |
| (ii) Verb | थामना | Hold your tongue. |

### 4. Hand

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | हाथ | We have two hands. |
| (ii) Verb | सौंपना | We handed the thief over to the police. |

### 5. Habit

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आदत | Smoking is a bad habit. |
| (ii) Verb | निवास करना | He was habited as an ascetic. |

### 6. Head

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | सिर | His head is covered. |
| (ii) Verb | चोटी पर पहुँचना | His name headed the list |

### 7. House

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आवास | His house is very good. |
| (ii) Verb | शरण देना | The farmer housed his cow in a shed. |

### 8. Husband

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पति | She loves and respects her husband. |
| (ii) Verb | स्वामी होना देना | We must husband our resources. |

## I

### 1. Ill

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | बुराई | I returned the ills he did to me. |
| (ii) Adverb | अविवेकपूर्ण ढंग से | He was ill treated. |
| (ii) Adjective | बुरा | Ill news runs a pace. |

### 2. Iron

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | लोहा | Iron is heavy. |
| (ii) Verb | इस्तरी करना | I iron my shirt. |
| (iii) Adjective | लौहनिर्मित | Iron posts are very strong. |

### 3. Idle

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Verb | आलस्य में समय खोना | Many students idle away their time. |
| (ii) Adjective | बेकार | She is an idle girl. |

## K

### 1. Keep

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | रखवाली | The documents were in the keep of the manager. |
| (ii) Verb | रखना | He keeps on record. |

## L

### 1. Less

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कम चीज | He is satisfied with the less. |
| (ii) Adjective | कम | An idle man does less work. |
| (iii) Adverb | थोड़ा | He works less than you. |
| (iv) Preposition | न्यून | He paid me the price less the usual discount. |

### 2. Like

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पसंद | Everyone has his likes and dislikes. |
| (ii) Verb | पसंद करना | Boys like to play. |
| (iii) Preposition | जैसा | I can't make one like that. |
| (iv) Adjective | समान | We are men of like tastes. |

### 3. Light

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | प्रकाश | The light has gone. |
| (ii) Verb | प्रकाशित करना | Light the candle. |

### 4. Little

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | थोड़ा | You have done little for the country. |
| (ii) Adjective | कम | Very little progress has been made. |
| (iii) Adverb | | He thinks very little of me. |

### 5. Long

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | लम्बा | He tells me a long story. |
| (ii) Adverb | पहले/एक समय | He went there long ago. |

### 6. Last

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | अन्तिम | He was the last speaker. |
| (ii) Adverb | अन्ततः | I saw her last at Deoghar. |
| (iii) Noun | हिम्मत | He fought to the last. |
| (iv) Verb | टिकाऊ होना | This shirt will not last long. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 7. Late

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | देर से | You have come late |
| (ii) Noun | आजकल | He takes no interest of late. |
| (iii) Adjective | विलम्बित | The bus is late today. |

### 8. Live

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | जीवित | There are many live animals. |
| (ii) Verb | जीवन यापन करना | He lives at Patna. |

### 9. Lack

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अभाव | The plan was postponed for lack of money. |
| (ii) Verb | कमी होना | He lacks moral courage. |

### 10. Line

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पंक्ति | The line is straight. |
| (ii) Verb | पंक्तिबद्ध होना | The street is lined with soldiers. |

### 11. Land

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | भूमि | Bihar is a land of saints. |
| (ii) Verb | उतरना | He landed at Patna. |

## M

### 1. Many

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | बहुत | There are many books in my library. |
| (ii) Pronoun | बहुत | Many of you will like to go there. |
| (iii) Noun | बहुसंख्यक | A great many of them will like to do this. |

### 2. More

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | अधिक | Everyone wants more money. |
| (ii) Adverb | फिर | He must work more. |
| (iii) Noun | आधिक्य | More is necessary for success. |
| (iv) Pronoun | अतिरिक्त | He will explain more of it afterwards. |

### 3. Much

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | बहुत | He took much trouble for Ram. |
| (ii) Adverb | अतिशय रूप में | You feel much better today. |
| (iii) Pronoun | आवश्यकता से अधिक | Too much of everything is bad. |

### 4. Make

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आकृति | Pens of the best quality and make are sold here. |
| (ii) Verb | बनाना | He makes a way. |

### 5. Man

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मनुष्य | Man is the supreme creation of God. |
| (ii) Verb | आदमी रखना | This college is widely manned. |

### 6. Master

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मालिक | You are my master. |
| (ii) Verb | पारंगत होना | He has mastered in English. |

### 7. Milk

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | दूध | Milk is sweet. |
| (ii) Verb | दूध दूहना | Rajendra milks the cow. |

### 8. Mind

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मन | Our mind is fresh in the morning. |
| (ii) Verb | ध्यान देना | Mind your lesson. |

### 9. Motion

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | गति | This motion of this train is very high. |
| (ii) Verb | गतिशील होना | The car motioned towards the station. |

### 10. Mouth

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मुख | His mouth is small |
| (ii) Verb | मुँह में भोजन डालना | Boys mouthed their food. |

### 11. Mark

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | लक्ष्य | Vikas made his mark in life. |
| (ii) Verb | चिन्हित करना | He marked him well. |

## N

### 1. Next

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अगला अंक | To be continued in our next. |
| (ii) Adverb | उसके बाद | Who comes next ? |
| (iii) Adjective | अगला | Next moment he went mad. |
| (iv) Preposition | ठीक पास | Rahul lives next my door. |

### 2. No

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | इन्कार | We should not care for his yes or no. |
| (ii) Adjective | कोई नहीं | I have no book. |
| (iii) Adverb | और नहीं | I felt no better than before. |

### 3. Near

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | घनिष्ठ/पास | He is a near relation of mine. |
| (ii) Adverb | पास | Come near. |
| (iii) Verb | समीप आना | We are nearing the station |

### 4. Need

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आवश्यकता | His need is greater than mine. |
| (ii) Verb | आवश्यक होना | I need not go there. |



yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 5. None

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | कोई नहीं | The man is none but my friend. |
| (ii) Adverb | बिल्कुल नहीं | He offended me but I love him none the less. |
| (iii) Pronoun | कोई नहीं | None need apply who is not a graduate. |

### 6. Neither

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Pronoun | दोनों में से कोई नहीं | Neither of the boys was good. |
| (ii) Adjective | एक भी नहीं | Neither party could win the game. |
| (iii) Conjunction | न तो | Neither Ram nor Shyam came here. |

## O

### 1. Once

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | एक समय | Once upon a time there was a king. |
| (ii) Conjunction | एक बार | Let him attempt, once he fails. |
| (iii) Noun | पहली बार | Once is not enough for him. |

### 2. Only

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | इतने पर/केवल | He only spoke to me. |
| (ii) Adjective | एक मात्र | This is my only book. |

### 3. Oil

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | तेल | We do not use oil |
| (ii) Verb | तैलाक्त करना | Oil your watch. |
| (iii) Adjective | तैलयुक्त | There are many oil pumps in Assam. |

### 4. One

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | व्यक्ति | The little ones cried with joy. |
| (ii) Adjective | एक | One day I found her. |
| (iii) Pronoun | कोई व्यक्ति | One may think him to be mad. |

## P

### 1. Past

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अतीत काल | India has a glorious past. |
| (ii) Adjective | पिछला/विगत | The past time will never return. |
| (iii) Adverb | सामने से/आगे से | A false report rides past. |
| (iv) Preposition | पश्चात/बाद में | We started at half past seven. |

### 2. Present

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | उपहार | He gave me a good present. |
| (ii) Verb | समक्ष होना | Present yourself before the court. |
| (iii) Adjective | वर्तमान | The present condition is not good. |

### 3. Pass

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | प्रवेश पत्र | Give me a pass. |
| (ii) Verb | आगे बढ़ना | She passed her childhood. |
| (iii) Adjective | सफलता योग्य | He obtained only pass marks. |

### 4. Paper

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कागज | The price of paper is going up. |
| (ii) Verb | कागज मढ़ना | How much will you charge to paper the wall ? |

## R

### 1. Round

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | वृत्ताकार | The round table . |
| (ii) Adverb | चारों ओर | I turned round and found him. |
| (iii) Preposition | चारों ओर | The earth moves round the sun. |
| (iv) Noun | चक्कर | He did his daily round of duties. |
| (v) Verb | परिभ्रमण | We rounded the temple. |

### 2. Right

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | अधिकार | You have no right to do it. |
| (ii) Verb | सुधारना | His wrongs were righted. |
| (iii) Adverb | ठीक | Things done in haste are never done right. |
| (iv) Adjective | यथार्थ | Always use the right word. |

### 3. Run

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | दौड़ | He scored many runs. |
| (ii) Verb | दौड़ना | We should run a race. |

### 4. Race

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | दौड़ | Slow and steady wins the race. |
| (ii) Verb | दौड़ना | The first group had to race twice. |

### 5. Reach

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पहुँच | This is beyond my reach. |
| (ii) Verb | पहुँचना | We reached the school in time. |

### 6. Refuse

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | कूड़ा | The pit was filled with refuse. |
| (ii) Verb | अस्वीकार करना | He refused to meet me. |

### 7. Rise

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | उदय | His rise is sudden. |
| (ii) Verb | उदित होना/उगना | The sun rises in the east. |

### 8. Roof

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | छत | He sleeps on the roof. |
| (ii) Verb | छत डालना | We have to roof the house. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



## S

### 1. Since

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Preposition | उपरान्त | I have not seen him since last month. |
| (ii) Adverb | तब से अबतक | No one has seen him since. |
| (iii) Conjunction | जबसे-तबसे | Five years have passed since he went to Delhi. |

### 2. So

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | इतना अधिक | The ball is so nice. |
| (ii) Pronoun | अमुक व्यक्ति | So and so told me. |
| (iii) Adjective | वैसा | That is good but this is not so. |

### 3. Still

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | गतिहीन | Still waters run deep. |
| (ii) Adverb | अभी तक भी | He still reads. |
| (iii) Noun | शान्ति | In the still of night he went out. |
| (iv) verb | शान्त करना | His voice is stilled in death. |

### 4. Supply

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | आपूर्ति | The supply of sugar is limited. |
| (ii) Verb | आपूर्ति करना | He supplied many books. |

### 5. Some

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | कुछ | Some men are very wise. |
| (ii) Adverb | कोई | Some fifty men were present there. |
| (iii) Pronoun | कोई व्यक्ति | Some say that he is an honest man. |

### 6. Such

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | इस प्रकार का | Such things are bad. |
| (ii) Pronoun | वैसा आदमी | You are a fool, I am not such. |

### 7. Second

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | सेकेंड | I shall come here in a second. |
| (ii) Verb | समर्थित करना | He seconded my proposal. |

### 8. Silence

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मौन | Read in silence. |
| (ii) Verb | चुप किया गया | His speech silenced him. |

### 9. Skin

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | त्वचा | Her skin is fair. |
| (ii) Verb | कपड़ा उतारना या छिलका उतारना | He began to skin the mangoes. |

### 10. Smell

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | गंध | The flower has a sweet smell. |
| (ii) Verb | गंध का अनुभव होना | Curd smells sour. |

## T

### 1. That

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | ऐसा/वह | That pen is mine. |
| (ii) Pronoun | वह | He may cry, but that will not frighten me. |
| (iii) Adverb | इतना | That much he has done. |
| (iv) Conjunction | ताकि | Tell me that Suman will come. |

### 2. The

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | वही | It was the dog that barked. |
| (ii) Adverb | जितना | The more, the better. |

### 3. Till

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Preposition | तक | You must wait here till 5 O'clock. |
| (ii) Conjunction | जब तक कि | You must wait here till I come back. |
| (iii) Verb | जोतना | Rajendra tills the soil. |

### 4. Tender

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adjective | कोमल/दयालु | We should tender towards the poor. |
| (ii) Verb | पेश करना/भेंट करना | Tender my compliments to your parents. |
| (iii) Noun | निविदा/ठेका | My tender for the work has been accepted. |

### 5. Then

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | उस क्षण | I have not met Vikas since then. |
| (ii) Adjective | उस समय का | The then principal was present. |
| (iii) Adverb | तब | She writes to me now and then. |

### 6. Time

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | समय | Your watch keeps good time. |
| (ii) Verb | समय निश्चित करना | The train is timed to arrive at 6 p.m. |

### 7. Turn

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | घुमाव | Please come as your turn comes. |
| (ii) Verb | निकाल देना | He turned the boy out of the class. |

## V

### 1. Veil

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | घूँघट | The lady wore a veil. |
| (ii) Verb | घूँघट काढ़ना | Shyama veiled her face from the strangers. |

## W

### 1. Well

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | उत्तम रूप से | You have done well. |
| (ii) Adjective | भला | He is quite well. |
| (iii) Adverb | कुछ | What with one thing and what with another I have lost all my patience. |

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com



### 2. Why

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Adverb | क्यों | Why do you laugh ? |
| (ii) Noun | कारण | Tell me the why and wherefore of it. |

### 3. While

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | समय | He kept silence for a while. |
| (ii) Verb | समय खोना | Students should not while away their time. |
| (iii) Adverb | जब | He was murdered while asleep. |
| (iv) Conjunction | जबकि | Make hay while the sun shines. |

### 4. Water

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | पानी | Drink cold water. |
| (ii) Verb | सींचना | Veena waters the plants. |

### 5. Wrong

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | भूल | He has done you no wrong. |
| (ii) Verb | बुरा करना | You should not wrong your friend. |
| (iii) Adjective | अवैध | He gave a wrong statement. |

### 6. Worth

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | मूल्य/दाम | What is the worths of this book ? |
| (ii) Verb | घटित होना/आ पड़ना | An accident worth every day in the morning |
| (iii) Adjective | के योग्य / की कीमत | The old cycle is not worth more than Rs. 250. |

### 7. Wind

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | हवा | The wind blows. |
| (ii) Verb | हवा देना | He winds his watch. |

### 8. Word

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | शब्द | He speaks a word. |
| (ii) Verb | शब्दों में व्यक्त करना | Your answer has been properly worded. |

## Y

### 1. Yet

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Conjunction | तथापि | He is rich, yet he does not enjoy a play. |
| (ii) Adverb | इस पर भी | He may yet do this. |

### 2. Yoke

| Used as | Meaning | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| (i) Noun | बैलों आदि की जोड़ी | He has two yoke of oxen. |
| (ii) Verb | संयुक्त करना | In some places, horses are yoked to the plough. |

***

> One of the teachers was laborious

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Scanned by CamScanner

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com

Dedicated
To
My Reverend
Father & Mother
Shree Maneshwar Thakur
&
Shreemati Ramita Devi

yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Scanned by CamScanner